

Renesas RA2L2 Group

User's Manual: Hardware

32-Bit MCU

Renesas Advanced (RA) Family

Renesas RA2 Series

All information contained in these materials, including products and product specifications, represents information on the product at the time of publication and is subject to change by Renesas Electronics Corp. without notice. Please review the latest information published by Renesas Electronics Corp. through various means, including the Renesas Electronics Corp. website (<http://www.renesas.com>).

Notice

1. Descriptions of circuits, software and other related information in this document are provided only to illustrate the operation of semiconductor products and application examples. You are fully responsible for the incorporation or any other use of the circuits, software, and information in the design of your product or system. Renesas Electronics disclaims any and all liability for any losses and damages incurred by you or third parties arising from the use of these circuits, software, or information.
2. Renesas Electronics hereby expressly disclaims any warranties against and liability for infringement or any other claims involving patents, copyrights, or other intellectual property rights of third parties, by or arising from the use of Renesas Electronics products or technical information described in this document, including but not limited to, the product data, drawings, charts, programs, algorithms, and application examples.
3. No license, express, implied or otherwise, is granted hereby under any patents, copyrights or other intellectual property rights of Renesas Electronics or others.
4. You shall be responsible for determining what licenses are required from any third parties, and obtaining such licenses for the lawful import, export, manufacture, sales, utilization, distribution or other disposal of any products incorporating Renesas Electronics products, if required.
5. You shall not alter, modify, copy, or reverse engineer any Renesas Electronics product, whether in whole or in part. Renesas Electronics disclaims any and all liability for any losses or damages incurred by you or third parties arising from such alteration, modification, copying or reverse engineering.
6. Renesas Electronics products are classified according to the following two quality grades: "Standard" and "High Quality". The intended applications for each Renesas Electronics product depends on the product's quality grade, as indicated below.

"Standard": Computers; office equipment; communications equipment; test and measurement equipment; audio and visual equipment; home electronic appliances; machine tools; personal electronic equipment; industrial robots; etc.

"High Quality": Transportation equipment (automobiles, trains, ships, etc.); traffic control (traffic lights); large-scale communication equipment; key financial terminal systems; safety control equipment; etc.

Unless expressly designated as a high reliability product or a product for harsh environments in a Renesas Electronics data sheet or other Renesas Electronics document, Renesas Electronics products are not intended or authorized for use in products or systems that may pose a direct threat to human life or bodily injury (artificial life support devices or systems; surgical implantations; etc.), or may cause serious property damage (space system; undersea repeaters; nuclear power control systems; aircraft control systems; key plant systems; military equipment; etc.). Renesas Electronics disclaims any and all liability for any damages or losses incurred by you or any third parties arising from the use of any Renesas Electronics product that is inconsistent with any Renesas Electronics data sheet, user's manual or other Renesas Electronics document.

7. No semiconductor product is absolutely secure. Notwithstanding any security measures or features that may be implemented in Renesas Electronics hardware or software products, Renesas Electronics shall have absolutely no liability arising out of any vulnerability or security breach, including but not limited to any unauthorized access to or use of a Renesas Electronics product or a system that uses a Renesas Electronics product. RENESAS ELECTRONICS DOES NOT WARRANT OR GUARANTEE THAT RENESAS ELECTRONICS PRODUCTS, OR ANY SYSTEMS CREATED USING RENESAS ELECTRONICS PRODUCTS WILL BE INVULNERABLE OR FREE FROM CORRUPTION, ATTACK, VIRUSES, INTERFERENCE, HACKING, DATA LOSS OR THEFT, OR OTHER SECURITY INTRUSION ("Vulnerability Issues"). RENESAS ELECTRONICS DISCLAIMS ANY AND ALL RESPONSIBILITY OR LIABILITY ARISING FROM OR RELATED TO ANY VULNERABILITY ISSUES. FURTHERMORE, TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, RENESAS ELECTRONICS DISCLAIMS ANY AND ALL WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, WITH RESPECT TO THIS DOCUMENT AND ANY RELATED OR ACCOMPANYING SOFTWARE OR HARDWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.
8. When using Renesas Electronics products, refer to the latest product information (data sheets, user's manuals, application notes, "General Notes for Handling and Using Semiconductor Devices" in the reliability handbook, etc.), and ensure that usage conditions are within the ranges specified by Renesas Electronics with respect to maximum ratings, operating power supply voltage range, heat dissipation characteristics, installation, etc. Renesas Electronics disclaims any and all liability for any malfunctions, failure or accident arising out of the use of Renesas Electronics products outside of such specified ranges.
9. Although Renesas Electronics endeavors to improve the quality and reliability of Renesas Electronics products, semiconductor products have specific characteristics, such as the occurrence of failure at a certain rate and malfunctions under certain use conditions. Unless designated as a high reliability product or a product for harsh environments in a Renesas Electronics data sheet or other Renesas Electronics document, Renesas Electronics products are not subject to radiation resistance design. You are responsible for implementing safety measures to guard against the possibility of bodily injury, injury or damage caused by fire, and/or danger to the public in the event of a failure or malfunction of Renesas Electronics products, such as safety design for hardware and software, including but not limited to redundancy, fire control and malfunction prevention, appropriate treatment for aging degradation or any other appropriate measures. Because the evaluation of microcomputer software alone is very difficult and impractical, you are responsible for evaluating the safety of the final products or systems manufactured by you.
10. Please contact a Renesas Electronics sales office for details as to environmental matters such as the environmental compatibility of each Renesas Electronics product. You are responsible for carefully and sufficiently investigating applicable laws and regulations that regulate the inclusion or use of controlled substances, including without limitation, the EU RoHS Directive, and using Renesas Electronics products in compliance with all these applicable laws and regulations. Renesas Electronics disclaims any and all liability for damages or losses occurring as a result of your noncompliance with applicable laws and regulations.
11. Renesas Electronics products and technologies shall not be used for or incorporated into any products or systems whose manufacture, use, or sale is prohibited under any applicable domestic or foreign laws or regulations. You shall comply with any applicable export control laws and regulations promulgated and administered by the governments of any countries asserting jurisdiction over the parties or transactions.
12. It is the responsibility of the buyer or distributor of Renesas Electronics products, or any other party who distributes, disposes of, or otherwise sells or transfers the product to a third party, to notify such third party in advance of the contents and conditions set forth in this document.
13. This document shall not be reprinted, reproduced or duplicated in any form, in whole or in part, without prior written consent of Renesas Electronics.
14. Please contact a Renesas Electronics sales office if you have any questions regarding the information contained in this document or Renesas Electronics products.

(Note1) "Renesas Electronics" as used in this document means Renesas Electronics Corporation and also includes its directly or indirectly controlled subsidiaries.

(Note2) "Renesas Electronics product(s)" means any product developed or manufactured by or for Renesas Electronics.

(Rev.5.0-1 October 2020)

Corporate Headquarters

TOYOSU FORESIA, 3-2-24 Toyosu,
Koto-ku, Tokyo 135-0061, Japan
www.renesas.com

Trademarks

Renesas and the Renesas logo are trademarks of Renesas Electronics Corporation. All trademarks and registered trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

Contact Information

For further information on a product, technology, the most up-to-date version of a document, or your nearest sales office, please visit:
www.renesas.com/contact/

General Precautions in the Handling of Microprocessing Unit and Microcontroller Unit Products

The following usage notes are applicable to all Microprocessing unit and Microcontroller unit products from Renesas. For detailed usage notes on the products covered by this document, refer to the relevant sections of the document as well as any technical updates that have been issued for the products.

1. Precaution against Electrostatic Discharge (ESD)

A strong electrical field, when exposed to a CMOS device, can cause destruction of the gate oxide and ultimately degrade the device operation. Steps must be taken to stop the generation of static electricity as much as possible, and quickly dissipate it when it occurs. Environmental control must be adequate. When it is dry, a humidifier should be used. This is recommended to avoid using insulators that can easily build up static electricity.

Semiconductor devices must be stored and transported in an anti-static container, static shielding bag or conductive material. All test and measurement tools including work benches and floors must be grounded. The operator must also be grounded using a wrist strap. Semiconductor devices must not be touched with bare hands. Similar precautions must be taken for printed circuit boards with mounted semiconductor devices.

2. Processing at power-on

The state of the product is undefined at the time when power is supplied. The states of internal circuits in the LSI are indeterminate and the states of register settings and pins are undefined at the time when power is supplied. In a finished product where the reset signal is applied to the external reset pin, the states of pins are not guaranteed from the time when power is supplied until the reset process is completed. In a similar way, the states of pins in a product that is reset by an on-chip power-on reset function are not guaranteed from the time when power is supplied until the power reaches the level at which resetting is specified.

3. Input of signal during power-off state

Do not input signals or an I/O pull-up power supply while the device is powered off. The current injection that results from input of such a signal or I/O pull-up power supply may cause malfunction and the abnormal current that passes in the device at this time may cause degradation of internal elements. Follow the guideline for input signal during power-off state as described in your product documentation.

4. Handling of unused pins

Handle unused pins in accordance with the directions given under handling of unused pins in the manual. The input pins of CMOS products are generally in the high-impedance state. In operation with an unused pin in the open-circuit state, extra electromagnetic noise is induced in the vicinity of the LSI, an associated shoot-through current flows internally, and malfunctions occur due to the false recognition of the pin state as an input signal become possible.

5. Clock signals

After applying a reset, only release the reset line after the operating clock signal becomes stable. When switching the clock signal during program execution, wait until the target clock signal is stabilized. When the clock signal is generated with an external resonator or from an external oscillator during a reset, ensure that the reset line is only released after full stabilization of the clock signal. Additionally, when switching to a clock signal produced with an external resonator or by an external oscillator while program execution is in progress, wait until the target clock signal is stable.

6. Voltage application waveform at input pin

Waveform distortion due to input noise or a reflected wave may cause malfunction. If the input of the CMOS device stays in the area between V_{IL} (Max.) and V_{IH} (Min.) due to noise, for example, the device may malfunction. Take care to prevent chattering noise from entering the device when the input level is fixed, and also in the transition period when the input level passes through the area between V_{IL} (Max.) and V_{IH} (Min.).

7. Prohibition of access to reserved addresses

Access to reserved addresses is prohibited. The reserved addresses are provided for possible future expansion of functions. Do not access these addresses as the correct operation of the LSI is not guaranteed.

8. Differences between products

Before changing from one product to another, for example to a product with a different part number, confirm that the change will not lead to problems. The characteristics of a microprocessing unit or microcontroller unit products in the same group but having a different part number might differ in terms of internal memory capacity, layout pattern, and other factors, which can affect the ranges of electrical characteristics, such as characteristic values, operating margins, immunity to noise, and amount of radiated noise. When changing to a product with a different part number, implement a system-evaluation test for the given product.

Preface

1. About this document

This manual is generally organized into an overview of the product, descriptions of the CPU, system control functions, peripheral functions, electrical characteristics, and usage notes. This manual describes the product specification of the microcontroller (MCU) superset. Depending on your product, some pins, registers, or functions might not exist. Address space that store unavailable registers are reserved.

2. Audience

This manual is written for system designers who are designing and programming applications using the Renesas Microcontroller. The user is expected to have basic knowledge of electrical circuits, logic circuits, and the MCU.

3. Renesas Publications

Renesas provides the following documents. Before using any of these documents, visit www.renesas.com for the most up-to-date version of the document.

Component	Document Type	Description
Microcontrollers	Data sheet	Features, overview, and electrical characteristics of the MCU
	User's Manual: Hardware	MCU specifications such as pin assignments, memory maps, peripheral functions, electrical characteristics, timing diagrams, and operation descriptions
	Application Notes	Technical notes, board design guidelines, and software migration information
	Technical Update (TU)	Preliminary reports on product specifications such as restriction and errata
Software	User's Manual: Software	API reference and programming information
	Application Notes	Project files, guidelines for software programming, and application examples to develop embedded software applications
Tools & Kits, Solutions	User's Manual: Development Tools	User's manual and quick start guide for developing embedded software applications with Development Kits (DK), Starter Kits (SK), Promotion Kits (PK), Product Examples (PE), and Application Examples (AE)
	User's Manual: Software	
	Quick Start Guide	
	Application Notes	Project files, guidelines for software programming, and application examples to develop embedded software applications

4. Numbering Notation

The following numbering notation is used throughout this manual:

Example	Description
011b	Binary number. For example, the binary equivalent of the number 3 is 011b.
0x1F	Hexadecimal number. For example, the hexadecimal equivalent of the number 31 is described 0x1F. In some cases, a hexadecimal number is shown with the suffix "h".
1234	Decimal number. A decimal number is followed by this symbol only when the possibility of confusion exists. Decimal numbers are generally shown without a suffix.

5. Typographic Notation

The following typographic notation is used throughout this manual:

Example	Description
AAA.BBB.CCC	Periods separated a function module symbol (AAA), register symbol (BBB), and bit field symbol (CCC).
AAA.BBB	A period separated a function module symbol (AAA) and register symbol (BBB).
BBB.DDD	A period separated a register symbol (BBB) and bit field symbol (DDD).
EEE[3:0]	Numbers in brackets expresses a bit number. For example, EEE[3:0] occupies bits 3 to 0.

6. Unit and Unit Prefix

The following units and unit prefixes are sometimes misleading. Those unit prefixes are described throughout this manual with the following meaning:

Symbol	Name	Description
b	Binary Digit	Single 0 or 1
B	Byte	This unit is generally used for memory specification of the MCU and address space.
k	kilo-	$1000 = 10^3$. k is also used to denote 1024 (2^{10}) but this unit prefix is used to denote 1000 (10^3) throughout this manual.
K	Kilo-	$1024 = 2^{10}$. This unit prefix is used to denote 1024 (2^{10}) not 1000 (10^3) throughout this manual.

7. Special Terms

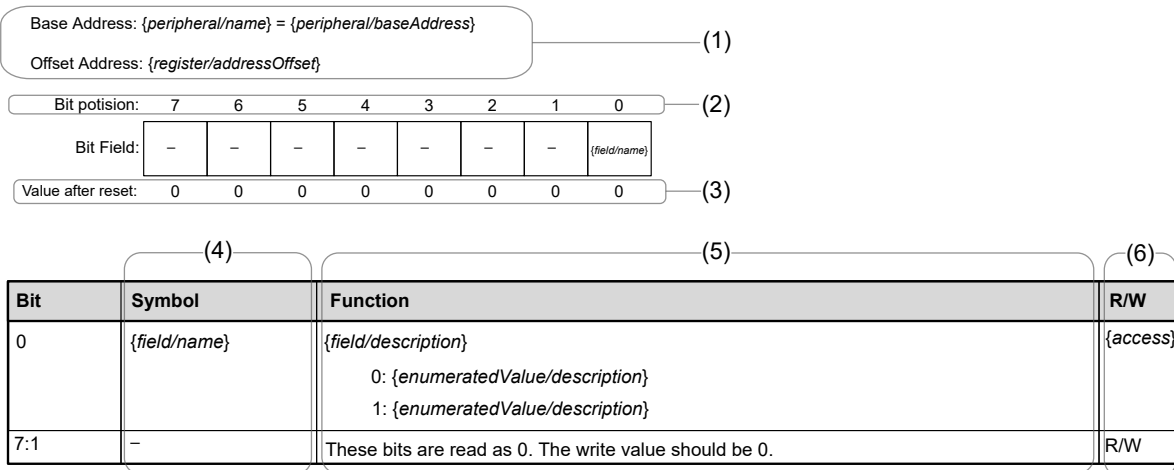
The following terms have special meanings.

Term	Description
NC	Not connected pin. This pin should be left floating unless specified otherwise.
Hi-Z	High impedance.
x	Don't care or undefined.

8. Register Description

Each register description includes both a register diagram that shows the bit assignments and a register bit table that describes the content of each bit. The example of symbols used in these tables are described in the sections that follow. The following is an example of a register description and associated bit field definition.

XX.X.X {register/name} : {register/description}



(1) Function module symbol, register symbol, and address assignment

Function module symbol, {peripheral/name}, register symbol, {register/name}, and address assignment of this register are generally expressed. Base Address and Offset Address mean {register/name} : {register/description} of {peripheral/name} is assigned to address {peripheral/baseAddress} + {register/addressOffset}.

(2) Bit number

This number indicates the bit number. This bits are shown in order from bits 31 to 0 for 32-bit register, from bits 15 to 0 for 16-bit register, and from bits 7 to 0 for 8-bit register.

(3) Value after reset

This symbol or number indicate the value of each bit after a hard reset. The value is shown in binary unless specified otherwise.

0: Indicates that the value is 0 after a reset.

1: Indicates that the value is 1 after a reset.

x: Indicates that the value is undefined after a reset.

(4) Symbol

{field/name} indicates the short name of bit field. Reserved bit is expressed with a —.

(5) Function

Function indicates the full name of the bit field, {field/description}, and enumerated values.

(6) R/W

The R/W column indicates access type whether the bit field is readable or writable.

R/W: The bit field is readable and writable.

R: The bit field is readable only. Writing to this bit field has no effect.

W: The bit field is writable only. The read value is the same as after a reset unless specified otherwise.

9. Abbreviations

Abbreviations used in this document are shown in the following table.

Abbreviation	Description
AES	Advanced Encryption Standard
AHB	Advanced High-performance Bus
AHB-AP	AHB Access Port
APB	Advanced Peripheral Bus
ARC	Alleged RC
ATB	Advanced Trace Bus
BCD	Binary Coded Decimal
BSDL	Boundary Scan Description Language
DES	Data Encryption Standard
DSA	Digital Signature Algorithm
ETB	Embedded Trace Buffer
ETM	Embedded Trace Macrocell
FLL	Frequency Locked Loop
FPU	Floating Point Unit
HMI	Human Machine Interface
IrDA	Infrared Data Association
LSB	Least Significant Bit
MSB	Most Significant Bit
NVIC	Nested Vector Interrupt Controller
PC	Program Counter
PFS	Port Function Select
PLL	Phase Locked Loop
POR	Power-on reset
PWM	Pulse Width Modulation
RSA	Rivest Shamir Adleman
SHA	Secure Hash Algorithm
S/H	Sample and Hold
SP	Stack Pointer
SWD	Serial Wire Debug
SW-DP	Serial Wire-Debug Port
TRNG	True Random Number Generator
UART	Universal Asynchronous Receiver/Transmitter
VCO	Voltage Controlled Oscillator

10. Proprietary Notice

All text, graphics, photographs, trademarks, logos, artwork and computer code, collectively known as content, contained in this document is owned, controlled or licensed by or to Renesas, and is protected by trade dress, copyright, patent and trademark laws, and other intellectual property rights and unfair competition laws. Except as expressly provided herein, no part of this document or content may be copied, reproduced, republished, posted, publicly displayed, encoded, translated, transmitted or distributed in any other medium for publication or distribution or for any commercial enterprise, without prior written consent from Renesas.

Arm® and Cortex® are registered trademarks of Arm Limited. CoreSight™ is a trademark of Arm Limited.

CoreMark® is a registered trademark of the Embedded Microprocessor Benchmark Consortium.

SuperFlash® is a registered trademark of Silicon Storage Technology, Inc. in several countries including the United States and Japan.

USB Type-C® and USB-C® are registered trademarks of USB Implementers Forum.

Other brands and names mentioned in this document may be the trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders.

11. Feedback on the product

If you have any comments or suggestions about this product, go to [Contact Us](#).

Contents

Features	34
1. Overview.....	35
1.1 Function Outline	35
1.2 Block Diagram	40
1.3 Part Numbering	40
1.4 Function Comparison	43
1.5 Pin Functions.....	44
1.6 Pin Assignments.....	47
1.7 Pin Lists	50
2. CPU	53
2.1 Overview.....	53
2.1.1 CPU.....	53
2.1.2 Debug.....	53
2.1.3 Operating Frequency	53
2.1.4 Block Diagram	53
2.2 Implementation Options.....	54
2.3 SWD Interface	55
2.4 Debug Function	55
2.4.1 Debug Mode Definition.....	55
2.4.2 Debug Mode Effects.....	55
2.5 Programmers Model	56
2.5.1 Address Spaces	56
2.5.2 Cortex-M23 Peripheral Address Map.....	57
2.5.3 External Debug Address Map	57
2.5.4 CoreSight ROM Table	57
2.5.5 DBGREG Module	58
2.5.6 OCDREG Module.....	60
2.6 SysTick Timer	62
2.7 OCD Emulator Connection	62
2.7.1 Unlock ID Code	63
2.7.2 DBGEN	63
2.7.3 Restrictions on Connecting an OCD Emulator.....	63
2.8 References	65
2.9 Usage Notes.....	65
3. Operating Modes	66
3.1 Operating Mode Types and Selection	66
3.2 Details of Operating Modes	66
3.2.1 Single-Chip Mode.....	66
3.2.2 SCI Boot Mode or I ² C Boot Mode	66
3.3 Operating Modes Transitions.....	66
3.3.1 Operating Mode Transitions as Determined by the Mode-Setting Pin	66
4. Address Space.....	67
4.1 Address Space	67
5. Resets.....	68
5.1 Overview.....	68
5.2 Register Descriptions	73
5.2.1 RSTSR0 : Reset Status Register 0	73

5.2.2	RSTSR1 : Reset Status Register 1	74
5.2.3	RSTSR2 : Reset Status Register 2	76
5.3	Operation	77
5.3.1	RES Pin Reset	77
5.3.2	Power-On Reset.....	77
5.3.3	Voltage Monitor Reset.....	78
5.3.4	Independent Watchdog Timer Reset.....	79
5.3.5	Watchdog Timer Reset.....	79
5.3.6	Software Reset.....	80
5.3.7	Determination of Cold/Warm Start	80
5.3.8	Determination of Reset Generation Source	80
5.4	Usage Notes.....	81
5.4.1	Note on RES Pin Reset.....	81
6.	Option-Setting Memory	82
6.1	Overview.....	82
6.2	Register Descriptions	82
6.2.1	OFS0 : Option Function Select Register 0	82
6.2.2	OFS1 : Option Function Select Register 1	86
6.2.3	MPU Registers	87
6.2.4	AWS : Access Window Setting Register	88
6.2.5	OSIS : OCD/Serial Programmer ID Setting Register	89
6.3	Setting Option-Setting Memory	90
6.3.1	Allocation of Data in Option-Setting Memory	90
6.3.2	Setting Data for Programming Option-Setting Memory.....	90
6.4	Usage Notes.....	91
6.4.1	Data for Programming Reserved Areas and Reserved Bits in the Option-Setting Memory ..	91
6.4.2	Note on FSPR Bit.....	91
7.	Low Voltage Detection (LVD)	92
7.1	Overview.....	92
7.2	Register Descriptions	94
7.2.1	LVCMPCR : Voltage Monitor Circuit Control Register.....	94
7.2.2	LVDLVLRL : Voltage Detection Level Select Register.....	95
7.2.3	LVD1CR0 : Voltage Monitor 1 Circuit Control Register 0	95
7.2.4	LVD2CR0 : Voltage Monitor 2 Circuit Control Register 0	96
7.2.5	LVD1CR1 : Voltage Monitor 1 Circuit Control Register	97
7.2.6	LVD1SR : Voltage Monitor 1 Circuit Status Register.....	97
7.2.7	LVD2CR1 : Voltage Monitor 2 Circuit Control Register 1	98
7.2.8	LVD2SR : Voltage Monitor 2 Circuit Status Register.....	98
7.3	VCC Input Voltage Monitor	99
7.3.1	Monitoring V_{det0}	99
7.3.2	Monitoring V_{det1}	99
7.3.3	Monitoring V_{det2}	99
7.4	Reset from Voltage Monitor 0	100
7.5	Interrupt and Reset from Voltage Monitor 1.....	100
7.6	Interrupt and Reset from Voltage Monitor 2.....	102
7.7	Event Link Controller (ELC) Output.....	104
7.7.1	Interrupt Handling and Event Linking	104
8.	Clock Generation Circuit	106
8.1	Overview.....	106
8.2	Register Descriptions	110

8.2.1	SCKDIVCR : System Clock Division Control Register	110
8.2.2	SCKSCR : System Clock Source Control Register	111
8.2.3	MEMWAIT : Memory Wait Cycle Control Register for Code Flash	112
8.2.4	FLDWAITR : Memory Wait Cycle Control Register for Data Flash	112
8.2.5	MOSCCR : Main Clock Oscillator Control Register	115
8.2.6	SOSCCR : Sub-Clock Oscillator Control Register	116
8.2.7	LOCOCR : Low-Speed On-Chip Oscillator Control Register	117
8.2.8	HOCOCR : High-Speed On-Chip Oscillator Control Register	118
8.2.9	MOCOCR : Middle-Speed On-Chip Oscillator Control Register	118
8.2.10	OSCSF : Oscillation Stabilization Flag Register	119
8.2.11	OSTDCR : Oscillation Stop Detection Control Register	120
8.2.12	OSTDSR : Oscillation Stop Detection Status Register	121
8.2.13	MOSCWTCR : Main Clock Oscillator Wait Control Register	122
8.2.14	HOCOWTCR : High-Speed On-Chip Oscillator Wait Control Register	122
8.2.15	MOMCR : Main Clock Oscillator Mode Oscillation Control Register	123
8.2.16	SOMCR : Sub-Clock Oscillator Mode Control Register	124
8.2.17	SOMRG : Sub-Clock Oscillator Margin Check Register	124
8.2.18	CKOCR : Clock Out Control Register	124
8.2.19	LOCOUTCR : LOCO User Trimming Control Register	125
8.2.20	MOCOUTCR : MOCO User Trimming Control Register	126
8.2.21	HOCOUTCR : HOCO User Trimming Control Register	127
8.3	Main Clock Oscillator	127
8.3.1	Connecting a Crystal Resonator	127
8.3.2	External Clock Input	128
8.3.3	Notes on External Clock Input	128
8.4	Sub-clock Oscillator	128
8.4.1	Connecting a 32.768-kHz Crystal Resonator	129
8.5	Oscillation Stop Detection Function	129
8.5.1	Oscillation Stop Detection and Operation After Detection	129
8.5.2	Oscillation Stop Detection Interrupts	131
8.6	Internal Clock	132
8.6.1	System Clock (ICLK)	132
8.6.2	Peripheral Module Clock (PCLKB, PCLKD)	133
8.6.3	USB Clock (USBCLK)	133
8.6.4	CAN Clock (CANMCLK)	134
8.6.5	CAC Clock (CACCLK)	134
8.6.6	UARTA-dedicated Clock (UARTAMCLK, UARTASCLK, UARTALOCK, UARTAHOCK, UARTAMOCK)	134
8.6.7	RTC-dedicated Clock (RTCSCLK, RTCS128CLK, RTCLCLK)	134
8.6.8	IWDT-dedicated Clock (IWDTCLK)	134
8.6.9	AGTW-dedicated Clock (AGTSCLK, AGTLCLK)	134
8.6.10	SysTick Timer-dedicated Clock (SYSTICCLK)	134
8.6.11	External Pin Output Clock (CLKOUT)	134
8.7	Usage Notes	134
8.7.1	Notes on Clock Generation Circuit	134
8.7.2	Notes on Resonator	135
8.7.3	Notes on Board Design	135
8.7.4	Notes on Resonator Connect Pin	135
9.	Clock Frequency Accuracy Measurement Circuit (CAC)	136
9.1	Overview	136

9.2	Register Descriptions	137
9.2.1	CACR0 : CAC Control Register 0	137
9.2.2	CACR1 : CAC Control Register 1	138
9.2.3	CACR2 : CAC Control Register 2	138
9.2.4	CAICR : CAC Interrupt Control Register	139
9.2.5	CASTR : CAC Status Register	140
9.2.6	CAULVR : CAC Upper-Limit Value Setting Register	141
9.2.7	CALLVR : CAC Lower-Limit Value Setting Register	141
9.2.8	CACNTBR : CAC Counter Buffer Register	142
9.3	Operation	142
9.3.1	Measuring Clock Frequency	142
9.3.2	Digital Filtering of Signals on CACREF Pin	144
9.4	Interrupt Requests	144
9.5	Usage Notes	144
9.5.1	Settings for the Module-Stop Function	144
10.	Low Power Modes	145
10.1	Overview	145
10.2	Register Descriptions	148
10.2.1	SBYCR : Standby Control Register	148
10.2.2	MSTPCRA : Module Stop Control Register A	149
10.2.3	MSTPCRB : Module Stop Control Register B	149
10.2.4	MSTPCRC : Module Stop Control Register C	150
10.2.5	MSTPCRD : Module Stop Control Register D	151
10.2.6	OPCCR : Operating Power Control Register	152
10.2.7	SOPCCR : Sub Operating Power Control Register	153
10.2.8	SNZCR : Snooze Control Register	154
10.2.9	SNZEDCR0 : Snooze End Control Register 0	155
10.2.10	SNZREQCR0 : Snooze Request Control Register 0	156
10.2.11	PSMCR : Power Save Memory Control Register	157
10.2.12	SYOCDRC : System Control OCD Control Register	158
10.2.13	LSMRWDIS : Low Speed Module R/W Disable Control Register	158
10.2.14	LPOPT : Lower Power Operation Control Register	159
10.3	Reducing Power Consumption by Switching Clock Signals	160
10.4	Module-stop Function	160
10.5	Function for Lower Operating Power Consumption	161
10.5.1	Setting Operating Power Control Mode	161
10.5.2	Operating Range	162
10.6	Sleep Mode	164
10.6.1	Transitioning to Sleep Mode	164
10.6.2	Canceling Sleep Mode	164
10.7	Software Standby Mode	165
10.7.1	Transition to Software Standby Mode	165
10.7.2	Canceling Software Standby Mode	165
10.7.3	Example of Software Standby Mode Application	166
10.8	Snooze Mode	167
10.8.1	Transition to Snooze Mode	167
10.8.2	Canceling Snooze Mode	168
10.8.3	Returning from Snooze Mode to Software Standby Mode	169
10.8.4	Snooze Operation Example	170
10.9	Usage Notes	174

10.9.1	Register Access	174
10.9.2	I/O Port Pin States	175
10.9.3	Module-stop State of DTC.....	175
10.9.4	Internal Interrupt Sources.....	175
10.9.5	Transitioning to Low Power Modes	175
10.9.6	Timing of WFI Instruction	175
10.9.7	Writing to the WDT/IWDT Registers by DTC in Sleep Mode or Snooze Mode	175
10.9.8	Oscillators in Snooze Mode	175
10.9.9	Snooze Mode Entry by RXD0 Falling Edge	176
10.9.10	Using UART of SCI0 in Snooze Mode	176
10.9.11	Conditions of A/D Conversion Start in Snooze Mode	176
10.9.12	ELC Events in Snooze Mode	176
10.9.13	Module-stop Function for ADC120.....	176
10.9.14	Module-stop Function for an Unused Circuit.....	176
10.9.15	Notes When Transition to Low Power Modes by Sleep-on-Exit.....	177
10.9.16	Applicable Conditions and Notes	177
10.9.17	Workaround.....	178
11.	Register Write Protection	180
11.1	Overview.....	180
11.2	Register Descriptions	180
11.2.1	PRCR : Protect Register	180
12.	Interrupt Controller Unit (ICU)	181
12.1	Overview.....	181
12.2	Register Descriptions	182
12.2.1	IRQCRi : IRQ Control Register i (i = 0 to 7)	182
12.2.2	NMISR : Non-Maskable Interrupt Status Register	183
12.2.3	NMIER : Non-Maskable Interrupt Enable Register	186
12.2.4	NMICLR : Non-Maskable Interrupt Status Clear Register.....	187
12.2.5	NMICR : NMI Pin Interrupt Control Register	189
12.2.6	IELSRn : ICU Event Link Setting Register n (n = 0 to 31).....	190
12.2.7	SELSR0 : SYS Event Link Setting Register.....	191
12.2.8	WUPEN : Wake Up Interrupt Enable Register	191
12.2.9	WUPEN2 : Wake Up Interrupt Enable Register 2	193
12.2.10	IELEN : ICU Event Enable Register.....	194
12.3	Vector Table.....	194
12.3.1	Interrupt Vector Table	194
12.3.2	Event Number	196
12.3.3	ICU and DTC Event Number.....	200
12.4	Interrupt Operation	205
12.4.1	Detecting Interrupts.....	205
12.5	Interrupt Setting Procedure	206
12.5.1	Enabling Interrupt Requests.....	206
12.5.2	Disabling Interrupt Requests.....	206
12.5.3	Polling for Interrupts	206
12.5.4	Selecting Interrupt Request Destinations	207
12.5.5	Digital Filter	207
12.5.6	External Pin Interrupts.....	208
12.6	Non-maskable Interrupt Operation	208
12.7	Return from Low Power Modes	209
12.7.1	Return from Sleep Mode	209

12.7.2	Return from Software Standby Mode	209
12.7.3	Return from Snooze Mode	210
12.8	Using the WFI Instruction with Non-maskable Interrupts	210
12.9	Reference	210
13.	Buses.....	211
13.1	Overview.....	211
13.2	Description of Buses.....	212
13.2.1	Main Buses	212
13.2.2	Slave Interface	212
13.2.3	Parallel Operations.....	212
13.2.4	Restriction on Endianness	212
13.2.5	Restriction on Exclusive Access	213
13.3	Register Descriptions	213
13.3.1	BUSMCNTx : Master Bus Control Register x (x = SYS, DMA)	213
13.3.2	BUSnERRADD : Bus Error Address Register n (n = 3, 4)	213
13.3.3	BUSnERRSTAT : BUS Error Status Register n (n = 3, 4)	214
13.4	Bus Error Monitoring Section.....	214
13.4.1	Error Type that Occurs by Bus	214
13.4.2	Operation When a Bus Error Occurs	215
13.4.3	Conditions for Issuing Illegal Address Access Errors.....	215
13.5	References	215
14.	Memory Protection Unit (MPU).....	216
14.1	Overview.....	216
14.2	CPU Stack Pointer Monitor.....	216
14.2.1	Protecting the Registers	219
14.2.2	Overflow and Underflow Errors	219
14.2.3	Register Descriptions	219
14.3	Arm MPU	223
14.4	Bus Master MPU	223
14.4.1	Register Descriptions	224
14.4.2	Operation	228
14.5	Bus Slave MPU	231
14.5.1	Register Descriptions	232
14.5.2	Functions.....	237
14.6	Security MPU.....	237
14.6.1	Register Descriptions (Option-Setting Memory).....	238
14.6.2	Memory Protection	243
14.7	Usage Notes.....	244
14.7.1	Notes on the Use of a Debugger.....	244
14.8	References	244
15.	Data Transfer Controller (DTC).....	245
15.1	Overview.....	245
15.2	Register Descriptions	246
15.2.1	MRA : DTC Mode Register A	246
15.2.2	MRB : DTC Mode Register B	247
15.2.3	SAR : DTC Transfer Source Register	248
15.2.4	DAR : DTC Transfer Destination Register.....	249
15.2.5	CRA : DTC Transfer Count Register A.....	249
15.2.6	CRB : DTC Transfer Count Register B.....	250
15.2.7	DTCCR : DTC Control Register	250

15.2.8	DTCVBR : DTC Vector Base Register	250
15.2.9	DTCST : DTC Module Start Register	251
15.2.10	DTCSTS : DTC Status Register	251
15.3	Activation Sources	252
15.3.1	Allocating Transfer Information and DTC Vector Table	252
15.4	Operation	254
15.4.1	Transfer Information Read Skip Function	256
15.4.2	Transfer Information Write-back Skip Function	256
15.4.3	Normal Transfer Mode	257
15.4.4	Repeat Transfer Mode	258
15.4.5	Block Transfer Mode	259
15.4.6	Chain Transfer	260
15.4.7	Operation Timing	261
15.4.8	Execution Cycles of DTC	263
15.4.9	DTC Bus Mastership Release Timing	264
15.5	DTC Setting Procedure	264
15.6	Examples of DTC Usage	265
15.6.1	Normal Transfer	265
15.6.2	Chain Transfer	265
15.6.3	Chain Transfer When Counter = 0	267
15.7	Interrupt	268
15.7.1	Interrupt Sources	268
15.8	Event Link	269
15.9	Low Power Consumption Function	269
15.10	Usage Notes	269
15.10.1	Transfer Information Start Address	269
16.	Event Link Controller (ELC)	270
16.1	Overview	270
16.2	Register Descriptions	271
16.2.1	ELCR : Event Link Controller Register	271
16.2.2	ELSEGRn : Event Link Software Event Generation Register n (n = 0, 1)	271
16.2.3	ELSRn : Event Link Setting Register n (n = 0 to 3, 8, 9, 14, 15)	272
16.3	Operation	275
16.3.1	Relation Between Interrupt Handling and Event Linking	275
16.3.2	Linking Events	275
16.3.3	Example of Procedure for Linking Events	276
16.4	Usage Notes	276
16.4.1	Linking DTC Transfer End Signals as Events	276
16.4.2	Setting Clocks	276
16.4.3	Module-stop Function Setting	276
16.4.4	ELC Delay Time	276
17.	I/O Ports	278
17.1	Overview	278
17.2	Register Descriptions	281
17.2.1	PCNTR1/PODR/PDR : Port Control Register 1	281
17.2.2	PCNTR2/EIDR/PIDR : Port Control Register 2	282
17.2.3	PCNTR3/PORR/POSR : Port Control Register 3	283
17.2.4	PCNTR4/EORR/EOSR : Port Control Register 4	284
17.2.5	PmnPFS/PmnPFS_HA/PmnPFS_BY : Port mn Pin Function Select Register (m = 0 to 5, 9, n = 00 to 15)	285

17.2.6	P20nPFS/P20nPFS_HA/P20nPFS_BY : Port 20n Pin Function Select Register (n = 0)....	287
17.2.7	P2nPFS/P2nPFS_HA/P2nPFS_BY : Port 2n Pin Function Select Register (n = 12, 13)....	288
17.2.8	P40nPFS/P40nPFS_HA/P40nPFS_BY : Port 40n Pin Function Select Register (n = 7 to 9).....	289
17.2.9	PWPR : Write-Protect Register	290
17.2.10	PRWCNTR : Port Read Wait Control Register.....	290
17.3	Operation.....	290
17.3.1	General I/O Ports	290
17.3.2	Port Function Select.....	291
17.3.3	Port Group Function for ELC.....	291
17.3.4	Wait Function for Port Read	293
17.4	Handling of Unused Pins	293
17.5	Usage Notes.....	294
17.5.1	Procedure for Specifying the Pin Functions	294
17.5.2	Procedure for Using Port Group Input.....	294
17.5.3	Port Output Data Register (PODR) Summary.....	294
17.5.4	Notes on Using Analog Functions	295
17.6	Peripheral Select Settings for Each Product	295
18.	Key Interrupt Function (KINT)	299
18.1	Overview.....	299
18.2	Register Descriptions	299
18.2.1	KRCTL : Key Return Control Register	299
18.2.2	KRF : Key Return Flag Register.....	300
18.2.3	KRM : Key Return Mode Register.....	300
18.3	Operation.....	300
18.3.1	Operation When Not Using the Key Interrupt Flags (KRCTL.KRMD = 0).....	300
18.3.2	Operation When Using the Key Interrupt Flags (KRCTL.KRMD = 1).....	301
18.4	Usage Notes.....	303
19.	Port Output Enable for GPT (POEG).....	304
19.1	Overview.....	304
19.2	Register Descriptions	305
19.2.1	POEGGn : POEG Group n Setting Register (n = A, B).....	305
19.3	Output-disable Control Operation.....	306
19.3.1	Pin Input Level Detection Operation	307
19.3.2	Output-disable Requests from the GPT	307
19.3.3	Output-disable Control Using Detection of Stopped Oscillation	307
19.3.4	Output-disable Control Using Registers	307
19.3.5	Release from Output-disable	308
19.4	Interrupt Sources	308
19.5	External Trigger Output to the GPT	309
19.6	Usage Notes.....	309
19.6.1	Transition to Software Standby Mode	309
19.6.2	Specifying Pins Associated with the GPT	309
20.	General PWM Timer (GPT).....	310
20.1	Overview.....	310
20.2	Register Descriptions	313
20.2.1	GTWP : General PWM Timer Write-Protection Register.....	313
20.2.2	GTSTR : General PWM Timer Software Start Register	314
20.2.3	GTSTP : General PWM Timer Software Stop Register.....	315
20.2.4	GTCLR : General PWM Timer Software Clear Register	315

20.2.5	GTSSR : General PWM Timer Start Source Select Register	316
20.2.6	GTPSR : General PWM Timer Stop Source Select Register	319
20.2.7	GTCSR : General PWM Timer Clear Source Select Register.....	321
20.2.8	GTUPSR : General PWM Timer Up Count Source Select Register.....	324
20.2.9	GTDNSR : General PWM Timer Down Count Source Select Register	326
20.2.10	GTICASR : General PWM Timer Input Capture Source Select Register A.....	329
20.2.11	GTICBSR : General PWM Timer Input Capture Source Select Register B.....	332
20.2.12	GTCR : General PWM Timer Control Register	334
20.2.13	GTUDDTYC : General PWM Timer Count Direction and Duty Setting Register.....	336
20.2.14	GTIOR : General PWM Timer I/O Control Register	338
20.2.15	GTINTAD : General PWM Timer Interrupt Output Setting Register	342
20.2.16	GTST : General PWM Timer Status Register	343
20.2.17	GTBER : General PWM Timer Buffer Enable Register	347
20.2.18	GTCNT : General PWM Timer Counter	348
20.2.19	GTCCRk : General PWM Timer Compare Capture Register k (k = A to F)	348
20.2.20	GTPR : General PWM Timer Cycle Setting Register	349
20.2.21	GTPBR : General PWM Timer Cycle Setting Buffer Register	349
20.2.22	GTDTCR : General PWM Timer Dead Time Control Register	349
20.2.23	GTDVU : General PWM Timer Dead Time Value Register U.....	350
20.2.24	OPSCR : Output Phase Switching Control Register	351
20.3	Operation.....	353
20.3.1	Basic Operation.....	353
20.3.2	Buffer Operation	361
20.3.3	PWM Output Operating Mode.....	368
20.3.4	Automatic Dead Time Setting Function.....	378
20.3.5	Count Direction Changing Function	382
20.3.6	Function of Output Duty 0% and 100%.....	382
20.3.7	Hardware Count Start/Count Stop and Clear Operation	384
20.3.8	Synchronized Operation.....	389
20.3.9	PWM Output Operation Examples	393
20.3.10	Phase Counting Function.....	398
20.3.11	Output Phase Switching (GPT_OPS)	408
20.4	Interrupt Sources	415
20.4.1	Interrupt Sources.....	415
20.4.2	DTC Activation	417
20.5	Operations Linked by ELC.....	417
20.5.1	Event Signal Output to ELC	417
20.5.2	Event Signal Inputs from ELC	417
20.6	Noise Filter Function.....	417
20.7	Protection Function.....	418
20.7.1	Write-protection for Registers.....	418
20.7.2	Disabling of Buffer Operation	418
20.7.3	GTIOCNm Pin Output Negate Control (n = 0, 4 to 9, m = A, B)	419
20.8	Initialization Method of Output Pins	420
20.8.1	Pin Settings After Reset	420
20.8.2	Pin Initialization Due to Error During Operation	421
20.9	Usage Notes.....	421
20.9.1	Module-stop Function Setting	421
20.9.2	GTCCRn Settings During Compare Match Operation (n = A to F)	421
20.9.3	Setting Range for GTCNT Counter	422

20.9.4	Starting and Stopping the GTCNT Counter	422
20.9.5	Priority Order of Each Event	422
21.	Low Power Asynchronous General Purpose Timer (AGTW)	424
21.1	Overview.....	424
21.2	Register Descriptions	425
21.2.1	AGT : AGT Counter Register	426
21.2.2	AGTCMA : AGT Compare Match A Register	426
21.2.3	AGTCMB : AGT Compare Match B Register	427
21.2.4	AGTCR : AGT Control Register	427
21.2.5	AGTMR1 : AGT Mode Register 1	429
21.2.6	AGTMR2 : AGT Mode Register 2	429
21.2.7	AGTIOC : AGT I/O Control Register	431
21.2.8	AGTISR : AGT Event Pin Select Register.....	432
21.2.9	AGTCMSR : AGT Compare Match Function Select Register	433
21.2.10	AGTIOSEL : AGT Pin Select Register	433
21.3	Operation.....	434
21.3.1	Reload Register and Counter Rewrite Operation.....	434
21.3.2	Reload Register and AGT Compare Match A/B Register Rewrite Operation	436
21.3.3	Timer Mode	437
21.3.4	Pulse Output Mode	438
21.3.5	Event Counter Mode	439
21.3.6	Pulse Width Measurement Mode	440
21.3.7	Pulse Period Measurement Mode	441
21.3.8	Compare Match Function.....	442
21.3.9	Output Settings for Each Mode	443
21.3.10	Standby Mode	445
21.3.11	Interrupt Sources.....	445
21.3.12	Event Signal Output to ELC	446
21.4	Usage Notes.....	446
21.4.1	Count Operation Start and Stop Control	446
21.4.2	Access to Counter Register	446
21.4.3	When Changing Mode	447
21.4.4	Output Pin Setting	447
21.4.5	Digital Filter	447
21.4.6	How to Calculate Event Number, Pulse Width, and Pulse Period.....	447
21.4.7	When Count is Forcibly Stopped by TSTOP Bit.....	447
21.4.8	When Selecting AGTW0 Underflow as the Count Source	447
21.4.9	Module-stop Function.....	448
22.	Realtime Clock (RTC).....	449
22.1	Overview.....	449
22.2	Register Descriptions	450
22.2.1	R64CNT : 64-Hz Counter.....	450
22.2.2	RSECCNT : Second Counter (in Calendar Count Mode)	451
22.2.3	RMINCNT : Minute Counter (in Calendar Count Mode).....	451
22.2.4	RHRCNT : Hour Counter (in Calendar Count Mode)	452
22.2.5	RWKCNT : Day-of-Week Counter (in Calendar Count Mode)	452
22.2.6	BCNTn : Binary Counter n (n = 0 to 3) (in Binary Count Mode).....	453
22.2.7	RDAYCNT : Day Counter.....	453
22.2.8	RMONCNT : Month Counter	454
22.2.9	RYRCNT : Year Counter	454

22.2.10	RSECAR : Second Alarm Register (in Calendar Count Mode)	455
22.2.11	RMINAR : Minute Alarm Register (in Calendar Count Mode)	455
22.2.12	RHRAR : Hour Alarm Register (in Calendar Count Mode)	456
22.2.13	RWKAR : Day-of-Week Alarm Register (in Calendar Count Mode)	457
22.2.14	BCNTnAR : Binary Counter n Alarm Register (n = 0 to 3) (in Binary Count Mode)	458
22.2.15	RDAYAR : Date Alarm Register (in Calendar Count Mode)	458
22.2.16	RMONAR : Month Alarm Register (in Calendar Count Mode)	459
22.2.17	RYRAR : Year Alarm Register (in Calendar Count Mode)	459
22.2.18	RYRAREN : Year Alarm Enable Register (in Calendar Count Mode)	460
22.2.19	BCNTnAER : Binary Counter n Alarm Enable Register (n = 0, 1) (in Binary Count Mode)	460
22.2.20	BCNT2AER : Binary Counter 2 Alarm Enable Register (in Binary Count Mode)	461
22.2.21	BCNT3AER : Binary Counter 3 Alarm Enable Register (in Binary Count Mode)	461
22.2.22	RCR1 : RTC Control Register 1	462
22.2.23	RCR2 : RTC Control Register 2 (in Calendar Count Mode)	463
22.2.24	RCR2 : RTC Control Register 2 (in Binary Count Mode)	465
22.2.25	RCR4 : RTC Control Register 4	466
22.2.26	RFRL : Frequency Register L	467
22.2.27	RFRH : Frequency Register H	467
22.2.28	RADJ : Time Error Adjustment Register	468
22.3	Operation	468
22.3.1	Outline of Initial Settings of Registers After Power On	468
22.3.2	Operation Mode, Clock and Count Mode Setting Procedure	469
22.3.3	Setting the Time	470
22.3.4	30-Second Adjustment	471
22.3.5	Reading 64-Hz Counter and Time	472
22.3.6	Alarm Function	474
22.3.7	Procedure for Disabling Alarm Interrupt	475
22.3.8	Time Error Adjustment Function	475
22.4	Interrupt Sources	478
22.5	Event Link Output	479
22.5.1	Interrupt Handling and Event Linking	479
22.6	Usage Notes	479
22.6.1	Register Writing During Counting	479
22.6.2	Use of Periodic Interrupts	480
22.6.3	RTCOUNT (1-Hz/64-Hz) Clock Output	481
22.6.4	Transitions to Low Power Modes After Setting Registers	481
22.6.5	Notes on Writing to and Reading From Registers	481
22.6.6	Changing the Count Mode	481
22.6.7	Initialization Procedure When the RTC Is Not to Be Used	481
23.	Watchdog Timer (WDT)	483
23.1	Overview	483
23.2	Register Descriptions	484
23.2.1	WDTRR : WDT Refresh Register	484
23.2.2	WDTCR : WDT Control Register	485
23.2.3	WDTSR : WDT Status Register	487
23.2.4	WDTRCR : WDT Reset Control Register	488
23.2.5	WDCSTPR : WDT Count Stop Control Register	489
23.2.6	Option Function Select Register 0 (OFS0)	489
23.3	Operation	489
23.3.1	Count Operation in Each Start Mode	489

23.3.2	Controlling Writes to the WDTCSR, WDTRCR, and WDTCSR Registers	493
23.3.3	Refresh Operation	493
23.3.4	Status Flags	494
23.3.5	Reset Output	494
23.3.6	Interrupt Sources	494
23.3.7	Reading the Down-counter Value	495
23.3.8	Association Between Option Function Select Register 0 (OFS0) and WDT Registers	495
23.4	Output to the Event Link Controller (ELC)	496
23.5	Usage Notes	496
23.5.1	ICU Event Link Setting Register n (IELSRn) Setting	496
24.	Independent Watchdog Timer (IWDG)	497
24.1	Overview	497
24.2	Register Descriptions	498
24.2.1	IWDTRR : IWDG Refresh Register	498
24.2.2	IWDTSR : IWDG Status Register	499
24.2.3	OFS0 : Option Function Select Register 0	500
24.3	Operation	502
24.3.1	Auto Start Mode	502
24.3.2	Refresh Operation	503
24.3.3	Status Flags	504
24.3.4	Reset Output	505
24.3.5	Interrupt Sources	505
24.3.6	Reading the Down-counter Value	505
24.4	Output to the Event Link Controller (ELC)	506
24.5	Usage Notes	506
24.5.1	Refresh Operations	506
24.5.2	Clock Division Ratio Setting	506
24.5.3	Constraints on the ICU Event Link Setting Register n (IELSRn) Setting	506
25.	USB 2.0 Full-Speed Module (USBFS)	507
25.1	Overview	507
25.2	Register Descriptions	508
25.2.1	SYSCFG : System Configuration Control Register	508
25.2.2	SYSSTS0 : System Configuration Status Register 0	509
25.2.3	DVSTCTR0 : Device State Control Register 0	510
25.2.4	CFIFO/CFIFOL : CFIFO Port Register	511
25.2.5	DnFIFO/DnFIFOL : DnFIFO Port Register (n = 0, 1)	512
25.2.6	CFIFOSEL : CFIFO Port Select Register	513
25.2.7	DnFIFOSEL : DnFIFO Port Select Register (n = 0, 1)	515
25.2.8	CFIFOCTR : CFIFO Port Control Register	516
25.2.9	DnFIFOCTR : DnFIFO Port Control Register (n = 0, 1)	518
25.2.10	INTENB0 : Interrupt Enable Register 0	519
25.2.11	BRDYENB : BRDY Interrupt Enable Register	520
25.2.12	NRDYENB : NRDY Interrupt Enable Register	521
25.2.13	BEMPENB : BEMP Interrupt Enable Register	522
25.2.14	SOFCFG : SOF Output Configuration Register	523
25.2.15	INTSTS0 : Interrupt Status Register 0	524
25.2.16	BRDYSTS : BRDY Interrupt Status Register	526
25.2.17	NRDYSTS : NRDY Interrupt Status Register	527
25.2.18	BEMPSTS : BEMP Interrupt Status Register	527
25.2.19	FRMNUM : Frame Number Register	528

25.2.20	USBADDR : USB Address Register.....	529
25.2.21	USBREQ : USB Request Type Register	529
25.2.22	USBVAL : USB Request Value Register	530
25.2.23	USBINDX : USB Request Index Register	530
25.2.24	USBLENG : USB Request Length Register.....	531
25.2.25	DCPCFG : DCP Configuration Register.....	531
25.2.26	DCPMAXP : DCP Maximum Packet Size Register	532
25.2.27	DCPCTR : DCP Control Register.....	532
25.2.28	PIPESEL : Pipe Window Select Register	534
25.2.29	PIPECFG : Pipe Configuration Register	535
25.2.30	PEMAXP : Pipe Maximum Packet Size Register.....	536
25.2.31	PIPEPERI : Pipe Cycle Control Register	537
25.2.32	PIPEnCTR : PIPEn Control Registers (n = 1 to 5)	538
25.2.33	PIPEnCTR : PIPEn Control Registers (n = 6 to 9)	542
25.2.34	PIPEnTRE : PIPEn Transaction Counter Enable Register (n = 1 to 5)	544
25.2.35	PIPEnTRN : PIPEn Transaction Counter Register (n = 1 to 5)	545
25.3	Operation.....	545
25.3.1	System Control.....	545
25.3.2	Interrupts	548
25.3.3	Interrupt Descriptions	551
25.3.4	Pipe Control	559
25.3.5	FIFO Buffer.....	562
25.3.6	FIFO Buffer Clearing	563
25.3.7	FIFO Port Functions.....	563
25.3.8	DTC Transfers (D0FIFO and D1FIFO Ports)	564
25.3.9	Control Transfers Using the DCP	565
25.3.10	Bulk Transfers (Pipes 1 to 5).....	566
25.3.11	Interrupt Transfers (Pipes 6 to 9)	566
25.3.12	Isochronous Transfers (Pipes 1 and 2)	566
25.3.13	SOF Interpolation Function	572
25.3.14	Pipe Schedule	572
25.4	Usage Notes.....	573
25.4.1	Settings for the Module-stop State.....	573
25.4.2	Clearing the Interrupt Status Register on Canceling Software Standby Mode	573
25.4.3	Clearing the Interrupt Status Register After Setting Up the Port Function	573
25.4.4	Settings for HOCO User Trimming Control Code.....	573
26.	USB Type-C Interface	574
26.1	Overview.....	574
26.2	Register Descriptions	576
26.2.1	TCC : TYPE-C Control Register.....	576
26.2.2	MEC : Mode Setting and State Control Register.....	576
26.2.3	CCC : CC-PHY Control Register.....	577
26.2.4	IES : Interrupt Enable Control and Status Register.....	578
26.2.5	TCS : Type-CC Connection State and Status Register.....	580
26.2.6	TSET : Type-C Related Timer Value Setting Register	581
26.3	Operation.....	581
26.3.1	HW Controlling Mode	581
26.3.2	CC Timing Control (Debouncing)	582
26.3.3	Initial Setting.....	582
26.3.4	Operation Flow	583

26.3.5	Interrupt.....	588
26.3.6	Usage Notes	589
27.	Serial Communications Interface (SCI)	590
27.1	Overview.....	590
27.2	Register Descriptions	593
27.2.1	RSR : Receive Shift Register	593
27.2.2	RDR : Receive Data Register	593
27.2.3	RDRHL : Receive Data Register	593
27.2.4	FRDRHL/FRDRH/FRDRL : Receive FIFO Data Register	594
27.2.5	TDR : Transmit Data Register	595
27.2.6	TDRHL : Transmit Data Register	595
27.2.7	FTDRHL/FTDRH/FTDRL : Transmit FIFO Data Register	596
27.2.8	TSR : Transmit Shift Register.....	596
27.2.9	SMR : Serial Mode Register for Non-Smart Card Interface Mode (SCMR.SMIF = 0).....	597
27.2.10	SMR_SMCI : Serial Mode Register for Smart Card Interface Mode (SCMR.SMIF = 1)	598
27.2.11	SCR : Serial Control Register for Non-Smart Card Interface Mode (SCMR.SMIF = 0)	600
27.2.12	SCR_SMCI : Serial Control Register for Smart Card Interface Mode (SCMR.SMIF = 1) ...	601
27.2.13	SSR : Serial Status Register for Non-Smart Card Interface and Non-FIFO Mode (SCMR.SMIF = 0, FCR.FM = 0)	603
27.2.14	SSR_FIFO : Serial Status Register for Non-Smart Card Interface and FIFO Mode (SCMR.SMIF = 0, FCR.FM = 1)	605
27.2.15	SSR_SMCI : Serial Status Register for Smart Card Interface Mode (SCMR.SMIF = 1).....	608
27.2.16	SCMR : Smart Card Mode Register	610
27.2.17	BRR : Bit Rate Register	612
27.2.18	MDDR : Modulation Duty Register	617
27.2.19	SEMR : Serial Extended Mode Register	620
27.2.20	SNFR : Noise Filter Setting Register.....	621
27.2.21	SIMR1 : IIC Mode Register 1	622
27.2.22	SIMR2 : IIC Mode Register 2	623
27.2.23	SIMR3 : IIC Mode Register 3	623
27.2.24	SISR : IIC Status Register.....	625
27.2.25	SPMR : SPI Mode Register.....	626
27.2.26	FCR : FIFO Control Register.....	627
27.2.27	FDR : FIFO Data Count Register	628
27.2.28	LSR : Line Status Register.....	629
27.2.29	CDR : Compare Match Data Register.....	630
27.2.30	DCCR : Data Compare Match Control Register.....	630
27.2.31	SPTR : Serial Port Register	632
27.3	Operation in Asynchronous Mode	632
27.3.1	Serial Data Transfer Format.....	633
27.3.2	Receive Data Sampling Timing and Reception Margin in Asynchronous Mode	634
27.3.3	Clock	635
27.3.4	Double-speed Operation and Frequency of Six Times the Bit Rate.....	635
27.3.5	CTS and RTS Functions	636
27.3.6	Address Match (Receive Data Match Detection) Function	636
27.3.7	SCI Initialization in Asynchronous Mode.....	638
27.3.8	Serial Data Transmission in Asynchronous Mode.....	640
27.3.9	Serial Data Reception in Asynchronous Mode.....	645
27.4	Multi-processor Communication Function	658
27.4.1	Multi-processor Serial Data Transmission.....	660

27.4.2	Multi-processor Serial Data Reception.....	663
27.5	Operation in Clock Synchronous Mode	668
27.5.1	Clock	669
27.5.2	CTS and RTS Functions	669
27.5.3	SCI Initialization in Clock Synchronous Mode.....	670
27.5.4	Serial Data Transmission in Clock Synchronous Mode	671
27.5.5	Serial Data Reception in Clock Synchronous Mode	675
27.5.6	Simultaneous Serial Data Transmission and Reception in Clock Synchronous Mode	680
27.6	Operation in Smart Card Interface Mode.....	682
27.6.1	Example Connection	683
27.6.2	Data Format (Except in Block Transfer Mode).....	683
27.6.3	Block Transfer Mode	685
27.6.4	Receive Data Sampling Timing and Reception Margin.....	685
27.6.5	SCI Initialization (Smart Card Interface Mode).....	686
27.6.6	Serial Data Transmission (Except in Block Transfer Mode).....	687
27.6.7	Serial Data Reception (Except in Block Transfer Mode).....	689
27.6.8	Clock Output Control.....	691
27.7	Operation in Simple IIC Mode	692
27.7.1	Generation of Start, Restart, and Stop Conditions.....	693
27.7.2	Clock Synchronization.....	694
27.7.3	SDAn Output Delay.....	695
27.7.4	SCI Initialization in Simple IIC Mode	695
27.7.5	Operation in Master Transmission in Simple IIC Mode.....	696
27.7.6	Master Reception in Simple IIC Mode.....	699
27.8	Operation in Simple SPI Mode	701
27.8.1	States of Pins in Master and Slave Modes	701
27.8.2	SS Function in Master Mode	702
27.8.3	SS Function in Slave Mode.....	702
27.8.4	Relationship Between Clock and Transmit/Receive Data	702
27.8.5	SCI Initialization in Simple SPI Mode	703
27.8.6	Transmission and Reception of Serial Data in Simple SPI Mode	703
27.9	Bit Rate Modulation Function	703
27.10	Interrupt Sources.....	704
27.10.1	Buffer Operation for SCIn_TXI and SCIn_RXI Interrupts (Non-FIFO Selected)	704
27.10.2	Buffer Operation for SCIn_TXI and SCIn_RXI Interrupts (FIFO Selected)	704
27.10.3	Interrupts in Asynchronous, Clock Synchronous, and Simple SPI Modes.....	704
27.10.4	Interrupts in Smart Card Interface Mode.....	706
27.10.5	Interrupts in Simple IIC Mode.....	707
27.11	Event Linking	707
27.12	Address Non-match Event Output (SCI0_DCUF)	708
27.13	Noise Cancellation Function.....	708
27.14	Usage Notes.....	709
27.14.1	Settings for the Module-stop Function	709
27.14.2	SCI Operation During Low Power State.....	709
27.14.3	Break Detection and Processing	714
27.14.4	Mark State and Production of Breaks	715
27.14.5	Receive Error Flags and Transmit Operation in Clock Synchronous Mode and Simple SPI Mode	715
27.14.6	Restrictions on Clock Synchronous Transmission in Clock Synchronous Mode and Simple SPI Mode	715

27.14.7	Restrictions on Using DTC	716
27.14.8	Notes on Starting Transfer	717
27.14.9	External Clock Input in Clock Synchronous Mode and Simple SPI Mode	717
27.14.10	Limitations on Simple SPI Mode	717
27.14.11	Notes on Transmit Enable Bit (SCR.TE)	718
27.14.12	Note on Stopping Reception When Using the RTS Function in Asynchronous Mode	718
28.	I3C Bus Interface (I3C)	719
28.1	Overview.....	719
28.1.1	Functional Overview.....	719
28.1.2	Block Diagram [I ² C/I3C common]	720
28.2	Registers	721
28.2.1	List of Registers	721
28.2.2	PRTS : Protocol Selection Register	724
28.2.3	BCTL : Bus Control Register	724
28.2.4	MSDVAD : Master Device Address Register.....	726
28.2.5	RSTCTL : Reset Control Register	726
28.2.6	PRSST : Present State Register	728
28.2.7	INST : Internal Status Register	730
28.2.8	INSTE : Internal Status Enable Register	731
28.2.9	INIE : Internal Interrupt Enable Register	731
28.2.10	INSTFC : Internal Status Force Register	732
28.2.11	DVCT : Device Characteristic Table Register	732
28.2.12	IBINCTL : IBI Notify Control Register	733
28.2.13	BFCTL : Bus Function Control Register	734
28.2.14	SVCTL : Slave Control Register.....	736
28.2.15	REFCKCTL : Reference Clock Control Register.....	737
28.2.16	STDBR : Standard Bit Rate Register	738
28.2.17	EXTBR : Extended Bit Rate Register	740
28.2.18	BFRECDT : Bus Free Condition Detection Time Register	741
28.2.19	BAVLCDT : Bus Available Condition Detection Time Register.....	742
28.2.20	BIDLCDT : Bus Idle Condition Detection Time Register	742
28.2.21	OUTCTL : Output Control Register	743
28.2.22	INCTL : Input Control Register	744
28.2.23	TMOCTL : Timeout Control Register.....	745
28.2.24	ACKCTL : Acknowledge Control Register.....	746
28.2.25	SCSTRCTL : SCL Stretch Control Register	747
28.2.26	SCSTLCTL : SCL Stalling Control Register	748
28.2.27	SVTDLG0 : Slave Transfer Data Length Register 0	749
28.2.28	CNDCTL : Condition Control Register	750
28.2.29	NCMDQP : Normal Command Queue Port Register	751
28.2.30	NRSPQP : Normal Response Queue Port Register	752
28.2.31	NTDTBP0/NTDTBP0_BY : Normal Transfer Data Buffer Port Register 0.....	752
28.2.32	NIBIQP : Normal IBI Queue Port Register	753
28.2.33	NRSQP : Normal Receive Status Queue Port Register	753
28.2.34	NQTHCTL : Normal Queue Threshold Control Register	754
28.2.35	NTBTHCTL0 : Normal Transfer Data Buffer Threshold Control Register 0	755
28.2.36	NRQTHCTL : Normal Receive Status Queue Threshold Control Register	756
28.2.37	BST : Bus Status Register	757
28.2.38	BSTE : Bus Status Enable Register	759
28.2.39	BIE : Bus Interrupt Enable Register	761

28.2.40	BSTFC : Bus Status Force Register	762
28.2.41	NTST : Normal Transfer Status Register	763
28.2.42	NTSTE : Normal Transfer Status Enable Register	768
28.2.43	NTIE : Normal Transfer Interrupt Enable Register	769
28.2.44	NTSTFC : Normal Transfer Status Force Register	771
28.2.45	BCST : Bus Condition Status Register	772
28.2.46	SVST : Slave Status Register	773
28.2.47	DATBASm : Device Address Table Basic Register m (m = 0 to 3)	776
28.2.48	EXDATBAS : Extended Device Address Table Basic Register	777
28.2.49	SDATBASn : Slave Device Address Table Basic Register n (n = 0 to 2)	778
28.2.50	MSDCTm : Master Device Characteristic Table Register m (m = 0 to 3)	779
28.2.51	SVDCT : Slave Device Characteristic Table Register	780
28.2.52	SDCTPIDL : Slave Device Characteristic Table Provisional ID Low Register	781
28.2.53	SDCTPIDH : Slave Device Characteristic Table Provisional ID High Register	782
28.2.54	SVDVADn : Slave Device Address Register n (n = 0 to 2)	782
28.2.55	CSECMD : CCC Slave Events Command Register	784
28.2.56	CEACTST : CCC Enter Activity State Register	785
28.2.57	CMWLG : CCC Max Write Length Register	786
28.2.58	CMRLG : CCC Max Read Length Register	786
28.2.59	CETSTMD : CCC Enter Test Mode Register	787
28.2.60	CGDVST : CCC Get Device Status Register	788
28.2.61	CMDSPW : CCC Max Data Speed W (Write) Register	789
28.2.62	CMDSPR : CCC Max Data Speed R (Read) Register	789
28.2.63	CMDSPT : CCC Max Data Speed T (Turnaround) Register	790
28.2.64	CETSM : CCC Exchange Timing Support Information M (Mode) Register	791
28.2.65	BITCNT : Bit Count Register	791
28.2.66	NQSTLV : Normal Queue Status Level Register	792
28.2.67	NDBSTLV0 : Normal Data Buffer Status Level Register 0	793
28.2.68	NRSQSTLV : Normal Receive Status Queue Status Level Register	793
28.2.69	PRSTDBG : Present State Debug Register	794
28.2.70	MSERRCNT : Master Error Counters Register	794
28.3	Operation	795
28.3.1	Data Structures	795
28.3.2	Details of Function	811
28.3.3	Operation	880
28.4	Interrupt Sources	898
28.4.1	Overview	898
28.4.2	Buffer Operation for Buffer Full/Empty Interrupts	899
28.5	Event Link Output	899
28.5.1	Interrupt Handling and Event Linking	899
28.6	Reset Descriptions	900
28.7	Usage Notes	907
28.7.1	Settings for the Operating Clock	907
29.	Controller Area Network (CAN) Module	908
29.1	Overview	908
29.2	Register Descriptions	910
29.2.1	CTLR : Control Register	910
29.2.2	BCR : Bit Configuration Register	913
29.2.3	MKR[k] : Mask Register k (k = 0 to 7)	914
29.2.4	FIDCRk : FIFO Received ID Compare Register k (k = 0, 1)	915

29.2.5	MKIVLR : Mask Invalid Register	916
29.2.6	Mailbox Registers.....	916
29.2.7	MIER : Mailbox Interrupt Enable Register	920
29.2.8	MIER_FIFO : Mailbox Interrupt Enable Register for FIFO Mailbox Mode	920
29.2.9	MCTL_TX[j] : Message Control Register for Transmit (j = 0 to 31)	921
29.2.10	MCTL_RX[j] : Message Control Register for Receive (j = 0 to 31).....	923
29.2.11	RFCR : Receive FIFO Control Register	925
29.2.12	RFPCR : Receive FIFO Pointer Control Register	927
29.2.13	TFCR : Transmit FIFO Control Register.....	928
29.2.14	TFPCR : Transmit FIFO Pointer Control Register	929
29.2.15	STR : Status Register	930
29.2.16	MSMR : Mailbox Search Mode Register	932
29.2.17	MSSR : Mailbox Search Status Register	932
29.2.18	CSSR : Channel Search Support Register	933
29.2.19	AFSR : Acceptance Filter Support Register.....	934
29.2.20	EIER : Error Interrupt Enable Register	935
29.2.21	EIFR : Error Interrupt Factor Judge Register	936
29.2.22	RECR : Receive Error Count Register	938
29.2.23	TECR : Transmit Error Count Register.....	939
29.2.24	ECSR : Error Code Store Register.....	939
29.2.25	TSR : Time Stamp Register	940
29.2.26	TCR : Test Control Register	941
29.3	Operation Modes.....	942
29.3.1	CAN Reset Mode	943
29.3.2	CAN Halt Mode	944
29.3.3	CAN Sleep Mode	945
29.3.4	CAN Operation Mode (Excluding Bus-off State)	945
29.3.5	CAN Operation Mode (Bus-off State).....	946
29.4	Data Transfer Rate Configuration.....	946
29.4.1	Clock Setting	946
29.4.2	Bit Timing Setting	946
29.4.3	Data Transfer Rate.....	947
29.5	Mailbox and Mask Register Structure.....	947
29.6	Acceptance Filtering and Masking Functions.....	949
29.7	Reception and Transmission	951
29.7.1	Reception	951
29.7.2	Transmission	953
29.8	Interrupts	954
29.9	Usage Notes.....	955
29.9.1	Settings for the Module-stop State	955
29.9.2	Settings for the Operating Clock	955
30.	Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI)	956
30.1	Overview.....	956
30.2	Register Descriptions	958
30.2.1	SPCR : SPI Control Register	958
30.2.2	SSLP : SPI Slave Select Polarity Register	959
30.2.3	SPPCR : SPI Pin Control Register	960
30.2.4	SPSR : SPI Status Register	961
30.2.5	SPDR/SPDR_HA/SPDR_BY : SPI Data Register.....	963
30.2.6	SPBR : SPI Bit Rate Register	965

30.2.7	SPDCR : SPI Data Control Register	966
30.2.8	SPCKD : SPI Clock Delay Register	967
30.2.9	SSLND : SPI Slave Select Negation Delay Register	968
30.2.10	SPND : SPI Next-Access Delay Register	968
30.2.11	SPCR2 : SPI Control Register 2	969
30.2.12	SPCMD0 : SPI Command Register 0	970
30.3	Operation	972
30.3.1	Overview of SPI Operation	972
30.3.2	Controlling the SPI Pins	973
30.3.3	SPI System Configuration Examples	974
30.3.4	Data Formats	979
30.3.5	Transfer Formats	988
30.3.6	Data Transfer Modes	990
30.3.7	Transmit Buffer Empty and Receive Buffer Full Interrupts	991
30.3.8	Error Detection	993
30.3.9	Initializing the SPI	998
30.3.10	SPI Operation	998
30.3.11	Clock Synchronous Operation	1009
30.3.12	Loopback Mode	1013
30.3.13	Self-diagnosis of Parity Bit Function	1013
30.3.14	Interrupt Sources	1014
30.4	Event Link Controller Event Output	1015
30.4.1	Receive Buffer Full Event Output	1015
30.4.2	Transmit Buffer Empty Event Output	1016
30.4.3	Mode-fault, Underrun, Overrun, or Parity Error Event Output	1016
30.4.4	SPI Idle Event Output	1016
30.4.5	Transmission-completed Event Output	1016
30.5	Usage Notes	1017
30.5.1	Settings for the Module-stop State	1017
30.5.2	Constraint on Low-power Functions	1017
30.5.3	Constraints on Starting Transfer	1017
30.5.4	Constraints on Mode-fault, Underrun, Overrun, or Parity Error Event Output	1017
30.5.5	Constraints on the SPSR.SPRF and SPSR.SPTEF Flags	1017
31.	Serial Interface UARTA (UARTA)	1018
31.1	Overview	1018
31.2	Register Descriptions	1020
31.2.1	TXBAn : Transmit Buffer Register n (n = 0, 1)	1020
31.2.2	RXBAn : Receive Buffer Register n (n = 0, 1)	1020
31.2.3	ASIMAn0 : Operation Mode Setting Register n0 (n = 0, 1)	1021
31.2.4	ASIMAn1 : Operation Mode Setting Register n1 (n = 0, 1)	1022
31.2.5	BRGCAn : Baud Rate Generator Control Register n (n = 0, 1)	1023
31.2.6	ASISAn : Status Register n (n = 0, 1)	1023
31.2.7	ASCTAn : Status Clear Trigger Register n (n = 0, 1)	1025
31.2.8	UTA0CK : UARTA Clock Select Register 0	1025
31.2.9	UTA1CK : UARTA Clock Select Register 1	1026
31.3	Operation	1027
31.3.1	Operation Stop Mode	1027
31.3.2	UART Mode	1027
31.3.3	Receive Data Noise Filter	1036
31.3.4	Baud Rate Generator	1036

31.4	Usage Notes	1041
31.4.1	Port Setting for RxDAn Pin	1041
31.4.2	Point for Caution When Selecting the UARTAn Operation Clock (f_{UTAn})	1041
31.4.3	Settings for the Module-stop State	1041
32.	Serial Sound Interface Enhanced (SSIE)	1042
32.1	Overview	1042
32.2	Features	1042
32.3	Block Diagram	1043
32.4	Register Descriptions	1046
32.4.1	SSICR : Control Register	1046
32.4.2	SSISR : Status Register	1056
32.4.3	SSIFCR : FIFO Control Register	1067
32.4.4	SSIFSR : FIFO Status Register	1073
32.4.5	SSIFTDR : Transmit FIFO Data Register	1076
32.4.6	SSIFRDR : Receive FIFO Data Register	1079
32.4.7	SSIOFR : Audio Format Register	1081
32.4.8	SSISCR : Status Control Register	1084
32.5	Communication Formats	1085
32.5.1	I ² S Format	1086
32.5.2	Monaural Format	1086
32.5.3	TDM Format	1088
32.6	Communication Modes	1089
32.6.1	Slave-mode Communication	1090
32.6.2	Master-mode Communication	1090
32.6.3	Transmission	1090
32.6.4	Reception	1090
32.6.5	Transmission and Reception	1090
32.7	Operation	1090
32.7.1	Idle State	1091
32.7.2	Communication States	1092
32.8	Communication Operation	1096
32.8.1	Start Communication	1097
32.8.2	Transmission	1098
32.8.3	Reception	1099
32.8.4	Transmission and Reception	1100
32.8.5	Halt Communication	1100
32.8.6	Error Handling	1101
32.8.7	Resume Communication	1102
32.9	Interrupts	1103
32.9.1	SSIE0_SSIF Interrupt	1104
32.9.2	SSIE0_SSITXI Interrupt	1105
32.9.3	SSIE0_SSIRXI Interrupt	1105
32.10	Software Resets	1105
32.10.1	Software Reset Procedure	1105
32.11	Notes	1106
32.11.1	Notes for Slave-mode Communication	1106
32.11.2	Notes for Master-mode Communication	1107
32.11.3	Notes for Communication Flow	1107
32.11.4	Write Access Restriction	1108
33.	Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC)	1110

33.1	Overview.....	1110
33.2	Register Descriptions	1111
33.2.1	CRCCR0 : CRC Control Register 0	1111
33.2.2	CRCCR1 : CRC Control Register 1	1112
33.2.3	CRCDIR/CRCDIR_BY : CRC Data Input Register.....	1112
33.2.4	CRCDOR/CRCDOR_HA/CRCDOR_BY : CRC Data Output Register	1113
33.2.5	CRCSAR : Snoop Address Register	1113
33.3	Operation.....	1113
33.3.1	Basic Operation.....	1113
33.3.2	CRC Snoop Function	1116
33.4	Usage Notes.....	1117
33.4.1	Settings for the Module-stop State	1117
33.4.2	Note on Transmission	1117
34.	12-Bit A/D Converter (ADC12)	1118
34.1	Overview.....	1118
34.2	Register Descriptions	1122
34.2.1	ADDRn : A/D Data Registers n (n = 0 to 10, 17 to 22)	1122
34.2.2	ADBLDR : A/D Data Duplexing Register	1123
34.2.3	ADBLDRn : A/D Data Duplexing Register n (n = A, B)	1124
34.2.4	ADTSDR : A/D Temperature Sensor Data Register	1125
34.2.5	ADOCDR : A/D Internal Reference Voltage Data Register	1127
34.2.6	ADRD : A/D Self-Diagnosis Data Register	1128
34.2.7	ADCSR : A/D Control Register.....	1129
34.2.8	ADANSA0 : A/D Channel Select Register A0	1132
34.2.9	ADANSA1 : A/D Channel Select Register A1	1133
34.2.10	ADANSB0 : A/D Channel Select Register B0	1134
34.2.11	ADANSB1 : A/D Channel Select Register B1	1134
34.2.12	ADADS0 : A/D-Converted Value Addition/Average Channel Select Register 0	1135
34.2.13	ADADS1 : A/D-Converted Value Addition/Average Channel Select Register 1	1136
34.2.14	ADADC : A/D-Converted Value Addition/Average Count Select Register.....	1137
34.2.15	ADCER : A/D Control Extended Register	1137
34.2.16	ADSTRGR : A/D Conversion Start Trigger Select Register	1139
34.2.17	ADEXICR : A/D Conversion Extended Input Control Registers	1140
34.2.18	ADSSTRn/ADSSTRL/ADSSTRT/ADSSTRO : A/D Sampling State Register (n = 0 to 10).....	1141
34.2.19	ADDISCR : A/D Disconnection Detection Control Register	1142
34.2.20	ADACSR : A/D Conversion Operation Mode Select Register	1143
34.2.21	ADGSPCR : A/D Group Scan Priority Control Register	1143
34.2.22	ADCMPCR : A/D Compare Function Control Register	1144
34.2.23	ADCMPANSR0 : A/D Compare Function Window A Channel Select Register 0	1146
34.2.24	ADCMPANSR1 : A/D Compare Function Window A Channel Select Register 1	1146
34.2.25	ADCMPANSER : A/D Compare Function Window A Extended Input Select Register.....	1147
34.2.26	ADCMLR0 : A/D Compare Function Window A Comparison Condition Setting Register 0	1147
34.2.27	ADCMLR1 : A/D Compare Function Window A Comparison Condition Setting Register 1	1149
34.2.28	ADCMLER : A/D Compare Function Window A Extended Input Comparison Condition Setting Register.....	1149
34.2.29	ADCMPDRn : A/D Compare Function Window A Lower-Side/Upper-Side Level Setting Register (n = 0, 1)	1150
34.2.30	ADWINnLB : A/D Compare Function Window B Lower-Side/Upper-Side Level Setting Register (n = L, U)	1151

34.2.31	ADCMPSR0 : A/D Compare Function Window A Channel Status Register 0	1153
34.2.32	ADCMPSR1 : A/D Compare Function Window A Channel Status Register1	1153
34.2.33	ADCMPSER : A/D Compare Function Window A Extended Input Channel Status Register	1154
34.2.34	ADCMPBNSR : A/D Compare Function Window B Channel Select Register	1155
34.2.35	ADCMPBSR : A/D Compare Function Window B Status Register	1157
34.2.36	ADWINMON : A/D Compare Function Window A/B Status Monitor Register	1157
34.2.37	ADHVREFCNT : A/D High-Potential/Low-Potential Reference Voltage Control Register	1158
34.3	Operation	1159
34.3.1	Scanning Operation	1159
34.3.2	Single Scan Mode	1160
34.3.3	Continuous Scan Mode	1165
34.3.4	Group Scan Mode	1167
34.3.5	Compare Function for Windows A and B	1176
34.3.6	Analog Input Sampling and Scan Conversion Time	1180
34.3.7	Usage Example of A/D Data Register Automatic Clearing Function	1182
34.3.8	A/D-converted Value Addition/Average Mode	1183
34.3.9	Disconnection Detection Assist Function	1183
34.3.10	Starting A/D Conversion with an Asynchronous Trigger	1185
34.3.11	Starting A/D Conversion with a Synchronous Trigger from a Peripheral Module	1186
34.4	Interrupt Sources and DTC Transfer Requests	1186
34.4.1	Interrupt Requests	1186
34.5	Event Link Function	1187
34.5.1	Event Output to the ELC	1187
34.5.2	ADC12 Operation Through an Event from the ELC	1187
34.6	Selecting Reference Voltage	1188
34.7	A/D Conversion Procedure When Selecting Internal Reference Voltage as High-potential Reference Voltage	1188
34.8	Usage Notes	1188
34.8.1	Constraints on Setting the Registers	1188
34.8.2	Constraints on Reading the Data Registers	1188
34.8.3	Constraints on Stopping A/D Conversion	1189
34.8.4	A/D Conversion Restart and Termination Timing	1191
34.8.5	Constraints on Scan End Interrupt Handling	1191
34.8.6	Settings for the Module-stop Function	1191
34.8.7	Notes on Entering the Low-power States	1191
34.8.8	Error in Absolute Accuracy When Disconnection Detection Assistance Is in Use	1191
34.8.9	ADHSC Bit Rewriting Procedure	1191
34.8.10	Constraints on Operating Modes and Status Bits	1192
34.8.11	Notes on Board Design	1192
34.8.12	Constraints on Noise Prevention	1192
34.8.13	Port Settings When Using the ADC12 Input	1193
34.8.14	Notes on Canceling Software Standby Mode	1193
35.	Temperature Sensor (TSN)	1194
35.1	Overview	1194
35.2	Register Descriptions	1194
35.2.1	TSCDR : Temperature Sensor Calibration Data Register	1194
35.3	Using the Temperature Sensor	1195
35.3.1	Preparation for Using the Temperature Sensor	1195
35.3.2	Procedures for Using the Temperature Sensor	1196

36. Data Operation Circuit (DOC)	1197
36.1 Overview	1197
36.2 DOC Register Descriptions	1197
36.2.1 DOCR : DOC Control Register	1197
36.2.2 DODIR : DOC Data Input Register	1198
36.2.3 DODSR : DOC Data Setting Register	1199
36.3 Operation	1199
36.3.1 Data Comparison Mode	1199
36.3.2 Data Addition Mode	1199
36.3.3 Data Subtraction Mode	1200
36.4 Interrupt Source	1200
36.5 Output of an Event Signal to the Event Link Controller (ELC)	1201
36.6 Usage Notes	1201
36.6.1 Settings for the Module-stop State	1201
37. SRAM	1202
37.1 Overview	1202
37.2 Register Descriptions	1202
37.2.1 PARIODAD : SRAM Parity Error Operation After Detection Register	1202
37.2.2 SRAMPRCR : SRAM Protection Register	1202
37.2.3 Trace Control (for the MTB)	1203
37.2.4 CoreSight (for MTB)	1203
37.3 Operation	1204
37.3.1 Parity Calculation Function	1204
37.3.2 SRAM Error Sources	1205
37.3.3 Access Cycle	1205
37.3.4 Low-power Function	1206
37.4 Usage Notes	1206
37.4.1 Instruction Fetch From the SRAM Area	1206
37.4.2 SRAM Store Buffer	1206
38. Flash Memory	1207
38.1 Overview	1207
38.2 Memory Structure	1208
38.3 Register Descriptions	1210
38.3.1 DFLCTL : Data Flash Control Register	1210
38.3.2 PFBER : Prefetch Buffer Enable Register	1210
38.3.3 FENTRYR : Flash P/E Mode Entry Register	1211
38.3.4 FPR : Protection Unlock Register	1212
38.3.5 FPSR : Protection Unlock Status Register	1212
38.3.6 FPMCR : Flash P/E Mode Control Register	1213
38.3.7 FISR : Flash Initial Setting Register	1214
38.3.8 FRESETR : Flash Reset Register	1215
38.3.9 FASR : Flash Area Select Register	1215
38.3.10 FCR : Flash Control Register	1216
38.3.11 FEXCR : Flash Extra Area Control Register	1217
38.3.12 FSARH : Flash Processing Start Address Register H	1219
38.3.13 FSARL : Flash Processing Start Address Register L	1220
38.3.14 FEARH : Flash Processing End Address Register H	1220
38.3.15 FEARL : Flash Processing End Address Register L	1221
38.3.16 FWBL0 : Flash Write Buffer Register L0	1221
38.3.17 FWBH0 : Flash Write Buffer Register H0	1221

38.3.18	FRBL0 : Flash Read Buffer Register L0	1222
38.3.19	FRBH0 : Flash Read Buffer Register H0	1222
38.3.20	FSTATR1 : Flash Status Register 1	1222
38.3.21	FSTATR2 : Flash Status Register 2	1223
38.3.22	FEAMH : Flash Error Address Monitor Register H	1224
38.3.23	FEAML : Flash Error Address Monitor Register L	1224
38.3.24	FSCMR : Flash Startup Setting Monitor Register	1225
38.3.25	FAWSMR : Flash Access Window Start Address Monitor Register	1225
38.3.26	FAWEMR : Flash Access Window End Address Monitor Register	1226
38.3.27	UIDR2n : Unique ID Registers 2n (n = 0 to 3)	1226
38.3.28	PNR2n : Part Numbering Register 2n (n = 0 to 3)	1226
38.3.29	MCUVER2 : MCU Version Register 2	1227
38.4	Instruction Prefetch from Flash Memory	1227
38.5	Operating Modes Associated with the Flash Memory	1227
38.5.1	ID Code Protection	1228
38.6	Overview of Functions	1229
38.6.1	Configuration Area Bit Map	1231
38.6.2	Startup Area Select	1231
38.6.3	Protection by Access Window	1232
38.7	Programming Commands	1233
38.8	Suspend Operation	1233
38.9	Protection	1233
38.9.1	Startup Program Protection	1233
38.9.2	Area Protection	1234
38.10	Serial Programming Mode	1235
38.10.1	SCI Boot Mode and IIC Boot Mode	1235
38.11	Using a Serial Programmer	1236
38.11.1	Serial Programming	1236
38.12	Self-programming	1236
38.12.1	Overview	1236
38.12.2	Background Operation	1237
38.13	Programming and Erasure	1237
38.13.1	Sequencer Modes	1237
38.13.2	Software Commands	1238
38.13.3	Software Command Usage	1239
38.14	Reading the Flash Memory	1256
38.14.1	Reading the Code Flash Memory	1256
38.14.2	Reading the Data Flash Memory	1256
38.15	Usage Notes	1256
38.15.1	Erase Suspended Area	1256
38.15.2	Constraints on Additional Writes	1257
38.15.3	Reset During Programming and Erasure	1257
38.15.4	Non-maskable Interrupt Disabled During Programming and Erasure	1257
38.15.5	Location of Interrupt Vectors During Programming and Erasure	1257
38.15.6	Programming and Erasure in Subosc-speed Operating Mode	1257
38.15.7	Abnormal Termination During Programming and Erasure	1257
38.15.8	Actions Prohibited During Programming and Erasure	1257
38.15.9	Flash-IF clock (ICLK) During Program/Erase	1258
39.	True Random Number Generator (TRNG)	1259
39.1	Overview	1259

40. Internal Voltage Regulator	1260
40.1 Overview.....	1260
40.2 Operation.....	1260
41. Electrical Characteristics.....	1261
41.1 Absolute Maximum Ratings.....	1261
41.2 DC Characteristics.....	1262
41.2.1 Tj/Ta Definition	1262
41.2.2 I/O V_{IH} , V_{IL}	1263
41.2.3 I/O I_{OH} , I_{OL}	1264
41.2.4 I/O V_{OH} , V_{OL} , and Other Characteristics.....	1268
41.2.5 Operating and Standby Current	1270
41.2.6 VCC Rise and Fall Gradient and Ripple Frequency.....	1273
41.2.7 Thermal Characteristics	1274
41.3 AC Characteristics.....	1275
41.3.1 Frequency	1275
41.3.2 Clock Timing.....	1276
41.3.3 Reset Timing	1278
41.3.4 Wakeup Time	1279
41.3.5 NMI and IRQ Noise Filter	1282
41.3.6 I/O Ports, POEG, GPT, AGTW, KINT, and ADC12 Trigger Timing.....	1283
41.3.7 CAC Timing	1285
41.3.8 SCI Timing.....	1286
41.3.9 SPI Timing.....	1293
41.3.10 I3C Timing.....	1299
41.3.11 SSIE Timing	1310
41.3.12 UARTA Timing.....	1313
41.3.13 CLKOUT Timing	1313
41.4 USB Characteristics	1314
41.4.1 USBFS Timing.....	1314
41.4.2 USBCC Characteristics	1315
41.5 ADC12 Characteristics	1315
41.6 TSN Characteristics.....	1324
41.7 OSC Stop Detect Characteristics	1324
41.8 POR and LVD Characteristics	1325
41.9 Flash Memory Characteristics	1330
41.9.1 Code Flash Memory Characteristics	1330
41.9.2 Data Flash Memory Characteristics	1332
41.10 Serial Wire Debug (SWD).....	1334
Appendix 1. Port States in Each Processing Mode.....	1336
Appendix 2. Package Dimensions	1339
Appendix 3. I/O Registers	1344
3.1 Peripheral Base Addresses	1344
3.2 Access Cycles	1345

Ultra low power 48 MHz Arm® Cortex®-M23 core, up to 128-KB code flash memory, 16-KB SRAM, USB 2.0 Full-Speed module (USBFS), USB Type-C® interface (USBCC), 12-bit A/D Converter, Security and Safety features.

Features

- **Arm Cortex-M23 Core**
 - Armv8-M architecture
 - Maximum operating frequency: 48MHz
 - Arm Memory Protection Unit (Arm MPU) with 8 regions
 - Debug and Trace: DWT, FPB, CoreSight™ MTB-M23
 - CoreSight Debug Port: SW-DP
- **Memory**
 - Up to 128-KB code flash memory
 - 4-KB data flash memory (100,000 program/erase (P/E) cycles)
 - 16-KB SRAM
 - Memory protection units (MPU)
 - 128-bit unique ID
- **Connectivity**
 - Serial Communications Interface (SCI) × 4
 - Asynchronous interfaces
 - 8-bit clock synchronous interface
 - Simple IIC
 - Simple SPI
 - Smart card interface
 - Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI) × 1
 - I3C bus interface (I3C) × 1
 - USB 2.0 Full-Speed module (USBFS) × 1
 - USB Type-C interface (USBCC) × 1
 - CAN module (CAN) × 1
 - Serial Sound Interface Enhanced (SSIE) × 1
 - Serial Interface UARTA (UARTA) × 2
- **Analog**
 - 12-bit A/D Converter (ADC12)
 - Temperature Sensor (TSN)
- **Timers**
 - General PWM Timer 32-bit (GPT32) × 1
 - General PWM Timer 16-bit (GPT16) × 6
 - Low Power Asynchronous General Purpose Timer (AGTW) × 2
 - Watchdog Timer (WDT)
- **Safety**
 - SRAM parity error check
 - Flash area protection
 - ADC self-diagnosis function
 - Clock Frequency Accuracy Measurement Circuit (CAC)
 - Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) calculator
 - Data Operation Circuit (DOC)
 - Port Output Enable for GPT (POEG)
 - Independent Watchdog Timer (IWDT)
 - GPIO readback level detection
 - Register write protection
 - Main oscillator stop detection
 - Illegal memory access detection
- **Security**
 - True Random Number Generator (TRNG)
- **System and Power Management**
 - Low power modes
 - Realtime Clock (RTC)
 - Event Link Controller (ELC)
 - Data Transfer Controller (DTC)
 - Key Interrupt Function (KINT)
 - Power-on reset
 - Low Voltage Detection (LVD) with voltage settings
- **Multiple Clock Sources**
 - Main clock oscillator (MOSC) (1 to 20 MHz)
 - Sub-clock oscillator (SOSC) (32.768 kHz)
 - High-speed on-chip oscillator (HOCO) (24/32/48/64 MHz)
 - Middle-speed on-chip oscillator (MOCO) (8 MHz)
 - Low-speed on-chip oscillator (LOCO) (32.768 kHz)
 - Clock trim function for HOCO/MOCO/LOCO
 - IWDT-dedicated on-chip oscillator (15 kHz)
- Clock out support
- **Up to 54 pins for general I/O ports**
 - 5-V tolerance, open drain, input pull-up
- **Operating Voltage**
 - VCC: 1.6 to 5.5 V
- **Operating Temperature and Packages**
 - Ta = -40°C to +105°C
 - 64-pin LQFP (10 mm × 10 mm, 0.5 mm pitch)
 - 48-pin LQFP (7 mm × 7 mm, 0.5 mm pitch)
 - 48-pin HWQFN (7 mm × 7 mm, 0.5 mm pitch)
 - 32-pin LQFP (7 mm × 7 mm, 0.8 mm pitch)
 - 32-pin HWQFN (5 mm × 5 mm, 0.5 mm pitch)
 - Ta = -40°C to +125°C
 - 64-pin LQFP (10 mm × 10 mm, 0.5 mm pitch)
 - 48-pin LQFP (7 mm × 7 mm, 0.5 mm pitch)
 - 48-pin HWQFN (7 mm × 7 mm, 0.5 mm pitch)
 - 32-pin LQFP (7 mm × 7 mm, 0.8 mm pitch)
 - 32-pin HWQFN (5 mm × 5 mm, 0.5 mm pitch)

1. Overview

The MCU integrates multiple series of software- and pin-compatible Arm[®]-based 32-bit cores that share a common set of Renesas peripherals to facilitate design scalability.

The MCU in this series incorporates an energy-efficient Arm Cortex[®]-M23 32-bit core that is particularly well suited for cost-sensitive and low-power applications, with the following features:

- Up to 128-KB code flash memory
- 16-KB SRAM
- USB 2.0 Full-Speed module (USBFS)
- USB Type-C interface (USBCC)
- 12-bit A/D Converter (ADC12)
- Security features

1.1 Function Outline

Table 1.1 Arm core

Feature	Functional description
Arm Cortex-M23 core	• Maximum operating frequency: up to 48 MHz • Arm Cortex-M23 core: – Revision: r1p0-00rel0 – Armv8-M architecture profile – Single-cycle integer multiplier – 19-cycle integer divider • Arm Memory Protection Unit (Arm MPU): – Armv8 Protected Memory System Architecture – 8 protect regions • SysTick timer: – Driven by SYSTICCLK (LOCO) or ICLK

Table 1.2 Memory

Feature	Functional description
Code flash memory	Maximum 128-KB of code flash memory. See section 38, Flash Memory .
Data flash memory	4-KB of data flash memory. See section 38, Flash Memory .
Option-setting memory	The option-setting memory determines the state of the MCU after a reset. See section 6, Option-Setting Memory .
SRAM	On-chip high-speed SRAM with parity bit. See section 37, SRAM .

Table 1.3 System (1 of 2)

Feature	Functional description
Operating modes	Two operating modes: • Single-chip mode • SCI boot mode See section 3, Operating Modes .
Resets	The MCU provides 12 resets (RES pin reset, power-on reset, independent watchdog timer reset, watchdog timer reset, voltage monitor 0/1/2 resets, SRAM parity error reset, bus master/slave MPU error resets, CPU stack pointer error reset, software reset). See section 5, Resets .
Low Voltage Detection (LVD)	The Low Voltage Detection (LVD) module monitors the voltage level input to the VCC pin. The detection level can be selected by register settings. The LVD module consists of three separate voltage level detectors (LVD0, LVD1, LVD2). LVD0, LVD1, and LVD2 measure the voltage level input to the VCC pin. LVD registers allow your application to configure detection of VCC changes at various voltage thresholds. See section 7, Low Voltage Detection (LVD) .

Table 1.3 System (2 of 2)

Feature	Functional description
Clocks	• Main clock oscillator (MOSC) • Sub-clock oscillator (SOSC) • High-speed on-chip oscillator (HOCO) • Middle-speed on-chip oscillator (MOCO) • Low-speed on-chip oscillator (LOCO) • IWDG-dedicated on-chip oscillator • Clock out support See section 8, Clock Generation Circuit .
Clock Frequency Accuracy Measurement Circuit (CAC)	The Clock Frequency Accuracy Measurement Circuit (CAC) counts pulses of the clock to be measured (measurement target clock) within the time generated by the clock selected as the measurement reference (measurement reference clock), and determines the accuracy depending on whether the number of pulses is within the allowable range. When measurement is complete or the number of pulses within the time generated by the measurement reference clock is not within the allowable range, an interrupt request is generated. See section 9, Clock Frequency Accuracy Measurement Circuit (CAC) .
Interrupt Controller Unit (ICU)	The Interrupt Controller Unit (ICU) controls which event signals are linked to the Nested Vector Interrupt Controller (NVIC), and the Data Transfer Controller (DTC) modules. The ICU also controls non-maskable interrupts. See section 12, Interrupt Controller Unit (ICU) .
Key Interrupt Function (KINT)	The key interrupt function (KINT) generates the key interrupt by detecting rising or falling edge on the key interrupt input pins. See section 18, Key Interrupt Function (KINT) .
Low power modes	Power consumption can be reduced in multiple ways, including setting clock dividers, stopping modules, selecting power control mode in normal operation, and transitioning to low power modes. See section 10, Low Power Modes .
Register write protection	The register write protection function protects important registers from being overwritten due to software errors. The registers to be protected are set with the Protect Register (PRCR). See section 11, Register Write Protection .
Memory Protection Unit (MPU)	The MCU has four Memory Protection Units (MPUs) and a CPU stack pointer monitor function are provided. See section 14, Memory Protection Unit (MPU) .
Watchdog Timer (WDT)	The Watchdog Timer (WDT) is a 14-bit down counter that can be used to reset the MCU when the counter underflows because the system has run out of control and is unable to refresh the WDT. In addition, the WDT can be used to generate a non-maskable interrupt or an underflow interrupt or watchdog timer reset. See section 23, Watchdog Timer (WDT) .
Independent Watchdog Timer (IWDG)	The Independent Watchdog Timer (IWDG) consists of a 14-bit down counter that must be serviced periodically to prevent counter underflow. The IWDG provides functionality to reset the MCU or to generate a non-maskable interrupt or an underflow interrupt. Because the timer operates with an independent, dedicated clock source, it is particularly useful in returning the MCU to a known state as a fail-safe mechanism when the system runs out of control. The IWDG can be triggered automatically by a reset, underflow, refresh error, or a refresh of the count value in the registers. See section 24, Independent Watchdog Timer (IWDG) .

Table 1.4 Event link

Feature	Functional description
Event Link Controller (ELC)	The Event Link Controller (ELC) uses the event requests generated by various peripheral modules as source signals to connect them to different modules, allowing direct link between the modules without CPU intervention. See section 16, Event Link Controller (ELC) .

Table 1.5 Direct memory access

Feature	Functional description
Data Transfer Controller (DTC)	A Data Transfer Controller (DTC) module is provided for transferring data when activated by an interrupt request. See section 15, Data Transfer Controller (DTC) .

Table 1.6 Timers

Feature	Functional description
General PWM Timer (GPT)	The General PWM Timer (GPT) is a 32-bit timer with $GPT32 \times 1$ channel and a 16-bit timer with $GPT16 \times 6$ channels. PWM waveforms can be generated by controlling the up-counter, down-counter, or the up- and down-counter. In addition, PWM waveforms can be generated for controlling brushless DC motors. The GPT can also be used as a general-purpose timer. See section 20, General PWM Timer (GPT) .
Port Output Enable for GPT (POEG)	The Port Output Enable (POEG) function can place the General PWM Timer (GPT) output pins in the output disable state. See section 19, Port Output Enable for GPT (POEG) .
Low Power Asynchronous General Purpose Timer (AGTW)	The Low Power Asynchronous General Purpose Timer (AGTW) is a 32-bit timer that can be used for pulse output, external pulse width or period measurement, and counting external events. This timer consists of a reload register and a down counter. The reload register and the down counter are allocated to the same address, and can be accessed with the AGTW register. See section 21, Low Power Asynchronous General Purpose Timer (AGTW) .
Realtime Clock (RTC)	The RTC has two operation modes, normal operation mode and low-consumption clock mode. In each of the operation mode, the RTC has two counting modes, calendar count mode and binary count mode, that are used by switching register settings. For calendar count mode, the RTC has a 100-year calendar from 2000 to 2099 and automatically adjusts dates for leap years. For binary count mode, the RTC counts seconds and retains the information as a serial value. Binary count mode can be used for calendars other than the Gregorian (Western) calendar. See section 22, Realtime Clock (RTC) .

Table 1.7 Communication interfaces (1 of 2)

Feature	Functional description
Serial Communications Interface (SCI)	The Serial Communications Interface (SCI) $\times 4$ channels have asynchronous and synchronous serial interfaces: - Asynchronous interfaces (UART and Asynchronous Communications Interface Adapter (ACIA)) 8-bit clock synchronous interface - Simple IIC (master-only) - Simple SPI - Smart card interface The smart card interface complies with the ISO/IEC 7816-3 standard for electronic signals and transmission protocol. SCIn ($n = 0$) has FIFO buffers to enable continuous and full-duplex communication, and the data transfer speed can be configured independently using an on-chip baud rate generator. See section 27, Serial Communications Interface (SCI) .
I3C bus interface (I3C)	The I3C bus interface (I3C) has one channel. The I3C module conform with and provide a subset of the NXP I ² C (Inter-Integrated Circuit) bus interface functions and a subset of the MIPI I3C. See section 28, I3C Bus Interface (I3C) .
Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI)	The Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI) has 1 channel. The SPI provides high-speed full-duplex synchronous serial communications with multiple processors and peripheral devices. See section 30, Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI) .
Control Area Network (CAN)	The Controller Area Network (CAN) module uses a message-based protocol to receive and transmit data between multiple slaves and masters in electromagnetically noisy applications. The module complies with the ISO 11898-1 (CAN 2.0A/CAN 2.0B) standard and supports up to 32 mailboxes, which can be configured for transmission or reception in normal mailbox and FIFO modes. Both standard (11-bit) and extended (29-bit) messaging formats are supported. The CAN module requires an additional external CAN transceiver. See section 29, Controller Area Network (CAN) Module .
USB 2.0 Full-Speed (USBFS) module	The USB 2.0 Full-Speed (USBFS) module can operate as a device controller. The module supports full-speed transfer as defined in Universal Serial Bus Specification 2.0. The module has an internal USB transceiver and supports all of the transfer types defined in Universal Serial Bus Specification 2.0. The USB has buffer memory for data transfer, providing a maximum of 10 pipes. Pipes 1 to 9 can be assigned any endpoint number based on the peripheral devices used for communication or based on your system. See section 25, USB 2.0 Full-Speed Module (USBFS) .

Table 1.7 Communication interfaces (2 of 2)

Feature	Functional description
USB Type-C interface (USBCC)	The module supports for USB Type-C connector of USB 2.0 (Sink/UFP only) as defined in Universal Serial Bus Type-C Cable and Connector Specification Release 2.2, and the module can detect the current supply capability (default /1.5A/3.0A) of VBUS. See section 26, USB Type-C Interface .
Serial interface UARTA (UARTA)	The serial interface UARTA (UARTA) has 2 channels. The UARTA provides full-duplex asynchronous serial communications. See section 31, Serial Interface UARTA (UARTA) .
Serial Sound Interface Enhanced (SSIE)	The Serial Sound Interface Enhanced (SSIE) peripheral provides functionality to interface with digital audio devices for transmitting I2S/Monaural/TDM audio data over a serial bus. The SSIE supports an audio clock frequency of up to 32 MHz, and can be operated as a slave or master receiver, transmitter, or transceiver to suit various applications. The SSIE includes 32-stage FIFO buffers in the receiver and transmitter, and supports interrupts and DTC-driven data reception and transmission. See section 32, Serial Sound Interface Enhanced (SSIE) .

Table 1.8 Analog

Feature	Functional description
12-bit A/D Converter (ADC12)	A 12-bit successive approximation A/D converter is provided. Up to 17 analog input channels are selectable. Temperature sensor output and internal reference voltage are selectable for conversion. See section 34, 12-Bit A/D Converter (ADC12) .
Temperature Sensor (TSN)	The on-chip Temperature Sensor (TSN) determines and monitors the die temperature for reliable operation of the device. The sensor outputs a voltage directly proportional to the die temperature, and the relationship between the die temperature and the output voltage is fairly linear. The output voltage is provided to the ADC12 for conversion and can be further used by the end application. See section 35, Temperature Sensor (TSN) .

Table 1.9 Data processing

Feature	Functional description
Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) calculator	The Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) generates CRC codes to detect errors in the data. The bit order of CRC calculation results can be switched for LSB-first or MSB-first communication. Additionally, various CRC-generation polynomials are available. The snoop function allows the access to specific addresses to be monitored. This function is useful in applications that require CRC code to be generated automatically in certain events, such as monitoring writes to the serial transmit buffer and reads from the serial receive buffer. See section 33, Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) .
Data Operation Circuit (DOC)	The Data Operation Circuit (DOC) compares, adds, and subtracts 16-bit data. When a selected condition applies, 16-bit data is compared and an interrupt can be generated. See section 36, Data Operation Circuit (DOC) .

Table 1.10 Security

Feature	Functional description
True Random Number Generator (TRNG)	See section 39, True Random Number Generator (TRNG) .

Table 1.11 I/O ports

Feature	Functional description
I/O ports	• I/O ports for the 64-pin LQFP – I/O pins: 51 – Input pins: 3 – Pull-up resistors: 51 – N-ch open-drain outputs: 38 – 5-V tolerance: 7 • I/O ports for the 48-pin LQFP/HWQFN – I/O pins: 35 – Input pins: 3 – Pull-up resistors: 35 – N-ch open-drain outputs: 24 – 5-V tolerance: 7 • I/O ports for the 32-pin LQFP/HWQFN – I/O pins: 21 – Input pins: 3 – Pull-up resistors: 21 – N-ch open-drain outputs: 13 – 5-V tolerance: 5

1.2 Block Diagram

Figure 1.1 shows a block diagram of the MCU superset. Some individual devices within the group have a subset of the features.

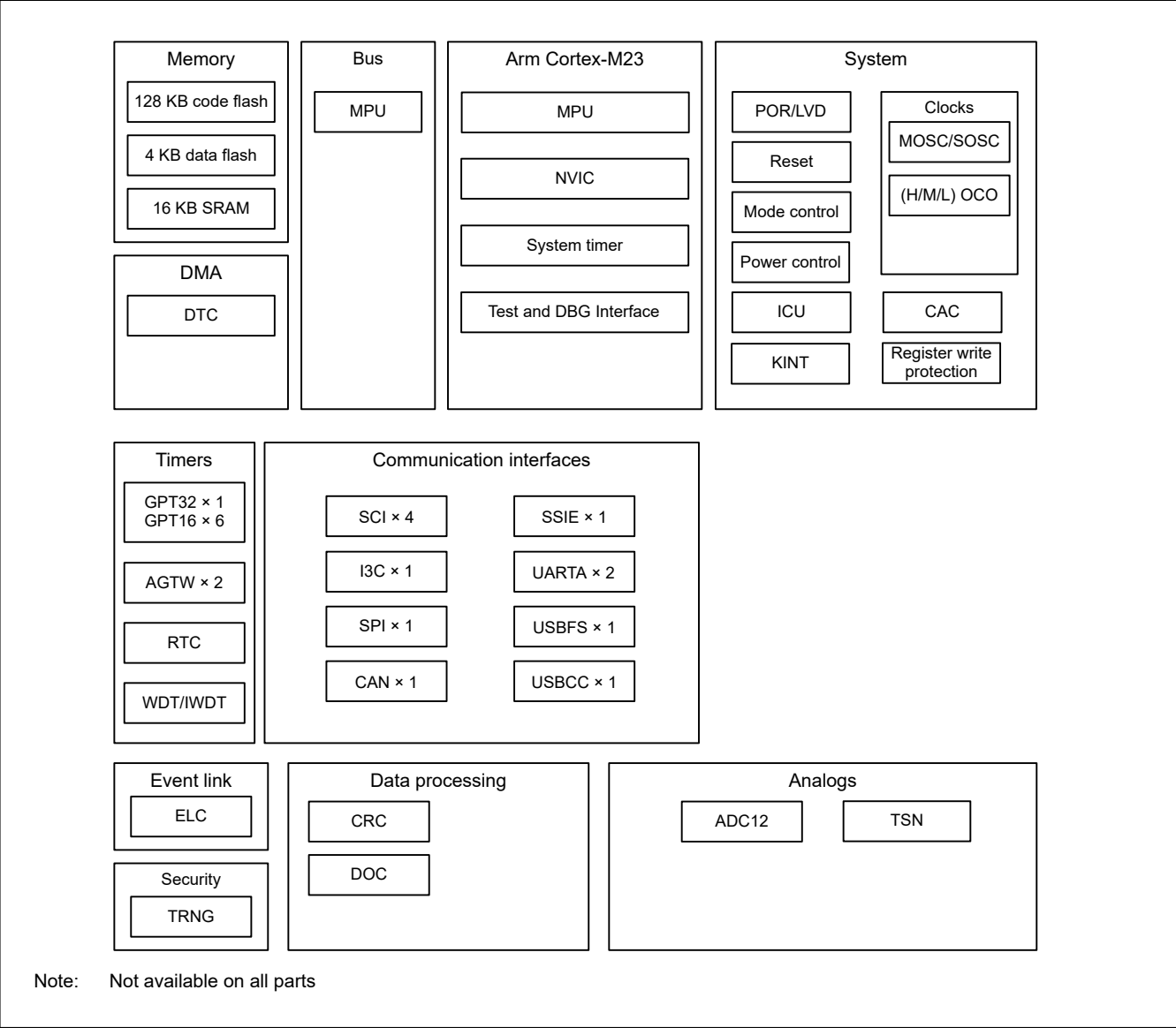


Figure 1.1 Block diagram

1.3 Part Numbering

Figure 1.2 shows the product part number information, including memory capacity and package type. Table 1.12 shows a list of products.

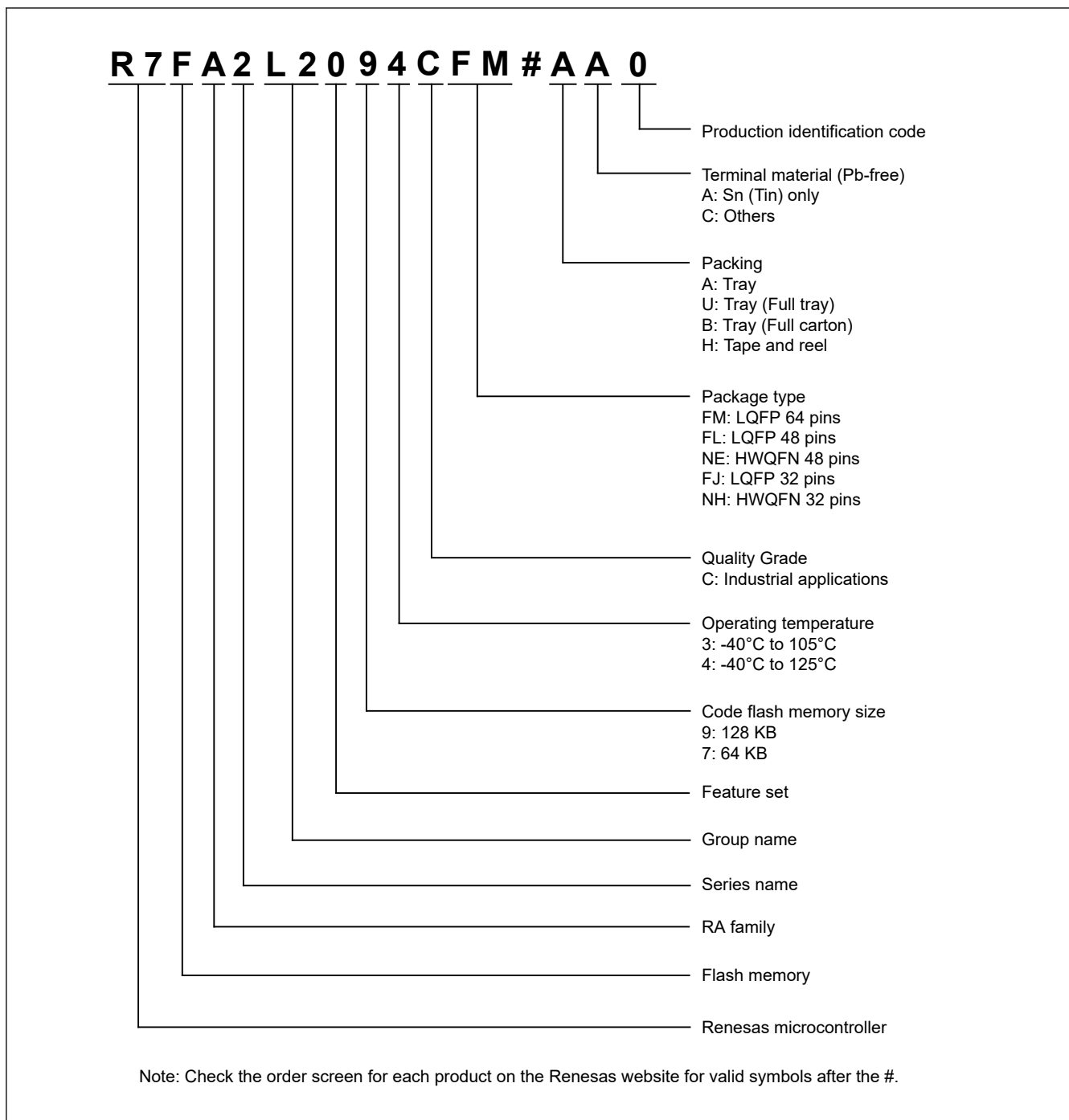


Figure 1.2 Part numbering scheme

Table 1.12 Product list

Product part number	Package code	Code flash	Data flash	SRAM	Operating temperature
R7FA2L2094CFM	PLQP0064KB-C	128	4	16	-40 to +125°C
R7FA2L2094CFL	PLQP0048KB-B				
R7FA2L2094CFJ	PLQP0032GB-A				
R7FA2L2094CNE	PWQN0048KC-A				
R7FA2L2094CNH	PWQN0032KE-A				
R7FA2L2093CFM	PLQP0064KB-C				-40 to +105°C
R7FA2L2093CFL	PLQP0048KB-B				
R7FA2L2093CFJ	PLQP0032GB-A				
R7FA2L2093CNE	PWQN0048KC-A				
R7FA2L2093CNH	PWQN0032KE-A				
R7FA2L2074CFM	PLQP0064KB-C	64	4	16	-40 to +125°C
R7FA2L2074CFL	PLQP0048KB-B				
R7FA2L2074CFJ	PLQP0032GB-A				
R7FA2L2074CNE	PWQN0048KC-A				
R7FA2L2074CNH	PWQN0032KE-A				
R7FA2L2073CFM	PLQP0064KB-C				-40 to +105°C
R7FA2L2073CFL	PLQP0048KB-B				
R7FA2L2073CFJ	PLQP0032GB-A				
R7FA2L2073CNE	PWQN0048KC-A				
R7FA2L2073CNH	PWQN0032KE-A				

1.4 Function Comparison

Table 1.13 Function comparison

Parts number		R7FA2L209xCFM	R7FA2L207xCFM	R7FA2L209xCFL R7FA2L209xCNE	R7FA2L207xCFL R7FA2L207xCNE	R7FA2L209xCFJ R7FA2L209xCNH	R7FA2L207xCFJ R7FA2L207xCNH
Pin count		64		48		32	
Package		LQFP		LQFP/HWQFN		LQFP/HWQFN	
Code flash memory		128 KB	64 KB	128 KB	64 KB	128 KB	64 KB
Data flash memory		4 KB		4 KB		4 KB	
SRAM(Parity)		16 KB		16 KB		16 KB	
System	CPU clock	48 MHz		48 MHz		48 MHz	
	Sub clock oscillator	Yes		Yes		Yes	
	ICU	Yes		Yes		Yes	
	KINT	8		5		4	
Event control	ELC	Yes		Yes		Yes	
DMA	DTC	Yes		Yes		Yes	
Timers	GPT32	1 (PWM outputs: 2)		1 (PWM outputs: 2)		1 (PWM outputs: 2)	
	GPT16	6 (PWM outputs: 12)		6 (PWM outputs: 12)		6 (PWM outputs: 7)	
	AGTW	2		2		2	
	RTC	Yes		Yes		Yes	
	WDT/IWDT	Yes		Yes		Yes	
Communication	SCI	4		4		3	
	I3C	1		1		1	
	SPI	1		1		1	
	CAN	1		1		1	
	SSIE	1		1		1	
	UARTA	2		2		2	
	USBFS	1		1		1	
	USBCC	1		1		1	
Analog	ADC12	17		13		10	
	TSN	Yes		Yes		Yes	
Data processing	CRC	Yes		Yes		Yes	
	DOC	Yes		Yes		Yes	
Security		TRNG		TRNG		TRNG	
I/O ports	I/O pins	51		35		21	
	Input pins	3		3		3	
	Pull-up resistors	51		35		21	
	N-ch open-drain outputs	38		24		13	
	5-V tolerance	7		7		5	

1.5 Pin Functions

Table 1.14 Pin functions (1 of 3)

Function	Signal	I/O	Description
Power supply	VCC	Input	Power supply pin. Connect it to the system power supply. Connect this pin to VSS by a 0.1-μF capacitor. Place the capacitor close to the pin.
	VCL	I/O	Connect this pin to the VSS pin by the smoothing capacitor used to stabilize the internal power supply. Place the capacitor close to the pin.
	VSS	Input	Ground pin. Connect it to the system power supply (0 V).
Clock	XTAL	Output	Pins for a crystal resonator. An external clock signal can be input through the EXTAL pin.
	EXTAL	Input	
	XCIN	Input	Input/output pins for the sub-clock oscillator. Connect a crystal resonator between XCOUT and XCIN.
	XCOUT	Output	
	CLKOUT	Output	Clock output pin
Operating mode control	MD	Input	Pin for setting the operating mode. The signal level on this pin must not be changed during operation mode transition on release from the reset state.
System control	RES	Input	Reset signal input pin. The MCU enters the reset state when this signal goes low.
CAC	CACREF	Input	Measurement reference clock input pin
On-chip debug	SWDIO	I/O	Serial wire debug data input/output pin
	SWCLK	Input	Serial wire clock pin
Interrupt	NMI	Input	Non-maskable interrupt request pin
	IRQ0 to IRQ7	Input	Maskable interrupt request pins
GPT	GTETRG, GTETRGB	Input	External trigger input pins
	GTIOcNA (n = 0, 4 to 9), GTIOcNB (n = 0, 4 to 9)	I/O	Input capture, output compare, or PWM output pins
	GTIU	Input	Hall sensor input pin U
	GTIV	Input	Hall sensor input pin V
	GTIW	Input	Hall sensor input pin W
	GTOUUP	Output	3-phase PWM output for BLDC motor control (positive U phase)
	GTOULO	Output	3-phase PWM output for BLDC motor control (negative U phase)
	GTOVUP	Output	3-phase PWM output for BLDC motor control (positive V phase)
	GTOVLO	Output	3-phase PWM output for BLDC motor control (negative V phase)
	GTOWUP	Output	3-phase PWM output for BLDC motor control (positive W phase)
	GTOWLO	Output	3-phase PWM output for BLDC motor control (negative W phase)
AGTW	AGTEE0, AGTEE1	Input	External event input enable signals
	AGTIO0, AGTIO1	I/O	External event input and pulse output pins
	AGTO0, AGTO1	Output	Pulse output pins
	AGTOA0, AGTOA1	Output	Output compare match A output pins
	AGTOB0, AGTOB1	Output	Output compare match B output pins
RTC	RTCOUT	Output	Output pin for 1-Hz or 64-Hz clock

Table 1.14 Pin functions (2 of 3)

Function	Signal	I/O	Description
SCI	SCKn (n = 0 to 2, 9)	I/O	Input/output pins for the clock (clock synchronous mode)
	RXDn (n = 0 to 2, 9)	Input	Input pins for received data (asynchronous mode/clock synchronous mode)
	TXDn (n = 0 to 2, 9)	Output	Output pins for transmitted data (asynchronous mode/clock synchronous mode)
	CTSn_RTSn (n = 0 to 2, 9)	I/O	Input/output pins for controlling the start of transmission and reception (asynchronous mode/clock synchronous mode), active-low
	SCLn (n = 0 to 2, 9)	I/O	Input/output pins for the IIC clock (simple IIC mode)
	SDAn (n = 0 to 2, 9)	I/O	Input/output pins for the IIC data (simple IIC mode)
	SCKn (n = 0 to 2, 9)	I/O	Input/output pins for the clock (simple SPI mode)
	MISO _n (n = 0 to 2, 9)	I/O	Input/output pins for slave transmission of data (simple SPI mode)
	MOSI _n (n = 0 to 2, 9)	I/O	Input/output pins for master transmission of data (simple SPI mode)
	SSn (n = 0 to 2, 9)	Input	Chip-select input pins (simple SPI mode), active-low
I3C	SCLn (n = 0)	I/O	Input/output pins for the clock
	SDAn (n = 0)	I/O	Input/output pins for data
SPI	RSPCKA	I/O	Clock input/output pin
	SSLA0	I/O	Input or output pin for slave selection
	SSLA1 to SSLA3	Output	Output pins for slave selection
	MOSIA	I/O	Input or output pins for data output from the master
	MISOA	I/O	Input or output pins for data output from the slave
CAN	CRX0	Input	Receive data
	CTX0	Output	Transmit data
USBFS	USB_DP	I/O	D+ pin of the USB on-chip transceiver. Connect this pin to the D+ pin of the USB bus.
	USB_DM	I/O	D- pin of the USB on-chip transceiver. Connect this pin to the D- pin of the USB bus.
	USB_VBUS	Input	USB cable connection monitor pin. Connect this pin to VBUS of the USB bus. The VBUS pin status (connected or disconnected) can be detected when the USB module is operating as a function controller.
USBCC	USB_VBUS	Input	USB cable connection monitor pin. Connect this pin to VBUS of the USB bus. The VBUS pin status (connected or disconnected) can be detected.
	USB_CC1	Input	Configuration channel 1. The pin can be used to detect connections and configure the interface across the USB Type-C cables and connectors.
	USB_CC2	Input	Configuration channel 2. The pin can be used to detect connections and configure the interface across the USB Type-C cables and connectors.
UARTA	RXDAn (n = 0, 1)	Input	Serial data input pins for serial interfaces
	TXDAn (n = 0, 1)	Output	Serial data output pins for serial interfaces
	CLKAn (n = 0, 1)	Output	Clock output pins for serial interfaces
SSIE	SSIBCK0	I/O	SSIE serial bit clock pins
	SSILRCK0/SSIFS0	I/O	LR clock/frame synchronization pins
	SSITXD0	Output	Serial data output pin
	SSIRXD0	Input	Serial data input pin
	AUDIO_CLK	Input	External clock pin for audio (input oversampling clock)

Table 1.14 Pin functions (3 of 3)

Function	Signal	I/O	Description
Analog power supply	AVCC0	Input	Analog power supply pin for the ADC12
	AVSS0	Input	Analog ground pin for the ADC12
	VREFH0	Input	Analog reference voltage supply pin for the ADC12. Connect this pin to AVCC0 when not using the ADC12.
	VREFL0	Input	Analog reference ground pin for the ADC12. Connect this pin to AVSS0 when not using the ADC12.
ADC12	AN000 to AN010, AN017 to AN022	Input	Input pins for the analog signals to be processed by the A/D converter
	ADTRG0	Input	Input pin for the external trigger signals that start the A/D conversion, active-low
KINT	KR00 to KR07	Input	Key interrupt input pins
I/O ports	P000 to P004, P010 to P015	I/O	General-purpose input/output pins
	P100 to P113	I/O	General-purpose input/output pins
	P200	Input	General-purpose input pin
	P201, P204 to P207, P212, P213	I/O	General-purpose input/output pins
	P214, P215	Input	General-purpose input pins
	P300 to P304	I/O	General-purpose input/output pins
	P400 to P403, P407 to P411	I/O	General-purpose input/output pins
	P500 to P502	I/O	General-purpose input/output pins
	P912, P913	I/O	General-purpose input/output pins

1.6 Pin Assignments

Figure 1.3 to Figure 1.5 show the pin assignments from the top view.

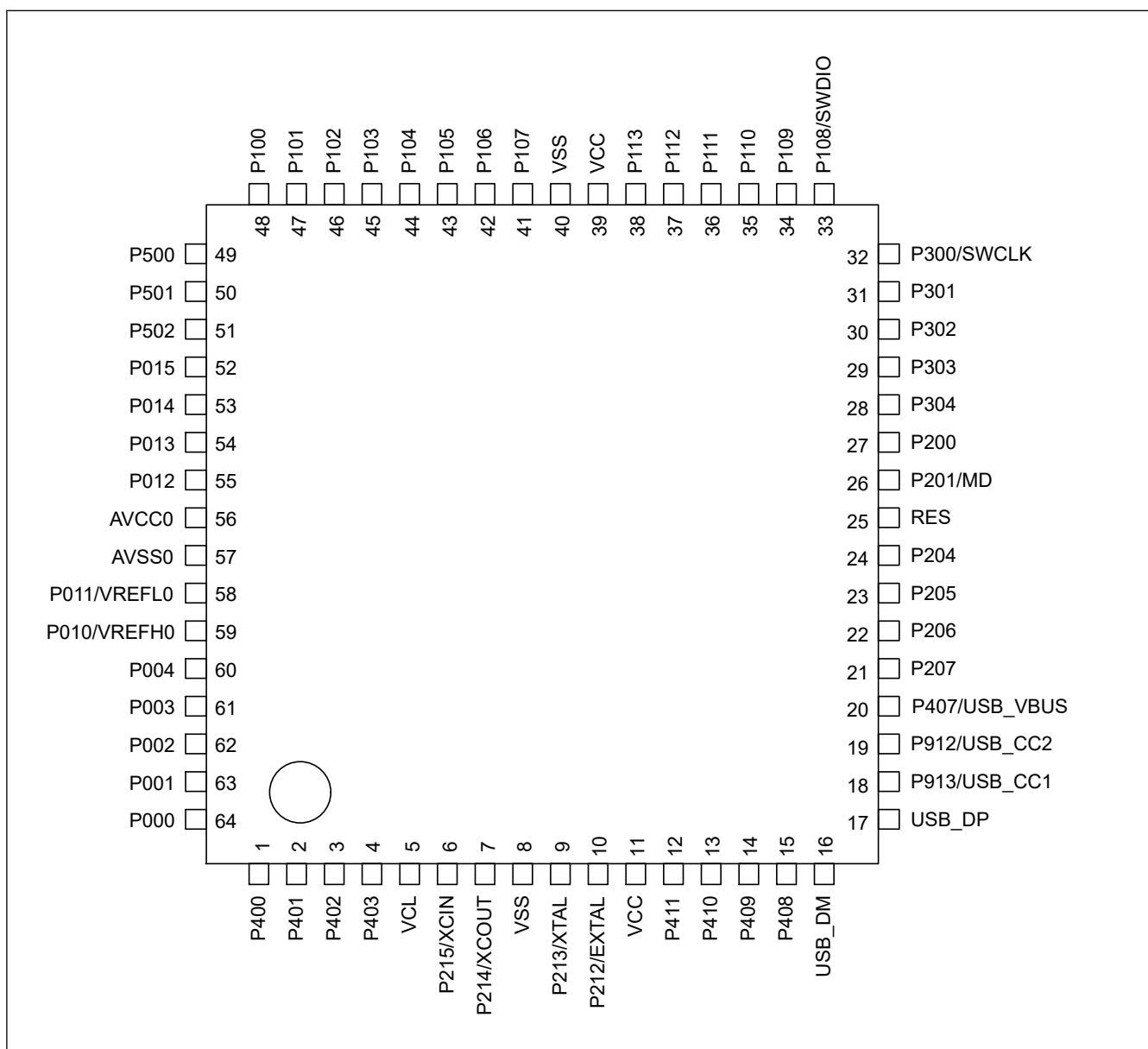


Figure 1.3 Pin assignment for LQFP 64-pin (top view)

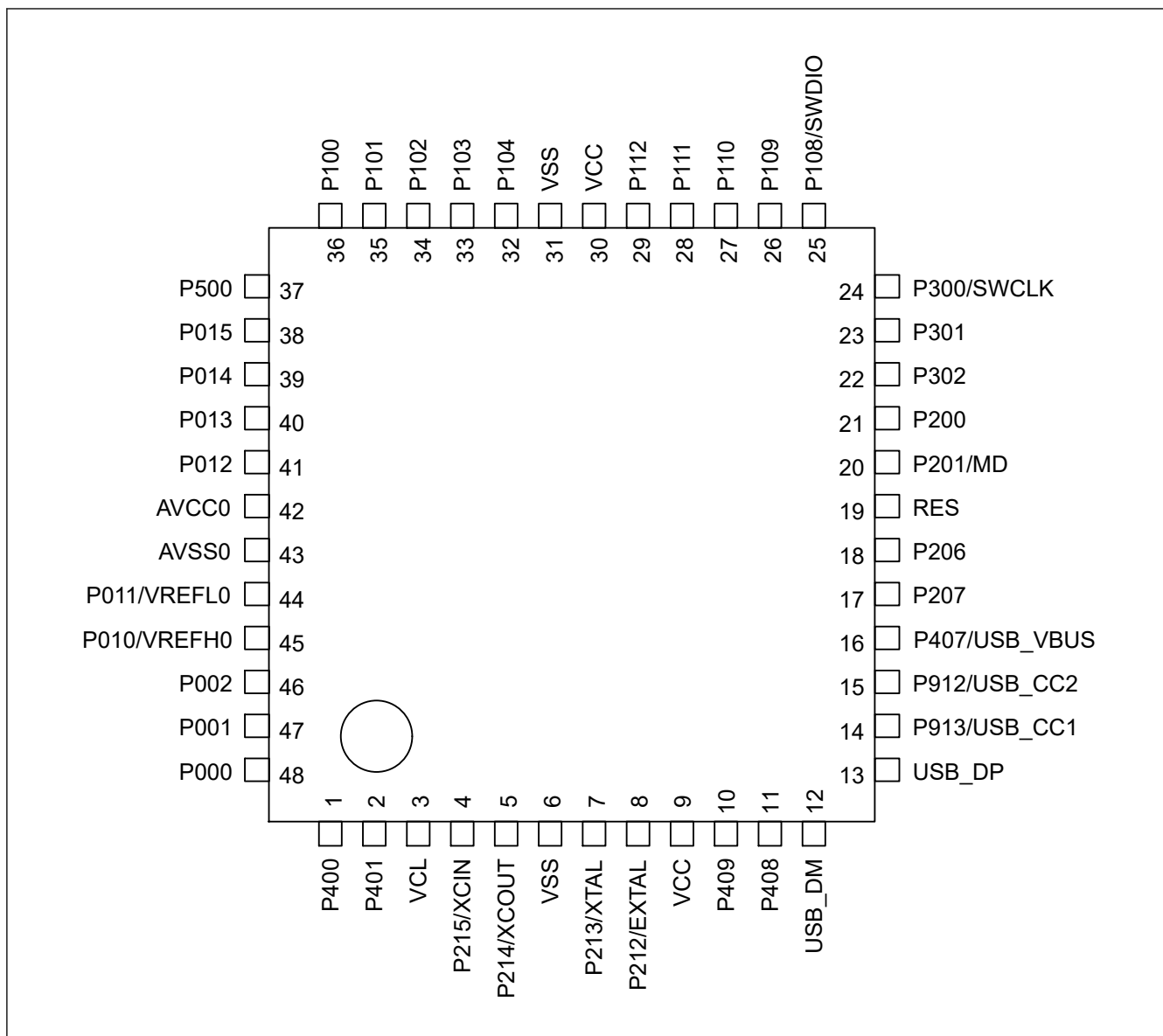


Figure 1.4 Pin assignment for LQFP/QFN 48-pin (top view)

Note: For the product in a QFN package, solder the exposed die pad onto a plated area of the PCB that has no electrical connections.

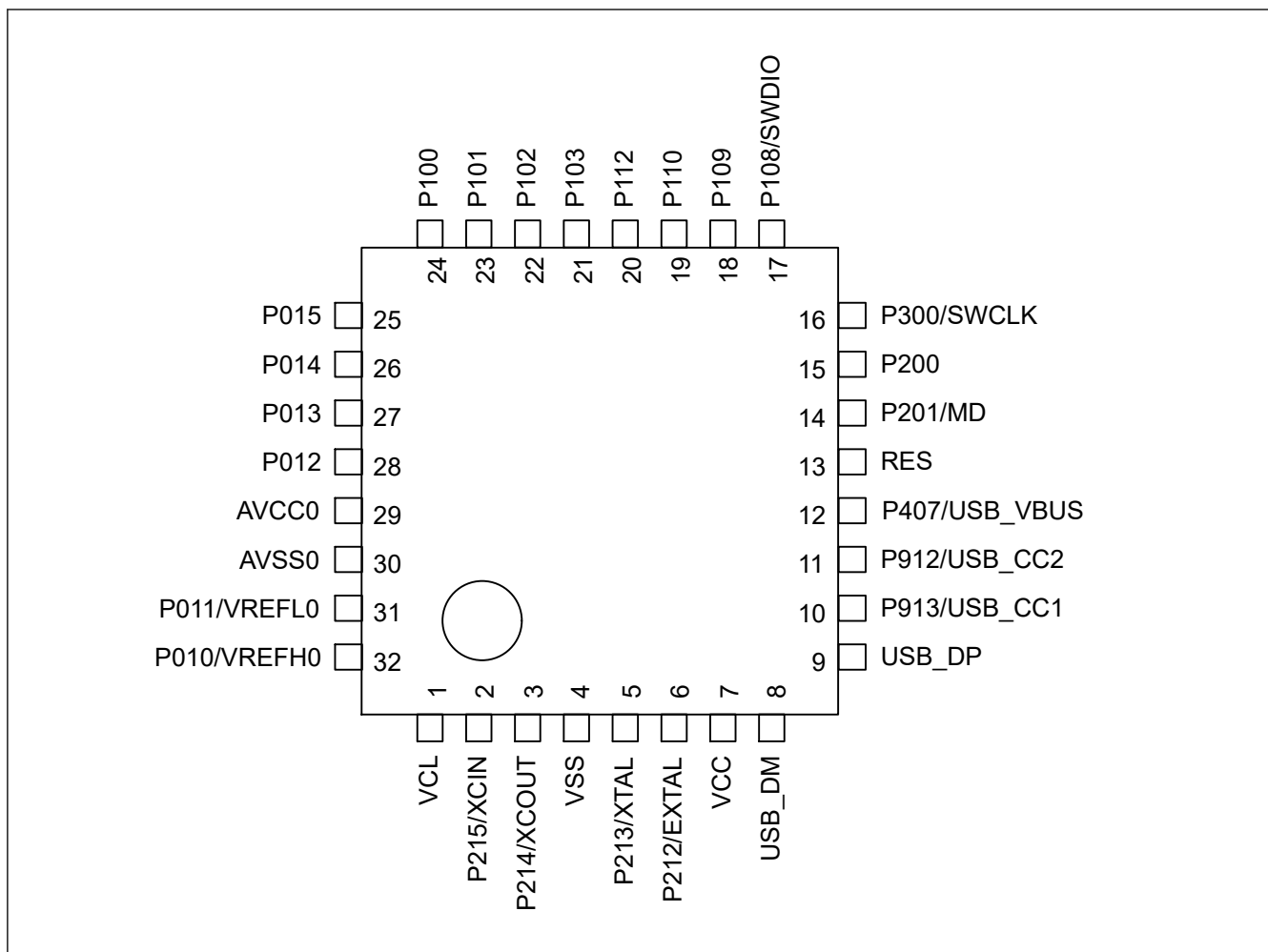


Figure 1.5 Pin assignment for LQFP/QFN 32-pin (top view)

Note: For the product in a QFN package, solder the exposed die pad onto a plated area of the PCB that has no electrical connections.

1.7 Pin Lists

Table 1.15 Pin list (1 of 3)

Pin number			Power System, Clock, Debug, CAC	I/O ports	Timers				Communication interfaces							Analogs	HMI
LQFP 64-pin	LQFP/QFN 48-pin	LQFP/QFN 32-pin			AGTW	GPT_OPS, POEG	GPT	RTC	CAN	SCI	I3C	SPI	SSIE	UARTA	USBFS, USBCC	ADC	Interrupt
1	1	—	CACREF_C	P400	AGTIO1_C	—	GTIOC9A_A	—	—	SCK0_B/ SCK1_B	SCL0_A	—	—	—	—	—	IRQ_0_A
2	2	—	—	P401	—	GTETRGA_B	GTIOC9B_A	—	CRX0_B	CTS0_RT S0_B/ SS0_B/ TXD1_B/ MOSI1_B/ SDA1_B	SDA0_A	—	—	CLKA0_B	—	—	IRQ_5
3	—	—	—	P402	AGTIO0_E / AGTIO1_D	—	—	—	CTX0_B	RxD1_B/ MISO1_B/ SCL1_B	—	—	—	RXDA0_B	—	—	IRQ_4
4	—	—	—	P403	AGTIO0_F / AGTIO1_E	—	—	—	—	CTS1_RT S1_B/ SS1_B	—	—	—	TXDA0_B	—	—	—
5	3	1	VCL	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
6	4	2	XCIN	P215	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
7	5	3	XCOUT	P214	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
8	6	4	VSS	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
9	7	5	XTAL	P213	—	GTETRGA_D	GTIOC0A_D	—	—	TXD1_A/ MOSI1_A/ SDA1_A	—	—	—	—	—	—	IRQ2_B
10	8	6	EXTAL	P212	AGTEE1	GTETRGA_D	GTIOC0B_D	—	—	RxD1_A/ MISO1_A/ SCL1_A	—	—	—	—	—	—	IRQ3_B
11	9	7	VCC	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
12	—	—	—	P411	AGTOA1	GTOVUP_B	—	—	—	TXD0_B/ MOSI0_B/ SDA0_B	—	MOSIA_B	SSIBCK0_A	—	—	—	IRQ4_B
13	—	—	—	P410	AGTOB1	GTOVLO_B	—	—	—	RxD0_B/ MISO0_B/ SCL0_B	—	MISOA_B	SSILRCK0 / SSIFS0_A	CLKA1_B	—	—	IRQ5_B
14	10	—	—	P409	—	GTOVUP_B	—	—	—	—	—	—	SSITXD0_A	RXDA1_B	—	—	IRQ6_B
15	11	—	—	P408	—	GTOVLO_B	—	—	—	CTS1_RT S1_D/ SS1_D	—	—	SSIRXD0_A	TXDA1_B	—	—	IRQ7_B
16	12	8	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	USB_DM	—	—
17	13	9	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	USB_DP	—	—
18	14	10	—	P913	—	—	—	—	CRX0_D	—	SCL0_C	—	—	—	USB_CC1	—	IRQ5_D
19	15	11	—	P912	—	—	—	—	CTX0_D	—	SDA0_C	—	—	—	USB_CC2	—	—
20	16	12	—	P407	AGTIO0_C	—	—	RTXCOUT_A	—	CTS0_RT S0_D	—	—	SSIDATA0_B	—	USB_VBUS	ADTRG0_B	—
21	17	—	—	P207	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	SSIBCK0_B	—	—	—	—
22	18	—	—	P206	—	GTIU_A	—	—	—	RxD0_D/ MISO0_D/ SCL0_D	—	—	SSILRCK0 / SSIFS0_B	—	—	—	IRQ0
23	—	—	CLKOUT_A	P205	AGTO1	GTIV_A	—	—	—	TXD0_D/ MOSI0_D/ SDA0_D/ CTS9_RT S9_A/ SS9_A	—	—	SSITXD0_B	—	—	—	IRQ1
24	—	—	CACREF_A	P204	AGTIO1_A	GTIW_A	—	—	—	SCK0_D/ SCK9_A	—	—	SSIRXD0_B	—	—	—	—
25	19	13	RES	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
26	20	14	MD	P201	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
27	21	15	—	P200	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	NMI
28	—	—	—	P304	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
29	—	—	—	P303	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
30	22	—	—	P302	—	GTOUUP_A	GTIOC7A_A	—	—	TXD2_A/ MOSI2_A/ SDA2_A	—	—	—	—	—	—	IRQ5_A

Table 1.15 Pin list (2 of 3)

Pin number			Power, System, Clock, Debug, CAC	I/O ports	Timers				Communication interfaces								Analogs	HMI
LQFP 64-pin	LQFP/QFN 48-pin	LQFP/QFN 32-pin			AGTW	GPT_OPS, POEG	GPT	RTC	CAN	SCI	I3C	SPI	SSIE	UARTA	USBFS, USBCC	ADC	Interrupt	
31	23	—	—	P301	AGTIO0_D	GTOULO_A	GTIOC7B_A	—	—	RxD2_A/ MISO2_A/ SCL2_A/ CTS9_RT S9_D/ SS9_D	—	—	—	—	—	—	IRQ6_A	
32	24	16	SWCLK	P300	AGTIO0_B	GTOUUP_C	GTIOC0A_A	—	—	—	—	—	—	CLKA0_A	—	—	—	
33	25	17	SWDIO	P108	AGTOA1_B	GTOULO_C	GTIOC0B_A	—	—	CTS9_RT S9_B/ SS9_B	—	—	SSIDATA0_A	RXDA0_A	—	—	—	
34	26	18	CLKOUT_B	P109	AGTIO1_B	GTOVUP_A	GTIOC4A_A	—	CRX0_A	SCK1_E/ TXD9_B/ MOSI9_B/ SDA9_B	SCL0_B	—	AUDIO_C LK_A	TXDA0_A	—	—	IRQ5_E	
35	27	19	—	P110	AGTOB0_B	GTOVLO_A	GTIOC4B_A	RTCOUT_B	CTX0_A	CTS2_RT S2_B/ SS2_B/ RxD9_B/ MISO9_B/ SCL9_B	SDA0_B	—	—	—	—	—	IRQ3_A	
36	28	—	—	P111	AGTOA0	—	GTIOC6A_A	—	—	SCK2_B/ SCK9_B	—	—	—	—	—	—	IRQ4_A	
37	29	20	—	P112	AGTOB0	—	GTIOC6B_A	—	—	SCK1_D/ TXD2_B/ MOSI2_B/ SDA2_B	—	—	AUDIO_C LK_B	—	—	ADTRG0_C	—	
38	—	—	—	P113	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
39	30	—	VCC	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
40	31	—	VSS	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
41	—	—	—	P107	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	KR07	
42	—	—	—	P106	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	SSLA3_A	—	—	—	—	KR06	
43	—	—	—	P105	—	GTETRGA_C	GTIOC4A_B	—	—	—	—	SSLA2_A	—	—	—	—	KR05/ IRQ0_B	
44	32	—	—	P104	—	GTETRGB_B	GTIOC4B_B	—	—	RxD0_C/ MISO0_C/ SCL0_C	—	SSLA1_A	—	—	—	—	KR04/ IRQ1_B	
45	33	21	—	P103	—	GTOWUP_A	GTIOC5A_A	—	CRX0_C	CTS0_RT S0_A/ SS0_A	—	SSLA0_A	SSIBCK0_C	—	—	AN019	KR03/ IRQ5_F	
46	34	22	—	P102	AGT00	GTOWLO_A	GTIOC5B_A	—	CTX0_C	SCK0_A/ TXD2_D/ MOSI2_D/ SDA2_D	—	RSPCKA_A	SSILRCK0 / SSIFS0_C	—	—	ADTRG0_A /AN020	KR02	
47	35	23	—	P101	AGTEE0	GTETRGB_A	GTIOC8A_A	—	—	TXD0_A/ MOSI0_A/ SDA0_A/ CTS1_RT S1_A/ SS1_A	—	MOSIA_A	SSITXD0_C	—	—	AN021	KR01/ IRQ1_A	
48	36	24	—	P100	AGTIO0_A	GTETRGA_A	GTIOC8B_A	—	—	RxD0_A/ MISO0_A/ SCL0_A/ SCK1_A	—	MISOA_A	SSIRXD0_C	—	—	AN022	KR00/ IRQ2_A	
49	37	—	—	P500	—	GTIU_B	GTIOC5A_B	—	—	—	—	—	AUDIO_C LK_C	CLKA1_A	—	—	—	
50	—	—	—	P501	—	GTIV_B	GTIOC5B_B	—	—	TXD1_C/ MOSI1_C/ SDA1_C	—	—	—	—	—	AN017	—	
51	—	—	—	P502	—	GTIW_B	—	—	—	RxD1_C/ MISO1_C/ SCL1_C	—	—	—	—	—	AN018	—	
52	38	25	—	P015	—	GTETRGB_E	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	RXDA1_A	—	AN010	IRQ7_A	
53	39	26	—	P014	—	GTETRGA_E	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	TXDA1_A	—	AN009	IRQ6_C	
54	40	27	—	P013	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	AN008	IRQ4_C	
55	41	28	—	P012	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	AN007	IRQ1_C	
56	42	29	AVCC0	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
57	43	30	AVSS0	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
58	44	31	VREFL0	P011	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	AN006	IRQ0_C	

Table 1.15 Pin list (3 of 3)

Pin number					Timers				Communication interfaces							Analogs	HMI
LQFP 64-pin	LQFP/QFN 48-pin	LQFP/QFN 32-pin			AGTW	GPT_OPS, POEG	GPT	RTC	CAN	SCI	I3C	SPI	SSIE	UARTA	USBFS, USBCC	ADC	Interrupt
59	45	32	VREFH0	P010	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	AN005	IRQ5_C
60	—	—	—	P004	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	AN004	IRQ3
61	—	—	—	P003	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	AN003	—
62	46	—	—	P002	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	AN002	IRQ2
63	47	—	—	P001	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	AN001	IRQ7
64	48	—	—	P000	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	AN000	IRQ6

Note: Several pin names have the added suffix of _A, _B, _C, _D, _E and _F. The suffix can be ignored when assigning functionality.

2. CPU

The MCU is based on the Arm® Cortex®-M23 core.

2.1 Overview

2.1.1 CPU

- Arm Cortex-M23
 - Revision: r1p0-00rel0
 - Armv8-M architecture profile
 - Main Extension is not implemented
 - Single-cycle integer multiplier
 - 19-cycle integer divider
- Memory Protection Unit (MPU)
 - Armv8 Protected Memory System Architecture
 - 8 protected regions
- SysTick timer
 - Driven by SYSTICCLK (LOCO) or ICLK

See reference 1. and reference 2. in [section 2.8. References](#) for details.

2.1.2 Debug

- Arm® CoreSight™ MTB-M23
 - Revision: r0p0-00rel0
 - Buffer size: 1 KB of 16-KB MTB SRAM
- Data Watchpoint Unit (DWT)
 - 2 comparators for watchpoint
- Flash Patch and Breakpoint Unit (FPB)
 - 4 instruction comparators
- CoreSight Debug Access Port (DAP)
 - Serial Wire-Debug Port (SW-DP)
- Debug Register Module (DBGREG)
 - Reset control
 - Halt control

See reference 1. and reference 2. in [section 2.8. References](#) for details.

2.1.3 Operating Frequency

The operating frequencies for the MCU are as follows:

- CPU: maximum 48 MHz
- Serial Wire Debug (SWD) interface: maximum 12.5 MHz

2.1.4 Block Diagram

[Figure 2.1](#) shows a block diagram of the Cortex-M23 core.

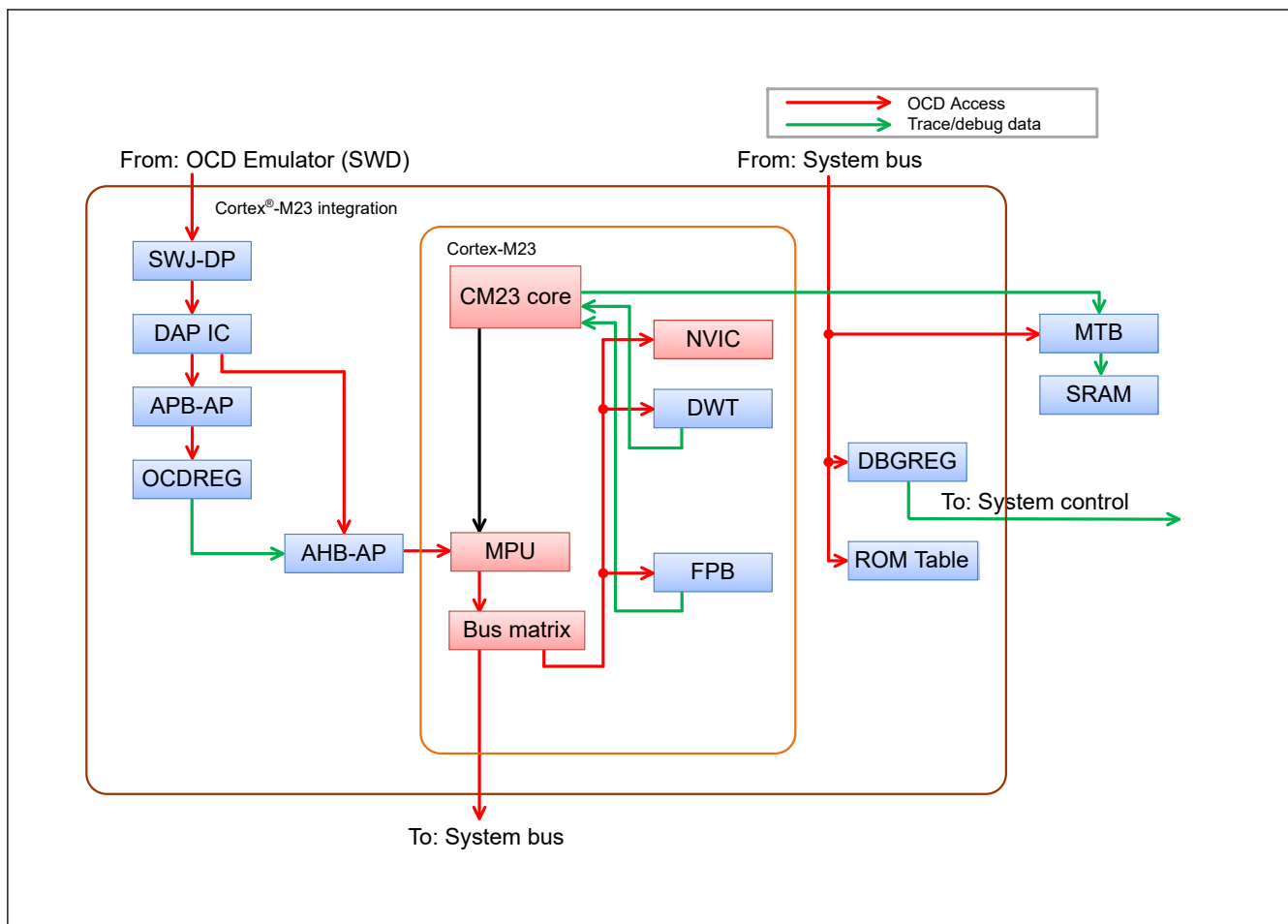


Figure 2.1 Cortex-M23 block diagram

2.2 Implementation Options

Table 2.1 shows the implementation options of the MCU.

Table 2.1 Implementation options (1 of 2)

Option	Implementation
Non-secure MPU	Included, 8 protect regions
Secure MPU	Not included
Security extension	Not included
Single-cycle multiplier	Included
Divider	Included, 19 cycles
Number of interrupts	32
Number of Wakeup Interrupt Controllers (WIC)	Not included
Cross Trigger Interface (CTI)	Not included
Micro Trace Buffer (MTB)	Included
Embedded Trace Macrocell (ETM)	Not included
Multi-drop support for serial wire	Not supported
Sleep mode power saving	Sleep mode and other low power modes are supported. For more details, see section 10, Low Power Modes . Note: SCB.SCR.SLEEPDEEP is ignored.
Endianness	Little-endian

Table 2.1 Implementation options (2 of 2)

Option	Implementation
SysTick	Included
SYST_CALIB register (0x4000_0147)	Bit [31] = 0 Reference clock provided Bit [30] = 1 TENMS value is inexact Bits [29:24] = 0x00 Reserved Bits [23:0] = 0x000147 TENMS: (32768 × 10 ms) - 1/32.768 kHz = 326.66 decimal = 327 with skew = 0x000147
Event input/output	Not implemented
System reset request output	The SYSRESETREQ bit in the Application Interrupt and Reset Control Register causes a CPU reset
Auxiliary fault inputs (AUXFAULT)	Not implemented

2.3 SWD Interface

Table 2.2 shows the SWD pins.

Table 2.2 SWD pins

Name	I/O	Function	When not in use
SWCLK	Input	Serial wire clock pin	Pull-up
SWDIO	I/O	Serial wire data I/O pin	Pull-up

2.4 Debug Function

2.4.1 Debug Mode Definition

Table 2.3 shows the CPU debug modes and usage conditions.

Table 2.3 CPU debug mode and conditions

Conditions		Mode	
OCD connect* ¹	SWD authentication	Debug mode	Debug authentication* ²
Not connected	—	User mode	Disabled
Connected	Failed	User mode	Disabled
Connected	Passed	OCD mode	Enabled

Note 1. OCD connect is determined by the CDBGPWRUPREQ bit output in the SWJ-DP register. The bit can only be written by the OCD. However, the level of the bit can be confirmed by reading the DBGSTR.CDBGPWRUPREQ bit.

Note 2. Debug authentication is defined by the Armv8-M Architecture. Enabled means that both invasive and non-invasive CPU debugging are permitted. Disabled means that both are not permitted.

2.4.2 Debug Mode Effects

This section describes the effects of debug mode, which occur both internally and externally to the CPU.

2.4.2.1 Low Power Mode

All CoreSight debug components can store the register settings even when the CPU enters Software Standby, or Snooze mode. However, AHB-AP cannot respond to On-Chip Debug (OCD) access in these low power modes. The OCD must wait for cancellation of the low power mode to access the CoreSight debug components. To request low power mode cancellation, the OCD can set the DBIRQ bit in the MCUCTRL register. For details, see [section 2.5.6.3. MCUCTRL : MCU Control Register](#).

2.4.2.2 Reset

In OCD mode, some resets depend on the CPU status and the DBGSTOPCR register setting.

Table 2.4 Reset or interrupt and mode setting

Reset or interrupt name	Control in On-Chip Debug (OCD) mode	
	OCD break mode	OCD run mode
RES pin reset	Same as user mode	
Power-on reset	Same as user mode	
Independent watchdog timer reset/interrupt	Does not occur ^{*1}	Depends on DBGSTOPPCR setting
Watchdog timer reset/interrupt	Does not occur ^{*1}	Depends on DBGSTOPPCR setting
Voltage monitor 0 reset	Depends on DBGSTOPPCR setting	
Voltage monitor 1 reset/interrupt	Depends on DBGSTOPPCR setting	
Voltage monitor 2 reset/interrupt	Depends on DBGSTOPPCR setting	
SRAM parity error reset/interrupt	Depends on DBGSTOPPCR setting	
Bus master MPU error reset/interrupt	Same as user mode	
Bus slave MPU error reset/interrupt	Same as user mode	
CPU stack pointer error reset/interrupt	Same as user mode	
Software reset	Same as user mode	

Note: In OCD break mode, the CPU is halted. In OCD run mode, the CPU is in OCD mode and the CPU is not halted.

Note 1. The IWDT and WDT always stop in this mode.

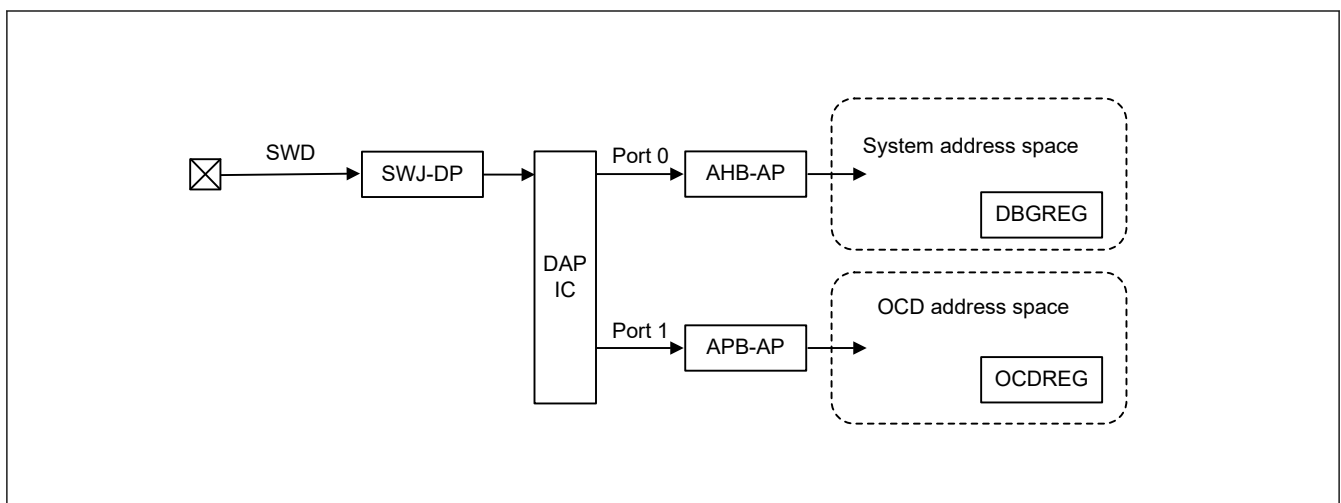
2.5 Programmers Model

2.5.1 Address Spaces

The MCU debug system includes two CoreSight Access Ports (AP):

- AHB-AP, which is connected to the CPU bus matrix and has the same access to the system address space as the CPU
- APB-AP, which has a dedicated address space (OCD address space) and is connected to the OCDREG registers.

Figure 2.2 shows a block diagram of the AP connection and address spaces.

**Figure 2.2** SWD authentication block diagram

For debugging purposes, there are two register modules, DBGREG and OCDREG. DBGREG is located in the system address space and can be accessed from the OCD emulator, the CPU, and other bus masters in the MCU. OCDREG is located in the OCD address space and can only be accessed from the OCD tool. The CPU and other bus masters cannot access OCDREG.

2.5.2 Cortex-M23 Peripheral Address Map

In the system address space, the Cortex-M23 core has a Private Peripheral Bus (PPB) that can only be accessed from the CPU and OCD emulator. [Table 2.5](#) shows the address map of the MCU.

Table 2.5 Cortex-M23 peripheral address map

Component name	Start address	End address	Note
DWT	0xE000_1000	0xE000_1FFF	See reference 2. in section 2.8. References .
FPB	0xE000_2000	0xE000_2FFF	See reference 2. in section 2.8. References .
SCS	0xE000_E000	0xE000_EFFF	See reference 2. in section 2.8. References .

2.5.3 External Debug Address Map

In the system address space, the Cortex-M23 core has external debug components. These components can be accessed from the CPU and other bus masters through the system bus. [Table 2.6](#) shows the address map of the Cortex-M23 external debug components.

Table 2.6 External debug address map

Component name	Start address	End address	Note
MTB (SRAM area)	0x2000_4000	0x2000_7FFF	MTB uses up to 1 KB as trace buffer See reference 6. in section 2.8. References .
MTB (SFR area)	0x4001_9000	0x4001_9FFF	See reference 6. in section 2.8. References .
ROM Table	0x4001_A000	0x4001_AFFF	See reference 6. in section 2.8. References .

2.5.4 CoreSight ROM Table

The MCU contains one CoreSight ROM Table, which lists all components implemented in the user area.

2.5.4.1 ROM Entries

[Table 2.7](#) shows the ROM entries. The OCD emulator can use the ROM entries to determine which components are implemented in a system. See reference 4. for details.

Table 2.7 ROM entries

#	Address	Access size	R/W	Value	Target module pointer
0	0x4001_A000	32 bits	R	0x9FFF4003	SCS
1	0x4001_A004	32 bits	R	0x9FFE7003	DWT
2	0x4001_A008	32 bits	R	0x9FFE8003	FPB
3	0x4001_A00C	32 bits	R	0xFFFFF003	MTB
4	0x4001_A010	32 bits	R	0x00000000	End of entries

2.5.4.2 CoreSight Component Registers

The CoreSight ROM Table lists the CoreSight component registers defined in the Arm CoreSight architecture.

[Table 2.8](#) shows the registers. See reference 5. in [section 2.8. References](#) for details of each register.

Table 2.8 CoreSight component registers in the CoreSight ROM Table (1 of 2)

Name	Address	Access size	R/W	Initial value
MEMTYPE	0x4001_AFCC	32 bits	R	0x00000001
PIDR4	0x4001_AFD0	32 bits	R	0x00000004
PIDR5	0x4001_AFD4	32 bits	R	0x00000000
PIDR6	0x4001_AFD8	32 bits	R	0x00000000

Table 2.8 CoreSight component registers in the CoreSight ROM Table (2 of 2)

Name	Address	Access size	R/W	Initial value
PIDR7	0x4001_AFDC	32 bits	R	0x00000000
PIDR0	0x4001_AFE0	32 bits	R	0x00000067
PIDR1	0x4001_AFE4	32 bits	R	0x00000030
PIDR2	0x4001_AFE8	32 bits	R	0x0000000A
PIDR3	0x4001_AFEC	32 bits	R	0x00000000
CIDR0	0x4001_AFF0	32 bits	R	0x0000000D
CIDR1	0x4001_AFF4	32 bits	R	0x00000010
CIDR2	0x4001_AFF8	32 bits	R	0x00000005
CIDR3	0x4001_AFFC	32 bits	R	0x000000B1

2.5.5 DBGREG Module

The DBGREG module controls the debug functionalities and is implemented as a CoreSight-compliant component.

[Table 2.9](#) shows the DBGREG registers other than the CoreSight component registers.

Table 2.9 Non-CoreSight DBGREG registers

Name		DAP port	Address	Access size	R/W
Debug Status Register	DBGSTR	Port 0	0x4001_B000	32 bits	R
Debug Stop Control Register	DBGSTOPCR	Port 0	0x4001_B010	32 bits	R/W

2.5.5.1 DBGSTR : Debug Status Register

Base address: DBG = 0x4001_B000

Offset address: 0x00

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	CDBG PWRU PACK	CDBG PWRU PREQ	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
27:0	—	These bits are read as 0.	R
28	CDBGPWRUPREQ	Debug power-up request 0: OCD is not requesting debug power up 1: OCD is requesting debug power up	R
29	CDBGPWRUPACK	Debug power-up acknowledge 0: Debug power-up request is not acknowledged 1: Debug power-up request is acknowledged	R
31:30	—	These bits are read as 0.	R

The DBGSTR register is a status register which indicates the state of the debug power-up request to the MCU from the emulator.

2.5.5.2 DBGSTOPCR : Debug Stop Control Register

Base address: DBG = 0x4001_B000

Offset address: 0x10

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	DBGS TOP_RPER	—	—	—	—	—	DBGS TOP_LVD2	DBGS TOP_LVD1	DBGS TOP_LVD0
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	DBGS TOP_IWDT	DBGS TOP_IWDT
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	DBGSTOP_IWDT	Mask bit for IWDT reset/interrupt in the OCD run mode In the OCD break mode, the reset/interrupt is masked and IWDT counter is stopped, regardless of this bit value. 0: Enable IWDT reset/interrupt 1: Mask IWDT reset/interrupt and stop IWDT counter	R/W
1	DBGSTOP_WDT	Mask bit for WDT reset/interrupt in the OCD run mode In the OCD break mode, the reset/interrupt is masked and WDT counter is stopped, regardless of this bit value. 0: Enable WDT reset/interrupt 1: Mask WDT reset/interrupt and stop WDT counter	R/W
15:2	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
16	DBGSTOP_LVD0	Mask bit for LVD0 reset 0: Enable LVD0 reset 1: Mask LVD0 reset	R/W
17	DBGSTOP_LVD1	Mask bit for LVD1 reset/interrupt 0: Enable LVD1 reset/interrupt 1: Mask LVD1 reset/interrupt	R/W
18	DBGSTOP_LVD2	Mask bit for LVD2 reset/interrupt 0: Enable LVD2 reset/interrupt 1: Mask LVD2 reset/interrupt	R/W
23:19	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
24	DBGSTOP_RPER	Mask bit for SRAM parity error reset/interrupt 0: Enable SRAM parity error reset/interrupt 1: Mask SRAM parity error reset/interrupt	R/W
31:25	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

The Debug Stop Control Register (DBGSTOPCR) controls the functional stop in OCD mode. All bits in the register are regarded as 0 when the MCU is not in OCD mode.

2.5.5.3 DBGREG CoreSight Component Registers

The DBGREG module provides the CoreSight component registers defined in the Arm CoreSight architecture.

Table 2.10 shows the registers. See reference 4. in [section 2.8. References](#) for details of each register.

Table 2.10 DBGREG CoreSight component registers (1 of 2)

Name	Address	Access size	R/W	Initial value
PIDR4	0x4001_BFD0	32 bits	R	0x00000004
PIDR5	0x4001_BFD4	32 bits	R	0x00000000

Table 2.10 DBGREG CoreSight component registers (2 of 2)

Name	Address	Access size	R/W	Initial value
PIDR6	0x4001_BFD8	32 bits	R	0x00000000
PIDR7	0x4001_BFDC	32 bits	R	0x00000000
PIDR0	0x4001_BFE0	32 bits	R	0x00000005
PIDR1	0x4001_BFE4	32 bits	R	0x00000030
PIDR2	0x4001_BFE8	32 bits	R	0x0000001A
PIDR3	0x4001_BFEC	32 bits	R	0x00000000
CIDR0	0x4001_BFF0	32 bits	R	0x0000000D
CIDR1	0x4001_BFF4	32 bits	R	0x000000F0
CIDR2	0x4001_BFF8	32 bits	R	0x00000005
CIDR3	0x4001_BFFC	32 bits	R	0x000000B1

2.5.6 OCDREG Module

The OCDREG module is only accessible by the On-Chip Debug (OCD) emulator. OCDREG is implemented as a CoreSight-compliant component.

[Table 2.11](#) lists the OCDREG registers.

Table 2.11 OCDREG registers

Name		DAP port	Address	Access size	R/W
ID Authentication Code Register 0	IAUTH0	Port 1	0x8000_0000	32 bits	W
ID Authentication Code Register 1	IAUTH1	Port 1	0x8000_0100	32 bits	W
ID Authentication Code Register 2	IAUTH2	Port 1	0x8000_0200	32 bits	W
ID Authentication Code Register 3	IAUTH3	Port 1	0x8000_0300	32 bits	W
MCU Status Register	MCUSTAT	Port 1	0x8000_0400	32 bits	R
MCU Control Register	MCUCTRL	Port 1	0x8000_0410	32 bits	R/W

Note: OCDREG is located in the dedicated OCD address space. This address map is independent of the system address map. See [section 2.5.2. Cortex-M23 Peripheral Address Map](#).

2.5.6.1 IAUTHn : ID Authentication Code Register (n = 0 to 3)

Four authentication registers are provided for a 128-bit key. These registers must be written in sequential order from IAUTHn (n = 0 to 3).

The initial value of the registers is all 0xFFFFFFFF. This means that SWD access is initially permitted when the ID code in the OSIS register has the initial value. See [section 2.7.1. Unlock ID Code](#).

Base address: CPU_OCD = 0x8000_0000

Offset address: 0x000 + 0x100 × n

Bit position: 31

0

Bit field:

IAUTHn: AID (32+32×n -1) to (32×n) bits

Value after reset: 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1

2.5.6.2 MCUSTAT : MCU Status Register

Base address: CPU_OCD = 0x8000_0000

Offset address: 0x400

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	CPUS TOPC LK	CPUS LEEP	AUTH
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1/0*1	1/0*1	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	AUTH	Authentication status 0: Authentication failed 1: Authentication succeeded	R
1	CPUSLEEP	Sleep mode status 0: CPU is not in Sleep mode 1: CPU in Sleep mode	R
2	CPUSTOPCLK	CPU clock status 0: CPU clock is not stopped 1: CPU clock is stopped	R
31:3	—	These bits are read as 0.	R

Note 1. Depends on the MCU status.

2.5.6.3 MCUCTRL : MCU Control Register

Base address: CPU_OCD = 0x8000_0000

Offset address: 0x410

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	DBIRQ	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	EDBG RQ
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	EDBGRQ	External Debug Request Writing 1 to the bit causes a CPU halt. When the EDBGRQ bit is set to 0 or the CPU is halted, the EDBGRQ bit is cleared. 0: Debug event not requested 1: Debug event requested	R/W
7:1	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
8	DBIRQ	Debug Interrupt Request Writing 1 to the bit wakes up the MCU from low power mode. The condition can be cleared by writing 0 to the DBIRQ bit. 0: Debug interrupt not requested 1: Debug interrupt requested	R/W
31:9	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note: Set DBIRQ and EDBGIRQ to the same value.

2.5.6.4 OCDREG CoreSight Component Registers

The OCDREG module provides the CoreSight component registers defined in the Arm CoreSight architecture.

Table 2.12 shows the registers. See reference 4. in [section 2.8. References](#) for details of each register.

Table 2.12 OCDREG CoreSight component registers

Name	Address	Access size	R/W	Initial value
PIDR4	0x8000_0FD0	32 bits	R	0x00000004
PIDR5	0x8000_0FD4	32 bits	R	0x00000000
PIDR6	0x8000_0FD8	32 bits	R	0x00000000
PIDR7	0x8000_0FDC	32 bits	R	0x00000000
PIDR0	0x8000_0FE0	32 bits	R	0x00000004
PIDR1	0x8000_0FE4	32 bits	R	0x00000030
PIDR2	0x8000_0FE8	32 bits	R	0x0000000A
PIDR3	0x8000_0FEC	32 bits	R	0x00000000
CIDR0	0x8000_0FF0	32 bits	R	0x0000000D
CIDR1	0x8000_0FF4	32 bits	R	0x000000F0
CIDR2	0x8000_0FF8	32 bits	R	0x00000005
CIDR3	0x8000_0FFC	32 bits	R	0x000000B1

2.6 SysTick Timer

The SysTick timer provides a simple 24-bit down counter. The reference clock for the timer can be selected as the CPU clock (ICLK) or SysTick timer clock (SYSTICCLK). See [section 8, Clock Generation Circuit](#) and reference 1. in [section 2.8. References](#) for details.

2.7 OCD Emulator Connection

A SWD authentication mechanism checks access permission for debug and MCU resources. To obtain full debug functionality, a pass result of the authentication mechanism is required.

Figure 2.3 shows a block diagram of the authentication mechanism.

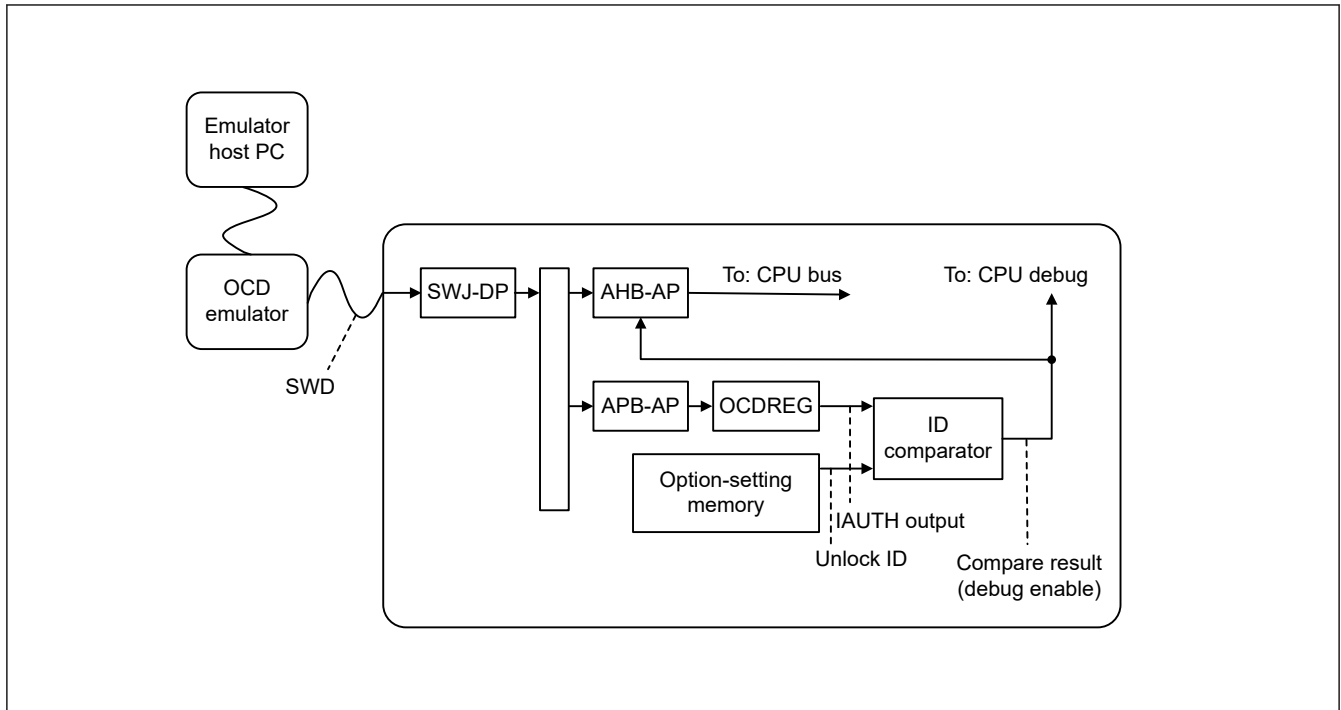


Figure 2.3 SWD authentication mechanism block diagram

An ID comparator is available in the MCU for authentication. The comparator compares the 128-bit IAUTH output from the OCDREG and the 128-bit unlock ID code from the option-setting memory. When the two outputs are identical, the CPU debug functions and system bus access from the OCD emulator are permitted.

After the OCD emulator gets access permission, the OCD emulator must set the DBGEN bit in the System Control OCD Control Register (SYOCDCCR). In addition, the OCD emulator must clear the DBGEN bit before disconnecting. See [section 10.2.12. SYOCDCCR : System Control OCD Control Register](#).

2.7.1 Unlock ID Code

The unlock ID code is used for checking permission for debug and access to on-chip resources. If the unlock ID code matches the 128-bit data written in the ID Authentication Code Registers 0 to 3, the SWD debugger obtains access permission. Unlock ID code is written in the OCD/Serial Programmer ID Setting Register (OSIS) in the option-setting memory. The initial value of the unlock ID code is all 1s (0xFFFFFFFF_FFFFFFFF_FFFFFFFF_FFFFFFFF). See [section 6, Option-Setting Memory](#) for details.

2.7.2 DBGEN

After the OCD emulator gets access permission, the OCD emulator must set the DBGEN bit in the System Control OCD Control Register (SYOCDCCR). In addition, the OCD emulator must clear the DBGEN bit before disconnecting it. See [section 10, Low Power Modes](#) for details.

2.7.3 Restrictions on Connecting an OCD Emulator

This section describes the restrictions on emulator access.

2.7.3.1 Starting Connection While in Low Power Mode

When starting an SWD connection from an OCD emulator, the MCU must be in Normal or Sleep mode. If the MCU is in Software Standby or Snooze mode, the OCD emulator can cause the MCU to hang.

2.7.3.2 Changing Low Power Mode While in OCD Mode

When the MCU is in OCD mode, the low power mode can be changed. However, system bus access from AHB-AP is prohibited in Software Standby or Snooze mode. Only SWJ-DP, APB-AP, and OCDREG can be accessed from the OCD emulator in these modes. [Table 2.13](#) shows the restrictions.

Table 2.13 Restrictions by mode

Active mode	Start OCD emulator connection	Change low power mode	Access AHB-AP and system bus	Access APB-AP and OCDREG
Normal	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Sleep	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Software Standby	No	Yes	No	Yes
Snooze	No	Yes	No	Yes

If system bus access is required in Software Standby or Snooze mode, set the MCUCTRL.DBIRQ bit in OCDREG to wake up the MCU from the low power modes. Simultaneously, by asserting the MCUCTRL.DBIRQ bit in OCDREG, the OCD emulator can wake up the MCU without starting CPU execution by using a CPU break.

2.7.3.3 Modify the Unlock ID Code in OSIS

After modifying the unlock ID code in the OSIS, the OCD emulator must reset the MCU by asserting the RES pin or setting the SYSRESETREQ bit of the Application Interrupt and Reset Control Register in the system control block to 1. The modified unlock ID code is reflected after reset. For the system control block, see reference 2. listed in [section 2.8. References](#).

The emulator must set the modified unlock ID code in the IAUTH0 to IAUTH3 registers immediately before the MCU is placed in the reset state. When the IAUTH0 to IAUTH3 registers have been overwritten, writing to the SYSRESETREQ bit is not possible. Place the MCU in the reset state by asserting the signal on the RES pin.

2.7.3.4 Connecting Sequence and SWD Authentication

Because the OCD emulator is protected by the SWD authentication mechanism, the OCD might be required to input the ID code to the SWD authentication registers. The OSIS value in the option-setting memory determines whether the code is required. After negation of the RES pin, a wait time is required before comparing the OSIS value at cold start. See [section 41.3.3. Reset Timing](#). The SWD authentication process is described in detail below.

(1) When MSB of the OSIS register is 0 (bit [127] = 0)

The ID code is always mismatched and connection to the OCD is prohibited.

(2) When bits in the OSIS register are all 1s (initial value)

ID authentication is not required and the OCD can use the AHB-AP without authentication. For details of the settings for using the AHB-AP, see reference 4. in [section 2.8. References](#).

1. Connect the OCD emulator to the MCU through the SWD interface.
2. Set up SWJ-DP to access the DAP bus. In the setup, the OCD emulator must assert CDBGPWRUPREQ in the SWJ-DP Control Status Register, then wait until CDBGPWRUPACK in the same register is asserted.
3. Set up the AHB-AP to access the system address space. The AHB-AP is connected to the DAP bus port 0.
4. Start accessing the CPU debug resources using the AHB-AP.

(3) When OSIS[127:126] = 10b

ID authentication is required and the OCD must write the unlock ID code to the IAUTH registers 0 to 3 in OCDREG before using the AHB-AP.

1. Connect the OCD debugger to the MCU through the SWD interface.
2. Set up SWJ-DP to access the DAP bus. In the setup, the OCD emulator must assert CDBGPWRUPREQ in SWJ-DP Control Status Register, then wait until CDBGPWRUPACK in the same register is asserted.
3. Set up the APB-AP to access OCDREG. The APB-AP is connected to the DAP bus port 1.
4. Write the 128-bit ID code to IAUTH registers 0 to 3 in OCDREG using the APB-AP.
5. If the 128-bit ID code matches the OSIS value, the AHB-AP is authorized to issue an AHB transaction. The authorization result can be confirmed by the AUTH bit in the MCUSTAT Register or the DbgStatus bit in the AHB-AP Control Status Word Register.

- When the DbgStatus bit is 1, the 128-bit ID code is matched with the OSIS value. AHB transfers are permitted.
 - When the DbgStatus bit is 0, the 128-bit ID code is not matched with the OSIS value. AHB transfers are not permitted.
6. Set up the AHB-AP to access the system address space. The AHB-AP is connected to the DAP bus port 0.
 7. Start accessing the CPU debug resources using the AHB-AP.

(4) When OSIS[127:126] = 11b

OCD authentication is required and the OCD must write the unlock ID code to the IAUTH registers 0 to 3 in OCDREG. The connection sequence is the same when OSIS[127:126] is 10b except for “ALeRASE” capability.

When IAUTH registers 0 to 3 are “ALeRASE” in ASCII code, the contents of the code flash, data flash, and configuration area are erased at once. See [section 38, Flash Memory](#) for details.

The ALeRASE sequence is as follows:

1. Connect the OCD debugger to the MCU through the SWD interface.
2. Set up SWJ-DP to access the DAP bus. In the setup, the OCD emulator must assert CDBGPWRUPREQ in the SWJ-DP Control Status Register, then wait until CDBGPWRUPACK in the same register is asserted.
3. Set up the APB-AP to access OCDREG. The APB-AP is connected to the DAP bus port 1.
4. Write the 128-bit ID code to IAUTH registers 0 to 3 in OCDREG using the APB-AP.
5. If the 128-bit ID code is “ALeRASE” in ASCII code (0x414C_6552_4153_45FF_FFFF_FFFF_FFFF_FFFF), the contents of the code flash, data flash, and configuration area are erased. After that, the MCU transitions to Sleep mode.

2.8 References

1. *ARM®v8-M Architecture Reference Manual* (ARM DDI 0553B.a)
2. *ARM® Cortex®-M23 Processor Technical Reference Manual* (ARM DDI 0550C)
3. *ARM® Cortex®-M23 Device Generic User Guide* (ARM DUI 1095A)
4. *ARM® CoreSight™ SoC-400 Technical Reference Manual* (ARM DDI 0480G)
5. *ARM® CoreSight™ Architecture Specification* (ARM IHI 0029E)
6. *ARM® CoreSight™ MTB-M23 Technical Reference Manual* (ARM DDI 0564C)

2.9 Usage Notes

The memory cannot be debugged if the security MPU is enabled. Disable the security MPU when debugging a program. OCD emulation connection is only valid when the SECMPUAC register is 0xFFFF_FFFF.

3. Operating Modes

3.1 Operating Mode Types and Selection

Table 3.1 shows the selection of operating modes by the mode-setting pin. For details on each of the operating modes, see section 3.2. Details of Operating Modes. Operation starts when the on-chip flash memory is enabled, regardless of the mode in which operation started.

Table 3.1 Selection of operating modes by the mode-setting pin

Mode-setting pin (MD)	Operating mode
1	Single-chip mode
0	SCI boot mode or I ² C boot mode

3.2 Details of Operating Modes

3.2.1 Single-Chip Mode

In single-chip mode, all I/O pins are available for use as input or output port, inputs or outputs for peripheral functions, or as interrupt inputs.

When a reset is released while the MD pin is high, the MCU starts in single-chip mode and the on-chip flash is enabled.

3.2.2 SCI Boot Mode or I²C Boot Mode

In this mode, the on-chip flash memory programming routine (SCI boot program and I²C boot program), stored in the boot area on the MCU, is used. The on-chip flash, including code flash memory and data flash memory, can be modified from outside the MCU by using a universal asynchronous receiver/transmitter (UART) SCI or the I²C protocol mode of the I3C Bus Interface (I3C). For details, see section 38, Flash Memory. The MCU starts in SCI boot mode or I²C boot mode if the MD pin is held low on release from the reset state.

3.3 Operating Modes Transitions

3.3.1 Operating Mode Transitions as Determined by the Mode-Setting Pin

Figure 3.1 shows operating mode transitions determined by the MD pin settings.

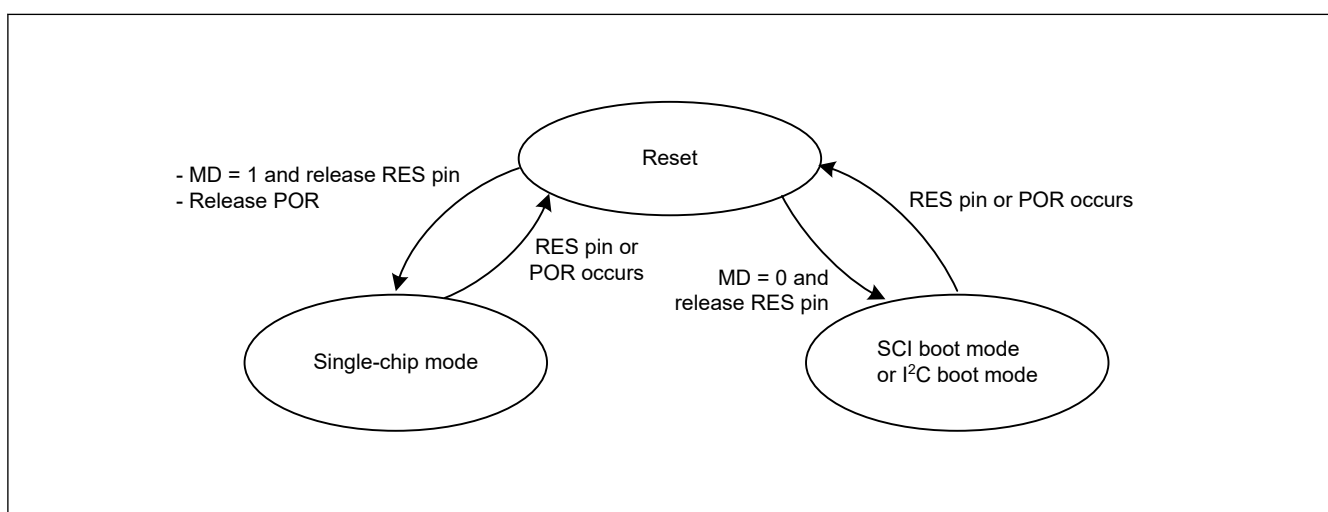


Figure 3.1 Mode-setting pin level and operating mode

4. Address Space

4.1 Address Space

The MCU supports a 4-GB linear address space ranging from 0x0000_0000 to 0xFFFF_FFFF that can contain both program and data. [Figure 4.1](#) shows the memory map of a 128-KB/64-KB flash product.

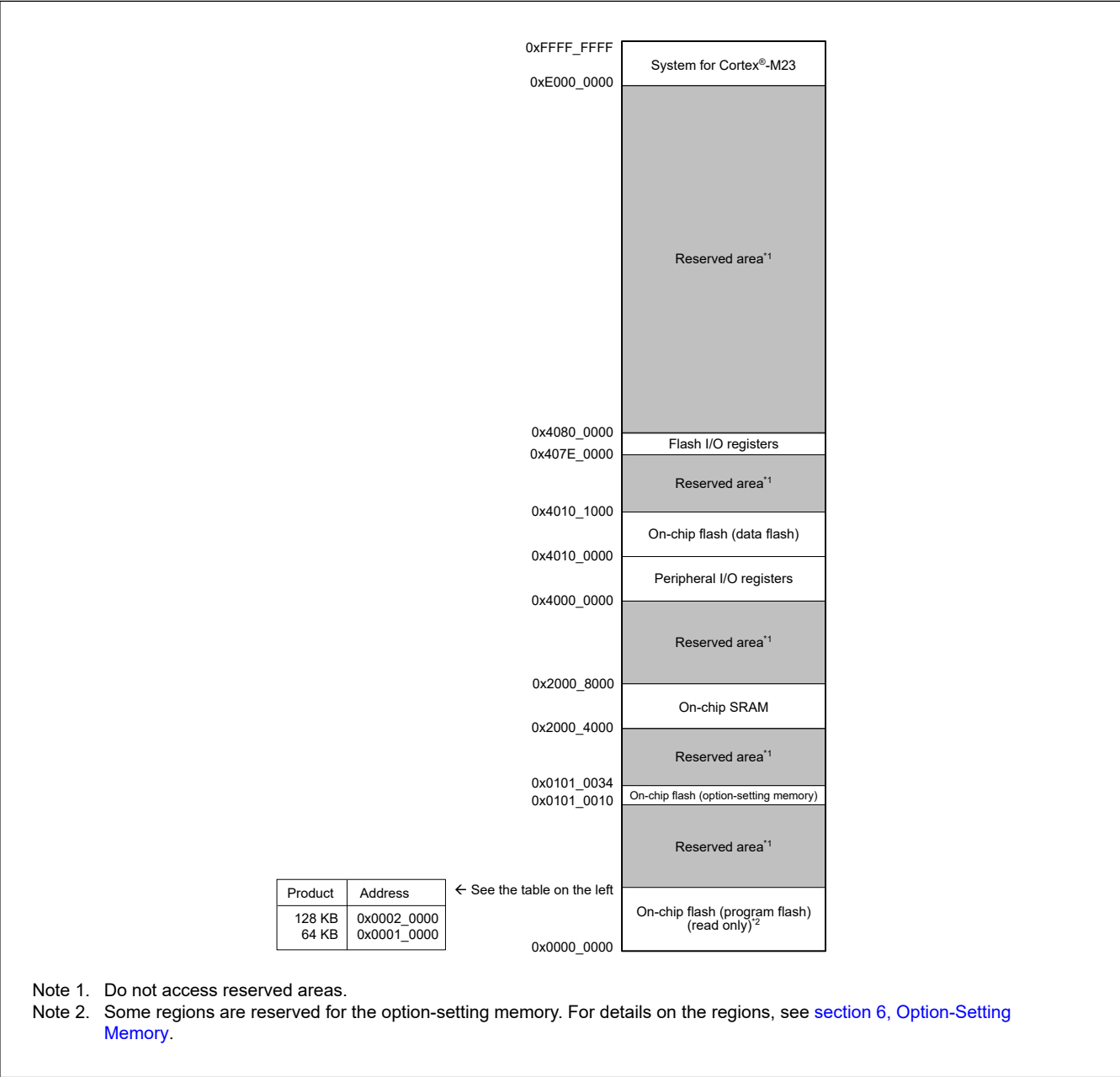


Figure 4.1 Memory map

5. Resets

5.1 Overview

The MCU provides 12 resets. [Table 5.1](#) lists the reset names and sources.

Table 5.1 Reset names and sources

Reset name	Source
RES pin reset	Voltage input to the RES pin is driven low
Power-on reset	VCC rise (voltage detection V_{POR})* ¹
Independent watchdog timer reset	IWDT underflow or refresh error
Watchdog timer reset	WDT underflow or refresh error
Voltage monitor 0 reset	VCC fall (voltage detection V_{det0})* ¹
Voltage monitor 1 reset	VCC fall (voltage detection V_{det1})* ¹
Voltage monitor 2 reset	VCC fall (voltage detection V_{det2})* ¹
SRAM parity error reset	SRAM parity error detection
Bus master MPU error reset	Bus master MPU error detection
Bus slave MPU error reset	Bus slave MPU error detection
CPU stack pointer error reset	CPU stack pointer error detection
Software reset	Register setting (use the Arm® software reset bit AIRCR.SYSRESETREQ)

Note 1. For details on the voltages to be monitored (V_{POR} , V_{det0} , V_{det1} , and V_{det2}), see [section 7, Low Voltage Detection \(LVD\)](#) and [section 41, Electrical Characteristics](#).

The internal state and pins are initialized by a reset. [Table 5.2](#) and [Table 5.3](#) list the targets initialized by resets.

Table 5.2 Reset detect flags initialized by each reset source (1 of 5)

Flags to be initialized	Reset source				
	RES pin reset	Power-on reset	Voltage monitor 0 reset	Independent watchdog timer reset	Watchdog timer reset
Power-On Reset Detect Flag (RSTSR0.PORF)	✓	—	—	—	—
Voltage Monitor 0 Reset Detect Flag (RSTSR0.LVD0RF)	✓	✓	—	—	—
Independent Watchdog Timer Reset Detect Flag (RSTSR1.IWDTRF)	✓	✓	✓	—	—
Watchdog Timer Reset Detect Flag (RSTSR1.WDTRF)	✓	✓	✓	—	—
Voltage Monitor 1 Reset Detect Flag (RSTSR0.LVD1RF)	✓	✓	✓	—	—
Voltage Monitor 2 Reset Detect Flag (RSTSR0.LVD2RF)	✓	✓	✓	—	—
Software Reset Detect Flag (RSTSR1.SWRF)	✓	✓	✓	—	—
SRAM Parity Error Reset Detect Flag (RSTSR1.RPERF)	✓	✓	✓	—	—
Bus Slave MPU Error Reset Detect Flag (RSTSR1.BUSSRF)	✓	✓	✓	—	—
Bus Master MPU Error Reset Detect Flag (RSTSR1.BUSMRF)	✓	✓	✓	—	—
CPU Stack Pointer Error Reset Detect Flag (RSTSR1.SPERF)	✓	✓	✓	—	—

Table 5.2 Reset detect flags initialized by each reset source (2 of 5)

Flags to be initialized	Reset source				
	RES pin reset	Power-on reset	Voltage monitor 0 reset	Independent watchdog timer reset	Watchdog timer reset
Cold Start/Warm Start Determination Flag (RSTSR2.CWSF)	—	✓	—	—	—

Table 5.2 Reset detect flags initialized by each reset source (3 of 5)

Flags to be initialized	Reset source			
	Voltage monitor 1 reset	Voltage monitor 2 reset	Software reset	SRAM parity error reset
Power-On Reset Detect Flag (RSTSR0.PORF)	—	—	—	—
Voltage Monitor 0 Reset Detect Flag (RSTSR0.LVD0RF)	—	—	—	—
Independent Watchdog Timer Reset Detect Flag (RSTSR1.IWDTRF)	—	—	—	—
Watchdog Timer Reset Detect Flag (RSTSR1.WDTRF)	—	—	—	—
Voltage Monitor 1 Reset Detect Flag (RSTSR0.LVD1RF)	—	—	—	—
Voltage Monitor 2 Reset Detect Flag (RSTSR0.LVD2RF)	—	—	—	—
Software Reset Detect Flag (RSTSR1.SWRF)	—	—	—	—
SRAM Parity Error Reset Detect Flag (RSTSR1.RPERF)	—	—	—	—
Bus Slave MPU Error Reset Detect Flag (RSTSR1.BUSSRF)	—	—	—	—
Bus Master MPU Error Reset Detect Flag (RSTSR1.BUSMRF)	—	—	—	—
CPU Stack Pointer Error Reset Detect Flag (RSTSR1.SPERF)	—	—	—	—
Cold Start/Warm Start Determination Flag (RSTSR2.CWSF)	—	—	—	—

Table 5.2 Reset detect flags initialized by each reset source (4 of 5)

Flags to be initialized	Reset source		
	Bus master MPU error reset	Bus slave MPU error reset	CPU stack pointer error reset
Power-On Reset Detect Flag (RSTSR0.PORF)	—	—	—
Voltage Monitor 0 Reset Detect Flag (RSTSR0.LVD0RF)	—	—	—
Independent Watchdog Timer Reset Detect Flag (RSTSR1.IWDTRF)	—	—	—
Watchdog Timer Reset Detect Flag (RSTSR1.WDTRF)	—	—	—
Voltage Monitor 1 Reset Detect Flag (RSTSR0.LVD1RF)	—	—	—
Voltage Monitor 2 Reset Detect Flag (RSTSR0.LVD2RF)	—	—	—
Software Reset Detect Flag (RSTSR1.SWRF)	—	—	—
SRAM Parity Error Reset Detect Flag (RSTSR1.RPERF)	—	—	—
Bus Slave MPU Error Reset Detect Flag (RSTSR1.BUSSRF)	—	—	—
Bus Master MPU Error Reset Detect Flag (RSTSR1.BUSMRF)	—	—	—

Table 5.2 Reset detect flags initialized by each reset source (5 of 5)

Flags to be initialized	Reset source		
	Bus master MPU error reset	Bus slave MPU error reset	CPU stack pointer error reset
CPU Stack Pointer Error Reset Detect Flag (RSTSR1.SPERF)	—	—	—
Cold Start/Warm Start Determination Flag (RSTSR2.CWSF)	—	—	—

Note: ✓ : Initialized to 0
 — : Not initialized

Table 5.3 Module-related registers initialized by each reset source (1 of 4)

Registers to be initialized		Reset source				
		RES pin reset	Power-on reset	Voltage monitor 0 reset	Independent watchdog timer reset	Watchdog timer reset
Registers related to the IWDTR	IWDTRR, IWDTSR	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Registers related to the WDT	WDTRR, WDTCSR, WDTSR, WDTRCR, WDTCSRPR	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Registers related to the voltage monitor function 1	LVD1CR0, LVCMPCR.LVD1E, LVDLVL.R.LVD1LVL	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	LVD1CR1/LVD1SR	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Registers related to the voltage monitor function 2	LVD2CR0, LVCMPCR.LVD2E, LVDLVL.R.LVD2LVL	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	LVD2CR1/LVD2SR	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Register related to the SOSC	SOSCCR	—	✓	—	—	—
	SOMCR	—	✓	—	—	—
	SOMRG	—	✓	—	—	—
Register related to the LOCO	LOCOCR	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	LOCOUTCR	—	✓	✓	—	—
Register related to the MOSC	MOMCR	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Register related to the RTC*1	RCR1.RTCOS, RCR1.CIE, RCR2.RTCOE, RCR2.ADJ30, RCR2.RESET	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Other than above	—	—	—	—	—
Register related to the AGTW		—	✓	✓	—	—
Register related to the MPU		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Pin state (except XCIN/XCOUT pin)		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Pin state (XCIN/XCOUT pin)		—	✓	—	—	—
Registers other than those shown, CPU, and internal state		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

Table 5.3 Module-related registers initialized by each reset source (2 of 4)

Registers to be initialized		Reset source			
		Voltage monitor 1 reset	Voltage monitor 2 reset	Software reset	SRAM parity error reset
Registers related to the IWDTR	IWDTRR, IWDTSR	✓	✓	✓	✓
Registers related to the WDT	WDTRR, WDTCSR, WDTSR, WDTRCR, WDTCSRPR	✓	✓	✓	✓
Registers related to the voltage monitor function 1	LVD1CR0, LVCMPCR.LVD1E, LVDLVLR.LVD1LVL	—	—	—	—
	LVD1CR1/LVD1SR	—	—	—	—
Registers related to the voltage monitor function 2	LVD2CR0, LVCMPCR.LVD2E, LVDLVLR.LVD2LVL	—	—	—	—
	LVD2CR1/LVD2SR	—	—	—	—
Register related to the SOSC	SOSCCR	—	—	—	—
	SOMCR	—	—	—	—
	SOMRG	—	—	—	—
Register related to the LOCO	LOCOCR	✓	✓	✓	✓
	LOCOUTCR	✓	✓	—	—
Register related to the MOSC	MOMCR	✓	✓	✓	✓
Register related to the RTC ^{*1}	RCR1.RTCOS, RCR1.CIE, RCR2.RTCOE, RCR2.ADJ30, RCR2.RESET	✓	✓	✓	✓
	Other than above	—	—	—	—
Register related to the AGTW		✓	✓	—	—
Register related to the MPU		✓	✓	✓	✓
Pin state (except XCIN/XCOUT pin)		✓	✓	✓	✓
Pin state (XCIN/XCOUT pin)		—	—	—	—
Registers other than those shown, CPU, and internal state		✓	✓	✓	✓

Table 5.3 Module-related registers initialized by each reset source (3 of 4)

Registers to be initialized		Reset source		
		Bus master MPU error reset	Bus slave MPU error reset	CPU stack pointer error reset
Registers related to the IWDTR	IWDTRR, IWDTSR	✓	✓	✓
Registers related to the WDT	WDTRR, WDTCSR, WDTSR, WDTRCR, WDTCSRPR	✓	✓	✓
Registers related to the voltage monitor function 1	LVD1CR0, LVCMPCR.LVD1E, LVDLVLR.LVD1LVL	—	—	—
	LVD1CR1/LVD1SR	—	—	—

Table 5.3 Module-related registers initialized by each reset source (4 of 4)

Registers to be initialized		Reset source		
		Bus master MPU error reset	Bus slave MPU error reset	CPU stack pointer error reset
Registers related to the voltage monitor function 2	LVD2CR0, LVCMPCR.LVD2E, LVDLVLR.LVD2LVL	—	—	—
	LVD2CR1/LVD2SR	—	—	—
Register related to the SOSC	SOSCCR	—	—	—
	SOMCR	—	—	—
	SOMRG	—	—	—
Register related to the LOCO	LOCOCR	✓	✓	✓
	LOCOUTCR	—	—	—
Register related to the MOSC	MOMCR	✓	✓	✓
Register related to the RTC*1	RCR1.RTCOS, RCR1.CIE, RCR2.RTCOE, RCR2.ADJ30, RCR2.RESET	✓	✓	✓
	Other than above	—	—	—
Register related to the AGTW		—	—	—
Register related to the MPU		—	—	—
Pin state (except XCIN/XCOUT pin)		✓	✓	✓
Pin state (XCIN/XCOUT pin)		—	—	—
Registers other than those shown, CPU, and internal state		✓	✓	✓

Note: ✓ : Initialized
 — : Not initialized

Note 1. The RTC has an RTC software reset. For details, see [section 22, Realtime Clock \(RTC\)](#).

The RTC is not initialized by any reset source. SOSC and LOCO can be selected as the clock sources of the RTC.

[Table 5.4](#) and [Table 5.5](#) show the states of SOSC and LOCO when a reset occurs.

Table 5.4 States of SOSC when a reset occurs

		Reset source	
		POR	Other
SOSC	Enable or disable	Initialized to disable	Continue with the state that was selected before the reset occurred
	Drive capability	Initialized to normal mode	Continue with the state that was selected before the reset occurred
	XCIN/XCOUT	Initialized to general-purpose input pins	Continue with the state that was selected before the reset occurred

Table 5.5 States of LOCO when a reset occurs

		Reset source	
		POR/LVD0/LVD1/LVD2	Other
LOCO	Enable or disable	Initialized to enable	

When a reset is canceled, reset exception handling starts.

[Table 5.6](#) lists the pin related to the reset function.

Table 5.6 Pin related to reset

Pin name	I/O	Function
RES	Input	Reset pin

5.2 Register Descriptions

5.2.1 RSTSR0 : Reset Status Register 0

Base address: SYSC = 0x4001_E000

Offset address: 0x410

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	LVD2R F	LVD1R F	LVD0R F	PORF
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	x*1	x*1	x*1	x*1

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	PORF	Power-On Reset Detect Flag 0: Power-on reset not detected 1: Power-on reset detected	R/W*2
1	LVD0RF	Voltage Monitor 0 Reset Detect Flag 0: Voltage monitor 0 reset not detected 1: Voltage monitor 0 reset detected	R/W*2
2	LVD1RF	Voltage Monitor 1 Reset Detect Flag 0: Voltage monitor 1 reset not detected 1: Voltage monitor 1 reset detected	R/W*2
3	LVD2RF	Voltage Monitor 2 Reset Detect Flag 0: Voltage monitor 2 reset not detected 1: Voltage monitor 2 reset detected	R/W*2
7:4	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note 1. The value after reset depends on the reset source.

Note 2. The register is cleared when a reset source listed in [section 5.1. Overview](#) occurs or when 0 is written to clear a flag. Bits other than the flag that is cleared should be set to 1.

PORF flag (Power-On Reset Detect Flag)

The PORF flag indicates that a power-on reset occurred.

[Setting condition]

- When a power-on reset occurs.

[Clearing conditions]

- When a reset listed in [section 5.1. Overview](#) occurs
- When PORF is read as 1 and then 0 is written to PORF

LVD0RF flag (Voltage Monitor 0 Reset Detect Flag)

The LVD0RF flag indicates that the VCC voltage fell below V_{det0} .

[Setting condition]

- When a voltage monitor 0 reset occurs.

[Clearing conditions]

- When a reset listed in [section 5.1. Overview](#) occurs
- When LVD0RF is read as 1 and then 0 is written to LVD0RF.

LVD1RF flag (Voltage Monitor 1 Reset Detect Flag)

The LVD1RF flag indicates that the VCC voltage fell below V_{det1} .

[Setting condition]

- When a voltage monitor 1 reset occurs.

[Clearing conditions]

- When a reset listed in [section 5.1. Overview](#) occurs
- When LVD1RF is read as 1 and then 0 is written to LVD1RF

LVD2RF flag (Voltage Monitor 2 Reset Detect Flag)

The LVD2RF flag indicates that the VCC voltage fell below V_{det2} .

[Setting condition]

- When a voltage monitor 2 reset occurs.

[Clearing conditions]

- When a reset listed in [section 5.1. Overview](#) occurs
- When LVD2RF is read as 1 and then 0 is written to LVD2RF

5.2.2 RSTSR1 : Reset Status Register 1

Base address: SYSC = 0x4001_E000

Offset address: 0x0C0

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	SPER F	BUSM RF	BUSS RF	—	RPER F	—	—	—	—	—	SWRF	WDTR F	IWDTR F
Value after reset:	0	0	0	x ^{*1}	x ^{*1}	x ^{*1}	0	x ^{*1}	0	0	0	0	0	x ^{*1}	x ^{*1}	x ^{*1}

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	IWDTRF	Independent Watchdog Timer Reset Detect Flag 0: Independent watchdog timer reset not detected 1: Independent watchdog timer reset detected	R/W ^{*2}
1	WDTRF	Watchdog Timer Reset Detect Flag 0: Watchdog timer reset not detected 1: Watchdog timer reset detected	R/W ^{*2}
2	SWRF	Software Reset Detect Flag 0: Software reset not detected 1: Software reset detected	R/W ^{*2}
7:3	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
8	RPERF	SRAM Parity Error Reset Detect Flag 0: SRAM parity error reset not detected 1: SRAM parity error reset detected	R/W ^{*2}
9	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
10	BUSSRF	Bus Slave MPU Error Reset Detect Flag 0: Bus slave MPU error reset not detected 1: Bus slave MPU error reset detected	R/W ^{*2}
11	BUSMRF	Bus Master MPU Error Reset Detect Flag 0: Bus master MPU error reset not detected 1: Bus master MPU error reset detected	R/W ^{*2}
12	SPERF	CPU Stack Pointer Error Reset Detect Flag 0: CPU stack pointer error reset not detected 1: CPU stack pointer error reset detected	R/W ^{*2}

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
15:13	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note 1. The value after reset depends on the reset source.

Note 2. Only 0 can be written to clear the flag. The flag must be cleared by writing 0 after 1 is read.

IWDTRF flag (Independent Watchdog Timer Reset Detect Flag)

The IWDTRF flag indicates that an independent watchdog timer reset occurs.

[Setting condition]

- When an independent watchdog timer reset occurs.

[Clearing conditions]

- When a reset listed in [section 5.1. Overview](#) occurs
- When 1 is read and then 0 is written to IWDTRF.

WDTRF flag (Watchdog Timer Reset Detect Flag)

The WDTRF flag indicates that a watchdog timer reset occurs.

[Setting condition]

- When a watchdog timer reset occurs.

[Clearing conditions]

- When a reset listed in [section 5.1. Overview](#) occurs
- When 1 is read and then 0 is written to WDTRF.

SWRF flag (Software Reset Detect Flag)

The SWRF flag indicates that a software reset occurs.

[Setting condition]

- When a software reset occurs.

[Clearing conditions]

- When a reset listed in [section 5.1. Overview](#) occurs
- When 1 is read and then 0 is written to SWRF.

RPERF flag (SRAM Parity Error Reset Detect Flag)

The RPERF flag indicates that an SRAM parity error reset occurs.

[Setting condition]

- When an SRAM parity error reset occurs.

[Clearing conditions]

- When a reset listed in [section 5.1. Overview](#) occurs
- When 1 is read as 1 and then 0 is written to RPERF.

BUSSRF flag (Bus Slave MPU Error Reset Detect Flag)

The BUSSRF flag indicates that a bus slave MPU error reset occurs.

[Setting condition]

- When a bus slave MPU error reset occurs.

[Clearing conditions]

- When a reset listed in [section 5.1. Overview](#) occurs
- When 1 is read and then 0 is written to BUSSRF.

BUSMRF flag (Bus Master MPU Error Reset Detect Flag)

The BUSMRF flag indicates that a bus master MPU error reset occurs.

[Setting condition]

- When a bus master MPU error reset occurs.

[Clearing conditions]

- When a reset listed in [section 5.1. Overview](#) occurs
- When 1 is read and then 0 is written to BUSMRF.

SPERF flag (CPU Stack Pointer Error Reset Detect Flag)

The SPERF flag indicates that a stack pointer error reset occurs.

[Setting condition]

- When a stack pointer error reset occurs.

[Clearing conditions]

- When a reset listed in [section 5.1. Overview](#) occurs
- When 1 is read and then 0 is written to SPERF.

5.2.3 RSTSR2 : Reset Status Register 2

Base address: SYSC = 0x4001_E000

Offset address: 0x411

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	CWSF

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 x^{*1}

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	CWSF	Cold/Warm Start Determination Flag 0: Cold start 1: Warm start	R/W ^{*2}
7:1	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note 1. The value after reset depends on the reset source.

Note 2. Only 1 can be written to set the flag.

RSTSR2 determines whether a power-on reset caused the reset processing (cold start) or a reset signal input during operation caused the reset processing (warm start).

CWSF flag (Cold/Warm Start Determination Flag)

The CWSF flag indicates the type of reset processing, either cold start or warm start. The determines whether a power-on reset caused the reset processing (cold start) or a reset signal input during operation caused the reset processing (warm start). CWSF flag is initialized by a power-on reset. It is not initialized by a reset signal generated by the RES pin.

[Setting condition]

- When 1 is written by software.

[Clearing condition]

- When a reset listed in [section 5.1. Overview](#) occurs.

5.3 Operation

5.3.1 RES Pin Reset

The RES pin generates this reset. When the RES pin is driven low, all the processing in progress is aborted and the MCU enters a reset state. To successfully reset the MCU, the RES pin must be held low for the power supply stabilization time specified at power-on.

When the RES pin is driven high from low, the internal reset is canceled after the post-RES cancellation wait time (t_{RESWT}) elapses. The CPU then starts the reset exception handling.

For details, see [section 41, Electrical Characteristics](#).

5.3.2 Power-On Reset

The power-on reset (POR) is an internal reset generated by the power-on reset circuit. A power-on reset is generated under the following conditions.

1. If the RES pin is in a high level state when power is supplied
2. If the RES pin is in a high level state when VCC is below V_{POR}

After VCC exceeds V_{POR} and the specified power-on reset time (t_{POR}) elapses, the CPU starts the reset exception handling. The power-on reset time is a stabilization period of the external power supply and the MCU circuit.

After a power-on reset is generated, the PORF flag in the RSTSR0 is set to 1. The PORF flag is initialized by the RES pin reset. When VCC falls below V_{POR} , a power-on reset state is occurred.

[Figure 5.1](#) shows example of operations during a power-on reset.

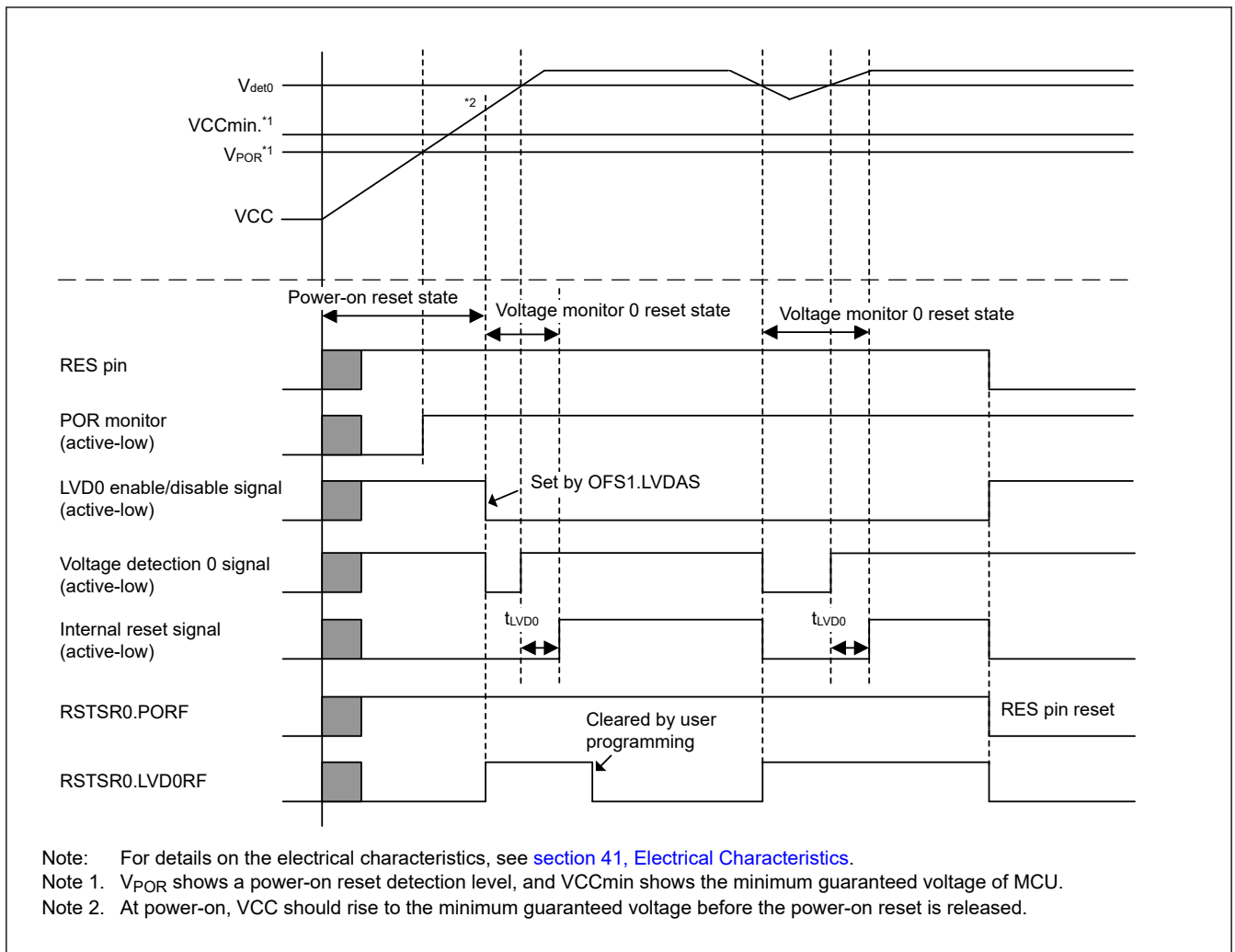


Figure 5.1 Example of operations during a power-on reset

5.3.3 Voltage Monitor Reset

The voltage monitor i ($i = 0, 1, 2$) reset is an internal reset generated by the voltage monitor i circuit. If the Voltage Detection 0 Circuit Start (LVDAS) bit in the Option Function Select Register 1 (OFS1) is 0 (voltage monitor 0 reset is enabled after a reset) and VCC falls below V_{det0} , the RSTSR0.LVD0RF flag becomes 1 and the voltage detection circuit generates voltage monitor 0 reset. Clear the OFS1.LVDAS bit to 0 if the voltage monitor 0 reset is to be used. After VCC exceeds V_{det0} and the voltage monitor 0 reset time (t_{LVD0}) elapses, the internal reset is canceled and the CPU starts the reset exception handling.

When the Voltage Monitor 1 Interrupt/Reset Enable bit (RIE) is set to 1 (enabling generation of a reset or interrupt by the voltage detection circuit) and the Voltage Monitor 1 Circuit Mode Select bit (RI) is set to 1 (selecting generation of a reset in response to detection of a low voltage) in Voltage Monitor 1 Circuit Control Register 0 (LVD1CR0), the RSTSR0.LVD1RF flag is set to 1 and the voltage detection circuit generates a voltage monitor 1 reset if VCC falls to or below V_{det1} .

Likewise, when the Voltage Monitor 2 Interrupt/Reset Enable bit (RIE) is set to 1 (enabling generation of a reset or interrupt by the voltage detection circuit) and the Voltage Monitor 2 Circuit Mode Select bit (RI) is set to 1 (selecting generation of a reset in response to detection of a low voltage) in Voltage Monitor 2 Circuit Control Register 0 (LVD2CR0), the RSTSR0.LVD2RF flag is set to 1 and the voltage detection circuit generates a voltage monitor 2 reset if VCC falls to or below V_{det2} .

Similarly, the timing for release from the voltage monitor 1 reset state is selectable with the Voltage Monitor 1 Reset Negate Select bit (RN) in the LVD1CR0. When the LVD1CR0.RN bit is 0 and VCC falls to or below V_{det1} , the CPU is released from the internal reset state and starts reset exception handling when the LVD1 reset time (t_{LVD1}) elapses after VCC rises above V_{det1} . When the LVD1CR0.RN bit is 1 and VCC falls to or below V_{det1} , the CPU is released from the internal reset state and starts reset exception handling when the LVD1 reset time (t_{LVD1}) elapses.

Likewise, the timing for release from the voltage monitor 2 reset state is selectable by setting the Voltage Monitor 2 Reset Negate Select bit (RN) in the LDV2CR0 register.

Detection levels V_{det1} and V_{det2} can be changed in the Voltage Detection Level Select Register (LVDLVLR).

Figure 5.2 shows example of operations during voltage monitor 1 and 2 resets. For details on the voltage monitor 1 reset and voltage monitor 2 reset, see [section 7, Low Voltage Detection \(LVD\)](#).

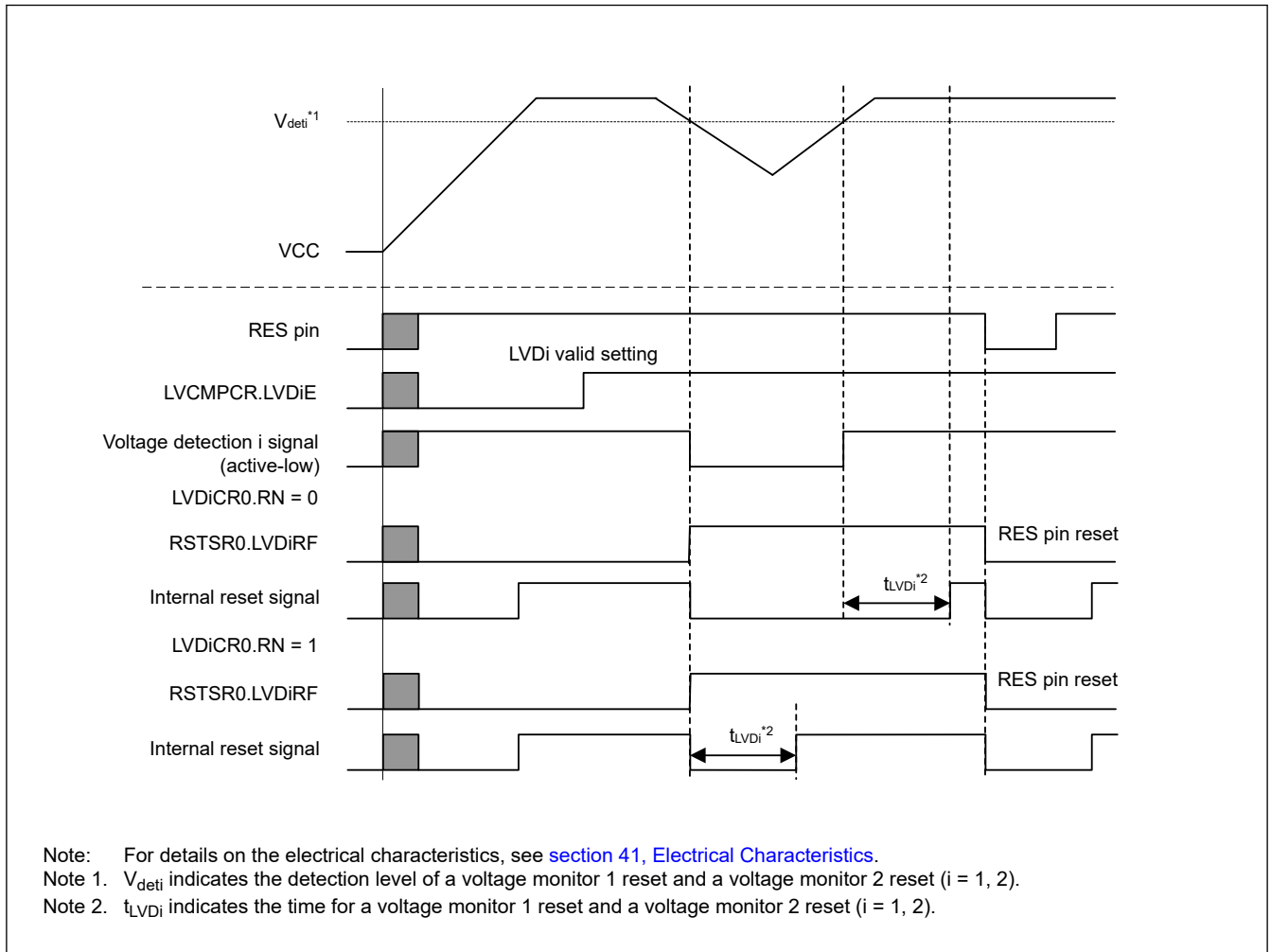


Figure 5.2 Example of operations during voltage monitor 1 and voltage monitor 2 resets

5.3.4 Independent Watchdog Timer Reset

The independent watchdog timer reset is an internal reset generated from the Independent Watchdog Timer (IWDT). Output of the reset from the IWDT can be selected in the Option Function Select Register 0 (OFS0).

When output of the independent watchdog timer reset is selected, the reset is generated if the IWDT underflows, or if data is written when refresh operation is disabled. When the internal reset time (t_{RESW2}) elapses after the independent watchdog timer reset is generated, the internal reset is canceled and the CPU starts the reset exception handling.

For details on the independent watchdog timer reset, see [section 24, Independent Watchdog Timer \(IWDT\)](#).

5.3.5 Watchdog Timer Reset

The watchdog timer reset is an internal reset generated from the Watchdog Timer (WDT). Output of the reset from the WDT can be selected in the WDT Reset Control Register (WDTRCR) or Option Function Select register 0 (OFS0).

When output of the watchdog timer reset is selected, a watchdog timer reset is generated if the WDT underflows, or if data is written when refresh operation is disabled. When the internal reset time (t_{RESW2}) elapses after the watchdog timer reset is generated, the internal reset is canceled and the CPU starts the reset exception handling.

For details on the watchdog timer reset, see [section 23, Watchdog Timer \(WDT\)](#).

5.3.6 Software Reset

The software reset is an internal reset generated by a software setting of the SYSRESETREQ bit in the AIRCR register in the Arm core. When the SYSRESETREQ bit is set to 1, a software reset is generated. When the internal reset time (t_{RESW2}) elapses after the software reset is generated, the internal reset is canceled and the CPU starts the reset exception handling.

For details on the SYSRESETREQ bit, see the *ARM® Cortex®-M23 Technical Reference Manual*.

5.3.7 Determination of Cold/Warm Start

Read the CWSF flag in RSTSR2 to determine the cause of reset processing. This flag indicates whether a power-on reset caused the reset processing (cold start) or a reset signal input during operation caused the reset processing (warm start).

The CWSF flag is set to 0 when a power-on reset occurs (cold start), otherwise the flag is not set to 0. The flag is set to 1 when 1 is written to it through software. It is not set to 0 even on writing 0 to it.

[Figure 5.3](#) shows an example of cold/warm start determination operation.

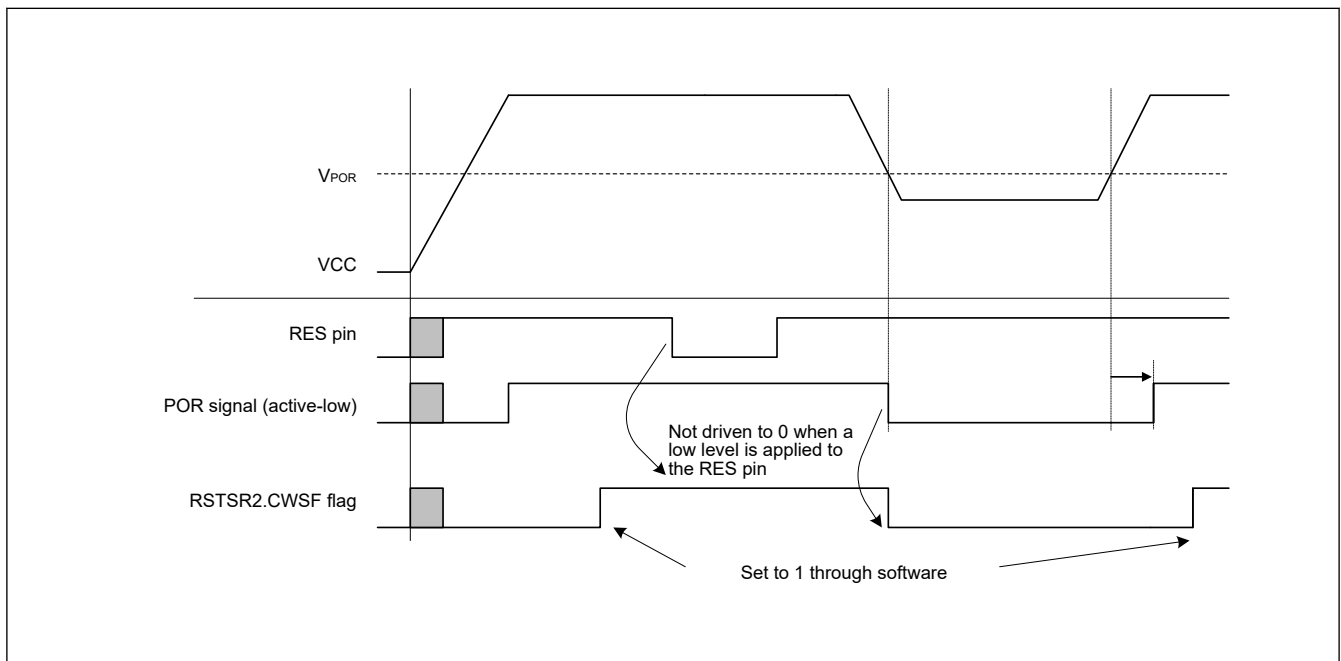


Figure 5.3 Example of cold/warm start determination operation

5.3.8 Determination of Reset Generation Source

Read RSTSR0 and RSTSR1 to determine which reset executes the reset exception handling.

[Figure 5.4](#) shows an example of the flow to identify a reset generation source. The reset flag must be written with 0 after it is read as 1.

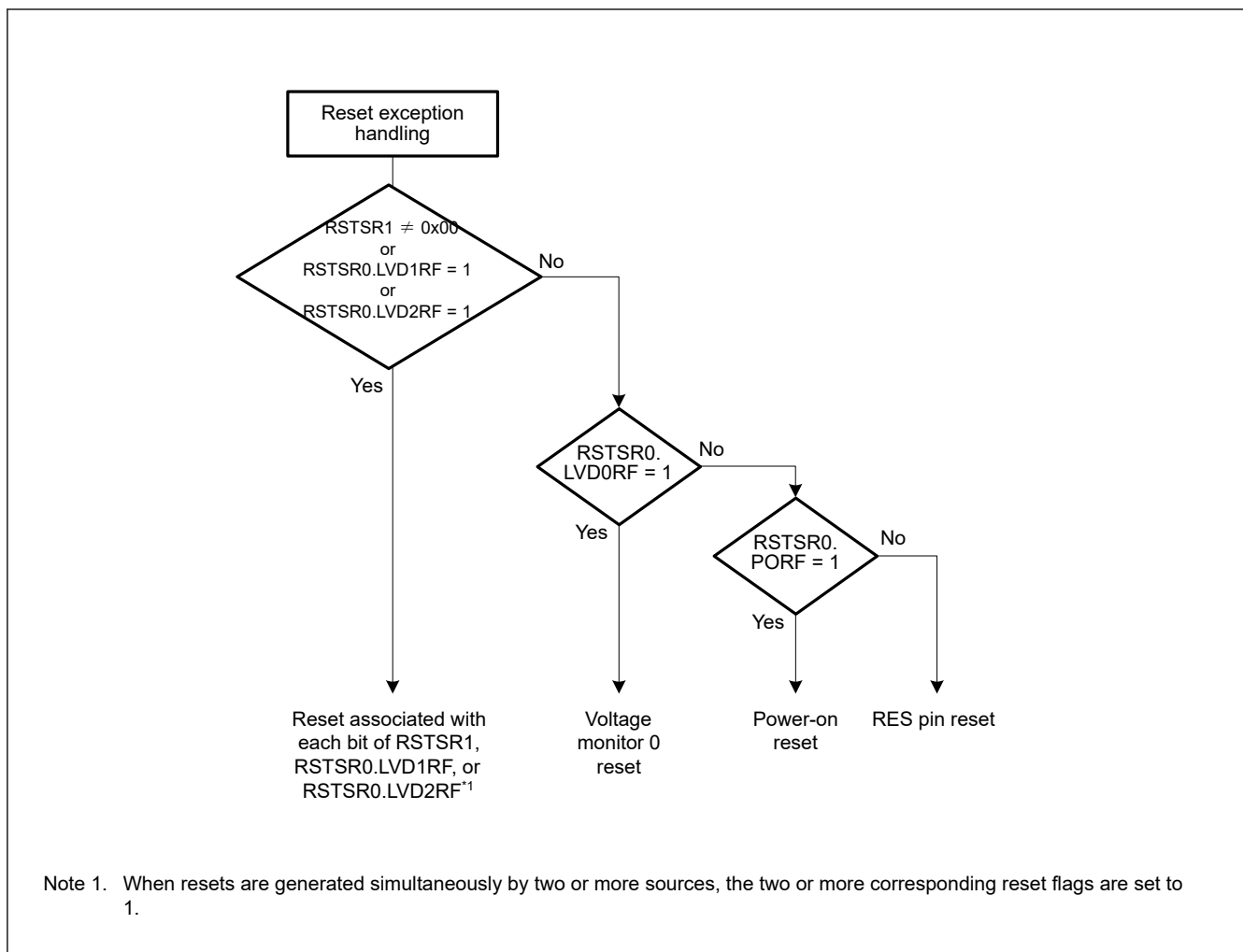


Figure 5.4 Example of reset generation source determination flow

5.4 Usage Notes

5.4.1 Note on RES Pin Reset

A power-on reset may occur if RES pin reset is used with the following conditions:

- When $VCC \leq 1.7\text{ V}$
- Voltage detection 0 circuit is enabled.

6. Option-Setting Memory

6.1 Overview

The option-setting memory determines the state of the MCU after a reset. The Option-setting memory is allocated to the configuration setting area and the program flash area of the flash memory. The available methods of setting are different for the two areas.

Figure 6.1 shows the option-setting memory area.

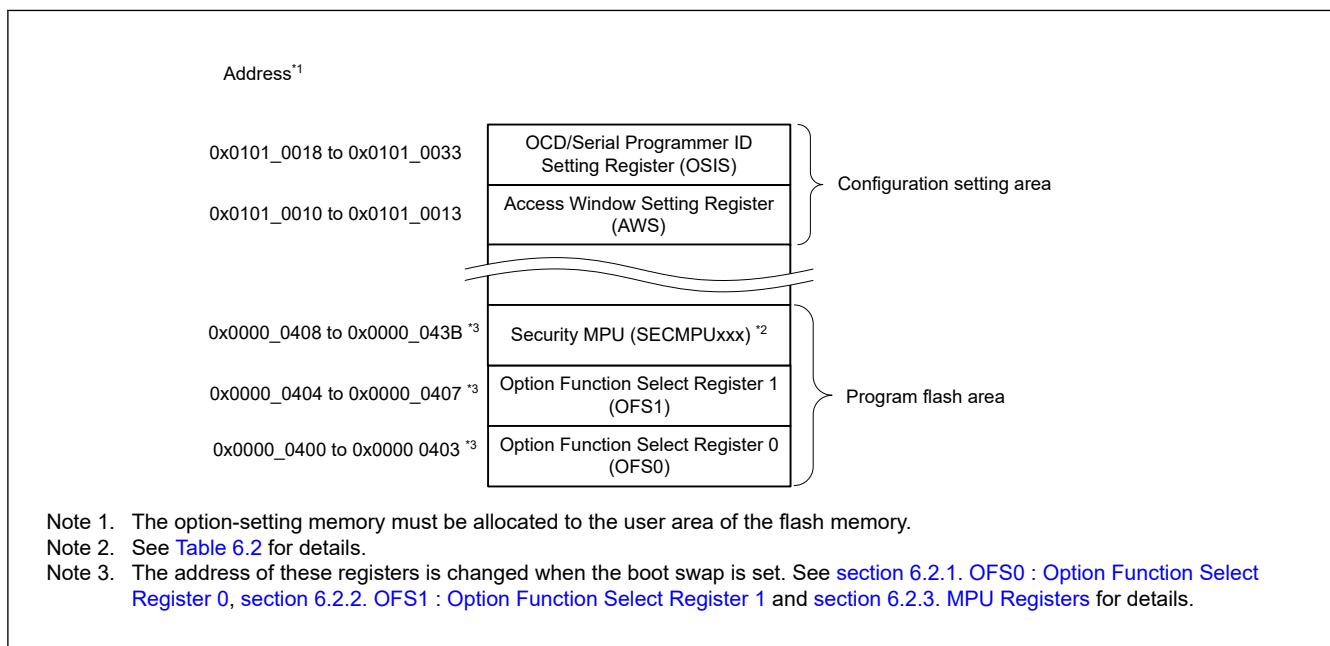


Figure 6.1 Option-setting memory area

6.2 Register Descriptions

6.2.1 OFS0 : Option Function Select Register 0

Address: 0x0000_0400 and 0x0000_2400*1

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	WDTS TPCTL	—	WDTR STIRQ S	WDTRPSS[1:0]	WDTRPES[1:0]	WDTRPES[1:0]	WDTRPES[1:0]	WDTRPES[1:0]	WDTRPES[1:0]	WDTRPES[1:0]	WDTRPES[1:0]	WDTRPES[1:0]	WDTRPES[1:0]	WDTRPES[1:0]	—

Value after reset: User setting*2

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	IWDT STPC TL	—	IWDT RSTIR QS	IWDRPSS[1:0]	IWDRPES[1:0]	IWDRPES[1:0]	IWDRPES[1:0]	IWDRPES[1:0]	IWDRPES[1:0]	IWDRPES[1:0]	IWDRPES[1:0]	IWDRPES[1:0]	IWDRPES[1:0]	IWDT STRT	—

Value after reset: User setting*2

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	—	When read, this bit returns the written value.	R
1	IWDTSTRT	IWDT Start Mode Select 0: Automatically activate IWDT after a reset (auto start mode) 1: Disable IWDT after a reset	R

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
3:2	IWDTTOPS[1:0]	IWDT Timeout Period Select 0 0: 128 cycles (0x007F) 0 1: 512 cycles (0x01FF) 1 0: 1024 cycles (0x03FF) 1 1: 2048 cycles (0x07FF)	R
7:4	IWDTCKS[3:0]	IWDT-Dedicated Clock Frequency Division Ratio Select 0x0: × 1 0x2: × 1/16 0x3: × 1/32 0x4: × 1/64 0xF: × 1/128 0x5: × 1/256 Others: Setting prohibited	R
9:8	IWDRPES[1:0]	IWDT Window End Position Select 0 0: 75% 0 1: 50% 1 0: 25% 1 1: 0% (no window end position setting)	R
11:10	IWDRPSS[1:0]	IWDT Window Start Position Select 0 0: 25% 0 1: 50% 1 0: 75% 1 1: 100% (no window start position setting)	R
12	IWDRSTIRQS	IWDT Reset Interrupt Request Select 0: Interrupt 1: Reset	R
13	—	When read, this bit returns the written value.	R
14	IWDTSTPCTL	IWDT Stop Control 0: Continue counting 1: Stop counting when in Sleep, Snooze, or Software Standby mode	R
16:15	—	When read, these bits return the written value.	R
17	WDTSTRT	WDT Start Mode Select 0: Automatically activate WDT after a reset (auto start mode) 1: Stop WDT after a reset (register start mode)	R
19:18	WDTTOPS[1:0]	WDT Timeout Period Select 0 0: 1024 cycles (0x03FF) 0 1: 4096 cycles (0x0FFF) 1 0: 8192 cycles (0x1FFF) 1 1: 16384 cycles (0x3FFF)	R
23:20	WDTCKS[3:0]	WDT Clock Frequency Division Ratio Select 0x1: WDTCLK divided by 4 0x4: WDTCLK divided by 64 0xF: WDTCLK divided by 128 0x6: WDTCLK divided by 512 0x7: WDTCLK divided by 2048 0x8: WDTCLK divided by 8192 Others: Setting prohibited	R
25:24	WDRPES[1:0]	WDT Window End Position Select 0 0: 75% 0 1: 50% 1 0: 25% 1 1: 0% (no window end position setting)	R
27:26	WDRPSS[1:0]	WDT Window Start Position Select 0 0: 25% 0 1: 50% 1 0: 75% 1 1: 100% (no window start position setting)	R

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
28	WDRSTIRQS	WDT Reset Interrupt Request Select 0: Interrupt 1: Reset	R
29	—	When read, these bits return the written value.	R
30	WDTSTPCTL	WDT Stop Control 0: Continue counting 1: Stop counting when entering Sleep mode	R
31	—	When read, these bits return the written value.	R

Note 1. When the boot swap is set, the address of this register changes. Therefore, set 0x0000_2400 and 0x0000_0400 to the same value if boot swap is used.

Note 2. The value in a blank product is 0xFFFFFFFF. It is set to the value written by your application.

IWDTSTRT bit (IWDT Start Mode Select)

The IWDTSTRT bit selects the mode in which the IWDT is activated after a reset (stopped state or activated state).

IWDTTOPS[1:0] bits (IWDT Timeout Period Select)

The IWDTTOPS[1:0] bits specify the timeout period, that is, the time it takes for the down counter to underflow, as 128, 512, 1024, or 2048 cycles of the frequency-divided clock set in the IWDTCKS[3:0] bits. The time it takes for the counter to underflow after a refresh operation is determined by the combination of the IWDTCKS[3:0] and IWDTTOPS[1:0] bits.

For details, see [section 24, Independent Watchdog Timer \(IWDT\)](#).

IWDTCKS[3:0] bits (IWDT-Dedicated Clock Frequency Division Ratio Select)

The IWDTCKS[3:0] bits specify the division ratio of the prescaler for dividing the frequency of the clock for the IWDT as 1/1, 1/16, 1/32, 1/64, 1/128, and 1/256. Using this setting combined with the IWDTTOPS[1:0] bits setting, the IWDT counting period can be set from 128 to 524288 IWDT clock cycles.

For details, see [section 24, Independent Watchdog Timer \(IWDT\)](#).

IWDRPES[1:0] bits (IWDT Window End Position Select)

The IWDRPES[1:0] bits specify the position where the window for the down counter ends as 0%, 25%, 50%, or 75% of the count value. The value of the window end position must be smaller than the value of the window start position, otherwise only the value for the window start position is valid.

The counter values associated with the settings for the start and end positions of the window in the IWDRPSS[1:0] and IWDRPES[1:0] bits vary with the setting in the IWDTTOPS[1:0] bits.

For details, see [section 24, Independent Watchdog Timer \(IWDT\)](#).

IWDRPSS[1:0] bits (IWDT Window Start Position Select)

The IWDRPSS[1:0] bits specify the position where the window for the down counter starts as 25%, 50%, 75%, or 100% of the counted value. The point at which counting starts is 100% and the point at which an underflow occurs is 0%. The interval between the window starts and ends positions becomes the period in which a refresh is possible. Refresh is not possible outside this period.

For details, see [section 24, Independent Watchdog Timer \(IWDT\)](#).

IWDRSTIRQS bit (IWDT Reset Interrupt Request Select)

The IWDRSTIRQS bit selects the operation on an underflow of the down counter or generation of a refresh error. The operation is selectable to an independent watchdog timer reset, a non-maskable interrupt request, or an interrupt request.

For details, see [section 24, Independent Watchdog Timer \(IWDT\)](#).

IWDTSTPCTL bit (IWDT Stop Control)

The IWDTSTPCTL bit specifies whether to stop counting when entering Sleep mode, Snooze mode, or Software Standby mode.

[Table 6.1](#) shows the count stop control by the IWDTSTPCTL bit.

Table 6.1 Count stop control by the IWDTSTPCTL bit

IWDTSTPCTL	Mode	Counting of IWDT
0	Sleep/Snooze/Software Standby mode	Continue counting
1	Sleep/Snooze/Software Standby mode	Stop counting

For details, see [section 24, Independent Watchdog Timer \(IWDT\)](#).

WDTSTRT bit (WDT Start Mode Select)

The WDTSTRT bit selects the mode in which the WDT is activated after a reset (stopped state or activated in auto start mode). When WDT is activated in auto start mode, the OFS0 register setting for the WDT is valid.

WDTTOPS[1:0] bits (WDT Timeout Period Select)

The WDTTOPS[1:0] bits specify the timeout period, that is, the time it takes for the down counter to underflow as 1024, 4096, 8192, or 16384 cycles of the frequency-divided clock set in the WDTCKS[3:0] bits. The number of WDTCLK cycles that takes to underflow after a refresh operation is determined by a combination of the WDTCKS[3:0] and WDTTOPS[1:0] bits.

For details, see [section 23, Watchdog Timer \(WDT\)](#).

WDTCKS[3:0] bits (WDT Clock Frequency Division Ratio Select)

The WDTCKS[3:0] bits specify the division ratio of the prescaler for dividing the frequency of WDTCLK as 1/4, 1/64, 1/128, 1/512, 1/2048, and 1/8192. Using this setting combined with the WDTTOPS[1:0] bits setting, the WDT counting period can be set from 4096 to 134217728 WDTCLK cycles.

For details, see [section 23, Watchdog Timer \(WDT\)](#).

WDTRPES[1:0] bits (WDT Window End Position Select)

The WDTRPES[1:0] bits specify the position where the window on the down counter ends as 0%, 25%, 50%, or 75% of the counted value. The value of the window end position must be smaller than the value of the window start position, otherwise only the value for the window start position is valid.

The counter values associated with the settings for the start and end positions of the window in the WDTRPSS[1:0] and WDTRPES[1:0] bits vary with the setting of the WDTTOPS[1:0] bits.

For details, see [section 23, Watchdog Timer \(WDT\)](#).

WDTRPSS[1:0] bits (WDT Window Start Position Select)

The WDTRPSS[1:0] bits specify the position where the window for the down counter starts as 25%, 50%, 75%, or 100% of the counted value. The point at which counting starts is 100% and the point at which an underflow occurs is 0%. The interval between the positions where the window starts and ends becomes the period in which a refresh is possible.

Refresh is not possible outside this period.

For details, see [section 23, Watchdog Timer \(WDT\)](#).

WDRSTIRQS bit (WDT Reset Interrupt Request Select)

The WDRSTIRQS bit selects the operation on an underflow of the down-counter or generation of a refresh error. The operation is selectable to a watchdog timer reset, a non-maskable interrupt request, or an interrupt request.

For details, see [section 23, Watchdog Timer \(WDT\)](#).

WDTSTPCTL bit (WDT Stop Control)

The WDTSTPCTL bit specifies whether to stop counting when entering Sleep mode.

For details, see [section 23, Watchdog Timer \(WDT\)](#).

6.2.2 OFS1 : Option Function Select Register 1

Address: 0x0000_0404 and 0x0000_2404*¹

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	ICSAT S	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

Value after reset: The value set by the user*²

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	HOCOFREQ1[2:0]	—	—	—	—	HOCO EN	—	—	—	VDSEL0[2:0]	—	—	—	—	—

Value after reset: The value set by the user*²

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
1:0	—	When read, these bits return the written value.	R
2	LVDAS	Voltage Detection 0 Circuit Start 0: Enable voltage monitor 0 reset after a reset 1: Disable voltage monitor 0 reset after a reset	R
5:3	VDSEL0[2:0]	Voltage Detection 0 Level Select* ³ 0 0 0: V _{det0_0} 0 0 1: V _{det0_1} 0 1 0: V _{det0_2} 0 1 1: V _{det0_3} 1 0 0: V _{det0_4} Others: Setting prohibited	R
7:6	—	When read, these bits return the written value.	R
8	HOCOEN	HOCO Oscillation Enable 0: Enable HOCO oscillation after a reset 1: Disable HOCO oscillation after a reset	R
11:9	—	When read, these bits return the written value.	R
14:12	HOCOFREQ1[2:0]	HOCO Frequency Setting 1 0 0 0: 24 MHz 0 1 0: 32 MHz 1 0 0: 48 MHz 1 0 1: 64 MHz Others: Setting prohibited	R
30:15	—	When read, these bits return the written value.	R
31	ICSATS	Internal Clock Supply Architecture Type Select 0: Internal Clock Supply Architecture Type B 1: Internal Clock Supply Architecture Type A	R

Note 1. When the boot swap is set, the address of this register changes. Therefore, set 0x0000_2404 and 0x0000_0404 to the same value if boot swap is used.

Note 2. The value in a blank product is 0xFFFFFFFF. It is set to the value written by your application.

Note 3. See [section 41, Electrical Characteristics](#) for the voltage levels to be detected. Set to 100b if LVD0 is not used.

LVDAS bit (Voltage Detection 0 Circuit Start)

The LVDAS bit selects whether the voltage monitor 0 reset is enabled or disabled after a reset.

VDSEL0[2:0] bits (Voltage Detection 0 Level Select)

The VDSEL0[2:0] bits select the voltage detection level of the voltage detection 0 circuit.

HOCOEN bit (HOCO Oscillation Enable)

The HOCOEN bit selects whether the HOCO Oscillation Enable bit is valid after a reset. Setting this bit to 0 allows the HOCO oscillation to start before the CPU starts operation, which reduces the wait time for oscillation stabilization.

Note: When the HOCOEN bit is set to 0, the system clock source is not switched to HOCO. The system clock source is only switched to HOCO by setting the Clock Source Select bits (SCKSCR.CKSEL[2:0]). To use the HOCO clock, set the OFS1.HOCOFRQ1 bits to an optimum value.

HOCOFRQ1[2:0] bits (HOCO Frequency Setting 1)

The HOCOFRQ1[2:0] bits select the HOCO frequency after a reset as 24, 32, 48, or 64 MHz.

ICSATS bit (Internal Clock Supply Architecture Type Select)

The ICSATS bit selects the internal clock supply architecture from Type A and Type B after a reset.

Internal Clock Supply Architecture Type A provides the clocks that the frequency of ICLK, PCLKB, PCLKD can be individually set in the System Clock Division Control Register (SCKDIVCR).

In Internal Clock Supply Architecture Type A, a fairly flexible operation frequency relationship between system and peripheral functions can be executed for various applications.

Internal Clock Supply Architecture Type B provides the clocks that the frequency of ICLK, PCLKB, PCLKD is fixed as ICLK = PCLKB = PCLKD regardless of the PCKB[2:0] and PCKD[2:0] settings in the System Clock Division Control Register (SCKDIVCR).

In Internal Clock Supply Architecture Type B, a simple operation frequency relationship between system and peripheral functions can be executed, and therefore, is a more advantageous type for power reduction.

For details of the System Clock Division Control Register (SCKDIVCR), see [section 8.2.1. SCKDIVCR : System Clock Division Control Register](#).

For details of the clock generation circuit block diagram, see [section 8.1. Overview](#).

Note: When Internal Clock Supply Architecture Type B is selected:

- 48 MHz or 64 MHz HOCO frequency setting in OFS1.HOCOFRQ1[2:0] is not allowed. Set the HOCO frequency to 32 MHz or 24 MHz.
- Memory wait setting in the MEMWAIT.MEMWAIT and FLDWAITR.FLDWAIT1 is not allowed. Use the default.

6.2.3 MPU Registers

[Table 6.2](#) shows the registers related to the MPU function. For details, see [section 14, Memory Protection Unit \(MPU\)](#).

The security MPU is disabled on erasure of the flash memory. If incorrect data is written to an MPU register, the MCU might fail to operate. See [section 14, Memory Protection Unit \(MPU\)](#) to set the correct data.

Table 6.2 MPU registers (1 of 2)

Register name	Symbol	Function	Address*1	Size (byte)
Security MPU Program Counter Start Address Register 0	SECMPUPCS0	Specifies the security fetch region of code flash or SRAM	0x0000_0408	4
Security MPU Program Counter End Address Register 0	SECMPUPCE0	Specifies the security fetch region of code flash or SRAM	0x0000_040C	4
Security MPU Program Counter Start Address Register 1	SECMPUPCS1	Specifies the security fetch region of code flash or SRAM	0x0000_0410	4
Security MPU Program Counter End Address Register 1	SECMPUPCE1	Specifies the security fetch region of code flash or SRAM	0x0000_0414	4
Security MPU Region 0 Start Address Register	SECMPUS0	Specifies the secure program and data of code flash	0x0000_0418	4
Security MPU Region 0 End Address Register	SECMPUE0	Specifies the secure program and data of code flash	0x0000_041C	4
Security MPU Region 1 Start Address Register	SECMPUS1	Specifies the secure program and data of SRAM	0x0000_0420	4
Security MPU Region 1 End Address Register	SECMPUE1	Specifies the secure program and data of SRAM	0x0000_0424	4

Table 6.2 MPU registers (2 of 2)

Register name	Symbol	Function	Address*1	Size (byte)
Security MPU Region 2 Start Address Register	SECMPUS2	Specifies the secure data of security function	0x0000_0428	4
Security MPU Region 2 End Address Register	SECMPUE2	Specifies the secure data of security function	0x0000_042C	4
Security MPU Region 3 Start Address Register	SECMPUS3	Specifies the secure data of security function	0x0000_0430	4
Security MPU Region 3 End Address Register	SECMPUE3	Specifies the secure data of security function	0x0000_0434	4
Security MPU Access Control Register	SECMPUAC	Specifies the security enabled/disabled region	0x0000_0438	4

Note 1. When the boot swap is set, the address of these registers changes. Therefore, set (0x0000_2408 to 0x0000_243B) and (0x0000_0408 to 0x0000_043B) to the same value if boot swap is used.

6.2.4 AWS : Access Window Setting Register

Address: 0x0101_0010

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	BTFLG	—	—	—	—	FAWE[10:0]										

Value after reset: User setting

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	FSPR	—	—	—	—	FAWS[10:0]										

Value after reset: User setting

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
10:0	FAWS[10:0]	Access Window Start Block Address These bits specify the start block address for the access window. They do not represent the block number of the access window. The access window is only valid in the program flash area. The block address specifies the first address of the block and consists of the address bits [21:11].	R
14:11	—	When read, these bits return the written value.	R
15	FSPR	Protection of Access Window and Startup Area Select Function This bit controls the programming of the write/erase protection for the access window, the Startup Area Select Flag (BTFLG), and the temporary boot swap control. When this bit is set to 0, it cannot be changed to 1. 0: Executing the configuration setting command for programming the access window (FAWE[10:0], FAWS[10:0]) and the Startup Area Select Flag (BTFLG) is invalid 1: Executing the configuration setting command for programming the access window (FAWE[10:0], FAWS[10:0]) and the Startup Area Select Flag (BTFLG) is valid	R
26:16	FAWE[10:0]	Access Window End Block Address These bits specify the end block address for the access window. They do not represent the block number of the access window. The access window is only valid in the program flash area. The end block address for the access window is the next block to the acceptable programming and erasure region defined by the access window. The block address specifies the first address of the block and consists of the address bits [21:11].	R
30:27	—	When read, these bits return the written value.	R

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
31	BTFLG	Startup Area Select Flag This bit specifies whether the address of the startup area is exchanged for the boot swap function. 0: First 8-KB area (0x0000_0000 to 0x0000_1FFF) and second 8-KB area (0x0000_2000 to 0x0000_3FFF) are exchanged 1: First 8-KB area (0x0000_0000 to 0x0000_1FFF) and second 8-KB area (0x0000_2000 to 0x0000_3FFF) are not exchanged	R

Issuing the program or erase command to an area outside the access window causes a command-locked state. The access window is only valid in the program flash area. The access window provides protection in self-programming mode, serial programming mode, and on-chip debug mode. The access window can be locked by the FSPR bit.

The access window is specified in both the FAWS[10:0] bits and the FAWE[10:0] bits. The settings for the FAWS[10:0] and FAWE[10:0] bits are as follows:

FAWE[10:0] = FAWS[10:0]: The P/E command is allowed to execute in the full program flash area.

FAWE[10:0] > FAWS[10:0]: The P/E command is only allowed to execute in the window from the block pointed to by the FAWS[10:0] bits to the block one lower than the block pointed to by the FAWE[10:0] bits.

FAWE[10:0] < FAWS[10:0]: The P/E command is not allowed to execute in the program flash area.

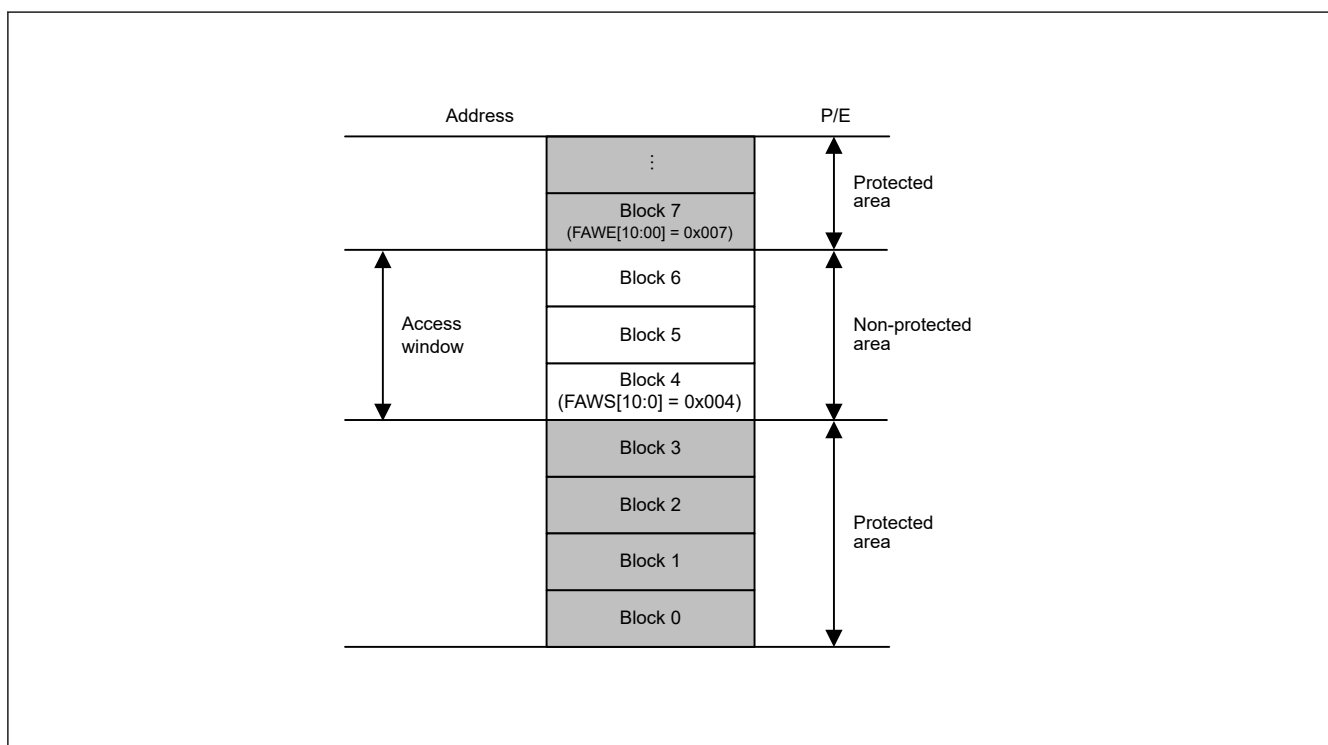


Figure 6.2 Access window overview

6.2.5 OSIS : OCD/Serial Programmer ID Setting Register

The OSIS register stores the ID for ID code protection of the OCD/serial programmer. When connecting the OCD/serial programmer, write values so that the MCU can determine whether to permit the connection. Use this register to check whether a code transmitted from the OCD/serial programmer matches the ID code in the option-setting memory. When the ID codes match, connection with the OCD/serial programmer is permitted, if not, connection with the OCD/serial programmer is not possible. The OSIS register must be set in 32-bit words.

Address: 0x0101_0018, 0x0101_0020, 0x0101_0028, 0x0101_0030

Bit position: 31

0

Bit field:

Value after reset:

User setting

These fields hold the ID for use in ID authentication for the OCD/serial programmer.

ID code bits [127] and [126] determine whether the ID code protection is enabled, and the authentication method to use with the host. [Table 6.3](#) shows how the ID code determines the authentication method.

Table 6.3 Specifications for ID code protection

Operating mode on boot up	ID code	State of protection	Operations on connection to programmer or on-chip debugger
Serial programming mode (SCI boot mode) On-chip debug mode (SWD boot mode)	0xFF, ..., 0xFF (all bytes are 0xFF)	Protection disabled	The ID code is not checked, the ID code always matches, and the connection to the serial programmer or on-chip debugger* ¹ is permitted.
	Bit [127] = 1, bit [126] = 1, and at least one of the 16 bytes is not 0xFF	Protection enabled	Matching ID code indicates that authentication is complete and connection to the serial programmer or the on-chip debugger is permitted. Mismatching ID code indicates transition to the ID code protection wait state. When the ID code sent from the serial programmer or the on-chip debugger is ALeRASE in ASCII code (0x414C_6552_4153_45FF_FFFF_FFFF_FFFF_FFFF), the content of the user flash area is erased and all bits in the OSIS register are 1. However, when the AWS.FSPR bit is 0 or security MPU is enabled, the content of the user flash area is not erased.
	Bit [127] = 1 and bit [126] = 0	Protection enabled	Matching ID code indicates that authentication is complete and connection to the serial programmer or the on-chip debugger is permitted. Mismatching ID code indicates transition to the ID code protection wait state.
	Bit [127] = 0	Protection enabled	The ID code is not checked, the ID code is always mismatching, the connection to the serial programmer or the on-chip debugger is prohibited. When the ID code sent from the on-chip debugger is ALeRASE in ASCII code (0x414C_6552_4153_45FF_FFFF_FFFF_FFFF_FFFF), the content of the user flash area is erased and all bits in the OSIS register are 1. However, when the AWS.FSPR bit is 0 or security MPU is enabled, the content of the user flash area is not erased.

Note 1. Never send the ID code from the on-chip debugger. Or send ID code 0xFF, ..., 0xFF (all bytes 0xFF) from the on-chip debugger.

6.3 Setting Option-Setting Memory

6.3.1 Allocation of Data in Option-Setting Memory

Programming data is allocated to the addresses in the option-setting memory shown in [Figure 6.1](#). The allocated data is used by tools such as a flash programming software or an on-chip debugger.

Note: Programming formats vary depending on the compiler. See the compiler manual for details.

6.3.2 Setting Data for Programming Option-Setting Memory

Allocating data according to the procedure described in [section 6.3.1. Allocation of Data in Option-Setting Memory](#), alone does not actually write the data to the option-setting memory. You must also follow one of the actions described in this section.

(1) Changing the option-setting memory by self-programming

Use the programming command to write data to the program flash area. Use the configuration setting command to write data to the option-setting memory in the configuration setting area. In addition, use the startup area select function to safely update the boot program that includes the option-setting memory.

For details of the programming command, the configuration setting command, and the startup area select function, see [section 38, Flash Memory](#).

(2) Debugging through an OCD or programming by a flash writer

This procedure depends on the tool in use, see the tool manual for details.

The MCU provides two setting procedures:

- Read the data allocated as described in [section 6.3.1. Allocation of Data in Option-Setting Memory](#), from an object file or Motorola S-format file generated by the compiler, and write the data to the MCU
- Use the GUI interface of the tool to program the same data as allocated in [section 6.3.1. Allocation of Data in Option-Setting Memory](#).

6.4 Usage Notes

6.4.1 Data for Programming Reserved Areas and Reserved Bits in the Option-Setting Memory

When reserved areas and reserved bits in the option-setting memory are within the scope of programming, write 1 to all bits of reserved areas and all reserved bits. If 0 is written to these bits, normal operation cannot be guaranteed.

6.4.2 Note on FSPR Bit

The AWS.FSPR bit cannot be changed to 1 once it is set to 0. At that time, the access window and the startup area selection cannot be set again.

7. Low Voltage Detection (LVD)

7.1 Overview

The Low Voltage Detection (LVD) module monitors the voltage level input to the VCC pin. The detection level can be selected by register settings. The LVD module consists of three separate voltage level detectors (LVD0, LVD1, LVD2). LVD0, LVD1, and LVD2 measure the voltage level input to the VCC pin. LVD registers allow your application to configure detection of VCC changes at various voltage thresholds.

Voltage monitor registers are used to configure the LVD to trigger an interrupt, event link output, or reset when the thresholds are crossed.

Table 7.1 lists the LVD specifications. Figure 7.1 shows a block diagram of the voltage monitor 0 reset generation circuit. Figure 7.2 shows a block diagram of the voltage monitor 1 interrupt and reset circuit, and Figure 7.3 shows a block diagram of the voltage monitor 2 interrupt and reset circuit.

Table 7.1 LVD specifications

Parameter		Voltage monitor 0	Voltage monitor 1	Voltage monitor 2
Means for setting up operation		OFS1 register	Registers	Registers
Target for monitoring		VCC pin input voltage	VCC pin input voltage	VCC pin input voltage
Monitored voltage		V _{det0}	V _{det1}	V _{det2}
Detected event		Voltage falls past V _{det0}	Voltage rises or falls past V _{det1}	Voltage rises or falls past V _{det2}
Detection voltage		Selectable from 5 different levels in the OFS1.VDSEL0 [2:0] bits	Selectable from 16 different levels in the LVDLVL.R.LVD1LVL[4:0] bits	Selectable from 4 different levels in the LVDLVL.R.LVD2LVL[2:0] bits
Monitoring flag		None	LVD1SR.MON flag: Monitors whether voltage is higher or lower than V _{det1}	LVD2SR.MON flag: Monitors whether voltage is higher or lower than V _{det2}
			LVD1SR.DET flag: V _{det1} passage detection	LVD2SR.DET flag: V _{det2} passage detection
Process on voltage detection	Reset	Voltage monitor 0 reset	Voltage monitor 1 reset	Voltage monitor 2 reset
		Reset when V _{det0} > VCC CPU restart after specified time with VCC > V _{det0}	Reset when V _{det1} > VCC CPU restart timing selectable: After specified time with VCC > V _{det1} or V _{det1} > VCC	Reset when V _{det2} > VCC CPU restart timing selectable: After specified time with either VCC > V _{det2} or V _{det2} > VCC
	Interrupt	No interrupt	Voltage monitor 1 interrupt	Voltage monitor 2 interrupt
			Non-maskable or maskable interrupt selectable	Non-maskable or maskable interrupt selectable
			Interrupt request issued when V _{det1} > VCC and VCC > V _{det1} or either	Interrupt request issued when V _{det2} > VCC and VCC > V _{det2} or either
Event link function		None	Available Output of event signals on detection of V _{det1} crossings	Available Output of event signals on detection of V _{det2} crossings

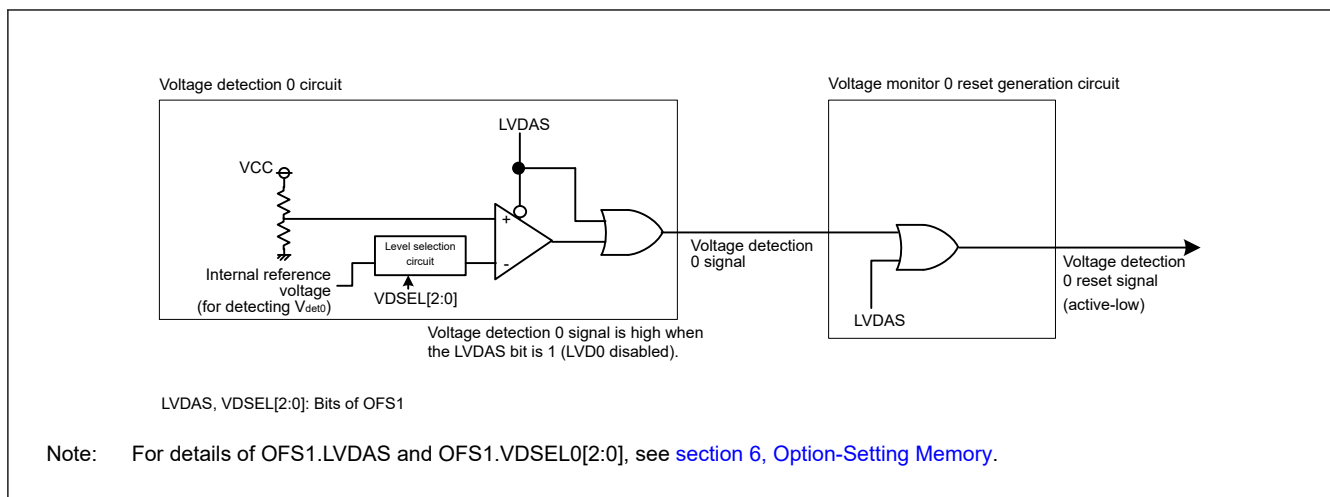


Figure 7.1 Block diagram of voltage monitor 0 reset generation circuit

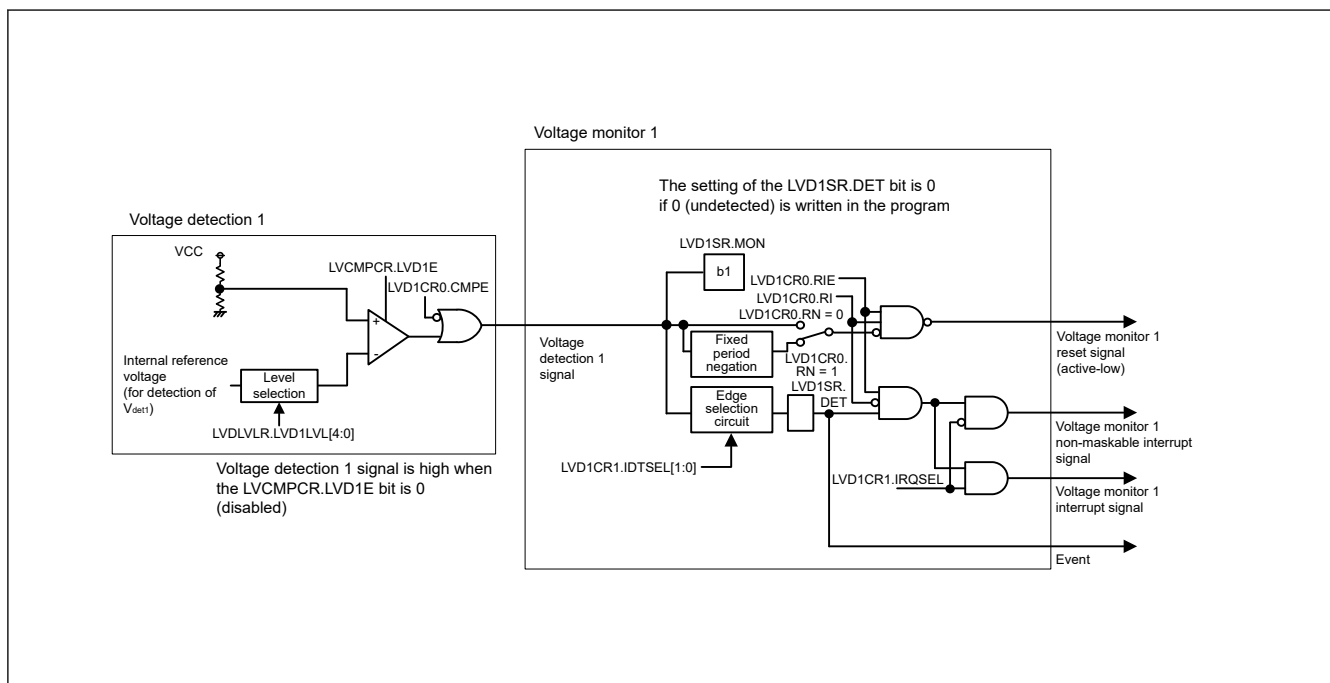


Figure 7.2 Block diagram of voltage monitor 1 interrupt and reset circuit

7.2.2 LVDLVLRL : Voltage Detection Level Select Register

Base address: SYSC = 0x4001_E000

Offset address: 0x418

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	LVD2LVL[2:0]			LVD1LVL[4:0]				
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
4:0	LVD1LVL[4:0]	Voltage Detection 1 Level Select (Standard voltage during fall in voltage)*1 0x00: V_{det1_0} 0x01: V_{det1_1} 0x02: V_{det1_2} 0x03: V_{det1_3} 0x04: V_{det1_4} 0x05: V_{det1_5} 0x06: V_{det1_6} 0x07: V_{det1_7} 0x08: V_{det1_8} 0x09: V_{det1_9} 0x0A: V_{det1_A} 0x0B: V_{det1_B} 0x0C: V_{det1_C} 0x0D: V_{det1_D} 0x0E: V_{det1_E} 0x0F: V_{det1_F} Others: Setting prohibited	R/W
7:5	LVD2LVL[2:0]	Voltage Detection 2 Level Select (Standard voltage during fall in voltage)*1 0 0 0: V_{det2_0} 0 0 1: V_{det2_1} 0 1 0: V_{det2_2} 0 1 1: V_{det2_3} Others: Setting prohibited	R/W

Note: Set the PRCR.PRC3 bit to 1 (write enabled) before rewriting this register.

Note 1. See [section 41, Electrical Characteristics](#) for the voltage levels to be detected. Keep the initial value if LVD1 is not used. When using LVD0, set the detection voltage of LVD1 higher than the detection voltage of LVD0. The LVD1LVL [4:0] bits can be rewritten only once after reset.

The contents of the LVDLVLRL register can only be changed if the LVCMPCLR.LVD1E and LVCMPCLR.LVD2E bits (voltage detection n circuit disable, n = 1, 2) are both 0. Do not set LVD detectors 1 and 2 to the same voltage detection level.

7.2.3 LVD1CR0 : Voltage Monitor 1 Circuit Control Register 0

Base address: SYSC = 0x4001_E000

Offset address: 0x41A

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	RN	RI	—	—	CMPE	—	RIE	
Value after reset:	1	0	0	0	x	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	RIE	Voltage Monitor 1 Interrupt/Reset Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable	R/W
1	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
2	CMPE	Voltage Monitor 1 Circuit Comparison Result Output Enable 0: Disable voltage monitor 1 circuit comparison result output 1: Enable voltage monitor 1 circuit comparison result output	R/W
3	—	The read value is undefined. The write value should be 1.	R/W
5:4	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
6	RI	Voltage Monitor 1 Circuit Mode Select 0: Generate voltage monitor 1 interrupt on V_{det1} crossing 1: Enable voltage monitor 1 reset when the voltage falls to and below V_{det1}	R/W
7	RN	Voltage Monitor 1 Reset Negate Select 0: Negate after a stabilization time (t_{LVD1}) when $VCC > V_{det1}$ is detected 1: Negate after a stabilization time (t_{LVD1}) on assertion of the LVD1 reset	R/W

Note: Set the PRCR.PRC3 bit to 1 (write enabled) before rewriting this register.

RIE bit (Voltage Monitor 1 Interrupt/Reset Enable)

The RIE bit enables or disables voltage monitor 1 interrupt/reset. Ensure that neither a voltage monitor 1 interrupt nor a voltage monitor 1 reset is generated during programming or erasure of the flash memory.

CMPE bit (Voltage Monitor 1 Circuit Comparison Result Output Enable)

The CMPE bit enables or disables voltage monitor 1 circuit comparison result output. Set the CMPE bit to 1 after the voltage detection 1 circuit enables and stabilization time ($t_{d(E-A)}$) elapses. When stopping the voltage detection 1 circuit, disable the voltage detection 1 circuit after setting the CMPE bit is 0.

RN bit (Voltage Monitor 1 Reset Negate Select)

If the RN bit is set to 1 (negation follows a stabilization time on assertion of the LVD1 reset signal), set the MOCO.RCSTP bit to 0 (the MOCO operates). In addition, for a transition to Software Standby mode, the only possible value for the RN bit is 0 (negation follows stabilization time when $VCC > V_{det1}$ is detected). Do not set the RN bit to 1 when this is the case.

7.2.4 LVD2CR0 : Voltage Monitor 2 Circuit Control Register 0

Base address: SYSC = 0x4001_E000

Offset address: 0x41B

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	RN	RI	—	—	CMPE	—	RIE	

Value after reset: 1 0 0 0 x 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	RIE	Voltage Monitor 2 Interrupt/Reset Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable	R/W
1	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
2	CMPE	Voltage Monitor 2 Circuit Comparison Result Output Enable 0: Disable voltage monitor 2 circuit comparison result output 1: Enable voltage monitor 2 circuit comparison result output	R/W
3	—	The read value is undefined. The write value should be 1.	R/W
5:4	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
6	RI	Voltage Monitor 2 Circuit Mode Select 0: Generate voltage monitor 2 interrupt on V_{det2} crossing 1: Enable voltage monitor 2 reset when the voltage falls to and below V_{det2}	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7	RN	Voltage Monitor 2 Reset Negate Select 0: Negate after a stabilization time (t_{LVD2}) when $VCC > V_{det2}$ is detected 1: Negate after a stabilization time (t_{LVD2}) on assertion of the LVD2 reset	R/W

Note: Set the PRCR.PRC3 bit to 1 (write enabled) before rewriting this register.

RIE bit (Voltage Monitor 2 Interrupt/Reset Enable)

The RIE bit enables or disables the voltage monitor 2 interrupt/reset. Ensure that neither a voltage monitor 2 interrupt nor a voltage monitor 2 reset is generated during programming or erasure of the flash memory.

CMPE bit (Voltage Monitor 2 Circuit Comparison Result Output Enable)

The CMPE bit enables or disables voltage monitor 2 circuit comparison result output. Set the CMPE bit to 1 after the voltage detection 2 circuit enables and stabilization time ($t_{d(E-A)}$) elapses. When stopping the voltage detection 2 circuit, disable the voltage detection 2 circuit after setting the CMPE bit is 0.

RN bit (Voltage Monitor 2 Reset Negate Select)

If the RN bit is set to 1 (negating LVD2 reset in a specified time after its assertion), set the MOCOCCR.MCSTP bit to 0 (the MOCO operates). Additionally, for a transition to Software Standby mode, the only possible value for the RN bit is 0 (negation follows a stabilization time when $VCC > V_{det2}$ is detected). Do not set the RN bit to 1 (negation follows a stabilization time after assertion of the LVD2 reset signal) when this is the case.

7.2.5 LVD1CR1 : Voltage Monitor 1 Circuit Control Register

Base address: SYSC = 0x4001_E000

Offset address: 0x0E0

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	IRQSEL	IDTSEL[1:0]	

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
1:0	IDTSEL[1:0]	Voltage Monitor 1 Interrupt Generation Condition Select 0 0: When $VCC \geq V_{det1}$ (rise) is detected 0 1: When $VCC < V_{det1}$ (fall) is detected 1 0: When fall and rise are detected 1 1: Settings prohibited	R/W
2	IRQSEL	Voltage Monitor 1 Interrupt Type Select 0: Non-maskable interrupt 1: Maskable interrupt*1	R/W
7:3	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note: Set the PRCR.PRC3 bit to 1 (writing enabled) before rewriting this register.

Note 1. When enabling maskable interrupts, do not change the NMIER.LVD1EN bit value in the ICU from the reset state.

7.2.6 LVD1SR : Voltage Monitor 1 Circuit Status Register

Base address: SYSC = 0x4001_E000

Offset address: 0x0E1

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	MON	DET

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	DET	Voltage Monitor 1 Voltage Variation Detection Flag 0: Not detected 1: V_{det1} crossing is detected	R/W ^{*1}
1	MON	Voltage Monitor 1 Signal Monitor Flag 0: $VCC < V_{det1}$ 1: $VCC \geq V_{det1}$ or MON is disabled	R
7:2	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note: Set the PRCR.PRC3 bit to 1 (write enabled) before rewriting this register.

Note 1. Only 0 can be written to this bit. After writing 0 to this bit, 2 system clock cycles are required for the bit to be read as 0.

DET flag (Voltage Monitor 1 Voltage Variation Detection Flag)

The DET flag is enabled when the LVCMPCR.LVD1E bit is 1 (voltage detection 1 circuit enabled) and the LVD1CR0.CMPE bit is 1 (voltage monitor 1 circuit comparison result output enabled).

When detecting V_{det1} , set the DET flag to 0 after setting LVD1CR0.RIE is 0 (disabled). When setting LVD1CR0.RIE bit to 1 (enabled) after setting it to 0, wait for 2 or more PCLKB cycles which have elapsed.

MON flag (Voltage Monitor 1 Signal Monitor Flag)

The MON flag is enabled when the LVCMPCR.LVD1E bit is 1 (voltage detection 1 circuit enabled) and the LVD1CR0.CMPE bit is 1 (voltage monitor 1 circuit comparison result output enabled).

7.2.7 LVD2CR1 : Voltage Monitor 2 Circuit Control Register 1

Base address: SYSC = 0x4001_E000

Offset address: 0x0E2

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	IRQSEL	IDTSEL[1:0]	
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
1:0	IDTSEL[1:0]	Voltage Monitor 2 Interrupt Generation Condition Select 0 0: When $VCC \geq V_{det2}$ (rise) is detected 0 1: When $VCC < V_{det2}$ (fall) is detected 1 0: When fall and rise are detected 1 1: Settings prohibited	R/W
2	IRQSEL	Voltage Monitor 2 Interrupt Type Select 0: Non-maskable interrupt 1: Maskable interrupt ^{*1}	R/W
7:3	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note: Set the PRCR.PRC3 bit to 1 (writing enabled) before rewriting this register.

Note 1. When enabling maskable interrupts, do not change the NMIER.LVD2EN bit value in the ICU from the reset state.

7.2.8 LVD2SR : Voltage Monitor 2 Circuit Status Register

Base address: SYSC = 0x4001_E000

Offset address: 0x0E3

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	MON	DET
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	DET	Voltage Monitor 2 Voltage Variation Detection Flag 0: Not detected 1: V_{det2} crossing is detected	R/W ^{*1}
1	MON	Voltage Monitor 2 Signal Monitor Flag 0: $VCC < V_{det2}$ 1: $VCC \geq V_{det2}$ or MON is disabled	R
7:2	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note: Set the PRCR.PRC3 bit to 1 (write enabled) before rewriting this register.

Note 1. Only 0 can be written to this bit. After writing 0 to this bit, 2 system clock cycles are required for the bit to be read as 0.

DET flag (Voltage Monitor 2 Voltage Variation Detection Flag)

The DET flag is enabled when the LVCMPCR.LVD2E bit is 1 (voltage detection 2 circuit enabled) and the LVD2CR0.CMPE bit is 1 (voltage monitor 2 circuit comparison result output enabled).

When detecting V_{det2} , set the DET flag to 0 after setting LVD2CR0.RIE is 0 (disabled). When setting LVD2CR0.RIE bit to 1 (enabled) after setting it to 0, wait for 2 or more PCLKB cycles which have elapsed.

MON flag (Voltage Monitor 2 Signal Monitor Flag)

The MON flag is enabled when the LVCMPCR.LVD2E bit is 1 (voltage detection 2 circuit enabled) and the LVD2CR0.CMPE bit is 1 (voltage monitor 2 circuit comparison result output enabled).

7.3 VCC Input Voltage Monitor

7.3.1 Monitoring V_{det0}

The comparison results from voltage monitor 0 are not available for reading.

7.3.2 Monitoring V_{det1}

Table 7.2 shows the procedures to set up monitoring against V_{det1} . After the settings are complete, the comparison results from voltage monitor 1 can be monitored with the LVD1SR.MON flag.

Table 7.2 Procedures to set up monitoring against V_{det1}

Step	Monitoring the comparison results from voltage monitor 1	
Setting up the voltage detection 1 circuit	1	Set LVCMPCR.LVD1E = 0 to disable voltage detection 1 before writing to the LVDLVLR.LVD1LVL[4:0] bits.
	2	Select the detection voltage in the LVDLVLR.LVD1LVL[4:0] bits.
	3	Set LVCMPCR.LVD1E = 1 to enable the voltage detection 1 circuit.
	4	Wait for at least $t_{d(E-A)}$ for the LVD1 operation stabilization time after LVD1 is enabled.
Enabling output	5	Set LVD1CR0.CMPE = 1 to enable output of the comparison results from voltage monitor 1.

7.3.3 Monitoring V_{det2}

Table 7.3 shows the procedures to set up monitoring against V_{det2} . After the settings are complete, the comparison results from voltage monitor 2 can be monitored in the LVD2SR.MON flag.

Table 7.3 Procedures to set up monitoring against V_{det2}

Step	Monitoring the results of comparison by voltage monitor 2	
Setting up the voltage detection 2 circuit	1	Set LVCMPCR.LVD2E = 0 to disable voltage detection 2 before writing to the LVDLVLR.LVD2LVL[2:0] bits.
	2	Select the detection voltage in the LVDLVLR.LVD2LVL[2:0] bits.
	3	Set LVCMPCR.LVD2E = 1 to enable the voltage detection 2 circuit.
	4	Wait for at least $t_{d(E-A)}$ for the LVD2 operation stabilization time after LVD2 is enabled.
Enabling output	5	Set LVD2CR0.CMPE = 1 to enable output of the comparison results from voltage monitor 2.

7.4 Reset from Voltage Monitor 0

When using the reset from voltage monitor 0, clear the OFS1.LVDAS bit to 0 to enable the voltage monitor 0 reset after a reset. However, at boot mode, the reset from voltage monitor 0 is disabled regardless of the value of the OFS1.LVDAS bit.

Figure 7.4 shows an example of operations for a voltage monitor 0 reset.

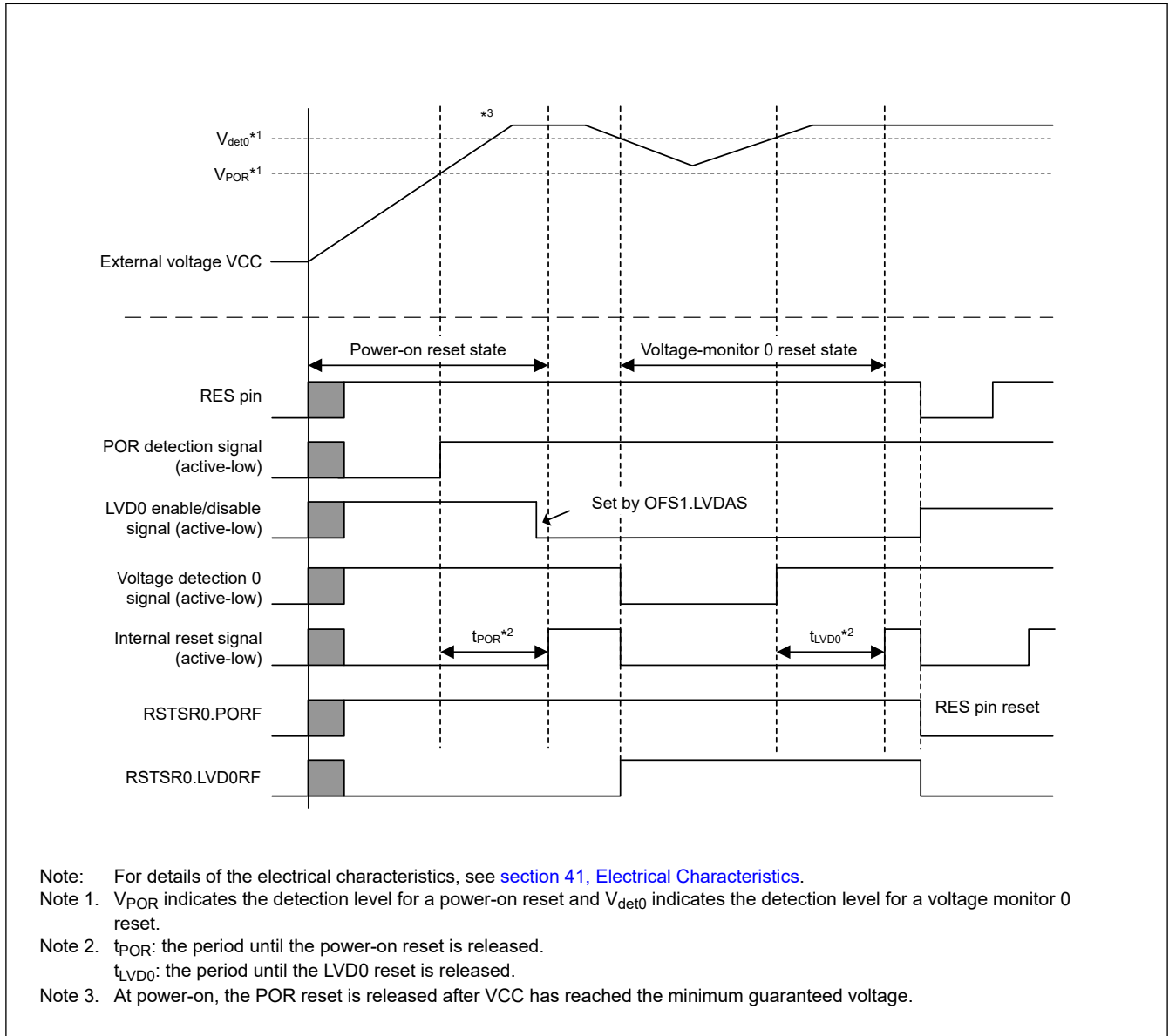


Figure 7.4 Example of voltage monitor 0 reset operation

7.5 Interrupt and Reset from Voltage Monitor 1

An interrupt or reset can be generated in response to the comparison results from the voltage monitor 1 circuit.

[Table 7.4](#) shows the procedures for setting bits related to the voltage monitor 1 interrupt/reset so that voltage monitoring occurs. [Table 7.5](#) shows the procedures for setting bits related to the voltage monitor 1 interrupt/reset so that voltage monitoring stops. [Figure 7.5](#) shows an example of operations for a voltage monitor 1 interrupt. For the operation of the voltage monitor 1 reset, see [Figure 5.2](#) in [section 5, Resets](#).

When using the voltage monitor 1 circuit in Software Standby mode, set up the circuit using the procedures in this section.

(1) Setting in Software Standby mode

- When $V_{CC} > V_{det1}$ is detected, negate the voltage monitor 1 reset signal (LVD1CR0.RN = 0) following a stabilization time.

Table 7.4 Procedures for setting bits related to voltage monitor 1 interrupt and voltage monitor 1 reset so that voltage monitoring occurs

Step	Voltage monitor 1 interrupt (voltage monitor 1 ELC event output)		Voltage monitor 1 reset
Setting up the voltage detection 1 circuit	1	Set LVCMPCR.LVD1E = 0 to disable voltage detection 1 before writing to the LVDLVLRL register.	
	2	Select the detection voltage in the LVDLVLRL.LVD1LVL[4:0] bits.	
	3	Set LVCMPCR.LVD1E = 1 to enable the voltage detection 1 circuit.	
	4	Wait for at least $t_{d(E-A)}$ for the LVD1 operation stabilization time after LVD1 is enabled.*1	
Setting up the voltage monitor 1 interrupt or reset	5	Set LVD1CR0.RI = 0 to select the voltage monitor 1 interrupt.	- Set LVD1CR0.RI = 1 to select the voltage monitor 1 reset. - Select the type of reset negation in the LVD1CR0.RN bit.
	6	- Select the interrupt request condition in the LVD1CR1.IDTSEL[1:0] bits. - Select the interrupt type in the LVD1CR1.IRQSEL bit.	—
Enabling output	7	Set LVD1SR.DET = 0.	
	8	Set LVD1CR0.RIE = 1 to enable the voltage monitor 1 interrupt or reset.*2	
	9	Set LVD1CR0.CMPE = 1 to enable output of the comparison results from voltage monitor 1.	

Note 1. Steps 5 to 8 can be performed during the wait time in step 4. For details on $t_{d(E-A)}$, see [section 41, Electrical Characteristics](#).

Note 2. Step 8 is not required if only the ELC event signal is to be output.

Table 7.5 Procedures for setting bits related to voltage monitor 1 interrupt and voltage monitor 1 reset so that voltage monitoring stops

Step	Voltage monitor 1 interrupt (voltage monitor 1 ELC event output), voltage monitor 1 reset	
Stopping the enabling output	1	Set LVD1CR0.CMPE = 0 to disable output of the comparison results from voltage monitor 1.
	2	Set LVD1CR0.RIE = 0 to disable the voltage monitor 1 interrupt or reset.*1
Stopping the voltage detection 1 circuit	3	Set LVCMPCR.LVD1E = 0 to disable the voltage detection 1 circuit.

Note 1. Step 2 is not required if only the ELC event signal is to be output.

If the voltage monitor 1 interrupt or reset setting is to be made again after it is used and stopped once, you can omit the following steps in the procedures for stopping and setting, depending on the conditions:

- Setting the voltage detection 1 circuit is not required if the settings for the circuit do not change.
- Setting the voltage monitor 1 interrupt or reset is not required if the settings for the voltage monitor 1 interrupt or voltage monitor 1 reset do not change.

[Figure 7.5](#) shows an example of the voltage monitor 1 interrupt operation.

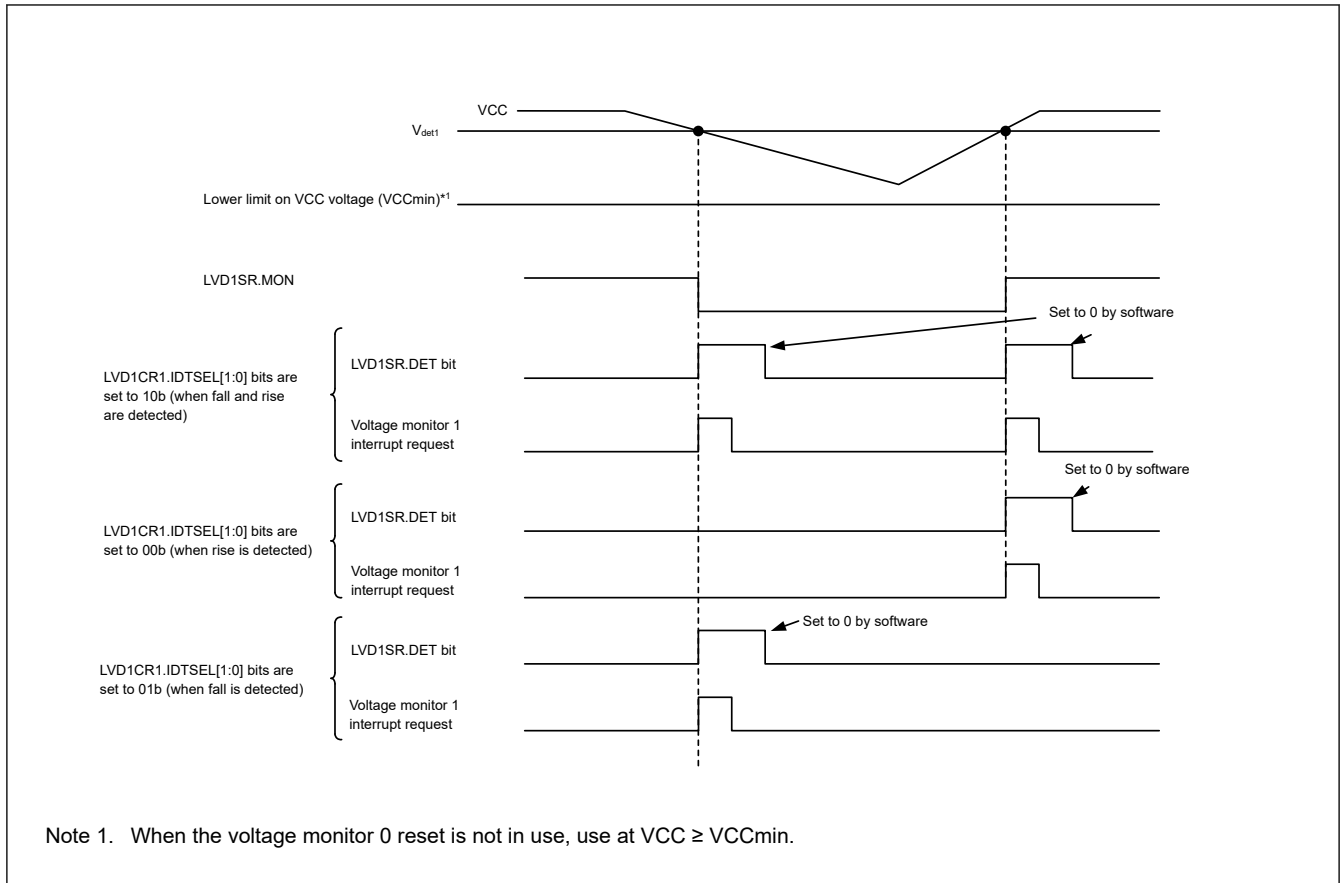


Figure 7.5 Example of voltage monitor 1 interrupt operation

7.6 Interrupt and Reset from Voltage Monitor 2

An interrupt or reset can be generated in response to the comparison results from the voltage monitor 2 circuit.

Table 7.6 shows the procedures for setting bits related to the voltage monitor 2 interrupt/reset so that voltage monitoring occurs. Table 7.7 shows the procedures for setting bits related to the voltage monitor 2 interrupt/reset so that voltage monitoring stops. Figure 7.6 shows an example of operations for a voltage monitor 2 interrupt. For the operation of the voltage monitor 2 reset, see Figure 5.2 in section 5, Resets.

When using the voltage monitor 2 circuit in Software Standby mode, set up the circuit with the following procedures.

(1) Setting in Software Standby mode

- When $VCC > V_{det2}$ is detected, negate the voltage monitor 2 reset signal ($LVD2CR0.RN = 0$) following a LVD2 stabilization time.

Table 7.6 Procedures for setting bits related to voltage monitor 2 interrupt and voltage monitor 2 reset so that voltage monitoring occurs (1 of 2)

Step	Voltage monitor 2 interrupt (voltage monitor 2 ELC event output)		Voltage monitor 2 reset
Setting up the voltage detection 2 circuit	1	Set $LVCMPCR.LVD2E = 0$ to disable voltage detection 2 before writing to the $LVDLVL$ register.	
	2	Select the detection voltage in the $LVDLVL.LVD2LVL[2:0]$ bits.	
	3	Set $LVCMPCR.LVD2E = 1$ to enable the voltage detection 2 circuit.	
	4	Wait for at least $t_{d(E-A)}$ for the LVD2 operation stabilization time after LVD2 is enabled.*1	

Table 7.6 Procedures for setting bits related to voltage monitor 2 interrupt and voltage monitor 2 reset so that voltage monitoring occurs (2 of 2)

Step		Voltage monitor 2 interrupt (voltage monitor 2 ELC event output)	Voltage monitor 2 reset
Setting up the voltage monitor 2 interrupt or reset	5	Set LVD2CR0.RI = 0 to select the voltage monitor 2 interrupt.	- Set LVD2CR0.RI = 1 to select the voltage monitor 2 reset. - Select the type of reset negation in the LVD2CR0.RN bit.
	6	- Select the interrupt request condition in the LVD2CR1.IDTSEL[1:0] bits. - Select the interrupt type in the LVD2CR1.IRQSEL bit.	—
Enabling output	7	Set LVD2SR.DET = 0.	
	8	Set LVD2CR0.RIE = 1 to enable the voltage monitor 2 interrupt or reset.*2	
	9	Set LVD2CR0.CMPE = 1 to enable output of the comparison results from voltage monitor 2.	

Note 1. Steps 5 to 8 can be performed during the wait time in step 4. For details on $t_{d(E-A)}$, see [section 41, Electrical Characteristics](#).

Note 2. Step 8 is not required if only the ELC event signal is to be output.

Table 7.7 Procedures for setting bits related to voltage monitor 2 interrupt and voltage monitor 2 reset so that voltage monitoring stops

Step		Voltage monitor 2 interrupt (voltage monitor 2 ELC event output), voltage monitor 2 reset
Settings to stop enabling output	1	Set LVD2CR0.CMPE = 0 to disable output of the comparison results from voltage monitor 2.
	2	Set LVD2CR0.RIE = 0 to disable the voltage monitor 2 interrupt or reset.*1
Stopping the voltage detection 2 circuit	3	Set LVCMPCR.LVD2E = 0 to disable the voltage detection 2 circuit.

Note 1. Step 2 is not required if only the ELC event signal is to be output.

If the voltage monitor 2 interrupt or reset setting is to be made again after it is used and stopped once, you can omit the following steps in the procedures for stopping and setting, depending on the conditions:

- Setting the voltage detection 2 is not required if the settings for the circuit do not change.
- Setting the voltage monitor 2 interrupt or reset is not required if the settings for the voltage monitor 2 interrupt or voltage monitor 2 reset do not change.

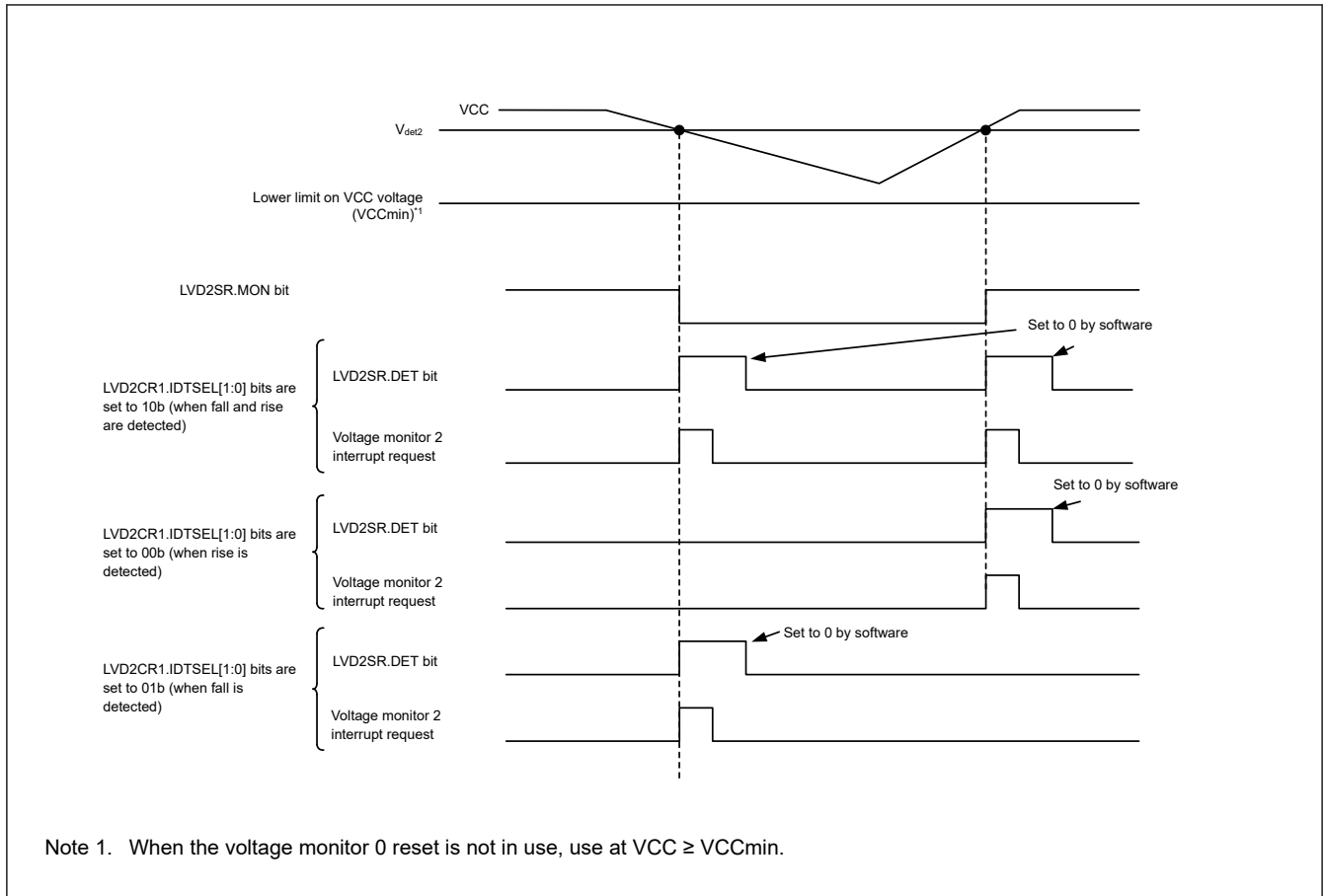


Figure 7.6 Example of voltage monitor 2 interrupt operation

7.7 Event Link Controller (ELC) Output

The LVD can output the event signals to the Event Link Controller (ELC).

(1) V_{det1} Crossing Detection Event

The LVD outputs the event signal when it detects that the voltage has passed the V_{det1} voltage while both the voltage detection 1 circuit and the voltage monitor 1 circuit comparison result output are enabled.

(2) V_{det2} Crossing Detection Event

The LVD outputs the event signal when it detects that the voltage has passed the V_{det2} voltage while both the voltage detection 2 circuit and the voltage monitor 2 circuit comparison result output are enabled.

When enabling the event link output function of the LVD, you must enable the LVD before enabling the LVD event link function of the ELC. To stop the event link output function of the LVD, you must stop the LVD before disabling the LVD event link function of the ELC.

7.7.1 Interrupt Handling and Event Linking

The LVD provides bits to separately enable or disable the voltage monitor 1 and 2 interrupts. When an interrupt source is generated and the interrupt is enabled by the interrupt enable bit, the interrupt signal is output to the CPU.

In contrast, as soon as an interrupt source is generated, an event link signal is output as the event signal to the other module through the ELC, regardless of the state of the interrupt enable bit.

It is possible to output voltage monitor 1 and 2 interrupts in Software Standby mode.

- When a V_{det1} or V_{det2} passage events is detected in Software Standby mode, event signals are not generated for the ELC because the clock is not supplied in Software Standby mode. Because the V_{det1} and V_{det2} passage detection flags

are saved, when the clock supply resumes after returning from Software Standby mode, the event signals for the ELC are output based on the state of the V_{det1} and V_{det2} detection flags.

8. Clock Generation Circuit

8.1 Overview

The MCU provides a clock generation circuit. [Table 8.1](#) and [Table 8.2](#) list the clock generation circuit specifications. [Figure 8.1](#) and [Figure 8.2](#) show a block diagram, and [Table 8.3](#) lists the I/O pins.

Table 8.1 Clock generation circuit specifications for the clock sources

Clock source	Description	Specification
Main clock oscillator (MOSC)	Resonator frequency	1 MHz to 20 MHz
	External clock input frequency	Up to 20 MHz
	External resonator or additional circuit	ceramic resonator, crystal
	Connection pins	EXTAL, XTAL
	Drive capability switching	Available
	Oscillation stop detection function	Available
Sub-clock oscillator (SOSC)	Resonator frequency	32.768 kHz
	External resonator or additional circuit	crystal resonator
	Connection pins	XCIN, XCOUT
	Drive capability switching	Available
High-speed on-chip oscillator (HOCO)	Oscillation frequency	24/32/48/64 MHz
	User trimming	Available
Middle-speed on-chip oscillator (MOCO)	Oscillation frequency	8 MHz
	User trimming	Available
Low-speed on-chip oscillator (LOCO)	Oscillation frequency	32.768 kHz
	User trimming	Available
IWDt-dedicated on-chip oscillator (IWDtLOCO)	Oscillation frequency	15 kHz
	User trimming	No
External clock input for SWD (SWCLK)	Input clock frequency	Up to 12.5 MHz

Table 8.2 Clock generation circuit specifications for the internal clocks (1 of 2)

Item	Clock source	Clock supply	Specification
System clock (ICLK)	MOSC ^{*3} /SOSC ^{*1} /HOCO/MOCO/LOCO	CPU, DTC, Flash, Flash-IF, SRAM	Up to 48 MHz Division ratios: 1/2/4/8/16/32/64 1 MHz to 48 MHz (P/E)
Peripheral module clock B (PCLKB)	MOSC ^{*3} /SOSC ^{*1} /HOCO/MOCO/LOCO	Peripheral modules (CAC, ELC, I/O Ports, KINT, POEG, GPT, AGTW, RTC, WDT, IWDt, SCI, I3C, SPI, SSIE, USBFS, USBCC, UArTA, CRC, ADC12, DOC, and TRNG)	Up to 32 MHz Division ratios: 1/2/4/8/16/32/64
Peripheral module clock D (PCLKD)	MOSC ^{*3} /SOSC ^{*1} /HOCO/MOCO/LOCO	Peripheral modules (GPT count clock, ADC12 conversion clock, and I3C internal operating clock)	Up to 64 MHz Division ratios: 1/2/4/8/16/32/64
AGTW clock (AGTSClk/AGTLCLK)	SOSC ^{*1} /LOCO	AGTW	32.768 kHz
CAN clock (CANMCLK)	MOSC ^{*3}	CAN	1 MHz to 20 MHz
USB clock (USBCLK)	HOCO	USBFS	48 MHz ^{*2}
UArTA Main clock (UArTAMCLK)	MOSC ^{*3}	UArTA	Up to 20 MHz
UArTA SOSC clock (UArTASCLK)	SOSC	UArTA	32.768 kHz

Table 8.2 Clock generation circuit specifications for the internal clocks (2 of 2)

Item	Clock source	Clock supply	Specification
UARTA LOCO clock (UARTALOCK)	LOCO	UARTA	32.768 kHz
UARTA HOCO clock (UARTAHOCK)	HOCO	UARTA	24/32/48/64 MHz
UARTA MOCO clock (UARTAMOCK)	MOCO	UARTA	8 MHz
CAC Main clock (CACMCLK)	MOSC ^{*3}	CAC	Up to 20 MHz
CAC Sub clock (CACSCCLK)	SOSC ^{*1}	CAC	32.768 kHz
CAC LOCO clock (CACLCLK)	LOCO	CAC	32.768 kHz
CAC MOCO clock (CACMOCLK)	MOCO	CAC	8 MHz
CAC HOCO clock (CACHCLK)	HOCO	CAC	24/32/48/64 MHz
CAC IWDTLOCO clock (CACILCLK)	IWDTLOCO	CAC	15 kHz
RTC clock (RTCSCLK ^{*1} /RTCS128CLK/RTCLCLK)	SOSC/LOCO	RTC	32.768 kHz / 128 Hz
IWDT clock (IWDTCLK)	IWDTLOCO	IWDT	15 kHz
SysTick timer clock (SYSTICCLK)	LOCO	SysTick timer	32.768 kHz
Clock/buzzer output (CLKOUT)	MOSC ^{*3} /SOSC ^{*1} /LOCO/MOCO/HOCO	CLKOUT pin	Up to 16 MHz Division ratios: 1/2/4/8/16/32/64/128
Serial wire clock (SWCLK)	SWCLK pin	OCD	Up to 12.5 MHz

Note: Restrictions on setting clock frequency: $ICLK \geq PCLKB$, $PCLKD \geq PCLKB$

PCLKB Restrictions on clock frequency ratio: (N: integer, and up to 64)

$ICLK:PCLKB = N:1$, $ICLK:PCLKD = N:1$ or $1:N$

Minimum ICLK frequency is 1 MHz in Programming/Erase (P/E) mode.

Note 1. This clock is not supplied in Software Standby mode when the RCR4.ROPSEL bit is 1.

Note 2. This USB clock (USBCLK) should be supplied the 48MHz from HOCO by Internal Clock Supply Architecture Type A.

Note 3. Using MOSC as a clock source in the Low-speed mode is prohibited.

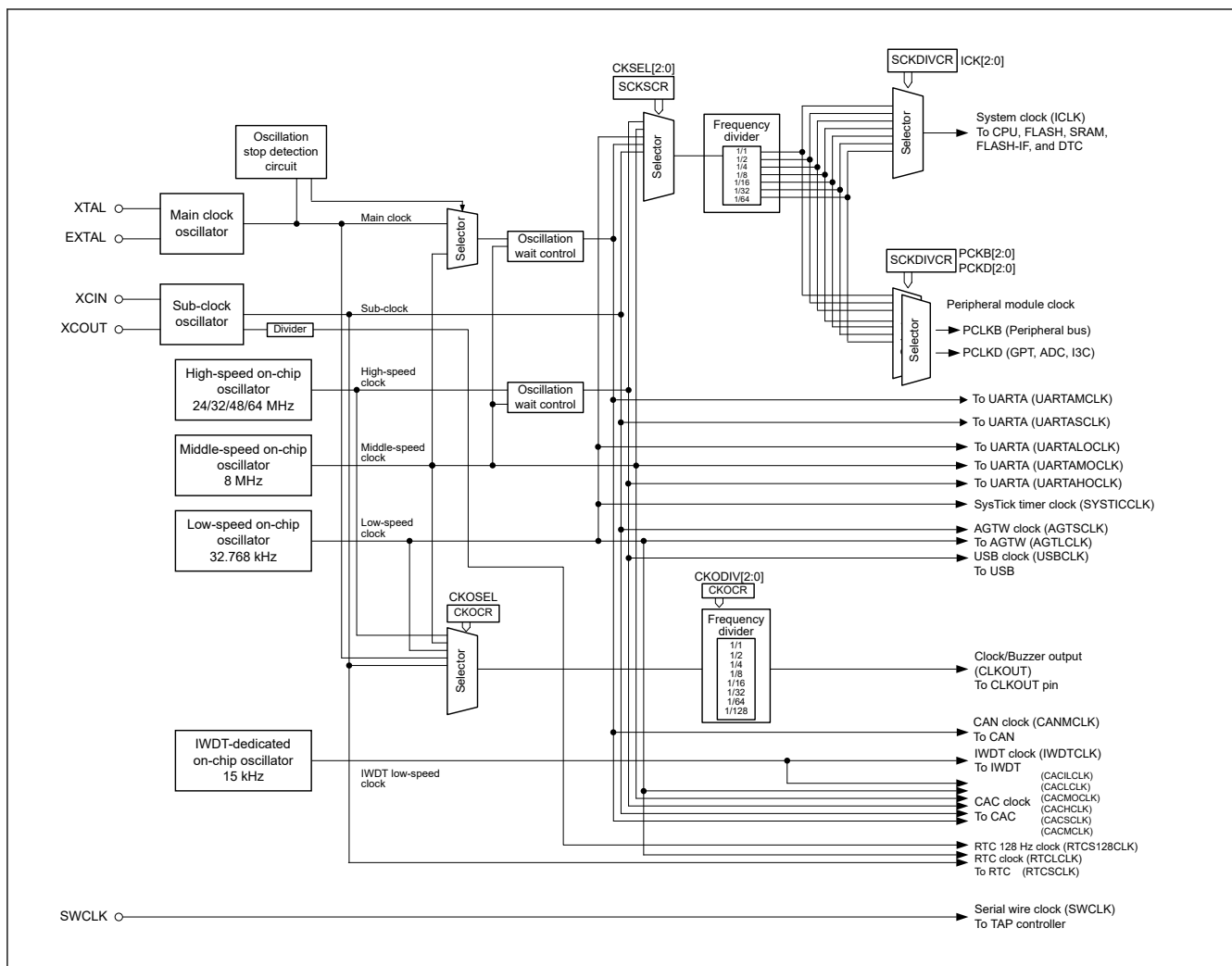


Figure 8.1 Clock generation circuit block diagram (Internal Clock Supply Architecture Type A)

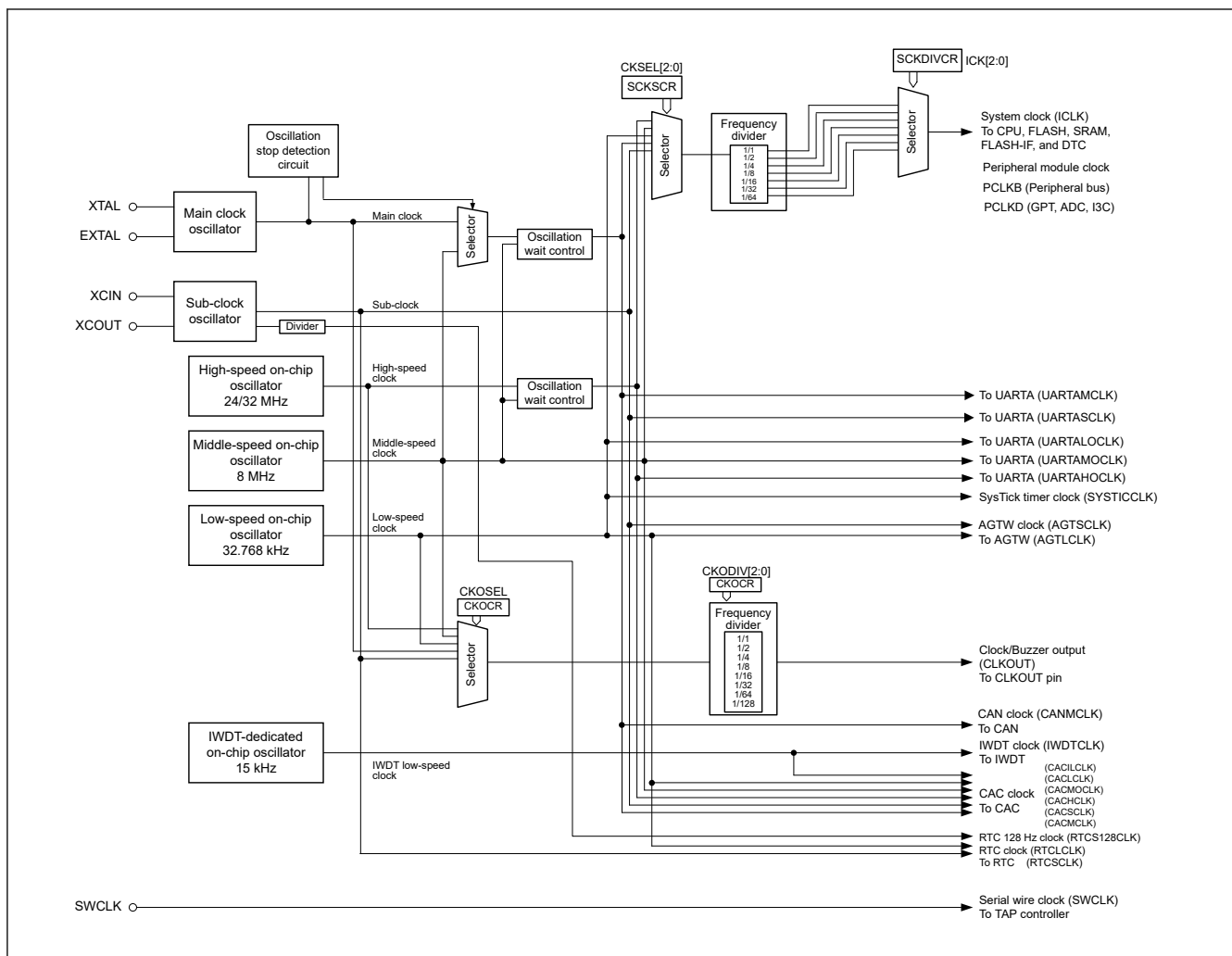


Figure 8.2 Clock generation circuit block diagram (Internal Clock Supply Architecture Type B)

Table 8.3 Clock generation circuit input/output pins

Pin name	I/O	Description
XTAL	Output	These pins are used to connect a crystal resonator. The EXTAL pin can also be used to input an external clock. For details, see section 8.3.2. External Clock Input .
EXTAL	Input	
XCIN	Input	These pins are used to connect a 32.768-kHz crystal resonator
XCOUT	Output	
CLKOUT	Output	This pin is used to output the CLKOUT/BUZZER clock
SWCLK	Input	This pin is used to input from the SWD

8.2 Register Descriptions

8.2.1 SCKDIVCR : System Clock Division Control Register

Base address: SYSC = 0x4001_E000

Offset address: 0x020

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	ICK[2:0]			—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	PCKB[2:0]			—	—	—	—	—	PCKD[2:0]		
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
2:0	PCKD[2:0]	Peripheral Module Clock D (PCLKD) Select ^{*2 *3} 0 0 0: × 1/1 0 0 1: × 1/2 0 1 0: × 1/4 0 1 1: × 1/8 1 0 0: × 1/16 1 0 1: × 1/32 1 1 0: × 1/64 Others: Settings prohibited	R/W
7:3	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
10:8	PCKB[2:0]	Peripheral Module Clock B (PCLKB) Select ^{*1 *3} 0 0 0: × 1/1 0 0 1: × 1/2 0 1 0: × 1/4 0 1 1: × 1/8 1 0 0: × 1/16 1 0 1: × 1/32 1 1 0: × 1/64 Others: Settings prohibited	R/W
23:11	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
26:24	ICK[2:0]	System Clock (ICLK) Select ^{*1 *2 *3} 0 0 0: × 1/1 0 0 1: × 1/2 0 1 0: × 1/4 0 1 1: × 1/8 1 0 0: × 1/16 1 0 1: × 1/32 1 1 0: × 1/64 Others: Settings prohibited	R/W
31:27	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note: For Internal Clock Supply Architecture Type B, the association between the frequencies of the system clock (ICLK), the peripheral module clock (PCLKB), and the peripheral module clock (PCLKD) should be ICLK : PCLKB : PCLKD = 1 : 1 : 1.
 Write the same value to ICK[2:0], PCKB[2:0], and PCKD[2:0] when setting SCKDIVCR in Internal Clock Supply Architecture Type B.

Note 1. The association between the frequencies of the system clock (ICLK) and the peripheral module clock (PCLKB) should be ICLK:PCLKB = N:1 (N: integer).

Note 2. The association between the frequencies of the system clock (ICLK) and the peripheral module clock (PCLKD) should be ICLK:PCLKD = N:1 or 1:N (N: integer).

Note 3. Selecting division by 1 to ICLK is prohibited when SCKSCR.CKSEL[2:0] bits select the system clock source that is faster than 32 MHz and MEMWAIT.MEMWAIT = 0.

The SCKDIVCR register selects the frequencies of the system clock (ICLK), and peripheral module clock (PCLKB, PCLKD).

8.2.2 SCKSCR : System Clock Source Control Register

Base address: SYSC = 0x4001_E000

Offset address: 0x026

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	CKSEL[2:0]		
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
2:0	CKSEL[2:0]	Clock Source Select*1 0 0 0: HOCO 0 0 1: MOCO 0 1 0: LOCO 0 1 1: Main clock oscillator (MOSC)*2 1 0 0: Sub-clock oscillator (SOSC) 1 0 1: Setting prohibited 1 1 0: Setting prohibited 1 1 1: Setting prohibited	R/W
7:3	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note: Set the PRCR.PRC0 bit to 1 (write enabled) before rewriting this register.

Note 1. Selecting a system clock source that is faster than 32 MHz (system clock source > 32 MHz) is prohibited when the SCKDIVCR.ICK[2:0] bits select division by 1 and MEMWAIT.MEMWAIT = 0.

Note 2. If the operating power control mode is the Low-speed mode, selecting the main clock oscillator as the system clock source is prohibited.

The SCKSCR register selects the clock source for the system clock.

CKSEL[2:0] bits (Clock Source Select)

The CKSEL[2:0] bits select the source for the following modules:

- System clock (ICLK)
- Peripheral module clocks (PCLKB and PCLKD)

The bits select from one of the following sources:

- Low-speed on-chip oscillator (LOCO)
- Middle-speed on-chip oscillator (MOCO)
- High-speed on-chip oscillator (HOCO)
- Main clock oscillator (MOSC)
- Sub-clock oscillator (SOSC)

The operating state of each clock source is controlled not only by the clock oscillation enable settings but also by the operating modes of the product. Some clock sources might be forcibly stopped depending on the product operating mode being used.

Check the operation state of clock sources in each product operating mode, and do not select the clock source to be stopped in SCKSCR. The clock sources should be switched when there are no occurring internal asynchronous interrupt. For details, see [section 10, Low Power Modes](#).

8.2.3 MEMWAIT : Memory Wait Cycle Control Register for Code Flash

Base address: SYSC = 0x4001_E000

Offset address: 0x031

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	MEM WAIT
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	MEMWAIT	Memory Wait Cycle Select for Code Flash 0: No wait 1: Wait	R/W
7:1	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/(W)

Note: Writing 0 to the MEMWAIT bit is prohibited when SCKDIVCR.ICK bit selects division by 1 and SCKSCR.CKSEL[2:0] bits select the system clock source that is faster than 32 MHz (ICLK > 32 MHz).

Note: For Internal Clock Supply Architecture Type B selected by OFS1.ICSATS bit, the MEMWAIT setting is prohibited.

The MEMWAIT register controls the wait cycle of code flash read access.

MEMWAIT bit (Memory Wait Cycle Select for Code Flash)

This bit selects the wait cycle of code flash read access. The wait cycle of code flash access is set to no wait (MEMWAIT = 0) after a reset is released.

Before writing to the MEMWAIT bit, check the ICLK frequency and operation power control mode. The following restrictions apply when setting the ICLK and operation power control mode, and the MEMWAIT bit:

- When setting the ICLK to faster than 32 MHz (ICLK > 32 MHz), set MEMWAIT to 1 while ICLK is 32 MHz or less (ICLK ≤ 32 MHz) and the operation power control mode is High-speed mode (OPCCR.OPCM[1:0] = 00b). Setting MEMWAIT to 1 is prohibited in operation modes other than High-speed mode. Setting the ICLK faster than 32 MHz is prohibited while MEMWAIT = 0.
- When setting the ICLK from 32 MHz or faster (ICLK > 32 MHz) to 32 MHz or less (ICLK ≤ 32 MHz), the ICLK frequency must be set to 32 MHz or less while MEMWAIT = 1. Setting MEMWAIT to 0 is prohibited while ICLK is faster than 32 MHz. Setting MEMWAIT to 1 is prohibited in operation modes other than High-speed mode. MEMWAIT can be set to 0 while the ICLK frequency is 32 MHz or less and operation power control mode is High-speed mode (OPCCR.OPCM[1:0] = 00b).

Table 8.4 MEMWAIT bit setting

MEMWAIT bit	MCU operation power control		
	Mode: except High-speed mode	High-speed mode	
		ICLK ≤ 32 MHz	ICLK > 32 MHz
0	✓	✓	—
1	—	✓	✓

Note: ✓ : Setting is possible.
— : Setting is not possible.

8.2.4 FLDWAITR : Memory Wait Cycle Control Register for Data Flash

Base address: FLCN = 0x407E_C000

Offset address: 0x3FC4

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	FLDW AIT1
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	FLDWAIT1	Memory Wait Cycle Select for Data Flash 0: 1 wait cycle (default) 1: 2 wait cycles	R/W
7:1	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note: Writing 0 to the FLDWAIT1 bit is prohibited when SCKDIVCR.ICK bit selects division by 1 and SCKSCR.CKSEL[2:0] bits select the system clock source that is faster than 32 MHz (ICLK > 32 MHz).

Note: For Internal Clock Supply Architecture Type B selected by OFS1.ICSATS bit, setting FLDWAIT1 is prohibited.

Note: There is no need to set FLDWAIT1 if data flash is not used.

The FLDWAITR register controls the wait cycle of data flash read access.

FLDWAIT1 bit (Memory Wait Cycle Select for Data Flash)

This bit selects the wait cycle of data flash read access. The wait cycle of data flash access is set to 1 wait (FLDWAIT1 = 0) after a reset is released.

The FLDWAIT1 settings for the data flash read access wait cycle are as follows:

- FLDWAIT1 = 0: 1 wait cycle
- FLDWAIT1 = 1: 2 wait cycles

Before writing to the FLDWAIT1 bit, check the ICLK frequency and operation power control mode. The following restrictions apply when setting the ICLK and operation power control mode, and the FLDWAIT1 bit:

- When setting the ICLK faster than 32 MHz (ICLK > 32 MHz), set FLDWAIT1 to 1 while ICLK is 32 MHz or less (ICLK ≤ 32 MHz) and the operation power control mode is High-speed mode (OPCCR.OPCM[1:0] = 00b). Setting FLDWAIT1 to 1 is prohibited in operation modes other than High-speed mode. Setting the ICLK faster than 32 MHz is prohibited while FLDWAIT1 = 0.
- When setting the ICLK from 32 MHz or faster (ICLK > 32 MHz) to 32 MHz or less (ICLK ≤ 32 MHz), the ICLK frequency must be set to 32 MHz or less while FLDWAIT1 = 1. Setting FLDWAIT1 to 0 is prohibited while ICLK is faster than 32 MHz. Setting FLDWAIT1 to 1 is prohibited in operation modes other than High-speed mode. FLDWAIT1 can be set to 0 while the ICLK frequency is 32 MHz or less and operation power control mode is High-speed mode (OPCCR.OPCM[1:0] = 00b).

Table 8.5 FLDWAIT1 bit setting

FLDWAIT1 bit	MCU operation power control		
	Mode: except High-speed mode	High-speed mode	
		ICLK ≤ 32 MHz	ICLK > 32 MHz
0	✓	✓	—
1	—	✓	✓

Note: ✓ : Setting is possible.
— : Setting is not possible.

Figure 8.3 shows an example flow when setting ICLK faster than 32 MHz.

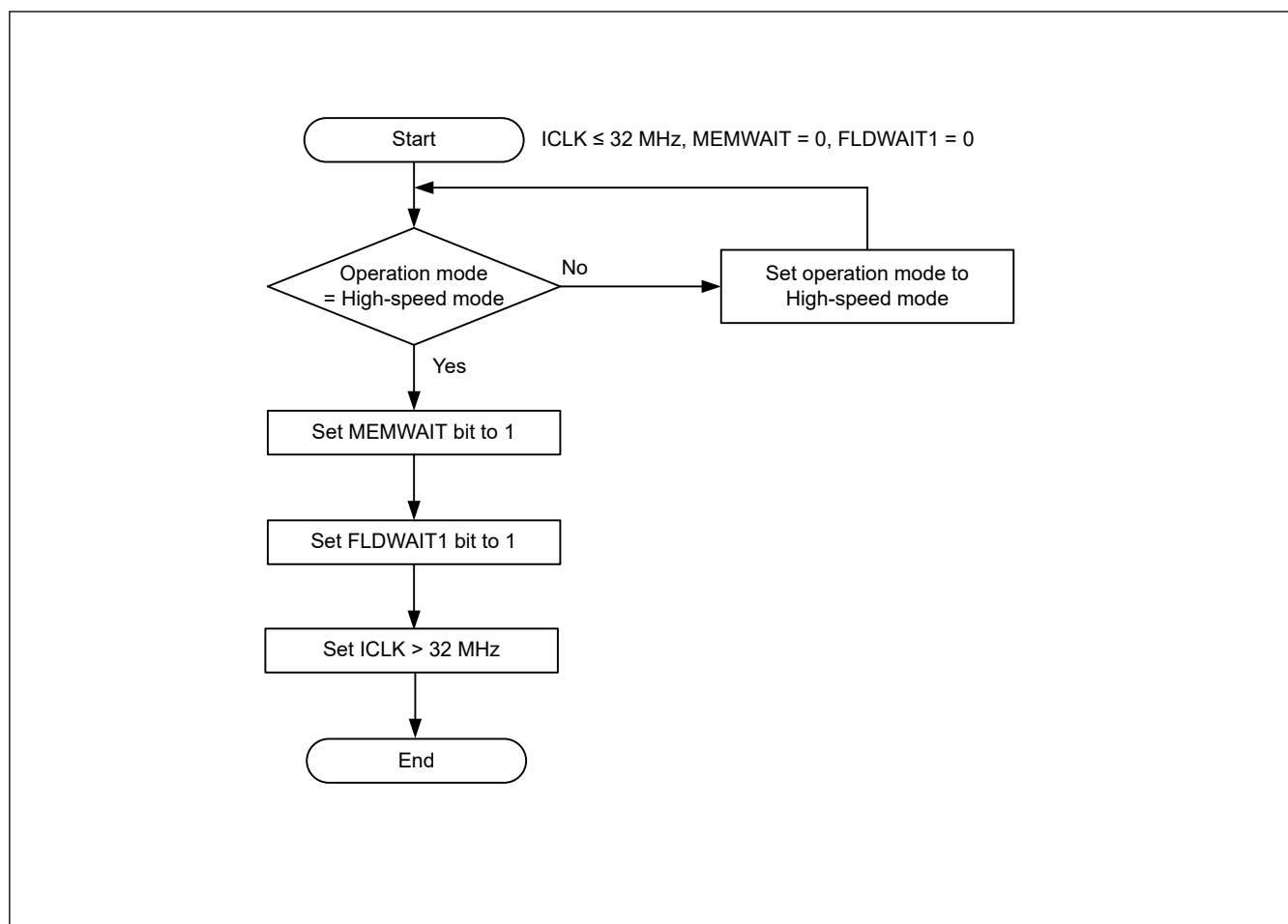


Figure 8.3 When setting ICLK > 32 MHz

Figure 8.4 shows an example flow when setting ICLK less than or equal to 32 MHz when ICLK is greater than 32 MHz.

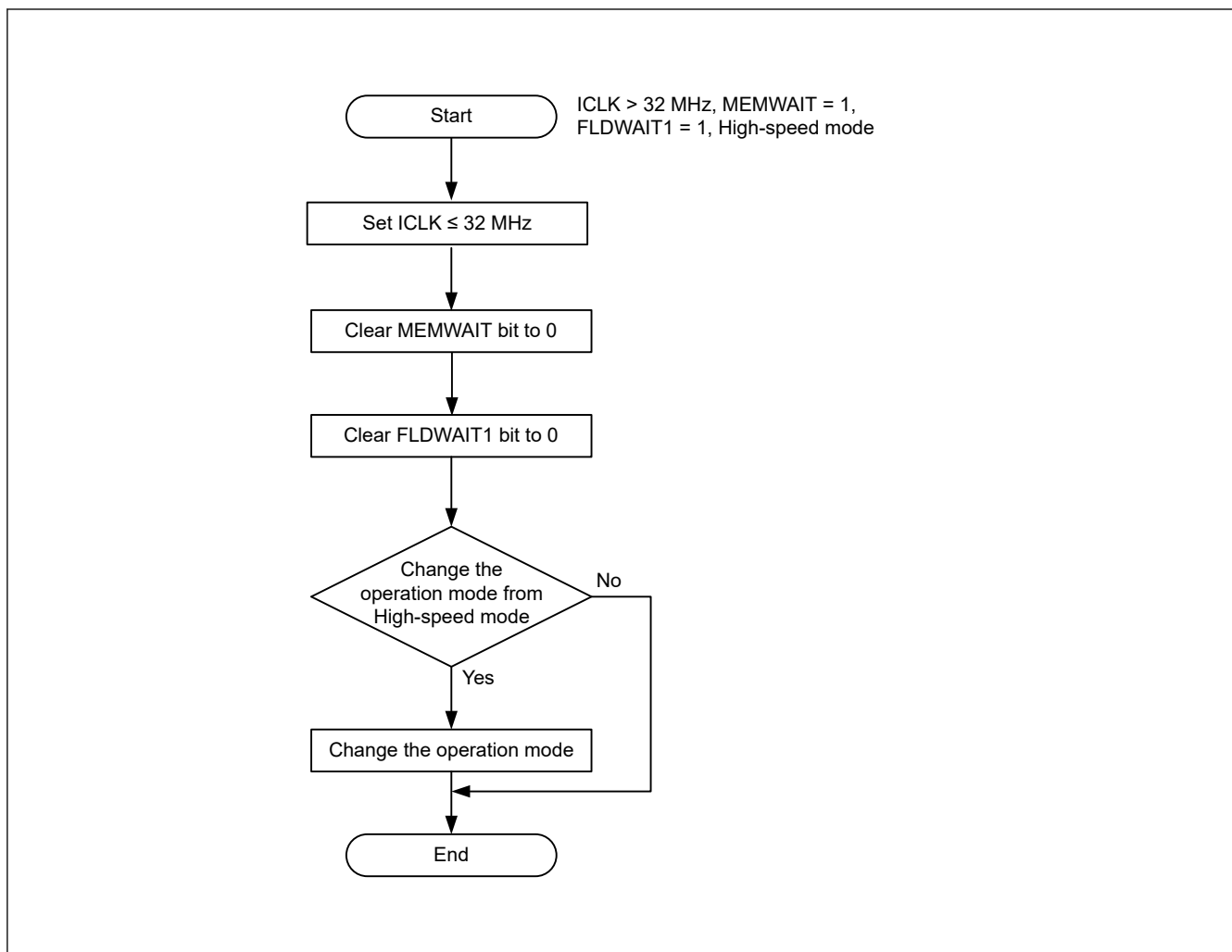


Figure 8.4 When setting ICLK ≤ 32 MHz from ICLK > 32 MHz

8.2.5 MOSCCR : Main Clock Oscillator Control Register

Base address: SYSC = 0x4001_E000

Offset address: 0x032

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	MOSTP

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	MOSTP	Main Clock Oscillator Stop 0: Operate the main clock oscillator*1 1: Stop the main clock oscillator	R/W
7:1	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note: Set the PRCR.PRC0 bit to 1 (write enabled) before rewriting this register.

Note 1. MOMCR register must be set before setting MOSTP to 0.

The MOSCCR register controls the main clock oscillator.

MOSTP bit (Main Clock Oscillator Stop)

The MOSTP bit starts or stops the main clock oscillator.

When changing the value of the MOSTP bit, execute subsequent instructions only after reading the bit to check that the value is updated.

When using the main clock, the Main Clock Oscillator Mode Oscillation Control Register (MOMCR) and the Main Clock Oscillator Wait Control Register (MOSCWTCR) must be set before setting MOSTP to 0. After setting the MOSTP bit to 0, confirm that the OSCSF.MOSCSF bit is set to 1 before using the main clock oscillator.

A fixed stabilization wait time is required after setting the main clock oscillator to start operation. A fixed wait time is also required for oscillation to stop after stopping the main clock oscillator.

The following restrictions apply when starting and stopping operation:

- After stopping the main clock oscillator, confirm that the OSCSF.MOSCSF bit is 0 before restarting the main clock oscillator
- Confirm that the main clock oscillator operates and that the OSCSF.MOSCSF bit is 1 before stopping the main clock oscillator
- Regardless of whether the main clock oscillator is selected as the system clock, confirm that the OSCSF.MOSCSF bit is set to 1 before executing a WFI instruction to place the MCU in Software Standby after operating the main clock oscillator mode.
- When a transition to Software Standby mode is to follow the setting to stop the main clock oscillator, confirm that the OSCSF.MOSCSF bit is set to 0 before executing the WFI instruction.

Writing 1 to MOSTP is prohibited under the following condition:

- SCKSCR.CKSEL[2:0] = 011b (system clock source = MOSC).

Operation of the main clock oscillator (MOSTP = 0) is prohibited in the Low-speed mode.

8.2.6 SOSCCR : Sub-Clock Oscillator Control Register

Base address: SYSC = 0x4001_E000

Offset address: 0x480

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	SOSTP
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	SOSTP	Sub Clock Oscillator Stop 0: Operate the sub-clock oscillator*1 1: Stop the sub-clock oscillator	R/W
7:1	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note: Set the PRCR.PRC0 bit to 1 (write enabled) before rewriting this register.

Note 1. The SOMCR register must be set before setting SOSTP to 0.

The SOSCCR register controls the sub-clock oscillator.

SOSTP bit (Sub Clock Oscillator Stop)

The SOSTP bit starts or stops the sub-clock oscillator. When changing the value of the SOSTP bit, only execute subsequent instructions after reading the bit to check that the value is updated. Use the SOSTP bit when using the sub-clock oscillator as the source for a peripheral module, for example the RTC. When using the sub-clock oscillator, set the Sub-Clock Oscillator Mode Control Register (SOMCR) before setting SOSTP to 0.

The following restrictions apply when starting and stopping the operation:

- After stopping the sub-clock oscillator, allow a stop interval of at least 5 SOSC clock cycles before restarting it
- After setting the SOSTP bit to 0, use the sub-clock only after the sub-clock oscillation stabilization time (t_{SUBOSCWT}) has elapsed.

- Regardless of whether the sub-clock oscillator is selected as the system clock, confirm that the sub-clock oscillation is stable before executing a WFI instruction to place the MCU in Software Standby mode
- When a transition to Software Standby mode is to follow the setting to stop the sub-clock oscillator, wait for at least 3 SOSC clock cycles before executing the WFI instruction.

Writing 1 to SOSTP is prohibited under the following condition:

- SCKSCR.CKSEL[2:0] = 100b (system clock source = SOSC).

8.2.7 LOCOCR : Low-Speed On-Chip Oscillator Control Register

Base address: SYSC = 0x4001_E000

Offset address: 0x490

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	LCST P
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	LCSTP	LOCO Stop 0: Operate the LOCO clock 1: Stop the LOCO clock	R/W
7:1	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note: Set the PRCR.PRC0 bit to 1 (write enabled) before rewriting this register.

The LOCOCR register controls the LOCO clock.

LCSTP bit (LOCO Stop)

The LCSTP bit starts or stops the LOCO clock.

After setting the LCSTP bit to 0 to start the LOCO clock, only use the clock after the LOCO clock-oscillation stabilization wait time (t_{LOCOWT}) elapses. A fixed stabilization wait time is required after setting the LOCO clock to start operation. A fixed wait time is also required after setting the LOCO clock to stop.

The following restrictions apply when starting and stopping operation:

- After stopping the LOCO clock, allow a stop interval of at least 5 LOCO clock cycles before restarting it
- Confirm that LOCO oscillation is stable before stopping the LOCO clock
- Regardless of whether the LOCO is selected as the system clock, confirm that LOCO oscillation is stable before executing a WFI instruction to place the MCU in Software Standby mode
- When a transition to Software Standby mode is to follow the setting to stop the LOCO clock, wait for at least 3 LOCO cycles before executing the WFI instruction.

Writing 1 to LCSTP is prohibited under the following condition:

- SCKSCR.CKSEL[2:0] = 010b (system clock source = LOCO).

Because the LOCO clock measures the wait time for other oscillators, it continues to oscillate while measuring this time, regardless of the setting in LOCOCR.LCSTP. As a result, the LOCO clock might be unintentionally supplied even when the LCSTP is set to stop.

8.2.8 HOCOCR : High-Speed On-Chip Oscillator Control Register

Base address: SYSC = 0x4001_E000

Offset address: 0x036

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	HCST P
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0/1*1

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	HCSTP	HOCO Stop 0: Operate the HOCO clock *3 1: Stop the HOCO clock	R/W*2
7:1	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note: Set the PRCR.PRC0 bit to 1 (write enabled) before rewriting this register.

Note: Set the HOCOWTCR.HSTS[2:0] bits to 011b before starting the HOCO clock by setting this register.

Note: Writing to OPCCR.OPCM[1:0] is prohibited while HOCOCR.HCSTP = 0 and OSCSF.HOCOSF = 0 (HOCO is in stabilization wait counting).

Note 1. The HCSTP bit value after a reset is 0 when the OFS1.HOCOEN bit is 0. It is 1 when the OFS1.HOCOEN bit is 1.

Note 2. Writing HCSTP is prohibited while OPCCR.OPCMTSF = 1 or SOPCCR.SOPCMTSF = 1 (during transition of operating power control mode)

Note 3. If you are using the HOCO (HCSTP = 0), set the OFS1.HOCOFREQ[2:0] bit to an optimum value.

The HOCOCR register controls the HOCO clock.

HCSTP bit (HOCO Stop)

The HCSTP bit starts or stops the HOCO clock.

After setting the HCSTP bit to 0 to start the HOCO clock, confirm that the OSCSF.HOCOSF is set to 1 before using the clock. When OFS1.HOCOEN is set to 0, confirm that OSCSF.HOCOSF is also set to 1 before using the HOCO clock. A fixed stabilization wait time is required after setting the HOCO clock to start operation. A fixed wait time is also required after setting the HOCO clock to stop.

The following limitations apply when starting and stopping operation:

- After stopping the HOCO clock, confirm that the OSCSF.HOCOSF is 0 before restarting the HOCO clock.
- Confirm that the HOCO clock operates and that the OSCSF.HOCOSF is 1 before stopping the HOCO clock.
- Regardless of whether the HOCO clock is selected as the system clock, confirm that the OSCSF.HOCOSF is set to 1 before executing a WFI instruction to place the MCU in Software Standby mode after setting HOCO operation with the HCSTP bit.
- When a transition to Software Standby mode is to follow the setting of the HOCO clock to stop, confirm that the OSCSF.HOCOSF is set to 0 after setting the HOCO clock and before executing the WFI instruction.

Writing 1 to HCSTP is prohibited under the following condition:

- SCKSCR.CKSEL[2:0] = 000b (system clock source = HOCO).

8.2.9 MOCOCR : Middle-Speed On-Chip Oscillator Control Register

Base address: SYSC = 0x4001_E000

Offset address: 0x038

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	MCST P
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	MCSTP	MOCO Stop 0: MOCO clock is operating 1: MOCO clock is stopped	R/W
7:1	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note: Set the PRCR.PRC0 bit to 1 (write enabled) before rewriting this register.

The MOCOCCR register controls the MOCO clock.

MCSTP bit (MOCO Stop)

The MCSTP bit starts or stops the MOCO clock.

After setting MCSTP to 0, use the MOCO clock only after the MOCO clock oscillation stabilization time (t_{MOCOWT}) elapses. A fixed stabilization wait time is required after setting the MOCO clock to start operation. A fixed wait time is also required for oscillation to stop after setting the MOCO clock to stop operation.

The following restrictions apply when starting and stopping the oscillator:

- After stopping the MOCO clock, allow a stop interval of at least 5 MOCO clock cycles before restarting it
- Confirm that MOCO clock oscillation is stable before stopping the MOCO clock
- Regardless of whether the MOCO clock is selected as the system clock, confirm that MOCO clock oscillation is stable before executing a WFI instruction to place the MCU in Software Standby mode
- When a transition to Software Standby mode is to follow the setting to stop the MOCO clock, wait for at least 3 MOCO clock cycles before executing the WFI instruction.

Writing 1 to MCSTP is prohibited under the following condition:

- SCKSCR.CKSEL[2:0] = 001b (system clock source = MOCO).

Writing 1 to the MCSTP bit (stopping the MOCO) is prohibited if oscillation stop detection is enabled in the Oscillation Stop Detection Control Register (OSTDCR.OSTDE).

8.2.10 OSCSF : Oscillation Stabilization Flag Register

Base address: SYSC = 0x4001_E000

Offset address: 0x03C

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	MOSC SF	—	—	HOCO SF
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0/1 ^{*1}

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	HOCOSF	HOCO Clock Oscillation Stabilization Flag 0: The HOCO clock is stopped or is not yet stable 1: The HOCO clock is stable, so is available for use as the system clock	R
2:1	—	These bits are read as 0.	R
3	MOSCSF	Main Clock Oscillation Stabilization Flag 0: The main clock oscillator is stopped (MOSTP = 1) or is not yet stable ^{*2} 1: The main clock oscillator is stable, so is available for use as the system clock	R
7:4	—	These bits are read as 0.	R

Note 1. The value after reset depends on the OFS1.HOCOEN setting.

When OFS1.HOCOEN = 1 (disable HOCO), the value after reset of HOCOSF is 0.

When OFS1.HOCOEN = 0 (enable HOCO), the HOCOSF value is set to 0 immediately after reset is released, and the HOCOSF value is set to 1 after the HOCO oscillation stabilization wait time elapses.

Note 2. This is true when an appropriate value is set in the Wait Control register for the main clock oscillator. If the wait time value is not sufficient, the oscillation stabilization flag is set to 1 and supply of the clock signal to the internal circuits starts before oscillation is stable.

The OSCSF register contains flags to indicate the operating status of the counters in the oscillation stabilization wait circuits for the individual oscillators. After oscillation starts, these counters measure the wait time until each oscillator output clock is supplied to the internal circuits. An overflow of a counter indicates that the clock supply is stable and available for the associated circuit.

HOCOSF flag (HOCO Clock Oscillation Stabilization Flag)

The HOCOSF flag indicates the operating status of the counter that measures the wait time for the high-speed clock oscillator (HOCO). When OFS1.HOCOEN is set to 0, confirm that OSCSF.HOCOSF is set to 1 before using the HOCO clock.

[Setting condition]

- When the HOCO clock is stopped and the HOCOCR.HCSTP bit is set to 0, and then the HOCO oscillation stabilization time is counted by the MOCO clock and supply of the HOCO clock within the MCU is started. For the HOCO oscillation stabilization time, see [section 41, Electrical Characteristics](#).

[Clearing condition]

- When the HOCO clock is operating and then is deactivated because the HOCOCR.HCSTP bit is set to 1.

MOSCSF flag (Main Clock Oscillation Stabilization Flag)

The MOSCSF flag indicates the operating status of the counter that measures the wait time for the main clock oscillator.

[Setting condition]

- When the main clock oscillator is stopped and the MOSCCR.MOSTP bit is set to 0, and then the number of MOCO clock cycles corresponding to the setting of the MOSCWTCR register is counted and supply of the main clock within the MCU is started.

[Clearing condition]

- When the main clock oscillator is operating and then is deactivated because the MOSCCR.MOSTP bit is set to 1.

8.2.11 OSTDCR : Oscillation Stop Detection Control Register

Base address: SYSC = 0x4001_E000

Offset address: 0x040

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	OSTDIE	—	—	—	—	—	—	OSTDIE
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	OSTDIE	Oscillation Stop Detection Interrupt Enable 0: Disable oscillation stop detection interrupt (do not notify the POEG) 1: Enable oscillation stop detection interrupt (notify the POEG)	R/W
6:1	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
7	OSTDE	Oscillation Stop Detection Function Enable 0: Disable oscillation stop detection function 1: Enable oscillation stop detection function	R/W

Note: Set the PRCR.PRC0 bit to 1 (write enabled) before rewriting this register.

The OSTDCR register controls the oscillation stop detection function.

OSTDIE bit (Oscillation Stop Detection Interrupt Enable)

The OSTDIE bit enables the oscillation stop detection function interrupt. It also controls whether oscillation stop detection is reported to the POEG.

If the Oscillation Stop Detection flag in the Oscillation Stop Detection Status Register (OSTDSR.OSTDF) requires clearing, set the OSTDIE bit to 0 before clearing OSTDF. Wait for at least 2 PCLKB cycles before setting the OSTDIE bit to 1. By

reading the I/O register whose access cycle number is defined by PCLKB, it is possible to secure waiting time of 2 or more cycles of PCLKB.

OSTDE bit (Oscillation Stop Detection Function Enable)

The OSTDE bit enables the oscillation stop detection function.

When the OSTDE bit is 1 (enabled), the MOCO stop bit (MOCOCR.MCSTP) is set to 0 and the MOCO operation starts. The MOCO clock cannot be stopped while the oscillation stop detection function is enabled. Writing 1 to the MOCOCR.MCSTP bit (MOCO stopped) is invalid.

When the Oscillation Stop Detection flag in the Oscillation Stop Detection Status Register (OSTDSR.OSTDF) is 1 (main clock oscillation stop detected), writing 0 to the OSTDE bit is invalid.

The OSTDE bit must be set to 0 before transitioning to Software Standby mode. To transition to Software Standby mode, first set the OSTDE bit to 0, then execute the WFI instruction.

The following restrictions apply when using the oscillation stop detection function:

In low-speed mode, selecting division by 1, 2 for ICLK, PCLKB, and PCLKD is prohibited

8.2.12 OSTDSR : Oscillation Stop Detection Status Register

Base address: SYSC = 0x4001_E000

Offset address: 0x041

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	OSTD F
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	OSTDF	Oscillation Stop Detection Flag 0: Main clock oscillation stop not detected 1: Main clock oscillation stop detected	R/W ^{*1}
7:1	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note: Set the PRCR.PRC0 bit to 1 (write enabled) before rewriting this register.

Note 1. This bit can only be set to 0. This bit is cleared to 0 by writing 0 after reading it as 1.

The OSTDSR register indicates the stop detection status of the main clock oscillator.

OSTDF flag (Oscillation Stop Detection Flag)

The OSTDF flag indicates the main clock oscillator status. When this flag is 1, it indicates that the main clock oscillation stop was detected. After this stop is detected, the OSTDF flag is not set to 0 even when the main clock oscillation is restarted. The OSTDF bit is cleared to 0 by writing 0 after reading it as 1.

At least 3 ICLK cycles of wait time are required between writing 0 to OSTDF and reading it as 0. If the OSTDF flag is set to 0 when the main clock oscillation is stopped, the OSTDF flag becomes 0 then returns to 1.

The OSTDF flag cannot be set to 0 under the following conditions:

- SCKSCR.CKSEL[2:0] = 011b (system clock source = MOSC).

The OSTDF flag must be set to 0 after switching the clock source to sources other than the main clock oscillator.

[Setting condition]

- The main clock oscillator is stopped when OSTDCR.OSTDE = 1 (oscillation stop detection function enabled).

[Clearing condition]

- 1 is read and then 0 is written when the SCKSCR.CKSEL[2:0] bits are neither 011b (system clock is MOSC) nor 101b.

8.2.13 MOSCWTCR : Main Clock Oscillator Wait Control Register

Base address: SYSC = 0x4001_E000

Offset address: 0x0A2

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	MSTS[3:0]			
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
3:0	MSTS[3:0]	Main Clock Oscillator Wait Time Setting 0x0: Wait time = 2 cycles (0.25 μ s) 0x1: Wait time = 1024 cycles (128 μ s) 0x2: Wait time = 2048 cycles (256 μ s) 0x3: Wait time = 4096 cycles (512 μ s) 0x4: Wait time = 8192 cycles (1024 μ s) 0x5: Wait time = 16384 cycles (2048 μ s) 0x6: Wait time = 32768 cycles (4096 μ s) 0x7: Wait time = 65536 cycles (8192 μ s) 0x8: Wait time = 131072 cycles (16384 μ s) 0x9: Wait time = 262144 cycles (32768 μ s) Others: Setting prohibited	R/W
7:4	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note: Set the PRCR.PRC0 bit to 1 (write enabled) before rewriting this register.

MSTS[3:0] bits (Main Clock Oscillator Wait Time Setting)

The MSTS[3:0] bits specify the oscillation stabilization wait time for the main clock oscillator.

Set the main clock oscillation stabilization time to a period longer than or equal to the stabilization time recommended by the oscillator manufacturer. When the main clock is input externally, set these bits to 0x0 because the oscillation stabilization time is not required.

The wait time set in these bits is counted using: 1 cycle (μ s) = $1/(f_{\text{MOCO\_typ}} [\text{MHz}]) = 1/8 = 0.125 (\mu\text{s})$ (typ.) ($f_{\text{MOCO\_typ}}$: typical frequency for MOCO) The MOCO clock automatically oscillates when necessary, regardless of the value of the MOCO.MCSTP bit. After the specified wait time elapses, supply of the main clock starts internally in the MCU, and the OSCSF.MOSCSF flag is set to 1. If the specified wait time is short, supply of the main clock starts before oscillation of the clock becomes stable.

Only rewrite the MOSCWTCR register when the MOSCCR.MOSTP bit is 1 and the OSCSF.MOSCSF flag is 0. Do not rewrite this register under any other conditions.

8.2.14 HOCOWTCR : High-Speed On-Chip Oscillator Wait Control Register

Base address: SYSC = 0x4001_E000

Offset address: 0x0A5

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	HSTS[2:0]		
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
2:0	HSTS[2:0]	HOCO Wait Time Setting 1 0 1: Value after reset. 0 1 1: Before starting high-speed on-chip oscillator by setting HOCOCCR.HCSTP bit, the HSTS[2:0] bits must be set to 011b beforehand. Wait time = 46 cycles (5.75 μ s) Wait time is calculated at MOCO = 8 MHz (typically 0.125 μ s). Others: Setting prohibited	R/W
7:3	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

HOCOWTCR controls the wait time until output of the signal from the high-speed on-chip oscillator to the internal circuits starts. Only write to HOCOWTCR when the HOCOCCR.HCSTP bit is 1 or the OSCSF.HOCOSF flag is 1. Do not write to this register under any other conditions.

HSTS[2:0] bits (HOCO Wait Time Setting)

The oscillation stabilization wait circuit measures the wait time and controls the clock supply in the MCU. When the high-speed on-chip oscillator starts, the oscillation stabilization wait circuit starts counting cycles of the middle-speed clock set in the HOCOWTCR register. The MCU clock supply is disabled until counting of the set number of cycles is complete. After counting completes, supply of the clock signal in the MCU starts and the OSCSF.HOCOSF flag is set to 1.

The oscillation stabilization wait circuit continues to count the middle-speed clock cycles regardless of the MOCOCCR.MCSTP bit setting. Hardware automatically controls the running and stopping of the middle-speed on-chip oscillator for wait time measurement.

8.2.15 MOMCR : Main Clock Oscillator Mode Oscillation Control Register

Base address: SYSC = 0x4001_E000

Offset address: 0x413

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	MOSEL	—	—	MODRV1	—	—	—

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
2:0	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
3	MODRV1	Main Clock Oscillator Drive Capability 1 Switching 0: 10 MHz to 20 MHz 1: 1 MHz to 10 MHz	R/W
5:4	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
6	MOSEL	Main Clock Oscillator Switching 0: Resonator 1: External clock input	R/W
7	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note: The EXTAL/XTAL pins are also used as ports. In the initial state, the pin is set as a port.

Note: The MOSCCR.MOSTP bit must be 1 (MOSC is stopped) before changing this register.

MODRV1 bit (Main Clock Oscillator Drive Capability 1 Switching)

The MODRV1 bit switches the drive capability of the main clock oscillator.

MOSEL bit (Main Clock Oscillator Switching)

The MOSEL bit switches the source for the main clock oscillator.

8.2.16 SOMCR : Sub-Clock Oscillator Mode Control Register

Base address: SYSC = 0x4001_E000

Offset address: 0x481

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	SODRV[1:0]	
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
1:0	SODRV[1:0]	Sub-Clock Oscillator Drive Capability Switching 0 0: Normal Mode 0 1: Low Power Mode 1 1 0: Low Power Mode 2 1 1: Low Power Mode 3	R/W
7:2	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

The SOMCR register must be modified when SOSCCR.SOSTP is 1 (SOSC is stopped).

SODRV[1:0] bits (Sub-Clock Oscillator Drive Capability Switching)

The SODRV[1:0] bits switch the drive capability of the sub-clock oscillator. The relationship between the drive capability and the setting value is as follows:

Normal Mode > Low Power Mode 1 > Low Power Mode 2 > Low Power Mode 3

8.2.17 SOMRG : Sub-Clock Oscillator Margin Check Register

Base address: SYSC = 0x4001_E000

Offset address: 0x482

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	SOSCMRG[1:0]	
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
1:0	SOSCMRG[1:0]	Sub Clock Oscillator Margin Check Switching 0 0: Normal current 0 1: Lower margin check 1 0: Upper margin check 1 1: Setting prohibited	R/W
7:2	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

SOSCMRG[1:0] bits (Sub Clock Oscillator Margin Check Switching)

The SOSCMRG[1:0] bits control the amp current in the SOSC for oscillation margin check.

8.2.18 CKOCR : Clock Out Control Register

Base address: SYSC = 0x4001_E000

Offset address: 0x03E

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	CKOEN		CKODIV[2:0]		—	CKOSEL[2:0]		
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
2:0	CKOSEL[2:0]	Clock Out Source Select 0 0 0: HOCO (value after reset) 0 0 1: MOCO 0 1 0: LOCO 0 1 1: MOSC 1 0 0: SOSC 1 0 1: Setting prohibited Others: Setting prohibited	R/W
3	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
6:4	CKODIV[2:0]	Clock Output Frequency Division Ratio 0 0 0: $\times 1/1$ 0 0 1: $\times 1/2$ 0 1 0: $\times 1/4$ 0 1 1: $\times 1/8$ 1 0 0: $\times 1/16$ 1 0 1: $\times 1/32$ 1 1 0: $\times 1/64$ 1 1 1: $\times 1/128$	R/W
7	CKOEN	Clock Out Enable 0: Disable clock out 1: Enable clock out	R/W

Note: Set the PRCR.PRC0 bit to 1 (write enabled) before rewriting this register.

CKOSEL[2:0] bits (Clock Out Source Select)

The CKOSEL[2:0] bits select the source of the clock to be output from the CLKOUT pin. When changing the clock source, set the CKOEN bit to 0.

CKODIV[2:0] bits (Clock Output Frequency Division Ratio)

The CKODIV[2:0] bits specify the clock division ratio. Set the CKOEN bit to 0 when changing the division ratio. The division ratio of the output clock frequency must be set to a value no higher than the characteristics of the CLKOUT pin output frequency. For details on the characteristics of the CLKOUT pin, see [section 41, Electrical Characteristics](#).

CKOEN bit (Clock Out Enable)

The CKOEN bit enables output from the CLKOUT pin.

When this bit is set to 1, the selected clock is output. When this bit is set to 0, low is output. When changing this bit, confirm that the clock out source clock selected in the CKOSEL[2:0] bits is stable. Otherwise, a glitch might be generated in the output.

Clear this bit before entering Software Standby mode if the selecting clock out source clock is stopped in that mode.

8.2.19 LOCOUTCR : LOCO User Trimming Control Register

Base address: SYSC = 0x4001_E000

Offset address: 0x492

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	LOCOUTRM[7:0]							

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7:0	LOCOUTRM[7:0]	LOCO User Trimming 0xF8: -8 0xF9: -7 ⋮ 0xFF: -1 0x00: 0 0x01: +1 ⋮ 0x06: +6 0x07: +7	R/W

Note: Set the PRCR.PRC0 bit to 1 (write enabled) before rewriting this register.

The LOCOUTCR register is added to the original LOCO trimming data.

The LOCO frequency can be trimmed with a resolution of approximately 3.9% per bit by setting a trimming value in the LOCOUTCR register.

Increasing the trimming value makes the LOCO frequency higher.

Decreasing the trimming value makes the LOCO frequency lower.

MCU operation is not guaranteed when LOCOUTCR is set to a value that causes the LOCO frequency to be outside the specification range. When LOCOUTCR is modified, the frequency stabilization time corresponds to the frequency stabilization time at the start of MCU operation. When the ratio of the LOCO frequency and the other oscillation frequency is an integer value, changing the LOCOUTCR value is prohibited.

Note: The frequency varies if the temperature and the power supply voltage change after frequency trimming. In such case, it is essential to perform trimming regularly or before high frequency accuracy is required.

8.2.20 MOCOUTCR : MOCO User Trimming Control Register

Base address: SYSC = 0x4001_E000

Offset address: 0x061

Bit position: 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0

Bit field: MOCOUTRM[7:0]

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7:0	MOCOUTRM[7:0]	MOCO User Trimming 0xF0: -16 0xF1: -15 ⋮ 0xFF: -1 0x00: 0 0x01: +1 ⋮ 0x0E: +14 0x0F: +15	R/W

Note: Set the PRCR.PRC0 bit to 1 (write enabled) before rewriting this register.

The MOCOUTCR register is added to the original MOCO trimming data.

The MOCO frequency can be trimmed with a resolution of approximately 1.2% per bit by setting a trimming value in the MOCOUTCR register.

Increasing the trimming value makes the MOCO frequency higher.

Decreasing the trimming value makes the MOCO frequency lower.

MCU operation is not guaranteed when MOCOUTCR is set to a value that causes the MOCO frequency to be outside the specification range. When MOCOUTCR is modified, the frequency stabilization wait time corresponds to the frequency

stabilization wait time at the start of the MCU operation. When the ratio of the MOCO frequency and the other oscillation frequency is an integer value, changing the MOCOUTCR value is prohibited.

Note: The frequency varies if the temperature and the power supply voltage change after frequency trimming. In such case, it is essential to perform trimming regularly or before high frequency accuracy is required.

8.2.21 HOCOUTCR : HOCO User Trimming Control Register

Base address: SYSC = 0x4001_E000

Offset address: 0x062

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	HOCOUTRM[7:0]							
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7:0	HOCOUTRM[7:0]	HOCO User Trimming 0xE0: -32 0xE1: -31 ⋮ 0xFF: -1 0x00: 0 0x01: +1 ⋮ 0x1E: +30 0x1F: +31	R/W

Note: Set the PRCR.PRC0 bit to 1 (write enabled) before rewriting this register.

Note: When HOCO is used as USBFS clock, writing any other value except 0x00 to HOCOUTCR is prohibited.

The HOCOUTCR register is added to the original HOCO trimming data.

The HOCO frequency can be trimmed with a resolution of approximately 0.028% per bit by setting a trimming value in the HOCOUTCR register.

Increasing the trimming value makes the HOCO frequency higher.

Decreasing the trimming value makes the HOCO frequency lower.

MCU operation is not guaranteed when HOCOUTCR is set to a value that causes the HOCO frequency to be outside the specification range. When HOCOUTCR is modified, the frequency stabilization wait time corresponds to the frequency stabilization wait time at the start of the MCU operation.

Note: The frequency varies if the temperature and the power supply voltage change after frequency trimming. In such case, it is essential to perform trimming regularly or before high frequency accuracy is required.

8.3 Main Clock Oscillator

To supply the clock signal to the main clock oscillator, use one of the following ways:

- Connect an oscillator
- Connect the input of an external clock signal.

8.3.1 Connecting a Crystal Resonator

Figure 8.5 shows an example of connecting a crystal resonator. A damping resistor (Rd) can be added, if required.

Because the resistor values vary according to the resonator and the oscillation drive capability, use values recommended by the resonator manufacturer. If the manufacturer recommends using an external feedback resistor (Rf), insert an Rf between EXTAL and XTAL by following the instructions.

When connecting a resonator to supply the clock, the frequency of the resonator must be in the frequency range of the resonator for the main clock oscillator as described in Table 8.1.

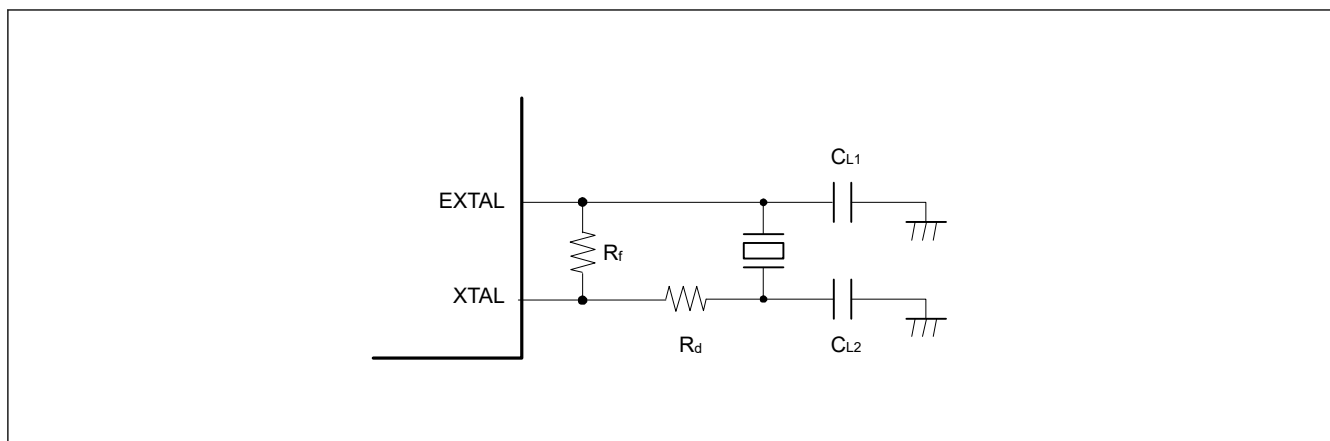


Figure 8.5 Example of a crystal resonator connection

Figure 8.6 shows an equivalent circuit of the crystal resonator.

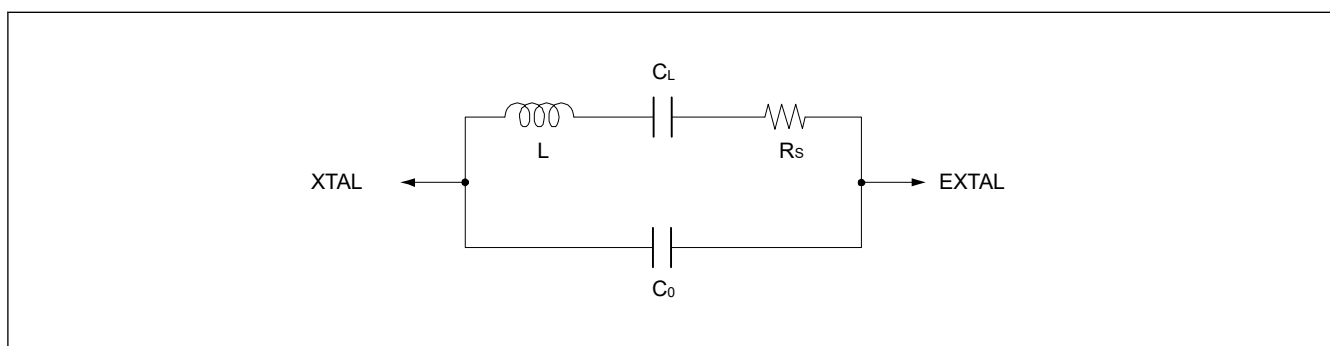


Figure 8.6 Equivalent circuit of the crystal resonator

8.3.2 External Clock Input

Figure 8.7 shows an example of connecting an external clock input. To operate the oscillator with an external clock signal, set the MOMCR.MOSEL bit to 1. The XTAL pin becomes high impedance.

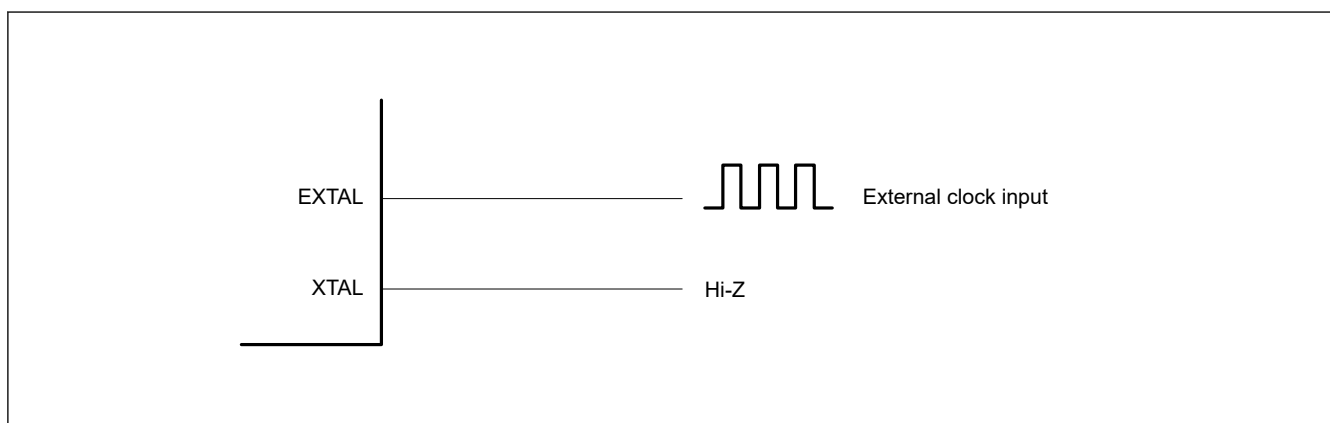


Figure 8.7 Equivalent circuit for external clock

8.3.3 Notes on External Clock Input

The frequency of the external clock input can only be changed when the main clock oscillator is stopped. Do not change the frequency of the external clock input when the setting of the Main Clock Oscillator Stop bit (MOSCCR.MOSTP) is 0.

8.4 Sub-clock Oscillator

The only way of supplying a clock signal to the sub-clock oscillator is by connecting a crystal oscillator.

8.4.1 Connecting a 32.768-kHz Crystal Resonator

To supply a clock to the sub-clock oscillator, connect a 32.768-kHz crystal resonator as shown in [Figure 8.8](#). A damping resistor (R_d) can be added, if necessary. Because the resistor values vary according to the resonator and the oscillation drive capability, use values recommended by the resonator manufacturer. If the resonator manufacturer recommends the use of an external feedback resistor (R_f), insert an R_f between XCIN and XCOU by following the instructions. When connecting a resonator to supply the clock, the frequency of the resonator must be in the frequency range of the resonator for the sub-clock oscillator as described in [Table 8.1](#).

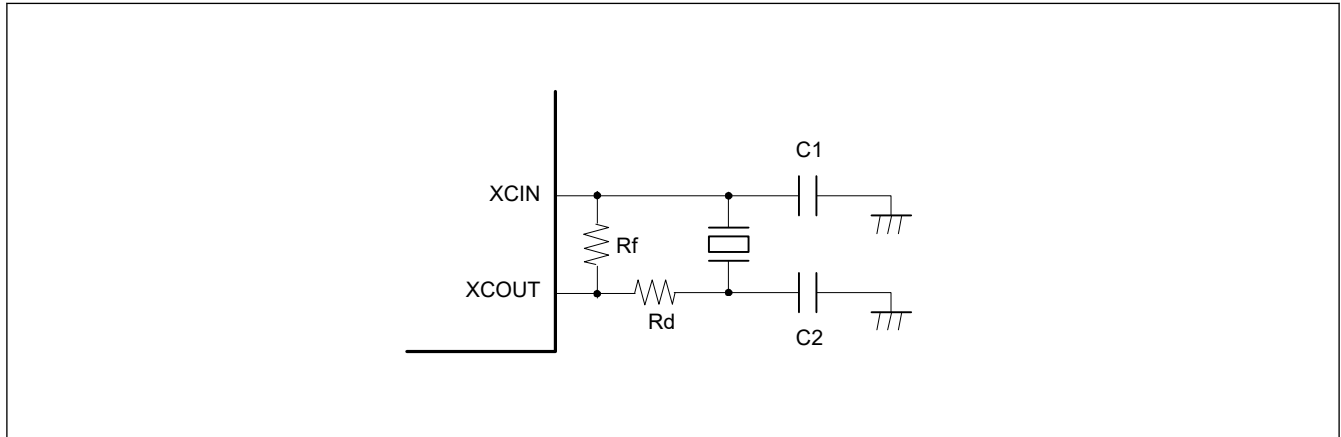


Figure 8.8 Connection example of 32.768-kHz crystal resonator

[Figure 8.9](#) shows an equivalent circuit for the 32.768-kHz crystal resonator.

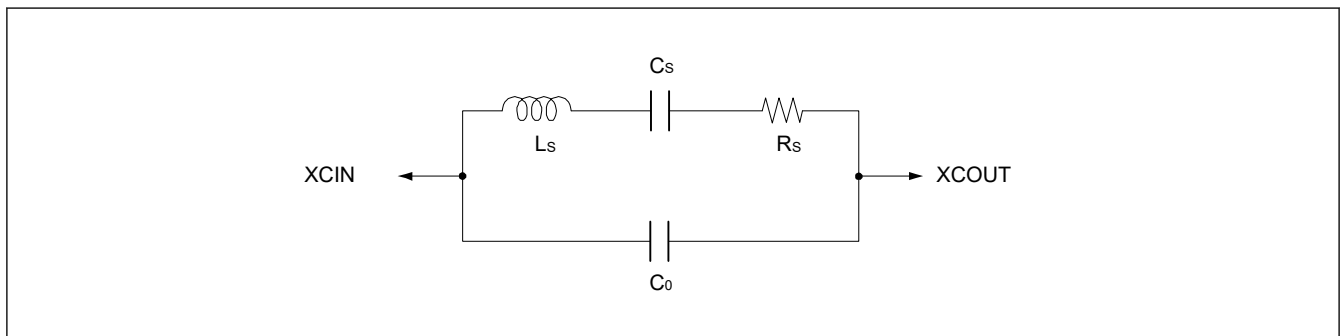


Figure 8.9 Equivalent circuit for the 32.768-kHz crystal resonator

8.5 Oscillation Stop Detection Function

8.5.1 Oscillation Stop Detection and Operation After Detection

The oscillation stop detection function detects the main clock oscillator stop. When an oscillation stop is detected, the system clock switches as follows:

- If an oscillation stop is detected with $SCKSCR.CKSEL[2:0] = 011b$ (system clock source = MOSC), the system clock source switches to the MOCO clock.

An oscillation stop detection interrupt request can be generated when an oscillation stop is detected. In addition, the General PWM Timer (GPT) output can be forced to a high-impedance state on detection.

The main clock oscillation stop is detected when the input clock remains at 0 or 1 for a certain period, for example, when a malfunction occurs in the main clock oscillator. See [section 41, Electrical Characteristics](#).

Switching between the main clock oscillator and the MOCO clock is controlled by the Oscillation Stop Detection Flag (OSTDSR.OSTDF).

OSTDF controls the switched clock as follows:

- When $SCKSCR.CKSEL[2:0] = 011b$ (system clock source = MOSC):

- When OSTDF changes from 0 to 1, the clock source switches to the MOCO clock.
- When OSTDF changes from 1 to 0, the clock source switches back to MOSC.

Note: When SCKSCR.CKSEL[2:0] ≠ 011b, cannot set 0 to OSTDF.

To switch the clock source to the main clock again after the oscillation stop detection, set the CKSEL[2:0] bits to a clock source other than the main clock and clear the OSTDF flag to 0. Also, check that the OSTDF flag is not 1, then set the CKSEL[2:0] bits to the main clock after the specified oscillation stabilization time elapses.

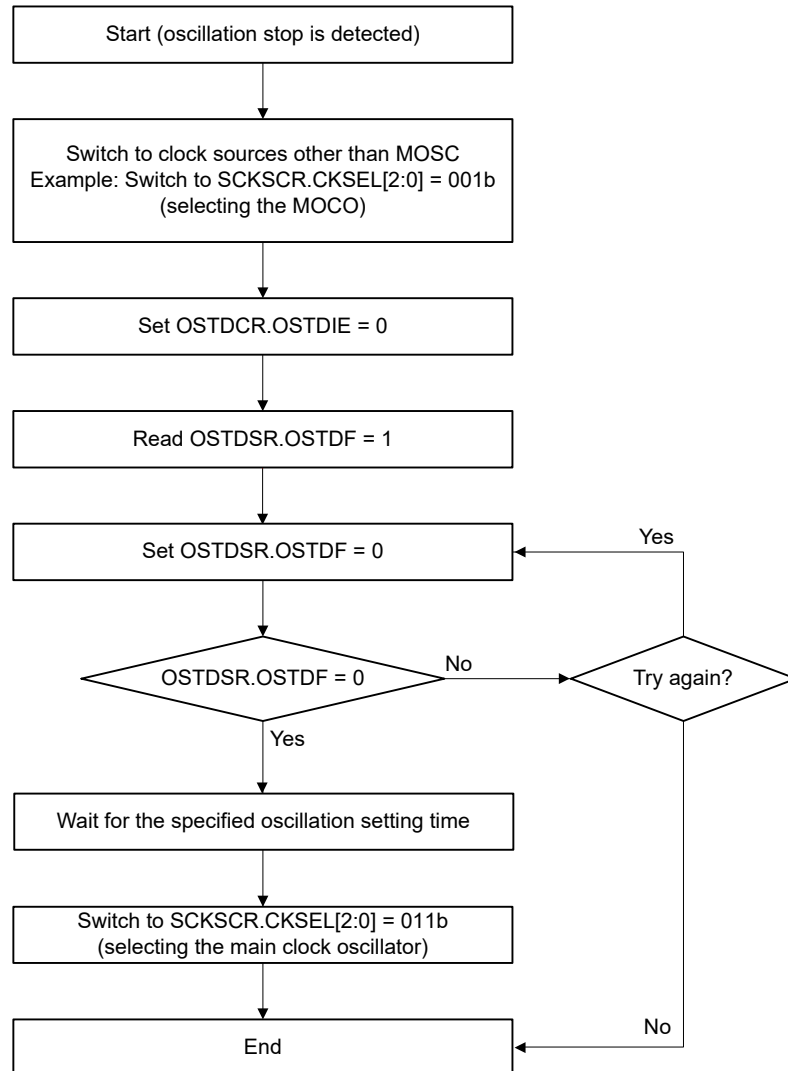
After a reset release, the main clock oscillator is stopped and the oscillation stop detection function is disabled. To enable the oscillation stop detection function, activate the main clock oscillator and write 1 to the oscillation stop detection function enable bit (OSTDCR.OSTDE) after a specified oscillation stabilization time elapses.

The oscillation stop detection function detects when the main clock is stopped by an external cause. Therefore, the oscillation stop detection function must be disabled before the main clock oscillator is stopped by software or a transition is made to Software Standby mode.

The oscillation stop detection function switches all clocks that can be selected as the MOSC clock except CLKOUT to the MOCO (when the system clock is MOSC).

The system clock (ICK) frequency during the MOCO (when system clock is MOSC) operation is specified by the MOCO oscillation frequency and the division ratio set by the system clock select bits (SCKDIVCR.ICK[2:0])

Example of returning when CKSEL[2:0] = 011b (selecting the main clock oscillator) after an oscillation stop is detected



Note: On return from the oscillation-stopped state, the factor responsible for stopping the main clock oscillation circuit must be removed from the system to allow oscillation to resume.

Figure 8.10 Flow of recovery on detection of oscillator stop

8.5.2 Oscillation Stop Detection Interrupts

An oscillation stop detection interrupt (MOSC_STOP) is generated when the Oscillation Stop Detection Flag (OSTDSR.OSTDF) is 1 and the Oscillation Stop Detection Interrupt Enable bit in the Oscillation Stop Detection Control Register (OSTDCR.OSTDIE) is 1 (enabled). The Port Output Enable for GPT (POEG) is notified of the main clock oscillator stop. On receiving the notification, the POEG sets the Oscillation Stop Detection Flag in the POEG Group n Setting Register (POEGGn.OSTPF) to 1 (n = A, B).

After the oscillation stop is detected, wait at least 10 PCLKB clock cycles before writing to the POEGGn.OSTPF flag. When the OSTDSR.OSTDF flag requires clearing, do so after clearing the Oscillation Stop Detection Interrupt Enable bit in the Oscillation Stop Detection Control Register (OSTDCR.OSTDIE). Wait at least 2 PCLKB clock cycles before setting the OSTDCR.OSTDIE bit to 1 again. A longer PCLKB wait time might be required, depending on the number of cycles required to read a given I/O register.

The oscillation stop detection interrupt is a non-maskable interrupt. Because non-maskable interrupts are disabled in the initial state after a reset release, enable non-maskable interrupts through software before using oscillation stop detection interrupts. For details, see [section 12, Interrupt Controller Unit \(ICU\)](#).

8.6 Internal Clock

Clock sources for the internal clock signals include:

- Main clock
- Sub-clock
- HOCO clock
- MOCO clock
- LOCO clock
- IWDT-dedicated clock

The following internal clocks are produced from these sources.

- Operating clock for the CAN — CANMCLK
- Operating clock for the USBFS clock — USBCLK
- Operating clock for the UARTA MOSC clock — UARTAMCLK
- Operating clock for the UARTA SOSC clock — UARTASCLK
- Operating clock for the UARTA LOCO clock — UARTALOCK
- Operating clock for the UARTA HOCO clock — UARTAHOCK
- Operating clock for the UARTA MOCO clock — UARTAMOCK
- Operating clock of the CPU, DTC, Flash, Flash-IF, and SRAM — system clock (ICLK)
- Operating clocks of peripheral modules — PCLKB and PCLKD
- Operating clocks for the CAC — CACCLK
- Operating clock for the RTC sub clock — RTCCLK
- Operating clock for the RTC sub 128 Hz clock — RTC128CLK
- Operating clock for the RTC LOCO clock — RTCLCLK
- Operating clock for the IWDT — IWDTCLK
- Operating clock for the AGTW LOCO clock — AGTLCLK
- Operating clock for the AGTW sub clock — AGTCLK
- Operating clock for the SysTick timer — SYSTICKCLK
- Clock for external pin output — CLKOUT.

For details of the registers used to set the frequencies of the internal clocks, see [section 8.6.1. System Clock \(ICLK\)](#) to [section 8.6.11. External Pin Output Clock \(CLKOUT\)](#).

If the value of any of these bits is changed, subsequent operation is at the frequency determined by the new value.

8.6.1 System Clock (ICLK)

The system clock (ICLK) is the operating clock for the CPU, DTC, Flash, Flash-IF, and SRAM.

The ICLK frequency is specified by the HOCOFREQ[2:0] bits in OFS1, the ICK[2:0] bits in SCKDIVCR, and the CKSEL[2:0] bits in SCKSCR.

When the ICLK clock source is switched, the duration of the ICLK clock cycle becomes longer during the clock source transition period. See [Figure 8.11](#) and [Figure 8.12](#).

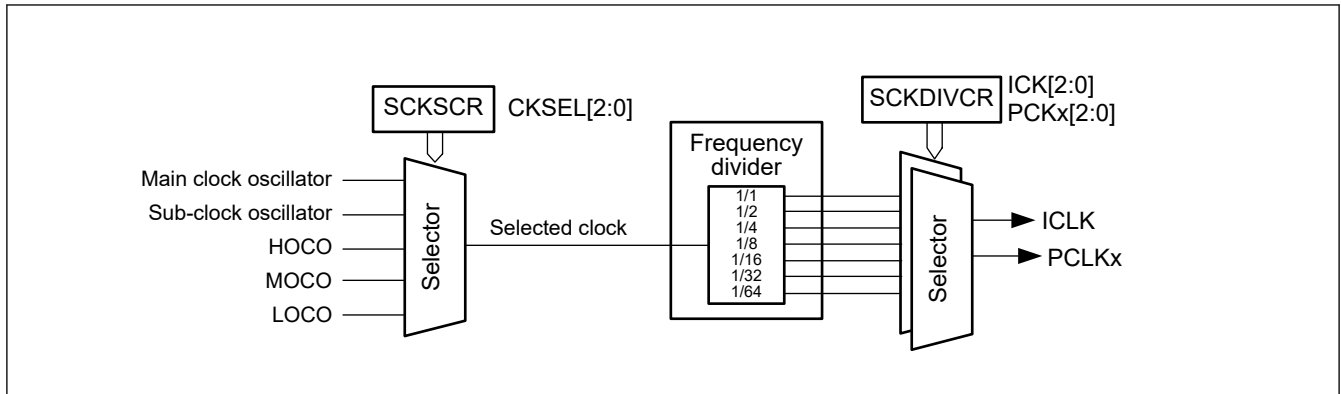


Figure 8.11 Block diagram of clock source selector

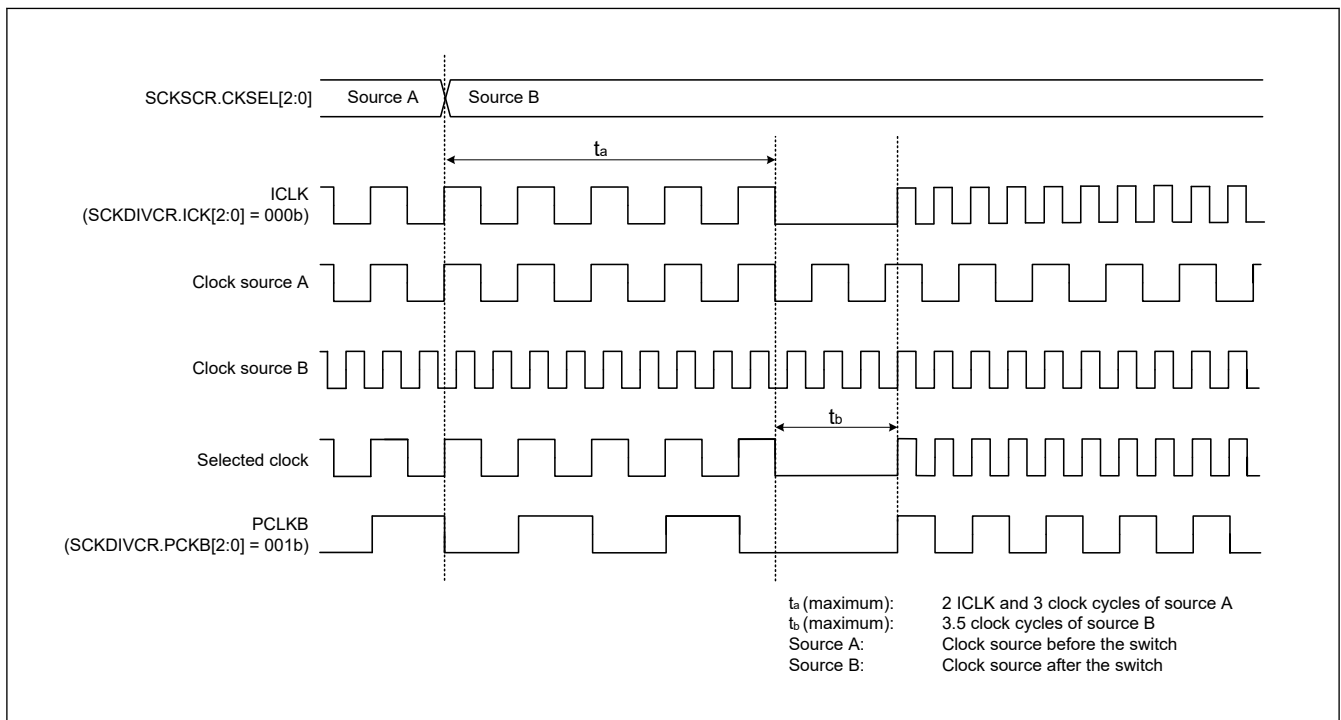


Figure 8.12 Timing of clock source switching

8.6.2 Peripheral Module Clock (PCLKB, PCLKD)

The peripheral module clocks (PCLKB and PCLKD) are the operating clocks for the peripheral modules.

The frequency of the given clock is specified in the following bits:

- HOCOFREQ1[2:0] in OFS1.
- PCKB[2:0] and PCKD[2:0] in SCKDIVCR
- CKSEL[2:0] in SCKSCR

When the clock source of the peripheral module clock is switched, the duration of the peripheral module clock cycle becomes longer during the clock source transition period. See [Figure 8.11](#) and [Figure 8.12](#).

8.6.3 USB Clock (USBCLK)

The USB clock (USBCLK) is the operating clock for the USBFS module.

It is supported by the internal clock supply architecture type A. And a 48-MHz clock by HOCO must be supplied to the USB module. When the USB module is used, setting must be made so that USBCLK is 48 MHz.

8.6.4 CAN Clock (CANMCLK)

The CAN clock, CANMCLK, is the operating clock for the CAN module. CANMCLK is generated by the main clock oscillator.

8.6.5 CAC Clock (CACCLK)

The CAC clock (CACCLK) is the operating clock for the CAC. CACCLK is generated by the following oscillators:

- Main clock oscillator
- Sub-clock oscillator
- High-speed clock oscillator (HOCO)
- Middle-speed clock oscillator (MOCO)
- Low-speed on-chip oscillator (LOCO)
- IWDG-dedicated on-chip oscillator. (IWDGLOCO)

8.6.6 UARTA-dedicated Clock (UARTAMCLK, UARTASCLK, UARTALOCK, UARTAHOCK, URTAMOCLK)

The UARTA-dedicated clocks, UARTAMCLK, URTASCLK, URTALOCK, URTAHOCK and URTAMOCLK, are the operating clocks for the UARTA. URTAMCLK is generated by the Main clock oscillator, URTASCLK is generated by the sub-clock oscillator. URTALOCK is generated by the LOCO clock. URTAHOCK is generated by the HOCO clock, and URTAMOCLK is generated by the MOCO clock.

8.6.7 RTC-dedicated Clock (RTCSCLK, RTCS128CLK, RTCLCLK)

The RTC-dedicated clocks (RTCSCLK, RTCS128CLK and RTCLCLK) are the operating clocks for the RTC. RTCSCLK and RTCS128CLK are generated by the sub-clock oscillator, and RTCLCLK is generated by the LOCO clock.

8.6.8 IWDG-dedicated Clock (IWDGCLK)

The IWDG-dedicated clock (IWDGCLK) is the operating clock for the IWDG. IWDGCLK is internally generated by the IWDG-dedicated on-chip oscillator.

8.6.9 AGTW-dedicated Clock (AGTSCLK, AGTLCLK)

The AGTW-dedicated clocks (AGTSCLK and AGTLCLK) are the operating clocks for the AGTW. AGTSCLK is generated by the sub-clock oscillator, and AGTLCLK is generated by the LOCO clock.

8.6.10 SysTick Timer-dedicated Clock (SYSTICCLK)

The SysTick timer-dedicated clock (SYSTICCLK) is the operating clock for the SysTick timer. SYSTICCLK is generated by the LOCO clock.

8.6.11 External Pin Output Clock (CLKOUT)

The CLKOUT is output externally from the CLKOUT pin for the clock or buzzer output. The CLKOUT is output to the CLKOUT pin when the CKOCR.CKOEN bit is set to 1. Only change the value in the CKODIV[2:0] bits or CKOSEL[2:0] bits in CKOCR when the CKOCR.CKOEN bit is 0.

The CLKOUT clock frequency is specified in the following bits:

- CKODIV[2:0] bits or CKOSEL[2:0] bits in CKOCR
- HOCOFREQ1[2:0] bits in OFS1

8.7 Usage Notes

8.7.1 Notes on Clock Generation Circuit

The frequency of the following clocks supplied to each module changes according to the setting of the SCKDIVCR register:

- System clock (ICLK)
- Peripheral module clocks (PCLKB and PCLKD)

Each frequency must meet the following conditions:

- Each frequency must be selected within the operation-guaranteed range of the operating frequency (f) specified in the AC characteristics. See [section 41, Electrical Characteristics](#).
- The system clock, peripheral module clock must be set according to [Table 8.2](#).

To ensure correct processing after the clock frequency changes, first write to the relevant Clock Control register to change the frequency, then read the value from the register, and finally perform the subsequent processing.

8.7.2 Notes on Resonator

Because various resonator characteristics relate closely to your board design, adequate evaluation is required before use. See the resonator connection example in [Figure 8.8](#). The circuit constants for the resonator depend on the resonator to be used and the stray capacitance of the mounting circuit. Therefore, consult the resonator manufacturer when determining the circuit constants. The voltage to be applied between the resonator pins must be within the absolute maximum rating.

8.7.3 Notes on Board Design

When using a crystal resonator, place the resonator and its load capacitors as close to the XTAL and EXTAL pins as possible. Other signal lines should be routed away from the oscillation circuit as shown in [Figure 8.13](#) to prevent electromagnetic induction from interfering with correct oscillation. [Figure 8.13](#) shows the case which the main clock oscillator is used. For sub-clock oscillator, it is also the same as [Figure 8.13](#).

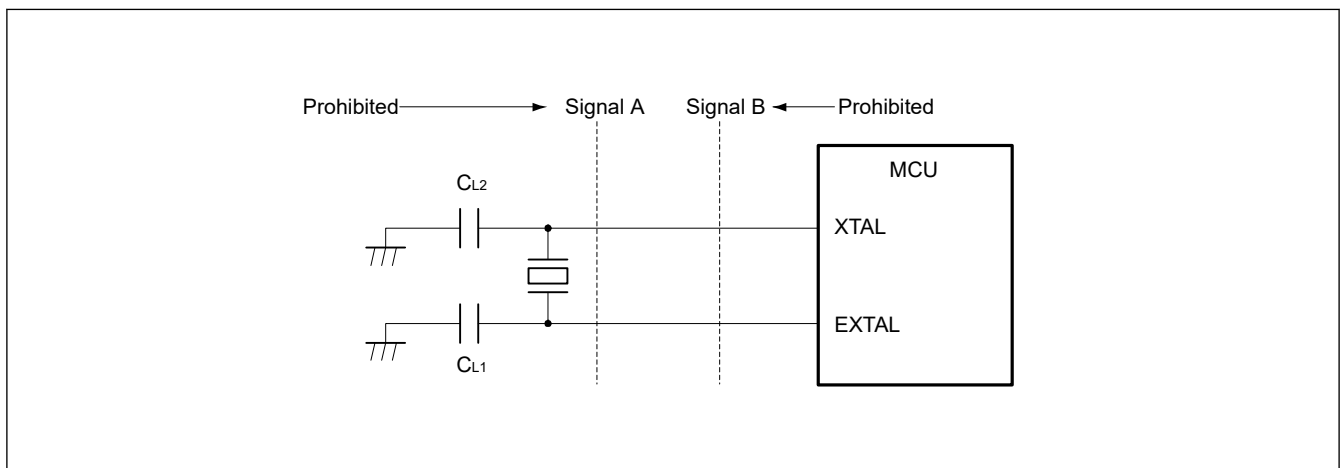


Figure 8.13 Signal routing in board design for oscillation circuit

8.7.4 Notes on Resonator Connect Pin

When the main clock is not used, the EXTAL and XTAL pins can be used as general I/O ports. When these pins are used as general I/O ports, the main clock must be stopped (MOSCCR.MOSTP bit should be set to 1).

Also, when the sub-clock is not used, the XCIN and XCOU pins can be used as general input ports. When these pins are used as general input ports, the sub-clock oscillator must be stopped (SOSCCR.SOSTP bit should be set to 1).

9. Clock Frequency Accuracy Measurement Circuit (CAC)

9.1 Overview

The Clock Frequency Accuracy Measurement Circuit (CAC) counts pulses of the clock to be measured (measurement target clock) within the time generated by the clock selected as the measurement reference (measurement reference clock), and determines the accuracy depending on whether the number of pulses is within the allowable range. When measurement is complete or the number of pulses within the time generated by the measurement reference clock is not within the allowable range, an interrupt request is generated.

[Table 9.1](#) lists the CAC specifications, [Figure 9.1](#) shows the CAC block diagram, and [Table 9.2](#) lists the CAC I/O pin.

Table 9.1 CAC specifications

Parameter	Specifications
Measurement target clocks	Frequency can be measured for: • Main clock oscillator • Sub-clock oscillator • HOCO clock • MOCO • LOCO clock • Peripheral module clock B (PCLKB) • IWDG-dedicated clock
Measurement reference clocks	Frequency can be referenced to: • External clock input to the CACREF pin • Main clock oscillator • Sub-clock oscillator • HOCO clock • MOCO • LOCO clock • Peripheral module clock B (PCLKB) • IWDG-dedicated clock
Selectable function	Digital filter
Interrupt sources	• Measurement end • Frequency error • Overflow
Module-stop function	Module-stop state can be set to reduce power consumption

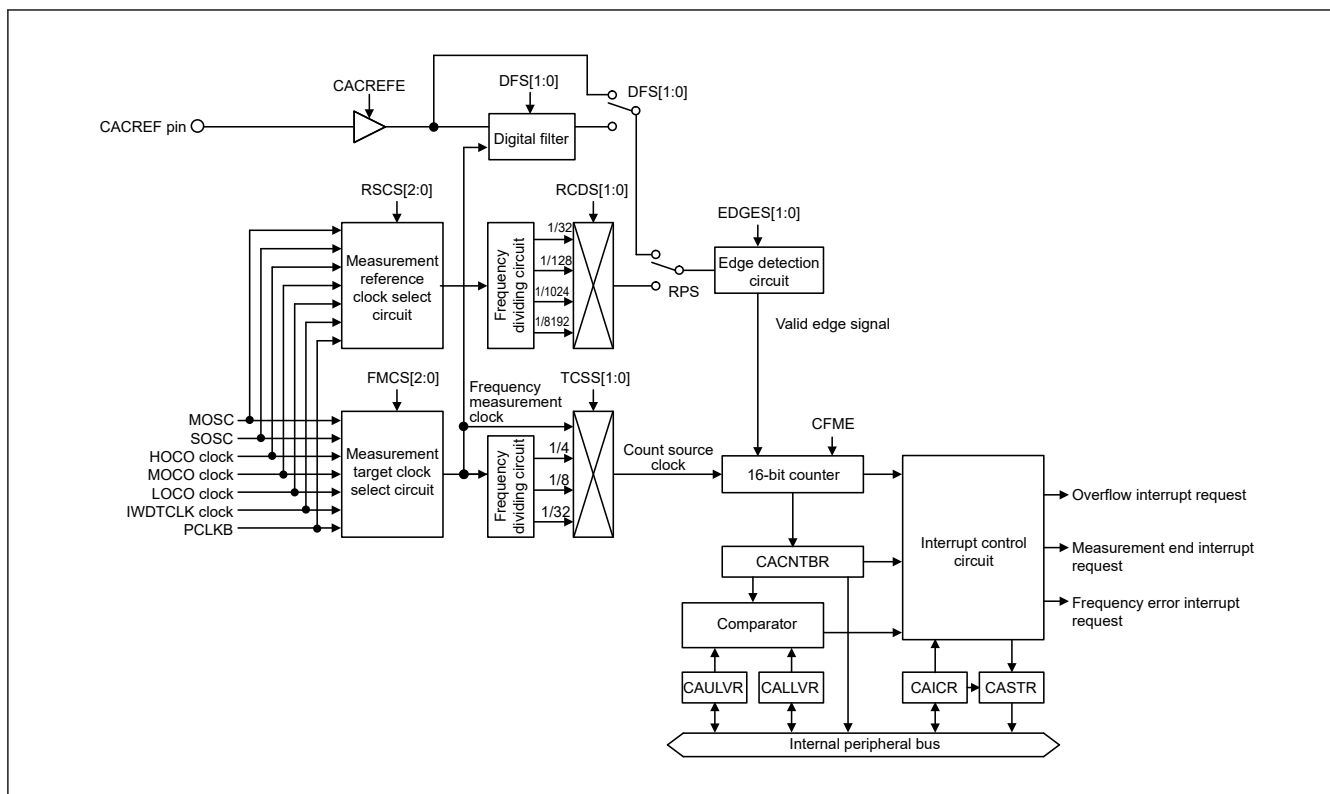


Figure 9.1 CAC block diagram

Table 9.2 CAC I/O pin

Function	Pin name	I/O	Description
CAC	CACREF	Input	Measurement reference clock input pin

9.2 Register Descriptions

9.2.1 CACR0 : CAC Control Register 0

Base address: CAC = 0x4004_4600

Offset address: 0x00

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	CFME

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	CFME	Clock Frequency Measurement Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable	R/W
7:1	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

CFME bit (Clock Frequency Measurement Enable)

The CFME bit enables clock frequency measurement. Changes made to this bit are not immediately reflected to the internal circuit. Read the bit to confirm that the change has been reflected.

9.2.2 CACR1 : CAC Control Register 1

Base address: CAC = 0x4004_4600

Offset address: 0x01

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	EDGES[1:0]		TCSS[1:0]		FMCS[2:0]		CACR EFE	
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	CACREFE	CACREF Pin Input Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable	R/W
3:1	FMCS[2:0]	Measurement Target Clock Select 0 0 0: Main clock oscillator 0 0 1: Sub-clock oscillator 0 1 0: HOCO clock 0 1 1: MOCO 1 0 0: LOCO clock 1 0 1: Peripheral module clock B (PCLKB) 1 1 0: IWDG-dedicated clock 1 1 1: Setting prohibited	R/W
5:4	TCSS[1:0]	Timer Count Clock Source Select 0 0: No division 0 1: × 1/4 clock 1 0: × 1/8 clock 1 1: × 1/32 clock	R/W
7:6	EDGES[1:0]	Valid Edge Select 0 0: Rising edge 0 1: Falling edge 1 0: Both rising and falling edges 1 1: Setting prohibited	R/W

Note: Set the CACR1 register when the CACR0.CFME bit is 0.

CACREFE bit (CACREF Pin Input Enable)

The CACREFE bit enables the CACREF pin input.

FMCS[2:0] bits (Measurement Target Clock Select)

The FMCS[2:0] bits select the measurement target clock whose frequency is to be measured.

TCSS[1:0] bits (Timer Count Clock Source Select)

The TCSS[1:0] bits select the division ratio of the measurement target clock.

EDGES[1:0] bits (Valid Edge Select)

The EDGES[1:0] bits select the valid edge for the reference signal.

9.2.3 CACR2 : CAC Control Register 2

Base address: CAC = 0x4004_4600

Offset address: 0x02

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	DFS[1:0]		RCDS[1:0]		RSCS[2:0]		RPS	
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	RPS	Reference Signal Select 0: CACREF pin input 1: Internal clock (internally generated signal)	R/W
3:1	RSCS[2:0]	Measurement Reference Clock Select 0 0 0: Main clock oscillator 0 0 1: Sub-clock oscillator 0 1 0: HOCO clock 0 1 1: MOCO 1 0 0: LOCO clock 1 0 1: Peripheral module clock B (PCLKB) 1 1 0: IWDG-dedicated clock 1 1 1: Setting prohibited	R/W
5:4	RCDS[1:0]	Measurement Reference Clock Frequency Division Ratio Select 0 0: $\times 1/32$ clock 0 1: $\times 1/128$ clock 1 0: $\times 1/1024$ clock 1 1: $\times 1/8192$ clock	R/W
7:6	DFS[1:0]	Digital Filter Select 0 0: Disable digital filtering 0 1: Use sampling clock for the digital filter as the frequency measuring clock 1 0: Use sampling clock for the digital filter as the frequency measuring clock divided by 4 1 1: Use sampling clock for the digital filter as the frequency measuring clock divided by 16.	R/W

Note: Set the CACR2 register when the CACR0.CFME bit is 0.

RPS bit (Reference Signal Select)

The RPS bit selects whether to use the CACREF pin input or an internal clock (internally generated signal) as the reference signal.

RSCS[2:0] bits (Measurement Reference Clock Select)

The RSCS[2:0] bits select the reference clock for measurement.

RCDS[1:0] bits (Measurement Reference Clock Frequency Division Ratio Select)

The RCDS[1:0] bits select the frequency-divisor of the reference clock for measurement when an internal reference clock is selected. When RPS = 0 (CACREF pin is used as the reference clock source), the reference clock is not divided.

DFS[1:0] bits (Digital Filter Select)

The DFS[1:0] bits enable or disable the digital filter and selects its sampling clock.

9.2.4 CAICR : CAC Interrupt Control Register

Base address: CAC = 0x4004_4600

Offset address: 0x03

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	OVFF CL	MEND FCL	FERR FCL	—	OVFIE	MEND IE	FERR IE

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	FERRIE	Frequency Error Interrupt Request Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable	R/W
1	MENDIE	Measurement End Interrupt Request Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
2	OVFIE	Overflow Interrupt Request Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable	R/W
3	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
4	FERRFCL	FERRF Clear 0: No effect 1: The CASTR.FERRF flag is cleared	W
5	MENDFCL	MENDF Clear 0: No effect 1: The CASTR.MENDF flag is cleared	W
6	OVFFCL	OVFF Clear 0: No effect 1: The CASTR.OVFF flag is cleared.	W
7	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

FERRIE bit (Frequency Error Interrupt Request Enable)

The FERRIE bit enables or disables the frequency error interrupt request.

MENDIE bit (Measurement End Interrupt Request Enable)

The MENDIE bit enables or disables the measurement end interrupt request.

OVFIE bit (Overflow Interrupt Request Enable)

The OVFIE bit enables or disables the overflow interrupt request.

FERRFCL bit (FERRF Clear)

Setting the FERRFCL bit to 1 clears the CASTR.FERRF flag.

MENDFCL bit (MENDF Clear)

Setting the MENDFCL bit to 1 clears the CASTR.MENDF flag.

OVFFCL bit (OVFF Clear)

Setting the OVFFCL bit to 1 clears the CASTR.OVFF flag.

9.2.5 CASTR : CAC Status Register

Base address: CAC = 0x4004_4600

Offset address: 0x04

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	OVFF	MEND F	FERR F

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	FERRF	Frequency Error Flag 0: Clock frequency is within the allowable range 1: Clock frequency has deviated beyond the allowable range (frequency error).	R
1	MENDF	Measurement End Flag 0: Measurement is in progress 1: Measurement ended	R
2	OVFF	Overflow Flag 0: Counter has not overflowed 1: Counter overflowed	R
7:3	—	These bits are read as 0.	R

FERRF flag (Frequency Error Flag)

The FERRF flag indicates a deviation of the clock frequency from the set value (frequency error).

[Setting condition]

- The clock frequency is outside the allowable range defined in the CAULVR and CALLVR registers.

[Clearing condition]

- 1 is written to the FERRFCL bit.

MENDF flag (Measurement End Flag)

The MENDF flag indicates the end of measurement.

[Setting condition]

- Measurement ends.

[Clearing condition]

- 1 is written to the MENDFCL bit.

OVFF flag (Overflow Flag)

The OVFF flag indicates that the counter overflowed.

[Setting condition]

- The counter overflows.

[Clearing condition]

- 1 is written to the CAICR.OVFFCL bit.

9.2.6 CAULVR : CAC Upper-Limit Value Setting Register

Base address: CAC = 0x4004_4600

Offset address: 0x06

Bit position: 15

0

Bit field:

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
15:0	n/a	The Upper Value of the Allowable Range The CAULVR register is a 16-bit read/write register that specifies the upper value of the allowable range. When the counter value exceeds the value specified in this register, a frequency error is detected. Write to this register when the CACR0.CFME bit is 0. The counter value stored in CACNTBR can vary depending on the difference between the phases of the digital filter and edge-detection circuit, and the signal on the CACREF pin. Ensure that this setting allows an adequate margin.	R/W

9.2.7 CALLVR : CAC Lower-Limit Value Setting Register

Base address: CAC = 0x4004_4600

Offset address: 0x08

Bit position: 15

0

Bit field:

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
15:0	n/a	The Lower Value of the Allowable Range The CALLVR register is a 16-bit read/write register that specifies the lower value of the allowable range. When the counter value falls below the value specified in this register, a frequency error is detected. Write to this register when the CACR0.CFME bit is 0. The counter value stored in CACNTBR can vary depending on the difference between the phases of the digital filter and edge-detection circuit, and the signal on the CACREF pin. Ensure that this setting allows an adequate margin.	R/W

9.2.8 CACNTBR : CAC Counter Buffer Register

Base address: CAC = 0x4004_4600

Offset address: 0x0A

Bit position: 15 0

Bit field: 

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
15:0	n/a	The Measurement Result The CACNTBR register is a 16-bit read-only register that stores the measurement result.	R

9.3 Operation

9.3.1 Measuring Clock Frequency

The CAC measures the clock frequency using the CACREF pin input or an internal clock as a reference. [Figure 9.2](#) shows an operating example of the CAC.

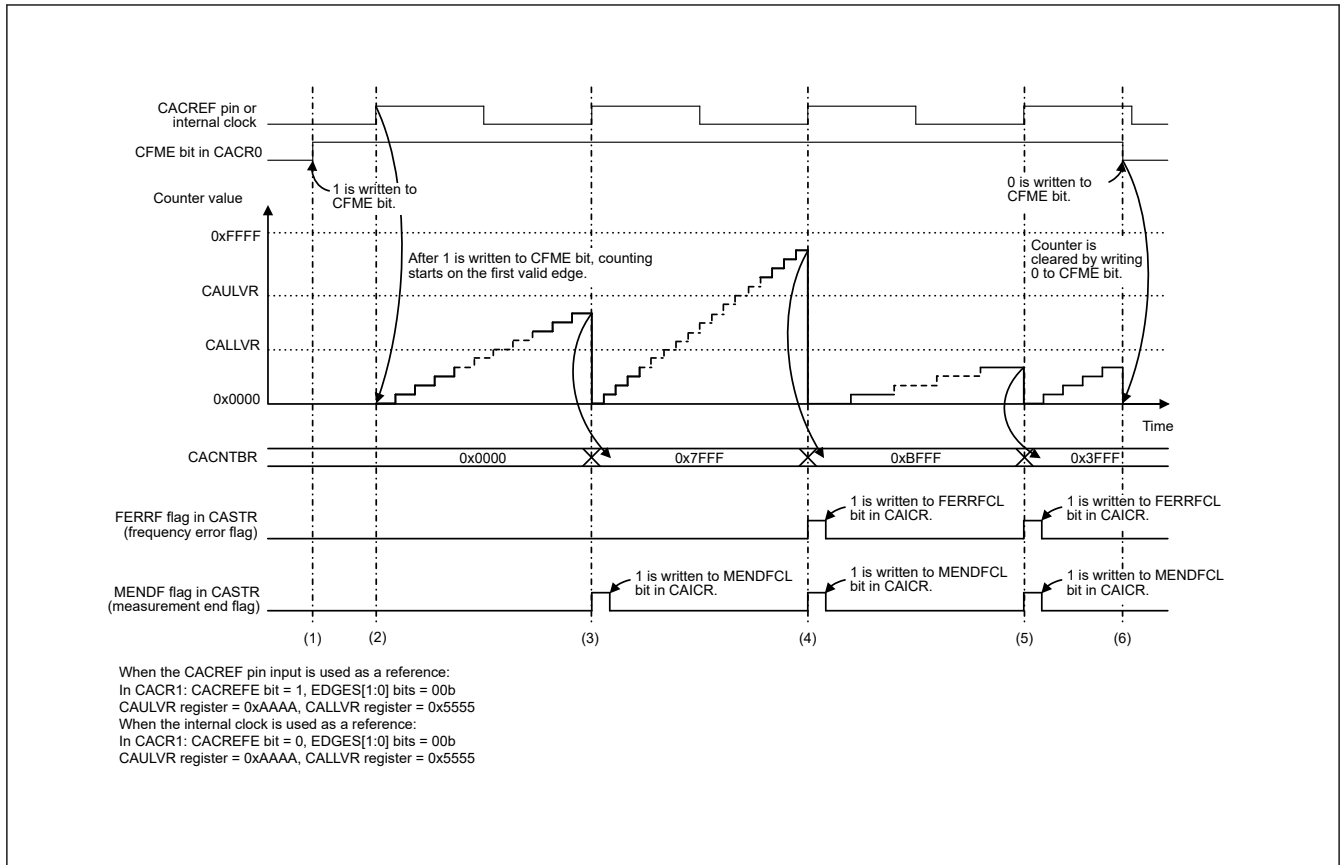


Figure 9.2 CAC operating example

The events in Figure 9.2 are:

1. When the CACREF pin input is used as reference (CACR1.CACREFE = 1), frequency measurement is enabled by writing 1 to the CACR0.CFME bit while the CACR2.RPS bit is set to 0 and the CACR1.CACREFE bit is set to 1. When the internal clock is used as reference (CACR1.CACREFE = 0), frequency measurement is enabled by writing 1 to the CACR0.CFME bit while the CACR2.RPS bit is set to 1.
2. When the CACREF pin input is used as reference, after 1 is written to the CFME bit, the timer starts up-counting if the valid edge selected by the CACR1.EDGES[1:0] bits (rising edge (CACR1.EDGES[1:0] = 00b) in Figure 9.2) is input from the CACREF pin. When the internal clock is used as reference, after 1 is written to the CFME bit, the timer starts up-counting if the valid edge selected by the CACR1.EDGES[1:0] bits (rising edge (CACR1.EDGES[1:0] = 00b) in Figure 9.2) is input based on the clock source selected by the CACR2.RSCS[2:0] bits.
3. When the next valid edge is input, the counter value is transferred to CACNTBR and compared with the values in CAULVR and CALLVR. If both $CACNTBR \leq CAULVR$ and $CACNTBR \geq CALLVR$ are true, only the MENDF flag in CASTER is set to 1, because the clock frequency is correct. If the MENDIE bit in CAICR is 1, a measurement end interrupt is generated.
4. When the next valid edge is input, the counter value is transferred to CACNTBR and compared with the values in CAULVR and CALLVR. If $CACNTBR > CAULVR$, the FERRF flag in CASTER is set to 1, because the clock frequency is erroneous. If the FERRIE bit in CAICR is 1, a frequency error interrupt is generated. The MENDF flag in CASTER is set to 1 at the end of measurement. If the MENDIE bit in CAICR is 1, a measurement end interrupt is generated.
5. When the next valid edge is input, the counter value is transferred to CACNTBR and compared with the values in CAULVR and CALLVR. If $CACNTBR < CALLVR$, the FERRF flag in CASTER is set to 1, because the clock frequency is erroneous. If the FERRIE bit in CAICR is 1, a frequency error interrupt is generated. The MENDF flag in CASTER is set to 1 at the end of measurement. If the MENDIE bit in CAICR is 1, a measurement end interrupt is generated.
6. When the CFME bit in CACR0 is 1, the counter value is transferred to CACNTBR and compared with the values in CAULVR and CALLVR every time a valid edge is input. Writing 0 to the CFME bit in CACR0 clears the counter and stops up-counting.

9.3.2 Digital Filtering of Signals on CACREF Pin

The CACREF pin has a digital filter, and levels on the CACREF pin are transmitted to the internal circuitry after three consecutive matches in the selected sampling interval. The same level continues to be transmitted internally until the level on the pin has three consecutive matches again. Enabling or disabling of the digital filter and its sampling clock are selectable.

The counter value transferred to CACNTBR might be in error by up to 1 cycle of the sampling clock because of the difference between the phases of the digital filter and the signal input to the CACREF pin. When a frequency dividing clock is selected as a count source clock, the counter value error is obtained using the following formula:

Counter value error = (1 cycle of the count source clock) / (1 cycle of the sampling clock)

9.4 Interrupt Requests

The CAC generates three types of interrupt requests:

- Frequency error interrupt
- Measurement end interrupt
- Overflow interrupt

When an interrupt source is generated, the associated status flag is set to 1. [Table 9.3](#) provides information on the CAC interrupt requests.

Table 9.3 CAC interrupt requests

Interrupt request	Interrupt enable bit	Status flag	Interrupt sources
Frequency error interrupt	CAICR.FERRIE	CASTR.FERRF	The result of comparing CACNTBR with CAULVR and CALLVR is either CACNTBR > CAULVR or CACNTBR < CALLVR
Measurement end interrupt	CAICR.MENDIE	CASTR.MENDF	• Valid edge is input from the CACREF pin or internal clock • Measurement end interrupt does not occur at the first valid edge after writing 1 to the CACR0.CFME bit
Overflow interrupt	CAICR.OVFIE	CASTR.OVFF	Counter overflows

9.5 Usage Notes

9.5.1 Settings for the Module-Stop Function

The Module Stop Control Register C (MSTPCRC) can enable or disable CAC operation. The CAC module is initially stopped after reset. Releasing the module-stop state enables access to the registers. For details, see [section 10, Low Power Modes](#).

10. Low Power Modes

10.1 Overview

The MCU provides several functions for reducing power consumption, such as setting clock dividers, stopping modules, selecting power control mode in normal mode, and transitioning to low power modes.

[Table 10.1](#) lists the specifications of the low power mode functions. [Table 10.2](#) lists the conditions to transition to low power modes, the states of the CPU and peripheral modules, and the method for canceling each mode. After a reset, the MCU enters the program execution state, but only the DTC and SRAM operate.

Table 10.1 Specifications of the low power mode functions

Item	Specification
Reducing power consumption by switching clock signals	The frequency division ratio can be selected independently for the system clock (ICLK), peripheral module clock (PCLKB and PCLKD)* ¹
Module stop	Functions can be stopped independently for each peripheral module
Low power modes	• Sleep mode • Software Standby mode • Snooze mode
Power control modes	Power consumption can be reduced in Normal, Sleep, and Snooze mode by selecting an appropriate operating power control mode according to the operating frequency and voltage. Four operating power control modes are available: • High-speed mode • Middle-speed mode • Low-speed mode • Subosc-speed mode

Note 1. For details, see [section 8, Clock Generation Circuit](#)

Table 10.2 Operating conditions of each low power mode (1 of 2)

Item	Sleep mode	Software Standby mode	Snooze mode* ²
Transition condition	When [Condition 1] or [Condition 2] while SBYCR.SSBY = 0 [Condition 1] • WFI instruction • A valid interrupt request *¹ cannot be accepted to the CPU (including a transition from the time WFI instruction is executed to the time the transition to Sleep mode is completed). [Condition 2] • SCR.SLEEPONEXIT = 1 • Complete execution of all exception handlers • A valid interrupt request *¹ cannot be accepted to the CPU (including a transition from the time WFI instruction is executed to the time the transition to Sleep mode is completed).	When [Condition 1] or [Condition 2] while SBYCR.SSBY = 1 [Condition 1] • WFI instruction • A valid interrupt request *¹ cannot be accepted to the CPU (including a transition from the time WFI instruction is executed to the time the transition to Software Standby mode is completed). [Condition 2] • SCR.SLEEPONEXIT = 1 • Complete execution of all exception handlers • A valid interrupt request *¹ cannot be accepted to the CPU (including a transition from the time WFI instruction is executed to the time the transition to Software Standby mode is completed).	Snooze request in Software Standby mode. SNZCR.SNZE = 1
Canceling method	All interrupts. Any reset available in the mode.	Interrupts shown in Table 10.3 . Any reset available in the mode.	Interrupts shown in Table 10.3 . Any reset available in the mode.
State after cancellation by an interrupt	Program execution state	Program execution state	Program execution state

Table 10.2 Operating conditions of each low power mode (2 of 2)

Item	Sleep mode	Software Standby mode	Snooze mode ^{*2}
State after cancellation by a reset	Reset state	Reset state	Reset state
Main clock oscillator	Selectable	Stop	Selectable ^{*3}
Sub-clock oscillator	Selectable	Selectable	Selectable
High-speed on-chip oscillator	Selectable	Stop	Selectable
Middle-speed on-chip oscillator	Selectable	Stop	Selectable
Low-speed on-chip oscillator	Selectable	Selectable	Selectable
IWDT-dedicated on-chip oscillator	Selectable ^{*5}	Selectable ^{*5}	Selectable ^{*5}
Oscillation stop detection function	Selectable	Operation prohibited	Operation prohibited
Clock/buzzer output function	Selectable	Selectable ^{*4}	Selectable
CPU	Stop (Retained)	Stop (Retained)	Stop (Retained)
SRAM	Selectable	Stop (Retained)	Selectable
Flash memory	Operating	Stop (Retained)	Stop (Retained)
Data Transfer Controller (DTC)	Selectable	Stop (Retained)	Selectable
Watchdog Timer (WDT)	Selectable ^{*5}	Stop (Retained)	Stop (Retained)
Independent Watchdog Timer (IWDT)	Selectable ^{*5}	Selectable ^{*5}	Selectable ^{*5}
Realtime clock (RTC)	Selectable	Selectable	Selectable
Low Power Asynchronous General Purpose Timer (AGTWn, n = 0, 1)	Selectable	Selectable ^{*6}	Selectable ^{*6}
12-bit A/D Converter (ADC12)	Selectable	Stop (Retained)	Selectable ^{*9}
Data Operation Circuit (DOC)	Selectable	Stop (Retained)	Selectable
Serial Communications Interface (SCI0)	Selectable	Stop (Retained)	Selectable ^{*8}
Serial Communications Interface (SCIn, n = 1, 2, 9)	Selectable	Stop (Retained)	Operation prohibited
I3C Bus Interface (I3C)	Selectable	Stop (Retained)	Operation prohibited
Serial Interface UARTA (UARTAn, n = 0, 1)	Selectable	Selectable ^{*10}	Selectable ^{*10}
USB 2.0 Full-Speed module (USBFS)	Selectable	Stop (Retained) ^{*11}	Operation prohibited ^{*11}
USB2.0 Type-C connector (USBCC)	Selectable	Stop (Retained) ^{*12}	Selectable
Event Link Controller (ELC)	Selectable	Stop (Retained)	Selectable ^{*7}
NMI, IRQn (n = 0 to 7) pin interrupt	Selectable	Selectable	Selectable
Key Interrupt Function (KINT)	Selectable	Selectable	Selectable
Low Voltage Detection (LVD)	Selectable	Selectable	Selectable
Power-on reset circuit	Operating	Operating	Operating
Other peripheral modules	Selectable	Stop (Retained)	Operation prohibited
I/O ports	Operating	Retained	Operating

Note: Selectable means that operating or not operating can be selected by the control registers.

Stop (Retained) means that the contents of the internal registers are retained but the operations are suspended.

Operation prohibited means that the function must be stopped before entering Software Standby mode.

Otherwise, proper operation is not guaranteed in Snooze mode.

Note 1. Valid interrupt requests are any interrupts or exceptions that are not masked by the priority level of current exception and the priority level set by BASEPRI. In addition, if the interrupt request is based on IELSRn, the interrupt must be enabled by NVIC_ISERn.

Note 2. All modules whose module-stop bits are 0 start when PCLKs are supplied after entering Snooze mode.
To avoid increasing power consumption in Snooze mode, set the module-stop bit of modules that are not required in Snooze mode to 1 before entering Software Standby mode.

Note 3. When using SCI0 in Snooze mode, the MOSCCR.MOSTP bit must be 1.

Note 4. Stopped when the Clock Output Source Select bits (CKOCR.CKOSEL[2:0]) are set to a value other than 010b (LOCO) and 100b (SOSC).

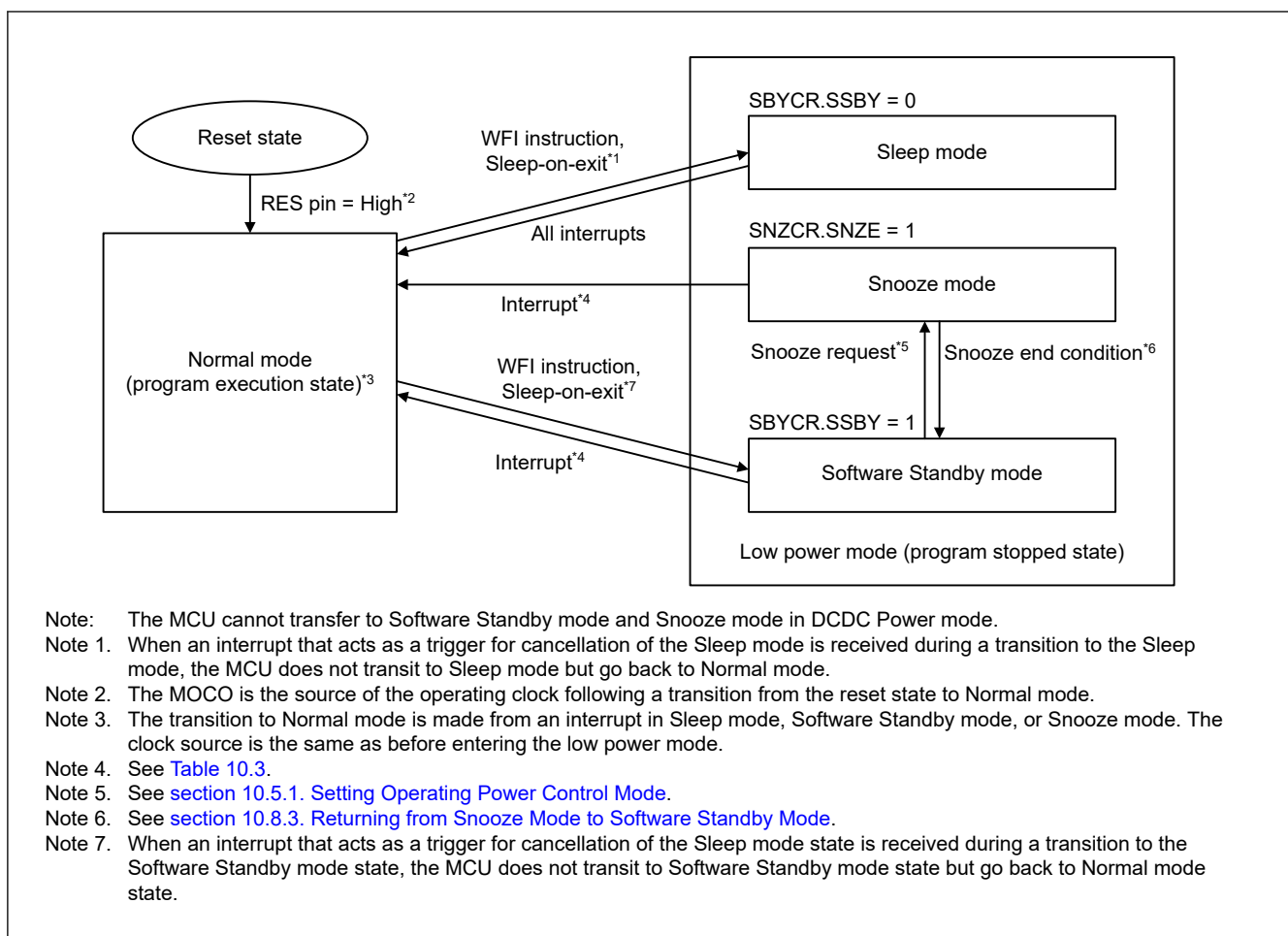
- Note 5. In IWDT-dedicated on-chip oscillator and IWDT, operating or stopping is selected by setting the IWDT Stop Control bit (IWDTSTPCTL) in Option Function Select register 0 (OFS0) in IWDT auto start mode. In WDT, operating or stopping is selected by setting the WDT Stop Control bit (WDTSTPCTL) in Option Function Select register 0 (OFS0) in WDT auto start mode or by setting the WDTCSLTPR.SLCSTP in WDT register-start mode.
- Note 6. AGTW0 operation is possible when 100b (LOCO) or 110b (SOSC) is selected in the AGTW0.AGTMR1.TCK[2:0] bits. AGTW1 operation is possible when 100b (LOCO), 110b (SOSC), or 101 (underflow event signal from AGTW0) is selected in the AGTW1.AGTMR1.TCK[2:0] bits.
- Note 7. Event lists the restrictions described in [section 10.9.12. ELC Events in Snooze Mode](#).
- Note 8. Serial communication modes of SCIO are only in asynchronous mode.
- Note 9. When using the 12-bit A/D Converter (ADC12) in Snooze mode, the ADCMPCR.CMPAE and ADCMPCR.CMPBE bits must be 1.
- Note 10. UARTAn operation is possible when 1000b (LOCO) or 1001b (SOSC) is selected by the UARTA.UTAnCK.UTAnCK[3:0] bits.
- Note 11. Detection of USB resumption is possible.
- Note 12. Detection of CC1/CC2 status is possible.

Table 10.3 Available interrupt sources to transition to Normal mode from Snooze mode and Software Standby mode

Interrupt source	Name	Software Standby mode	Snooze mode
NMI		Yes	Yes
Port	PORT_IRQn (n = 0 to 7)	Yes	Yes
LVD	LVD_LVD1	Yes	Yes
	LVD_LVD2	Yes	Yes
IWDT	IWDT_NMIUNDF	Yes	Yes
RTC	RTC_ALM	Yes	Yes
	RTC_PRD	Yes	Yes
KINT	KEY_INTKR	Yes	Yes
AGTW1	AGT1_AGTI	Yes	Yes ^{*3}
	AGT1_AGTCMAI	Yes	Yes
	AGT1_AGTCMBI	Yes	Yes
USBFS	USBFS_USBR	Yes	Yes
UARTA0	UARTA0_INTUR	Yes	Yes
	UARTA0_INTURE	Yes	Yes
UARTA1	UARTA1_INTUR	Yes	Yes
	UARTA1_INTURE	Yes	Yes
USBCC	USBCC_CCS	Yes	Yes
ADC120	ADC120_WCMPPM	No	Yes with SELSR0 ^{*1} ^{*3}
	ADC120_WCMPUM	No	Yes with SELSR0 ^{*1} ^{*3}
SCIO	SCIO_AM	No	Yes with SELSR0 ^{*1} ^{*2}
	SCIO_RXI_OR_ERI	No	Yes with SELSR0 ^{*1} ^{*2}
DTC	DTC_COMPLETE	No	Yes with SELSR0 ^{*1}
DOC	DOC_DOPCI	No	Yes with SELSR0 ^{*1}

- Note 1. To use the interrupt request as a trigger for exiting Snooze mode, the request must be selected in SELSR0. See [section 12, Interrupt Controller Unit \(ICU\)](#). When a trigger selected in SELSR0 occurs after executing a WFI instruction, and during the transition from Normal mode to Software Standby mode, the request can be accepted depending on the timing of the occurrence.
- Note 2. Only one of either SCIO_AM or SCIO_RXI_OR_ERI can be selected.
- Note 3. Event that is enabled by the SNZEDCR0 register must not be used.

[Figure 10.1](#) shows the transition between Normal mode to low power mode.

**Figure 10.1 Low power mode transitions**

10.2 Register Descriptions

10.2.1 SBYCR : Standby Control Register

Base address: SYSC = 0x4001_E000

Offset address: 0x00C

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	SSBY	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
14:0	—	These bits are read as reset value. The write value should be reset value	R/W
15	SSBY	Software Standby Mode Select 0: Sleep mode 1: Software Standby mode	R/W

Note: Set the PRCR.PRC1 bit to 1 (write enabled) before rewriting this register.

SSBY bit (Software Standby Mode Select)

The SSBY bit specifies the transition destination after a WFI instruction is executed.

When the SSBY bit is set to 1, the MCU enters Software Standby mode after execution of a WFI instruction. When the MCU returns to Normal mode from Software Standby mode by an interrupt, the SSBY bit remains 1. The SSBY bit can be cleared by writing 0 to it.

While the OSTDCR.OSTDE bit is 1, setting of the SSBY bit is ignored. Even if SSBY bit is 1, the MCU enters Sleep mode on execution of a WFI instruction.

While the FENTRYR.FENTRY0 bit is 1 setting of the SSBY bit is ignored. Even if SSBY bit is 1, the MCU enters Sleep mode on execution of a WFI instruction.

10.2.2 MSTPCRA : Module Stop Control Register A

Base address: SYSC = 0x4001_E000

Offset address: 0x01C

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	MSTP A22	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	0	1	1	1	1	1	1

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
21:0	—	These bits are read as 1. The write value should be 1.	R/W
22	MSTPA22	DTC Module Stop*1 0: Cancel the module-stop state 1: Enter the module-stop state	R/W
31:23	—	These bits are read as 1. The write value should be 1.	R/W

Note 1. When rewriting the MSTPA22 bit from 0 to 1, disable the DTC before setting the MSTPA22 bit.

10.2.3 MSTPCRB : Module Stop Control Register B

Base address: MSTP = 0x4004_7000

Offset address: 0x000

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	MSTP B31	MSTP B30	MSTP B29	—	—	—	—	—	—	MSTP B22	—	—	MSTP B19	—	—	—
Value after reset:	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	MSTP B14	—	—	MSTP B11	—	MSTP B9	—	—	—	—	—	—	MSTP B2	—	MSTP B0
Value after reset:	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	MSTPB0	Serial Interface UARTA Module Stop Target module: UARTA 0: Cancel the module-stop state 1: Enter the module-stop state	R/W
1	—	This bit is read as 1. The write value should be 1.	R/W
2	MSTPB2	Controller Area Network Module Stop Target module: CAN 0: Cancel the module-stop state 1: Enter the module-stop state	R/W
8:3	—	These bits are read as 1. The write value should be 1.	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
9	MSTPB9	IIC/I3C Bus Interface 0 Module Stop Target module: IIC/I3C 0: Cancel the module-stop state 1: Enter the module-stop state	R/W
10	—	This bit is read as 1. The write value should be 1.	R/W
11	MSTPB11	Universal Serial Bus 2.0 FS Interface Module Stop Target module: USBFS 0: Cancel the module-stop state 1: Enter the module-stop state	R/W
13:12	—	These bits are read as 1. The write value should be 1.	R/W
14	MSTPB14	Universal Serial Bus Type-C Controller Interface Module Stop Target module: USBCC 0: Cancel the module-stop state 1: Enter the module-stop state	R/W
18:15	—	These bits are read as 1. The write value should be 1.	R/W
19	MSTPB19	Serial Peripheral Interface 0 Module Stop Target module: SPI0 0: Cancel the module-stop state 1: Enter the module-stop state	R/W
21:20	—	These bits are read as 1. The write value should be 1.	R/W
22	MSTPB22	Serial Communication Interface 9 Module Stop Target module: SCI9 0: Cancel the module-stop state 1: Enter the module-stop state	R/W
28:23	—	These bits are read as 1. The write value should be 1.	R/W
29	MSTPB29	Serial Communication Interface 2 Module Stop Target module: SCI2 0: Cancel the module-stop state 1: Enter the module-stop state	R/W
30	MSTPB30	Serial Communication Interface 1 Module Stop Target module: SCI1 0: Cancel the module-stop state 1: Enter the module-stop state	R/W
31	MSTPB31	Serial Communication Interface 0 Module Stop Target module: SCI0 0: Cancel the module-stop state 1: Enter the module-stop state	R/W

10.2.4 MSTPCRC : Module Stop Control Register C

Base address: MSTP = 0x4004_7000

Offset address: 0x004

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	MSTP C28	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	MSTP C14	MSTP C13	—	—	—	—	MSTP C8	—	—	—	—	—	—	MSTP C1	MSTP C0
Value after reset:	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	MSTPC0	Clock Frequency Accuracy Measurement Circuit Module Stop* ¹ Target module: CAC 0: Cancel the module-stop state 1: Enter the module-stop state	R/W
1	MSTPC1	Cyclic Redundancy Check Calculator Module Stop Target module: CRC 0: Cancel the module-stop state 1: Enter the module-stop state	R/W
7:2	—	These bits are read as 1. The write value should be 1.	R/W
8	MSTPC8	Serial Sound Interface Enhanced Module Stop Target module: SSIE 0: Cancel the module-stop state 1: Enter the module-stop state	R/W
12:9	—	These bits are read as 1. The write value should be 1.	R/W
13	MSTPC13	Data Operation Circuit Module Stop Target module: DOC 0: Cancel the module-stop state 1: Enter the module-stop state	R/W
14	MSTPC14	Event Link Controller Module Stop Target module: ELC 0: Cancel the module-stop state 1: Enter the module-stop state	R/W
27:15	—	These bits are read as 1. The write value should be 1.	R/W
28	MSTPC28	True Random Number Generator Module Stop* ² Target module: TRNG 0: Cancel the module-stop state 1: Enter the module-stop state	R/W
31:29	—	These bits are read as 1. The write value should be 1.	R/W

Note 1. The MSTPC0 bit should be written after the CAC clock (CACMCLK/CACSCLK/CACLCLK/CACMOCLK/CACHCLK/CACILCLK) is stable. To enter Software Standby mode, the WFI instruction should be executed after 2 or more cycles of CACMCLK/CACSCLK/CACLCLK/CACMOCLK/CACHCLK/CACILCLK following the change of MSTPC0.

Note 2. Set the MSTPC28 bit to 0 once at the beginning of the program, to initialize an unused circuit, even if the TRNG is not used in this MCU. See [section 10.9.14. Module-stop Function for an Unused Circuit](#).

10.2.5 MSTPCRD : Module Stop Control Register D

Base address: MSTP = 0x4004_7000

Offset address: 0x008

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	MSTP D16
Value after reset:	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	MSTP D14	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	MSTP D6	MSTP D5	—	MSTP D3	MSTP D2	—	—
Value after reset:	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
1:0	—	These bits are read as 1. The write value should be 1.	R/W
2	MSTPD2	Low Power Asynchronous General Purpose Timer 1 Module Stop* ¹ Target module: AGTW1 0: Cancel the module-stop state 1: Enter the module-stop state	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
3	MSTPD3	Low Power Asynchronous General Purpose Timer 0 Module Stop* ² Target module: AGTW0 0: Cancel the module-stop state 1: Enter the module-stop state	R/W
4	—	This bit is read as 1. The write value should be 1.	R/W
5	MSTPD5	General PWM Timer 32n Module Stop Target module: GPT32n (n = 0) 0: Cancel the module-stop state 1: Enter the module-stop state	R/W
6	MSTPD6	General PWM Timer 164 to 169 and PWM Delay Generation Circuit Module Stop Target module: GPT164 to 169, and PWM delay generation circuit 0: Cancel the module-stop state 1: Enter the module-stop state	R/W
13:7	—	These bits are read as 1. The write value should be 1.	R/W
14	MSTPD14	Port Output Enable for GPT Module Stop Target module: POEG 0: Cancel the module-stop state 1: Enter the module-stop state	R/W
15	—	This bit is read as 1. The write value should be 1.	R/W
16	MSTPD16	12-bit A/D Converter Module Stop Target module: ADC120 0: Cancel the module-stop state 1: Enter the module-stop state	R/W
31:17	—	These bits are read as 1. The write value should be 1.	R/W

Note 1. When the count source is sub-clock oscillator or LOCO, AGTW1 counting does not stop even if MSTPD2 is set to 1. If the count source is the sub-clock oscillator or LOCO, this bit must be set to 1 except when accessing the AGT1 registers.

Note 2. When the count source is sub-clock oscillator or LOCO, AGTW0 counting does not stop even if MSTPD3 is set to 1. If the count source is the sub-clock oscillator or LOCO, this bit must be set to 1 except when accessing the AGT0 registers.

10.2.6 OPCCR : Operating Power Control Register

Base address: SYSC = 0x4001_E000

Offset address: 0x0A0

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	OPCM TSF	—	—	OPCM[1:0]	

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
1:0	OPCM[1:0]	Operating Power Control Mode Select 0 0: High-speed mode 0 1: Middle-speed mode 1 0: Setting prohibited 1 1: Low-speed mode	R/W
3:2	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
4	OPCMTSF	Operating Power Control Mode Transition Status Flag 0: Transition completed 1: During transition	R
7:5	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

The OPCCR register is used to reduce power consumption in Normal mode, Sleep mode, and Snooze mode. Power consumption can be reduced according to the operating frequency and operating voltage used by the OPCCR setting. For the procedure to change the operating power control modes, see [section 10.5. Function for Lower Operating Power Consumption](#).

OPCM[1:0] bits (Operating Power Control Mode Select)

The OPCM[1:0] bits select the operating power control mode in Normal mode, Sleep mode, and Snooze mode.

Table 10.4 shows the relationship between the operating power control modes, the OPCM[1:0], and SOPCM bits settings.

Writing to OPCCR.OPCM[1:0] is prohibited while MCU is under the following conditions:

1. HOCOCR.HCSTP and OSCSF.HOCOSF are 0 (the oscillation of the HOCO clock is not yet stable).
2. The MCU is in Sleep or Snooze mode, the MCU transitions to Normal mode from Sleep or Snooze mode, the MCU transitions to Sleep, Snooze, or Software Standby mode from Normal mode, or the MCU is in transfer state when in operating power mode.
3. Flash is in programming mode.
4. The MCU is in Subosc-speed mode (SOPCCR.SOPCM bit is 1).

OPCMTSF flag (Operating Power Control Mode Transition Status Flag)

The OPCMTSF flag indicates the switching control state when the operating power control mode is switched. This flag becomes 1 when the OPCM bit is written, and 0 when mode transition completes. Read this flag and confirm that it is 0 before proceeding.

10.2.7 SOPCCR : Sub Operating Power Control Register

Base address: SYSC = 0x4001_E000

Offset address: 0x0AA

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	SOPC MTSF	—	—	—	SOPC M
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	SOPCM	Sub Operating Power Control Mode Select 0: Other than Subosc-speed mode 1: Subosc-speed mode	R/W
3:1	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
4	SOPCMTSF	Operating Power Control Mode Transition Status Flag 0: Transition completed 1: During transition	R
7:5	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

The SOPCCR register is used to reduce power consumption in Normal mode, Sleep mode, and Snooze mode. Setting this register initiates entry to and exit from Subosc-speed mode. Subosc-speed mode is available only when using the sub-clock oscillator or LOCO without dividing the frequency.

For the procedure to change operating power control modes, see [section 10.5. Function for Lower Operating Power Consumption](#).

SOPCM bit (Sub Operating Power Control Mode Select)

The SOPCM bit selects the operating power control mode in Normal mode, Sleep mode, and Snooze mode. Setting this bit to 1 allows transition to Subosc-speed mode. Setting this bit to 0 allows a return to the operating mode (set in OPCCR.OPCM[1:0]) before the transition to Subosc-speed mode.

Writing to SOPCCR.SOPCM is prohibited while MCU is under the following conditions:

1. The MCU is in Sleep or Snooze mode, the MCU transitions to Normal mode from Sleep, Snooze, or Software Standby mode, the MCU transitions to Sleep, Snooze, or Software Standby mode from Normal mode, or the MCU is in transfer state when in operating power mode.
2. Flash is in programming mode.

3. MOSC is operating (MOSCCR.MOSTP bit is 0), HOCO is operating (HOCOCCR.HCSTP bit is 0), or MOCO is operating (MOCOCCR.MCSTP bit is 0).
4. The value of SCKDIVCR register is not equal to 0x00000000.
5. The data flash is disabled (DFLCTL.DFLEN bit is 0).

Table 10.4 shows the relationship between the operating power control modes, the OPCM[1:0], and SOPCM bits settings.

SOPCMTSF flag (Operating Power Control Mode Transition Status Flag)

The SOPCMTSF flag indicates the switching control state when the operating power control mode is switched to or from Subosc-speed mode. This flag becomes 1 when the SOPCM bit is written, and 0 when mode transition completes. Read this flag and confirm that it is 0 before proceeding.

Table 10.4 shows each operating power control mode.

Table 10.4 Operating power control mode

Operating power control mode	OPCM[1:0] bits	SOPCM bit	Power consumption
High-speed mode	00b	0	High
Middle-speed mode	01b	0	↓
Low-speed mode	11b	0	↓
Subosc-speed mode	xxb	1	Low

10.2.8 SNZCR : Snooze Control Register

Base address: SYSC = 0x4001_E000

Offset address: 0x092

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	SNZE	—	—	—	—	—	SNZD TCEN	RXDR EQEN

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	RXDREQEN	RXD0 Snooze Request Enable 0: Ignore RXD0 falling edge in Software Standby mode 1: Detect RXD0 falling edge in Software Standby mode	R/W
1	SNZDTCEN	DTC Enable in Snooze mode 0: Disable DTC operation 1: Enable DTC operation	R/W
6:2	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
7	SNZE	Snooze mode Enable 0: Disable Snooze mode 1: Enable Snooze mode	R/W

Note: Set the PRCR.PRC1 bit to 1 (write enabled) before rewriting this register.

RXDREQEN bit (RXD0 Snooze Request Enable)

The RXDREQEN bit specifies whether to detect a falling edge of the RXD0 pin in Software Standby mode. This bit can be used only when SCI0 is operating in asynchronous mode. To detect a falling edge of the RXD0 pin, set this bit before entering Software Standby mode. When this bit is set to 1, a falling edge of the RXD0 pin in Software Standby mode causes the MCU to enter Snooze mode.

SNZDTCEN bit (DTC Enable in Snooze mode)

The SNZDTCEN bit specifies whether to use the DTC and SRAM in Snooze mode. To use the DTC and SRAM in Snooze mode, set this bit to 1 before entering Software Standby mode. When this bit is set to 1, the DTC can be activated by setting the IELSRn register.

SNZE bit (Snooze mode Enable)

The SNZE bit specifies whether to enable a transition from Software Standby mode to Snooze mode. To use Snooze mode, set this bit to 1 before entering Software Standby mode. When this bit is set to 1, a trigger as shown in [Table 10.6](#) in Software Standby mode causes the MCU to enter Snooze mode. After the MCU transitions from Software Standby mode or Snooze mode to Normal mode, set 0 to the SNZE bit once then set it before reentering Software Standby mode. For details, see [section 10.8. Snooze Mode](#).

10.2.9 SNZEDCR0 : Snooze End Control Register 0

Base address: SYSC = 0x4001_E000

Offset address: 0x094

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	SCIOUMTED	—	—	AD0UMTED	AD0MATED	DTCNZRED	DTCZRED	AGTUNFED
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	AGTUNFED	AGTW1 Underflow Snooze End Enable 0: Disable the snooze end request 1: Enable the snooze end request	R/W
1	DTCZRED	Last DTC Transmission Completion Snooze End Enable 0: Disable the snooze end request 1: Enable the snooze end request	R/W
2	DTCNZRED	Not Last DTC Transmission Completion Snooze End Enable 0: Disable the snooze end request 1: Enable the snooze end request	R/W
3	AD0MATED	ADC12 Compare Match Snooze End Enable 0: Disable the snooze end request 1: Enable the snooze end request	R/W
4	AD0UMTED	ADC12 Compare Mismatch Snooze End Enable 0: Disable the snooze end request 1: Enable the snooze end request	R/W
6:5	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
7	SCIOUMTED	SCIO Address Mismatch Snooze End Enable 0: Disable the snooze end request 1: Enable the snooze end request	R/W

Note: Set the PRCR.PRC1 bit to 1 (write enabled) before rewriting this register.

The SNZEDCR0 register controls the condition of switching from Snooze mode to Software Standby mode. To use a trigger shown in [Table 10.7](#) as a condition to switch from Snooze mode to Software Standby mode, the corresponding bit in the SNZEDCR0 register must be set to 1.

The event that is used to return from Snooze mode to normal mode as shown in [Table 10.3](#) must not be enabled in the SNZEDCR0 register.

AGTUNFED bit (AGTW1 Underflow Snooze End Enable)

The AGTUNFED bit specifies whether to enable a transition from Snooze mode to Software Standby mode on an AGTW1 underflow. For details on the trigger conditions, see [section 21, Low Power Asynchronous General Purpose Timer \(AGTW\)](#).

DTCZRED bit (Last DTC Transmission Completion Snooze End Enable)

The DTCZRED bit specifies whether to enable a transition from Snooze mode to Software Standby mode on completion of the last DTC transmission, that is, when CRA or CRB registers in the DTC is 0. For details on the trigger conditions, see [section 15, Data Transfer Controller \(DTC\)](#).

DTCNZRED bit (Not Last DTC Transmission Completion Snooze End Enable)

The DTCNZRED bit specifies whether to enable a transition from Snooze mode to Software Standby mode on completion of each DTC transmission, that is, when CRA or CRB registers in the DTC is not 0. For details on the trigger conditions, see [section 15, Data Transfer Controller \(DTC\)](#).

AD0MATED bit (ADC12 Compare Match Snooze End Enable)

The AD0MATED bit specifies whether to enable a transition from Snooze mode to Software Standby mode on an ADC120 event when a conversion result matches the expected data. For details on the trigger conditions, see [section 34, 12-Bit A/D Converter \(ADC12\)](#).

AD0UMTED bit (ADC12 Compare Mismatch Snooze End Enable)

The AD0UMTED bit specifies whether to enable a transition from Snooze mode to Software Standby mode on an ADC120 event when the conversion result does not match the expected data. For details on the trigger conditions, see [section 34, 12-Bit A/D Converter \(ADC12\)](#).

SCI0UMTED bit (SCI0 Address Mismatch Snooze End Enable)

The SCI0UMTED bit specifies whether to enable a transition from Snooze mode to Software Standby mode on an SCI0 event when an address received in Software Standby mode does not match the expected data. For details on the trigger conditions, see [section 27, Serial Communications Interface \(SCI\)](#). Only set this bit to 1 when SCI0 operates in asynchronous mode.

10.2.10 SNZREQCR0 : Snooze Request Control Register 0

Base address: SYSC = 0x4001_E000

Offset address: 0x098

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	SNZR EQEN 30	SNZR EQEN 29	SNZR EQEN 28	—	—	SNZR EQEN 25	SNZR EQEN 24	—	—	—	—	—	—	SNZR EQEN 17	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	SNZR EQEN 7	SNZR EQEN 6	SNZR EQEN 5	SNZR EQEN 4	SNZR EQEN 3	SNZR EQEN 2	SNZR EQEN 1	SNZR EQEN 0
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	SNZREQEN0	Enable IRQ0 pin snooze request 0: Disable the snooze request 1: Enable the snooze request	R/W
1	SNZREQEN1	Enable IRQ1 pin snooze request 0: Disable the snooze request 1: Enable the snooze request	R/W
2	SNZREQEN2	Enable IRQ2 pin snooze request 0: Disable the snooze request 1: Enable the snooze request	R/W
3	SNZREQEN3	Enable IRQ3 pin snooze request 0: Disable the snooze request 1: Enable the snooze request	R/W
4	SNZREQEN4	Enable IRQ4 pin snooze request 0: Disable the snooze request 1: Enable the snooze request	R/W
5	SNZREQEN5	Enable IRQ5 pin snooze request 0: Disable the snooze request 1: Enable the snooze request	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
6	SNZREQEN6	Enable IRQ6 pin snooze request 0: Disable the snooze request 1: Enable the snooze request	R/W
7	SNZREQEN7	Enable IRQ7 pin snooze request 0: Disable the snooze request 1: Enable the snooze request	R/W
16:8	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
17	SNZREQEN17	Enable KEY_INTKR snooze request 0: Disable the snooze request 1: Enable the snooze request	R/W
23:18	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
24	SNZREQEN24	Enable RTC alarm snooze request 0: Disable the snooze request 1: Enable the snooze request	R/W
25	SNZREQEN25	Enable RTC period snooze request 0: Disable the snooze request 1: Enable the snooze request	R/W
27:26	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
28	SNZREQEN28	Enable AGTW1 underflow snooze request 0: Disable the snooze request 1: Enable the snooze request	R/W
29	SNZREQEN29	Enable AGTW1 compare match A snooze request 0: Disable the snooze request 1: Enable the snooze request	R/W
30	SNZREQEN30	Enable AGTW1 compare match B snooze request 0: Disable the snooze request 1: Enable the snooze request	R/W
31	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

The SNZREQCR0 register controls which trigger causes the MCU to switch from Software Standby mode to Snooze mode. If a trigger is selected as a request to cancel Software Standby mode by setting the WUPEN register, see [section 12, Interrupt Controller Unit \(ICU\)](#), the MCU enters Normal mode when the trigger is generated while the associated bit of the SNZREQCR0 is 1. The setting of the WUPEN register always has higher priority than the setting of the SNZREQCR0 register. For details, see [section 10.8. Snooze Mode](#) and [section 12, Interrupt Controller Unit \(ICU\)](#).

10.2.11 PSMCR : Power Save Memory Control Register

Base address: SYSC = 0x4001_E000

Offset address: 0x09F

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	PSMC[1:0]	
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
1:0	PSMC[1:0]	Power Save Memory Control 0 0: All SRAMs are on in Software Standby mode 0 1: 8 KB SRAM (0x2000_4000 to 0x2000_5FFF) is on in Software Standby mode 1 0: Setting prohibited 1 1: Setting prohibited	R/W
7:2	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

PSMC[1:0] bits (Power Save Memory Control)

The PSMC[1:0] bits select the SRAM retention area in Software Standby mode. Setting these bits to 01b (8 KB SRAM in Software Standby mode) reduces the supply current. Set the PSMC register before executing a WFI instruction.

This register is protected by the PRCR.PRC1 bit.

10.2.12 SYOCDCCR : System Control OCD Control Register

Base address: SYSC = 0x4001_E000

Offset address: 0x040E

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	DBGEN	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
6:0	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
7	DBGEN	Debugger Enable bit Set to 1 first in on-chip debug mode. 0: On-chip debugger is disabled 1: On-chip debugger is enabled	R/W

Note: Set the PRCR.PRC1 bit to 1 (write enabled) before rewriting this register.

DBGEN bit (Debugger Enable bit)

The DBGEN bit enables the on-chip debug mode. This bit must be set to 1 first in the on-chip debugger mode.

[Setting condition]

- Writing 1 to the bit when the debugger is connected.

[Clearing conditions]

- Power-on reset is generated
- Writing 0 to the bit.

Note: Certain restrictions apply in terms of the MCU states in which the DBGEN bit can be set to 1. For details, see [section 2.7.3. Restrictions on Connecting an OCD Emulator](#).

10.2.13 LSMRWDIS : Low Speed Module R/W Disable Control Register

Base address: MSTP = 0x4004_7000

Offset address: 0x00C

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	PRKEY[7:0]								WREN	—	—	—	—	IWDTIS	WDTDIS	RTCRWDIS
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	RTCRWDIS	RTC Register R/W Enable Control Stop the RTC register R/W clock (only valid when LPOPT.LPOPTEN = 1) 0: RTC register R/W clock always on 1: RTC register R/W clock stops	R/W
1	WDTDIS	WDT Operate Clock Control Stop the WDT counter clock and register R/W clock (valid only when LPOPT.LPOPTEN = 1) 0: WDT operates as normal 1: Stop the WDT clock and register R/W clock	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
2	IWDTIDS	IWDT Register Clock Control Stop the IWDT register R/W clock (valid only when LPOPT.LPOPTEN = 1) 0: IWDT operates as normal 1: Stop the IWDT register R/W clock	R/W
6:3	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
7	WREN	Write Enable for bits [2:0] 0: Write protect for bits [2:0] 1: Write enable for bits [2:0]	R/W
15:8	PRKEY[7:0]	LSMRWDIS Key Code These bits control the write access to the LSMRWDIS register. To modify the LSMRWDIS register, write 0xA5 to the upper 8 bits and the target value to the lower 8 bits as a 16-bit unit.	W

RTCRWDIS bit (RTC Register R/W Enable Control)

[Setting conditions]

- This bit can only be modified when WREN is set to 1.
- When LPOPT.LPOPTEN = 1 and this bit is set to 1, this bit stops the RTC register R/W clock.

WDTDIS bit (WDT Operate Clock Control)

[Setting conditions]

- This bit can only be modified when WREN is set to 1.
- When LPOPT.LPOPTEN = 1 and this bit is set to 1, this bit stops the WDT operate clock.
- Do not set this bit to 1 when WDT is in auto start mode (OFS0.WDTSTRT = 0).
- Do not set this bit to 1 when WDT is operating.
- Set this bit to 1 to disable register start mode for WDT.

IWDTIDS bit (IWDT Register Clock Control)

[Setting conditions]

- This bit can only be modified when WREN is set to 1.
- When LPOPT.LPOPTEN = 1 and this bit is set to 1, this bit stops the IWDT register R/W clock.
- Do not set this bit to 1 when IWDT is in auto start mode (OFS0.IWDTSTRT = 0).
- Do not set this bit to 1 when IWDT is operating.

10.2.14 LPOPT : Lower Power Operation Control Register

Base address: SYSC = 0x4001_E000

Offset address: 0x04C

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	LPOPTEN	—	—	—	BPFC LKDIS	DCLKDIS[1:0]	MPUDIS	IS
Value after reset:	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	MPUDIS	MPU Clock Disable Control Stop the MPU operate clock (valid only when LPOPTEN = 1) 0: MPU operates as normal 1: MPU operating clock stops (MPU function disabled)	R/W
2:1	DCLKDIS[1:0]	Debug Clock Disable Control 0 0: Debug clock does not stop Others: Debug clock stops (valid only when LPOPT.LPOPTEN = 1)	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
3	BPFCLKDIS	BPF Clock Disable Control Stop the Flash register R/W clock (valid only when LPOPT.LPOPTEN = 1) 0: Flash register R/W clock operates as normal 1: Flash register R/W clock stops	R/W
5:4	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
6	—	This bit is read as 1. The write value should be 1.	R/W
7	LPOPTEN	Lower Power Operation Enable 0: All lower power countermeasure disable 1: All lower power countermeasure enable	R/W

The LPOPT register is protected by the PRCR.PRC0 bit.

MPUDIS bit (MPU Clock Disable Control)

[Setting conditions]

- Do not set this bit to 1 when the MPU function is used.
- When LPOPT.LPOPTEN = 1 and this bit is set to 1, this bit stops the MPU operating clock.

DCLKDIS[1:0] bits (Debug Clock Disable Control)

[Setting conditions]

- Do not set these bits to 1 when in OCD mode or in SCI boot mode.
- When LPOPT.LPOPTEN = 1 and this bit is set to 1, this bit stops the debug system clock to debug function for the chip.

BPFCLKDIS bit (BPF Clock Disable Control)

[Setting conditions]

- Do not set this bit to 1 when in OCD mode or SCI boot mode.
- Do not set this bit to 1 when operating code flash or data flash through the Flash register.
- Do not set this bit to 1 when operating data flash.
- Do not set this bit to 1 when the system transfers power control mode (for example, transfer High-speed mode to Middle-speed mode or transfer High-speed mode to Low-speed mode).
- When LPOPT.LPOPTEN = 1 and this bit is set to 1, this bit stops the Flash register R/W clock.

LPOPTEN bit (Lower Power Operation Enable)

[Setting condition]

- Setting this bit to 1 decreases the MCU power consumption but creates limitations in the system.

10.3 Reducing Power Consumption by Switching Clock Signals

The clock frequency changes when the SCKDIVCR register is set.

For information on module and clock associations, see [section 8.2.1. SCKDIVCR : System Clock Division Control Register](#).

10.4 Module-stop Function

The module-stop function can stop the clock supply set for each peripheral module.

When the MSTPmi bit (m = A to D, i = 31 to 0) in MSTPCRN (n = A to D) is set to 1, the specified module stops operating and enters the module-stop state, but the CPU continues to operate independently. Setting the MSTPmi bit to 0 cancels the module-stop state, allowing the module to resume operation at the end of the bus cycle.

After a reset is canceled, all modules other than the DTC modules are placed in the module-stop state. Do not access the module while the corresponding MSTPmi bit is 1. Additionally, do not set 1 to the MSTPmi bit while the corresponding module is accessed.

10.5 Function for Lower Operating Power Consumption

By selecting an appropriate operating power consumption control mode according to the operating frequency, power consumption can be reduced in Normal mode, Sleep mode, and Snooze mode.

10.5.1 Setting Operating Power Control Mode

Ensure the operating condition such as the frequency range is always within the specified range before and after switching the operating power control modes.

This section provides example procedures for switching operating power control modes.

Table 10.5 Available oscillators in each mode

Mode	Oscillator					
	High-speed on-chip oscillator	Middle-speed on-chip oscillator	Low-speed on-chip oscillator	Main clock oscillator	Sub-clock oscillator	IWDT-dedicated on-chip oscillator
High-speed	Available	Available	Available	Available	Available	Available
Middle-speed	Available	Available	Available	Available	Available	Available
Low-speed	Available	Available	Available	N/A	Available	Available
Subosc-speed	N/A	N/A	Available	N/A	Available	Available

(1) Switching from a higher power mode to a lower power mode

Example 1: From High-speed mode to Low-speed mode:

(Operation begins in High-speed mode)

1. Change the oscillator to what is used in Low-speed mode. Set the frequency of each clock lower than or equal to the maximum operating frequency in Low-speed mode.
2. Turn off the oscillator that is not required in Low-speed mode.
3. Confirm that the OPCCR.OPCMTSF flag is 0 (indicates transition completed).
4. Set the OPCCR.OPCM[1:0] bits to 11b (Low-speed mode).
5. Confirm that the OPCCR.OPCMTSF flag is 0 (indicates transition completed).

(Operation is now in Low-speed mode)

Example 2: From High-speed mode to Subosc-speed mode

(Operation begins in High-speed mode)

1. Switch the clock source to a sub-clock oscillator. Turn off HOCO, MOCO, LOCO and main oscillator.
2. Confirm that all clock sources other than the sub-clock oscillator are stopped.
3. Confirm that the SOPCCR.SOPCMTSF flag is 0 (indicates transition completed).
4. Set the SOPCCR.SOPCM bit to 1 (Subosc-speed mode).
5. Confirm that the SOPCCR.SOPCMTSF flag is 0 (indicates transition completed).

(Operation is now in Subosc-speed mode)

(2) Switching from a lower power mode to a higher power mode

Example 1: From Subosc-speed mode to High-speed mode

(Operation begins in Subosc-speed mode)

1. Confirm that the SOPCCR.SOPCMTSF flag is 0 (indicates transition completed).
2. Set the SOPCCR.SOPCM bit to 0 (High-speed mode).
3. Confirm that the SOPCCR.SOPCMTSF flag is 0 (indicates transition completed).
4. Turn on the required oscillator in High-speed mode.

- Set the frequency of each clock lower than or equal to the maximum operating frequency for High-speed mode.

(Operation is now in High-speed mode)

Example 2: From Low-speed mode to High-speed mode

(Operation begins in Low-speed mode)

- Confirm that the OPCCR.OPCMTSF flag is 0 (indicates transition completed).
- Set the OPCCR.OPCM[1:0] bits to 00b (High-speed mode).
- Confirm that the OPCCR.OPCMTSF flag is 0 (indicates transition completed).
- Turn on any required oscillator in High-speed mode.
- Set the frequency of each clock lower than or equal to the maximum operating frequency for High-speed mode.

(Operation is now in High-speed mode)

10.5.2 Operating Range

Figure 10.2 to Figure 10.5 show the ICLK operating voltages and frequencies. However, peripheral module clocked by PCLKB and PCLKD is not equal to ICLK.

High-speed mode

The maximum operating frequency during a flash read is 48 MHz for ICLK. The operating voltage range during a flash read is 1.8 to 5.5 V.

During flash programming/erasure, the operating frequency range is 1 to 48 MHz and the operating voltage range is 1.8 to 5.5 V.

Figure 10.2 shows the operating voltages and frequencies in High-speed mode.

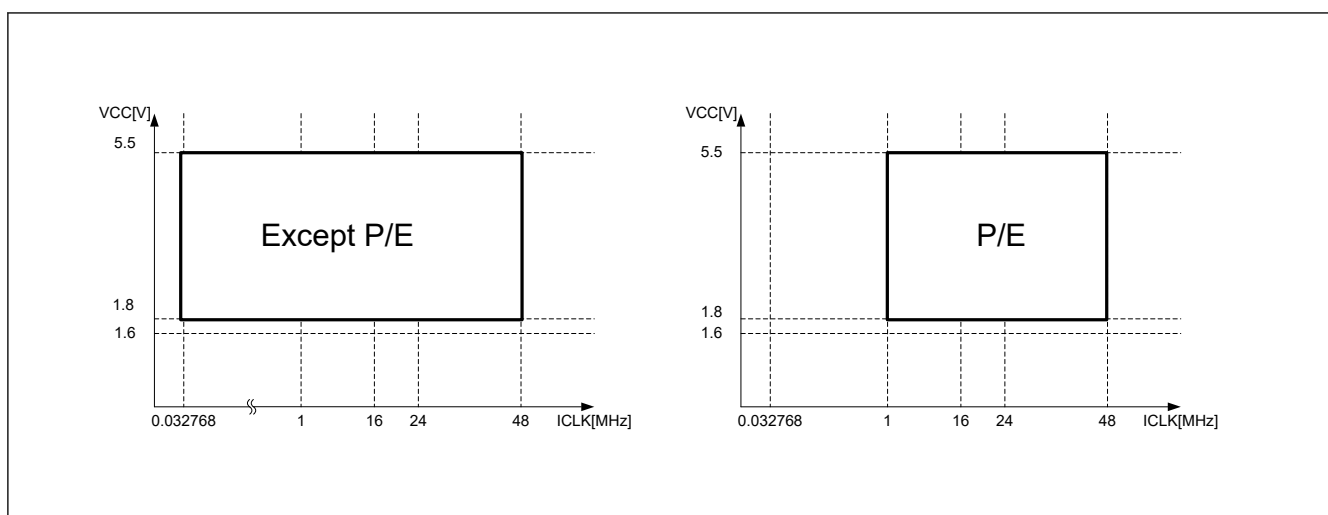


Figure 10.2 Operating voltages and frequencies in High-speed mode

Middle-speed mode

The power consumption of this mode is lower than that of High-speed mode under the same conditions.

The maximum operating frequency during a flash read is 24 MHz for ICLK. The operating voltage range during a flash read is 1.6 to 5.5 V. However, the maximum operating frequency during a flash read is 4 MHz when the operating voltage is 1.6 to 1.8 V.

During flash programming/erasure, the operating frequency range is 1 to 24 MHz and the operating voltage range is 1.6 to 5.5 V. However, the maximum operating frequency during flash programming/erasure is 4 MHz when the operating voltage is 1.6 to 1.8 V.

Figure 10.3 shows the operating voltages and frequencies in Middle-speed mode.

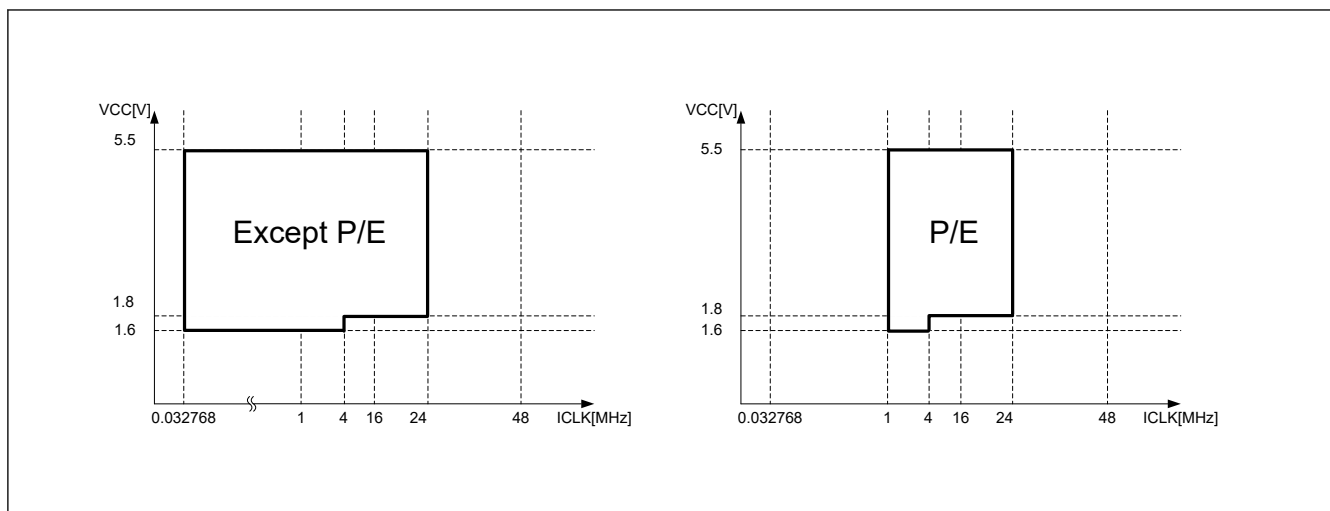


Figure 10.3 Operating voltages and frequencies in Middle-speed mode

Low-speed mode

The maximum operating frequency during a flash read is 2 MHz for ICLK. The operating voltage range during a flash read is 1.6 to 5.5 V.

During flash programming/erasure, the operating frequency range is 1 to 2 MHz and the operating voltage range is 1.6 to 5.5 V.

Figure 10.4 shows the operating voltages and frequencies in Low-speed mode.

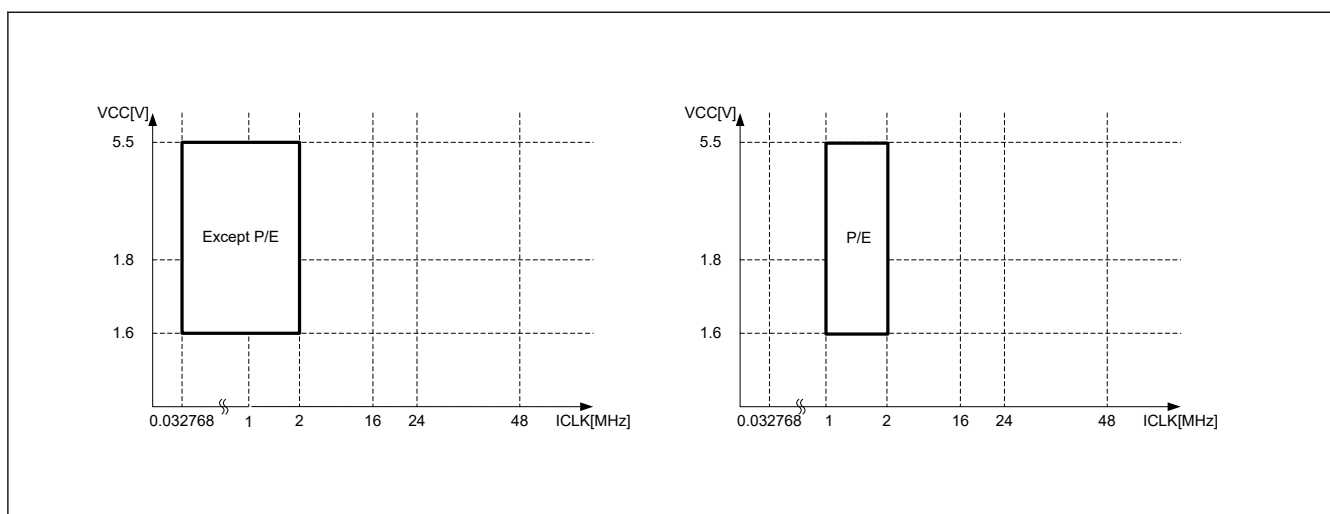


Figure 10.4 Operating voltages and frequencies in Low-speed mode

Note: Selecting the main clock oscillator as system clock source is prohibited if using the Low-speed mode.

Subosc-speed mode

The maximum operating frequency during a flash read is 37.6832 kHz for ICLK. The operating voltage range during a flash read is 1.6 to 5.5 V. P/E operations for flash memory are prohibited.

Using the oscillators other than the sub-clock oscillator or low-speed on-chip oscillator is prohibited. Setting the SCKDIVCR register to a value other than 0x00000000 is also prohibited.

Figure 10.5 shows the operating voltages and frequencies in Subosc-speed mode.

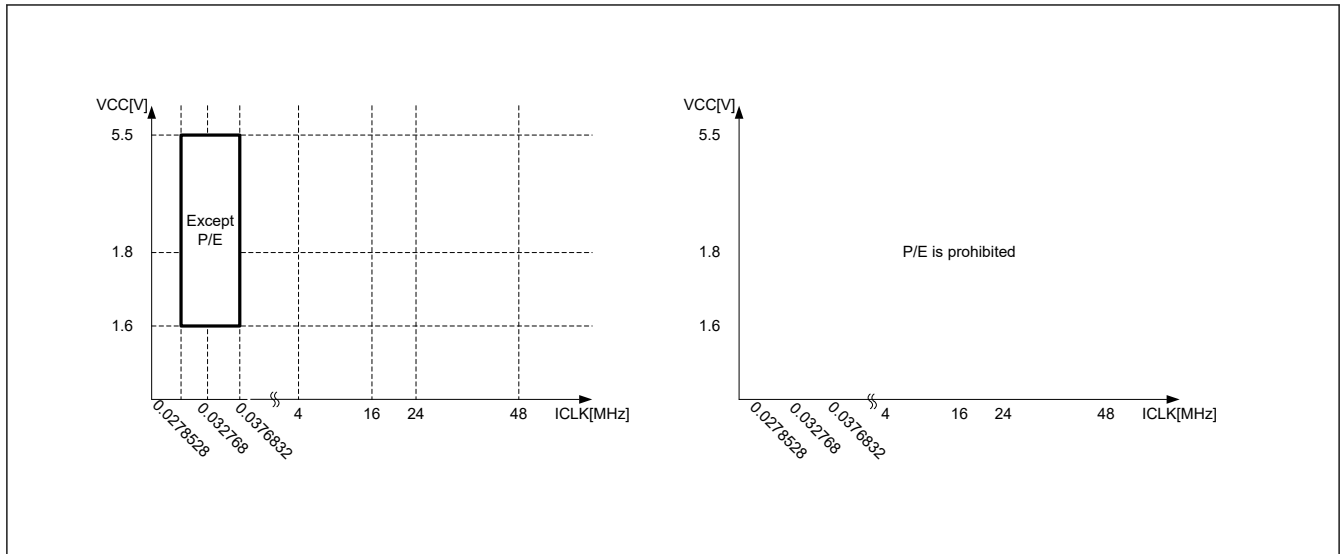


Figure 10.5 Operating voltages and frequencies in Subosc-speed mode

10.6 Sleep Mode

10.6.1 Transitioning to Sleep Mode

When a WFI instruction is executed while SBYCR.SSBY bit is 0, the MCU enters Sleep mode. In this mode, the CPU stops operating but the contents of its internal registers are retained. Other peripheral functions do not stop. Available resets or interrupts in Sleep mode cause the MCU to cancel Sleep mode. All interrupt sources are available. If using an interrupt to cancel Sleep mode, you must set the associated IELSRn register before executing a WFI instruction. For details, see [section 12, Interrupt Controller Unit \(ICU\)](#).

Counting by IWDT stops when the MCU enters Sleep mode while the IWDT is in auto start mode and the OFS0.IWDTSTPCTL bit is 1 (IWDT stops in Sleep mode, Software Standby mode, or Snooze mode).

Counting by IWDT continues when the MCU enters Sleep mode while the IWDT is in auto start mode and the OFS0.IWDTSTPCTL bit is 0 (IWDT does not stop in Sleep mode, Software Standby mode, or Snooze mode).

Counting by WDT stops when the MCU enters Sleep mode while the WDT is in auto start mode and the OFS0.WDTSTPCTL bit is 1 (WDT stops in Sleep mode). Similarly, counting by WDT stops when the MCU enters Sleep mode while the WDT is in register start mode and the WDTCSSTPR.SLCSTP bit is 1 (WDT stops in Sleep mode).

Counting by WDT continues when the MCU enters Sleep mode while the WDT is in auto start mode and the OFS0.WDTSTPCTL bit is 0 (WDT does not stop in Sleep mode). Similarly, counting by WDT continues when the MCU enters Sleep mode while the WDT is in register start mode and the WDTCSSTPR.SLCSTP bit is 0 (WDT does not stop in Sleep mode).

10.6.2 Canceling Sleep Mode

Sleep mode is canceled by:

- An interrupt
- A RES pin reset
- A power-on reset
- A voltage monitor reset
- An SRAM parity error reset
- A bus master MPU error reset
- A bus slave MPU error reset
- A reset caused by an IWDT or a WDT underflow

The operations are as follows:

1. Canceling by an interrupt
When an interrupt request is generated, Sleep mode is canceled and the MCU starts the interrupt handling.
2. Canceling by RES pin reset
When the RES pin is driven low, the MCU enters the reset state. Be sure to keep the RES pin low for the time period specified in [section 41, Electrical Characteristics](#). When the RES pin is driven high after the specified time period, the CPU starts the reset exception handling.
3. Canceling by IWDTC reset
 - Sleep mode is canceled by an internal reset generated by an IWDTC underflow and the MCU starts the reset exception handling. However, IWDTC stops in Sleep mode and an internal reset for canceling Sleep mode is not generated in the following conditions:
 - $OFS0.IWDTCSTRT = 0$ and $OFS0.IWDTCSTPCTL = 1$.
4. Canceling by WDT reset
Sleep mode is canceled by an internal reset generated by a WDT underflow and the MCU starts the reset exception handling. However, WDT stops in Sleep mode even when counting in Normal mode and an internal reset for canceling Sleep mode is not generated in the following conditions:
 - $OFS0.WDTCSTRT = 0$ (auto start mode) and $OFS0.WDTCSTPCTL = 1$
 - $OFS0.WDTCSTRT = 1$ (register start mode) and $WDTCSCTPR.SLCSTP = 1$.
5. Canceling by other resets available in Sleep mode
Sleep mode is canceled by other resets and the MCU starts the reset exception handling.

Note: For details on proper setting of the interrupts, see [section 12, Interrupt Controller Unit \(ICU\)](#).

10.7 Software Standby Mode

10.7.1 Transition to Software Standby Mode

When a WFI instruction is executed while SBYCR.SSBY bit is 1, the MCU enters Software Standby mode. In this mode, the CPU, most of the on-chip peripheral functions and oscillators stop. However, the contents of the CPU internal registers and SRAM data, the states of on-chip peripheral functions and the I/O ports are retained. Software Standby mode allows a significant reduction in power consumption because most of the oscillators stop in this mode. [Table 10.2](#) shows the status of each on-chip peripheral functions and oscillators. Available resets or interrupts in Software Standby mode cause the MCU to cancel Software Standby mode. See [Table 10.3](#) for available interrupt sources, [section 12.2.8. WUPEN : Wake Up Interrupt Enable Register](#), and [section 12.2.9. WUPEN2 : Wake Up Interrupt Enable Register 2](#) for information on how to wake up the MCU from Software Standby mode. If using an interrupt to cancel Software Standby mode, you must set the associated IELSRn register before executing a WFI instruction. For details, see [section 12, Interrupt Controller Unit \(ICU\)](#).

Counting by IWDTC stops when the MCU enters Software Standby mode while the IWDTC is in auto start mode and the $OFS0.IWDTCSTPCTL$ bit is 1 (IWDTC stops in Sleep mode, Software Standby mode, and Snooze mode). Counting by IWDTC continues if the MCU enters Software Standby mode while the IWDTC is in auto start mode and the $OFS0.IWDTCSTPCTL$ bit is 0 (IWDTC does not stop in Sleep mode, Software Standby mode, and Snooze mode).

WDT stops counting when the MCU enters Software Standby mode.

Do not enter Software Standby mode while $OSTDCR.OSTDE = 1$ (oscillation stop detection function is enabled). To enter Software Standby mode, execute a WFI instruction after disabling the oscillation stop detection function ($OSTDCR.OSTDE = 0$). If executing a WFI instruction while $OSTDCR.OSTDE = 1$, the MCU enters Sleep mode even when SBYCR.SSBY = 1. In addition, do not enter Software Standby mode while the flash memory performs a programming or erasing procedure. To enter Software Standby mode, execute a WFI instruction after the programming or erasing procedure completes.

10.7.2 Canceling Software Standby Mode

Software Standby mode is canceled by:

- An available interrupt shown in [Table 10.3](#)
- A RES pin reset
- A power-on reset
- A voltage monitor reset

- A reset caused by an IWDT underflow.

On exiting Software Standby mode, the oscillators that operate before the transition to the mode restart. After all the oscillators are stabilized, the MCU returns to Normal mode from Software Standby mode. See [section 12.2.8. WUPEN : Wake Up Interrupt Enable Register](#) and [section 12.2.9. WUPEN2 : Wake Up Interrupt Enable Register 2](#) for information on how to wake up the MCU from Software Standby mode.

You can cancel Software Standby mode in any of the following ways:

1. Canceling by an interrupt
When an available interrupt request (see [Table 10.3](#)) is generated, an oscillator that operates before the transition to Software Standby mode restarts. After all the oscillators are stabilized, the MCU returns to Normal mode from Software Standby mode and starts the interrupt handling.
2. Canceling by a RES pin reset
When the RES pin is driven low, the MCU enters the reset state, and the oscillators whose default status is operating, start the oscillation. Be sure to keep the RES pin low for the time period specified in [section 41, Electrical Characteristics](#). When the RES pin is driven high after the specified time period, the CPU starts the reset exception handling.
3. Canceling by a power-on reset
Software Standby mode is canceled by a power-on reset and the MCU starts the reset exception handling.
4. Canceling by a voltage monitor reset
Software Standby mode is canceled by a voltage monitor reset from the voltage detection circuit and the MCU starts the reset exception handling.
5. Canceling by IWDT reset
Software Standby mode is canceled by an internal reset generated by an IWDT underflow and the MCU starts the reset exception handling. However, IWDT stops in Software Standby mode and an internal reset for canceling Software Standby mode is not generated in the following condition:
 - $OFS0.IWDTSTRT = 0$ and $OFS0.IWDTSTPCTL = 1$.

10.7.3 Example of Software Standby Mode Application

[Figure 10.6](#) shows an example of entry to Software Standby mode on detection of a falling edge of the IRQn pin, and exit from Software Standby mode by a rising edge of the IRQn pin.

In this example, an IRQn pin interrupt is accepted with the IRQCRi.IRQMD[1:0] bits of the ICU set to 00b (falling edge) in Normal mode, and the IRQCRi.IRQMD[1:0] bits are set to 01b (rising edge). After that, the SBYCR.SSBY bit is set to 1 and a WFI instruction is executed. As a result, entry to Software Standby mode completes and exit from Software Standby mode is initiated by a rising edge of the IRQn pin.

Setting the ICU is also required to exit Software Standby mode. For details, see [section 12, Interrupt Controller Unit \(ICU\)](#). The oscillation stabilization time in [Figure 10.6](#) is specified in [section 41, Electrical Characteristics](#).

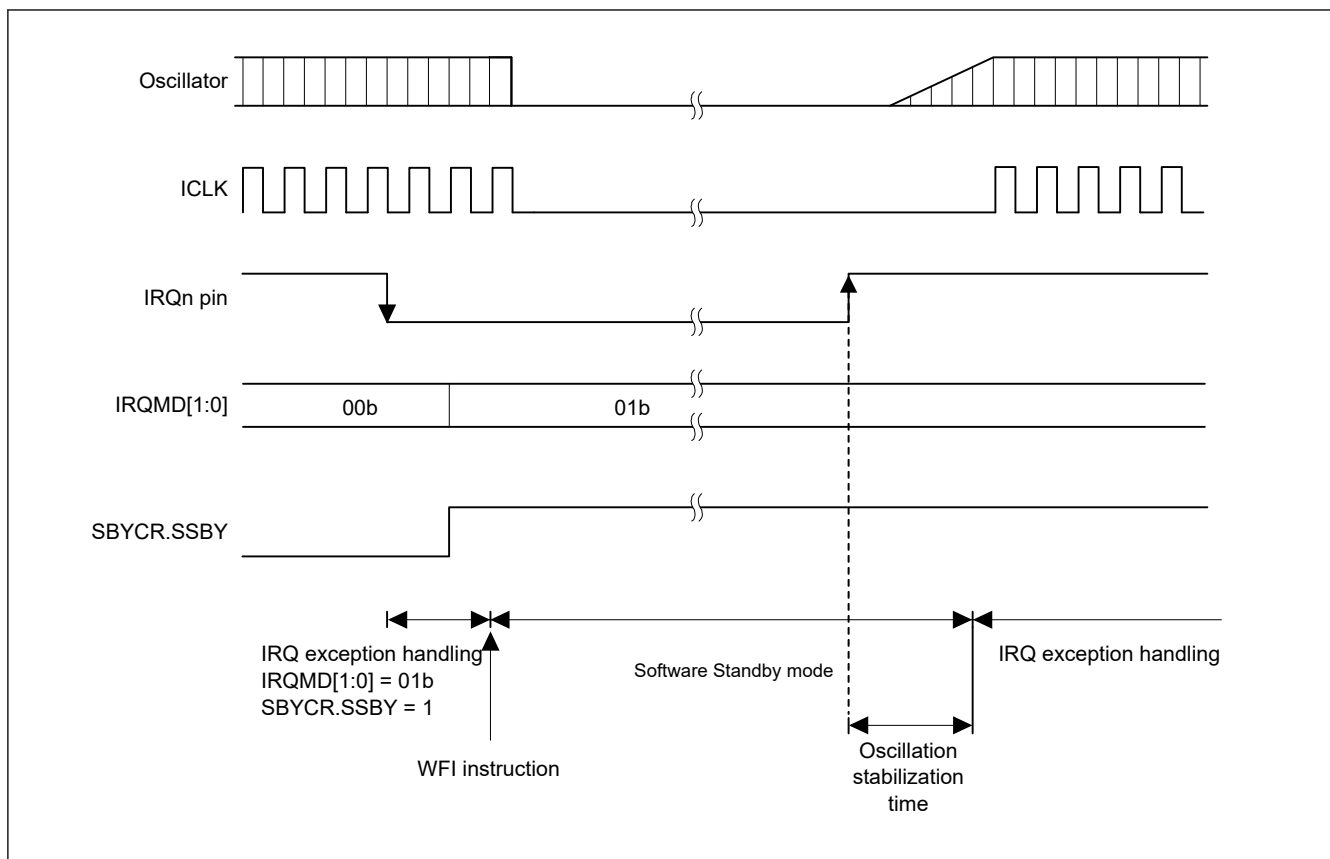


Figure 10.6 Example of Software Standby mode application

10.8 Snooze Mode

10.8.1 Transition to Snooze Mode

Figure 10.7 shows snooze mode entry configuration. When the snooze control circuit receives a snooze request in Software Standby mode, the MCU transfers to Snooze mode. In this mode, some peripheral modules operate without waking up the CPU. Table 10.2 shows the peripheral modules that can operate in Snooze mode. Also, DTC operation in Snooze mode can be selected by setting the SNZCR.SNZDTCEN bit.

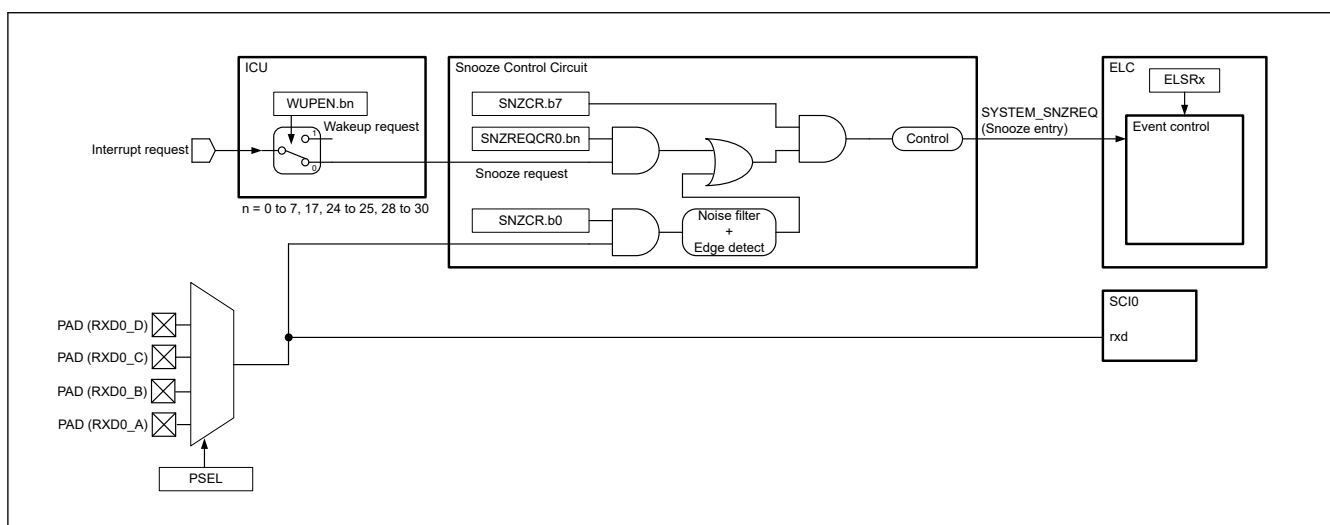


Figure 10.7 Snooze mode entry configuration

Table 10.6 shows the snooze requests to switch the MCU from Software Standby mode to Snooze mode. To use the listed snooze requests as a trigger to switch to Snooze mode, you must set the associated SNZREQENn bit of the SNZREQCR0 register or RXDREQEN bit of the SNZCR register before entering Software Standby mode.

Note: Do not enable multiple snooze requests at the same time.

Table 10.6 Available snooze requests to switch to Snooze mode

Snooze request	Control Register	
	Register	Bit
PORT_IRQn (n = 0 to 7)	SNZREQCR0	SNZREQENn (n = 0 to 7)
KEY_INTKR	SNZREQCR0	SNZREQEN17
RTC_ALM	SNZREQCR0	SNZREQEN24
RTC_PRD	SNZREQCR0	SNZREQEN25
AGT1_AGTI	SNZREQCR0	SNZREQEN28
AGT1_AGTCMAI	SNZREQCR0	SNZREQEN29
AGT1_AGTCMBI	SNZREQCR0	SNZREQEN30
RXD0 falling edge	SNZCR	RXDREQEN*1

Note 1. RXDREQEN bit must not be set to 1 unless in asynchronous mode.

Clear the DTCST.DTCST bit to 0 before executing a WFI instruction except when using DTC in Snooze mode. If DTC is required in Snooze mode, set the DTCST.DTCST bit to 1 before executing a WFI instruction.

10.8.2 Canceling Snooze Mode

Snooze mode is canceled by an interrupt request that is available in Software Standby mode or a reset. Table 10.3 shows the requests that can be used to exit each mode. After canceling the Snooze mode, the MCU enters Normal mode and proceeds with exception processing for the given interrupt or reset. The action triggered by the interrupt requests, selected in SELSR0, cancels Snooze mode. Interrupt canceling Snooze mode must be selected in IELSRn to link to the NVIC for the corresponding interrupt handling. See section 12, [Interrupt Controller Unit \(ICU\)](#) for information on SELSR0 and IELSRn registers.

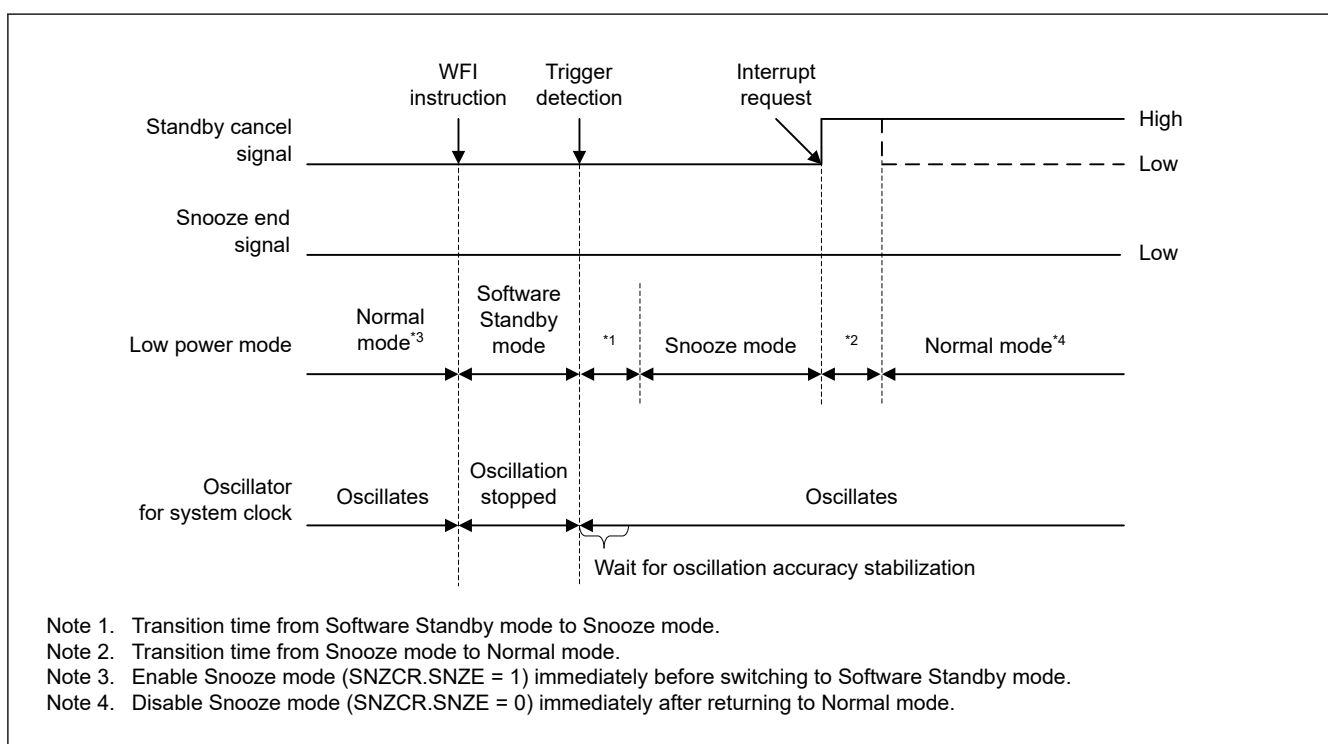


Figure 10.8 Canceling of Snooze mode when an interrupt request signal is generated

10.8.3 Returning from Snooze Mode to Software Standby Mode

Table 10.7 shows the snooze end request that can be used as triggers to return to Software Standby mode. The snooze end requests are available only in Snooze mode. If the requests are generated when the MCU is not in Snooze mode, they are ignored. When multiple requests are selected, each of the requests invokes transition to Software Standby mode from Snooze mode.

Table 10.8 shows the snooze end conditions that consist of the snooze end requests and the conditions of the peripheral modules. The SCI0, ADC12, and DTC modules can keep the MCU in Snooze mode until they complete the operation. However, an AGTn (n = 1) underflow as a trigger to return to Software Standby mode cancels Snooze mode without waiting for the completion of SCI0 operation.

Figure 10.9 shows the timing diagram for the transition from Snooze mode to Software Standby mode. This mode transition occurs according to which snooze end requests are set in the SNZEDCR0 register. A snooze request is cleared automatically after returning to Software Standby mode.

Table 10.7 Available snooze end requests (triggers to return to Software Standby mode)

Peripheral Module	Snooze end request	Enable/Disable Control	
		Register	Symbol
AGTW1	AGTW1 underflow (AGT1_AGTI)	SNZEDCR0	AGTUNFED
DTC	Last DTC transmission completion (DTC_COMPLETE)	SNZEDCR0	DTCZRED
DTC	Not Last DTC Transmission Completion (DTC_TRANSFER)	SNZEDCR0	DTCNZRED
ADC120	Window A/B compare match (ADC120_WCMPPM)	SNZEDCR0	AD0MATED
ADC120	Window A/B compare mismatch (ADC120_WCMPUM)	SNZEDCR0	AD0UMTED
SCI0	SCI0 address mismatch (SCI0_DCUF)	SNZEDCR0	SCI0UMTED

Table 10.8 Snooze end conditions

Operating module when a snooze end request occurs	Snooze end request	
	AGT1 underflow	Other than AGT1 underflow
DTC	The MCU transfers to the Software Standby mode after all the modules listed to the left complete operation.	The MCU transfers to the Software Standby mode after all the modules listed to the left complete operation.
ADC120		
SCI0 or AGTW1 underflow	The MCU transfers to the Software Standby mode immediately after a snooze end request is generated.	
Other than above	The MCU transfers to the Software Standby mode immediately after a snooze end request is generated.	

Note: If the DTC is used to activate the ADC120 or SCI0, the MCU transitions to Software Standby mode after a snooze end request is generated.

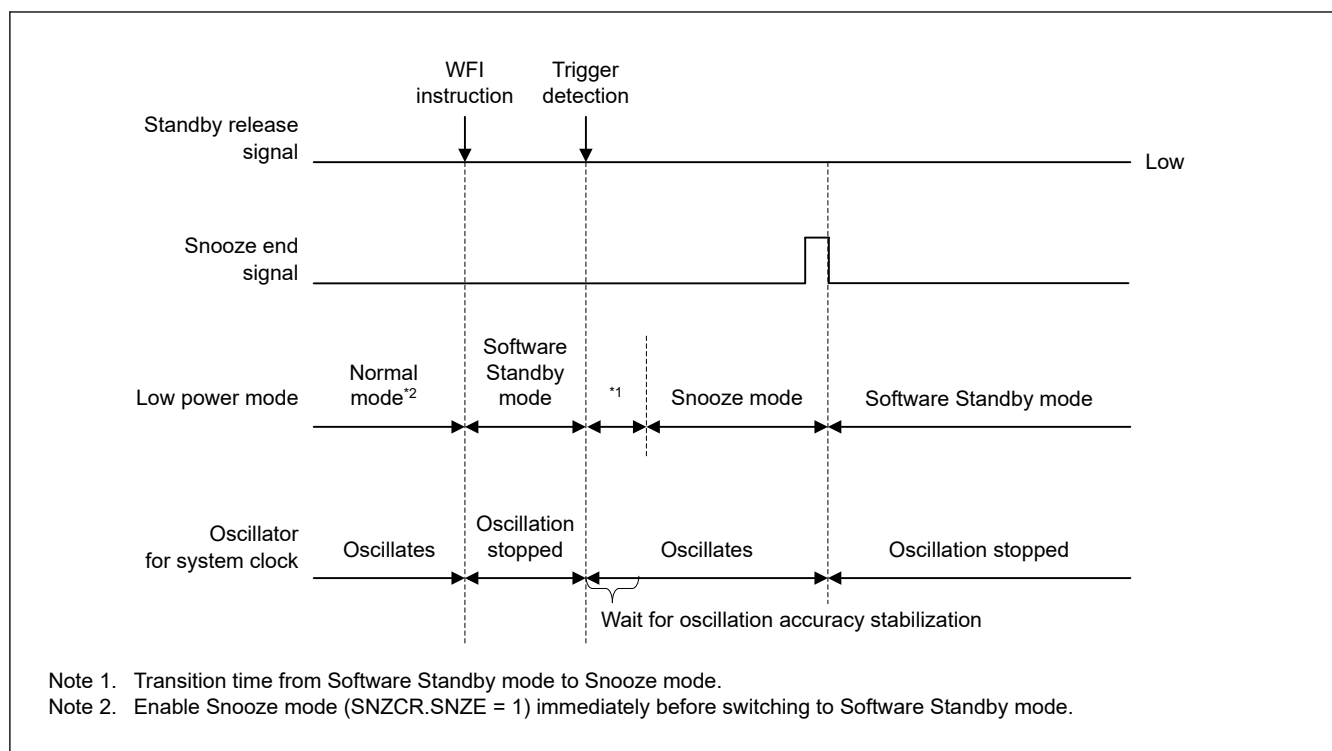


Figure 10.9 Canceling of Snooze mode when an interrupt request signal is not generated

10.8.4 Snooze Operation Example

Figure 10.10 shows an example setting for using ELC in Snooze mode.

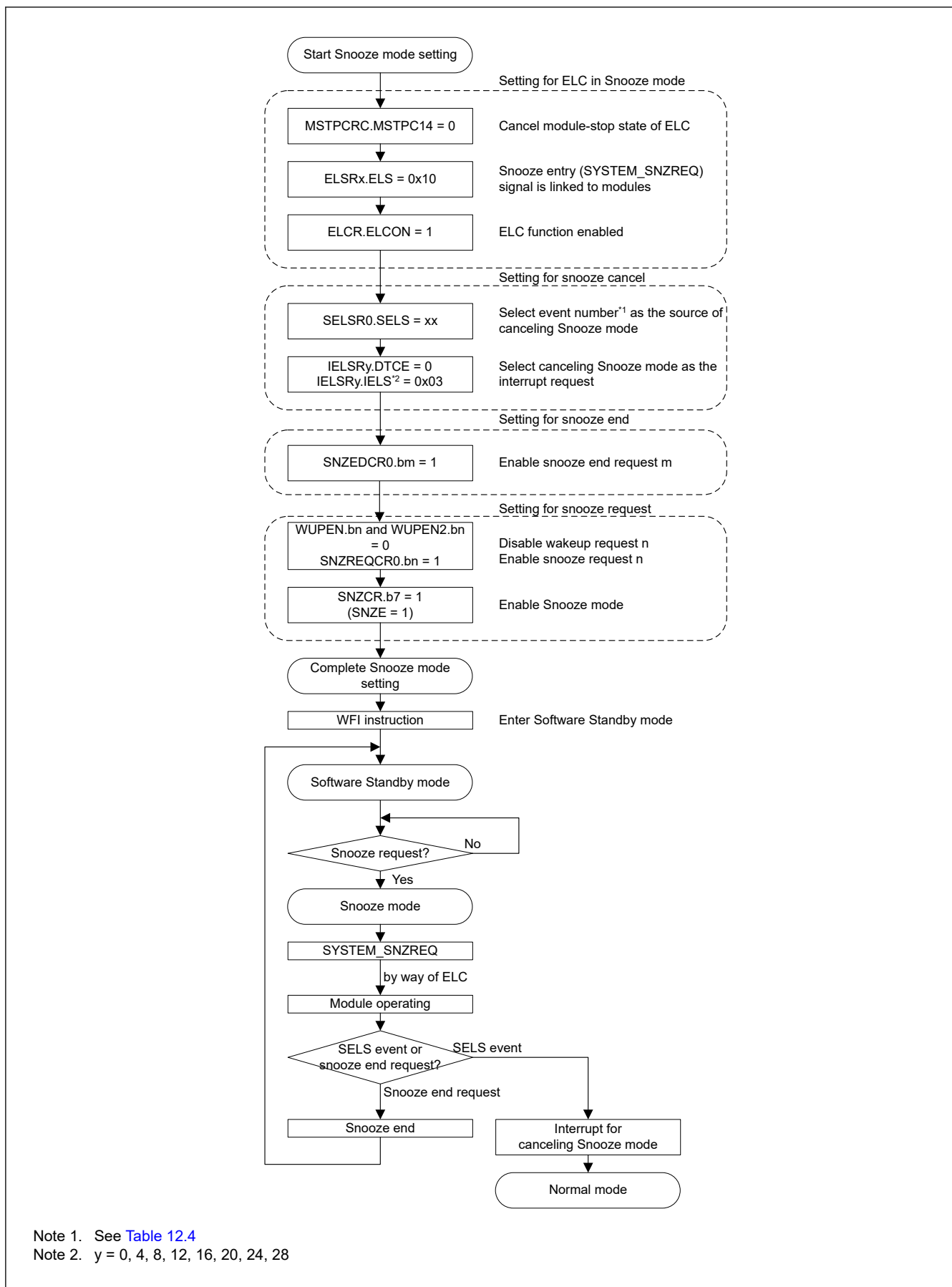


Figure 10.10 Setting example of using ELC in Snooze mode

The MCU can transmit and receive data in SCI0 asynchronous mode without CPU intervention. When using the SCI0 in Snooze mode, use one of the following operating modes:

- High-speed mode
- Middle-speed mode
- Low-speed mode.

Do not use Subosc-speed mode. [Table 10.9](#) shows the maximum transfer rate of SCI0 in Snooze mode. When using the SCI0 in Snooze mode, use the following settings:

- BGDM = 0
- ABCS = 0
- ABCSE = 0.

See [section 27, Serial Communications Interface \(SCI\)](#) for information on these bits.

High-speed mode, Middle-speed mode, Low-speed mode

Table 10.9 HOCO: $\pm 1\%$ (Unit: bps)

Maximum division ratio of ICLK, PCLKB, and PCLKD	HOCO frequency			
	24 MHz	32 MHz	48 MHz	64 MHz
1	76800 ^{*1}	76800 ^{*5}	—	—
2	76800 ^{*2}	76800 ^{*6}	76800 ^{*8}	76800 ^{*12}
4	76800 ^{*3}	76800 ^{*7}	76800 ^{*9}	76800 ^{*13}
8	76800 ^{*4}	62500	76800 ^{*10}	76800 ^{*14}
16	46875	62500	76800 ^{*11}	62500
32	23437	31250	46875	62500
64	11718	15625	23437	31250

Note 1. SCI0.SMR.CKS[1:0] = 00b, SCI0.SEMR.BRME = 1, SCI0.BRR = 0x06, SCI0.MDDR = 0xB8 must be used for 76800 bps.

Note 2. SCI0.SMR.CKS[1:0] = 00b, SCI0.SEMR.BRME = 1, SCI0.BRR = 0x03, SCI0.MDDR = 0xD2 must be used for 76800 bps.

Note 3. SCI0.SMR.CKS[1:0] = 00b, SCI0.SEMR.BRME = 1, SCI0.BRR = 0x01, SCI0.MDDR = 0xD2 must be used for 76800 bps.

Note 4. SCI0.SMR.CKS[1:0] = 00b, SCI0.SEMR.BRME = 1, SCI0.BRR = 0x00, SCI0.MDDR = 0xD2 must be used for 76800 bps.

Note 5. SCI0.SMR.CKS[1:0] = 00b, SCI0.SEMR.BRME = 1, SCI0.BRR = 0x08, SCI0.MDDR = 0xB1 must be used for 76800 bps.

Note 6. SCI0.SMR.CKS[1:0] = 00b, SCI0.SEMR.BRME = 1, SCI0.BRR = 0x04, SCI0.MDDR = 0xC5 must be used for 76800 bps.

Note 7. SCI0.SMR.CKS[1:0] = 00b, SCI0.SEMR.BRME = 1, SCI0.BRR = 0x02, SCI0.MDDR = 0xEC must be used for 76800 bps.

Note 8. SCI0.SMR.CKS[1:0] = 00b, SCI0.SEMR.BRME = 1, SCI0.BRR = 0x06, SCI0.MDDR = 0xB8 must be used for 76800 bps.

Note 9. SCI0.SMR.CKS[1:0] = 00b, SCI0.SEMR.BRME = 1, SCI0.BRR = 0x03, SCI0.MDDR = 0xD2 must be used for 76800 bps.

Note 10. SCI0.SMR.CKS[1:0] = 00b, SCI0.SEMR.BRME = 1, SCI0.BRR = 0x01, SCI0.MDDR = 0xD2 must be used for 76800 bps.

Note 11. SCI0.SMR.CKS[1:0] = 00b, SCI0.SEMR.BRME = 1, SCI0.BRR = 0x00, SCI0.MDDR = 0xD2 must be used for 76800 bps.

Note 12. SCI0.SMR.CKS[1:0] = 00b, SCI0.SEMR.BRME = 1, SCI0.BRR = 0x08, SCI0.MDDR = 0xB1 must be used for 76800 bps.

Note 13. SCI0.SMR.CKS[1:0] = 00b, SCI0.SEMR.BRME = 1, SCI0.BRR = 0x04, SCI0.MDDR = 0xC5 must be used for 76800 bps.

Note 14. SCI0.SMR.CKS[1:0] = 00b, SCI0.SEMR.BRME = 1, SCI0.BRR = 0x02, SCI0.MDDR = 0xEC must be used for 76800 bps.

[Figure 10.11](#) shows a setting example for using SCI0 in Snooze mode entry.

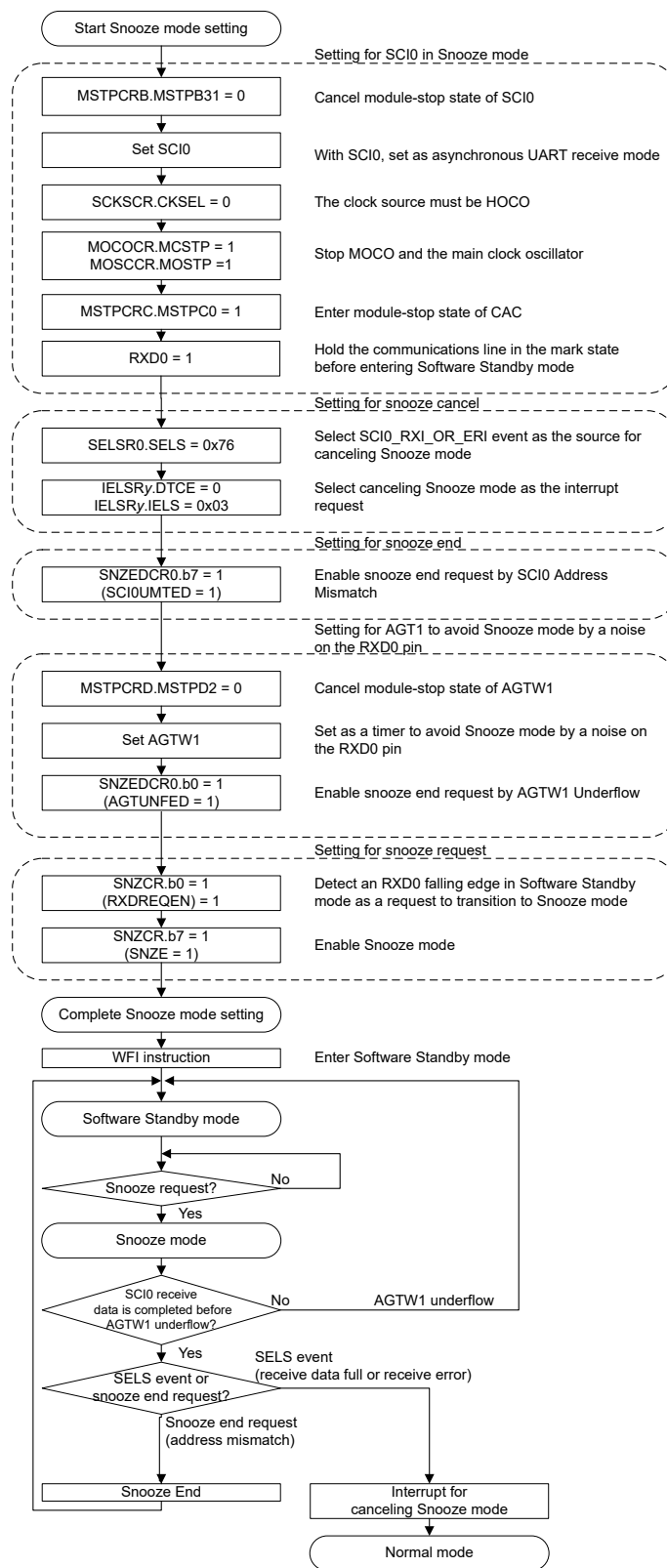


Figure 10.11 Setting example of using SCI0 in Snooze mode entry

10.9 Usage Notes

10.9.1 Register Access

(1) Do not write to registers listed in this section in any of the following conditions:

[Registers]

- All registers with a peripheral name of SYSTEM.

[Conditions]

- OPCCR.OPCMTSF = 1 or SOPCCR.SOPCMTSF = 1 (during transition of the operating power control mode)
- During the time period from executing a WFI instruction to returning to Normal mode
- Flash P/E mode, data flash P/E mode

(2) Valid setting for the clock-related registers

Table 10.10 and Table 10.11 show the valid settings for the clock-related registers in each operating power control mode. Do not write any value other than the valid setting, otherwise it is ignored. Additionally, each register has some prohibited settings under certain conditions other than those related to the operating power control modes. See [section 8, Clock Generation Circuit](#) for these other conditions of each register.

Table 10.10 Valid settings for the clock-related registers (1)

Mode	Valid settings						
	SCKSCR. CKSEL[2:0] CKOCR. CKOSEL[2:0]	SCKDIVCR. ICK[2:0]	HOCOCCR. HCSTP	MOCOCCR. MCSTP	LOCOCCR. LCSTP	MOSCCR. MOSTP	SOSCCR. SOSTP
High-speed Middle-speed	000b (HOCO) 001b (MOCO) 010b (LOCO) 011b (MOSC) 100b (SOSC)	000b (1/1) 001b (1/2) 010b (1/4) 011b (1/8) 100b (1/16) 101b (1/32) 110b (1/64)	0 (operating) 1 (stopped)	0 (operating) 1 (stopped)	0 (operating) 1 (stopped)	0 (operating) 1 (stopped)	0 (operating) 1 (stopped)
Low-speed	000b (HOCO) 001b (MOCO) 010b (LOCO) 100b (SOSC)	000b (1/1) 001b (1/2) 010b (1/4) 011b (1/8) 100b (1/16) 101b (1/32) 110b (1/64)	0 (operating) 1 (stopped)	0 (operating) 1 (stopped)	0 (operating) 1 (stopped)	1 (stopped)	0 (operating) 1 (stopped)
Subosc-speed	010b (LOCO) 100b (SOSC)	000b (1/1)	1 (stopped)	1 (stopped)	0 (operating) 1 (stopped)	1 (stopped)	0 (operating) 1 (stopped)

Table 10.11 Valid settings for the clock-related registers (2)

Operating oscillator	Valid settings	
	SOPCCR.SOPCM	OPCCR.OPCM[1:0]
High-speed on-chip oscillator	0	00b, 01b, 11b
Middle-speed on-chip oscillator		
Main clock oscillator		00b, 01b
Low-speed on-chip oscillator	0, 1	00b, 01b, 11b
Sub-clock oscillator		
IWDT-dedicated on-chip oscillator		

(3) Do not write to registers listed in this section for the following condition:

[Registers]

- SCKSCR, OPCCR.

[Condition]

- SOPCCR.SOPCM = 1 (Subosc-speed mode).

(4) Do not write to registers listed in this section by DTC:

[Registers]

- MSTPCRA, MSTPCRB, MSTPCRC, MSTPCRD.

(5) Do not write to registers listed in this section in Snooze mode. They must be set before entering Software Standby mode:

[Registers]

- SNZCR, SNZEDCR0, SNZREQCR0.

(6) Write access to registers listed in this section is invalid when PRCR.PRC1 bit is 0:

[Registers]

- SBYCR, SNZCR, SNZEDCR0, SNZREQCR0, PSMCR, OPCCR, SOPCCR.

10.9.2 I/O Port Pin States

The I/O port pin states in Software Standby mode and Snooze mode, unless modifying in Snooze mode, are the same before entering the modes. Therefore, power consumption is not reduced while the output signals are held high.

10.9.3 Module-stop State of DTC

Before writing 1 to MSTPCRA.MSTPA22, clear the DTCST.DTCST bit of the DTC to 0. For details, see [section 15, Data Transfer Controller \(DTC\)](#).

10.9.4 Internal Interrupt Sources

Interrupts do not operate in the module-stop state. If setting the module-stop bit while an interrupt request is generated, a CPU interrupt source or a DTC startup source cannot be cleared. Always disable the associated interrupts before setting the module-stop bits.

10.9.5 Transitioning to Low Power Modes

Because the MCU does not support wakeup by events, do not enter the low power modes such as Sleep mode, Software Standby mode by executing a WFE instruction. Also, do not set the SLEEPDEEP bit of the System Control Register in the Cortex-M23 core because the MCU does not support low power modes by SLEEPDEEP.

10.9.6 Timing of WFI Instruction

It is possible for the WFI instruction to be executed before I/O register write is completed, in which case operation might not be as intended. This can happen if the WFI is placed immediately after a write to an I/O register. To avoid this problem, read back the register that was written to confirm that the write completed.

10.9.7 Writing to the WDT/IWDT Registers by DTC in Sleep Mode or Snooze Mode

Do not write to the WDT or IWDT registers by the DTC while WDT or IWDT is stopped after entering Sleep mode or Snooze mode.

10.9.8 Oscillators in Snooze Mode

Oscillators that stop on entering Software Standby mode automatically restart when a trigger for switching to Snooze mode is generated. The MCU does not enter Snooze mode until all the oscillators stabilize. If in Snooze mode, you must disable oscillators that are not required in Snooze mode before entering Software Standby mode. Otherwise, the transition from Software Standby mode to Snooze mode takes longer.

10.9.9 Snooze Mode Entry by RXD0 Falling Edge

When the SNZCR.RXDREQEN bit is 1, the falling edge of the RXD0 pin is used to switch MCU from Software Standby mode to Snooze mode when using UART of SCI0 in Snooze mode. In this case, an interrupt such as SCI0_ERI, SCI0_RXI or an address mismatch event is used as the source for canceling Snooze mode. However, noise on the RXD0 pin might cause the MCU to transfer from Software Standby mode to Snooze mode unexpectedly. In this case, if the MCU does not receive RXD0 data after the noise, an interrupt such as SCI0_ERI or SCI0_RXI, or an address mismatch event is not generated and the MCU stays in Snooze mode. This can be avoided by using AGTn (n = 1) underflow interrupt to return to Software Standby mode or Normal mode unless UART receive data is completed before AGTn (n = 1) underflow. However, do not use the AGTn (n = 1) underflow as a source to return to Software Standby mode during an UART communication. This causes the UART to stop the operation in a half-finished state.

10.9.10 Using UART of SCI0 in Snooze Mode

When using UART in Snooze mode, ensure that the snooze request (RXD0 falling edge) does not conflict with the wakeup requests set by the WUPEN register, otherwise UART cannot be guaranteed.

When using UART in Snooze mode, the following conditions must be satisfied:

- The clock source must be HOCO
- MOCO, and the main clock oscillator must be stopped before entering Software Standby mode
- The RXD0 pin must be kept high before entering Software Standby mode
- A transition to Software Standby mode must not occur during an SCI0 communication
- The MSTPCRC.MSTPC0 bit must be 1 before entering Software Standby mode.

10.9.11 Conditions of A/D Conversion Start in Snooze Mode

ADC120 can only be triggered by the ELC in Snooze mode. Do not use software trigger or ADTRGn (n = 0) pin.

10.9.12 ELC Events in Snooze Mode

This section lists available ELC events in Snooze mode. Do not use any other events. If starting peripheral modules for the first time after entering Snooze mode, the Event Link Setting Register (ELSRn) must set a Snooze mode entry event (SYSTEM_SNZREQ) as the trigger.

- Snooze mode entry (SYSTEM_SNZREQ)
- DTC transfer end (DTC_DTCEND)
- ADC120 window A/B compare match (ADC120_WCMPPM)
- ADC120 window A/B compare mismatch (ADC120_WCMPUM)
- Data operation circuit interrupt (DOC_DOPCI).

10.9.13 Module-stop Function for ADC120

When entering Software Standby mode, it is recommended that you set the ADC120 module-stop state to reduce power consumption. In this case, the ADC120 can be available in Snooze mode by releasing the ADC120 module-stop using the DTC. Similarly, set the module-stop state using the DTC before returning to Software Standby mode from Snooze mode.

10.9.14 Module-stop Function for an Unused Circuit

A circuit that is not used in user mode might not be reset, and might operate in an unstable state because the clocks are not supplied during an MCU reset. In this case, when the MCU transitions to Low-speed mode or Software Standby mode, the supply current can be increased to a value greater than that stated in this User's Manual, by up to 600 μ A. So, initialize the unused circuit as shown in [Figure 10.12](#).

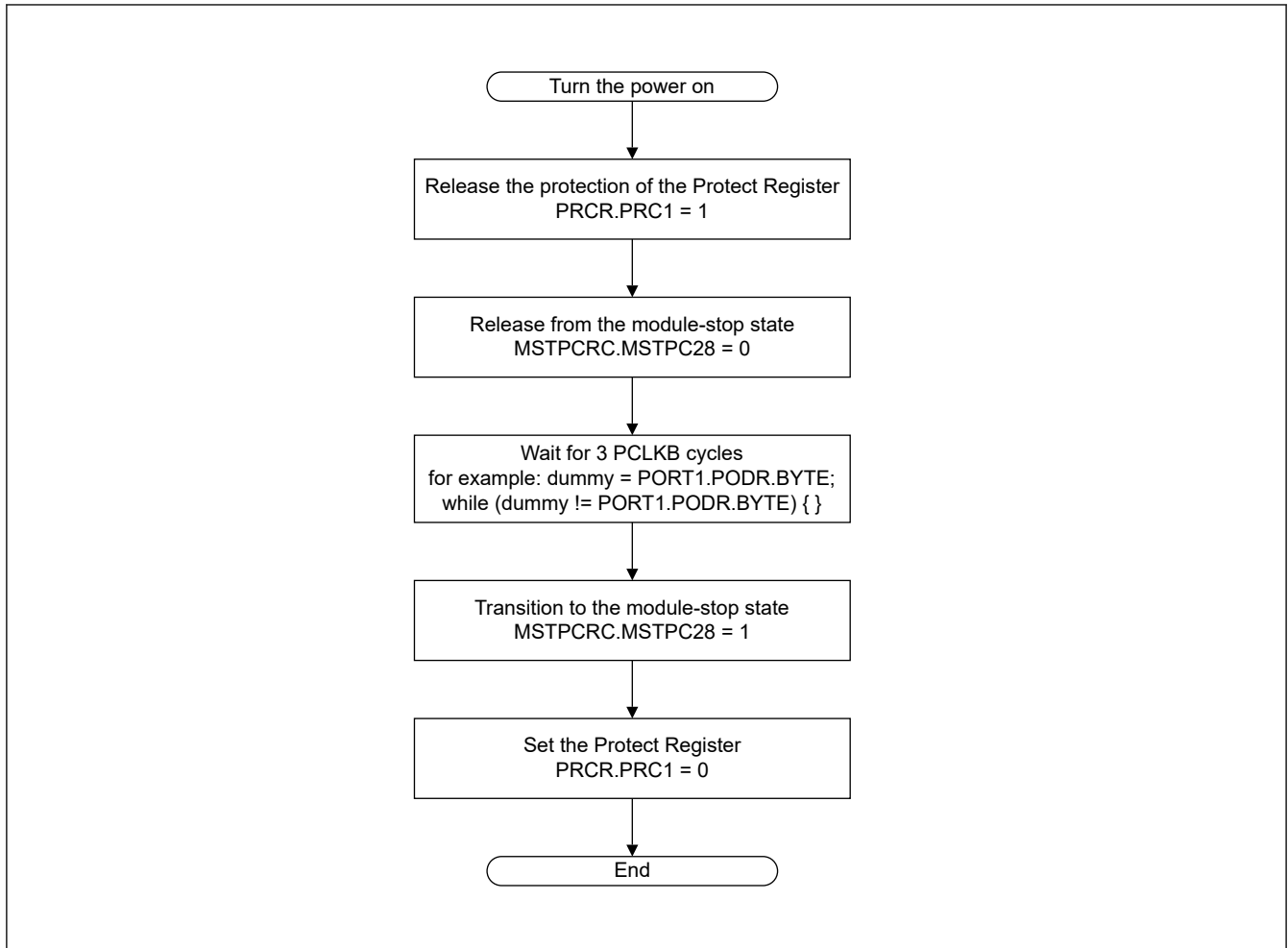


Figure 10.12 Example of initial setting flow for an unused circuit

10.9.15 Notes When Transition to Low Power Modes by Sleep-on-Exit

There are two ways to transition to low power modes. One is with WFI instruction and the other is using Sleep-on-exit. When Sleep-on-exit is used for transition to low power modes, the description for WFI instruction written in the User's Manual Hardware is also applicable to Sleep-on-exit.

10.9.16 Applicable Conditions and Notes

[Applicable conditions]

Transition to Software Standby mode is started by a trigger (WFI instruction or SLEEPONEXIT) with SBYCR.SSBY = 1 set to use Software Standby or Snooze mode.

During the specified interval (2 ICLK cycles) of transitioning to Software Standby mode, one of the following interrupt requests that is not an interrupt source to return from Software Standby mode is accepted by the CPU.

- SysTick interrupt
 - Exception number 15 of the interrupt vector table.
- Maskable interrupt requests that are not interrupt sources to return from Software Standby mode (all of the following are applicable):
 - By WUPEN in exception numbers 16 to 47 in the interrupt vector table, those not permitted to return from Software Standby mode
 - Interrupt requests are enabled by Interrupt Set-Enable Register (NVIC_ISERn).
- Non-maskable interrupt request triggered by the following sources:
 - SRAM parity error

- Bus master MPU error
- Bus slave MPU error.

Note: If the above conditions are met, the MCU transits to the following unintended states.

These unintended states can be resolved by a reset or returning to Normal mode with an interrupt request of an interrupt source to return from Software Standby mode. Adapt a workaround if these unintended states are not acceptable.

1. When transitioning to Software Standby mode (SBYCR.SSBY = 1, SNZCR.SNZE = 0)
Only the CPU clock is stopped, and the remaining clocks continue to operate as they were before transitioning to Software Standby mode.
 - As before the transition to Software Standby mode is started, depending on the setting, timer or other peripherals continue to operate, and an interrupt request related to the peripheral is generated.
 - Because the IWDT and WDT clock-stop function is disabled, a reset or an interrupt for the IWDT and WDT is generated depending on the settings before starting the transition to Software Standby mode.
 - Interrupt requests are held in IR flag (IELSRn, DELSRn).
2. When transitioning to Snooze mode (SBYCR.SSBY = 1, SNZCR.SNZE = 1)
The transition to Snooze mode is not possible, and the states shown in Step 1. continue.
Returning to Normal mode by an interrupt source (SELSR0) from Snooze mode depends on whether the interrupt request (SELSR0) to return from Snooze mode can be generated while DTC operation is disabled.
If the DTC operation is disabled (SNZCR.SNZDTCEN = 0) in Snooze mode, Normal mode can be returned because an interrupt source for the interrupt source (SELSR0) to return from Snooze mode can be generated.
If the DTC operation is enabled (SNZCR.SNZDTCEN = 1) in Snooze mode, the Normal mode cannot be returned because an interrupt request for the interrupt source (SELSR0) to return from Snooze mode cannot be generated.

10.9.17 Workaround

To avoid the unintended states as described, apply the following before the conditions for transition to Software Standby mode or Snooze mode are met. For the setting procedure, see [\(1\) Setting procedure for transition to Software Standby mode or Snooze mode](#).

1. Disable SysTick interrupt requests (exception number 15 of [Table 12.3](#)).
2. Disable maskable interrupt requests that are not interrupt sources to return from Software Standby mode (exception number 16 to 47 of [Table 12.3](#) that WUPEN does not allow to return from Software Standby mode).
3. Stop access from the bus master other than the CPU so that the non-maskable interrupt is not triggered by the following sources:
 - SRAM parity error
 - Bus master MPU error
 - Bus slave MPU error.

(1) Setting procedure for transition to Software Standby mode or Snooze mode

This section describes procedures to avoid unintended states.

The handling of interrupt requests after returning from Software Standby or Snooze mode varies depending on the method used to disable the maskable interrupt request. Either one or the other should be applied.

[Procedure A: Disable maskable interrupt request acceptance]

Any interrupt request that occurs while interrupt request acceptance is disabled, is discarded.

Table 10.12 Before transitioning to Software Standby mode or Snooze mode (1 of 2)

Step	Description
1	Stop the bus access from the bus master other than CPU*1.
2	Disable the SysTick interrupt request*2.

Table 10.12 Before transitioning to Software Standby mode or Snooze mode (2 of 2)

Step	Description
3	Clear IELSRn in ICU to disable acceptance of maskable interrupt requests that are not interrupt sources to return from Software Standby mode.
4	Read IELSRn in ICU to confirm that IELSRn in ICU has been cleared.
5	Transition to Software Standby mode (WFI instruction, SLEEPONEXIT)

Note 1. SRAM parity error interrupt, SRAM ECC error interrupt, Bus master MPU error interrupt or Bus slave MPU error interrupt is enabled as a non-maskable interrupt.

Note 2. Disabling a SysTick interrupt request may cause SysTick interrupt request to be delayed by one cycle of SysTick timer without generating the latest SysTick interrupt request.

Table 10.13 After returning from Software Standby mode or Snooze mode

Step	Description
1	Enable the SysTick interrupt request.
2	Set IELSRn in ICU to enable acceptance of maskable interrupt requests that are not interrupt sources to return from Software Standby mode.
3	Enable bus access from bus masters other than CPU.

[Procedure B: Disable the maskable interrupt request]

The interrupt request generated while the interrupt request is disabled, is retained in IELSRn.IR flag. Therefore, after returning from Software Standby or Snooze mode and enabling the maskable interrupt, it is possible to process the interrupt.

Table 10.14 Before transitioning to Software Standby or Snooze mode

Step	Description
1	Stop the bus access from the bus master other than CPU*1.
2	Disable the SysTick interrupt request*2.
3	Write 1 to the corresponding bit in NVIC_ICERn in CPU to disable maskable interrupt requests that are not interrupt sources to return from Software Standby mode.
4	Execute Data Synchronization Barrier (DSB) instruction.
5	Transition to Software Standby mode (WFI instruction, SLEEPONEXIT).

Note 1. SRAM parity error interrupt, SRAM ECC error interrupt, Bus master MPU error interrupt or Bus slave MPU error interrupt is enabled as a non-maskable interrupt.

Note 2. Disabling a SysTick interrupt request may cause SysTick interrupt request to be delayed by one cycle of SysTick timer without generating the latest SysTick interrupt request.

Table 10.15 After returning from Software Standby or Snooze mode

Step	Description
1	Enable the SysTick interrupt request.
2	Write 1 to the corresponding bit in NVIC_ISERn in CPU to enable maskable interrupt requests that are not interrupt sources to return from Software Standby mode.
3	Enable bus access from bus masters other than CPU.

11. Register Write Protection

11.1 Overview

The register write protection function protects important registers from being overwritten due to software errors. The registers to be protected are set with the Protect Register (PRCR).

Table 11.1 lists the association between the bits in the PRCR register and the registers to be protected.

Table 11.1 Association between the bits in the PRCR register and registers to be protected

PRCR bit	Register to be protected
PRC0	Registers related to the clock generation circuit: SCKDIVCR, SCKSCR, MEMWAIT, MOSCCR, HOCOCR, MOCOCR, CKOCR, OSTDCR, OSTDSR, MOCOUTCR, HOCOUTCR, MOSCWTCR, MOMCR, SOSCCR, SOMCR, LOCOCR, LOCOUTCR, HOCOWTCR, SOMRG, LPOPT
PRC1	Registers related to the low power modes: SBYCR, SNZCR, SNZEDCR0, SNZREQCR0, OPCCR, SOPCCR, SYOCDCR, PSMCR
PRC3	Registers related to the LVD: LVD1CR1, LVD1SR, LVD2CR1, LVD2SR, LVCMPCCR, LVDLVLRL, LVD1CR0, LVD2CR0

11.2 Register Descriptions

11.2.1 PRCR : Protect Register

Base address: SYSC = 0x4001_E000

Offset address: 0x3FE

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	PRKEY[7:0]								—	—	—	—	PRC3	—	PRC1	PRC0
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	PRC0	Enable writing to the registers related to the clock generation circuit 0: Disable writes 1: Enable writes	R/W
1	PRC1	Enable writing to the registers related to the low power modes 0: Disable writes 1: Enable writes	R/W
2	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
3	PRC3	Enable writing to the registers related to the LVD 0: Disable writes 1: Enable writes	R/W
7:4	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
15:8	PRKEY[7:0]	PRC Key Code These bits control the write access to the PRCR register. To modify the PRCR register, write 0xA5 to the upper 8 bits and the target value to the lower 8 bits as a 16-bit unit.	W

PRCn bits (Protect bit n) (n = 0, 1, 3)

The PRCn bits enable or disable writing to the protected registers listed in Table 11.1. Setting the PRCn bits to 1 or 0 enables or disables writing, respectively.

12. Interrupt Controller Unit (ICU)

12.1 Overview

The Interrupt Controller Unit (ICU) controls which event signals are linked to the Nested Vector Interrupt Controller (NVIC), and the Data Transfer Controller (DTC) modules. The ICU also controls non-maskable interrupts.

[Table 12.1](#) lists the ICU specifications, [Figure 12.1](#) shows a block diagram, and [Table 12.2](#) lists the I/O pins.

Table 12.1 ICU specifications

Item		Description
Maskable interrupts	Peripheral function interrupts	- Interrupts from peripheral modules - Number of sources: 130
	External pin interrupts	- Interrupt detection on low level^{*4}, falling edge, rising edge, rising and falling edges. One of these detection methods can be set for each source - Digital filter function supported 8 sources, with interrupts from IRQi (i = 0 to 7) pins.
	Interrupt requests to CPU (NVIC)	32 interrupt requests are output to NVIC. - Maskable interrupt sources are classified into 8 groups, and one source can be selected individually from 31 sources that are classified into groups.
	DTC control	- The DTC can be activated using interrupt sources^{*1} - The method for selecting an interrupt source is the same as that of the interrupt request to NVIC.
Non-maskable interrupts ^{*2}	NMI pin interrupt	- Interrupt from the NMI pin - Interrupt detection on falling edge or rising edge - Digital filter function supported
	WDT underflow/refresh error ^{*3}	Interrupt on an underflow of the down-counter or occurrence of a refresh error
	IWDT underflow/refresh error ^{*3}	Interrupt on an underflow of the down-counter or occurrence of a refresh error
	Low voltage detection 1 ^{*3}	Voltage monitor 1 interrupt of the voltage monitor 1 circuit (LVD_LVD1)
	Low voltage detection 2 ^{*3}	Voltage monitor 2 interrupt of the voltage monitor 2 circuit (LVD_LVD2)
	RPEST	Interrupt on SRAM parity error
	CPU stack pointer monitor error	Interrupt on CPU stack pointer monitor
	Oscillation stop detection interrupt ^{*3}	Interrupt on detecting that the main oscillation has stopped
	Bus slave MPU error	Interrupt on bus slave MPU error
	Bus master MPU error	Interrupt on bus master MPU error
Low power modes		- Sleep mode: return is initiated by non-maskable interrupts or any other interrupt source - Software Standby mode: return is initiated by non-maskable interrupts. Interrupt can be selected in the WUPEN or WUPEN2 register. - Snooze mode: return is initiated by non-maskable interrupts. Interrupt can be selected in the SELSR0, WUPEN, and WUPEN2 registers. See section 12.2.7. SELSR0 : SYS Event Link Setting Register, section 12.2.8. WUPEN : Wake Up Interrupt Enable Register, and section 12.2.9. WUPEN2 : Wake Up Interrupt Enable Register 2.

Note 1. For the DTC activation sources, see [Table 12.4](#).

Note 2. Non-maskable interrupts can be enabled only once after a reset release.

Note 3. These non-maskable interrupts can also be used as maskable interrupts. When used as maskable interrupts, do not change the value of the NMIER register from the reset state. To enable voltage monitor 1 and voltage monitor 2 interrupts, set the LVD1CR1.IRQSEL and LVD2CR1.IRQSEL bits to 1.

Note 4. Low level: interrupt detection is not canceled if you do not clear it after a detection.

[Figure 12.1](#) shows the ICU block diagram.

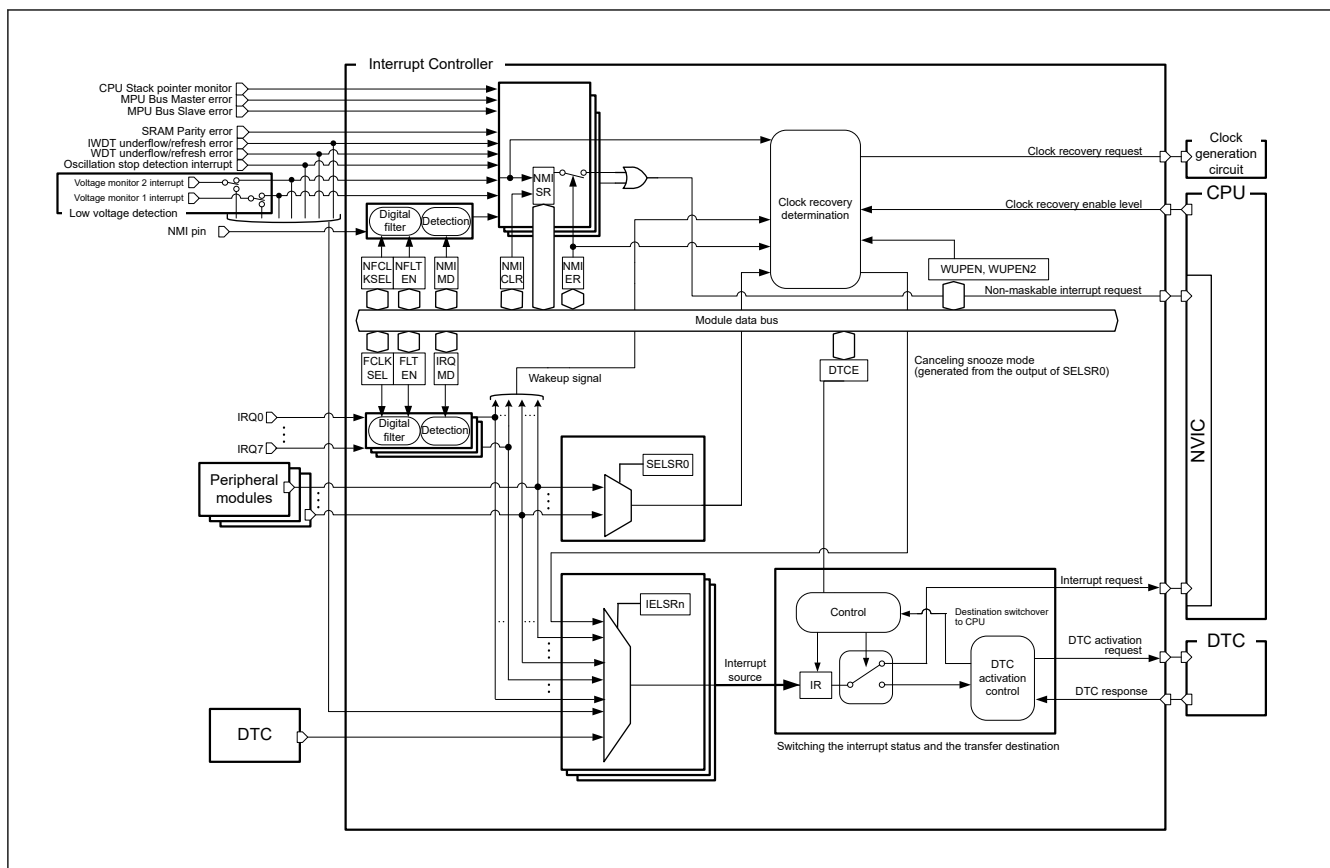


Figure 12.1 ICU block diagram

Table 12.2 lists the ICU input/output pins.

Table 12.2 ICU I/O pins

Pin name	I/O	Description
NMI	Input	Non-maskable interrupt request pin
IRQ _i (i = 0 to 7)	Input	External interrupt request pins

12.2 Register Descriptions

This chapter does not describe the Arm® NVIC internal registers. For information about these registers, see ARM® Cortex®-M23 Processor Technical Reference Manual (ARM DDI 0550C).

12.2.1 IRQCR_i : IRQ Control Register i (i = 0 to 7)

Base address: ICU = 0x4000_6000

Offset address: 0x000 + 0x1 × i

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	FLTEN	—	FCLKSEL[1:0]	—	—	—	IRQMD[1:0]	

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
1:0	IRQMD[1:0]	IRQi Detection Sense Select 0 0: Falling edge 0 1: Rising edge 1 0: Rising and falling edges 1 1: Low level	R/W
3:2	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
5:4	FCLKSEL[1:0]	IRQi Digital Filter Sampling Clock Select 0 0: PCLKB 0 1: PCLKB/8 1 0: PCLKB/32 1 1: PCLKB/64	R/W
6	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
7	FLTEN	IRQi Digital Filter Enable 0: Digital filter is disabled 1: Digital filter is enabled.	R/W

IRQCRi register changes must satisfy the following conditions:

- For a CPU interrupt or DTC trigger:
Change the IRQCRi register value before setting the target IELSRn register (n = 0 to 31).
The register value should be changed only when the value of the target IELSRn register is 0x0000.
- For a wakeup enable signal:
Change the IRQCRi register setting before setting the target WUPEN.IRQWUPEN[n] (n = 0 to 7). The register value should be changed when the target WUPEN.IRQWUPEN[n] is 0.

IRQMD[1:0] bits (IRQi Detection Sense Select)

The IRQMD[1:0] bits set the detection sensing method for the IRQi external pin interrupt sources. For setting method when using external pin interrupt, see [section 12.5.6. External Pin Interrupts](#).

FCLKSEL[1:0] bits (IRQi Digital Filter Sampling Clock Select)

The FCLKSEL[1:0] bits select the digital filter sampling clock for the IRQi external pin interrupt request pins, selectable to:

- PCLKB (every cycle)
- PCLKB/8 (once every 8 cycles)
- PCLKB/32 (once every 32 cycles)
- PCLKB/64 (once every 64 cycles)

For details of the digital filter, see [section 12.5.5. Digital Filter](#).

FLTEN bit (IRQi Digital Filter Enable)

The FLTEN bit enables the digital filter used for the IRQi external pin interrupt sources. The digital filter is enabled when the IRQCRi.FLTEN bit is 1 and disabled when the IRQCRi.FLTEN bit is 0. The IRQi pin level is sampled at the clock cycle specified in the IRQCRi.FCLKSEL[1:0] bits. When the sampled level matches three times, the output level from the digital filter changes. For details of the digital filter, see [section 12.5.5. Digital Filter](#).

12.2.2 NMISR : Non-Maskable Interrupt Status Register

Base address: ICU = 0x4000_6000

Offset address: 0x140

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	SPES T	BUSM ST	BUSS ST	—	RPES T	NMIST	OSTS T	—	—	LVD2S T	LVD1S T	WDTS T	IWDT ST
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	IWDTST	IWDT Underflow/Refresh Error Interrupt Status Flag 0: Interrupt not requested 1: Interrupt requested	R
1	WDTST	WDT Underflow/Refresh Error Interrupt Status Flag 0: Interrupt not requested 1: Interrupt requested	R
2	LVD1ST	Voltage Monitor 1 Interrupt Status Flag 0: Interrupt not requested 1: Interrupt requested	R
3	LVD2ST	Voltage Monitor 2 Interrupt Status Flag 0: Interrupt not requested 1: Interrupt requested	R
5:4	—	These bits are read as 0.	R
6	OSTST	Main Clock Oscillation Stop Detection Interrupt Status Flag 0: Interrupt not requested for main clock oscillation stop 1: Interrupt requested for main clock oscillation stop	R
7	NMIST	NMI Pin Interrupt Status Flag 0: Interrupt not requested 1: Interrupt requested	R
8	RPEST	SRAM Parity Error Interrupt Status Flag 0: Interrupt not requested 1: Interrupt requested	R
9	—	This bit is read as 0.	R
10	BUSST	Bus Slave MPU Error Interrupt Status Flag 0: Interrupt not requested 1: Interrupt requested	R
11	BUSMST	Bus Master MPU Error Interrupt Status Flag 0: Interrupt not requested 1: Interrupt requested	R
12	SPEST	CPU Stack Pointer Monitor Interrupt Status Flag 0: Interrupt not requested 1: Interrupt requested	R
13	—	This bit is read as 0.	R
15:14	—	These bits are read as 0.	R

The NMISR register monitors the status of non-maskable interrupt sources. Writes to the NMISR register are ignored. The setting in the Non-Maskable Interrupt Enable Register (NMIER) does not affect the status flags in this register. Before the end of the non-maskable interrupt handler, check that all the bits in this register are set to 0 to confirm that no other NMI requests are generated during handler processing.

IWDTST flag (IWDT Underflow/Refresh Error Interrupt Status Flag)

The IWDTST flag indicates an IWDT underflow/refresh error interrupt request. It is read-only and cleared by the NMICLR.IWDTCLR bit.

[Setting condition]

- When the IWDT underflow/refresh error interrupt is generated and this interrupt source is enabled.

[Clearing condition]

- When 1 is written to the NMICLR.IWDTCLR bit.

WDTST flag (WDT Underflow/Refresh Error Interrupt Status Flag)

The WDTST flag indicates a WDT underflow/refresh error interrupt request. It is read-only and cleared by the NMICLR.WDTCLR bit.

[Setting condition]

- When the WDT underflow/refresh error interrupt is generated.

[Clearing condition]

- When 1 is written to the NMICLR.WDTCLR bit.

LVD1ST flag (Voltage Monitor 1 Interrupt Status Flag)

The LVD1ST flag indicates a request for voltage monitor 1 interrupt. It is read-only and cleared by the NMICLR.LVD1CLR bit.

[Setting condition]

- When the voltage monitor 1 interrupt is generated and this interrupt source is enabled.

[Clearing condition]

- When 1 is written to the NMICLR.LVD1CLR bit.

LVD2ST flag (Voltage Monitor 2 Interrupt Status Flag)

The LVD2ST flag indicates a request for voltage monitor 2 interrupt. It is read-only and cleared by the NMICLR.LVD2CLR bit.

[Setting condition]

- When the voltage monitor 2 interrupt is generated and this interrupt source is enabled.

[Clearing condition]

- When 1 is written to the NMICLR.LVD2CLR bit.

OSTST flag (Main Clock Oscillation Stop Detection Interrupt Status Flag)

The OSTST flag indicates a main clock oscillation stop detection interrupt request. It is read-only and cleared by the NMICLR.OSTCLR bit.

[Setting condition]

- When the main clock oscillation stop detection interrupt is generated.

[Clearing condition]

- When 1 is written to the NMICLR.OSTCLR bit.

NMIST flag (NMI Pin Interrupt Status Flag)

The NMIST flag indicates an NMI pin interrupt request. It is read-only and cleared by the NMICLR.NMICLR bit.

[Setting condition]

- When an edge specified by the NMICR.NMIMD bit is input to the NMI pin.

[Clearing condition]

- When 1 is written to the NMICLR.NMICLR bit.

RPEST flag (SRAM Parity Error Interrupt Status Flag)

The RPEST flag indicates an SRAM parity error interrupt request.

[Setting condition]

- When an interrupt is generated in response to an SRAM parity error.

[Clearing condition]

- When 1 is written to the NMICLR.RPECLR bit.

BUSST flag (Bus Slave MPU Error Interrupt Status Flag)

The BUSST flag indicates a bus slave error interrupt request.

[Setting condition]

- When an interrupt is generated in response to a bus slave error.

[Clearing condition]

- When 1 is written to the NMICLR.BUSSCLR bit.

BUSMST flag (Bus Master MPU Error Interrupt Status Flag)

The BUSMST flag indicates a bus master error interrupt request.

[Setting condition]

- When an interrupt is generated in response to a bus master error.

[Clearing condition]

- When 1 is written to the NMICLR.BUSMCLR bit.

SPEST flag (CPU Stack Pointer Monitor Interrupt Status Flag)

The SPEST flag indicates a CPU stack pointer monitor interrupt request.

[Setting condition]

- When an interrupt is generated in response to a CPU stack pointer monitor error.

[Clearing condition]

- When 1 is written to the NMICLR.SPECLR bit.

12.2.3 NMIER : Non-Maskable Interrupt Enable Register

Base address: ICU = 0x4000_6000

Offset address: 0x120

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	SPEE N	BUSM EN	BUSS EN	—	RPEE N	NMIE N	OSTE N	—	—	LVD2E N	LVD1E N	WDTE N	IWDT EN
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	IWDTEN	IWDT Underflow/Refresh Error Interrupt Enable 0: Disabled 1: Enabled.	R/W ^{*1} *2
1	WDTEN	WDT Underflow/Refresh Error Interrupt Enable 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	R/W ^{*1} *2
2	LVD1EN	Voltage monitor 1 Interrupt Enable 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	R/W ^{*1} *2
3	LVD2EN	Voltage monitor 2 Interrupt Enable 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	R/W ^{*1} *2
5:4	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
6	OSTEN	Main Clock Oscillation Stop Detection Interrupt Enable 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	R/W ^{*1} *2
7	NMIEN	NMI Pin Interrupt Enable 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	R/W ^{*1}
8	RPEEN	SRAM Parity Error Interrupt Enable 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	R/W ^{*1}

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
9	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
10	BUSSEN	Bus Slave MPU Error Interrupt Enable 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	R/W ^{*1}
11	BUSMEN	Bus Master MPU Error Interrupt Enable 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	R/W ^{*1}
12	SPEEN	CPU Stack Pointer Monitor Interrupt Enable 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	R/W ^{*1}
15:13	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note 1. You can write 1 to this bit only once after reset. Subsequent write accesses are invalid. Writing 0 to this bit is invalid.

Note 2. Do not write 1 to this bit when the source is used as an event signal.

IWDTEN bit (IWDT Underflow/Refresh Error Interrupt Enable)

The IWDTEN bit enables IWDT underflow/refresh error interrupt as an NMI trigger.

WDTEN bit (WDT Underflow/Refresh Error Interrupt Enable)

The WDTEN bit enables WDT underflow/refresh error interrupt as an NMI trigger.

LVD1EN bit (Voltage monitor 1 Interrupt Enable)

The LVD1EN bit enables voltage monitor 1 interrupt as an NMI trigger.

LVD2EN bit (Voltage monitor 2 Interrupt Enable)

The LVD2EN bit enables voltage monitor 2 interrupt as an NMI trigger.

OSTEN bit (Main Clock Oscillation Stop Detection Interrupt Enable)

The OSTEN bit enables main clock oscillation stop detection interrupt as an NMI trigger.

NMIEN bit (NMI Pin Interrupt Enable)

The NMIEN bit enables NMI pin interrupt as an NMI trigger.

RPEEN bit (SRAM Parity Error Interrupt Enable)

The RPEEN bit enables SRAM parity error interrupt as an NMI trigger.

BUSSEN bit (Bus Slave MPU Error Interrupt Enable)

The BUSSEN bit enables bus slave error interrupt as an NMI trigger.

BUSMEN bit (Bus Master MPU Error Interrupt Enable)

The BUSMEN bit enables bus master error interrupt as an NMI trigger.

SPEEN bit (CPU Stack Pointer Monitor Interrupt Enable)

The SPEEN bit enables CPU stack pointer monitor interrupt as an NMI trigger.

12.2.4 NMICLR : Non-Maskable Interrupt Status Clear Register

Base address: ICU = 0x4000_6000

Offset address: 0x130

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	SPEC LR	BUSM CLR	BUSS CLR	—	RPEC LR	NMICL R	OSTC LR	—	—	LVD2C LR	LVD1C LR	WDTC LR	IWDTC CLR
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	IWDTCLR	IWDT Underflow/Refresh Error Interrupt Status Flag Clear 0: No effect 1: Clear the NMISR.IWDTST flag	R/W ^{*1}
1	WDTCLR	WDT Underflow/Refresh Error Interrupt Status Flag Clear 0: No effect 1: Clear the NMISR.WDTST flag	R/W ^{*1}
2	LVD1CLR	Voltage Monitor 1 Interrupt Status Flag Clear 0: No effect 1: Clear the NMISR.LVD1ST flag	R/W ^{*1}
3	LVD2CLR	Voltage Monitor 2 Interrupt Status Flag Clear 0: No effect 1: Clear the NMISR.LVD2ST flag.	R/W ^{*1}
5:4	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
6	OSTCLR	Oscillation Stop Detection Interrupt Status Flag Clear 0: No effect 1: Clear the NMISR.OSTST flag	R/W ^{*1}
7	NMICLR	NMI Pin Interrupt Status Flag Clear 0: No effect 1: Clear the NMISR.NMIST flag	R/W ^{*1}
8	RPECLR	SRAM Parity Error Interrupt Status Flag Clear 0: No effect 1: Clear the NMISR.RPEST flag	R/W ^{*1}
9	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
10	BUSSCLR	Bus Slave MPU Error Interrupt Status Flag Clear 0: No effect 1: Clear the NMISR.BUSSST flag	R/W ^{*1}
11	BUSMCLR	Bus Master MPU Error Interrupt Status Flag Clear 0: No effect 1: Clear the NMISR.BUSMST flag	R/W ^{*1}
12	SPECLR	CPU Stack Pointer Monitor Interrupt Status Flag Clear 0: No effect 1: Clear the NMISR.SPEST flag	R/W ^{*1}
13	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
15:14	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note 1. Only write 1 to this bit.

IWDTCLR bit (IWDT Underflow/Refresh Error Interrupt Status Flag Clear)

Writing 1 to the IWDTCLR bit clears the NMISR.IWDTST flag. This bit is read as 0.

WDTCLR bit (WDT Underflow/Refresh Error Interrupt Status Flag Clear)

Writing 1 to the WDTCLR bit clears the NMISR.WDTST flag. This bit is read as 0.

LVD1CLR bit (Voltage Monitor 1 Interrupt Status Flag Clear)

Writing 1 to the LVD1CLR bit clears the NMISR.LVD1ST flag. This bit is read as 0.

LVD2CLR bit (Voltage Monitor 2 Interrupt Status Flag Clear)

Writing 1 to the LVD2CLR bit clears the NMISR.LVD2ST flag. This bit is read as 0.

OSTCLR bit (Oscillation Stop Detection Interrupt Status Flag Clear)

Writing 1 to the OSTCLR bit clears the NMISR.OSTST flag. This bit is read as 0.

NMICLR bit (NMI Pin Interrupt Status Flag Clear)

Writing 1 to the NMICLR bit clears the NMISR.NMIST flag. This bit is read as 0.

RPECLR bit (SRAM Parity Error Interrupt Status Flag Clear)

Writing 1 to the RPECLR bit clears the NMISR.RPEST flag. This bit is read as 0.

BUSSCLR bit (Bus Slave MPU Error Interrupt Status Flag Clear)

Writing 1 to the BUSSCLR bit clears the NMISR.BUSSST flag. This bit is read as 0.

BUSMCLR bit (Bus Master MPU Error Interrupt Status Flag Clear)

Writing 1 to the BUSMCLR bit clears the NMISR.BUSMST flag. This bit is read as 0.

SPECLR bit (CPU Stack Pointer Monitor Interrupt Status Flag Clear)

Writing 1 to the SPECLR bit clears the NMISR.SPEST flag. This bit is read as 0.

12.2.5 NMICR : NMI Pin Interrupt Control Register

Base address: ICU = 0x4000_6000

Offset address: 0x100

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	NFLTE N	—	NFCLKSEL[1:0]	—	—	—	—	NMIM D
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	NMIMD	NMI Detection Set 0: Falling edge 1: Rising edge	R/W
3:1	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
5:4	NFCLKSEL[1:0]	NMI Digital Filter Sampling Clock Select 0 0: PCLKB 0 1: PCLKB/8 1 0: PCLKB/32 1 1: PCLKB/64	R/W
6	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
7	NFLTEN	NMI Digital Filter Enable 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	R/W

Change the NMICR register settings before enabling NMI pin interrupts, that is, before setting NMIER.NMIEN to 1.

NMIMD bit (NMI Detection Set)

The NMIMD bit selects the detection sensing method for the NMI pin interrupts.

NFCLKSEL[1:0] bits (NMI Digital Filter Sampling Clock Select)

The NFCLKSEL[1:0] bits select the digital filter sampling clock for the NMI pin interrupts, selectable to:

- PCLKB (every cycle)
- PCLKB/8 (once every 8 cycles)
- PCLKB/32 (once every 32 cycles)
- PCLKB/64 (once every 64 cycles)

For details of the digital filter, see [section 12.5.5. Digital Filter](#).

NFLTEN bit (NMI Digital Filter Enable)

The NFLTEN bit enables the digital filter used for NMI pin interrupts. The filter is enabled when NFLTEN is 1, and disabled when NFLTEN is 0. The NMI pin level is sampled at the clock cycle specified in NFCLKSEL[1:0]. When the

sampled level matches three times, the output level from the digital filter changes. For details of the digital filter, see [section 12.5.5. Digital Filter](#).

12.2.6 IELSRn : ICU Event Link Setting Register n (n = 0 to 31)

Base address: ICU = 0x4000_6000

Offset address: 0x300 + 0x4 × n

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	DTCE	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	IR
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	IELS[4:0]				
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
4:0	IELS[4:0]	ICU Event Link Select 0x00: Disable interrupts to the associated NVIC or DTC module Others: Event signal number to be linked. For details, see section 12.3.3. ICU and DTC Event Number .	R/W
15:5	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
16	IR	Interrupt Status Flag 0: No interrupt request generated 1: An interrupt request is generated	R/W ^{*1}
23:17	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
24	DTCE	DTC Activation Enable 0: DTC activation is disabled 1: DTC activation is enabled	R/W
31:25	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note: This register requires halfword or word access.

Note 1. Writing 1 to the IR flag is prohibited.

The IELSRn register selects the IRQi source used by the NVIC. For details, see [Table 12.3](#). IELSRn corresponds to the NVIC IRQ input source number, where n = 0 to 31.

IELS[4:0] bits (ICU Event Link Select)

The IELS[4:0] bits link an event signal to the associated NVIC or DTC module. Event options are classified into 8 groups (groups 0 to 7). For details, see [Table 12.3](#) and [Table 12.4](#).

IR flag (Interrupt Status Flag)

The IR status flag indicates an individual interrupt request from the event specified in IELS[4:0].

[Setting condition]

- When an interrupt request is received from the associated peripheral module or IRQi pin.

[Clearing condition]

- When 0 is written to the IR flag. DTCE must be set to 0 before writing 0 to the IR flag.

To clear the IR flag:

- Negate the input interrupt signal.
- Read access the peripheral once and wait for 2 clock cycles of the target module clock.
- Clear the IR flag by writing 0.

DTCE bit (DTC Activation Enable)

When the DTCE bit is set to 1, the associated event is selected as the source for DTC activation.

[Setting condition]

- When 1 is written to the DTCE bit.

[Clearing conditions]

- When the specified number of transfers is complete. For chain transfers, when the specified number of transfers for the last chain transfer is complete.
- When 0 is written to the DTCE bit.

12.2.7 SELSR0 : SYS Event Link Setting Register

Base address: ICU = 0x4000_6000

Offset address: 0x200

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	SELS[7:0]							
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7:0	SELS[7:0]	SYS Event Link Select 0x00: Disable event output to the associated low-power mode module Others: Event signal number to be linked. For details, see Table 12.4 .	R/W
15:8	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

The SELSR0 register selects the events that wake up the CPU from Snooze mode. You can use only the events listed in [Table 12.4](#) checked as “Canceling Snooze mode”. When ICU_SNZCANCEL is selected in the IELSRn.IELS[4:0] bits, an interrupt is generated that cancels snooze mode.

12.2.8 WUPEN : Wake Up Interrupt Enable Register

Base address: ICU = 0x4000_6000

Offset address: 0x1A0

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	AGT1 CBWU PEN	AGT1 CAWU PEN	AGT1 UDWU PEN	USBF SOWU PEN	—	RTCP RDWU PEN	RTCA LMWU PEN	—	—	—	—	LVD2 WUPE N	LVD1 WUPE N	KEYW UPEN	IWDT WUPE N
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	IRQWUPEN[7:0]							
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7:0	IRQWUPEN[7:0]	IRQ Interrupt Software Standby/Snooze Mode Return Enable 0: Software Standby/Snooze mode return by IRQn interrupt disabled 1: Software Standby/Snooze mode return by IRQn interrupt enabled	R/W
15:8	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
16	IWDTWUPEN	IWDT Interrupt Software Standby/Snooze Mode Return Enable 0: Software Standby/Snooze mode return by IWDT interrupt disabled 1: Software Standby/Snooze mode return by IWDT interrupt enabled	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
17	KEYWUPEN	Key Interrupt Software Standby/Snooze Mode Return Enable 0: Software Standby/Snooze mode return by KEY interrupt disabled 1: Software Standby/Snooze mode return by KEY interrupt enabled	R/W
18	LVD1WUPEN	LVD1 Interrupt Software Standby/Snooze Mode Return Enable 0: Software Standby/Snooze mode return by LVD1 interrupt disabled 1: Software Standby/Snooze mode return by LVD1 interrupt enabled	R/W
19	LVD2WUPEN	LVD2 Interrupt Software Standby/Snooze Mode Return Enable 0: Software Standby/Snooze mode return by LVD2 interrupt disabled 1: Software Standby/Snooze mode return by LVD2 interrupt enabled	R/W
23:20	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
24	RTCALMWUPEN	RTC Alarm Interrupt Software Standby/Snooze Mode Return Enable 0: Software Standby/Snooze mode return by RTC alarm interrupt disabled 1: Software Standby/Snooze mode return by RTC alarm interrupt enabled.	R/W
25	RTCPRDWUPEN	RTC Period Interrupt Software Standby/Snooze Mode Return Enable 0: Software Standby/Snooze mode return by RTC period interrupt disabled 1: Software Standby/Snooze mode return by RTC period interrupt enabled	R/W
26	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
27	USBFS0WUPEN	USBFS0 Interrupt Software Standby/Snooze Mode Return Enable 0: Software Standby/Snooze mode return by USBFS0 interrupt disabled 1: Software Standby/Snooze mode return by USBFS0 interrupt enabled	R/W
28	AGT1UDWUPEN	AGT1 Underflow Interrupt Software Standby/Snooze Mode Return Enable 0: Software Standby/Snooze mode return by AGT1 underflow interrupt disabled 1: Software Standby/Snooze mode return by AGT1 underflow	R/W
29	AGT1CAWUPEN	AGT1 Compare Match A Interrupt Software Standby/Snooze Mode Return Enable 0: Software Standby/Snooze mode return by AGT1 compare match A interrupt disabled 1: Software Standby/Snooze mode return by AGT1 compare match A interrupt enabled	R/W
30	AGT1CBWUPEN	AGT1 Compare Match B Interrupt Software Standby/Snooze Mode Return Enable 0: Software Standby/Snooze mode return by AGT1 compare match B interrupt disabled 1: Software Standby/Snooze mode return by AGT1 compare match B interrupt enabled	R/W
31	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

The bits in this register control whether the associated interrupt can wake up the CPU from Software Standby/Snooze mode.

IRQWUPEN[7:0] bits (IRQ Interrupt Software Standby/Snooze Mode Return Enable)

The IRQWUPEN[7:0] bits enable the use of IRQn interrupts to cancel Software Standby/Snooze mode.

IWDTWUPEN bit (IWDT Interrupt Software Standby/Snooze Mode Return Enable)

The IWDTWUPEN bit enables the use of IWDT interrupts to cancel Software Standby/Snooze mode.

KEYWUPEN bit (Key Interrupt Software Standby/Snooze Mode Return Enable)

The KEYWUPEN bit enables the use of key interrupts to cancel Software Standby/Snooze mode.

LVD1WUPEN bit (LVD1 Interrupt Software Standby/Snooze Mode Return Enable)

The LVD1WUPEN bit enables the use of LVD1 interrupts to cancel Software Standby/Snooze mode.

LVD2WUPEN bit (LVD2 Interrupt Software Standby/Snooze Mode Return Enable)

The LVD2WUPEN bit enables the use of LVD2 interrupts to cancel Software Standby/Snooze mode.

RTCALMWUPEN bit (RTC Alarm Interrupt Software Standby/Snooze Mode Return Enable)

The RTCALMWUPEN bit enables the use of RTC alarm interrupts to cancel Software Standby/Snooze mode.

RTCPRDWUPEN bit (RTC Period Interrupt Software Standby/Snooze Mode Return Enable)

The RTCPRDWUPEN bit enables the use of RTC period interrupts to cancel Software Standby/Snooze mode.

USBFS0WUPEN bit (USBFS0 Interrupt Software Standby/Snooze Mode Return Enable)

The USBFS0WUPEN bit enables the use of the USBFS0 interrupts to cancel Software Standby/Snooze mode.

AGT1UDWUPEN bit (AGT1 Underflow Interrupt Software Standby/Snooze Mode Return Enable)

The AGT1UDWUPEN bit enables the use of the AGT1 underflow interrupts to cancel Software Standby/Snooze mode.

AGT1CAWUPEN bit (AGT1 Compare Match A Interrupt Software Standby/Snooze Mode Return Enable)

The AGT1CAWUPEN bit enables the use of AGT1 compare match A interrupts to cancel Software Standby/Snooze mode.

AGT1CBWUPEN bit (AGT1 Compare Match B Interrupt Software Standby/Snooze Mode Return Enable)

The AGT1CBWUPEN bit enables the use of AGT1 compare match B interrupts to cancel Software Standby/Snooze mode.

12.2.9 WUPEN2 : Wake Up Interrupt Enable Register 2

Base address: ICU = 0x4000_6000

Offset address: 0x1A8

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	USBC CSWU PEN	INTUR E1WU PEN	INTUR 1WUP EN	INTUR E0WU PEN	INTUR 0WUP EN
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	INTUR0WUPEN	UARTA0_INTUR Interrupt Software Standby/Snooze Mode Return Enable 0: Software Standby/Snooze mode return by UARTA0_INTUR interrupt disabled 1: Software Standby/Snooze mode return by UARTA0_INTUR interrupt enabled	R/W
1	INTURE0WUPEN	UARTA0_INTURE Interrupt Software Standby/Snooze Mode Return Enable 0: Software Standby/Snooze mode return by UARTA0_INTURE interrupt disabled 1: Software Standby/Snooze mode return by UARTA0_INTURE interrupt enabled	R/W
2	INTUR1WUPEN	UARTA1_INTUR Interrupt Software Standby/Snooze Mode Return Enable 0: Software Standby/Snooze mode return by UARTA1_INTUR interrupt disabled 1: Software Standby/Snooze mode return by UARTA1_INTUR interrupt enabled	R/W
3	INTURE1WUPEN	UARTA1_INTURE Interrupt Software Standby/Snooze Mode Return Enable 0: Software Standby/Snooze mode return by UARTA1_INTURE interrupt disabled 1: Software Standby/Snooze mode return by UARTA1_INTURE interrupt enabled	R/W
4	USBCCSWUPEN	USBC_CCS Interrupt Software Standby/Snooze Mode Returns Enable 0: Software Standby/Snooze Mode return by USBC_CCS interrupt disabled 1: Software Standby/Snooze Mode return by USBC_CCS interrupt enabled	R/W
31:5	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

The bits in this register control whether the associated interrupt can wake up the CPU from Software Standby/Snooze mode.

INTUR0WUPEN bit (UARTA0_INTUR Interrupt Software Standby/Snooze Mode Return Enable)

The INTUR0WUPEN bit enables the use of UARTA0_INTUR interrupts to cancel Software Standby/Snooze mode.

INTURE0WUPEN bit (UARTA0_INTURE Interrupt Software Standby/Snooze Mode Return Enable)

The INTURE0WUPEN bit enables the use of UARTA0_INTURE interrupts to cancel Software Standby/Snooze mode.

INTUR1WUPEN bit (UARTA1_INTUR Interrupt Software Standby/Snooze Mode Return Enable)

The INTUR1WUPEN bit enables the use of UARTA1_INTUR interrupts to cancel Software Standby/Snooze mode.

INTURE1WUPEN bit (UARTA1_INTURE Interrupt Software Standby/Snooze Mode Return Enable)

The INTURE1WUPEN bit enables the use of UARTA1_INTURE interrupts to cancel Software Standby/Snooze mode.

USBCCSWUPEN bit (USBCC_CCS Interrupt Software Standby/Snooze Mode Returns Enable)

The USBCCSWUPEN bit enables the use of USBCC_CCS interrupts to cancel Software Standby/Snooze mode.

12.2.10 IELEN : ICU Event Enable Register

Base address: ICU = 0x4000_6000

Offset address: 0x1C0

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	IELEN	RTCIN TEN
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	RTCINTEN	RTCALM and RTCPRD Interrupts Enable (when LLOPTEN bit = 1) 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	R/W
1	IELEN	Parts Asynchronous Interrupts Enable except RTC (when LLOPTEN bit = 1) 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	R/W
7:2	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

The bits in this register control whether the associated interrupt can be used.

RTCINTEN bit (RTCALM and RTCPRD Interrupts Enable (when LLOPTEN bit = 1))

The RTCINTEN bit enables the use of RTCALM and RTCPRD interrupts.

IELEN bit (Parts Asynchronous Interrupts Enable except RTC (when LLOPTEN bit = 1))

The IELEN bit enables the use of parts asynchronous interrupts except RTC as follows:

- AGT1_AGT_CMBI, AGT1_AGT_CMAI, AGT1_AGTI, LVD_LVD1, LVD_LVD2, KEY_INTKR, IWDN_NMIUNDF, PORT_IRQ0 to PORT_IRQ7

12.3 Vector Table

The ICU detects maskable and non-maskable interrupts. Interrupt priorities are set up in the Arm NVIC. For information about these registers, see [section 12.9. Reference](#).

12.3.1 Interrupt Vector Table

[Table 12.3](#) describes the interrupt vector table. The interrupt vector addresses conform to the NVIC specifications.

Table 12.3 Interrupt vector table (1 of 3)

Exception number	IRQ number	Vector offset	Source	Description
0	—	0x000	Arm	Initial stack pointer
1	—	0x004	Arm	Initial program counter (reset vector)
2	—	0x008	Arm	Non-Maskable Interrupt (NMI)
3	—	0x00C	Arm	Hard Fault

Table 12.3 Interrupt vector table (2 of 3)

Exception number	IRQ number	Vector offset	Source	Description
4	—	0x010	Arm	Reserved
5	—	0x014	Arm	Reserved
6	—	0x018	Arm	Reserved
7	—	0x01C	Arm	Reserved
8	—	0x020	Arm	Reserved
9	—	0x024	Arm	Reserved
10	—	0x028	Arm	Reserved
11	—	0x02C	Arm	Supervisor Call (SVCall)
12	—	0x030	Arm	Reserved
13	—	0x034	Arm	Reserved
14	—	0x038	Arm	Pendable request for system service (PendableSrvReq)
15	—	0x03C	Arm	System Tick Timer (SysTick)
16	0	0x040	ICU.IELSR0	Event selected in the ICU.IELSR0 register
17	1	0x044	ICU.IELSR1	Event selected in the ICU.IELSR1 register
18	2	0x048	ICU.IELSR2	Event selected in the ICU.IELSR2 register
19	3	0x04C	ICU.IELSR3	Event selected in the ICU.IELSR3 register
20	4	0x050	ICU.IELSR4	Event selected in the ICU.IELSR4 register
21	5	0x054	ICU.IELSR5	Event selected in the ICU.IELSR5 register
22	6	0x058	ICU.IELSR6	Event selected in the ICU.IELSR6 register
23	7	0x05C	ICU.IELSR7	Event selected in the ICU.IELSR7 register
24	8	0x060	ICU.IELSR8	Event selected in the ICU.IELSR8 register
25	9	0x064	ICU.IELSR9	Event selected in the ICU.IELSR9 register
26	10	0x068	ICU.IELSR10	Event selected in the ICU.IELSR10 register
27	11	0x06C	ICU.IELSR11	Event selected in the ICU.IELSR11 register
28	12	0x070	ICU.IELSR12	Event selected in the ICU.IELSR12 register
29	13	0x074	ICU.IELSR13	Event selected in the ICU.IELSR13 register
30	14	0x078	ICU.IELSR14	Event selected in the ICU.IELSR14 register
31	15	0x07C	ICU.IELSR15	Event selected in the ICU.IELSR15 register
32	16	0x080	ICU.IELSR16	Event selected in the ICU.IELSR16 register
33	17	0x084	ICU.IELSR17	Event selected in the ICU.IELSR17 register
34	18	0x088	ICU.IELSR18	Event selected in the ICU.IELSR18 register
35	19	0x08C	ICU.IELSR19	Event selected in the ICU.IELSR19 register
36	20	0x090	ICU.IELSR20	Event selected in the ICU.IELSR20 register
37	21	0x094	ICU.IELSR21	Event selected in the ICU.IELSR21 register
38	22	0x098	ICU.IELSR22	Event selected in the ICU.IELSR22 register
39	23	0x09C	ICU.IELSR23	Event selected in the ICU.IELSR23 register
40	24	0x0A0	ICU.IELSR24	Event selected in the ICU.IELSR24 register
41	25	0x0A4	ICU.IELSR25	Event selected in the ICU.IELSR25 register
42	26	0x0A8	ICU.IELSR26	Event selected in the ICU.IELSR26 register
43	27	0x0AC	ICU.IELSR27	Event selected in the ICU.IELSR27 register
44	28	0x0B0	ICU.IELSR28	Event selected in the ICU.IELSR28 register

Table 12.3 Interrupt vector table (3 of 3)

Exception number	IRQ number	Vector offset	Source	Description
45	29	0x0B4	ICU.IELSR29	Event selected in the ICU.IELSR29 register
46	30	0x0B8	ICU.IELSR30	Event selected in the ICU.IELSR30 register
47	31	0x0BC	ICU.IELSR31	Event selected in the ICU.IELSR31 register

12.3.2 Event Number

The following table lists heading details for [Table 12.4](#), which describes each event number.

Heading	Description
Interrupt request source	Name of the source generating the interrupt request
Name	Name of the interrupt
Connect to NVIC	“✓” indicates the interrupt can be used as a CPU interrupt
Invoke DTC	“✓” indicates the interrupt can be used to request DTC activation
Canceling Snooze mode	“✓” indicates the interrupt can be used to request a return from Snooze mode
Canceling Software Standby mode	“✓” indicates the interrupt can be used to request a return from Software Standby mode

Table 12.4 Event table (1 of 5)

Event number*5	Interrupt request source	Name	IELSRn		Canceling Snooze	Canceling Software Standby
			Connect to NVIC	Invoke DTC		
0x01	Port	PORT_IRQ0	✓	✓	✓	✓
0x02		PORT_IRQ1	✓	✓	✓	✓
0x03		PORT_IRQ2	✓	✓	✓	✓
0x04		PORT_IRQ3	✓	✓	✓	✓
0x05		PORT_IRQ4	✓	✓	✓	✓
0x06		PORT_IRQ5	✓	✓	✓	✓
0x07		PORT_IRQ6	✓	✓	✓	✓
0x08		PORT_IRQ7	✓	✓	✓	✓
0x09	DTC	DTC_COMPLETE	✓	—	✓*4	—
0x0B	ICU	ICU_SNZCANCEL	✓	—	✓	—
0x0C	FLASH	FCU_FRDYI	✓	—	—	—
0x0D	LVD	LVD_LVD1	✓	—	✓	✓
0x0E		LVD_LVD2	✓	—	✓	✓
0x0F	MOSC	MOSC_STOP	✓	—	—	—
0x10	Low power mode	SYSTEM_SNZREQ	—	✓	—	—
0x11	AGT0	AGT0_AGTI	✓	✓	—	—
0x12		AGT0_AGTCMAI	✓	✓	—	—
0x13		AGT0_AGTCMBI	✓	✓	—	—
0x14	AGT1	AGT1_AGTI	✓	✓	✓	✓
0x15		AGT1_AGTCMAI	✓	✓	✓	✓
0x16		AGT1_AGTCMBI	✓	✓	✓	✓
0x17	IWDT	IWDT_NMIUNDF	✓	—	✓	✓
0x18	WDT	WDT_NMIUNDF	✓	—	—	—

Table 12.4 Event table (2 of 5)

Event number ^{*5}	Interrupt request source	Name	IELSRn		Canceling Snooze	Canceling Software Standby
			Connect to NVIC	Invoke DTC		
0x19	RTC	RTC_ALM	✓	—	✓	✓
0x1A		RTC_PRD	✓	—	✓	✓
0x1B		RTC_CUP	✓	—	—	—
0x1C	ADC12	ADC120_ADI	✓	✓	—	—
0x1D		ADC120_GBADI	✓	✓	—	—
0x1E		ADC120_CMPAI	✓	—	—	—
0x1F		ADC120_CMPBI	✓	—	—	—
0x20		ADC120_WCMPPM	—	✓	✓ ^{*4}	—
0x21		ADC120_WCMPUM	—	✓	✓ ^{*4}	—
0x23	USBFS	USBFS_D0FIFO	✓	✓	—	—
0x24		USBFS_D1FIFO	✓	✓	—	—
0x25		USBFS_USBI	✓	—	—	—
0x26		USBFS_USBR	✓	—	✓	✓
0x33	KINT	KEY_INTKR	✓	—	✓ ^{*1}	✓ ^{*1}
0x34	DOC	DOC_DOPCI	✓	—	✓ ^{*4}	—
0x35	CAC	CAC_FERRI	✓	—	—	—
0x36		CAC_MENDI	✓	—	—	—
0x37		CAC_OVFI	✓	—	—	—
0x38	CAN0	CAN0_ERS	✓	—	—	—
0x39		CAN0_RXF	✓	—	—	—
0x3A		CAN0_TXF	✓	—	—	—
0x3B		CAN0_RXM	✓	—	—	—
0x3C		CAN0_TXM	✓	—	—	—
0x3D	I/O Ports	IOPORT_GROUP1	✓	✓ ^{*2}	—	—
0x3E		IOPORT_GROUP2	✓	✓ ^{*2}	—	—
0x3F	ELC	ELC_SWEVT0	✓ ^{*3}	✓	—	—
0x40		ELC_SWEVT1	✓ ^{*3}	✓	—	—
0x41	POEG	POEG_GROUP0	✓	—	—	—
0x42		POEG_GROUP1	✓	—	—	—
0x46	GPT320	GPT0_CCMPA	✓	✓	—	—
0x47		GPT0_CCMPB	✓	✓	—	—
0x48		GPT0_CMPC	✓	✓	—	—
0x49		GPT0_CMPD	✓	✓	—	—
0x4A		GPT0_OVF	✓	✓	—	—
0x4B		GPT0_UDF	✓	✓	—	—

Table 12.4 Event table (3 of 5)

Event number ^{*5}	Interrupt request source	Name	IELSRn		Canceling Snooze	Canceling Software Standby
			Connect to NVIC	Invoke DTC		
0x5E	GPT164	GPT4_CCMPA	✓	✓	—	—
0x5F		GPT4_CCMPB	✓	✓	—	—
0x60		GPT4_CMPC	✓	✓	—	—
0x61		GPT4_CMPD	✓	✓	—	—
0x62		GPT4_OVF	✓	✓	—	—
0x63		GPT4_UDF	✓	✓	—	—
0x64	GPT165	GPT5_CCMPA	✓	✓	—	—
0x65		GPT5_CCMPB	✓	✓	—	—
0x66		GPT5_CMPC	✓	✓	—	—
0x67		GPT5_CMPD	✓	✓	—	—
0x68		GPT5_OVF	✓	✓	—	—
0x69		GPT5_UDF	✓	✓	—	—
0x6A	GPT166	GPT6_CCMPA	✓	✓	—	—
0x6B		GPT6_CCMPB	✓	✓	—	—
0x6C		GPT6_CMPC	✓	✓	—	—
0x6D		GPT6_CMPD	✓	✓	—	—
0x6E		GPT6_OVF	✓	✓	—	—
0x6F		GPT6_UDF	✓	✓	—	—
0x70	GPT	GPT_UVWEDGE	✓	—	—	—
0x71	SCI0	SCI0_RXI	✓	✓	—	—
0x72		SCI0_TXI	✓	✓	—	—
0x73		SCI0_TEI	✓	—	—	—
0x74		SCI0_ERI	✓	—	—	—
0x75		SCI0_AM	✓	—	✓ ^{*4}	—
0x76		SCI0_RXI_OR_ERI	—	—	✓ ^{*4}	—
0x77	SCI1	SCI1_RXI	✓	✓	—	—
0x78		SCI1_TXI	✓	✓	—	—
0x79		SCI1_TEI	✓	—	—	—
0x7A		SCI1_ERI	✓	—	—	—
0x7B		SCI1_AM	✓	—	—	—
0x7C	SCI9	SCI9_RXI	✓	✓	—	—
0x7D		SCI9_TXI	✓	✓	—	—
0x7E		SCI9_TEI	✓	—	—	—
0x7F		SCI9_ERI	✓	—	—	—
0x80		SCI9_AM	✓	—	—	—
0x81	SPI0	SPI0_SPRI	✓	✓	—	—
0x82		SPI0_SPTI	✓	✓	—	—
0x83		SPI0_SPII	✓	—	—	—
0x84		SPI0_SPEI	✓	—	—	—
0x85		SPI0_SPTEND	✓	—	—	—

Table 12.4 Event table (4 of 5)

Event number*5	Interrupt request source	Name	IELSRn		Canceling Snooze	Canceling Software Standby
			Connect to NVIC	Invoke DTC		
0x8D	TRNG	TRNG_RDREQ	✓	—	—	—
0x8E	SCI2	SCI2_RXI	✓	✓	—	—
0x8F		SCI2_TXI	✓	✓	—	—
0x90		SCI2_TEI	✓	—	—	—
0x91		SCI2_ERI	✓	—	—	—
0x92		SCI2_AM	✓	—	—	—
0x98	GPT167	GPT7_CCMPA	✓	✓	—	—
0x99		GPT7_CCMPB	✓	✓	—	—
0x9A		GPT7_CMPC	✓	✓	—	—
0x9B		GPT7_CMPD	✓	✓	—	—
0x9C		GPT7_OVF	✓	✓	—	—
0x9D		GPT7_UDF	✓	✓	—	—
0x9E	GPT168	GPT8_CCMPA	✓	✓	—	—
0x9F		GPT8_CCMPB	✓	✓	—	—
0xA0		GPT8_CMPC	✓	✓	—	—
0xA1		GPT8_CMPD	✓	✓	—	—
0xA2		GPT8_OVF	✓	✓	—	—
0xA3		GPT8_UDF	✓	✓	—	—
0xA4	GPT169	GPT9_CCMPA	✓	✓	—	—
0xA5		GPT9_CCMPB	✓	✓	—	—
0xA6		GPT9_CMPC	✓	✓	—	—
0xA7		GPT9_CMPD	✓	✓	—	—
0xA8		GPT9_OVF	✓	✓	—	—
0xA9		GPT9_UDF	✓	✓	—	—
0xAA	IIC/I3C	I3C_RESP	✓	✓	—	—
0xAB		I3C_CMD	✓	✓	—	—
0xAC		I3C_IBI	✓	✓	—	—
0xAD		I3C_RX	✓	✓	—	—
0xAE		I3C_TX	✓	✓	—	—
0xAF		I3C_RCV	✓	✓	—	—
0xB4		I3C_TEND	✓	—	—	—
0xB5		I3C_EEI	✓	—	—	—
0xBB	SSI0	SSI0_SSITXI	✓	✓	—	—
0xBC		SSI0_SSIRXI	✓	✓	—	—
0xBE		SSI0_SSIF	✓	—	—	—
0xBF	UARTA0	UARTA0_INTUT	✓	—	—	—
0xC0		UARTA0_INTUR	✓	—	✓	✓
0xC1		UARTA0_INTURE	✓	—	✓	✓

Table 12.4 Event table (5 of 5)

Event number*5	Interrupt request source	Name	IELSRn		Canceling Snooze	Canceling Software Standby
			Connect to NVIC	Invoke DTC		
0xC2	UARTA1	UARTA1_INTUT	✓	—	—	—
0xC3		UARTA1_INTUR	✓	—	✓	✓
0xC4		UARTA1_INTURE	✓	—	✓	✓
0xC5	USBCC	USBCC_CCI	✓	—	—	—
0xC6		USBCC_CCS	✓	—	✓	✓

Note 1. Only supported when KRCTL.KRMD is 1.

Note 2. Only the first edge detection is valid.

Note 3. Only interrupts after DTC transfer are supported.

Note 4. Using SELSR0.

Note 5. Event number is active only in Canceling Snooze mode and Canceling Software Standby mode. The setting of CPU and DTC interrupts, see [Table 12.7](#).

12.3.3 ICU and DTC Event Number

[Table 12.5](#), [Table 12.6](#) indicates the IELSRn.IELS[4:0] set values on the CPU interrupt or on DTC activation request. [Table 12.7](#) indicates register set values of each event selection.

Table 12.5 ICU input link select (1) (1 of 2)

IELS[4:0]	Group0 (interrupt ch IELSR0/8/16/24)	Group1 (interrupt ch IELSR1/9/17/25)	Group2 (interrupt ch IELSR2/10/18/26)	Group3 (interrupt ch IELSR3/11/19/27)
0x00	Interrupt disable	Interrupt disable	Interrupt disable	Interrupt disable
0x01	PORT_IRQ0	PORT_IRQ1	PORT_IRQ2	PORT_IRQ3
0x02	DTC_COMPLETE	LVD_LVD2	FCU_FRDYI	SYSTEM_SNZREQ
0x03	ICU_SNZCANCEL	AGT1_AGTCAI	AGT1_AGTCMBI	IWDT_NMIUNDF
0x04	LVD_LVD1	RTC_ALM	RTC_PRD	RTC_CUP
0x05	AGT1_AGTI	ADC120_GBADI	ADC120_CMPAI	ADC120_CMPBI
0x06	WDT_NMIUNDF	ADC120_WCMPUM	I3C_TEND	I3C_EEI
0x07	ADC120_ADI	SSI0_SSIRXI	SSI0_SSI_TXI	SSI0_SSIF
0x08	ADC120_WCMPM	I3C_TX	CAC_MENDI	CAC_OVFI
0x09	USBFS_USBI	USBFS_USBR	CAN0_TXF	CAN0_RXM
0x0A	I3C_RX	DOC_DOPCI	ELC_SWEVT0	ELC_SWEVT1
0x0B	Setting prohibited	CAC_FERRI	POEG_GROUP0	POEG_GROUP1
0x0C	CAN0_ERS	CAN0_RXF	GPT0_CMPC	GPT0_CMPD
0x0D	CAN0_TXM	GPT0_CCMPCB	UARTA0_INTUT	UARTA0_INTURE
0x0E	GPT0_CCMPC	GPT0_UDF	USBCC_CCI	UARTA1_INTURE
0x0F	GPT0_OVF	UARTA1_INTUT	SCI0_TEI	SCI0_ERI
0x10	UARTA0_INTUR	SCI0_TXI	SPI0_SPII	SPI0_SPEI
0x11	GPT_UVWEDGE	SPI0_SPTI	SPI0_SPTEND	AGT0_AGTI
0x12	SCI0_RXI	Setting prohibited	TRNG_RDREQ	USBCC_CCS
0x13	SCI0_AM	AGT0_AGTCMBI	IOPORT_GROUP2	GPT4_CMPD
0x14	SPI0_SPRI	Setting prohibited	Setting prohibited	GPT5_UDF
0x15	Setting prohibited	IOPORT_GROUP1	GPT4_CMPC	GPT6_CMPD
0x16	AGT0_AGTCAI	USBFS_D0FIFO	GPT5_OVF	GPT7_UDF
0x17	Setting prohibited	Setting prohibited	GPT6_CMPC	GPT8_CMPD

Table 12.5 ICU input link select (1) (2 of 2)

IELS[4:0]	Group0 (interrupt ch IELSR0/8/16/24)	Group1 (interrupt ch IELSR1/9/17/25)	Group2 (interrupt ch IELSR2/10/18/26)	Group3 (interrupt ch IELSR3/11/19/27)
0x18	KEY_INTKR	GPT4_CCMPB	GPT7_OVF	GPT9_UDF
0x19	Setting prohibited	GPT6_CCMPB	GPT8_CMPC	SCI1_ERI
0x1A	Setting prohibited	GPT8_CCMPB	GPT9_OVF	Setting prohibited
0x1B	GPT4_CCMPA	SCI1_TXI	SCI1_TEI	SCI9_AM
0x1C	GPT6_CCMPA	SCI2_AM	Setting prohibited	I3C_CMD
0x1D	GPT8_CCMPA	Setting prohibited	USBFS_D1FIFO	Setting prohibited
0x1E	SCI1_RXI	I3C_RESP	I3C_IBI	I3C_IBI
0x1F	Setting prohibited	Setting prohibited	UARTA1_INTUR	I3C_RCV

Table 12.6 ICU input link select (2) (1 of 2)

IELS[4:0]	Group4 (interrupt ch IELSR4/12/20/28)	Group5 (interrupt ch IELSR5/13/21/29)	Group6 (interrupt ch IELSR6/14/22/30)	Group7 (interrupt ch IELSR 7/15/23/31)
0x00	Interrupt disable	Interrupt disable	Interrupt disable	Interrupt disable
0x01	PORT_IRQ0	PORT_IRQ1	PORT_IRQ2	PORT_IRQ3
0x02	DTC_COMPLETE	LVD_LVD2	FCU_FRDYI	SYSTEM_SNZREQ
0x03	ICU_SNZCANCEL	AGT1_AGTCAI	AGT1_AGTCMBI	IWDT_NMIUNDF
0x04	LVD_LVD1	RTC_ALM	RTC_PRD	RTC_CUP
0x05	AGT1_AGTI	ADC120_GBADI	ADC120_CMPAI	ADC120_CMPBI
0x06	WDT_NMIUNDF	ADC120_WCMPUM	I3C_TEND	I3C_EEI
0x07	ADC120_ADI	SSI0_SSIRXI	SSI0_SSI_TXI	SSI0_SSIF
0x08	ADC120_WCMPPM	I3C_TX	CAC_MENDI	CAC_OVFI
0x09	USBFS_USBI	USBFS_USBR	CAN0_TXF	CAN0_RXM
0x0A	I3C_RX	DOC_DOPCI	ELC_SWEVT0	ELC_SWEVT1
0x0B	Setting prohibited	CAC_FERRI	POEG_GROUP0	POEG_GROUP1
0x0C	CAN0_ERS	CAN0_RXF	GPT0_CMPC	GPT0_CMPD
0x0D	CAN0_TXM	GPT0_CCMPB	UARTA0_INTUT	UARTA0_INTURE
0x0E	GPT0_CCMPA	GPT0_UDF	USBCC_CCI	UARTA1_INTURE
0x0F	GPT0_OVF	UARTA1_INTUT	SCI0_TEI	SCI0_ERI
0x10	UARTA0_INTUR	SCI0_TXI	SPI0_SPII	SPI0_SPEI
0x11	GPT_UVWEDGE	SPI0_SPTI	SPI0_SPTEND	PORT_IRQ7
0x12	SCI0_RXI	Setting prohibited	TRNG_RDREQ	USBCC_CCS
0x13	SCI0_AM	PORT_IRQ5	PORT_IRQ6	GPT4_UDF
0x14	SPI0_SPRI	Setting prohibited	MOSC_STOP	GPT5_CMPD
0x15	Setting prohibited	Setting prohibited	Setting prohibited	GPT6_UDF
0x16	PORT_IRQ4	USBFS_D0FIFO	GPT4_OVF	GPT7_CMPD
0x17	Setting prohibited	GPT5_CCMPB	GPT5_CMPC	GPT8_UDF
0x18	Setting prohibited	GPT7_CCMPB	GPT6_OVF	GPT9_CMPD
0x19	Setting prohibited	GPT9_CCMPB	GPT7_CMPC	SCI2_ERI
0x1A	GPT5_CCMPA	SCI1_AM	GPT8_OVF	SCI9_ERI
0x1B	GPT7_CCMPA	SCI2_TXI	GPT9_CMPC	Setting prohibited
0x1C	GPT9_CCMPA	SCI9_TXI	SCI2_TEI	I3C_CMD
0x1D	SCI2_RXI	Setting prohibited	USBFS_D1FIFO	Setting prohibited

Table 12.6 ICU input link select (2) (2 of 2)

IELS[4:0]	Group4 (interrupt ch IELSR4/12/20/28)	Group5 (interrupt ch IELSR5/13/21/29)	Group6 (interrupt ch IELSR6/14/22/30)	Group7 (interrupt ch IELSR7/15/23/31)
0x1E	SCI9_RXI	I3C_RESP	SCI9_TEI	Setting prohibited
0x1F	Setting prohibited	Setting prohibited	UARTA1_INTUR	I3C_RCV

Table 12.7 Register setting for event (1 of 4)

Name	IELSRn.IELS[4:0]							
	Group 0 (n = 0/8/16/24)	Group 1 (n = 1/9/17/25)	Group 2 (n = 2/10/18/26)	Group 3 (n = 3/11/19/27)	Group 4 (n = 4/12/20/28)	Group 5 (n = 5/13/21/29)	Group 6 (n = 6/14/22/30)	Group 7 (n = 7/15/23/31)
PORT_IRQ0	0x01	—	—	—	0x01	—	—	—
PORT_IRQ1	—	0x01	—	—	—	0x01	—	—
PORT_IRQ2	—	—	0x01	—	—	—	0x01	—
PORT_IRQ3	—	—	—	0x01	—	—	—	0x01
PORT_IRQ4	—	—	—	—	0x16	—	—	—
PORT_IRQ5	—	—	—	—	—	0x13	—	—
PORT_IRQ6	—	—	—	—	—	—	0x13	—
PORT_IRQ7	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	0x11
DTC_COMPLETE	0x02 ^{*1}	—	—	—	0x02 ^{*1}	—	—	—
ICU_SNZCANCEL	0x03 ^{*1}	—	—	—	0x03 ^{*1}	—	—	—
FCU_FRDYI	—	—	0x02 ^{*1}	—	—	—	0x02 ^{*1}	—
LVD_LVD1	0x04 ^{*1}	—	—	—	0x04 ^{*1}	—	—	—
LVD_LVD2	—	0x02 ^{*1}	—	—	—	0x02 ^{*1}	—	—
MOSC_STOP	—	—	—	—	—	—	0x14 ^{*1}	—
SYSTEM_SNZREQ	—	—	—	0x02 ^{*2}	—	—	—	0x02 ^{*2}
AGT0_AGTI	—	—	—	0x11	—	—	—	—
AGT0_AGTCMAI	0x16	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
AGT0_AGTCMBI	—	0x13	—	—	—	—	—	—
AGT1_AGTI	0x05	—	—	—	0x05	—	—	—
AGT1_AGTCMAI	—	0x03	—	—	—	0x03	—	—
AGT1_AGTCMBI	—	—	0x03	—	—	—	0x03	—
IWDT_NMIUNDF	—	—	—	0x03 ^{*1}	—	—	—	0x03 ^{*1}
WDT_NMIUNDF	0x06 ^{*1}	—	—	—	0x06 ^{*1}	—	—	—
RTC_ALM	—	0x04 ^{*1}	—	—	—	0x04 ^{*1}	—	—
RTC_PRD	—	—	0x04 ^{*1}	—	—	—	0x04 ^{*1}	—
RTC_CUP	—	—	—	0x04 ^{*1}	—	—	—	0x04 ^{*1}
ADC120_ADI	0x07	—	—	—	0x07	—	—	—
ADC120_GBADI	—	0x05	—	—	—	05	—	—
ADC120_CMPAI	—	—	0x05 ^{*1}	—	—	—	0x05 ^{*1}	—
ADC120_CMPBI	—	—	—	0x05 ^{*1}	—	—	—	0x05 ^{*1}
ADC120_WCMPPM	0x08 ^{*2}	—	—	—	0x08 ^{*2}	—	—	—
ADC120_WCMPUM	—	0x06 ^{*2}	—	—	—	0x06 ^{*2}	—	—
USBFS_D0FIFO	—	0x16	—	—	—	0x16	—	—
USBFS_D1FIFO	—	—	0x1D	—	—	—	0x1D	—

Table 12.7 Register setting for event (2 of 4)

Name	IELSRn.IELS[4:0]							
	Group 0 (n = 0/8/16/24)	Group 1 (n = 1/9/17/25)	Group 2 (n = 2/10/18/26)	Group 3 (n = 3/11/19/27)	Group 4 (n = 4/12/20/28)	Group 5 (n = 5/13/21/29)	Group 6 (n = 6/14/22/30)	Group 7 (n = 7/15/23/31)
USBFS_USBI	0x09 ^{*1}	—	—	—	0x09 ^{*1}	—	—	—
USBFS_USBR	—	0x09 ^{*1}	—	—	—	0x09 ^{*1}	—	—
KEY_INTKR	0x18 ^{*1}	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
DOC_DOPCI	—	0x0A ^{*1}	—	—	—	0x0A ^{*1}	—	—
CAC_FERRI	—	0x0B ^{*1}	—	—	—	0x0B ^{*1}	—	—
CAC_MENDI	—	—	0x08 ^{*1}	—	—	—	0x08 ^{*1}	—
CAC_OVFI	—	—	—	0x08 ^{*1}	—	—	—	0x08 ^{*1}
CAN0_ERS	0x0C ^{*1}	—	—	—	0x0C ^{*1}	—	—	—
CAN0_RXF	—	0x0C ^{*1}	—	—	—	0x0C ^{*1}	—	—
CAN0_TXF	—	—	0x09 ^{*1}	—	—	—	0x09 ^{*1}	—
CAN0_RXM	—	—	—	0x09 ^{*1}	—	—	—	0x09 ^{*1}
CAN0_TXM	0x0D ^{*1}	—	—	—	0x0D ^{*1}	—	—	—
IOPORT_GROUP1	—	0x15	—	—	—	—	—	—
IOPORT_GROUP2	—	—	0x13	—	—	—	—	—
ELC_SWEVT0	—	—	0x0A	—	—	—	0x0A	—
ELC_SWEVT1	—	—	—	0x0A	—	—	—	0x0A
POEG_GROUP0	—	—	0x0B ^{*1}	—	—	—	0x0B ^{*1}	—
POEG_GROUP1	—	—	—	0x0B ^{*1}	—	—	—	0x0B ^{*1}
GPT0_CCMPA	0x0E	—	—	—	0x0E	—	—	—
GPT0_CCMPB	—	0x0D	—	—	—	0x0D	—	—
GPT0_CMPC	—	—	0x0C	—	—	—	0x0C	—
GPT0_CMPD	—	—	—	0x0C	—	—	—	0x0C
GPT0_OVF	0x0F	—	—	—	0x0F	—	—	—
GPT0_UDF	—	0x0E	—	—	—	0x0E	—	—
GPT4_CCMPA	0x1B	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
GPT4_CCMPB	—	0x18	—	—	—	—	—	—
GPT4_CMPC	—	—	0x15	—	—	—	—	—
GPT4_CMPD	—	—	—	0x13	—	—	—	—
GPT4_OVF	—	—	—	—	—	—	0x16	—
GPT4_UDF	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	0x13
GPT5_CCMPA	—	—	—	—	0x1A	—	—	—
GPT5_CCMPB	—	—	—	—	—	0x17	—	—
GPT5_CMPC	—	—	—	—	—	—	0x17	—
GPT5_CMPD	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	0x14
GPT5_OVF	—	—	0x16	—	—	—	—	—
GPT5_UDF	—	—	—	0x14	—	—	—	—
GPT6_CCMPA	0x1C	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
GPT6_CCMPB	—	0x19	—	—	—	—	—	—
GPT6_CMPC	—	—	0x17	—	—	—	—	—

Table 12.7 Register setting for event (3 of 4)

Name	IELSRn.IELS[4:0]							
	Group 0 (n = 0/8/16/24)	Group 1 (n = 1/9/17/25)	Group 2 (n = 2/10/18/26)	Group 3 (n = 3/11/19/27)	Group 4 (n = 4/12/20/28)	Group 5 (n = 5/13/21/29)	Group 6 (n = 6/14/22/30)	Group 7 (n = 7/15/23/31)
GPT6_CMPD	—	—	—	0x15	—	—	—	—
GPT6_OVF	—	—	—	—	—	—	0x18	—
GPT6_UDF	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	0x15
GPT7_CCMPA	—	—	—	—	0x1B	—	—	—
GPT7_CCMPB	—	—	—	—	—	0x18	—	—
GPT7_CMPC	—	—	—	—	—	—	0x19	—
GPT7_CMPD	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	0x16
GPT7_OVF	—	—	0x18	—	—	—	—	—
GPT7_UDF	—	—	—	0x16	—	—	—	—
GPT8_CCMPA	0x1D	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
GPT8_CCMPB	—	0x1A	—	—	—	—	—	—
GPT8_CMPC	—	—	0x19	—	—	—	—	—
GPT8_CMPD	—	—	—	0x17	—	—	—	—
GPT8_OVF	—	—	—	—	—	—	0x1A	—
GPT8_UDF	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	0x17
GPT9_CCMPA	—	—	—	—	0x1C	—	—	—
GPT9_CCMPB	—	—	—	—	—	0x19	—	—
GPT9_CMPC	—	—	—	—	—	—	0x1B	—
GPT9_CMPD	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	0x18
GPT9_OVF	—	—	0x1A	—	—	—	—	—
GPT9_UDF	—	—	—	0x18	—	—	—	—
GPT_UVWEDGE	0x11 ^{*1}	—	—	—	0x11 ^{*1}	—	—	—
SCI0_RXI	0x12	—	—	—	0x12	—	—	—
SCI0_TXI	—	0x10	—	—	—	0x10	—	—
SCI0_TEI	—	—	0x0F ^{*1}	—	—	—	0x0F ^{*1}	—
SCI0_ERI	—	—	—	0x0F ^{*1}	—	—	—	0x0F ^{*1}
SCI0_AM	0x13 ^{*1}	—	—	—	0x13 ^{*1}	—	—	—
SCI1_RXI	0x1E	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
SCI1_TXI	—	0x1B	—	—	—	—	—	—
SCI1_TEI	—	—	0x1B ^{*1}	—	—	—	—	—
SCI1_ERI	—	—	—	0x19 ^{*1}	—	—	—	—
SCI1_AM	—	—	—	—	—	0x1A ^{*1}	—	—
SCI2_RXI	—	—	—	—	0x1D	—	—	—
SCI2_TXI	—	—	—	—	—	0x1B	—	—
SCI2_TEI	—	—	—	—	—	—	0x1C ^{*1}	—
SCI2_ERI	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	0x19 ^{*1}
SCI2_AM	—	0x1C ^{*1}	—	—	—	—	—	—
SCI9_RXI	—	—	—	—	0x1E	—	—	—
SCI9_TXI	—	—	—	—	—	0x1C	—	—

Table 12.7 Register setting for event (4 of 4)

Name	IELSRn.IELS[4:0]							
	Group 0 (n = 0/8/16/24)	Group 1 (n = 1/9/17/25)	Group 2 (n = 2/10/18/26)	Group 3 (n = 3/11/19/27)	Group 4 (n = 4/12/20/28)	Group 5 (n = 5/13/21/29)	Group 6 (n = 6/14/22/30)	Group 7 (n = 7/15/23/31)
SCI9_TEI	—	—	—	—	—	—	0x1E ^{*1}	—
SCI9_ERI	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	0x1A ^{*1}
SCI9_AM	—	—	—	0x1B ^{*1}	—	—	—	—
SPI0_SPRI	0x14	—	—	—	0x14	—	—	—
SPI0_SPTI	—	0x11	—	—	—	0x11	—	—
SPI0_SPII	—	—	0x10 ^{*1}	—	—	—	0x10 ^{*1}	—
SPI0_SPEI	—	—	—	0x10 ^{*1}	—	—	—	0x10 ^{*1}
SPI0_SPTEND	—	—	0x11 ^{*1}	—	—	—	0x11 ^{*1}	—
TRNG_RDREQ	—	—	0x12 ^{*1}	—	—	—	0x12 ^{*1}	—
I3C_RESP	—	0x1E	—	—	—	0x1E	—	—
I3C_CMD	—	—	—	0x1C	—	—	—	0x1C
I3C_IBI	—	—	0x1E	0x1E	—	—	—	—
I3C_RX	0x0A	—	—	—	0x0A	—	—	—
I3C_TX	—	0x08	—	—	—	0x08	—	—
I3C_RCV	—	—	—	0x1F	—	—	—	0x1F
I3C_TEND	—	—	0x06 ^{*1}	—	—	—	0x06 ^{*1}	—
I3C_EEI	—	—	—	0x06 ^{*1}	—	—	—	0x06 ^{*1}
SSI0_SSITXI	—	—	0x07	—	—	—	0x07	—
SSI0_SSIRXI	—	0x07	—	—	—	0x07	—	—
SSI0_SSIF	—	—	—	0x07 ^{*1}	—	—	—	0x07 ^{*1}
UARTA0_INTUT	—	—	0x0D	—	—	—	0x0D	—
UARTA0_INTUR	0x10	—	—	—	0x10	—	—	—
UARTA0_INTURE	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	0x0D ^{*1}
UARTA1_INTUT	—	0x0F	—	—	—	0x0F	—	—
UARTA1_INTUR	—	—	0x1F	—	—	—	0x1F	—
UARTA1_INTURE	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	0x0E ^{*1}
USBCC_CCI	—	—	0x0E ^{*1}	—	—	—	0x0E ^{*1}	—
USBCC_CCS	—	—	—	0x12 ^{*1}	—	—	—	0x12 ^{*1}

Note 1. Use for CPU interrupt only.

Note 2. Use for DTC interrupt only.

12.4 Interrupt Operation

The ICU performs the following functions:

- Detecting interrupts
- Enabling and disabling interrupts
- Selecting interrupt request destinations such as CPU interrupt, DTC activation.

12.4.1 Detecting Interrupts

The ICU selects an event source input from a peripheral function interrupt or an external pin interrupt with IELSRn.IELS[4:0].

The accepted interrupt source sets the IELSRn.IR to 1 and sends an interrupt request to the NVIC.

External pin interrupt requests are detected by either:

- Edges (falling edge, rising edge, or rising and falling edges)
- Level (low level) of the interrupt signal.

Set the IRQCRi.IRQMD[1:0] bits to select the detection mode for the IRQi pins. For interrupt sources associated with peripheral modules, see [Table 12.3](#) and [Table 12.4](#). Events must be accepted by the NVIC before an interrupt occurs and is accepted by the CPU.

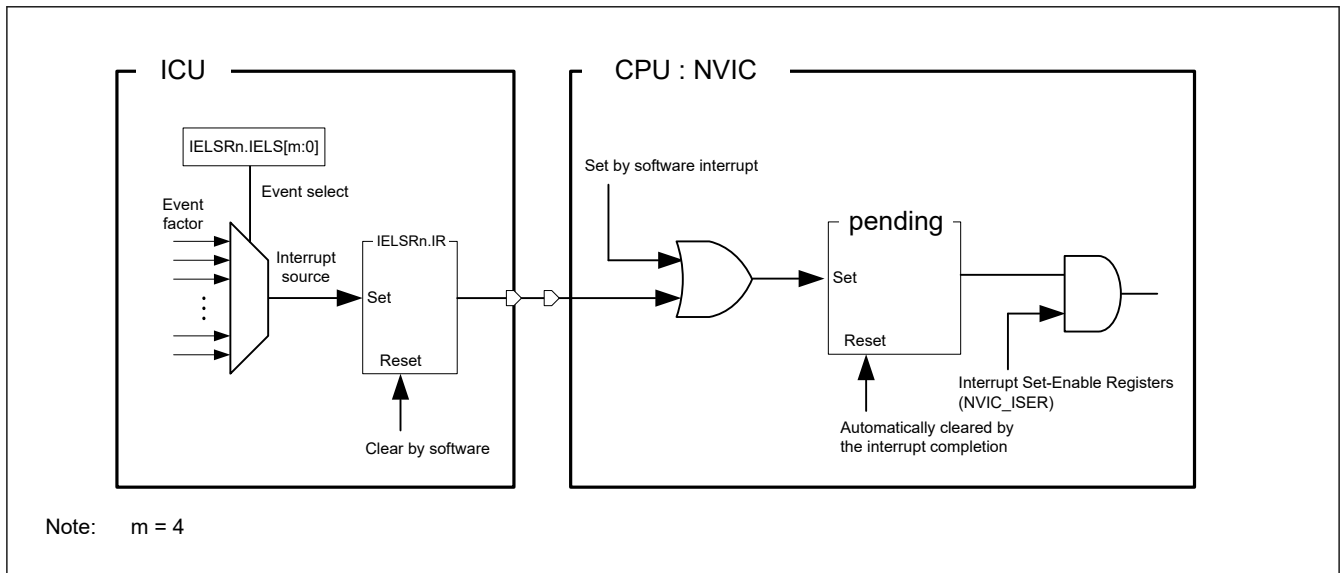


Figure 12.2 Interrupt path of the ICU and CPU (NVIC)

12.5 Interrupt Setting Procedure

12.5.1 Enabling Interrupt Requests

The procedure for enabling an interrupt request is as follows:

1. Set the Interrupt Set-Enable register (NVIC_ISER).
2. Set the IELSRn.IELS[4:0] bits as the interrupt source.
3. Specify the operation settings for the event source, such as snooze mode cancellation (SELSR0.SELS[7:0]), software standby mode cancellation (WUPEN or WUPEN2 register setting).

12.5.2 Disabling Interrupt Requests

The procedure to disable the interrupt request is as follows:

1. Disable the operation settings for the event source, such as snooze mode cancellation (SELSR0.SELS[7:0]), software standby mode cancellation (WUPEN or WUPEN2 register setting).
2. Clear the interrupt source setting (IELSRn.IELS[4:0] = 0x00).
3. Clear the interrupt status flag (IELSRn.IR = 0).
4. Clear the interrupt Clear-Enable register (NVIC_ICER) and interrupt Clear-Pending register (NVIC_ICPR).

12.5.3 Polling for Interrupts

The procedure for polling for interrupt requests is as follows:

1. Set the Interrupt Clear-Enable register (NVIC_ICER).
2. Set the IELSRn.IELS[4:0] bits as the interrupt source.

- Specify the operation settings for the event source, such as snooze mode cancellation (SELSR0.SELS[7:0]), software standby mode cancellation (WUPEN or WUPEN2 register setting).
- Poll the interrupt Set-Pending register (NVIC_ISPR).

12.5.4 Selecting Interrupt Request Destinations

The available destinations are fixed for each interrupt, as described in [Table 12.3](#), [Table 12.4](#) and [Table 12.6](#).

The interrupt output destination, CPU, or DTC can be independently selected for each interrupt source.

Use an interrupt request destination setting that is indicated by a “✓” in the event list.

If the DTC is selected as the destination for requests from an IRQi pin, you must set the IRQCRi.IRQMD[1:0] bits for that interrupt to select edge detection.

12.5.4.1 CPU Interrupt Request

When IELSRn.DTCE = 0, the event specified in the IELSRn register is output to the NVIC. Set the IELSRn.IELS[4:0] bits to the target event and set the IELSRn.DTCE bit to 0.

12.5.4.2 DTC Activation

When IELSRn.DTCE = 1, the event specified in the IELSRn register is output to the DTC. Use the following procedure:

- Set the IELSRn.IELS[4:0] bits to the target event and set the IELSRn.DTCE bit to 1.
- Set the DTC Module Start bit (DTCST.DTCST) to 1.

[Table 12.8](#) shows operation when the DTC is the interrupt request destination.

Table 12.8 Operation when DTC becomes interrupt request destination

Interrupt request destination	DISEL*1	Remaining transfer operations	Operation per request	IR*2	Interrupt request destination after transfer
DTC*3	1	≠ 0	DTC transfer → CPU interrupt	Cleared on interrupt acceptance by the CPU	DTC
		= 0	DTC transfer → CPU interrupt	Cleared on interrupt acceptance by the CPU	CPU (IELSRn.DTCE bit is automatically cleared)
	0	≠ 0	DTC transfer	Cleared at the start of DTC data transfer after reading DTC transfer data	DTC
		= 0	DTC transfer → CPU interrupt	Cleared on interrupt acceptance by the CPU	CPU (IELSRn.DTCE bit is automatically cleared)

Note 1. DTC.MRB.DISEL bit controls the interrupt generates timing from DTC to CPU.

Note 2. When the IELSRn.IR flag is 1, an interrupt request (DTC activation request) that occurs again is ignored.

Note 3. For chain transfers, DTC transfer continues until the last chain transfer ends. The DISEL bit state and the remaining transfer count determine whether a CPU interrupt occurs, the IELSRn.IR flag clear timing, and the interrupt request destination after transfer. See [Table 15.2](#) in [section 15, Data Transfer Controller \(DTC\)](#).

12.5.5 Digital Filter

A digital filter function is provided for the external interrupt request pins IRQi, (i = 0 to 7) and the NMI pin interrupt. It samples input signals on the filter PCLKB sampling clock and removes any signal with a pulse width less than 3 sampling cycles.

To use the digital filter for an IRQi pin:

- Set the sampling clock cycle to PCLKB, PCLKB/8, PCLKB/32, or PCLKB/64 in the IRQCRi.FCLKSEL[1:0] bits (i = 0 to 7).
- Set the IRQCRi.FLTEN bit (i = 0 to 7) to 1 (digital filter enabled).

To use the digital filter for an NMI pin:

- Set the sampling clock cycle to PCLKB, PCLKB/8, PCLKB/32, or PCLKB/64 in the NMICR.NFCLKSEL[1:0] bits.

2. Set the NMICR.NFLTEN bit to 1 (digital filter enabled).

Figure 12.3 shows an example of digital filter operation.

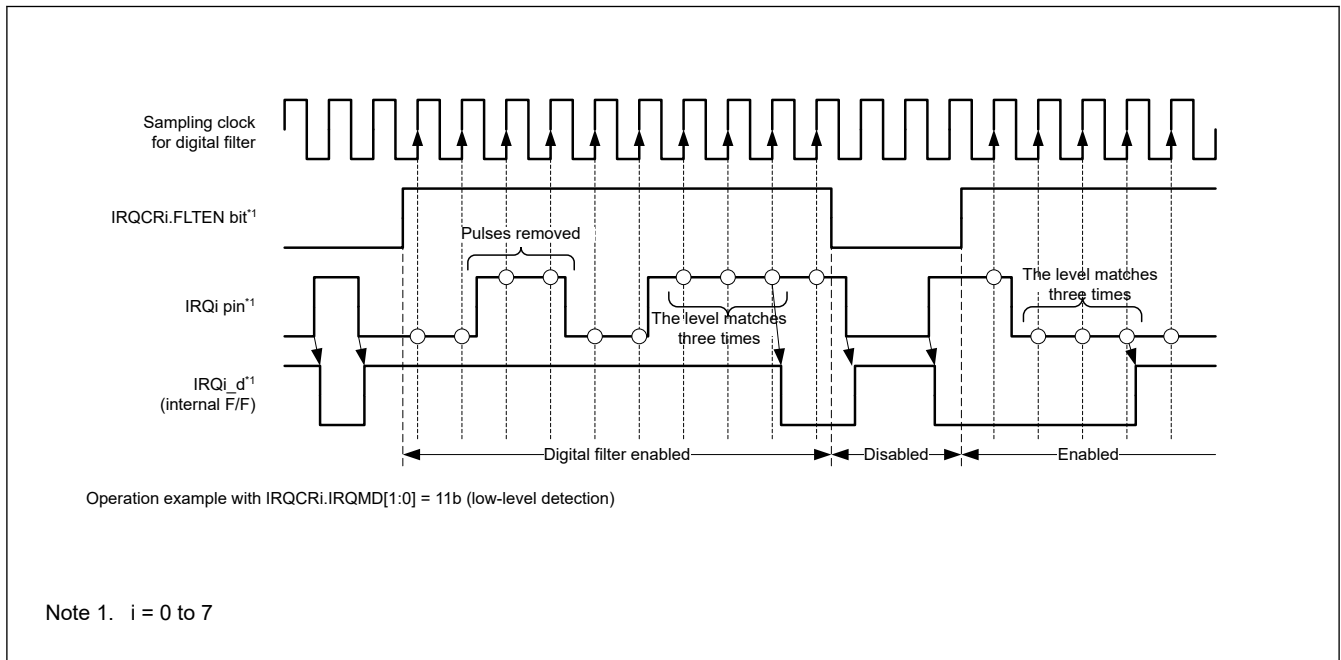


Figure 12.3 Digital filter operation example

Before entering Software Standby mode, disable the digital filters by clearing the IRQCRi.FLTEN and NMICR.NFLTEN bits. The ICU clock stops in Software Standby mode.

On exiting Software Standby mode, the circuit detects the edge by comparing the state before standby to the state after standby release. If the input changes during Software Standby mode, an incorrect edge might be detected. The digital filters can be enabled again after exiting Software Standby mode.

During Software Standby Mode, the digital filter is forcibly turned off by Hardware. After returning to normal mode from Software Standby Mode, follow the values of IRQCRi.FLTEN ($i = 0$ to 15) and NMICR.NFLTEN. Once the filter is disabled, the event information sampled up to that point will be lost.

12.5.6 External Pin Interrupts

To use external pin interrupts:

1. Configure I/O ports settings.
2. Clear the IRQCRi.FLTEN bit ($i = 0$ to 7) to 0 (digital filter disabled).
3. Set the IRQMD[1:0] bits of the given IRQCRi register ($i = 0$ to 7) to select the senses of detection.
4. Set the FCLKSEL[1:0] bits, and the FLTEN bit of the IRQCRi register.
5. Select the IRQ pin as follows:
 - If the IRQ pin is to be used for CPU interrupt requests, set the IELSRn.IELS[4:0] bits and the IELSRn.DTCE bit to 0.
 - If the IRQ pin is to be used for DTC activation, set the IELSRn.IELS[4:0] bits and the IELSRn.DTCE bit to 1.

12.6 Non-maskable Interrupt Operation

The following sources can trigger a non-maskable interrupt:

- NMI pin interrupt
- Oscillation stop detection interrupt
- WDT underflow/refresh error interrupt

- IWDT underflow/refresh error interrupt
- Voltage monitor 1 interrupt
- Voltage monitor 2 interrupt
- SRAM parity error interrupt
- Bus master MPU error interrupt
- Bus slave MPU error interrupt
- CPU stack pointer monitor interrupt

Non-maskable interrupts can only be used with the CPU, not to activate the DTC. Non-maskable interrupts take precedence over all other interrupts. The non-maskable interrupt states can be verified in the Non-Maskable Interrupt Status Register (NMISR). Confirm that all bits in the NMISR are 0 before returning from the NMI handler.

Non-maskable interrupts are disabled by default. To use non-maskable interrupts:

1. Clear the NMICR.NFLTEN bit to 0 (digital filter disabled).
2. Set the NMIMD bit, NFCLKSEL[1:0] bits, and NFLTEN bit of NMICR register.
3. Write 1 to the NMICLR.NMICLR bit to clear the NMISR.NMIST flag to 0.
4. Enable the non-maskable interrupt by writing 1 to the associated bit in the Non-Maskable Interrupt Enable Register (NMIER).

After 1 is written to the NMIER register, subsequent write access to the NMIE bit in NMIER is ignored. An NMI cannot be disabled when enabled, except by a reset.

12.7 Return from Low Power Modes

[Table 12.4](#) lists the interrupt sources that can be used to exit Sleep or Software Standby mode. For more information, see [section 10, Low Power Modes](#).

12.7.1 Return from Sleep Mode

To return from Sleep mode in response to an interrupt:

Non-maskable interrupt

- Use the NMIER register to enable the target interrupt request.

Maskable interrupt

- Select the CPU as the interrupt request destination
- Enable the interrupt in the NVIC.

12.7.2 Return from Software Standby Mode

The ICU returns from Software Standby mode using a non-maskable interrupt or a maskable interrupt. For maskable interrupt of canceling source, see [Table 12.4](#).

To return from Software Standby mode:

1. Select the interrupt source that enables return from Software Standby:
 - For non-maskable interrupts, use the NMIER register to enable the target interrupt request
 - For maskable interrupts, use the WUPEN or WUPEN2 register to enable the target interrupt request.
2. Select the CPU as the interrupt request destination
3. Enable the interrupt in the NVIC.

Interrupt requests through the IRQn pins that do not satisfy these conditions are not detected while the clock is stopped in Software Standby mode.

12.7.3 Return from Snooze Mode

The ICU can return to Normal mode from Snooze mode using the interrupts provided for this mode.

To return to Normal mode from Snooze mode:

1. Set the number of the required interrupt request in SELSR0.SELS[7:0]
2. Set the value 0x03 (ICU_SNZCANCEL) in IELSRn.IELS[4:0] (n = one of following numbers: 0, 4, 8, 12, 16, 20, 24, and 28).
3. Select the CPU as the interrupt request destination.
4. Enable the interrupt in the NVIC.

Note: In Snooze mode, a clock is supplied to the ICU. If an event selected in IELSRn is detected, the CPU acknowledges the interrupt after returning to Normal mode from Software Standby mode.

12.8 Using the WFI Instruction with Non-maskable Interrupts

When a WFI instruction is executed, confirm that all status flags in the NMISR register are 0.

12.9 Reference

- ARM® Cortex®-M23 Processor Technical Reference Manual (ARM DDI 0550C)

13. Buses

13.1 Overview

Table 13.1 lists the bus specifications, Figure 13.1 shows the bus configuration, and Table 13.2 lists the addresses assigned for each bus.

Table 13.1 Bus specifications

Bus type		Description
Main bus	System bus (CPU)	- Connected to CPU - Connected to on-chip memory and internal peripheral bus
	DMA bus	- Connected to DTC - Connected to on-chip memory and internal peripheral bus
Slave interface	Memory bus 1	Connected to code flash memory
	Memory bus 4	Connected to SRAM0
	Internal peripheral bus 1	Connected to system control related to peripheral modules
	Internal peripheral bus 3	- Connected to peripheral modules (CAC, ELC, I/O Ports, POEG, RTC, WDT, IWD, ADC12, DOC, GPT, SCI, SPI, CRC, SSI, and CAN) - Connected to peripheral modules (KINT, AGT, USBFS, UAR, USBCC, and I3C)
	Internal peripheral bus 7	Connected to peripheral modules (TRNG)
	Internal peripheral bus 9	Connected to flash memory (in P/E (Programming/Erasure)), data flash memory and TSN

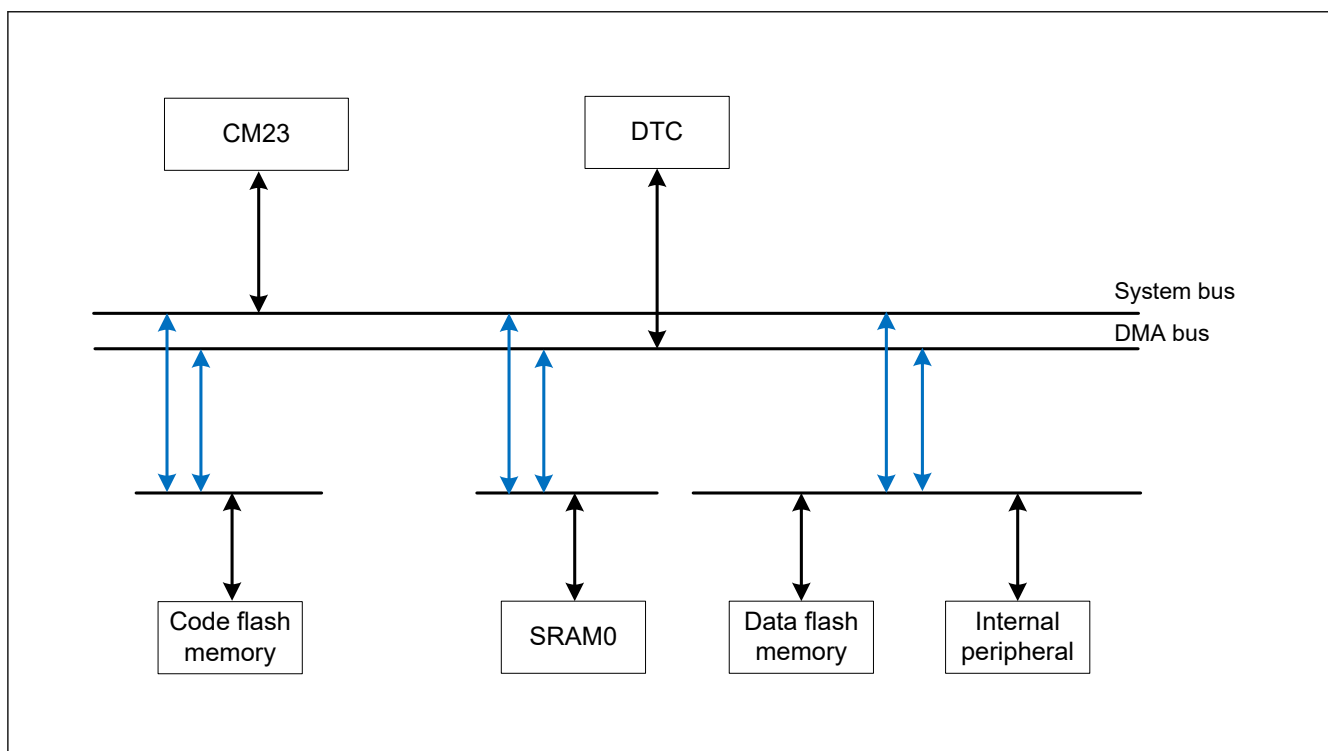


Figure 13.1 Bus configuration

Table 13.2 Addresses assigned for each bus (1 of 2)

Address	Bus	Area
0x0000_0000 to 0x01FF_FFFF	Memory bus 1	Code flash memory
0x2000_0000 to 0x2000_7FFF	Memory bus 4	SRAM0

Table 13.2 Addresses assigned for each bus (2 of 2)

Address	Bus	Area
0x4000_0000 to 0x4001_8FFF	Internal peripheral bus 1	Peripheral I/O registers
0x4001_9000 to 0x4001_9FFF	Memory bus 4	MTB I/O registers
0x4001_A000 to 0x4001_FFFF	Internal peripheral bus 1	Peripheral I/O registers
0x4004_0000 to 0x400B_FFFF	Internal peripheral bus 3	
0x400C_0000 to 0x400D_FFFF	Internal peripheral bus 7	Peripheral I/O registers (TRNG)
0x4010_0000 to 0x407F_FFFF	Internal peripheral bus 9	Flash memory (in P/E), data flash memory and TSN

13.2 Description of Buses

13.2.1 Main Buses

The main buses consist of the system bus and DMA bus. The system bus and DMA bus are connected to the following:

- Code flash memory
- SRAM0
- Data flash memory
- Internal peripheral bus

The system bus is used for instruction and data accesses to the CPU.

Different master and slave transfer combinations can proceed simultaneously. In addition, requests for bus access from masters other than the DTC are not accepted during reads of transfer control information for the DTC.

13.2.2 Slave Interface

For connections from the main bus to the slave interfaces, see the slave interfaces in [section 13.1. Overview](#).

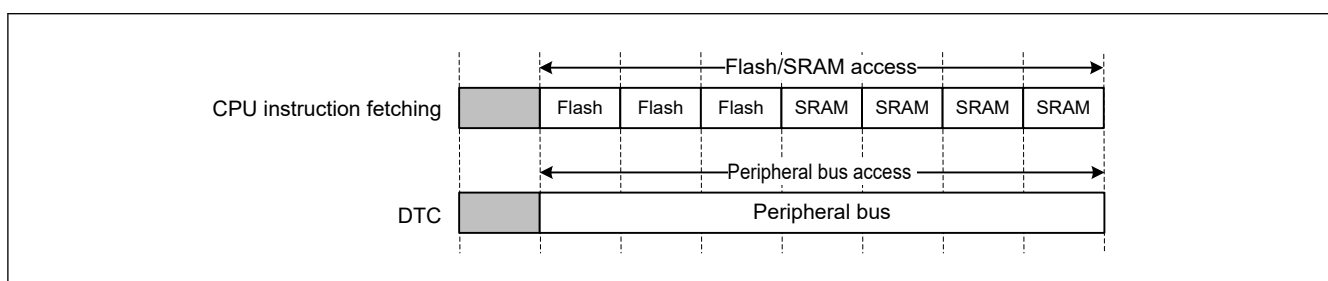
Bus access from the system bus and DMA bus is arbitrated and has the following fixed priority order:

DMA bus > system bus

Different master and slave transfer combinations can proceed simultaneously.

13.2.3 Parallel Operations

Parallel operations are possible when different bus masters request access to different slave modules. [Figure 13.2](#) shows an example of parallel operations. In this example, the CPU uses the instruction and operand buses for simultaneous access to the flash and SRAM, respectively. Additionally, the DTC simultaneously uses the DMA bus for access to a peripheral bus during access to the flash and SRAM by the CPU.

**Figure 13.2** Example of parallel operations

13.2.4 Restriction on Endianness

Memory space must be little-endian to execute code on the Cortex[®]-M23 core.

13.2.5 Restriction on Exclusive Access

The main bus does not support exclusive transfers and there is no global monitor in the MCU.

The main bus always deasserts the HEXOKAY signal (a signal in the AHB-Lite protocol) to the CPU. This means that a store exclusive instruction such as STREX instruction always gets a failed status. When an exclusive write operation is performed by the CPU, the main bus always writes the data successfully.

13.3 Register Descriptions

13.3.1 BUSMCNTx : Master Bus Control Register x (x = SYS, DMA)

Base address: BUS = 0x4000_3000

Offset address: 0x1008 (BUSMCNTSYS)
0x100C (BUSMCNTDMA)

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	IERES	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
14:0	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
15	IERES	Ignore Error Responses 0: A bus error is reported 1: A bus error is not reported	R/W

Note: Changing reserved bits from the initial value of 0 is prohibited. Operation during the change is not guaranteed.

IERES bit (Ignore Error Responses)

The IERES bit specifies the enable or disable of an error response of the AHB-Lite protocol.

Table 13.3 lists the registers associated with each bus type.

Table 13.3 Associations between bus types and registers

Bus type	Master Bus Control Register	Bus Error Address Register	Bus Error Status Register
System bus (CPU)	BUSMCNTSYS	BUS3ERRADD	BUS3ERRSTAT
DMA bus	BUSMCNTDMA	BUS4ERRADD	BUS4ERRSTAT

13.3.2 BUSnERRADD : Bus Error Address Register n (n = 3, 4)

Base address: BUS = 0x4000_3000

Offset address: 0x1820 (n = 3)
0x1830 (n = 4)

Bit position:	31	0
Bit field:	BERAD[31:0]	
Value after reset:	x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x	

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
31:0	BERAD[31:0]	Bus Error Address When a bus error occurs, these bits store the error address.	R

Note: BUSnERRADD is only cleared by resets other than MPU-related resets. For more information, see [section 5, Resets](#), and [section 14, Memory Protection Unit \(MPU\)](#).

Table 13.3 lists the registers associated with each bus type.

BERAD[31:0] bits (Bus Error Address)

The BERAD[31:0] bits store the accessed address when a bus error occurred. For more information, see the description of the ERRSTAT flag in [section 13.3.3. BUSnERRSTAT : BUS Error Status Register n \(n = 3, 4\)](#) and [section 13.4. Bus Error Monitoring Section](#).

The value of the BUSnERRADD.BERAD[31:0] bits (n = 3, 4) is valid only when the BUSnERRSTAT.ERRSTAT flag (n = 3, 4) is set to 1.

13.3.3 BUSnERRSTAT : BUS Error Status Register n (n = 3, 4)

Base address: BUS = 0x4000_3000

Offset address: 0x1824 (n = 3)
0x1834 (n = 4)

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	ERRSTAT	—	—	—	—	—	—	ACCSTAT
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	x

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	ACCSTAT	Error Access Status flag Access status when the error occurred. 0: Read access 1: Write access	R
6:1	—	These bits are read as 0.	R
7	ERRSTAT	Bus Error Status flag 0: No bus error occurred 1: Bus error occurred	R

Note: BUSnERRSTAT is only cleared by resets other than MPU-related resets. For more information, see [section 5, Resets](#), and [section 14, Memory Protection Unit \(MPU\)](#).

[Table 13.3](#) lists the registers associated with each bus type.

ACCSTAT flag (Error Access Status flag)

The ACCSTAT flag indicates the access status, write or read access, when a bus error occurs. For more information, see the description of the BUSnERRSTAT.ERRSTAT flag and [section 13.4. Bus Error Monitoring Section](#).

The value is valid only when the BUSnERRSTAT.ERRSTAT flag (n = 3, 4) is set to 1.

ERRSTAT flag (Bus Error Status flag)

The ERRSTAT flag indicates whether a bus error occurred. When a bus error occurs, the access address and status of write or read access are stored. The BUSnERRSTAT.ERRSTAT flag (n = 3, 4) is set to 1.

For more information on bus errors, see [section 13.4. Bus Error Monitoring Section](#) and [section 14, Memory Protection Unit \(MPU\)](#).

13.4 Bus Error Monitoring Section

The monitoring system monitors each individual area, and whenever it detects an error, it returns the error to the requesting master IP using the AHB-Lite error response protocol.

13.4.1 Error Type that Occurs by Bus

Three types of errors can occur on each bus:

- Illegal address access
- Bus master MPU error
- Bus slave MPU error

section 13.4.3. [Conditions for Issuing Illegal Address Access Errors](#) lists the address ranges where access leads to illegal address access errors. The reserved area in the slave does not trigger an illegal address access error.

For more information on bus master MPU and bus slave MPU, see [section 14, Memory Protection Unit \(MPU\)](#).

13.4.2 Operation When a Bus Error Occurs

When a bus error occurs, operation is not guaranteed and the error is returned to the requesting master IP. The bus error information occurred in each master is stored in the BUSnERRADD and BUSnERRSTAT registers. These registers must be cleared by reset only. For more information, see [section 13.3.2. BUSnERRADD : Bus Error Address Register n \(n = 3, 4\)](#) and [section 13.3.3. BUSnERRSTAT : BUS Error Status Register n \(n = 3, 4\)](#).

Note: DTC does not receive bus errors. If the DTC accesses the bus, the transfer continues.

13.4.3 Conditions for Issuing Illegal Address Access Errors

[Table 13.4](#) lists the address spaces for each bus that issue illegal address access errors.

Table 13.4 Conditions leading to illegal address access errors

Address	Slave bus name	Main buses	
		System bus(CPU)	DMA bus
0x0000_0000 to 0x01FF_FFFF	Memory bus 1	—	—
0x0200_0000 to 0x1FFF_FFFF	Reserved	E	E
0x2000_0000 to 0x2000_7FFF	Memory bus 4	—	—
0x2000_8000 to 0x3FFF_FFFF	Reserved	E	E
0x4000_0000 to 0x4001_8FFF	Internal peripheral bus 1	—	—
0x4001_9000 to 0x4001_9FFF	Memory bus 4	—	—
0x4001_A000 to 0x4001_FFFF	Internal peripheral bus 1	—	—
0x4002_0000 to 0x4003_FFFF	Reserved	E	E
0x4004_0000 to 0x400B_FFFF	Internal peripheral bus 3	—	—
0x400C_0000 to 0x400D_FFFF	Internal peripheral bus 7	—	—
0x400E_0000 to 0x400F_FFFF	Reserved	E	E
0x4010_0000 to 0x407F_FFFF	Internal peripheral bus 9	—	—
0x4080_0000 to 0xDFFF_FFFF	Reserved	E	E
0xE000_0000 to 0xFFFF_FFFF	System for Cortex®-M23	—	E

Note: E indicates the path where an illegal address access error occurs.

— indicates the path where an illegal address access error does not occur.

Note: The bus module detects an access error resulting from access to a reserved area, for example if no area is assigned for the slave.

0x0200_0000 to 0x1FFF_FFFF: Access error detection.

0x0000_0000 to 0x01FF_FFFF: Memory bus 1 no access error detection.

13.5 References

1. *ARM®v8-M Architecture Reference Manual* (ARM DDI0553B.a)
2. *ARM® Cortex®-M23 Processor User Guide* (ARM DUI0963B)
3. *ARM® AMBA® 5 AHB-Lite Protocol Specification* (ARM IHI0033B.b)

14. Memory Protection Unit (MPU)

14.1 Overview

The MCU has four Memory Protection Units (MPUs) and a CPU stack pointer monitor function are provided.

[Table 14.1](#) lists the MPU specifications, and [Table 14.2](#) shows the behavior on detection of each MPU error.

Table 14.1 MPU specifications

Classification	Module/Function	Specifications
Illegal memory access	Illegal address access	- Arm CPU has a default memory map. If the CPU makes an illegal address access, a Hard Fault occurs - The Arm MPU can change a default memory map.
	CPU stack pointer monitor	2 regions: - Main Stack Pointer (MSP) - Process Stack Pointer (PSP).
Memory protection	Arm MPU	Memory protection function for the CPU: 8 MPU regions with sub-regions and background region.
	Bus master MPU	Memory protection function for each bus master except for the CPU: Bus master MPU group A: 4 regions
	Bus slave MPU	Memory protection function for each bus slave
Security	Security MPU	Protect accesses from non-secure programs to the following secure regions: 2 regions (PC) 4 regions (code flash, SRAM, 2 secure functions).

Table 14.2 Behavior on MPU error detection

MPU type	Notice method	Bus access at error detection	Storing of error access information
CPU stack pointer monitor	Reset or non-maskable interrupt	Don't care	Not stored
Arm MPU	Hard fault	- Does not correctly have write access - Does not correctly have read access.	Not stored
Bus master MPU	Reset or non-maskable interrupt	- Write access to the protection region - Read access to the protection region.	Stored
Bus slave MPU	Reset or non-maskable interrupt	- Write access ignored - Read access is read as 0.	Stored
Security MPU	Not notified	- Does not correctly have write access - Does not correctly have read access.	Not stored

For information on error access for the Arm MPU, see [section 14.8. References](#). For information on error access for other MPUs, see [section 13.3. Register Descriptions](#) and [section 13.4. Bus Error Monitoring Section](#) in [section 13, Buses](#).

14.2 CPU Stack Pointer Monitor

The CPU stack pointer monitor detects underflows and overflows of the stack pointer. Because the Arm CPU has two stack pointers, a Main Stack Pointer (MSP) and a Process Stack Pointer (PSP), it supports two CPU stack pointer monitors. If a stack pointer underflow or overflow is detected, the CPU stack pointer monitor generates a reset or a non-maskable interrupt. The CPU stack pointer monitor is enabled by setting the Stack Pointer Monitor Enable bits in the Stack Pointer Monitor Access Control Register (MSPMPUCTL, PSPMPUCTL) to 1.

[Table 14.3](#) lists the specifications of the CPU stack pointer monitor. [Figure 14.1](#) shows a CPU stack pointer monitor block diagram and [Figure 14.2](#) shows the CPU stack pointer monitor register setting flow.

Table 14.3 CPU stack pointer monitor specifications (1 of 2)

Parameter	Description
Region to be monitored	SRAM region

Table 14.3 CPU stack pointer monitor specifications (2 of 2)

Parameter	Description
Number of regions	2 regions: • Main Stack Pointer (MSP) • Process Stack Pointer (PSP).
Address specification for individual regions	Specifying start and end addresses for individual regions
Stack pointer monitor enable or disable setting for individual regions	Enabling or disabling stack pointer monitor for individual regions
Operation on error detection	Reset or non-maskable interrupts
Register protection	Prevents illegal writing to the CPU stack pointer monitor register

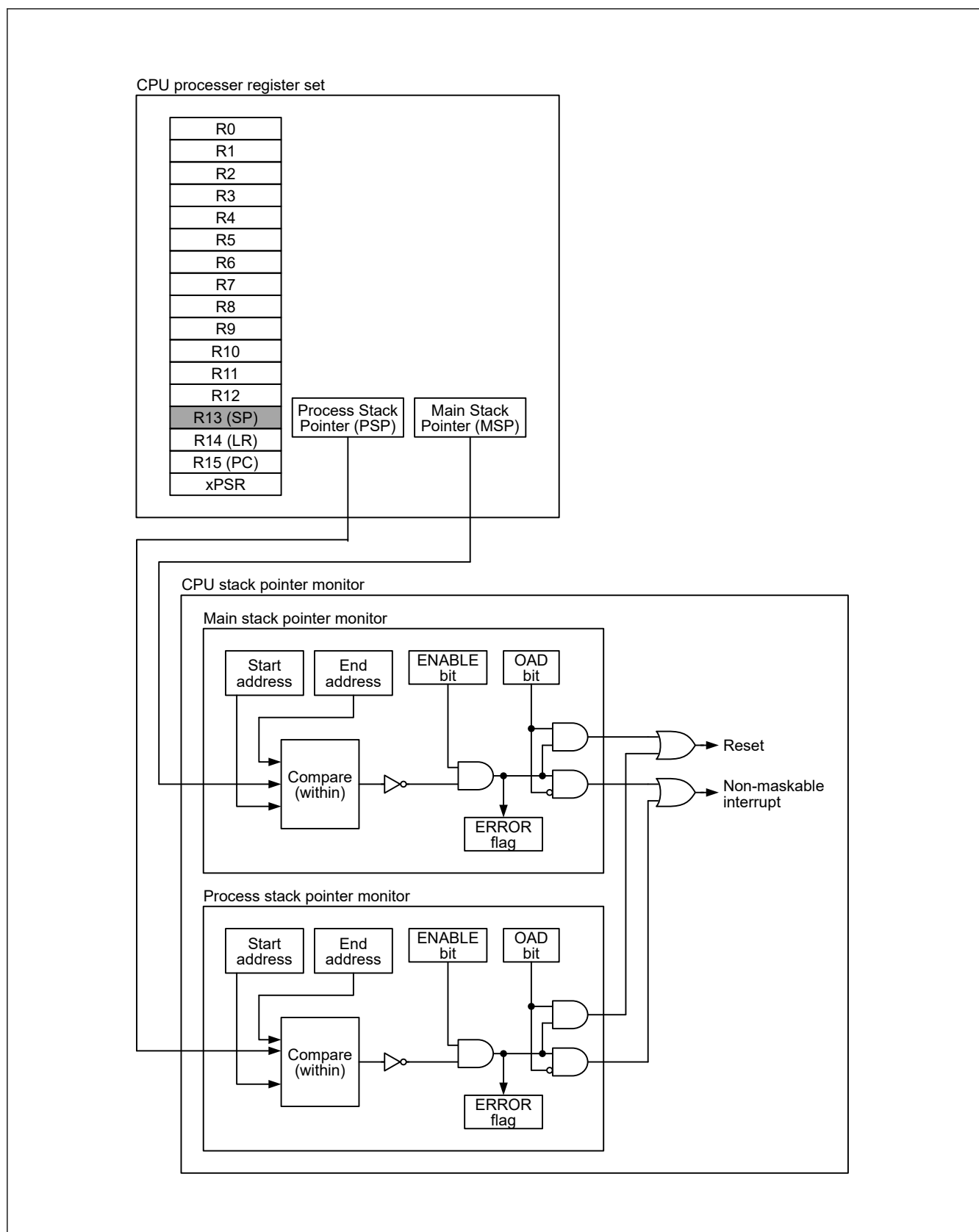


Figure 14.1 CPU stack pointer monitor block diagram

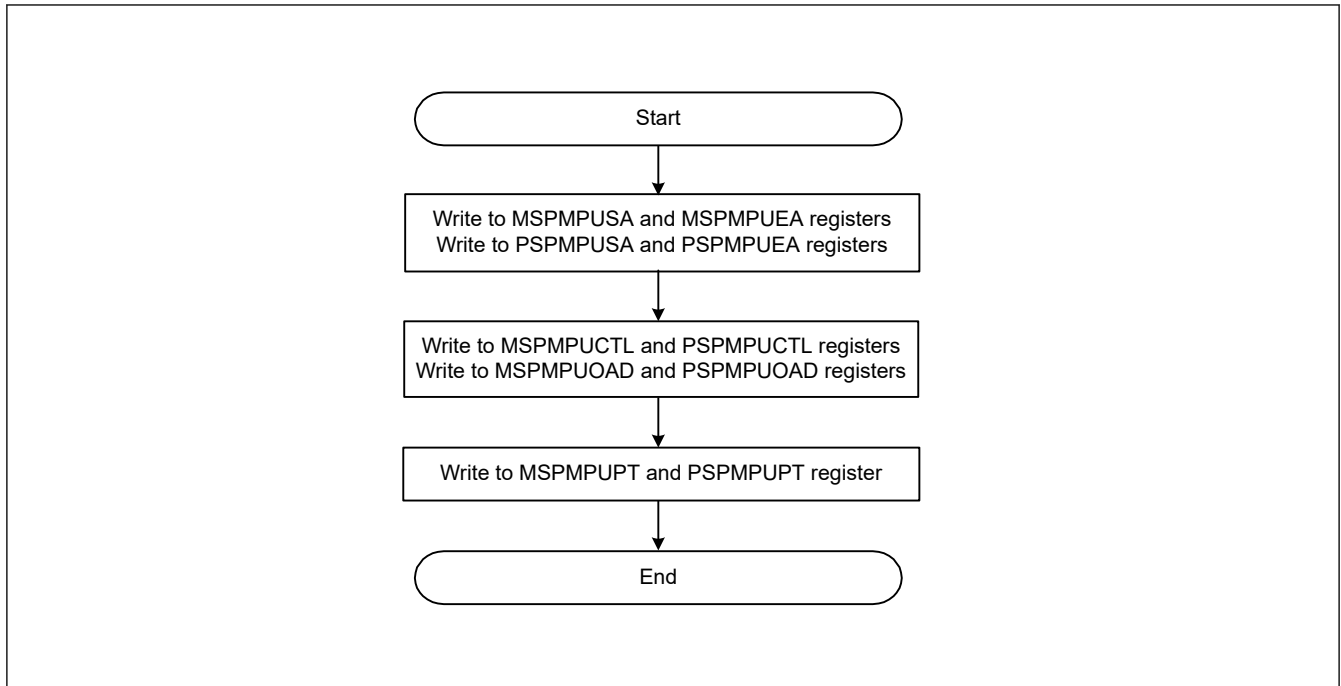


Figure 14.2 CPU stack pointer monitor register setting flow

14.2.1 Protecting the Registers

Registers related to the CPU stack pointer monitor can be protected with the associated PROTECT bit. For details, see [section 14.2.3.7. MSPMPUPT, PSPMPUPT : Stack Pointer Monitor Protection Register](#).

14.2.2 Overflow and Underflow Errors

The CPU stack pointer monitor generates an error if an overflow or underflow error is detected. Set the OAD bit to select whether the error is reported as a non-maskable interrupt or reset.

The non-maskable interrupt status is indicated in ICU.NMISR.SPEST. For details, see [section 12, Interrupt Controller Unit \(ICU\)](#). The reset status is indicated in SYSTEM.RSTSR1.SPERF. For details, see [section 5, Resets](#).

When ICU.NMISR.SPEST indicates that a CPU stack pointer monitor interrupt occurred, check the ERROR flags in MSPMPUCTL and PSPMPUCTL registers to determine whether it is a main stack pointer monitor error or a process stack pointer monitor error.

A non-maskable interrupt is generated continuously while the stack pointer overflows or underflows. To clear the error, set the stack pointer within the specified region and then clear the non-maskable interrupt flag by setting the ICU.NMICLR.SPECLR bit to 1. Write 0 to clear the ERROR flags in the MSPMPUCTL and PSPMPUCTL registers.

14.2.3 Register Descriptions

Note: Bus access must be stopped before writing to MPU registers.

14.2.3.1 MSPMPUSA : Main Stack Pointer (MSP) Monitor Start Address Register

Base address: RMPU = 0x4000 0000

Offset address: 0xD08

Bit position: 31

0

Bit field:

MSPMPUSA[31:0]

Value after reset: x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
31:0	MSPMPUSA[31:0]	Region Start Address Address where the region starts, for use in region determination. The lower 2 bits should be 0. The value range is from 0x1FF0_0000 to 0x200F_FFFC, excluding reserved areas.	R/W

The MSPMPUSA and MSPMPUEA registers specify the CPU stack region of SRAM (0x1FF0_0000 to 0x200F_FFFF, excluding reserved areas). For SRAM area to be covered, see [section 4.1. Address Space](#).

14.2.3.2 MSPMPUEA : Main Stack Pointer (MSP) Monitor End Address Register

Base address: RMPU = 0x4000_0000

Offset address: 0xD0C

Bit position: 31

0

Bit field:

MSPMPUEA[31:0]

Value after reset: x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
31:0	MSPMPUEA[31:0]	Region End Address Address where the region ends, for use in region determination. The lower 2 bits should be 1. The value range is from 0x1FF0_0003 to 0x200F_FFFF, excluding reserved areas. For SRAM area to be covered, see section 4.1. Address Space .	R/W

14.2.3.3 PSPMPUSA : Process Stack Pointer (PSP) Monitor Start Address Register

Base address: RMPU = 0x4000_0000

Offset address: 0xD18

Bit position: 31

0

Bit field:

PSPMPUSA[31:0]

Value after reset: x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
31:0	PSPMPUSA[31:0]	Region Start Address Address where the region starts, for use in region determination. The lower 2 bits should be 0. The value range is from 0x1FF0_0000 to 0x200F_FFFC, excluding reserved areas.	R/W

The PSPMPUSA and PSPMPUEA registers specify the CPU stack region of SRAM (0x1FF0_0000 to 0x200F_FFFF, excluding reserved areas). For SRAM area to be covered, see [section 4.1. Address Space](#).

14.2.3.4 PSPMPUEA : Process Stack Pointer (PSP) Monitor End Address Register

Base address: RMPU = 0x4000_0000

Offset address: 0xD1C

Bit position: 31

0

Bit field:

PSPMPUEA[31:0]

Value after reset: x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
31:0	PSPMPUEA[31:0]	Region End Address Address where the region ends, for use in region determination. The lower 2 bits should be 1. The value range is from 0x1FF0_0003 to 0x200F_FFFF, excluding reserved areas. For SRAM area to be covered, see section 4.1. Address Space .	R/W

14.2.3.5 MSPMPUOAD, PSPMPUOAD : Stack Pointer Monitor Operation After Detection Register

Base address: RMPU = 0x4000_0000

Offset address: 0xD00 (MSPMPUOAD)
0xD10 (PSPMPUOAD)

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	KEY[7:0]							—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	OAD
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	OAD	Operation after Detection 0: Non-maskable interrupt 1: Reset	R/W
7:1	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
15:8	KEY[7:0]	Key Code These bits enable or disable writes to the OAD bit	R/W ^{*1}

Note 1. Write data is not retained.

OAD bit (Operation after Detection)

The OAD bit selects either a reset or a non-maskable interrupt when a stack pointer underflow or overflow is detected by the CPU stack pointer monitor.

The main and the process stack pointer monitors each uses an OAD bit to determine which signal is generated when a stack pointer underflow or overflow is detected. Write 0xA5 in KEY[7:0] bits in halfword access simultaneously when setting the OAD bit.

KEY[7:0] bits (Key Code)

The KEY[7:0] bits enable or disable writes to the OAD bit. When writing to the OAD bit, simultaneously write 0xA5 to KEY[7:0] bits. When values other than 0xA5 are written to the KEY[7:0] bits, the OAD bit is not updated. The KEY[7:0] bits are always read as 0x00.

14.2.3.6 MSPMPUCTL, PSPMPUCTL : Stack Pointer Monitor Access Control Register

Base address: RMPU = 0x4000_0000

Offset address: 0xD04 (MSPMPUCTL)
0xD14 (PSPMPUCTL)

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	ERROR	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	ENABLE
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0/1 ^{*1}	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	ENABLE	Stack Pointer Monitor Enable 0: Stack pointer monitor is disabled 1: Stack pointer monitor is enabled	R/W
7:1	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
8	ERROR	Stack Pointer Monitor Error Flag 0: Stack pointer has not overflowed or underflowed 1: Stack pointer has overflowed or underflowed	R/W
15:9	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note 1. The initial value depends on the reset generation sources.

ENABLE bit (Stack Pointer Monitor Enable)

The ENABLE bit enables or disables the stack pointer monitor function, independently set for the main stack pointer monitor and the process stack pointer monitor.

When the MSPMPUCTL.ENABLE bit is set to 1, the following registers are available:

- MSPMPUSA
- MSPMPUEA
- MSPMPUOAD.

When the PSPMPUCTL.ENABLE bit is set to 1, the following registers are available:

- PSPMPUSA
- PSPMPUEA
- PSPMPUOAD.

ERROR flag (Stack Pointer Monitor Error Flag)

The ERROR flag indicates the status of the stack pointer monitor. Each stack pointer monitor has an independent ERROR flag.

[Setting condition]

- Overflow or underflow of the stack pointer.

[Clearing conditions]

- 0 is written to this flag
- A reset other than the bus master MPU error reset, bus slave MPU error reset, and stack pointer error reset. (For the details of reset factors, see [section 5, Resets.](#))

Note: Only 0 can be written to the ERROR flag.

14.2.3.7 MSPMPUPT, PSPMPUPT : Stack Pointer Monitor Protection Register

Base address: RMPU = 0x4000_0000

Offset address: 0xD06 (MSPMPUPT)
0xD16 (PSPMPUPT)

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	KEY[7:0]								—	—	—	—	—	—	—	PROTECT
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	PROTECT	Protection of Register 0: Stack pointer monitor register writes are permitted 1: Stack pointer monitor register writes are protected. Reads are permitted.	R/W
7:1	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
15:8	KEY[7:0]	Key Code These bits enable or disable writes to the PROTECT bit	R/W ¹

Note 1. Write data is not retained.

PROTECT bit (Protection of Register)

The PROTECT bit enables or disables writes to the associated registers to be protected, independently set for the main stack pointer monitor and the process stack pointer monitor.

MSPMPUPT.PROTECT controls the following main stack pointer protection registers:

- MSPMPUCTL
- MSPMPUSA
- MSPMPUEA.

PSPMPUPT.PROTECT controls the following process stack pointer protection registers:

- PSPMPUCTL
- PSPMPUSA
- PSPMPUEA.

When writing to the PROTECT bit, simultaneously write 0xA5 to the KEY[7:0] bits, using halfword access.

KEY[7:0] bits (Key Code)

The KEY[7:0] bits enable or disable writes to the PROTECT bit simultaneously. When writing to the PROTECT bit, write 0xA5 to KEY[7:0] bits. When values other than 0xA5 are written to the KEY[7:0] bits, the PROTECT bit is not updated. The KEY[7:0] bits are always read as 0.

14.3 Arm MPU

The Arm MPU monitors the addresses accessed by the CPU across the entire address space (0x0000_0000 to 0xFFFF_FFFF) and provides support for:

- 8 protected regions
- Setting access permissions to protected region (Read, Write, Execution)
- Export of memory attributes to the system.

Arm MPU mismatches and permission violations invoke the programmable-priority MemManage fault (Hard Fault) handler. For details, see [section 14.8. References](#).

14.4 Bus Master MPU

The bus master MPU monitors the addresses accessed by the bus masters in the entire address space (0x0000_0000 to 0xFFFF_FFFF). The access control information, consisting of read and write permissions, can be independently set for up to 4 regions. The bus master MPU monitors access to each region based on these settings.

If access to a protected region is detected, the bus master MPU generates an internal reset or a non-maskable interrupt. For information on error access, see [section 13.3. Register Descriptions](#) and [section 13.4. Bus Error Monitoring Section](#) in [section 13, Buses](#).

The access control information for each area consists of protected/not-protected to read or write.

[Table 14.4](#) lists the specifications of the bus master MPU, and [Figure 14.3](#) shows a block diagram.

Table 14.4 Bus master MPU specifications (1 of 2)

Parameter	Description
Protected master groups	• Bus master MPU group A: DMA bus
Protected regions	0x0000_0000 to 0xFFFF_FFFF
Number of regions	• Bus master MPU group A: 4 regions
Address specification for individual regions	• Specifying start and end address for individual regions
Enable or disable setting for memory protection in individual regions	• Enabling or disabling setting for the associated region
Access-control settings for individual regions	• Permission for read and write

Table 14.4 Bus master MPU specifications (2 of 2)

Parameter	Description
Operation on error detection	Reset or non-maskable interrupts
Register protection	Protecting registers from illegal writes

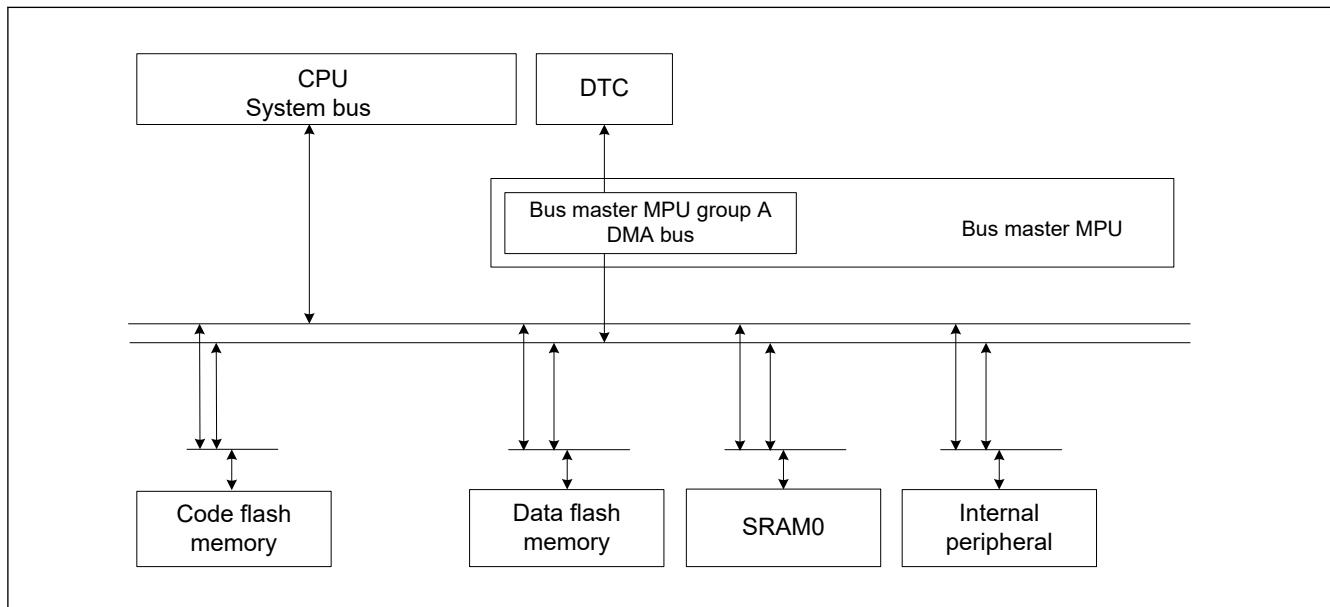
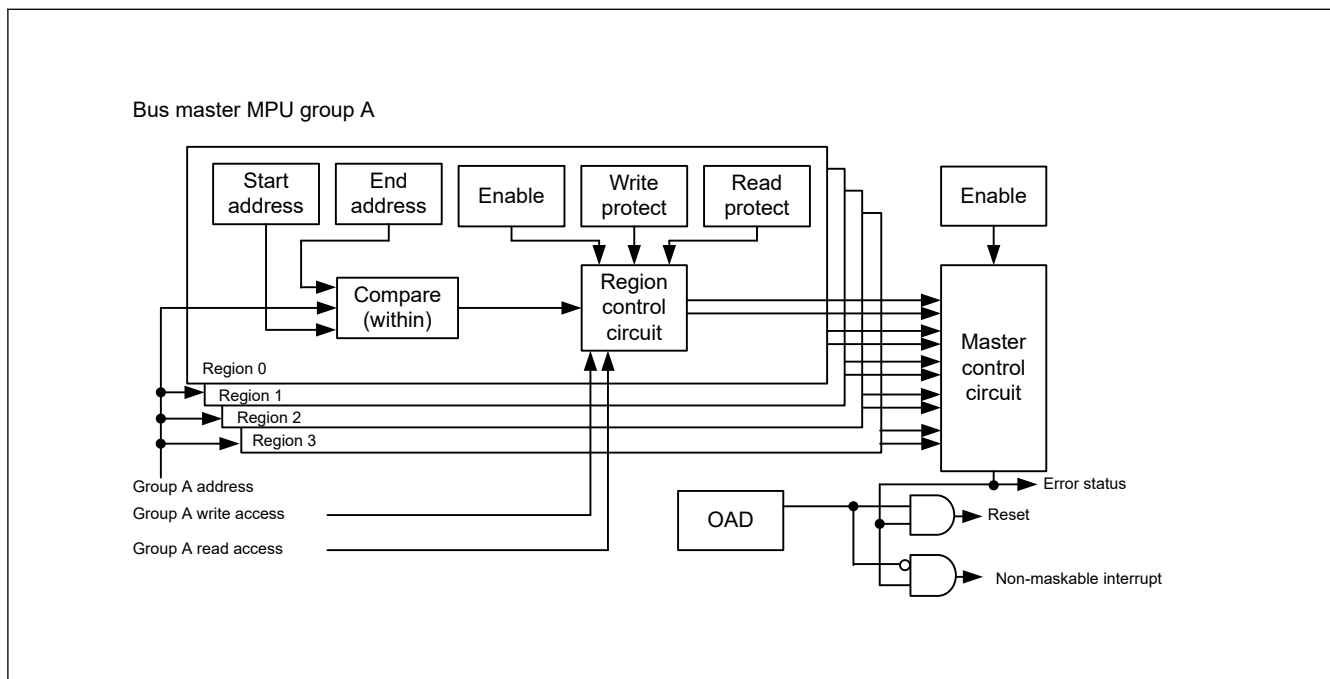
**Figure 14.3 MPU bus master block diagram**

Figure 14.4 shows the MPU bus master MPU group A.

**Figure 14.4 MPU bus master MPU group A**

14.4.1 Register Descriptions

Note: Bus access must be stopped before writing to MPU registers.

When the ENABLE bit is set to 1, the RP bit and the WP bit can be set to permit or protect access to the region that is set in MMPUSAn and MMPUEAn. When the ENABLE bit is set to 0, no region is specified for group A region n access.

RP bit (Read Protection)

The RP bit enables or disables read protection for group A region n. The RP bit is available when the ENABLE bit is set to 1.

WP bit (Write Protection)

The WP bit enables or disables write protection for group A region n. The WP bit is available when the ENABLE bit is set to 1.

Table 14.5 Function of region control circuit

MMPUACAn.ENABLE	MMPUACAn.RP	MMPUACAn.WP	Access	Region	Output of group A region n
0	—	—	Read	—	Outside of region
			Write		Outside of region
1	0	0	Read	Inside	Permitted region
				Outside	Outside of region
			Write	Inside	Permitted region
				Outside	Outside of region
	0	1	Read	Inside	Permitted region
				Outside	Outside of region
			Write	Inside	Protected region
				Outside	Outside of region
	1	0	Read	Inside	Protected region
				Outside	Outside of region
			Write	Inside	Permitted region
				Outside	Outside of region
	1	1	Read	Inside	Protected region
				Outside	Outside of region
			Write	Inside	Protected region
				Outside	Outside of region

Note: n = 0 to 3

Table 14.6 Function of master control circuit

MMPUCTLA.ENABLE	Output of group A region 0 unit	Output of group A region 1 unit	Output of group A region 2 to 3 unit	Function of group A
1	Protected region	Don't care	Don't care	Generate error
1	Don't care	Protected region	Don't care	Generate error
1	Don't care	Don't care	Protected region	Generate error
1	Outside of region	Outside of region	Outside of region	Generate error
Other case				No error

A master MPU error occurs on the following conditions:

- MMPUCTLA.ENABLE = 1, and output of one or more region n units is to a protected region
- MMPUCTLA.ENABLE = 1, and output of all region n units is outside of region.

Other cases are handled as permitted regions.

14.4.1.4 MMPUCTLA : Bus Master MPU Control Register

Base address: RMPU = 0x4000_0000

Offset address: 0x000

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	KEY[7:0]								—	—	—	—	—	—	OAD	ENAB LE
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	ENABLE	Master Group Enable 0: Master group A disabled 1: Master group A enabled	R/W
1	OAD	Operation After Detection 0: Non-maskable interrupt 1: Reset	R/W
7:2	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
15:8	KEY[7:0]	Key Code These bits enable or disable writes to the OAD and ENABLE bits	R/W ^{*1}

Note 1. Write data is not retained.

ENABLE bit (Master Group Enable)

The ENABLE bit enables or disables the bus master MPU function of master group A.

When this bit is set to 1, MMPUACAn is available. When this bit is set to 0, MMPUACAn is unavailable, including permission for all regions. When writing to the ENABLE bit simultaneously, write 0xA5 to the KEY[7:0] bits using halfword access.

OAD bit (Operation After Detection)

The OAD bit generates either a reset or non-maskable interrupt when access to the protected region is detected by the bus master MPU. When writing to the OAD bit simultaneously, write 0xA5 to the KEY[7:0] bits using halfword access.

KEY[7:0] bits (Key Code)

The KEY[7:0] bits enable or disable writes to the ENABLE and OAD bits. When writing to the ENABLE and OAD bits simultaneously, write 0xA5 to the KEY[7:0] bits. When other values are written to the KEY[7:0] bits, the ENABLE and the OAD bits are not updated. The KEY[7:0] bits are always read as 0x00.

14.4.1.5 MMPUPTA : Group A Protection of Register

Base address: RMPU = 0x4000_0000

Offset address: 0x102

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	KEY[7:0]								—	—	—	—	—	—	—	PROT ECT
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	PROTECT	Protection of Register 0: All bus master MPU group A register writes are permitted 1: All bus master MPU group A register writes are protected. Reads are permitted.	R/W
7:1	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
15:8	KEY[7:0]	Key Code These bits enable or disable writes to the PROTECT bit	R/W ^{*1}

Note 1. Write data is not retained.

PROTECT bit (Protection of Register)

The PROTECT bit enables or disables writes to the associated registers to be protected.

MMPUPTA.PROTECT controls the bus master MPU group A protection registers. The following registers are protected by MMPUPTA.PROTECT:

- MMPUSAn
- MMPUEAn
- MMPUACAn
- MMPUCTLA.

When the PROTECT bit is set simultaneously, write 0xA5 to the KEY[7:0] bits using halfword access.

KEY[7:0] bits (Key Code)

The KEY[7:0] bits enable or disable writes to the PROTECT bit. When writing to the PROTECT bit simultaneously, write 0xA5 to the KEY[7:0] bits. When other values are written to the KEY[7:0] bits, the PROTECT bit is not updated. The KEY[7:0] bits are always read as 0x00.

14.4.2 Operation

14.4.2.1 Memory Protection

The bus master MPU monitors memory access using control settings made individually for the access control regions. If access to a protected region is detected, the bus master MPU generates a memory protection error.

The bus master MPU can be set for up to 4 protected regions. Protected regions include those with overlapping permitted and protected regions, and those with two overlapping permitted regions.

The bus master MPU has group A. The memory protection function checks the address of the bus for the master group and all master group accesses are protected. The bus master MPU sets the permission for all the regions after reset. Setting MMPUCTLA.ENABLE to 1 protects all the regions. Each region sets up a permitted region within the protected region. If access to the protected region is detected, the bus master MPU generates an error.

Figure 14.5 shows the use case of a bus master MPU.

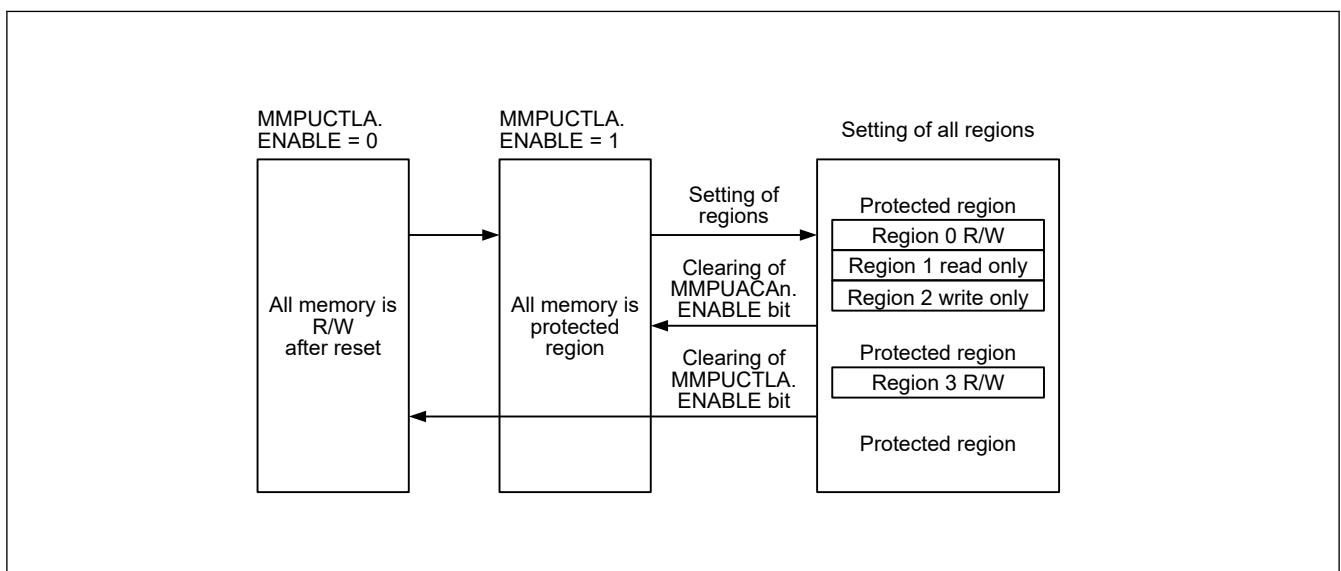


Figure 14.5 Use case of bus master MPU

Figure 14.6 shows the access permission or protection by the overlapping bus master MPU regions.

Access control for the overlapping regions is as follows:

- The region is handled as a protected region when output of one or more region units is a protected region
- The region is handled as a protected region when output of all region units is outside the regions

- Other cases are handled as permitted regions.

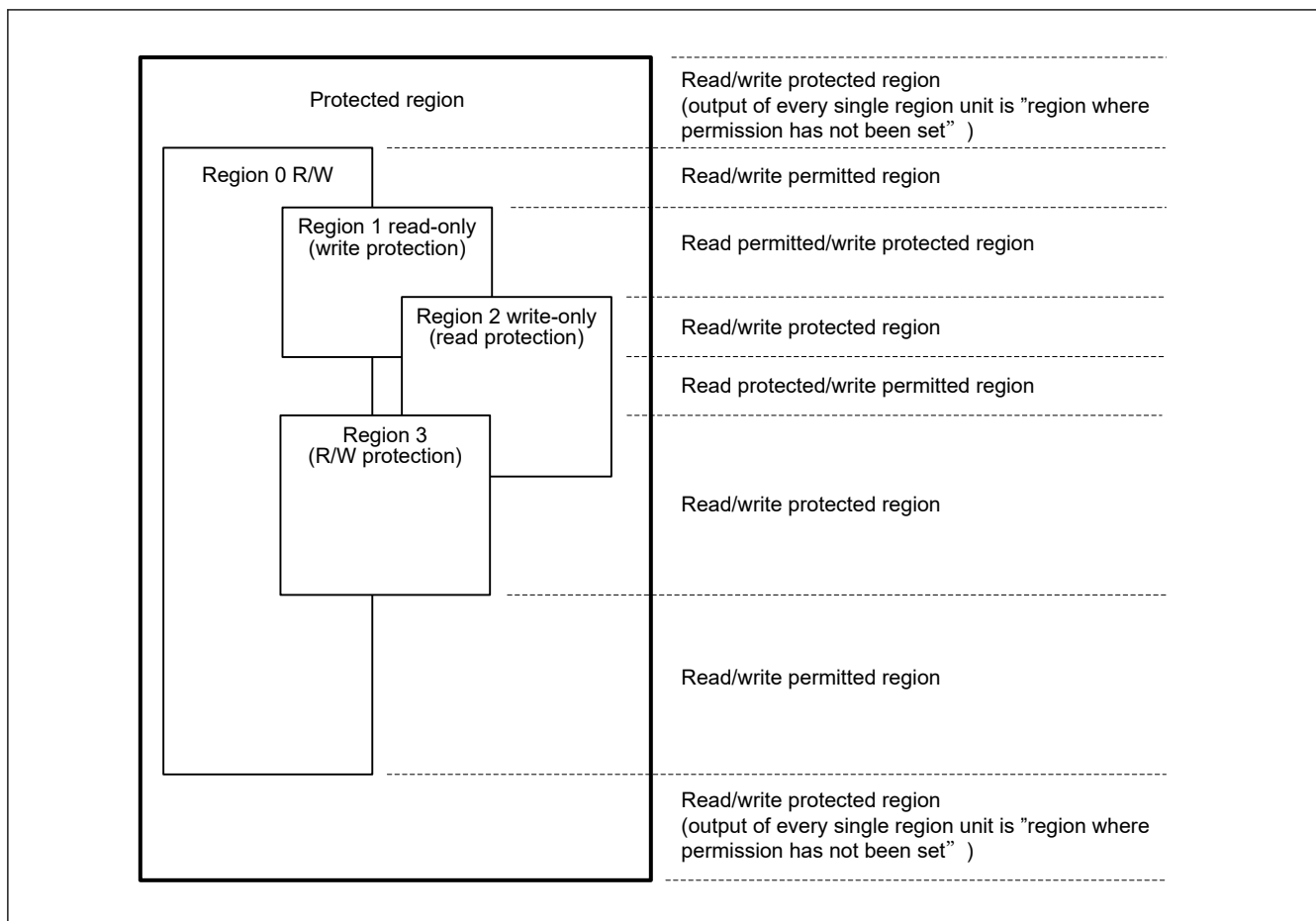


Figure 14.6 Access permission or protection by overlap of the bus master MPU regions

Figure 14.7 shows the register setting flow after reset. During this register setting, stop all bus masters except the CPU.

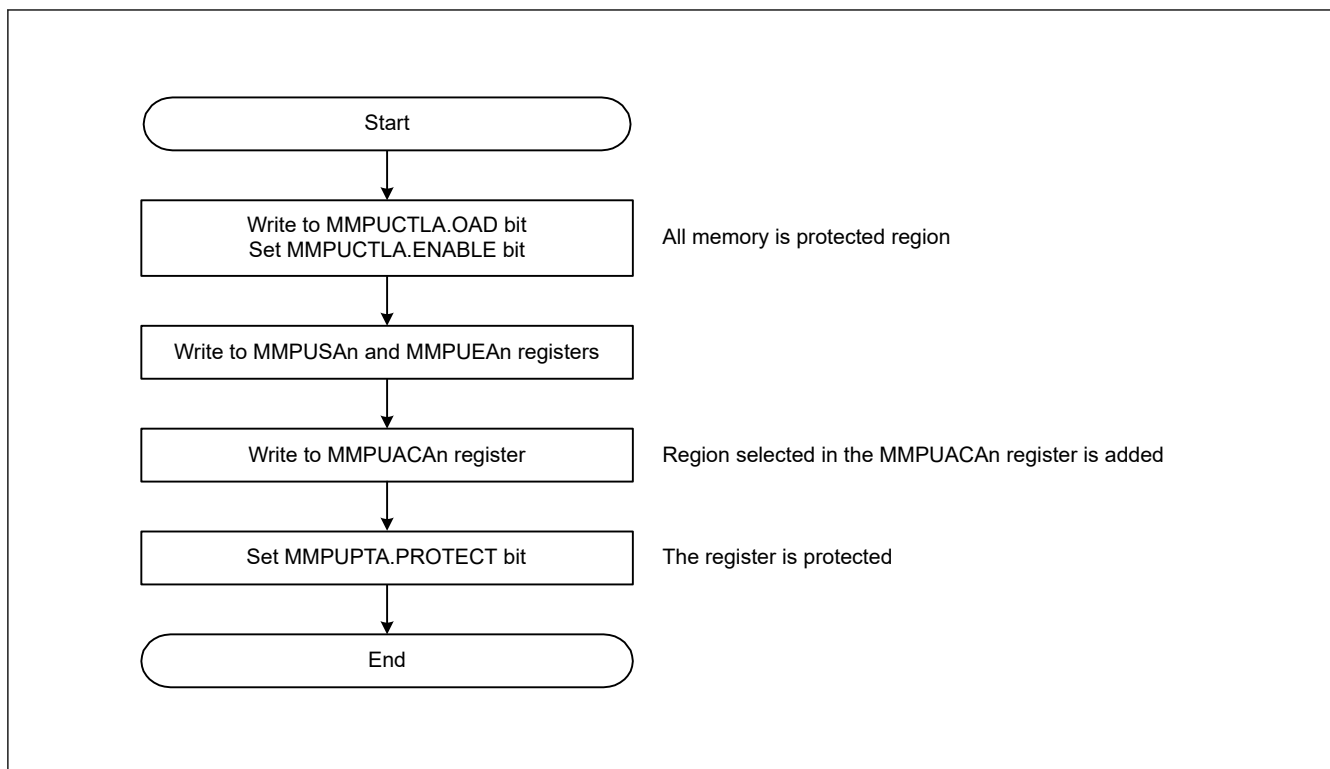


Figure 14.7 Register setting flow of bus master MPU after reset

Figure 14.8 shows the register setting flow for adding regions. During this register setting, stop all masters except the CPU.

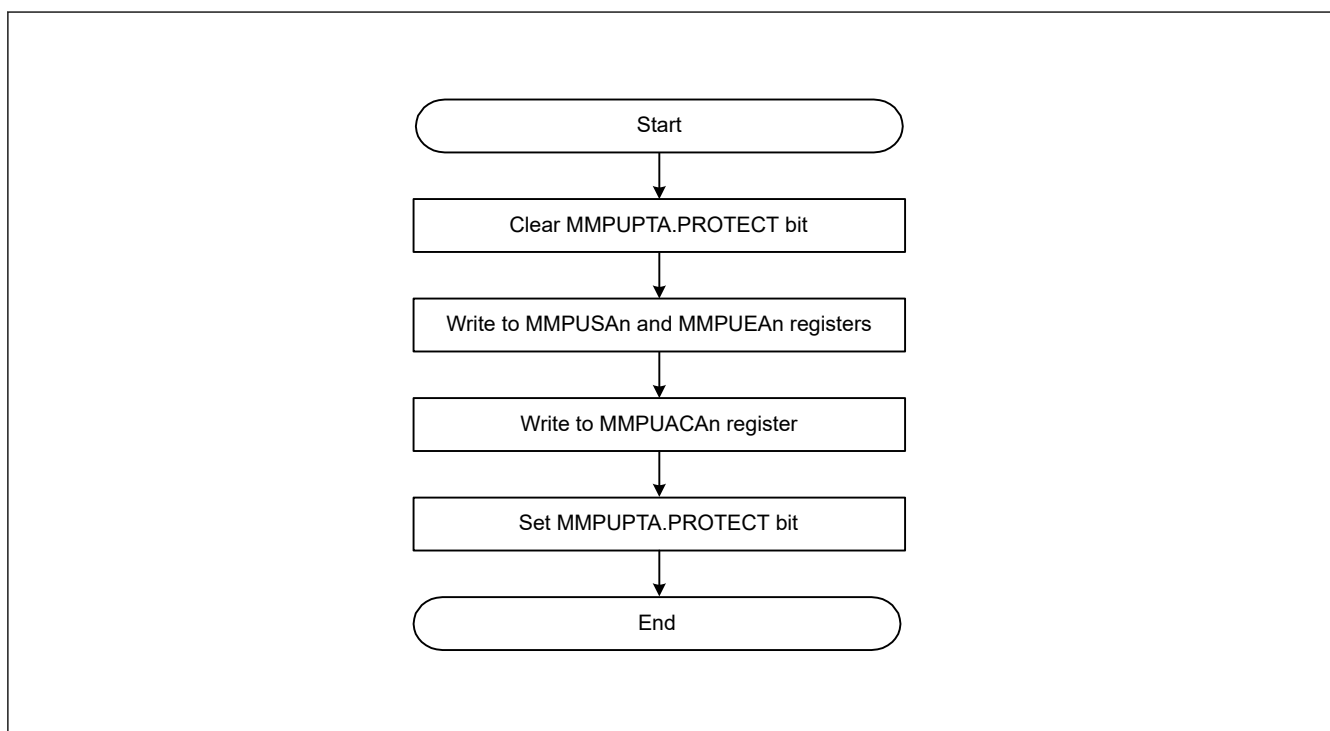


Figure 14.8 Register setting flow for region addition

14.4.2.2 Protecting the Registers

To protect the registers related to the bus master MPU, set the PROTECT bit in the MMPUPTA register.

14.4.2.3 Memory Protection Error

If access to a protected region is detected, the bus master MPU generates an error. Set the OAD bit to select whether the error is reported as a non-maskable interrupt or a reset.

The non-maskable interrupt status is indicated in ICU.NMISR.BUSMST. For details, see [section 12, Interrupt Controller Unit \(ICU\)](#). The reset status is indicated in SYSTEM.RSTSR1.BUSMRF. For details, see [section 5, Resets](#).

14.5 Bus Slave MPU

The bus slave MPU monitors access to the bus slave functions, such as flash memory or SRAM. The bus slave function can be accessed from two bus masters, the CPU, and the bus master MPU group A. The bus slave MPU has a separate protection register for each of the two bus masters, with individual access protection control. If access to a protected region is detected, the bus slave MPU generates a reset or a non-maskable interrupt, and store the bus error status, error access status, and bus error address in the I/O Registers. For details, see [section 13.3. Register Descriptions](#) and [section 13.4. Bus Error Monitoring Section](#) in [section 13, Buses](#). The supported access control information for the individual regions consists of permission to read and write.

[Table 14.7](#) lists the specifications of the bus slave MPU and [Figure 14.9](#) shows a Bus slave MPU block diagram.

Table 14.7 Specifications of bus slave MPU

Specifications	Description
Protected bus master	Bus master MPU group A: DMA bus and System bus (CPU)
Protected bus slave function	Memory bus 1: Code flash memory Memory bus 4: SRAM0 Internal peripheral bus 1: Connected to peripheral modules related system control Internal peripheral bus 3: Connected to peripheral modules (CAC, ELC, I/O Ports, POEG, RTC, WDT, IWD, I3C, ADC12, DOC, GPT, SCI, SPI, CRC, KINT, AGTW, CAN, SSIE, UARTA, USBFS, USBCC, and MSTP) Internal peripheral bus 7: Connected to peripheral modules (TRNG) Internal peripheral bus 9: Connected to flash memory (in P/E), data flash and TSN.
Access-control information settings for individual regions	Permission to read and write
Operation on error detection	Reset or non-maskable interrupt
Protection of register	Register can be protected from illegal writes

The bus slave MPU is located on each bus slave side and controls the permission or protection of access from each bus master to each bus slave.

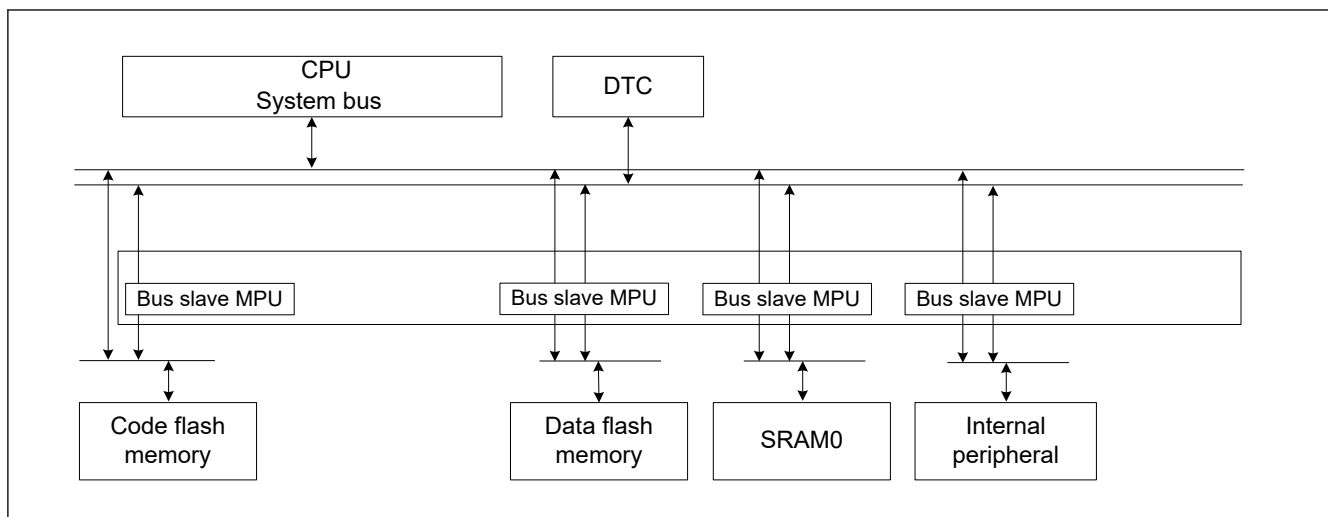


Figure 14.9 Bus slave MPU block diagram

14.5.1 Register Descriptions

Note: Bus access must be stopped before writing to MPU registers.

14.5.1.1 SMPUMBIU : Access Control Register for Memory Bus 1

Base address: RMPU = 0x4000_0000

Offset address: 0xC10

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	WPGR PA	RPGR PA	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
1:0	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
2	RPGRPA	Master MPU Group A Read Protection 0: Memory protection read for master MPU group A disabled 1: Memory protection read for master MPU group A enabled	R/W
3	WPGRPA	Master MPU Group A Write Protection 0: Memory protection write for master MPU group A disabled 1: Memory protection write for master MPU group A enabled	R/W
15:4	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

RPGRPA bit (Master MPU Group A Read Protection)

The RPGRPA bit enables or disables memory protection for master MPU group A reads on memory bus 1.

WPGRPA bit (Master MPU Group A Write Protection)

The WPGRPA bit enables or disables memory protection for master MPU group A writes on memory bus 1.

14.5.1.2 SMPUSRAM0 : Access Control Register for Memory Bus 4

Base address: RMPU = 0x4000_0000

Offset address: 0xC18

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	WPGR PA	RPGR PA	WPCP U	RPCP U
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	RPCPU	CPU Read Protection 0: Memory protection for CPU read disabled 1: Memory protection for CPU read enabled	R/W
1	WPCPU	CPU Write Protection 0: Memory protection for CPU write disabled 1: Memory protection for CPU write enabled	R/W
2	RPGRPA	Master MPU Group A Read Protection 0: Memory protection for master MPU group A read disabled 1: Memory protection for master MPU group A read enabled	R/W
3	WPGRPA	Master MPU Group A Write Protection 0: Memory protection for master MPU group A write disabled 1: Memory protection for master MPU group A write enabled	R/W
15:4	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

RPCPU bit (CPU Read Protection)

The RPCPU bit enables or disables memory protection for CPU reads on memory bus 4.

WPCPU bit (CPU Write Protection)

The WPCPU bit enables or disables memory protection for CPU writes on memory bus 4.

RPGRPA bit (Master MPU Group A Read Protection)

The RPGRPA bit enables or disables memory protection for master MPU group A reads on memory bus 4.

WPGRPA bit (Master MPU Group A Write Protection)

The WPGRPA bit enables or disables memory protection for master MPU group A writes on memory bus 4.

14.5.1.3 SMPUP0BIU : Access Control Register for Internal Peripheral Bus 1

Base address: RMPU = 0x4000_0000

Offset address: 0xC20

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	WPGR PA	RPGR PA	WPCP U	RPCP U
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	RPCPU	CPU Read Protection 0: Memory protection for CPU read disabled 1: Memory protection for CPU read enabled	R/W
1	WPCPU	CPU Write Protection 0: Memory protection for CPU write disabled 1: Memory protection for CPU write enabled	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
2	RPGRPA	Master MPU Group A Read Protection 0: Memory protection for master MPU group A read disabled 1: Memory protection for master MPU group A read enabled	R/W
3	WPGRPA	Master MPU Group A Write Protection 0: Memory protection for master MPU group A write disabled 1: Memory protection for master MPU group A write enabled	R/W
15:4	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

RPCPU bit (CPU Read Protection)

The RPCPU bit enables or disables memory protection for CPU reads on internal peripheral bus 1.

WPCPU bit (CPU Write Protection)

The WPCPU bit enables or disables memory protection for CPU writes on internal peripheral bus 1.

RPGRPA bit (Master MPU Group A Read Protection)

The RPGRPA bit enables or disables memory protection for master MPU group A reads on internal peripheral bus 1.

WPGRPA bit (Master MPU Group A Write Protection)

The WPGRPA bit enables or disables memory protection for master MPU group A writes on internal peripheral bus 1.

14.5.1.4 SMPUP2BIU : Access Control Register for Internal Peripheral Bus 3

Base address: RMPU = 0x4000_0000

Offset address: 0xC24

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	WPGR PA	RPGR PA	WPCP U	RPCP U
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	RPCPU	CPU Read Protection 0: Memory protection for CPU read disabled 1: Memory protection for CPU read enabled	R/W
1	WPCPU	CPU Write Protection 0: Memory protection for CPU write disabled 1: Memory protection for CPU write enabled	R/W
2	RPGRPA	Master MPU Group A Read Protection 0: Memory protection for master MPU group A read disabled 1: Memory protection for master MPU group A read enabled	R/W
3	WPGRPA	Master MPU Group A Write Protection 0: Memory protection for master MPU group A write disabled 1: Memory protection for master MPU group A write enabled	R/W
15:4	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

RPCPU bit (CPU Read Protection)

The RPCPU bit enables or disables memory protection for CPU reads on internal peripheral bus 3.

WPCPU bit (CPU Write Protection)

The WPCPU bit enables or disables memory protection for CPU writes on internal peripheral bus 3.

RPGRPA bit (Master MPU Group A Read Protection)

The RPGRPA bit enables or disables memory protection for master MPU group A reads on internal peripheral bus 3.

WPGRPA bit (Master MPU Group A Write Protection)

The WPGRPA bit enables or disables memory protection for master MPU group A writes on internal peripheral bus 3.

14.5.1.5 SMPUP6BIU : Access Control Register for Internal Peripheral Bus 7

Base address: RMPU = 0x4000_0000

Offset address: 0xC28

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	WPGR PA	RPGR PA	WPCP U	RPCP U
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	RPCPU	CPU Read Protection 0: CPU read of memory protection disabled 1: CPU read of memory protection enabled	R/W
1	WPCPU	CPU Write Protection 0: CPU write of memory protection disabled 1: CPU write of memory protection enabled	R/W
2	RPGRPA	Master MPU Group A Read Protection 0: Master MPU group A read of memory protection disabled 1: Master MPU group A read of memory protection enabled	R/W
3	WPGRPA	Master MPU Group A Write Protection 0: Master MPU group A write of memory protection disabled 1: Master MPU group A write of memory protection enabled	R/W
15:4	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

RPCPU bit (CPU Read Protection)

The RPCPU bit enables or disables memory protection for CPU read on internal peripheral bus 7.

WPCPU bit (CPU Write Protection)

The WPCPU bit enables or disables memory protection for CPU write on internal peripheral bus 7.

RPGRPA bit (Master MPU Group A Read Protection)

The RPGRPA bit enables or disables memory protection for master MPU group A read on internal peripheral bus 7.

WPGRPA bit (Master MPU Group A Write Protection)

The WPGRPA bit enables or disables memory protection for master MPU group A write on internal peripheral bus 7.

14.5.1.6 SMPUFBIU : Access Control Register for Internal Peripheral Bus 9

Base address: RMPU = 0x4000_0000

Offset address: 0xC14

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	WPGR PA	RPGR PA	WPCP U	RPCP U
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	RPCPU	CPU Read Protection 0: Memory protection for CPU read disabled 1: Memory protection for CPU read enabled	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
1	WPCPU	CPU Write Protection 0: Memory protection for CPU write disabled 1: Memory protection for CPU write enabled	R/W
2	RPGRPA	Master MPU Group A Read Protection 0: Memory protection for master MPU group A read disabled 1: Memory protection for master MPU group A read enabled	R/W
3	WPGRPA	Master MPU Group A Write Protection 0: Memory protection for master MPU group A write disabled 1: Memory protection for master MPU group A write enabled	R/W
15:4	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

RPCPU bit (CPU Read Protection)

The RPCPU bit enables or disables memory protection for CPU reads on internal peripheral bus 9.

WPCPU bit (CPU Write Protection)

The WPCPU bit enables or disables memory protection for CPU writes on internal peripheral bus 9.

RPGRPA bit (Master MPU Group A Read Protection)

The RPGRPA bit enables or disables memory protection for master MPU group A reads on internal peripheral bus 9.

WPGRPA bit (Master MPU Group A Write Protection)

The WPGRPA bit enables or disables memory protection for master MPU group A writes on internal peripheral bus 9.

14.5.1.7 SMPUCTL : Slave MPU Control Register

Base address: RMPU = 0x4000_0000

Offset address: 0xC00

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	KEY[7:0]							—	—	—	—	—	—	—	PROTECT	OAD
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	OAD	Operation After Detection 0: Non-maskable interrupt 1: Reset	R/W
1	PROTECT	Protection of Register 0: All bus slave register writes are permitted 1: All bus slave register writes are protected. Reads are permitted.	R/W
7:2	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
15:8	KEY[7:0]	Key Code These bits enable or disable writes to the OAD and PROTECT bits	R/W ^{*1}

Note 1. Write data is not retained.

OAD bit (Operation After Detection)

The OAD bit generates either a reset or non-maskable interrupt when access to the protected region is detected by the bus slave MPU. When the OAD bit is set simultaneously, write 0xA5 to the KEY[7:0] bits using halfword access.

PROTECT bit (Protection of Register)

The PROTECT bit enables or disables writes to the associated registers to be protected. SMPUCTL.PROTECT controls the following registers:

- SMPUMBIU
- SMPUFBIU

- SMPUSRAM0
- SMPUP0BIU
- SMPUP2BIU
- SMPUP6BIU.

When the PROTECT bit is set, write 0xA5 to the KEY[7:0] bits simultaneously using halfword access.

KEY[7:0] bits (Key Code)

The KEY[7:0] bits enable or disable writes to the OAD and PROTECT bits. When writing to the OAD and PROTECT bits simultaneously, write 0xA5 to the KEY[7:0] bits. When other values are written, the OAD and the PROTECT bits are not updated. The KEY[7:0] bits are always read as 0x00.

14.5.2 Functions

14.5.2.1 Memory Protection

The bus slave MPU monitoring uses access control information that is set for the individual access control registers, whether access by the bus slaves violates the access control settings. If access to the protected region is detected, the bus slave MPU generates a memory protection error.

The bus slave MPU is enabled by writing 1 to the Write Protect (WPCPU or WPGRPA) bit or the Read Protect (RPCPU or RPGRPA) bit in the access control registers (SMPUMBIU, SMPUFBIU, SMPUSRAM0, SMPUP0BIU, SMPUP2BIU, and SMPUP6BIU).

14.5.2.2 Protecting the registers

Registers related to the bus slave MPU can be protected with the PROTECT bit in the SMPUCTL register.

14.5.2.3 Memory Protection Error

If access to a protected region is detected, the bus slave MPU generates a memory protection error. Set the OAD bit to select whether the error is reported as a non-maskable interrupt or reset.

The non-maskable interrupt status is indicated in ICU.NMISR.BUSSST. For details, see [section 12, Interrupt Controller Unit \(ICU\)](#). The reset status is indicated in SYSTEM.RSTSR1.BUSSRF. For details, see [section 5, Resets](#).

14.6 Security MPU

The MCU incorporates a security MPU with four secure regions that include the code flash, SRAM, and two security functions. The secure regions can be protected from non-secure program accesses. A non-secure program cannot access a protected region.

[Table 14.8](#) lists the specifications of the security MPU and [Figure 14.10](#) shows a block diagram.

Table 14.8 Security MPU specifications

Specifications	Description
Secure regions	Code flash, SRAM, two security functions
Protected regions	0x0000_0000 to 0xFFFF_FFFF
Number of regions	Program Counter = 2 regions Data Access = 4 regions
Address specification for individual regions	Setting the address where regions start and end
Enable or disable setting for memory protection in individual regions	Settings enabled or disabled for the associated region

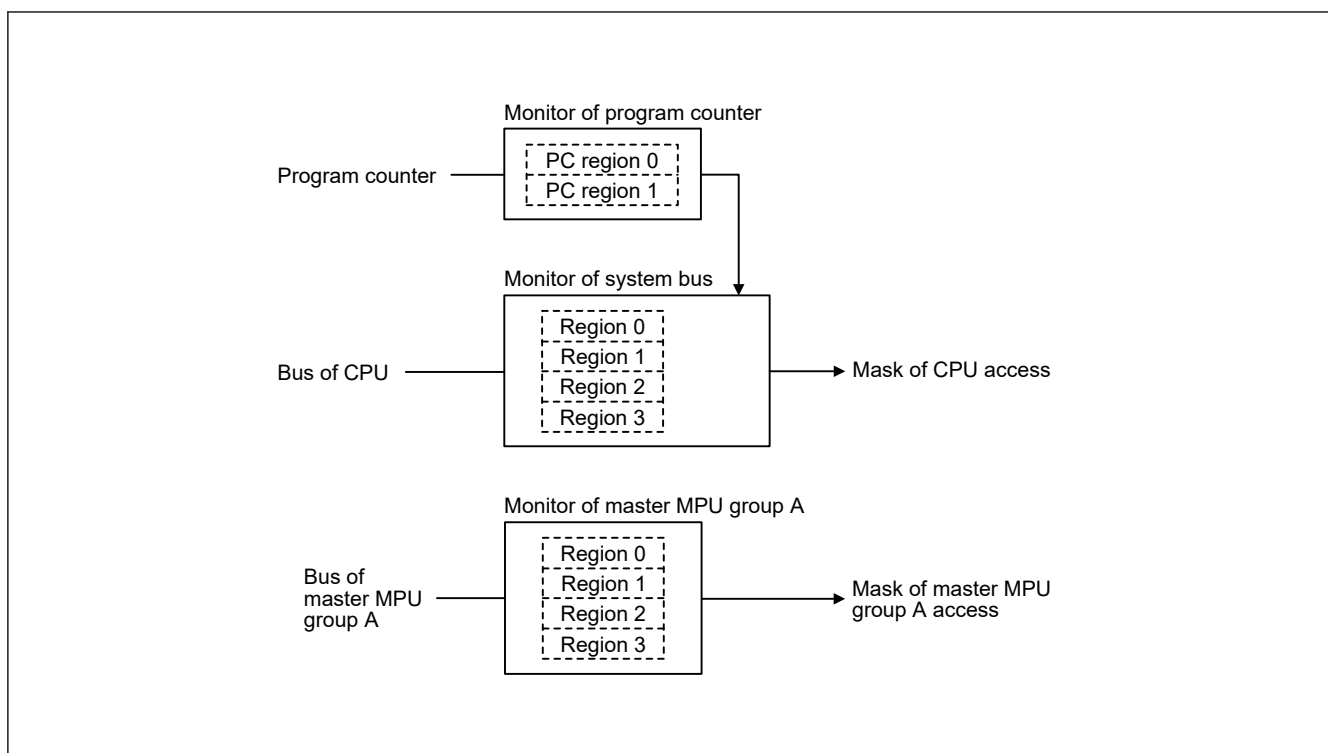


Figure 14.10 Security MPU block diagram

14.6.1 Register Descriptions (Option-Setting Memory)

All security MPU registers are option-setting memory. Option-setting memory refers to a set of registers that are available for selecting the state of the microcontroller after a reset. The option-setting memory is allocated in the code flash.

14.6.1.1 SECMPUPCSn : Security MPU Program Counter Start Address Register n (n = 0, 1)

Address: 0x0000_0408/0x0000_2408*1 (n = 0), 0x0000_0410/0x0000_2410*1 (n = 1)

Bit position: 31

0

Bit field:

SECMPUPCS[31:0]

Value after reset:

The value set by user

Note 1. The address of these registers will be changed when the boot swap is set.

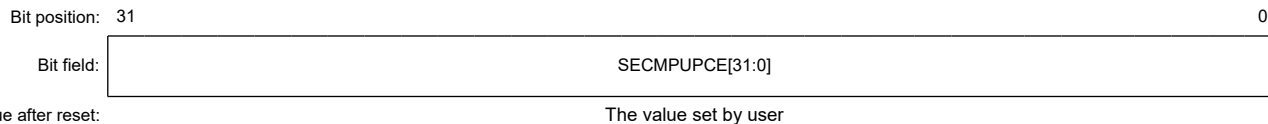
Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
31:0	SECMPUPCS[31:0]	Region Start Address Address where the region starts, for use in region determination. The value range is from 0x0000_0000 to 0x000F_FFFC or 0x1FF0_0000 to 0x200F_FFFC, excluding reserved areas. The lower 2 bits are read as 0. When programming to the code flash, the lower 2 bits write value should be 0.	R/W

The SECMPUPCSn and SECMPUPCEn registers specify the security fetch region of the code flash memory (0x0000_0000 to 0x000F_FFFF, not including the reserved areas) or SRAM (0x1FF0_0000 to 0x200F_FFFF, not including the reserved areas).

The secure program is executed in the memory space defined by the SECMPUPCSn and SECMPUPCEn registers and can access the secure data specified in the SECMPUSm and SECMPUEm registers (m = 0 to 3).

14.6.1.2 SECMPUPCEn : Security MPU Program Counter End Address Register n (n = 0, 1)

Address: 0x0000_040C/0x0000_240C*¹ (n = 0), 0x0000_0414/0x0000_2414*¹ (n = 1)

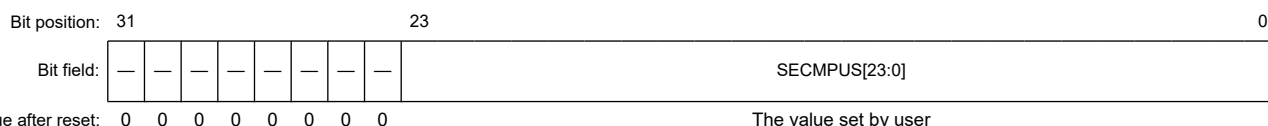


Note 1. The address of these registers will be changed when the boot swap is set.

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
31:0	SECMPUPCE[31:0]	Region End Address Address where the region ends, for use in region determination. The value range is from 0x0000_0003 to 0x000F_FFFF or 0x1FF0_0003 to 0x200F_FFFF, excluding reserved areas. The lower 2 bits are read as 1. When programming to the code flash, the lower 2 bits write value should be 1.	R/W

14.6.1.3 SECMPUS0 : Security MPU Region 0 Start Address Register

Address: 0x0000_0418/0x0000_2418*¹



Note 1. The address of these registers will be changed when the boot swap is set.

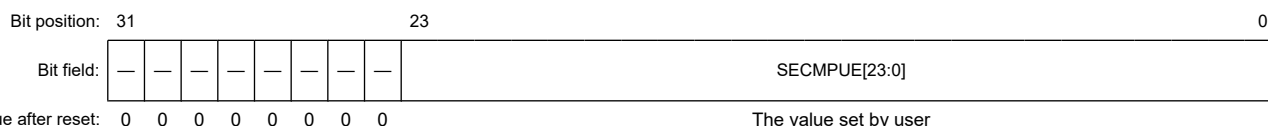
Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
23:0	SECMPUS[23:0]	Region Start Address Address where the region starts, for use in region determination. The value range is from 0x0000_0000 to 0x000F_FFFC, excluding reserved areas. The lower 2 bits are read as 0. When programming to the code flash, the lower 2 bits write value should be 0.	R/W
31:24	—	These bits are read as 0. When programming to the code flash, the write value should be 0.	R/W

The SECMPUS0 and SECMPUE0 registers specify the security program and data of the code flash memory (0x0000_0000 to 0x000F_FFFF, not including the reserved areas). The memory space defined in the SECMPUS0 and SECMPUE0 registers can only be accessed from the secure program set up in the SECMPUPCSn and SECMPUPCEn registers (n = 0, 1).

Setting of the vector table area is prohibited.

14.6.1.4 SECMPUE0 : Security MPU Region 0 End Address Register

Address: 0x0000_041C/0x0000_241C*¹



Note 1. The address of these registers will be changed when the boot swap is set.

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
23:0	SECMPE[23:0]	Region End Address Address where the region ends, for use in region determination. The value range is from 0x0000_0003 to 0x000F_FFFF, excluding reserved areas. The lower 2 bits are read as 1. When programming to the code flash, the lower 2 bits write value should be 1.	R/W
31:24	—	These bits are read as 0. When programming to the code flash, the write value should be 0.	R/W

14.6.1.5 SECMPUS1 : Security MPU Region 1 Start Address Register

Address: 0x0000_0420/0x0000_2420^{*1}

Bit position: 31

0

Bit field:

SECMPUS[31:0]

Value after reset:

The value set by user

Note 1. The address of these registers will be changed when the boot swap is set.

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
31:0	SECMPUS[31:0]	Region Start Address Address where the region starts, for use in region determination. The value range is from 0x1FF0_0000 to 0x200F_FFFC, excluding reserved areas. The lower 2 bits are read as 0. When programming to the code flash, the lower 2 bits write value should be 0.	R/W

The SECMPUS1 and SECMPUE1 registers specify the security program and data of the SRAM (0x1FF0_0000 to 0x200F_FFFF, excluding reserved areas).

The memory space defined in the SECMPUS1 and SECMPUE1 registers can only be accessed from the secure program set up in the SECMPUPCSn and SECMPUPCEn registers (n = 0, 1).

Setting of the stack area and the vector table are prohibited.

14.6.1.6 SECMPUE1 : Security MPU Region 1 End Address Register

Address: 0x0000_0424/0x0000_2424^{*1}

Bit position: 31

0

Bit field:

SECMPUE[31:0]

Value after reset:

The value set by user

Note 1. The address of these registers will be changed when the boot swap is set.

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
31:0	SECMPUE[31:0]	Region End Address Address where the region ends, for use in region determination. The value range is from 0x1FF0_0003 to 0x200F_FFFF, excluding reserved areas. The lower 2 bits are read as 1. When programming to the code flash, the lower 2 bits write value should be 1.	R/W

14.6.1.7 SECMPUS2 : Security MPU Region 2 Start Address Register

Address: 0x0000_0428/0x0000_2428^{*1}

Bit position: 31

0

Bit field:

SECMPUS[31:0]

Value after reset:

The value set by user

Note 1. The address of these registers will be changed when the boot swap is set.

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
31:0	SECMPIUS[31:0]	Region Start Address Address where the region starts, for use in region determination. The value range is from 0x400C_0000 to 0x400D_FFFC and 0x4010_0000 to 0x407F_FFFC. The lower 2 bits are read as 0. When programming to the code flash, the lower 2 bits write value should be 0.	R/W

The SECMPIUS2 and SECMPIUE2 registers specify the secure region of the security function (0x400C_0000 to 0x400D_FFFF and 0x4010_0000 to 0x407F_FFFF). The memory space defined in the SECMPIUS2 and SECMPIUE2 registers can only be accessed from the secure program set up in the SECMPIUPCSn and SECMPIUPCEn registers (n = 0, 1).

14.6.1.8 SECMPIUE2 : Security MPU Region 2 End Address Register

Address: 0x0000_042C/0x0000_242C*1

Bit position:	31	0
Bit field:	SECMPIUE[31:0]	
Value after reset:	The value set by user	

Note 1. The address of these registers will be changed when the boot swap is set.

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
31:0	SECMPIUE[31:0]	Region End Address Address that determines where the region ends. The value range is from 0x400C_0003 to 0x400D_FFFF and 0x4010_0003 to 0x407F_FFFF. The lower 2 bits are read as 1. When programming to the code flash, the lower 2 bits write value should be 1.	R/W

14.6.1.9 SECMPIUS3 : Security MPU Region 3 Start Address Register

Address: 0x0000_0430/0x0000_2430*1

Bit position:	31	0
Bit field:	SECMPIUS[31:0]	
Value after reset:	The value set by user	

Note 1. The address of these registers will be changed when the boot swap is set.

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
31:0	SECMPIUS[31:0]	Region Start Address Address where the region starts, for use in region determination. The value range is from 0x400C_0000 to 0x400D_FFFC and 0x4010_0000 to 0x407F_FFFC. The lower 2 bits are read as 0. When programming to the code flash, the lower 2 bits write value should be 0.	R/W

The SECMPIUS3 and SECMPIUE3 registers specify the secure region of the security function (0x400C_0000 to 0x400D_FFFF and 0x4010_0000 to 0x407F_FFFF). The memory space defined in the SECMPIUS3 and SECMPIUE3 registers can only be accessed from the secure program set up in the SECMPIUPCSn and SECMPIUPCEn registers (n = 0, 1).

14.6.1.10 SECMPIUE3 : Security MPU Region 3 End Address Register

Address: 0x0000_0434/0x0000_2434*1

Bit position:	31	0
Bit field:	SECMPIUE[31:0]	
Value after reset:	The value set by user	

Note 1. The address of these registers will be changed when the boot swap is set.

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
31:0	SECMPE[31:0]	Region End Address Address where the region ends, for use in region determination. The value range is from 0x400C_0003 to 0x400D_FFFF and 0x4010_0003 to 0x407F_FFFF. The lower 2 bits are read as 1. When programming to the code flash, the lower 2 bits write value should be 1.	R/W

14.6.1.11 SECMPUAC : Security MPU Access Control Register

Address: 0x0000_0438/0x0000_2438*1

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	DISPC 1	DISPC 0	—	—	—	—	DIS3	DIS2	DIS1	DIS0
Value after reset:	1	1	1	1	1	1	The value set by user		1	1	1	1	The value set by user			

Note 1. The address of these registers will be changed when the boot swap is set.

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	DIS0	Region 0 Disable 0: Security MPU region 0 enabled 1: Security MPU region 0 disabled	R/W
1	DIS1	Region 1 Disable 0: Security MPU region 1 enabled 1: Security MPU region 1 disabled	R/W
2	DIS2	Region 2 Disable 0: Security MPU region 2 enabled 1: Security MPU region 2 disabled	R/W
3	DIS3	Region 3 Disable 0: Security MPU region 3 enabled 1: Security MPU region 3 disabled	R/W
7:4	—	These bits are read as 1. When programming to the code flash, the write value should be 1.	R/W
8	DISPC0	PC Region 0 Disable 0: Security MPU PC region 0 enabled 1: Security MPU PC region 0 disabled	R/W
9	DISPC1	PC Region 1 Disable 0: Security MPU PC region 1 enabled 1: Security MPU PC region 1 disabled	R/W
15:10	—	These bits are read as 1. When programming to the code flash, the write value should be 1.	R/W
31:16	—	These bits are read as 1. When programming to the code flash, the write value should be 1.	R/W

Note: When flash memory is erased, the settings of the security MPU is disabled.

Note: To enable or disable the security MPU, see [section 14.6.2. Memory Protection](#).

DIS0 bit (Region 0 Disable)

The DIS0 bit enables or disables the security MPU region 0. If security MPU region 0 is enabled, the code flash memory region within the limits set up by SECMPUS0 and SECMPUE0 is secure data.

DIS1 bit (Region 1 Disable)

The DIS1 bit enables or disables the security MPU region 1. If security MPU region 1 is enabled, the SRAM region within the limits set up by SECMPUS1 and SECMPUE1 is secure data.

DIS2 bit (Region 2 Disable)

The DIS2 bit enables or disables the security MPU region 2. If security MPU region 2 is enabled, the data of the security function region within the limits set up by SECMPUS2 and SECMPUE2 is secure data.

DIS3 bit (Region 3 Disable)

The DIS3 bit enables or disables the security MPU region 3. If security MPU region 3 is enabled, the data of the security function region within the limits set up by SECMPUS3 and SECMPUE3 is secure data.

DISPC0 bit (PC Region 0 Disable)

The DISPC0 bit enables or disables the security MPU PC region 0. If security MPU PC region 0 is enabled, the code flash memory or the SRAM region within the limits set up by SECMPUPCS0 and SECMPUPCE0 contains a secure program.

DISPC1 bit (PC Region 1 Disable)

The DISPC1 bit enables or disables the security MPU PC region 1. If security MPU PC region 1 is enabled, the code flash memory or the SRAM region within the limits set up by SECMPUPCS1 and SECMPUPCE1 contains a secure program.

14.6.2 Memory Protection

The security MPU protects the secured regions (the code flash memory, the SRAM, and the security functions) from being accessed by non-secure programs. If access to a protected region is detected, the access becomes invalid.

When the security MPU is enabled, DISPC0 or DISPC1 in the Security MPU Access Control Register (SECMPUAC) and DIS0, DIS1, DIS2, or DIS3 in the Security MPU Access Control Register (SECMPUAC) must be set to 0.

When the security MPU is disabled, all bits in DISPC0, DISPC1, DIS0, DIS1, DIS2, and DIS3 in the Security MPU Access Control Register (SECMPUAC) must be set to 1.

Other settings in the Security MPU Access Control Register (SECMPUAC) are prohibited.

The security MPU provides access protection in the following conditions:

- Secure data is accessed from a non-secure program
- Secure data is accessed from other than the CPU (DTC)
- Secure data is accessed from the debugger.

Secure data is accessible only from a secure program.

Note: Secure program:

Code flash or SRAM region within the limits set up by SECMPUPCS0 and SECMPUPCE0.

Code flash or SRAM region within the limits set up by SECMPUPCS1 and SECMPUPCE1.

Non-secure program:

All regions without the secure program.

Secure data:

Code flash region within the limits set up by SECMPUS0 and SECMPUE0.

SRAM region within the limits set up by SECMPUS1 and SECMPUE1.

Security Function region within the limits set up by SECMPUS2 and SECMPUE2.

Security Function region within the limits set up by SECMPUS3 and SECMPUE3.

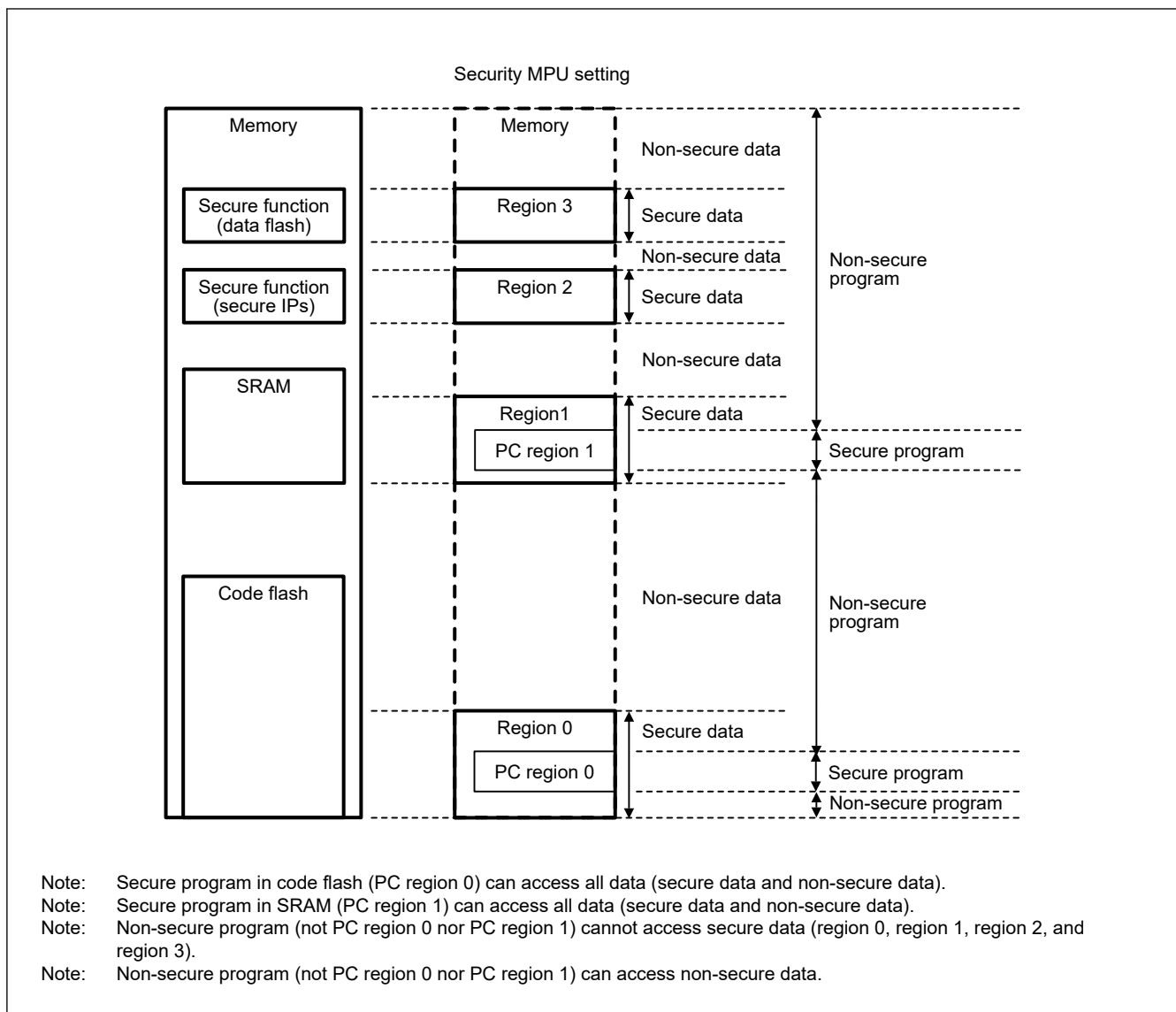


Figure 14.11 Use case of security MPU

14.7 Usage Notes

14.7.1 Notes on the Use of a Debugger

The memory cannot be debugged if the security MPU is enabled. Disable the security MPU when debugging a program, OCD debug is only valid when the SECMPUAC register is 0xFFFF_FFFF.

14.8 References

1. *ARM®v8-M Architecture Reference Manual* (ARM DDI 0553B.a)
2. *ARM® Cortex®-M23 Processor Technical Reference Manual* (ARM DDI 0550C)
3. *ARM® Cortex®-M23 Processor User Guide* (ARM DUI 0963B)

15. Data Transfer Controller (DTC)

15.1 Overview

A Data Transfer Controller (DTC) module is provided for transferring data when activated by an interrupt request.

[Table 15.1](#) lists the DTC specifications and [Figure 15.1](#) shows DTC block diagram.

Table 15.1 DTC specifications

Parameter	Description
Transfer modes	- Normal transfer mode A single activation leads to a single data transfer. - Repeat transfer mode A single activation leads to a single data transfer. The transfer address returns to the start address after the number of data transfers reaches the specified repeat size. The maximum number of repeat transfers is 256 and the maximum data transfer size is 256×32 bits (1024 bytes) - Block transfer mode A single activation leads to a transfer of a single block. The maximum block size is 256×32 bits = 1024 bytes.
Transfer channel	- Channel transfer can be associated with the interrupt source (transferred by a DTC activation request from the ICU) - Multiple data units can be transferred on a single activation source (chain transfer) - Chain transfers are selectable to either execute when the counter is 0, or always execute.
Transfer space	4 GB area from 0x0000_0000 to 0xFFFF_FFFF, excluding reserved areas and UARTA registers.
Data transfer units	- Single data unit: 1 byte (8 bits), 1 halfword (16 bits), 1 word (32 bits) - Single block size: 1 to 256 data units.
CPU interrupt source	- An interrupt request can be generated to the CPU on a DTC activation interrupt - An interrupt request can be generated to the CPU after a single data transfer - An interrupt request can be generated to the CPU after a data transfer of a specified volume.
Event link function	An event link request is generated after one data transfer (for block, after one block transfer)
Read skip	Read of transfer information can be skipped
Write-back skip	When the transfer source or destination address is specified as fixed, a write-back of transfer information can be skipped
Module-stop function	Module-stop state can be set to reduce power consumption

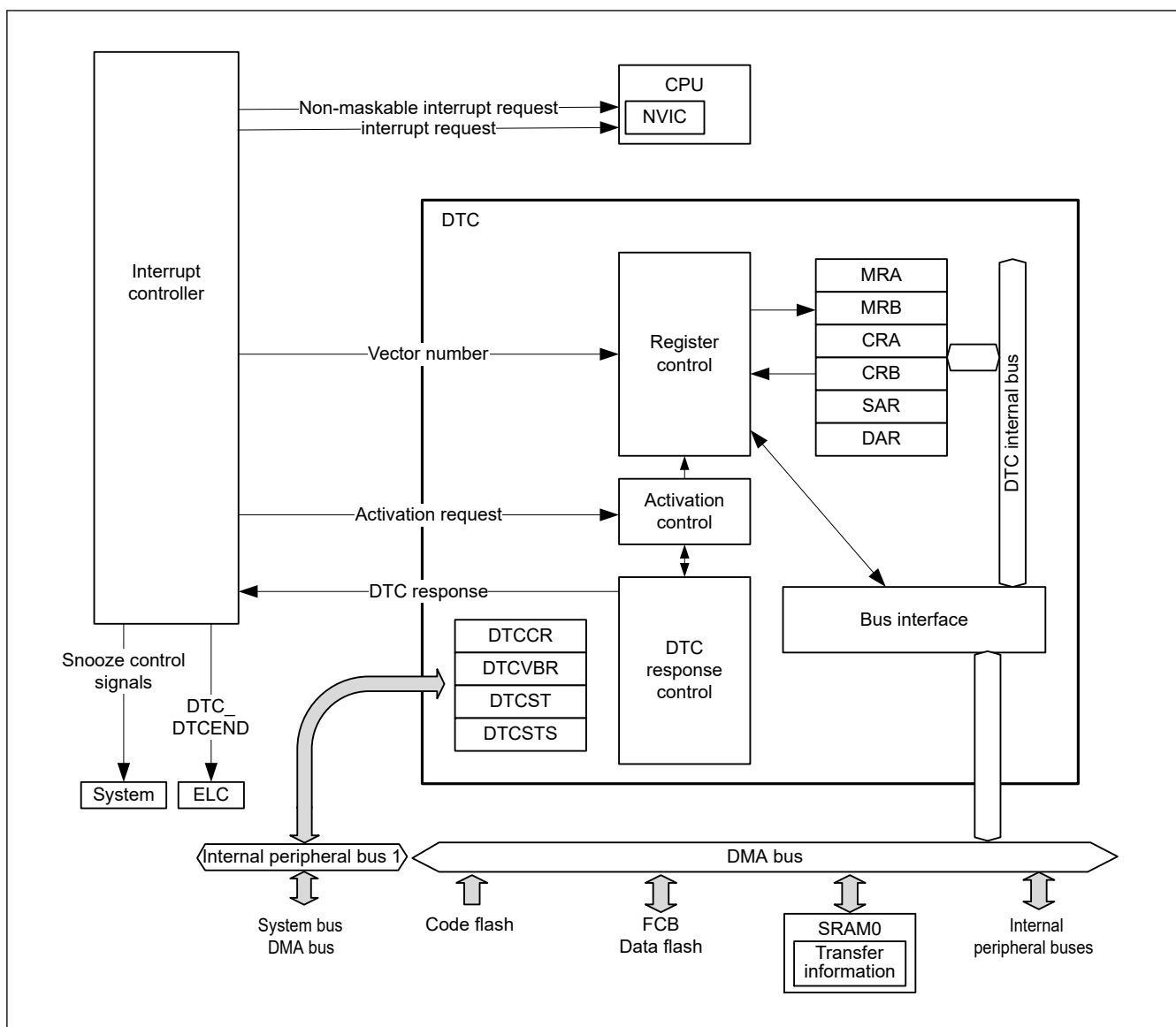


Figure 15.1 DTC block diagram

See [section 12.1. Overview](#) in [section 12, Interrupt Controller Unit \(ICU\)](#) for the connections between the DTC and NVIC in the CPU.

15.2 Register Descriptions

MRA, MRB, SAR, DAR, CRA, and CRB are all DTC internal registers that cannot be directly accessed from the CPU. Values to be set in these DTC internal registers are placed in the SRAM area as transfer information. When an activation request is generated, the DTC reads the transfer information from the SRAM area and sets it in its internal registers. After the data transfer ends, the internal register contents are written back to the SRAM area as transfer information.

15.2.1 MRA : DTC Mode Register A

Base address: DTCVBR

Offset address: $0x03 + 0x4 \times \text{Vector number}$

(Inaccessible directly from the CPU. See [section 15.3.1. Allocating Transfer Information and DTC Vector Table](#))

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	MD[1:0]		SZ[1:0]		SM[1:0]		—	—

Value after reset: x x x x x x x x

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
1:0	—	The read values are undefined. The write value should be 0.	—
3:2	SM[1:0]	Transfer Source Address Addressing Mode 0 0: Address in the SAR register is fixed (write-back to SAR is skipped) 0 1: Address in the SAR register is fixed (write-back to SAR is skipped) 1 0: SAR value is incremented after data transfer: +1 when SZ[1:0] = 00b +2 when SZ[1:0] = 01b +4 when SZ[1:0] = 10b 1 1: SAR value is decremented after data transfer: -1 when SZ[1:0] = 00b -2 when SZ[1:0] = 01b -4 when SZ[1:0] = 10b	—
5:4	SZ[1:0]	DTC Data Transfer Size 0 0: Byte (8-bit) transfer 0 1: Halfword (16-bit) transfer 1 0: Word (32-bit) transfer 1 1: Setting prohibited	—
7:6	MD[1:0]	DTC Transfer Mode Select 0 0: Normal transfer mode 0 1: Repeat transfer mode 1 0: Block transfer mode 1 1: Setting prohibited	—

The MRA register cannot be accessed directly from the CPU, however the CPU can access the SRAM area (transfer information (n) start address + 0x03) and DTC transfers it automatically to and from the MRA register. See [section 15.3.1. Allocating Transfer Information and DTC Vector Table](#).

15.2.2 MRB : DTC Mode Register B

Base address: DTCVBR

Offset address: 0x02 + 0x4 × Vector number

(Inaccessible directly from the CPU. See [section 15.3.1. Allocating Transfer Information and DTC Vector Table](#))

Bit position: 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0

Bit field:	CHNE	CHNS	DISEL	DTS	DM[1:0]	—	—

Value after reset: x x x x x x x x

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
1:0	—	The read values are undefined. The write value should be 0.	—
3:2	DM[1:0]	Transfer Destination Address Addressing Mode 0 0: Address in the DAR register is fixed (write-back to DAR is skipped) 0 1: Address in the DAR register is fixed (write-back to DAR is skipped) 1 0: DAR value is incremented after data transfer: +1 when MRA.SZ[1:0] = 00b +2 when SZ[1:0] = 01b +4 when SZ[1:0] = 10b 1 1: DAR value is decremented after data transfer: -1 when MRA.SZ[1:0] = 00b -2 when SZ[1:0] = 01b -4 when SZ[1:0] = 10b	—
4	DTS	DTC Transfer Mode Select 0: Select transfer destination as a repeat or block area 1: Select transfer source as a repeat or block area	—
5	DISEL	DTC Interrupt Select 0: Generate an interrupt request to the CPU when the specified data transfer is complete 1: Generate an interrupt request to the CPU each time DTC data transfer is performed	—

15.2.4 DAR : DTC Transfer Destination Register

Base address: DTCVBR

Offset address: $0x08 + 0x4 \times \text{Vector number}$
(Inaccessible directly from the CPU. See [section 15.3.1. Allocating Transfer Information and DTC Vector Table](#))

Bit position: 31

0

Bit field:

Value after reset: x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x

The DAR sets the transfer destination start address and cannot be accessed directly from the CPU. However, the CPU can access the SRAM area (transfer information (n) start address + 0x08) and DTC transfers it automatically to and from the DAR register. See [section 15.3.1. Allocating Transfer Information and DTC Vector Table](#).

Misalignment is prohibited for DTC transfers. Bit[0] must be 0 when MRA.SZ[1:0] = 01b, and bit[1] and bit[0] must be 0 when MRA.SZ[1:0] = 10b.

15.2.5 CRA : DTC Transfer Count Register A

Base address: DTCVBR

Offset address: $0x0E + 0x4 \times \text{Vector number}$
(Inaccessible directly from the CPU. See [section 15.3.1. Allocating Transfer Information and DTC Vector Table](#))

Bit position:

15 14 13 12 11 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0

Bit field:

Value after reset: x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7:0	CRAL	Transfer Counter A Lower Register Specify the transfer count.	—
15:8	CRAH	Transfer Counter A Upper Register Specify the transfer count.	—

Note: The function depends on the transfer mode.

Note: Set CRAH and CRAL to the same value in repeat transfer mode and block transfer mode.

The CRA register consists of 16 bits. CRAL is the lower 8 bits and CRAH is the upper 8 bits. CRA is used in normal mode.

CRAL and CRAH are used in repeat transfer mode and block transfer mode.

The CRA register cannot be accessed directly from the CPU. However, the CPU can access the SRAM area (transfer information (n) start address + 0x0E) and DTC transfers it automatically to and from the CRA register. See [section 15.3.1. Allocating Transfer Information and DTC Vector Table](#).

(1) Normal transfer mode (MRA.MD[1:0] = 00b)

In normal transfer mode, CRA functions as a 16-bit transfer counter. The transfer count is 1, 65535, and 65536 when the set value is 0x0001, 0xFFFF, and 0x0000, respectively. The CRA value is decremented (-1) on each data transfer.

(2) Repeat transfer mode (MRA.MD[1:0] = 01b)

In repeat transfer mode, the CRAH register holds the transfer count and the CRAL register functions as an 8-bit transfer counter. The transfer count is 1, 255, and 256 when the set value is 0x01, 0xFF, and 0x00, respectively. The CRAL value is decremented (-1) on each data transfer. When it reaches 0x00, the CRAH value is transferred to CRAL.

(3) Block transfer mode (MRA.MD[1:0] = 10b)

In block transfer mode, the CRAH register holds the block size and the CRAL register functions as an 8-bit block size counter. The transfer count is 1, 255, and 256 when the set value is 0x01, 0xFF, and 0x00, respectively. The CRAL value is decremented (-1) on each data transfer. When it reaches 0x00, the CRAH value is transferred to CRAL.

15.2.6 CRB : DTC Transfer Count Register B

Base address: DTCVBR

Offset address: $0x0C + 0x4 \times \text{Vector number}$

(Inaccessible directly from the CPU. See [section 15.3.1. Allocating Transfer Information and DTC Vector Table](#))

[illegible]

The CRB sets the block transfer count for block transfer mode. The transfer count is 1, 65535, and 65536 when the set value is 0x0001, 0xFFFF, and 0x0000, respectively. The CRB value is decremented (-1) when the final data of a single block size is transferred. When normal transfer mode or repeat transfer mode is selected, this register is not used, and the set value is ignored.

The CRB cannot be accessed directly from the CPU. However, the CPU can access the SRAM area (transfer information (n) start address + 0x0C) and DTC transfers it automatically to and from the CRB register. See [section 15.3.1. Allocating Transfer Information and DTC Vector Table](#).

15.2.7 DTCCR : DTC Control Register

Base address: DTC = 0x4000_5400

Offset address: 0x00

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	RRS	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
2:0	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
3	—	This bit is read as 1. The write value should be 1.	R/W
4	RRS	DTC Transfer Information Read Skip Enable 0: Transfer information read is not skipped 1: Transfer information read is skipped when vector numbers match	R/W
7:5	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

RRS bit (DTC Transfer Information Read Skip Enable)

The RRS bit enables skipping of transfer information reads when vector numbers match. The DTC vector number is compared with the vector number in the previous activation process. When these vector numbers match and the RRS bit is set to 1, DTC data transfer is performed without reading the transfer information. However, when the previous transfer is a chain transfer, the transfer information is read regardless of the RRS bit.

When the transfer counter (CRA register) becomes 0 during the previous normal transfer and when the transfer counter (CRB register) becomes 0 during the previous block transfer, the transfer information is read regardless of the RRS bit value.

15.2.8 DTCVBR : DTC Vector Base Register

Base address: DTC = 0x4000 5400

Offset address: 0x04

[illegible]

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
31:0	n/a	DTC Vector Base Address Set the DTC vector base address. The lower 10 bits should be 0.	R/W

The DTCVBR sets the base address for calculating the DTC vector table address, which can be set in the range of 0x0000_0000 to 0xFFFF_FFFF (4 GB) in 1-KB units.

15.2.9 DTCST : DTC Module Start Register

Base address: DTC = 0x4000_5400

Offset address: 0x0C

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	DTCS T
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	DTCST	DTC Module Start 0: DTC module stopped 1: DTC module started	R/W
7:1	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

DTCST bit (DTC Module Start)

Set the DTCST bit to 1 to enable the DTC to accept transfer requests. When this bit is set to 0, transfer requests are no longer accepted. If this bit is set to 0 during a data transfer, the accepted transfer request is active until processing completes.

DTCST must be set to 0 before transitioning to one of the following state or mode:

- Module-stop state
- Software Standby mode without Snooze mode transition

For details on these transitions, see [section 15.9. Low Power Consumption Function](#) and [section 10, Low Power Modes](#).

15.2.10 DTCSTS : DTC Status Register

Base address: DTC = 0x4000_5400

Offset address: 0x0E

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	ACT	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	VECN[7:0]							
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7:0	VECN[7:0]	DTC-activating Vector Number Monitoring These bits indicate the vector number for the activation source when a DTC transfer is in progress. The value is only valid if a DTC transfer is in progress (ACT flag is 1).	R
14:8	—	These bits are read as 0.	R
15	ACT	DTC Active Flag 0: DTC transfer operation is not in progress 1: DTC transfer operation is in progress	R

VECN[7:0] bits (DTC-activating Vector Number Monitoring)

While transfer by the DTC is in progress, the VECN[7:0] bits indicate the vector number associated with the activation source for the transfer. The value read from the VECN[7:0] bits is valid if the ACT flag is 1, indicating a DTC transfer in progress, and invalid if the ACT flag is 0, indicating no DTC transfer is in progress.

ACT flag (DTC Active Flag)

The ACT flag indicates the state of the DTC transfer operation.

[Setting condition]

- When the DTC is activated by a transfer request.

[Clearing condition]

- When transfer by the DTC, in response to a transfer request, is complete.

15.3 Activation Sources

The DTC is activated by an interrupt request. Setting the ICU.IELSRn.DTCE bit to 1 enables activation of the DTC by the associated interrupt. The selector output n number set in ICU.IELSRn is defined as the interrupt vector number, where $n = 0$ to 31. For an enabled interrupt, the specific DTC interrupt source associated with each interrupt vector number n is selected in ICU.IELSRn.IELS[4:0] where $n = 0$ to 31, as listed in [section 12.3.2. Event Number](#) in [section 12, Interrupt Controller Unit \(ICU\)](#). For activation by software, see [section 16.2.2. ELSEGRn : Event Link Software Event Generation Register n \(\$n = 0, 1\$ \)](#).

The interrupt vector number is equivalent to the DTC vector table number. After the DTC accepted an activation request, it does not accept another activation request until the transfer for that single request is complete, regardless of the priority of the requests. When multiple activation requests are generated during a DTC transfer, the highest priority request is accepted on completion of the transfer. When multiple activation requests are generated while the DTC Module Start bit (DTCST.DTCST) is 0, the DTC accepts the highest priority request when DTCST.DTCST is subsequently set to 1. The smaller interrupt vector number has higher priority.

The DTC performs the following operations at the start of a single data transfer or for a chain transfer, after the last of the consecutive transfers:

- On completion of a specified round of data transfer, the ICU.IELSRn.DTCE bit is set to 0, and an interrupt request is sent to the CPU.
- If the MRB.DISEL bit is 1, an interrupt request is sent to the CPU on completion of a data transfer.
- For other transfers, the ICU.IELSRn.IR flag of the activation source is set to 0 at the start of the data transfer.

15.3.1 Allocating Transfer Information and DTC Vector Table

The DTC reads the start address of the transfer information associated with each activation source from the vector table and reads the transfer information starting at that address.

The vector table must be located so that the lower 10 bits of the base address (start address) are 0. Use the DTC Vector Base Register (DTCVBR) to set the base address of the DTC vector table. Transfer information is allocated in the SRAM area. In the SRAM area, the start address of the transfer information n with vector number n must be $4n$ added to the base address in the vector table.

[Figure 15.2](#) shows the relationship between the DTC vector table and transfer information. [Figure 15.3](#) shows the allocation of transfer information in the SRAM area.

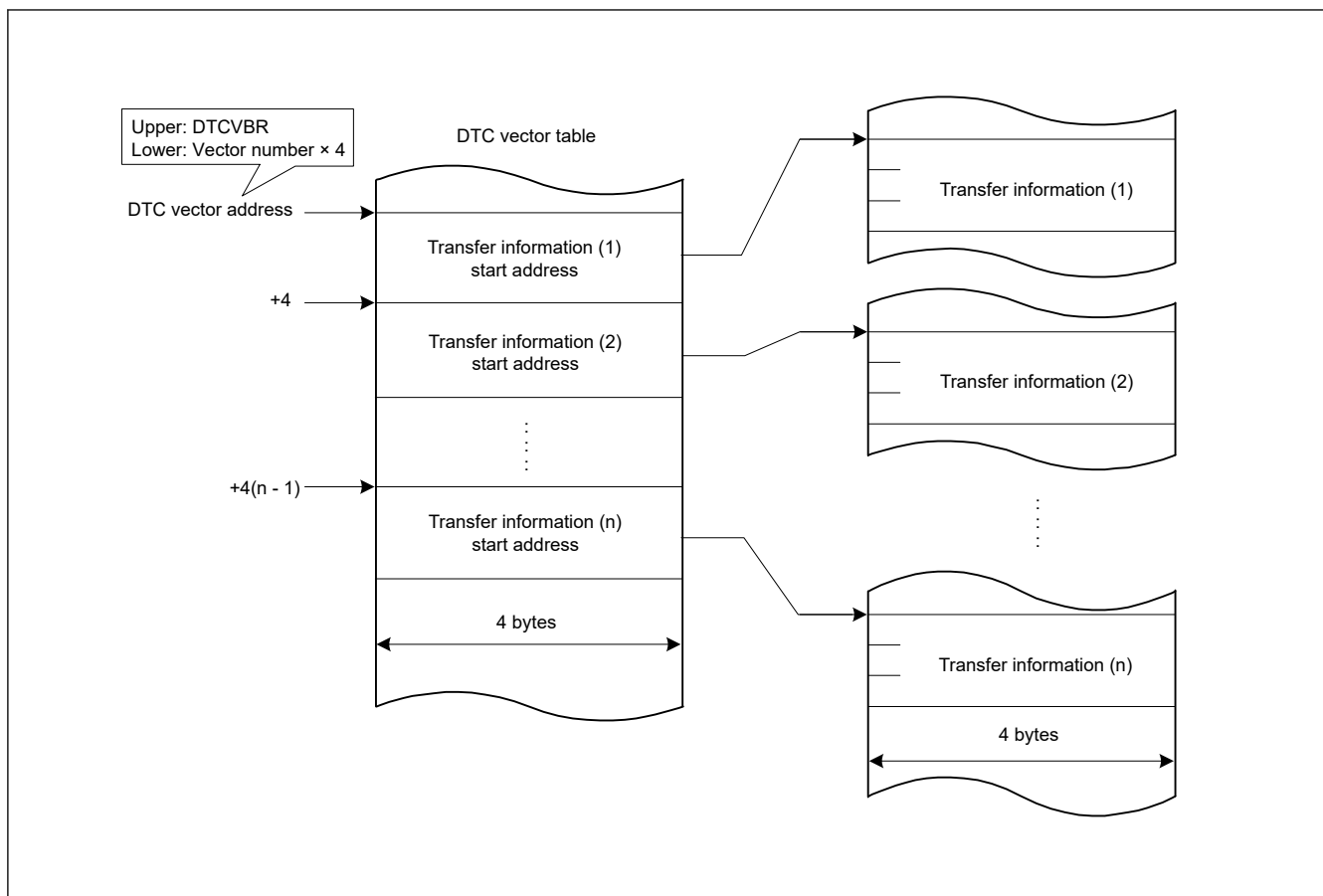


Figure 15.2 DTC vector table and transfer information

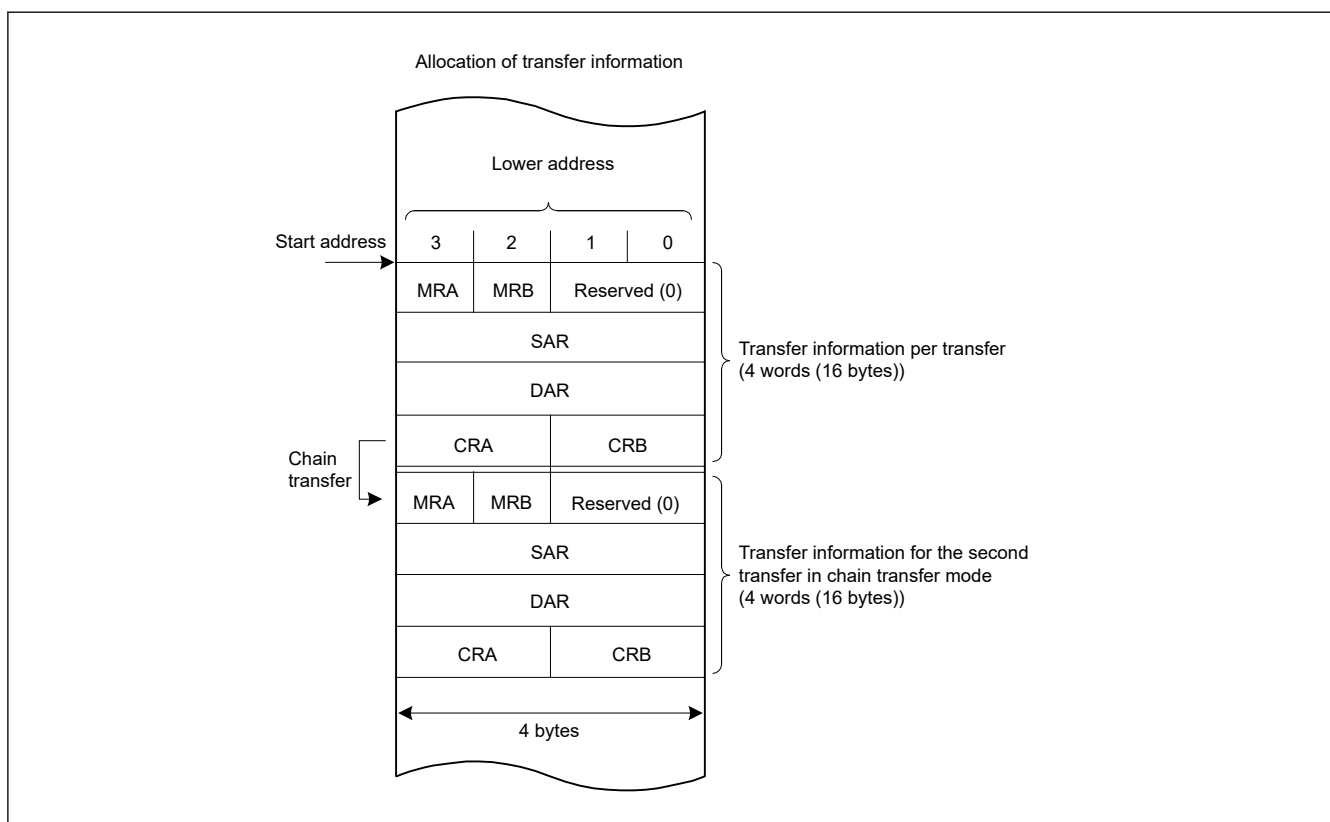


Figure 15.3 Allocation of transfer information in the SRAM area

15.4 Operation

The DTC transfers data according to the transfer information. Storage of the transfer information in the SRAM area is required before a DTC operation. When the DTC is activated, it reads the DTC vector associated with the vector number. The DTC reads the transfer information from the transfer information store address referenced by the DTC vector and transfers the data. After the data transfer, the DTC writes back the transfer information. Storing the transfer information in the SRAM area allows data transfer of any number of channels.

The transfer modes include:

- Normal transfer mode
- Repeat transfer mode
- Block transfer mode.

The DTC specifies a transfer source address in the SAR register and a transfer destination address in the DAR register. The values of these registers are incremented, decremented, or address-fixed independently after the data transfer.

Table 15.2 describes the DTC transfer modes.

Table 15.2 DTC transfer modes

Transfer mode	Data size transferred on single transfer request	Increment or decrement of memory address	Settable transfer count
Normal transfer mode	1 byte (8 bit), 1 halfword (16 bit), 1 word (32 bit)	Incremented or decremented by 1, 2, or 4 or address-fixed	1 to 65536
Repeat transfer mode*1	1 byte (8 bit), 1 halfword (16 bit), 1 word (32 bit)	Incremented or decremented by 1, 2, or 4 or address-fixed	1 to 256*3
Block transfer mode*2	Block size specified in CRAH (1 to 256 bytes, 1 to 256 halfwords (2 to 512 bytes), or 1 to 256 words (4 to 1024 bytes))	Incremented or decremented by 1, 2, or 4 or address-fixed	1 to 65536

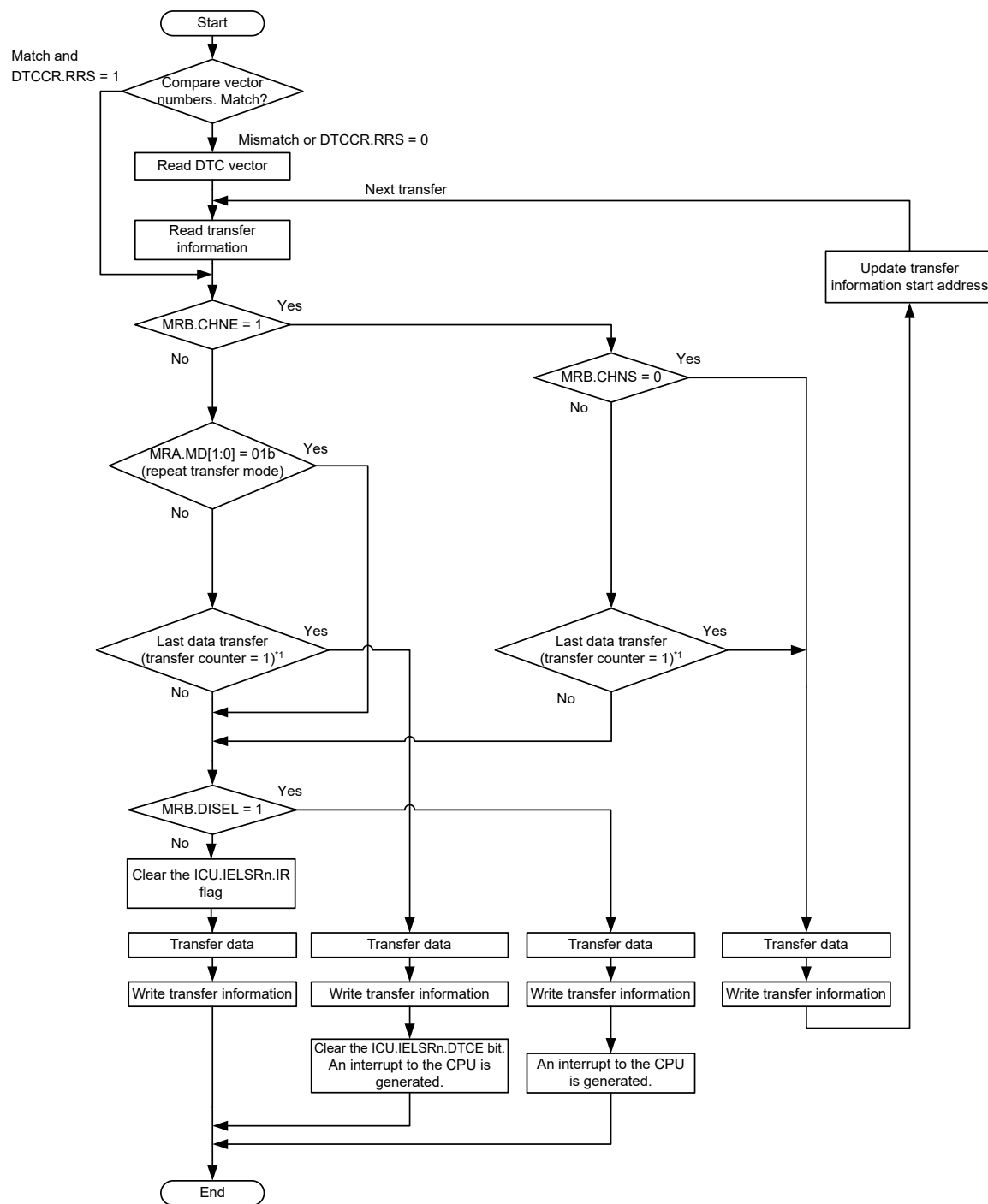
Note 1. Set the transfer source or transfer destination as the repeat area.

Note 2. Set the transfer source or transfer destination as the block area.

Note 3. After a data transfer of the specified count, the initial state is restored and operation restarts.

Setting the MRB.CHNE bit to 1 allows multiple transfers or chain transfer on a single activation source. It also enables a chain transfer when the specified data transfer is complete.

Figure 15.4 shows the operation flow of the DTC. Table 15.3 lists the chain transfer conditions. The combination of control information for the second and subsequent transfers are omitted in this table.



Note 1. Counter value before starting data transfer.

Figure 15.4 DTC operation flow

Table 15.3 Chain transfer conditions

First transfer				Second transfer ^{*3}				DTC transfer
CHNE bit	CHNS bit	DISEL bit	Transfer counter ^{*1 *2}	CHNE bit	CHNS bit	DISEL bit	Transfer counter ^{*1 *2}	
0	—	0	Other than (1 → 0)	—	—	—	—	Ends after the first transfer
0	—	0	(1 → 0)	—	—	—	—	Ends after the first transfer with an interrupt request to the CPU
0	—	1	—	—	—	—	—	
1	0	—	—	0	—	0	Other than (1 → 0)	Ends after the second transfer
				0	—	0	(1 → 0)	Ends after the second transfer with an interrupt request to the CPU
				0	—	1	—	
1	1	0	Other than (1 → *)	—	—	—	—	Ends after the first transfer
1	1	—	(1 → *)	0	—	0	Other than (1 → 0)	Ends after the second transfer
				0	—	0	(1 → 0)	Ends after the second transfer with an interrupt request to the CPU
				0	—	1	—	
1	1	1	Other than (1 → *)	—	—	—	—	Ends after the first transfer with an interrupt request to the CPU

Note 1. The transfer counter used depends on the transfer modes as follows:

Normal transfer mode — CRA register
Repeat transfer mode — CRAL register
Block transfer mode — CRB register

Note 2. On completion of a data transfer, the counters operate as follows:

1 → 0 in normal and block transfer modes
1 → CRAH in repeat transfer mode
(1 → *) in the table indicates both of these two operations, depending on the mode.

Note 3. Chain transfer can be selected for the second or subsequent transfers. The conditions for the combination of the second transfer and CHNE = 1 is omitted.

15.4.1 Transfer Information Read Skip Function

Reading of vector addresses and transfer information can be skipped by setting the DTCCR.RRS bit. When a DTC activation request is generated, the current DTC vector number is compared with the DTC vector number in the previous activation process. When these vector numbers match and the RRS bit is set to 1, the DTC data transfer is performed without reading the vector address and transfer information. However, when the previous transfer is a chain transfer, the vector address and transfer information are read. Additionally, when the transfer counter (CRA register) becomes 0 during the previous normal transfer, and when the transfer counter (CRB register) becomes 0 during the previous block transfer, transfer information is read regardless of the RRS bit. [Figure 15.12](#) shows an example when reading the transfer information is skipped.

To update the vector table and transfer information, set the RRS bit to 0, update the vector table and transfer information, then set the RRS bit to 1. The stored vector number is discarded by setting the RRS bit to 0. The updated DTC vector table and transfer information are read in the next activation process.

15.4.2 Transfer Information Write-back Skip Function

When the MRA.SM[1:0] bits or the MRB.DM[1:0] bits are set to address fixed, a part of the transfer information is not written back. [Table 15.4](#) lists the transfer information write-back skip conditions and the associated registers. The CRA and CRB registers are written back, and the write-back of the MRA and MRB registers is skipped.

Table 15.4 Transfer information write-back skip conditions and applicable registers

MRA.SM[1:0] bits		MRB.DM[1:0] bits		SAR register	DAR register
b3	b2	b3	b2		
0	0	0	0	Skip	Skip
0	0	0	1		
0	1	0	0		
0	1	0	1		
0	0	1	0	Skip	Write-back
0	0	1	1		
0	1	1	0		
0	1	1	1		
1	0	0	0	Write-back	Skip
1	0	0	1		
1	1	0	0		
1	1	0	1		
1	0	1	0	Write-back	Write-back
1	0	1	1		
1	1	1	0		
1	1	1	1		

15.4.3 Normal Transfer Mode

The normal transfer mode allows a 1-byte (8 bit), 1-halfword (16 bit), 1-word (32 bit) data transfer on a single activation source. The transfer count can be set from 1 to 65536. Transfer source and destination addresses can be independently set to increment, decrement, or fixed. This mode enables an interrupt request to the CPU to be generated at the end of a specified-count transfer.

[Table 15.5](#) lists register functions in normal transfer mode, and [Figure 15.5](#) shows the memory map of normal transfer mode.

Table 15.5 Register functions in normal transfer mode

Register	Description	Value written back by writing transfer information
SAR	Transfer source address	Increment, decrement, or fixed*1
DAR	Transfer destination address	Increment, decrement, fixed*1
CRA	Transfer counter A	CRA - 1
CRB	Transfer counter B	Not updated

Note 1. Write-back operation is skipped in address-fixed mode.

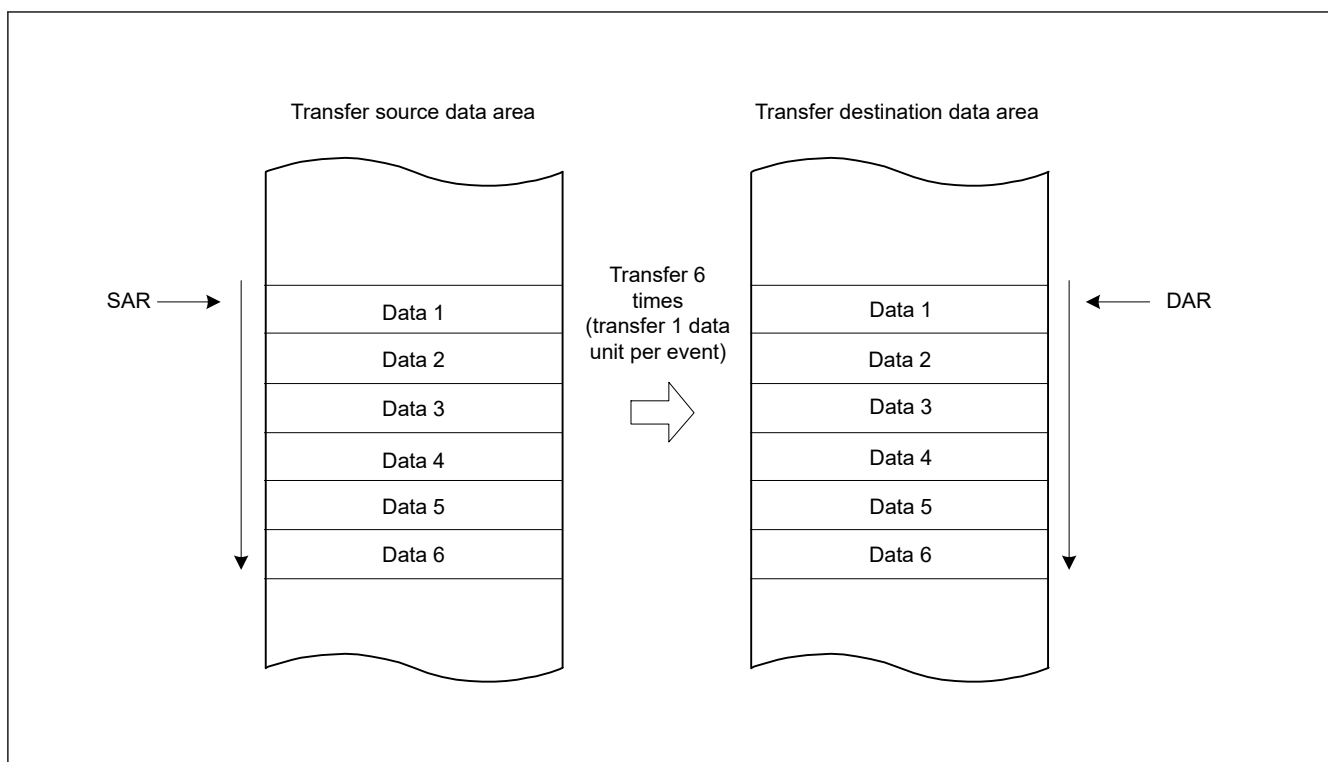


Figure 15.5 Memory map of normal transfer mode (MRA.SM[1:0] = 10b, MRB.DM[1:0] = 10b, CRA = 0x0006)

15.4.4 Repeat Transfer Mode

The repeat transfer mode allows a 1-byte (8-bit), 1-halfword (16-bit), or 1-word (32-bit) data transfer on a single activation source. Transfer source or transfer destination for the repeat area must be specified in the MRB.DTS bit. The transfer count can be set from 1 to 256. When the specified transfer count is complete, the initial value of the address register specified in the repeat area is restored, the initial value of the transfer counter is restored, and transfer is repeated. The other address register is incremented or decremented continuously or remains unchanged.

When the transfer counter CRAL decrements to 0x00 in repeat transfer mode, the CRAL value is updated to the value set in the CRAH register. As a result, the transfer counter does not clear to 0x00, which disables interrupt requests to the CPU when the MRB.DISEL bit is set to 0. An interrupt request to the CPU is generated when the specified data transfer completes.

Table 15.6 lists the register functions in repeat transfer mode, and Figure 15.6 shows the memory map of repeat transfer mode.

Table 15.6 Register functions in repeat transfer mode

Register	Description	Value written back by writing transfer information	
		When CRAL is not 1	When CRAL is 1
SAR	Transfer source address	Increment, decrement, fixed ^{*1}	- When the MRB.DTS bit is 0 Increment, decrement, or fixed^{*1} - When the MRB.DTS bit is 1 SAR register initial value
DAR	Transfer destination address	Increment, decrement, or fixed ^{*1}	- When the MRB.DTS bit is 0 DAR register initial value - When the MRB.DTS bit is 1 Increment, decrement, or fixed^{*1}
CRAH	Retains transfer counter	CRAH	CRAH
CRAL	Transfer counter A	CRAL - 1	CRAH
CRB	Transfer counter B	Not updated	Not updated

Note 1. Write-back is skipped in address-fixed mode.

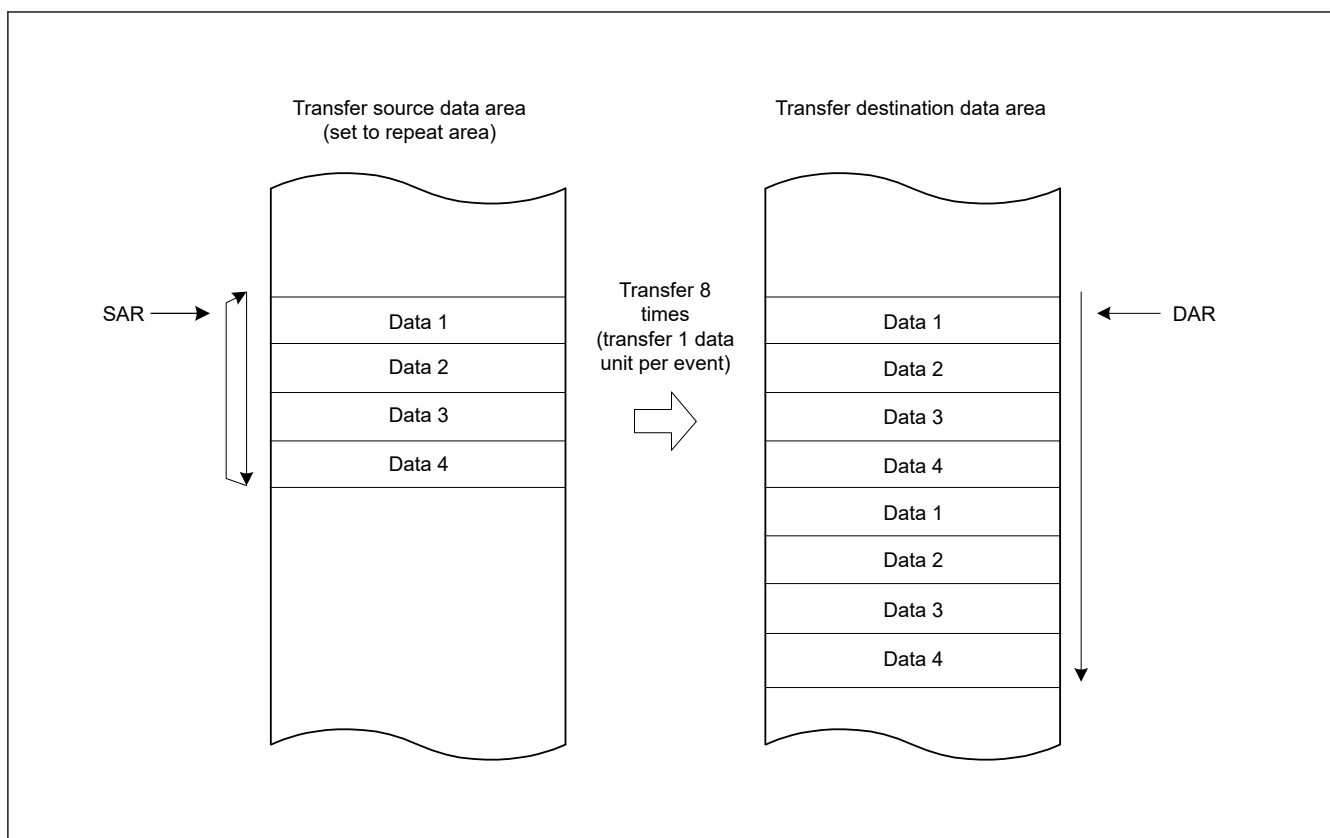


Figure 15.6 Memory map of repeat transfer mode when transfer source is a repeat area (MRA.SM[1:0] = 10b, MRB.DM[1:0] = 10b, CRAH = 0x04)

15.4.5 Block Transfer Mode

The block transfer mode allows single-block data transfer on a single activation source. Transfer source or transfer destination for the block area must be specified in the MRB.DTS bit. The block size can be set from 1 to 256 bytes, 1 to 256 halfwords (2 to 512 bytes), or 1 to 256 words (4 to 1024 bytes). When transfer of the specified block completes, the initial values of the block size counter CRAL and the address register (the SAR register when the MRB.DTS = 1 or the DAR register when the DTS = 0) specified in the block area are restored. The other address register is incremented or decremented continuously or remains unchanged.

The transfer count (block count) can be set from 1 to 65536. This mode enables an interrupt request to the CPU to be generated at the end of the specified-count block transfer.

Table 15.7 lists the register functions in block transfer mode, and Figure 15.7 shows the memory map for block transfer mode.

Table 15.7 Register functions in block transfer mode

Register	Description	Value written back by writing transfer information
SAR	Transfer source address	- When MRB.DTS bit is 0 Increment, decrement, or fixed^{*1} - When MRB.DTS bit is 1 SAR register initial value.
DAR	Transfer destination address	- When MRB.DTS bit is 0 DAR register initial value - When MRB.DTS bit is 1 Increment, decrement, or fixed^{*1}.
CRAH	Holds block size	CRAH
CRAL	Block size counter	CRAH
CRB	Block transfer counter	CRB - 1

Note 1. Write-back is skipped in address-fixed mode.

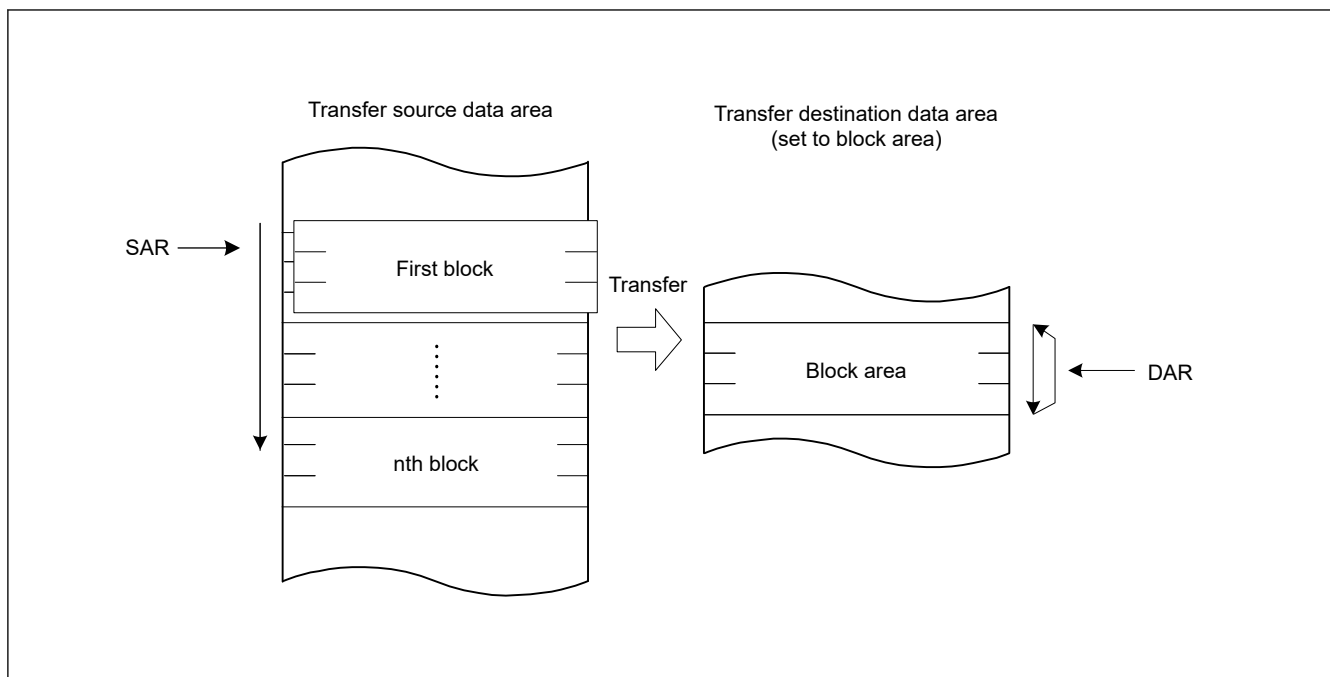


Figure 15.7 Memory map of block transfer mode

15.4.6 Chain Transfer

Setting the MRB.CHNE bit to 1 allows chain transfer to be performed continuously on a single activation source. If the MRB.CHNE is set to 1 and CHNS to 0, an interrupt request to the CPU is not generated on completion of the specified number of rounds of transfer or by setting the MRB.DISEL bit to 1. An interrupt request is sent to the CPU each time DTC data transfer is performed. Data transfer has no effect on the ICU.IELSRn.IR flag of the activation source.

The SAR, DAR, CRA, CRB, MRA, and MRB registers can be set independently of each other to define the data transfer.

Figure 15.8 shows a chain transfer operation.

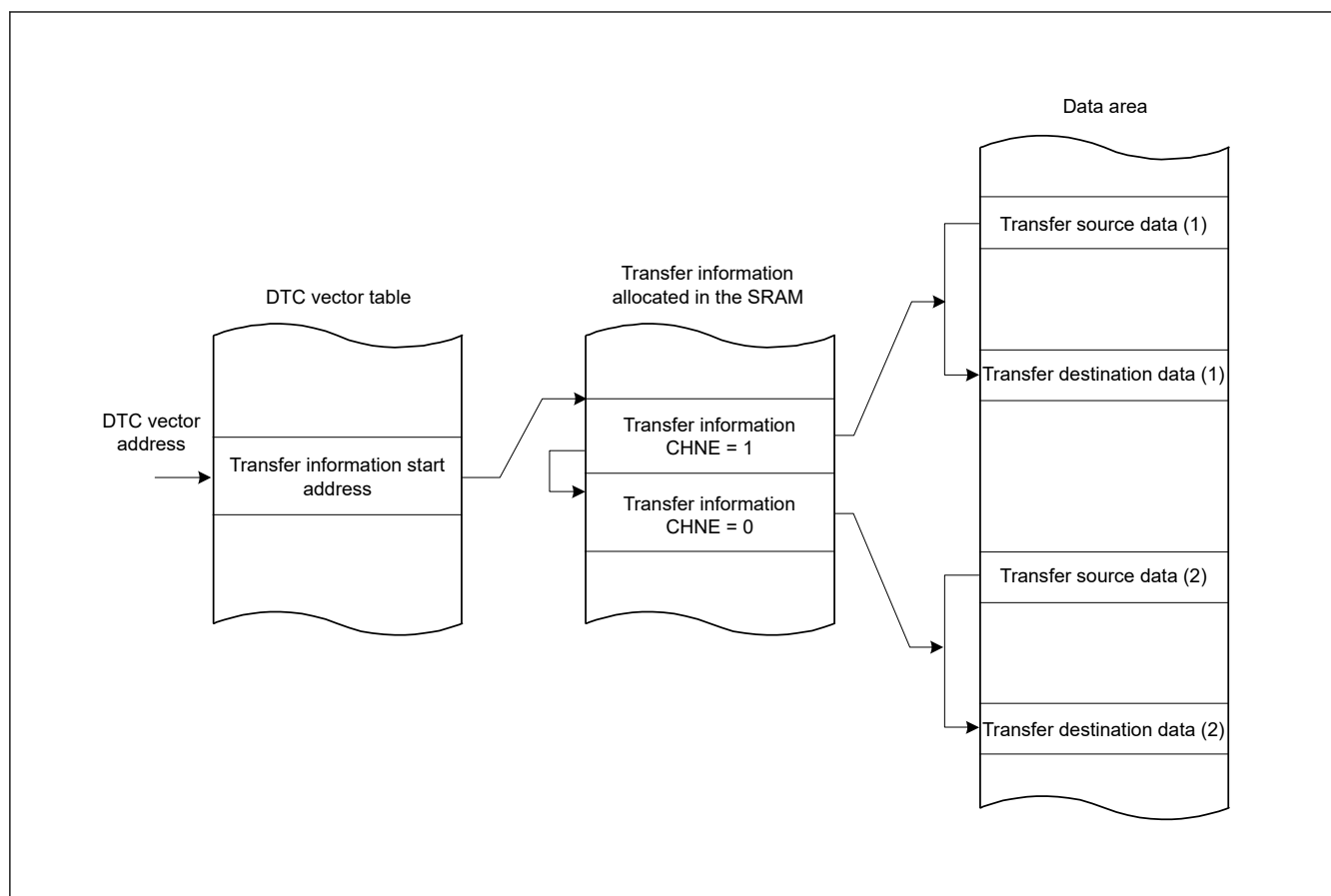


Figure 15.8 Chain transfer operation

Writing 1 to the MRB.CHNE and CHNS bits enables chain transfer to be performed only after completion of the specified data transfer. In repeat transfer mode, chain transfer is performed after completion of the specified data transfer. For details on chain transfer conditions, see [Table 15.3](#).

15.4.7 Operation Timing

[Figure 15.9](#) to [Figure 15.12](#) are timing diagrams that show the minimum number of execution cycles.

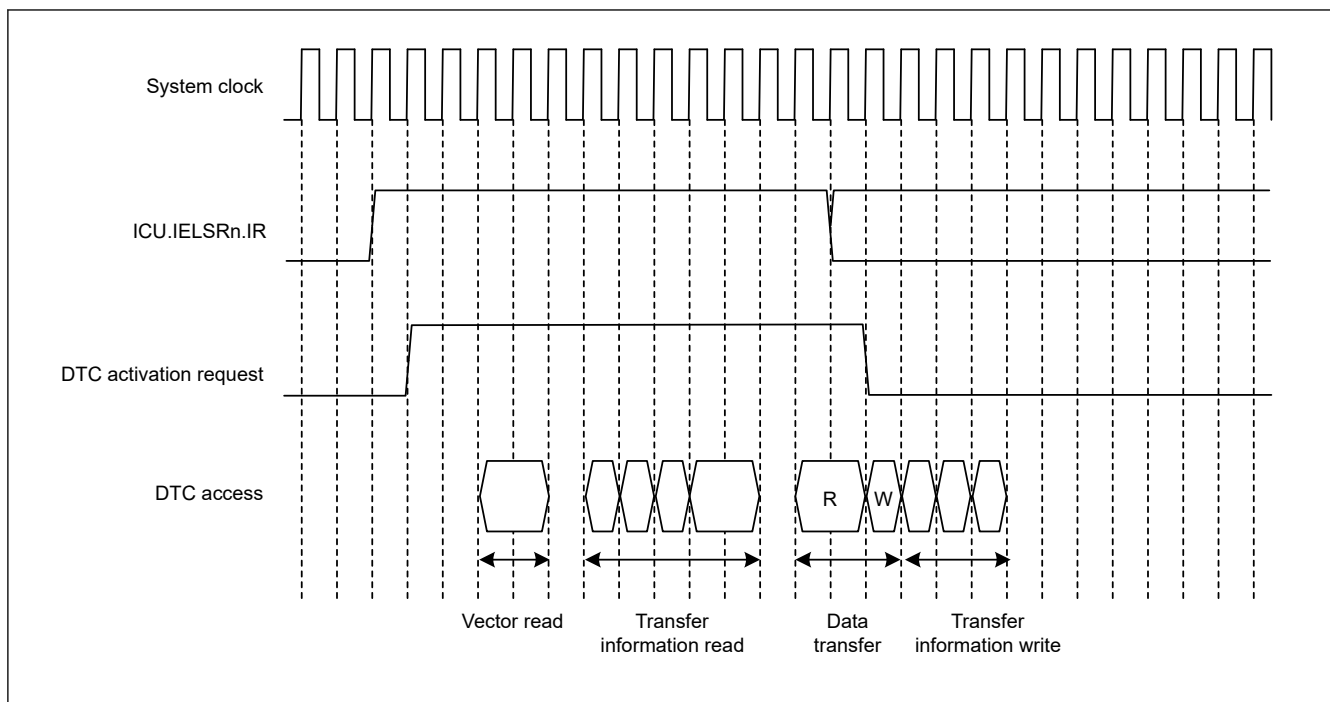


Figure 15.9 Example 1 of DTC operation timing in normal transfer and repeat transfer modes

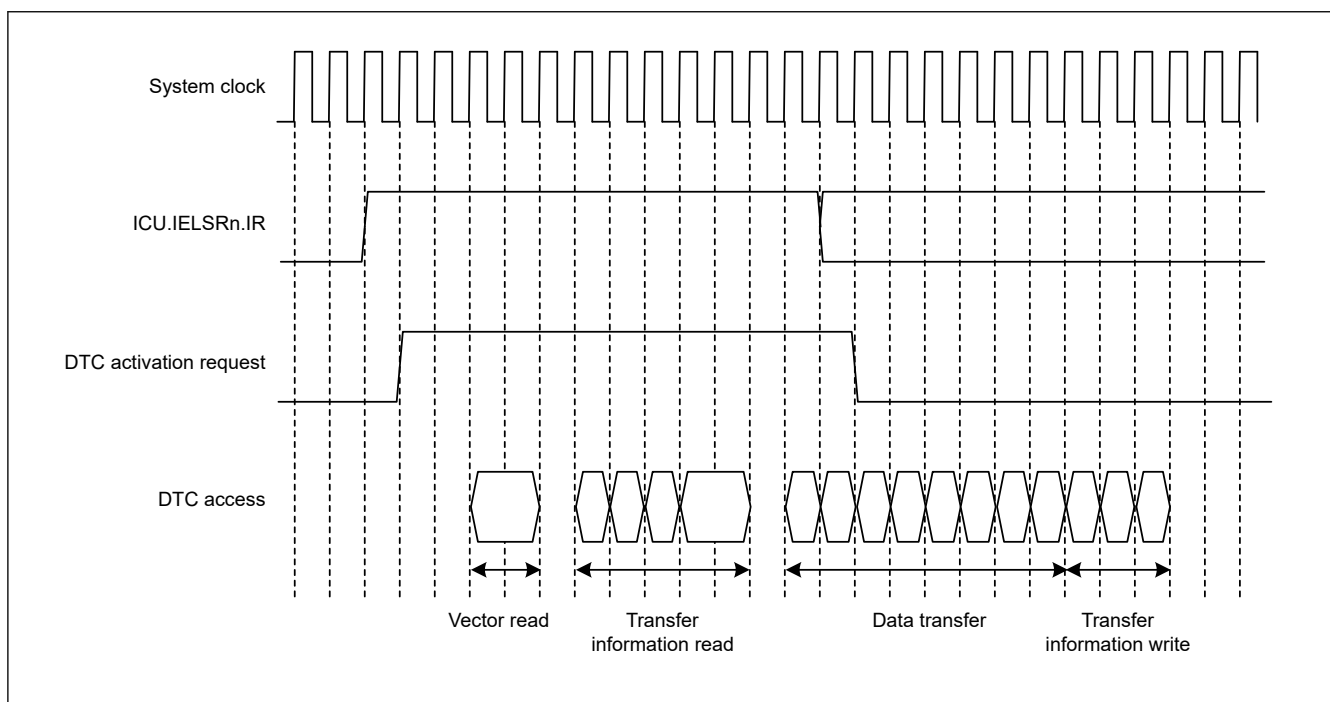


Figure 15.10 Example 2 of DTC operation timing in block transfer mode when the block size = 4

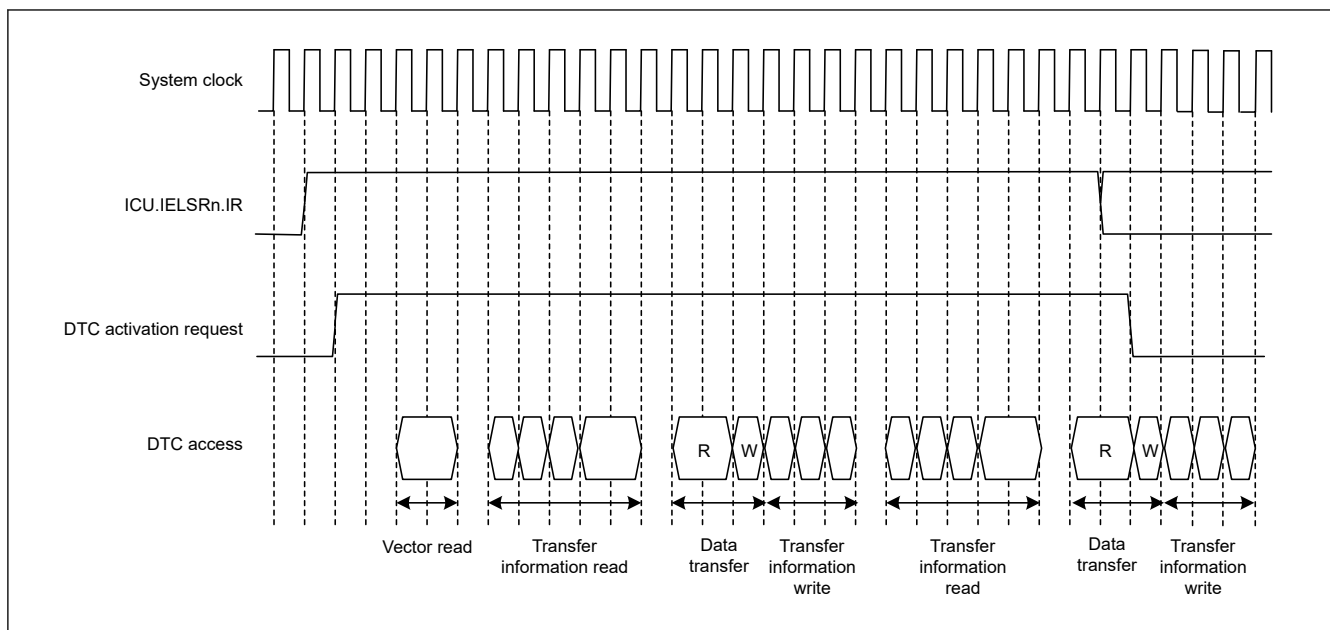


Figure 15.11 Example 3 of DTC operation timing for chain transfer

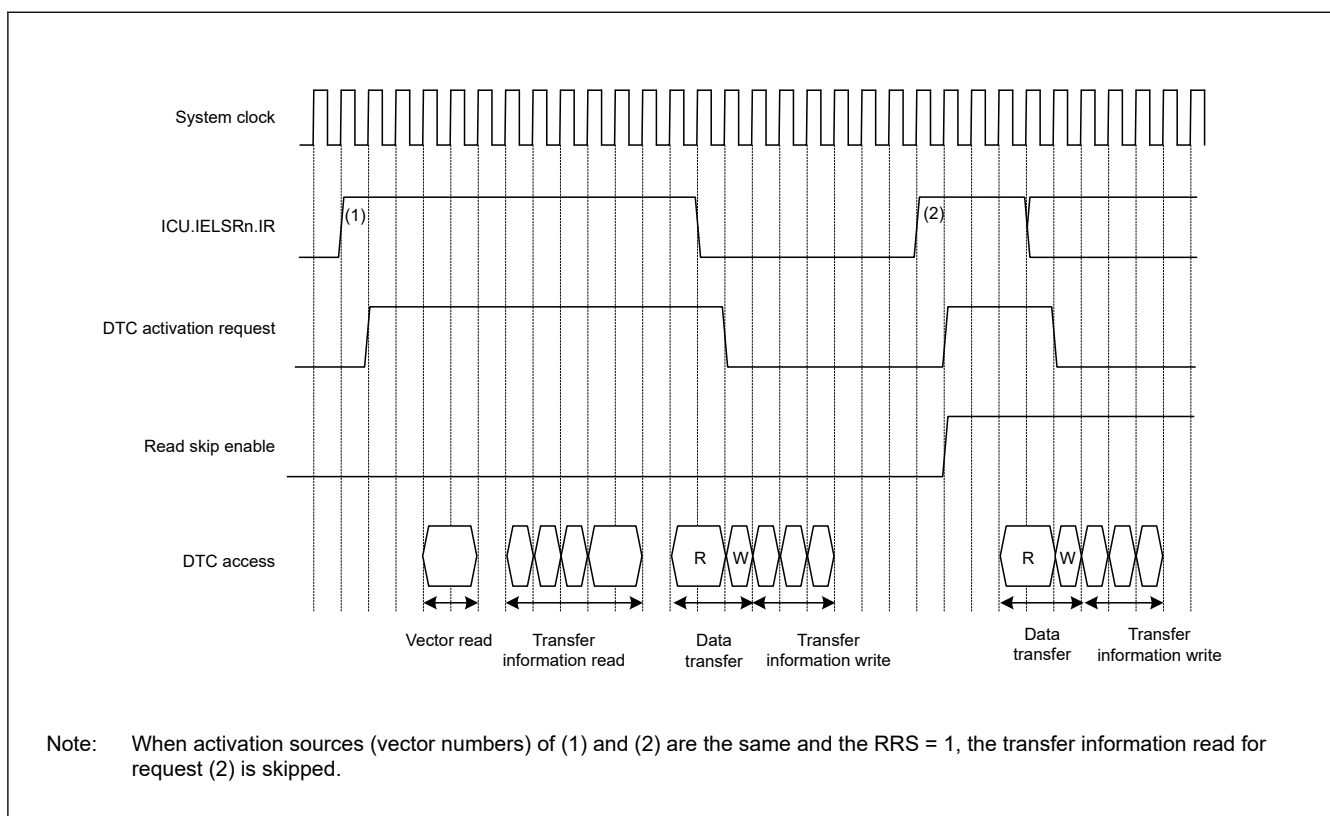


Figure 15.12 Example of operation when a transfer information read is skipped with the vector, transfer information, and transfer destination data on the SRAM, and the transfer source data on the peripheral module

15.4.8 Execution Cycles of DTC

Table 15.8 lists the execution cycles of single data transfer of the DTC. For the order of the execution states, see [section 15.4.7. Operation Timing](#).

Table 15.8 Execution cycles of DTC

P: Block size (initial settings of CRAH and CRAL)

Cv: Cycles for access to vector transfer information storage destination

Ci: Cycles for access to transfer information storage destination address

Cr: Cycles for access to data read destination

Cw: Cycles for access to data write destination

The unit is for system clocks (ICLK) + 1 in the Vector read, Transfer information read, and Data transfer read columns and 2 in the Internal operation column.

Cv, Ci, Cr, and Cw vary depending on the corresponding access destination. For the number of cycles for respective access destinations, see [section 37, SRAM](#), [section 38, Flash Memory](#), and [section 13, Buses](#).

The frequency ratio of the system clock and peripheral clock is also taken into consideration.

The DTC response time is the time from when the DTC activation source is detected until DTC transfer starts.

[Table 15.8](#) does not include the time until DTC data transfer starts after the DTC activation source becomes active.

Transfer mode	Vector read		Transfer information read		Transfer information write			Data transfer		Internal operation	
								Read	Write		
Normal	Cv + 1	0*1	4 × Ci + 1	0*1	3 × Ci + 1*2	2 × Ci + 1*3	Ci*4	Cr + 1	Cw + 1	2	0*1
Repeat								Cr + 1	Cw + 1		
Block*5								P × Cr	P × Cw		

Note 1. When transfer information read is skipped.

Note 2. When neither SAR nor DAR is set to address-fixed mode.

Note 3. When SAR or DAR is set to address-fixed mode.

Note 4. When SAR and DAR are set to address-fixed mode.

Note 5. When the block size is 2 or more. If the block size is 1, the cycle number for normal transfer applies.

15.4.9 DTC Bus Mastership Release Timing

The DTC does not release the bus mastership during transfer information reads. Before the transfer information is read or written, the bus is arbitrated according to the priority determined by the bus master arbitrator. For bus arbitration, see [section 13, Buses](#).

15.5 DTC Setting Procedure

Before using the DTC, set the DTC Vector Base Register (DTCVBR). Set the ICU.IELSRn.IELS[4:0] bits to 0 to disable the interrupt in the NVIC and follow the procedure in [Table 15.9](#) to set the DTC.

Table 15.9 DTC setting procedure

No.	Step Name	Description
1	Set the DTCCR.RRS bit to 0	Set the DTCCR.RRS bit to 0 to reset the transfer information read skip flag. After that, the transfer information read is not skipped while the DTC is activated. Be sure to specify this setting when the transfer information is updated.
2	Set transfer information (MRA, MRB, SAR, DAR, CRA, and CRB)	Allocate transfer information (MRA, MRB, SAR, DAR, CRA, and CRB) in the data area. To set transfer information, see section 15.2, Register Descriptions . To allocate transfer information, see section 15.3.1, Allocating Transfer Information and DTC Vector Table .
3	Set transfer information start addresses in the DTC vector table	Set the transfer information start addresses in the DTC vector table. To set the DTC vector table, see section 15.3.1, Allocating Transfer Information and DTC Vector Table .
4	Set the DTCCR.RRS bit to 1	Set the DTCCR.RRS bit to 1 to enable skipping of the second and subsequent transfer information read cycles for continuous DTC activation from the same interrupt source. The RRS bit can be set to 1, but if this is set during a DTC transfer, it becomes valid from the next transfer.
5	Set the ICU.IELSRn.DTCE bit to 1. Set the ICU.IELSRn.IELS[4:0] as the interrupt source. The interrupt should be enabled in the NVIC.	Set the ICU.IELSRn.DTCE bit to 1. Set ICU.IELSRn.IELS[4:0] as interrupt sources that trigger DTC. The interrupt must be enabled in the NVIC. See section 12.3.2, Event Number in section 12, Interrupt Controller Unit (ICU) .
6	Set the enable bit for an activation source interrupt	Set the enable bit for the activation source interrupts to 1. When a source interrupt is generated, the DTC is activated. To set the interrupt source enable bit, see the settings for the modules that are to be the activation sources.
7	Set the DTCST.DTCST bit to 1	Set the DTC Module Start bit (DTCST.DTCST) to 1.

Note: The DTCST.DTCST bit can be set even if the setting for each activation source is not completed.

15.6 Examples of DTC Usage

15.6.1 Normal Transfer

This section provides an example of DTC usage and its application when receiving 128 bytes of data from an SCI.

(1) Transfer information settings

In the MRA register, select a fixed source address (MRA.SM[1:0] = 00b), normal transfer mode (MRA.MD[1:0] = 00b), and byte-sized transfer (MRA.SZ[1:0] = 00b). In the MRB register, specify incrementation of the destination address (MRB.DM[1:0] = 10b) and single data transfer by a single interrupt (MRB.CHNE = 0 and MRB.DISEL = 0). The MRB.DTS bit can be set to any value. Set the RDR register address of the SCI in the SAR register, the start address of the SRAM area for data storage in the DAR register, and 128 (0x0080) in the CRA register. The CRB register can be set to any value.

(2) DTC vector table settings

The start address of the transfer information for the RXI interrupt is set in the vector table for the DTC.

(3) ICU settings and DTC module activation

Set the ICU.IELSRn.DTCE bit to 1 and set ICU.IELSRn.IELS[4:0] as the SCI interrupt. The interrupt must be enabled in the NVIC. Set the DTCST.DTCST bit to 1.

(4) SCI settings

Enable the SCIn_RXI (n = 0 to 2, 9) interrupt by setting the SCR.RIE bit in the SCI to 1. If a reception error occurs during the SCI receive operation, reception stops. To manage this, use settings that allow the CPU to accept receive error interrupts.

(5) DTC transfer

Each time a reception of 1 byte by the SCI is complete, an SCIn_RXI interrupt is generated to activate the DTC. The DTC transfers the received byte from the RDR of the SCI to the SRAM, after which the DAR register is incremented and the CRA register is decremented.

(6) Interrupt handling

After 128 rounds of data transfer are complete and the value in the CRA register becomes 0, an SCIn_RXI interrupt request is generated for the CPU. Complete the process in the handling routine for this interrupt.

15.6.2 Chain Transfer

This section provides an example of chain transfer by the DTC and describes its use in the output of pulses by the General PWM Timer (GPT). You can use chain transfer to transfer PWM timer compare data and change the period of the PWM timer for the GPT.

For the first of the chain transfers, normal transfer mode is specified for transfer to the GPTm.GTCCRC register (m = 320, 164 to 169). For the second transfer, normal transfer mode is specified for transfer to the GPTm.GTCCRE register (m = 320, 164 to 169). For the third transfer of the chained transfer, normal transfer mode for transfer to the GPTm.GTPBR register (m = 320, 164 to 169) is specified. This is because clearing of the activation source and generation of an interrupt on completion of the specified number of transfers are restricted to the third of the chain transfers, that is, transfer while MRB.CHNE = 0.

The following example shows how to use the counter overflow interrupt with the GPT320.GTPR register as an activating source for the DTC.

(1) First transfer information setting

Set up transfer to the GPT320.GTCCRC register.

1. In the MRA register, select incrementation of the source address (MRA.SM[1:0] = 10b).
2. Set the transfer to normal transfer mode (MRA.MD[1:0] = 00b) and word-sized transfer (MRA.SZ[1:0] = 10b).
3. In the MRB register, select the destination address as fixed (MRB.DM[1:0] = 00b) and set up chain transfer (MRB.CHNE = 1 and MRB.CHNS = 0).

4. Set the SAR register to the first address of the data table.
5. Set the DAR register to the address of the GPT320.GTCCRC register.
6. Set the CRAH and CRAL registers to the size of the data table. The CRB register can be set to any value.

(2) Second transfer information setting

Set up for transfer to the GPT320.GTCCRE register.

1. In the MRA register, select incrementation of the source address (MRA.SM[1:0] = 10b).
2. Set the transfer to normal transfer mode (MRA.MD[1:0] = 00b) and word-sized transfer (MRA.SZ[1:0] = 10b).
3. In the MRB register, select the destination address as fixed (MRB.DM[1:0] = 00b) and set up chain transfer (MRB.CHNE = 1, MRB.CHNS = 0).
4. Set the SAR register to the first address of the data table.
5. Set the DAR register to the address of the GPT320.GTCCRE register.
6. Set the CRAH and CRAL registers to the size of the data table. The CRB register can be set to any value.

(3) Third transfer information set

Set up transfer to the GPT320.GTPBR register.

1. In the MRA register, select incrementation of the source address (MRA.SM[1:0] = 10b).
2. Set the transfer to normal transfer mode (MRA.MD[1:0] = 00b) and word-sized transfer (MRA.SZ[1:0] = 10b).
3. In the MRB register, select the destination address as fixed (MRB.DM[1:0] = 00b) and set up single data transfer per interrupt (MRB.CHNE = 0, MRB.DISEL = 0). The MRB.DTS bit can be set to any value.
4. Set the SAR register to the first address of the data table.
5. Set the DAR register to the address of the GPT320.GTPBR register.
6. Set the CRA register to the size of the data table. The CRB register can be set to any value.

(4) Transfer information assignment

Place the transfer information for use in the transfer to the GPT320.GTPBR immediately after the transfer control information for use in the GPT320.GTCCRC and GPT320.GTCCRE registers.

(5) DTC vector table

In the DTC vector table, set the address where the transfer control information for use in transfer to the GPT320.GTCCRC and GPT320.GTCCRE registers starts.

(6) ICU setting and DTC module activation

1. Set the ICU.IELSRn.DTCE bit associated with the GPT320 counter overflow interrupt.
2. Set the ICU.IELSRn.IELS[4:0] bits and specify the GPT320 counter overflow.
3. Set the DTCST.DTCST bit to 1.

(7) GPT settings

1. Set the GPT320.GTIOR register so that the GTCCRA and GTCCRB registers operate as output compare registers.
2. Set the default PWM timer compare values in the GPT320.GTCCRA and GPT320.GTCCRB registers and the next PWM timer compare values in the GPT320.GTCCRC and GPT320.GTCCRE registers.
3. Set the default PWM timer period values in the GPT320.GTPR register and the next PWM timer period values in the GPT320.GTPBR register.
4. Set 1 to the output bit in PmnPFS.PDR, and set 00011b to the Peripheral Select bits in PmnPFS.PSEL[4:0].

(8) GPT activation

Set the GPT320.GTSTR.CSTRT bits to 1 to start the GPT320.GTCNT counter.

(9) DTC transfer

Each time a GPT320 counter overflow is generated with the GPT320.GTPR register, the next PWM timer compare values are transferred to the GPT320.GTCCRC and GPT320.GTCCRE registers. The setting for the next PWM timer period is transferred to the GPT320.GTPBR register.

(10) Interrupt handling

After the specified rounds of data transfer are complete, for example when the value in the CRA register for GPT transfer becomes 0, a GPT320 counter overflow interrupt request is issued for the CPU. Complete the process for this interrupt in the handling routine.

15.6.3 Chain Transfer When Counter = 0

The second data transfer is performed only when the transfer counter is set to 0 in the first data transfer, and the first data transfer information is repeatedly changed in the second transfer. Chain transfer enables transfers to be repeated 256 times or more.

The following procedure shows an example of configuring a 1-KB input buffer, where the input buffer is set so that its lower address starts with 0x00. [Figure 15.13](#) shows a chain transfer when the counter = 0.

1. Set the normal transfer mode to input data for the first data transfer. Set the following:
 - (a) Transfer source address = fixed.
 - (b) CRA register = 0x0200 (512) times.
 - (c) MRB.CHNE bit = 1 (chain transfer is enabled).
 - (d) MRB.CHNS bit = 1 (chain transfer is performed only when the transfer counter is 0).
 - (e) MRB.DISEL bit = 0 (an interrupt request to the CPU is generated when the specified data transfer completes).
2. Prepare the upper 8-bit address of the start address at every 512 times of the transfer destination address for the first data transfer in a different area such as the flash. For example, when setting the input buffer to 0x8000 to 0x83FF, prepare 0x82 and 0x80.
3. For the second data transfer:
 - (a) Set the repeat transfer mode (with transfer source and destination address = fixed) to reset the transfer counter of the first data transfer.
 - (b) Specify the CRA register in the first transfer information area for the transfer destination.
 - (c) Set the MRB.CHNE bit = 1 (chain transfer is enabled).
 - (d) Set the MRB.CHNS bit = 0 (select continuous chain transfer).
 - (e) Set the MRB.DISEL bit = 0 (an interrupt request to the CPU is generated when the specified data transfer completes).
 - (f) CRA register = 0x0101 (the transfer count is 1).
4. For the third data transfer:
 - (a) Set the repeat transfer mode (with the source as the repeat area) to reset the transfer destination address of the first data transfer.
 - (b) Specify the upper 8 bits of the DAR register in the first transfer information area for the transfer destination.
 - (c) Set the MRB.CHNE bit = 0 (chain transfer is disabled).
 - (d) Set the MRB.DISEL bit = 0 (an interrupt request to the CPU is generated when the specified data transfer completes).
 - (e) When setting the input buffer to 0x8000 to 0x83FF, also set the transfer counter to 2.
5. The first data transfer is performed by an interrupt 512 times. When the transfer counter of the first data transfer becomes 0, the second data transfer starts. Set the transfer counter of the first data transfer to 0x0200. The lower 8 bits of the transfer destination address and the transfer counter of the first data transfer becomes 0x0200.
6. The second data transfer is performed by an interrupt 1 times. When the transfer counter of the first data transfer becomes 0, the third data transfer starts. Set the upper 8 bits of the transfer destination address of the first data transfer to

0x82. The lower 8 bits of the transfer destination address becomes 0x00 and the transfer counter of the first data transfer becomes 0x0200.

7. In succession, the first data transfer is performed by an interrupt 512 times as specified for the first data transfer. When the transfer counter of the first data transfer becomes 0, the second data transfer starts. Set the transfer counter of the first data transfer to 0x0200. The lower 8 bits of the transfer destination address and the transfer counter of the first data transfer becomes 0x0200.
8. The second data transfer is performed by an interrupt 1 times. When the transfer counter of the first data transfer becomes 0, the third data transfer starts. Set the upper 8 bits of the transfer destination address of the first data transfer to 0x80. The lower 8 bits of the transfer destination address becomes 0x00 and the transfer counter of the first data transfer becomes 0x0200.
9. Steps 5 to 8 are repeated indefinitely. Because the second data transfer is in repeat transfer mode, no interrupt request to the CPU is generated.

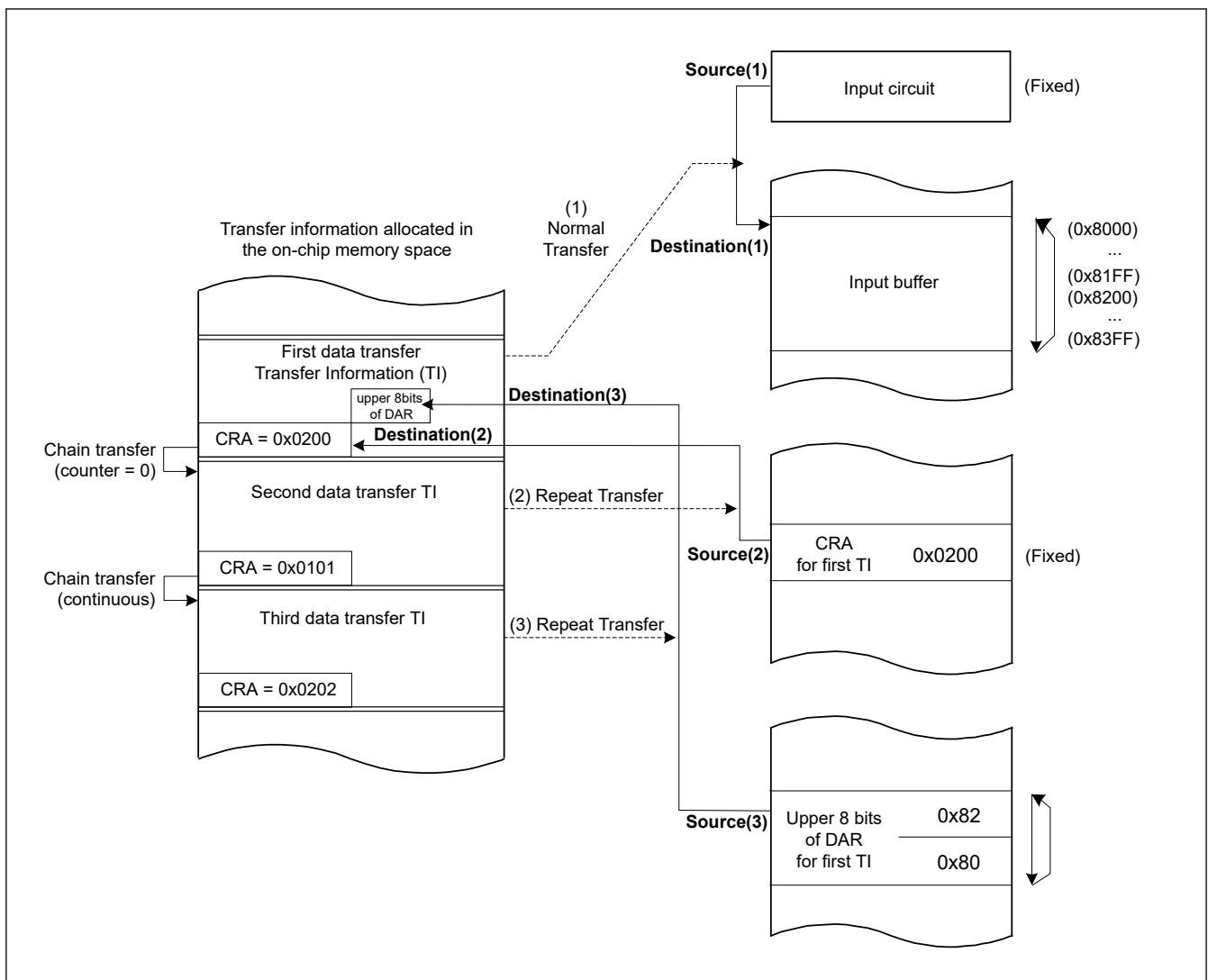


Figure 15.13 Chain transfer when counter = 0

15.7 Interrupt

15.7.1 Interrupt Sources

When the DTC completes data transfer of the specified count or when data transfer with MRB.DISEL set to 1 is complete, a DTC activation source generates an interrupt to the CPU. Two types of interrupt are available: interrupts triggered by a DTC activation (per channel) and an interrupt triggered by the event signal DTC_COMPLETE (common to all channels). Interrupts to the CPU are controlled according to the settings in the NVIC and the ICU.IELSRn.IELS[4:0] bits. See [section](#)

[12, Interrupt Controller Unit \(ICU\)](#). The DTC prioritizes activation sources by granting the smaller interrupt vector numbers higher priority. The priority of interrupts to the CPU is determined by the NVIC priority.

15.8 Event Link

The DTC can produce an event link request on completion of one transfer request.

15.9 Low Power Consumption Function

Before transitioning to the module-stop state, or Software Standby mode without Snooze mode transition, set the DTCST.DTCST bit to 0, and then perform the operations described in the following sections. The DTC is available in Snooze mode by setting the SYSTEM.SNZCR.SNZDTCEN bit to 1. See [section 10, Low Power Modes](#).

(1) Module-stop function

Writing 1 to the MSTPCRA.MSTPA22 bit enables the module-stop function of the DTC. If a DTC transfer is in progress when 1 is written to the MSTPCRA.MSTPA22 bit, the transition to the module-stop state proceeds after the DTC transfer ends. While the MSTPCRA.MSTPA22 bit is 1, accessing the DTC registers is prohibited. Writing 0 to the MSTPCRA.MSTPA22 bit releases the DTC from the module-stop state.

(2) Software Standby mode

Use the settings described in [section 10.7.1. Transition to Software Standby Mode](#).

If DTC transfer operations are in progress when the WFI instruction is executed, the transition to Software Standby mode is executed after the completion of the DTC transfer.

(3) Snooze mode

When the snooze control circuit receives a snooze request in Software Standby mode, the MCU transitions to Snooze mode. See [section 10.8.1. Transition to Snooze Mode](#). DTC operation in Snooze mode can be selected in the SYSTEM.SNZCR.SNZDTCEN bit. If DTC operation is enabled in Snooze mode, before transitioning to Software Standby mode, set the DTCST.DTCST bit to 1. To return to Software Standby mode through DTC, set SYSTEM.SNZEDCR0.DTCZRED or SYSTEM.SNZEDCR0.DTCNZRED to 1. See [section 10.8.3. Returning from Snooze Mode to Software Standby Mode](#). SYSTEM.SNZEDCR0.DTCZRED enables or disables a snooze end request on completion of the last DTC transmission, detected on DTC transmission completion when CRA and CRB are 0. SYSTEM.SNZEDCR0.DTCNZRED enables or disables a snooze end request on a not last DTC transmission completion (CRA and CRB are not 0), detected on DTC transmission completion when CRA and CRB are not 0. The DTC activation request from the ICU is stopped during Software Standby mode but not stopped during Snooze mode.

(4) Notes on low power consumption function

For the WFI instruction and the register setting procedure, see [section 10, Low Power Modes](#).

To perform a DTC transfer after returning from a low power mode without a Snooze mode transition, set the DTCST.DTCST bit to 1 again.

To use a request that is generated in Software Standby mode as an interrupt request to the CPU but not as a DTC activation request, specify the CPU as the interrupt request destination as described in [section 12.4.1. Detecting Interrupts](#), then execute the WFI instruction. If DTC operation is enabled in Snooze mode, do not use the module-stop function of the DTC.

15.10 Usage Notes

15.10.1 Transfer Information Start Address

You must set multiples of 4 for the transfer information start addresses in the vector table. Otherwise, such addresses are accessed with their lowest 2 bits regarded as 00b.

16. Event Link Controller (ELC)

16.1 Overview

The Event Link Controller (ELC) uses the event requests generated by various peripheral modules as source signals to connect them to different modules, allowing direct link between the modules without CPU intervention.

Table 16.1 lists the ELC specifications, and Figure 16.1 shows a block diagram.

Table 16.1 ELC specifications

Item	Description
Event link function	112 types of event signals can be directly connected to modules. The ELC generates the ELC event signal, and events that activate the DTC.
Module-stop function	Module-stop state can be set.

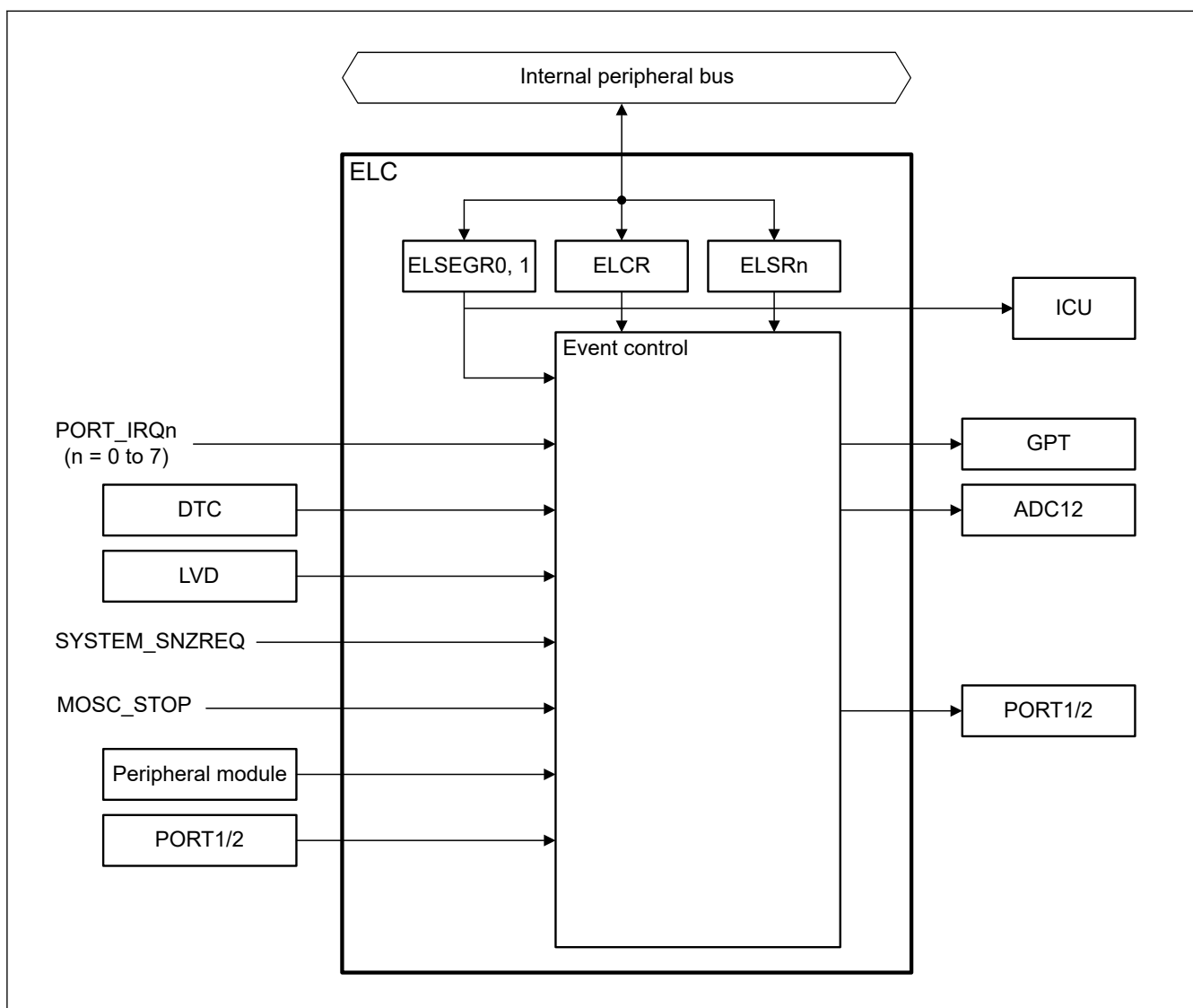


Figure 16.1 ELC block diagram

16.2 Register Descriptions

16.2.1 ELCR : Event Link Controller Register

Base address: ELC = 0x4004_1000

Offset address: 0x00

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	ELCON	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
6:0	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
7	ELCON	All Event Link Enable 0: ELC function is disabled 1: ELC function is enabled	R/W

The ELCR register controls the ELC operation.

16.2.2 ELSEGRn : Event Link Software Event Generation Register n (n = 0, 1)

Base address: ELC = 0x4004_1000

Offset address: 0x02 + 0x02 × n

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	WI	WE	—	—	—	—	—	SEG
Value after reset:	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	SEG	Software Event Generation 0: Normal operation 1: Software event is generated	W
5:1	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
6	WE	SEG Bit Write Enable 0: Write to SEG bit disabled 1: Write to SEG bit enabled	R/W
7	WI	ELSEGR Register Write Disable 0: Write to ELSEGR register enabled 1: Write to ELSEGR register disabled	W

SEG bit (Software Event Generation)

When 1 is written to the SEG bit while the WE bit is 1, a software event is generated. This bit is read as 0. Even when 1 is written to this bit, data is not stored. The WE bit must be set to 1 before writing to this bit.

A software event can trigger a linked DTC event.

WE bit (SEG Bit Write Enable)

The SEG bit can only be written to when the WE bit is 1. Clear the WI bit to 0 before writing to this bit.

[Setting condition]

- When 1 is written to this bit while the WI bit is 0, this bit becomes 1.

[Clearing condition]

- When 0 is written to this bit while the WI bit is 0, this bit becomes 0.

WI bit (ELSEGR Register Write Disable)

The ELSEGR register can only be written to when the write value to the WI bit is 0. This bit is read as 1. Before setting the WE or SEG bit, the WI bit must be set to 0.

16.2.3 ELSRn : Event Link Setting Register n (n = 0 to 3, 8, 9, 14, 15)

Base address: ELC = 0x4004_1000

Offset address: 0x10 + 0x04 × n

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	ELS[7:0]							
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7:0	ELS[7:0]	Event Link Select 0x00: Event output disabled for the associated peripheral module 0x01: Number setting for the event signal to be linked ⋮ 0xC4: Number setting for the event signal to be linked Others: Settings prohibited	R/W
15:8	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

The ELSRn register specifies an event signal to be linked to each peripheral module. [Table 16.2](#) shows the association between the ELSRn register and the peripheral modules. [Table 16.3](#) shows the association between the event signal names set in the ELSRn register and the signal numbers.

Table 16.2 Association between the ELSRn registers and peripheral functions

Register name	Peripheral function (module)	Event name
ELSR0	GPT (A)	ELC_GPTA
ELSR1	GPT (B)	ELC_GPTB
ELSR2	GPT (C)	ELC_GPTC
ELSR3	GPT (D)	ELC_GPTD
ELSR8	ADC12A	ELC_AD00
ELSR9	ADC12B	ELC_AD01
ELSR14	PORT1	ELC_PORT1
ELSR15	PORT2	ELC_PORT2

Table 16.3 Association between event signal names set in ELSRn.ELS[7:0] bits and signal numbers (1 of 4)

Event number	Interrupt request source	Name	Description
0x01	Port	PORT_IRQ0*1	External pin interrupt 0
0x02		PORT_IRQ1*1	External pin interrupt 1
0x03		PORT_IRQ2*1	External pin interrupt 2
0x04		PORT_IRQ3*1	External pin interrupt 3
0x05		PORT_IRQ4*1	External pin interrupt 4
0x06		PORT_IRQ5*1	External pin interrupt 5
0x07		PORT_IRQ6*1	External pin interrupt 6
0x08		PORT_IRQ7*1	External pin interrupt 7
0x0A	DTC	DTC_DTCEND*3	DTC transfer end

Table 16.3 Association between event signal names set in ELSRn.ELS[7:0] bits and signal numbers (2 of 4)

Event number	Interrupt request source	Name	Description
0x0D	LVD	LVD_LVD1	Voltage monitor 1 interrupt
0x0E		LVD_LVD2	Voltage monitor 2 interrupt
0x0F	MOSC	MOSC_STOP	Main clock oscillation stop
0x10	Low Power Mode	SYSTEM_SNZREQ*2 *3	Snooze entry
0x11	AGT0	AGT0_AGTI	AGT interrupt
0x12		AGT0_AGTCMAI	Compare match A
0x13		AGT0_AGTCMBI	Compare match B
0x14	AGT1	AGT1_AGTI	AGT interrupt
0x15		AGT1_AGTCMAI	Compare match A
0x16		AGT1_AGTCMBI	Compare match B
0x17	IWDT	IWDT_NMIUNDF	IWDT underflow
0x18	WDT	WDT_NMIUNDF	WDT underflow
0x1A	RTC	RTC_PRD	Periodic interrupt
0x1C	ADC12	ADC120_ADI	A/D scan end interrupt
0x20		ADC120_WCMPPM*3	Compare match
0x21		ADC120_WCMPUM*3	Compare mismatch
0x34	DOC	DOC_DOPCI*3	Data operation circuit interrupt
0x3D	I/O Ports	IOPORT_GROUP1	Port 1 event
0x3E		IOPORT_GROUP2	Port 2 event
0x3F	ELC	ELC_SWEVT0	Software event 0
0x40		ELC_SWEVT1	Software event 1
0x46	GPT320	GPT0_CCMPA	Compare match A
0x47		GPT0_CCMPB	Compare match B
0x48		GPT0_CMPC	Compare match C
0x49		GPT0_CMPD	Compare match D
0x4A		GPT0_OVF	Overflow
0x4B		GPT0_UDF	Underflow
0x5E	GPT164	GPT4_CCMPA	Compare match A
0x5F		GPT4_CCMPB	Compare match B
0x60		GPT4_CMPC	Compare match C
0x61		GPT4_CMPD	Compare match D
0x62		GPT4_OVF	Overflow
0x63		GPT4_UDF	Underflow
0x64	GPT165	GPT5_CCMPA	Compare match A
0x65		GPT5_CCMPB	Compare match B
0x66		GPT5_CMPC	Compare match C
0x67		GPT5_CMPD	Compare match D
0x68		GPT5_OVF	Overflow
0x69		GPT5_UDF	Underflow

Table 16.3 Association between event signal names set in ELSRn.ELS[7:0] bits and signal numbers (3 of 4)

Event number	Interrupt request source	Name	Description
0x6A	GPT166	GPT6_CCMPA	Compare match A
0x6B		GPT6_CCMPB	Compare match B
0x6C		GPT6_CMPC	Compare match C
0x6D		GPT6_CMPD	Compare match D
0x6E		GPT6_OVF	Overflow
0x6F		GPT6_UDF	Underflow
0x70	GPT	GPT_UVWEDGE	UVW edge event
0x71	SCI0	SCI0_RXI*4	Receive data full
0x72		SCI0_TXI*4	Transmit data empty
0x73		SCI0_TEI	Transmit end
0x74		SCI0_ERI*4	Receive error
0x75		SCI0_AM	Address match event
0x77	SCI1	SCI1_RXI	Receive data full
0x78		SCI1_TXI	Transmit data empty
0x79		SCI1_TEI	Transmit end
0x7A		SCI1_ERI	Receive error
0x7B		SCI1_AM	Address match event
0x7C	SCI9	SCI9_RXI	Receive data full
0x7D		SCI9_TXI	Transmit data empty
0x7E		SCI9_TEI	Transmit end
0x7F		SCI9_ERI	Receive error
0x80		SCI9_AM	Address match event
0x81	SPI0	SPI0_SPRI	Receive buffer full
0x82		SPI0_SPTI	Transmit buffer empty
0x83		SPI0_SPII	Idle
0x84		SPI0_SPEI	Error
0x85		SPI0_SPTEND	Transmission completed event
0x8E	SCI2	SCI2_RXI	Receive data full
0x8F		SCI2_TXI	Transmit data empty
0x90		SCI2_TEI	Transmit end
0x91		SCI2_ERI	Receive error
0x92		SCI2_AM	Address match event
0x98	GPT167	GPT7_CCMPA	Compare match A
0x99		GPT7_CCMPB	Compare match B
0x9A		GPT7_CMPC	Compare match C
0x9B		GPT7_CMPD	Compare match D
0x9C		GPT7_OVF	Overflow
0x9D		GPT7_UDF	Underflow

Table 16.3 Association between event signal names set in ELSRn.ELS[7:0] bits and signal numbers (4 of 4)

Event number	Interrupt request source	Name	Description
0x9E	GPT168	GPT8_CCMPA	Compare match A
0x9F		GPT8_CCMPB	Compare match B
0xA0		GPT8_CMPC	Compare match C
0xA1		GPT8_CMPD	Compare match D
0xA2		GPT8_OVF	Overflow
0xA3		GPT8_UDF	Underflow
0xA4	GPT169	GPT9_CCMPA	Compare match A
0xA5		GPT9_CCMPB	Compare match B
0xA6		GPT9_CMPC	Compare match C
0xA7		GPT9_CMPD	Compare match D
0xA8		GPT9_OVF	Overflow
0xA9		GPT9_UDF	Underflow
0xAA	IIC/I3C	I3C_RESP	Response buffer full
0xAB		I3C_CMD	Command buffer empty
0xAC		I3C_IBI	IBI Status buffer full
0xAD		I3C_RX	Rx Data buffer full
0xAE		I3C_TX	Tx Data buffer empty
0xAF		I3C_RCV	Receive Status buffer full
0xB4		I3C_TEND	Transmit end
0xB5		I3C_EEI	Transfer error or event occurrence
0xBF	UARTA0	UARTA0_INTUT	Transmission transfer end or buffer empty interrupt
0xC0		UARTA0_INTUR	Reception transfer end
0xC1		UARTA0_INTURE	Reception communication error occurrence
0xC2	UARTA1	UARTA1_INTUT	Transmission transfer end or buffer empty interrupt
0xC3		UARTA1_INTUR	Reception transfer end
0xC4		UARTA1_INTURE	Reception communication error occurrence

Note 1. Only pulse (edge detection) is supported.

Note 2. ELSR8, 9, 14, and 15 can select this event.

Note 3. This event can occur in Snooze mode.

Note 4. This event is not supported in FIFO mode.

16.3 Operation

16.3.1 Relation Between Interrupt Handling and Event Linking

Event number for an event link is the same as that for the associated interrupt source. For information on generating event signals, see the explanation in the chapter for each event source module.

16.3.2 Linking Events

When an event occurs and that event is already set as a trigger in the Event Link Setting Register (ELSRn), the associated module is activated. The operation of the module must be set up in advance. [Table 16.4](#) lists the operations of modules when an event occurs.

Table 16.4 Module operations when an event occurs

Module	Operations when event is input
GPT	• Start counting • Stop counting • Clear counting • Up counting • Down counting • Input capture
ADC12	Start A/D conversion
I/O Ports	• Change pin output based on the EORR (reset) or EOSR (set) • Latch pin state to EIDR • The following ports can be used for the ELC: – Port 1 – Port 2

16.3.3 Example of Procedure for Linking Events

To link events:

1. Set the operation of the module for which an event is to be linked.
2. Set the appropriate ELSRn.ELS[7:0] bits for the module to be linked.
3. Set the ELCR.ELCON bit to 1 to enable linkage of all events.
4. Configure the module from which an event is output and activate the module. The link between the two modules is now active.
5. To stop event linkage of modules individually, set 0 to the ELSRn.ELS[7:0] bit associated with the modules. To stop linkage of all the events, set the ELCR.ELCON bit to 0.

If event link output from the RTC is to be used, set the ELC after the RTC settings, for example, for initialization and time setting. Unintended events may be generated if RTC settings are made after the ELC settings.

If event link output from the LVD is to be used, set the ELC after setting the LVD. To disable the LVD, do so after setting 0x00 to the associated ELSRn register.

16.4 Usage Notes

16.4.1 Linking DTC Transfer End Signals as Events

When linking the DTC transfer end signals as events, do not set the same peripheral module as the DTC transfer destination and event link destination. If set, the peripheral module might be started before DTC transfer to the peripheral module is complete.

16.4.2 Setting Clocks

To link events, you must enable the ELC and the related modules. The modules cannot operate if the related modules are in the module-stop state or in low power mode in which the module is stopped (Software Standby mode).

Some modules can perform in Snooze mode. For more information, see [Table 16.3](#) and [section 10, Low Power Modes](#).

16.4.3 Module-stop Function Setting

The Module Stop Control Register C (MSTPCRC) can enable or disable ELC operation. The ELC is initially stopped after reset. Releasing the module-stop state enables access to the registers. The ELCON bit must be set to 0 before disabling ELC operation using the Module Stop Control Register. For more information, see [Table 16.3](#) and [section 10, Low Power Modes](#).

16.4.4 ELC Delay Time

In [Figure 16.2](#), module A accesses module B through the ELC. There is a delay time in the ELC between module A and module B. [Table 16.5](#) shows the ELC delay time.

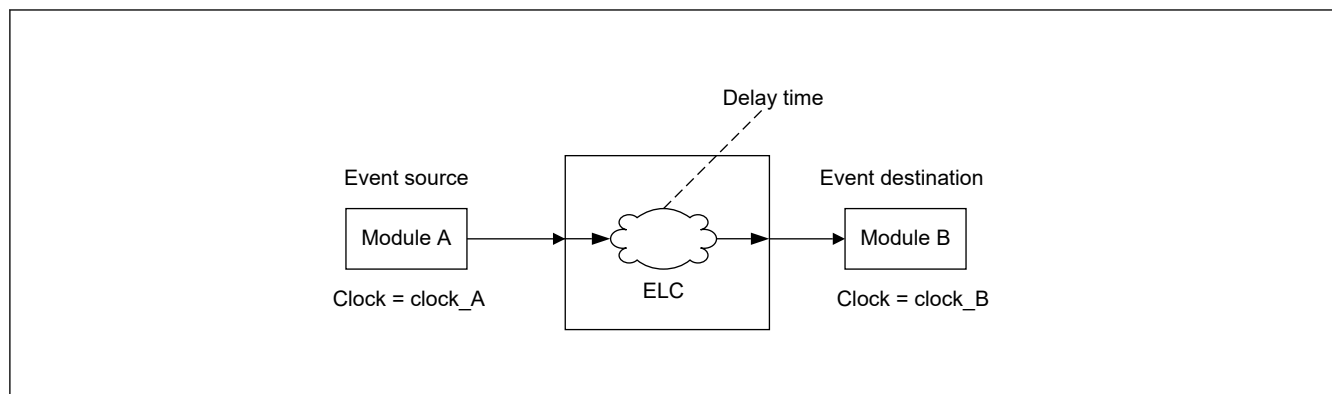


Figure 16.2 ELC delay time

Table 16.5 ELC delay time

Clock domain	Clock frequency	ELC delay time
clock_A = clock_B	clock_A = clock_B	0 cycle
clock_A ≠ clock_B	clock_A = clock_B	1 cycle to 2 cycles
	clock_A > clock_B	1 cycle to 2 cycles of clock_B
	clock_A < clock_B	1 cycle to 2 cycles of clock_A

17. I/O Ports

17.1 Overview

The I/O port pins operate as general I/O port pins, I/O pins for peripheral modules, interrupt input pins, analog I/O, port group function for the ELC.

All pins operate as input pins immediately after a reset, and pin functions are switched by register settings. The I/O ports and peripheral modules for each pin are specified in the associated registers.

Figure 17.1 shows a connection diagram for the I/O port registers. The configuration of the I/O ports differs depending on the package. Table 17.1 lists the I/O port specifications by package, and Table 17.2 lists the port functions.

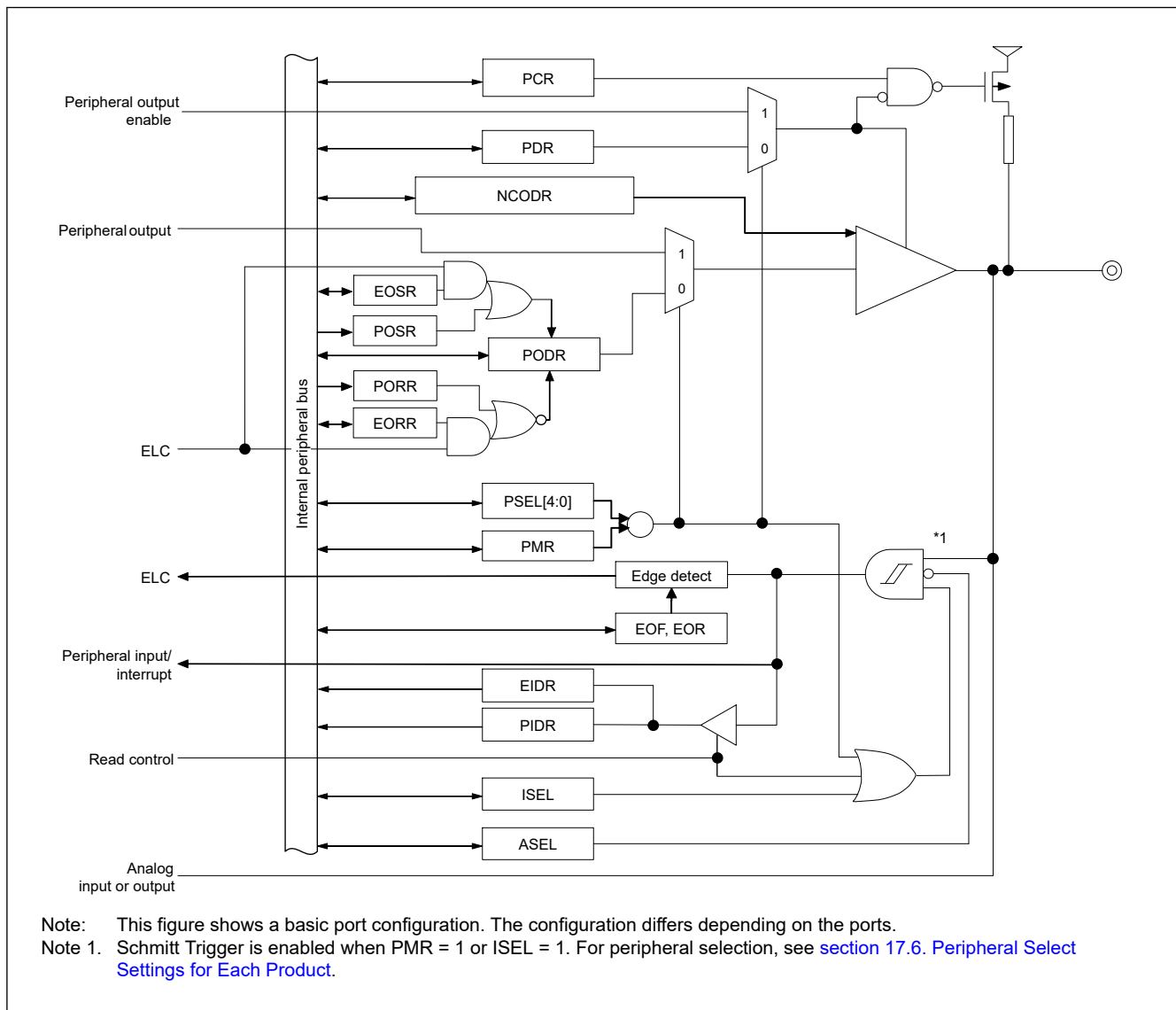


Figure 17.1 Connection diagram for I/O port registers

Table 17.1 shows the I/O port specifications and Table 17.2 shows the port functions.

Table 17.1 I/O port specifications

Port	Package		Package		Package		Package	
	64 pins	Number of pins	48 pins	Number of pins	32 pins	Number of pins	25 pins	Number of pins
Port 0	P000 to P004, P010 to P015	11	P000 to P002, P010 to P015	9	P010 to P015	6	P010 to P011, P014 to P015	4
Port 1	P100 to P113	14	P100 to P104, P108 to P112	10	P100 to P103, P108 to P110, P112	8	P100 to P103, P108 to P110	7
Port 2	P200 to P201, P204 to P207, P212 to P215	10	P200 to P201, P206 to P207, P212 to P215	8	P200 to P201, P212 to P215	6	P200 to P201, P212 to P213	4
Port 3	P300 to P304	5	P300 to P302	3	P300	1	P300	1
Port 4	P400 to P403, P407 to P411	9	P400 to P401, P407 to P409	5	P407	1	P407	1
Port 5	P500 to P502	3	P500	1	—	0	—	0
Port 9	P912 to P913	2	P912 to P913	2	P912 to P913	2	P912 to P913	2

Table 17.2 I/O port functions (1 of 3)

Port	Port name	Input pull-up	Input mode switching					Open drain output	5 V-tolerant	I/O
			GPIO	Peripheral						
				ANALOG USBCC	IRQ	I3C	Others			
		PMR = 0 ASEL = 0 and ISEL = 0	PMR = 0 ASEL = 1 and ISEL = 0	PMR = 0 ASEL = 0 and ISEL = 1	PMR = 1 PSEL[4:0] = 00111b*1	PMR = 1 PSEL[4:0] = xxxxxb*1				
P 0	P000 to P002	✓	CMOS	Disable	Schmitt	—	—	—	—	Input/Output
	P003	✓	CMOS	Disable	—	—	—	—	—	Input/Output
	P004	✓	CMOS	Disable	Schmitt	—	—	—	—	Input/Output
	P010 to P013	✓	CMOS	Disable	Schmitt	—	—	—	—	Input/Output
	P014, P015	✓	CMOS	Disable	Schmitt	—	Schmitt	—	—	Input/Output

Table 17.2 I/O port functions (2 of 3)

Port	Port name	Input pull-up	Input mode switching					Open drain output	5 V-tolerant	I/O
			GPIO	Peripheral						
				ANALOG USBCC	IRQ	I3C	Others			
PMR = 0 ASEL = 0 and ISEL = 0	PMR = 0 ASEL = 1 and ISEL = 0	PMR = 0 ASEL = 0 and ISEL = 1	PMR = 1 PSEL[4:0] = 00111b*1	PMR = 1 PSEL[4:0] = xxxxxb*1						
P1	P100, P101	✓	CMOS	Disable	Schmitt	—	Schmitt	✓	—	Input/ Output
	P102	✓	CMOS	Disable	—	—	Schmitt	✓	—	Input/ Output
	P103	✓	CMOS	Disable	Schmitt	—	Schmitt	✓	—	Input/ Output
	P104, P105	✓	CMOS	—	Schmitt	—	Schmitt	✓	—	Input/ Output
	P106, P107	✓	CMOS	—	—	—	Schmitt	✓	—	Input/ Output
	P108	✓	CMOS	—	—	—	Schmitt	—	—	Input/ Output
	P109, P110	✓	CMOS	—	Schmitt	Schmitt/TT L	Schmitt	✓	✓	Input/ Output
	P111	✓	CMOS	—	Schmitt	—	Schmitt	✓	—	Input/ Output
	P112	✓	CMOS	—	—	—	Schmitt	✓	—	Input/ Output
	P113	✓	CMOS	—	—	—	—	✓	—	Input/ Output
P2	P200	—	CMOS	—	—	—	—	—	—	Input
	P201	✓	CMOS	—	—	—	—	✓	—	Input/ Output
	P204	✓	CMOS	—	—	—	Schmitt	✓	—	Input/ Output
	P205, P206	✓	CMOS	—	Schmitt	—	Schmitt	✓	—	Input/ Output
	P207	✓	CMOS	—	—	—	Schmitt	✓	—	Input/ Output
	P212, P213	✓	CMOS	—	Schmitt	—	Schmitt	✓	—	Input/ Output
	P214, P215	—	CMOS	—	—	—	—	—	—	Input
P3	P300	✓	CMOS	—	—	—	Schmitt	—	—	Input/ Output
	P301, P302	✓	CMOS	—	Schmitt	—	Schmitt	✓	—	Input/ Output
	P303, P304	✓	CMOS	—	—	—	—	✓	—	Input/ Output

Table 17.2 I/O port functions (3 of 3)

Port	Port name	Input pull-up	Input mode switching					Open drain output	5 V-tolerant	I/O
			GPIO	Peripheral						
				ANALOG USBCC	IRQ	I3C	Others			
P4	P400, P401	✓	CMOS	—	Schmitt	Schmitt/TT L	Schmitt	✓	✓	Input/ Output
	P402	✓	CMOS	—	Schmitt	—	Schmitt	✓	—	Input/ Output
	P403	✓	CMOS	—	—	—	Schmitt	✓	—	Input/ Output
	P407	✓	CMOS	—	—	—	Schmitt	✓	✓	Input/ Output
	P408 to P411	✓	CMOS	—	Schmitt	—	Schmitt	✓	—	Input/ Output
P5	P500	✓	CMOS	—	—	—	Schmitt	✓	—	Input/ Output
	P501, P502	✓	CMOS	Disable	—	—	Schmitt	✓	—	Input/ Output
P9	P912	✓	CMOS	Disable	—	Schmitt/TT L	—	✓	✓	Input/ Output
	P913	✓	CMOS	Disable	Schmitt	Schmitt/TT L	Schmitt	✓	✓	Input/ Output

Note: ✓: Available
 —: Setting prohibited
 CMOS: No Schmitt Trigger
 Schmitt: Schmitt Trigger
 Disable: Input Buffer Disable

Note 1. See [section 17.6. Peripheral Select Settings for Each Product](#).

17.2 Register Descriptions

17.2.1 PCNTR1/PODR/PDR : Port Control Register 1

Base address: $\text{PORTm} = 0x4004\_0000 + 0x0020 \times m$ ($m = 0$ to 5, 9)

Offset address: 0x000 (PCNTR1/PODR)
 0x002 (PDR)

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	PODR 15	PODR 14	PODR 13	PODR 12	PODR 11	PODR 10	PODR 09	PODR 08	PODR 07	PODR 06	PODR 05	PODR 04	PODR 03	PODR 02	PODR 01	PODR 00
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	PDR1 5	PDR1 4	PDR1 3	PDR1 2	PDR11	PDR1 0	PDR0 9	PDR0 8	PDR0 7	PDR0 6	PDR0 5	PDR0 4	PDR0 3	PDR0 2	PDR0 1	PDR0 0
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
15:0	PDR15 to PDR00	Pmn Direction 0: Input (functions as an input pin) 1: Output (functions as an output pin)	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
31:16	PODR15 to PODR00	Pmn Output Data 0: Low output 1: High output	R/W

Note: m = 0 to 5, 9, n = 00 to 15

The Port Control Register 1 (PCNTR1/PODR/PDR) is a 32-bit or 16-bit read/write register that controls port direction and port output data. The PCNTR1 specifies the port direction and output data, and is accessed in 32-bit units. The PDRn (bits [15:0] in PCNTR1) and PODRn (bits [31:16] in PCNTR1) respectively, are accessed in 16-bit units.

PDRn bits (Pmn Direction)

The PDRn bits select the input or output direction for individual pins on the associated port when the pins are configured as general I/O pins. Each pin on port m is associated with a PORTm.PCNTR1.PDRn bit. The I/O direction can be specified in 1-bit units. Bits associated with nonexistent pins are reserved. Reserved bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0. P200, P214, P215 are input only, so PORT2.PCNTR1.PDR00, PDR14, and PDR15 bits are reserved. The PDRn bit in the PORTm.PCNTR1 register serves the same function as the PDR bit in the PFS.PmnPFS register.

PODRn bits (Pmn Output Data)

The PODRn bits hold data to be output from the general I/O pins. Bits of nonexistent port m are reserved. Reserved bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0. P200, P214, and P215 are input only, so PORT2.PCNTR1.PODR00, PODR14, and PODR15 bits are reserved. The PODRn bit in the PORTm.PCNTR1 register serves the same function as the PODR bit in the PFS.PmnPFS register.

17.2.2 PCNTR2/EIDR/PIDR : Port Control Register 2

Base address: PORTm = 0x4004_0000 + 0x0020 × m (m = 0 to 5, 9)

Offset address: 0x004 (PCNTR2/EIDR)
0x006 (PIDR)

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	EIDR1 5	EIDR1 4	EIDR1 3	EIDR1 2	EIDR1 1	EIDR1 0	EIDR0 9	EIDR0 8	EIDR0 7	EIDR0 6	EIDR0 5	EIDR0 4	EIDR0 3	EIDR0 2	EIDR0 1	EIDR0 0
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	PIDR1 5	PIDR1 4	PIDR1 3	PIDR1 2	PIDR1 1	PIDR1 0	PIDR0 9	PIDR0 8	PIDR0 7	PIDR0 6	PIDR0 5	PIDR0 4	PIDR0 3	PIDR0 2	PIDR0 1	PIDR0 0
Value after reset:	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
15:0	PIDR15 to PIDR00	Pmn State 0: Low level 1: High level	R
31:16	EIDR15 to EIDR00 ^{*2}	Port Event Input Data ^{*1} When an ELC_PORTx signal occurs 0: Low input 1: High input	R

Note: m = 0 to 5, 9, n = 00 to 15

Note 1. x = 1, 2 for EIDR only

Note 2. Supported for ports 1 to 2.

The Port Control Register 2 (PCNTR2/EIDR/PIDR) allows read access to the Pmn state and the port event input data using 32-bit or 16-bit access.

The PCNTR2 represents the Pmn state and the port event input data, and is accessed in 32-bit units.

The PIDRn (bits [15:0] in PCNTR2) and EIDRn (bits [31:16] in PCNTR2) respectively, are accessed in 16-bit units. Bits associated with nonexistent pins are reserved. Reserved bits are read as undefined.

PIDRn bits (Pmn State)

The PIDRn bits reflect the individual pin states of the port, regardless of the values set in PmnPFS.PMR and PORTm.PCNTR1.PDRn. The PIDRn bit in the PORTm.PCNTR2 register serves the same function as the PIDR bit in the PFS.PmnPFS register.

A pin state cannot be reflected in PIDRn when one of the following functions is enabled:

- Main clock oscillator (MOSC)
- Sub-clock oscillator (SOSC)
- Analog function (ASEL = 1)

EIDRn bits (Port Event Input Data)

The EIDRn bits latch a pin state when an ELC_PORTx signal occurs. Pin states can only be input to EIDRn when PmnPFS.PMR and PORTm.PCNTR1.PDRn are 0. When the PmnPFS.ASEL bit is set to 1, the associated pin state is not reflected in EIDRn.

17.2.3 PCNTR3/PORR/POSR : Port Control Register 3

Base address: PORTm = 0x4004_0000 + 0x0020 × m (m = 0 to 5, 9)

Offset address: 0x008 (PCNTR3/PORR)
0x00A (POSR)

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	PORR 15	PORR 14	PORR 13	PORR 12	PORR 11	PORR 10	PORR 09	PORR 08	PORR 07	PORR 06	PORR 05	PORR 04	PORR 03	PORR 02	PORR 01	PORR 00
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	POSR 15	POSR 14	POSR 13	POSR 12	POSR 11	POSR 10	POSR 09	POSR 08	POSR 07	POSR 06	POSR 05	POSR 04	POSR 03	POSR 02	POSR 01	POSR 00
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
15:0	POSR15 to POSR00	Pmn Output Set 0: No effect on output 1: High output	W
31:16	PORR15 to PORR00	Pmn Output Reset 0: No effect on output 1: Low output	W

Note: m = 0 to 5, 9, n = 00 to 15

The Port Control Register 3 (PCNTR3/PORR/POSR) is a 32-bit or 16-bit write register that controls the setting or resetting of the port output data.

The PCNTR3 controls the setting or resetting of the port output data, and is accessed in 32-bit units.

The POSRn (bits [15:0] in PCNTR3) and the PORRn (bits [31:16] in PCNTR3) respectively, are accessed in 16-bit units.

POSRn bits (Pmn Output Set)

POSR changes PODR when set by a software write. For example, for P100, when PORT1.PCNTR3.POSR00 = 1, PORT1.PCNTR1.PODR00 outputs 1. Bits associated with nonexistent pins are reserved. The write value should always be 0. P200, P214, and P215 are input only, so PORT2.PCNTR3.POSR00, POSR14, and POSR15 bits are reserved.

PORRn bits (Pmn Output Reset)

PORR changes PODR when reset by a software write. For example, for P100, when PORT1.PCNTR3.POSR00 = 1, PORT1.PCNTR1.PODR00 outputs 0. Bits associated with nonexistent pins are reserved. The write value should always be 0. P200, P214, and P215 are input only, so PORT2.PCNTR3.PORR00, PORR14, and PORR15 bits are reserved.

Note: When EORRn or EOSRn is set, writing is prohibited to PODRn, PORRn, and POSRn.

Note: PORRn and POSRn should not be set at the same time.

17.2.4 PCNTR4/EORR/EOSR : Port Control Register 4

Base address: $\text{PORTm} = 0x4004\_0000 + 0x0020 \times m$ ($m = 1, 2$)

Offset address: 0x00C (PCNTR4/EORR)
0x00E (EOSR)

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	EORR 15	EORR 14	EORR 13	EORR 12	EORR 11	EORR 10	EORR 09	EORR 08	EORR 07	EORR 06	EORR 05	EORR 04	EORR 03	EORR 02	EORR 01	EORR 00
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	EOSR 15	EOSR 14	EOSR 13	EOSR 12	EOSR 11	EOSR 10	EOSR 09	EOSR 08	EOSR 07	EOSR 06	EOSR 05	EOSR 04	EOSR 03	EOSR 02	EOSR 01	EOSR 00
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
15:0	EORR15 to EORR00	Pmn Event Output Set When an ELC_PORTx signal occurs 0: No effect on output 1: High output	R/W
31:16	EORR15 to EORR00	Pmn Event Output Reset When an ELC_PORTx signal occurs 0: No effect on output 1: Low output	R/W

Note: $m = 1, 2$, $n = 00$ to 15 , $x = 1, 2$

The Port Control Register 4 (PCNTR4/EORR/EOSR) is a 32-bit or 16-bit read/write register that controls the setting or resetting of the port output data by an event input from the ELC.

The PCNTR4 controls the setting or resetting of the port output data by an event input from the ELC, and is accessed in 32-bit units.

The EOSRn (bits [15:0] in PCNTR4) and EORRn (bits [31:16] in PCNTR4) respectively, are accessed in 16-bit units.

EOSRn bits (Pmn Event Output Set)

EOSR changes PODR when set because an ELC_PORTx signal occurs. For example, for P100 if PORT1.PCNTR4.EOSR00 is set to 1 when the ELC_PORTx occurs, PORT1.PCNTR1.PODR00 outputs 1. Bits associated with nonexistent pins are reserved. The write value should always be 0. P200, P214, and P215 are input only, so PORT2.PCNTR4.EOSR00, EOSR14, and EOSR15 bits are reserved.

EORRn bits (Pmn Event Output Reset)

EORR changes PODR when reset because an ELC_PORTx signal occurs. For example, for P100 if PORT1.PCNTR4.EORR00 = 1 when the ELC_PORTx occurs, PORT1.PCNTR1.PODR00 outputs 0. Bits associated with nonexistent pins are reserved. The write value should always be 0. P200, P214, and P215 are input only, so PORT2.PCNTR4.EORR00, EORR14, and EORR15 bits are reserved.

Note: When EORRn or EOSRn is set, writing is prohibited to PODRn, PORRn, and POSRn.

Note: EORRn and EOSRn should not be set at the same time.

17.2.5 PmnPFS/PmnPFS_HA/PmnPFS_BY : Port mn Pin Function Select Register (m = 0 to 5, n = 00 to 15)

Base address: PFS = 0x4004_0800

Offset address: 0x000 + 0x040 × m + 0x004 × n (PmnPFS)
 0x002 + 0x040 × m + 0x004 × n (PmnPFS_HA)
 0x003 + 0x040 × m + 0x004 × n (PmnPFS_BY)

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	PSEL[4:0]					—	—	—	—	—	—	—	PMR
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0 ^{*1}
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	ASEL	ISEL	EOFR[1:0]	—	—	—	—	—	—	NCODR	—	PCR	—	PDR	PIDR	PODR
Value after reset:	0 ^{*1}	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0 ^{*1}	0	0	x	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	PODR	Port Output Data 0: Low output 1: High output	R/W
1	PIDR	Pmn State 0: Low level 1: High level	R
2	PDR	Port Direction 0: Input (functions as an input pin) 1: Output (functions as an output pin)	R/W
3	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
4	PCR	Pull-up Control 0: Disable input pull-up 1: Enable input pull-up	R/W
5	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
6	NCODR	N-Channel Open-Drain Control 0: CMOS output 1: NMOS open-drain output	R/W
11:7	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
13:12	EOFR[1:0]	Event on Falling/Event on Rising ^{*2} 0 0: Don't care 0 1: Detect rising edge 1 0: Detect falling edge 1 1: Detect both edges	R/W
14	ISEL	IRQ Input Enable 0: Not used as an IRQn input pin 1: Used as an IRQn input pin	R/W
15	ASEL	Analog Input Enable 0: Not used as an analog pin 1: Used as an analog pin	R/W
16	PMR	Port Mode Control 0: Used as a general I/O pin 1: Used as an I/O port for peripheral functions	R/W
23:17	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
28:24	PSEL[4:0]	Peripheral Select These bits select the peripheral function. For individual pin functions, see the associated tables in this chapter.	R/W
31:29	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note 1. The initial value of P108, P201, and P300 is not 0x00000000. The initial value of P108 is 0x00010010, P201 is 0x00000010, and P300 is 0x00010010.

Note 2. Supported for port 1 and port 2.

Port mn Pin Function Select Register (PmnPFS/PmnPFS_HA/PmnPFS_BY) is a 32-bit, 16-bit, or 8-bit read/write control register that selects the port mn pin function, and is accessed in 32-bit units. PmnPFS_HA (PmnPFS[15:0] bits) is accessed in 16-bit units. PmnPFS_BY (PmnPFS[7:0] bits) is accessed in 8-bit units.

PODR bit (Port Output Data), PIDR bit (Port State), PDR bit (Port Direction)

The PDR, PIDR, and PODR bits serve the same function as the PCNTR. When these bits are read, the PCNTR value is read.

PCR bit (Pull-up Control)

The PCR bit enables or disables an input pull-up resistor on the individual port pins. When a pin is in the input state with the associated bit in PmnPFS.PCR set to 1, the pull-up resistor connected to the pin is enabled. When a pin is set as a general port output pin, or a peripheral function output pin, the pull-up resistor for the pin is disabled regardless of the PCR setting. The pull-up resistor is also disabled in the reset state. Bits associated with nonexistent pins are reserved. Reserved bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.

NCODR bit (N-Channel Open-Drain Control)

The NCODR bit specifies the output type for the port pins. Bits associated with nonexistent pins are reserved. Reserved bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.

EOFR[1:0] bits (Event on Falling/Event on Rising)

The EOFR[1:0] bits select the edge detection method for the port group input signal. These bits support rising, falling, or both edge detections. When the EOFR[1:0] bits are set to 01b, 10b, or 11b, the input enable of the I/O cell is asserted. Following that, the event pulse is input from the external pin, and the GPIO outputs the event pulse to the ELC. Bits associated with nonexistent pins are reserved. Reserved bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.

ISEL bit (IRQ Input Enable)

The ISEL bit specifies IRQ input pins. This setting can be used with the peripheral functions, although an IRQn (external pin interrupt) of the same number must only be enabled for one pin.

ASEL bit (Analog Input Enable)

The ASEL bit specifies analog pins. When a pin is set as an analog pin by this bit:

1. Specify it as a general I/O port in the Port Mode Control bit (PmnPFS.PMR).
2. Disable the pull-up resistor in the Pull-up Control bit (PmnPFS.PCR).
3. Specify the input in the Port Direction bit (PmnPFS.PDR). The pin state cannot be read at this point. The PmnPFS register is protected by the Write-Protect Register (PWPR). Release write-protect before modifying the register.

The ISEL bit for an unspecified IRQn is reserved. The ASEL bit for an unspecified analog I/O pin is reserved.

PMR bit (Port Mode Control)

The PMR bit specifies the port pin function. Bits associated with nonexistent pins are reserved. The write value should be 0.

PSEL[4:0] bits (Peripheral Select)

The PSEL[4:0] bits assign the peripheral function. For details on the peripheral settings for each product, see [section 17.6. Peripheral Select Settings for Each Product](#).

17.2.6 P20nPFS/P20nPFS_HA/P20nPFS_BY : Port 20n Pin Function Select Register (n = 0)

Base address: PFS = 0x4004_0800

Offset address: 0x080 (P20nPFS)
0x082 (P20nPFS_HA)
0x083 (P20nPFS_BY)

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	PSEL[4:0]					—	—	—	—	—	—	—	PMR
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	ASEL	ISEL	EOFR	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	PDR	PIDR	PODR
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	x	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	PODR	Port Output Data 0: Output low 1: Output high	R/W
1	PIDR	Port State 0: Low level 1: High level	R
2	PDR	Port Direction 0: Input (functions as an input pin) 1: Output (functions as an output pin)	R/W
11:3	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
13:12	EOFR	Event on Falling/Event on Rising 0 0: Don't care 0 1: Detect rising edge 1 0: Detect falling edge 1 1: Detect both edges	R/W
14	ISEL	IRQ Input Enable 0: Do not use as IRQn input pin 1: Use as IRQn input pin	R/W
15	ASEL	Analog Input Enable 0: Do not use as analog pin 1: Use as analog pin	R/W
16	PMR	Port Mode Control 0: Use as general I/O pin 1: Use as I/O port for peripheral functions	R/W
23:17	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
28:24	PSEL[4:0]	Peripheral Select These bits select the peripheral function. For individual pin functions, see the associated tables in this chapter.	R/W
31:29	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

17.2.7 P2nPFS/P2nPFS_HA/P2nPFS_BY : Port 2n Pin Function Select Register (n = 12, 13)

Base address: PFS = 0x4004_0800

Offset address: 0x0B0 + 0x4 × n (P2nPFS)
 0x0B2 + 0x4 × n (P2nPFS_HA)
 0x0B3 + 0x4 × n (P2nPFS_BY)

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	PSEL[4:0]					—	—	—	—	—	—	—	PMR
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	ASEL	ISEL	EOFR	—	—	—	—	—	—	NCODR	—	PCR	—	PDR	PIDR	PODR
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	x	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	PODR	Port Output Data 0: Output low 1: Output high	R/W
1	PIDR	Port State 0: Low level 1: High level	R
2	PDR	Port Direction 0: Input (functions as an input pin) 1: Output (functions as an output pin)	R/W
3	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
4	PCR	Pull-up Control 0: Disable input pull-up 1: Enable input pull-up	R/W
5	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
6	NCODR	N-Channel Open-Drain Control 0: Output CMOS 1: Output NMOS open-drain	R/W
11:7	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
13:12	EOFR	Event on Falling/Event on Rising 0 0: Don't care 0 1: Detect rising edge 1 0: Detect falling edge 1 1: Detect both edges	R/W
14	ISEL	IRQ Input Enable 0: Do not use as IRQn input pin 1: Use as IRQn input pin	R/W
15	ASEL	Analog Input Enable 0: Do not use as analog pin 1: Use as analog pin	R/W
16	PMR	Port Mode Control 0: Use as general I/O pin 1: Use as I/O port for peripheral functions	R/W
23:17	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
28:24	PSEL[4:0]	Peripheral Select These bits select the peripheral function. For individual pin functions, see the associated tables in this chapter.	R/W
31:29	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

17.2.8 P40nPFS/P40nPFS_HA/P40nPFS_BY : Port 40n Pin Function Select Register (n = 7 to 9)

Base address: PFS = 0x4004_0800

Offset address: 0x11C + 0x4 × n (P40nPFS)
 0x11E + 0x4 × n (P40nPFS_HA)
 0x11F + 0x4 × n (P40nPFS_BY)

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	PSEL[4:0]					—	—	—	—	—	—	—	PMR
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	ASEL	ISEL	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	NCOD R	—	PCR	—	PDR	PIDR	PODR
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	x	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	PODR	Port Output Data 0: Output low 1: Output high	R/W
1	PIDR	Port State 0: Low level 1: High level	R
2	PDR	Port Direction 0: Input (functions as an input pin) 1: Output (functions as an output pin)	R/W
3	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
4	PCR	Pull-up Control 0: Disable input pull-up 1: Enable input pull-up	R/W
5	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
6	NCODR	N-Channel Open-Drain Control 0: Output CMOS 1: Output NMOS open-drain	R/W
13:7	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
14	ISEL	IRQ Input Enable 0: Do not use as IRQn input pin 1: Use as IRQn input pin	R/W
15	ASEL	Analog Input Enable 0: Do not use as analog pin 1: Use as analog pin	R/W
16	PMR	Port Mode Control 0: Use as general I/O pin 1: Use as I/O port for peripheral functions	R/W
23:17	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
28:24	PSEL[4:0]	Peripheral Select These bits select the peripheral function. For individual pin functions, see the associated tables in this chapter.	R/W
31:29	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

17.2.9 PWPR : Write-Protect Register

Base address: PFS = 0x4004_0800

Offset address: 0x503

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	B0WI	PFSWE	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
5:0	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
6	PFSWE	PmnPFS Register Write Enable 0: Writing to the PmnPFS register is disabled 1: Writing to the PmnPFS register is enabled	R/W
7	B0WI	PFSWE Bit Write Disable 0: Writing to the PFSWE bit is enabled 1: Writing to the PFSWE bit is disabled	R/W

PFSWE bit (PmnPFS Register Write Enable)

Writing to the PmnPFS register is enabled only when the PFSWE bit is set to 1. You must first write 0 to the B0WI bit before setting PFSWE to 1.

B0WI bit (PFSWE Bit Write Disable)

Writing to the PFSWE bit is enabled only when the B0WI bit is set to 0.

17.2.10 PRWCNTR : Port Read Wait Control Register

Base address: PFS = 0x4004_0800

Offset address: 0x50F

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	WAIT[1:0]	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
1:0	WAIT[1:0]	Wait Cycle Control 0 0: Setting prohibited 0 1: Insert a 1-cycle wait 1 0: Insert a 2-cycle wait 1 1: Insert a 3-cycle wait	R/W
7:2	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

WAIT[1:0] bits (Wait Cycle Control)

The WAIT[1:0] bits specify the number of wait cycles for accessing the PCNTR2 and PFS registers, and reading the port pin state by ELC event.

17.3 Operation

17.3.1 General I/O Ports

All pins except P108 and P300 operate as general I/O ports after reset. General I/O ports are organized as 16 bits per port and can be accessed by port with the Port Control Registers (PCNTRn, where n = 1 to 4), or by individual pins with the Port mn Pin Function Select register. For details on these registers, see [section 17.2. Register Descriptions](#).

Each port has the following bits:

- Port Direction bit (PDRn), which selects input or output direction
- Port Output Data bit (PODRn), which holds data for output
- Port Input Data bit (PIDRn), which indicates the pin states
- Event Input Data bit (EIDRn), which indicates the pin state when an ELC_PORT1 or 2 signal occurs
- Port Output Set bit (POSRn), which indicates the output value when a software write occurs
- Port Output Reset bit (PORRn), which indicates the output value when a software write occurs
- Event Output Set bit (EOSRn), which indicates the output value when an ELC_PORT1 or 2 signal occurs
- Event Output Reset bit (EORRn), which indicates the output value when an ELC_PORT1 or 2 signal occurs.

17.3.2 Port Function Select

The following port functions are available for configuring each pin:

- I/O configuration: CMOS output or NMOS open-drain output, pull-up control, and drive strength
- General I/O port: Port direction, output data setting, and read input data
- Alternate function: Configured function mapping to the pin.

Each pin is associated with a Port mn Pin Function Select register (PmnPFS), which includes the associated PODR, PIDR, and PDR bits. In addition, the PmnPFS register includes the following:

- PCR: Pull-up resistor control bit that turns the input pull-up MOS on or off
- NCODR: N-channel open-drain control bit that selects the output type for each pin
- EOFR[1:0]: For selecting the edge of the event that input from the port group
- ISEL: IRQ input enable bit to specify an IRQ input pin
- ASEL: Analog input enable bit to specify an analog pin
- PMR: Port mode bit to specify the pin function of each port
- PSEL[4:0]: Port function select bits to select the associated peripheral function.

These configurations can be made by a single-register access to the Port mn Pin Function Select register. For details, see [section 17.2.5. PmnPFS/PmnPFS_HA/PmnPFS_BY : Port mn Pin Function Select Register \(m = 0 to 5, 9, n = 00 to 15\)](#).

17.3.3 Port Group Function for ELC

In the MCU, Port 1 and Port 2 are assigned for the ELC port group function.

17.3.3.1 Behavior When ELC_PORT1 or 2 is Input from ELC

The MCU supports the two functions described in this section when an ELC_PORT1 or 2 signal comes from the ELC.

(1) Input to EIDR

For the GPI function (PDR = 0 and PMR = 0 in the PmnPFS register), when an ELC_PORT1 or 2 signal comes from the ELC, the input enable of the I/O cell is asserted, and data from the external pins are read into the EIDR bit. See [Figure 17.2](#)

For the GPO function (PDR = 1) or the peripheral mode (PMR = 1), 0 is input into the EIDR bit from the external pins.

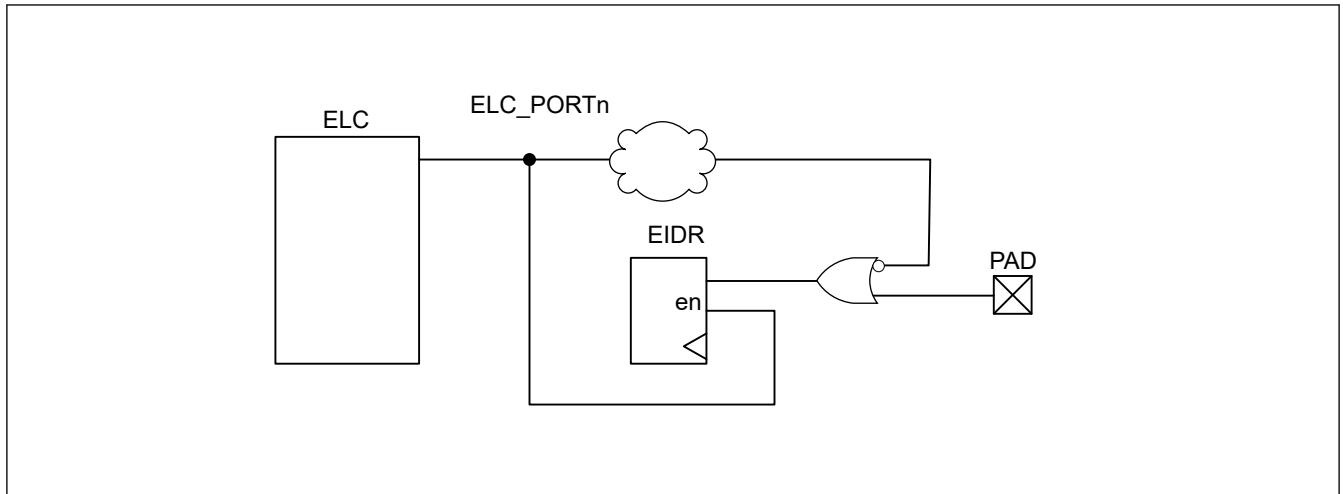


Figure 17.2 Event ports input data

(2) Output from PODR by EOSR and EORR

When an ELC_PORT1 or 2 signal occurs, the data is output from the PODR to the external pin based on the settings in the EOSR and EORR registers.

- If EOSR is set to 1, when an ELC_PORT1 or 2 signal occurs, the PODR register outputs 1 to the external pin. Otherwise, when EOSR = 0, the PODR value is retained.
- If EORR is set to 1, when ELC_PORT1 or 2 signal occurs, the PODR register outputs 0 to the external pin. Otherwise, when EORR = 0, the PODR value is retained.

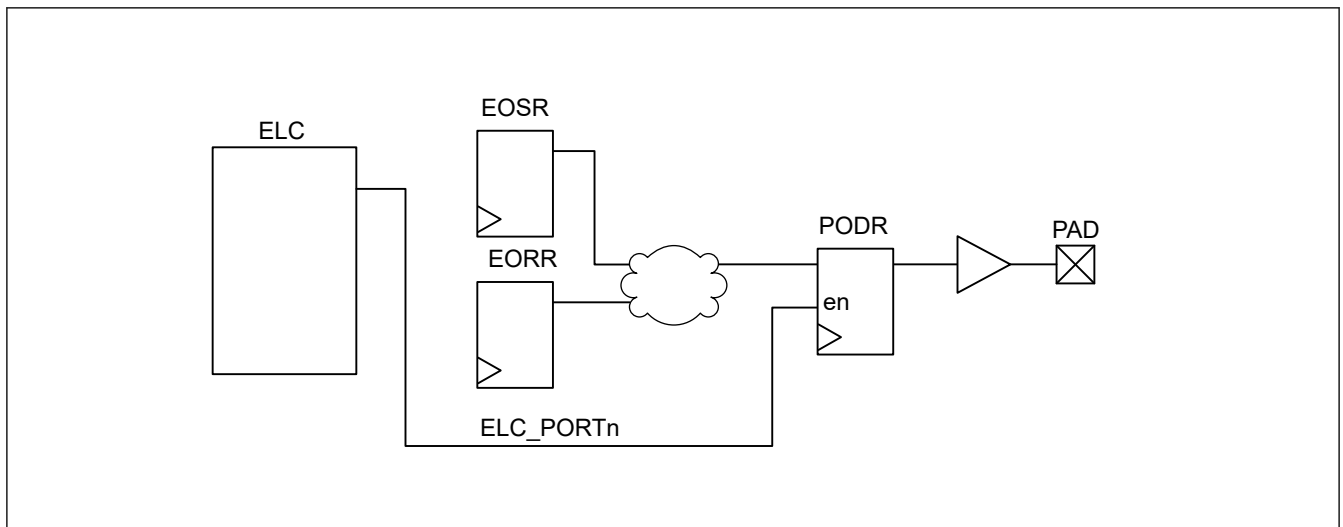


Figure 17.3 Event ports output data

17.3.3.2 Behavior When an Event Pulse is Output to ELC

To output the event pulse from the external pins to the ELC, set the EOFR[1:0] bits in the PmnPFS register. For details, see [section 17.2.5. PmnPFS/PmnPFS_HA/PmnPFS_BY : Port mn Pin Function Select Register \(m = 0 to 5, 9, n = 00 to 15\)](#). When the EOFR[1:0] bits are set, the input enable of the I/O cell is asserted.

Data from the external pin is the input. For example, for Port 1, when the data is input from P100 to P115, the data of those 16 pins is organized by OR logic. This data is formed into a one-shot pulse that goes to the ELC. The operation of Port 2 is also the same as Port 1. See [Figure 17.4](#).

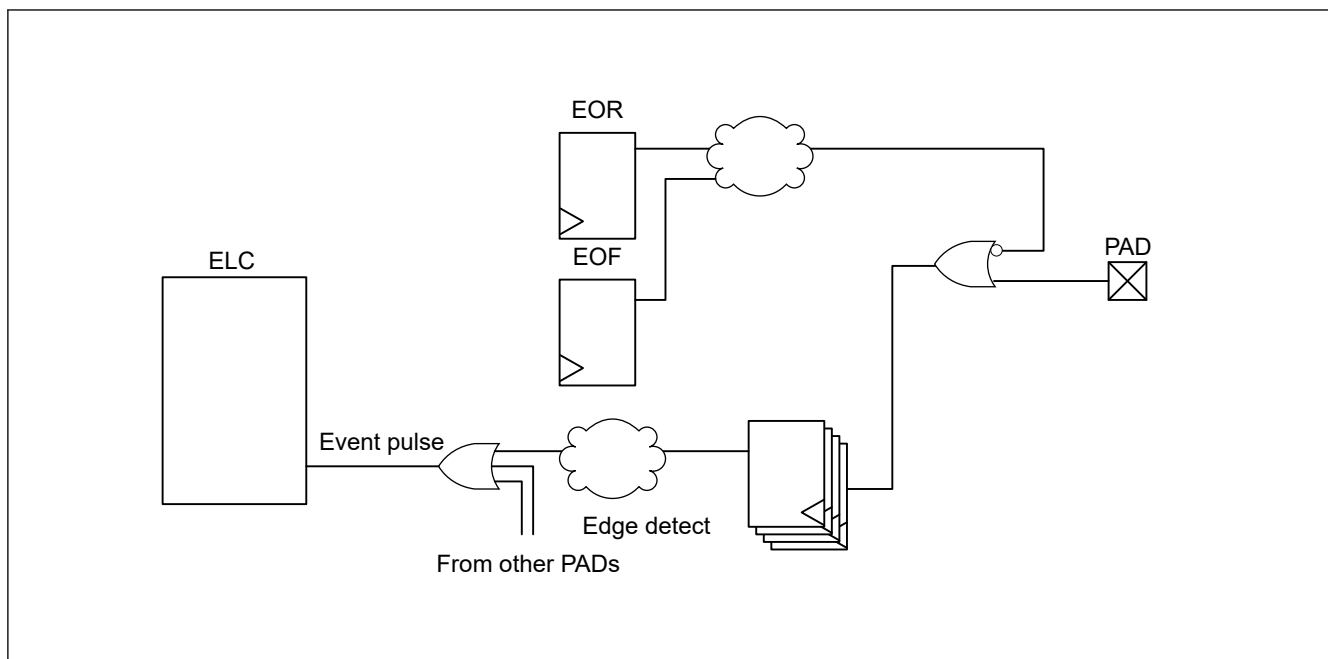


Figure 17.4 Generation of event pulse

17.3.4 Wait Function for Port Read

Wait cycles for reading the port input data can be set in the PRWCNTR.WAIT[1:0] bits as follows:

- Read port input data (PIDR) by reading the PCNTR2 or PFS register.
- Latch port pin state to Event Input Data Register (EIDR) when an ELC_PORT1 or 2 signal occurs.

The number of access cycles is the value in PRWCNTR.WAIT[1:0] plus 1. For example, if PRWCNTR.WAIT[1:0] is set as 2'b10, then the wait is 2 cycles, and access is 3 clock cycles.

Table 17.3 shows the relationship of voltage, frequency, and wait cycles.

Table 17.3 Relationship between voltage, frequency, and wait cycles

VCC = AVCC0	Access cycles*1	Wait cycles*2
More than 2.7 V	2 to 4	1 to 3
2.4 to 2.7 V	3 to 4	2 to 3
1.8 to 2.4 V	4	3
1.6 to 1.8 V	2 to 4	1 to 3

Note 1. Bus latency is not included.

Note 2. Number of wait cycles to set in the Port Read Wait Control Register (PRWCNTR).

17.4 Handling of Unused Pins

Table 17.4 shows how to handle unused pins.

Table 17.4 Handling of unused pins (1 of 2)

Pin name	Description
P201/MD	Use as a mode pin
RES	Connect to VCC through a resistor (pulling up)
P200/NMI	Connect to VCC through a resistor (pulling up)
P212/EXTAL	When the main clock oscillator is not used, set the MOSCCR.MOSTP bit to 1 (general port P212). When this pin is not used as port P212, configure it in the same way as ports 0 to 5, 9.

Table 17.4 Handling of unused pins (2 of 2)

Pin name	Description
P213/XTAL	When the main clock oscillator is not used, set the MOSCCR.MOSTP bit to 1 (general port P213). When this pin is not used as port P213, it is configured in the same way as ports 0 to 5, 9. When the external clock is input to the EXTAL pin, leave this pin open.
P215/XCIN	When the sub-clock oscillator is not used, set the SOSCCR.SOSTP bit to 1 (general port P215). When this pin is not used as port P215, configure it in the same way as ports 0 to 5, 9.
P214/XCOUT	When the sub-clock oscillator is not used, set the SOSCCR.SOSTP bit to 1 (general port P214). When this pin is not used as port P214, configure it in the same way as ports 0 to 5, 9.
P1x to P5x, P9x	- If the direction setting is for input (PCNTR1.PDRn = 0), connect the associated pin to VCC (pulled up) through a resistor or to VSS (pulled down) through a resistor^{*1, *2} - If the direction setting is for output (PCNTR1.PDRn = 1), release the pin^{*1}
P000 to P004, P010 to P015	If the direction setting is for input (PCNTR1.PDRn = 0), connect the associated pin to AVCC0 (pulled up) through a resistor or to AVSS0 (pulled down) through a resistor ^{*1}
USB_DP	Leave this pin open
USB_DM	Leave this pin open
VREFH0	Connect to AVCC0
VREFL0	Connect to AVSS0

Note 1. Clear the PmnPFS.PMR, PmnPFS.ISEL, PmnPFS.PCR, and PmnPFS.ASEL bits to 0.

Note 2. P108, P201, and P300 should be enabled for input pull-up from the initial value (PmnPFS.PCR = 1).

17.5 Usage Notes

17.5.1 Procedure for Specifying the Pin Functions

To specify the I/O pin functions:

1. Clear the B0WI bit in the PWPR register. This enables writing to the PFSWE bit in the PWPR register.
2. Set 1 to the PFSWE bit in the PWPR register. This enables writing to the PmnPFS register.
3. Clear the Port Mode Control bit in the PMR to 0 for the target pin to select the general I/O port.
4. Specify the I/O function for the pin through the PSEL[4:0] bits settings in the PmnPFS register.
5. Set the PMR bit to 1 as required to switch to the selected I/O function for the pin.
6. Clear the PFSWE bit in the PWPR register. This disables writing to the PmnPFS register.
7. Set 1 to the B0WI bit in the PWPR register. This disables writing to the PFSWE bit in the PWPR register.

17.5.2 Procedure for Using Port Group Input

To use the port group input (port 1 and port 2):

1. Set the ELSRx.ELS[7:0] bits to all 0 to ignore unexpected pulses. For more information, see [section 16, Event Link Controller \(ELC\)](#).
2. Set the EOFR[1:0] bits of the PmnPFS register to specify the rising, falling, or both edge detections.
3. Execute a dummy read or wait for a short time, for example 100 ns. Ignoring of unexpected pulses depends on the initial value of the external pin.
4. Set the ELSRx.ELS[7:0] bits to enable the event signals.

17.5.3 Port Output Data Register (PODR) Summary

This register outputs data as follows:

1. Outputs 0 if PCNTR4.EORR is set to 1 when ELC_PORT1 or 2 signal occurs.
2. Outputs 1 if PCNTR4.EOSR is set to 1 when ELC_PORT1 or 2 signal occurs.
3. Outputs 0 if PCNTR3.PORR is set to 1.
4. Outputs 1 if PCNTR3.POSR is set to 1.

5. Outputs 0 or 1 because PCNTR1.PODRn is set.
6. Outputs 0 or 1 because PmnPFS.PODRn is set.

Numbers in this list correspond to the priority for writing to the PODRn. For example, if 1. and 3. from the list occur at the same time, the higher priority event 1. is executed.

17.5.4 Notes on Using Analog Functions

To use an analog function, set the Port Mode Control bit (PMR) and the Port Direction bit (PDRn) to 0 so that the pin acts as a general input port. Next, set the Analog Input Enable bit (ASEL) in the Port mn Pin Function Select Register (PmnPFS.ASEL) to 1.

17.6 Peripheral Select Settings for Each Product

This section describes the pin function select configuration by the PmnPFS register. Some pin names have a _A, _B, _C, _D, _E, or _F suffix. The suffix can be ignored when assigning functionality, but assigning the same function to two or more pins simultaneously is prohibited. Only the allowed values (functions) should be specified in the PSEL bits of PmnPFS. If a value that is not allowed for the register is specified, the correct operation is not guaranteed.

Table 17.5 Register settings for input/output pin function (PORT0)

PSEL[4:0] settings	Function	Pin										
		P000	P001	P002	P003	P004	P010	P011	P012	P013	P014	P015
00000b	(initial)	Hi-Z										
00010b	GPT	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	GTETRG_A_E	GTETRGB_E
10110b	UARTA	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	TXDA1_A	RXDA1_A
ASEL bit		AN000	AN001	AN002	AN003	AN004	AN005/VREFH0	AN006/VREFL0	AN007	AN008	AN009/DA0	AN010
ISEL bit		IRQ6	IRQ7	IRQ2	—	IRQ3	IRQ5_C	IRQ0_C	IRQ1_C	IRQ4_C	IRQ6_C	IRQ7_A
NCODR bit		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
PCR bit		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
64-pin product		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
48-pin product		✓	✓	✓	—	—	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
32-pin product		—	—	—	—	—	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

✓ : Available
— : Setting prohibited

Table 17.6 Register settings for input/output pin function (PORT1) (1 of 2)

PSEL [4:0] settings	Function	Pin													
		P100	P101	P102	P103	P104	P105	P106	P107	P108	P109	P110	P111	P112	P113
00000b	(initial)	Hi-Z								SWDIO	Hi-Z				
00001b	AGTW	AGTIO0_A	AGTEE0	AGTO0	—	—	—	—	—	AGTOA1_B	AGTIO1_B	AGTOB0_B	AGTOA0	AGTOB0	—
00010b	GPT	GTETRG_A_A	GTETRG_B_A	GTOWL_O_A	GTOWU_P_A	GTETRG_B_B	GTETRG_A_C	—	—	GTOULO_C	GTOVUP_A	GTOVLO_A	—	—	—
00011b	GPT	GTIOC8_B_A	GTIOC8_A_A	GTIOC5_B_A	GTIOC5_A_A	GTIOC4_B_B	GTIOC4_A_B	—	—	GTIOC0_B_A	GTIOC4_A_A	GTIOC4_B_A	GTIOC6_A_A	GTIOC6_B_A	—
00100b	SCI	RXD0_A/ MISO0_A/ SCL0_A	TXD0_A/ MOSI0_A/ SDA0_A	SCK0_A	CTS0_R TS0_A/ SS0_A	RXD0_C/ MISO0_C/ SCL0_C	—	—	—	—	SCK1_E	CTS2_R TS2_B/ SS2_B	SCK2_B	TXD2_B/ MOSI2_B/ SDA2_B	—
00101b	SCI	SCK1_A	CTS1_R TS1_A/ SS1_A	TXD2_D/ MOSI2_D/ SDA2_D	—	—	—	—	—	CTS9_R TS9_B/ SS9_B	TXD9_B/ MOSI9_B/ SDA9_B	RXD9_B/ MISO9_B/ SCL9_B	SCK9_B	SCK1_D	—
00110b	SPI	MISOA_A	MOSIA_A	RSPCKA_A	SSLA0_A	SSLA1_A	SSLA2_A	SSLA3_A	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
00111b	I3C	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	SCL0_B	SDA0_B	—	—	—
01000b	KINT	KR00	KR01	KR02	KR03	KR04	KR05	KR06	KR07	—	—	—	—	—	—
01001b	CLKOUT/ RTC	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	CLKOUT_B	RTCOUNT_B	—	—	—

Table 17.6 Register settings for input/output pin function (PORT1) (2 of 2)

PSEL [4:0] settings	Function	Pin													
		P100	P101	P102	P103	P104	P105	P106	P107	P108	P109	P110	P111	P112	P113
01010b	CAC/ ADC12	—	—	ADTRG0_A	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	ADTRG0_C	—
10000b	CAN	—	—	CTX0_C	CRX0_C	—	—	—	—	—	CRX0_A	CTX0_A	—	—	—
10110b	UARTA	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	RXDA0_A	TXDA0_A	—	—	—	—
10010b	SSI	SSIRXD0_C	SSITXD0_C	SSILRCK0/ SSIFS0_C	SSIBCK0_C	—	—	—	—	SSIDATA0_A	AUDIO_CLK_A	—	—	AUDIO_CLK_B	—
ASEL bit		AN022*1	AN021*1	AN020*1	AN019*1	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
ISEL bit		IRQ2_A	IRQ1_A	—	IRQ5_F	IRQ1_B	IRQ0_B	—	—	—	IRQ5_E	IRQ3_A	IRQ4_A	—	—
NCODR bit		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	—	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
PCR bit		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
64-pin product		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
48-pin product		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	—	—	—	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	—
32-pin product		✓	✓	✓	✓	—	—	—	—	✓	✓	✓	—	✓	—

✓: Available

—: Setting prohibited

Note 1. Unsupported in 64-pin product

Table 17.7 Register settings for input/output pin function (PORT2)

PSEL[4:0] settings	Function	Pin									
		P200	P201	P204	P205	P206	P207	P212	P213	P214	P215
00000b	(initial)	Hi-Z									
00001b	AGTW	—	—	AGTIO1_A	AGTO1	—	—	AGTEE1	—	—	—
00010b	GPT	—	—	GTIW_A	GTIV_A	GTIU_A	—	GTETRGA_D	GTETRGA_D	—	—
00011b	GPT	—	—	—	—	—	—	GTIOC0B_D	GTIOC0A_D	—	—
00100b	SCI	—	—	SCK0_D	TXD0_D/ MOSI0_D/ SDA0_D	RXD0_D/ MISO0_D/ SCL0_D	—	—	—	—	—
00101b	SCI	—	—	SCK9_A	CTS9_RTS9_A/ SS9_A	—	—	RXD1_A/ MISO1_A/ SCL1_A	TXD1_A/ MOSI1_A/ SDA1_A	—	—
00110b	SPI	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
01001b	CLKOUT/ ACMPLP/RT C	—	—	—	CLKOUT_A	—	—	—	—	—	—
01010b	CAC/ADC12	—	—	CACREF_A	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
10010b	SSI	—	—	SSIRXD0_B	SSITXD0_B	SSILRCK0/ SSIFS0_B	SSIBCK0_B	—	—	—	—
ASEL bit		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
ISEL bit		—	—	—	IRQ1	IRQ0	—	IRQ3_B	IRQ2_B	—	—
NCODR bit		—	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	—	—
PCR bit		—	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	—	—
64-pin product		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
48-pin product		✓	✓	—	—	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
32-pin product		✓	✓	—	—	—	—	✓	✓	✓	✓

✓: Available

—: Setting prohibited

Table 17.8 Register settings for input/output pin function (PORT3) (1 of 2)

PSEL[4:0] settings	Function	Pin				
		P300	P301	P302	P303	P304
00000b	(initial)	SWCLK	Hi-Z	—	—	—
00001b	AGTW	AGTIO0_B	AGTIO0_D	—	—	—
00010b	GPT	GTOUUP_C	GTOULO_A	GTOUUP_A	—	—
00011b	GPT	GTIOC0A_A	GTIOC7B_A	GTIOC7A_A	—	—

Table 17.8 Register settings for input/output pin function (PORT3) (2 of 2)

PSEL[4:0] settings	Function	Pin				
		P300	P301	P302	P303	P304
00100b	SCI	—	RXD2_A/MISO2_A/ SCL2_A	TXD2_A/MOSI2_A/ SDA2_A	—	—
00101b	SCI	—	CTS9_RTS9_D/SS9_D	—	—	—
00110b	SPI	—	—	—	—	—
10110b	UARTA	CLKA0_A	—	—	—	—
ASEL bit		—	—	—	—	—
ISEL bit		—	IRQ6_A	IRQ5_A	—	—
NCODR bit		—	✓	✓	✓	✓
PCR bit		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
64-pin product		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
48-pin product		✓	✓	✓	—	—
32-pin product		✓	—	—	—	—

✓ : Available

— : Setting prohibited

Table 17.9 Register settings for input/output pin function (PORT4)

PSEL[4:0] settings	Function	Pin								
		P400	P401	P402	P403	P407	P408	P409	P410	P411
00000b	(initial)	Hi-Z								
00001b	AGTW	AGTIO1_C	—	AGTIO0_E/ AGTIO1_D	AGTIO0_F/ AGTIO1_E	AGTIO0_C	—	—	AGTOB1	AGTOA1
00010b	GPT	—	GTETRG_A_B	—	—	—	GTOWLO_B	GTOWUP_B	GTOVLO_B	GTOVUP_B
00011b	GPT	GTIOC9A_A	GTIOC9B_A	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
00100b	SCI	SCK0_B	CTS0_RTS0_B/ SS0_B	—	—	CTS0_RTS0_D/ SS0_D	CTS1_RTS1_D/ SS1_D	—	RXD0_B/ MISO0_B/ SCL0_B	TXD0_B/ MOSI0_B/ SDA0_B
00101b	SCI	SCK1_B	TXD1_B/ MOSI1_B/ SDA1_B	RXD1_B/ MISO1_B/ SCL1_B	CTS1_RTS1_B/ SS1_B	—	—	—	—	—
00110b	SPI	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	MISOA_B	MOSIA_B
00111b	I3C	SCL0_A	SDA0_A	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
01001b	CLKOUT/ ACMPLP/RTC	—	—	—	—	RTCOUT_A	—	—	—	—
01010b	CAC/ADC12	CACREF_C	—	—	—	ADTRG0_B	—	—	—	—
10000b	CAN	—	CRX0_B	CTX0_B	—	—	—	—	—	—
10110b	UARTA	—	CLKA0_B	RXDA0_B	TXDA0_B	—	TXDA1_B	RXDA1_B	CLKA1_B	—
10010b	SSI	—	—	—	—	SSIDATA0_B	SSIRXD0_A	SSITXD0_A	SSILRCK0/ SSIFS0_A	SSIBCK0_A
10011b	USBFS/ USBCC	—	—	—	—	USB_VBUS	—	—	—	—
ASEL bit		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
ISEL bit		IRQ0_A	IRQ5	IRQ4	—	—	IRQ7_B	IRQ6_B	IRQ5_B	IRQ4_B
NCODR bit		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
PCR bit		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
64-pin product		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
48-pin product		✓	✓	—	—	✓	✓	✓	—	—
32-pin product		—	—	—	—	✓	—	—	—	—

✓ : Available

— : Setting prohibited

Table 17.10 Register settings for input/output pin function (PORT5) (1 of 2)

PSEL[4:0] settings	Function	Pin		
		P500	P501	P502
00000b	(initial)	Hi-Z		
00010b	GPT	GTIU_B	GTIV_B	GTIW_B
00011b	GPT	GTIOC5A_B	GTIOC5B_B	—

Table 17.10 Register settings for input/output pin function (PORT5) (2 of 2)

PSEL[4:0] settings	Function	Pin		
		P500	P501	P502
00101b	SCI	—	TXD1_C/MOSI1_C/SDA1_C	RXD1_C/MISO1_C/SCL1_C
10010b	SSI	AUDIO_CLK_C	—	—
10110b	UARTA	CLKA1_A	—	—
ASEL bit		—	AN017	AN018
ISEL bit		—	—	—
NCODR bit		✓	✓	✓
PCR bit		✓	✓	✓
64-pin product		✓	✓	✓
48-pin product		✓	—	—
32-pin product		—	—	—

✓ : Available
 — : Setting prohibited

Table 17.11 Register settings for input/output pin function (PORT9)

PSEL[4:0] settings	Function	Pin	
		P912	P913
00000b	(initial)	Hi-Z	
00111b	I3C	SDA0_C	SCL0_C
10000b	CAN	CTX0_D	CRX0_D
ASEL bit		USB_CC2	USB_CC1
ISEL bit		—	IRQ5_D
NCODR bit		✓	✓
PCR bit		✓	✓
64-pin product		✓	✓
48-pin product		✓	✓
32-pin product		✓	✓

✓ : Available
 — : Setting prohibited

18. Key Interrupt Function (KINT)

18.1 Overview

The key interrupt function (KINT) generates the key interrupt by detecting rising or falling edge on the key interrupt input pins. Figure 18.1 shows a block diagram and Table 18.1 lists the input pins.

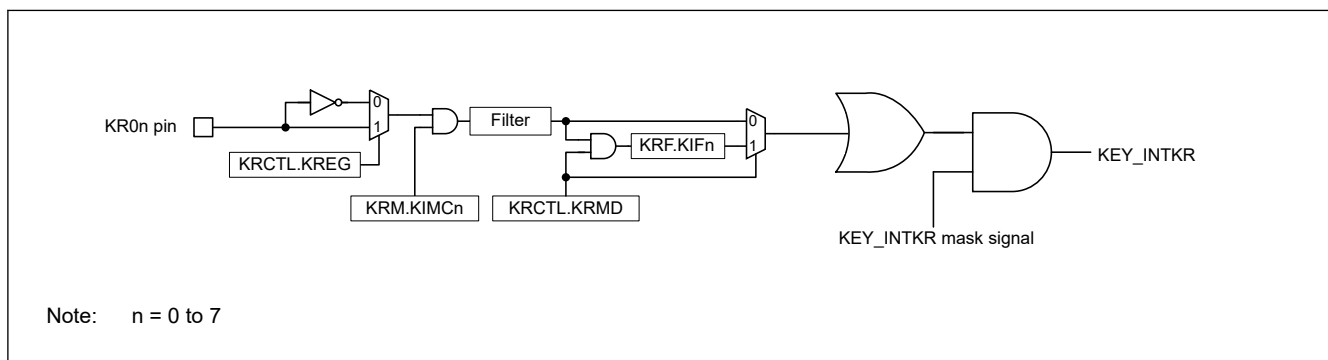


Figure 18.1 KINT block diagram

All key return factors are merged by an OR gate, and the key interrupt signal, KEY_INTKR, is the output of the AND gate to mask the merged key return factor by the KEY_INTKR mask signal. When using KRF.KIFn flag (KRCTL.KRMD = 1), the KEY_INTKR mask signal is used as the output mask that is asserted by clearing KRF.KIFn flag.

Table 18.1 KINT I/O pins

Pin name	I/O	Function
KR00 to KR07	Input	Key interrupt input pins

18.2 Register Descriptions

18.2.1 KRCTL : Key Return Control Register

Base address: KINT = 0x4008_0000

Offset address: 0x00

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	KRMD	—	—	—	—	—	—	KREG
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	KREG	Detection Edge Selection (KR00 to KR07 pins) 0: Falling edge 1: Rising edge	R/W
6:1	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
7	KRMD	Usage of Key Interrupt Flags (KRF.KIF0 to KRF.KIF7) 0: Do not use key interrupt flags 1: Use key interrupt flags	R/W

The KRCTL register controls the usage of the key interrupt flags, KRF.KIFn (n = 0 to 7), and sets the detection edge.

18.2.2 KRF : Key Return Flag Register

Base address: KINT = 0x4008_0000

Offset address: 0x04

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	KIF7	KIF6	KIF5	KIF4	KIF3	KIF2	KIF1	KIF0
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7:0	KIF0 to KIF7	Key Interrupt Flag n 0: No interrupt detected 1: Interrupt detected	R/W

The KRF register controls the key interrupt flags, KIFn.

When KRCTL.KRMD = 0, setting the KIFn flag to 1 is prohibited. When setting the KIFn flag to 1, the KIFn value does not change.

To clear the KIFn flag, confirm the target flag is 1 before writing 0 to the bit, then write 1 to the other flags.

18.2.3 KRM : Key Return Mode Register

Base address: KINT = 0x4008_0000

Offset address: 0x08

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	KIMC7	KIMC6	KIMC5	KIMC4	KIMC3	KIMC2	KIMC1	KIMC0
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7:0	KIMC0 to KIMC7	Key Interrupt Mode Control n 0: Do not detect key interrupt signals 1: Detect key interrupt signals	R/W

The KRM register sets the key interrupt mode.

An interrupt is generated when the target bit in the KRM register is set while a low level (KRCTL.KREG = 0) or a high level (KRCTL.KREG = 1) is being input to the KR0n pin. To ignore this interrupt, set the KRM register after disabling the interrupt handling.

KINT can be assigned in the PmnPFS.PSEL[4:0] bits. The on-chip pull-up resistors can also be applied by setting the associated key interrupt input pin in the pull-up resistor. For details, see [section 17, I/O Ports](#).

18.3 Operation

18.3.1 Operation When Not Using the Key Interrupt Flags (KRCTL.KRMD = 0)

A key interrupt signal, KEY_INTKR, is generated when the valid edge specified in the KRCTL.KREG bit is input to a KR0n pin. To identify the channel to which the valid edge is input, read the port register and check the port level after the KEY_INTKR signal is generated.

The KEY_INTKR signal changes based on the input level of the KR0n pin.

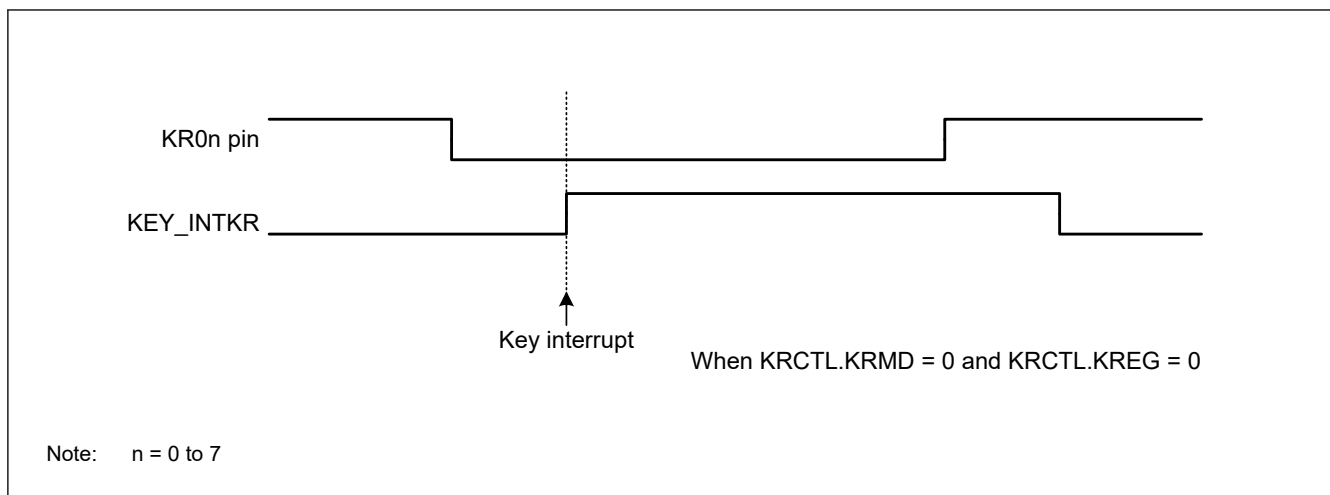


Figure 18.2 Operation of KEY_INTKR signal when a key interrupt is input to a single channel

Figure 18.3 shows the operation when a valid edge is input to multiple KR0n pins. The KEY_INTKR signal is set while a low level is being input to one pin (when KRCTL.KREG = 0). Therefore, even if a falling edge is input to another pin in this period, the KEY_INTKR signal is not generated again. See [1] in Figure 18.3.

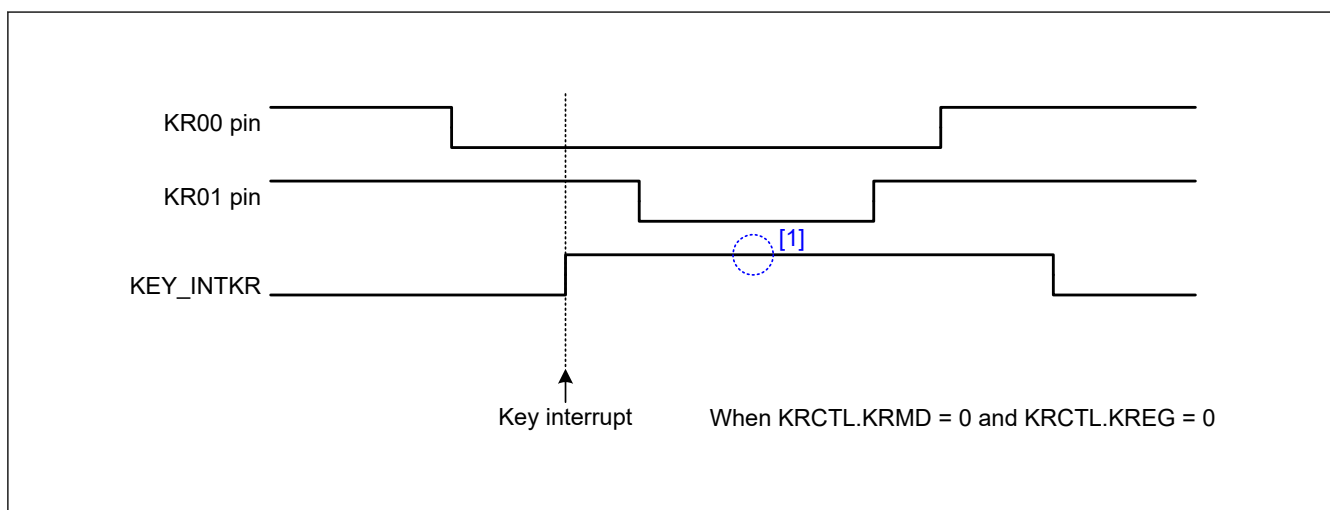


Figure 18.3 Operation of KEY_INTKR signal when key interrupts are input to multiple channels

18.3.2 Operation When Using the Key Interrupt Flags (KRCTL.KRMD = 1)

The KEY_INTKR signal is generated when the valid edge specified in the KRCTL.KREG bit is input to KR0n pins. To identify the channels to which the valid edge is input, read the KRF register after the KEY_INTKR signal is generated. If the KRCTL.KRMD bit is set to 1, clear the KEY_INTKR signal by clearing the associated bit in the KRF register.

As Figure 18.4 shows, only one interrupt is generated each time a falling edge is input to one channel, (when KRCTL.KREG = 0), regardless of whether the KRF.KIFn flag is cleared before or after a rising edge is input.

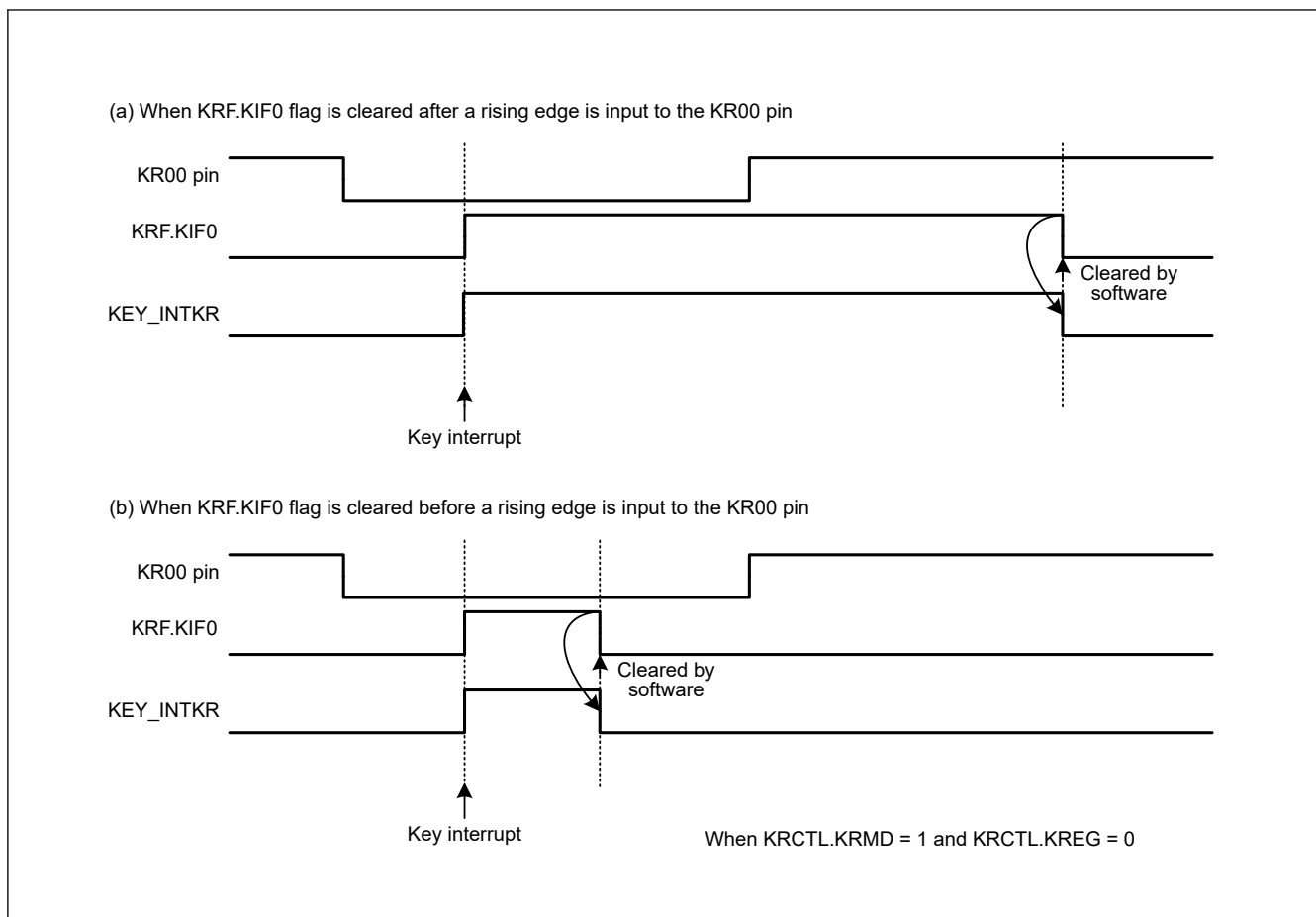


Figure 18.4 Basic operation of KEY_INTKR signal when key interrupt flag is used

Figure 18.5 shows the operation when a valid edge is input to multiple KR0n pins. A falling edge is also input to the KR01 and KR05 pins after a falling edge is input to the KR00 pin (when KRCTL.KREG = 0). The KRF.KIF1 flag is set when the KRF.KIF0 flag is cleared. The KEY_INTKR signal is negated 1 PCLKB clock cycle, after the KRF.KIF0 flag is cleared. See [1] in Figure 18.5.

Also, after a falling edge is input to the KR05 pin, the KRF.KIF5 flag is set. The KRF.KIF1 flag is cleared at time [2] in the figure. The KEY_INTKR signal is negated 1 PCLKB clock cycle, after the KRF.KIF1 flag is cleared. See [3] in the figure. It is therefore possible to generate each key interrupt when a valid edge is input to multiple channels.

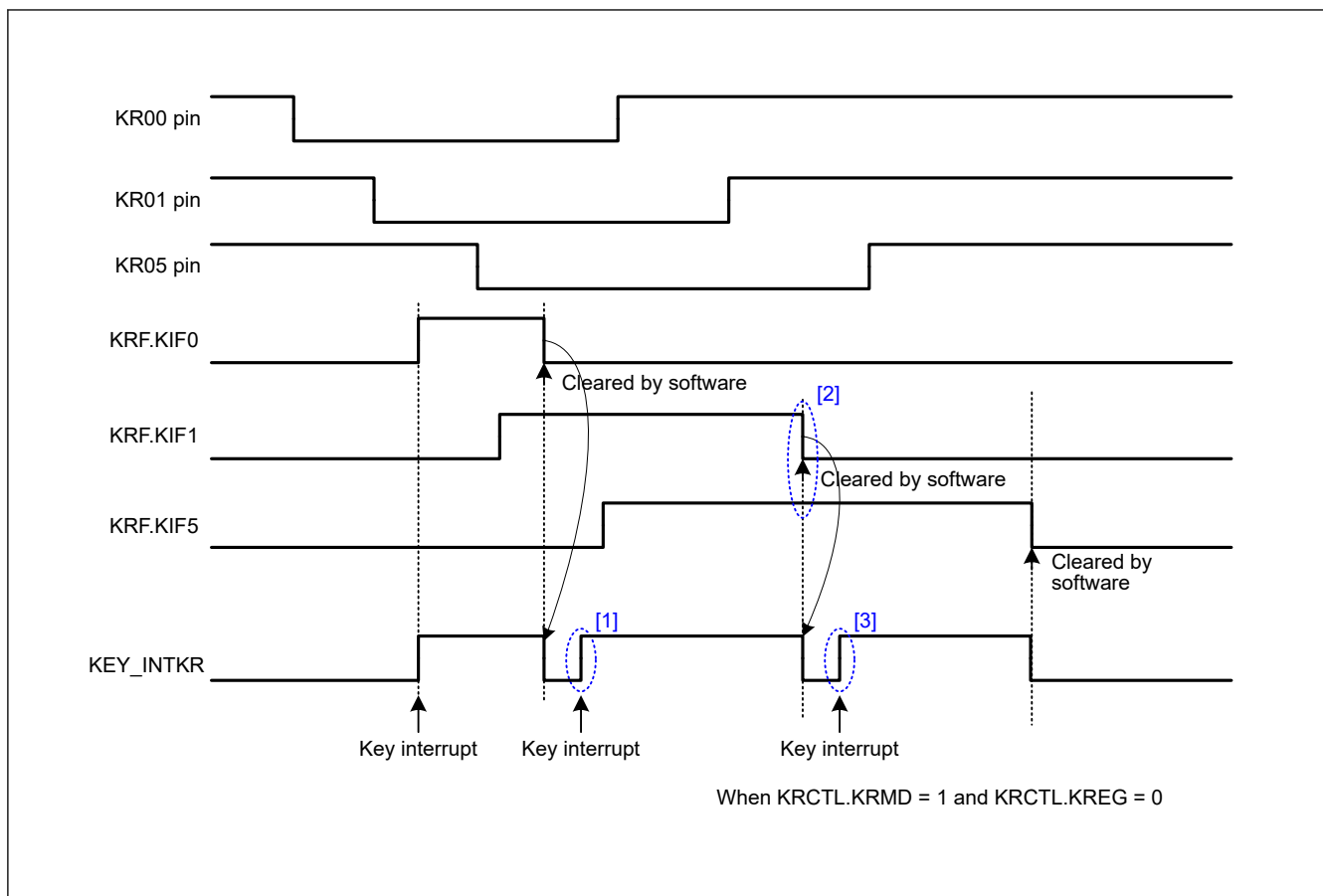


Figure 18.5 Operation of KEY_INTKR signal when key interrupts are input to multiple channels

18.4 Usage Notes

- If the KEY_INTKR signal is used as the snooze request, the KRCTL.KRMD bit should be set to 0.
- If the KEY_INTKR signal is used as the interrupt source for returning to Normal mode from Snooze and Software Standby modes, the KRCTL.KRMD bit should be set to 1.
- When KINT is assigned to a pin, this pin input is always enabled in the Software Standby mode, and if the pin level changes, the associated KRF.KIFn flag can be set. Therefore, a KEY_INTKR signal might be generated on canceling Software Standby mode. To ignore changes to the KR0n pin during a Software Standby, clear the associated KRM.KIMCn bit before entering Software Standby. After canceling Software Standby mode, the KRF.KIFn flag should be cleared before the associated KRM.KIMCn bit can be set.

19. Port Output Enable for GPT (POEG)

19.1 Overview

The Port Output Enable (POEG) function can place the General PWM Timer (GPT) output pins in the output disable state in one of the following ways:

- Input level detection of the GTETR_{Gn} (n = A, B) pins
- Output-disable request from the GPT
- Oscillation stop detection of the clock generation circuit
- Register settings

The GTETR_{Gn} (n = A, B) pins can be used as GPT external trigger input pins.

Table 19.1 lists the POEG specifications, Figure 19.1 shows a block diagram, and Table 19.2 lists the input pins.

Table 19.1 POEG specifications

Parameter	Specifications
Output-disable control through input level detection	• The GPT output pins can be disabled when a GTETR_{Gn} rising edge or falling edge is sampled after polarity and filter selection.
Output-disable request from the GPT	• When the GTIOCxA pin and the GTIOCxB pin are driven to an active level simultaneously, the GPT generates an output-disable request to the POEG. Through reception of these requests, the POEG can control whether the GTIOCxA and GTIOCxB pins are output-disabled.
Output-disable control through oscillation stop detection	• The GPT output pins can be disabled when oscillation of the clock generation circuit stops.
Output-disable control by software (registers)	• The GPT output pins can be disabled by modifying the register settings.
Interrupt	• Interrupts are generated in response when the port GTETR_{Gn} input is detected. • Interrupts are generated in response when the GPTx output-disable request is detected.
External trigger output to the GPT	• The GTETR_{Gn} signals can be output to the GPT after polarity and filter selection (count start, count stop, count clear, up-count, down-count, or input capture function)
Noise filtering	• For input from the GTETR_{Gn} pins, PCLKB/1, PCLKB/8, PCLKB/32, or PCLKB/128 can be selected as the noise filtering clock. (Filtering is performed by sampling the input signals three times using the selected clock.) • Positive or negative polarity can be selected for any of the GTETR_{Gn} input pins. • Signal state after polarity and filter selection can be monitored.

Note: n = A, B, x = 0, 4 to 9

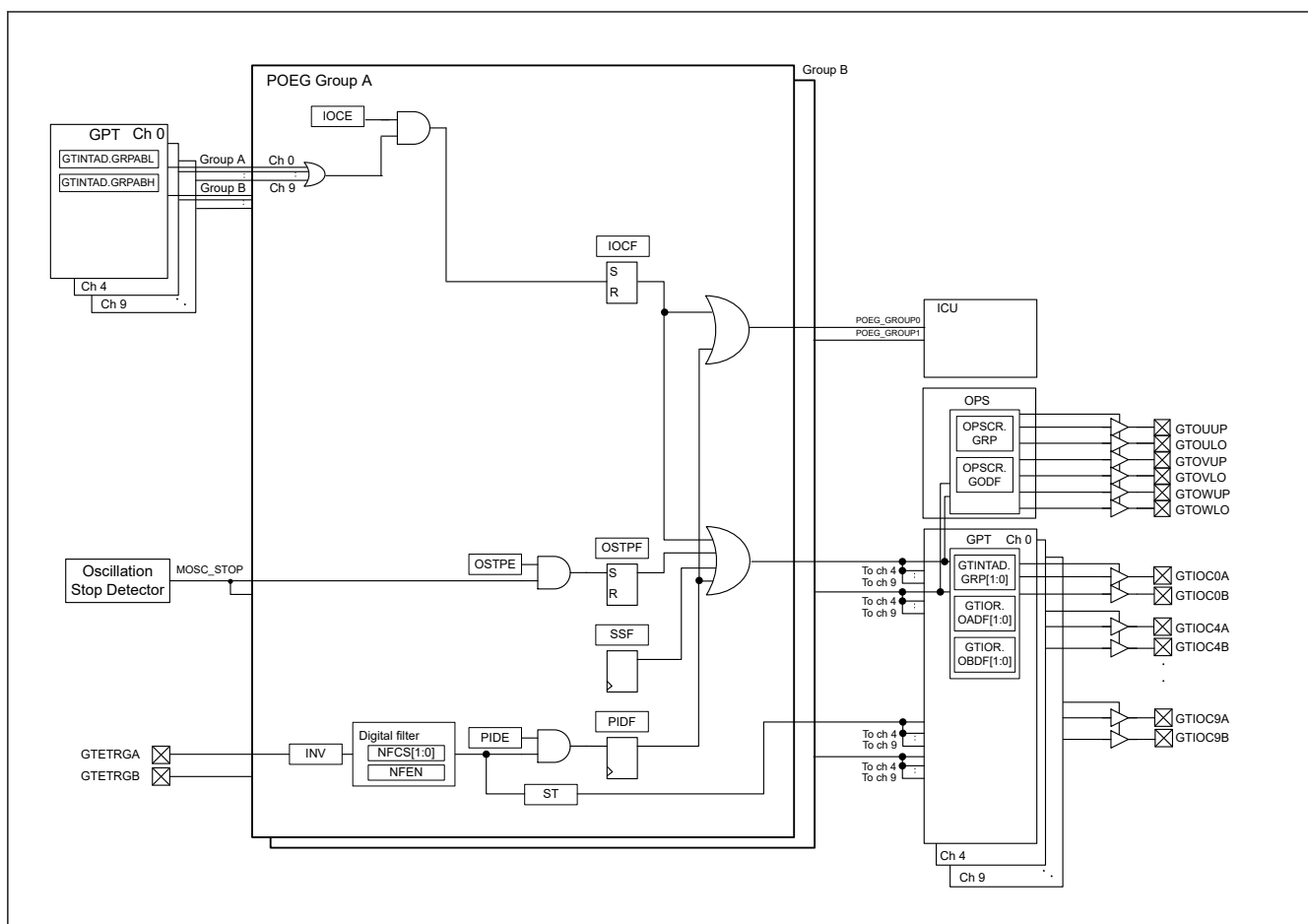


Figure 19.1 POEG block diagram

Table 19.2 POEG input pins

Pin name	I/O	Description
GTETRGA	Input	GPT output pin output-disable request signal or GPT external trigger input pin A
GTETRGB	Input	GPT output pin output-disable request signal or GPT external trigger input pin B

19.2 Register Descriptions

19.2.1 POEGGn : POEG Group n Setting Register (n = A, B)

Base address: POEG = 0x4004_2000

Offset address: 0x000 (POEGGA)
0x100 (POEGGB)

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	NFCS[1:0]		NFEN	INV	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	ST
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	OSTP E	IOCE	PIDE	SSF	OSTP F	IOCF	PIDF
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	PIDF	Port Input Detection Flag 0: No output-disable request from the GTETRn pin occurred 1: Output-disable request from the GTETRn pin occurred.	R/W ^{*1}
1	IOCF	Detection Flag for GPT Output-Disable Request 0: No output-disable request from GPT occurred. 1: Output-disable request from GPT occurred.	R/W ^{*1}
2	OSTPF	Oscillation Stop Detection Flag 0: No output-disable request from oscillation stop detection occurred 1: Output-disable request from oscillation stop detection occurred	R/W ^{*1}
3	SSF	Software Stop Flag 0: No output-disable request from software occurred 1: Output-disable request from software occurred	R/W
4	PIDE	Port Input Detection Enable 0: Disable output-disable requests from the GTETRn pins 1: Enable output-disable requests from the GTETRn pins	R/W ^{*2}
5	IOCE	Enable for GPT Output-Disable Request 0: Disable output-disable requests from GPT 1: Enable output-disable requests from GPT	R/W ^{*2}
6	OSTPE	Oscillation Stop Detection Enable 0: Disable output-disable requests from oscillation stop detection 1: Enable output-disable requests from oscillation stop detection	R/W ^{*2}
15:7	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
16	ST	GTETRn Input Status Flag 0: GTETRn input after filtering was 0 1: GTETRn input after filtering was 1	R
27:17	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
28	INV	GTETRn Input Reverse 0: Input GTETRn as-is 1: Input GTETRn in reverse	R/W
29	NFEN	Noise Filter Enable 0: Disable noise filtering 1: Enable noise filtering	R/W
31:30	NFCS[1:0]	Noise Filter Clock Select 0 0: Sample GTETRn pin input level three times every PCLKB 0 1: Sample GTETRn pin input level three times every PCLKB/8 1 0: Sample GTETRn pin input level three times every PCLKB/32 1 1: Sample GTETRn pin input level three times every PCLKB/128	R/W

Note 1. Only 0 can be written to clear the flag.

Note 2. Can be modified only once after a reset.

The POEGn (n = A, B) registers control the output-disable state of the GPT pins, interrupts, and the external trigger input to the GPT.

The register POEGGA response to GTETRGA pin, GPT's group A output-disable request. The register POEGGB response to GTETRGB pin, GPT's group B output-disable request.

19.3 Output-disable Control Operation

If any of the following conditions is satisfied, the GTIOCxA, GTIOCxB, and the 3-phase PWM output for BLDC motor control pins can be set to output-disable:

- Input level or edge detection of the GTETRn pins
When POEGn.PIDE is 1, the POEGn.PIDF flag is set to 1.
- Output-disable request from the GPT
When POEGn.IOCE is 1, the POEGn.IOCF flag is set to 1 if the disable request is enabled by GTINTAD.
The GTINTAD.GRPABH and GTINTAD.GRPABL settings apply to the group selected by the GPT register GTINTAD.GRP[1:0] or OPSCR.GRP.

- Oscillation stop detection for the clock generation circuit
While POEGGn.OSTPE is 1, the halt status of the main clock oscillator is detected and the POEGGn.OSTPF flag is set to 1.
- SSF bit setting
When POEGGn.SSF is set to 1, the GPT and PWM output are disabled.

The output-disable state is controlled in the GPT module. The output-disable of the GTIOCxA and GTIOCxB pins is set in the GTINTAD.GRP[1:0], GTIOR.OADF[1:0], and GTIOR.OBDF[1:0] bits in GPTx. The output-disable of the 3-phase PWM output for BLDC motor control pins is set in the OPSCR.GRP bit and OPSCR.GODF bit in GPT_OPS.

19.3.1 Pin Input Level Detection Operation

If the input conditions set in POEGGn.PIDE, POEGGn.NFCS[1:0], POEGGn.NFEN, and POEGGn.INV occur on the GTETRn pins, the GPT output pins are output-disabled.

19.3.1.1 Digital Filter

Figure 19.2 shows high-level detection by the digital filter. When a high level associated with the POEGGn.INV polarity setting is detected three times consecutively with the sampling clock selected in POEGGn.NFCS[1:0], the detected level is recognized as high, and the GPT output pins are output-disabled. If even one low level is detected during this interval, the detected level is not recognized as high. In addition, in an interval where the sampling clock is not output, changes of the levels on the GTETRn pins are ignored.

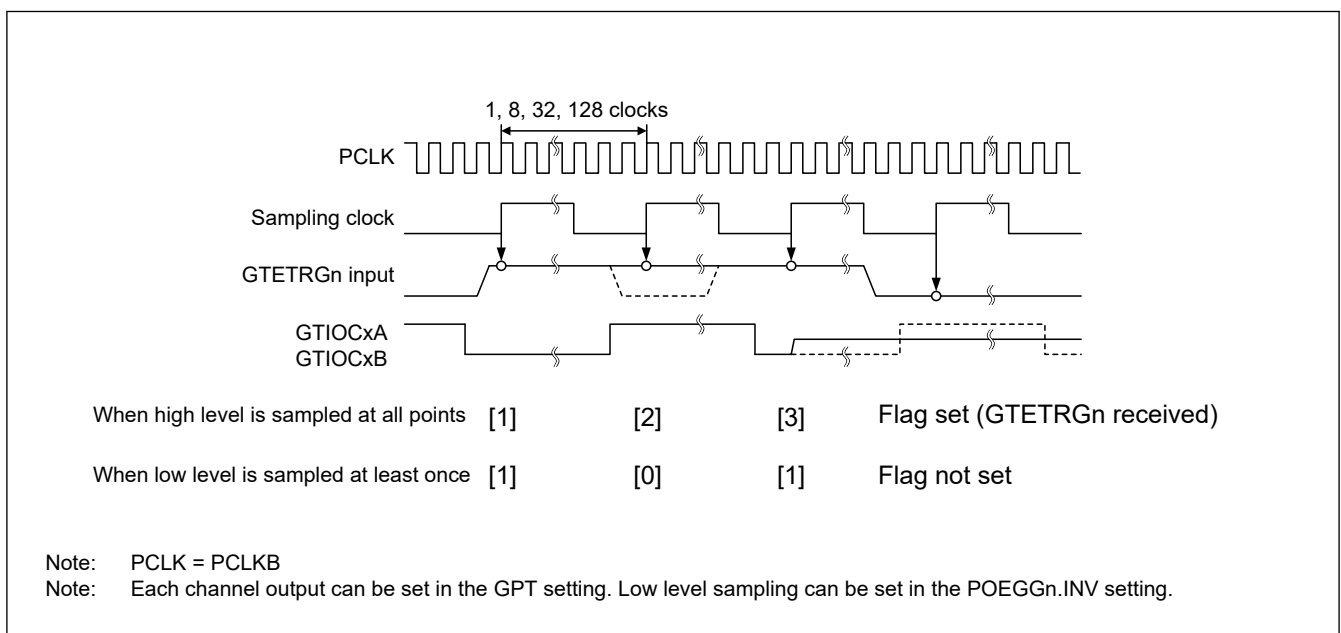


Figure 19.2 Example of digital filter operation

19.3.2 Output-disable Requests from the GPT

For details on the operation, see the description for GTIOC Pin Output Negate Control in [section 20, General PWM Timer \(GPT\)](#).

19.3.3 Output-disable Control Using Detection of Stopped Oscillation

When the oscillation stop detection function in the clock generation circuit detects stopped oscillation while POEGGn.OSTPE is 1, the GPT output pins are output-disabled for each group.

19.3.4 Output-disable Control Using Registers

The GPT output pins can be directly controlled by writing 1 to the Software Stop flag, POEGGn.SSF.

19.3.5 Release from Output-disable

To release the GPT output pins placed in the output-disable state, either return them to their initial state with a reset or clear all of the following flags:

- POEGGn.PIDF
- POEGGn.IOCF
- POEGGn.OSTPF
- POEGGn.SSF

Writing 0 to the POEGGn.PIDF flag is ignored (the flag is not cleared) if the external input pins, GTETRn are not disabled and the POEGGn.ST bit is not set to 0.

Writing 0 to the POEGGn.IOCF flag is valid (the flag is cleared) only if all of the GTST.OABHF and GTST.OABLF flags in the GPT are set to 0.

Writing 0 to the POEGGn.OSTPF flag is ignored (the flag is not cleared) if the OSTDSR.OSTDF flag in the clock generation circuit is not set to 0. In addition, when the flag set and release occur at the same time, the flag set takes precedent.

Figure 19.3 shows the release timing for output-disable. The output-disable is released at the beginning of the next count cycle of the GPT after the flag is cleared.

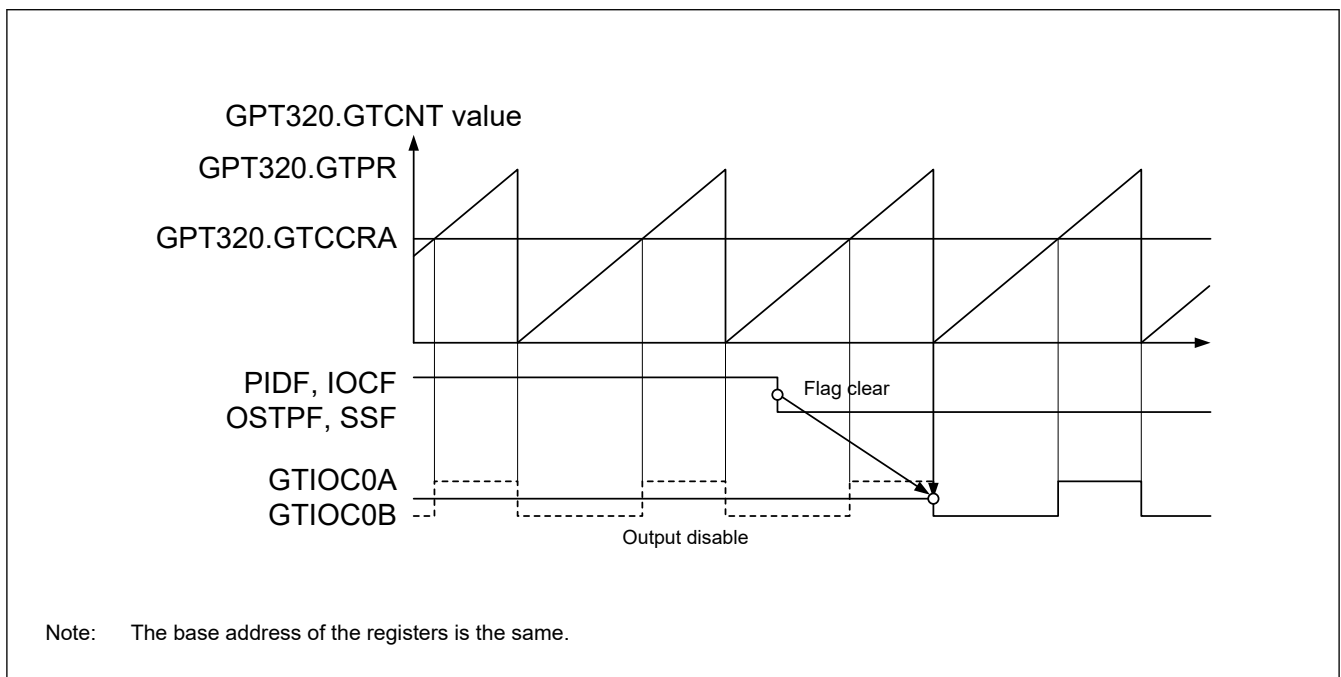


Figure 19.3 Output-disable release timing for GPT pin outputs

19.4 Interrupt Sources

The POEG generates an interrupt request for the following factors:

- Output-disable control by the input level detection
- Output-disable request from the GPT

Table 19.3 lists the conditions for interrupt requests.

Table 19.3 Interrupt sources and conditions

Interrupt source	Symbol	Associated flag	Trigger conditions
POEG group A interrupt	POEG_GROUPA	POEGGA.IOCF	An output-disable request from a GPT disable request occurred
		POEGGA.PIDF	An output-disable request from the GTETRGA pin occurred
POEG group B interrupt	POEG_GROUPB	POEGGB.IOCF	An output-disable request from a GPT disable request occurred
		POEGGB.PIDF	An output-disable request from the GTETRGA pin occurred

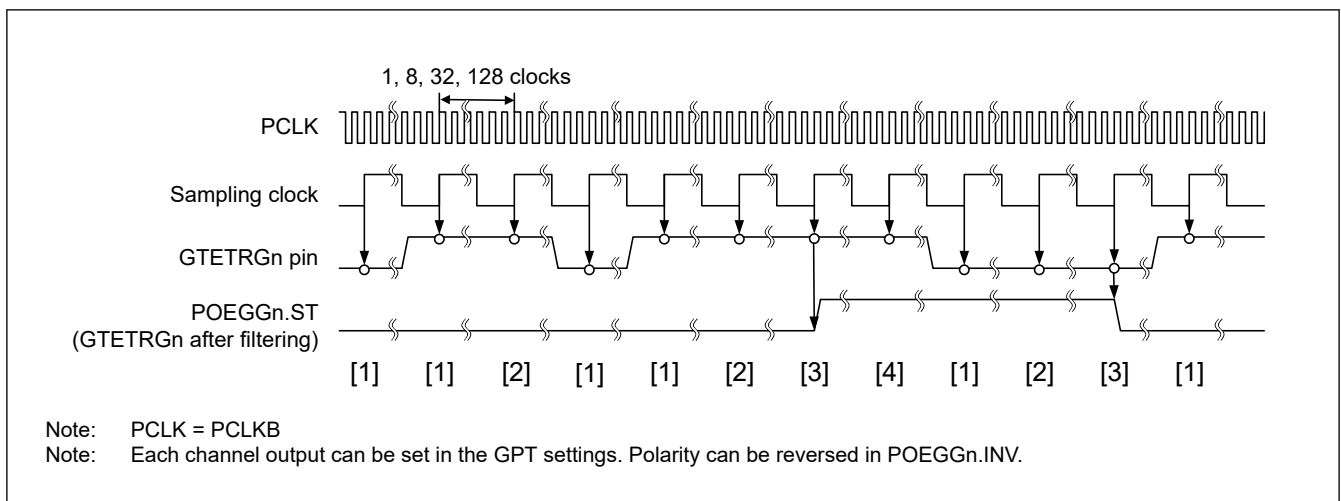
19.5 External Trigger Output to the GPT

The POEG outputs signals generated by filtering and level detection of GTETR_{Gn} pins input signals as the GPT operation trigger signal for the following:

- Count start
- Count stop
- Count clear
- Up-count
- Down-count
- Input capture

For the POEG_{Gn}.INV polarity setting signal, when the same level is input three times continuously with the sampling clock selected in POEG_{Gn}.NFCS[1:0], that value is output. Set the control registers the same as for the input level detection operation described in [section 19.3.1. Pin Input Level Detection Operation](#). The state after filtering can be monitored in POEG_{Gn}.ST.

[Figure 19.4](#) shows the output timing of an external trigger to the GPT.

**Figure 19.4** Output timing of external trigger to the GPT

19.6 Usage Notes

19.6.1 Transition to Software Standby Mode

When using the POEG, do not invoke Software Standby mode. In this mode, the POEG stops and therefore output disable of the pins cannot be controlled.

19.6.2 Specifying Pins Associated with the GPT

The POEG controls output-disable only when a pin is associated with the GPT in the PmnPFS.PMR and PmnPFS.PSEL settings. When the pin is specified as a general I/O pin, the POEG does not perform output-disable control.

20. General PWM Timer (GPT)

20.1 Overview

The General PWM Timer (GPT) is a 32-bit timer with GPT32 $\times$ 1 channel and a 16-bit timer with GPT16 $\times$ 6 channels. PWM waveforms can be generated by controlling the up-counter, down-counter, or the up- and down-counter. In addition, PWM waveforms can be generated for controlling brushless DC motors. The GPT can also be used as a general-purpose timer.

Table 20.1 lists the GPT specifications, Table 20.2 shows the GPT functions, and Figure 20.1 shows a block diagram.

Table 20.1 GPT specifications

Item	Description
Functions	• 32 bits $\times$ 1 channel (GPT32n (n = 0)) • 16 bits $\times$ 6 channels (GPT16m (m = 4 to 9)) • Up-counting or down-counting (saw waves) or up/down-counting (triangle waves) for each counter • Clock sources independently selectable for each channel • Two input/output pins per channel • Two output compare/input capture registers per channel • For the two output compare/input capture registers of each channel, four registers are provided as buffer registers and can operate as comparison registers when buffering is not in use • In output compare operation, buffer switching can be at crests or troughs, enabling the generation of laterally asymmetric PWM waveforms • Registers for setting up frame cycles in each channel with capability for generating interrupts at overflow or underflow • Generation of dead times in PWM operation • Synchronous starting, stopping and clearing counters for arbitrary channels • Count start, count stop, count clear, up-count, down-count, or input capture operation in response to a maximum of 4 ELC events • Count start, count stop, count clear, up-count, down-count, or input capture operation in response to the status of two input pins • Count start, count stop, count clear, up-count, down-count, or input capture operation in response to a maximum of 2 external triggers • Output pin disable function by detected short-circuits between output pins • PWM waveform for controlling brushless DC motors can be generated • Compare match A to D event, overflow/underflow event, and input UVW edge event can be output to the ELC • Enables the noise filter for input capture and input UVW • Bus clock: PCLKB, Core clock: PCLKD

Table 20.2 GPT functions (1 of 2)

Parameter	Description
Count clock	PCLKD PCLKD/4 PCLKD/16 PCLKD/64 PCLKD/256 PCLKD/1024
Output compare/input capture registers (GTCCR)	GTCCRA GTCCRB
Compare/buffer registers	GTCCRC GTCCRD GTCCRE GTCCRF
Cycle setting register	GTPR
Cycle setting buffer register	GTPBR
I/O pins	GTIOCnA GTIOCnB (n = 0, 4 to 9)
External trigger input pin ^{*1}	GTETRGA GTETRGB

Table 20.2 GPT functions (2 of 2)

Parameter		Description
Counter clear sources		GTPR register compare match Input capture Input pin status ELC event input GTETRGN (n = A, B) pin input
Compare match output	Low output	Available
	High output	Available
	Toggle output	Available
Input capture function		Available
Automatic addition of dead time		Available (no dead time buffer)
PWM mode		Available
Phase count function		Available
Buffer operation		Double buffer
One-shot operation		Available
DTC activation		All the interrupt sources
Brushless DC motor control function		Available
Interrupt sources		6 sources (n = 0, 4 to 9) • GTCCRA compare match/input capture(GPTn_CCPMA) • GTCCRB compare match/input capture(GPTn_CCPMB) • GTCCRC compare match(GPTn_CMPC) • GTCCRD compare match(GPTn_CMPD) • GTCNT overflow (GTPR compare match) (GPTn_OVF) • GTCNT underflow (GPTn_UDF)
Event linking (ELC) function		Available ^{*2}
Noise filtering function		Available

Note 1. GTETRGN connects to GPT through the POEG module. Therefore, to use the GPT function, supply the POEG clock by clearing the MSTPCRD.MSTPD14 bit.

Note 2. See [section 20.5. Operations Linked by ELC](#).

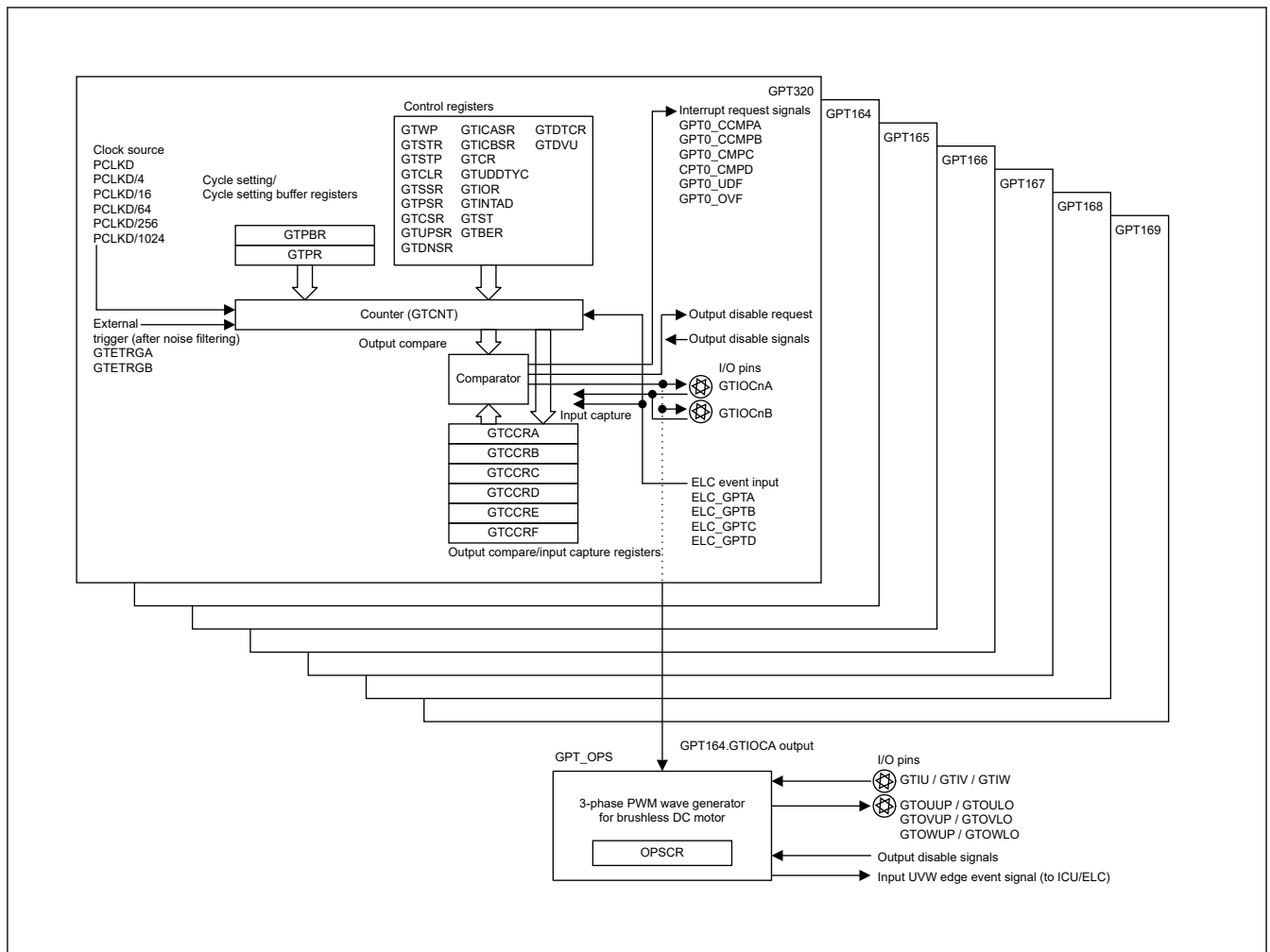


Figure 20.1 **GPT block diagram**

Figure 20.2 shows an example using multiple GPTs.

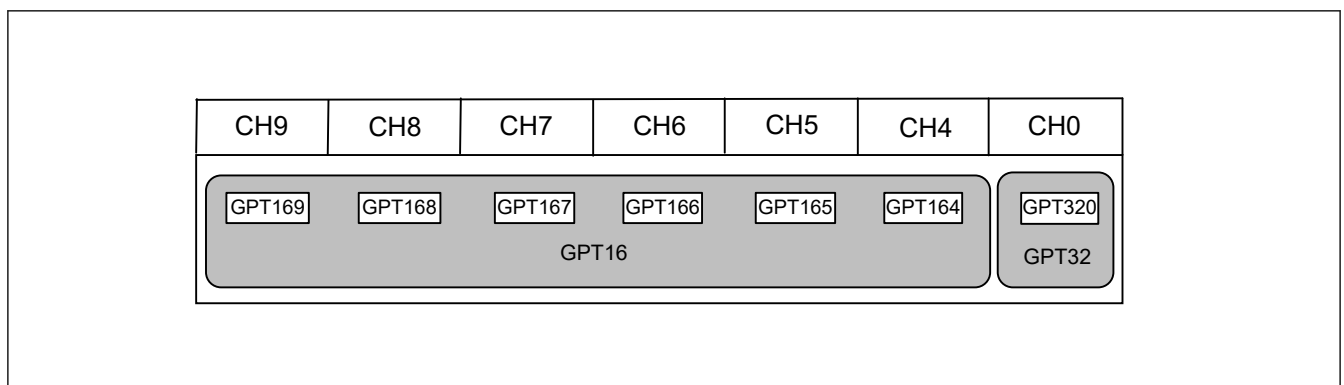


Figure 20.2 Association between GPT channels and module names

Table 20.3 lists the I/O pins.

Table 20.3 GPT I/O pins (1 of 2)

Channel	Pin name	I/O	Function
Common	GTETR _G x	Input	External trigger input pin x (input through the POEG)
GPT32n	GTIOC _n A	I/O	GTCCRA register input capture input/output compare output/PWM output pin
	GTIOC _n B	I/O	GTCCRB register input capture input/output compare output/PWM output pin

Table 20.3 GPT I/O pins (2 of 2)

Channel	Pin name	I/O	Function
GPT16m	GTIOCmA	I/O	GTCCRA register input capture input/output compare output/PWM output pin
	GTIOCmB	I/O	GTCCRB register input capture input/output compare output/PWM output pin
GPT_OPS	GTIU	Input	Hall sensor input pin U
	GTIV	Input	Hall sensor input pin V
	GTIW	Input	Hall sensor input pin W
	GTOUUP	Output	3-phase PWM output for BLDC motor control (positive U-phase)
	GTOULO	Output	3-phase PWM output for BLDC motor control (negative U-phase)
	GTOVUP	Output	3-phase PWM output for BLDC motor control (positive V-phase)
	GTOVLO	Output	3-phase PWM output for BLDC motor control (negative V-phase)
	GTOWUP	Output	3-phase PWM output for BLDC motor control (positive W-phase)
	GTOWLO	Output	3-phase PWM output for BLDC motor control (negative W-phase)

Note: x: A, B
n: 0
m: 4 to 9

20.2 Register Descriptions

20.2.1 GTWP : General PWM Timer Write-Protection Register

Base address: GPT320 = 0x4007_8000
GPT16m = 0x4007_8000 + 0x0100 × m (m = 4 to 9)

Offset address: 0x00

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	PRKEY[7:0]								—	—	—	—	—	—	—	WP
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	WP	Register Write Disable 0: Write to the register enabled 1: Write to the register disabled	R/W
7:1	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
15:8	PRKEY[7:0]	GTWP Key Code When 0xA5 is written to these bits, writing to the WP bit is permitted. These bits are read as 0.	W
31:16	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

GTWP enables or disables writing to registers to prevent accidental modification. Protection by the GTWP register is only for the writes by the CPU. GTWP does not protect registers from updates that occur in association with CPU writes.

WP bit (Register Write Disable)

The following is a list of write enabled or disabled registers:

GTSSR, GTPSR, GTCSSR, GTUPSR, GTDNSR, GTICASR, GTICBSR, GTCR, GTUDDTYC, GTIOR, GTINTAD, GTST, GTBER, GTCNT, GTCCRA, GTCCRB, GTCCRC, GTCCRD, GTCCRE, GTCCRF, GTPR, GTPBR, GTDTCR, GTDVU.

PRKEY[7:0] bit (GTWP Key Code)

This bit controls whether the WP bit can be overwritten.

20.2.2 GTSTR : General PWM Timer Software Start Register

Base address: GPT320 = 0x4007_8000
GPT16m = 0x4007_8000 + 0x0100 × m (m = 4 to 9)

Offset address: 0x04

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	CSTR T9	CSTR T8	CSTR T7	CSTR T6	CSTR T5	CSTR T4	—	—	—	CSTR T0
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	CSTR0	Channel 0 GTCNT Count Start 0: GTCNT counter is not started 1: GTCNT counter is started	R/W
3:1	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
9:4	CSTR4 to CSTR9 ^{*1}	Channel n GTCNT Count Start (n is the same as the bit position value) 0: GTCNT counter is not started 1: GTCNT counter is started	R/W
31:10	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note 1. The bits that can be used vary depending on the product. The n in CSTRn is the same as the GPT channel number. For this product, n is 0, 4 to 9.

The GTSTR starts the GTCNT counter operation for each channel n, where n = 0, 4 to 9.

The GTSTR bit number represents the channel number. The GTSTR register of each channel is shared by all channels. The GTCNT counter starts for the channel associated with the GTSTR bit number where 1 is written. Writing 0 has no effect on the status of GTCNT counter and the value of GTSTR register.

For the association between module names and channel numbers, see [Figure 20.2](#).

CSTRn bits (Channel n GTCNT Count Start (n = 0, 4 to 9))

The CSTRn bits start channel n of the GTCNT counter operation. Writing to the GTSTR.CSTRn bit (n = 0, 4 to 9) has no effect unless the GTSSR.CSTR bit is set to 1.

The read data shows the counter status of each channel (GTCR.CST bit). A value of 0 means the counter is stopped and 1 means the counter is running.

20.2.3 GTSTP : General PWM Timer Software Stop Register

Base address: GPT320 = 0x4007_8000
 GPT16m = 0x4007_8000 + 0x0100 × m (m = 4 to 9)

Offset address: 0x08

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	CSTO P9	CSTO P8	CSTO P7	CSTO P6	CSTO P5	CSTO P4	—	—	—	CSTO P0
Value after reset:	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	CSTOP0	Channel 0 GTCNT Count Stop 0: GTCNT counter is not stopped 1: GTCNT counter is stopped	R/W
3:1	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
9:4	CSTOP4 to CSTOP9 ^{*1}	Channel n GTCNT Count Stop (n is the same as the bit position value) 0: GTCNT counter is not stopped 1: GTCNT counter is stopped	R/W
31:10	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note 1. The bits that can be used vary depending on the product. The n in CSTOPn is the same as the GPT channel number. For this product, n is 0, 4 to 9.

The GTSTP stops the GTCNT counter operation for each channel n, where n = 0, 4 to 9.

The GTSTP bit number represents the channel number. The GTSTP register of each channel is shared by all the channels. The GTCNT counter stops for the channel associated with the GTSTP bit number where 1 is written. Writing 0 has no effect on the status of the GTCNT counter and the value of GTSTP register.

For the association between module names and channel numbers, see [Figure 20.2](#).

CSTOPn bits (Channel n GTCNT Count Stop (n = 0, 4 to 9))

The CSTOPn bits stop channel n of the GTCNT counter operation. Writing to the GTSTP.CSTOPn bit (n = 0, 4 to 9) has no effect unless the GTPSR.CSTOP bit is set to 1. The read data shows the counter status of each channel (invert of GTCR.CST bit). A value of 0 means the counter is running and 1 means the counter is stopped.

20.2.4 GTCLR : General PWM Timer Software Clear Register

Base address: GPT320 = 0x4007_8000
 GPT16m = 0x4007_8000 + 0x0100 × m (m = 4 to 9)

Offset address: 0x0C

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	CCLR 9	CCLR 8	CCLR 7	CCLR 6	CCLR 5	CCLR 4	—	—	—	CCLR 0
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	CCLR0	Channel 0 GTCNT Count Clear 0: GTCNT counter is not cleared 1: GTCNT counter is cleared	W
3:1	—	The write value should be 0.	W
9:4	CCLR4 to CCLR9*1	Channel n GTCNT Count Clear (n is the same as the bit position value) 0: GTCNT counter is not cleared 1: GTCNT counter is cleared	W
31:10	—	The write value should be 0.	W

Note 1. The bits that can be used vary depending on the product. The n in CCLRn is the same as the GPT channel number. For this product, n is 0, 4 to 9.

The GTCLR is a write-only register that clears the GTCNT counter operation for each channel n, where n = 0, 4 to 9.

The GTCLR bit number represents the channel number. The GTCLR register of each channel is shared by all the channels. The GTCNT counter is cleared for the channel associated with the GTCLR bit number where 1 is written. Writing 0 has no effect on the status of the GTCNT counter.

For the association between module names and channel numbers, see [Figure 20.2](#).

CCLRn bits (Channel n GTCNT Count Clear (n = 0, 4 to 9))

When the counting direction flag is set for decrement (GTST.TUCF flag = 0) with saw-wave mode selected in the GTCR.MD[2:0] bits, the value of the GTCNT counter becomes that of the corresponding GTPR register in response to writing 1 to the CCLRn bit. The value of the counter becomes 0x0000 0000 with other settings. These bits are read as 0.

20.2.5 GTSSR : General PWM Timer Start Source Select Register

Base address: GPT320 = 0x4007_8000
GPT16m = 0x4007_8000 + 0x0100 × m (m = 4 to 9)

Offset address: 0x10

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	CSTR T	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	SSEL CD	SSEL CC	SSEL CB	SSEL CA
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	SSCB FAH	SSCB FAL	SSCB RAH	SSCB RAL	SSCA FBH	SSCA FBL	SSCA RBH	SSCA RBL	—	—	—	—	SSGT RGBF	SSGT RGBR	SSGT RGAF	SSGT RGAR
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	SSGTRGAR	GTETRGA Pin Rising Input Source Counter Start Enable 0: Counter start disabled on the rising edge of GTETRGA input 1: Counter start enabled on the rising edge of GTETRGA input	R/W
1	SSGTRGAF	GTETRGA Pin Falling Input Source Counter Start Enable 0: Counter start disabled on the falling edge of GTETRGA input 1: Counter start enabled on the falling edge of GTETRGA input	R/W
2	SSGTRGBR	GTETRGB Pin Rising Input Source Counter Start Enable 0: Counter start disabled on the rising edge of GTETRGB input 1: Counter start enabled on the rising edge of GTETRGB input	R/W
3	SSGTRGBF	GTETRGB Pin Falling Input Source Counter Start Enable 0: Counter start disabled on the falling edge of GTETRGB input 1: Counter start enabled on the falling edge of GTETRGB input	R/W
7:4	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
8	SSCARBL	GTIOCnA Pin Rising Input during GTIOCnB Value Low Source Counter Start Enable 0: Counter start disabled on the rising edge of GTIOCnA input when GTIOCnB input is 0 1: Counter start enabled on the rising edge of GTIOCnA input when GTIOCnB input is 0	R/W
9	SSCARBH	GTIOCnA Pin Rising Input during GTIOCnB Value High Source Counter Start Enable 0: Counter start disabled on the rising edge of GTIOCnA input when GTIOCnB input is 1 1: Counter start enabled on the rising edge of GTIOCnA input when GTIOCnB input is 1	R/W
10	SSCAFB	GTIOCnA Pin Falling Input during GTIOCnB Value Low Source Counter Start Enable 0: Counter start disabled on the falling edge of GTIOCnA input when GTIOCnB input is 0 1: Counter start enabled on the falling edge of GTIOCnA input when GTIOCnB input is 0	R/W
11	SSCAFBH	GTIOCnA Pin Falling Input during GTIOCnB Value High Source Counter Start Enable 0: Counter start disabled on the falling edge of GTIOCnA input when GTIOCnB input is 1 1: Counter start enabled on the falling edge of GTIOCnA input when GTIOCnB input is 1	R/W
12	SSCBRAL	GTIOCnB Pin Rising Input during GTIOCnA Value Low Source Counter Start Enable 0: Counter start disabled on the rising edge of GTIOCnB input when GTIOCnA input is 0 1: Counter start enabled on the rising edge of GTIOCnB input when GTIOCnA input is 0	R/W
13	SSCBRAH	GTIOCnB Pin Rising Input during GTIOCnA Value High Source Counter Start Enable 0: Counter start disabled on the rising edge of GTIOCnB input when GTIOCnA input is 1 1: Counter start enabled on the rising edge of GTIOCnB input when GTIOCnA input is 1	R/W
14	SSCBFAL	GTIOCnB Pin Falling Input during GTIOCnA Value Low Source Counter Start Enable 0: Counter start disabled on the falling edge of GTIOCnB input when GTIOCnA input is 0 1: Counter start enabled on the falling edge of GTIOCnB input when GTIOCnA input is 0	R/W
15	SSCBFAH	GTIOCnB Pin Falling Input during GTIOCnA Value High Source Counter Start Enable 0: Counter start disabled on the falling edge of GTIOCnB input when GTIOCnA input is 1 1: Counter start enabled on the falling edge of GTIOCnB input when GTIOCnA input is 1	R/W
16	SSELCA	ELC_GPTA Event Source Counter Start Enable 0: Counter start disabled at the ELC_GPTA input 1: Counter start enabled at the ELC_GPTA input	R/W
17	SSELCB	ELC_GPTB Event Source Counter Start Enable 0: Counter start disabled at the ELC_GPTB input 1: Counter start enabled at the ELC_GPTB input	R/W
18	SSELCC	ELC_GPTC Event Source Counter Start Enable 0: Counter start disabled at the ELC_GPTC input 1: Counter start enabled at the ELC_GPTC input	R/W
19	SSELCD	ELC_GPTD Event Source Counter Start Enable 0: Counter start disabled at the ELC_GPTD input 1: Counter start enabled at the ELC_GPTD input	R/W
30:20	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
31	CSTRT	Software Source Counter Start Enable 0: Counter start disabled by the GTSTR register 1: Counter start enabled by the GTSTR register	R/W

The GTSSR sets the source to start the GTCNT counter.

Input from GTETR_{Gn} (n = A, B) pins are input to the GPT through the POEG. Set the polarity of these signals with the POEG.

SSGTRGAR bit (GTETRGA Pin Rising Input Source Counter Start Enable)

The SSGTRGAR bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter start on the rising edge of the GTETRGA pin input.

SSGTRGAF bit (GTETRGA Pin Falling Input Source Counter Start Enable)

The SSGTRGAF bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter start on the falling edge of the GTETRGA pin input.

SSGTRGBR bit (GTETRGB Pin Rising Input Source Counter Start Enable)

The SSGTRGBR bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter start on the rising edge of the GTETRGB pin input.

SSGTRGBF bit (GTETRGB Pin Falling Input Source Counter Start Enable)

The SSGTRGBF bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter start on the falling edge of the GTETRGB pin input.

SSCARBL bit (GTIOCnA Pin Rising Input during GTIOCnB Value Low Source Counter Start Enable)

The SSCARBL bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter start on the rising edge of the GTIOCnA pin input, when GTIOCnB input is 0.

SSCARBH bit (GTIOCnA Pin Rising Input during GTIOCnB Value High Source Counter Start Enable)

The SSCARBH bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter start on the rising edge of the GTIOCnA pin input, when GTIOCnB input is 1.

SSCAFBL bit (GTIOCnA Pin Falling Input during GTIOCnB Value Low Source Counter Start Enable)

The SSCAFBL bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter start on the falling edge of the GTIOCnA pin input, when GTIOCnB input is 0.

SSCAFBH bit (GTIOCnA Pin Falling Input during GTIOCnB Value High Source Counter Start Enable)

The SSCAFBH bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter start on the falling edge of the GTIOCnA pin input, when GTIOCnB input is 1.

SSCBRAL bit (GTIOCnB Pin Rising Input during GTIOCnA Value Low Source Counter Start Enable)

The SSCBRAL bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter start on the rising edge of the GTIOCnB pin input, when GTIOCnA input is 0.

SSCBRAH bit (GTIOCnB Pin Rising Input during GTIOCnA Value High Source Counter Start Enable)

The SSCBRAH bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter start on the rising edge of the GTIOCnB pin input, when GTIOCnA input is 1.

SSCBFAL bit (GTIOCnB Pin Falling Input during GTIOCnA Value Low Source Counter Start Enable)

The SSCBFAL bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter start on the falling edge of the GTIOCnB pin input, when GTIOCnA input is 0.

SSCBFAH bit (GTIOCnB Pin Falling Input during GTIOCnA Value High Source Counter Start Enable)

The SSCBFAH bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter start on the falling edge of the GTIOCnB pin input, when GTIOCnA input is 1.

SSELC_m bit (ELC_GPT_m Event Source Counter Start Enable) (m = A to D)

The SSELC_m bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter start at the ELC_GPT_m event input.

CSTRT bit (Software Source Counter Start Enable)

The CSTRT bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter start by GTSTR register.

20.2.6 GTPSR : General PWM Timer Stop Source Select Register

Base address: GPT320 = 0x4007_8000
GPT16m = 0x4007_8000 + 0x0100 × m (m = 4 to 9)

Offset address: 0x14

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	CSTO P	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	PSEL CD	PSEL CC	PSEL CB	PSEL CA
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	PSCB FAH	PSCB FAL	PSCB RAH	PSCB RAL	PSCA FBH	PSCA FBL	PSCA RBH	PSCA RBL	—	—	—	—	PSGT RGBF	PSGT RGBR	PSGT RGAF	PSGT RGAR
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	PSGTRGAR	GTETRGA Pin Rising Input Source Counter Stop Enable 0: Counter stop disabled on the rising edge of GTETRGA input 1: Counter stop enabled on the rising edge of GTETRGA input	R/W
1	PSGTRGAF	GTETRGA Pin Falling Input Source Counter Stop Enable 0: Counter stop disabled on the falling edge of GTETRGA input 1: Counter stop enabled on the falling edge of GTETRGA input	R/W
2	PSGTRGBR	GTETRGB Pin Rising Input Source Counter Stop Enable 0: Counter stop disabled on the rising edge of GTETRGB input 1: Counter stop enabled on the rising edge of GTETRGB input	R/W
3	PSGTRGBF	GTETRGB Pin Falling Input Source Counter Stop Enable 0: Counter stop disabled on the falling edge of GTETRGB input 1: Counter stop enabled on the falling edge of GTETRGB input	R/W
7:4	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
8	PSCARBL	GTIOCnA Pin Rising Input during GTIOCnB Value Low Source Counter Stop Enable 0: Counter stop disabled on the rising edge of GTIOCnA input when GTIOCnB input is 0 1: Counter stop enabled on the rising edge of GTIOCnA input when GTIOCnB input is 0	R/W
9	PSCARBH	GTIOCnA Pin Rising Input during GTIOCnB Value High Source Counter Stop Enable 0: Counter stop disabled on the rising edge of GTIOCnA input when GTIOCnB input is 1 1: Counter stop enabled on the rising edge of GTIOCnA input when GTIOCnB input is 1	R/W
10	PSCAFBL	GTIOCnA Pin Falling Input during GTIOCnB Value Low Source Counter Stop Enable 0: Counter stop disabled on the falling edge of GTIOCnA input when GTIOCnB input is 0 1: Counter stop enabled on the falling edge of GTIOCnA input when GTIOCnB input is 0	R/W
11	PSCAFBH	GTIOCnA Pin Falling Input during GTIOCnB Value High Source Counter Stop Enable 0: Counter stop disabled on the falling edge of GTIOCnA input when GTIOCnB input is 1 1: Counter stop enabled on the falling edge of GTIOCnA input when GTIOCnB input is 1	R/W
12	PSCBRAL	GTIOCnB Pin Rising Input during GTIOCnA Value Low Source Counter Stop Enable 0: Counter stop disabled on the rising edge of GTIOCnB input when GTIOCnA input is 0 1: Counter stop enabled on the rising edge of GTIOCnB input when GTIOCnA input is 0	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
13	PSCBRAH	GTIOCnB Pin Rising Input during GTIOCnA Value High Source Counter Stop Enable 0: Counter stop disabled on the rising edge of GTIOCnB input when GTIOCnA input is 1 1: Counter stop enabled on the rising edge of GTIOCnB input when GTIOCnA input is 1	R/W
14	PSCBFAL	GTIOCnB Pin Falling Input during GTIOCnA Value Low Source Counter Stop Enable 0: Counter stop disabled on the falling edge of GTIOCnB input when GTIOCnA input is 0 1: Counter stop enabled on the falling edge of GTIOCnB input when GTIOCnA input is 0	R/W
15	PSCBFAH	GTIOCnB Pin Falling Input during GTIOCnA Value High Source Counter Stop Enable 0: Counter stop disabled on the falling edge of GTIOCnB input when GTIOCnA input is 1 1: Counter stop enabled on the falling edge of GTIOCnB input when GTIOCnA input is 1	R/W
16	PSELCA	ELC_GPTA Event Source Counter Stop Enable 0: Counter stop disabled at the ELC_GPTA input 1: Counter stop enabled at the ELC_GPTA input	R/W
17	PSELCB	ELC_GPTB Event Source Counter Stop Enable 0: Counter stop disabled at the ELC_GPTB input 1: Counter stop enabled at the ELC_GPTB input	R/W
18	PSELCC	ELC_GPTC Event Source Counter Stop Enable 0: Counter stop disabled at the ELC_GPTC input 1: Counter stop enabled at the ELC_GPTC input	R/W
19	PSELCD	ELC_GPTD Event Source Counter Stop Enable 0: Counter stop disabled at the ELC_GPTD input 1: Counter stop enabled at the ELC_GPTD input	R/W
30:20	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
31	CSTOP	Software Source Counter Stop Enable 0: Counter stop disabled by the GTSTP register 1: Counter stop enabled by the GTSTP register	R/W

The GTPSR sets the source to stop the GTCNT counter.

Inputs from GTETR_{Gn} (n = A, B) pins are input to the GPT through the POEG. Set the polarity of these signals with the POEG.

PSGTRGAR bit (GTETRGA Pin Rising Input Source Counter Stop Enable)

The PSGTRGAR bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter stop on the rising edge of the GTETRGA pin input.

PSGTRGAF bit (GTETRGA Pin Falling Input Source Counter Stop Enable)

The PSGTRGAF bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter stop on the falling edge of the GTETRGA pin input.

PSGTRGBR bit (GTETRGB Pin Rising Input Source Counter Stop Enable)

PSGTRGBR bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter stop on the rising edge of the GTETRGB pin input.

PSGTRGBF bit (GTETRGB Pin Falling Input Source Counter Stop Enable)

The PSGTRGBF bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter stop on the falling edge of the GTETRGB pin input.

PSCARBL bit (GTIOCnA Pin Rising Input during GTIOCnB Value Low Source Counter Stop Enable)

The PSCARBL bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter stop on the rising edge of the GTIOCnA pin input, when GTIOCnB input is 0.

PSCARBH bit (GTIOCnA Pin Rising Input during GTIOCnB Value High Source Counter Stop Enable)

The PSCARBH bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter stop on the rising edge of the GTIOCnA pin input, when GTIOCnB input is 1.

PSCAFBL bit (GTIOCnA Pin Falling Input during GTIOCnB Value Low Source Counter Stop Enable)

The PSCAFBL bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter stop on the falling edge of the GTIOCnA pin input, when GTIOCnB input is 0.

PSCAFBH bit (GTIOCnA Pin Falling Input during GTIOCnB Value High Source Counter Stop Enable)

The PSCAFBH bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter stop on the falling edge of the GTIOCnA pin input, when GTIOCnB input is 1.

PSCBRAL bit (GTIOCnB Pin Rising Input during GTIOCnA Value Low Source Counter Stop Enable)

The PSCBRAL bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter stop on the rising edge of the GTIOCnB pin input, when GTIOCnA input is 0.

PSCBRAH bit (GTIOCnB Pin Rising Input during GTIOCnA Value High Source Counter Stop Enable)

The PSCBRAH bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter stop on the rising edge of the GTIOCnB pin input, when GTIOCnA input is 1.

PSCBFAL bit (GTIOCnB Pin Falling Input during GTIOCnA Value Low Source Counter Stop Enable)

The PSCBFAL bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter stop on the falling edge of the GTIOCnB pin input, when GTIOCnA input is 0.

PSCBFAH bit (GTIOCnB Pin Falling Input during GTIOCnA Value High Source Counter Stop Enable)

The PSCBFAH bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter stop on the falling edge of the GTIOCnB pin input, when GTIOCnA input is 1.

PSELCm bit (ELCm Event Source Counter Stop Enable) (m = A to D)

The PSELCm bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter stop at the ELC_GPTm event input.

CSTOP bit (Software Source Counter Stop Enable)

The CSTOP bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter stop by the GTSTP register.

20.2.7 GTCSR : General PWM Timer Clear Source Select Register

Base address: GPT320 = 0x4007_8000
GPT16m = 0x4007_8000 + 0x0100 × m (m = 4 to 9)

Offset address: 0x18

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	CCLR	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	CSEL CD	CSEL CC	CSEL CB	CSEL CA
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	CSCB FAH	CSCB FAL	CSCB RAH	CSCB RAL	CSCA FBH	CSCA FBL	CSCA RBH	CSCA RBL	—	—	—	—	CSGT RGBF	CSGT RGBR	CSGT RGAF	CSGT RGAR
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	CSGTRGAR	GTETRGA Pin Rising Input Source Counter Clear Enable 0: Counter clear disabled on the rising edge of GTETRGA input 1: Counter clear enabled on the rising edge of GTETRGA input	R/W
1	CSGTRGAF	GTETRGA Pin Falling Input Source Counter Clear Enable 0: Counter clear disabled on the falling edge of GTETRGA input 1: Counter clear enabled on the falling edge of GTETRGA input	R/W
2	CSGTRGBR	GTETRGB Pin Rising Input Source Counter Clear Enable 0: Disable counter clear on the rising edge of GTETRGB input 1: Enable counter clear on the rising edge of GTETRGB input	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
3	CSGTRGBF	GTETRGB Pin Falling Input Source Counter Clear Enable 0: Counter clear disabled on the falling edge of GTETRGB input 1: Counter clear enabled on the falling edge of GTETRGB input	R/W
7:4	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
8	CSCARBL	GTIOCnA Pin Rising Input during GTIOCnB Value Low Source Counter Clear Enable 0: Counter clear disabled on the rising edge of GTIOCnA input when GTIOCnB input is 0 1: Counter clear enabled on the rising edge of GTIOCnA input when GTIOCnB input is 0	R/W
9	CSCARBH	GTIOCnA Pin Rising Input during GTIOCnB Value High Source Counter Clear Enable 0: Counter clear disabled on the rising edge of GTIOCnA input when GTIOCnB input is 1 1: Counter clear enabled on the rising edge of GTIOCnA input when GTIOCnB input is 1	R/W
10	CSCAFBL	GTIOCnA Pin Falling Input during GTIOCnB Value Low Source Counter Clear Enable 0: Counter clear disabled on the falling edge of GTIOCnA input when GTIOCnB input is 0 1: Counter clear enabled on the falling edge of GTIOCnA input when GTIOCnB input is 0	R/W
11	CSCAFBH	GTIOCnA Pin Falling Input during GTIOCnB Value High Source Counter Clear Enable 0: Counter clear disabled on the falling edge of GTIOCnA input when GTIOCnB input is 1 1: Counter clear enabled on the falling edge of GTIOCnA input when GTIOCnB input is 1	R/W
12	CSCBRAL	GTIOCnB Pin Rising Input during GTIOCnA Value Low Source Counter Clear Enable 0: Counter clear disabled on the rising edge of GTIOCnB input when GTIOCnA input is 0 1: Counter clear enabled on the rising edge of GTIOCnB input when GTIOCnA input is 0	R/W
13	CSCBRAH	GTIOCnB Pin Rising Input during GTIOCnA Value High Source Counter Clear Enable 0: Counter clear disabled on the rising edge of GTIOCnB input when GTIOCnA input is 1 1: Counter clear enabled on the rising edge of GTIOCnB input when GTIOCnA input is 1	R/W
14	CSCBFAL	GTIOCnB Pin Falling Input during GTIOCnA Value Low Source Counter Clear Enable 0: Counter clear disabled on the falling edge of GTIOCnB input when GTIOCnA input is 0 1: Counter clear enabled on the falling edge of GTIOCnB input when GTIOCnA input is 0	R/W
15	CSCBFAH	GTIOCnB Pin Falling Input during GTIOCnA Value High Source Counter Clear Enable 0: Counter clear disabled on the falling edge of GTIOCnB input when GTIOCnA input is 1 1: Counter clear enabled on the falling edge of GTIOCnB input when GTIOCnA input is 1	R/W
16	CSELCA	ELC_GPTA Event Source Counter Clear Enable 0: Counter clear disabled at the ELC_GPTA input 1: Counter clear enabled at the ELC_GPTA input	R/W
17	CSELCB	ELC_GPTB Event Source Counter Clear Enable 0: Counter clear disabled at the ELC_GPTB input 1: Counter clear enabled at the ELC_GPTB input	R/W
18	CSELCC	ELC_GPTC Event Source Counter Clear Enable 0: Counter clear disabled at the ELC_GPTC input 1: Counter clear enabled at the ELC_GPTC input	R/W
19	CSELCD	ELC_GPTD Event Source Counter Clear Enable 0: Counter clear disabled at the ELC_GPTD input 1: Counter clear enabled at the ELC_GPTD input	R/W
30:20	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
31	CCLR	Software Source Counter Clear Enable 0: Counter clear disabled by the GTCLR register 1: Counter clear enabled by the GTCLR register	R/W

The GTCSCR sets the source to clear the GTCNT counter.

Counter clearing can be executed whether the counter is running (GTCR.CST=1) or stopped (GTCR.CST=0).

Inputs from GTETR_{Gn} (n = A, B) pins are input to the GPT through the POEG. Set the polarity of these signals with the POEG.

CSGTRGAR bit (GTETRGA Pin Rising Input Source Counter Clear Enable)

The CSGTRGAR bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter clear on the rising edge of the GTETRGA pin input.

CSGTRGAF bit (GTETRGA Pin Falling Input Source Counter Clear Enable)

The CSGTRGAF bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter clear on the falling edge of the GTETRGA pin input.

CSGTRGBR bit (GTETRGB Pin Rising Input Source Counter Clear Enable)

The CSGTRGBR bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter clear on the rising edge of the GTETRGB pin input.

CSGTRGBF bit (GTETRGB Pin Falling Input Source Counter Clear Enable)

The CSGTRGBF bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter clear on the falling edge of the GTETRGB pin input.

CSCARBL bit (GTIOCnA Pin Rising Input during GTIOCnB Value Low Source Counter Clear Enable)

The CSCARBL bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter clear on the rising edge of the GTIOCnA pin input, when GTIOCnB input is 0.

CSCARBH bit (GTIOCnA Pin Rising Input during GTIOCnB Value High Source Counter Clear Enable)

The CSCARBH bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter clear on the rising edge of the GTIOCnA pin input, when GTIOCnB input is 1.

CSCAFBL bit (GTIOCnA Pin Falling Input during GTIOCnB Value Low Source Counter Clear Enable)

The CSCAFBL bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter clear on the falling edge of the GTIOCnA pin input, when GTIOCnB input is 0.

CSCAFBH bit (GTIOCnA Pin Falling Input during GTIOCnB Value High Source Counter Clear Enable)

The CSCAFBH bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter clear on the falling edge of the GTIOCnA pin input, when GTIOCnB input is 1.

CSCBRAL bit (GTIOCnB Pin Rising Input during GTIOCnA Value Low Source Counter Clear Enable)

The CSCBRAL bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter clear on the rising edge of the GTIOCnB pin input, when GTIOCnA input is 0.

CSCBRAH bit (GTIOCnB Pin Rising Input during GTIOCnA Value High Source Counter Clear Enable)

The CSCBRAH bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter clear on the rising edge of the GTIOCnB pin input, when GTIOCnA input is 1.

CSCBFAL bit (GTIOCnB Pin Falling Input during GTIOCnA Value Low Source Counter Clear Enable)

The CSCBFAL bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter clear on the falling edge of the GTIOCnB pin input, when GTIOCnA input is 0.

CSCBFAH bit (GTIOCnB Pin Falling Input during GTIOCnA Value High Source Counter Clear Enable)

The CSCBFAH bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter clear on the falling edge of the GTIOCnB pin input, when GTIOCnA input is 1.

CSELC_m bit (ELC_m Event Source Counter Clear Enable) (m = A to D)

The CSELC_m bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter clear at the ELC_GPT_m event input.

CCLR bit (Software Source Counter Clear Enable)

The CCLR bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter clear by the GTCLR register.

20.2.8 GTUPSR : General PWM Timer Up Count Source Select Register

Base address: GPT320 = 0x4007_8000
GPT16m = 0x4007_8000 + 0x0100 × m (m = 4 to 9)

Offset address: 0x1C

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	USEL CD	USEL CC	USEL CB	USEL CA
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	USCB FAH	USCB FAL	USCB RAH	USCB RAL	USCA FBH	USCA FBL	USCA RBH	USCA RBL	—	—	—	—	USGT RGBF	USGT RGBR	USGT RGAF	USGT RGAR
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	USGTRGAR	GTETRG A Pin Rising Input Source Counter Count Up Enable 0: Counter count up disabled on the rising edge of GTETRG A input 1: Counter count up enabled on the rising edge of GTETRG A input	R/W
1	USGTRGAF	GTETRG A Pin Falling Input Source Counter Count Up Enable 0: Counter count up disabled on the falling edge of GTETRG A input 1: Counter count up enabled on the falling edge of GTETRG A input	R/W
2	USGTRGBR	GTETRG B Pin Rising Input Source Counter Count Up Enable 0: Counter count up disabled on the rising edge of GTETRG B input 1: Counter count up enabled on the rising edge of GTETRG B input	R/W
3	USGTRGBF	GTETRG B Pin Falling Input Source Counter Count Up Enable 0: Counter count up disabled on the falling edge of GTETRG B input 1: Counter count up enabled on the falling edge of GTETRG B input	R/W
7:4	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
8	USCARBL	GTIOCn A Pin Rising Input during GTIOCn B Value Low Source Counter Count Up Enable 0: Counter count up disabled on the rising edge of GTIOCn A input when GTIOCn B input is 0 1: Counter count up enabled on the rising edge of GTIOCn A input when GTIOCn B input is 0	R/W
9	USCARBH	GTIOCn A Pin Rising Input during GTIOCn B Value High Source Counter Count Up Enable 0: Counter count up disabled on the rising edge of GTIOCn A input when GTIOCn B input is 1 1: Counter count up enabled on the rising edge of GTIOCn A input when GTIOCn B input is 1	R/W
10	USCAFBL	GTIOCn A Pin Falling Input during GTIOCn B Value Low Source Counter Count Up Enable 0: Counter count up disabled on the falling edge of GTIOCn A input when GTIOCn B input is 0 1: Counter count up enabled on the falling edge of GTIOCn A input when GTIOCn B input is 0	R/W
11	USCAFBH	GTIOCn A Pin Falling Input during GTIOCn B Value High Source Counter Count Up Enable 0: Counter count up disabled on the falling edge of GTIOCn A input when GTIOCn B input is 1 1: Counter count up enabled on the falling edge of GTIOCn A input when GTIOCn B input is 1	R/W
12	USCBRAL	GTIOCn B Pin Rising Input during GTIOCn A Value Low Source Counter Count Up Enable 0: Counter count up disabled on the rising edge of GTIOCn B input when GTIOCn A input is 0 1: Counter count up enabled on the rising edge of GTIOCn B input when GTIOCn A input is 0	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
13	USCBRAH	GTIOCnB Pin Rising Input during GTIOCnA Value High Source Counter Count Up Enable 0: Counter count up disabled on the rising edge of GTIOCnB input when GTIOCnA input is 1 1: Counter count up enabled on the rising edge of GTIOCnB input when GTIOCnA input is 1	R/W
14	USCBFAL	GTIOCnB Pin Falling Input during GTIOCnA Value Low Source Counter Count Up Enable 0: Counter count up disabled on the falling edge of GTIOCnB input when GTIOCnA input is 0 1: Counter count up enabled on the falling edge of GTIOCnB input when GTIOCnA input is 0	R/W
15	USCBFAH	GTIOCnB Pin Falling Input during GTIOCnA Value High Source Counter Count Up Enable 0: Counter count up disabled on the falling edge of GTIOCnB input when GTIOCnA input is 1 1: Counter count up enabled on the falling edge of GTIOCnB input when GTIOCnA input is 1	R/W
16	USELCA	ELC_GPTA Event Source Counter Count Up Enable 0: Counter count up disabled at the ELC_GPTA input 1: Counter count up enabled at the ELC_GPTA input	R/W
17	USELCB	ELC_GPTB Event Source Counter Count Up Enable 0: Counter count up disabled at the ELC_GPTB input 1: Counter count up enabled at the ELC_GPTB input	R/W
18	USELCC	ELC_GPTC Event Source Counter Count Up Enable 0: Counter count up disabled at the ELC_GPTC input 1: Counter count up enabled at the ELC_GPTC input	R/W
19	USELCD	ELC_GPTD Event Source Counter Count Up Enable 0: Counter count up disabled at the ELC_GPTD input 1: Counter count up enabled at the ELC_GPTD input	R/W
31:20	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

The GTUPSR sets the source to count up the GTCNT counter.

When at least one bit in the GTUPSR register is set to 1, the GTCNT counter is counted up by the source that is set to 1 in this register. In this case, GTCR.TPCS has no effect.

The number of increment in counting is one even when multiple sources are generated simultaneously.

Inputs from GTETR Gn (n = A, B) pins are input to the GPT through the POEG. Set the polarity of these signals with the POEG.

USGTRGAR bit (GTETRGA Pin Rising Input Source Counter Count Up Enable)

The USGTRGAR bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter count up on the rising edge of the GTETRGA pin input.

USGTRGAF bit (GTETRGA Pin Falling Input Source Counter Count Up Enable)

The USGTRGAF bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter count up on the falling edge of the GTETRGA pin input.

USGTRGBR bit (GTETRGB Pin Rising Input Source Counter Count Up Enable)

The USGTRGBR bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter count up on the rising edge of the GTETRGB pin input.

USGTRGBF bit (GTETRGB Pin Falling Input Source Counter Count Up Enable)

The USGTRGBF bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter count up on the falling edge of the GTETRGB pin input.

USCARBL bit (GTIOCnA Pin Rising Input during GTIOCnB Value Low Source Counter Count Up Enable)

The USCARBL bit enables or disables GTCNT counter count up on the rising edge of GTIOCnA pin input, when GTIOCnB input is 0.

USCARBH bit (GTIOCnA Pin Rising Input during GTIOCnB Value High Source Counter Count Up Enable)

The USCARBH bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter count up on the rising edge of the GTIOCnA pin input, when GTIOCnB input is 1.

USCAFBL bit (GTIOCnA Pin Falling Input during GTIOCnB Value Low Source Counter Count Up Enable)

The USCAFBL bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter count up on the falling edge of the GTIOCnA pin input, when GTIOCnB input is 0.

USCFBH bit (GTIOCnA Pin Falling Input during GTIOCnB Value High Source Counter Count Up Enable)

The USCFBH bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter count up on the falling edge of the GTIOCnA pin input, when GTIOCnB input is 1.

USCBRAL bit (GTIOCnB Pin Rising Input during GTIOCnA Value Low Source Counter Count Up Enable)

The USCBRAL bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter count up on the rising edge of the GTIOCnB pin input, when GTIOCnA input is 0.

USCBRAH bit (GTIOCnB Pin Rising Input during GTIOCnA Value High Source Counter Count Up Enable)

The USCBRAH bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter count up on the rising edge of the GTIOCnB pin input, when the GTIOCnA input is 1.

USCBFAL bit (GTIOCnB Pin Falling Input during GTIOCnA Value Low Source Counter Count Up Enable)

The USCBFAL bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter count up on the falling edge of the GTIOCnB pin input, when the GTIOCnA input is 0.

USCBFAH bit (GTIOCnB Pin Falling Input during GTIOCnA Value High Source Counter Count Up Enable)

The USCBFAH bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter count up on the falling edge of the GTIOCnB pin input, when the GTIOCnA input is 1.

USELCm bit (ELC_GPTm Event Source Counter Count Up Enable) (m = A to D)

The USELCm bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter count up at the ELC_GPTm event input.

20.2.9 GTDNSR : General PWM Timer Down Count Source Select Register

Base address: GPT320 = 0x4007_8000
GPT16m = 0x4007_8000 + 0x0100 × m (m = 4 to 9)

Offset address: 0x20

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	DSEL CD	DSEL CC	DSEL CB	DSEL CA
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	DSCB FAH	DSCB FAL	DSCB RAH	DSCB RAL	DSCA FBH	DSCA FBL	DSCA RBH	DSCA RBL	—	—	—	—	DSGT RGBF	DSGT RGBR	DSGT RGAF	DSGT RGAR
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	DSGTRGAR	GTETRGA Pin Rising Input Source Counter Count Down Enable 0: Counter count down disabled on the rising edge of GTETRGA input 1: Counter count down enabled on the rising edge of GTETRGA input	R/W
1	DSGTRGAF	GTETRGA Pin Falling Input Source Counter Count Down Enable 0: Counter count down disabled on the falling edge of GTETRGA input 1: Counter count down enabled on the falling edge of GTETRGA input	R/W
2	DSGTRGBR	GTETRGB Pin Rising Input Source Counter Count Down Enable 0: Counter count down disabled on the rising edge of GTETRGB input 1: Counter count down enabled on the rising edge of GTETRGB input	R/W
3	DSGTRGBF	GTETRGB Pin Falling Input Source Counter Count Down Enable 0: Counter count down disabled on the falling edge of GTETRGB input 1: Counter count down enabled on the falling edge of GTETRGB input	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7:4	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
8	DSCARBL	GTIOcNA Pin Rising Input during GTIOcNB Value Low Source Counter Count Down Enable 0: Counter count down disabled on the rising edge of GTIOcNA input when GTIOcNB input is 0 1: Counter count down enabled on the rising edge of GTIOcNA input when GTIOcNB input is 0	R/W
9	DSCARBH	GTIOcNA Pin Rising Input during GTIOcNB Value High Source Counter Count Down Enable 0: Counter count down disabled on the rising edge of GTIOcNA input when GTIOcNB input is 1 1: Counter count down enabled on the rising edge of GTIOcNA input when GTIOcNB input is 1	R/W
10	DSCAFBL	GTIOcNA Pin Falling Input during GTIOcNB Value Low Source Counter Count Down Enable 0: Counter count down disabled on the falling edge of GTIOcNA input when GTIOcNB input is 0 1: Counter count down enabled on the falling edge of GTIOcNA input when GTIOcNB input is 0	R/W
11	DSCAFBH	GTIOcNA Pin Falling Input during GTIOcNB Value High Source Counter Count Down Enable 0: Counter count down disabled on the falling edge of GTIOcNA input when GTIOcNB input is 1 1: Counter count down enabled on the falling edge of GTIOcNA input when GTIOcNB input is 1	R/W
12	DSCBRAL	GTIOcNB Pin Rising Input during GTIOcNA Value Low Source Counter Count Down Enable 0: Counter count down disabled on the rising edge of GTIOcNB input when GTIOcNA input is 0 1: Counter count down enabled on the rising edge of GTIOcNB input when GTIOcNA input is 0	R/W
13	DSCBRAH	GTIOcNB Pin Rising Input during GTIOcNA Value High Source Counter Count Down Enable 0: Counter count down disabled on the rising edge of GTIOcNB input when GTIOcNA input is 1 1: Counter count down enabled on the rising edge of GTIOcNB input when GTIOcNA input is 1	R/W
14	DSCBFAL	GTIOcNB Pin Falling Input during GTIOcNA Value Low Source Counter Count Down Enable 0: Counter count down disabled on the falling edge of GTIOcNB input when GTIOcNA input is 0 1: Counter count down enabled on the falling edge of GTIOcNB input when GTIOcNA input is 0	R/W
15	DSCBFAH	GTIOcNB Pin Falling Input during GTIOcNA Value High Source Counter Count Down Enable 0: Counter count down disabled on the falling edge of GTIOcNB input when GTIOcNA input is 1 1: Counter count down enabled on the falling edge of GTIOcNB input when GTIOcNA input is 1	R/W
16	DSELCA	ELC_GPTA Event Source Counter Count Down Enable 0: Counter count down disabled at the ELC_GPTA input 1: Counter count down enabled at the ELC_GPTA input	R/W
17	DSELCB	ELC_GPTB Event Source Counter Count Down Enable 0: Counter count down disabled at the ELC_GPTB input 1: Counter count down enabled at the ELC_GPTB input	R/W
18	DSELCC	ELC_GPTC Event Source Counter Count Down Enable 0: Counter count down disabled at the ELC_GPTC input 1: Counter count down enabled at the ELC_GPTC input	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
19	DSELCD	ELC_GPTD Event Source Counter Count Down Enable 0: Counter count down disabled at the ELC_GPTD input 1: Counter count down enabled at the ELC_GPTD input	R/W
31:20	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

The GTDNSR sets the source to count down the GTCNT counter.

When at least one bit in the GTDNSR register is set to 1, the GTCNT counter is counted down by the source that is set to 1 in this register. In this case, GTCR.TPCS has no effect.

Number of decrement in counting is one even when multiple sources are generated simultaneously.

Inputs from GTETR_{Gn} (n = A, B) pins are input to the GPT through the POEG. Set the polarity of these signals with the POEG.

DSGTRGAR bit (GTETRGA Pin Rising Input Source Counter Count Down Enable)

The DSGTRGAR bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter count down on the rising edge of the GTETRGA pin input.

DSGTRGAF bit (GTETRGA Pin Falling Input Source Counter Count Down Enable)

The DSGTRGAF bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter count down on the falling edge of the GTETRGA pin input.

DSGTRGBR bit (GTETRGB Pin Rising Input Source Counter Count Down Enable)

The DSGTRGBR bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter count down on the rising edge of the GTETRGB pin input.

DSGTRGBF bit (GTETRGB Pin Falling Input Source Counter Count Down Enable)

The DSGTRGBF bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter count down on the falling edge of the GTETRGB pin input.

DSCARBL bit (GTIOCnA Pin Rising Input during GTIOCnB Value Low Source Counter Count Down Enable)

The DSCARBL bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter count down on the rising edge of the GTIOCnA pin input, when the GTIOCnB input is 0.

DSCARBH bit (GTIOCnA Pin Rising Input during GTIOCnB Value High Source Counter Count Down Enable)

The DSCARBH bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter count down on the rising edge of the GTIOCnA pin input, when GTIOCnB input is 1.

DSCAFBL bit (GTIOCnA Pin Falling Input during GTIOCnB Value Low Source Counter Count Down Enable)

The DSCAFBL bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter count down on the falling edge of the GTIOCnA pin input, when GTIOCnB input is 0.

DSCAFBH bit (GTIOCnA Pin Falling Input during GTIOCnB Value High Source Counter Count Down Enable)

The DSCAFBH bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter count down on the falling edge of the GTIOCnA pin input, when GTIOCnB input is 1.

DSCBRAL bit (GTIOCnB Pin Rising Input during GTIOCnA Value Low Source Counter Count Down Enable)

The DSCBRAL bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter count down on the rising edge of the GTIOCnB pin input, when GTIOCnA input is 0.

DSCBRAH bit (GTIOCnB Pin Rising Input during GTIOCnA Value High Source Counter Count Down Enable)

The DSCBRAH bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter count down on the rising edge of GTIOCnB pin input, when GTIOCnA input is 1.

DSCBFAL bit (GTIOCnB Pin Falling Input during GTIOCnA Value Low Source Counter Count Down Enable)

The DSCBFAL bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter count down on the falling edge of the GTIOCnB pin input, when GTIOCnA input is 0.

DSCBFAH bit (GTIOCnB Pin Falling Input during GTIOCnA Value High Source Counter Count Down Enable)

The DSCBFAH bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter count down on the falling edge of the GTIOCnB pin input, when GTIOCnA input is 1.

DSELCm bit (ELC_GPTm Event Source Counter Count Down Enable) (m = A to D)

The DSELCm bit enables or disables the GTCNT counter count down at the ELC_GPTm event input.

20.2.10 GTICASR : General PWM Timer Input Capture Source Select Register A

Base address: GPT320 = 0x4007_8000

GPT16m = 0x4007_8000 + 0x0100 × m (m = 4 to 9)

Offset address: 0x24

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	ASEL CD	ASEL CC	ASEL CB	ASEL CA
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	ASCB FAH	ASCB FAL	ASCB RAH	ASCB RAL	ASCA FBH	ASCA FBL	ASCA RBH	ASCA RBL	—	—	—	—	ASGT RGBF	ASGT RGBR	ASGT RGAF	ASGT RGAR
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	ASGTRGAR	GTETRGA Pin Rising Input Source GTCCRA Input Capture Enable 0: GTCCRA input capture disabled on the rising edge of GTETRGA input 1: GTCCRA input capture enabled on the rising edge of GTETRGA input	R/W
1	ASGTRGAF	GTETRGA Pin Falling Input Source GTCCRA Input Capture Enable 0: GTCCRA input capture disabled on the falling edge of GTETRGA input 1: GTCCRA input capture enabled on the falling edge of GTETRGA input	R/W
2	ASGTRGBR	GTETRGB Pin Rising Input Source GTCCRA Input Capture Enable 0: GTCCRA input capture disabled on the rising edge of GTETRGB input 1: GTCCRA input capture enabled on the rising edge of GTETRGB input	R/W
3	ASGTRGBF	GTETRGB Pin Falling Input Source GTCCRA Input Capture Enable 0: GTCCRA input capture disabled on the falling edge of GTETRGB input 1: GTCCRA input capture enabled on the falling edge of GTETRGB input	R/W
7:4	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
8	ASCARBL	GTIOCnA Pin Rising Input during GTIOCnB Value Low Source GTCCRA Input Capture Enable 0: GTCCRA input capture disabled on the rising edge of GTIOCnA input when GTIOCnB input is 0 1: GTCCRA input capture enabled on the rising edge of GTIOCnA input when GTIOCnB input is 0	R/W
9	ASCARBH	GTIOCnA Pin Rising Input during GTIOCnB Value High Source GTCCRA Input Capture Enable 0: GTCCRA input capture disabled on the rising edge of GTIOCnA input when GTIOCnB input is 1 1: GTCCRA input capture enabled on the rising edge of GTIOCnA input when GTIOCnB input is 1	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
10	ASCAFBL	GTIOcNA Pin Falling Input during GTIOcNB Value Low Source GTCCRA Input Capture Enable 0: GTCCRA input capture disabled on the falling edge of GTIOcNA input when GTIOcNB input is 0 1: GTCCRA input capture enabled on the falling edge of GTIOcNA input when GTIOcNB input is 0	R/W
11	ASCAFBH	GTIOcNA Pin Falling Input during GTIOcNB Value High Source GTCCRA Input Capture Enable 0: GTCCRA input capture disabled on the falling edge of GTIOcNA input when GTIOcNB input is 1 1: GTCCRA input capture enabled on the falling edge of GTIOcNA input when GTIOcNB input is 1	R/W
12	ASCBRAL	GTIOcNB Pin Rising Input during GTIOcNA Value Low Source GTCCRA Input Capture Enable 0: GTCCRA input capture disabled on the rising edge of GTIOcNB input when GTIOcNA input is 0 1: GTCCRA input capture enabled on the rising edge of GTIOcNB input when GTIOcNA input is 0	R/W
13	ASCBRAH	GTIOcNB Pin Rising Input during GTIOcNA Value High Source GTCCRA Input Capture Enable 0: GTCCRA input capture disabled on the rising edge of GTIOcNB input when GTIOcNA input is 1 1: GTCCRA input capture enabled on the rising edge of GTIOcNB input when GTIOcNA input is 1	R/W
14	ASCBFAL	GTIOcNB Pin Falling Input during GTIOcNA Value Low Source GTCCRA Input Capture Enable 0: GTCCRA input capture disabled on the falling edge of GTIOcNB input when GTIOcNA input is 0 1: GTCCRA input capture enabled on the falling edge of GTIOcNB input when GTIOcNA input is 0	R/W
15	ASCBFAH	GTIOcNB Pin Falling Input during GTIOcNA Value High Source GTCCRA Input Capture Enable 0: GTCCRA input capture disabled on the falling edge of GTIOcNB input when GTIOcNA input is 1 1: GTCCRA input capture enabled on the falling edge of GTIOcNB input when GTIOcNA input is 1	R/W
16	ASELCA	ELC_GPTA Event Source GTCCRA Input Capture Enable 0: GTCCRA input capture disabled at the ELC_GPTA input 1: GTCCRA input capture enabled at the ELC_GPTA input	R/W
17	ASELCB	ELC_GPTB Event Source GTCCRA Input Capture Enable 0: GTCCRA input capture disabled at the ELC_GPTB input 1: GTCCRA input capture enabled at the ELC_GPTB input	R/W
18	ASELCC	ELC_GPTC Event Source GTCCRA Input Capture Enable 0: GTCCRA input capture disabled at the ELC_GPTC input 1: GTCCRA input capture enabled at the ELC_GPTC input	R/W
19	ASELCD	ELC_GPTD Event Source GTCCRA Input Capture Enable 0: GTCCRA input capture disabled at the ELC_GPTD input 1: GTCCRA input capture enabled at the ELC_GPTD input	R/W
31:20	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

The GTICASR sets the source of input capture for GTCCRA.

When at least one bit among bits in the GTICASR register is set to 1, the input capture operation making the GTCCRA register as an input capture register is performed.

Inputs from GTETR_{Gn} (n = A, B) pins are input to the GPT through the POEG. Set the polarity of these signals with the POEG.

ASGTRGAR bit (GTETRGA Pin Rising Input Source GTCCRA Input Capture Enable)

The ASGTRGAR bit enables or disables the input capture for GTCCRA on the rising edge of the GTETRGA pin input.

ASGTRGAF bit (GTETRGA Pin Falling Input Source GTCCRA Input Capture Enable)

The ASGTRGAF bit enables or disables the input capture for GTCCRA on the falling edge of the GTETRGA pin input.

ASGTRGBR bit (GTETRGB Pin Rising Input Source GTCCRA Input Capture Enable)

The ASGTRGBR bit enables or disables the input capture for GTCCRA on the rising edge of the GTETRGB pin input.

ASGTRGBF bit (GTETRGB Pin Falling Input Source GTCCRA Input Capture Enable)

The ASGTRGBF bit enables or disables the input capture for GTCCRA on the falling edge of the GTETRGB pin input.

ASCARBL bit (GTIOCnA Pin Rising Input during GTIOCnB Value Low Source GTCCRA Input Capture Enable)

The ASCARBL bit enables or disables the input capture for GTCCRA on the rising edge of the GTIOCnA pin input, when GTIOCnB input is 0.

ASCARBH bit (GTIOCnA Pin Rising Input during GTIOCnB Value High Source GTCCRA Input Capture Enable)

The ASCARBH bit enables or disables the input capture for GTCCRA on the rising edge of the GTIOCnA pin input, when GTIOCnB input is 1.

ASCAFBL bit (GTIOCnA Pin Falling Input during GTIOCnB Value Low Source GTCCRA Input Capture Enable)

The ASCAFBL bit enables or disables the input capture for GTCCRA on the falling edge of the GTIOCnA pin input, when GTIOCnB input is 0.

ASCAFBH bit (GTIOCnA Pin Falling Input during GTIOCnB Value High Source GTCCRA Input Capture Enable)

The ASCAFBH bit enables or disables the input capture for GTCCRA on the falling edge of the GTIOCnA pin input, when the GTIOCnB input is 1.

ASCBRAL bit (GTIOCnB Pin Rising Input during GTIOCnA Value Low Source GTCCRA Input Capture Enable)

The ASCBRAL bit enables or disables the input capture for GTCCRA on the rising edge of the GTIOCnB pin input, when the GTIOCnA input is 0.

ASCBRAH bit (GTIOCnB Pin Rising Input during GTIOCnA Value High Source GTCCRA Input Capture Enable)

The ASCBRAH bit enables or disables the input capture for GTCCRA on the rising edge of the GTIOCnB pin input, when GTIOCnA input is 1.

ASCBFAL bit (GTIOCnB Pin Falling Input during GTIOCnA Value Low Source GTCCRA Input Capture Enable)

The ASCBFAL bit enables or disables the input capture for GTCCRA on the falling edge of the GTIOCnB pin input, when GTIOCnA input is 0.

ASCBFAH bit (GTIOCnB Pin Falling Input during GTIOCnA Value High Source GTCCRA Input Capture Enable)

The ASCBFAH bit enables or disables the input capture for GTCCRA on the falling edge of the GTIOCnB pin input, when GTIOCnA input is 1.

ASELCm bit (ELC_GPTm Event Source Counter GTCCRA Input Capture Enable) (m = A to D)

The ASELCm bit enables or disables the input capture for GTCCRA at the ELC_GPTm event input.

20.2.11 GTICBSR : General PWM Timer Input Capture Source Select Register B

Base address: GPT320 = 0x4007_8000
 GPT16m = 0x4007_8000 + 0x0100 × m (m = 4 to 9)

Offset address: 0x28

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	BSEL CD	BSEL CC	BSEL CB	BSEL CA
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	BSCB FAH	BSCB FAL	BSCB RAH	BSCB RAL	BSCA FBH	BSCA FBL	BSCA RBH	BSCA RBL	—	—	—	—	BSGT RGBF	BSGT RGBR	BSGT RGAF	BSGT RGAR
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	BSGTRGAR	GTETRGA Pin Rising Input Source GTCCRB Input Capture Enable 0: GTCCRB input capture disabled on the rising edge of GTETRGA input 1: GTCCRB input capture enabled on the rising edge of GTETRGA input	R/W
1	BSGTRGAF	GTETRGA Pin Falling Input Source GTCCRB Input Capture Enable 0: GTCCRB input capture disabled on the falling edge of GTETRGA input 1: GTCCRB input capture enabled on the falling edge of GTETRGA input	R/W
2	BSGTRGBR	GTETRGB Pin Rising Input Source GTCCRB Input Capture Enable 0: GTCCRB input capture disabled on the rising edge of GTETRGB input 1: GTCCRB input capture enabled on the rising edge of GTETRGB input	R/W
3	BSGTRGBF	GTETRGB Pin Falling Input Source GTCCRB Input Capture Enable 0: GTCCRB input capture disabled on the falling edge of GTETRGB input 1: GTCCRB input capture enabled on the falling edge of GTETRGB input	R/W
7:4	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
8	BSCARBL	GTIOCnA Pin Rising Input during GTIOCnB Value Low Source GTCCRB Input Capture Enable 0: GTCCRB input capture disabled on the rising edge of GTIOCnA input when GTIOCnB input is 0 1: GTCCRB input capture enabled on the rising edge of GTIOCnA input when GTIOCnB input is 0	R/W
9	BSCARBH	GTIOCnA Pin Rising Input during GTIOCnB Value High Source GTCCRB Input Capture Enable 0: GTCCRB input capture disabled on the rising edge of GTIOCnA input when GTIOCnB input is 1 1: GTCCRB input capture enabled on the rising edge of GTIOCnA input when GTIOCnB input is 1	R/W
10	BSCAFBL	GTIOCnA Pin Falling Input during GTIOCnB Value Low Source GTCCRB Input Capture Enable 0: GTCCRB input capture disabled on the falling edge of GTIOCnA input when GTIOCnB input is 0 1: GTCCRB input capture enabled on the falling edge of GTIOCnA input when GTIOCnB input is 0	R/W
11	BSCAFBH	GTIOCnA Pin Falling Input during GTIOCnB Value High Source GTCCRB Input Capture Enable 0: GTCCRB input capture disabled on the falling edge of GTIOCnA input when GTIOCnB input is 1 1: GTCCRB input capture enabled on the falling edge of GTIOCnA input when GTIOCnB input is 1	R/W
12	BSCBRAL	GTIOCnB Pin Rising Input during GTIOCnA Value Low Source GTCCRB Input Capture Enable 0: GTCCRB input capture disabled on the rising edge of GTIOCnB input when GTIOCnA input is 0 1: GTCCRB input capture enabled on the rising edge of GTIOCnB input when GTIOCnA input is 0	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
13	BSCBRAH	GTIOCnB Pin Rising Input during GTIOCnA Value High Source GTCCRB Input Capture Enable 0: GTCCRB input capture disabled on the rising edge of GTIOCnB input when GTIOCnA input is 1 1: GTCCRB input capture enabled on the rising edge of GTIOCnB input when GTIOCnA input is 1	R/W
14	BSCBFAL	GTIOCnB Pin Falling Input during GTIOCnA Value Low Source GTCCRB Input Capture Enable 0: GTCCRB input capture disabled on the falling edge of GTIOCnB input when GTIOCnA input is 0 1: GTCCRB input capture enabled on the falling edge of GTIOCnB input when GTIOCnA input is 0	R/W
15	BSCBFAH	GTIOCnB Pin Falling Input during GTIOCnA Value High Source GTCCRB Input Capture Enable 0: GTCCRB input capture disabled on the falling edge of GTIOCnB input when GTIOCnA input is 1 1: GTCCRB input capture enabled on the falling edge of GTIOCnB input when GTIOCnA input is 1	R/W
16	BSELCA	ELC_GPTA Event Source GTCCRB Input Capture Enable 0: GTCCRB input capture disabled at the ELC_GPTA input 1: GTCCRB input capture enabled at the ELC_GPTA input	R/W
17	BSELCB	ELC_GPTB Event Source GTCCRB Input Capture Enable 0: GTCCRB input capture disabled at the ELC_GPTB input 1: GTCCRB input capture enabled at the ELC_GPTB input	R/W
18	BSELCC	ELC_GPTC Event Source GTCCRB Input Capture Enable 0: GTCCRB input capture disabled at the ELC_GPTC input 1: GTCCRB input capture enabled at the ELC_GPTC input	R/W
19	BSELCD	ELC_GPTD Event Source GTCCRB Input Capture Enable 0: GTCCRB input capture disabled at the ELC_GPTD input 1: GTCCRB input capture enabled at the ELC_GPTD input	R/W
31:20	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

The GTICBSR sets the source of input capture for GTCCRB.

When at least one bit among bits in the GTICBSR register is set to 1, input capture operation making the GTCCRB register as an input capture register is performed.

Inputs from GTETRn (n = A, B) pins are input to the GPT through the POEG. Set the polarity of these signals with the POEG.

BSGTRGAR bit (GTETRGA Pin Rising Input Source GTCCRB Input Capture Enable)

The BSGTRGAR bit enables or disables the input capture for GTCCRB on the rising edge of the GTETRGA pin input.

BSGTRGAF bit (GTETRGA Pin Falling Input Source GTCCRB Input Capture Enable)

The BSGTRGAF bit enables or disables the input capture for GTCCRB on the falling edge of the GTETRGA pin input.

BSGTRGBR bit (GTETRGB Pin Rising Input Source GTCCRB Input Capture Enable)

The BSGTRGBR bit enables or disables the input capture for GTCCRB on the rising edge of GTETRGB pin input.

BSGTRGBF bit (GTETRGB Pin Falling Input Source GTCCRB Input Capture Enable)

The BSGTRGBF bit enables or disables the input capture for GTCCRB on the falling edge of the GTETRGB pin input.

BSCARBL bit (GTIOCnA Pin Rising Input during GTIOCnB Value Low Source GTCCRB Input Capture Enable)

The BSCARBL bit enables or disables the input capture for GTCCRB on the rising edge of the GTIOCnA pin input, when the GTIOCnB input is 0.

BSCARBH bit (GTIOCnA Pin Rising Input during GTIOCnB Value High Source GTCCRB Input Capture Enable)

The BSCARBH bit enables or disables the input capture for GTCCRB on the rising edge of the GTIOCnA pin input, when GTIOCnB input is 1.

BSCAFBL bit (GTIOCnA Pin Falling Input during GTIOCnB Value Low Source GTCCRB Input Capture Enable)

The BSCAFBL bit enables or disables the input capture for GTCCRB on the falling edge of the GTIOCnA pin input, when GTIOCnB input is 0.

BSCAFBH bit (GTIOCnA Pin Falling Input during GTIOCnB Value High Source GTCCRB Input Capture Enable)

The BSCAFBH bit enables or disables the input capture for GTCCRB on the falling edge of the GTIOCnA pin input, when GTIOCnB input is 1.

BSCBRAL bit (GTIOCnB Pin Rising Input during GTIOCnA Value Low Source GTCCRB Input Capture Enable)

The BSCBRAL bit enables or disables the input capture for GTCCRB on the rising edge of the GTIOCnB pin input, when GTIOCnA input is 0.

BSCBRAH bit (GTIOCnB Pin Rising Input during GTIOCnA Value High Source GTCCRB Input Capture Enable)

The BSCBRAH bit enables or disables the input capture for GTCCRB on the rising edge of the GTIOCnB pin input, when GTIOCnA input is 1.

BSCBFAL bit (GTIOCnB Pin Falling Input during GTIOCnA Value Low Source GTCCRB Input Capture Enable)

The BSCBFAL bit enables or disables the input capture for GTCCRB on the falling edge of the GTIOCnB pin input, when GTIOCnA input is 0.

BSCBFAH bit (GTIOCnB Pin Falling Input during GTIOCnA Value High Source GTCCRB Input Capture Enable)

The BSCBFAH bit enables or disables the input capture for GTCCRB on the falling edge of the GTIOCnB pin input, when GTIOCnA input is 1.

BSELCm bit (ELC_GPTm Event Source Counter GTCCRB Input Capture Enable) (m = A to D)

The BSELCm bit enables or disables the input capture for GTCCRB at the ELC_GPTm event input.

20.2.12 GTCR : General PWM Timer Control Register

Base address: GPT320 = 0x4007_8000
GPT16m = 0x4007_8000 + 0x0100 × m (m = 4 to 9)

Offset address: 0x2C

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	TPCS[2:0]			—	—	—	—	—	MD[2:0]		
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	CST
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	CST	Count Start 0: Count operation is stopped 1: Count operation is performed	R/W
15:1	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
18:16	MD[2:0]	Mode Select 0 0 0: Saw-wave PWM mode (single buffer or double buffer possible) 0 0 1: Saw-wave one-shot pulse mode (fixed buffer operation) 0 1 0: Setting prohibited 0 1 1: Setting prohibited 1 0 0: Triangle-wave PWM mode 1 (32-bit transfer at trough) (single buffer or double buffer is possible) 1 0 1: Triangle-wave PWM mode 2 (32-bit transfer at crest and trough) (single buffer or double buffer is possible) 1 1 0: Triangle-wave PWM mode 3 (64-bit transfer at trough) (fixed buffer operation) 1 1 1: Setting prohibited	R/W
23:19	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
26:24	TPCS[2:0]	Timer Prescaler Select 0 0 0: PCLKD/1 0 0 1: PCLKD/4 0 1 0: PCLKD/16 0 1 1: PCLKD/64 1 0 0: PCLKD/256 1 0 1: PCLKD/1024 Others: Setting prohibited	R/W
31:27	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

The GTCR controls GTCNT.

CST bit (Count Start)

The CST bit controls the GTCNT counter start and stop.

[Setting conditions]

- The GTSTR value where the channel number associated with the bit number is set to 1 with the GTSSR.CSTR bit at 1
- The ELC event input, the external trigger, or the GTIOCnA/GTIOCnB input that are enabled by GTSSR for the starting counter source, occurs (n = 0, 4 to 9)
- 1 is written by software directly.

[Clearing conditions]

- The GTSTP value where the channel number associated with the bit number is set to 1 with the GTPSR.CSTOP bit at 1
- The ELC event input, the external trigger, or the GTIOCnA/GTIOCnB input enabled by GTPSR as the counter stop source, occurs (n = 0, 4 to 9)
- 0 is written by software directly.

MD[2:0] bits (Mode Select)

The MD[2:0] bits select the GPT operating mode. The MD[2:0] bits must be set while the GTCNT operation is stopped.

TPCS[2:0] bits (Timer Prescaler Select)

The TPCS[2:0] bits select the clock for GTCNT. A clock prescaler can be selected independently for each channel. The TPCS[2:0] bits must be set while the GTCNT operation is stopped.

20.2.13 GTUDDTYC : General PWM Timer Count Direction and Duty Setting Register

Base address: GPT320 = 0x4007_8000
 GPT16m = 0x4007_8000 + 0x0100 × m (m = 4 to 9)

Offset address: 0x30

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	OBDT YR	OBDT YF	OBDTY[1:0]	—	—	—	—	OADT YR	OADT YF	OADTY[1:0]		
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	UDF	UD
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	UD	Count Direction Setting 0: GTCNT counts down 1: GTCNT counts up	R/W
1	UDF	Forcible Count Direction Setting 0: Not forcibly set 1: Forcibly set	R/W
15:2	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
17:16	OADTY[1:0]	GTIOCnA Output Duty Setting 0 0: GTIOCnA pin duty depends on the compare match 0 1: GTIOCnA pin duty depends on the compare match 1 0: GTIOCnA pin duty 0% 1 1: GTIOCnA pin duty 100%	R/W
18	OADTYF	Forcible GTIOCnA Output Duty Setting 0: Not forcibly set 1: Forcibly set	R/W
19	OADTYR	GTIOCnA Output Value Selecting after Releasing 0%/100% Duty Setting 0: The function selected by the GTIOA[3:2] bits is applied to the output value when the duty cycle is set after release from the 0 or 100% duty-cycle setting. 1: The function selected by the GTIOA[3:2] bits is applied to the compare match output value which is masked after release from the 0 or 100% duty-cycle setting.	R/W
23:20	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
25:24	OBDTY[1:0]	GTIOCnB Output Duty Setting 0 0: GTIOCnB pin duty depends on the compare match 0 1: GTIOCnB pin duty depends on the compare match 1 0: GTIOCnB pin duty 0% 1 1: GTIOCnB pin duty 100%	R/W
26	OBDTYF	Forcible GTIOCnB Output Duty Setting 0: Not forcibly set 1: Forcibly set	R/W
27	OBDTYR	GTIOCnB Output Value Selecting after Releasing 0%/100% Duty Setting 0: The function selected by the GTIOB[3:2] bits is applied to the output value when the duty cycle is set after release from the 0 or 100% duty-cycle setting. 1: The function selected by the GTIOB[3:2] bits is applied to the compare match output value which is masked after release from the 0 or 100% duty-cycle setting.	R/W
31:28	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note: n = 0, 4 to 9

The GTUDDTYC sets the direction in which the GTCNT counts (up-counting or down-counting), and sets the duty of the GTIOCnA/GTIOCnB pin output.

The setting is invalid during the event count operation.

Count Direction:

- In saw-wave mode.

When the UD value is set to 0 during up-counting, the count direction changes at an overflow (the timing synchronous with count clock after the GTCNT value becomes the GTPR value). When the UD value is set to 1 during down-counting, the count direction changes at an underflow (the timing synchronous with count clock after the GTCNT value becomes 0).

When the UD value changes from 1 to 0 with the UDF bit being 0 and while counting stops, the counter starts up-counting and the count direction changes at an overflow (the timing synchronous with count clock after the GTCNT value becomes the GTPR value). When the UD value changes from 0 to 1 with the UDF bit being 0 and while counting stops, the counter starts down-counting and the count direction changes at an underflow (the timing synchronous with count clock after the GTCNT value becomes 0).

When the UDF bit is set to 1 while counting stops, the UD bit value is reflected in the count direction when counting starts.

- In triangle-wave mode.

When the UD value changes during counting, the count direction does not change. When the UD value changes while the UDF bit is 0 and counting stops, the change is not reflected in the count direction when counting starts.

When the UDF bit is set to 1 while counting is stopped, the UD value is reflected in the count direction when counting starts.

UD bit (Count Direction Setting)

The UD bit sets the count direction (up-counting or down-counting) for GTCNT.

UDF bit (Forcible Count Direction Setting)

The UDF bit forcibly sets the count direction when GTCNT starts operation as the UD value. Only 0 should be written to this bit during counter operation. When 1 is written to this bit while counting stops, return this bit to 0 before counting starts.

Output duty

- In saw-wave mode.

When the OADTY/OBDTY value changes during up-counting, the duty is reflected at an overflow (GTCNT = GTPR). When the OADTY/OBDTY value is changed during down-counting, the duty is reflected at an underflow (GTCNT = 0).

When the OADTY/OBDTY value is changed with the OADTYF/OBDTYF bit being 0 and while counting stops the output duty is not reflected at the starting counter operation. When the count direction is up, the output duty is reflected at an overflow (GTCNT = GTPR). When the count direction is down, the output duty is reflected at an underflow (GTCNT = 0).

When the OADTY/OBDTY value is changed with the OADTYF/OBDTYF bit being 1 and while counting stops, the output duty is reflected at starting counter operation.

- In triangle-wave mode.

When the OADTY/OBDTY value changes during counting, the duty is reflected at an underflow.

When the OADTY/OBDTY value is changed with the OADTYF/OBDTYF bit being 0 and while counting stops, the output duty is not reflected at the starting counter operation. The output duty is reflected at an underflow.

When the OADTY/OBDTY value is changed with the OADTYF/OBDTYF bit being 1 and while counting stops, the output duty is reflected at starting counter operation.

OmDTY[1:0] bits (GTIOCNm Output Duty Setting) (m = A, B)

The OmDTY[1:0] bits set the output duty (0%, 100% or compare match control) of the GTIOCNm pin.

OmDTYF bit (Forcible GTIOCNm Output Duty Setting) (m = A, B)

The OmDTYF bit forcibly sets the output duty cycle to the OmDTY setting. Set this bit to 0 during counter operation. When the OmDTYF bit is set to 1 while counting stops, return this bit to 0 until the first period ends after the counter starts.

OmDTYR bit (GTIOCNm Output Value Selecting after Releasing 0%/100% Duty Setting) (m = A, B)

The OmDTYR bit selects the value that is the object of output retained or toggled at cycle end, when the control changes from 0% or 100% duty setting to compare match for the GTIOCNm pin and GTIOR.GTIOm[3:2] bits are set to 00b (output retained at cycle end) or the GTIOR.GTIOm[3:2] bits are set to 11b (output toggled at cycle end).

The GPT internally continues to perform compare match operation during duty-cycle 0% or 100% operation. When the OmDTYR bit is 1, the value after the period has elapsed due to this compare match operation is target for the GTIOm[3:2] bits.

20.2.14 GTIOR : General PWM Timer I/O Control Register

Base address: GPT320 = 0x4007_8000
GPT16m = 0x4007_8000 + 0x0100 × m (m = 4 to 9)

Offset address: 0x34

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	NFC	SB	NFBE	—	—	OBDF	OBE	OBHL	OBDF	—	GTIOB[4:0]					
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	NFCSA	NFAE	—	—	OADF	OAE	OAHL	OADF	—	GTIOA[4:0]						
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
4:0	GTIOA[4:0]	GTIOCnA Pin Function Select See Table 20.4 .	R/W
5	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
6	OADF LT	GTIOCnA Pin Output Value Setting at the Count Stop 0: The GTIOCnA pin outputs low when counting stops 1: The GTIOCnA pin outputs high when counting stops	R/W
7	OAHL D	GTIOCnA Pin Output Setting at the Start/Stop Count 0: The GTIOCnA pin output level at the start or stop of counting depends on the register setting 1: The GTIOCnA pin output level is retained at the start or stop of counting	R/W
8	OAE	GTIOCnA Pin Output Enable 0: Output is disabled 1: Output is enabled	R/W
10:9	OADF[1:0]	GTIOCnA Pin Disable Value Setting 0 0: None of the below options are specified 0 1: GTIOCnA pin is set to Hi-Z in response to controlling the output negation 1 0: GTIOCnA pin is set to 0 in response to controlling the output negation 1 1: GTIOCnA pin is set to 1 in response to controlling the output negation	R/W
12:11	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
13	NFAEN	Noise Filter A Enable 0: The noise filter for the GTIOCnA pin is disabled 1: The noise filter for the GTIOCnA pin is enabled	R/W
15:14	NFCSA[1:0]	Noise Filter A Sampling Clock Select 0 0: PCLKD/1 0 1: PCLKD/4 1 0: PCLKD/16 1 1: PCLKD/64	R/W
20:16	GTIOB[4:0]	GTIOCnB Pin Function Select See Table 20.4 .	R/W
21	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
22	OBDF LT	GTIOCnB Pin Output Value Setting at the Count Stop 0: The GTIOCnB pin outputs low when counting stops 1: The GTIOCnB pin outputs high when counting stops	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
23	OBHLD	GTIOCnB Pin Output Setting at the Start/Stop Count 0: The GTIOCnB pin output level at the start/stop of counting depends on the register setting 1: The GTIOCnB pin output level is retained at the start/stop of counting	R/W
24	OBE	GTIOCnB Pin Output Enable 0: Output is disabled 1: Output is enabled	R/W
26:25	OBDF[1:0]	GTIOCnB Pin Disable Value Setting 0 0: None of the below options are specified 0 1: GTIOCnB pin is set to Hi-Z in response to controlling the output negation 1 0: GTIOCnB pin is set to 0 in response to controlling the output negation 1 1: GTIOCnB pin is set to 1 in response to controlling the output negation	R/W
28:27	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
29	NFBEN	Noise Filter B Enable 0: The noise filter for the GTIOCnB pin is disabled 1: The noise filter for the GTIOCnB pin is enabled	R/W
31:30	NFCSB[1:0]	Noise Filter B Sampling Clock Select 0 0: PCLKD/1 0 1: PCLKD/4 1 0: PCLKD/16 1 1: PCLKD/64	R/W

Note: n = 0, 4 to 9

The GTIOR sets the functions of the GTIOCnA and GTIOCnB pins. (n = 0, 4 to 9)

GTIOA[4:0] bits (GTIOCnA Pin Function Select)

The GTIOA[4:0] bits select the GTIOCnA pin function. For details, see [Table 20.4](#).

OADFLT bit (GTIOCnA Pin Output Value Setting at the Count Stop)

The OADFLT bit sets whether the GTIOCnA pin outputs high or low when counting stops.

OAHLDBit (GTIOCnA Pin Output Setting at the Start/Stop Count)

The OAHLDBit specifies whether the GTIOCnA pin output level is retained or the level at the start or stop of counting depends on the register setting.

When the OAHLDBit is set to 0:

- The value specified in bit [4] of the GTIOA[4:0] bits is output when counting starts
- The value specified in the OADFLT bit is output when counting stops
- If the OADFLT bit is modified while counting stops, the new value is immediately reflected in the output.

When the OAHLDBit is set to 1:

- The output is retained when counting starts or stops.

OAE bit (GTIOCnA Pin Output Enable)

The OAE bit disables or enables the GTIOCnA pin output.

When GTCCRA register is used as the input capture register (at least one bit in the GTICASR register is set to 1), the GTIOCnA pin does not output regardless of the OAE bit value.

OADF[1:0] bits (GTIOCnA Pin Disable Value Setting)

The OADF[1:0] bits select the output value of the GTIOCnA pin in response to a request to disable output from the POEG.

NFAEN bit (Noise Filter A Enable)

The NFAEN bit disables or enables the noise filter for input from the GTIOCnA pin. Because changing the value of the bit might lead to the internal generation of an unexpected edge, select the output compare function for the relevant pin in the GTIOR register before doing so.

NFCSA[1:0] bits (Noise Filter A Sampling Clock Select)

The NFCSA[1:0] bits set the sampling interval for the noise filter of the GTIOCnA pin. When setting these bits, wait for 2 cycles of the selected sampling interval before setting the input capture function.

GTIOB[4:0] bits (GTIOCnB Pin Function Select)

The GTIOB[4:0] bits select the GTIOCnB pin function. For details, see [Table 20.4](#).

OBDFLT bit (GTIOCnB Pin Output Value Setting at the Count Stop)

The OBDFLT bit sets whether the GTIOCnB pin outputs high or low when counting stops.

OBHLD bit (GTIOCnB Pin Output Setting at the Start/Stop Count)

The OBHLD bit specifies whether the GTIOCnB pin output level is retained or the level at the start or stop of counting depends on the register setting.

When the OBHLD bit is set to 0:

- The value specified in bit [4] of the GTIOB[4:0] bits is output when counting starts
- The value specified in the OBDFLT bit is output when counting stops
- If the OBDFLT bit is modified while counting stops, the new value is immediately reflected in the output.

When the OBHLD bit is set to 1:

- The output is retained when counting starts or stops.

OBE bit (GTIOCnB Pin Output Enable)

The OBE bit disables or enables the GTIOCnB pin output.

When GTCCRB register is used as the input capture register (at least one bit in the GTICBSR register is set to 1), the GTIOCnB pin does not output regardless of the OBE bit value.

OBDF[1:0] bits (GTIOCnB Pin Disable Value Setting)

The OBDF[1:0] bits select the output value of the GTIOCnB pin in response to a request to disable output from the POEG.

NFBEN bit (Noise Filter B Enable)

The NFBEN bit disables or enables the noise filter for input from the GTIOCnB pin. Because changing the value of the bit might lead to the internal generation of an unexpected edge, select the output compare function for the relevant pin in the GTIOR register before doing so.

NFCSB[1:0] bits (Noise Filter B Sampling Clock Select)

The NFCSB[1:0] bits set the sampling interval for the noise filter of the GTIOCnB pin. When setting these bits, wait for 2 cycles of the selected sampling interval before setting the input capture function.

Table 20.4 Settings of GTIOA[4:0] and GTIOB[4:0] bits

GTIOA/GTIOB[4:0] bits					Function		
b4	b3	b2	b1	b0	b4	b3, b2*1 *2 *3	b1, b0*2
0	0	0	0	0	Initial output is low	Output retained at cycle end	Output retained at GTCCRA/GTCCRB compare match
0	0	0	0	1			Low output at GTCCRA/GTCCRB compare match
0	0	0	1	0			High output at GTCCRA/GTCCRB compare match
0	0	0	1	1			Output toggled at GTCCRA/GTCCRB compare match
0	0	1	0	0		Low output at cycle end	Output retained at GTCCRA/GTCCRB compare match
0	0	1	0	1			Low output at GTCCRA/GTCCRB compare match
0	0	1	1	0			High output at GTCCRA/GTCCRB compare match
0	0	1	1	1			Output toggled at GTCCRA/GTCCRB compare match
0	1	0	0	0		High output at cycle end	Output retained at GTCCRA/GTCCRB compare match
0	1	0	0	1			Low output at GTCCRA/GTCCRB compare match
0	1	0	1	0			High output at GTCCRA/GTCCRB compare match
0	1	0	1	1			Output toggled at GTCCRA/GTCCRB compare match
0	1	1	0	0		Output toggled at cycle end	Output retained at GTCCRA/GTCCRB compare match
0	1	1	0	1			Low output at GTCCRA/GTCCRB compare match
0	1	1	1	0			High output at GTCCRA/GTCCRB compare match
0	1	1	1	1			Output toggled at GTCCRA/GTCCRB compare match
1	0	0	0	0	Initial output is high	Output retained at cycle end	Output retained at GTCCRA/GTCCRB compare match
1	0	0	0	1			Low output at GTCCRA/GTCCRB compare match
1	0	0	1	0			High output at GTCCRA/GTCCRB compare match
1	0	0	1	1			Output toggled at GTCCRA/GTCCRB compare match
1	0	1	0	0		Low output at cycle end	Output retained at GTCCRA/GTCCRB compare match
1	0	1	0	1			Low output at GTCCRA/GTCCRB compare match
1	0	1	1	0			High output at GTCCRA/GTCCRB compare match
1	0	1	1	1			Output toggled at GTCCRA/GTCCRB compare match
1	1	0	0	0		High output at cycle end	Output retained at GTCCRA/GTCCRB compare match
1	1	0	0	1			Low output at GTCCRA/GTCCRB compare match
1	1	0	1	0			High output at GTCCRA/GTCCRB compare match
1	1	0	1	1			Output toggled at GTCCRA/GTCCRB compare match
1	1	1	0	0		Output toggled at cycle end	Output retained at GTCCRA/GTCCRB compare match
1	1	1	0	1			Low output at GTCCRA/GTCCRB compare match
1	1	1	1	0			High output at GTCCRA/GTCCRB compare match
1	1	1	1	1			Output toggled at GTCCRA/GTCCRB compare match

Note 1. The cycle end means an overflow (GTCNT changes from GTPR to 0 in up-counting), an underflow (GTCNT changes from 0 to GTPR in down-counting), or counter clearing for saw-wave mode, and means a trough (GTCNT changes from 0 to 1) for triangle-wave mode.

Note 2. When the timing of a cycle end and the timing of a GTCCRA/GTCCRB compare match are the same in a compare-match operation, the b3 and b2 settings are given priority in saw-wave PWM mode, and the b1 and b0 settings are given priority in any other mode.

Note 3. In event count operation where at least one bit in GTUPSR or GTDNSR is set to 1, the setting of b3 and b2 is ignored.

20.2.15 GTINTAD : General PWM Timer Interrupt Output Setting Register

Base address: GPT320 = 0x4007_8000
 GPT16m = 0x4007_8000 + 0x0100 × m (m = 4 to 9)

Offset address: 0x38

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	GRPA BL	GRPA BH	—	—	—	GRP[1:0]		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
23:0	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
25:24	GRP[1:0]	Output Disable Source Select 0 0: Group A output disable source is selected 0 1: Group B output disable source is selected Others: Setting prohibited	R/W
28:26	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
29	GRPABH	Same Time Output Level High Disable Request Enable 0: Same time output level high disable request disabled 1: Same time output level high disable request enabled	R/W
30	GRPABL	Same Time Output Level Low Disable Request Enable 0: Same time output level low disable request disabled 1: Same time output level low disable request enabled	R/W
31	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

The GTINTAD enables or disables interrupt requests and output disable requests.

GRP[1:0] bits (Output Disable Source Select)

These bits select the group of output disable request from GPT to POEG and the group of output disable for GTIOCnA pin and GTIOCnB pin from POEG to GPT.

The output disable request to POEG is output to the group selected in the GRP[1:0] bit, with dead-time errors, simultaneous high output, and simultaneous low output factors following their respective disable request enable bits.

GTST.ODF shows the request of the output disable source group that is selected with the GRP[1:0] bits. Set the GRP[1:0] bits when both GTIOR.OAE and GTIOR.OBE bits are 0.

GRPABH bit (Same Time Output Level High Disable Request Enable)

The GRPABH bit enables or disables the output disable request when the GTIOCnA pin and GTIOCnB pin output 1 at the same time.

GRPABL bit (Same Time Output Level Low Disable Request Enable)

The GRPABL bit enables or disables the output disable request when the GTIOCnA pin and GTIOCnB pin output 0 at the same time.

20.2.16 GTST : General PWM Timer Status Register

Base address: GPT320 = 0x4007_8000
 GPT16m = 0x4007_8000 + 0x0100 × m (m = 4 to 9)

Offset address: 0x3C

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	OABL F	OABH F	—	—	—	—	ODF	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	TUCF	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	TCFP U	TCFP O	TCFF	TCFE	TCFD	TCFC	TCFB	TCFA
Value after reset:	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	TCFA	Input Capture/Compare Match Flag A 0: No input capture/compare match of GTCCRA is generated 1: An input capture/compare match of GTCCRA is generated	R/W ¹
1	TCFB	Input Capture/Compare Match Flag B 0: No input capture/compare match of GTCCRB is generated 1: An input capture/compare match of GTCCRB is generated	R/W ¹
2	TCFC	Input Compare Match Flag C 0: No compare match of GTCCRC is generated 1: A compare match of GTCCRC is generated	R/W ¹
3	TCFD	Input Compare Match Flag D 0: No compare match of GTCCRD is generated 1: A compare match of GTCCRD is generated	R/W ¹
4	TCFE	Input Compare Match Flag E 0: No compare match of GTCCRE is generated 1: A compare match of GTCCRE is generated	R/W ¹
5	TCFF	Input Compare Match Flag F 0: No compare match of GTCCRF is generated 1: A compare match of GTCCRF is generated	R/W ¹
6	TCFPO	Overflow Flag 0: No overflow (crest) occurred 1: An overflow (crest) occurred	R/W ¹
7	TCFPU	Underflow Flag 0: No underflow (trough) occurred 1: An underflow (trough) occurred	R/W ¹
14:8	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
15	TUCF	Count Direction Flag 0: GTCNT counter counts downward 1: GTCNT counter counts upward	R
23:16	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
24	ODF	Output Disable Flag 0: No output disable request is generated 1: An output disable request is generated	R
28:25	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
29	OABHF	Same Time Output Level High Flag 0: No simultaneous generation of 1 both for the GTIOCA and GTIOCB pins has occurred. 1: A simultaneous generation of 1 both for the GTIOCA and GTIOCB pins has occurred.	R

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
30	OABLF	Same Time Output Level Low Flag 0: No simultaneous generation of 0 both for the GTIOCA and GTIOCB pins has occurred. 1: A simultaneous generation of 0 both for the GTIOCA and GTIOCB pins has occurred.	R
31	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note 1. Only 0 can be written to this bit. Do not write 1.

The GTST indicates the status of the GPT.

TCFA flag (Input Capture/Compare Match Flag A)

The TCFA flag indicates the status for the input capture or compare match of GTCCRA.

[Setting conditions]

- GTCNT = GTCCRA, when the GTCCRA register functions as a compare match register
- GTCNT counter value is transferred to GTCCRA by the input capture signal when the GTCCRA register functions as an input capture register.

[Clearing condition]

- 0 is written to this flag.

TCFB flag (Input Capture/Compare Match Flag B)

The TCFB flag indicates the status for the input capture or compare match of GTCCRB.

[Setting conditions]

- GTCNT = GTCCRB, when the GTCCRB register functions as a compare match register
- GTCNT counter value is transferred to GTCCRB by the input capture signal when the GTCCRB register functions as an input capture register.

[Clearing condition]

- 0 is written to this flag.

TCFC flag (Input Compare Match Flag C)

The TCFC flag indicates the status for the compare match of GTCCRC.

When GTCCRC performs buffer operation, GTCCRC does not perform compare match.

[Setting condition]

- GTCNT = GTCCRC.

[Clearing condition]

- 0 is written to this flag.

[Not comparing condition]

- GTCR.MD[2:0] = 001b (saw-wave one-shot pulse mode)
- GTCR.MD[2:0] = 110b (triangle-wave PWM mode 3)
- GTBER.CCRA[1:0] = 01b, 10b, 11b (GTCCRC performs buffer operation).

TCFD flag (Input Compare Match Flag D)

The TCFD flag indicates the status for the compare match of GTCCRD.

When GTCCRD performs buffer operation, GTCCRD does not perform a compare match.

[Setting condition]

- GTCNT = GTCCRD.

[Clearing condition]

- 0 is written to this flag.

[Not comparing condition]

- GTCR.MD[2:0] = 001b (saw-wave one-shot pulse mode)
- GTCR.MD[2:0] = 110b (Triangle-wave PWM mode 3)
- GTBER.CCRA[1:0] = 10b, 11b (GTCCRD performs buffer operation).

TCFE flag (Input Compare Match Flag E)

The TCFE flag indicates the status for the compare match of GTCCRE.

When GTCCRE performs buffer operation, GTCCRE does not perform a compare match.

[Setting condition]

- GTCNT = GTCCRE.

[Clearing condition]

- 0 is written to this flag.

[Not comparing condition]

- GTCR.MD[2:0] = 001b (saw-wave one-shot pulse mode)
- GTCR.MD[2:0] = 110b (Triangle-wave PWM mode 3)
- GTBER.CCRB[1:0] = 01b, 10b, 11b (GTCCRE performs buffer operation).

TCFF flag (Input Compare Match Flag F)

The TCFF flag indicates the status for the compare match of GTCCRF.

When GTCCRF performs buffer operation, GTCCRF does not perform a compare match.

[Setting condition]

- GTCNT = GTCCRF.

[Clearing condition]

- 0 is written to this flag.

[Not comparing condition]

- GTCR.MD[2:0] = 001b (saw-wave one-shot pulse mode)
- GTCR.MD[2:0] = 110b (Triangle-wave PWM mode 3)
- GTBER.CCRB[1:0] = 10b, 11b (GTCCRF performs buffer operation).

TCFPO flag (Overflow Flag)

The TCFPO flag indicates when an overflow or crest has occurred.

[Setting conditions]

- In saw-wave mode, an overflow (GTCNT changes from GTPR to 0 in up-counting) has occurred
- In triangle-wave mode, a crest (GTCNT changes from GTPR to GTPR - 1) has occurred
- In counting by hardware sources, an overflow (GTCNT changes from GTPR to 0 in up-counting) has occurred.

[Clearing condition]

- 0 is written to this flag.

TCFPU flag (Underflow Flag)

The TCFPU flag indicates when an underflow or trough has occurred.

[Setting conditions]

- In saw-wave mode, an underflow (GTCNT changes from 0 to GTPR in down-counting) has occurred
- In triangle-wave mode, a trough (GTCNT changes from 0 to 1) has occurred
- In counting by hardware sources, an underflow (GTCNT changes from 0 to GTPR in down-counting) has occurred.

[Clearing condition]

- 0 is written to this bit.

TUCF flag (Count Direction Flag)

The TUCF flag indicates the count direction of GTCNT. In event count operation, this flag is set to 1 in up-counting and to 0 in down-counting.

ODF flag (Output Disable Flag)

The ODF flag shows the request of the output disable source group that is selected in the GRP[1:0] bits.

When output is disabled, an output disable control is not released within the same cycle in which an output disable request is negated. It is released in the next cycle.

OABHF flag (Same Time Output Level High Flag)

The OABHF flag indicates that the GTIOCnA pin and GTIOCnB pin output 1 at the same time.

When the GTIOCnA or GTIOCnB pin outputs 0, this flag returns to 0. This flag is read-only. Writing 0 to clear the flag is prohibited.

When an interrupt by the OABHF flag is enabled (GTINTAD.GRPABH = 1), the OABHF flag is output to POEG as an output disable request.

[Setting condition]

- The GTIOCnA and GTIOCnB pins output 1 at the same time when both OAE and OBE bits are set to 1.

[Clearing conditions]

- The GTIOCnA pin output value is different from the GTIOCnB pin output value when both OAE and OBE bits are set to 1
- The GTIOCnA and GTIOCnB pins output 0 at the same time when both OAE and OBE bits are set to 1
- Either the OAE bit or OBE bit is set to 0.

OABLF flag (Same Time Output Level Low Flag)

The OABLF flag indicates that the GTIOCnA and GTIOCnB pins output 0 at the same time.

When the GTIOCnA pin or GTIOCnB pin outputs 1, this flag returns to 0. This flag is read-only. Writing 0 to clear the flag is prohibited.

When an interrupt by the OABLF flag is enabled (GTINTAD.GRPABL = 1), the OABLF flag is output to POEG as an output disable request.

[Setting condition]

- The GTIOCnA and GTIOCnB pins output 0 at the same time when both OAE and OBE bits are set to 1.

[Clearing conditions]

- The GTIOCnA pin output value is different from the GTIOCnB pin output value when both OAE and OBE bits are set to 1
- The GTIOCnA and GTIOCnB pins output 1 at the same time when both OAE and OBE bits are set to 1
- Either the OAE bit or the OBE bit is set to 0.

The compare-target signals to generate the OABHF/OABLF flag are the compare match outputs (PWM outputs) signals before they are masked by the output disable function. Even during the output disable condition, compare match operation continues internally, where the OABHF or OABLF flag is updated based on the operation results.

20.2.17 GTBER : General PWM Timer Buffer Enable Register

Base address: GPT320 = 0x4007_8000
GPT16m = 0x4007_8000 + 0x0100 × m (m = 4 to 9)

Offset address: 0x40

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	CCRS WT	PR[1:0]	CCRB[1:0]	CCRA[1:0]			
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	BD1	BD0
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	BD0	GTCCR Buffer Operation Disable 0: Buffer operation is enabled 1: Buffer operation is disabled	R/W
1	BD1	GTPR Buffer Operation Disable 0: Buffer operation is enabled 1: Buffer operation is disabled	R/W
15:2	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
17:16	CCRA[1:0]	GTCCRA Buffer Operation 0 0: No buffer operation 0 1: Single buffer operation (GTCCRA ↔ GTCCRC) Others: Double buffer operation (GTCCRA ↔ GTCCRC ↔ GTCCRD)	R/W
19:18	CCRB[1:0]	GTCCRB Buffer Operation 0 0: No buffer operation 0 1: Single buffer operation (GTCCRB ↔ GTCCRE) Others: Double buffer operation (GTCCRB ↔ GTCCRE ↔ GTCCRF)	R/W
21:20	PR[1:0]	GTPR Buffer Operation 0 0: No buffer operation 0 1: Single buffer operation (GTPBR → GTPR) Others: Setting prohibited	R/W
22	CCRSWT	GTCCRA and GTCCRB Forcible Buffer Operation Writing 1 to this bit forces a buffer transfer of GTCCRA and GTCCRB. This bit automatically returns to 0 after 1 is written. This bit is read as 0.	W
31:23	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

The GTBER register provides settings for the buffer operation. Set the GTBER register while the GTCNT counter is stopped.

BD0 bit (GTCCR Buffer Operation Disable)

The BD0 bit disables the buffer operation using GTCCRA, GTCCRB, GTCCRC, GTCCRD, GTCCRE, and GTCCRF combined.

When GTDTCR.TDE is 1 and when BD0 is set to 0, GTCCRB does not perform buffer operation. The GTCCRB register is automatically set to a compare match value for negative-phase waveform with dead time.

BD1 bit (GTPR Buffer Operation Disable)

The BD1 bit disables the buffer operation using GTPR and GTPBR combined.

CCRA[1:0] bits (GTCCRA Buffer Operation)

The CCRA[1:0] bits set the buffer operation with GTCCRA, GTCCRC, and GTCCRD combined. When the buffer operation is restricted by the operating mode set in GTCR, the GTCR setting is given priority.

The buffer operation mode is fixed in saw-wave one-shot pulse mode or triangle-wave PWM mode 3 (64-bit transfer at trough).

CCRB[1:0] bits (GTCCRB Buffer Operation)

The CCRB[1:0] bits set the buffer operation using GTCCRB, GTCCRE, and GTCCRF combined. When the buffer operation is restricted by the operating mode set in GTCR, the GTCR setting is given priority.

The buffer operation mode is fixed in saw-wave one-shot pulse mode or triangle-wave PWM mode 3 (64-bit transfer at trough).

PR[1:0] bits (GTPR Buffer Operation)

The PR[1:0] bits set the buffer operation with GTPR and GTPBR combined.

CCRSWT bit (GTCCRA and GTCCRB Forcible Buffer Operation)

Writing 1 to the CCRSWT bit forces a buffer transfer of GTCCRA and GTCCRB. This bit automatically returns to 0 after the 1 is written. This bit is read as 0, and is valid only when counting is stopped with a compare match operation specified.

20.2.18 GTCNT : General PWM Timer Counter

Base address: GPT320 = 0x4007_8000
GPT16m = 0x4007_8000 + 0x0100 × m (m = 4 to 9)

Offset address: 0x48

Bit position: 31

0

Bit field:

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
31:0	n/a	GTCNT is a 32-bit read/write counter for GPT32n (n = 0). For GPT16m (m = 4 to 9), GTCNT is a 16-bit register. GTCNT can only be written to after counting stops. For GPT16m (m = 4 to 9), the upper 16 bits for access in a 32-bit unit are always read as 0x0000, and writing to these bits is ignored. GTCNT must be set within the range of $0 \leq \text{GTCNT} \leq \text{GTPR}$.	R/W

20.2.19 GTCCRk : General PWM Timer Compare Capture Register k (k = A to F)

Base address: GPT320 = 0x4007_8000
GPT16m = 0x4007_8000 + 0x0100 × m (m = 4 to 9)

Offset address: 0x4C (GTCCRA)
0x50 (GTCCRB)
0x54 (GTCCRC)
0x58 (GTCCRE)
0x5C (GTCCRD)
0x60 (GTCCRF)

Bit position: 31

0

Bit field:

Value after reset: 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
31:0	n/a	GTCCRk registers are read/write registers. The effective size of GTCCRk is the same as GTCNT (16- or 32-bit). If the effective size of GTCCRk is 16 bits, the upper 16 bits for access in a 32-bit unit are always read as 0x0000, and writing to these bits is ignored. GTCCRA and GTCCRB are registers used for both output compare and input capture. GTCCRC and GTCCRE are compare match registers, and can also function as buffer registers for GTCCRA and GTCCRB. GTCCRD and GTCCRF are compare match registers, and can also function as buffer registers for GTCCRC and GTCCRE (double-buffer registers for GTCCRA and GTCCRB).	R/W

Note 1. For GPT16m (m = 4 to 9), the value of the upper 16 bits after reset is 0x0000.

20.2.20 GTPR : General PWM Timer Cycle Setting Register

Base address: GPT320 = 0x4007_8000
GPT16m = 0x4007_8000 + 0x0100 × m (m = 4 to 9)

Offset address: 0x64



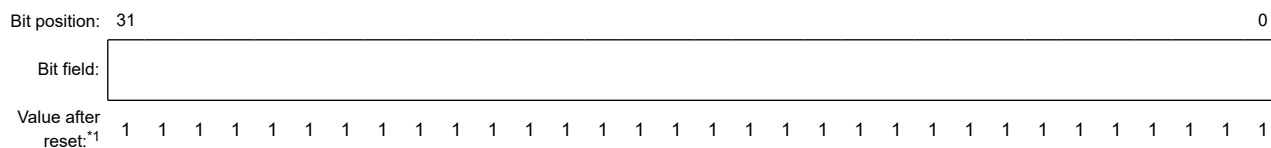
Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
31:0	n/a	GTPR is a read/write register that sets the maximum count value of GTCNT. The effective size of GTPR is the same as GTCNT (16- or 32-bit). If the effective size of GTPR is 16 bits, the upper 16 bits for access in a 32-bit unit are always read as 0x0000, and writing to these bits is ignored. For saw waves, the value of (GTPR + 1) is the cycle. For triangle waves, the value of (GTPR value × 2) is the cycle.	R/W

Note 1. For GPT16m (m = 4 to 9), the value of the upper 16 bits after reset is 0x0000.

20.2.21 GTPBR : General PWM Timer Cycle Setting Buffer Register

Base address: GPT320 = 0x4007_8000
GPT16m = 0x4007_8000 + 0x0100 × m (m = 4 to 9)

Offset address: 0x68



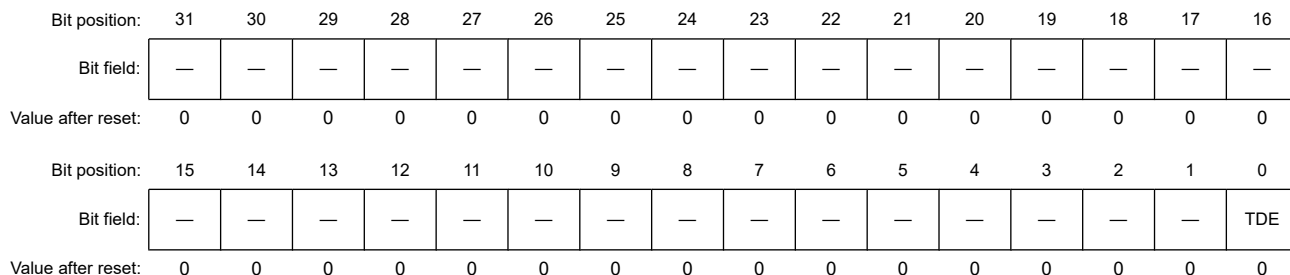
Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
31:0	n/a	GTPBR is a read/write register that functions as a buffer register for GTPR. The effective size of GTPBR is the same as GTCNT (16- or 32-bit). If the effective size of GTPBR is 16 bits, the upper 16 bits for access in a 32-bit unit are always read as 0x0000, and writing to these bits is ignored.	R/W

Note 1. For GPT16m (m = 4 to 9), the value of the upper 16 bits after reset is 0x0000.

20.2.22 GTDTCR : General PWM Timer Dead Time Control Register

Base address: GPT320 = 0x4007_8000
GPT16m = 0x4007_8000 + 0x0100 × m (m = 4 to 9)

Offset address: 0x88



Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	TDE	Negative-Phase Waveform Setting 0: GTCCRB is set without using GTDVU 1: GTDVU is used to set the compare match value for negative-phase waveform with dead time automatically in GTCCRB	R/W
31:1	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

GTDTCCR enables automatic setting of a compare match value for negative-phase waveform with dead time. GPT has a dead time control function and the GTDVU register is used for setting dead time value.

TDE bit (Negative-Phase Waveform Setting)

The TDE bit specifies whether to use GTDVU. When GTDVU is used, the compare match value for a negative-phase waveform with dead time obtained by the compare match value of a positive-phase waveform (GTCCRA) and the dead time value (GTDVU) is automatically set in GTCCRB.

The TDE bit setting is ignored in saw-wave PWM mode, and the GTCCRB is not automatic setting.

The GTCCRB value is automatically set and has the following upper and lower limit values. If the obtained GTCCRB value is not within the upper or lower limit, the following limit value is set in GTCCRB.

- Triangle waves:
Upper limit value: $GTPR - 1$
Lower limit value: 1 in up-counting, 0 in down-counting
- Saw-wave one-shot pulse mode:
Upper limit value: $GTPR$
Lower limit value: 0

20.2.23 GTDVU : General PWM Timer Dead Time Value Register U

Base address: GPT320 = 0x4007_8000
GPT16m = 0x4007_8000 + 0x0100 × m (m = 4 to 9)

Offset address: 0x8C

Bit position: 31

C

Bit field

Value after
reset:^{*1}

1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
31:0	n/a	GTDTVU is a read/write register that sets the dead time for generating PWM waveforms with dead time. The effective size of GTDTVU is the same as GTCNT (16 or 32 bits). If the effective size of GTDTVU is 16 bits, the upper 16 bits for access in a 32-bit unit are always read as 0x0000, and writing to these bits is ignored. Setting a GTDTVU value greater than or equal to GTPR is prohibited. When using the automatic dead time setting function, do not set a value that makes a change point of the waveform exceeding the count period. The set value can be confirmed by reading from GTCCRB. When GTDTVU is used, writing to GTCCRB is prohibited. When this register is set to 0, waveforms without dead time are output. While GPT is running, changing the GTDTVU values is prohibited. To change GTDTVU to a new value, stop the GPT with the CST bit in the GTCR register.	R/W

Note 1. For GPT16m (m = 4 to 9), the value of the upper 16 bits after reset is 0x0000.

20.2.24 OPSCR : Output Phase Switching Control Register

Base address: GPT_OPS = 0x4007_8FF0

Offset address: 0x00

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	NFCS[1:0]		NFEN	—	—	GODF	GRP[1:0]		—	—	ALIGN	RV	INV	N	P	FB
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	EN	—	W	V	U	—	WF	VF	UF
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	UF	Input Phase Soft Setting These bits set the input phase from software settings. Setting these bits is valid when OPSCR.FB = 1.	R/W
1	VF		R/W
2	WF		R/W
3	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
4	U	Input U-Phase Monitor This bit monitors the state of the input phase. OPSCR.FB = 0 : External input that is synchronized by PCLKD OPSCR.FB = 1 : Software settings (UF)	R
5	V	Input V-Phase Monitor This bit monitors the state of the input phase. OPSCR.FB = 0 : External input that is synchronized by PCLKD OPSCR.FB = 1 : Software settings (VF)	R
6	W	Input W-Phase Monitor This bit monitors the state of the input phase. OPSCR.FB = 0 : External input that is synchronized by PCLKD OPSCR.FB = 1 : Software settings (WF)	R
7	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
8	EN	Output Phase Enable 0: Do not output (Hi-Z external pin) 1: Output ^{*1}	R/W
15:9	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
16	FB	External Feedback Signal Enable ^{*2} This bit selects the input phase from software settings and external input. 0: Select the external input 1: Select the soft setting (OPSCR.UF, VF, WF)	R/W
17	P	Positive-Phase Output (P) Control 0: Level signal output 1: PWM signal output	R/W
18	N	Negative-Phase Output (N) Control 0: Level signal output 1: PWM signal output	R/W
19	INV	Output Phase Invert Control 0: Positive logic (active-high) output 1: Negative logic (active-low) output	R/W
20	RV	Output Phase Rotation Direction Reversal Control 0: Positive rotation 1: Reverse rotation	R/W
21	ALIGN	Input Phase Alignment 0: Input phase aligned to PCLKD 1: Input phase aligned to the falling edge of PWM	R/W
23:22	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
25:24	GRP[1:0]	Output Disabled Source Selection 0 0: Select group A output disable source 0 1: Select group B output disable source Others: Setting prohibited	R/W
26	GODF	Group Output Disable Function 0: This bit function is ignored 1: Group disable clears the OPSCR.EN bit*1	R/W
28:27	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
29	NFEN	External Input Noise Filter Enable 0: Do not use a noise filter on the external input 1: Use a noise filter on the external input	R/W
31:30	NFCS[1:0]	External Input Noise Filter Clock Selection Noise filter sampling clock setting of the external input. 0 0: PCLKD/1 0 1: PCLKD/4 1 0: PCLKD/16 1 1: PCLKD/64	R/W

Note 1. When OPSCR.GODF = 1 and the signal value selected by the OPSCR.GRP[1:0] bit is high, the OPSCR.EN bit is set to 0.

Note 2. For 48-pin, 36-pin, 32-pin and 25-pin products, external signals detected by the Hall element is not supported. So, FB bit cannot set to 0 for those products.

The OPSCR register sets the output of the signal waveform required for brushless DC motor control.

UF , VF , WF bits (Input Phase Soft Setting)

The UF , VF , WF bits set the input phase from the software settings. When OPSCR.FB bit is 1, these bits are valid. The set value of the UF /VF /WF takes the place of the U/V/W external input.

U, V, W bits (Input Phase Monitor)

When the OPSCR.FB bit is 0, external inputs that are synchronized by PCLKD are monitored by these bits. When the OPSCR.FB bit is 1, the OPSCR.U, OPSCR.V, and OPSCR.W bits can read the OPSCR.UF , OPSCR.VF , and OPSCR.WF bits.

EN bit (Output Phase Enable)

The EN bit controls the output enable signal of output phase (positive phase/negative phase).

When the OPSCR.EN bit is 1, the signal waveform is output.

When the OPSCR.EN bit is 0, first set OPSCR.FB, OPSCR.UF /VF /WF (software setting is selected), OPSCR.P/N, OPSCR.INV, OPSCR.RV, OPSCR.ALIGN, OPSCR.GRP[1:0], OPSCR.GODF, OPSCR.NFEN, OPSCR.NFCS. Then, set the EN bit to 1. The EN bit should be set when an output disable request does not occur from POEG. Also when OPSCR.GODF is 1 and the signal value selected in the OPSCR.GRP[1:0] bit is high, the OPSCR.EN bit is set to 0. Even if 1 is written by software, the EN bit remains at 0.

For the return, after clearing the Output Disable Request by software, set the EN bit to 1.

Priority order of the EN bit is as follows (when the conflict occurs).

When writing 1 by software and clearing to 0 by the Output Disable Request conflict for the EN bit, clearing to 0 by the Output Disable Request is enabled.

FB bit (External Feedback Signal Enable)

The FB bit selects the input phase from the software settings (OPSCR.UF, VF, WF) and external input such as a Hall element.

P bit (Positive-Phase Output (P) Control)

The P bit selects one of the level signal output or PWM signal output for the positive-phase output (GTOUUP, GTOVUP and GTOWUP pins).

N bit (Negative-Phase Output (N) Control)

The N bit selects one of the level signal output or PWM signal output for the negative-phase output (GTOULO, GTOVLO and GTOWLO pins).

INV bit (Output Phase Invert Control)

The INV bit selects one of the positive logic (active-high) output or negative logic (active-low) output for the output phase.

RV bit (Output Phase Rotation Direction Reversal Control)

The RV bit reverses the direction of rotation of the motor by inverting the input phase.

ALIGN bit (Input Phase Alignment)

The ALIGN bit selects the PCLKD or PWM for the sampling of the input phase (input phase is specified in the OPSCR.FB bit).

When OPSCR.ALIGN bit is 0, input phase is aligned to PCLKD.

Note: When the chopping is performed, there are cases where the PWM width of output is shorter than the width of the PWM used to chop just before or after switching of output phase, depending on the phase difference between the phase output switch timing and the phase of PWM.

When OPSCR.ALIGN bit is 1, input phase is aligned with the falling edge of PWM.

GRP[1:0] bit (Output Disabled Source Selection)

The GRP[1:0] bit selects the output disable source.

The GRP bits should be set when the GODF bit is 0. If GRP bits select a POEG except for the connected groups, the status of output pin never change to disable.

GODF bit (Group Output Disable Function)

When OPSCR.GODF is 1 and the signal value selected by the OPSCR.GRP[1:0] bit is high, the OPSCR.EN bit is set to 0.

When OPSCR.GODF bit is 0, this bit is ignored.

The GODF bit should be set when an output disable request does not occur from POEG.

NFEN bit (External Input Noise Filter Enable)

The NFEN bit selects the noise filter for external input. When OPSCR.NFEN bit is 0, a noise filter for the external input is not used.

Note: Set this bit while the EN bit is 0 to avoid the generation of unintentional internal edge caused by switching this bit.

NFCS[1:0] bits (External Input Noise Filter Clock Selection)

The NFCS[1:0] bits select the clock for the external input noise filter. When the OPSCR.NFEN bit is 1, noise filter sampling clock setting of the external input is enabled.

1. Set the NFCS[1:0].
2. Wait for 2 cycles.
3. Set the OPSCR.EN bit to 1.

20.3 Operation

20.3.1 Basic Operation

Each channel has a 32-bit and 16-bit timer that performs a periodic count operation using the count clock and hardware sources. The count function provides both up-counting and down-counting. The GTPR controls the count cycle.

When the GTCNT counter value matches the value in GTCCRA or GTCCRB, the output from the associated GTIOCnA or GTIOCnB can be changed (n = 0, 4 to 9). GTCCRA or GTCCRB can be used as an input capture register with hardware resources.

GTCCRC and GTCCRD can function as buffer registers for GTCCRA. GTCCRE and GTCCRF can function as buffer registers for GTCCRB.

20.3.1.1 Counter operation

(1) Counter start and stop

The counter of each channel starts the count operation when GTCR.CST is set to 1, and stops counting when the bit is set to 0. The GTCR.CST bit value is changed by the following sources:

- Writing to GTCR register
- Writing 1 to the bit in GTSTR associated with the GPT channel number when the GTSSR.CSTRT bit is set to 1
- Writing 1 to the bit in GTSTP associated with the GPT channel number when the GTPSR.CSTOP bit is set to 1
- The hardware source selected in the GTSSR register
- The hardware source selected in the GTPSR register

(2) Periodic count operation in up-counting by count clock

The GTCNT counter in each channel starts up-counting when the associated GTCR.CST bit is set to 1 with GTUPSR and GTDNSR registers set to 0x00000000. When the GTCNT value changes from the GTPR value to 0 (overflow), the GTST.TCFPO flag is set to 1, and the overflow interrupt(GPTn_OVF) is also generated. After GTCNT overflows, up-counting resumes from 0x00000000.

Figure 20.3 shows an example of a periodic count operation in up-counting by the count clock.

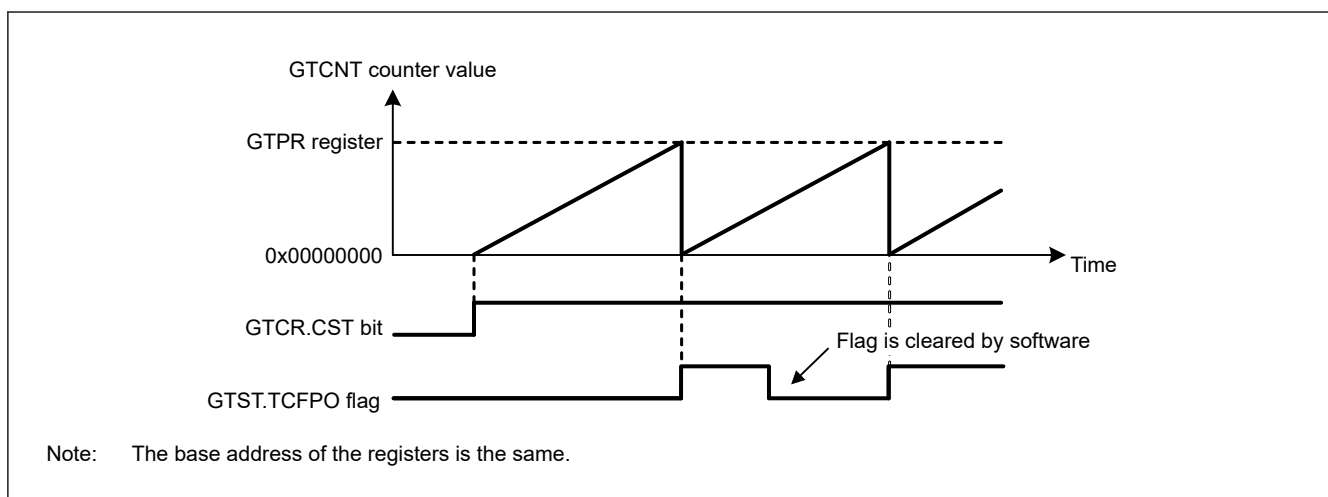


Figure 20.3 Example of periodic count operation in up-counting by the count clock

Table 20.5 shows an example for setting periodic count operation in up-counting by the count clock.

Table 20.5 Example for setting a periodic count operation in up-counting by the count clock

No.	Step Name	Description
1	Set operating mode	Set the operating mode with the GTCR.MD[2:0] bits. In Figure 20.3, 000b (saw-wave PWM mode) is set.
2	Set count direction	Select the count direction (up or down) with the GTUDDTYC register. In Figure 20.3, after 11b is set in the GTUDDTYC[1:0] bits, 01b is set in the GTUDDTYC[1:0] bits (up-counting).
3	Select count clock	Select the count clock with the GTCR.TPCS[2:0] bits.
4	Set cycle	Set the cycle in the GTPR register.
5	Set initial value for the counter	Set the initial value in the GTCNT counter. In Figure 20.3, 0x00000000 is set.
6	Start count operation	Set the GTCR.CST bit to 1 to start count operation.

(3) Periodic count operation in down-counting by count clock

The GTCNT counter in each channel can perform down-counting by setting GTUDDTYC.UD with GTUPSR and GTDNSR registers set to 0x00000000. When GTCNT changes from 0 to the GTPR value (underflow), GTST.TCFPU is

set to 1, and the underflow interrupt(GPTn_UDF) is also generated. After the GTCNT counter underflows, down-counting resumes from the GTPR value.

Figure 20.4 shows an example of periodic count operation in down-counting by the count clock.

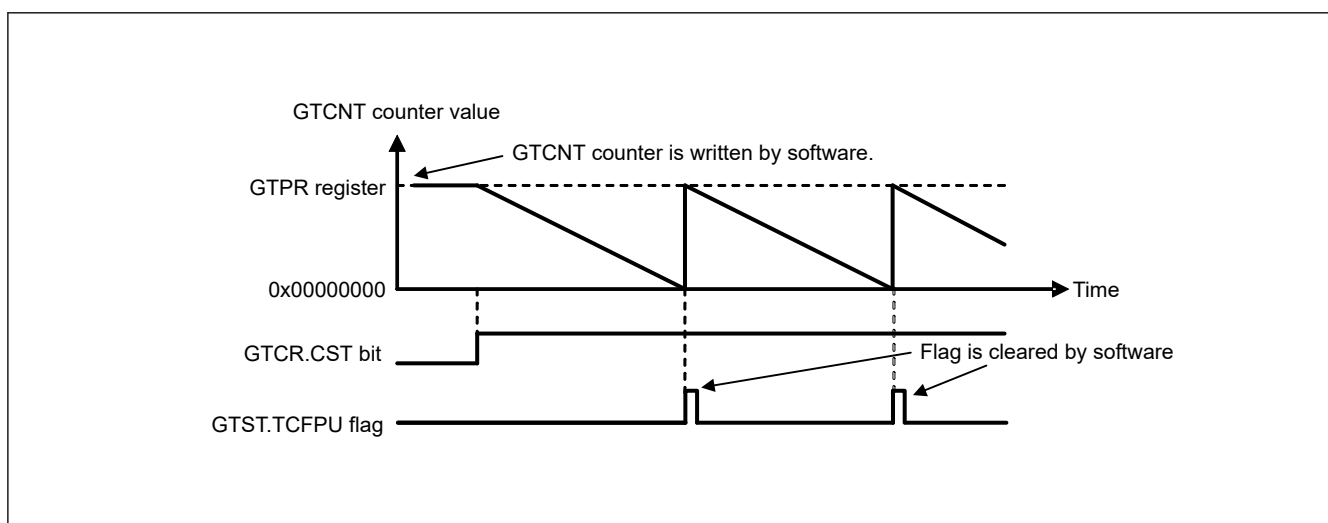


Figure 20.4 Example of periodic count operation in down-counting by the count clock

Table 20.6 shows an example for setting periodic count operation in down-counting by the count clock.

Table 20.6 Example for setting periodic count operation in down-counting by count clock

No.	Step Name	Description
1	Set operating mode	Set the operating mode with the GTCR.MD[2:0] bits. In Figure 20.4, 000b (saw-wave PWM mode) is set.
2	Set count direction	Select the count direction with the GTUDDTYC register. In Figure 20.4, after 10b is set in the GTUDDTYC[1:0] bits, 00b is set in the GTUDDTYC[1:0] bits (down-counting).
3	Select count clock	Select the count clock with the GTCR.TPCS[2:0] bits.
4	Set cycle	Set the cycle in the GTPR register.
5	Set initial value for the counter	Set the initial value in the GTCNT counter. In Figure 20.4, the GTPR register value is set.
6	Start count operation	Set the GTCR.CST bit to 1 to start count operation. In Figure 20.4, 1 is set in the CST bit.

(4) Event count operation in up-counting using hardware sources

The GTCNT counter in each channel can perform up-counting using hardware sources as set in GTUPSR.

When GTUPSR is set to enable, the count clock selected in GTCR.TPCS[2:0] and the count direction selected in GTUDDTYC.UD are ignored. If up-counting and down-counting using hardware sources occur at the same time, the GTCNT counter value does not change. The overflow behavior when up-counting using hardware sources is the same as when up-counting by the count clock.

If you are using a hardware source to count up, set the GTCR.CST bit to 1 to enable the counting operation. After GTCR.CST is set to 1, the counter cannot count up for 1 clock cycle as specified in GTCR.TPCS[2:0] because the count operation is synchronized by the count clock selected in GTCR.TPCS[2:0]. Set GTCR.TPCS[2:0] to 000b to count up with a 1 PCLKD delay after GTCR.CST is set to 1.

Figure 20.5 shows an example of an event count operation in up-counting by a hardware resource (the rising edge of GTETRGA pin input).

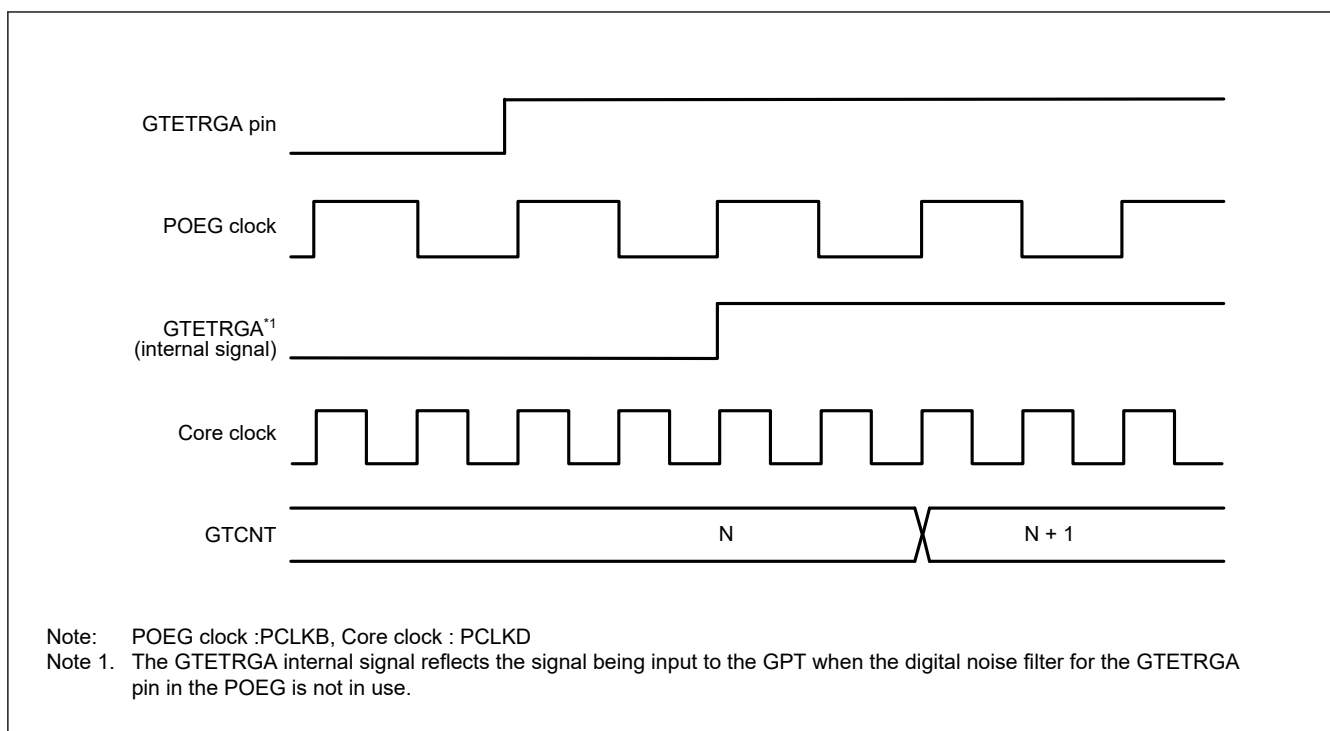


Figure 20.5 Example of event count operation in up-counting using hardware sources

Table 20.7 shows an example for setting event count operation in up-counting by a hardware source.

Table 20.7 Example for setting an event count operation in up-counting using hardware sources

No.	Step Name	Description
1	Set count source	Select the counting-up hardware source with the GTUPSR register.
2	Set cycle	Set the cycle in the GTPR register.
3	Set initial value for the counter	Set the initial value in the GTCNT counter.
4	Start count operation	Set the GTCR.CST bit to 1 to start count operation.

(5) Event count operation in down-counting using hardware sources

The GTCNT counter in each channel can perform down-counting using hardware sources set in the GTDNSR.

When GTDNSR is set to enable, the count clock selected in GTCR.TPCS[2:0] and the count direction selected in GTUDDTYC.UD are ignored. If up-counting and down-counting using hardware sources occur at the same time, the GTCNT counter value does not change. The underflow behavior when down-counting using hardware sources is the same as when down-counting by the count clock.

When the GTCR.CST bit is set to 1 to count down using hardware sources, the count operation is enabled. After GTCR.CST is set to 1, the counter cannot count down for 1 clock cycle as specified in GTCR.TPCS[2:0] because the count operation is synchronized with the count clock selected in GTCR.TPCS[2:0]. Set GTCR.TPCS[2:0] to 000b to count down with a 1 PCLKD delay after GTCR.CST is set to 1.

Figure 20.6 shows an example of an event count operation in down-counting by a hardware resource (rising edge of GTETRGA pin).

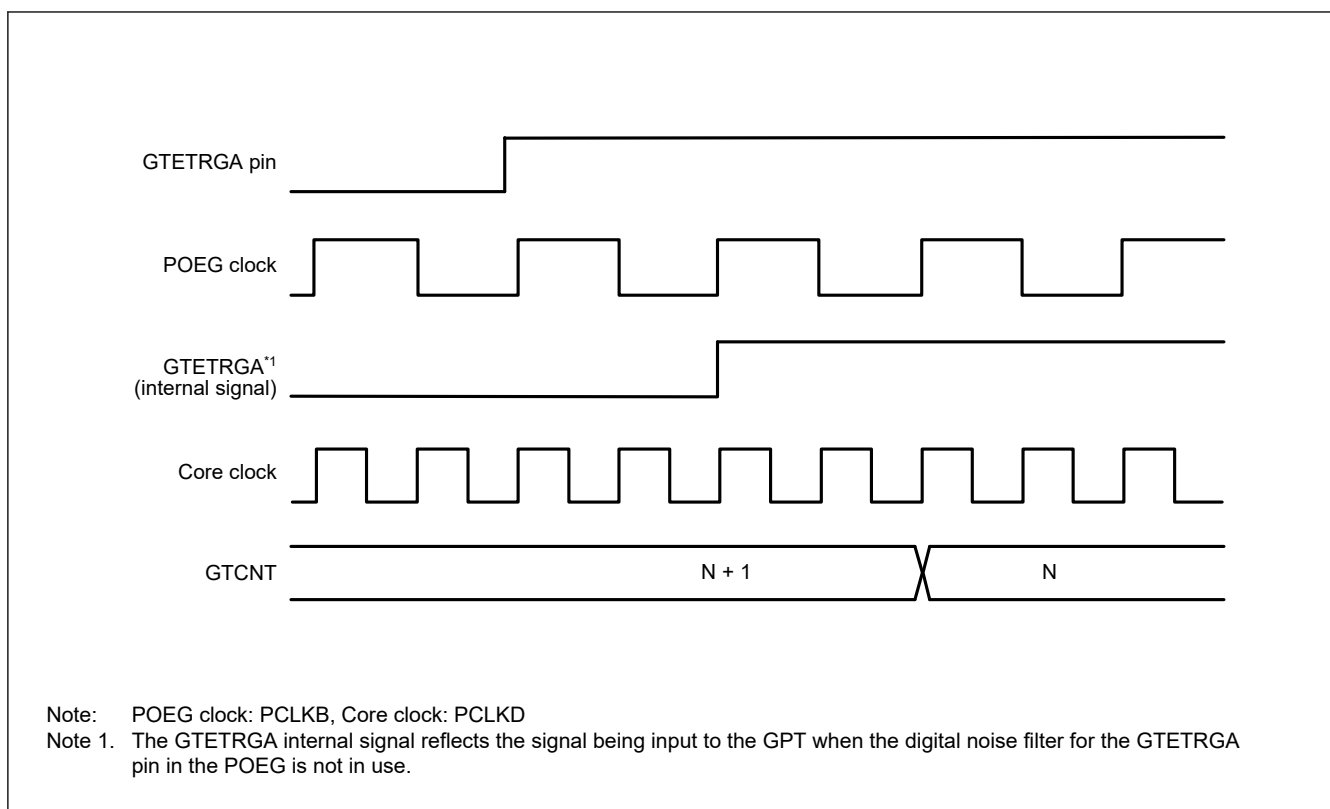


Figure 20.6 Example of event count operation in down-counting using hardware sources

Table 20.8 shows an example for setting a periodic count operation in down-counting using a hardware resource.

Table 20.8 Example for setting an event count operation in down-counting using hardware sources

No.	Step Name	Description
1	Set count source	Select the counting-down hardware source with the GTDNSR register.
2	Set cycle	Set the cycle in the GTPR register.
3	Set initial value for the counter	Set the initial value in the GTCNT counter.
4	Start count operation	Set the GTCR.CST bit to 1 to start count operation.

(6) Counter clear operation

The counter of each channel is cleared by the following sources:

- Writing 0 to the GTCNT register
- Writing 1 to the bit in GTCLR associated with the GPT channel number when the GTCSR.CCLR bit is set to 1
- The hardware source selected in the GTCSR register.

Writing to the GTCNT register is prohibited during count operation. The GTCNT counter can be cleared both by writing 1 to the GTCLR and by the clear request of hardware sources, whether GTCNT is counting (GTCR.CST is 1) or not (GTCR.CST is 0).

When the count direction flag is set as decrement (GTST.TCUF flag = 0) in saw-wave mode selected with GTCR.MD[2:0] bits, the GTCNT register is set to the value of the GTPR register when writing 1 to the GTCLR register and when clearing by hardware sources are performed.

When not in saw-waves mode and down-counting, the GTCNT register is set to 0 when writing 1 to the GTCLR register and when clearing by hardware sources are performed.

In event count operation when at least 1 bit in the GTUPSR or GTDNSR is set to 1, after clear sources occur, both writing to GTCLR register and clearing by hardware sources are performed immediately to synchronize with PCLKD. If other settings are used, clear is synchronized with the counter clock selected in GTCR.TPCS[2:0].

20.3.1.2 Waveform Output by Compare Match

Compare match means that the GTCNT counter value matches the value of GTCCRA or GTCCRB. When a compare match occurs, the compare match flag is generated synchronously with the count clock, including the event count. At the same time, the GPT can output low, high, or toggled output from the associated GTIOCnA or GTIOCnB output pin (n = 0, 4 to 9). In addition, the GTIOCnA or GTIOCnB pin output can be low, high, or toggled at the cycle end which is determined by GTPR.

The cycle end is:

- For saw waves in up-counting — when GTCNT changes from the GTPR value to 0 (overflow)
- For saw waves in down-counting — when GTCNT changes from 0 to GTPR value (underflow)
- For saw waves — when the GTCNT counter is cleared
- For triangle waves — when the GTCNT changes from 0 to 1 (trough).

(1) Low output and high output

Figure 20.7 shows an example of low output and high output operation by a compare match of GTCCRA and GTCCRB.

In this example, the GTCNT counter performs up-counting, and settings are made so that high is output from the GTIOCnA pin by a GTCCRA compare match, and low is output from the GTIOCnB pin by a GTCCRB compare match. The pin level does not change when the specified level and pin level match.

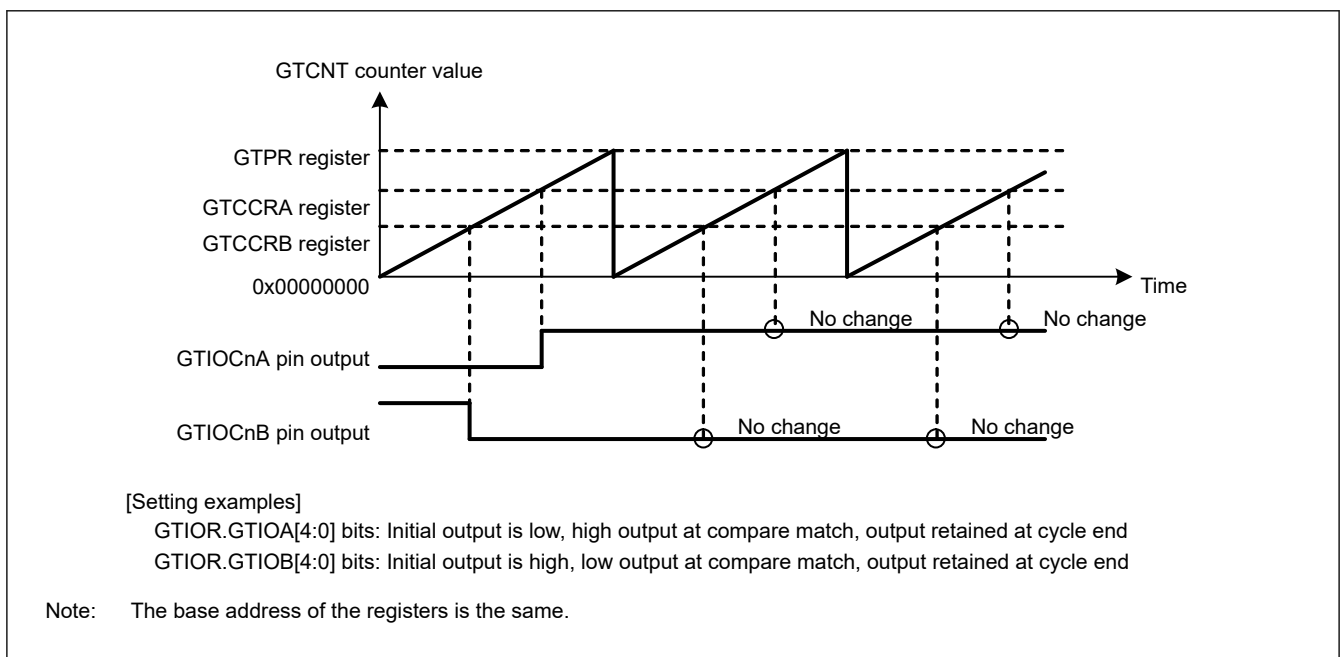


Figure 20.7 Example of low output and high output operation

Table 20.9 shows an example for setting low output and high output operation.

Table 20.9 Example for setting low output and high output operation (1 of 2)

No.	Step Name	Description
1	Set operating mode	Set the operating mode with the GTCR.MD[2:0] bits. In Figure 20.7, 000b (saw-wave PWM mode) is set.
2	Set count direction	Select the count direction (up or down) with the GTUDDTYC register. In Figure 20.7, after 11b is set in the GTUDDTYC[1:0] bits, 01b is set in the GTUDDTYC[1:0] bits (up-counting).
3	Select count clock	Select the count clock with the GTCR.TPCS[2:0] bits.
4	Set cycle	Set the cycle in the GTPR register.
5	Set initial value for the counter	Set the initial value in the GTCNT counter.

Table 20.9 Example for setting low output and high output operation (2 of 2)

No.	Step Name	Description
6	Set GTIOCnm pin function	Set the GTIOCnm pin function with the GTIOA[4:0] and GTIOB[4:0] bits in the GTIOR register. In Figure 20.7 , GTIOA[4:0] = 00010b, GTIOB[4:0] = 10001b.
7	Enable GTIOCnm pin output	Set to enable the GTIOCnm pin output with the OAE and OBE bits in the GTIOR register.
8	Set compare match value	Set compare match values in the GTCCRA and GTCCRB registers.
9	Start count operation	Set the GTCR.CST bit to 1 to start count operation.

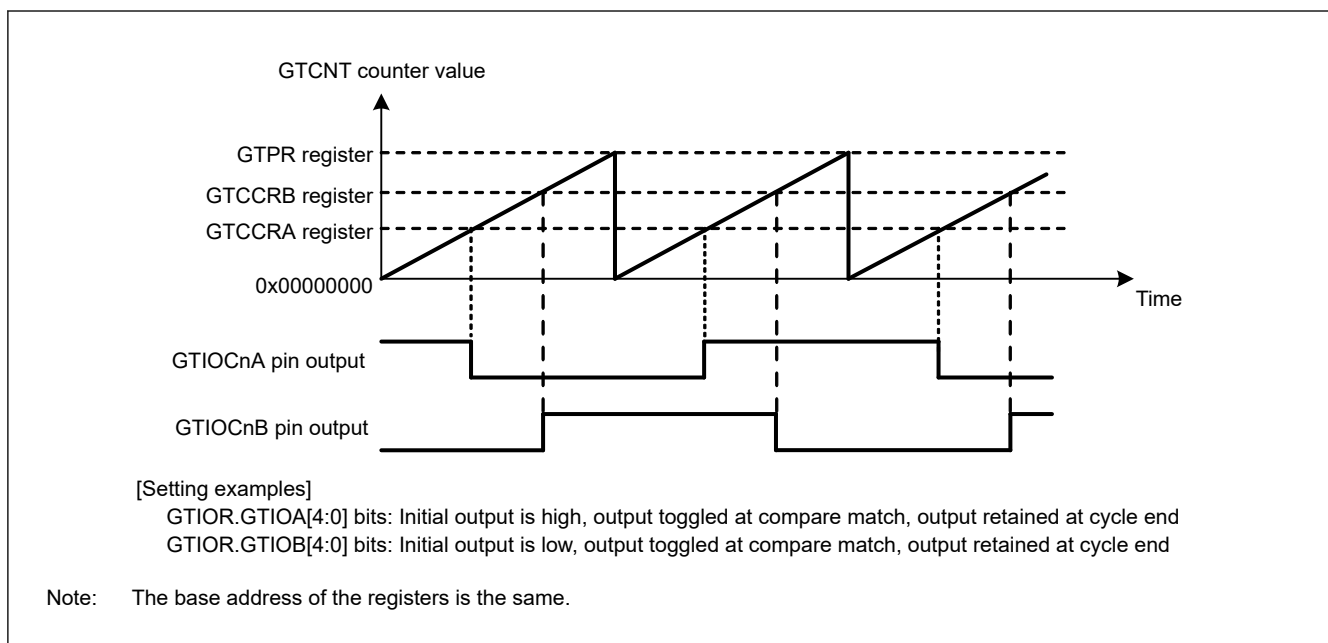
Note: n: 0, 4 to 9
m: A, B

(2) Toggled output

[Figure 20.8](#) and [Figure 20.9](#) show examples of toggled output operation by compare matches of GTCCRA and GTCCRB.

In [Figure 20.8](#), the GTCNT counter performs up-counting, and settings are made so that the GTIOCnA pin output by a GTCCRA compare match and GTIOCnB pin output by a GTCCRB compare match are toggled.

In [Figure 20.9](#), the GTCNT counter performs up-counting, and settings are made so that a GTCCRA compare match toggles the GTIOCnA pin output level and a cycle end toggles the GTIOCnB pin output level.

**Figure 20.8 Example of toggled output operation (1)**

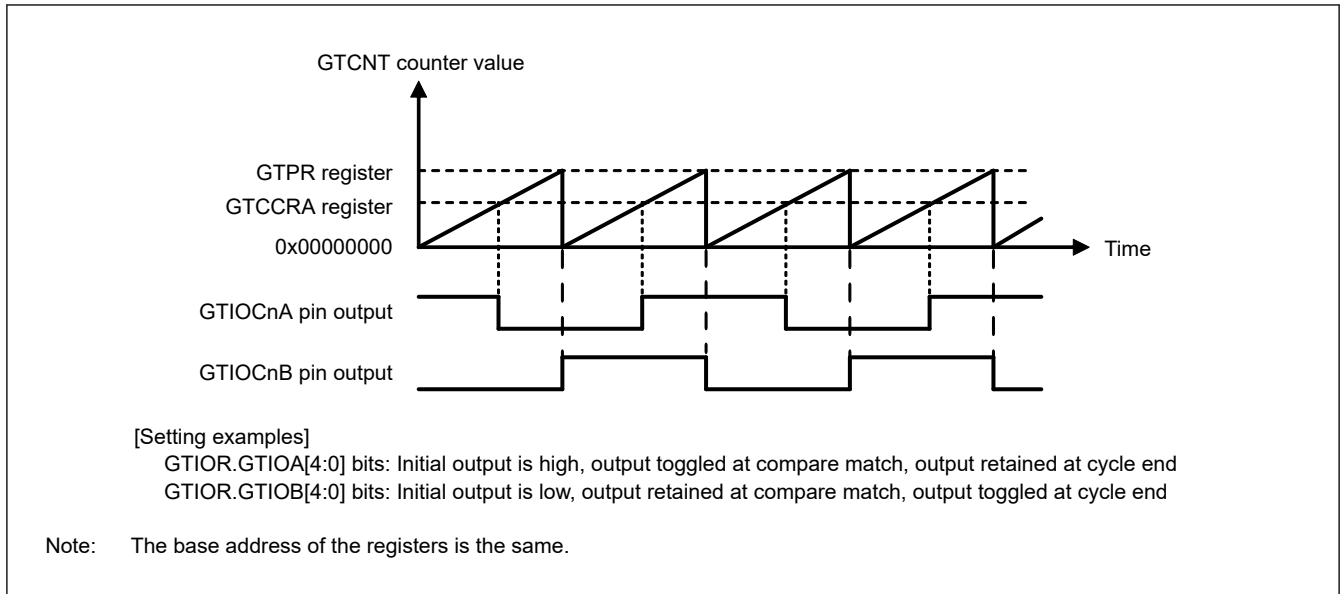
**Figure 20.9 Example of toggled output operation (2)**

Table 20.10 shows an example for setting toggled output operation.

Table 20.10 Example for setting toggled output operation

No.	Step Name	Description
1	Set operating mode	Set the operating mode with the GTCR.MD[2:0] bits. In Figure 20.8 and Figure 20.9, 000b (saw-wave PWM mode) is set.
2	Set count direction	Select the count direction (up or down) with the GTUDDTYC register. In Figure 20.8 and Figure 20.9, after 11b is set in the GTUDDTYC[1:0] bits, 01b is set in the GTUDDTYC[1:0] bits (up-counting).
3	Select count clock	Select the count clock with the GTCR.TPCS[2:0] bits.
4	Set cycle	Set the cycle in the GTPR register.
5	Set initial value for the counter	Set the initial value in the GTCNT counter.
6	Set GTIOcNm pin function	Set the GTIOcNm pin function with the GTIOA[4:0] and GTIOB[4:0] bits in the GTIOR register. In Figure 20.8, GTIOA[4:0] = 10011b, GTIOB[4:0] = 00011b, and in Figure 20.9, GTIOA[4:0] = 10011b, GTIOB[4:0] = 01100b.
7	Enable GTIOcNm pin output	Set to enable the GTIOcNm pin output with the OAE and OBE bits in the GTIOR register.
8	Set compare match value	Set compare match values in the GTCCRA and GTCCRB registers.
9	Start count operation	Set the GTCR.CST bit to 1 to start count operation.

Note: n: 0, 4 to 9
 m: A, B

20.3.1.3 Input Capture Function

The GTCNT counter value can be transferred to either GTCCRA or GTCCRB on detection of the hardware source that is set in GTICASR and GTICBSR.

Figure 20.10 shows an example of the input capture function.

In this example, the GTCNT counter performs up-counting by the count clock, and settings are made so that an input capture is performed to GTCCRA at both edges of the GTIOcNA input pin and to GTCCRB on the rising edge of the GTIOcNB input pin.

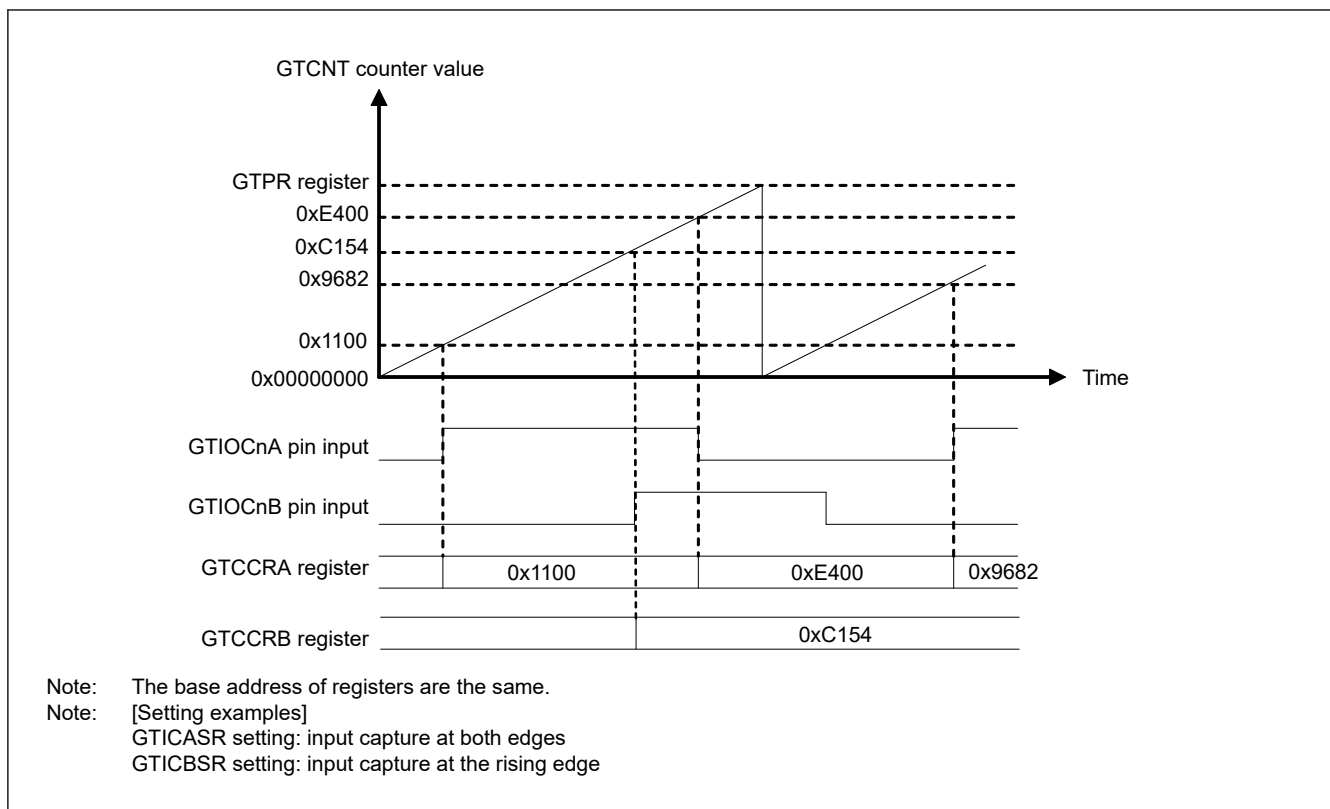
**Figure 20.10** Example of input capture operation

Table 20.11 and Table 20.14 show the example for setting an input capture operation with count operation by the count clock.

Table 20.11 Example for setting input capture operation

No.	Step Name	Description
1	Set operating mode	Set the operating mode with the GTCR.MD[2:0] bits. In Figure 20.10, 000b (saw-wave PWM mode) is set.
2	Set count direction	Select the count direction (up or down) with the GTUDDTYC register. In Figure 20.10, after 11b is set in the GTUDDTYC[1:0] bits, 01b is set in the GTUDDTYC[1:0] bits (up-counting).
3	Select count clock	Select the count clock with the GTCR.TPCS[2:0] bits.
4	Set cycle	Set the cycle in the GTPR register.
5	Set initial value for counter	Set the initial value in the GTCNT counter.
6	Select input capture source	Select the input capture source in the GTICASR and GTICBSR registers. In Figure 20.10, GTICASR = 0x00000F00, GTICBSR = 0x00003000.
7	Start count operation	Set the GTCR.CST bit to 1 to start count operation.

20.3.2 Buffer Operation

The following buffer operations can be set with GTBER:

- GTPR and GTPBR
- GTCCRA, GTCCRC, and GTCCRD
- GTCCRB, GTCCRE, and GTCCRF

20.3.2.1 GTPR Register Buffer Operation

GTPBR can function as a buffer register for GTPR.

The buffer transfer is performed at an overflow (during up-counting) or an underflow (during down-counting) in saw-wave mode or in event count, and at a trough in triangle-wave mode.

In saw-wave mode or in event count, the buffer transfer is performed when the following counter clear operations occur during counting:

- Clear by hardware sources (the clear source is selected in the GTCSR register)
- Clear by software (when GTCSR.CCLR bit is 1 and GTCLR.CCLRn bit is set to 1, n = 0, 4 to 9).

To set GTPR to function as a buffer, set the GTBER.PR bit to 1. To set GTPR not to function as a buffer, set the GTBER.PR bit to 0.

Figure 20.11 to Figure 20.13 show examples of GTPR buffer operation and Table 20.12 shows an example for setting GTPR buffer operation.

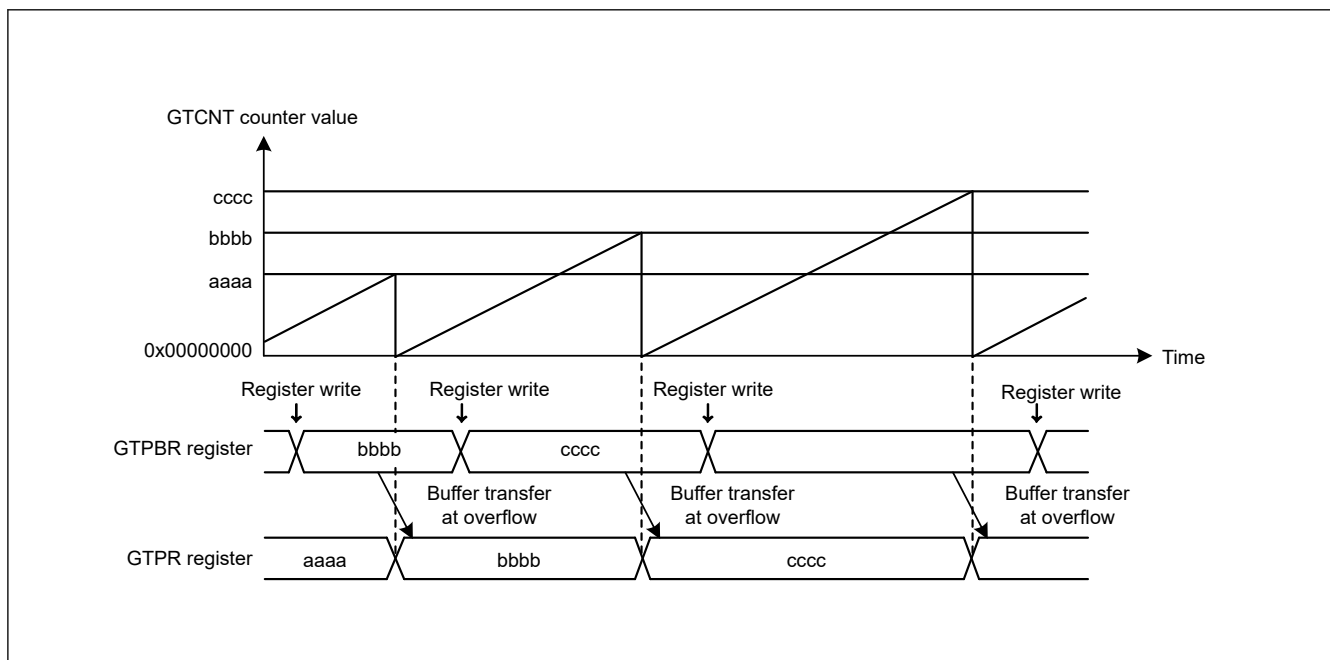


Figure 20.11 Example of GTPR buffer operation with saw waves in up-counting

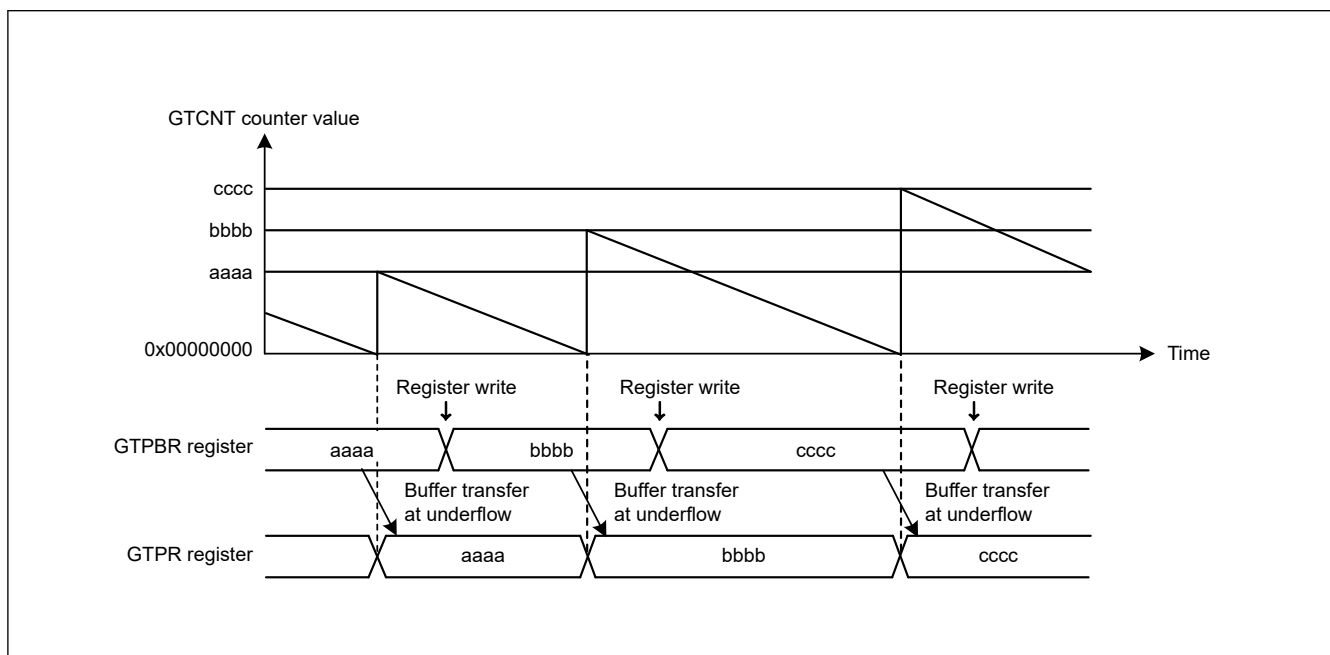


Figure 20.12 Example of GTPR buffer operation with saw waves in down-counting

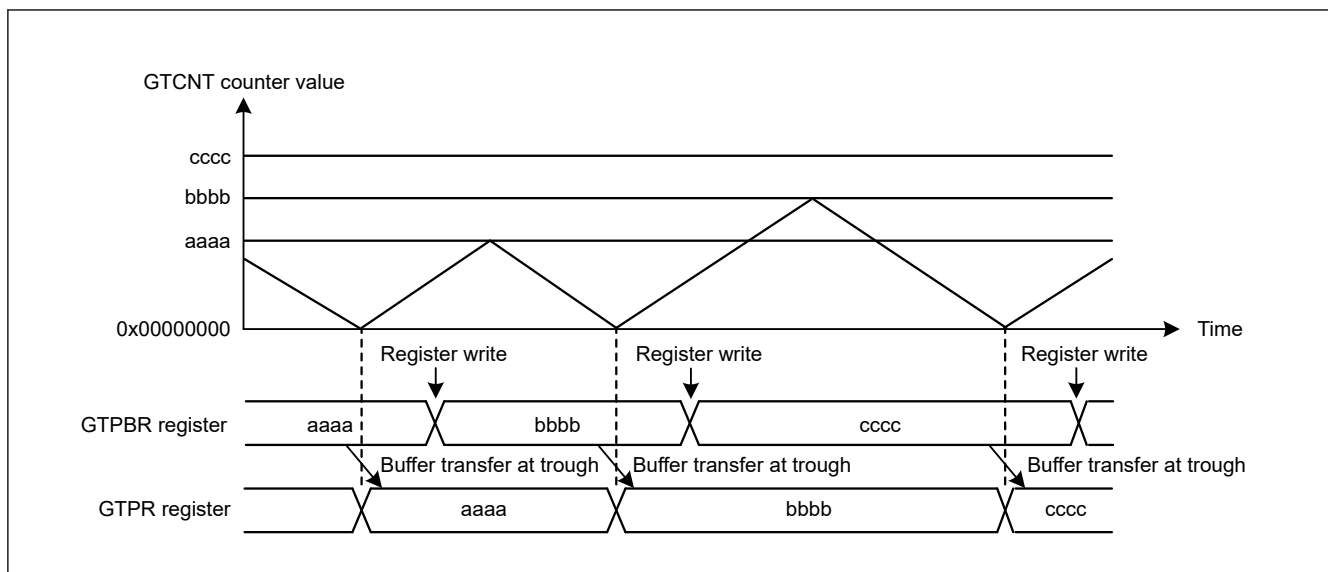


Figure 20.13 Example of GTPR buffer operation with triangle waves

Table 20.12 **Example for setting GTPR register buffer operation**

No.	Step Name	Description
1	Set operating mode	Set the operating mode with the GTCR.MD[2:0] bits. In Figure 20.11 and Figure 20.12 , 000b (saw-wave PWM mode) is set, and in Figure 20.13 , 100b (triangle-wave PWM mode 1) is set.
2	Set count direction	Select the count direction (up or down) with the GTUDDTYC register. In Figure 20.11 , after 11b is set in the GTUDDTYC[1:0] bits, 01b is set in the GTUDDTYC[1:0] bits (up-counting). In Figure 20.12 , after 10b is set in the GTUDDTYC[1:0] bits, 00b is set in the GTUDDTYC[1:0] bits (down-counting).
3	Select count clock	Select the count clock with the GTCR.TPCS[2:0] bits.
4	Set cycle	Set the cycle in the GTPR register.
5	Set initial value for the counter	Set the initial value in the GTCNT counter.
6	Set buffer operation	Set buffer operation with the GTBER.PR[1:0] bits. In Figure 20.11 , Figure 20.12 , and Figure 20.13 , PR[1:0] = 01b.
7	Set buffer value	For buffer operation, set a value in one cycle after the current cycle in the GTPBR register.
8	Start count operation	Set the GTCR.CST bit to 1 to start count operation.
9	Set buffer value for each cycle	For buffer operation, set a value in one cycle after the current cycle in the GTPBR register.

20.3.2.2 Buffer Operation for GTCCRA and GTCCRB Registers

GTCCRC can function as the GTCCRA buffer register and GTCCRD can function as the GTCCRC buffer register (double-buffer register for GTCCRA). Similarly, GTCCRE can function as the GTCCRB buffer register and GTCCRF can function as the GTCCRE buffer register (double-buffer register for GTCCRB).

To set GTCCRA or GTCCRB to function as a double buffer, set GTBER.CCRA[1:0] or GTBER.CCRB[1:0] to 10b or 11b. For single buffer operation, set 01b. To set GTCCRA or GTCCRB not to function as a buffer, set 00b.

(1) When GTCCRA or GTCCRB functions as output compare register

Buffer transfer occurs in the following situations:

- Buffer transfer by overflow or underflow
Buffer transfer is performed at an overflow (during up-counting) or an underflow (during down-counting) in saw-wave mode or in event count operation. In triangle-wave mode, buffer transfer is performed at a trough (triangle-wave PWM mode 1) or a crest and trough (triangle-wave PWM mode 2).
- Buffer transfer by counter clear

In saw-wave mode or in event count operation, during counting, buffer transfer (which is the same as an overflow during up-counting or an underflow during down-counting) is performed by the counter clear sources similar to the case shown in [section 20.3.2.1. GTPR Register Buffer Operation](#).

In triangle-wave mode, buffer transfer is not performed by the counter clear.

- Forcible buffer transfer

When the GTBER.CCRSWT bit is set to 1 while the count operation is stopped, the GTCCRA and the GTCCRB register buffer transfer are performed forcibly in saw-wave mode, in event count operation and in triangle-wave mode. Additionally, buffer transfer from the GTCCRD register to temporary register A and from the GTCCRF register to temporary register B are performed in saw-wave one-shot pulse mode or triangle-wave PWM mode 3.

[Figure 20.14](#) to [Figure 20.16](#) show examples of GTCCRA and GTCCRB buffer operation and [Table 20.13](#) shows an example for setting GTCCRA and GTCCRB buffer operation.

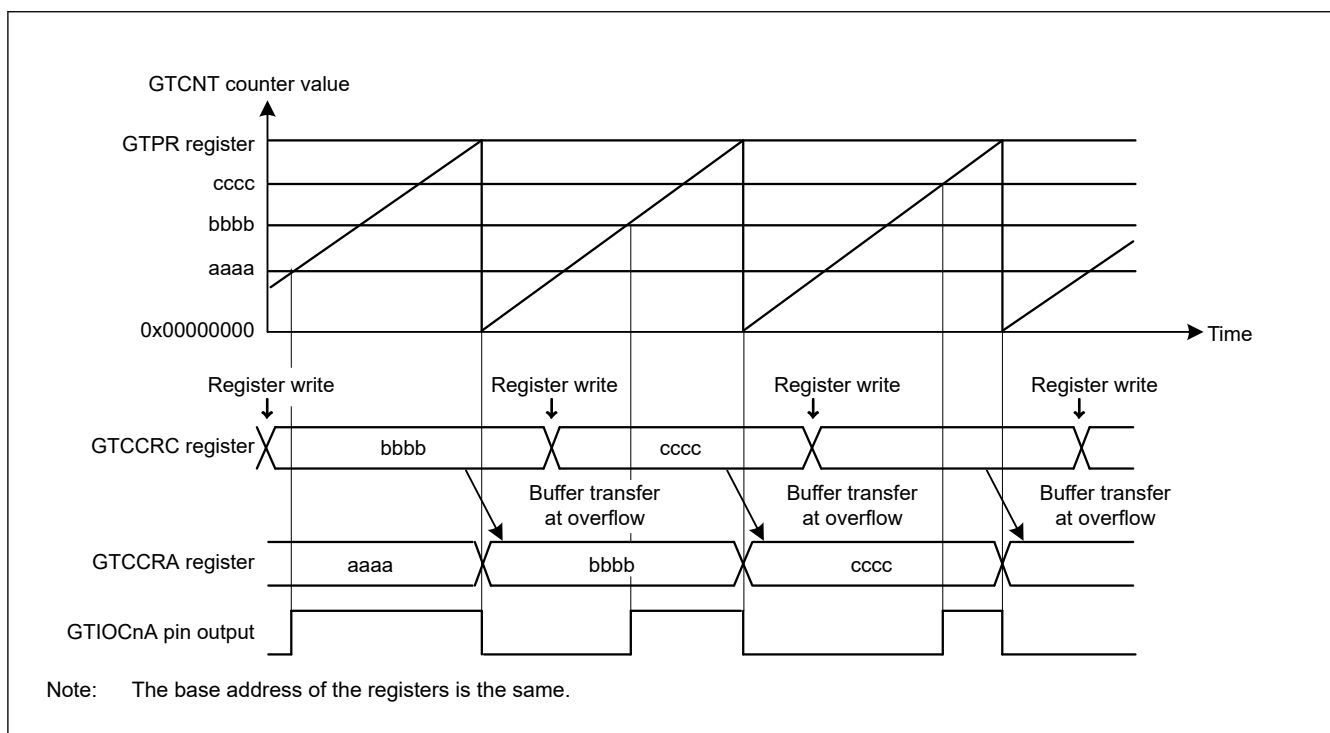


Figure 20.14 Example of GTCCRA and GTCCRB buffer operation with output compare, saw waves in up-counting, high output at GTCCRA compare match, and low output at cycle end

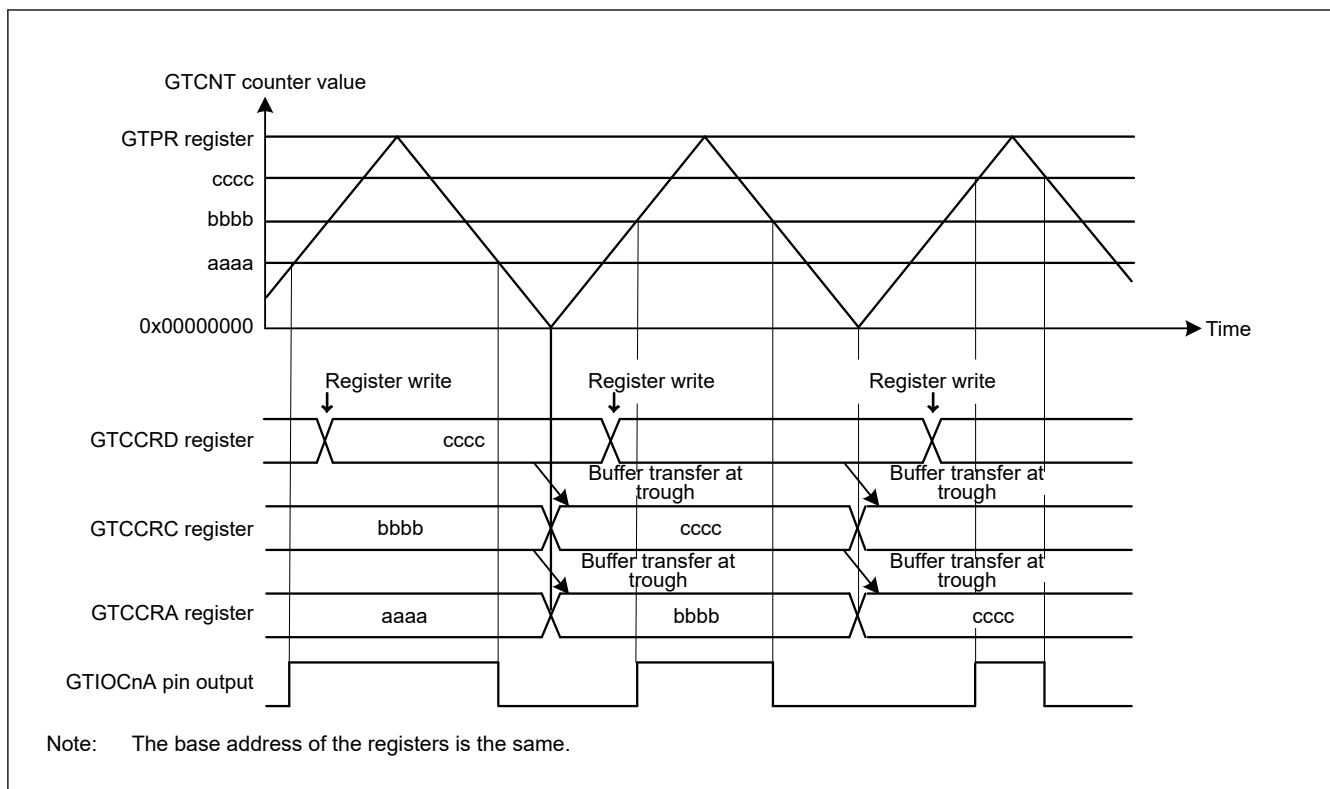


Figure 20.15 Example of GTCCRA and GTCCRB double buffer operation with output compare, triangle waves, buffer operation at trough, output toggled at GTCCRA compare match, and output retained at cycle end

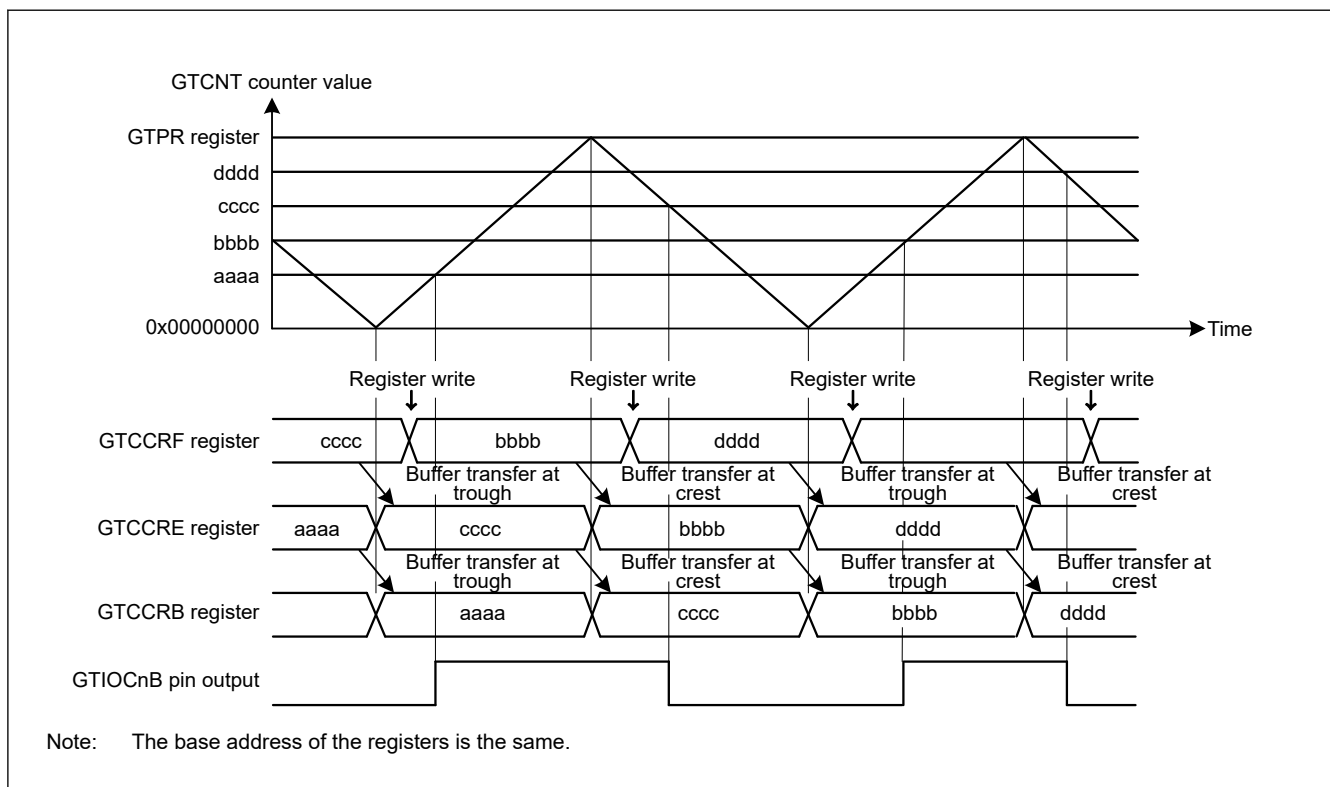


Figure 20.16 Example of GTCCRA and GTCCRB double buffer operation with output compare, triangle waves, buffer operation at both troughs and crests, output toggled at GTCCRB compare match, and output retained at cycle end

Table 20.13 Example for setting GTCCRA and GTCCRB buffer operation for output compare

No.	Step name	Description
1	Set operating mode	Set the operating mode with the GTCR.MD[2:0] bits. In Figure 20.14 , 000b (saw-wave PWM mode) is set, in Figure 20.15 , 100b (triangle-wave PWM mode 1) is set, and in Figure 20.16 , 101b (triangle-wave PWM mode 2) is set.
2	Set count direction	Select the count direction (up or down) with the GTUDDTYC register. In Figure 20.14 , after 11b is set in the GTUDDTYC[1:0] bits, 01b is set in the GTUDDTYC[1:0] bits (up-counting).
3	Select count clock	Select the count clock with the GTCR.TPCS[2:0] bits.
4	Set cycle	Set the cycle in the GTPR register.
5	Set initial value for the counter	Set the initial value in the GTCNT counter.
6	Set GTIOCNm pin function	Set the GTIOCNm pin function with the GTIOA[4:0] and GTIOB[4:0] bits in the GTIOR register. In Figure 20.14 , GTIOA[4:0] = 00110b, in Figure 20.15 , GTIOA[4:0] = 00011b, and in Figure 20.16 , GTIOB[4:0] = 00011b.
7	Enable GTIOCNm pin output	Set to enable the GTIOCNm pin output with the OAE and OBE bits in the GTIOR register.
8	Set buffer operation	Set buffer operation with the CCRA[1:0] and CCRB[1:0] bits in the GTCR register. In Figure 20.14 , CCRA[1:0] = 01b, in Figure 20.15 , CCRA[1:0] = 1xb, and in Figure 20.16 , CCRB [1:0] = 1xb.
9	Set compare match value	Set the GTIOCNm pin transition in the GTCCRA register and the GTIOCNm pin transition in the GTCCRB register.
10	Set buffer value	For buffer operation, set the GTIOCNm and GTIOCNm pins transitions in 1 cycle after the current cycle (in saw-wave mode or triangle-wave mode with buffer transfer at trough or crest) or half a cycle after the current cycle (in triangle-wave mode with buffer transfer at both trough and crest) in the GTCCRC and GTCCRE registers, respectively. For double buffer operation, also set the GTIOCNm and GTIOCNm pins transitions in 2 cycles after the current cycle (in saw-wave mode or triangle-wave mode with buffer transfer at trough or crest) or 1 cycle after the current cycle (in triangle-wave mode with buffer transfer at both trough and crest) in the GTCCRD and GTCCRF registers, respectively.
11	Start count operation	Set the GTCR.CST bit to 1 to start count operation.
12	Set buffer value for each cycle	For buffer operation, set the GTIOCNm and GTIOCNm pins transitions in 1 cycle after the current cycle (in saw-wave mode or triangle-wave mode with buffer transfer at trough or crest) or half a cycle after the current cycle (in triangle-wave mode with buffer transfer at both trough and crest) in the GTCCRC and GTCCRE registers, respectively. For double buffer operation, also set the GTIOCNm and GTIOCNm pins transitions in 2 cycles after the current cycle (in saw-wave mode or triangle-wave mode with buffer transfer at trough or crest) or 1 cycle after the current cycle (in triangle-wave mode with buffer transfer at both trough and crest) in the GTCCRD and GTCCRF registers, respectively.

Note: n: 0, 4 to 9
m: A, B

(2) When GTCCRA or GTCCRB functions as input capture register

When an input capture is generated, the GTCNT counter value is transferred to GTCCRA and GTCCRB and the stored GTCCRA and GTCCRB register values are transferred to the buffer registers. In input capture operation, the buffer transfer is not performed by the counter clear.

[Figure 20.17](#) and [Figure 20.18](#) show examples of GTCCRA and GTCCRB buffer operation and [Table 20.14](#) shows an example for setting GTCCRA and GTCCRB buffer operation.

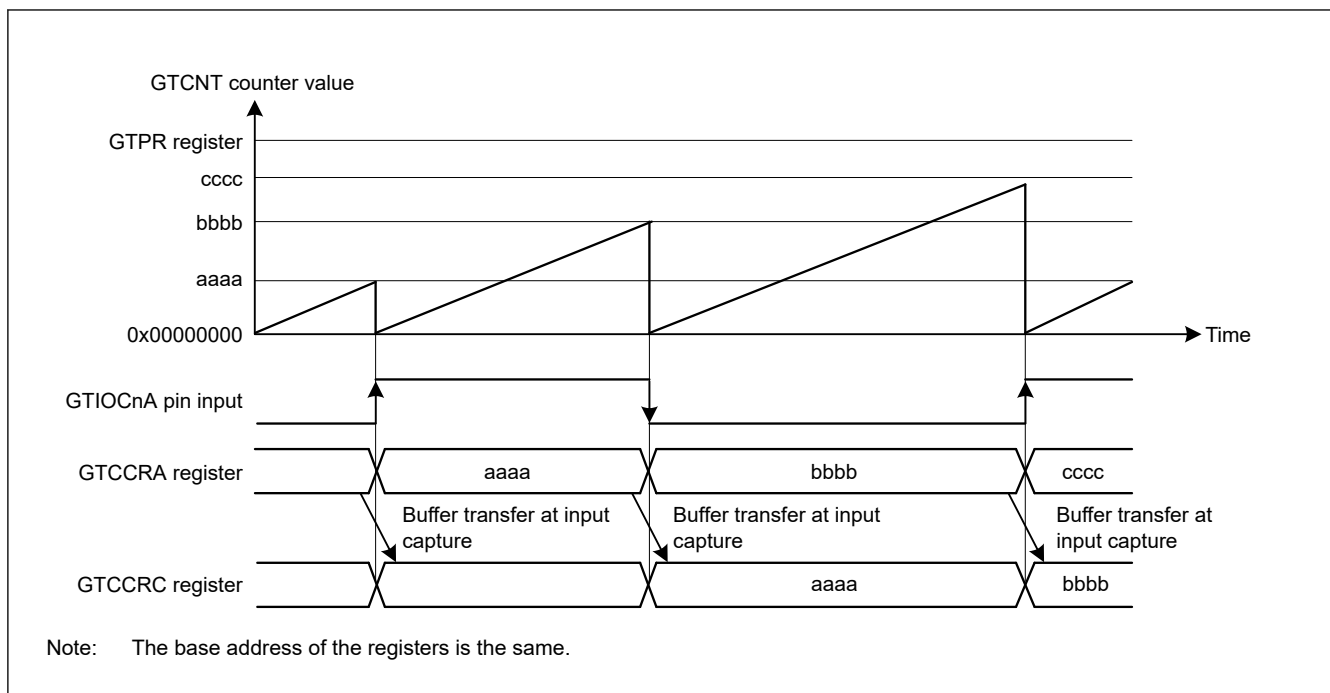


Figure 20.17 Example of GTCCRA and GTCCRB buffer operation with input capture at both edges of GTIOCN_A input, saw waves in up-counting, and GTCNT counter cleared at both edges of GTIOCN_A input

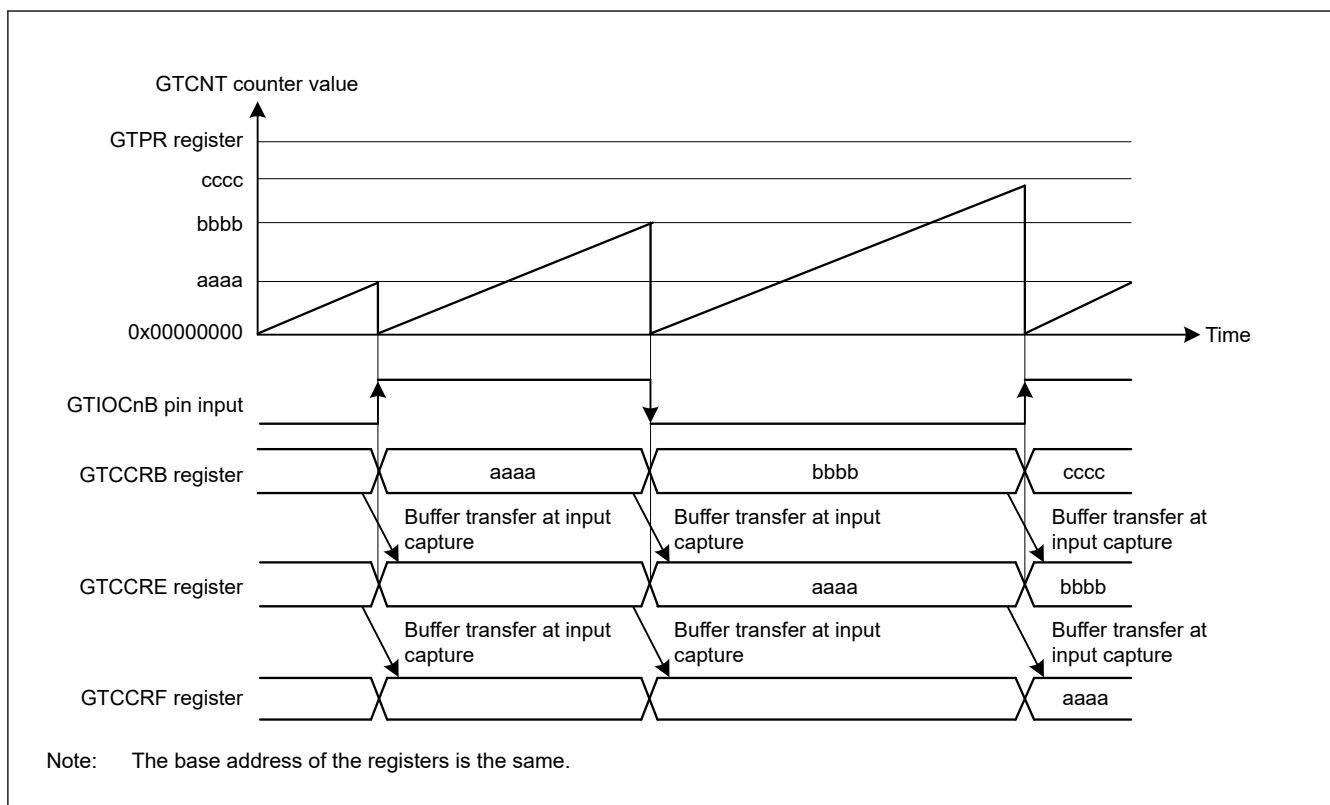


Figure 20.18 Example of GTCCRA and GTCCRB double buffer operation with input capture at both edges of GTIOCNB input, saw waves in up-counting, and GTCNT counter cleared at both edges of GTIOCNB input

Table 20.14 Example for setting GTCCRA and GTCCRB buffer operation for input capture

No.	Step name	Description
1	Set operating mode and counter clear sources	Set the operating mode with the GTCR.MD[2:0] bits and count clear source with the GTCSCR register. In Figure 20.17 , MD[2:0] = 000b (saw-wave PWM mode) and GTCSCR = 0x00000F00, and in Figure 20.18 , MD[2:0] = 000b (saw-wave PWM mode) and GTCSCR = 0x0000F000.
2	Set count direction	Select the count direction (up or down) with the GTUDDTYC register. In Figure 20.17 , after 11b is set in the GTUDDTYC[1:0] bits, 01b is set in the GTUDDTYC[1:0] bits (up-counting).
3	Select count clock	Select the count clock with the GTCR.TPCS[2:0] bits.
4	Set cycle	Set the cycle in the GTPR register.
5	Set initial value for the counter	Set the initial value in the GTCNT counter.
6	Select input capture source	Select the input capture source in the GTICASR register and GTICBSR register. In Figure 20.17 , GTICASR = 0x00000F00, and in Figure 20.18 , GTICBSR = 0x0000F000.
7	Set buffer operation	Set buffer operation with the CCRA and CCRB bits in the GTBER register. In Figure 20.17 , CCRA[1:0] = 01b, and in Figure 20.18 , CCRB[1:0] = 1xb.
8	Start count operation	Set the GTCR.CST bit to 1 to start count operation.

20.3.3 PWM Output Operating Mode

The GPT can output PWM waveforms to the GTIOCnA or GTIOCnB pin (n = 0, 4 to 9) by a compare match between the GTCNT counter and GTCCRA or GTCCRB.

By setting GTDTCR and GTDVU, the compare match value for a negative-phase waveform with dead time can automatically be set to GTCCRB.

20.3.3.1 Saw-Wave PWM Mode

In saw-wave PWM mode, GTCNT performs a saw-wave (half-wave) operation by setting the cycle in GTPR and a PWM waveform is output to the GTIOCnA or GTIOCnB pin (n = 0, 4 to 9) when a GTCCRA or GTCCRB compare match occurs. The pin output value can be selected from low output, high output, or toggle output separately for a compare match and for the cycle end according to the GTIOR setting.

[Figure 20.19](#) shows an example of saw-wave PWM mode operation, and [Table 20.15](#) shows an example for setting saw-wave PWM mode.

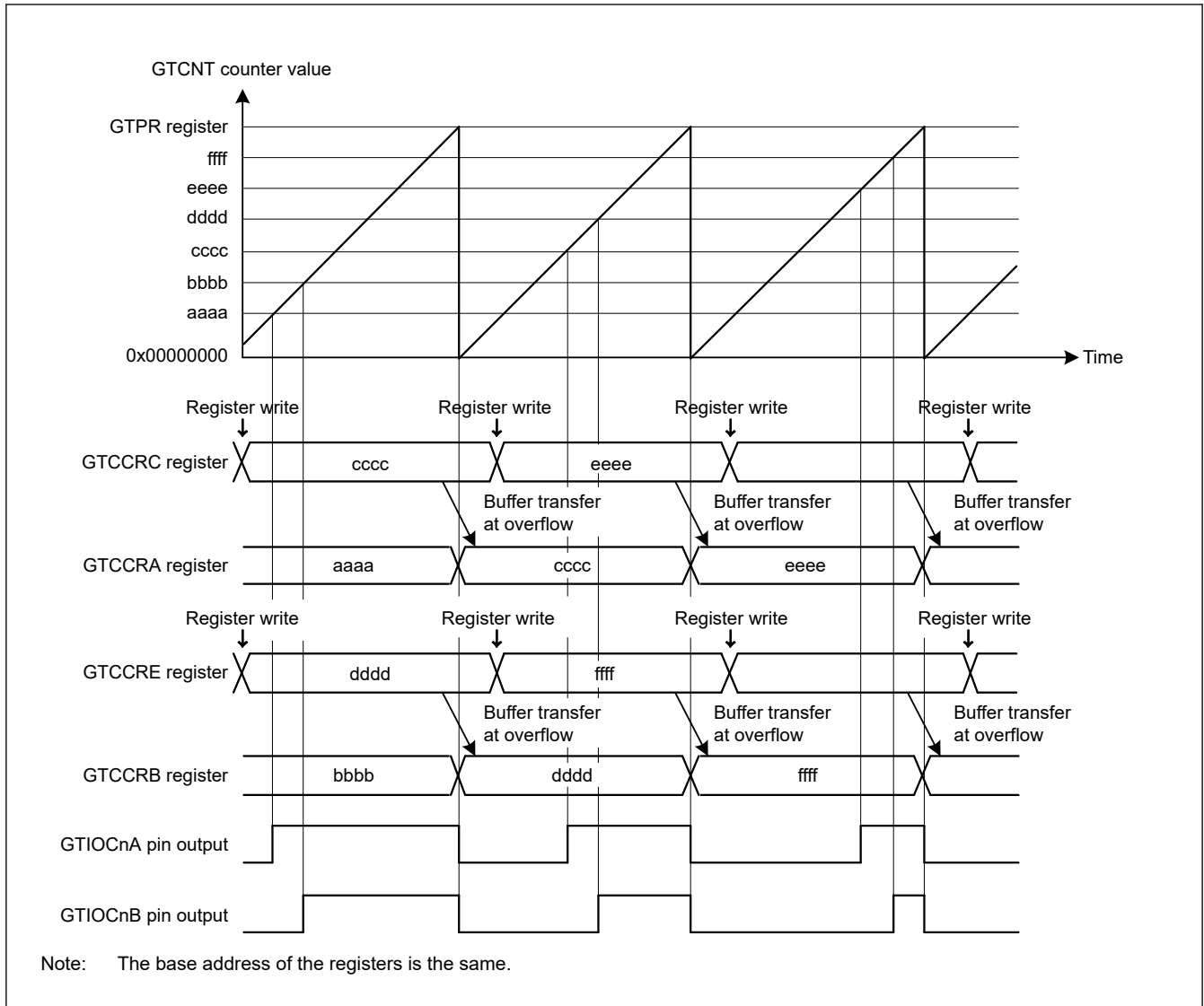


Figure 20.19 Example of saw-wave PWM mode operation with up-counting, buffer operation, high output at GTCCRA/GTCCRB compare match, and low output at cycle end

Table 20.15 Example for setting saw-wave PWM mode (1 of 2)

No.	Step name	Description
1	Set operating mode	Set the operating mode with the GTCR.MD[2:0] bits. In Figure 20.19, 000b (saw-wave PWM mode) is set.
2	Set count direction	Select the count direction (up or down) with the GTUDDTYC register. In Figure 20.19, after 11b is set in the GTUDDTYC[1:0] bits, 01b is set in the GTUDDTYC[1:0] bits (up-counting).
3	Select count clock	Select the count clock with the GTCR.TPCS[2:0] bits.
4	Set cycle	Set the cycle in the GTPR register.
5	Set initial value for the counter	Set the initial value in the GTCNT counter.
6	Set GTIOcNm pin function	Set the GTIOcNm pin function with the GTIOA[4:0] and GTIOB[4:0] bits in the GTIOR register. In Figure 20.19, GTIOA[4:0] = 00110b and GTIOB[4:0] = 00110b.
7	Enable GTIOcNm pin output	Set to enable the GTIOcNm pin output with the OAE and OBE bits in the GTIOR register.
8	Set buffer operation	Set buffer operation with the CCRA[1:0] and CCRB[1:0] bits in the GTBER register. In Figure 20.19, CCRA[1:0] = 01b and CCRB[1:0] = 01b.
9	Set compare match value	Set the GTIOcNA pin transition in the GTCCRA register and the GTIOcNB pin transition in the GTCCRB register.

Table 20.15 Example for setting saw-wave PWM mode (2 of 2)

No.	Step name	Description
10	Set buffer value	For buffer operation, set the GTIOCnA and GTIOCnB pins transitions in 1 cycle after the current cycle in the GTCCRC and GTCCRE registers, respectively. For double buffer operation, also set the GTIOCnA and GTIOCnB pins transitions in 2 cycles after the current cycle in the GTCCRD and GTCCRF registers, respectively.
11	Start count operation	Set the GTCR.CST bit to 1 to start count operation.
12	Set buffer value for each cycle	For buffer operation, set the GTIOCnA and GTIOCnB pins transitions in 1 cycle after the current cycle in the GTCCRC and GTCCRE registers, respectively. For double buffer operation, also set the GTIOCnA and GTIOCnB pins transitions in 2 cycles after the current cycle in the GTCCRD and GTCCRF registers, respectively.

Note: n: 0, 4 to 9
m: A, B

20.3.3.2 Saw-Wave One-Shot Pulse Mode

The saw-wave one-shot pulse mode is a mode in which the cycle is set in GTPR, the GTCNT counter performs saw-wave (half-wave) operation and a PWM waveform is output to the GTIOCnA or GTIOCnB pin (n = 0, 4 to 9) at a compare match of GTCCRA or GTCCRB with buffer operation fixed.

Buffer operation in saw-wave one-shot pulse mode is different from the usual buffer operation. Buffer transfer is performed from:

- GTCCRC to GTCCRA at the cycle end
- GTCCRE to GTCCRB at the cycle end
- GTCCRD to temporary register A at the cycle end
- GTCCRF to temporary register B at the cycle end
- Temporary register A to GTCCRA at a GTCCRA compare match
- Temporary register B to GTCCRB at a GTCCRB compare match.

The pin output value can be selected from low output, high output, or toggled output separately for a compare match and the cycle end according to the GTIOR setting. When the GTBER.CCRSWT bit is set to 1 while count operation is stopped, the buffer is transferred forcibly from the GTCCRD register to temporary register A and from the GTCCRF register to temporary register B. By setting GTDTCR, GTDVU, a compare match value for a negative-phase waveform with dead time can automatically be set to GTCCRB.

Figure 20.20 shows an example of saw-wave one-shot pulse mode operation, and Table 20.16 shows an example for setting saw-wave one-shot pulse mode.

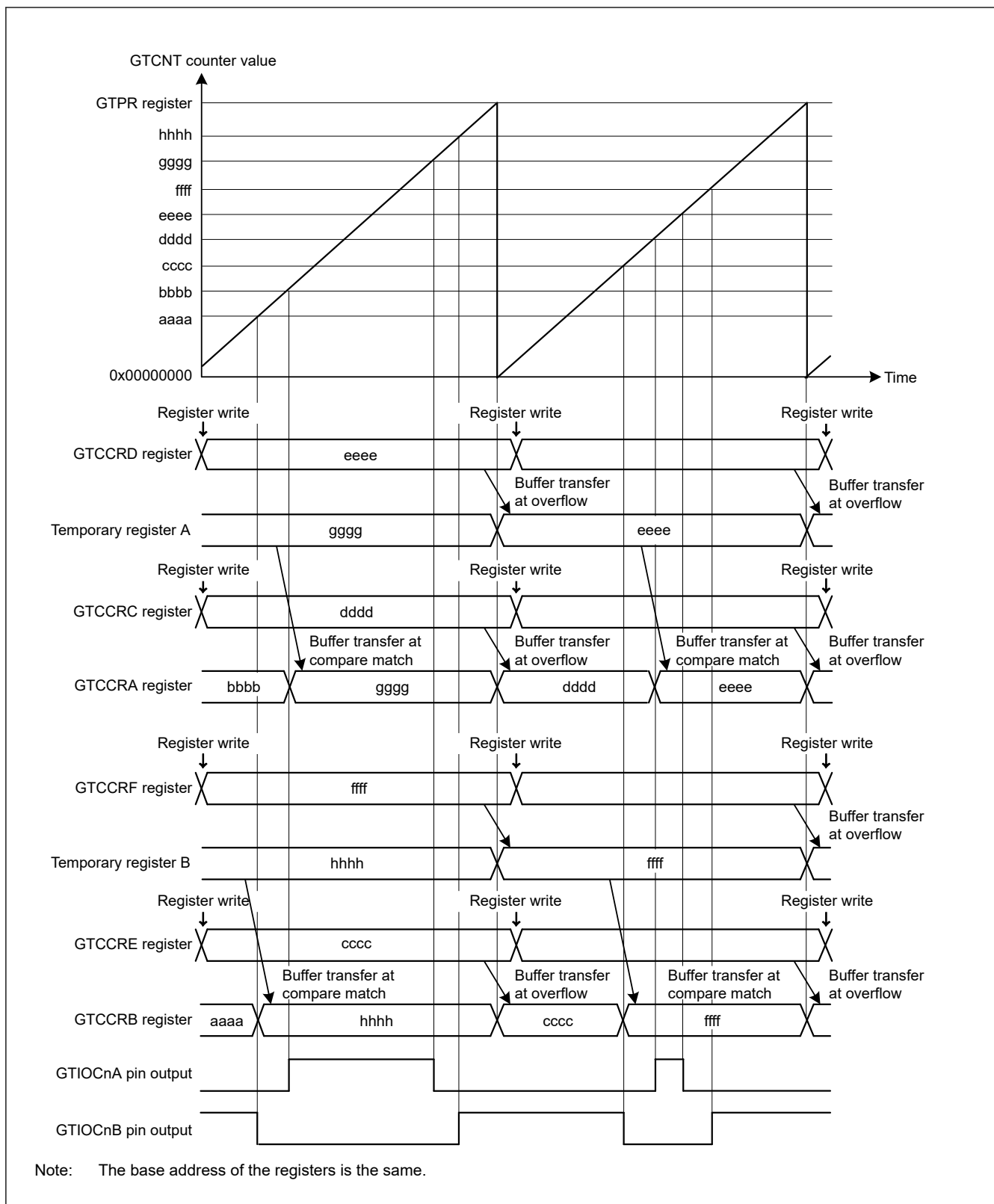


Figure 20.20 Example of saw-wave one-shot pulse mode operation with up-counting, low output from the GTIOCnA pin and high output from the GTIOCnB pin at count start, output toggled at GTCCRA/ GTCCRB compare match, and output retained at cycle end

Table 20.16 Example setting for saw-wave one-shot pulse mode

No.	Step name	Description
1	Set operating mode	Set the operating mode with the GTCR.MD[2:0] bits. In Figure 20.20 , 001b (saw-wave one-shot pulse mode) is set.
2	Set count direction	Select the count direction (up or down) with the GTUDDTYC register. In Figure 20.20 , after 11b is set in the GTUDDTYC[1:0] bits, 01b is set in the GTUDDTYC[1:0] bits (up-counting).
3	Select count clock	Select the count clock with the GTCR.TPCS[2:0] bits.
4	Set cycle	Set the cycle in the GTPR register.
5	Set initial value for the counter	Set the initial value in the GTCNT counter.
6	Set GTIOCNm pin function	Set the GTIOCNm pin function with the GTIOA[4:0] and GTIOB[4:0] bits in the GTIOR register. In Figure 20.20 , GTIOA[4:0] = 00011b and GTIOB[4:0] = 10011b.
7	Enable GTIOCNm pin output	Set to enable the GTIOCNm pin output with the OAE and OBE bits in the GTIOR register.
8	Set compare match value	Set the GTIOCNm pin transition immediately after the count start in the GTCCRC and GTCCRD registers and the GTIOCNB pin transition in the GTCCRE and GTCCRF registers.
9	Set forcible buffer transfer	Set the GTBER.CCRSWT bit to 1 to transfer buffer register data forcibly.
10	Set buffer value	For buffer operation, set the GTIOCNm pin transition in one cycle after the current cycle in the GTCCRC and GTCCRD registers and the GTIOCNB pin transition in the GTCCRE and GTCCRF registers.
11	Start count operation	Set the GTCR.CST bit to 1 to start count operation.
12	Set the buffer value for each cycle	For buffer operation, set the GTIOCNm pin transition in one cycle after the current cycle in the GTCCRC and GTCCRD registers and the GTIOCNB pin transition in the GTCCRE and GTCCRF registers.

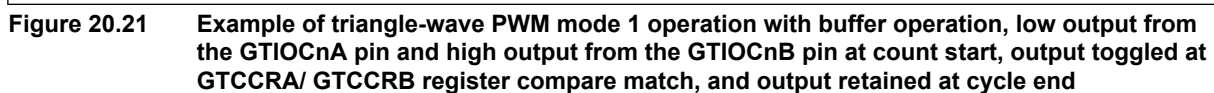
Note: n: 0, 4 to 9
m: A, B

20.3.3.3 Triangle-wave PWM Mode 1 (32-bit Transfer at Trough)

The triangle-wave PWM mode 1 is a mode in which the cycle is set in GTPR. The GTCNT counter performs triangle-wave (full-wave) operation, and a PWM waveform is output to the GTIOCNm or GTIOCNB pin (n = 0, 4 to 9) when a GTCCRA or GTCCRB compare match occurs. Buffer transfer is performed at the trough. The pin output value can be selected from low output, high output, or toggled output separately for a compare match and for the cycle end according to the GTIOR setting.

By setting GTDTCR, GTDVU, a compare match value for a negative-phase waveform with dead time can automatically be set to GTCCRB.

[Figure 20.21](#) shows an example of a triangle-wave PWM mode 1 operation, and [Table 20.17](#) shows an example for setting a triangle-wave PWM mode 1.



No.	Step name	Description
1	Set operating mode	Set the operating mode with the GTCR.MD[2:0] bits. In Figure 20.21 , 100b (triangle-wave PWM mode 1) is set.
2	Select count clock	Select the count clock with the GTCR.TPCS[2:0] bits.
3	Set cycle	Set the cycle in the GTPR register.
4	Set initial value for the counter	Set the initial value in the GTCNT counter.
5	Set GTIOCNm pin function	Set the GTIOCNm pin function with the GTIOA[4:0] and GTIOB[4:0] bits in the GTIOR register. In Figure 20.21 , GTIOA[4:0] = 00011b and GTIOB[4:0] = 10011b.
6	Enable GTIOCNm pin output	Set to enable the GTIOCNm pin output with the OAE and OBE bits in the GTIOR register.
7	Set buffer operation	Set buffer operation with the CCRA[1:0] and CCRB[1:0] bits in the GTBER register. In Figure 20.21 , CCRA[1:0] = 01b and CCRB[1:0] = 01b.
8	Set compare match value	Set the GTIOCNa and GTIOCNb pins transitions in the GTCCRA and GTCCRB registers, respectively.
9	Set buffer value	For buffer operation, set the GTIOCNa and GTIOCNb pins transitions in 1 cycle after the current cycle in the GTCCRC and GTCCRE registers, respectively. For double buffer operation, also set the GTIOCNa and GTIOCNb pins transitions in 2 cycles after the current cycle in the GTCCRD and GTCCRF registers, respectively.

Table 20.17 Example setting for triangle-wave PWM mode 1 (2 of 2)

No.	Step name	Description
10	Start count operation	Set the GTCR.CST bit to 1 to start count operation.
11	Set buffer value for each cycle	For buffer operation, set the GTIOCN _A and GTIOCN _B pins transitions in 1 cycle after the current cycle in the GTCCRC and GTCCRE registers, respectively. For double buffer operation, also set the GTIOCN _A and GTIOCN _B pins transitions in 2 cycles after the current cycle in the GTCCRD and GTCCRF registers, respectively.

Note: n: 0, 4 to 9
m: A, B

20.3.3.4 Triangle-wave PWM Mode 2 (32-bit Transfer at Crest and Trough)

Similarly to triangle-wave PWM mode 1, in triangle-wave PWM mode 2 the cycle is set in GTPR. The GTCNT counter performs triangle-wave (full-wave) operation, and a PWM waveform is output to the GTIOCN_A or GTIOCN_B pin (n = 0, 4 to 9) when a GTCCRA or GTCCRB compare match occurs. The buffer transfer is performed at both crests and troughs. The pin output value can be selected from low output, high output, or toggle output separately for a compare match and for the cycle end according to the GTIOR setting.

By setting GTDTCR, GTDVU, a compare match value for a negative-phase waveform with dead time can automatically be set to GTCCRB.

[Figure 20.22](#) shows an example of triangle-wave PWM mode 2 operation, and [Table 20.18](#) shows an example for setting triangle-wave PWM mode 2.

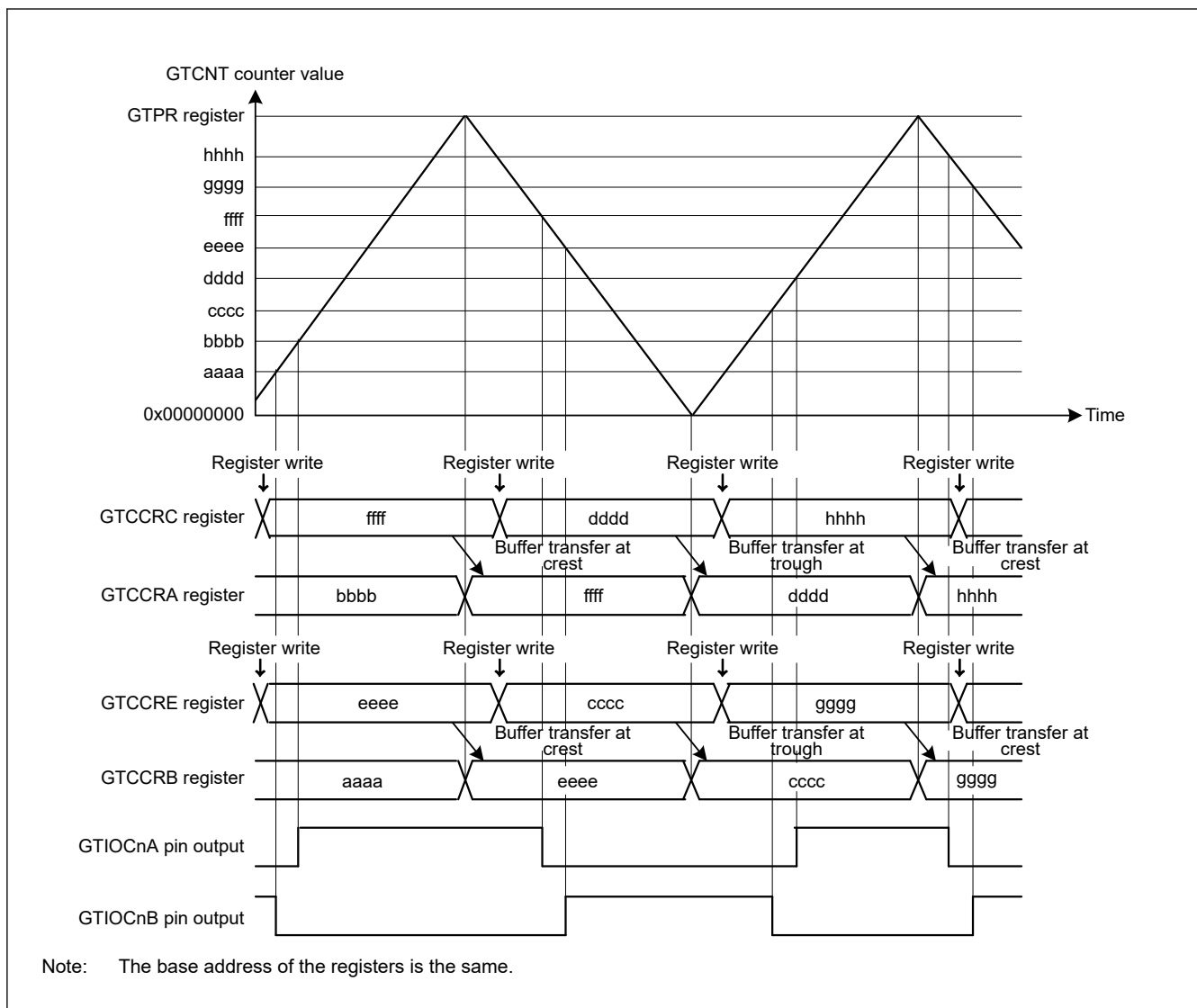


Figure 20.22 Example of triangle-wave PWM mode 2 operation with buffer operation, low output from the GTIOcNA pin and high output from the GTIOcNB pin at count start, output toggled at GTCCRA/ GTCCRB compare match, and output retained at cycle end

Table 20.18 Example for setting triangle-wave PWM mode 2 (1 of 2)

No.	Step name	Description
1	Set operating mode	Set the operating mode with the GTCR.MD[2:0] bits. In Figure 20.22 , 101b (triangle-wave PWM mode 2) is set.
2	Select count clock	Select the count clock with the GTCR.TPCS[2:0] bits.
3	Set cycle	Set the cycle in the GTPR register.
4	Set initial value for the counter	Set the initial value in the GTCNT counter.
5	Set GTIOcNm pin function	Set the GTIOcNm pin function with the GTIOA[4:0] and GTIOB[4:0] bits in the GTIOR register. In Figure 20.22 , GTIOA[4:0] = 00011b and GTIOB[4:0] = 10011b.
6	Enable GTIOcNm pin output	Set to enable the GTIOcNm pin output with the OAE and OBE bits in the GTIOR register.
7	Set buffer operation	Set buffer operation with the CCRA[1:0] and CCRB[1:0] bits in the GTBER register. In Figure 20.22 , CCRA[1:0] = 01b and CCRB[1:0] = 01b.
8	Set compare match value	Set the GTIOcNA and GTIOcNB pins transitions in the GTCCRA and GTCCRB registers, respectively.

Table 20.18 Example for setting triangle-wave PWM mode 2 (2 of 2)

No.	Step name	Description
9	Set buffer value	For buffer operation, set the GTIOCnA and GTIOCnB pins transitions in half cycle after the current cycle in the GTCCRC and GTCCRE registers, respectively. For double buffer operation, also set the GTIOCnA and GTIOCnB pins transitions in 1 cycle after the current cycle in the GTCCRD and GTCCRF registers, respectively.
10	Start count operation	Set the GTCR.CST bit to 1 to start count operation.
11	Set buffer value for each half cycle	For buffer operation, set the GTIOCnA and GTIOCnB pins transitions in half cycle after the current cycle in the GTCCRC and GTCCRE registers, respectively. For double buffer operation, also set the GTIOCnA and GTIOCnB pins transitions in 1 cycle after the current cycle in GTCCRD and GTCCRF registers, respectively.

Note: n: 0, 4 to 9
m: A, B

20.3.3.5 Triangle-wave PWM Mode 3 (64-bit Transfer at Trough)

The triangle-wave PWM mode 3 is a mode in which the cycle is set in GTPR. The GTCNT counter performs triangle-wave (full-wave) operation and a PWM waveform is output to the GTIOCnA or GTIOCnB pin (n = 0, 4 to 9) at a compare match of GTCCRA or GTCCRB with buffer operation fixed. Buffer operation in triangle-wave PWM mode 3 is different from the usual buffer operation. Buffer transfer is performed from the following:

- GTCCRC to GTCCRA at the trough
- GTCCRE to GTCCRB at the trough
- GTCCRD to temporary register A at the trough
- GTCCRF to temporary register B at the trough
- Temporary register A to GTCCRA at the crest
- Temporary register B to GTCCRB at the crest.

The pin output value can be selected from low output, high output, or toggled output separately for a compare match and for the cycle end according to the GTIOR setting.

By setting GTDTCR, GTDVU, a compare match value for a negative-phase waveform with dead time can automatically be set to GTCCRB.

Figure 20.23 shows an example of triangle-wave PWM mode 3 operation, and Table 20.19 shows an example for setting triangle-wave PWM mode 3.

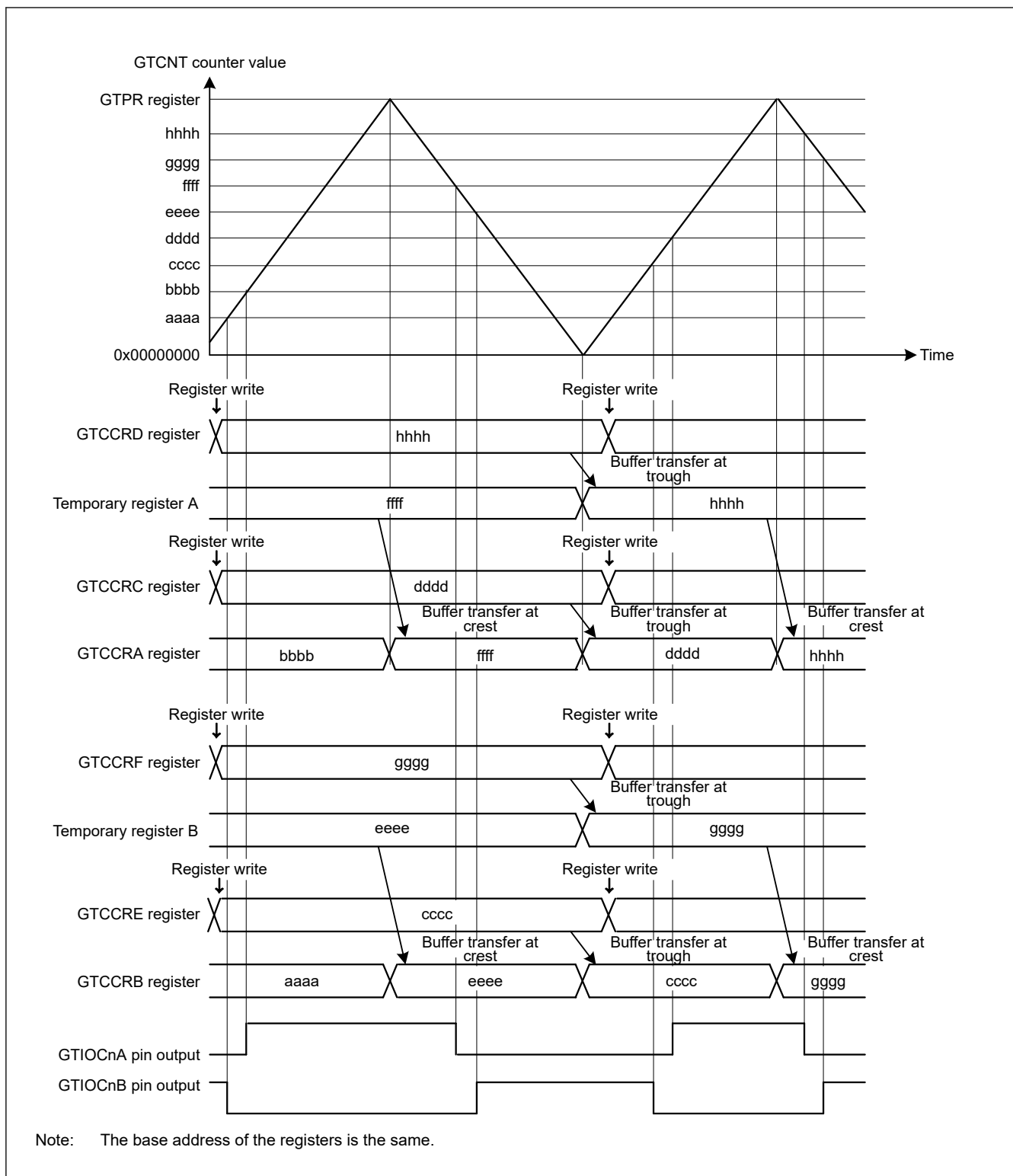


Figure 20.23 Example of triangle-wave PWM mode 3 operation with low output from the GTIOCnA pin and high output from the GTIOCnB pin at count start, output toggled at GTCCRA/GTCCRB compare match, and output retained at cycle end

Table 20.19 Example setting for triangle-wave PWM mode 3 (1 of 2)

No.	Step name	Description
1	Set operating mode	Set the operating mode with the GTCR.MD[2:0] bits. In Figure 20.23 , 110b (triangle-wave PWM mode 3) is set.
2	Select count clock	Select the count clock with the GTCR.TPCS[2:0] bits.

Table 20.19 Example setting for triangle-wave PWM mode 3 (2 of 2)

No.	Step name	Description
3	Set cycle	Set the cycle in the GTPR register.
4	Set initial value for the counter	Set the initial value in the GTCNT counter.
5	Set GTIOCNm pin function	Set the GTIOCNm pin function with the GTIOA[4:0] and GTIOB[4:0] bits in the GTIOR register. In Figure 20.23 , GTIOA[4:0] = 00011b and GTIOB[4:0] = 10011b.
6	Enable GTIOCNm pin output	Set to enable the GTIOCNm pin output with the OAE and OBE bits in the GTIOR register.
7	Set compare match value	Set the GTIOCNm pin transition immediately after the count start in the GTCCRC and GTCCRD registers and the GTIOCNB pin transition in the GTCCRE and GTCCRF registers.
8	Set forcible buffer transfer	Set the GTBER.CCRSWT bit to 1 to transfer buffer register data forcibly.
9	Set buffer value	Set the GTIOCNm pin transition in 1 cycle after the current cycle in the GTCCRC and GTCCRD registers and the GTIOCNB pin transition in the GTCCRE and GTCCRF registers.
10	Start count operation	Set the GTCR.CST bit to 1 to start count operation.
11	Set buffer value for each cycle	Set the GTIOCNm pin transition in 1 cycle after the current cycle in the GTCCRC and GTCCRD registers and the GTIOCNB pin transition in the GTCCRE and GTCCRF registers.

Note: n: 0, 4 to 9
m: A, B

20.3.4 Automatic Dead Time Setting Function

By setting GTDTCR, a compare match value for a negative waveform with dead time obtained by a compare match value for a positive waveform (GTCCRA value) and specified dead time value (GTDVU value) can automatically be set to GTCCRB. The automatic dead time setting function can be used in saw-wave one-shot pulse mode and all the triangle PWM modes.

Writing to GTCCRB is prohibited when the automatic dead time setting function is used. Dead time setting beyond the cycle is also prohibited. Values for automatic dead time setting can be read from GTCCRB. The automatic dead time value setting to GTCCRB is performed at the next clock cycle count when registers that are used for calculating the automatic dead time value are updated.

When a dead time error occurs, the compare match values for positive and negative waveforms are adjusted to generate the waveforms with the dead time as shown in [Table 20.20](#).

The adjusted value for the negative waveform is set for GTCCRB automatically.

The adjusted value for the positive waveform is used as an internal signal and not set for GTCCRA.

Table 20.20 Adjustment of the waveform change point when a dead-time error occurs

Mode	Count direction	Period	Condition for dead time error	Change point of the positive-phase waveform after adjustment	Change point of the negative-phase waveform after adjustment
Sawtooth-wave one-shot pulse mode	Up-counting	First half	$GTCCRA - GTDVU < 0$	GTDVU	0
		Second half	$GTCCRA + GTDVU > GTPR$	$GTPR - GTDVU$	GTPR
	Down-counting	First half	$GTCCRA + GTDVU > GTPR$	$GTPR - GTDVU$	GTPR
		Second half	$GTCCRA - GTDVU < 0$	GTDVU	0
Triangle-wave PWM mode 1/2/3	Up-counting	(First half)	$GTCCRA - GTDVU \leq 0$	$GTDVU + 1$	1
	Down-counting	(Second half)	$GTCCRA - GTDVU < 0$	GTDVU	0

[Figure 20.24](#) to [Figure 20.27](#) show examples of automatic dead time setting function operation. [Table 20.21](#) and [Table 20.22](#) show the setting examples.

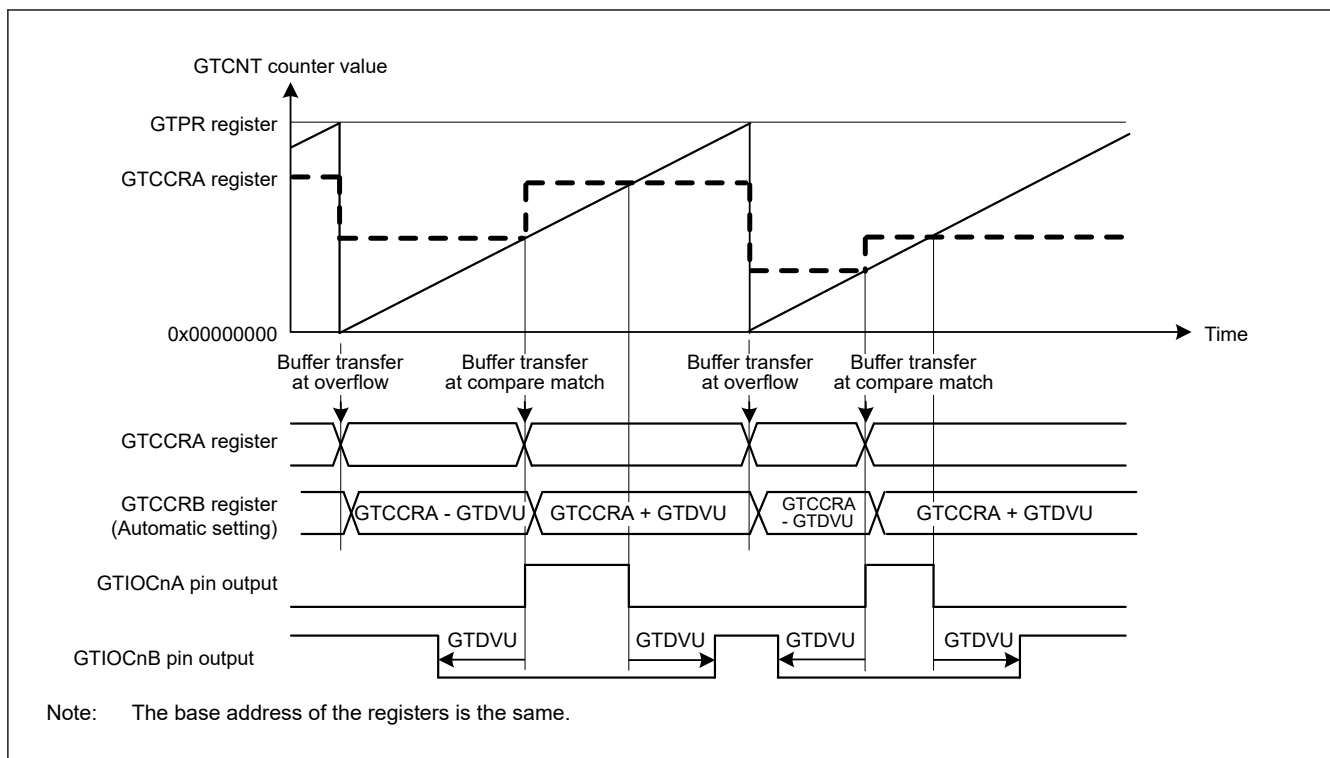


Figure 20.24 Example of automatic dead time setting function operation in saw-wave one-shot pulse mode, up-counting, and active-high

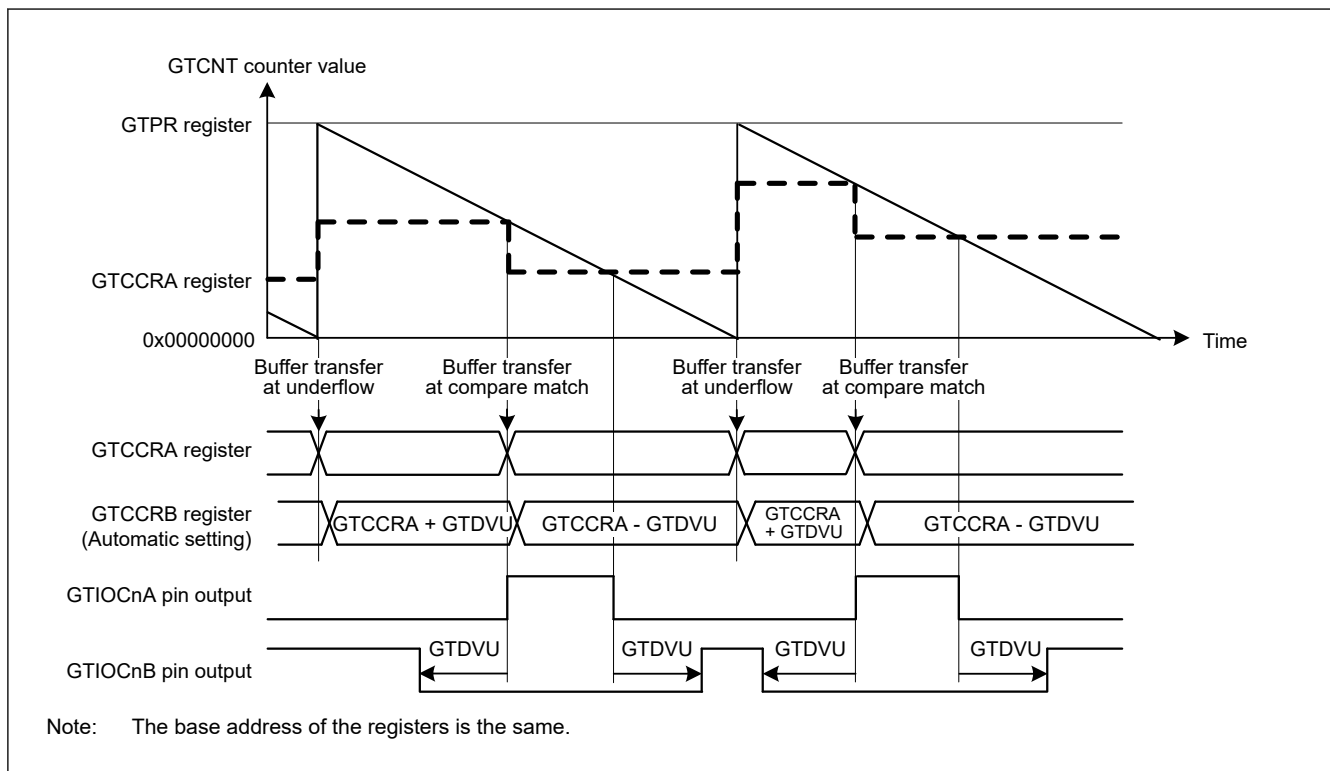


Figure 20.25 Example of automatic dead time setting function operation in saw-wave one-shot pulse mode, down-counting, and active-high

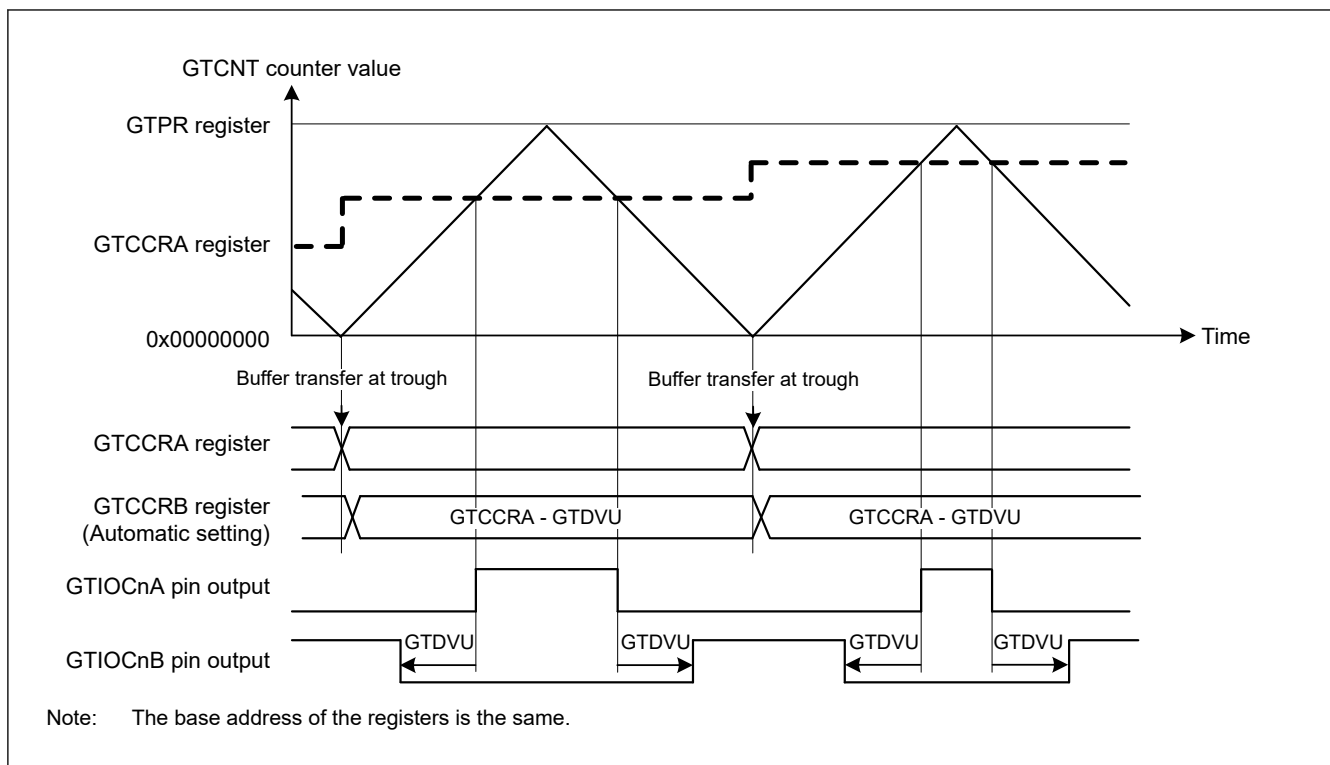


Figure 20.26 Example of automatic compare-match value setting function with dead time in triangle-wave PWM mode 1, and active-high

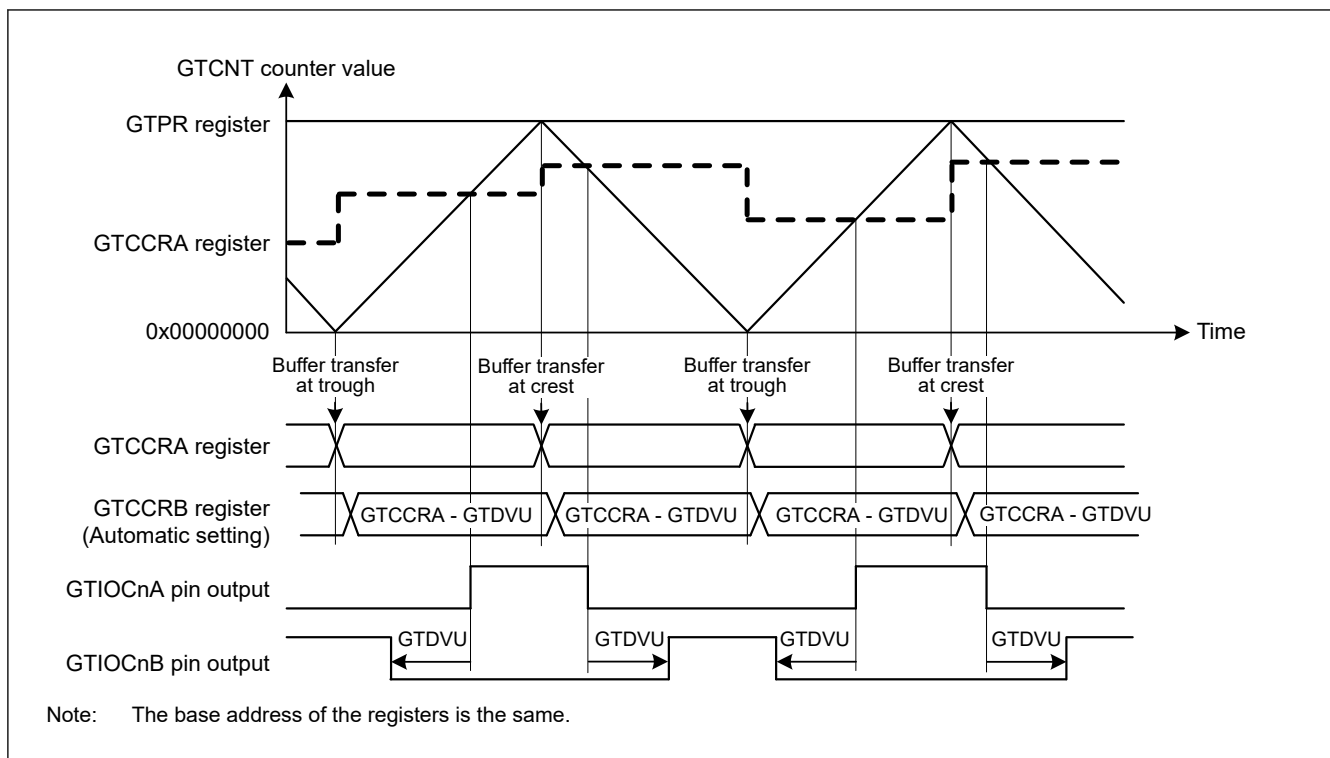


Figure 20.27 Example of automatic compare-match value setting function with dead time in triangle-wave PWM mode 2 or 3, and active-high

Table 20.21 Example setting for automatic dead time setting function in saw-wave one-shot pulse mode, and triangle-wave PWM mode 3

No.	Step name	Description
1	Set operating mode	Set the operating mode with the GTCR.MD[2:0] bits. In Figure 20.24 and Figure 20.25 , 001b (saw-wave one-shot pulse mode) is set. In Figure 20.27 , 110b (triangle-wave PWM mode 3) is set.
2	Set count direction	Select the count direction (up or down) with the GTUDDTYC register. In Figure 20.24 , 01b is set after 11b is set in the GTUDDTYC[1:0] bits (up count). In Figure 20.25 , 00b is set after 10b is set in the GTUDDTYC[1:0] bits (down count).
3	Select count clock	Select the count clock with the GTCR.TPCS[2:0] bits.
4	Set cycle	Set the cycle in the GTPR register.
5	Set initial value for the counter	Set the initial value in the GTCNT counter.
6	Set GTIOCNm pin function	Set the GTIOCNm pin function with the GTIOA[4:0] and GTIOB[4:0] bits in the GTIOR register. In Figure 20.24 , Figure 20.25 , and Figure 20.27 , GTIOA[4:0] = 00011b and GTIOB[4:0] = 10011b.
7	Enable GTIOCNm pin output	Set to enable the GTIOCNm pin output with the OAE and OBE bits in the GTIOR register.
8	Set buffer value for compare match	Set the GTIOCNm pin transition immediately after the count start in the GTCCRC and GTCCRD registers.
9	Set forcible buffer transfer for compare match	Set the GTBER.CCRSWT bit to 1 to transfer buffer register data forcibly to the GTCCRA register.
10	Set buffer value for compare match	Set the GTIOCNm pin transition in 1 cycle after the current cycle in the GTCCRC and GTCCRD registers.
11	Set automatic dead time setting function	Set the GTDTCR.TDE bit to 1 to enable the automatic dead time setting function.
12	Set dead time value	Set the dead time value in the GTDVU register.
13	Start count operation	Set the GTCR.CST bit to 1 to start count operation.
14	Set buffer value for each cycle	For buffer operation, set the GTIOCNm pin transition in 1 cycle after the current cycle in the GTCCRC and GTCCRD registers.

Note: n: 0, 4 to 9
m: A, B

Table 20.22 Example setting for automatic dead time setting function in triangle-wave PWM mode 1 or 2 (1 of 2)

No.	Step name	Description
1	Set operating mode	Set the operating mode with the GTCR.MD[2:0] bits. In Figure 20.26 , 100b (triangle-wave PWM mode 1) is set. In Figure 20.27 , 101b (triangle-wave PWM mode 2) is set.
2	Select count clock	Select the count clock with the GTCR.TPCS[2:0] bits.
3	Set cycle	Set the cycle in the GTPR register.
4	Set initial value for the counter	Set the initial value in the GTCNT counter.
5	Set GTIOCNm pin function	Set the GTIOCNm pin function with the GTIOA[4:0] and GTIOB[4:0] bits in the GTIOR register. In Figure 20.26 and Figure 20.27 , GTIOA[4:0] = 00011b and GTIOB[4:0] = 10011b.
6	Enable GTIOCNm pin output	Set to enable the GTIOCNm pin output with the OAE and OBE bits in the GTIOR register.
7	Set buffer operation for compare match	Set buffer operation with the CCRA[1:0] bits in the GTBER register.
8	Set compare match value	Set the GTIOCNm pin transition in the GTCCRA register.
9	Set buffer value for compare match	For buffer operation, set the GTIOCNm pin transition in 1 cycle after the current cycle (in triangle-wave PWM mode 1) or half a cycle after the current cycle (in triangle-wave PWM mode 2) in the GTCCRC register. For double buffer operation, also set the GTIOCNm pin transition in 2 cycles after the current cycle (in triangle-wave PWM mode 1) or 1 cycle after the current cycle (in triangle-wave PWM mode 2) in the GTCCRD registers.
10	Set automatic dead time setting function	Set the GTDTCR.TDE bit to 1 to enable the automatic dead time setting function.
11	Set dead time value	Set the dead time value in the GTDVU register.
12	Start count operation	Set the GTCR.CST bit to 1 to start count operation.

Table 20.22 Example setting for automatic dead time setting function in triangle-wave PWM mode 1 or 2 (2 of 2)

No.	Step name	Description
13	Set buffer value for each cycle	When the compare match register is used for buffer operation, set the GTIOCnA pin transition in 1 cycle after the current cycle (in triangle-wave PWM mode 1) or half a cycle after the current cycle (in triangle-wave PWM mode 2) in GTCCRC.

Note: n: 0, 4 to 9
m: A, B

20.3.5 Count Direction Changing Function

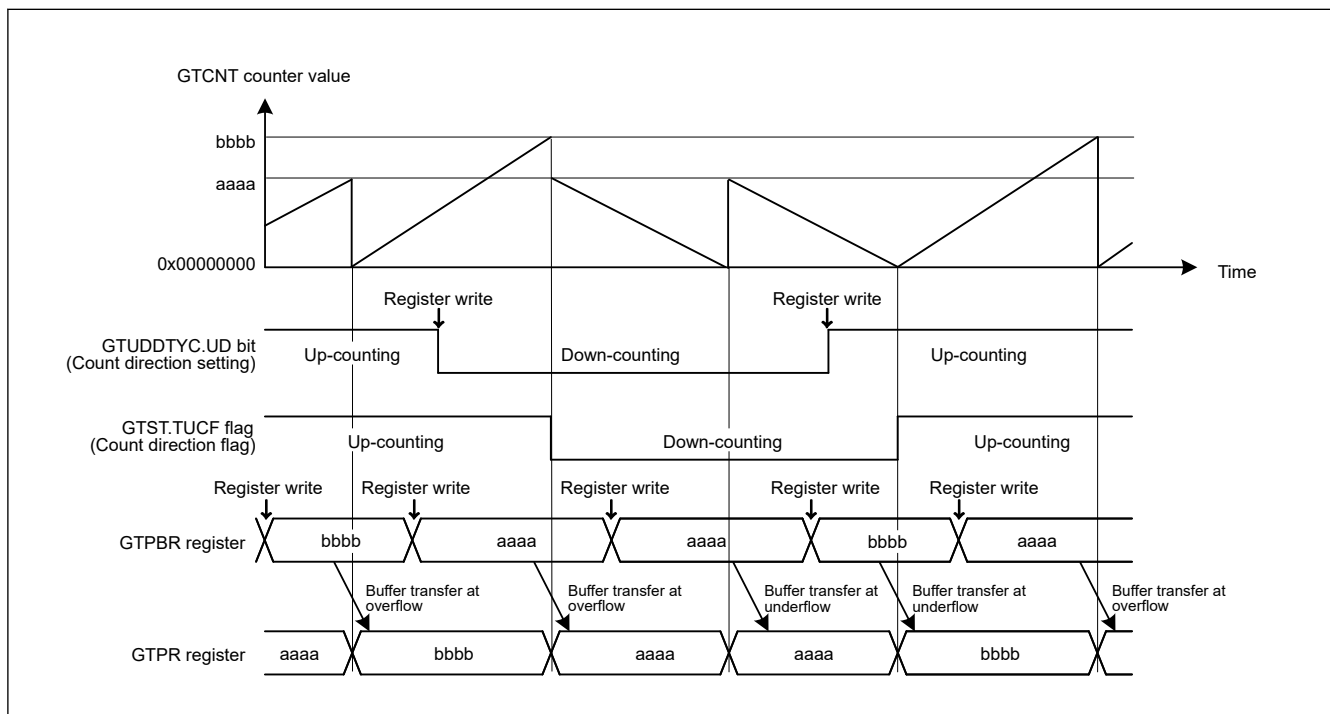
The count direction of the GTCNT counter can be changed by modifying the UD bit in GTUDDTYC.

In saw-wave mode, if the UD bit in GTUDDTYC is modified during count operation, the count direction is changed at an overflow (when modified during up-counting) or an underflow (when modified during down-counting). If the GTUDDTYC.UD bit is modified while the count operation stops and the GTUDDTYC.UDF bit is 0, the GTUDDTYC.UD bit modification is not reflected at the start of counting and the count direction is changed at an overflow or an underflow. If the UDF bit is set to 1 while the count operation stops, the GTUDDTYC.UD bit value at that time is reflected at the start of counting.

In triangle-wave mode, the count direction does not change even though the UD bit in GTUDDTYC is modified during the count operation. Similarly, even though the GTUDDTYC.UD bit is modified while the count operation stops and GTUDDTYC.UDF bit is 0, the GTUDDTYC.UD bit value is not reflected to the count operation. If the GTUDDTYC.UDF bit is set to 1 while the count operation is stopped, the GTUDDTYC.UD bit value at that time is reflected at the start of counting.

If the count direction changes during a saw-wave count operation, the GTPR value after the start of up-counting is reflected in the count cycle during up-counting and the GTPR value after the start of down-counting is reflected in the count cycle during down-counting.

Figure 20.28 shows an example of count direction changing function operation.

**Figure 20.28 Example of a count direction changing function operation during buffer operation**

20.3.6 Function of Output Duty 0% and 100%

The output duty of the GTIOCnA pin and the GTIOCnB pin (n = 0, 4 to 9) are set to 0% or 100% by changing the GTUDDTYC.OADTY bit or GTUDDTYC.OBDTY bit.

In saw-wave mode, if the GTUDDTYC.OADTY bit or the GTUDDTYC.OBDTY bit is modified during the count operation, the output duty setting is reflected at an overflow (when modified during up-counting) or an underflow (when modified during down-counting). If the GTUDDTYC.OADTY bit or the GTUDDTYC.OBDTY bit is modified while the count operation is stopped and the GTUDDTYC.OADTYF or the GTUDDTYC.OBDTYF bit is 0, the output duty modification is not reflected at the start of counting. The output duty changes at an overflow or an underflow. If the GTUDDTYC.OADTY bit or the GTUDDTYC.OBDTY bit is modified while the count operation is stopped and the GTUDDTYC.OADTYF or the GTUDDTYC.OBDTYF bit is 1, the GTUDDTYC.OADTY bit or the GTUDDTYC.OBDTY bit value at that time is reflected at the start of counting.

In triangle-wave mode, if the GTUDDTYC.OADTY bit or the GTUDDTYC.OBDTY bit is modified during the count operation, the output duty setting is reflected an underflow.

If the GTUDDTYC.OADTY bit or the GTUDDTYC.OBDTY bit is modified while the count operation is stopped and the GTUDDTYC.OADTYF or the GTUDDTYC.OBDTYF bit is 0, the output duty modification is not reflected at the start of counting. The output duty changes at an underflow. If the GTUDDTYC.OADTY bit or the GTUDDTYC.OBDTY bit is modified while the count operation stops and the GTUDDTYC.OADTYF or the GTUDDTYC.OBDTYF bit is 1, the output duty modification is reflected at the start of counting.

In performing 0% or 100% duty operation, GPT internally continues to:

- Perform compare match operation
- Set compare match flag
- Output interrupt
- Perform buffer operation.

When the control is changed from 0% or 100% duty setting to compare match, the output value of GTIOCnA pin at cycle end is decided by GTIOR.GTIOA[3:2] and GTUDDTYC.OADTYR. The output value of GTIOCnB pin at cycle end is decided by GTIOR.GTIOB[3:2] and GTUDDTYC.OBDTYR.

When GTIOR.GTIOA[3:2] and GTIOR.GTIOB[3:2] are set to 01b, the output pins output low at cycle end. When GTIOR.GTIOA[3:2] and GTIOR.GTIOB[3:2] are set to 10b, the output pins output high at cycle end.

GTUDDTYC.OADTYR selects the value that is the object of output retained/toggled at cycle end, when GTIOR.GTIOm[3:2] are set to 00b (output retained at cycle end) or when GTIOR.GTIOm[3:2] are set to 11b (output toggled at cycle end). Table 20.23 shows the values of GTIOCnA and GTIOCnB pin output at cycle end.

Table 20.23 Output values after releasing 0% or 100% duty setting (m = A, B)

GTIOR.GTIOm[3:2]	Compare match value at cycle end masked by 0% or 100% duty setting	GTUDDTYC.OmDTYR in duty 0% setting		GTUDDTYC.OmDTYR in duty 100% setting	
		0	1	0	1
00 (output retained at cycle end)	0	0	0	1	0
	1	0	1	1	1
01 (low output at cycle end)	—	0	0	0	0
10 (high output at cycle end)	—	1	1	1	1
11 (output toggled at cycle end)	0	1	1	0	1
	1	1	0	0	0

Figure 20.29 shows an example of output duty 0% and 100% function.

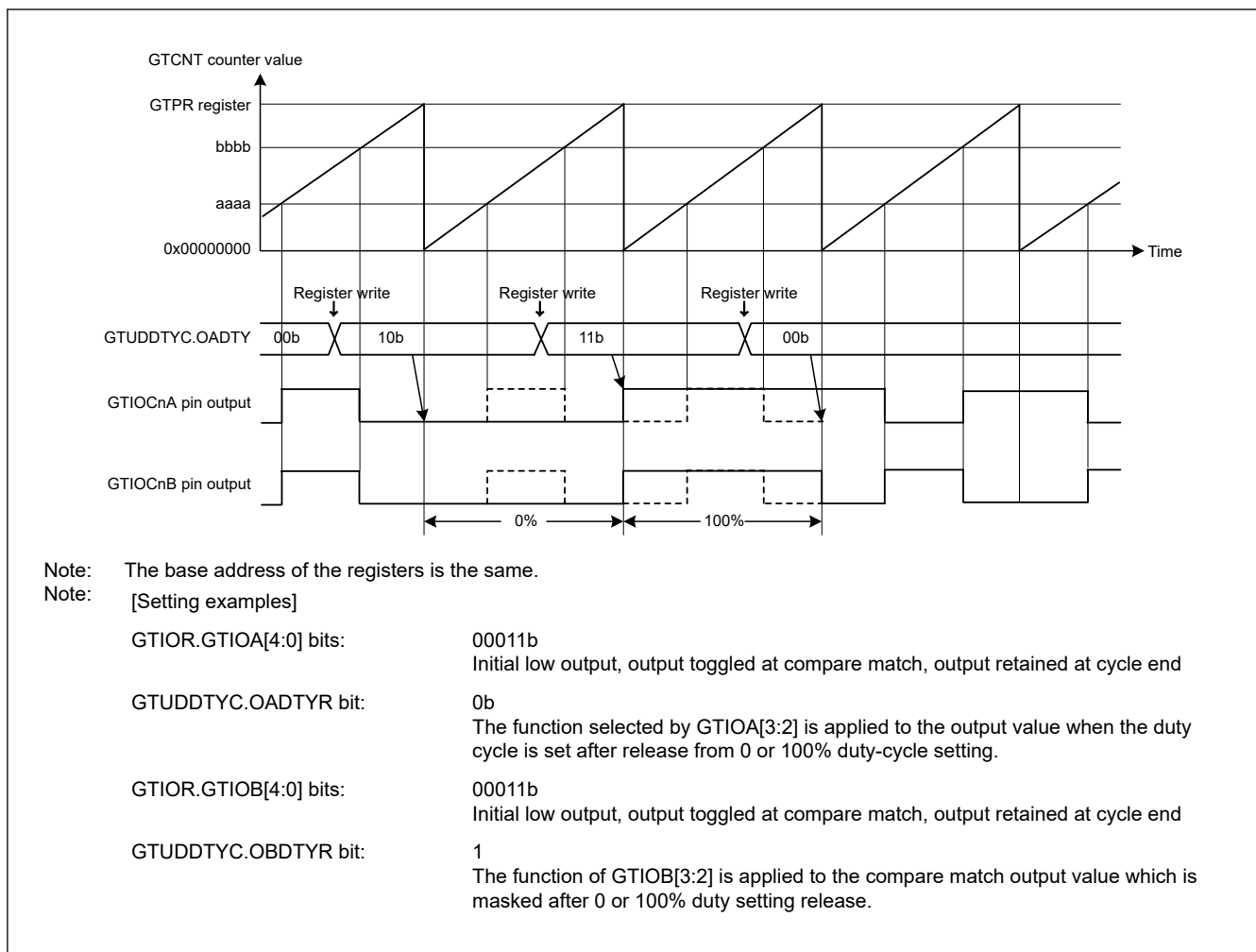


Figure 20.29 Example of output duty 0% and 100% function

20.3.7 Hardware Count Start/Count Stop and Clear Operation

The GTCNT counter can be started, stopped, or cleared by the following hardware sources:

- External trigger input
- ELC event input
- GTIOCnA and GTIOCnB pin input (n = 0, 4 to 9).

20.3.7.1 Hardware Start Operation

The GTCNT counter can be started by selecting a hardware source using GTSSR.

Figure 20.30 shows an example of a count start operation by a hardware source. Table 20.24 shows the setting example.

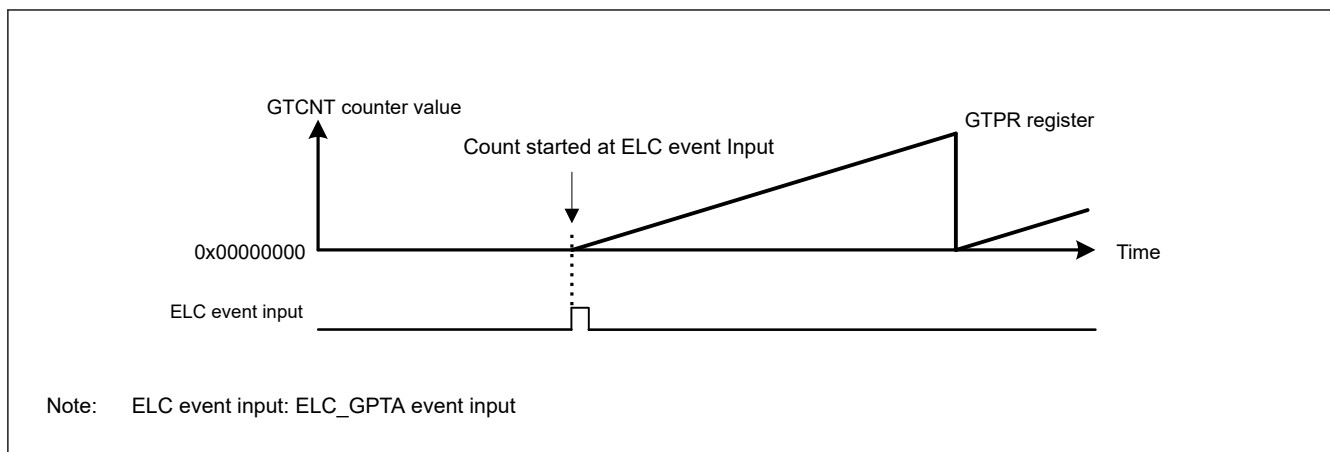


Figure 20.30 Example of count start operation by a hardware source started at the input of the signal from the ELC_GPTA event

Table 20.24 Example setting for count start operation by a hardware source

No.	Step Name	Description
1	Set operating mode	Set the operating mode with the GTCR.MD[2:0] bits. In Figure 20.30 , 000b (saw-wave PWM mode) is set.
2	Set count direction	Select the count direction (up or down) with the GTUDDTYC register. In Figure 20.30 , after 11b is set in the GTUDDTYC[1:0] bits, 01b is set in the GTUDDTYC[1:0] bits (up-counting).
3	Select count clock	Select the count clock with the GTCR.TPCS[2:0] bits.
4	Set cycle	Set the cycle in the GTPR register.
5	Set initial value for the counter	Set the initial value in the GTCNT counter. In Figure 20.30 , 0x00000000 is set.
6	Set hardware count start	Select a hardware source for starting count operation in the GTSSR register. In Figure 20.30 , GTSSR.SSELCA = 1
7	Set hardware source operation	Set the operation of the hardware source selected by the GTSSR register and start counting. In Figure 20.30 , the ELC_GPTA event input operation is set.

20.3.7.2 Hardware Stop Operation

The GTCNT counter can be stopped by selecting a hardware source using GTPSR.

[Figure 20.31](#) shows an example of a count stop operation by a hardware source. [Table 20.25](#) shows the setting example. In this example, the count operation stops at the ELC_GPTA event input and restarts at the ELC_GPTB event input.

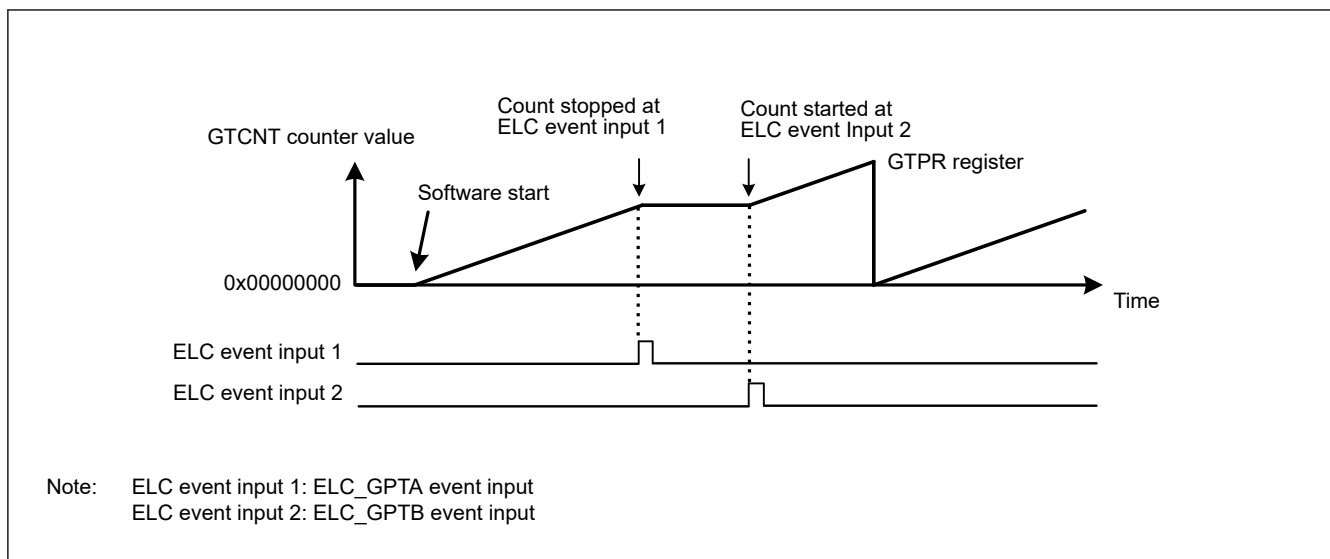


Figure 20.31 Example of count stop operation by hardware source started by software, stopped at ELC_GPTA input, and restarted at ELC_GPTB input

Table 20.25 Example setting for count stop operation by a hardware source

No.	Step name	Description
1	Set operating mode	Set the operating mode with GTCR.MD[2:0] bits. In Figure 20.31 , 000b (saw-wave PWM mode) is set.
2	Set count direction	Select the count direction (up or down) with the GTUDDTYC register. In Figure 20.31 , after 11b is set in GTUDDTYC[1:0], 01b is set in GTUDDTYC[1:0] (up-counting).
3	Select count clock	Select the count clock with GTCR.TPCS[2:0].
4	Set cycle	Set the cycle in GTPR.
5	Set initial value for the counter	Set the initial value in the GTCNT counter. In Figure 20.31 , 0x00000000 is set.
6	Set hardware count start	Select a hardware source for starting count operation in the GTSSR register, and wait for count start by the hardware source. In Figure 20.31 , GTSSR.SSELCB = 1.
7	Set hardware count stop	Select a hardware source for stopping count operation in the GTPSR register and wait for count stop by the hardware source. In Figure 20.31 , GTPSR.PSELCA = 1.
8	Set hardware source operation	Set operation of the hardware source selected in the GTSSR register or GTPSR register, and start or stop counting. In Figure 20.31 , ELC_GPTA input operation and ELC_GPTB input operation are set.

[Figure 20.32](#) shows an example of a count start/stop operation by a hardware source. [Table 20.26](#) shows the setting example. In this example, the counter operates during the high-level periods of the external trigger input GTETRGA.

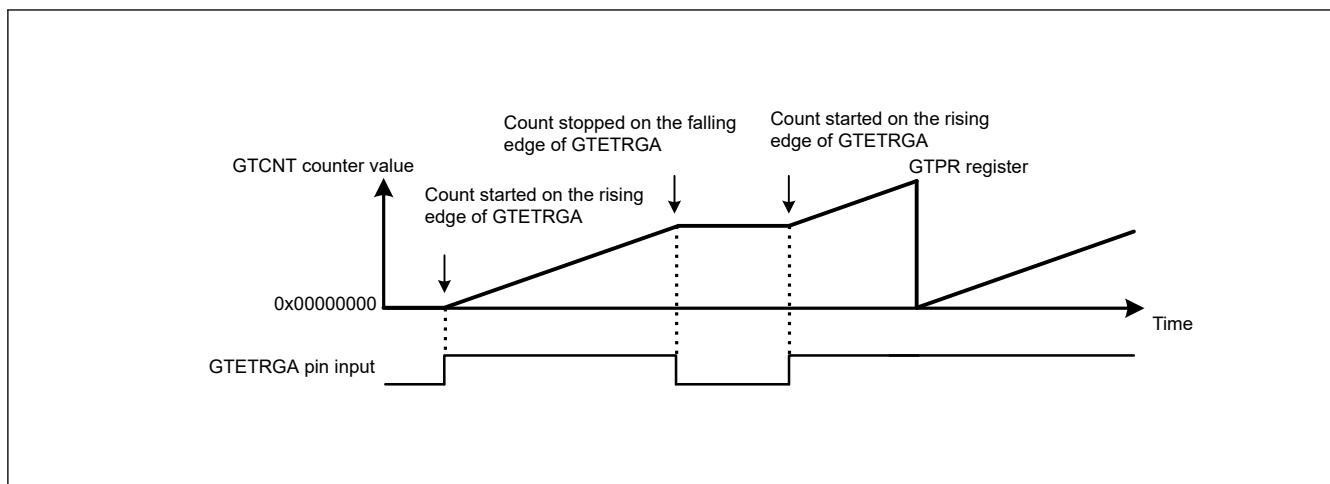


Figure 20.32 Example of count start/stop operation by a hardware source started on the rising edge of GTETRGA pin input, and stopped on the falling edge of GTETRGA pin input

Table 20.26 Example setting for count start/stop operation by a hardware source

No.	Step name	Description
1	Set operating mode	Set the operating mode with the GTCR.MD[2:0] bits. In Figure 20.32 , 000b (saw-wave PWM mode) is set.
2	Set count direction	Select the count direction (up or down) with the GTUDDTYC register. In Figure 20.32 , after 11b is set in the GTUDDTYC[1:0] bits, 01b is set in the GTUDDTYC[1:0] bits (up-counting).
3	Select count clock	Select the count clock with the GTCR.TPCS[2:0] bits.
4	Set cycle	Set the cycle in the GTPR register.
5	Set initial value for the counter	Set the initial value in the GTCNT counter. In Figure 20.32 , 0x00000000 is set.
6	Set hardware count start	Select a hardware source for starting count operation with the GTSSR register, and wait for count start by the hardware source. In Figure 20.32 , GTSSR.SSGTRGAR = 1.
7	Set hardware count stop	Select a hardware source for stopping count operation with the GTPSR register, and wait for count stop by the hardware source. In Figure 20.32 , GTPSR.PSGTRGAF = 1.
8	Set hardware source operation	Set operation of the hardware source selected in the GTSSR register or GTPSR register and start or stop counting. In Figure 20.32 , the GTETRGA pin operation is set.

20.3.7.3 Hardware Clear Operation

The GTCNT counter can be cleared by selecting a hardware source using GTCSSR. The GPTn_OVF/GPTn_UDF (n = 0, 4 to 9) interrupt (overflow/underflow interrupt) is not generated when the GTCNT counter is cleared by a hardware source or by software.

[Figure 20.33](#) and [Figure 20.34](#) show examples of the GTCNT counter clearing operation by a hardware source. [Table 20.27](#) shows the setting example. In this example, the GTCNT counter starts at the ELC_GPTA input, and the counter stops and clears at the ELC_GPTB input.

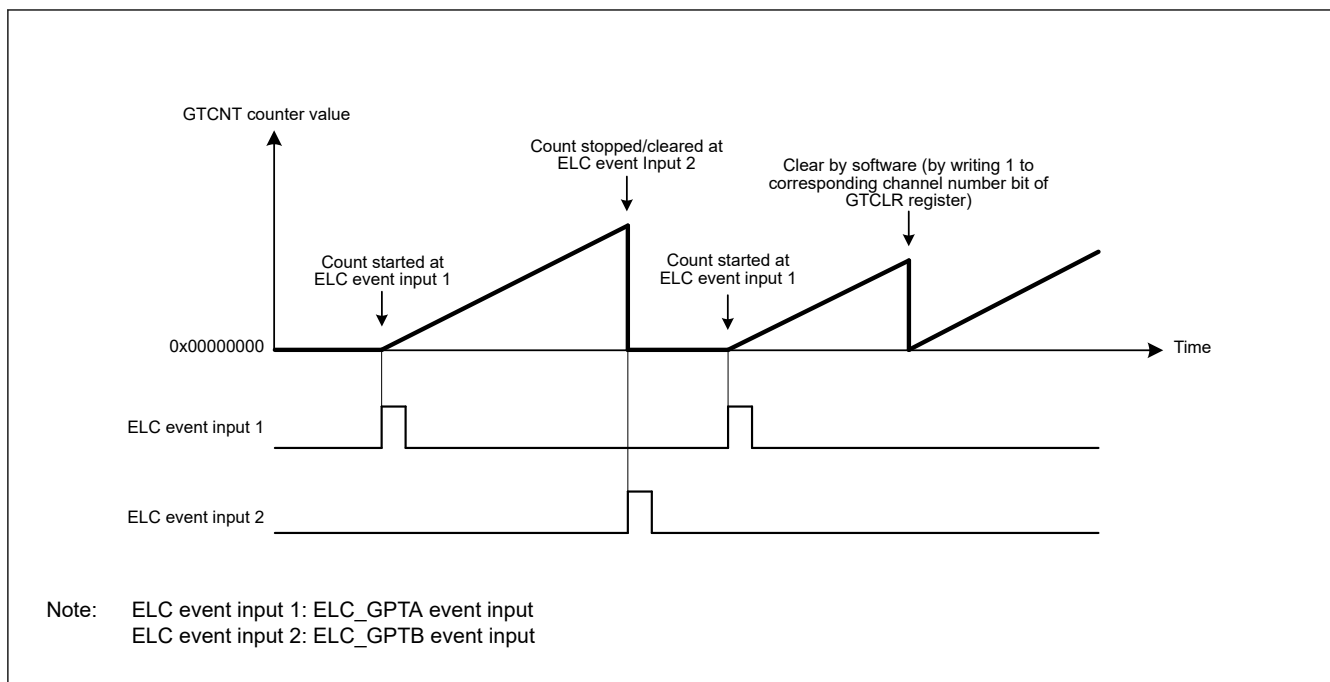


Figure 20.33 Examples of count clearing operation by hardware source in saw wave up-counting, started at ELC_GPTA input, and stopped/cleared at ELC_GPTB input

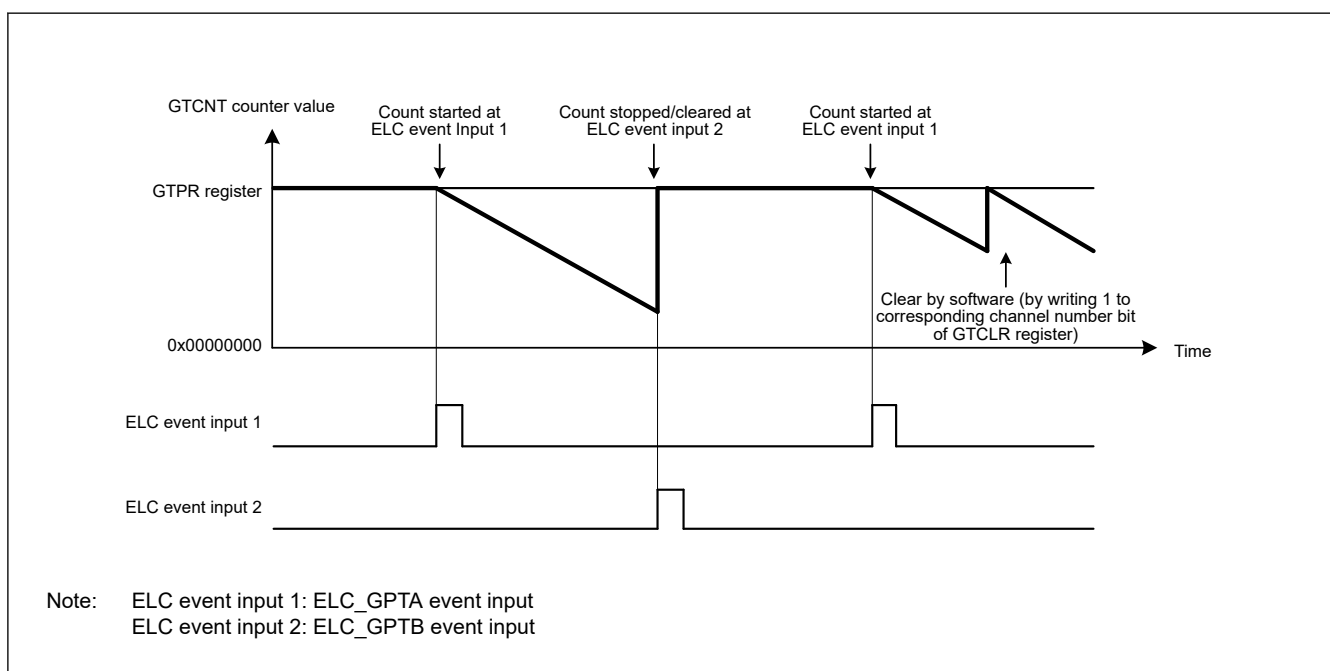


Figure 20.34 Examples of count clearing operation by hardware source in saw wave down-counting, started at ELC_GPTA input, and stopped/cleared at ELC_GPTB input

Table 20.27 Example setting for count clearing operation by a hardware source (1 of 2)

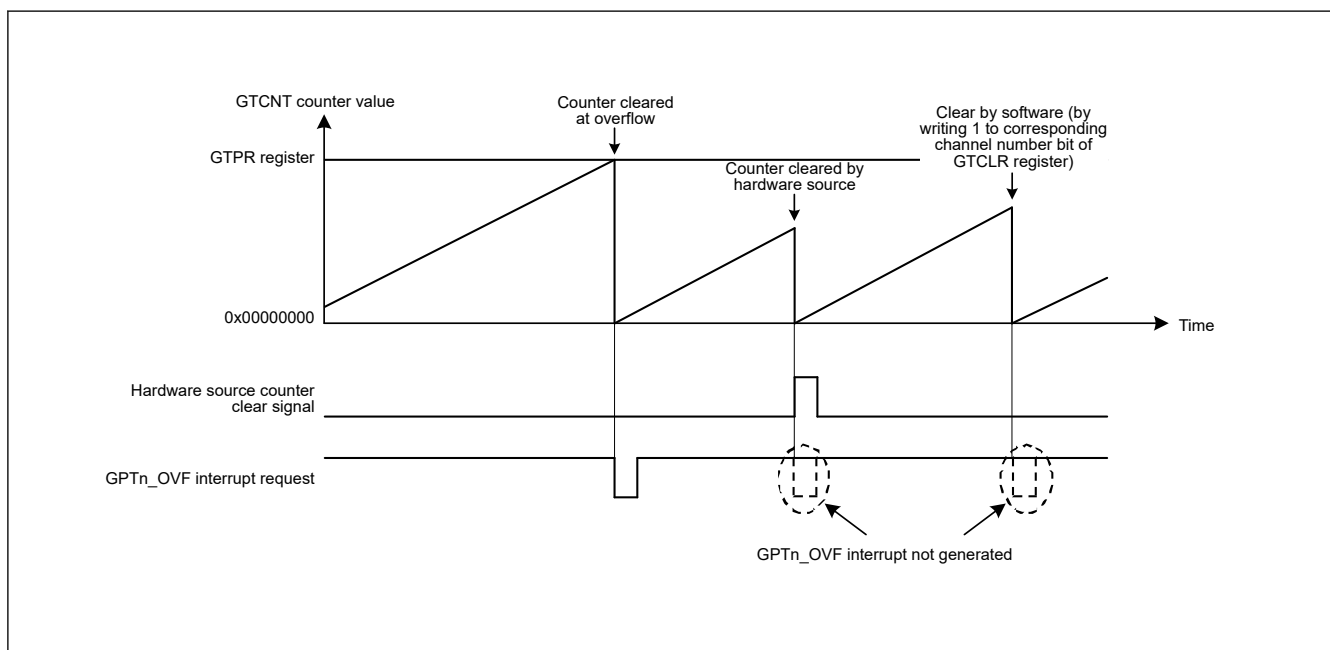
No.	Step Name	Description
1	Set operating mode	Set the operating mode with the GTCR.MD[2:0] bits. In Figure 20.33 and Figure 20.34 , 000b (saw-wave PWM mode) is set.
2	Set count direction	Select the count direction (up or down) with the GTUDDTYC register. In Figure 20.33 , after 11b is set in the GTUDDTYC[1:0] bits, 01b is set in the GTUDDTYC[1:0] bits (up-counting). In Figure 20.34 , after 10b is set in the GTUDDTYC[1:0] bits, 00b is set in the GTUDDTYC[1:0] bits (down-counting).

Table 20.27 Example setting for count clearing operation by a hardware source (2 of 2)

No.	Step Name	Description
3	Select count clock	Select the count clock with the GTCR.TPCS[2:0] bits.
4	Set cycle	Set the cycle in the GTPR register.
5	Set initial value for the counter	Set the initial value in the GTCNT counter. In Figure 20.33 , 0x00000000 is set. In Figure 20.34 , the GTPR register value is set.
6	Set hardware count start	Select a hardware source for starting count operation in the GTSSR register, and wait for count start by the hardware source. In Figure 20.33 and Figure 20.34 , GTSSR.SSELCA = 1.
7	Set hardware count stop	Select a hardware source for stopping count operation in the GTPSR register, and wait for count stop by the hardware source. In Figure 20.33 and Figure 20.34 , GTPSR.PSELCB = 1.
8	Set hardware count clear	Select a hardware source for clearing count operation in the GTCSR register, and wait for count clear by the hardware source. In Figure 20.33 and Figure 20.34 , GTCSR.CSELCB = 1.
9	Set hardware source operation	Set operation of the hardware source selected in the GTSSR register, GTPSR register or GTCSR register and start, stop or clear counting. In Figure 20.33 and Figure 20.34 , the ELC_GPTA input and ELC_GPTB input are set.

The GPTn_OVF/GPTn_UDF (n = 0, 4 to 9) interrupt (overflow/underflow interrupt) is not generated when the counter is cleared by a hardware source or by software.

[Figure 20.35](#) shows the relationship between the counter clearing by a hardware source and the GPTn_OVF (n = 0, 4 to 9) interrupt.

**Figure 20.35 Relationship between counter clearing by hardware source and GPTn_OVF (n = 0, 4 to 9) interrupt**

20.3.8 Synchronized Operation

Synchronized operation on channels such as a synchronized start, stop, and clear operation can be performed.

20.3.8.1 Synchronized Operation by Software

The GTCNT counters can be started, stopped, and cleared on multiple channels by setting the associated GTSTR, GTSTP, or GTCLR bits simultaneously to 1.

Count start with a phase difference is possible by setting the initial value in the GTCNT counter and setting the associated GTSTR bits simultaneously to 1.

[Figure 20.36](#) shows an example of a simultaneous start, stop, and clear by software. [Figure 20.37](#) shows an example of phase start operation by software.

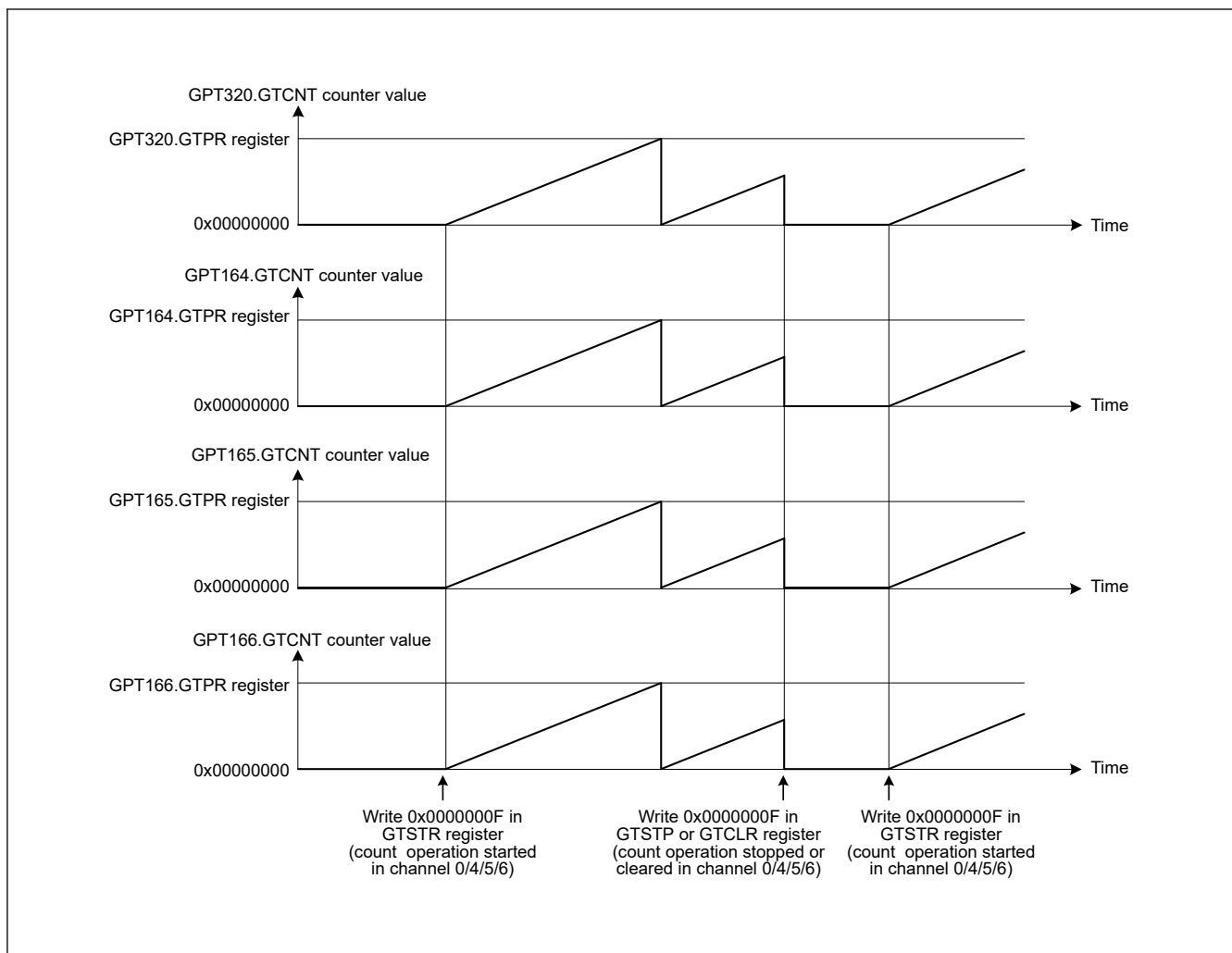


Figure 20.36 Example of a simultaneous start, stop, and clear by software with the same count cycle (GTPR register value)

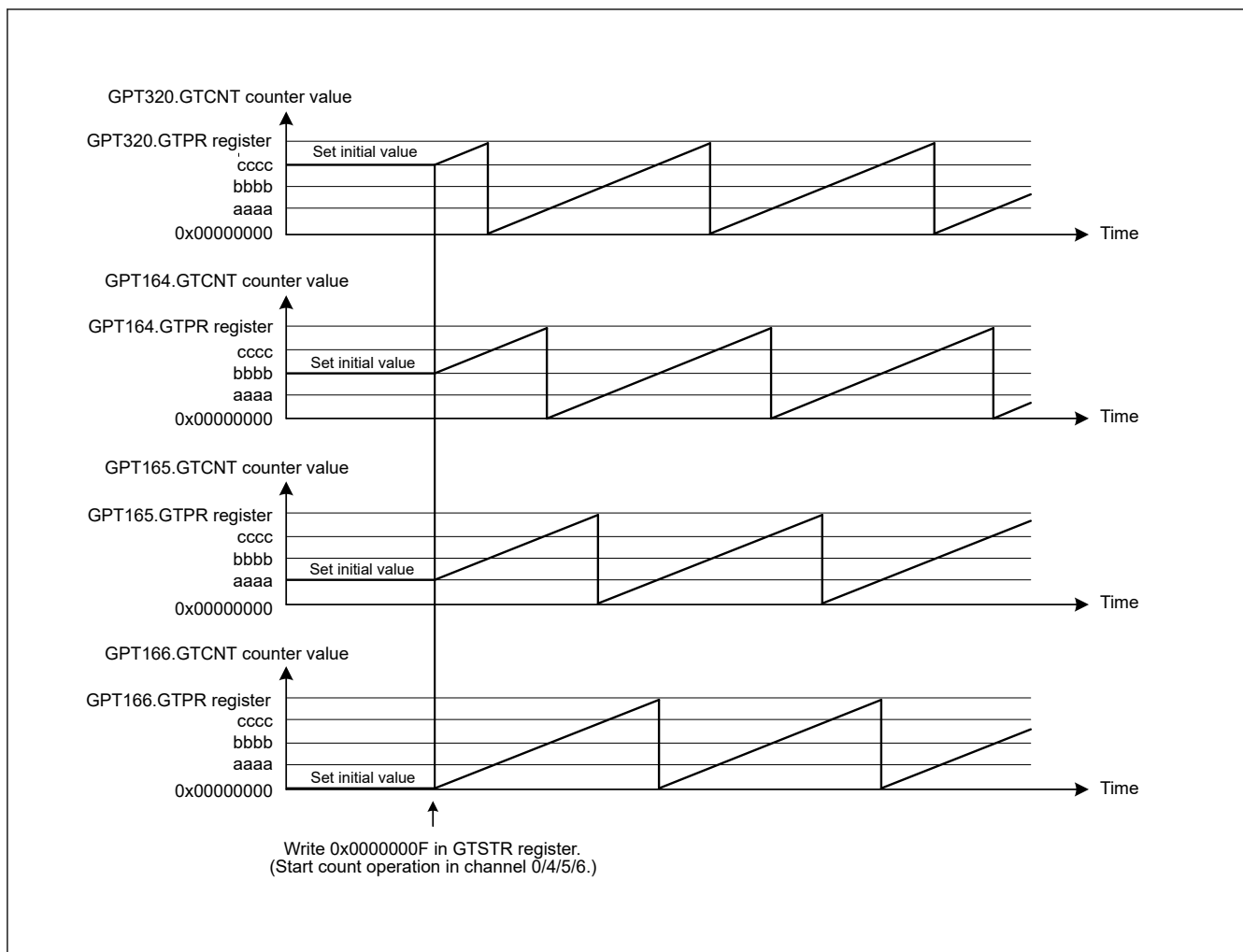


Figure 20.37 Example of software phase start with the same count cycle (GTPR register value)

20.3.8.2 Synchronized Operation by Hardware

The counters for multiple channels can be started, stopped, and cleared simultaneously by the following hardware sources. Hardware sources that can cause a synchronized operation are external trigger input and ELC event input. Synchronized operation through the GTIOCnA and GTIOCnB pin inputs is possible by setting an ELC event due to input capture as a hardware source ($n = 0, 4$ to 9).

[Figure 20.38](#) shows an example of a simultaneous start, stop, and clear operation by a hardware source. [Table 20.28](#) shows the setting example.

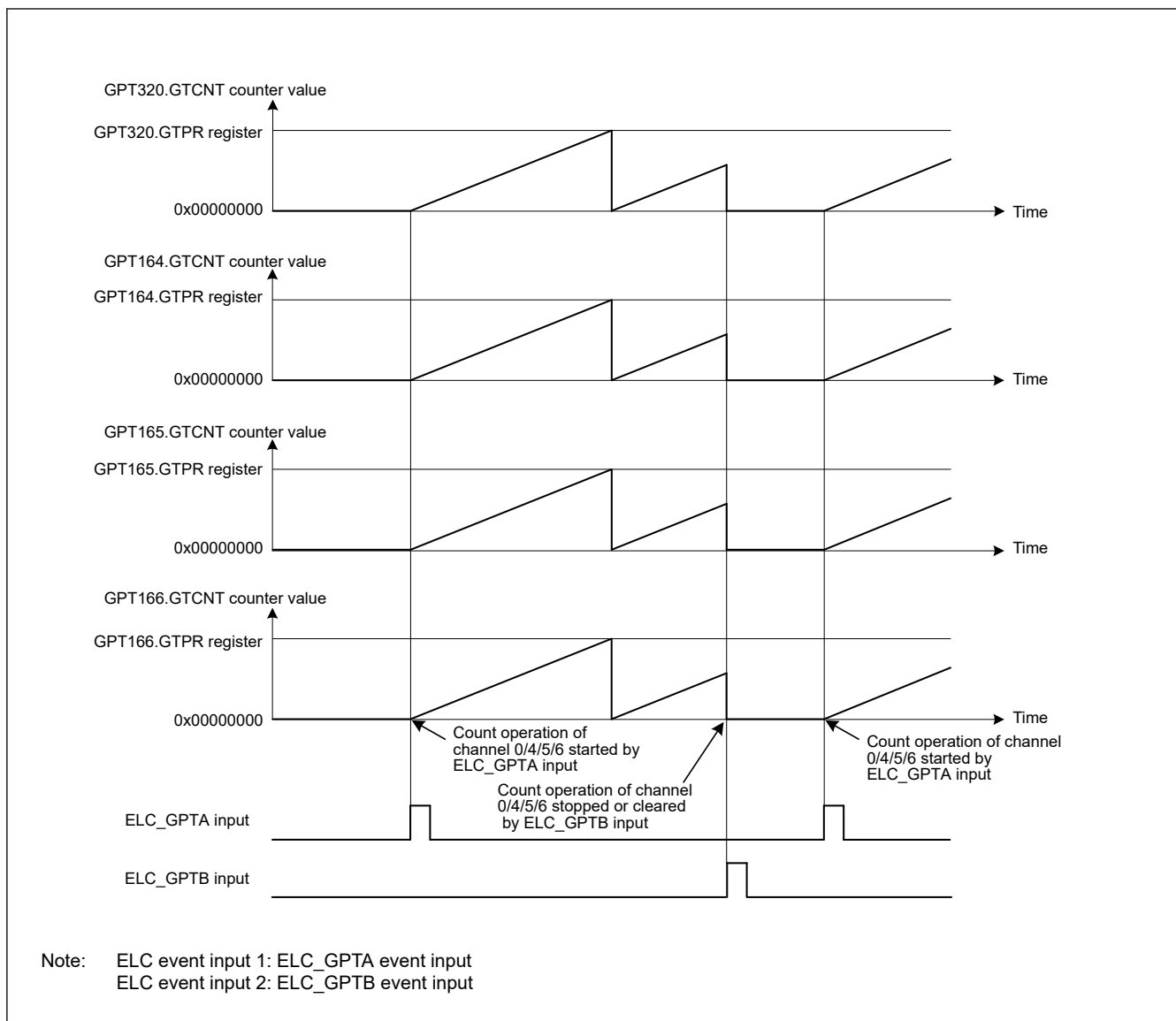


Figure 20.38 Example of a simultaneous start, stop, and clear by a hardware source with the same count cycle (GTPR register value)

Table 20.28 Example setting for simultaneous start by a hardware source (1 of 2)

No.	Step Name	Description
1	Set operating mode	Set the operating mode with the GTCR.MD[2:0] bits. In Figure 20.38, 000b (saw-wave PWM mode) is set.
2	Set count direction	Select the count direction (up or down) with the GTUDDTYC register. In Figure 20.38, after 11b is set in the GTUDDTYC[1:0] bits, 01b is set in the GTUDDTYC[1:0] bits (up-counting).
3	Select count clock	Select the count clock with the GTCR.TPCS[2:0] bits.
4	Set cycle	Set the cycle in the GTPR register.
5	Set initial value for the counter	Set the initial value in the GTCNT counter. In Figure 20.38, 0x00000000 is set.
6	Set hardware count start	Select a hardware source for starting count operation with the GTSSR register, and wait for count start by the hardware source. In Figure 20.38, GTSSR.SSELCA = 1.
7	Set hardware count stop	Select a hardware source for stopping count operation with the GTPSR register, and wait for count stop by the hardware source. In Figure 20.38, GTPSR.PSELCB = 1.

Table 20.28 Example setting for simultaneous start by a hardware source (2 of 2)

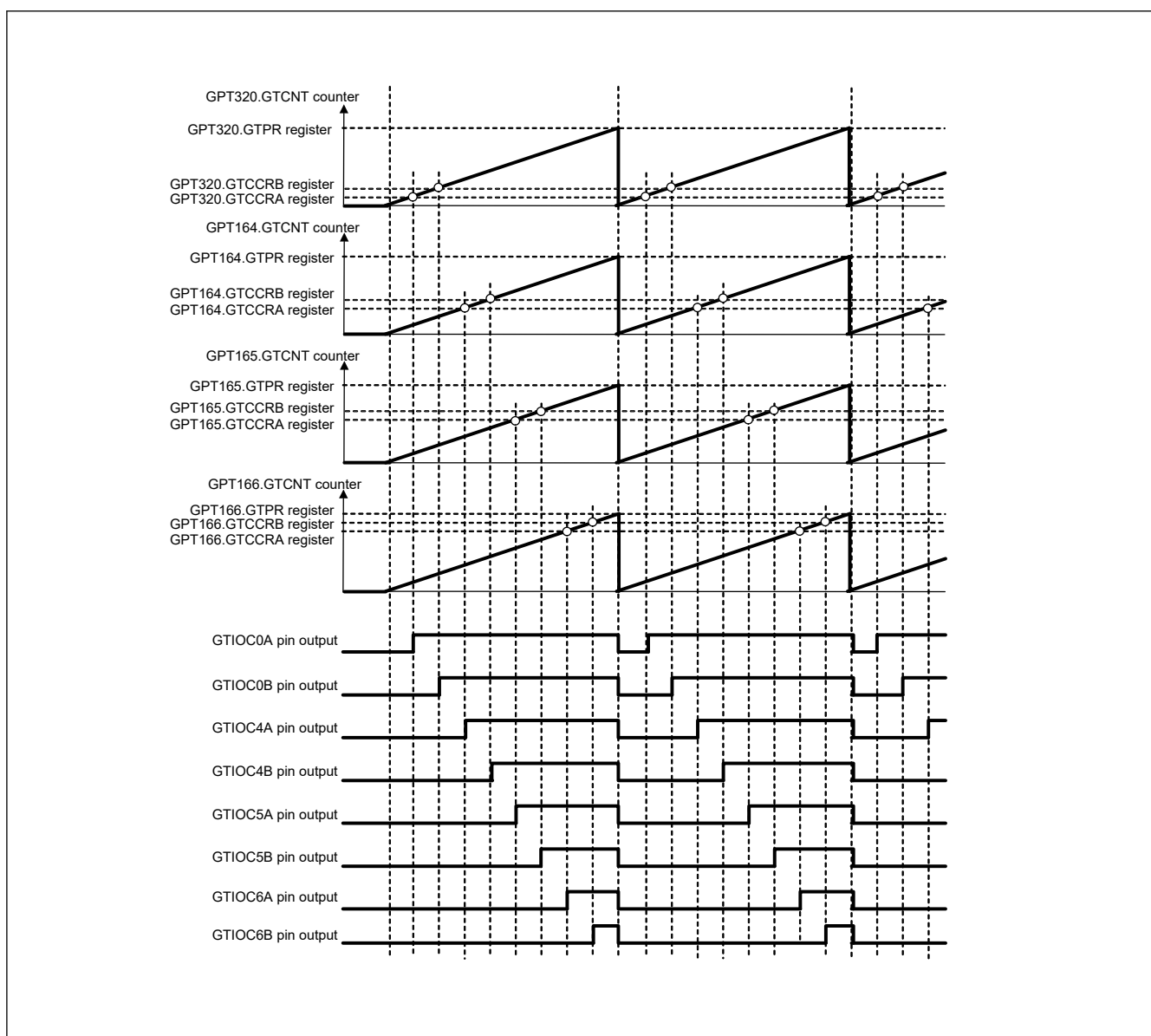
No.	Step Name	Description
8	Set hardware count clear	Select a hardware source for clearing count operation with the GTCSR register, and wait for count clear by the hardware source. In Figure 20.38 , GTCSR.CSELCB = 1.
9	Set hardware source operation	Set operation of the hardware source selected in the GTSSR, GTPSR, or GTCSR registers, and start, stop, or clear counting. In Figure 20.38 , ELC_GPTA input and ELC_GPTB input are set.

20.3.9 PWM Output Operation Examples

(1) Synchronized PWM output

The GPT outputs 7×2 phases of linked PWM waveforms for a maximum of $\text{GPT} \times 7$ channels.

[Figure 20.39](#) shows an example in which four channels perform synchronized operation in saw-wave PWM mode and eight phases of PWM waveforms are output. The GTIOCnA is set so that it outputs low as the initial value, high at a GTCCRA compare match, and low at the cycle end. The GTIOCnB is set so that it outputs low as the initial value, high at a GTCCRB compare match, and low at the cycle end.

**Figure 20.39 Example of synchronized PWM output**

(2) 3-phase saw-wave complementary PWM output

Figure 20.40 shows an example in which three channels perform synchronized operation in saw-wave PWM mode and 3-phase complementary PWM waveforms are output. The GTIOCnA pin is set so that it outputs low as the initial value, high at a GTCCRA compare match, and low at the cycle end. The GTIOCnB pin is set so that it outputs high as the initial value, low at a GTCCRB compare match, and high at the cycle end.

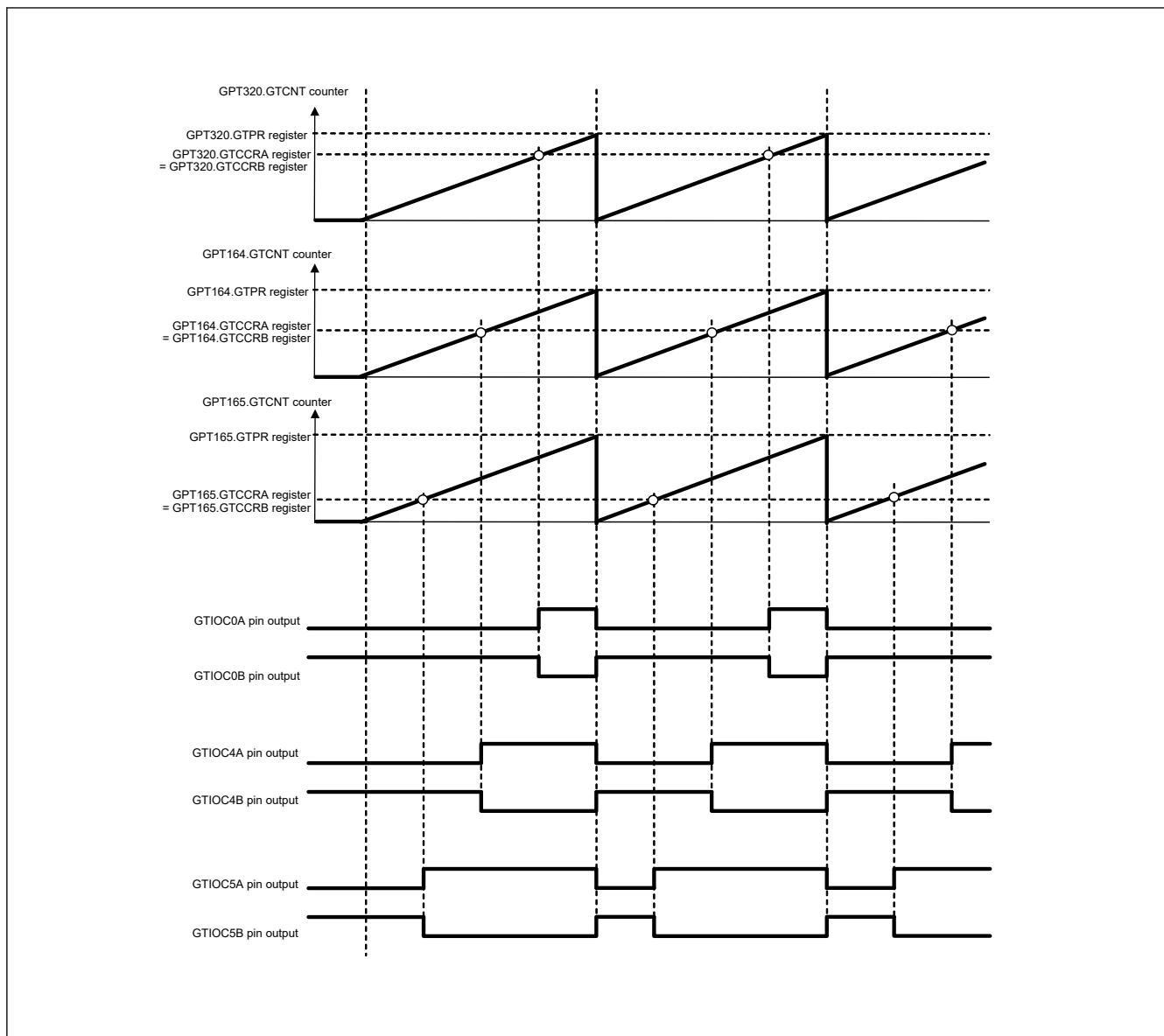


Figure 20.40 Example of 3-phase saw-wave complementary PWM output

(3) 3-phase saw-wave complementary PWM output with automatic dead time setting

Figure 20.41 shows an example in which three channels perform synchronized operation in saw-wave one-shot pulse mode with automatic dead time setting and 3-phase complementary PWM waveforms are output. The GTIOCnA pin is set so that it outputs low as the initial value, toggles the output at a GTCCRA compare match, and retains the output at the cycle end. The GTIOCnB pin is set so that it outputs high as the initial value, toggles the output at a GTIOCnB compare match, and retains the output at the cycle end.

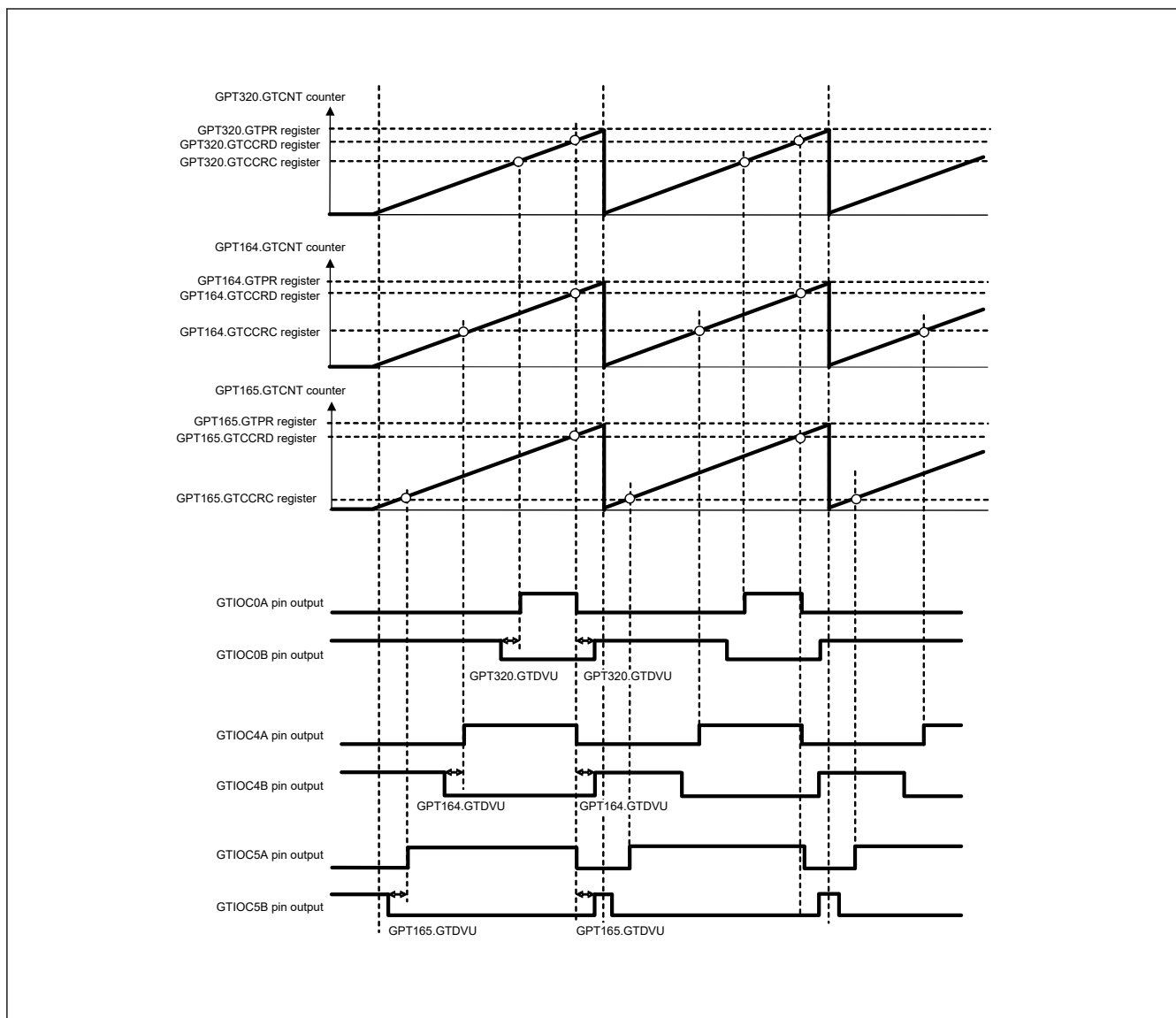


Figure 20.41 Example of 3-phase saw-wave complementary PWM output with automatic dead time setting

(4) 3-phase triangle-wave complementary PWM output

Figure 20.42 shows an example in which three channels perform synchronized operation in triangle-wave PWM mode 1 and 3-phase complementary PWM waveforms are output. The GTIOCnA pin is set so that it outputs low as the initial value, toggles the output at a GTCCRA compare match, and retains the output at the cycle end. The GTIOCnB pin is set so that it outputs high as the initial value, toggles the output at a GTCCRB compare match, and retains the output at the cycle end.

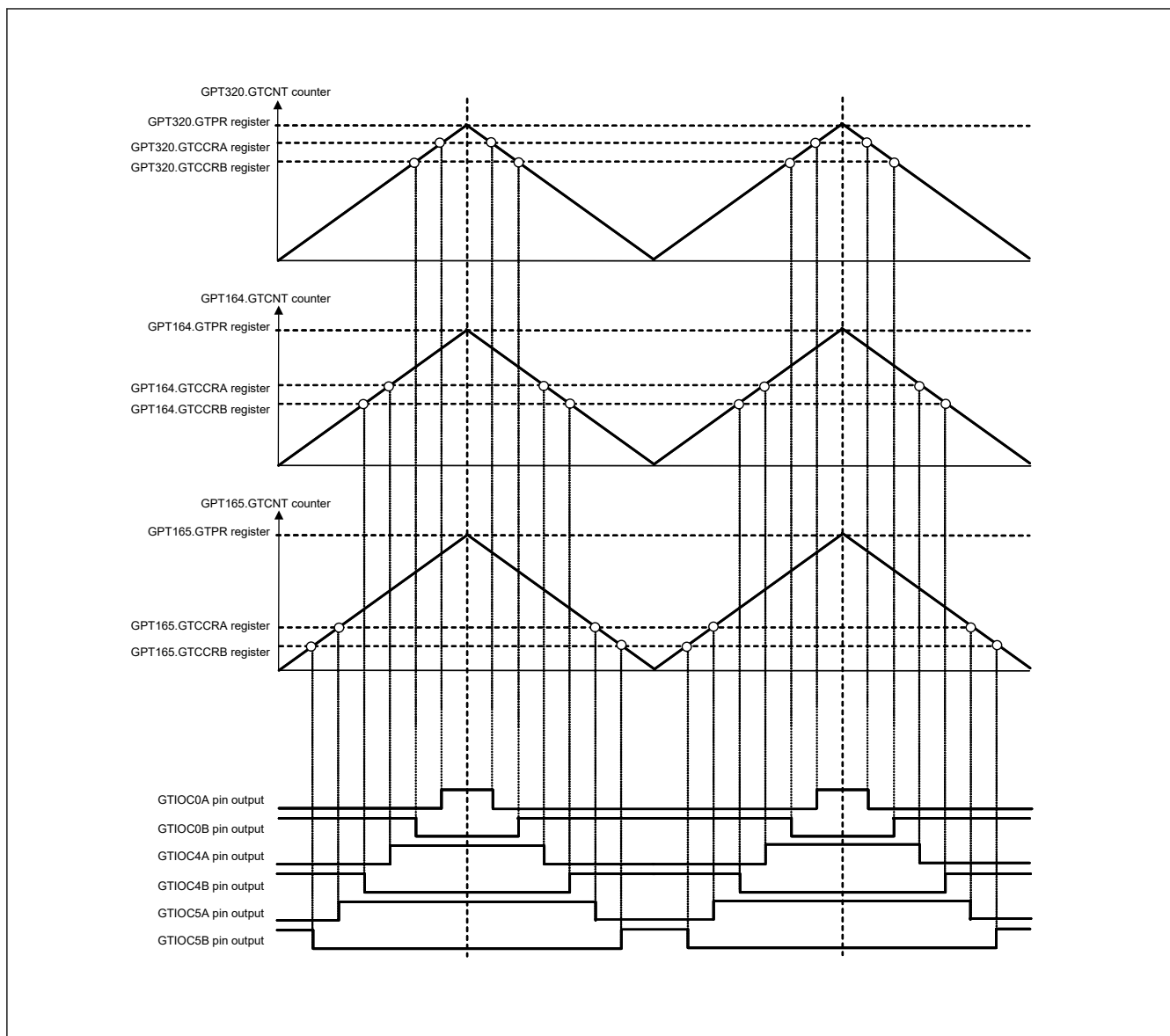


Figure 20.42 Example of 3-phase triangle-wave complementary PWM output

(5) 3-phase triangle-wave complementary PWM output with automatic dead time setting

Figure 20.43 shows an example in which three channels perform synchronized operation in triangle-wave PWM mode 1 with automatic dead time setting and 3-phase complementary PWM waveforms are output. The GTIOCnA pin is set so that it outputs low as the initial value, toggles the output at a GTCCRA compare match, and retains the output at the cycle end. The GTIOCnB pin is set so that it outputs high as the initial value, toggles the output at a GTCCRB compare match, and retains the output at the cycle end.

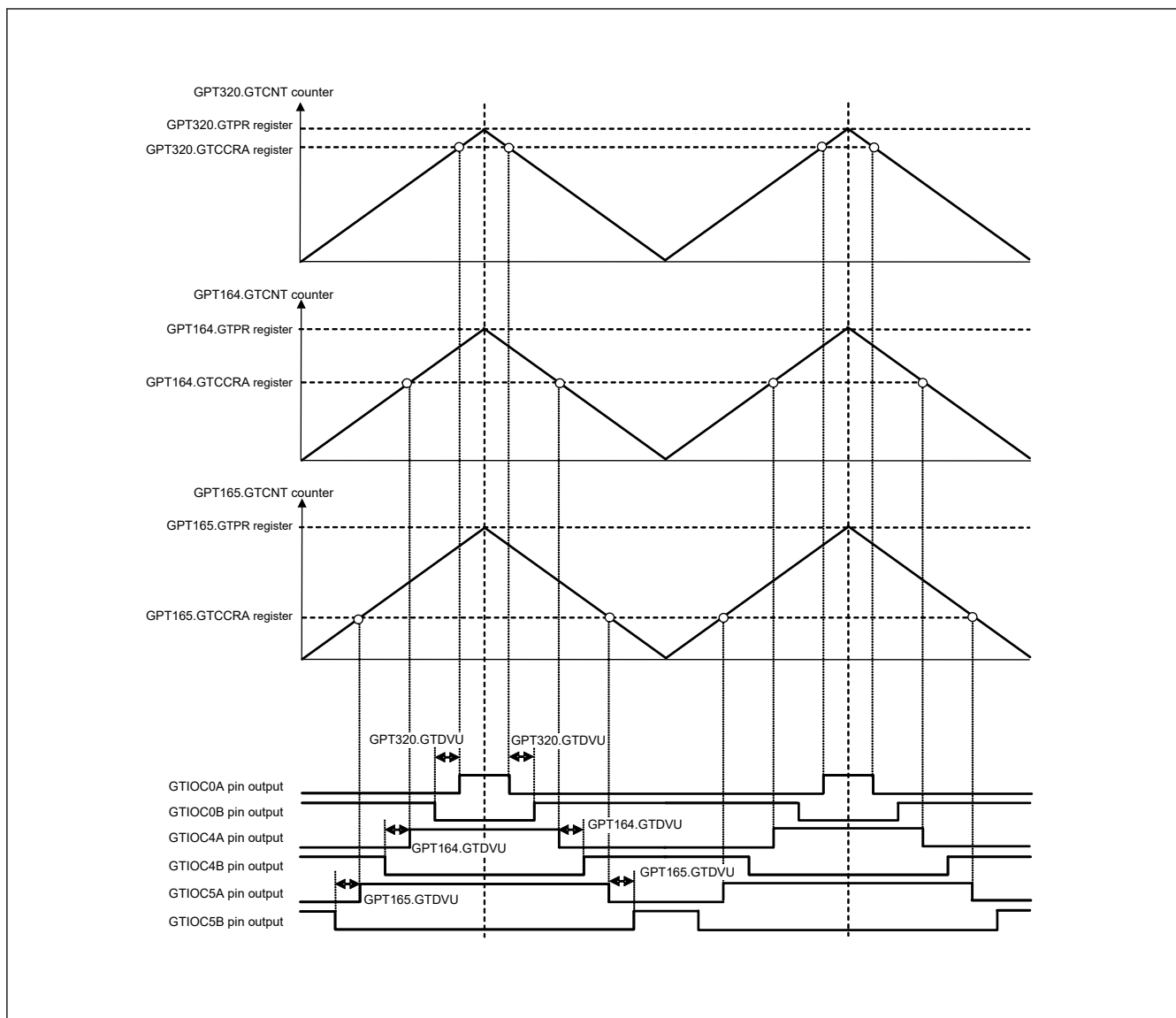


Figure 20.43 Example of 3-phase triangle-wave complementary PWM output with automatic dead time setting

(6) 3-phase asymmetric triangle-wave complementary PWM output with automatic dead time setting

Figure 20.44 shows an example in which three channels perform synchronized operation in triangle-wave PWM mode 3 with automatic dead time setting and 3-phase complementary PWM waveforms are output. The GTIOCnA is set so that it outputs low as the initial value, toggles the output at a GTCCRnA compare match, and retains the output at the cycle end. The GTIOCnB is set so that it outputs high as the initial value, toggles the output at a GTCCRnB compare match, and retains the output at the cycle end.

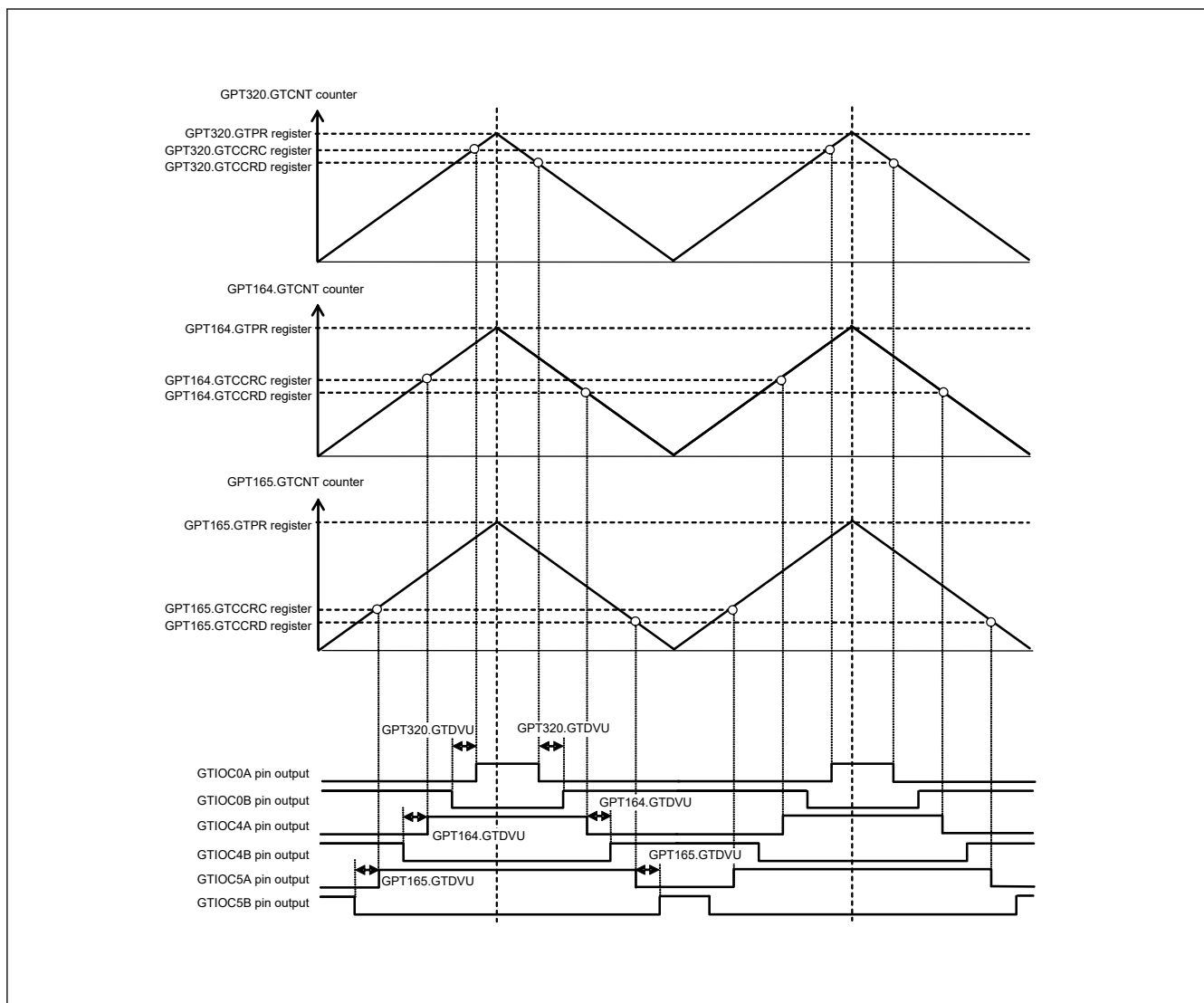


Figure 20.44 Example of 3-phase asymmetric triangle-wave complementary PWM output with automatic dead time setting

20.3.10 Phase Counting Function

The phase difference between the GTIOCnA and GTIOCnB pin ($n = 0, 4$ to 9) inputs is detected and the associated GTCNT counts up or counts down. The detectable phase difference is available in any combination with the relationship between the edge and the level of GTIOCnA and GTIOCnB pin inputs being set in the GTUPSR and GTDNSR registers. For details on count operation, see [section 20.3.1.1. Counter operation](#).

[Figure 20.45](#) to [Figure 20.54](#) show an example of phase counting modes 1 to 5 operation when the GTIOCnA, GTIOCnB pins are used. [Table 20.29](#) to [Table 20.38](#) show conditions of up-counting or down-counting and list settings for the GTUPSR and GTDNSR registers which correspond to [Figure 20.45](#) through [Figure 20.54](#).

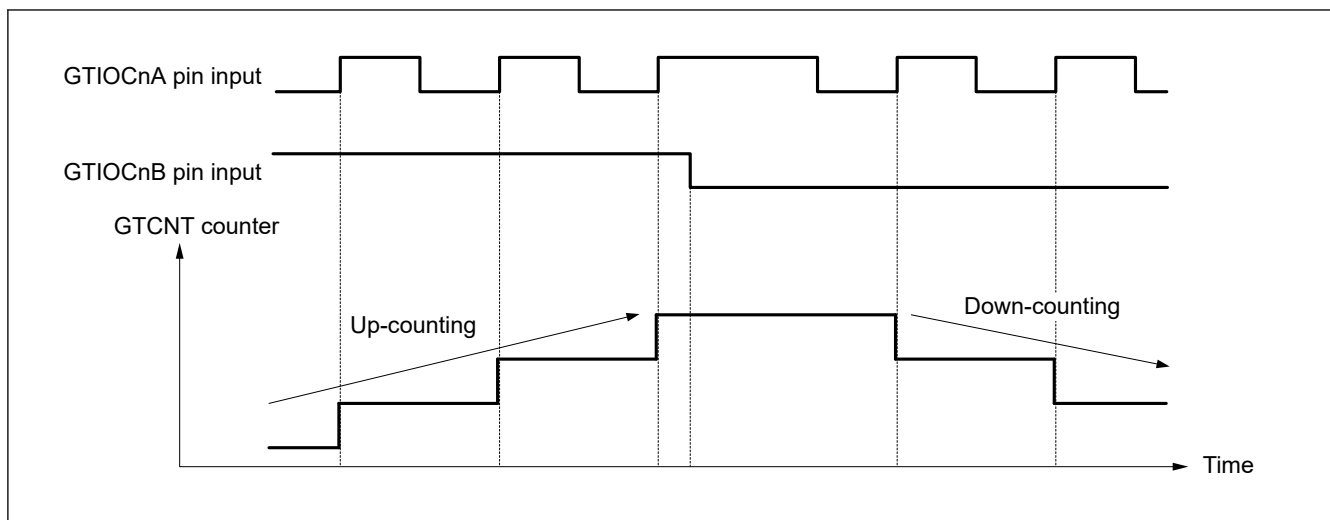


Figure 20.47 Example of phase counting mode 2 (B)

Table 20.31 Conditions of up-counting/down-counting in phase counting mode 2 (B)

 : Rising edge
 : Falling edge

GTIOCnA pin input	GTIOCnB pin input	Operation	Register setting
High		Not counting	GTUPSR = 0x00000200 GTDNSR = 0x00000100
Low		Not counting	
	Low	Down-counting	
	High	Not counting	
High		Not counting	
Low		Not counting	
	High	Up-counting	
	Low	Not counting	

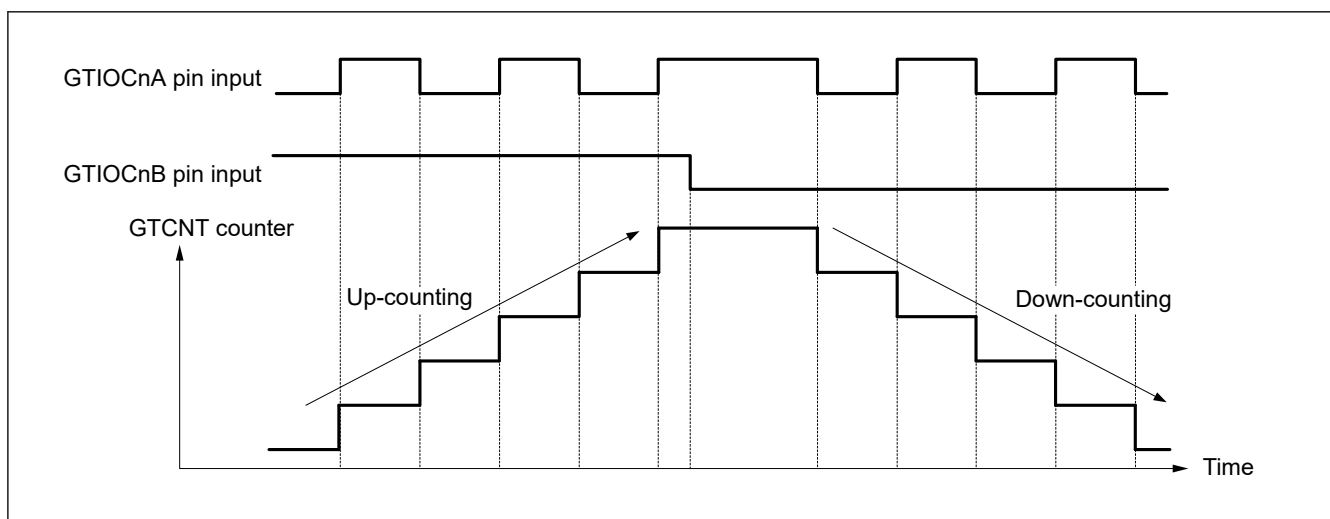


Figure 20.48 Example of phase counting mode 2 (C)

Table 20.34 Conditions of up-counting/down-counting in phase counting mode 3 (B)

 : Rising edge
 : Falling edge

Timing edge			
GTIOCnA pin input	GTIOCnB pin input	Operation	Register setting
High		Down-counting	GTUPSR = 0x00000200 GTDNSR = 0x00002000
Low		Not counting	
	Low		
	High		
High			
Low			
	High	Up-counting	
	Low	Not counting	

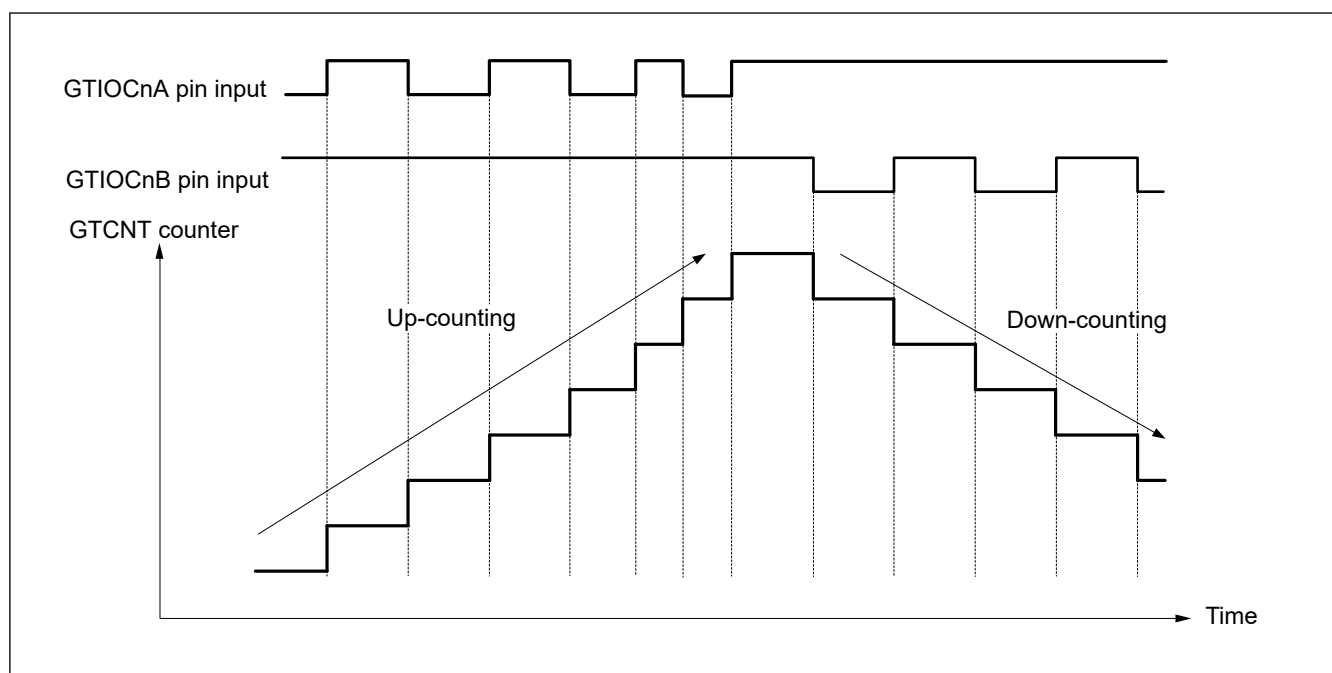
**Figure 20.51** Example of phase counting mode 3 (C)

Table 20.38 Conditions of up-counting/down-counting in phase counting mode 5 (B)

 : Rising edge
 : Falling edge

GTIOCnA pin input	GTIOCnB pin input	Operation	Register setting
High		Not counting	GTUPSR = 0x0000C000 GTDNSR = 0x00000000
Low		Up-counting	
	Low	Not counting	
	High		
High		Up-counting	
Low		Not counting	
	High		
	Low		

20.3.11 Output Phase Switching (GPT_OPS)

GPT_OPS provides a function for easy control of brushless DC motor operation using the Output Phase Switching Control Register (OPSCR).

GPT_OPS outputs a PWM signal to be used for chopper control or level signal for each phase (U-positive phase/negative phase, V-positive phase/negative phase, W-positive phase/negative phase) of the 6-phase motor control. This function uses a soft setting value (OPSCR.UF, VF, WF) set by software or external signals detected by the Hall element, a PWM waveform of GPT164.GTIOC4A.

Note: For 48-pin, 36-pin, 32-pin and 25-pin products, external signals detected by the Hall element is not supported.

Figure 20.55 shows the conceptual diagram of GPT_OPS control flow.

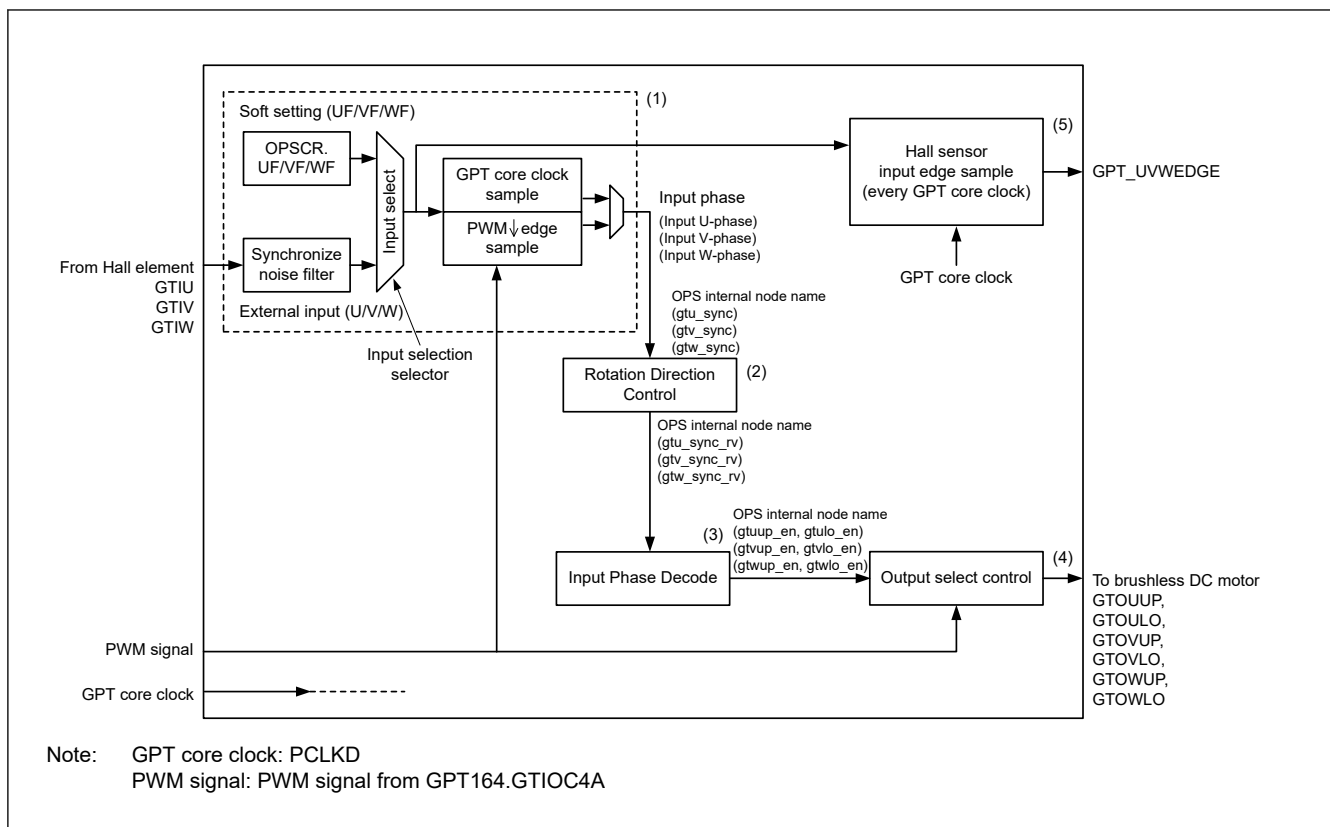


Figure 20.55 Conceptual diagram of GPT_OPS control flow

Figure 20.56 shows a 6-phase level signals output example of a GPT_OPS operation.

The GPT_UVWEDGE signal in Figure 20.56 is the Hall sensor input edge that outputs to the ELC.

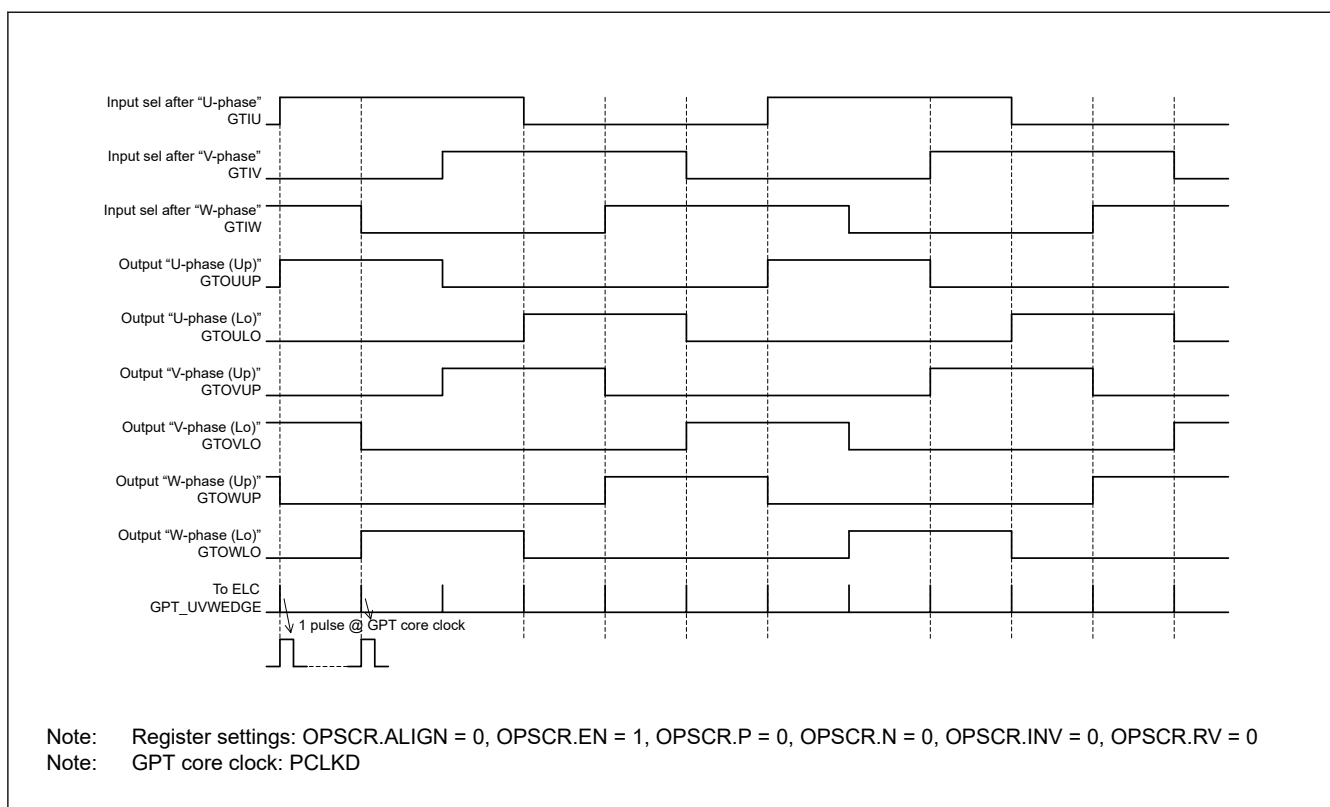


Figure 20.56 Example of 6-phase level output operation

Figure 20.57 shows a 6-phase PWM output example of a GPT_OPS operation with chopper control.

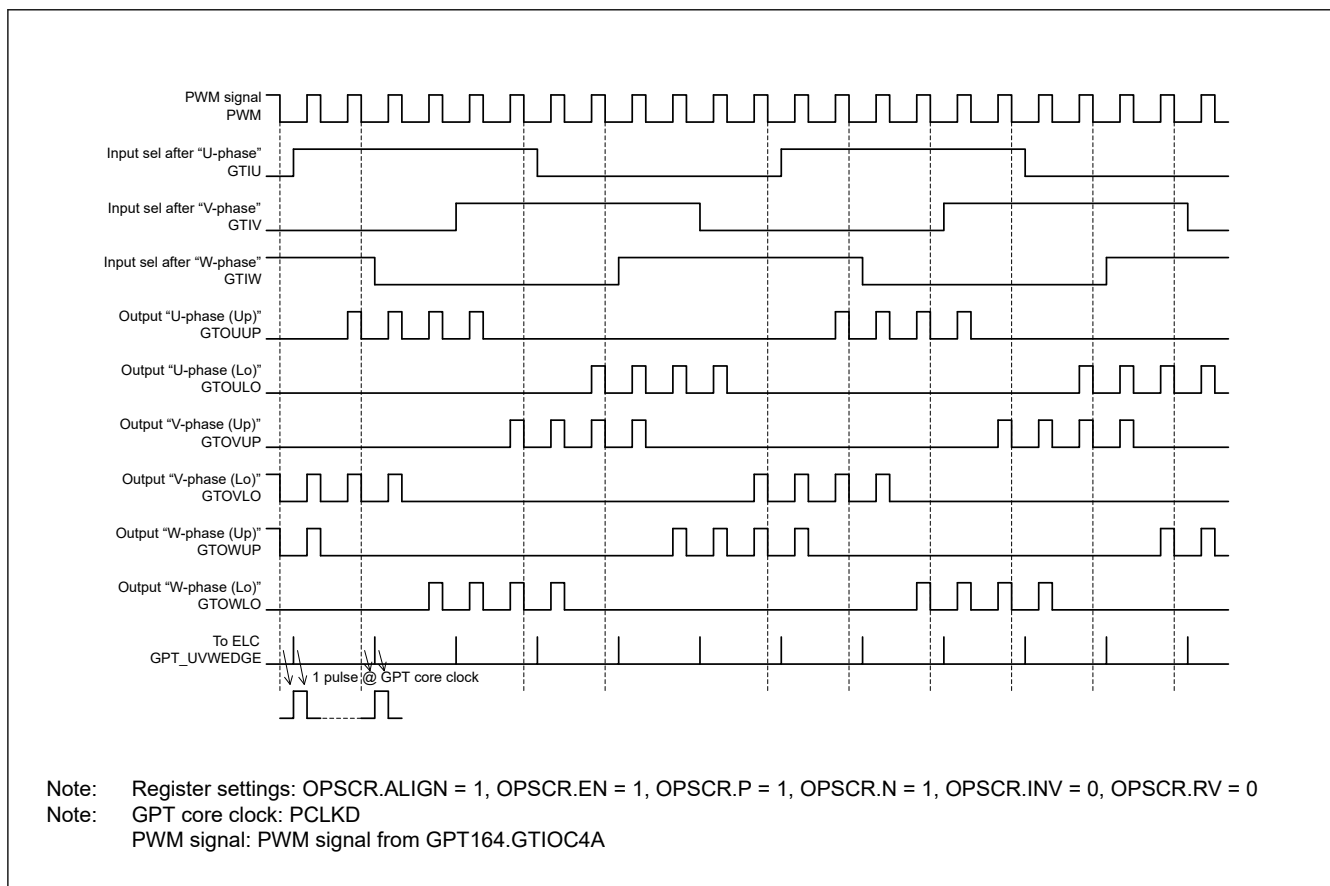


Figure 20.57 Example of 6-phase PWM output operation with chopper control

Figure 20.58 shows a 6-phase PWM output example of an output disable control operation.

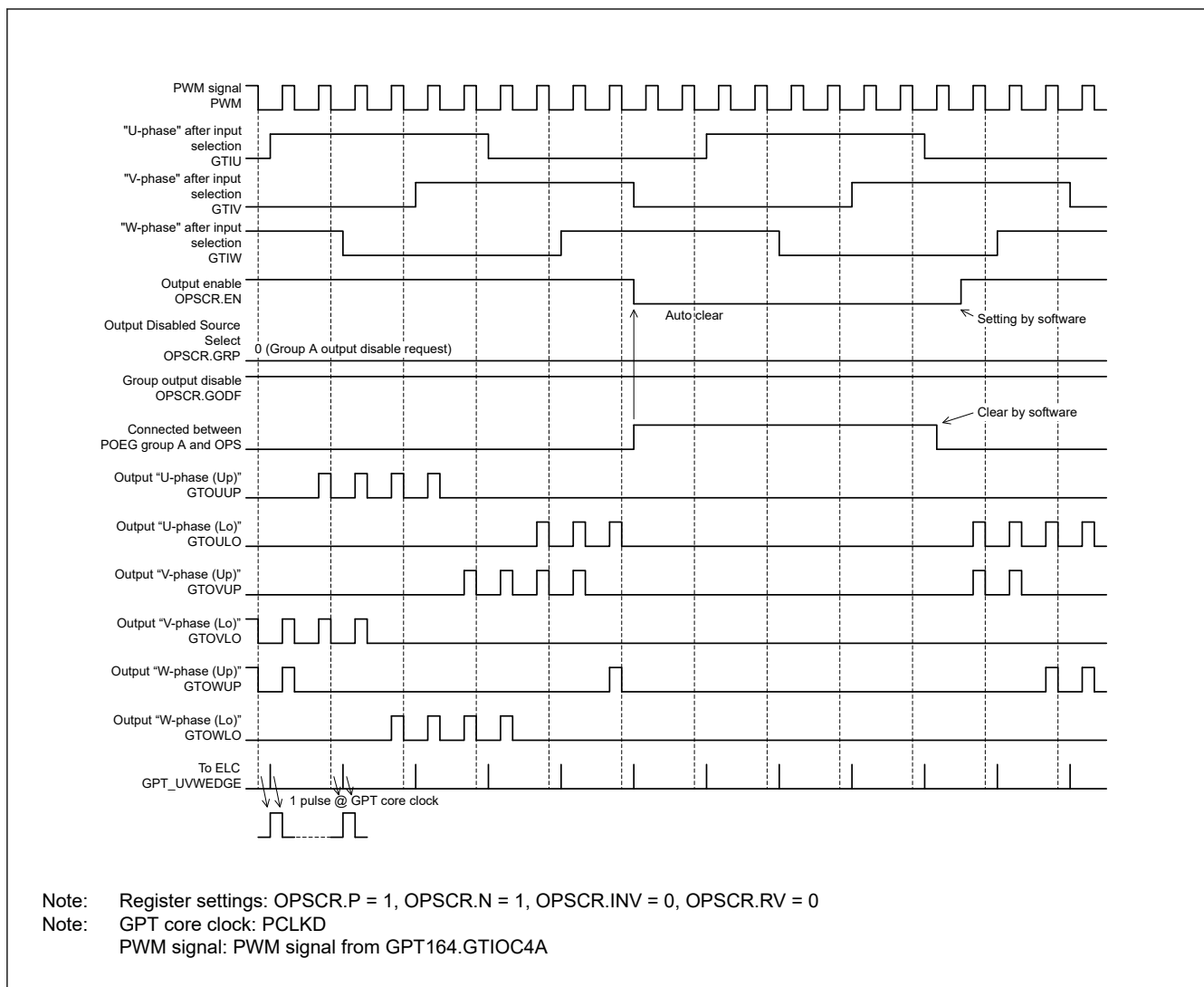


Figure 20.58 Example of group output disable control operation

20.3.11.1 Input Selection and Synchronization of External Input Signal

In the GPT_OPS control flow conceptual diagram shown in [Figure 20.55](#), (1) is a selection of input phase from the software settings and external input by the OPSCR.FB bit.

When the OPSCR.FB bit is 0, select the external input. Enable the input signal after synchronization with the GPT core clock (PCLKD). After carrying out noise filtering (optional), set the external input to the input phase of PWM (PWM of GPT164.GTIOC4A) using falling edge sampling with OPSCR.ALIGN bit set to 1.

When the OPSCR.FB bit is 1, select the soft setting (OPSCR.UF, VF, WF) with the value of the input phase of PWM (PWM of GPT164.GTIOC4A) using falling edge sampling with OPSCR.ALIGN bit set to 1.

When the OPSCR.ALIGN bit is 0, GPT_OPS operates with the input phase of PCLKD synchronization with either OPSCR.FB bit set to 0 or OPSCR.FB bit set to 1. However, there are cases where the PWM pulse width of the output U/V/W phases (PWM output mode) of switch timing (just before/just after) is shortened.

[Table 20.39](#) shows the input selection process and setting of associated OPSCR bits.

Table 20.39 Input selection processing method

Register OPSCR		Selection of input phase sampling method (U/V/W-phase)	Synchronization input/output selection process (GPT_OPS internal node name)
FB bit	ALIGN bit		
0	1	External Input at PWM Falling Edge Sampling (PCLKD synchronization + falling edge sample)	Input Phase Input U-Phase (gtu_sync) Input V-Phase (gtv_sync) Input W-Phase (gtw_sync)
	0	External Input at PCLKD Synchronization Output (PCLKD synchronization + through mode)	
1	1	Software Settings at PWM Falling Edge Sampling (OPSCR.UF, VF, WF of falling edge sample)	
	0	Software Setting Value Selection (= OPSCR.UF/VF/WF value) (= PCLKD synchronization)	

20.3.11.2 Input Sampling

The OPSCR.U, V, W bits indicate the PCLKD sampling results of the input selected in the OPSCR.FB bit.

When the OPSCR.FB bit is 0 and after synchronization with the GPT core clock (PCLKD) and noise filtering (optional), OPSCR.U, V, W bits indicate the sampling results of the external input. When the OPSCR.FB bit is 1, OPSCR.U, V, W bits are the value (OPSCR.UF, VF, WF) of the soft setting.

20.3.11.3 Input Phase Decode

In the GPT_OPS control flow conceptual diagram shown in [Figure 20.55](#), (3) enables the 6-phase signals by decoding the input phase selected in the OPSCR.FB bit.

[Table 20.40](#) shows the decode table of input phase when OPSCR.RV bit is 0.

Table 20.40 Decode table of input phase (OPSCR.RV = 0)

Input phase (U/V/W) (GPT_OPS internal node name)			6-phase enable {U/V/W (Up/Lo)} by decoding input phase (GPT_OPS internal node name)					
Input U-Phase	Input V-Phase	Input W-Phase	U-phase (Up)	U-phase (Lo)	V-phase (Up)	V-phase (Lo)	W-phase (Up)	W-phase (Lo)
(gtu_sync)	(gtv_sync)	(gtw_sync)	(gtuup_en)	(gtulo_en)	(gtvup_en)	(gtvlo_en)	(gtwup_en)	(gtwlo_en)
1	0	1	1	0	0	1	0	0
1	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	1
1	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	1
0	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	0
0	1	1	0	1	0	0	1	0
0	0	1	0	0	0	1	1	0
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
1	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0

Table 20.41 Decode table of input phase (OPSCR.RV = 1) (1 of 2)

Input phase (U/V/W) (GPT_OPS internal node name)			6-phase enable {U/V/W (Up/Lo)} by decoding input phase (GPT_OPS internal node name)					
Input U-Phase	Input V-Phase	Input W-Phase	U-phase (Up)	U-phase (Lo)	V-phase (Up)	V-phase (Lo)	W-phase (Up)	W-phase (Lo)
(gtu_sync)	(gtv_sync)	(gtw_sync)	(gtuup_en)	(gtulo_en)	(gtvup_en)	(gtvlo_en)	(gtwup_en)	(gtwlo_en)
1	0	1	0	1	1	0	0	0
1	0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0
1	1	0	0	0	0	1	1	0

Table 20.41 Decode table of input phase (OPSCR.RV = 1) (2 of 2)

Input phase (U/V/W) (GPT_OPS internal node name)			6-phase enable {U/V/W (Up/Lo)} by decoding input phase (GPT_OPS internal node name)					
Input U-Phase	Input V-Phase	Input W-Phase	U-phase (Up)	U-phase (Lo)	V-phase (Up)	V-phase (Lo)	W-phase (Up)	W-phase (Lo)
(gtu_sync)	(gtv_sync)	(gtw_sync)	(gtuup_en)	(gtulo_en)	(gtvup_en)	(gtvlo_en)	(gtwup_en)	(gtwlo_en)
0	1	0	1	0	0	1	0	0
0	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	1
0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	1
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
1	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0

20.3.11.4 Rotation Direction Control

In the GPT_OPS control flow conceptual diagram shown in [Figure 20.55](#), (2) controls the direction of rotation of a 3-phase motor using the OPSCR.RV bit.

When the rotation direction is reverse (RV bit = 1), the input phase is inverted.

[Table 20.42](#) shows the assigned output phases based on the OPSCR.RV bit setting (before and after rotation direction control).

Table 20.42 Rotation direction control method

Reversal of direction of rotation using output phases as specified in OPSCR register	Output of rotation direction control [U/V/W (positive/negative)]					
	(GPT_OPS internal node name after control)					
OPSCR.RV bit	(gtuup_ren)	(gtulo_ren)	(gtvup_ren)	(gtvlo_ren)	(gtwup_ren)	(gtwlo_ren)
0	U-phase (Up) (gtuup_en)	U-phase (Lo) (gtulo_en)	V-phase (Up) (gtvup_en)	V-phase (Lo) (gtvlo_en)	W-phase (Up) (gtwup_en)	W-phase (Lo) (gtwlo_en)
1	U-phase (Up) (gtuup_en)	U-phase (Lo) (gtulo_en)	W-phase (Up) (gtwup_en)	W-phase (Lo) (gtwlo_en)	V-phase (Up) (gtvup_en)	V-phase (Lo) (gtvlo_en)

20.3.11.5 Output Selection Control

In the GPT_OPS control flow conceptual diagram in [Figure 20.55](#), (4) represents the selection of the output waveform by setting the OPSCR register bit.

For output selection, the following bits are relevant:

- The OPSCR.EN bit controls whether to output the 6-phase output, or to stop
- The OPSCR.P and OPSCR.N bits can select from the level signal or PWM signal (chopper output) for the output phase
- The polarity of the output phase can be set to a positive logic or negative logic by the OPSCR.INV bit.

[Table 20.43](#) and [Table 20.44](#) show the output selection control method using the OPSCR register bit.

Table 20.43 Output selection control method (positive phase) (1 of 2)

Enable-phase output control	Positive-phase output (P) control	Invert-phase output control	Output port name (positive phase = up) (output selection internal node allocation)	
OPSCR.EN	OPSCR.P	OPSCR.INV	GTOUUP GTOVUP GTOWUP	Mode
0	x	x	0	Output Stop (External pin: Hi-Z) GPT_OPS → 0 output

Table 20.43 Output selection control method (positive phase) (2 of 2)

Enable-phase output control	Positive-phase output (P) control	Invert-phase output control	Output port name (positive phase = up) (output selection internal node allocation)	
OPSCR.EN	OPSCR.P	OPSCR.INV	GTOUUP GTOVUP GTOWUP	Mode
1	0	0	Level signal (gtuup_ren) (gtvup_ren) (gtwup_ren)	Level Output Mode (Positive phase) (Positive logic)
1	0	1	Level signal (~gtuup_ren) (~gtvup_ren) (~gtwup_ren)	Level Output Mode (Positive phase) (Negative logic)
1	1	0	PWM signal (PWM & gtuup_ren) (PWM & gtvup_ren) (PWM & gtwup_ren)	PWM Output Mode (Positive phase) (Positive logic)
1	1	1	PWM signal (~(PWM & gtuup_ren)) (~(PWM & gtvup_ren)) (~(PWM & gtwup_ren))	PWM Output Mode (Positive phase) (Negative logic)

Table 20.44 Output selection control method (negative phase)

Enable-phase output control	Positive-phase output (N) control	Invert-phase output control	Output port name (negative phase = Lo) (output selection internal node allocation)	
OPSCR.EN	OPSCR.N	OPSCR.INV	GTOULO GTOVLO GTOWLO	Mode
0	x	x	0	Output Stop (External pin: Hi-Z) GPT_OPS → 0 output
1	0	0	Level signal (gtulo_ren) (gtvlo_ren) (gtwlo_ren)	Level Output Mode (Negative phase) (Positive logic)
1	0	1	Level signal (~gtulo_ren) (~gtvlo_ren) (~gtwlo_ren)	Level Output Mode (Negative phase) (Negative logic)
1	1	0	PWM signal (PWM & gtulo_ren) (PWM & gtvlo_ren) (PWM & gtwlo_ren)	PWM Output Mode (Negative phase) (Positive logic)
1	1	1	PWM signal (~(PWM & gtulo_ren)) (~(PWM & gtvlo_ren)) (~(PWM & gtwlo_ren))	PWM Output Mode (Negative phase) (Negative logic)

20.3.11.6 Output Selection Control (Group Output Disable Function)

When OPSCR.GODF is 1 and the signal value selected by the OPSCR.GRP bit is high (output disable request), the group output-disable function asynchronously sets the output to Hi-Z. When an output-disable request is generated, the OPSCR.EN bit is cleared to 0. For the return, set the OPSCR.EN bit to 1 after clearing the output disable request by software.

To ensure output-disable control, use the POEG_GROUPn (n = A, B) interrupt to clear the flag in the POE or check that the OPSCR.EN bit is 0 and then clear the flag. For an example of the operation for group output disable control, see [Figure 20.58](#).

20.3.11.7 Event Link Controller (ELC) Output

In the GPT_OPS control flow conceptual diagram shown in [Figure 20.55](#), (5) outputs the Hall sensor input signal edge to the ELC.

The Hall sensor input edge signal is the logical OR of the rising and falling edge signals of each U-phase/V-phase/W-phase input sampled at PCLKD. That is, if the high period of each of the U-phase/V-phase/W-phase of the input phase is short in duration, the Hall sensor edge input signal is not output at that time.

When the OPSCR.FB bit is 0, the Hall sensor input edge signal is the logical OR of the edge signals of the external input phase sampled at PCLKD.

When OPSCR.FB bit is 1, the Hall sensor input edge signal is the logical OR of the edge of the soft setting (OPSCR.UF, VF, WF) sampled at PCLKD.

See [Figure 20.56](#) to [Figure 20.58](#) for examples of the output signal to the ELC.

20.3.11.8 GPT_OPS Start Operation Setting Flow

Table 20.45 Example setting of GPT_OPS start operation

No.	Step name	Description
1	GPT164 operation mode setting	GPT164.GTIOC4A set the PWM output operation mode of the saw-wave or triangle-wave. For details, see section 20.3.3. PWM Output Operating Mode .
2	Counting of GPT164	Start the count operation of GPT164, and outputs a PWM waveform.
3	GPT_OPS input data set (only software setting is selected)	Set software setting to OPSCR.UF, VF, and WF bits.
4	Noise filter settings of GPT_OPS external input (only external input is selected)	When using a noise filter, set the sampling clock of the noise filter by OPSCR.NFCS[1:0] bits. Then the noise filter is enabled if OPSCR.NFEN = 1.
5	GPT_OPS input phase selection setting/input phase alignment setting	Select the input phase from the external input or software setting by OPSCR.FB bit. Select the alignment of the input phase by OPSCR.ALIGN bit.
6	Setting the GPT_OPS output phase	Set the level output/PWM output of the positive/negative phase output by OPSCR.P/OPSCR.N bit. Set the positive logic/negative logic of the output phase by OPSCR.INV bit. Set the rotation direction by OPSCR.RV bit.
7	GPT_OPS setting the group output disable function	Set the selection of output disable source by OPSCR.GRP bit. Perform the setting of on/off of the group output disable function by OPSCR.GODF bit.
8	GPT_OPS Working	Setting the OPSCR.EN = 1 outputs the 6-phase output to drive the brushless DC motor from the GPT_OPS.

20.4 Interrupt Sources

20.4.1 Interrupt Sources

The GPT provides the following interrupt sources:

- GTCCR input capture/compare match
- GTCNT counter overflow (GTPR compare match)/underflow.

Each interrupt source has its own status flag. When an interrupt source signal is generated, the associated status flag in GTST is set to 1. The associated status flag in GTST can be cleared by writing 0. If flag set and flag clear occur at the same time, flag clear takes priority over flag set. These flags are automatically updated by the internal state. The Interrupt Controller Unit can change the relative channel priorities. However, the priority within a channel is fixed. For details, see [section 12, Interrupt Controller Unit \(ICU\)](#).

[Table 20.46](#) lists the GPT interrupt sources.

Table 20.46 Interrupt sources

Channel	Name	Interrupt source	Interrupt flag	DTC activation
n = 0	GPTn_CCMPA	GPT32n.GTCCRA input capture/compare match	GTST[0] (TCFA)	Possible
	GPTn_CCMPB	GPT32n.GTCCRB input capture/compare match	GTST[1] (TCFB)	Possible
	GPTn_CMPC	GPT32n.GTCCRC compare match	GTST[2] (TCFC)	Possible
	GPTn_CMPD	GPT32n.GTCCRD compare match	GTST[3] (TCFD)	Possible
	GPTn_OVF	GPT32n.GTCNT overflow (GPT32m.GTPR compare match)	GTST[6] (TCFPO)	Possible
	GPTn_UDF	GPT32n.GTCNT underflow	GTST[7] (TCFPU)	Possible
n = 4 to 9	GPTn_CCMPA	GPT16n.GTCCRA input capture/compare match	GTST[0] (TCFA)	Possible
	GPTn_CCMPB	GPT16n.GTCCRB input capture/compare match	GTST[1] (TCFB)	Possible
	GPTn_CMPC	GPT16n.GTCCRC compare match	GTST[2] (TCFC)	Possible
	GPTn_CMPD	GPT16n.GTCCRD compare match	GTST[3] (TCFD)	Possible
	GPTn_OVF	GPT16n.GTCNT overflow (GPT16n.GTPR compare match)	GTST[6] (TCFPO)	Possible
	GPTn_UDF	GPT16n.GTCNT underflow	GTST[7] (TCFPU)	Possible

(1) GPTn_CCMPA interrupt (n = 0, 4 to 9)

An interrupt request is generated under the following conditions:

- When the GTCCRA register functions as a compare match register, the GTCNT counter value matches with the GTCCRA register
- When the GTCCRA register functions as an input capture register, the input-capture signal causes transfer of the GTCNT counter value to the GTCCRA register.

(2) GPTn_CCMPB interrupt (n = 0, 4 to 9)

An interrupt request is generated under the following conditions:

- When the GTCCRB register functions as a compare match register, the GTCNT counter value matches with the GTCCRB register
- When the GTCCRB register functions as an input capture register, the input-capture signal causes transfer of the GTCNT counter value to the GTCCRB register.

(3) GPTn_CMPC interrupt (n = 0, 4 to 9)

An interrupt request is generated under the following condition:

- When the GTCCRC register functions as a compare match register, the GTCNT counter value matches with the GTCCRC register.

A compare match is not performed and therefore, an interrupt is not requested in the following conditions:

- GTCR.MD[2:0] = 001b (saw-wave one-shot pulse mode)
- GTCR.MD[2:0] = 110b (triangle-wave PWM mode 3)
- GTBER.CCRA[1:0] = 01b, 10b, 11b (buffer operation with the GTCCRC register).

(4) GPTn_CMPD interrupt (n = 0, 4 to 9)

An interrupt request is generated under the following condition:

- When the GTCCRD register functions as a compare match register, the GTCNT counter value matches with the GTCCRD register.

A compare match is not performed and therefore, an interrupt is not requested in the following conditions:

- GTCR.MD[2:0] = 001b (saw-wave one-shot pulse mode)
- GTCR.MD[2:0] = 110b (triangle-wave PWM mode 3)

- GTBER.CCRA[1:0] = 10b, 11b (buffer operation with the GTCCRD register).

(5) GPTn_OVF interrupt (n = 0, 4 to 9)

An interrupt request is generated in the following conditions:

- In saw-wave mode, interrupt requests are enabled at overflows (when the GTCNT counter value changes from GTPR to 0 during up-counting)
- In triangle-wave mode, interrupt requests are enabled at crests (the GTCNT changes from GTPR to GTPR-1)
- In counting by hardware sources, an overflow (GTCNT changes from GTPR to 0 in up count) has occurred.

(6) GPTn_UDF interrupt (n = 0, 4 to 9)

An interrupt request is generated in the following conditions.

- In saw-wave mode, interrupt requests are enabled at underflows (when the GTCNT counter value changes from 0 to GTPR during down-counting)
- In triangle-wave mode, interrupt requests are enabled at troughs (the GTCNT changes from 0 to 1)
- In counting by hardware sources, underflow (GTCNT changes from 0 to GTPR in down count) has occurred.

About Interrupt signals and interrupt status flags, see [section 20.2.16. GTST : General PWM Timer Status Register](#).

20.4.2 DTC Activation

The DTC can be activated by the interrupt in each channel. For details, see [section 12, Interrupt Controller Unit \(ICU\)](#), and [section 15, Data Transfer Controller \(DTC\)](#).

20.5 Operations Linked by ELC

20.5.1 Event Signal Output to ELC

The GPT can perform operation linked with another module set in advance when its interrupt request signal is used as an event signal by the Event Link Controller (ELC).

The GPT has the following ELC event signals:

- Generation of compare match and input capture A interrupt (GPTn_CCMPA)
- Generation of compare match and input capture B interrupt (GPTn_CCMPB)
- Generation of compare match C interrupt (GPTn_CMPC)
- Generation of compare match D interrupt (GPTn_CMPD)
- Generation of overflow interrupt (GPTn_OVF)
- Generation of underflow interrupt (GPTn_UDF)

Note: n = 0, 4 to 9

20.5.2 Event Signal Inputs from ELC

The GPT can perform the following operations in response to a maximum of 4 events from the ELC:

- Start counting, stop counting, clear counting
- Up-counting, down-counting
- Input capture.

See [section 16, Event Link Controller \(ELC\)](#) for the connection between the ELC and the event signal input.

20.6 Noise Filter Function

Each pin for use in input capture and Hall sensor input to the GPT is equipped with a noise filter. The noise filter samples input signals at the sampling clock and removes the pulses whose length is less than 3 sampling cycles.

The noise filter functionality includes enabling and disabling the noise filter for each pin and setting of the sampling clock for each channel.

Figure 20.59 shows the timing of noise filtering.

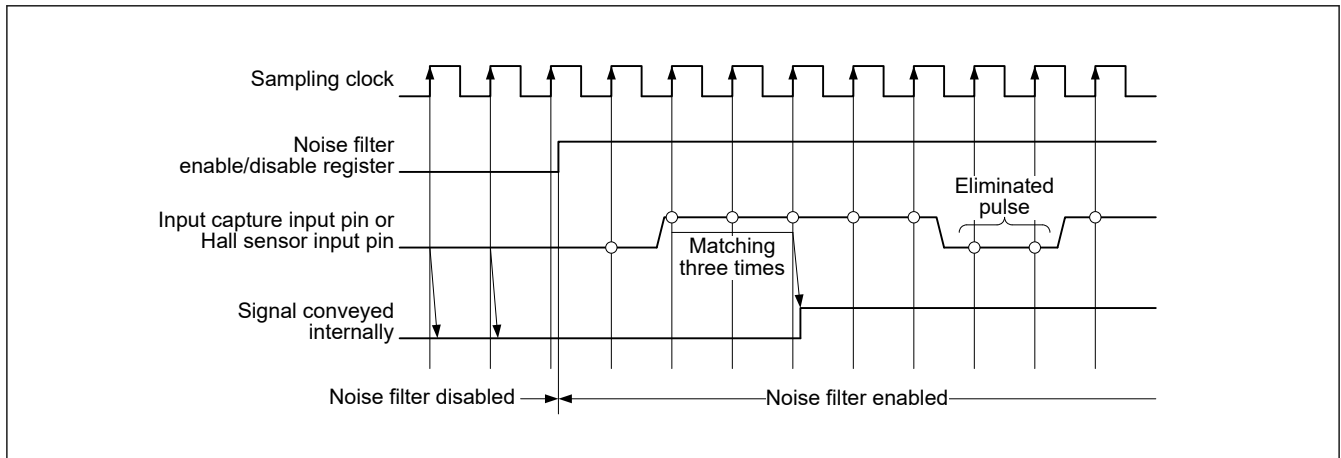


Figure 20.59 Timing of noise filtering

If noise filtering is enabled, the input capture operation or hall sensor input operation is performed on the edges of the noise filtered signal after a delay of (sampling interval $\times$ 2 + PCLKD) at the shortest. This is due to the noise filtering for the input capture input or hall sensor input.

20.7 Protection Function

20.7.1 Write-protection for Registers

To prevent registers from being accidentally modified, registers can be write-protected in channel units by setting GTWP.WP. Write-protection can be set for the following registers:

GTSSR, GTPSR, GTCSSR, GTUPSR, GTDNSR, GTICASR, GTICBSR, GTCR, GTUDDTYC, GTIOR, GTINTAD, GTST, GTBER, GTCNT, GTCCRA, GTCCRB, GTCCRC, GTCCRD, GTCCRE, GTCCRF, GTPR, GTPBR, GTDTCR, GTDVU.

Protection using the GTWP register is only for write operations by the CPU. This protection does not cover updates to registers that occur in association with CPU writes.

20.7.2 Disabling of Buffer Operation

If the timing of the buffer register write is delayed relative to the timing for the buffer transfer, buffer operation can be suspended with the GTBER.BD[1] and BD[0] bits settings. Specifically, buffer transfer can be temporarily disabled even though a buffer transfer condition is generated during buffer register write, by setting the BD[1] and BD[0] bits to 1 (buffer operation disabled) before buffer register write, and setting the bits to 0 (buffer operation enabled) after completion of writing to all the buffer registers.

Figure 20.60 shows an example of operation for disabling buffer operation.

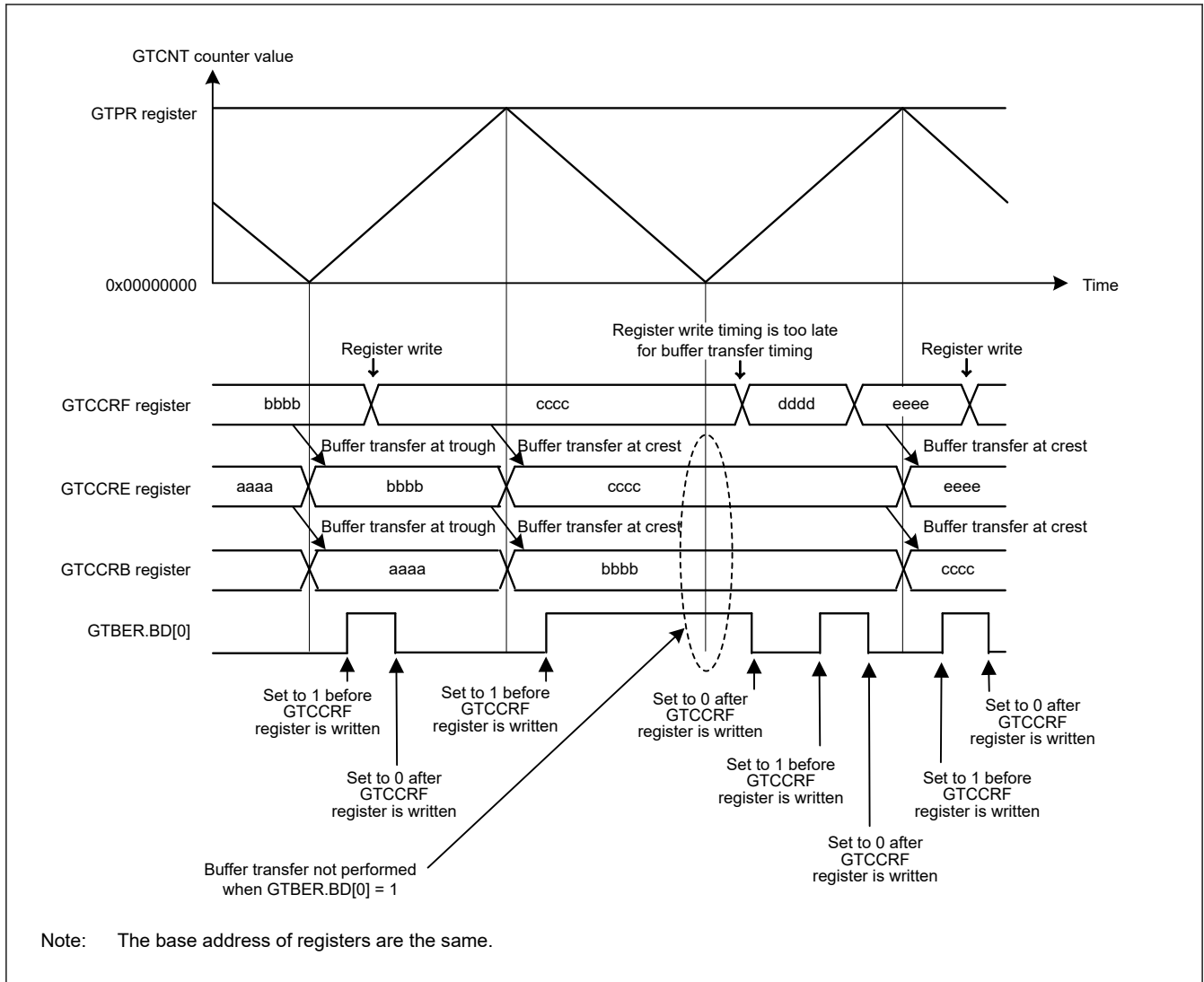


Figure 20.60 Example of operation for disabling buffer operation with triangle waves, double buffer operation, and buffer transfer at both troughs and crests

20.7.3 GTIOCnm Pin Output Negate Control (n = 0, 4 to 9, m = A, B)

For protection from system failure, the output disable control that changes the GTIOCnm pin output value forcibly is provided for GTIOCnm pin output by the request of output disable from POEG. Output protection is required when the same output level being on the GTIOCnA and GTIOCnB pins is detected. GPT detects this condition and generates output disable requests to POEG according to the setting of the output disable request permission bits, such as GTINTAD.GRPABH, GTINTAD.GRPABL. After the POEG performs the logical OR of the output disable request from each channel and the output disable request from the external input, the POEG generates output disable requests to GPT.

One output disable signal (representing the shared output disable request signal of the GTIOCnA pin and the GTIOCnB pin) out of 2 output disable requests generated by the POEG is selected by setting GTINTAD.GRP[1:0]. The status of the selected disable output request is monitored by reading the GTST.ODF bit. The output level during output disable is set based on the GTIOR.OADF[1:0] bits for the GTIOCnA pin and the GTIOR.OBDF[1:0] setting for the GTIOCnB pin.

The change to the output disable state is performed asynchronously by generating the output disable request from the POEG. The release of the output disable state is performed at the end of the cycle by terminating the output disable request. It is after 3 PCLKD at the shortest when the output disable condition is released after the output disable request becomes no longer satisfied. To reliably control output disabling, clear the flag of POEG for which the condition for the request to disable the output is no longer satisfied after 4 cycles of PCLKD.

When event count is performed or when the output disable state should be released immediately without waiting for the end of the cycle, GTIOR.OADF[1:0] should be set to 00b (for GTIOCnA pin) or GTIOR.OBDF[1:0] should be set to 00b (for the GTIOCnB pin).

Figure 20.61 shows an example of the GTIOCnm pin output disable control operation. (n = 0, 4 to 9, m = A, B)

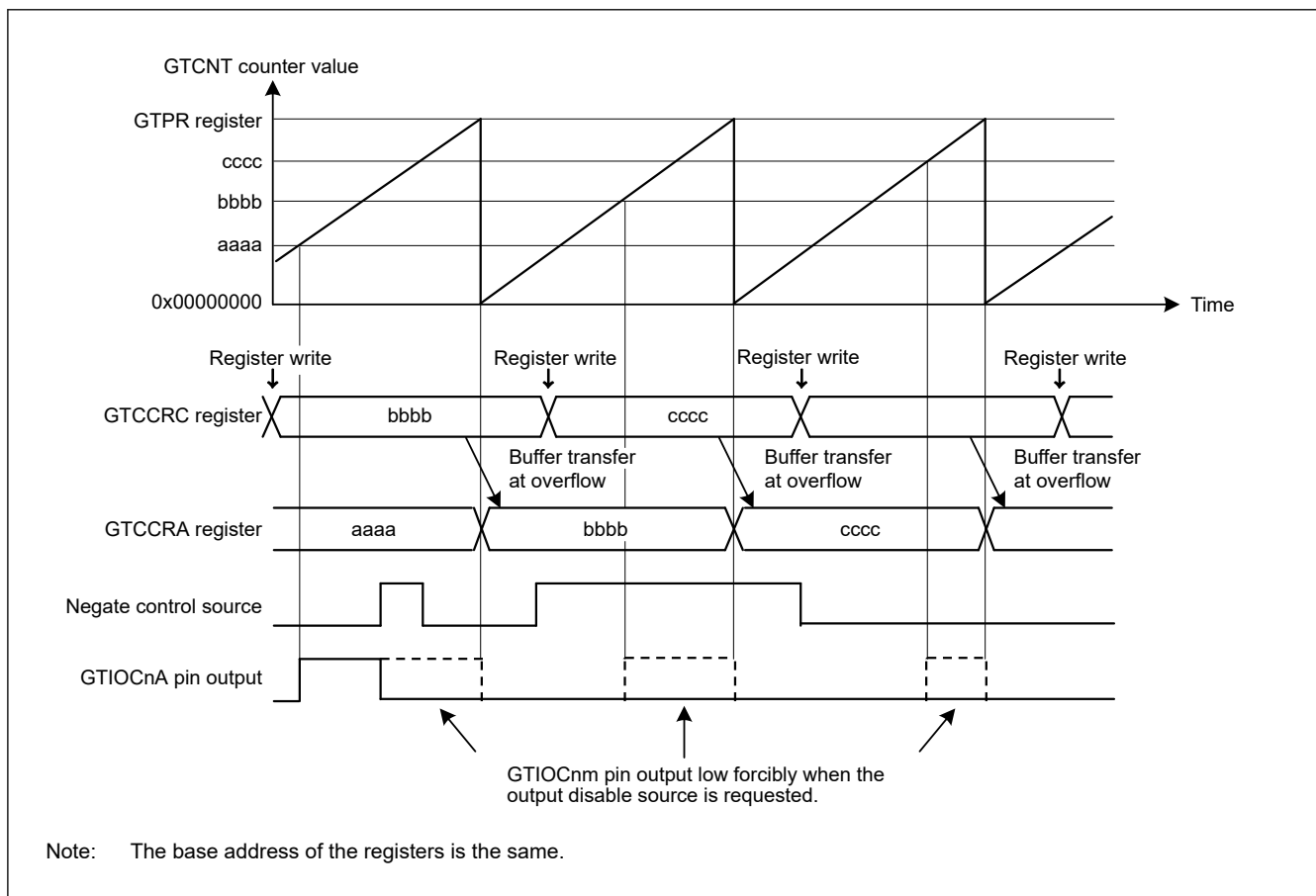


Figure 20.61 Example of GTIOCnm pin output disable control operation in saw-wave up-counting, buffer operation, active level 1, high output at GTCCRA compare match, low output at cycle end, and low output at output disable (n = 0, 4 to 9, m = A, B)

20.8 Initialization Method of Output Pins

20.8.1 Pin Settings After Reset

The GPT registers are initialized at a reset. Start counting after selecting the port pin function with the PmnPFS register, setting GTIOR.OAE and GTIOR.OBE bits, and outputting the GPT function to external pins.

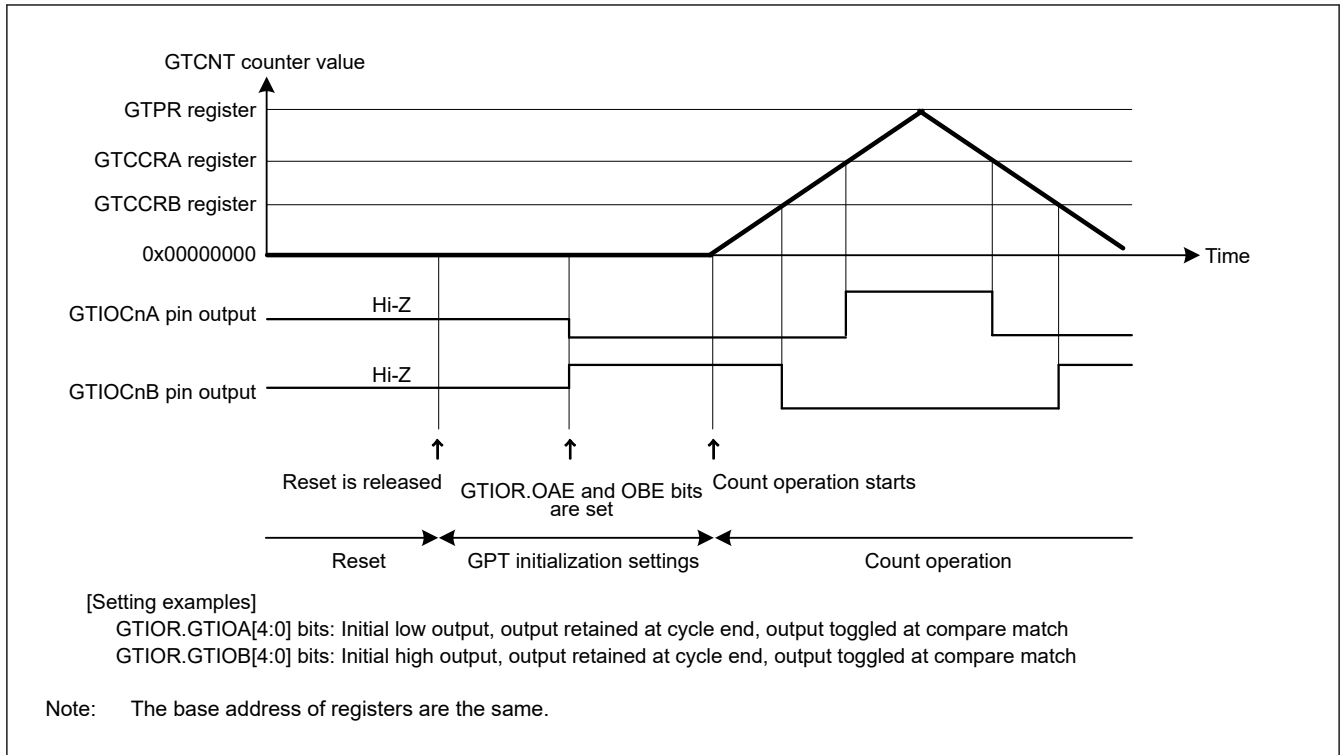


Figure 20.62 Example of pin settings after reset

20.8.2 Pin Initialization Due to Error During Operation

If an error occurs during GPT operation, the following four types of pin control can be performed before pin initialization:

- Set the OAHLD and OBHLD bits in GTIOR to 1 and retain the outputs at count stop
- Set the OAHLD and OBHLD bits in GTIOR to 0, specify arbitrary output values at OADFLT and OBDFLT in GTIOR, and output the arbitrary values at count stop
- Set the pin to output an arbitrary value as a general output port by setting the PDR, PODR registers and PmnPFS.PMR bit of the I/O port in advance. Set the OAE and OBE bits in GTIOR to 0, and the control bit associated with the pin in the PMR to 0 to allow arbitrary values to be output from the pin set as a general output port when an error occurs.
- Drive the output to a high impedance state using the POEG function.

If the automatic dead time setting is made, clear the GTDTCR.TDE bit to 0 after counting stops. When counting stops, only the values of registers that are changed by a GPT external source change. If counting is resumed, the operation continues from where it stopped. If counting is stopped, the registers must be initialized before counting starts.

20.9 Usage Notes

20.9.1 Module-stop Function Setting

The Module Stop Control Register can enable or disable GPT operation. The GPT is initially stopped after a reset. Releasing the module-stop state enables access to the registers. For details, see [section 10, Low Power Modes](#).

20.9.2 GTCCRN Settings During Compare Match Operation (n = A to F)

(1) When automatic dead time setting is made in triangle-wave PWM mode

The GTCCRA register must satisfy all of the following conditions:

- $GTDVU < GTCCRA$
- $0 < GTCCRA < GTPR$

(2) When automatic dead time setting is not made in triangle-wave PWM mode

The GTCCRA register must be set within the range of $0 < GTCCRA < GTPR$. If $GTCCRA = 0$ or $GTCCRA = GTPR$ is set, a compare match occurs within the cycle only when $GTCCRA = 0$ or $GTCCRA = GTPR$ is satisfied. When $GTCCRA > GTPR$, no compare match occurs.

Similarly, GTCCRB must be set within the range of $0 < GTCCRB < GTPR$. If $GTCCRB = 0$ or $GTCCRB = GTPR$ is set, a compare match occurs within the cycle only when $GTCCRB = 0$ or $GTCCRB = GTPR$ is satisfied. When $GTCCRB > GTPR$, no compare match occurs.

(3) When automatic dead time setting is made in saw-wave one-shot pulse mode

The GTCCRC and GTCCRD registers must be set to satisfy the following restrictions. If the restrictions are not satisfied, the correct output waveforms with secured dead time may not be obtained.

- In up-counting: $GTCCRC < GTCCRD$, $GTCCRC > GTDVU$, $GTCCRD < GTPR - GTDVU$
- In down-counting: $GTCCRC > GTCCRD$, $GTCCRC < GTPR - GTDVU$, $GTCCRD > GTDVU$

(4) When automatic dead time setting is not made in saw-wave one-shot pulse mode

The GTCCRC and GTCCRD registers must be set to satisfy the following restrictions. If the restrictions are not satisfied, two compare matches do not occur and pulse output cannot be performed.

- In up-counting: $0 < GTCCRC < GTCCRD < GTPR$
- In down-counting: $GTPR > GTCCRC > GTCCRD > 0$

Similarly, GTCCRE and GTCCRF must be set to satisfy the following restrictions. If the restrictions are not satisfied, two compare matches do not occur and pulse output cannot be performed.

- In up-counting: $0 < GTCCRE < GTCCRF < GTPR$
- In down-counting: $GTPR > GTCCRE > GTCCRF > 0$.

(5) In saw-wave PWM mode

The GTCCRA register must be set with the range of $0 < GTCCRA < GTPR$. If $GTCCRA = 0$ or $GTCCRA = GTPR$ is set, a compare match occurs within the cycle only when $GTCCRA = 0$ or $GTCCRA = GTPR$ is satisfied. If $GTCCRA > GTPR$ is set, no compare match occurs.

Similarly, GTCCRB must be set with the range of $0 < GTCCRB < GTPR$. If $GTCCRB = 0$ or $GTCCRB = GTPR$ is set, a compare match occurs within the cycle only when $GTCCRB = 0$ or $GTCCRB = GTPR$ is satisfied. If $GTCCRB > GTPR$ is set, no compare match occurs.

20.9.3 Setting Range for GTCNT Counter

The GTCNT counter register must be set with the range of $0 \leq GTCNT \leq GTPR$.

20.9.4 Starting and Stopping the GTCNT Counter

The control timing of starting and stopping the GTCNT counter by the GTCR.CST bit synchronizes the count clock that is selected in GTCR.TPCS[2:0]. When GTCR.CST is updated, the GTCNT counter starts/stops after a count clock that is selected in GTCR.TPCS[2:0]. Therefore, an event generated before the GTCNT counter actually starts is ignored, resulting in situations in which an event is accepted or an interrupt occurs after GTCR.CST is set to 0.

20.9.5 Priority Order of Each Event**(1) GTCNT register**

Table 20.47 shows a priority order of events updating the GTCNT register.

Table 20.47 Priority order of sources updating GTCNT

Source updating GTCNT	Priority order
Writing by CPU (writing to GTCNT/GTCLR)	High
Clear by hardware sources set in GTCSR	↑
Count up or down by hardware sources set in GTUPSR/GTDNSR	↑
Count operation	Low

If up-counting and down-counting by hardware sources occur at the same time, the GTCNT counter value does not change. When there is a conflict between updating the GTCNT register and reading by the CPU, preupdate data is read.

(2) GTCR.CST bit

When there is a conflict between starting/stopping by hardware sources set in the GTSSR/GTPSR registers and writing by the CPU (writing to GTCR/GTSTR/GTSTP registers), the writing by CPU has priority over the starting/stopping by hardware sources.

When there is a conflict between starting by hardware sources set in the GTSSR register and stopping by hardware sources set in GTPSR register, the GTCR.CST bit value does not change. When there is a conflict between updating the GTCR.CST bit and reading by the CPU (reading from GTCR/GTSTR/GTSTP registers), preupdate data is read.

(3) GTCCRm registers (m = A to F)

When there is a conflict between input capture/buffer transfer operation and writing to the GTCCRm registers, the writing to GTCCRm registers has priority over input capture/buffer transfer operation. When there is a conflict between input capture and writing to the counter register by the CPU or updating the counter register by hardware sources, the preupdate counter value is captured. When there is a conflict between updating the GTCCRm registers and reading by the CPU, preupdate data is read.

(4) GTPR register

When there is a conflict between buffer transfer operation and writing to the GTPR register, writing to the GTPR register has priority over buffer transfer operation. When there is a conflict between updating the GTPR register and reading by the CPU, preupdate data is read.

21. Low Power Asynchronous General Purpose Timer (AGTW)

21.1 Overview

The Low Power Asynchronous General Purpose Timer (AGTW) is a 32-bit timer that can be used for pulse output, external pulse width or period measurement, and counting external events. This timer consists of a reload register and a down counter. The reload register and the down counter are allocated to the same address, and can be accessed with the AGT register.

Table 21.1 lists the AGTW specifications, Figure 21.1 shows a block diagram, and Table 21.2 lists the I/O pins.

Table 21.1 AGTW specifications

Parameter		Description
Operating modes	Timer mode	The count source is counted
	Pulse output mode	The count source is counted and the output is inverted at each timer underflow
	Event counter mode	An external event is counted
	Pulse period measurement mode	An external pulse period is measured
Number of channels		32 bits × 2 channels (AGTWn (n = 0, 1))
Count source (Operating clock) ^{*2}	Timer mode	PCLKB, PCLKB/2, PCLKB/8, AGTSCLK/d, AGTLCLK/d (d = 1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, 64, or 128), or underflow signal of AGTW0 selectable. ^{*1}
	Pulse output mode	
	Pulse width measurement mode	
	Pulse period measurement mode	
	Event counting mode	External event input
Interrupt and Event Link function ^{*3}		- Underflow event signal or measurement complete event signal - When the counter underflows - When the measurement of the active width of the external input pin (AGTIO_n) completes in pulse width measurement mode - When the set edge of the external input pin (AGTIO_n) is input in pulse period measurement mode. - Compare match A event signal - When the values of the AGT register and AGTCMA register matched (compare match A function enabled). - Compare match B event signal - When the values of the AGT register and AGTCMB register matched (compare match B function enabled). - Return from Software Standby mode can be performed with AGTW1_AGTI, AGTW1_AGTCMAI, AGTW1_AGTCMBI, or AGTW0_AGTI^{*4}
Selectable functions		Compare match function One or two of the AGT Compare Match A register and AGT Compare Match B register is selectable.

Note 1. AGTW0 cannot use underflow signal. AGTW1 connects directly with the underflow event signal from the AGTW0 timer.

Note 2. Satisfy the frequency of the peripheral module clock (PCLKB) ≥ the frequency of the count source clock. But, when selecting AGTLCLK/d or AGTSCLK/d as the count source clock, the frequency of PCLKB should be at least twice that of the count source clock.

Note 3. The AGTWn (n = 0, 1) can use the event link function.

Note 4. See [section 10, Low Power Modes](#).

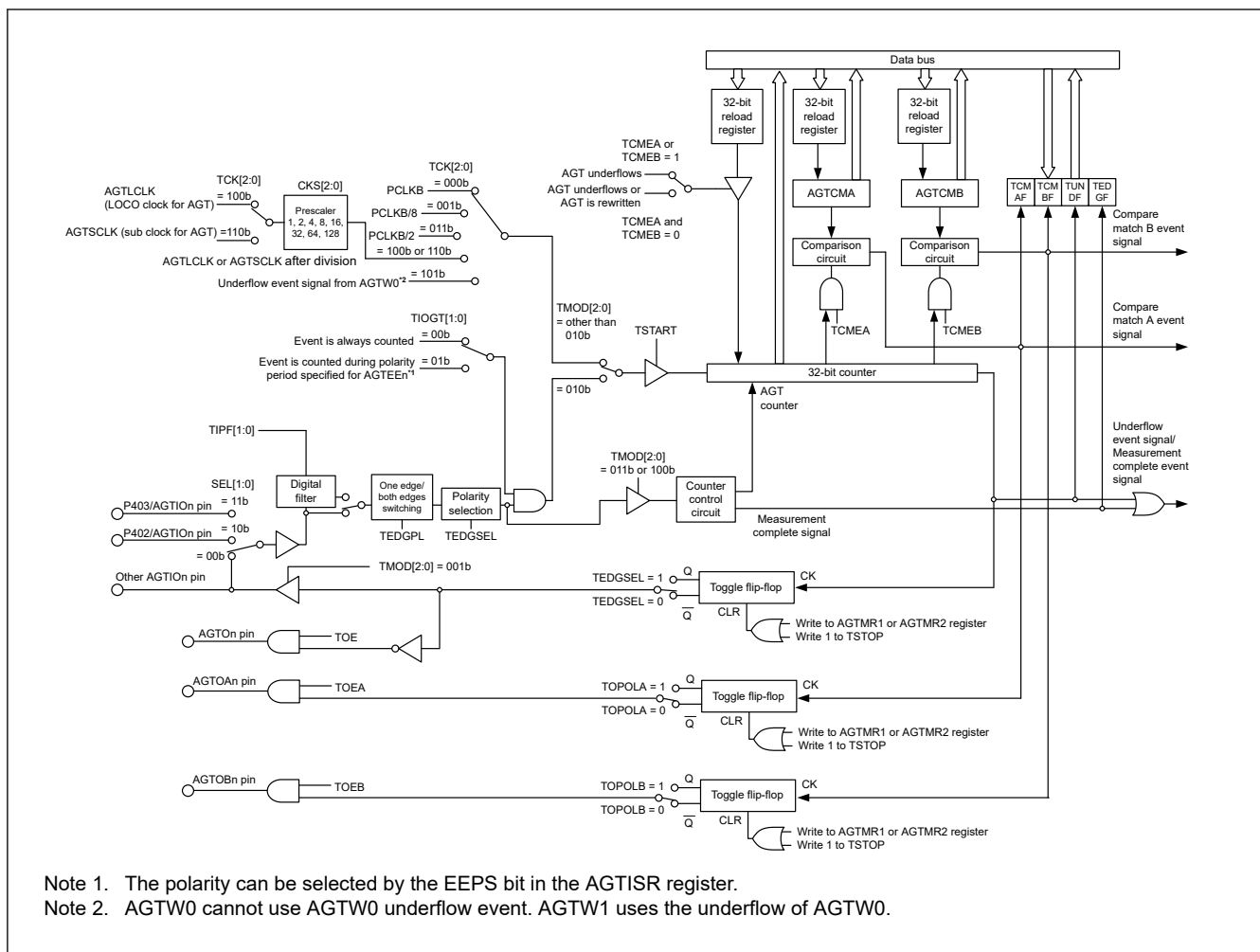


Figure 21.1 AGTW block diagram

Table 21.2 AGTW I/O pins

Pin name	I/O	Function
AGTEEn	Input	External event input enable for AGTW
AGTIOOn	Input/output	External event input and pulse output for AGTW
AGTOn	Output	Pulse output for AGTW
AGTOAn	Output	Compare match A output for AGTW
AGTOBn	Output	Compare match B output for AGTW

Note: Channel number: n = 0, 1

Note: P402, P403 can only be used as input.

21.2 Register Descriptions

21.2.1 AGT : AGT Counter Register

Base address: AGTWn = 0x4008_4000 + 0x0100 × n (n = 0, 1)

Offset address: 0x00

Bit position: 31

0

Bit field:

n/a

Value after reset: 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
31:0	n/a	32-bit counter and reload register Setting range : 0x00000000 to 0xFFFFFFFF	R/W

AGTWn.AGT is a 32-bit register. The write value is written to the reload register and the read value is read from the counter.

The states of the reload register and the counter change according to the TSTART bit in the AGTCR register and the TCMEA/TCMEB bit in the AGTCMSR register. For details, see [section 21.3.1. Reload Register and Counter Rewrite Operation](#).

When 1 is written to the TSTOP bit in the AGTCR register, the AGT counter is forcibly stopped and set to 0xFFFFFFFF.

When the TCK[2:0] bits setting in the AGTMR1 register are a value other than 001b (PCLKB/8) or 011b (PCLKB/2), if the AGT register is set to 0x00000000, a request signal to the ICU, the DTC, and the ELC is generated once immediately after the count starts. The AGTOn and AGTIO pin outputs are toggled.

When the AGT register is set to 0x00000000 in event counter mode, regardless of the value of TCK[2:0] bits, a request signal to the ICU, the DTC, and the ELC is generated once immediately after the count starts.

In addition, the AGTOn pin output is toggled even during a period other than the specified count period. When the AGT register is set to 0x00000001 or more, a request signal is generated each time AGT underflows.

21.2.2 AGTCMA : AGT Compare Match A Register

Base address: AGTWn = 0x4008_4000 + 0x0100 × n (n = 0, 1)

Offset address: 0x04

Bit position: 31

0

Bit field:

n/a

Value after reset: 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
31:0	n/a	32-bit compare match A data is stored*1 Setting range: 0x00000000 to 0xFFFFFFFF	R/W

Note 1. Set the AGTCMA register to 0xFFFFFFFF when compare match A is not used.

The AGTCMA register is a read/write register to set a value for compare match with the AGT counter. The states of the reload register and compare register A change according to the TSTART bit in the AGTCR register. For details, see [section 21.3.2. Reload Register and AGT Compare Match A/B Register Rewrite Operation](#).

21.2.3 AGTCMB : AGT Compare Match B Register

Base address: AGTWn = 0x4008_4000 + 0x0100 × n (n = 0, 1)

Offset address: 0x08

Bit position: 31

0

Bit field: n/a

Value after reset: 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
31:0	n/a	32-bit compare match B data is stored*1 Setting range: 0x00000000 to 0xFFFFFFFF	R/W

Note 1. Set the AGTCMB register to 0xFFFFFFFF when compare match B is not used.

The AGTCMB register is a read/write register to set a value for compare match with the AGT counter. The states of the reload register and compare register B change according to the TSTART bit in the AGTCR register. For details, see [section 21.3.2. Reload Register and AGT Compare Match A/B Register Rewrite Operation](#).

21.2.4 AGTCR : AGT Control Register

Base address: AGTWn = 0x4008_4000 + 0x0100 × n (n = 0, 1)

Offset address: 0x0C

Bit position: 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0

Bit field: TCMB F TCMA F TUNDF TEDGF — TSTOP TCST F TSTART

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	TSTART	AGT Count Start*2 0: Count stops 1: Count starts	R/W
1	TCSTF	AGT Count Status Flag*2 0: Count stopped 1: Count in progress	R
2	TSTOP	AGT Count Forced Stop*1 0: Writing is invalid 1: Count is forcibly stopped	W
3	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
4	TEDGF	Active Edge Judgment Flag 0: No active edge received 1: Active edge received	R/(W)*3
5	TUNDF	Underflow Flag 0: No underflow 1: Underflow	R/(W)*3
6	TCMAF	Compare Match A Flag 0: No match 1: Match	R/(W)*3
7	TCMBF	Compare Match B Flag 0: No match 1: Match	R/(W)*3

Note 1. When 1 (count is forcibly stopped) is written to the TSTOP bit, the TSTART bit and TCSTF flag are initialized at the same time. The pulse output level is also initialized. The read value is 0.

Note 2. For information on using the TSTART bit and TCSTF flag, see [section 21.4.1. Count Operation Start and Stop Control](#).

Note 3. Only 0 can be written to clear the flag.

TSTART bit (AGT Count Start)

The count operation is started by writing 1 to the TSTART bit and stopped by writing 0. When the TSTART bit is set to 1 (count starts), the TCSTF flag is set to 1 (count in progress) in synchronization with the count source. Also, after 0 is written to the TSTART bit, the TCSTF flag is set to 0 (count stops) in synchronization with the count source. For details, see [section 21.4.1. Count Operation Start and Stop Control](#).

TCSTF flag (AGT Count Status Flag)

The TCSTF flag indicates the AGT count status.

[Setting condition]

- When 1 is written to the TSTART bit (the TCSTF flag is set to 1 in synchronization with the count source).

[Clearing conditions]

- When 0 is written to the TSTART bit (the TCSTF flag is set to 0 in synchronization with the count source)
- When 1 is written to the TSTOP bit.

TSTOP bit (AGT Count Forced Stop)

When 1 is written to the TSTOP bit, the count is forcibly stopped. The read value is 0.

TEDGF flag (Active Edge Judgment Flag)

The TEDGF flag indicates that an active edge was detected.

[Setting conditions]

- When the measurement of the active width of the external input pin (AGTIO_n) is complete in pulse width measurement mode
- When the set edge of the external input pin (AGTIO_n) is input in pulse period measurement mode.

[Clearing condition]

- When 0 is written to this flag by software.

TUNDF flag (Underflow Flag)

The TUNDF flag indicates that the counter underflowed.

[Setting condition]

- When the counter underflows.

[Clearing condition]

- When 0 is written to this flag by software.

TCMAF flag (Compare Match A Flag)

The TCMAF flag indicates that compare match A was detected.

[Setting condition]

- When the value in the AGT register matches the value in the AGTCMA register.

[Clearing condition]

- When 0 is written to this flag by software.

TCMBF flag (Compare Match B Flag)

The TCMBF flag indicates that compare match B was detected.

[Setting condition]

- When the value in the AGT register matches the value in the AGTCMB register.

[Clearing condition]

- When 0 is written to this flag by software.

21.2.5 AGTMR1 : AGT Mode Register 1

Base address: AGTWn = 0x4008_4000 + 0x0100 × n (n = 0, 1)

Offset address: 0x0D

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	TCK[2:0]			TEDG PL	TMOD[2:0]		
Value after reset:	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
2:0	TMOD[2:0]	Operating Mode* ³ 0 0 0: Timer mode 0 0 1: Pulse output mode 0 1 0: Event counter mode 0 1 1: Pulse width measurement mode 1 0 1: Pulse period measurement mode Others: Setting prohibited	R/W
3	TEDGPL	Edge Polarity* ⁴ 0: Single-edge 1: Both-edge	R/W
6:4	TCK[2:0]	Count Source* ¹ 2* ⁵ 7 0 0 0: PCLKB 0 0 1: PCLKB/8 0 1 1: PCLKB/2 1 0 0: Divided clock AGTLCLK specified by CKS[2:0] bits in the AGTMR2 register 1 0 1: Underflow event signal from AGTW0* ⁶ 1 1 0: Divided clock AGTSCLK specified by CKS[2:0] bits in the AGTMR2 register Others: Setting prohibited	R/W
7	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note: Write access to the AGTMR1 register initializes the output from the AGTOn, AGTIOOn, AGTOAn, and AGTOBn pins. For details on the output level at initialization, see [section 21.2.7. AGTIOC : AGT I/O Control Register](#).

Note 1. When event counter mode is selected, the external input pin (AGTIOOn) is selected as the count source regardless of the setting of TCK[2:0] bits.

Note 2. Do not switch count sources during count operation. Only switch count sources when both the TSTART bit and TCSTF flag in the AGTCR register are set to 0 (count stops).

Note 3. The operating mode can only be changed when the count is stopped while both the TSTART bit and TCSTF flag in the AGTCR register are set to 0 (count is stopped). Do not change the operating mode during count operation.

Note 4. The TEDGPL bit is enabled only in event counter mode.

Note 5. To run AGT in Software Standby mode, select AGTLCLK or AGTSCLK (TCK[2:0] = 100b, 110b).

Note 6. AGTW0 cannot use AGTW0 underflow (setting prohibited). AGTW1 uses the AGTW0 underflow.

Note 7. Do not change the TCK[2:0] bits when the CKS[2:0] bits in the AGTMR2 register is not 000b. First, change the CKS[2:0] bits in the AGTMR2 register to 000b. Then change the TCK[2:0] bits and wait for one cycle of the count source.

21.2.6 AGTMR2 : AGT Mode Register 2

Base address: AGTWn = 0x4008_4000 + 0x0100 × n (n = 0, 1)

Offset address: 0x0E

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	LPM	—	—	—	—	CKS[2:0]		
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
2:0	CKS[2:0]	AGTLCLK or AGTSCLK Count Source Clock Frequency Division Ratio*1*2*3 0 0 0: 1/1 0 0 1: 1/2 0 1 0: 1/4 0 1 1: 1/8 1 0 0: 1/16 1 0 1: 1/32 1 1 0: 1/64 1 1 1: 1/128	R/W
6:3	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
7	LPM	Low Power Mode 0: Normal mode 1: Low power mode	R/W

Note 1. Do not rewrite the CKS[2:0] bits during count operation. Only rewrite the CKS[2:0] bits when both the TSTART bit and TCSTF flag in the AGTCR register are set to 0 (count stops).

Note 2. When the count source is AGTLCLK or AGTSCLK, the switch of CKS[2:0] bits is valid.

Note 3. Do not switch the TCK[2:0] bits in the AGTMR1 register when CKS[2:0] bits are not 000b. Switch the TCK[2:0] bits in the AGTMR1 register after CKS[2:0] bits are set to 000b, and wait for 1 cycle of the count source.

CKS[2:0] bits (AGTLCLK or AGTSCLK Count Source Clock Frequency Division Ratio)

The CKS[2:0] bits select the count source clock frequency division ratio for AGTLCLK or AGTSCLK.

LPM bit (Low Power Mode)

The LPM bit sets the low power operation, which impacts access to certain AGT registers. Set this bit to 1 to operate in low power.

When this bit is 1, access to the following registers is prohibited:

- AGT/AGTCMA/AGTCMB/AGTCR

After this bit is switched from 1 to 0, the first access to the register is constrained as follows:

- When reading from the AGT register, read the AGT register twice. Only the second reading of data is valid.
- When writing to the AGT, AGTCMA, AGTCMB, and AGTCR register, allow at least 2 cycles of the count source clock when writing to the register.
- When confirming the value written to the AGT, AGTCMA, AGTCMB, and AGTCR registers:
 - When the count operation is stopped. After writing the data, it can be read in the next cycle.
 - When the count operation is operating. After writing the data, it can be read in 4 cycles after the count source clock.

Figure 21.2 shows the flow for how to write LPM bit.

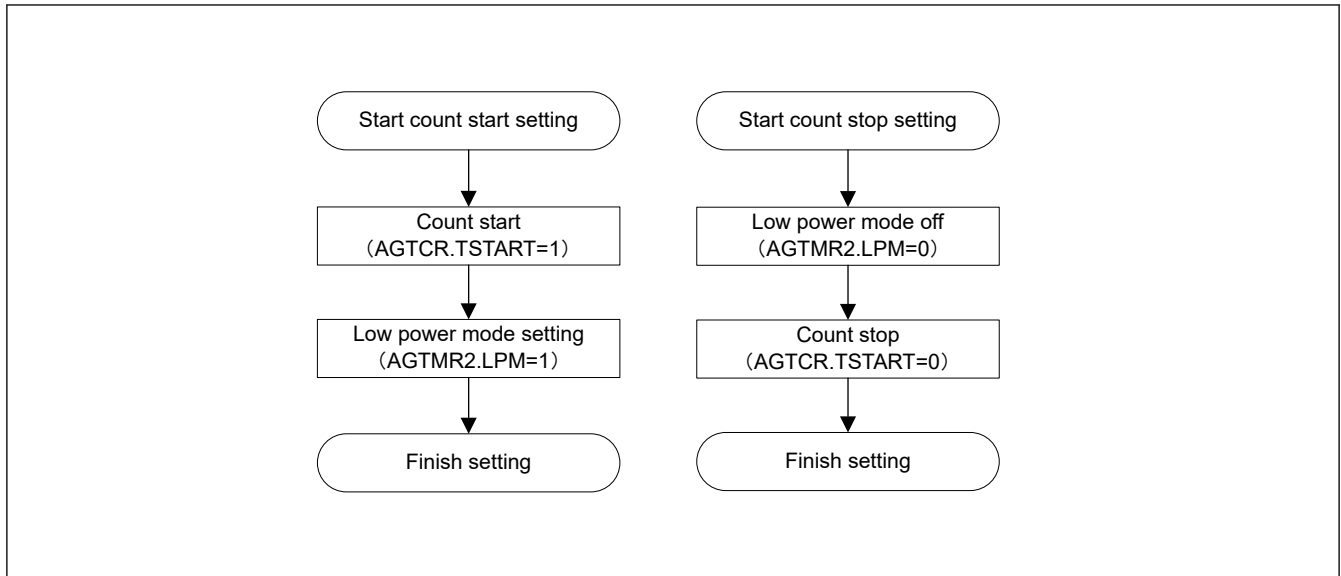


Figure 21.2 Flow chart for how to write LPM bit

21.2.7 AGTIOC : AGT I/O Control Register

Base address: AGTWn = 0x4008_4000 + 0x0100 × n (n = 0, 1)

Offset address: 0x10

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	TIOGT[1:0]		TIPF[1:0]		—	TOE	—	TEDGSEL

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	TEDGSEL	I/O Polarity Switch Function varies depending on the operating mode (see Table 21.3 and Table 21.4).	R/W
1	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
2	TOE	AGTOn pin Output Enable 0: AGTOn pin output disabled 1: AGTOn pin output enabled	R/W
3	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
5:4	TIPF[1:0]	Input Filter*3 These bits specify the sampling frequency of the filter for the AGTIO pin. If the input to the AGTIO pin is sampled and the value matches three successive times, that value is taken as the input value. 0 0: No filter 0 1: Filter sampled at PCLKB 1 0: Filter sampled at PCLKB/8 1 1: Filter sampled at PCLKB/32	R/W
7:6	TIOGT[1:0]	Count Control*1*2 0 0: Event is always counted 0 1: Event is counted during the polarity period specified for AGTEEn pin Others: Setting prohibited	R/W

Note 1. When the AGTEEn pin is used, the polarity to count an event can be selected with the EEPS bit in the AGTISR register.

Note 2. TIOGT[1:0] bits are enabled only in event counter mode.

Note 3. When event counter mode operation is performed during Software Standby mode, the digital filter function cannot be used.

TEDGSEL bit (I/O Polarity Switch)

The TEDGSEL bit switches the AGTOn pin output polarity and the AGTIO pin input/output edge and polarity.

In pulse output mode, it only controls the polarity of the AGTOn pin output and AGTIO pin output. AGTOn pin output and AGTIO pin output are initialized when the AGTMR1 register is written or the TSTOP bit in the AGTCR register is written with 1.

TOE bit (AGTOn pin Output Enable)

The TOE bit selects whether the AGTOn pin output is disabled or enabled.

TIPF[1:0] bits (Input Filter)

The TIPF[1:0] bits specify the sampling frequency of the AGTIO pin input filter. When the input to the AGTIO pin is sampled and the values match three times in succession, the value is regarded as the input value.

TIOGT[1:0] bits (Count Control)

The TIOGT[1:0] bits control the event count.

Table 21.3 AGTIO pin I/O edge and polarity switching

Operating mode	Function
Timer mode	Not used
Pulse output mode	0: Output is started at high (initialization level: high): Inverted output 1: Output is started at low (initialization level: low): Normal output
Event counter mode	0: Count on rising edge 1: Count on falling edge
Pulse width measurement mode	0: Low-level width is measured 1: High-level width is measured
Pulse period measurement mode	0: Measure from one rising edge to the next rising edge 1: Measure from one falling edge to the next falling edge

Table 21.4 AGTOn pin output polarity switching

Operating mode	Function
All modes	0: Output is started at low (initial level: low): Normal output 1: Output is started at high (initial level: high): Inverted output

21.2.8 AGTISR : AGT Event Pin Select Register

Base address: $AGTWn = 0x4008\_4000 + 0x0100 \times n$ ($n = 0, 1$)

Offset address: 0x11

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	EEPS	—	—

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
1:0	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
2	EEPS	AGTEEn Polarity Selection 0: An event is counted during the low-level period 1: An event is counted during the high-level period	R/W
7:3	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

EEPS bit (AGTEEn Polarity Selection)

The EEPS bit selects the polarity of events to be counted.

21.2.9 AGTCMSR : AGT Compare Match Function Select Register

Base address: AGTWn = 0x4008_4000 + 0x0100 × n (n = 0, 1)

Offset address: 0x12

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	TOPO LB	TOEB	TCME B	—	TOPO LA	TOEA	TCME A
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	TCMEA	AGT Compare Match A Register Enable ^{*1*2} 0: AGT Compare match A register disabled 1: AGT Compare match A register enabled	R/W
1	TOEA	AGTOAn Pin Output Enable ^{*1*2} 0: AGTOAn pin output disabled 1: AGTOAn pin output enabled	R/W
2	TOPOLA	AGTOAn Pin Polarity Select ^{*1*2} 0: AGTOAn pin output is started on low (normal output) 1: AGTOAn pin output is started on high (inverted output)	R/W
3	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
4	TCMEB	AGT Compare Match B Register Enable ^{*1*2} 0: Compare match B register disabled 1: Compare match B register enabled	R/W
5	TOEB	AGTOBn Pin Output Enable ^{*1*2} 0: AGTOBn pin output disabled 1: AGTOBn pin output enabled	R/W
6	TOPOLB	AGTOBn Pin Polarity Select ^{*1*2} 0: AGTOBn pin output is started on low (normal output) 1: AGTOBn pin output is started on high (inverted output)	R/W
7	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note 1. Do not rewrite the AGTCMSR register during a count operation. Only rewrite the AGTCMSR register when both the TSTART bit and TCSTF flag in the AGTCR register are set to 0 (count stops).

Note 2. Do not set 1 in pulse width measurement mode or pulse period measurement mode.

21.2.10 AGTIOSEL : AGT Pin Select Register

Base address: AGTWn = 0x4008_4000 + 0x0100 × n (n = 0, 1)

Offset address: 0x0F

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	TIES	—	—	SEL[1:0]	
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
1:0	SEL[1:0]	AGTIOn Pin Select ^{*1} 0 0: Select the AGTIOn except for the following pins 0 1: Setting prohibited 1 0: Select the P402/AGTIOn as input only. It cannot be used for output. 1 1: Select the P403/AGTIOn as input only. It cannot be used for output.	R/W
3:2	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
4	TIES	AGTIOn Pin Input Enable 0: External event input is disabled during Software Standby mode 1: External event input is enabled during Software Standby mode	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7:5	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note 1. Set the Pin Function Select Register. See [section 17, I/O Ports](#).

The AGTIOSEL register sets the AGTIO pin when using the AGTIO pin in Software Standby mode.

SEL[1:0] bits (AGTIO pin Select)

The SEL[1:0] bits select the AGTIO pin function.

TIES bit (AGTIO pin Input Enable)

The TIES bit enables or disables an external event input.

21.3 Operation

21.3.1 Reload Register and Counter Rewrite Operation

Regardless of the operating mode, the timing of the rewrite operation to the reload register and the counter differs depending on the value of the TSTART bit in the AGTCR register and of the TCMEA or TCMEB bit in the AGTCMSR register. When the TSTART bit is 0 (count stops), the count value is directly written to the reload register and the counter. When the TSTART bit is 1 (count starts) and the TCMEA bit and TCMEB bit are 0 (AGT compare match A/B register are invalid), the value is written to the reload register in synchronization with the count source, and then to the counter in synchronization with the next count source. When the TSTART bit is 1 (count starts) and the TCMEA bit or the TCMEB bit is 1 (AGT compare match A register or compare match B register is valid), the value is written to the reload register in synchronization with the count source, and then to the counter in synchronization with the underflow of the counter.

[Figure 21.3](#) and [Figure 21.4](#) show the timing of rewrite operation with TSTART bit value and TCMEA/TCMEB bit value.

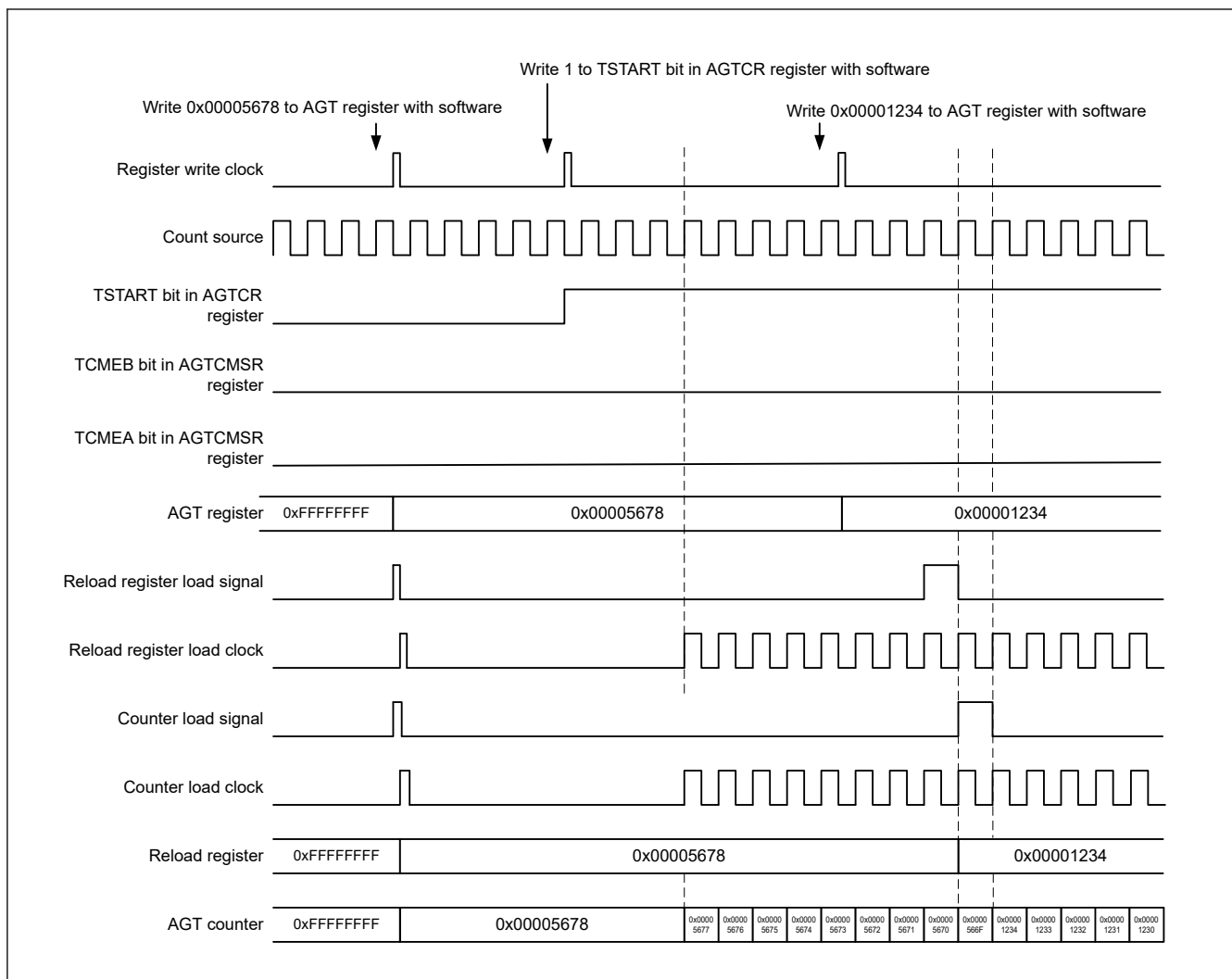


Figure 21.3 Timing of rewrite operation with TSTART bit value and TCMEA or TCMEB bit value when AGT compare match A register or AGT compare match B register is invalid

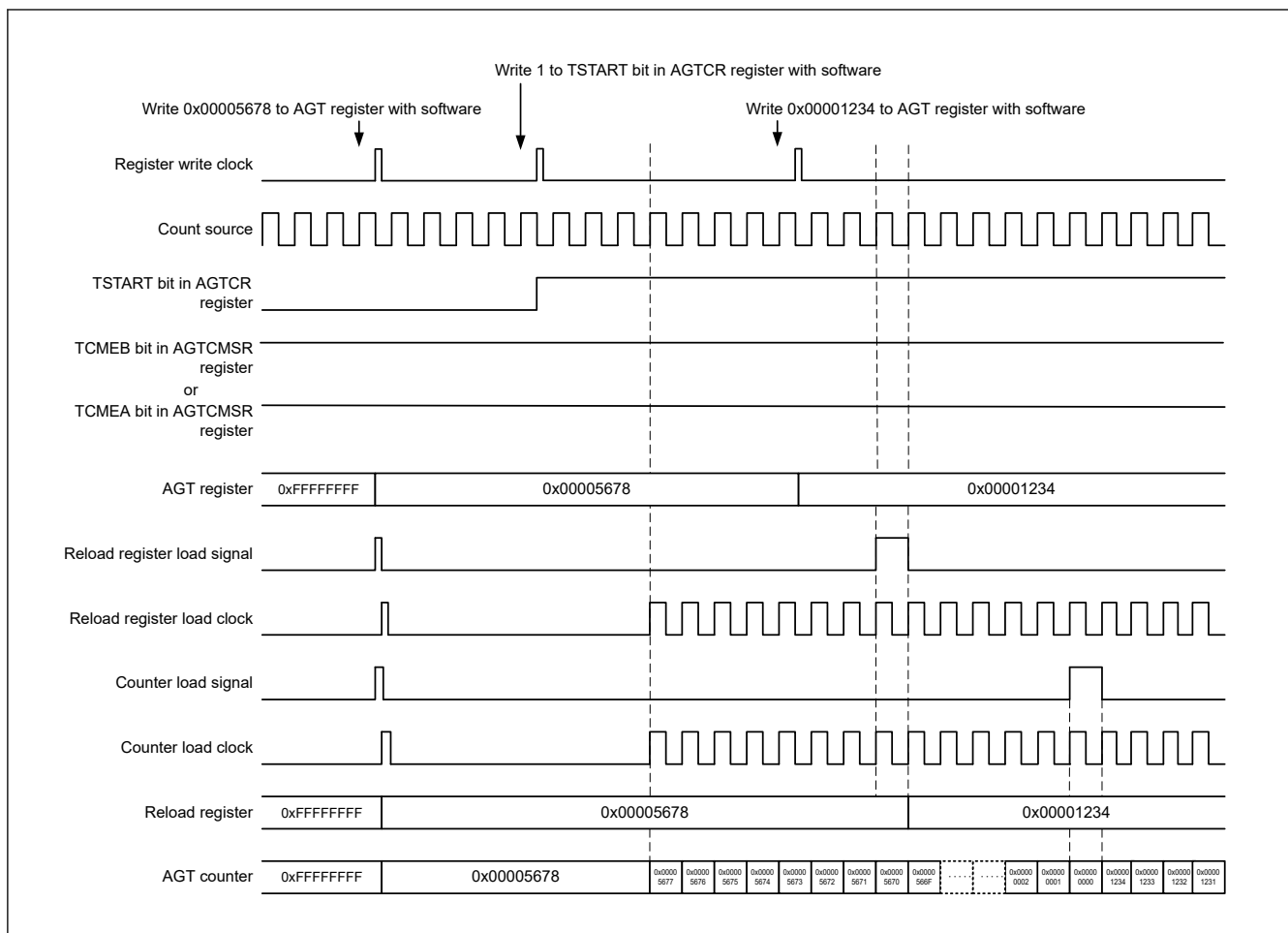


Figure 21.4 Timing of rewrite operation with TSTART bit value and TCMEA or TCMEB bit value when AGT compare match A register or AGT compare match B register is valid

21.3.2 Reload Register and AGT Compare Match A/B Register Rewrite Operation

Regardless of the operating mode, the timing of the rewrite operation to the reload register and AGT compare register A/B depends on the value of the TSTART bit in the AGTCR register. When the TSTART bit is 0 (count stops), the count value is directly written to the reload register and AGT compare register A/B. When the TSTART bit is 1 (count starts), the value is written to the reload register in synchronization with the count source, and then to the compare register in synchronization with the underflow of the counter.

Figure 21.5 shows the timing of rewrite operation with TSTART bit value for compare register A. AGT Compare register B is of the same timing as AGT compare register A.

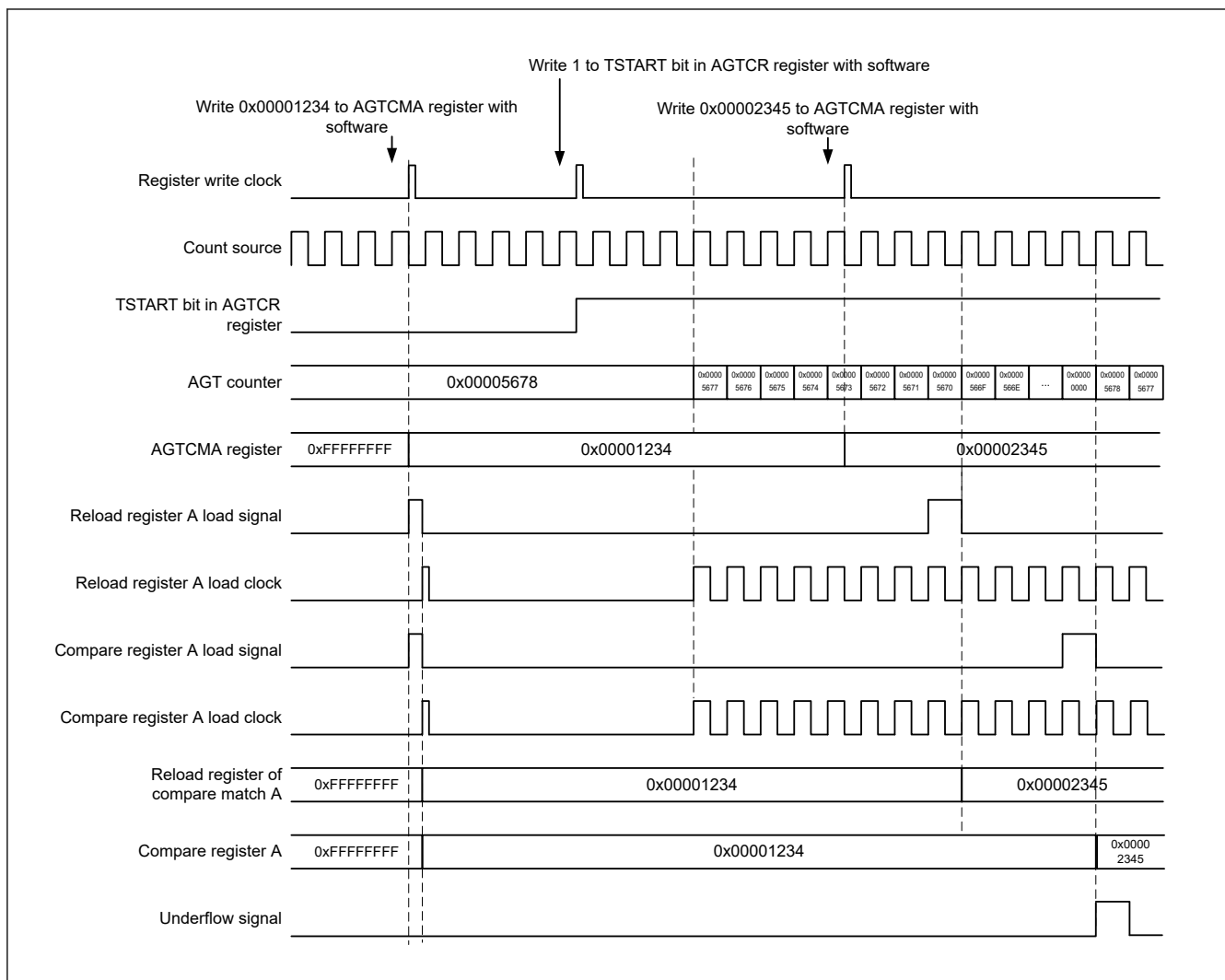


Figure 21.5 Timing of rewrite operation with the TSTART bit value for AGT compare register A

21.3.3 Timer Mode

In this mode, the AGT counter is decremented by the count source selected with the TCK[2:0] bits in the AGTMR1 register. In timer mode, the count value is decremented by 1 on each rising edge of the count source. When the count value reaches 0x00000000 and the next count source is input, an underflow occurs and an interrupt request is generated.

Figure 21.6 shows the operation example in timer mode.

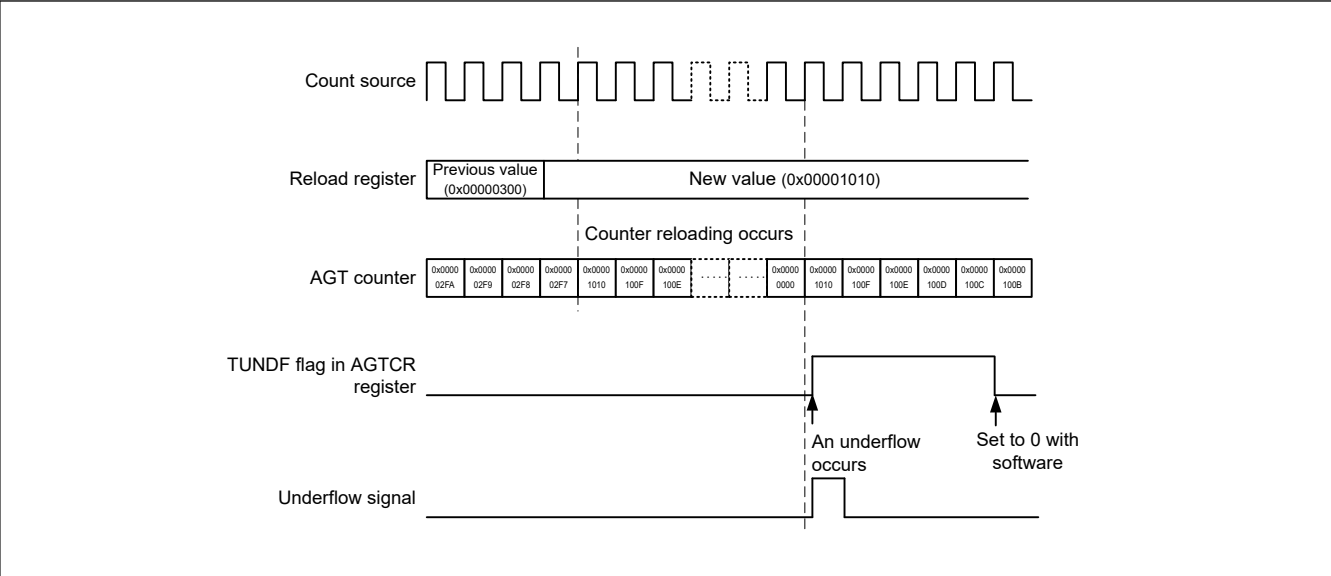


Figure 21.6 Operation example in timer mode

21.3.4 Pulse Output Mode

In pulse output mode, the counter is decremented by the count source selected with the TCK[2:0] bits in the AGTMR1 register, and the output level of the AGTIO_n and AGTO_n pins is inverted each time an underflow occurs.

In pulse output mode, the count value is decremented by 1 on each rising edge of the count source. When the count value reaches 0x00000000 and the next count source is input, an underflow occurs and an interrupt request is generated. In addition, a pulse can be output from the AGTIO_n and AGTO_n pins. The output level is inverted each time an underflow occurs. The pulse output from the AGTO_n pin can be stopped with the TOE bit in the AGTIOC register. The output level can be selected with the TEDGSEL bit in the AGTIOC register.

Figure 21.7 shows the operation example in pulse output mode.

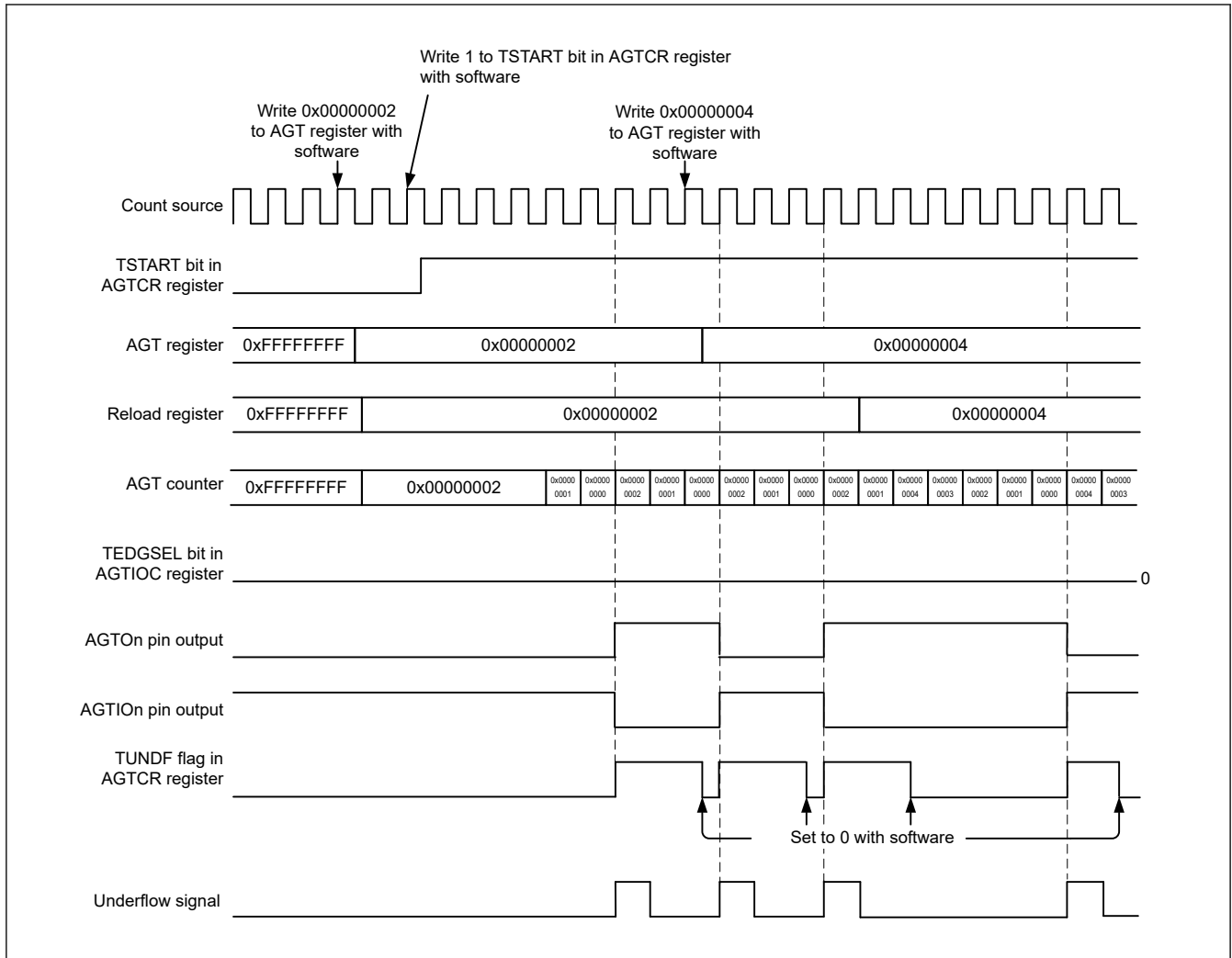


Figure 21.7 **Operation example in pulse output mode**

21.3.5 Event Counter Mode

In event counter mode, the counter is decremented by an external event signal (count source) input to the AGTIO_n pin. Various periods for counting events can be set with the TIOGT[1:0] bits in the AGTIOC register and AGTISR registers. In addition, the filter function for the AGTIO_n pin input can be specified with bits TIPF[1:0] in the AGTIOC register. The output from the AGTIO_n pin can be toggled even in event counter mode.

Figure 21.8 shows the operation example in event counter mode.

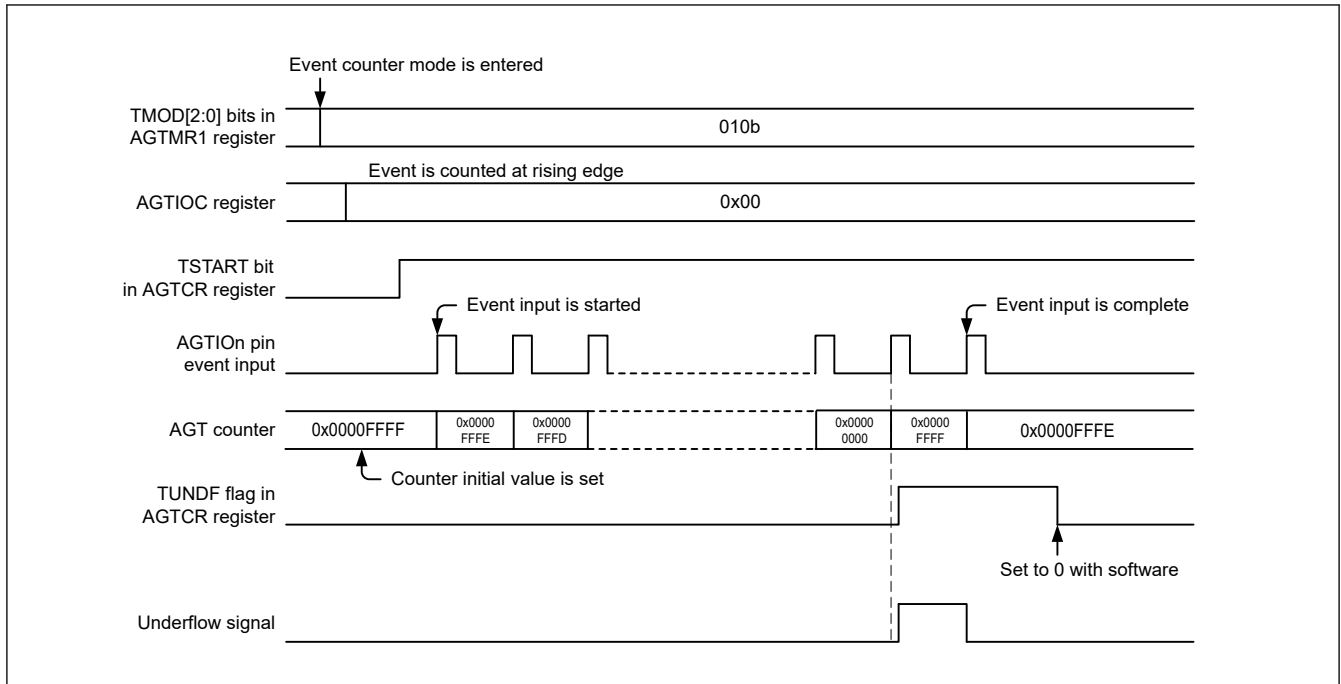


Figure 21.8 Operation in event counter mode example 1

Figure 21.9 shows an operation example for counting during the specified period in event counter mode (TIOGT[1:0] bits in the AGTIOC register are set to 01b).

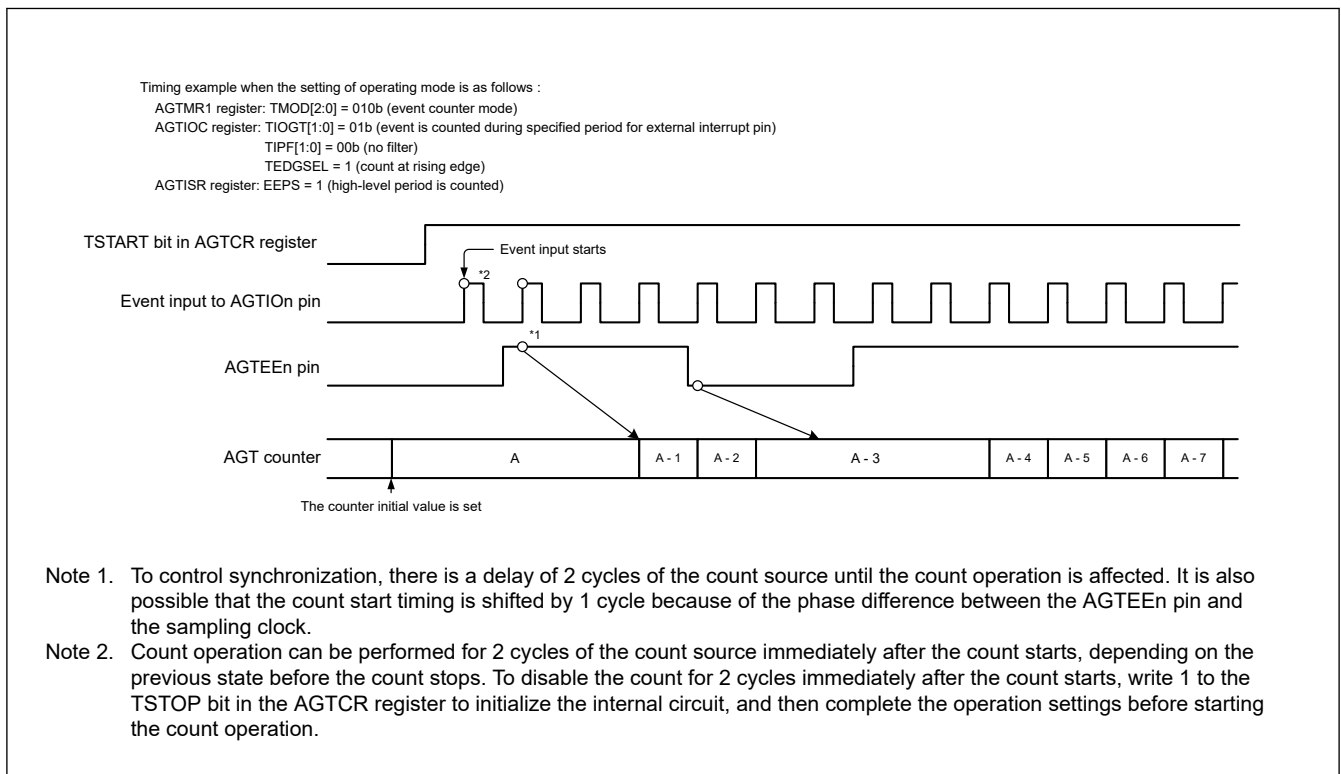


Figure 21.9 Operation in event counter mode example 2

21.3.6 Pulse Width Measurement Mode

In pulse width measurement mode, the pulse width of an external signal input to the AGTIO pin is measured. When the level specified by the TEDGSEL bit in the AGTIOC register is input to the AGTIO pin, the counter is decremented by the count source selected with the TCK[2:0] bits in the AGTMR1 register. When the specified level on the AGTIO pin ends, the counter is stopped, the TEDGF flag in the AGTCR register is set to 1 (active edge received), and an interrupt request

is generated. The measurement of pulse width data is performed by reading the count value while the counter is stopped. Also, when the counter underflows during measurement, the TUNDF flag in the AGTCR register is set to 1 and an interrupt request is generated.

Figure 21.10 shows the operation example in pulse width measurement mode.

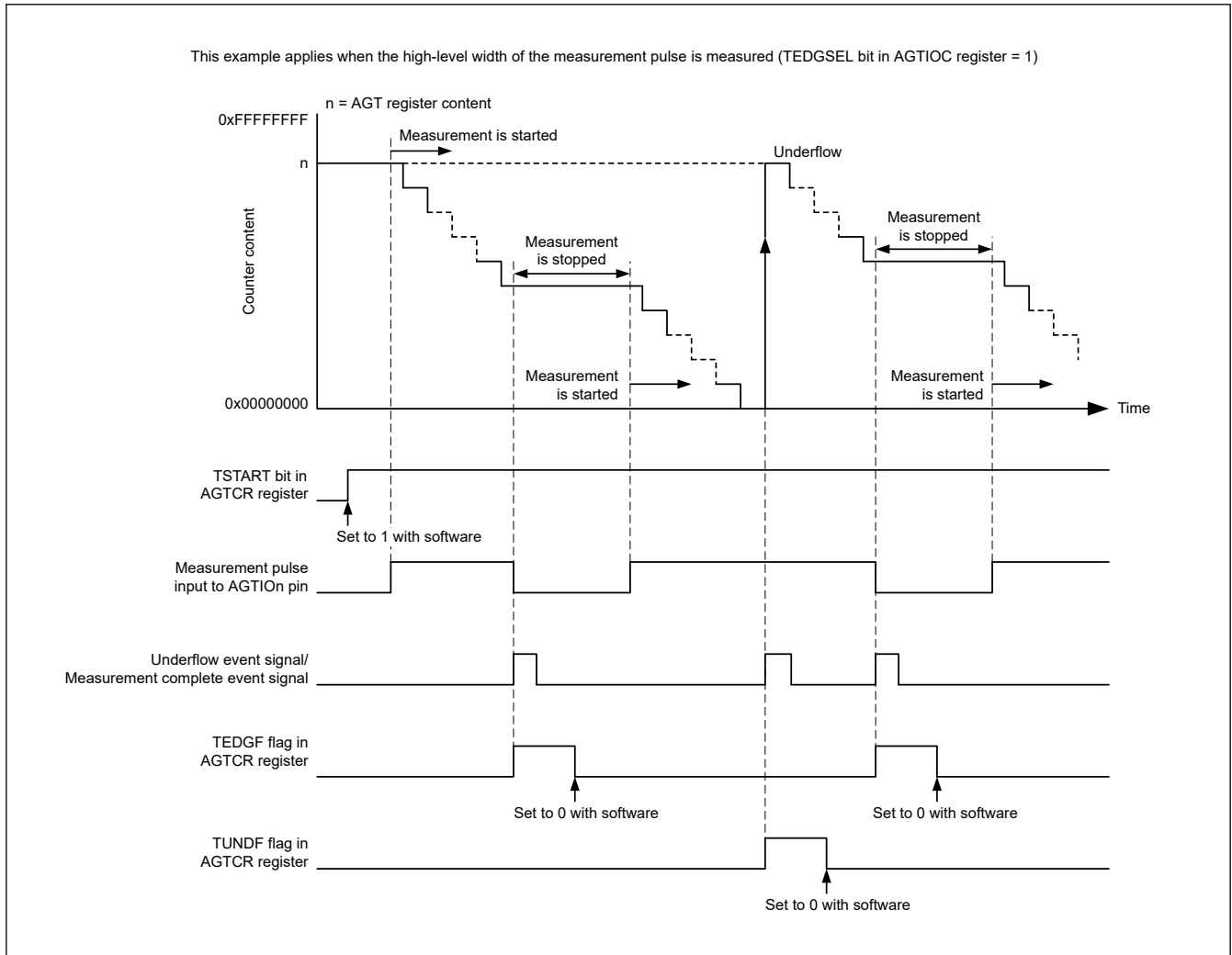


Figure 21.10 Operation example in pulse width measurement mode

21.3.7 Pulse Period Measurement Mode

In pulse period measurement mode, the pulse period of an external signal input to the AGTIO pin is measured. The counter is decremented by the count source selected with TCK[2:0] bits in the AGTMR1 register. When a pulse with the period specified by the TEDGSEL bit in the AGTIOC register is input to the AGTIO pin, the count value is transferred to the read-out buffer on the rising edge of the count source. The value in the reload register is loaded to the counter at the next rising edge. Simultaneously, the TEDGF flag in the AGTCR register is set to 1 (active edge received) and an interrupt request is generated. The read-out buffer (AGT register) is read at this time and the difference from the reload value (see [section 21.4.6. How to Calculate Event Number, Pulse Width, and Pulse Period](#)) is the period data of the input pulse. The period data is retained until the read-out buffer is read. When the counter underflows, the TUNDF flag in the AGTCR register is set to 1 (underflow) and an interrupt request is generated.

Figure 21.11 shows the operation example in pulse period measurement mode.

Only input pulses with a period longer than twice the period of the count source are measured. Also, the low-level and high-level widths must both be longer than the period of the count source. If a pulse period shorter than these conditions is input, the input might be ignored.

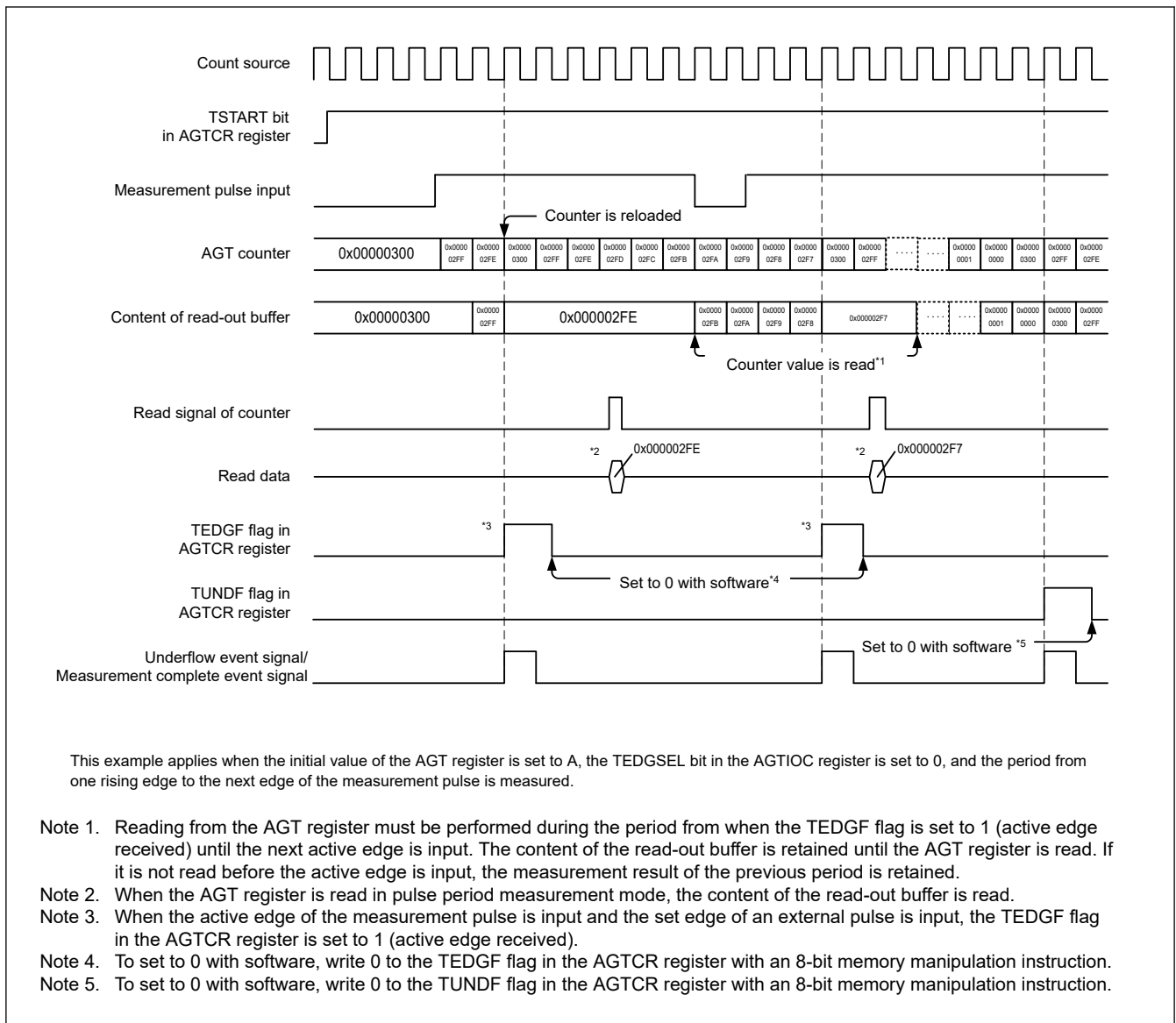


Figure 21.11 Operation example in pulse period measurement mode

21.3.8 Compare Match Function

The compare match function detects matches (compare match) between the content of the AGTCMA or AGTCMB register and the content of the AGT register. This function is enabled when the TCMEA or TCMEB bit in the AGTCMSR register is 1 (compare match A register or compare match B register is valid). The counter is decremented by the count source selected with the TCK[2:0] bits in the AGTMR1 register, and when the values of AGT and AGTCMA or AGTCMB match, the TCMAF/TCMBF flag in the AGTCR register is set to 1 (match), and an interrupt request is generated.

When the compare match function is enabled, the timing of the rewrite operation to the reload register and the counter differs. See [section 21.3.1. Reload Register and Counter Rewrite Operation](#) for details. In addition, the output level of the AGTOAn, AGTOBn pins is inverted by the match and by the underflow. The output level can be selected with the TOPOLA or TOPOLB bit in the AGTCMSR register.

[Figure 21.12](#) shows the operation example in compare match function.

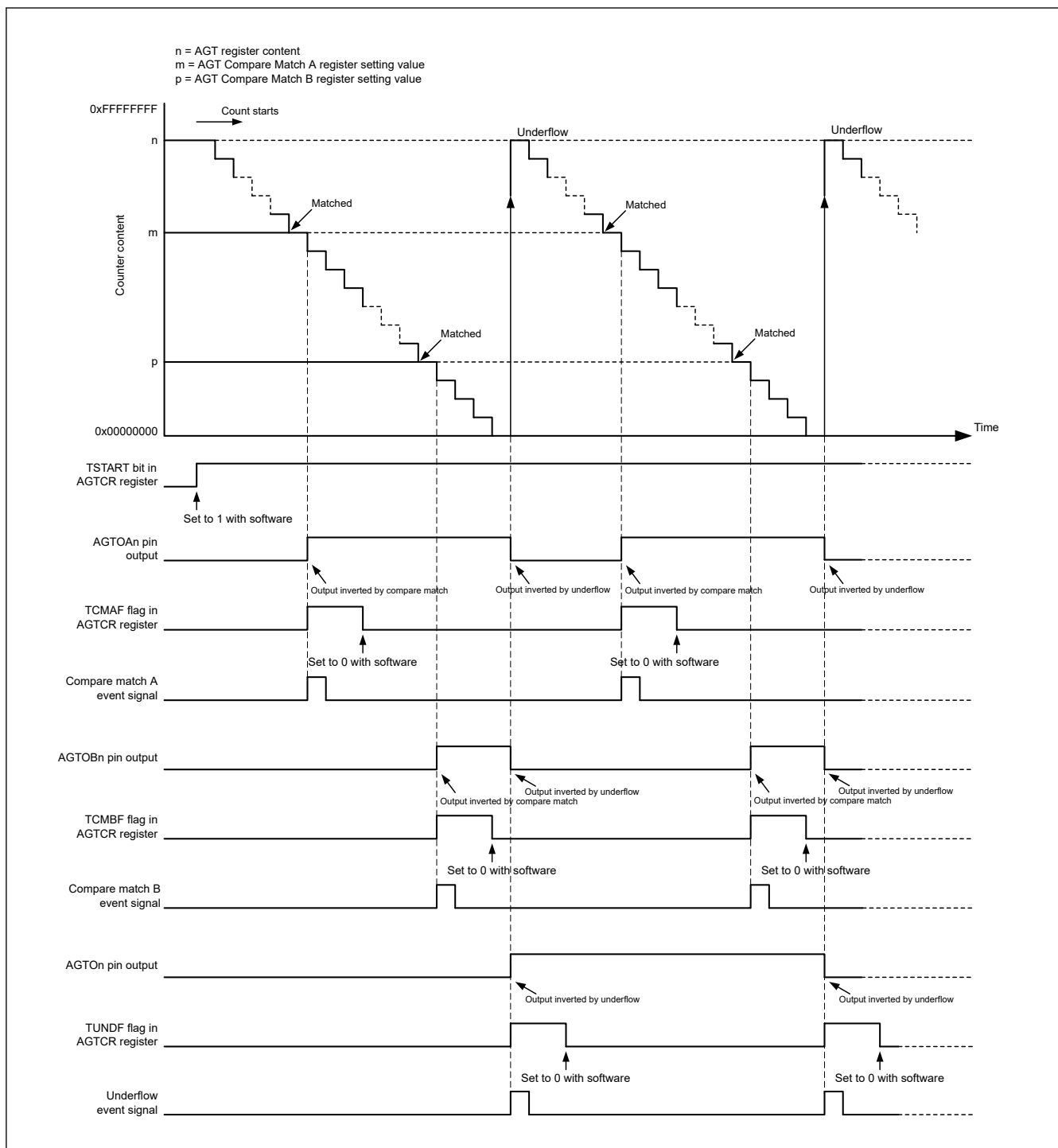


Figure 21.12 Operation example in compare match function (TOPOLA = 0, TOPOLB = 0)

21.3.9 Output Settings for Each Mode

Table 21.5 to Table 21.8 list the states of AGTON, AGTIO, AGTOAn, and AGTOBn pins in each mode.

Table 21.5 AGTOn pin setting

Operating mode	AGTIOC register		AGTOn pin output
	TOE bit	TEDGSEL bit	
All modes	1	1	Inverted output
		0	Normal output
	0	0 or 1	Output disabled

Table 21.6 AGTOn pin setting

Operating mode	AGTIOC register	AGTIO pin I/O
	TEDGSEL bit	
Timer mode	0 or 1	Input (not used)
Pulse output mode	1	Normal output
	0	Inverted output
Event counter mode	0 or 1	Input
Pulse width measurement mode		
Pulse period measurement mode		

Table 21.7 AGTOAn pin setting

Operating mode	AGTCMSR register		AGTOAn pin output
	TOEA bit	TOPOLA bit	
Timer mode	1	1	Inverted output
		0	Normal output
	0	0 or 1	Output disabled (not used)
Pulse output mode	1	1	Inverted output
		0	Normal output
	0	0 or 1	Output disabled (not used)
Event counter mode	1	1	Inverted output
		0	Normal output
	0	0 or 1	Output disabled (not used)
Pulse width measurement mode	0	0	Prohibited
Pulse period measurement mode			

Table 21.8 AGTOBn pin setting (1 of 2)

Operating mode	AGTCMSR register		AGTOBn pin output
	TOEB bit	TOPOLB bit	
Timer mode	1	1	Inverted output
		0	Normal output
	0	0 or 1	Output disabled (not used)
Pulse output mode	1	1	Inverted output
		0	Normal output
	0	0 or 1	Output disabled (not used)
Event counter mode	1	1	Inverted output
		0	Normal output
	0	0 or 1	Output disabled (not used)

Table 21.8 AGTOBn pin setting (2 of 2)

Operating mode	AGTCMSR register		AGTOBn pin output
	TOEB bit	TOPOLB bit	
Pulse width measurement mode	0	0	Prohibited
Pulse period measurement mode			

21.3.10 Standby Mode

The AGT can operate in Software Standby mode. Set it to Software Standby mode with count operation start (TSTART = 1, TCSTF = 1).

Table 21.9 and Table 21.10 show the setting that can be used in Software Standby mode.

Table 21.9 Usable settings in Software Standby mode (AGTW0)

Operating mode	AGTMR1.TCK[2:0]	Operating clock	Resurgence factor of CPU
Timer mode	100b or 110b	AGTLCLK or AGTSCLK	Underflow
Pulse output mode	100b or 110b	AGTLCLK or AGTSCLK	Underflow
Event counter mode*2	—	AGTIO ⁿ *1	Underflow
Pulse width measurement mode	100b or 110b	AGTLCLK or AGTSCLK	- Underflow - Active edge
Pulse period measurement mode	100b or 110b	AGTLCLK or AGTSCLK	- Underflow - Active edge

Note: —: Invalid.

Note 1. When using the AGTIOⁿ pin for external event input in Software Standby mode, set AGTIOSEL.TIES = 1.

Note 2. When AGTIOSEL.TIES = 0 and the external event input signal is disabled during Software Standby mode, stop the count operation before entering Software Standby mode. After returning from Software Standby mode, restart the count operation if necessary.

Table 21.10 Usable settings in Software Standby mode (AGTW1)

Operating mode	AGTMR1.TCK[2:0]	Operating clock	Resurgence factor of CPU
Timer mode	100b, 110b or 101b*1	AGTLCLK, AGTSCLK or AGTW0 underflow	- Underflow - Compare match A/B
Pulse output mode	100b, 110b or 101b*1	AGTLCLK, AGTSCLK or AGTW0 underflow	- Underflow - Compare match A/B
Event counter mode*3	—	AGTIO ⁿ *2	- Underflow - Compare match A/B
Pulse width measurement mode	100b, 110b or 101b*1	AGTLCLK, AGTSCLK or AGTW0 underflow	- Underflow - Active edge
Pulse period measurement mode	100b, 110b or 101b*1	AGTLCLK, AGTSCLK or AGTW0 underflow	- Underflow - Active edge

Note: —: Invalid.

Note: Release of Software Standby mode is only for AGTW1.

Note 1. Only when AGTW0 operates in Table 21.9.

Note 2. When using the AGTIOⁿ pin for external event input in Software Standby mode, set AGTIOSEL.TIES = 1.

Note 3. When AGTIOSEL.TIES = 0 and the external event input signal is disabled during Software Standby mode, stop the count operation before entering Software Standby mode. After returning from Software Standby mode, restart the count operation if necessary.

21.3.11 Interrupt Sources

The AGTWⁿ has three interrupt sources as listed in Table 21.11.

Table 21.11 AGTW interrupt sources

Name	Interrupt source	DTC activation
AGTWn_AGTI	- When the counter underflows - When measurement of the active width of the external input pin (AGTIO_n) is complete in pulse width measurement mode - When the set edge of the external input pin (AGTIO_n) is input in pulse period measurement mode	Possible
AGTWn_AGTCMAI	When the values of the AGT register and AGTCMA register match	Possible
AGTWn_AGTCMBI	When the values of the AGT register and AGTCMB register match	Possible

Note: Channel number (n = 0, 1).

21.3.12 Event Signal Output to ELC

The AGTW_n (n = 0, 1) uses the Event Link Controller (ELC) to perform a link operation to a specified module using the interrupt request signal as the event signal. The AGTW_n (n = 0, 1) outputs compare match A, compare match B, and underflow/measurement complete signals as event signals. For details, see [section 16, Event Link Controller \(ELC\)](#).

21.4 Usage Notes

21.4.1 Count Operation Start and Stop Control

- When the operating mode (see [Table 21.1](#)) is set to other than the event counter mode, or the count source is set to other than AGTW_n underflow event signal (TCK[2:0] = 101b):
 - After 1 (count starts) is written to the TSTART bit in the AGTCR register while the count is stopped, the TCSTF flag in the AGTCR register remains 0 (count stops) for 3 cycles of the count source. Do not access the registers associated with AGTW*¹ other than the TCSTF flag until this flag is set to 1 (count in progress).
 - After 0 (count stops) is written to the TSTART bit during a count operation, the TCSTF flag remains 1 for 3 cycles of the count source. When the TCSTF flag is set to 0, the count is stopped. Do not access the registers associated with AGTW*¹ other than the TCSTF flag until this flag is set to 0.
 - Clear the interrupt register before changing the TSTART bit from 0 to 1. See [section 12, Interrupt Controller Unit \(ICU\)](#) for details.
- When the operating mode (see [Table 21.1](#)) is set to event counter mode, or the count source is set to AGTW1 underflow event signal (TCK[2:0] = 101b):
 - After 1 (count starts) is written to the TSTART bit in the AGTCR register while the count is stopped, the TCSTF flag in the AGTCR register remains 0 (count stops) for 2 PCLKB cycles. Do not access the registers associated with AGTW*¹ other than the TCSTF flag until this flag is set to 1 (count in progress).
 - After 0 (count stops) is written to the TSTART bit during a count operation, the TCSTF flag remains 1 for 2 PCLKB cycles. When the TCSTF flag is set to 0, the count is stopped. Do not access the registers associated with AGTW*¹ other than the TCSTF flag until this flag is set to 0.
 - Clear the interrupt register before changing the TSTART bit from 0 to 1. See [section 12, Interrupt Controller Unit \(ICU\)](#) for details.

Note 1. Registers associated with AGT: AGT, AGTCMA, AGTCMB, AGTCR, AGTMR1, AGTMR2, AGTIOC, AGTISR and AGTCMSR.

21.4.2 Access to Counter Register

When the TSTART bit and TCSTF flag in the AGTCR register are both 1 (count starts), allow at least 3 cycles of the count source clock between writes when writing to the AGT register successively.

21.4.3 When Changing Mode

The registers associated with AGT operating mode (AGTMR1, AGTMR2, AGTIOC, AGTISR, and AGTCMSR) can be changed only when the count is stopped with both the TSTART bit and TCSTF flag set to 0 (count stops). Do not change these registers during count operation.

When the registers associated with AGT operating mode are changed, the values of TEDGF, TUNDF, TCMAF, and TCMBF flags are undefined. Before starting the count, write 0 to the following flags:

- TEDGF (no active edge received)
- TUNDF (no underflow)
- TCMAF (no match)
- TCMBF (no match).

21.4.4 Output Pin Setting

When using the AGTOn, AGTIOOn, AGTOAn, or AGTOBn as an output pin, set up the operation and determine the initial output values. Then set an output mode in the port register.

When using the AGTIOOn as an input pin in pulse width measurement mode or pulse period measurement mode, set up the operation and start count operation. Then start to enter external events from the AGTIOOn pin. Invalidate the first measurement and validate the second and subsequent completed measurements.

21.4.5 Digital Filter

When using the digital filter, do not start the timer operation for 5 cycles of the digital filter clock after setting TIPF[1:0] bits and when the TEDGSEL bit in the AGTIOC register changes.

21.4.6 How to Calculate Event Number, Pulse Width, and Pulse Period

- In event counter mode, event number is expressed mathematically as follows:
$$\text{Event number} = \text{initial value of counter [AGT register]} - \text{counter value of active event end}$$
- In pulse width measurement mode, pulse width is expressed mathematically as follows:
$$\text{Pulse width} = \text{counter value of stopping measurement} - \text{counter value of next stopping measurement}$$
- In pulse period measurement mode, input pulse period is expressed mathematically as follows:
$$\text{Period of input pulse} = (\text{initial value of counter [AGT register]} - \text{reading value of the read-out buffer}) + 1.$$

21.4.7 When Count is Forcibly Stopped by TSTOP Bit

After the counter is forcibly stopped by the TSTOP bit in the AGTCR register, do not access the following I/O registers for 1 cycle of the count source:

- AGT
- AGTCMA
- AGTCMB
- AGTCR
- AGTMR1
- AGTMR2.

21.4.8 When Selecting AGTW0 Underflow as the Count Source

Operate according to the following procedures described in this section when selecting the underflow event signal as the count source.

(1) Procedure for starting operation

1. Set AGTW.
2. Start the count operation of AGTW1.
3. Start the count operation of AGTW0.

(2) Procedure for stopping operation

1. Stop the count operation of AGTW0.
2. Stop the count operation of AGTW1.
3. Stop the count source clock of AGTW1 (write 000b in the AGTMR1.TCK[2:0] bits).

21.4.9 Module-stop Function

AGTW operation can be disabled or enabled using the Module Stop Control Register D (MSTPCRD). The AGTW module is initially stopped after reset. Releasing the module-stop state enables access to the registers. For details, see [section 10, Low Power Modes](#).

22. Realtime Clock (RTC)

22.1 Overview

The RTC has two operation modes, normal operation mode and low-consumption clock mode. In each of the operation mode, the RTC has two counting modes, calendar count mode and binary count mode, that are used by switching register settings. For calendar count mode, the RTC has a 100-year calendar from 2000 to 2099 and automatically adjusts dates for leap years. For binary count mode, the RTC counts seconds and retains the information as a serial value. Binary count mode can be used for calendars other than the Gregorian (Western) calendar.

Differences exist in the RTC functions between the two operation modes.

In normal operation mode, the sub-clock oscillator or LOCO can be selected as the count source of the time counters. The RTC uses a 128-Hz clock acquired by dividing the count source by a prescaler. Year, month, date, day-of-week, a.m. /p.m. (in 12-hour mode), hour, minute, second, or 32-bit binary is counted by 1/128 second.

In low-consumption clock mode, a 128-Hz clock from the sub-clock acts as the count source of the time counters. Year, month, date, day-of-week, a.m. /p.m. (in 12-hour mode), hour, minute, second, or 32-bit binary is counted by 1/128 second.

Table 22.1 lists the RTC specifications, Figure 22.1 shows a block diagram, and Table 22.2 lists the I/O pins.

Table 22.1 RTC specifications

Parameter	Specifications
Count mode	Calendar count mode/binary count mode
Count source ^{*1*3}	- Sub-clock (XCIN) or LOCO (normal operation mode) 128-Hz from sub-clock (XCIN) (low-consumption clock mode)
Clock and calendar functions	- Calendar count mode - Year, month, date, day of week, hour, minute, second are counted, BCD display 12 hours/24 hours mode switching function 30 seconds adjustment function (a number less than 30 is rounded down to 00 seconds, and 30 seconds or more are rounded up to 1 minute)^{*2} - Automatic adjustment function for leap years - Binary count mode - Count seconds in 32 bits, binary display - Shared by both modes - Start/stop function - The sub-second digit is displayed in binary units (1 Hz, 2 Hz, 4 Hz, 8 Hz, 16 Hz, 32 Hz, or 64 Hz) - Clock error correction function - Clock (1-Hz/64-Hz) output
Interrupts	- Alarm interrupt (RTC_ALM)^{*2} - As an alarm interrupt condition, selectable for comparison with the following: - Calendar count mode: Year, month, date, day-of-week, hour, minute, or second can be selected - Binary count mode: Each bit of the 32-bit binary counter - Periodic interrupt (RTC_PRD) 2 seconds, 1 second, 1/2 second, 1/4 second, 1/8 second, 1/16 second, 1/32 second, 1/64 second, 1/128 second, or 1/256 second can be selected as an interrupt period. - Carry interrupt (RTC_CUP)^{*2} - An interrupt is generated at either of the following conditions: - When a carry from the 64-Hz counter to the second counter is generated. - When the 64-Hz counter is changed and the R64CNT register is read at the same time. (32-kHz count mode is only for 64-Hz counter reading) - Return from Software Standby mode can be performed by the alarm interrupt or periodic interrupt
Event link function	Periodic event output (RTC_PRD) ^{*2}

Note 1. The frequency of the peripheral module clock (PCLKB) $\geq$ the frequency of the count source should be satisfied.

Note 2. Not supported in low-consumption clock mode.

Note 3. 25-pin WLCSP product does not support the low-consumption clock mode, because this product does not have sub-clock (XCIN) pins.

25-pin WLCSP product cannot select the sub-clock (XCIN) as RTC counter source.

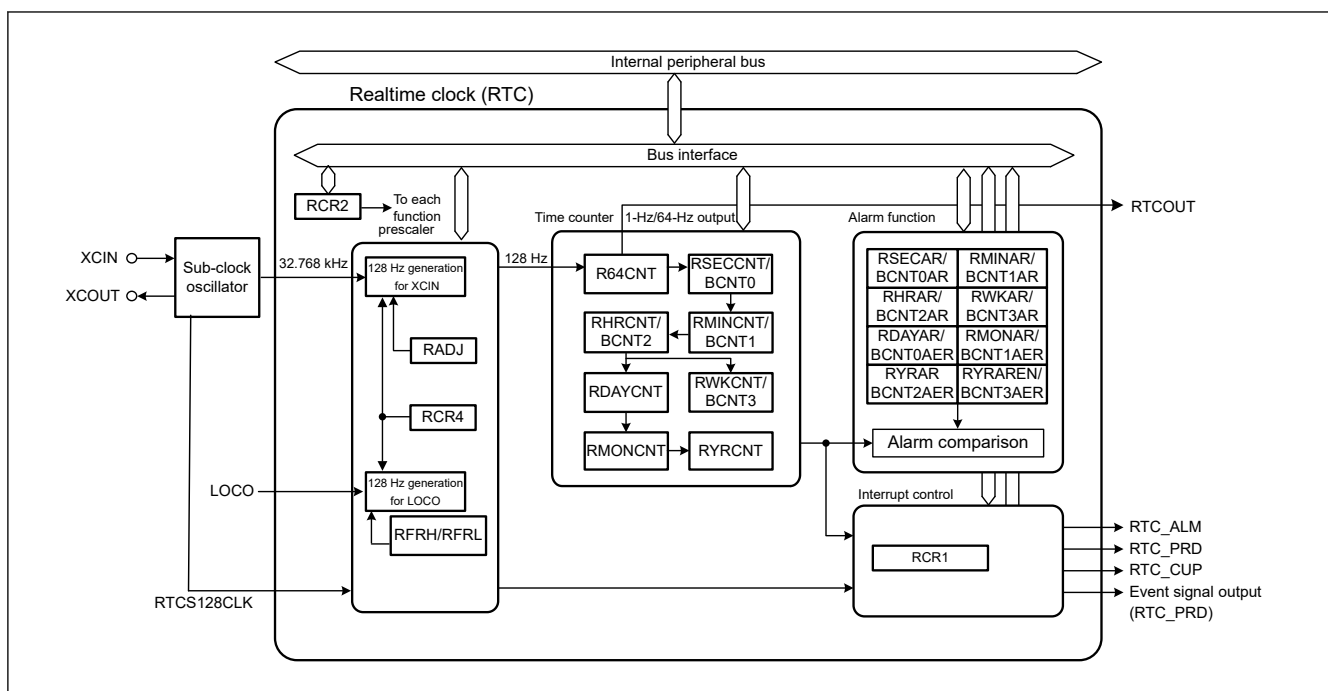


Figure 22.1 RTC block diagram

Table 22.2 RTC I/O pins

Pin name	I/O	Description
XCIN	Input	Connect a 32.768-kHz crystal to these pins
XCOU	Output	
RTCOU	Output	This pin is used to output a 1-Hz/64-Hz waveform

22.2 Register Descriptions

Write or read from the RTC registers as described in [section 22.6.5. Notes on Writing to and Reading From Registers](#).

If the value in an RTC register after a reset is given as x (undefined bits) in the list, it is not initialized by a reset. When RTC enters the reset state or a low power state during counting operations, for example, while the RCR2.START bit is 1, the year, month, day of the week, date, hours, minutes, seconds, and 64-Hz counters continue to operate.

Note: A reset generated while writing to a register might destroy the register value. In addition, do not allow the MCU to enter Software Standby mode immediately after setting any of these registers. For details, see [section 22.6.4. Transitions to Low Power Modes After Setting Registers](#).

22.2.1 R64CNT : 64-Hz Counter

Base address: RTC = 0x4004_4000

Offset address: 0x00

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	R64O VF	F1HZ	F2HZ	F4HZ	F8HZ	F16HZ	F32HZ	F64HZ

Value after reset: x x x x x x x x

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	F64HZ	64-Hz Flag This bit indicates the 64-Hz state of the sub-second digit.	R
1	F32HZ	32-Hz Flag This bit indicates the 32-Hz state of the sub-second digit.	R

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
2	F16HZ	16-Hz Flag This bit indicates the 16-Hz state of the sub-second digit.	R
3	F8HZ	8-Hz Flag This bit indicates the 8-Hz state of the sub-second digit.	R
4	F4HZ	4-Hz Flag This bit indicates the 4-Hz state of the sub-second digit.	R
5	F2HZ	2-Hz Flag This bit indicates the 2-Hz state of the sub-second digit.	R
6	F1HZ	1-Hz Flag This bit indicates the 1-Hz state of the sub-second digit.	R
7	R64OVF	This bit indicates the overflow of F1HZ only when using time error adjustment function in low-consumption clock mode.	R

The R64CNT counter is used in both calendar count mode and binary count mode, under two operation modes. The 64-Hz counter (R64CNT) generates the period for a second by counting up periods of the 128-Hz clock. The state in the sub-second range can be confirmed by reading this counter.

This counter is set to 0x00 by an RTC software reset or an execution of a 30-second adjustment. To read this counter, follow the procedure in [section 22.3.5. Reading 64-Hz Counter and Time](#).

22.2.2 RSECCNT : Second Counter (in Calendar Count Mode)

Base address: RTC = 0x4004_4000

Offset address: 0x02

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	SEC10[2:0]			SEC1[3:0]			

Value after reset: x x x x x x x x

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
3:0	SEC1[3:0]	1-Second Count Counts from 0 to 9 every second. When a carry is generated, 1 is added to the tens place.	R/W
6:4	SEC10[2:0]	10-Second Count Counts from 0 to 5 for 60-second counting.	R/W
7	—	The read value is undefined. The write value should be 0.	R/W

The RSECCNT counter sets and counts the BCD-coded second value. It counts the carries generated once per second in the 64-Hz counter.

The setting range is decimal 00 to 59. The RTC does not operate normally if any other value is set. Before writing to this register, you must stop the count operation using the START bit in RCR2.

To read this counter, follow the procedure in [section 22.3.5. Reading 64-Hz Counter and Time](#).

22.2.3 RMINCNT : Minute Counter (in Calendar Count Mode)

Base address: RTC = 0x4004_4000

Offset address: 0x04

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	MIN10[2:0]			MIN1[3:0]			

Value after reset: x x x x x x x x

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
3:0	MIN1[3:0]	1-Minute Count Counts from 0 to 9 every minute. When a carry is generated, 1 is added to the tens place.	R/W
6:4	MIN10[2:0]	10-Minute Count Counts from 0 to 5 for 60-minute counting.	R/W
7	—	The read value is undefined. The write value should be 0.	R/W

The RMINCNT counter sets and counts the BCD-coded minute value. It counts the carries generated once every minute in the second counter.

A value from 00 through 59 (in BCD) can be specified. If a value outside of this range is specified, the RTC does not operate correctly. Before writing to this register, you must stop the count operation using the START bit in RCR2. To read this counter, follow the procedure in [section 22.3.5. Reading 64-Hz Counter and Time](#).

22.2.4 RHRCNT : Hour Counter (in Calendar Count Mode)

Base address: RTC = 0x4004_4000

Offset address: 0x06

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	PM	HR10[1:0]	HR1[3:0]				

Value after reset: x x x x x x x x

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
3:0	HR1[3:0]	1-Hour Count Counts from 0 to 9 once per hour. When a carry is generated, 1 is added to the tens place.	R/W
5:4	HR10[1:0]	10-Hour Count Counts from 0 to 2 once per carry from the ones place.	R/W
6	PM	AM/PM select for time counter setting. 0: AM 1: PM	R/W
7	—	The read value is undefined. The write value should be 0.	R/W

The RHRCNT counter sets and counts the BCD-coded hour value. It counts the carries generated once per hour in the minute counter. The specifiable time differs based on the setting in the hours mode bit (RCR2.HR24):

- When the RCR2.HR24 bit is 0 — from 00 to 11 (in BCD).
- When the RCR2.HR24 bit is 1 — from 00 to 23 (in BCD).

If a value outside of this range is specified, the RTC does not operate correctly. Before writing to this register, you must stop the count operation using the START bit in RCR2. The PM bit is only enabled when the RCR2.HR24 bit is 0.

Otherwise, the setting in the PM bit has no effect. To read this counter, follow the procedure in [section 22.3.5. Reading 64-Hz Counter and Time](#).

22.2.5 RWKCNT : Day-of-Week Counter (in Calendar Count Mode)

Base address: RTC = 0x4004_4000

Offset address: 0x08

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	DAYW[2:0]		

Value after reset: x x x x x x x x

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
2:0	DAYW[2:0]	Day-of-Week Counting 0 0 0: Sunday 0 0 1: Monday 0 1 0: Tuesday 0 1 1: Wednesday 1 0 0: Thursday 1 0 1: Friday 1 1 0: Saturday 1 1 1: Setting prohibited	R/W
7:3	—	The read values are undefined. The write value should be 0.	R/W

The RWKCNT counter sets and counts in the coded day-of-week value. It counts the carries generated once per day in the hour counter. A value from 0 through 6 can be specified. If a value outside of this range is specified, the RTC does not operate correctly. Before writing to this register, you must stop the count operation using the START bit in RCR2. To read this counter, follow the procedure in [section 22.3.5. Reading 64-Hz Counter and Time](#).

22.2.6 BCNTn : Binary Counter n (n = 0 to 3) (in Binary Count Mode)

Base address: RTC = 0x4004_4000

Offset address: 0x02 + 0x02 × n

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	BCNT[7:0]							
Value after reset:	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7:0	BCNT[7:0]	Binary Counter	R/W

BCNTn is a read/write 8-bit register to access BCNT[31:0] that is a 32-bit binary counter. BCNT3 is assigned to the BCNT[31:24] bits, BCNT2 is assigned to the BCNT[23:16] bits, BCNT1 is assigned to the BCNT[15:8] bits, and BCNT0 is assigned to the BCNT[7:0] bits. BCNTn performs count operation by a carry generated for each second of the 64-Hz counter. Before writing to this register, you must stop the count operation using the START bit in RCR2. To read this counter, follow the procedure in [section 22.3.5. Reading 64-Hz Counter and Time](#).

22.2.7 RDAYCNT : Day Counter

Base address: RTC = 0x4004_4000

Offset address: 0x0A

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	DATE10[1:0]	DATE1[3:0]				
Value after reset:	0	0	x	x	x	x	x	x

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
3:0	DATE1[3:0]	1-Day Count Counts from 0 to 9 once per day. When a carry is generated, 1 is added to the tens place.	R/W
5:4	DATE10[1:0]	10-Day Count Counts from 0 to 3 once per carry from the ones place.	R/W
7:6	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

The RDAYCNT counter is used in calendar count mode to set and count the BCD-coded date value. It counts the carries generated once per day in the hour counter. The count operation depends on the month and whether the year is a leap year. Leap years are determined according to whether the year counter (RYRCNT) value is divisible by 400, 100, and 4.

A value from 01 through 31 (in BCD) can be specified. If a value outside this range is specified, the RTC does not operate correctly. When specifying a value, the range of specifiable days depends on the month and whether the year is a leap year. Before writing to this register, you must stop the count operation using the START bit in RCR2. To read this counter, follow the procedure in [section 22.3.5. Reading 64-Hz Counter and Time](#).

22.2.8 RMONCNT : Month Counter

Base address: RTC = 0x4004_4000

Offset address: 0x0C

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	MON1 0	MON1[3:0]			
Value after reset:	0	0	0	x	x	x	x	x

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
3:0	MON1[3:0]	1-Month Count Counts from 0 to 9 once per month. When a carry is generated, 1 is added to the tens place.	R/W
4	MON10	10-Month Count Counts from 0 to 1 once per carry from the ones place.	R/W
7:5	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

The RMONCNT counter is used in calendar count mode to set and count the BCD-coded month value. It counts the carries generated once per month in the date counter.

A value from 01 through 12 (in BCD) can be specified. If a value outside of this range is specified, the RTC does not operate correctly. Before writing to this register, you must stop the count operation using the START bit in RCR2. To read this counter, follow the procedure in [section 22.3.5. Reading 64-Hz Counter and Time](#).

22.2.9 RYRCNT : Year Counter

Base address: RTC = 0x4004_4000

Offset address: 0x0E

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	YR10[3:0]				YR1[3:0]			
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
3:0	YR1[3:0]	1-Year Count Counts from 0 to 9 once per year. When a carry is generated, 1 is added to the tens place.	R/W
7:4	YR10[3:0]	10-Year Count Counts from 0 to 9 once per carry from ones place. When a carry is generated in the tens place, 1 is added to the hundreds place.	R/W
15:8	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

The RYRCNT counter is used in calendar count mode to set and count the BCD-coded year value. It counts the carries generated once per year in the month counter.

A value from 00 through 99 (in BCD) can be specified. If a value outside of this range is specified, the RTC does not operate correctly. Before writing to this register, you must stop the count operation using the START bit in RCR2. To read this counter, follow the procedure in [section 22.3.5. Reading 64-Hz Counter and Time](#).

22.2.10 RSECAR : Second Alarm Register (in Calendar Count Mode)

Base address: RTC = 0x4004_4000

Offset address: 0x10

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	ENB	SEC10[2:0]			SEC1[3:0]			

Value after reset: x x x x x x x x

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
3:0	SEC1[3:0]	1 Second Value for the ones place of seconds.	R/W
6:4	SEC10[2:0]	10 Seconds Value for the tens place of seconds.	R/W
7	ENB	ENB 0: Do not compare register value with RSECNT counter value 1: Compare register value with RSECNT counter value	R/W

This register is not used in low-consumption clock mode.

RSECAR is an alarm register associated with the BCD-coded second counter RSECNT. When the ENB bit is set to 1, the RSECAR value is compared with the RSECNT value. From the following alarm registers, only those selected with the ENB bits set to 1 are compared with the associated counters:

- RSECAR
- RMINAR
- RHRAR
- RWKAR
- RDAYAR
- RMONAR
- RYRAREN

When all the respective values match, the IR flag associated with the RTC_ALM interrupt is set to 1. RSECAR values from 00 through 59 (in BCD) can be specified. If a value outside of this range is specified, the RTC does not operate correctly. This register is set to 0x00 by an RTC software reset.

22.2.11 RMINAR : Minute Alarm Register (in Calendar Count Mode)

Base address: RTC = 0x4004_4000

Offset address: 0x12

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	ENB	MIN10[2:0]			MIN1[3:0]			

Value after reset: x x x x x x x x

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
3:0	MIN1[3:0]	1 Minute Value for the ones place of minutes.	R/W
6:4	MIN10[2:0]	10 Minutes Value for the tens place of minutes.	R/W
7	ENB	ENB 0: Do not compare register value with RMINCNT counter value 1: Compare register value with RMINCNT counter value	R/W

This register is not used in low-consumption clock mode.

RMINAR is an alarm register associated with the BCD-coded minute counter RMINCNT. When the ENB bit is set to 1, the RMINAR value is compared with the RMINCNT value. From the following alarm registers, only those selected with the ENB bits set to 1 are compared with the associated counters:

- RSECAR
- RMINAR
- RHRAR
- RWKAR
- RDAYAR
- RMONAR
- RYRAREN

When all the respective values match, the IR flag associated with the RTC_ALM interrupt is set to 1. RMINAR values from 00 through 59 (in BCD) can be specified. If a value outside of this range is specified, the RTC does not operate correctly. This register is set to 0x00 by an RTC software reset.

22.2.12 RHRAR : Hour Alarm Register (in Calendar Count Mode)

Base address: RTC = 0x4004_4000

Offset address: 0x14

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	ENB	PM	HR10[1:0]	HR1[3:0]				

Value after reset: x x x x x x x x

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
3:0	HR1[3:0]	1 Hour Value for the ones place of hours.	R/W
5:4	HR10[1:0]	10 Hours Value for the tens place of hours.	R/W
6	PM	AM/PM select for alarm setting. 0: AM 1: PM	R/W
7	ENB	ENB 0: Do not compare register value with RHRCNT counter value 1: Compare register value with RHRCNT counter value	R/W

This register is not used in low-consumption clock mode.

RHRAR is an alarm register associated with the BCD-coded hour counter RHRCNT. When the ENB bit is set to 1, the RHRAR value is compared with the RHRCNT value. From the following alarm registers, only those selected with the ENB bits set to 1 are compared with the associated counters:

- RSECAR
- RMINAR
- RHRAR
- RWKAR
- RDAYAR
- RMONAR
- RYRAREN

When all the respective values match, the IR flag associated with the RTC_ALM interrupt is set to 1. The specifiable time differs according to the setting in the hours mode bit (RCR2.HR24):

- When the RCR2.HR24 bit is 0 — From 00 to 11 (in BCD).
- When the RCR2.HR24 bit is 1 — From 00 to 23 (in BCD).

If a value outside this range is specified, the RTC does not operate correctly. When the RCR2.HR24 bit is 0, you must set the PM bit. When the RCR2.HR24 bit is 1, the setting in the PM bit has no effect. This register is set to 0x00 by an RTC software reset.

22.2.13 RWKAR : Day-of-Week Alarm Register (in Calendar Count Mode)

Base address: RTC = 0x4004_4000

Offset address: 0x16

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	ENB	—	—	—	—	DAYW[2:0]		
Value after reset:	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
2:0	DAYW[2:0]	Day-of-Week Setting 0 0 0: Sunday 0 0 1: Monday 0 1 0: Tuesday 0 1 1: Wednesday 1 0 0: Thursday 1 0 1: Friday 1 1 0: Saturday 1 1 1: Setting prohibited	R/W
6:3	—	The read values are undefined. The write value should be 0.	R/W
7	ENB	ENB 0: Do not compare register value with RWKCNT counter value 1: Compare register value with RWKCNT counter value	R/W

This register is not used in low-consumption clock mode.

RWKAR is an alarm register associated with the coded day-of-week counter RWKCNT. When the ENB bit is set to 1, the RWKAR value is compared with the RWKCNT value. From the following alarm registers, only those selected with the ENB bits set to 1 are compared with the associated counters:

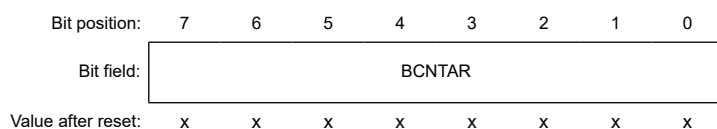
- RSECAR
- RMINAR
- RHRAR
- RWKAR
- RDAYAR
- RMONAR
- RYRAREN

When all the respective values match, the IR flag associated with the RTC_ALM interrupt is set to 1. RWKAR values from 0 through 6 (in BCD) can be specified. If a value outside of this range is specified, the RTC does not operate correctly. This register is set to 0x00 by an RTC software reset.

22.2.14 BCNTnAR : Binary Counter n Alarm Register (n = 0 to 3) (in Binary Count Mode)

Base address: RTC = 0x4004_4000

Offset address: $0x10 + 0x02 \times n$



Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7:0	BCNTAR	Alarm register associated with the 32-bit binary counter	R/W

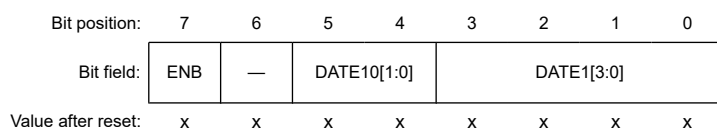
This register is not used in low-consumption clock mode.

BCNTnAR is a read/write alarm register associated with the 32-bit binary counter. BCNT3AR is assigned to the BCNTAR[31:24] bits, BCNT2AR is assigned to the BCNTAR[23:16] bits, BCNT1AR is assigned to the BCNTAR[15:8] bits, and BCNT0AR is assigned to the BCNTAR[7:0]. This register is set to 0x00 by an RTC software reset.

22.2.15 RDAYAR : Date Alarm Register (in Calendar Count Mode)

Base address: RTC = 0x4004_4000

Offset address: 0x18



Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
3:0	DATE1[3:0]	1 Day Value for the ones place of days.	R/W
5:4	DATE10[1:0]	10 Days Value for the tens place of days.	R/W
6	—	The read value is undefined. The write value should be 0.	R/W
7	ENB	ENB 0: Do not compare register value with RDAYCNT counter value 1: Compare register value with RDAYCNT counter value	R/W

This register is not used in low-consumption clock mode.

RDAYAR is an alarm register associated with the BCD-coded date counter RDAYCNT. When the ENB bit is set to 1, the RDAYAR value is compared with the RDAYCNT value. From the following alarm registers, only those selected with the ENB bits set to 1 are compared with the associated counters:

- RSECAR
- RMINAR
- RHRAR
- RWKAR
- RDAYAR
- RMONAR
- RYRAREN

When all the respective values match, the IR flag associated with the RTC_ALM interrupt is set to 1. The RDAYAR values from 01 through 31 (in BCD) can be specified. If a value outside this range is specified, the RTC does not operate correctly. This register is set to 0x00 by an RTC software reset.

22.2.16 RMONAR : Month Alarm Register (in Calendar Count Mode)

Base address: RTC = 0x4004_4000

Offset address: 0x1A

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	ENB	—	—	MON10	MON1[3:0]			
Value after reset:	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
3:0	MON1[3:0]	1 Month Value for the ones place of months.	R/W
4	MON10	10 Months Value for the tens place of months.	R/W
6:5	—	The read values are undefined. The write value should be 0.	R/W
7	ENB	ENB 0: Do not compare register value with RMONCNT counter value 1: Compare register value with RMONCNT counter value	R/W

This register is not used in low-consumption clock mode.

RMONAR is an alarm register associated with the BCD-coded month counter RMONCNT. When the ENB bit is set to 1, the RMONAR value is compared with the RMONCNT value. From the following alarm registers, only those selected with the ENB bits set to 1 are compared with the associated counters:

- RSECAR
- RMINAR
- RHRAR
- RWKAR
- RDAYAR
- RMONAR
- RYRAREN

When all the respective values match, the IR flag associated with the RTC_ALM interrupt is set to 1. The RMONAR values from 01 through 12 (in BCD) can be specified. If a value outside of this range is specified, the RTC does not operate correctly. This register is set to 0x00 by an RTC software reset.

22.2.17 RYRAR : Year Alarm Register (in Calendar Count Mode)

Base address: RTC = 0x4004_4000

Offset address: 0x1C

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	YR10[3:0]				YR1[3:0]			
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
3:0	YR1[3:0]	1 Year Value for the ones place of years.	R/W
7:4	YR10[3:0]	10 Years Value for the tens place of years.	R/W
15:8	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

This register is not used in low-consumption clock mode.

RYRAR is an alarm register associated with the BCD-coded year counter RYRCNT. The RYRAR values from 00 through 99 (in BCD) can be specified. If a value outside of this range is specified, the RTC does not operate correctly. This register is set to 0x0000 by an RTC software reset.

22.2.18 RYRAREN : Year Alarm Enable Register (in Calendar Count Mode)

Base address: RTC = 0x4004_4000

Offset address: 0x1E

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	ENB	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
6:0	—	The read values are undefined. The write value should be 0.	R/W
7	ENB	ENB 0: Do not compare register value with the RYRCNT counter value 1: Compare register value with the RYRCNT counter value	R/W

This register is not used in low-consumption clock mode.

When the ENB bit in the RYRAREN register is set to 1, the RYRAR value is compared with the RYRCNT value. From the following alarm registers, only those selected with the ENB bits set to 1 are compared with the associated counters:

- RSECAR
- RMINAR
- RHRAR
- RWKAR
- RDAYAR
- RMONAR
- RYRAREN

When all the respective values match, the IR flag associated with the RTC_ALM interrupt is set to 1. This register is set to 0x00 by an RTC software reset.

22.2.19 BCNTnAER : Binary Counter n Alarm Enable Register (n = 0, 1) (in Binary Count Mode)

Base address: RTC = 0x4004_4000

Offset address: 0x18 + 0x02 × n

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	ENB[7:0]							
Value after reset:	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7:0	ENB[7:0]	Setting the alarm enable associated with the 32-bit binary counter	R/W

This register is not used in low-consumption clock mode.

BCNTnAER is a read/write register for setting the alarm enable (BCNTAER) associated with the 32-bit binary counter. BCNT3AER is assigned to the BCNTAER.ENB[31:24] bits, BCNT2AER register is assigned to the BCNTAER.ENB[23:16] bits, BCNT1AER is assigned to the BCNTAER.ENB[15:8] bits, and BCNT0AER is assigned

to the BCNTAER.ENB[7:0] bits. The binary counter (BCNT[31:0]) associated with the BCNTAER.ENB[31:0] bits that are set to 1 is compared with the binary alarm register (BCNTAR) and, when all match, the IR flag associated with the RTC_ALM interrupt is set to 1. This register is set to 0x00 by an RTC software reset.

22.2.20 BCNT2AER : Binary Counter 2 Alarm Enable Register (in Binary Count Mode)

Base address: RTC = 0x4004_4000

Offset address: 0x1C

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	ENB[7:0]							
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7:0	ENB[7:0]	Setting the alarm enable associated with the 32-bit binary counter	R/W
15:8	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

This register is not used in low-consumption clock mode.

BCNT2AER is a read/write register for setting the alarm enable (BCNTAER) associated with the 32-bit binary counter. BCNT3AER is assigned to the BCNTAER.ENB[31:24] bits, BCNT2AER register is assigned to the BCNTAER.ENB[23:16] bits, BCNT1AER is assigned to the BCNTAER.ENB[15:8] bits, and BCNT0AER is assigned to the BCNTAER.ENB[7:0] bits. The binary counter (BCNT[31:0]) associated with the BCNTAER.ENB[31:0] bits that are set to 1 is compared with the binary alarm register (BCNTAR) and, when all match, the IR flag associated with the RTC_ALM interrupt is set to 1. This register is set to 0x00 by an RTC software reset.

22.2.21 BCNT3AER : Binary Counter 3 Alarm Enable Register (in Binary Count Mode)

Base address: RTC = 0x4004_4000

Offset address: 0x1E

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	ENB[7:0]							
Value after reset:	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7:0	ENB[7:0]	Setting the alarm enable associated with the 32-bit binary counter	R/W

This register is not used in low-consumption clock mode.

BCNT3AER is a read/write register for setting the alarm enable (BCNTAER) associated with the 32-bit binary counter. BCNT3AER is assigned to the BCNTAER.ENB[31:24] bits, BCNT2AER register is assigned to the BCNTAER.ENB[23:16] bits, BCNT1AER is assigned to the BCNTAER.ENB[15:8] bits, and BCNT0AER is assigned to the BCNTAER.ENB[7:0] bits. The binary counter (BCNT[31:0]) associated with the BCNTAER.ENB[31:0] bits that are set to 1 is compared with the binary alarm register (BCNTAR) and, when all match, the IR flag associated with the RTC_ALM interrupt is set to 1. This register is set to 0x00 by an RTC software reset.

22.2.22 RCR1 : RTC Control Register 1

Base address: RTC = 0x4004_4000

Offset address: 0x22

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	PES[3:0]				RTCO S	PIE	CIE	AIE
Value after reset:	x	x	x	x	0	x	0	x

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	AIE	Alarm Interrupt Enable 0: Disable alarm interrupt requests 1: Enable alarm interrupt requests*2	R/W
1	CIE	Carry Interrupt Enable 0: Disable carry interrupt requests 1: Enable carry interrupt requests	R/W
2	PIE	Periodic Interrupt Enable 0: Disable periodic interrupt requests 1: Enable periodic interrupt requests	R/W
3	RTCOS	RTCOUT Output Select 0: Outputs 1 Hz on RTCOUT 1: Outputs 64 Hz RTCOUT	R/W
7:4	PES[3:0]	Periodic Interrupt Select 0x6: Generate periodic interrupt every 1/256 second*1*3 0x7: Generate periodic interrupt every 1/128 second*3 0x8: Generate periodic interrupt every 1/64 second*3 0x9: Generate periodic interrupt every 1/32 second 0xA: Generate periodic interrupt every 1/16 second 0xB: Generate periodic interrupt every 1/8 second 0xC: Generate periodic interrupt every 1/4 second 0xD: Generate periodic interrupt every 1/2 second 0xE: Generate periodic interrupt every 1 second 0xF: Generate periodic interrupt every 2 seconds Others: Do not generate periodic interrupts	R/W

Note 1. When LOCO is selected (RCR4.RCKSEL = 1) while PES[3:0] = 0x6, a periodic interrupt is generated every 1/128 second.

Note 2. Set the bit to 0 when RTC is in low-consumption clock mode.

Note 3. Not supported when RTC is in low-consumption clock mode. No periodic interrupts are generated if RTC is in this setting.

The RCR1 register is used in both calendar count mode and binary count mode, under two operation modes. Bits AIE, PIE, and PES[3:0] are updated synchronously with the count source. When the RCR1 register is modified, check that all the bits are updated before proceeding.

AIE bit (Alarm Interrupt Enable)

The AIE bit enables or disables alarm interrupt requests.

CIE bit (Carry Interrupt Enable)

The CIE bit enables or disables interrupt requests when a carry to the RSECCNT/BCNT0 register occurs, or when a carry to the 64-Hz counter (R64CNT) occurs while reading the 64-Hz counter.

PIE bit (Periodic Interrupt Enable)

The PIE bit enables or disabled a periodic interrupt.

RTCOS bit (RTCOUT Output Select)

The RTCOS bit selects the RTCOUT output period. The RTCOS bit must be rewritten while the count operation is stopped (RCR2.START = 0) and the RTCOUT output is disabled (RCR2.RTCOE = 0). When RTCOUT is output to an external pin, the RCR2.RTCOE bit must be enabled.

PES[3:0] bits (Periodic Interrupt Select)

The PES[3:0] bits specify the period for the periodic interrupt. A periodic interrupt is generated with the period specified in these bits.

22.2.23 RCR2 : RTC Control Register 2 (in Calendar Count Mode)

Base address: RTC = 0x4004_4000

Offset address: 0x24

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	CNTM D	HR24	AADJ P	AADJ E	RTCO E	ADJ30	RESE T	START
Value after reset:	x	x	x	x	0	0	0	x

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	START ^{*3}	Start 0: Stop prescaler and time counter 1: Operate prescaler and time counter normally	R/W
1	RESET	RTC Software Reset 0: In writing: Invalid (writing 0 has no effect). In reading: Normal time operation in progress, or an RTC software reset has completed. 1: In writing: Initialize the prescaler and target registers for RTC software reset ^{*1} . In reading: RTC software reset in progress.	R/W
2	ADJ30 ^{*4}	30-Second Adjustment 0: In writing: Invalid (writing 0 has no effect). In reading: Normal time operation in progress, or 30-second adjustment has completed. 1: In writing: Execute 30-second adjustment. In reading: 30-second adjustment in progress.	R/W
3	RTCOE	RTCOUT Output Enable 0: Disable RTCOUT output 1: Enable RTCOUT output	R/W
4	AADJE	Automatic Adjustment Enable ^{*2*5} 0: Disable automatic adjustment 1: Enable automatic adjustment	R/W
5	AADJP	Automatic Adjustment Period Select ^{*2*5} 0: In normal operation mode, adjust RADJ.ADJ[5:0] setting from the count value of the prescaler every minute. In low-consumption clock mode, adjust RADJ.ADJ[5:0] setting from the count value of the 64-Hz counter every day. 1: In normal operation mode, adjust RADJ.ADJ[5:0] setting from the count value of the prescaler every 10 seconds. In low-consumption clock mode, adjust RADJ.ADJ[5:0] setting from the count value of the 64-Hz counter every hour.	R/W
6	HR24	Hours Mode ^{*5} 0: Operate RTC in 12-hour mode 1: Operate RTC in 24-hour mode	R/W
7	CNTMD	Count Mode Select ^{*6} 0: Calendar count mode 1: Binary count mode	R/W

Note 1. R64CNT, RSECAR, RMINAR, RHRAR, RWKAR, RDAYAR, RMONAR, RYRAR, RYRAREN, RADJ, RMINCPn, RHRCPn, RDAYCPn, RMONCPn, RCR2.ADJ30, RCR2.AADJE, RCR2.AADJP.

Note 2. When LOCO is selected, the setting of this bit is disabled.

Note 3. The prescaler operates only in normal operation mode, and no prescaler operates in low-consumption clock mode.

Note 4. Set the bit to 0 when RTC is in low-consumption clock mode.

Note 5. When rewriting this bit, confirm that the value has been rewritten before performing the following processing. See [section 22.6.5. Notes on Writing to and Reading From Registers](#) for notes on register writing/reading.

Note 6. When rewriting this bit, confirm that the value has been rewritten before performing the following processing.

The RCR2 register is related to hours mode, automatic adjustment function, enabling RTCOUT output, 30-second adjustment, RTC software reset, and controlling count operation.

START bit (Start)

The START bit stops or restarts the prescaler or time counter operation. This bit is updated in synchronization with the next cycle of the count source. When the START bit is modified, check that the bit is updated before proceeding.

RESET bit (RTC Software Reset)

The RESET bit initializes the prescaler and registers to be reset by RTC software. When 1 is written to this bit, initialization starts in synchronization with the count source. When the initialization is complete, the RESET bit is automatically set to 0. Check that this bit is 0 before proceeding.

ADJ30 bit (30-Second Adjustment)

The ADJ30 bit is for 30-second adjustment.

When 1 is written to the ADJ30 bit, the RSECCNT value of less than 30 seconds is rounded down to 00 second and the value of 30 seconds or more is rounded up to 1 minute.

The 30-second adjustment is performed in synchronization with the count source. When 1 is written to this bit, the ADJ30 bit is automatically set to 0 after the 30-second adjustment completes. If 1 is written to the ADJ30 bit, check that the bit is 0 before proceeding. When the 30-second adjustment is performed, the prescaler and R64CNT are also reset. The ADJ30 bit is set to 0 by an RTC software reset.

RTC OE bit (RTCOUT Output Enable)

The RTC OE bit enables output of a 1-Hz/64-Hz clock signal from the RTCOUT pin.

Use the START bit to stop counting before changing the value of the RTC OE bit. Do not stop counting (write 0 to the START bit) and change the value of the RTC OE bit at the same time.

When RTCOUT is to be output from an external pin, enable the RTC OE bit and set up the port control for the pin.

AADJE bit (Automatic Adjustment Enable)

The AADJE bit controls (enables or disables) automatic adjustment.

Set the plus-minus bits (RADJ.PMADJ[1:0]) to 00b (adjustment is not performed) before changing the value of the AADJE bit.

The AADJE bit is set to 0 by an RTC software reset.

AADJP bit (Automatic Adjustment Period Select)

The AADJP bit selects the automatic-adjustment period.

Set the plus-minus bits (RADJ.PMADJ[1:0]) to 00b (adjustment is not performed) before changing the value of the AADJP bit.

The AADJP bit is set to 0 by an RTC software reset.

HR24 bit (Hours Mode)

The HR24 bit specifies whether the RTC operates in 12- or 24-hour mode.

Use the START bit to stop counting before changing the value of the HR24 bit. Do not stop counting (write 0 to the START bit) and change the value of the HR24 bit at the same time.

CNTMD bit (Count Mode Select)

The CNTMD bit specifies whether the RTC count mode operates in calendar count mode or in binary count mode in the two operation modes.

When setting the count mode, execute an RTC software reset and start again from the initial settings. This bit is updated in synchronization with the count source. However, the count mode switches only after the RTC software reset. (Bit switches before RTC reset, mode switches after RTC reset.)

For details on initial settings, see [section 22.3.1. Outline of Initial Settings of Registers After Power On](#).

22.2.24 RCR2 : RTC Control Register 2 (in Binary Count Mode)

Base address: RTC = 0x4004_4000

Offset address: 0x24

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	CNTM D	—	AADJ P	AADJ E	RTCO E	—	RESE T	START

Value after reset: x x x x 0 0 0 x

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	START ^{*3}	Start 0: Stop the 32-bit binary counter, 64-Hz counter, and prescaler 1: Operate the 32-bit binary counter, 64-Hz counter, and prescaler normally	R/W
1	RESET	RTC Software Reset 0: In writing: Invalid (writing 0 has no effect). In reading: Normal time operation in progress, or an RTC software reset has completed. 1: In writing: Initialize the prescaler and target registers for RTC software reset ^{*1} . In reading: RTC software reset in progress.	R/W
2	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
3	RTCOE	RTCOUNT Output Enable 0: Disable RTCOUNT output 1: Enable RTCOUNT output	R/W
4	AADJE	Automatic Adjustment Enable ^{*2*4} 0: Disable automatic adjustment 1: Enable automatic adjustment	R/W
5	AADJP	Automatic Adjustment Period Select ^{*2*4} 0: In normal operation mode, add or subtract the RADJ.ADJ[5:0] bits from the prescaler count value every 32 seconds. In low-consumption clock mode, add or subtract the RADJ.ADJ[5:0] bits from the 64-Hz counter count value every 8192 seconds. 1: In normal operation mode, add or subtract the RADJ.ADJ[5:0] bits from the prescaler count value every 8 seconds. In low-consumption clock mode, add or subtract the RADJ.ADJ[5:0] bits from the 64-Hz counter count value every 2048 seconds.	R/W
6	—	The read value is undefined. The write value should be 0.	R/W
7	CNTMD	Count Mode Select ^{*5} 0: Calendar count mode 1: Binary count mode	R/W

Note 1. R64CNT, BCNTnAR, BCNTnAER, RADJ, RCR2.ADJ30, RCR2.AADJE, RCR2.AADJP.

Note 2. When LOCO is selected, the setting of this bit is disabled.

Note 3. The prescaler operates only in normal operation mode, and no prescaler operates in low-consumption clock mode.

Note 4. When rewriting this bit, confirm that the value has been rewritten before performing the following processing. See [section 22.6.5. Notes on Writing to and Reading From Registers](#) for notes on register writing/reading.

Note 5. When rewriting this bit, confirm that the value has been rewritten before performing the following processing.

RCR2 in the binary count mode is a register related to the automatic correction function, RTCOUNT output enable, RTC software reset, and count mode control.

START bit (Start)

The START bit stops or restarts the prescaler or counter (clock) operation. This bit is updated in synchronization with the count source. When the START bit is modified, check that the bit is updated before proceeding.

RESET bit (RTC Software Reset)

The RESET bit initializes the prescaler and registers to be reset by RTC software. When 1 is written to this bit, initialization starts in synchronization with the count source. When the initialization is complete, the RESET bit is automatically set to 0. When 1 is written to the RESET bit, check that the bit is 0 before proceeding.

RTCOE bit (RTCOUT Output Enable)

The RTCOE bit enables output of a 1-Hz/64-Hz clock signal from the RTCOUT pin.

Use the START bit to stop counting before changing the value of the RTCOE bit. Do not stop counting (write 0 to the START bit) and change the value of the RTCOE bit at the same time. When an RTCOUT signal is to be output from an external pin, enable the port control in addition to setting this bit.

AADJE bit (Automatic Adjustment Enable)

The AADJE bit controls (enables or disables) automatic adjustment.

Set the plus-minus bits (RADJ.PMADJ[1:0]) to 00b (adjustment is not performed) before changing the value of the AADJE bit. The AADJE bit is set to 0 by an RTC software reset.

AADJP bit (Automatic Adjustment Period Select)

The AADJP bit selects the automatic-adjustment period.

Correction period can be selected from 32 second units or 8 second units in binary count mode.

Set the plus-minus bits (RADJ.PMADJ[1:0]) to 00b (adjustment is not performed) before changing the value of the AADJP bit. The AADJP bit is set to 0 by an RTC software reset.

CNTMD bit (Count Mode Select)

The CNTMD bit specifies whether the RTC count mode operates in calendar count mode or in binary count mode in the two operation modes.

When setting the count mode, execute an RTC software reset and start again from the initial settings. This bit is updated in synchronization with the count source. However, the count mode switches only after the RTC software reset. (Bit switches before RTC reset, mode switches after RTC reset.)

For details on initial settings, see [section 22.3.1. Outline of Initial Settings of Registers After Power On](#).

22.2.25 RCR4 : RTC Control Register 4

Base address: RTC = 0x4004_4000

Offset address: 0x28

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	ROPS EL	—	—	—	—	—	—	RCKS EL
Value after reset:	x	0	0	0	0	0	0	x

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	RCKSEL	Count Source Select in normal operation mode 0: Sub-clock oscillator is selected 1: LOCO is selected	R/W
6:1	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
7	ROPSEL	RTC Operation Mode Select 0: Normal operation mode is selected 1: Low-consumption clock mode is selected	R/W

The RCR4 is used for selecting the RTC operation mode and the count source. The RCR4 register is used in both calendar count mode and binary count mode.

RCKSEL bit (Count Source Select in normal operation mode)

The RCKSEL bit selects the count source from the sub-clock oscillator and LOCO.

The RCKSEL bit is only used in normal operation mode. When the RCKSEL bit is set to 0, the time is counted with the sub-clock oscillator. When the bit is set to 1, the time is counted with LOCO.

For details on count source setting, see [section 22.3.1. Outline of Initial Settings of Registers After Power On](#) and [section 22.3.2. Operation Mode, Clock and Count Mode Setting Procedure](#). The count source must be selected only once before specifying the initial settings of the RTC registers at power on.

ROPSEL bit (RTC Operation Mode Select)

When the ROPSEL bit is set to 0, the RTC operation mode is set to normal operation mode. When this bit is set to 1, the RTC operation mode is set to low-consumption clock mode.

22.2.26 RFRL : Frequency Register L

Base address: RTC = 0x4004_4000

Offset address: 0x2C

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	RFC[15:0]															
Value after reset:	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
15:0	RFC[15:0]	Frequency Comparison Value Write 0x00FF to this register when using the LOCO.	R/W

RFRL is a register for controlling the prescaler when LOCO is selected in normal operation mode.

The RTC time counter operates on a 128-Hz clock signal as the base clock. Therefore, when LOCO is selected, LOCO is divided by the prescaler to generate a 128-Hz clock signal. Set the frequency comparison value in the RFC[15:0] bits to generate a 128-Hz clock from the LOCO frequency. Before writing to RFC[15:0] after a cold start, write 0x0000 to the RFRH register.

A value from 0x0007 through 0x01FF can be specified as the frequency comparison value. If a value outside this range is specified, the RTC does not operate correctly. Before writing to this register, be sure to stop the count operation through the setting of the START bit in RCR2. The operating frequency of the peripheral module clock and the LOCO should be such that the peripheral module clock is $\geq$ LOCO.

Calculation method of frequency comparison value:

$$\text{RFC}[15:0] = (\text{LOCO clock frequency}) / 128 - 1$$

When the LOCO frequency is 32.768 kHz, the RFRL register should be set to 0x00FF.

22.2.27 RFRH : Frequency Register H

Base address: RTC = 0x4004_4000

Offset address: 0x2A

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	RFC16
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	x

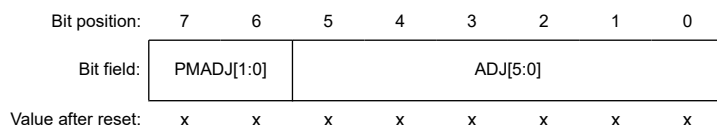
Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	RFC16	Write 0 before writing to the RFRL register after a cold start.	R/W
15:1	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Before writing to RFRHL.RFC[15:0] after a cold start, write 0x0000 to the RFRH register.

22.2.28 RADJ : Time Error Adjustment Register

Base address: RTC = 0x4004_4000

Offset address: 0x2E



Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
5:0	ADJ[5:0]	Adjustment Value In normal operation mode, these bits specify the adjustment value from the prescaler. In low-consumption clock mode, these bits specify the adjustment value from the 64-Hz counter.	R/W
7:6	PMADJ[1:0]	Plus-Minus 0 0: Do not perform adjustment 0 1: In normal operation mode, adjustment is performed by the addition to the prescaler. In low-consumption clock mode, adjustment is performed by the addition to the 64-Hz counter. 1 0: In normal operation mode, adjustment is performed by the subtraction from the prescaler. In low-consumption clock mode, adjustment is performed by the subtraction from the 64-Hz counter. 1 1: Setting prohibited	R/W

The RADJ register is used in both calendar count mode and binary count mode. Adjustment is performed by the addition to or subtraction from the prescaler or 64-Hz counter. If the Automatic Adjustment Enable (RCR2.AADJE) bit is 0, adjustment is performed when writing to the RADJ. If the RCR2.AADJE bit is 1, adjustment is performed in the interval specified in the Automatic Adjustment Period Select (RCR2.AADJP) bit.

The current adjustment by software (disabling automatic adjustment) may be invalid if the following adjustment value is specified within 320 cycles of the count source after the register setting. To perform adjustment consecutively, wait for 320 cycles or more of the count source after the register setting, then specify the next adjustment value.

RADJ is updated in synchronization with the count source. When RADJ is modified, check that all the bits are updated before continuing with more processing. This register is set to 0x00 by an RTC software reset. The setting of this register is enabled only when the sub-clock oscillator is selected. When LOCO is selected, adjustment is not performed.

ADJ[5:0] bits (Adjustment Value)

The ADJ[5:0] bits specify the adjustment value (number of sub-clock cycles) from the prescaler.

PMADJ[1:0] bits (Plus-Minus)

The PMADJ[1:0] bits select whether the clock is set ahead or back depending on the error-adjustment value set in the ADJ[5:0] bits.

22.3 Operation

22.3.1 Outline of Initial Settings of Registers After Power On

After the power is turned on, perform the initial settings for the operation mode, clock, count mode, time error adjustment, time, alarm, and interrupts.

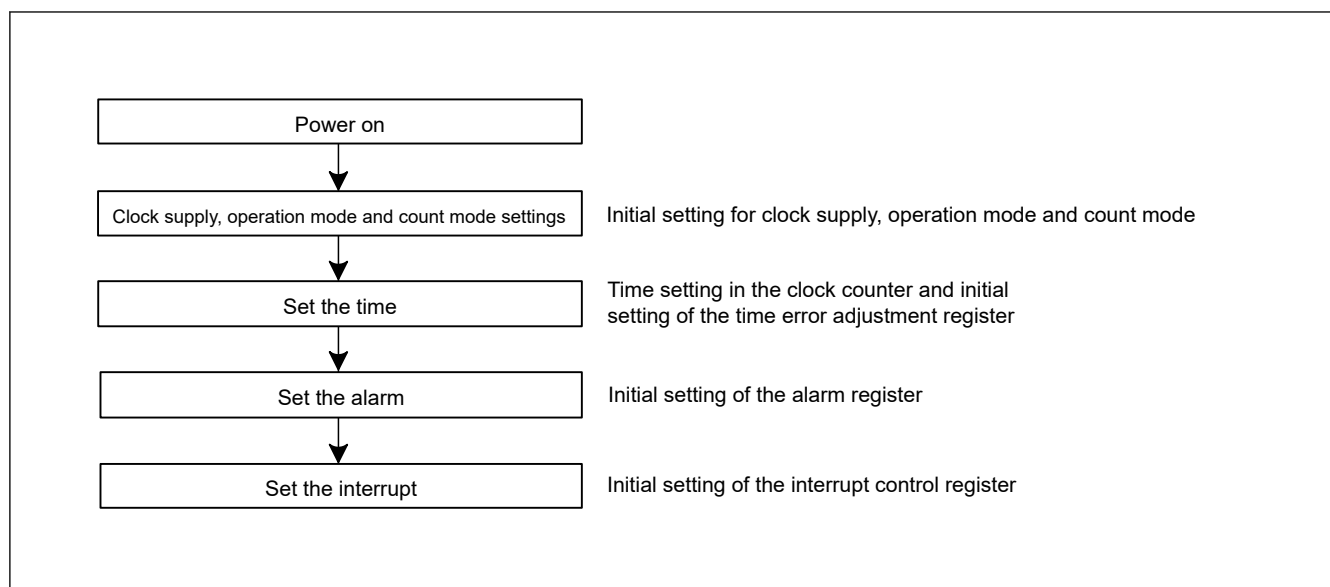
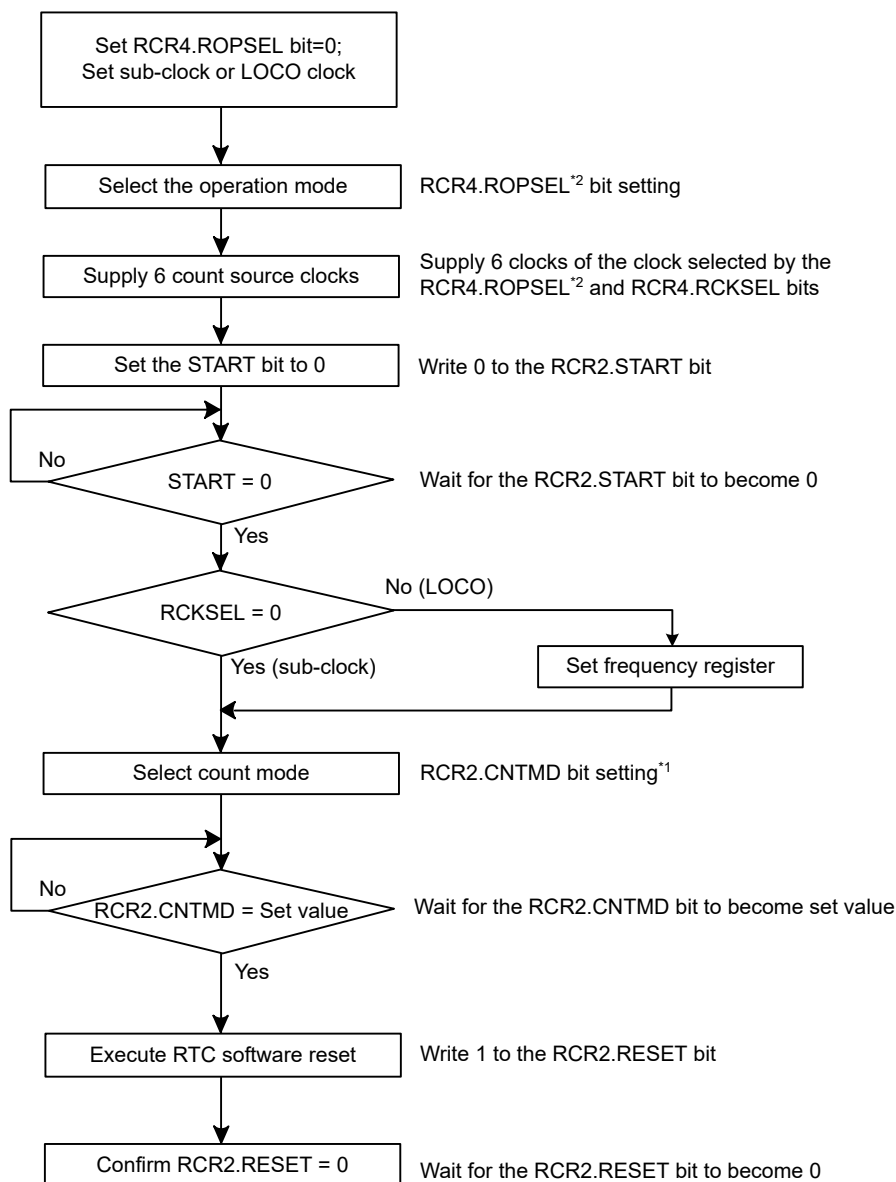


Figure 22.2 Outline of initial settings after a power on

22.3.2 Operation Mode, Clock and Count Mode Setting Procedure

Figure 22.3 shows how to set the operation mode, clock and the count mode.



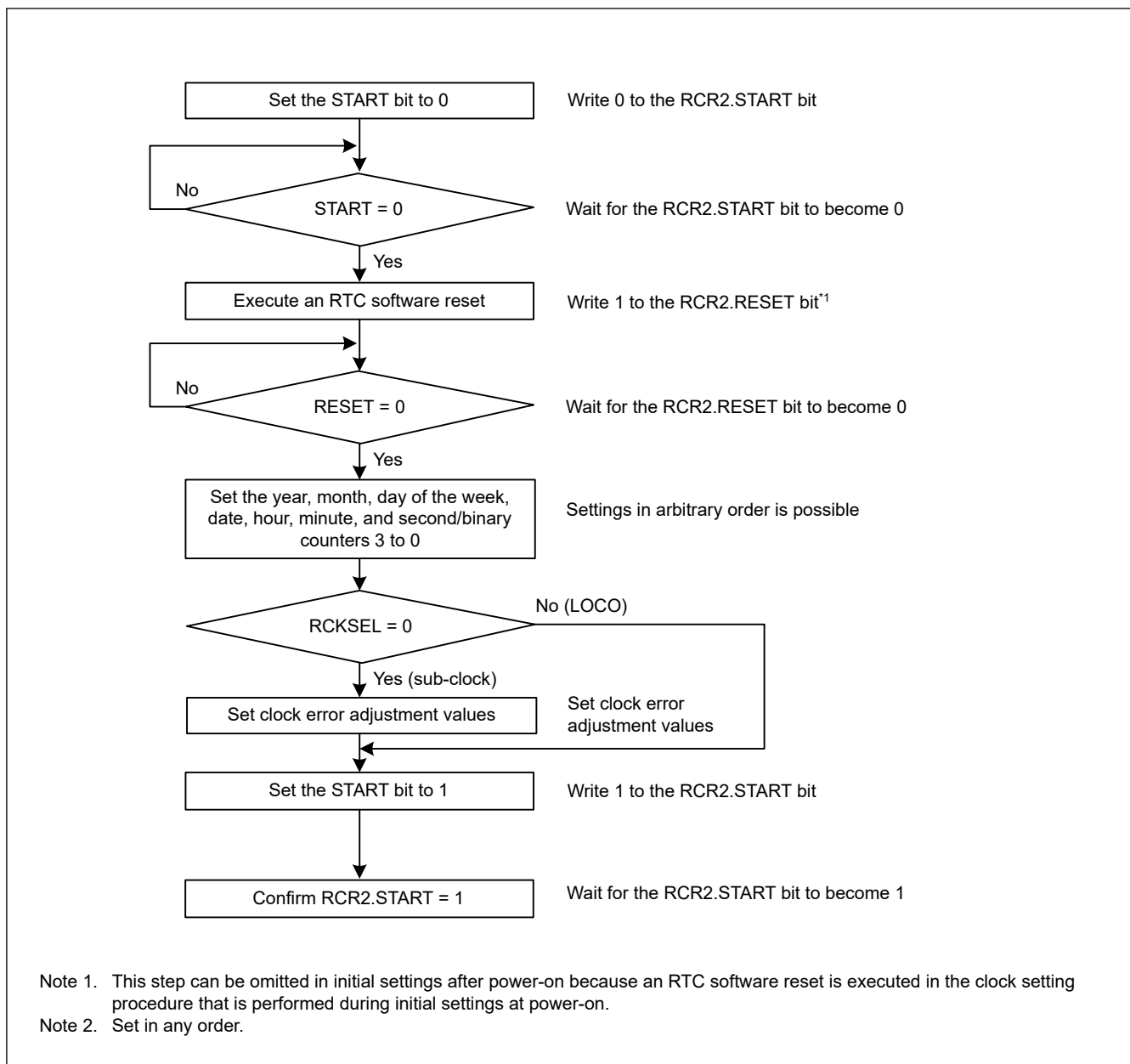
Note 1. This step is not required if the count mode is concurrently set by setting the START bit to 0. A value associated with the count mode setting must be written to the RCR2.CNTMD bit.

Note 2. RCR4.RCKSEL bit setting is not required if the low-consumption clock mode is set.

Figure 22.3 Clock and count mode setting procedure

22.3.3 Setting the Time

Figure 22.4 shows how to set the time.

**Figure 22.4** Setting the time

22.3.4 30-Second Adjustment

30-Second adjustment is not supported in low-consumption clock mode.

Figure 22.5 shows how to execute a 30-second adjustment.

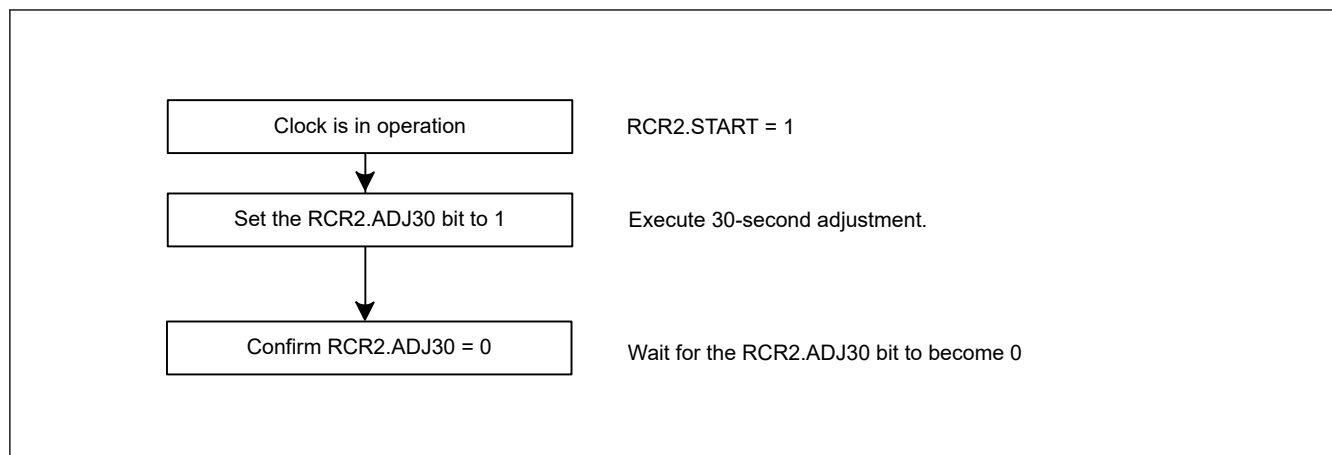
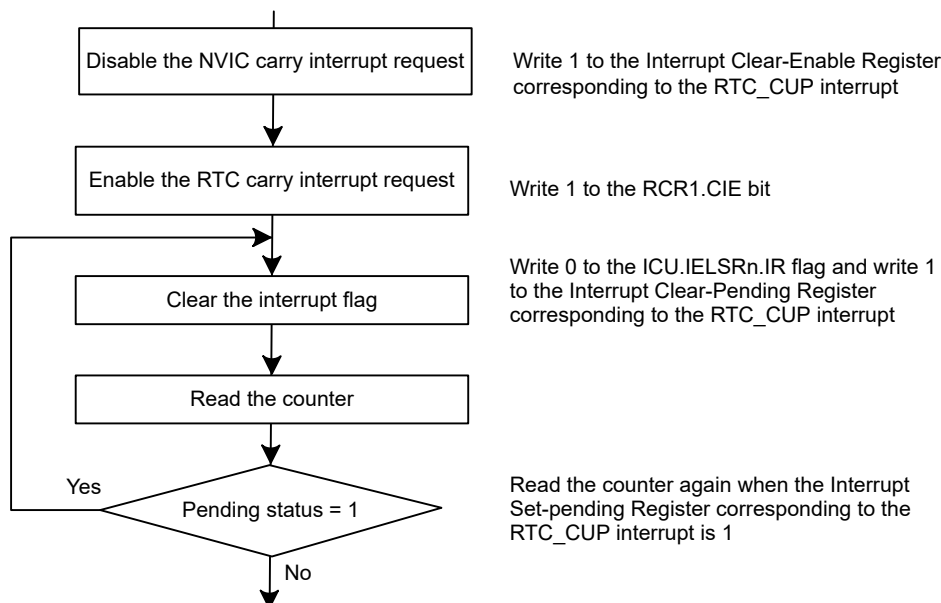


Figure 22.5 30-second adjustment

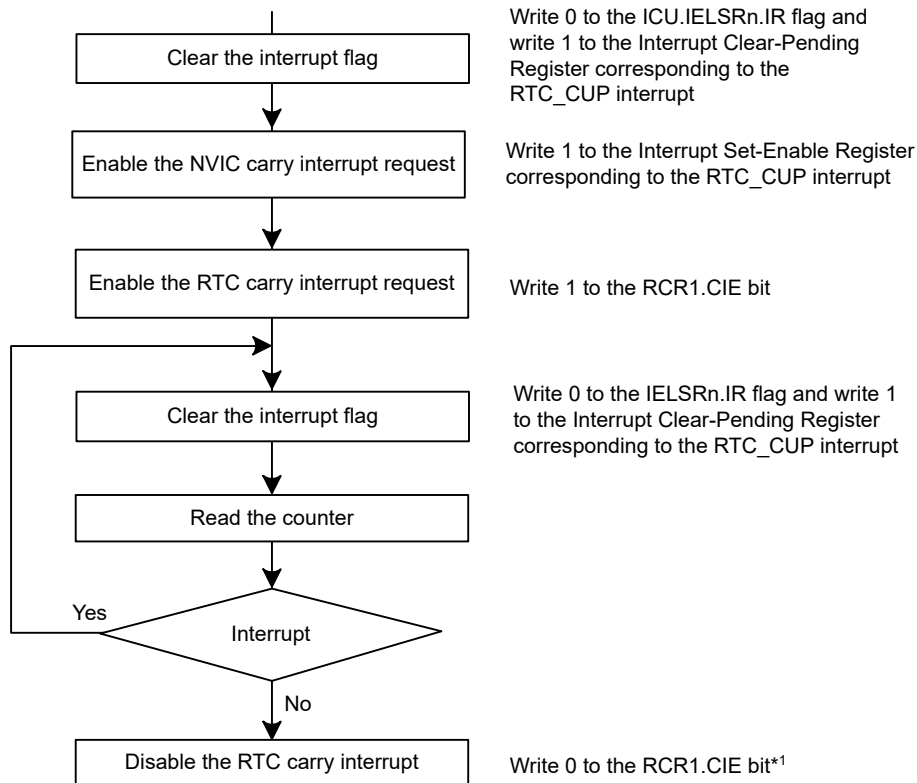
22.3.5 Reading 64-Hz Counter and Time

[Figure 22.6](#) shows how to read a 64-Hz counter and time.

(a) To read the time without using interrupt



(b) To read the time using interrupts



Note 1. Disable interrupts if required.

Figure 22.6 Reading time

If a carry occurs while the 64-Hz counter and time are read, the correct time is not obtained, therefore they must be read again. The procedure for reading the time without using interrupts is shown in (a) in Figure 22.6, and the procedure using carry interrupts is shown in (b). To keep the program simple, method (a) should be used in most cases.

Only method (a) could be used in low-consumption mode.

22.3.6 Alarm Function

Alarm function is not supported in low-consumption clock mode.

Figure 22.7 shows how to use the alarm function.

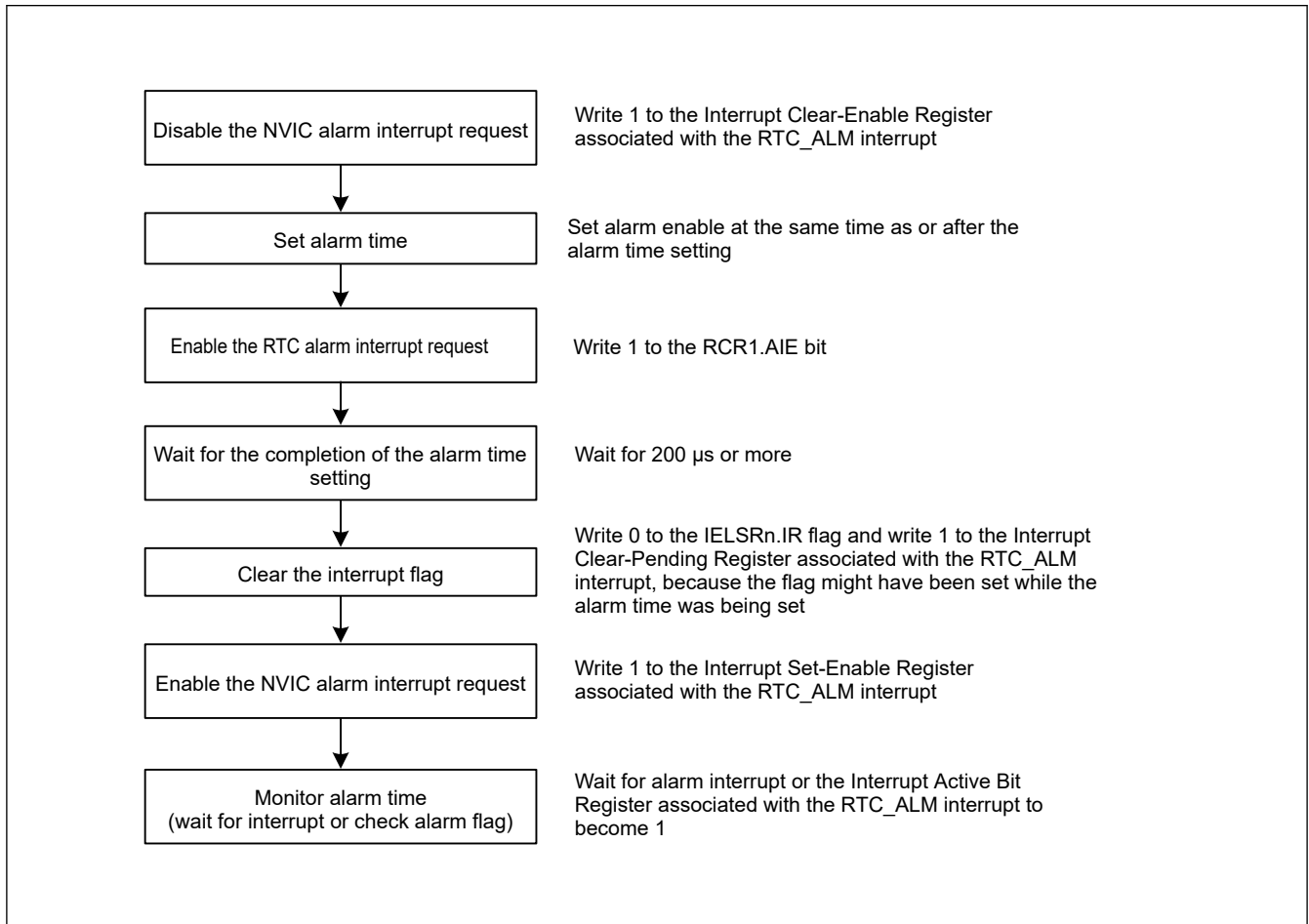


Figure 22.7 Using the alarm function

In calendar count mode, an alarm can be generated by any one of year, month, date, day-of-week, hour, minute or second, or any combination of those. Write 1 to the ENB bit in the alarm registers involved in the alarm setting, and set the alarm time in the lower bits. Write 0 to the ENB bit in registers not involved in the alarm setting.

In binary count mode, an alarm can be generated in any bit combination of 32 bits. Write 1 to the ENB bit of the Alarm Enable register associated with the target bit of the alarm, and set the alarm time in the alarm register. For bits that are not the target of the alarm, write 0 to the ENB bit of the Alarm Enable register.*¹

For any of the ENB[31:0] bits that are set to 1, the bits in the corresponding positions in the binary counter (BCNT[31:0]) are compared with the values of the corresponding bits in the binary alarm registers*¹. When all such bits match, the IR flag associated with the RTC_ALM interrupt is set to 1 and the corresponding bits in the Interrupt Set-Pending/Clear-Pending Registers are set to 1. Alarm detection can be confirmed by reading the Interrupt Set-Pending Register associated with the RTC_ALM interrupt, but an interrupt should be used in most cases. If 1 is set in the Interrupt Set-Enable Register associated with the RTC_ALM interrupt, an alarm interrupt is generated in the event of the alarm, enabling the alarm to be detected.

Writing 0 sets the IELSRn.IR flag associated with the RTC_ALM interrupt to 0. If interrupt is enabled, the Interrupt Set-Pending/Clear-Pending Register associated with the RTC_ALM interrupt is cleared automatically after exiting the

interrupt handler. Otherwise, write 1 to the Interrupt Clear-Pending Register associated with the RTC_ALM interrupt to clear it.

When the counter and the alarm time match in a low power state, the MCU returns from the low power state.

Note 1. For any bits in the ENB bits that are set to 1, the values in the corresponding positions in the alarm registers from the following registers are compared with the corresponding bits of the counted values.

Counter registers: RSECCNT, RMINCNT, RHRCNT, RWKCNT, RDAYCNT, RMONCNT, RYRCNT

Alarm registers: RSECAR, RMINAR, RHRAR, RWKAR, RDAYAR, RMONAR, RYRAREN

22.3.7 Procedure for Disabling Alarm Interrupt

Figure 22.8 shows the procedure for disabling the enabled alarm interrupt request.

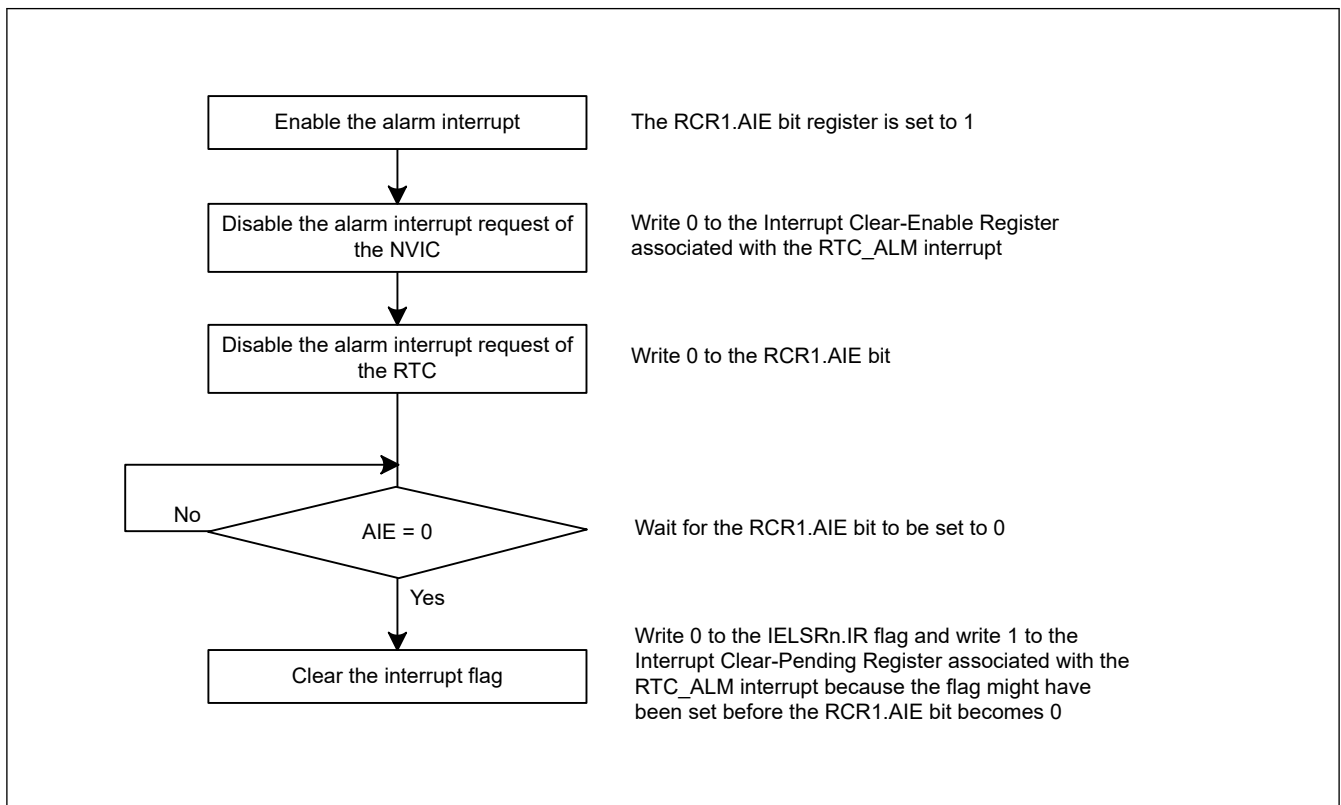


Figure 22.8 Procedure for disabling alarm interrupt request

22.3.8 Time Error Adjustment Function

The time error adjustment function is used to correct errors, running fast or slow, in the time caused by variation in the precision of oscillation by the sub-clock oscillator. In normal operation mode, because 32768 cycles of the sub-clock oscillator constitute 1 second of operation when the sub-clock oscillator is selected, the clock runs fast if the sub-clock frequency is high and slow if the sub-clock frequency is low. In low-consumption clock mode, because 128 cycles of the 128-Hz clock constitute 1 second of operation, the clock runs fast if the 128-Hz clock frequency is high and slow if the 128-Hz clock frequency is low.

The time error adjustment functions include:

- Automatic adjustment
- Adjustment by software

Use the RCR2.AADJE bit to select automatic adjustment or adjustment by software.

Adjustment by software is not supported in low-consumption clock mode.

22.3.8.1 Automatic Adjustment

Enable automatic adjustment by setting the RCR2.AADJE bit to 1.

In normal operation mode, automatic adjustment is the addition or subtraction of the value counted by the prescaler to or from the value in the RADJ register every time the adjustment period selected by the RCR2.AADJE bit elapses.

(1) Example 1: Sub-clock oscillator running at 32.769 kHz

Adjustment procedure

When the sub-clock oscillator is running at 32.769 kHz, 1 second elapses every 32769 clock cycles. The RTC is meant to run at 32768 clock cycles, so the clock runs fast by 1 clock cycle every second. The time on the clock is fast by 60 clock cycles per minute, so adjustment can take the form of setting the clock back by 60 cycles every minute.

Register settings when RCR2.CNTMD = 0:

- RCR2.AADJP = 0 (adjustment every minute)
- RADJ.PMADJ[1:0] = 10b (adjustment is performed by the subtraction from the prescaler)
- RADJ.ADJ[5:0] = 60 (0x3C)

(2) Example 2: Sub-clock oscillator running at 32.766 kHz

Adjustment procedure

When the sub-clock oscillator is running at 32.766 kHz, 1 second elapses every 32766 clock cycles. The RTC is meant to run at 32768 clock cycles, so the clock runs slow by 2 clock cycles every second. The time on the clock is slow by 20 clock cycles every 10 seconds, so adjustment can take the form of setting the clock forward by 20 cycles every 10 seconds.

Register settings when RCR2.CNTMD = 0:

- RCR2.AADJP = 1 (adjustment every 10 seconds)
- RADJ.PMADJ[1:0] = 01b (adjustment is performed by the addition to the prescaler)
- RADJ.ADJ[5:0] = 20 (0x14)

(3) Example 3: Sub-clock oscillator running at 32.764 kHz

Adjustment procedure

When the sub-clock oscillator is running at 32.764 kHz, 1 second elapses on 32764 clock cycles. Because the RTC operates for 32768 clock cycles as 1 second, the clock is delayed for 4 clock cycles per second. In 8 seconds, the delay is 32 clock cycles, therefore correction can be made by advancing the clock 32 clock cycles every 8 seconds.

Register settings when RCR2.CNTMD = 1:

- RCR2.AADJP = 1 (adjustment every 8 seconds)
- RADJ.PMADJ[1:0] = 01b (adjustment is performed by the addition to the prescaler)
- RADJ.ADJ[5:0] = 32 (0x20)

In low-consumption clock mode, automatic adjustment is the addition or subtraction of the value counted by the 64-Hz counter to or from the value in the RADJ register every time the adjustment period selected by the RCR2.AADJE bit elapses.

(4) Example 4 : Sub-clock oscillator running at 32.769 kHz

Adjustment procedure

The 128-Hz clock is generated from the sub-clock with 256 dividing ratio. When the sub-clock oscillator is running at 32.769 kHz, 1 second elapses in every 32769 sub-clock cycles, thus $32769/256$ count source cycles. The RTC is meant to run at $32768/256$ clock cycles, so the clock runs fast by $1/256$ clock cycle every second. The time on the clock is fast by $(1/256) \times 3600$ clock cycles per hour, so adjustment can take the form of setting the clock back by $(1/256) \times 3600 = 14$ cycles every hour.

Register settings when RCR2.CNTMD = 0:

- RCR2.AADJP = 1 (adjustment every hour)
- RADJ.PMADJ[1:0] = 10b (adjustment is performed by the subtraction from the 64-Hz counter)
- RADJ.ADJ[5:0] = 14 (0x0E)

(5) Example 5: Sub-clock oscillator running at 32.764 kHz**Adjustment procedure**

The 128-Hz clock is generated from the sub-clock with 256 dividing ratio. When the sub-clock oscillator runs at 32.764 kHz, 1 second elapses in every 32764 sub-clock cycles, thus 32764/256 count source cycles. Because the RTC operates for 32768/256 clock cycles as 1 second, the clock is delayed for 4/256 clock cycles per second. In 2048 seconds, the delay is $4/256 \times 2048 = 32$ clock cycles, therefore correction can be made by setting the clock for 32 clock cycles every 2048 seconds.

Register settings when RCR2.CNTMD = 1:

- RCR2.AADJP = 1 (adjustment every 2048 seconds)
- RADJ.PMADJ[1:0] = 01b (adjustment is performed by the addition to the 64-Hz counter)
- RADJ.ADJ[5:0] = 32 (0x20)

22.3.8.2 Adjustment by Software

Enable adjustment by software by setting the RCR2.AADJE bit to 0. Adjustment by software is the addition or subtraction of the value counted by the prescaler to or from the value in the RADJ register on execution of a write instruction to the RADJ register.

(1) Example 1: Sub-clock oscillator running at 32.769 kHz**Adjustment procedure**

When the sub-clock oscillator is running at 32.769 kHz, 1 second elapses every 32769 clock cycles. The RTC is meant to run at 32768 clock cycles, so the clock runs fast by 1 clock cycle every second. The time on the clock is fast by 1 clock cycle per second, so adjustment can take the form of setting the clock back by 1 cycle every second.

Register settings

- RADJ.PMADJ[1:0] = 10b (adjustment is performed by the subtraction from the prescaler)
- RADJ.ADJ[5:0] = 1 (0x01)
This is written to the RADJ register once per 1-second interrupt.

22.3.8.3 Procedure to Change the Mode of Adjustment

When changing the mode of adjustment, change the value of the AADJE bit in RCR2 after setting the RADJ.PMADJ[1:0] bits to 00b (adjustment is not performed).

To change adjustment by software to automatic adjustment:

1. Set the RADJ.PMADJ[1:0] bits to 00b (adjustment is not performed).
2. Set the RCR2.AADJE bit to 1 (automatic adjustment is enabled).
3. Use the RCR2.AADJP bit to select the period of adjustment.
4. In RADJ, set the PMADJ[1:0] bits for addition or subtraction and the ADJ[5:0] bits to the value for use in time error adjustment.

To change automatic adjustment to adjustment by software:

1. Set the RADJ.PMADJ[1:0] bits to 00b (adjustment is not performed).
2. Set the RCR2.AADJE bit to 0 (adjustment by software is enabled).

- Proceed with the adjustment by setting the RADJ.PMADJ[1:0] bits for addition or subtraction and the RADJ.ADJ[5:0] bits to the value for use in time error adjustment at the wanted time. After that, the time is adjusted every time a value is written to the RADJ register.

22.3.8.4 Procedure to Stop Adjustment

Stop the adjustment by setting the RADJ.PMADJ[1:0] bits to 00b (adjustment is not performed).

22.4 Interrupt Sources

The RTC has three interrupt sources, as listed in [Table 22.3](#).

Table 22.3 RTC interrupt sources

Name	Interrupt source
RTC_ALM	Alarm interrupt
RTC_PRD	Periodic interrupt
RTC_CUP	Carry interrupt

(1) Alarm interrupt (RTC_ALM)

This interrupt is generated based on the comparison result between the alarm registers and RTC counters. For details, see [section 22.3.6. Alarm Function](#).

The alarm interrupt is not supported in low-consumption clock mode.

Because there is a possibility that the interrupt flag might be set to 1 when the settings of the alarm registers match the clock counters, wait for the alarm time settings to be confirmed and clear the IELSRn.IR flag and the interrupt Set-Pending Register associated with the RTC_ALM interrupt to 0 again after modifying values of the alarm registers. After the interrupt flag for the alarm interrupt is set to 1 and the state is returned to mismatching of the alarm registers and clock counters, the flag is not 1 again until there is another match or the values of the alarm registers are modified again.

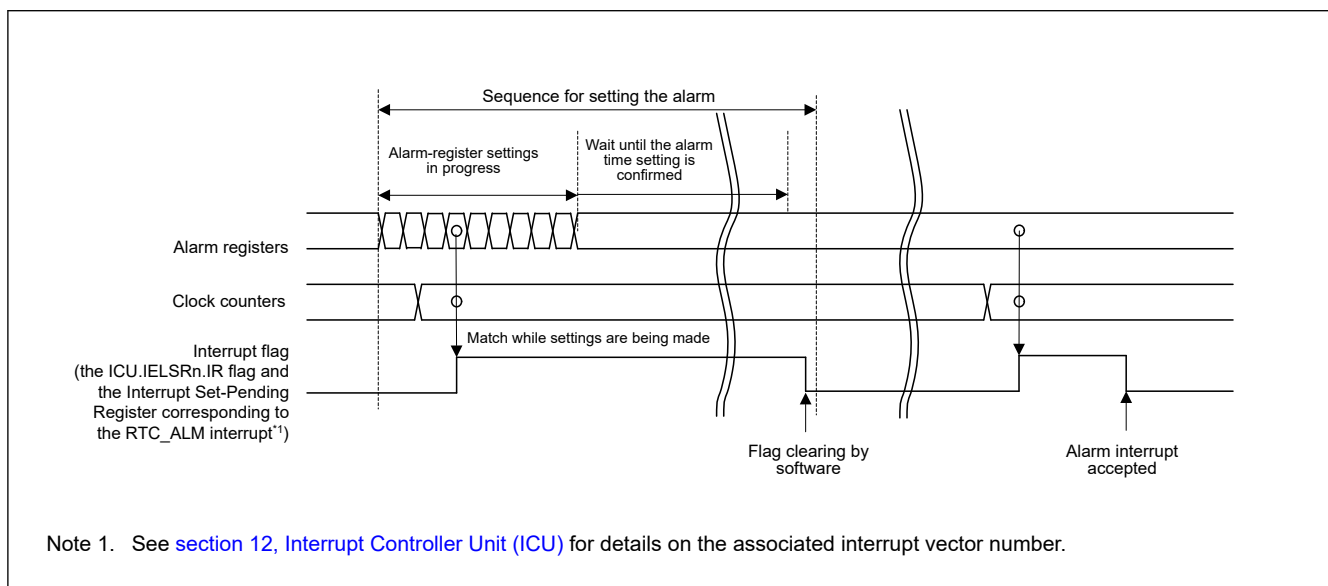


Figure 22.9 Timing for the alarm interrupt (RTC_ALM)

(2) Periodic interrupt (RTC_PRD)

This interrupt is generated at intervals of 2 seconds, 1 second, 1/2 second, 1/4 second, 1/8 second, 1/16 second, 1/32 second, 1/64 second, 1/128 second, or 1/256 second. The interrupt interval can be selected in the RCR1.PES[3:0] bits.

Note: The interrupt generated at intervals of 1/64 second, 1/128 second, or 1/256 second is not supported in low-consumption clock mode.

(3) Carry interrupt (RTC_CUP)

This interrupt is generated when a carry to the second counter/binary counter 0 occurred or a carry to the R64CNT counter occurred during read access to the 64-Hz counter.

The carry interrupt is not supported in low-consumption clock mode.

Figure 22.10 shows the timing of the carry interrupt (RTC_CUP).

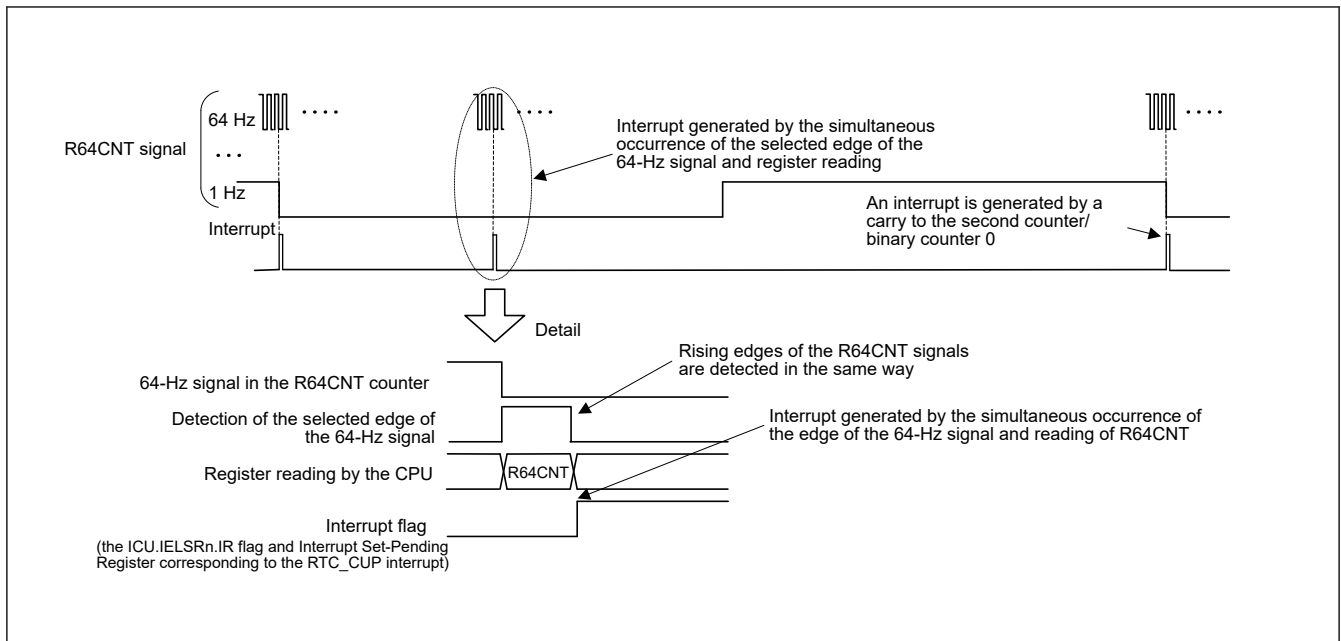


Figure 22.10 Timing for the carry interrupt (RTC_CUP)

22.5 Event Link Output

The RTC generates periodic event output (RTC_PRD) event signal for the ELC that can be used to initiate operations by other modules selected in advance.

Note: The event link output function is not supported in low-consumption clock mode. Therefore, you must disable the ELC link function of the RTC in low-consumption clock mode.

The periodic event signal is output at the interval selected from 1/256, 1/128, 1/64, 1/32, 1/16, 1/8, 1/4, 1/2, 1, and 2 seconds by setting the RCR1.PES[3:0] bits.

The event generation period immediately after the event generation is selected, is not guaranteed.

Note: If event linking from the RTC is used, only set the ELC after setting the RTC, for example initialization and time settings. Setting the RTC after the ELC can lead to output of unexpected event signals.

22.5.1 Interrupt Handling and Event Linking

The RTC has a bit to enable or disable periodic interrupts. An interrupt request signal is output to the CPU when an interrupt source is generated while the associated enable bit is enabled.

In contrast, an event link output signal is sent to other modules as an event signal through the ELC when an interrupt source is generated, regardless of the setting of the associated interrupt enable bit.

Note: Although alarm and periodic interrupts can still be output during Software Standby mode, the periodic event signals for the ELC are not output.

22.6 Usage Notes

22.6.1 Register Writing During Counting

The following registers should not be written to during counting, that is, while the RCR2.START bit is 1:

- RSECCNT/BCNT0
- RMINCNT/BCNT1
- RHRCNT/BCNT2
- RDAYCNT
- RWKCNT/BCNT3
- RMONCNT
- RYRCNT
- RCR1.RTCOS
- RCR2.RTCOE
- RCR2.HR24
- RFRL

The counter should be stopped before writing to any of these registers.

22.6.2 Use of Periodic Interrupts

Figure 22.11 shows the procedure for using periodic interrupts.

The generation and period of the periodic interrupt can be changed by setting the RCR1.PES[3:0] bits. However, because the prescaler R64CNT and RSECCNT/BCNT0 are used to generate interrupts, the interrupt period is not guaranteed immediately after setting the RCR1.PES[3:0] bits.

In addition, any of the following operation can affect the interrupt period:

- Stopping/restarting or resetting counter operation
- Reset by RTC software
- 30-second adjustment by changing the RCR2 value

When the time error adjustment function is used, the interrupt generation period after adjustment is added or subtracted based on the adjustment value.

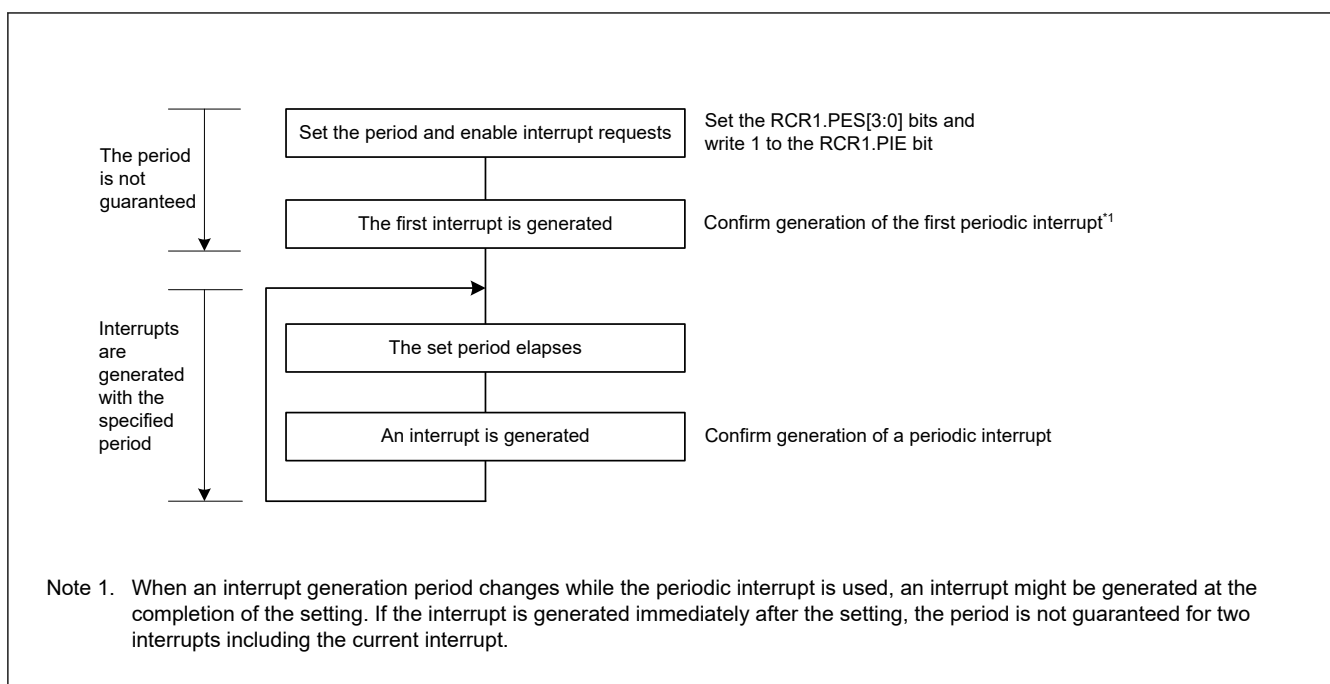


Figure 22.11 Using the periodic interrupt function

22.6.3 RTCOUT (1-Hz/64-Hz) Clock Output

Stopping/restarting or resetting counter operation, reset by RTC software, and the 30-second adjustment by changing the RCR2 value affects the period of RTCOUT (1-Hz/64-Hz) output. When the time error adjustment function is used, the period of RTCOUT (1-Hz/64-Hz) output after adjustment is added or subtracted based on the adjustment value.

22.6.4 Transitions to Low Power Modes After Setting Registers

A transition to a low-power state (Software Standby mode) during a write to an RTC register might corrupt the value of the register. After setting the register, confirm that the setting is in place before initiating a transition to a low-power state.

22.6.5 Notes on Writing to and Reading From Registers

- When reading a counter register such as the second counter after writing to the counter register, follow the procedure in [section 22.3.5. Reading 64-Hz Counter and Time](#).
- The value written to the count registers, alarm registers, year alarm enable register, bits RCR2.AADJE, AADJP, and HR24, RCR4 register, or frequency register is reflected when fourth read operations are performed after writing.
- The values written to the RCR1.CIE, RCR1.RTCOS, and RCR2.RTCOE bits can be read immediately after writing.
- To read the value from the timer counter after returning from a reset or a period in Software Standby mode, wait for 1/128 second while the clock is operating (RCR2.START bit = 1).
- After a reset is generated, write to the RTC register after 6 cycles of the count source clock have elapsed.
- Writing or reading is not available if LSMRWDIS.RTCRWDIS bit = 1. Wait for 2 cycles of count source before reading the SFR when LSMRWDIS.RTCRWDIS bit changes from 1 to 0. For details on LSMRWDIS.RTCRWDIS, see [section 10.2.13. LSMRWDIS : Low Speed Module R/W Disable Control Register](#).

22.6.6 Changing the Count Mode

When changing the count mode (calendar count mode/binary count mode), set the RCR2.START bit to 0, stop the counting operation, then start it again from the initial setting. For details on the initial setting, see [section 22.3.1. Outline of Initial Settings of Registers After Power On](#).

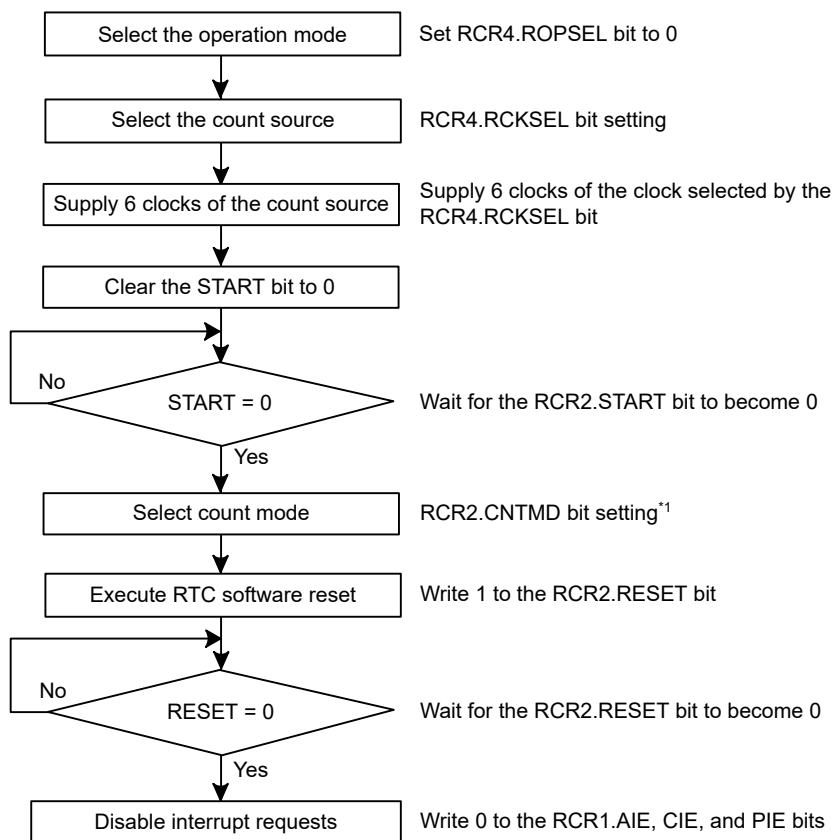
22.6.7 Initialization Procedure When the RTC Is Not to Be Used

Registers in the RTC are not initialized by a reset. Depending on the initial state, the generation of an unintentional interrupt request or operation of the counter might lead to increased power consumption.

For applications that do not require a realtime clock, initialize the registers by following the initialization procedure shown in [Figure 22.12](#).

Alternatively, when the sub-clock oscillator is not used as the system clock or realtime clock, the counter can be stopped by writing 0 (sub-clock oscillator is selected) to the RCR4.RCKSEL bit and stopping the sub-clock oscillator. To stop the sub-clock oscillator, write 1 to the SOSCCR.SOSTP bit.

For details on the setting of the SOSCCR.SOSTP bit, see [section 8, Clock Generation Circuit](#).



Note 1. This step is not necessary if the count mode is concurrently set by setting the START bit to 0.

Figure 22.12 Initialization procedure

23. Watchdog Timer (WDT)

23.1 Overview

The Watchdog Timer (WDT) is a 14-bit down counter that can be used to reset the MCU when the counter underflows because the system has run out of control and is unable to refresh the WDT. In addition, the WDT can be used to generate a non-maskable interrupt or an underflow interrupt or watchdog timer reset.

Table 23.1 lists the WDT specifications and Figure 23.1 shows a block diagram.

Table 23.1 WDT specifications

Parameter	Specifications
Count source*1	Peripheral clock (PCLKB)
Clock division ratio	Division by 4, 64, 128, 512, 2048, or 8192
Counter operation	Counting down using a 14-bit down-counter
Condition for starting the counter	- Auto start mode: Counting automatically starts after a reset or after an underflow or refresh error occurs - Register start mode: Counting is started with a refresh by writing to the WDTRR register
Conditions for stopping the counter	- Reset (the down-counter and other registers return to their initial values) - A counter underflows or a refresh error is generated
Window function	Window start and end positions can be specified (refresh-permitted and refresh-prohibited periods)
Watchdog timer reset sources	- Down-counter underflows - Refreshing outside the refresh-permitted period (refresh error)
Non-maskable interrupt/interrupt sources	- Down-counter underflows - Refreshing outside the refresh-permitted period (refresh error)
Reading of the counter value	The down-counter value can be read by the WDTSR register
Event link function (output)	- Down-counter underflow event output - Refresh error event output
Output signal (internal signal)	- Reset output - Interrupt request output - Sleep-mode count stop control output

Note 1. Satisfy the frequency of the peripheral module clock (PCLKB) $\geq 4 \times$ (the frequency of the count clock source after division).

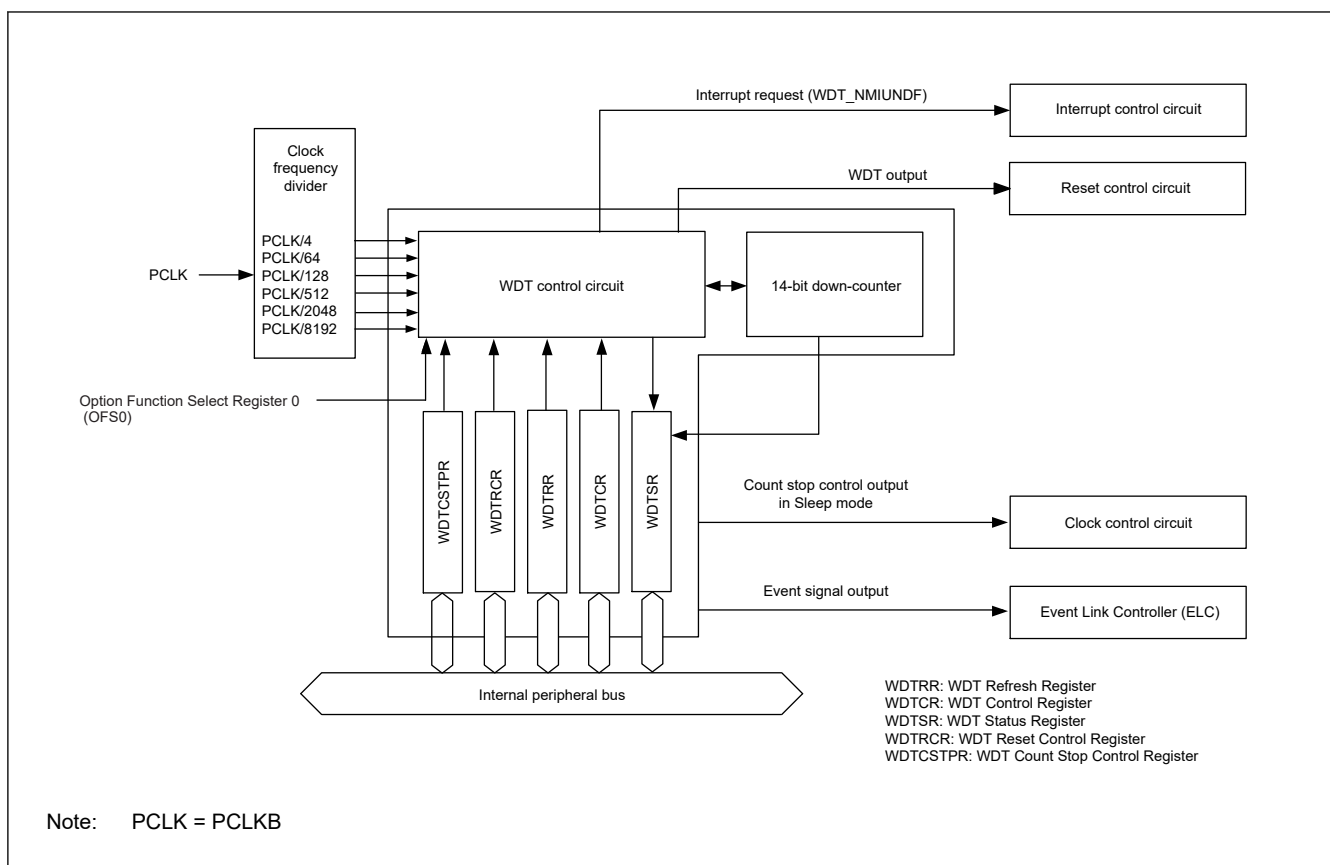


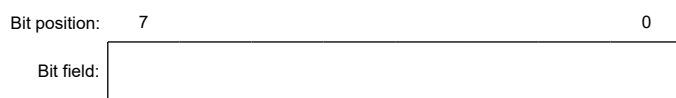
Figure 23.1 WDT block diagram

23.2 Register Descriptions

23.2.1 WDTRR : WDT Refresh Register

Base address: WDT = 0x4004_4200

Offset address: 0x00



Value after reset: 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7:0	n/a	The down-counter is refreshed by writing 0x00 and then writing 0xFF to this register.	R/W

The WDTRR register refreshes the down-counter of the WDT.

The down-counter of the WDT is refreshed by writing 0x00 and then writing 0xFF to WDTRR register (refresh operation) within the refresh-permitted period.

After the down-counter is refreshed, it starts counting down from the value selected by setting the WDT Timeout Period Select bits (OFS0.WDTPPS[1:0]) in the Option Function Select Register 0 in auto start mode. In register start mode, counting down starts from the value selected by setting the Timeout Period Select bits (WDTCSR.TOPS[1:0]) in the WDT Control Register.

When 0x00 is written, the read value is 0x00. When a value other than 0x00 is written, the read value is 0xFF. For details of the refresh operation, see [section 23.3.3. Refresh Operation](#).

23.2.2 WDTCR : WDT Control Register

Base address: WDT = 0x4004_4200

Offset address: 0x02

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	RPSS[1:0]		—	—	RPES[1:0]		CKS[3:0]			—		—	TOPS[1:0]	
Value after reset:	0	0	1	1	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	1	1

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
1:0	TOPS[1:0]	Timeout Period Select 0 0: 1024 cycles (0x03FF) 0 1: 4096 cycles (0x0FFF) 1 0: 8192 cycles (0x1FFF) 1 1: 16384 cycles (0x3FFF)	R/W
3:2	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
7:4	CKS[3:0]	Clock Division Ratio Select 0x1: PCLKB/4 0x4: PCLKB/64 0xF: PCLKB/128 0x6: PCLKB/512 0x7: PCLKB/2048 0x8: PCLKB/8192 Others: Setting prohibited	R/W
9:8	RPES[1:0]	Window End Position Select 0 0: 75% 0 1: 50% 1 0: 25% 1 1: 0% (do not specify window end position).	R/W
11:10	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
13:12	RPSS[1:0]	Window Start Position Select 0 0: 25% 0 1: 50% 1 0: 75% 1 1: 100% (do not specify window start position).	R/W
15:14	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

The WDTCR register is used to set the clock division ratio, and window start and end positions for refresh, and the timeout period until the down-counter underflows in register start mode.

Some constraints apply to writes to the WDTCR register. For details, see [section 23.3.2. Controlling Writes to the WDTCR, WDTRCR, and WDTCTPR Registers](#).

In auto start mode, the settings in the WDTCR register are disabled, and the settings in the Option Function Select Register 0 (OFS0) are enabled. The settings for the WDTCR register can also be made in the OFS0 register. For details, see [section 23.3.8. Association Between Option Function Select Register 0 \(OFS0\) and WDT Registers](#).

TOPS[1:0] bits (Timeout Period Select)

The TOPS[1:0] bits select the timeout period, the period until the down-counter underflows, from 1024, 4096, 8192, and 16384 cycles, taking the divided clock specified in the CKS[3:0] bits as 1 cycle. After the down-counter is refreshed, the combination of the CKS[3:0] and TOPS[1:0] bits determines the number of PCLKB cycles until the counter underflows.

[Table 23.2](#) lists the relationship between the CKS[3:0] and TOPS[1:0] bit settings, the timeout period, and the number of PCLKB cycles.

Table 23.2 Timeout period settings

CKS[3:0] bits	TOPS[1:0] bits	Clock division ratio	Timeout period (number of cycles)	PCLKB clock cycles
0x1	00b	PCLKB/4	1024	4096
	01b		4096	16384
	10b		8192	32768
	11b		16384	65536
0x4	00b	PCLKB/64	1024	65536
	01b		4096	262144
	10b		8192	524288
	11b		16384	1048576
0xF	00b	PCLKB/128	1024	131072
	01b		4096	524288
	10b		8192	1048576
	11b		16384	2097152
0x6	00b	PCLKB/512	1024	524288
	01b		4096	2097152
	10b		8192	4194304
	11b		16384	8388608
0x7	00b	PCLKB/2048	1024	2097152
	01b		4096	8388608
	10b		8192	16777216
	11b		16384	33554432
0x8	00b	PCLKB/8192	1024	8388608
	01b		4096	33554432
	10b		8192	67108864
	11b		16384	134217728

CKS[3:0] bits (Clock Division Ratio Select)

The CKS[3:0] bits specify the division ratio of the clock used for the down-counter. The division ratio can be selected from the PCLKB divided by 4, 64, 128, 512, 2048, and 8192. Combined with the TOPS[1:0] bit setting, this allows the WDT to be configured to a count period between 4096 and 134217728 PCLKB clock cycles.

RPES[1:0] bits (Window End Position Select)

The RPES[1:0] bits specify the window end position that indicates the refresh-permitted period. 75%, 50%, 25%, or 0% of the timeout period can be selected for the window end position. Set the window end position to a value less than the value for the window start position (window start position > window end position). If the window start position is set to a value less than or equal to the window end position, the window start position setting is enabled and the window end position is set to 0%.

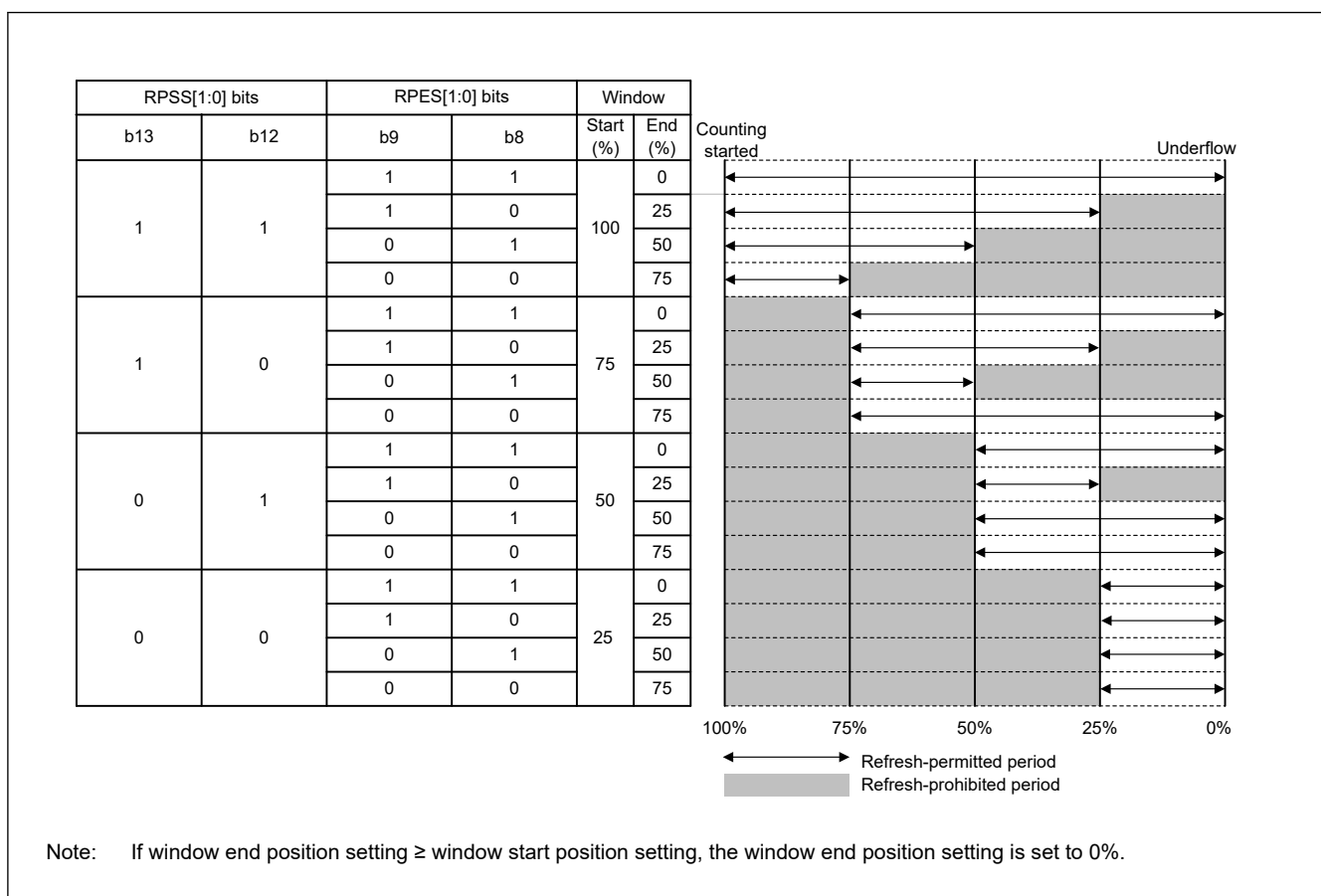
RPSS[1:0] bits (Window Start Position Select)

The RPSS[1:0] bits specify the window start position that indicates the refresh-permitted period. 100%, 75%, 50%, or 25% of the timeout period can be selected for the window start position. Set the window start position to a value greater than the value for the window end position. If the window start position is set to a value less than or equal to the window end position, the window start position setting is enabled and the window end position is set to 0%.

Table 23.3 lists the counter values for the window start and end positions, and Figure 23.2 shows the refresh-permitted period set in the RPSS[1:0], RPES[1:0], and TOPS[1:0] bits.

Table 23.3 Relationship between the timeout period and window start and end counter values

TOPS[1:0]	Timeout period		Window start and end counter value			
	Cycles	Counter value	100%	75%	50%	25%
00b	1024	0x03FF	0x03FF	0x02FF	0x01FF	0x00FF
01b	4096	0x0FFF	0x0FFF	0x0BFF	0x07FF	0x03FF
10b	8192	0x1FFF	0x1FFF	0x17FF	0x0FFF	0x07FF
11b	16384	0x3FFF	0x3FFF	0x2FFF	0x1FFF	0x0FFF

**Figure 23.2 RPSS[1:0] and RPES[1:0] bits setting and refresh-permitted period**

23.2.3 WDTSR : WDT Status Register

Base address: WDT = 0x4004_4200

Offset address: 0x04

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	REFE F	UNDF F	CNTVAL[13:0]													
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
13:0	CNTVAL[13:0]	Down-Counter Value Value counted by the down-counter	R
14	UNDF	Underflow Flag 0: No underflow occurred 1: Underflow occurred	R/W ¹

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
15	REFEF	Refresh Error Flag 0: No refresh error occurred 1: Refresh error occurred	R/W ^{*1}

Note 1. Only 0 can be written to clear the flag.

The WDTSR register indicates the counter value of the down-counter and the status of whether an underflow or refresh error occurred in the down-counter.

CNTVAL[13:0] bits (Down-Counter Value)

Read the CNTVAL[13:0] bits to confirm the value of the down-counter. The read value might differ from the actual count by 1.

UNDFE flag (Underflow Flag)

Read the UNDFE flag to confirm whether an underflow occurred in the counter. A value of 1 indicates that the down counter underflowed. Write 0 to the flag to set the value to 0. Writing 1 has no effect.

Clearing of the UNDFE flag takes (N+1) PCLKB cycles. In addition, clearing of the flag is ignored for (N+1) PCLKB cycles after an underflow. N is specified in the WDTCSR.CKS[3:0] bits as follows:

- When WDTCSR.CKS[3:0] = 0x1, N = 4
- When WDTCSR.CKS[3:0] = 0x4, N = 64
- When WDTCSR.CKS[3:0] = 0xF, N = 128
- When WDTCSR.CKS[3:0] = 0x6, N = 512
- When WDTCSR.CKS[3:0] = 0x7, N = 2048
- When WDTCSR.CKS[3:0] = 0x8, N = 8192

REFEF flag (Refresh Error Flag)

Read the REFEF flag to confirm whether a refresh error occurred, indicating that a refresh operation was performed during a prohibited period. A value of 1 indicates that a refresh error occurred. Write 0 to the flag to set the value to 0. Writing 1 has no effect.

Clearing of the REFEF flag takes (N+1) PCLKB cycles. In addition, clearing of the flag is ignored for (N+1) PCLKB cycles after a refresh error. N is specified in the WDTCSR.CKS[3:0] bits as follows:

- When WDTCSR.CKS[3:0] = 0x1, N = 4
- When WDTCSR.CKS[3:0] = 0x4, N = 64
- When WDTCSR.CKS[3:0] = 0xF, N = 128
- When WDTCSR.CKS[3:0] = 0x6, N = 512
- When WDTCSR.CKS[3:0] = 0x7, N = 2048
- When WDTCSR.CKS[3:0] = 0x8, N = 8192

23.2.4 WDTRCR : WDT Reset Control Register

Base address: WDT = 0x4004_4200

Offset address: 0x06

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	RSTIR QS	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
6:0	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7	RSTIRQS	WDT Behavior Selection 0: Interrupt 1: Reset	R/W

The WDTRCR register controls reset output by a WDT down-counter underflow or interrupt request output.

Some constraints apply to writes to the WDTRCR register. For details, see [section 23.3.2. Controlling Writes to the WDTCR, WDTRCR, and WDTCSNTPR Registers](#).

In auto start mode, the WDTRCR register settings are disabled, and the settings in the Option Function Select register 0 (OFS0) are enabled. The settings for the WDTRCR register can also be made for the OFS0 register. For details, see [section 23.3.8. Association Between Option Function Select Register 0 \(OFS0\) and WDT Registers](#).

23.2.5 WDTCSNTPR : WDT Count Stop Control Register

Base address: WDT = 0x4004_4200

Offset address: 0x08

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	SLCS TP	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

Value after reset: 1 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
6:0	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
7	SLCSTP	Sleep-Mode Count Stop Control Register 0: Disable count stop 1: Stop count on transition to Sleep mode	R/W

The WDTCSNTPR register controls whether to stop the WDT counter in Sleep mode. Some constraints apply to writes to the WDTCSNTPR register. For details, see [section 23.3.2. Controlling Writes to the WDTCR, WDTRCR, and WDTCSNTPR Registers](#).

In auto start mode, the WDTCSNTPR register settings are disabled, and the settings in the Option Function Select register 0 (OFS0) are enabled. The settings for the WDTCSNTPR register can also be made for the OFS0 register. For details, see [section 23.3.8. Association Between Option Function Select Register 0 \(OFS0\) and WDT Registers](#).

SLCSTP bit (Sleep-Mode Count Stop Control Register)

The SLCSTP bit selects whether to stop counting on transition to Sleep mode.

23.2.6 Option Function Select Register 0 (OFS0)

For information on the OFS0 register, see [section 23.3.8. Association Between Option Function Select Register 0 \(OFS0\) and WDT Registers](#).

23.3 Operation

23.3.1 Count Operation in Each Start Mode

The WDT has two start modes:

- Auto start mode, in which counting automatically starts after a release from the reset state
- Register start mode, in which counting starts with a refresh by writing to the register.

In auto start mode, counting automatically starts after a release from the reset state according to the settings in the Option Function Select register 0 (OFS0) in the flash.

In register start mode, counting starts with a refresh by writing to the WDTRR register after the respective registers are set after a release from the reset state.

Select auto start mode or register start mode by setting the WDT Start Mode Select bit (OFS0.WDTSTRT) in the OFS0 register.

When the auto start mode is selected, the settings in the WDT Control Register (WDTCR), WDT Reset Control Register (WDTRCR), and WDT Count Stop Control Register (WDTCSSTPR) are disabled while the settings in the OFS0 register are enabled.

When the register start mode is selected, the setting for the OFS0 register is disabled while the settings for the WDT Control Register (WDTCR), WDT Reset Control Register (WDTRCR), and WDT Count Stop Control Register (WDTCSSTPR) are enabled.

23.3.1.1 Register Start Mode

When the WDT Start Mode Select bit (OFS0.WDTSTRT) is 1, register start mode is selected, the OFS0 register setting is invalid, and the WDT control register (WDTCR), WDT Reset Control Register (WDTRCR), and WDT Count Stop Control Register (WDTCSSTPR) are enabled.

After the reset state is released, set the following:

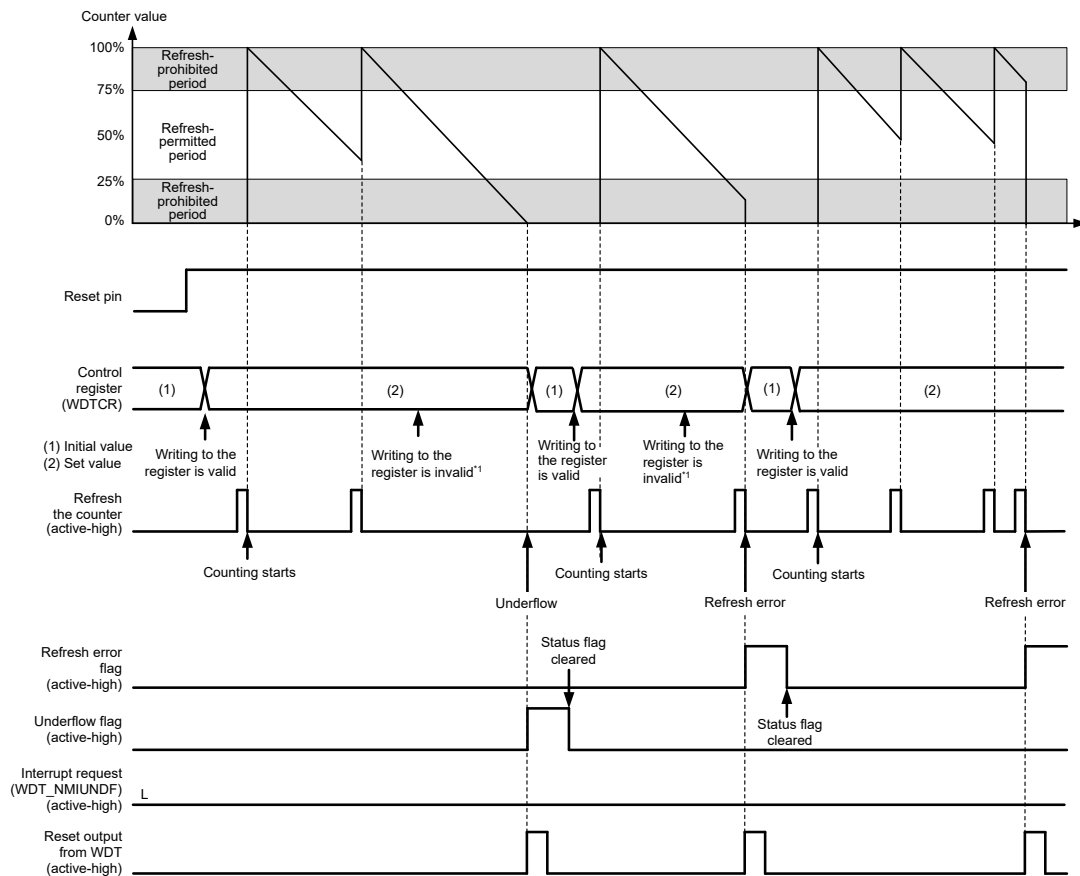
- Clock division ratio in the WDTCR register
- Window start and end positions in the WDTCR register
- Timeout period in the WDTCR register
- Reset output or interrupt request output in the WDTRCR register
- Counter stop control during transitions to Sleep mode in the WDTCSSTPR register

The WDT refresh register (WDTRR) refreshes the down counter. As a result, the downcount starts at the value set by the timeout period selection bit (WDTCR.TOP[1:0]).

After that, as long as the counter is refreshed in the refresh-permitted period, the value in the counter is reset each time the counter is refreshed and counting down continues. The WDT does not output the reset signal or non-maskable interrupt request/interrupt request as long as counting continues. However, if the down-counter underflows because the down-counter cannot be refreshed due to a program runaway, or if a refresh error occurs because the counter was refreshed outside the refresh-permitted period, the WDT outputs the reset signal or a non-maskable interrupt request/interrupt request (WDT_NMIUNDF). Reset output or interrupt request output can be selected in the WDT Reset Interrupt Request Select bit (WDTRCR.RSTIRQS). The interrupt enabled for operating the NMI can be selected in the WDT Underflow/Refresh Error Interrupt Enable bit (NMIER.WDTEN).

Figure 23.3 shows an example of operation under the following conditions:

- Register start mode (OFS0.WDTSTRT = 1)
- WDT reset interrupt request selection (WDTRCR.RSTIRQS = 1)
- The window start position is 75% (WDTCR.RPSS[1:0] = 10b)
- The window end position is 25% (WDTCR.RPES[1:0] = 10b)



Note: Refreshing the counter requires up to 4 count signal cycles from refresh request to execution.

Note 1. See [section 23.3.2. Controlling Writes to the WDTCR, WDTRCR, and WDTCSPTPR Registers](#).
Reset pin = RES

Figure 23.3 Operation example in register start mode

23.3.1.2 Auto Start Mode

When the WDT Start Mode Select bit (OFS0.WDTSTRT) in the Option Function Select Register 0 (OFS0) is 0, auto start mode is selected, the WDT Control Register (WDTCR), WDT Reset Control Register (WDTRCR), and WDT Count Stop Control Register (WDTCSPTPR) are disabled, and the settings in the OFS0 register are enabled.

Within the reset state, the setting values for the following in the Option Function Select Register 0 (OFS0) are set in the WDT registers:

- Clock division ratio
- Window start and end positions
- Timeout period
- Reset output or interrupt request
- Counter stop control during transition to Sleep mode

When the reset state is released, the down-counter automatically starts counting down from the value set in the WDT Timeout Period Select bits (OFS0.WDTPOPS[1:0]).

After that, as long as the counter is refreshed in the refresh-permitted period, the value in the counter is reset each time the counter is refreshed and counting down continues. The WDT does not output the reset signal or non-maskable interrupt

request/interrupt request (WDT_NMIUNDF) as long as the counting continues. However, if the down-counter underflows because refreshing of the down-counter is not possible due to a runaway program or if a refresh error occurs due to refreshing outside the refresh-permitted period, the WDT outputs the reset signal or non-maskable interrupt request/interrupt request (WDT_NMIUNDF).

After the reset signal or non-maskable interrupt request/interrupt request is generated, the counter reloads the timeout period after counting for 1 cycle. The value of the timeout period is set in the down-counter and counting restarts.

Reset output or interrupt request output can be selected by setting the WDT Reset Interrupt Request Select bit (OFS0.WDTRSTIRQS). Non-maskable interrupt request or interrupt request can be selected in the WDT Underflow/Refresh Error Interrupt Enable bit (NMIER.WDTEN).

Figure 23.4 shows an example of operation (non-maskable interrupt) under the following conditions:

- Auto start mode (OFS0.WDTSTRT = 0)
- WDT behavior selection: interrupt (OFS0.WDTRSTIRQS = 0)
- Non-maskable Interrupt: IWDT Underflow/Refresh Error Interrupt Enabled (NMIER.WDTEN = 1)
- The window start position is 75% (OFS0.WDTRPSS[1:0] = 10b)
- The window end position is 25% (OFS0.WDTRPES[1:0] = 10b)

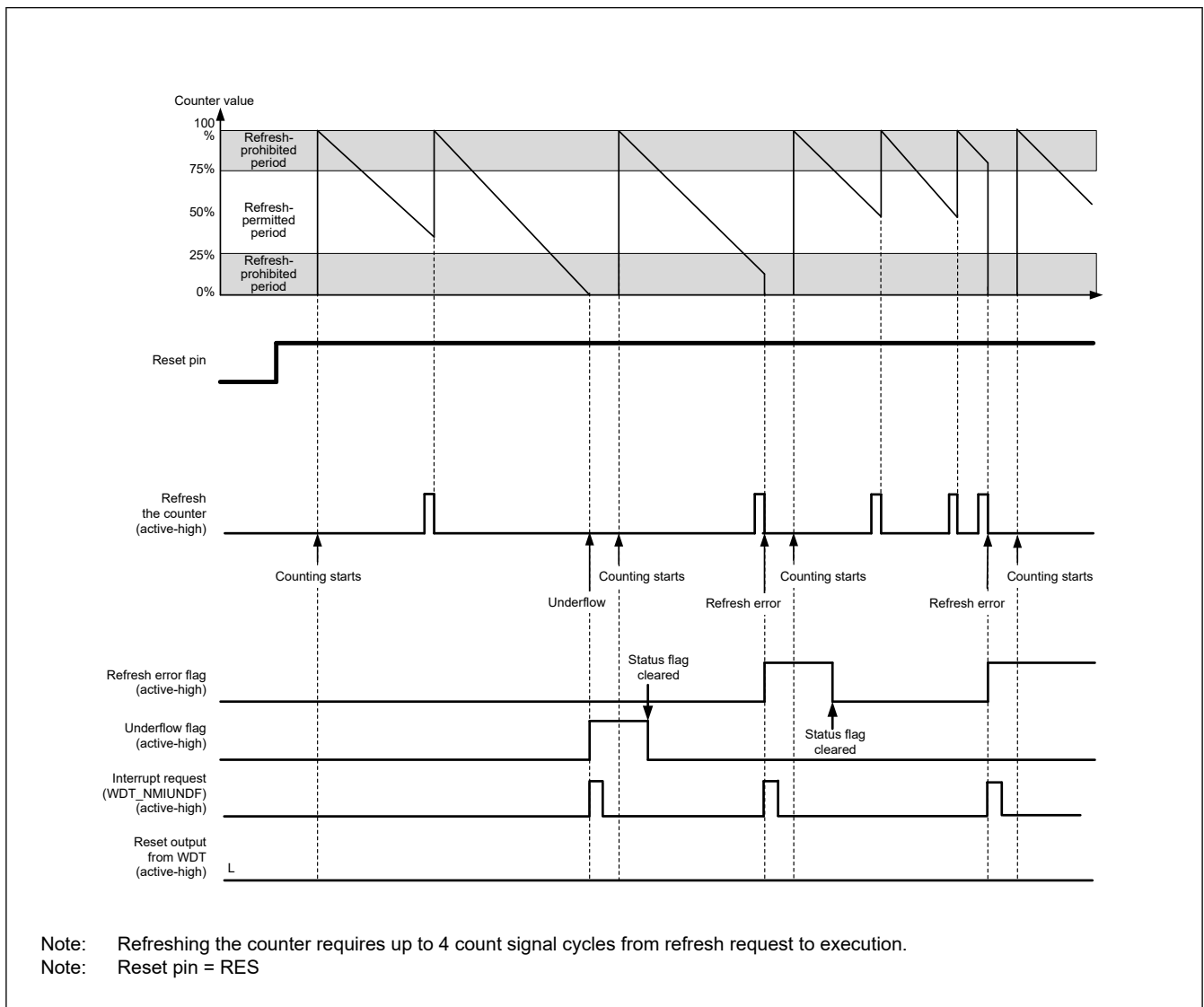


Figure 23.4 Operation example in auto start mode

23.3.2 Controlling Writes to the WDTCR, WDTRCR, and WDTCSSTPR Registers

Writing to the WDT Control Register (WDTCR), WDT Reset Control Register (WDTRCR), or WDT Count Stop Control Register (WDTCSSTPR) is possible once each between the release from the reset state and the first refresh operation.

After a refresh (counting starts) or a write to WDTCR, WDTRCR or WDTCSSTPR register, the protection signal in the WDT becomes 1 to protect WDTCR, WDTRCR and WDTCSSTPR register against subsequent write attempts. This protection is released by the reset source of the WDT. With other reset sources, the protection is not released.

Figure 23.5 shows control waveforms produced in response to writing to the WDTCR.

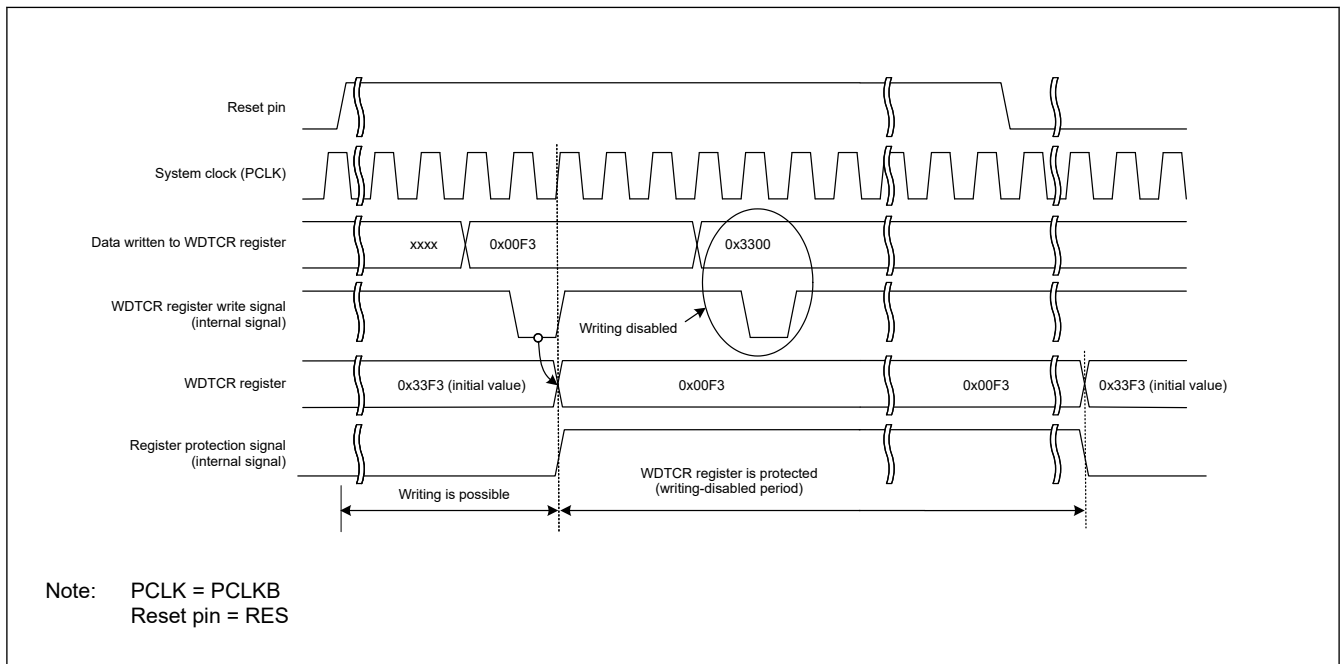


Figure 23.5 Control waveforms produced in response to writes to the WDTCR register

23.3.3 Refresh Operation

To refresh the down counter and start the counting operation, write to the WDT Refresh Register (WDTRR) in the order of values from 0x00 to 0xFF. If a value other than 0xFF is written after 0x00, the down-counter is not refreshed. If an invalid value is written, refreshing is performed normally by writing to the WDTRR register in the order of values from 0x00 to 0xFF.

Correct refreshing is also performed when a register other than WDTRR is accessed or WDTRR is read between writing 0x00 and writing 0xFF to WDTRR. Writes to refresh the counter must be made within the refresh-permitted period, and this is determined by the 0xFF write. For this reason, correct refreshing is performed even when 0x00 is written outside the refresh-permitted period.

[Example write sequences that are valid for refreshing the counter]

- 0x00 → 0xFF
- 0x00 ((n-1)th time) → 0x00 (nth time) → 0xFF
- 0x00 → access to another register or read from WDTRR → 0xFF

[Example write sequences that are invalid for refreshing the counter]

- 0x23 (a value other than 0x00) → 0xFF
- 0x00 → 0x54 (a value other than 0xFF)
- 0x00 → 0xAA (0x00 and a value other than 0xFF) → 0xFF

After 0xFF is written to the WDT Refresh Register (WDTRR), refreshing the down-counter requires up to 4 cycles of the signal for counting. To meet this requirement, complete writing 0xFF to WDTRR 4 count cycles before the down-counter underflows.

Figure 23.6 shows the WDT refresh-operation waveforms when the clock division ratio is PCLKB/64.

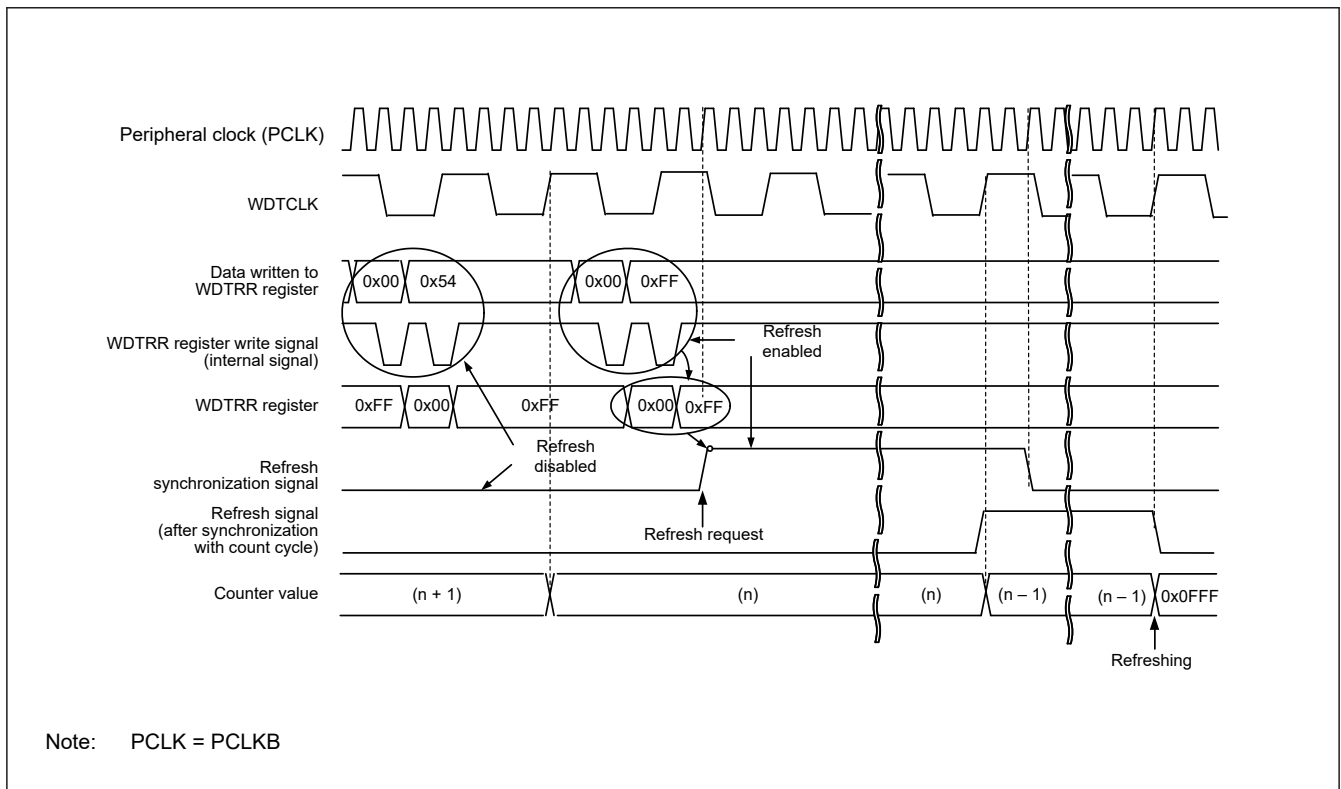


Figure 23.6 WDT refresh operation waveforms when WDTCR.CKS[3:0] = 0x4 and WDTCR.TOPS[1:0] = 01b

Note: When setting the refresh time, consider the oscillation accuracy of the clock sources of the PCLKB and WDTCLK. Set values which ensure that refreshing is possible even when the frequency varies in the range of error of the oscillation accuracy.

23.3.4 Status Flags

The refresh error (WDTSR.REFEF) and underflow (WDTSR.UNDF) flags retain the source of the interrupt request from the WDT. After a release from the interrupt request generation, read the WDTSR.REFEF and WDTSR.UNDF flags to check for the interrupt source. For each flag, writing 0 clears the bit. Writing 1 has no effect. Leaving the status flags unchanged does not affect operation. If the flags are not cleared at the next interrupt request from the WDT, the earlier interrupt source is cleared and the new interrupt source is written. For the time period between when 0 is written in each flag and when its value is reflected, see [section 23.2.3. WDTSR : WDT Status Register](#).

23.3.5 Reset Output

When the Reset Interrupt Select bit (WDTSCR.RSTIRQS) is set to 1 in register start mode, or when the WDT Reset Interrupt Request Select bit (OFS0.WDTRSTIRQS) in the Option Function Select Register 0 (OFS0) is set to 1 in auto start mode, a reset signal is output for 1 cycle count when an underflow in the down-counter or a refresh error occurs.

In register start mode, the down-counter is initialized (all bits set to 0) and stopped in that state after output of a reset signal. After the reset state is released and the program is restarted, the counter is set up again and counting down starts again with a refresh. In auto start mode, counting down starts automatically after the reset state is released.

23.3.6 Interrupt Sources

When the Reset Interrupt Select bit (WDTSCR.RSTIRQS) is set to 0 in register start mode or when the WDT Reset Interrupt Request Select bit (OFS0.WDTRSTIRQS) in the Option Function Select Register 0 (OFS0) is set to 0 in auto start mode, an interrupt (WDT_NMIUNDF) signal is generated when an underflow in the counter or a refresh error occurs. This interrupt can be used as a non-maskable interrupt or an interrupt. For details, see [section 12, Interrupt Controller Unit \(ICU\)](#).

Table 23.4 WDT interrupt source

Name	Interrupt source	Interrupt to CPU	Start DTC
WDT_NMIUNDF	- Down-counter underflow - Refresh error	Possible	Not possible

23.3.7 Reading the Down-counter Value

The WDT stores the counter value in the down-counter value bits (WDTSR.CNTVAL[13:0]) of the WDT Status Register. Check these bits to obtain the counter value. The read value of the down-counter might differ from the actual count by one.

Figure 23.7 shows the processing for reading the WDT down-counter value when the clock division ratio is PCLKB/64.

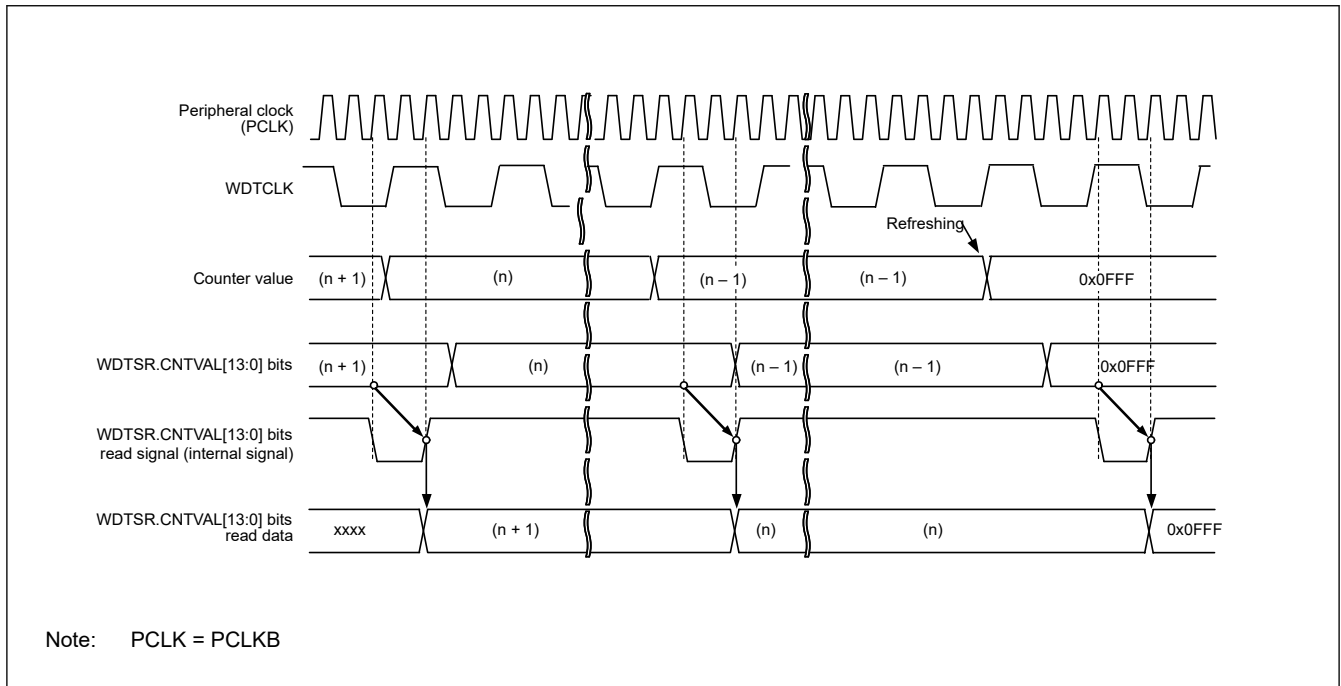


Figure 23.7 Processing for reading WDT down-counter value when WDTCR.CKS[3:0] = 0x4 and WDTCR.TOPS[1:0] = 01b

23.3.8 Association Between Option Function Select Register 0 (OFS0) and WDT Registers

Table 23.5 lists the association between the Option Function Select Register 0 (OFS0) used in auto start mode, and the registers used in register start mode. Do not change the OFS0 register setting during WDT operation. For details on the Option Function Select Register 0 (OFS0), see [section 6.2.1. OFS0 : Option Function Select Register 0](#).

Table 23.5 Association between Option Function Select Register 0 (OFS0) and the WDT registers

Control target	Function	OFS0 register (enabled in auto start mode) OFS0.WDTSTRT = 0	WDT registers (enabled in register start mode) OFS0.WDTSTRT = 1
Down-counter	Timeout period selection	OFS0.WDTPOPS[1:0]	WDTCR.TOPS[1:0]
	Clock division ratio selection	OFS0.WDTCKS[3:0]	WDTCR.CKS[3:0]
	Window start position selection	OFS0.WDTRPSS[1:0]	WDTCR.RPSS[1:0]
	Window end position selection	OFS0.WDTRPES[1:0]	WDTCR.RPES[1:0]
Reset output or interrupt request output	Select a reset interrupt request	OFS0.WDTRSTIRQS	WDTCCR.RSTIRQS
Count stop	Sleep mode count stop control	OFS0.WDTSTPCTL	WDTCSMPR.SLCSTP

23.4 Output to the Event Link Controller (ELC)

The WDT is capable of a link operation for the previously specified module when an interrupt request signal is used as an event signal by the ELC. The event signal is output by the counter underflow and refresh error. An event signal is output regardless of the settings of the WDTRCR.RSTIRQS bit in register start mode or the OFS0.WDTRSTIRQS bit in auto start mode. An event signal can also be output when the next interrupt source is generated while the Refresh Error flag (WDTSR.REFEF) or Underflow flag (WDTSR.UNDF) is 1. For details, see [section 16, Event Link Controller \(ELC\)](#).

23.5 Usage Notes

23.5.1 ICU Event Link Setting Register n (IELSRn) Setting

Setting 0x06 to ICU Event Link Setting Register n (ICU.IELSRn) is prohibited when WDT reset interrupt request selection resets (OFS0.WDTRSTIRQS = 1 or WDTRCR.RSTIRQS = 1) or when enabling event link operation (ELSRn.ELS[7:0] = 0x18).

24. Independent Watchdog Timer (IWDT)

24.1 Overview

The Independent Watchdog Timer (IWDT) consists of a 14-bit down counter that must be serviced periodically to prevent counter underflow. The IWDT provides functionality to reset the MCU or to generate a non-maskable interrupt or an underflow interrupt. Because the timer operates with an independent, dedicated clock source, it is particularly useful in returning the MCU to a known state as a fail-safe mechanism when the system runs out of control. The IWDT can be triggered automatically by a reset, underflow, refresh error, or a refresh of the count value in the registers.

The IWDT functions differ from those of the WDT in the following respects:

- The divided IWDT-dedicated clock (IWDTCLK) is used as the count source (not affected by PCLKB)
- IWDT does not support register start mode

Table 24.1 lists the IWDT specifications and Figure 24.1 shows a block diagram.

Table 24.1 IWDT specifications

Parameter	Description
Count source*1	IWDT-dedicated clock (IWDTCLK)
Clock division ratio	Division by 1, 16, 32, 64, 128, or 256
Counter operation	Counting down using a 14-bit down-counter
Condition for starting the counter	• Counting automatically starts after a reset
Conditions for stopping the counter	• Reset (the down-counter and other registers return to their initial values) • A counter underflows or a refresh error is generated (counting restarts automatically).
Window function	Window start and end positions can be specified (refresh-permitted and refresh-prohibited periods)
Reset output sources	• Down-counter underflows • Refreshing outside the refresh-permitted period (refresh error).
Non-maskable interrupt/interrupt sources	• Down-counter underflows • Refreshing outside the refresh-permitted period (refresh error).
Reading the counter value	The down-counter value can be read by the IWDTSR register
Event link function	• Down-counter underflow event output • Refresh error event output.
Output signal (internal signal)	• Reset output • Interrupt request output • Sleep-mode count stop control output.
Auto start mode	Configurable to the following triggers: • Clock frequency division ratio after a reset (OFS0.IWDTCKS[3:0] bits) • Timeout period of the Independent Watchdog Timer (OFS0.IWDTTOPS[1:0] bits) • Window start position in the Independent Watchdog Timer (OFS0.IWDRPSS[1:0] bits) • Window end position in the Independent Watchdog Timer (OFS0.IWDRPES[1:0] bits) • Reset output or interrupt request output (OFS0.IWDRSTRQS bit) • Down-count stop function at transition to Sleep, Snooze, or Software Standby mode (OFS0.IWDTSTPCTL bit).

Note 1. Satisfy the frequency of the peripheral module clock (PCLKB) $\geq 4 \times$ (the frequency of the count clock source after division).

The bus interface and registers operate with PCLKB, and the 14-bit counter and control circuits operate with IWDTCLK.

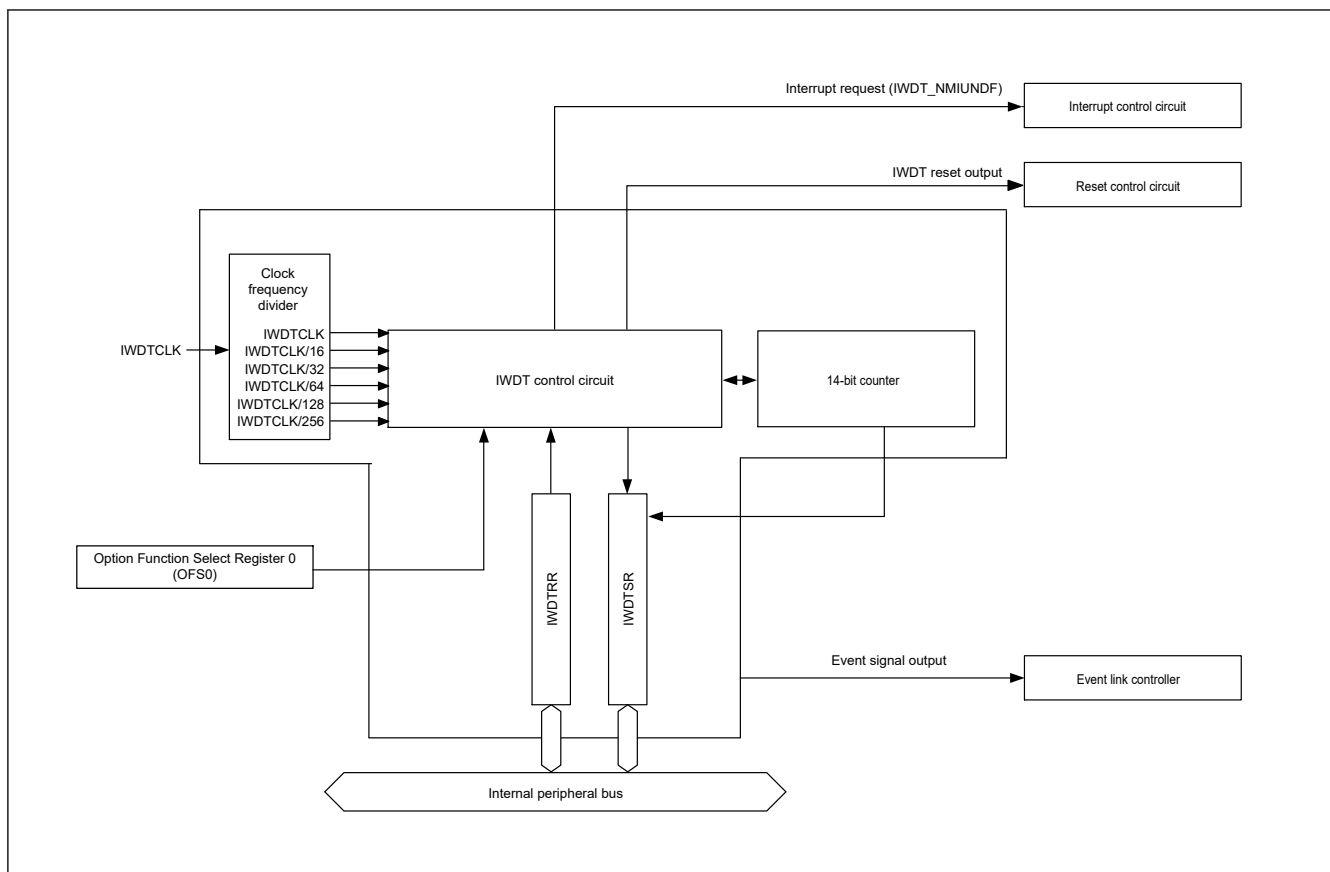


Figure 24.1 IWDT block diagram

24.2 Register Descriptions

24.2.1 IWDTRR : IWDT Refresh Register

Base address: IWDT = 0x4004_4400

Offset address: 0x00



Value after reset: 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7:0	n/a	The down-counter is refreshed by writing 0x00 and then writing 0xFF to this register	R/W

The IWDTRR register refreshes the down-counter of the IWDT. The down-counter of the IWDT is refreshed by writing 0x00 and then writing 0xFF to IWDTRR (refresh operation) within the refresh-permitted period. After the down-counter is refreshed, it starts counting down from the value selected in the IWDT Timeout Period Select bits (OFS0.IWDTTOPS[1:0]) in the Option Function Select Register 0 (OFS0).

When 0x00 is written, the read value is 0x00. When a value other than 0x00 is written, the read value is 0xFF. For details of the refresh operation, see [section 24.3.2. Refresh Operation](#).

24.2.2 IWDTSR : IWDT Status Register

Base address: IWDTSR = 0x4004_4400

Offset address: 0x04

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	REFE F	UNDF F	CNTVAL[13:0]													
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
13:0	CNTVAL[13:0]	Down-counter Value Value counted by the down-counter	R
14	UNDF	Underflow Flag 0: No underflow occurred 1: Underflow occurred	R/W ¹
15	REFE	Refresh Error Flag 0: No refresh error occurred 1: Refresh error occurred	R/W ¹

Note 1. Only 0 can be written to clear the flag.

The IWDTSR register indicates the counter value of the down-counter and whether an underflow or refresh error occurred in the down-counter.

CNTVAL[13:0] bits (Down-counter Value)

Read the CNTVAL[13:0] bits to confirm the value of the down-counter. The read value might differ from the actual count by 1.

UNDF flag (Underflow Flag)

Read the UNDF flag to confirm whether an underflow occurred in the down-counter. The value 1 indicates that the down-counter underflowed. Write 0 to the UNDF flag to set the value to 0. Writing 1 has no effect.

Clearing of the UNDF flag takes (N + 2) IWDTCCLK cycles and 2 PCLKB cycles. In addition, clearing of this flag is ignored for (N + 2) IWDTCCLK cycles after an underflow. N is specified in the IWDTCCKS[3:0] bits as follows:

- When OFS0.IWDTCCKS[3:0] = 0x0, N = 1
- When OFS0.IWDTCCKS[3:0] = 0x2, N = 16
- When OFS0.IWDTCCKS[3:0] = 0x3, N = 32
- When OFS0.IWDTCCKS[3:0] = 0x4, N = 64
- When OFS0.IWDTCCKS[3:0] = 0xF, N = 128
- When OFS0.IWDTCCKS[3:0] = 0x5, N = 256.

REFE flag (Refresh Error Flag)

Read the REFE flag to confirm whether a refresh error occurred. This indicates that a refresh operation was performed during a prohibited period. The value 1 indicates that a refresh error occurred. Write 0 to the REFE flag to set the value to 0. Writing 1 has no effect.

Clearing of the REFE flag takes (N + 2) IWDTCCLK cycles and 2 PCLKB cycles. In addition, clearing of this flag is ignored for (N + 2) IWDTCCLK cycles following a refresh error. N is specified in the IWDTCCKS[3:0] bits as follows:

- When OFS0.IWDTCCKS[3:0] = 0x0, N = 1
- When OFS0.IWDTCCKS[3:0] = 0x2, N = 16
- When OFS0.IWDTCCKS[3:0] = 0x3, N = 32
- When OFS0.IWDTCCKS[3:0] = 0x4, N = 64
- When OFS0.IWDTCCKS[3:0] = 0xF, N = 128
- When OFS0.IWDTCCKS[3:0] = 0x5, N = 256.

24.2.3 OFS0 : Option Function Select Register 0

For information on the Option Function Select Register 0 (OFS0), see [section 6.2.1. OFS0 : Option Function Select Register 0](#).

IWDTTOPS[1:0] bits (IWDT Timeout Period Select)

The IWDTTOPS[1:0] bits select the timeout period, that is, the period until the down-counter underflows, from 128, 512, 1024, or 2048 cycles, taking the divided clock specified in the IWDTCCKS[3:0] bits as 1 cycle.

After the down-counter is refreshed, the combination of the IWDTCCKS[3:0] and IWDTTOPS[1:0] bits determines the number of IWDTCCLK cycles until the counter underflows.

[Table 24.2](#) lists the relationship between the IWDTCCKS[3:0] and IWDTTOPS[1:0] bit settings, the timeout period, and the number of IWDTCCLK cycles.

Table 24.2 Timeout period settings

IWDTCCKS[3:0] bits				IWDTTOPS [1:0] bits		Clock division ratio	Timeout period (number of cycles)	IWDTCCLK cycles
b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2			
0	0	0	0	0	0	IWDTCCLK	128	128
				0	1		512	512
				1	0		1024	1024
				1	1		2048	2048
0	0	1	0	0	0	IWDTCCLK/16	128	2048
				0	1		512	8192
				1	0		1024	16384
				1	1		2048	32768
0	0	1	1	0	0	IWDTCCLK/32	128	4096
				0	1		512	16384
				1	0		1024	32768
				1	1		2048	65536
0	1	0	0	0	0	IWDTCCLK/64	128	8192
				0	1		512	32768
				1	0		1024	65536
				1	1		2048	131072
1	1	1	1	0	0	IWDTCCLK/128	128	16384
				0	1		512	65536
				1	0		1024	131072
				1	1		2048	262144
0	1	0	1	0	0	IWDTCCLK/256	128	32768
				0	1		512	131072
				1	0		1024	262144
				1	1		2048	524288

IWDTCCKS[3:0] bits (IWDT-Dedicated Clock Frequency Division Ratio Select)

The IWDTCCKS[3:0] bits specify the division ratio of the clock used for the down-counter. The division ratio can be selected from the IWDT-dedicated clock (IWDTCCLK) divided by 1, 16, 32, 64, 128, and 256. Combined with the IWDTTOPS[1:0] bit setting, the IWDT can be configured to a count period between 128 and 524,288 IWDTCCLK cycles.

IWDTRPES[1:0] bits (IWDT Window End Position Select)

The IWDTRPES[1:0] bits specify the window end position that indicates the refresh-permitted period. 75%, 50%, 25%, or 0% of the timeout period can be selected for the window end position. Set the window end position to a value less than the window start position (window start position > window end position). If the window start position is set to a value less than or equal to the window end position, the window start position setting is enabled and the window end position is set to 0%.

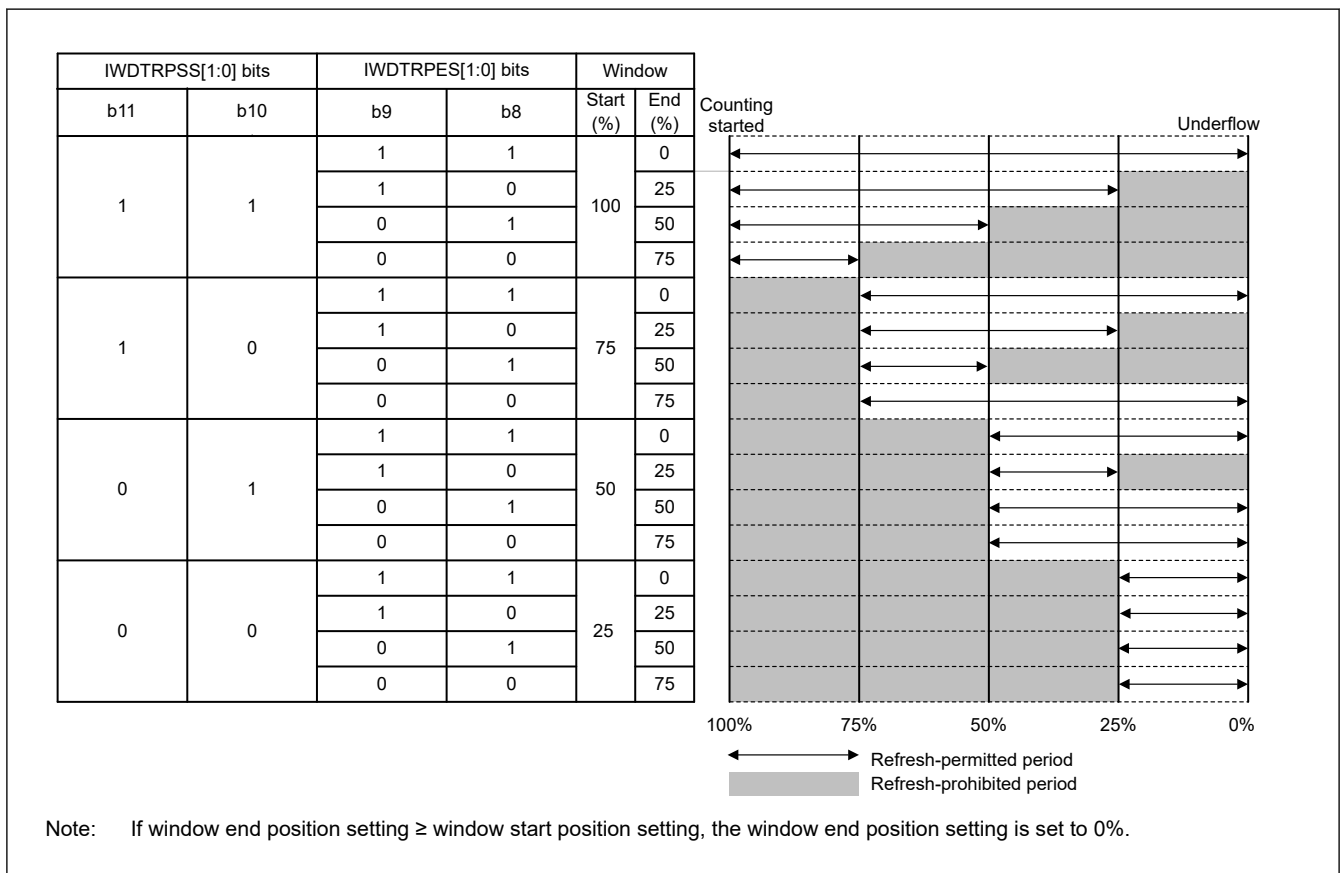
IWDTRPSS[1:0] bits (IWDT Window Start Position Select)

The IWDTRPSS[1:0] bits specify the window start position that indicates the refresh-permitted period. 100%, 75%, 50%, or 25% of the timeout period can be selected for the window start position. Set the window start position to a value greater than the window end position. If the window start position is set to a value less than or equal to the window end position, the window start position setting is enabled and the window end position is set to 0%.

Table 24.3 lists the counter values for the window start and end positions, and Figure 24.2 shows the refresh-permitted period set in the IWDTRPSS[1:0], IWDTRPES[1:0], and IWDTTOPS[1:0] bits.

Table 24.3 Relationship between the timeout period and window start and end counter values

IWDTTOPS[1:0] bits		Timeout period		Window start and end counter value			
b3	b2	Cycles	Counter value	100%	75%	50%	25%
0	0	128	0x007F	0x007F	0x005F	0x003F	0x001F
0	1	512	0x01FF	0x01FF	0x017F	0x00FF	0x007F
1	0	1024	0x03FF	0x03FF	0x02FF	0x01FF	0x00FF
1	1	2048	0x07FF	0x07FF	0x05FF	0x03FF	0x01FF

**Figure 24.2 IWDTRPSS[1:0] and IWDTRPES[1:0] bit settings and refresh-permitted period****IWDTRSTIRQS bit (IWDT Reset Interrupt Request Select)**

The IWDTRSTIRQS bit specifies the behavior when an underflow or a refresh error occurs. Setting 1 selects reset output. Setting 0 selects interrupt.

IWDTSTPCTL bit (IWDT Stop Control)

The IWDTSTPCTL bit selects whether to stop counting on transition to Sleep, Snooze, or Software Standby mode.

24.3 Operation

24.3.1 Auto Start Mode

When the IWDT Start Mode Select bit (OFS0.IWDTSTRT) in the Option Function Select Register 0 is 0, auto start mode is selected, otherwise the IWDT is disabled.

Within the reset state, the setting values for the following in the Option Function Select Register 0 (OFS0) are set in the IWDT registers:

- Clock division ratio (OFS0.IWDTCKS[3:0])
- Window start and end positions (OFS0.IWDTRPSS[1:0], OFS0.IWDRPES[1:0])
- Timeout period (OFS0.IWDTTOPS[1:0])
- Reset output or interrupt request (OFS0.IWDRSTIRQS)

When the reset state is released, the counter automatically starts counting down from the value selected in the IWDT Timeout Period Select bits (OFS0.IWDTTOPS[1:0]).

After that, as long as the program continues normal operation and the counter is refreshed within the refresh-permitted period, the value in the counter is reset each time the counter is refreshed and down-counting continues. The IWDT does not output the reset signal as long as this procedure continues. However, if the counter underflows because the program crashed or because a refresh error occurred when an attempt is made to refresh outside the refresh-permitted period, the IWDT asserts the reset signal or non-maskable interrupt request/interrupt request (IWDT_NMIUNDF).

After the reset signal or non-maskable interrupt request/interrupt request is generated, the counter reloads the timeout period after counting for 1 cycle, the value of the timeout period is set in the down-counter and counting starts. The reset output or interrupt request output can be selected with the IWDT Reset Interrupt Request Select bit (OFS0.IWDRSTIRQS). The interrupt enabled for operating the NMI can be selected with the IWDT Underflow/Refresh Error Interrupt Enable bit (NMIER.IWDTEN).

Figure 24.3 shows an example of operation under the following conditions:

- Auto start mode (OFS0.IWDTSTRT = 0)
- IWDT behavior selection: interrupt (OFS0.IWDRSTIRQS = 0)
- Non-maskable Interrupt: IWDT Underflow/Refresh Error Interrupt Enabled (NMIER.IWDTEN = 1)
- The window start position is 75% (OFS0.IWDTRPSS[1:0] = 10b)
- The window end position is 25% (OFS0.IWDRPES[1:0] = 10b).

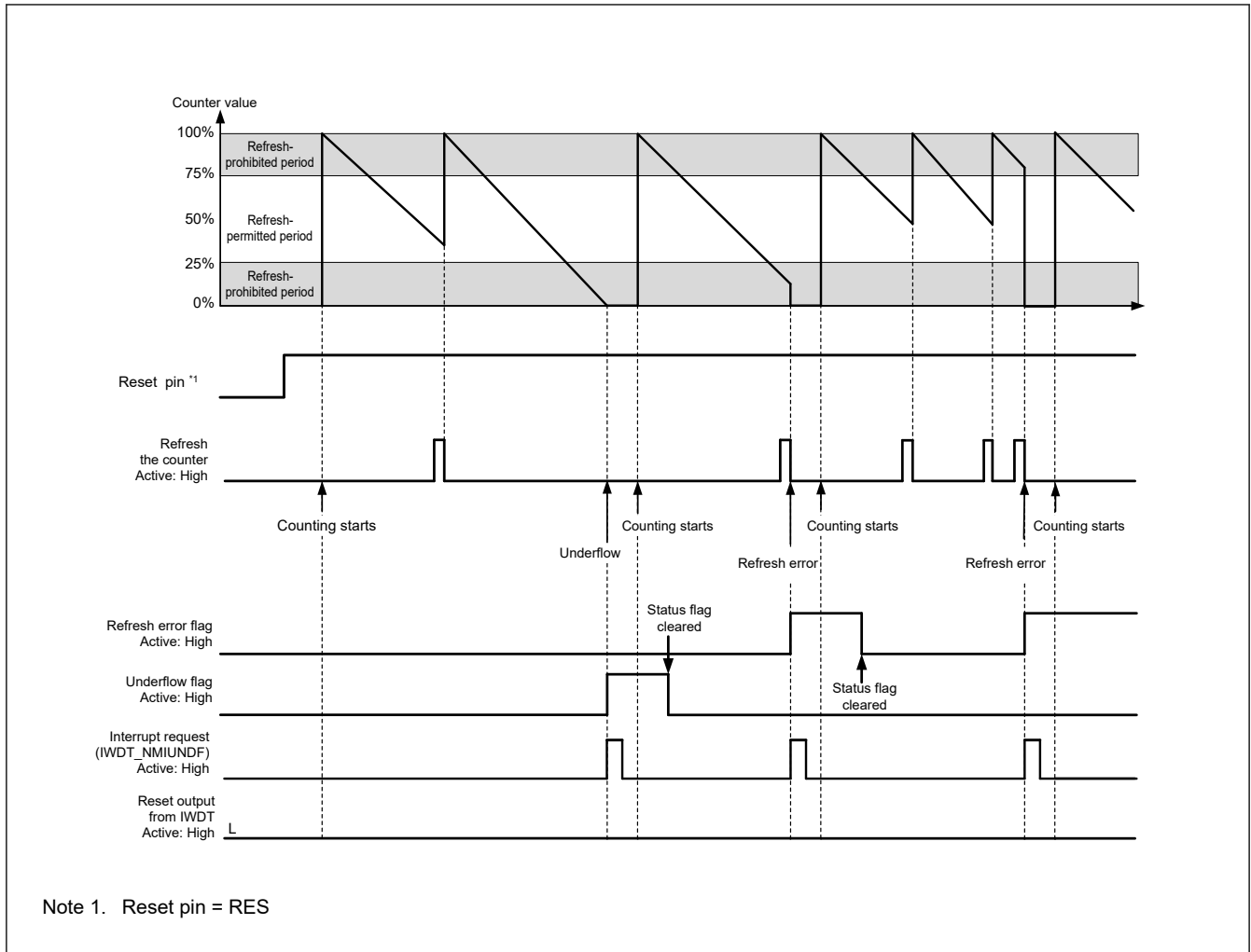


Figure 24.3 Operation example in auto start mode

24.3.2 Refresh Operation

To refresh the down counter and start the counting operation, write to the IWDT Refresh Register (IWDTRR) in the order of values from 0x00 to 0xFF. If a value other than 0xFF is written after 0x00, the down-counter is not refreshed. If an invalid value is written, refreshing is performed normally by writing to the IWDTRR register in the order of values from 0x00 to 0xFF.

When writes are made in the order of 0x00 (first time) → 0x00 (second time), and if 0xFF is written after that, the writing order 0x00 → 0xFF is satisfied. Writing 0x00 ((n - 1)th time) → 0x00 (nth time) → 0xFF is valid, and the refresh is performed correctly. Even when the first value written before 0x00 is not 0x00, correct refreshing is performed as long as the operation contains the write sequence of 0x00 → 0xFF.

Correct refreshing is also performed regardless of whether a register other than IWDTRR is accessed or IWDTRR is read between writing 0x00 and writing 0xFF to IWDTRR. Writes to refresh the counter must be made within the refresh-permitted period. Whether writing is done within the refresh-permitted period is determined when 0xFF is written. For this reason, correct refreshing is performed even when 0x00 is written outside the refresh-permitted period.

[Example write sequences that are valid to refresh the counter]

- 0x00 → 0xFF
- 0x00 ((n - 1)th time) → 0x00 (nth time) → 0xFF
- 0x00 → access to another register or read from IWDTRR → 0xFF.

[Example write sequences that are not valid to refresh the counter]

- 0x23 (a value other than 0x00) → 0xFF

- 0x00 → 0x54 (a value other than 0xFF)
- 0x00 → 0xAA (0x00 and a value other than 0xFF) → 0xFF.

After 0xFF is written to the IWDTRR register, refreshing the counter requires up to 4 cycles of the signal for counting the IWDT-Dedicated Clock Frequency Division Ratio Select bits (OFS0.IWDTCKS[3:0]) to determine how many cycles of the IWDT-dedicated clock (IWDTCCLK) make up 1 cycle for counting. To meet this requirement, writing 0xFF to the IWDTRR must be completed 4 count cycles before the end of the refresh-permitted period or a down-counter underflow. The value of the counter can be checked with the counter bits (IWDTSR.CNTVAL[13:0]).

[Example refreshing timings]

- When the window start position is set to 0x01FF, even if 0x00 is written to IWDTRR before 0x01FF is reached at (0x0202, for example), refreshing occurs if 0xFF is written to IWDTRR after the value of the IWDTSR.CNTVAL[13:0] bits reaches 0x01FF
- When the window end position is set to 0x01FF, refreshing occurs if 0x0203 (4 count cycles before 0x01FF) or a greater value is read from the IWDTSR.CNTVAL[13:0] bits immediately after writing 0x00 → 0xFF to IWDTRR
- When the refresh-permitted period continues until count 0x0000, refreshing can be performed immediately before an underflow. In this case, if 0x0003 (4 count cycles before an underflow) or a greater value is read from the IWDTSR.CNTVAL[13:0] bits immediately after writing 0x00 → 0xFF to IWDTRR, no underflow occurs and refreshing is performed.

Figure 24.4 shows the IWDT refresh-operation waveforms when $PCLKB > IWDTCCLK$ and the clock division ratio is IWDTCCLK.

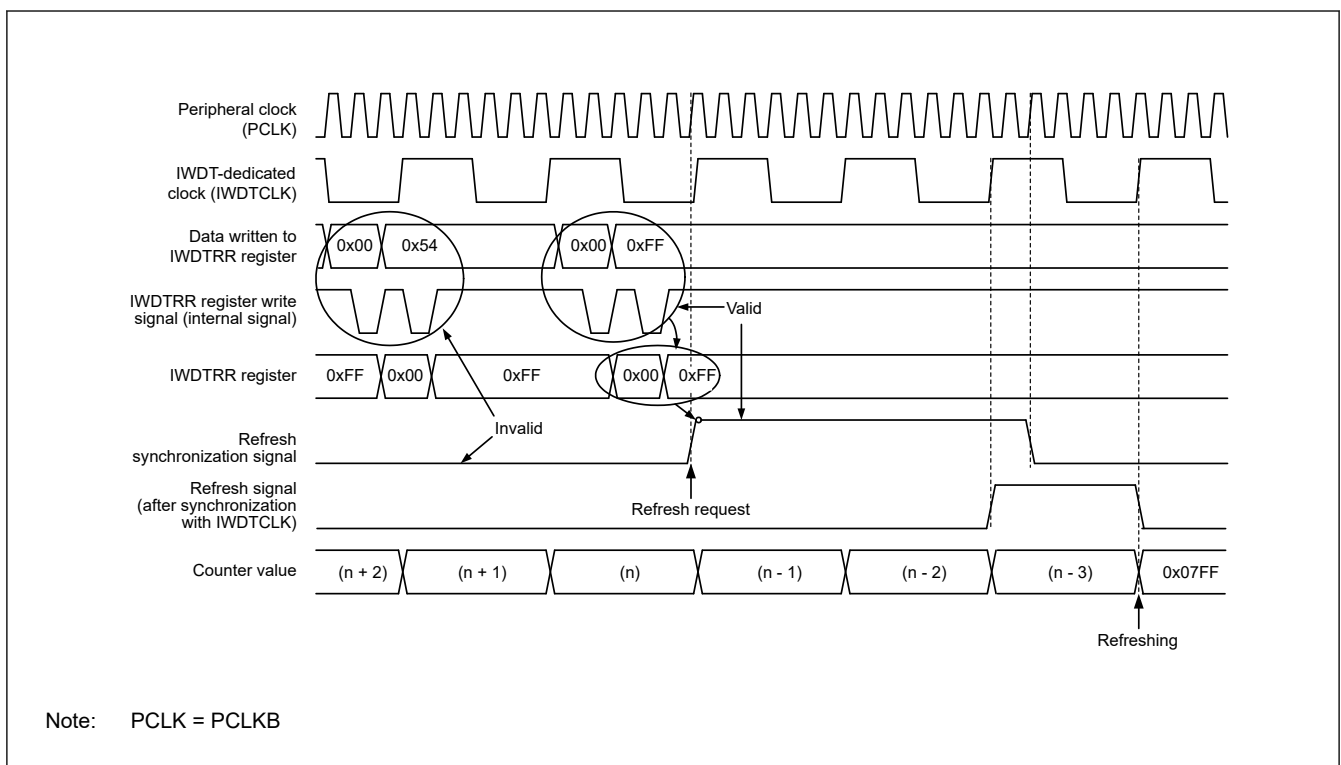


Figure 24.4 IWDT refresh operation waveforms when $OFS0.IWDTCKS[3:0] = 0000b$, $OFS0.IWDTTOPS[1:0] = 11b$

24.3.3 Status Flags

The refresh error (IWDTSR.REFEF) and underflow (IWDTSR.UNDFF) flags retain the source of the interrupt request from the IWDT. Therefore, after a release from the interrupt request generation, read the IWDTSR.REFEF and UNDFF flags to check for the interrupt source. For each flag, writing 0 clears the bit and writing 1 has no effect.

Leaving the status flags unchanged does not affect operation. If the flags are not cleared at the time of the next interrupt request from the IWDT, the earlier interrupt source is cleared and the new interrupt source is written. For the time period between when 0 is written in each flag and when its value is reflected, see [section 24.2.2. IWDTSR : IWDT Status Register](#).

24.3.4 Reset Output

When the IWDT Reset Interrupt Request Select bit (OFS0.IWDTRSTIRQS) in the Option Function Select Register 0 (OFS0) is set to 1, a reset signal is output when an underflow in the counter or a refresh error occurs. Counting down automatically starts after the reset output.

24.3.5 Interrupt Sources

When the IWDT Reset Interrupt Request Select bit (OFS0.IWDTRSTIRQS) in the Option Function Select Register 0 (OFS0) is set to 0, an interrupt (IWDT_NMIUNDF) signal occurs when an underflow in the counter or a refresh error occurs. This interrupt can be used as a non-maskable interrupt or an interrupt. For details, see [section 12, Interrupt Controller Unit \(ICU\)](#).

Table 24.4 IWDT interrupt source

Name	Interrupt source	Interrupt to CPU	Start DTC
IWDT_NMIUNDF	- Down-counter underflow - Refresh error	Possible	Not possible

24.3.6 Reading the Down-counter Value

As the counter is a IWDT-dedicated clock (IWDTCCLK), the counter value cannot be read directly. The IWDT synchronizes the counter value with the peripheral clock (PCLKB) and stores it in the down-counter value bits (IWDTSR.CNTVAL[13:0]) of the IWDT Status Register. Check these bits to obtain the counter value indirectly.

Reading the counter value requires multiple PCLKB clock cycles (up to 4 clock cycles), and the read counter value might differ from the actual counter value by a value of one count.

[Figure 24.5](#) shows the processing for reading the IWDT counter value when $PCLKB > IWDTCCLK$ and the clock division ratio is IWDTCCLK.

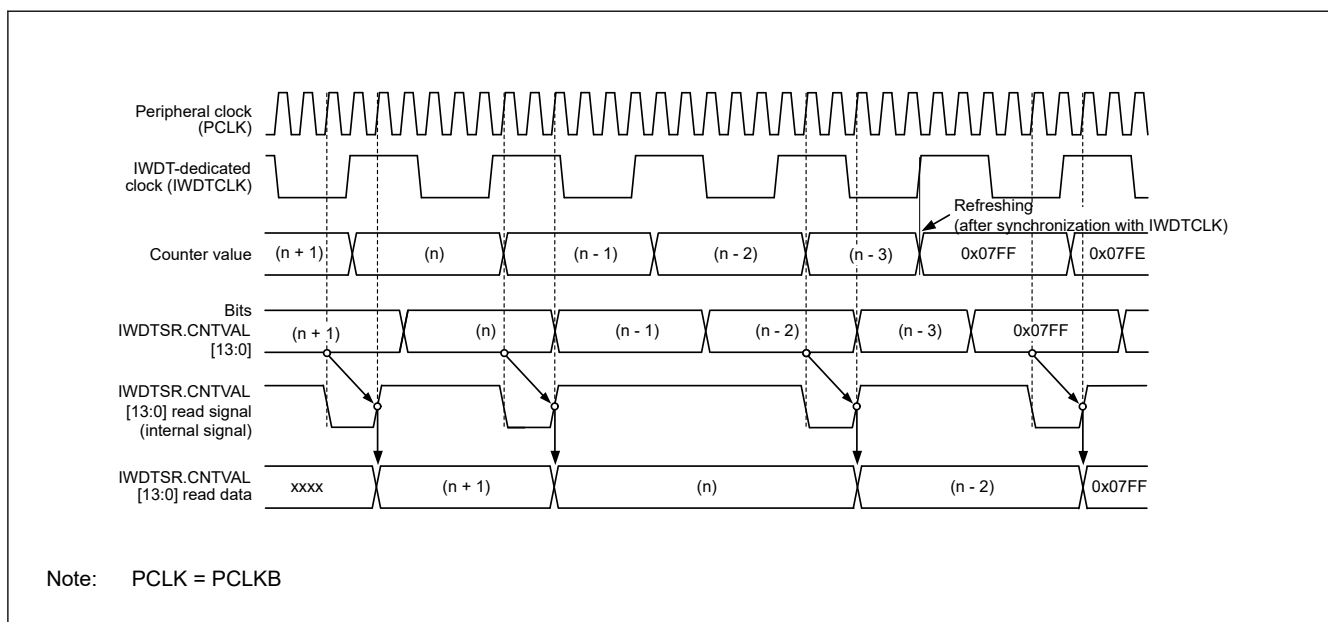


Figure 24.5 Processing for reading IWDT counter value when OFS0.IWDTCKS[3:0] = 0000b, OFS0.IWDTTOPS[1:0] = 11b

24.4 Output to the Event Link Controller (ELC)

The IWDT is capable of link operation for a specified module when the interrupt request signal is used as an event signal by the event link controller (ELC). The event signal is output by the counter underflow or refresh error.

An event signal is output regardless of the setting of the OFS0.IWDTRSTIRQS bit. An event signal can also be output at generation of the next interrupt source while the Refresh Error flag (IWDTSR.REFEF) or Underflow flag (IWDTSR.UNDF) is 1. For details, see [section 16, Event Link Controller \(ELC\)](#).

24.5 Usage Notes

24.5.1 Refresh Operations

While configuring the refresh time, consider variations in the range of errors given the accuracy of PCLKB and IWDTCCLK. Set values that ensure refreshing is possible.

24.5.2 Clock Division Ratio Setting

Satisfy the frequency of the peripheral module clock ($PCLKB \geq 4 \times$ (the frequency of the count clock source after division)).

24.5.3 Constraints on the ICU Event Link Setting Register n (IELSRn) Setting

Setting 0x03 to ICU Event Link Setting Register n (IELSRn.IELS[4:0]) is prohibited when enabling the IWDT reset assertion (OFS0.IWDTRSTIRQS = 0) or when enabling event link operation (ELSRn.ELS[7:0] = 0x17).

25. USB 2.0 Full-Speed Module (USBFS)

25.1 Overview

The USB 2.0 Full-Speed module (USBFS) operates as a device controller compliant with the Universal Serial Bus (USB) specification revision 2.0. The device controller supports USB 2.0 full-speed transfers. The USBFS has an internal USB transceiver and supports all of the transfer types defined in the USB 2.0 specification.

The USBFS has FIFO buffer for data transfers, providing a maximum of 10 pipes. Any endpoint number can be assigned to pipes 1 to 9, based on the peripheral devices or the communication requirements for your system.

Table 25.1 lists the USBFS specifications, Figure 25.1 shows a block diagram, and Table 25.2 lists the I/O pins.

Table 25.1 USBFS specifications

Parameter	Specifications
Features	• USB Device Controller (UDC) and USB 2.0 transceiver supporting, device controller • Self-power or bus power mode selectable Device controller features: • Full-speed transfer (12 Mbps)*1 • Control transfer stage control function • Device state control function • Auto response function for SET_ADDRESS request • SOF interpolation
Supported transfer types	• Control transfer • Bulk transfer • Interrupt transfer • Isochronous transfer
Pipe configuration	• FIFO buffer for USB communication • Up to 10 pipes selectable, including the Default Control Pipe (DCP) • Pipes 1 to 9 assignable to any endpoint number Transfer conditions specifiable for each pipe: • Pipe 0: Control transfer with 64-byte single buffer • Pipes 1 and 2: Selectable to bulk transfer with 64-byte double buffer or isochronous transfer with 256-byte double buffer • Pipes 3 to 5: Bulk transfer with 64-byte double buffer • Pipes 6 to 9: Interrupt transfer with 64-byte single buffer
Other features	• Reception end function using transaction count • Function that changes the BRDY interrupt event notification timing (BFRE) • Automatic clearing of the FIFO buffer after the data for the pipe specified in the DnFIFO port (n = 0, 1) is read (DCLRM) • NAK setting function for response PID generated on transfer end (SHTNAK) • On-chip pull-up resistors for D+
Module-stop function	Module-stop state can be set to reduce power consumption

Note 1. Low-speed transfer (1.5 Mbps) is not supported.

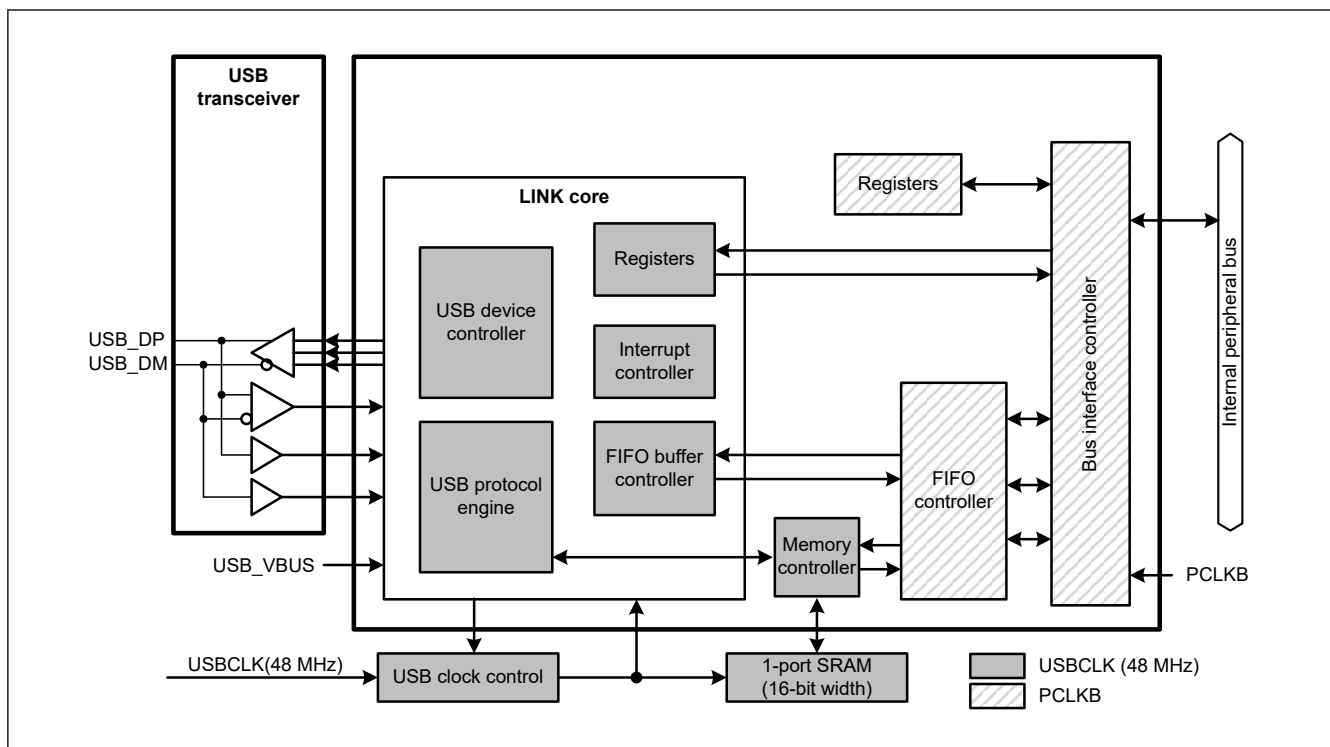


Figure 25.1 USBFS block diagram

Table 25.2 USBFS pin configuration

Function	Pin name	I/O	Description
USBFS	USB_DP	I/O	D+ I/O pin of the USB on-chip transceiver. This pin should be connected to the D+ pin of the USB bus.
	USB_DM	I/O	D- I/O pin of the USB on-chip transceiver. This pin should be connected to the D- pin of the USB bus.
	USB_VBUS	Input	USB cable connection monitor pin. This pin should be connected to VBUS of the USB bus. The VBUS pin status (connected or disconnected) can be detected when the USB module is operating as a function controller.

25.2 Register Descriptions

25.2.1 SYSCFG : System Configuration Control Register

Base address: USBFS = 0x4009_0000

Offset address: 0x000

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	SCKE	—	—	—	—	—	DPRP U	—	—	—	USBE

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	USBE	USBFS Operation Enable 0: Disable 1: Enable	R/W
2:1	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
3	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
4	DPRPU	D+ Line Resistor Control 0: Disable line pull-up 1: Enable line pull-up	R/W
7:5	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
9:8	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
10	SCKE	USB Clock Enable 0: Stop clock supply to the USBFS 1: Enable clock supply to the USBFS	R/W
15:11	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note: After writing 1 to the SCKE bit, read it to confirm that it is set to 1.

USBSE bit (USBFS Operation Enable)

The USBSE bit enables or disables operation of the USBFS.

Changing the USBSE bit from 1 to 0 initializes the bits listed in [Table 25.3](#). Only change this bit while the SCKE bit is 1.

Table 25.3 Registers initialized by writing 0 to the SYSCFG.USBSE bit

Selected function	Register	Bit
Device controller	SYSSTS0	LNST[1:0]
	DVSTCTR0	RHST[2:0]
	INTSTS0	DVSQ[2:0]
	USBREQ	BREQUEST[7:0], BMREQUESTTYPE[7:0]
	USBVAL	WVALUE[15:0]
	USBINDX	WINDEX[15:0]
	USBLENG	WLENTUH[15:0]

DPRPU bit (D+ Line Resistor Control)

The DPRPU bit enables or disables pulling up the D+ line in device controller mode.

When the DPRPU bit is set to 1 in device controller mode, the USBFS pulls up the D+ line to notify the USB host that it attached. Changing the DPRPU bit from 1 to 0 releases the pull-up, thus notifying the USB host that it detached.

Set this bit to 1 in device controller mode.

SCKE bit (USB Clock Enable)

The SCKE bit stops or enables the 48-MHz clock supply to the USBFS.

When this bit is 0, only SYSCFG is permitted to be read from and written to. Other registers related to the USB should not be read from or written to.

25.2.2 SYSSTS0 : System Configuration Status Register 0

Base address: USBFS = 0x4009_0000

Offset address: 0x004

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	HTAC T	—	—	—	—	LNST[1:0]	
Value after reset:	x	x	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	x	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
1:0	LNST[1:0]	USB Data Line Status Monitor Indicates the status of the USB data lines, see Table 25.4	R

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
5:2	—	These bits are read as 0.	R
6	HTACT	USB Host Sequencer Status Monitor 0: Host sequencer completely stopped 1: Host sequencer not completely stopped	R
15:7	—	These bits are read as 0.	R

LNST[1:0] bits (USB Data Line Status Monitor)

The LNST[1:0] bits indicate the state of the USB data line (D+). For details, see [Table 25.4](#).

In device controller mode, read the LNST[1:0] bits after connection processing (SYSCFG.DPRPU bit = 1).

Table 25.4 Status of the USB data bus line (D+)

LNST[1:0] bits	During full-speed operation
00b	SE0
01b	J-State
10b	K-State
11b	SE1

HTACT bit (USB Host Sequencer Status Monitor)

The HTACT bit is set to 0 when the host sequencer of the USBFS is completely stopped.

25.2.3 DVSTCTR0 : Device State Control Register 0

Base address: USBFS = 0x4009_0000

Offset address: 0x008

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	WKUP	—	—	—	—	—	RHST[2:0]		
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
2:0	RHST[2:0]	USB Bus Reset Status 0 0 0: In device controller mode: Communication speed indeterminate 0 0 1: In device controller mode: USB bus reset in progress 0 1 0: In device controller mode: USB bus reset in progress or full-speed connection 0 1 1: Setting prohibited Others: In device controller mode: Setting prohibited	R
7:3	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
8	WKUP	Wakeup Output 0: Do not output remote wakeup signal 1: Output remote wakeup signal	R/W
15:9	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

The USBFS controller does not support low-speed connections in device controller mode. When this value is read, abnormal connection processing must be executed in higher level application software.

RHST[2:0] bits (USB Bus Reset Status)

RHST[2:0] bits indicate the status of the USB bus reset.

In device controller mode, if the USBFS detects a USB bus reset, the RHST[2:0] bits indicate 010b if the DPRPU bit is 1, and a DVST interrupt is generated.

WKUP bit (Wakeup Output)

The WKUP bit enables or disables remote wakeup signals (resume signals) to the USB bus in device controller mode.

The USBFS controls the output timing of the remote wakeup signals. When this bit is set to 1, the USBFS clears it to 0 after outputting the K-state for 10 ms. The USB 2.0 specification specifies that the USB bus idle state must be kept for 5 ms or longer before a remote wakeup signal is sent. If the USBFS writes 1 to the WKUP bit immediately after detecting the Suspend state, the K-state is output after 2 ms.

Only write 1 to the WKUP bit when the device is in the Suspend state (INTSTS0.DVSQ[2:0] = 1xxb) and the USB host enables the remote wakeup signal. Do not stop the internal clock while this bit is 1, even in the Suspend state (SYSCFG.SCKE bit must be set to 1).

25.2.4 CFIFO/CFIFOL : CFIFO Port Register

Base address: USBFS = 0x4009_0000

Offset address: 0x014

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	FIFOPORT[15:0]															
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
15:0	FIFOPORT[15:0] ^{*1}	FIFO Port Read receive data from the FIFO buffer or write transmit data to the FIFO buffer by accessing these bits	R/W

Note 1. The valid bits depend on the MBW settings (CFIFOSEL.MBW) and BIGEND settings (CFIFOSEL.BIGEND) in the associated port selection register. See [Table 25.5](#) and [Table 25.6](#).

Three FIFO ports are available:

- CFIFO
- D0FIFO
- D1FIFO

Each FIFO port is configured with:

- A port register (CFIFO, D0FIFO, or D1FIFO) that handles reading of data from the FIFO buffer and writing of data to the FIFO buffer
- A port selection register (CFIFOSEL, D0FIFOSEL, or D1FIFOSEL) that selects the pipe assigned to the FIFO port
- A port control register (CFIFOCTR, D0FIFOCTR, or D1FIFOCTR)

Each FIFO port has the following constraints:

- Access to the FIFO buffer for DCP control transfers is through the CFIFO port
- Access to the FIFO buffer for DTC transfers is through the D0FIFO or D1FIFO port
- The D0FIFO and D1FIFO ports can also be accessed by the CPU
- When using functions specific to the FIFO port, such as the DTC transfer function, you cannot change the pipe number selected in the CURPIPE[3:0] bits of the port selection register
- Registers configuring a FIFO port do not affect other FIFO ports
- The same pipe must not be assigned to two or more FIFO ports
- There are two FIFO buffer states, one giving access rights to the CPU and the other to the serial interface engine (SIE). When the SIE has access rights, the FIFO buffer cannot be accessed by the CPU

FIFOPORT[15:0] bits (FIFO Port)

When the FIFOPORT[15:0] bit is accessed, the USBFS reads the received data from the FIFO buffer or writes the transmit data to the FIFO buffer. The FIFO port register can be accessed only when the FRDY bit in the associated port control register (CFIFOCTR, D0FIFOCTR, or D1FIFOCTR) is 1.

The valid bits in the FIFO port register depend on the MBW and BIGEND settings in the port selection register (CFIFOSEL, D0FIFOSEL, or D1FIFOSEL). See [Table 25.5](#) and [Table 25.6](#).

Table 25.5 Endian operation in 16-bit access

CFIFOSEL.BIGEND bit	Bits [15:8]	Bits [7:0]
0	N + 1 data	N + 0 data
1	N + 0 data	N + 1 data

Table 25.6 Endian operation in 8-bit access

CFIFOSEL.BIGEND bit	Bits [15:8]	Bits [7:0]
0	Access prohibited ^{*1}	N + 0 data
1	Access prohibited ^{*1}	N + 0 data

Note 1. Writing to or reading from these areas is not allowed.

25.2.5 DnFIFO/DnFIFOL : DnFIFO Port Register (n = 0, 1)

Base address: USBFS = 0x4009_0000

Offset address: 0x018 + 0x4 × n

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	FIFOPORT[15:0]															
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
15:0	FIFOPORT[15:0] ^{*1}	FIFO Port Read receive data from the FIFO buffer or write transmit data to the FIFO buffer by accessing these bits	R/W

Note 1. The valid bits depend on the MBW settings (CFIFOSEL.MBW, D0FIFOSEL.MBW, and D1FIFOSEL.MBW) and BIGEND settings (CFIFOSEL.BIGEND, D0FIFOSEL.BIGEND, and D1FIFOSEL.BIGEND) in the associated port selection register. See [Table 25.7](#) and [Table 25.8](#).

Three FIFO ports are available:

- CFIFO
- D0FIFO
- D1FIFO

Each FIFO port is configured with:

- A port register (CFIFO, D0FIFO, or D1FIFO) that handles reading of data from the FIFO buffer and writing of data to the FIFO buffer
- A port selection register (CFIFOSEL, D0FIFOSEL, or D1FIFOSEL) that selects the pipe assigned to the FIFO port
- A port control register (CFIFOCTR, D0FIFOCTR, or D1FIFOCTR)

Each FIFO port has the following constraints:

- Access to the FIFO buffer for DCP control transfers is through the CFIFO port
- Access to the FIFO buffer for DTC transfers is through the D0FIO or D1FIFO port
- The D0FIFO and D1FIFO ports can also be accessed by the CPU
- When using functions specific to the FIFO port, such as the DTC transfer function, you cannot change the pipe number selected in the CURPIPE[3:0] bits of the port selection register
- Registers configuring a FIFO port do not affect other FIFO ports
- The same pipe must not be assigned to two or more FIFO ports

- There are two FIFO buffer states, one giving access rights to the CPU and the other to the serial interface engine (SIE). When the SIE has access rights, the FIFO buffer cannot be accessed by the CPU

FIFOPORT[15:0] bits (FIFO Port)

When the FIFOPORT bit is accessed, the USBFS reads the received data from the FIFO buffer or writes the transmit data to the FIFO buffer. The FIFO port register can be accessed only when the FRDY bit in the associated port control register (CFIFOCTR, D0FIFOCTR, or D1FIFOCTR) is 1.

The valid bits in the FIFO port register depend on the MBW and BIGEND settings in the port selection register (CFIFOSEL, D0FIFOSEL, or D1FIFOSEL). See [Table 25.7](#) and [Table 25.8](#).

Table 25.7 Endian operation in 16-bit access

CFIFOSEL.BIGEND bit D0FIFOSEL.BIGEND bit D1FIFOSEL.BIGEND bit	Bits [15:8]	Bits [7:0]
0	N + 1 data	N + 0 data
1	N + 0 data	N + 1 data

Table 25.8 Endian operation in 8-bit access

CFIFOSEL.BIGEND bit D0FIFOSEL.BIGEND bit D1FIFOSEL.BIGEND bit	Bits [15:8]	Bits [7:0]
0	Access prohibited*1	N + 0 data
1	Access prohibited*1	N + 0 data

Note 1. Writing to or reading from these areas is not allowed.

25.2.6 CFIFOSEL : CFIFO Port Select Register

Base address: USBFS = 0x4009_0000

Offset address: 0x020

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	RCNT	REW	—	—	—	MBW	—	BIGEND	—	—	ISEL	—	CURPIPE[3:0]			

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
3:0	CURPIPE[3:0]	CFIFO Port Access Pipe Specification 0x0: Default Control Pipe 0x1: Pipe 1 0x2: Pipe 2 0x3: Pipe 3 0x4: Pipe 4 0x5: Pipe 5 0x6: Pipe 6 0x7: Pipe 7 0x8: Pipe 8 0x9: Pipe 9 Others: Setting prohibited	R/W
4	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
5	ISEL	CFIFO Port Access Direction When DCP Is Selected 0: Select reading from the FIFO buffer 1: Select writing to the FIFO buffer	R/W
7:6	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
8	BIGEND	CFIFO Port Endian Control 0: Little endian 1: Big endian	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
9	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
10	MBW	CFIFO Port Access Bit Width 0: 8-bit width 1: 16-bit width	R/W
13:11	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
14	REW	Buffer Pointer Rewind 0: Do not rewind buffer pointer 1: Rewind buffer pointer	W*1
15	RCNT	Read Count Mode 0: The DTLN[8:0] bits (CFIFOCTR.DTLN[8:0], D0FIFOCTR.DTLN[8:0], D1FIFOCTR.DTLN[8:0]) are cleared when all receive data is read from the CFIFO. In double buffer mode, the DTLN[8:0] value is cleared when all data is read from only a single plane. 1: The DTLN[8:0] bits are decremented each time the receive data is read from the CFIFO.	R/W

Note 1. Only 0 can be read.

Do not specify the same pipe number in the CURPIPE[3:0] bits in the CFIFOSEL, D0FIFOSEL, and D1FIFOSEL registers. When the CURPIPE[3:0] bits in the D0FIFOSEL and D1FIFOSEL registers are set to 0000b, no pipe is selected.

Do not change the pipe number while DTC transfer is enabled.

CURPIPE[3:0] bits (CFIFO Port Access Pipe Specification)

The CURPIPE[3:0] bits specify the pipe number to use for reading or writing data through the CFIFO port. After writing to these bits, read them to check that the written value agrees with the read value before proceeding to the next process. Do not set the same pipe number to the CURPIPE[3:0] bits in CFIFOSEL, D0FIFOSEL, and D1FIFOSEL.

During FIFO buffer access, even when an attempt is made to change the CURPIPE[3:0] setting, the current access setting is retained until access is complete.

ISEL bit (CFIFO Port Access Direction When DCP Is Selected)

After writing a new value to the ISEL bit with the DCP as the selected pipe, read the ISEL bit to check that the written value agrees with the read value before proceeding to the next process. Set the ISEL and CURPIPE[3:0] bits simultaneously.

MBW bit (CFIFO Port Access Bit Width)

The MBW bit specifies the bit width for accessing the CFIFO port.

When the selected pipe is receiving, set the CURPIPE[3:0] and MBW bits simultaneously. After a write to these bits starts a data read from the FIFO buffer, do not change the MBW bit until all of the data is read.

When the selected pipe is transmitting, the bit width cannot be changed from 8-bit to 16-bit while data is being written to the FIFO buffer.

An odd number of bytes can also be written through byte-access control even when 16-bit width is selected.

REW bit (Buffer Pointer Rewind)

The REW bit specifies whether to rewind the buffer pointer.

When the selected pipe is receiving, setting this bit to 1 while the FIFO buffer is being read allows re-reading of the FIFO buffer from the first data. In double buffering, this setting enables re-reading of the currently-read FIFO buffer plane from the first entry.

Do not set this bit to 1 while simultaneously changing the CURPIPE[3:0] bits. Before setting the REW bit to 1, be sure to check that the FRDY bit is 1.

To rewrite to the FIFO buffer from the first data for the transmitting pipe, use the BCLR bit.

25.2.7 DnFIFOSEL : DnFIFO Port Select Register (n = 0, 1)

Base address: USBFS = 0x4009_0000

Offset address: 0x028 + 0x4 × n

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	RCNT	REW	DCLRM	DREQE	—	MBW	—	BIGEND	—	—	—	—	CURPIPE[3:0]			
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
3:0	CURPIPE[3:0]	FIFO Port Access Pipe Specification 0x0: Default Control Pipe 0x1: Pipe 1 0x2: Pipe 2 0x3: Pipe 3 0x4: Pipe 4 0x5: Pipe 5 0x6: Pipe 6 0x7: Pipe 7 0x8: Pipe 8 0x9: Pipe 9 Others: Setting prohibited	R/W
7:4	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
8	BIGEND	FIFO Port Endian Control 0: Little endian 1: Big endian	R/W
9	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
10	MBW	FIFO Port Access Bit Width 0: 8-bit width 1: 16-bit width	R/W
11	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
12	DREQE	DTC Transfer Request Enable 0: Disable DTC transfer request 1: Enable DTC transfer request	R/W
13	DCLRM	Auto Buffer Memory Clear Mode Accessed after Specified Pipe Data is Read 0: Disable auto buffer clear mode 1: Enable auto buffer clear mode	R/W
14	REW	Buffer Pointer Rewind 0: Do not rewind buffer pointer 1: Rewind buffer pointer	W
15	RCNT	Read Count Mode 0: Clear DTLN[8:0] bits in (CFIFOCTR.DTLN[8:0], D0FIFOCTR.DTLN[8:0], D1FIFOCTR.DTLN[8:0]) when all receive data is read from DnFIFO (after read of a single plane in double buffer mode) 1: Decrement DTLN[8:0] bits each time receive data is read from DnFIFO	R/W

The same pipe must not be specified in the CURPIPE[3:0] bits in the CFIFOSEL, D0FIFOSEL, and D1FIFOSEL registers. When the CURPIPE[3:0] bits in the D0FIFOSEL and D1FIFOSEL registers are set to 0000b, no pipe is selected. The pipe number must not be changed while DTC transfer is enabled.

CURPIPE[3:0] bits (FIFO Port Access Pipe Specification)

The CURPIPE[3:0] bits specify the pipe number to use for reading or writing data through the DnFIFO port. After writing to these bits, read them to check that the written value agrees with the read value before proceeding to the next process. Do not set the same pipe number to the CURPIPE[3:0] bits in CFIFOSEL, D0FIFOSEL, and D1FIFOSEL.

During FIFO buffer access, even when an attempt is made to change the CURPIPE[3:0] setting, the current access setting is retained until access is complete.

MBW bit (FIFO Port Access Bit Width)

The MBW bit specifies the bit width for accessing the DnFIFO port.

When the selected pipe is receiving, after a write to these bits starts a data read from the FIFO buffer, do not change the MBW bit until all the data is read. Set the CURPIPE[3:0] and MBW bits simultaneously.

When the selected pipe is transmitting, the bit width cannot be changed from 8-bit to 16-bit while data is being written to the FIFO buffer.

An odd number of bytes can also be written through byte-access control even when 16-bit width is selected.

DREQE bit (DTC Transfer Request Enable)

The DREQE bit enables or disables issuing of DTC transfer requests. To enable DTC transfer requests, set this bit to 1 after setting the CURPIPE[3:0] bits. To change the CURPIPE[3:0] setting, first set this bit to 0.

DCLRM bit (Auto Buffer Memory Clear Mode Accessed after Specified Pipe Data is Read)

The DCLRM bit enables or disables automatic FIFO buffer clearing after data in the selected pipe is read.

When this bit is set to 1, on receiving a zero-length packet while the FIFO buffer assigned to the selected pipe is empty, or when reading of a received short packet is complete while the PIPECFG.BFRE bit is 1, the USBFS sets the BCLR bit in the FIFO port control register to 1.

When using the USBFS with the SOFCFG.BRDYM bit set to 1, set this bit to 0.

REW bit (Buffer Pointer Rewind)

The REW bit specifies whether to rewind the buffer pointer.

When the selected pipe is receiving, setting this bit to 1 while the FIFO buffer is being read allows rereading of the FIFO buffer from the first data. In double buffering, this setting enables rereading of the currently-read FIFO buffer plane from the first entry.

Do not set this bit to 1 while simultaneously changing the CURPIPE[3:0] bits. Before setting the bit to 1, be sure to check that the FRDY bit is 1.

To rewrite to the FIFO buffer from the first data for the transmitting pipe, use the BCLR bit.

RCNT bit (Read Count Mode)

The RCNT bit specifies the read mode for the value in the CFIFOCTR.DTLN bit. When accessing DnFIFO with the PIPECFG.BFRE bit set to 1, set the RCNT bit to 0.

25.2.8 CFIFOCTR : CFIFO Port Control Register

Base address: USBFS = 0x4009_0000

Offset address: 0x022

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	BVAL	BCLR	FRDY	—	—	—	—	DTLN[8:0]								
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
8:0	DTLN[8:0]	Receive Data Length Indicates the receive data length. The meaning of the values differs depending on the RCNT bit setting in the port select register. For details, see the description of the DTLN[8:0] bits.	R
12:9	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
13	FRDY	FIFO Port Ready 0: FIFO port access disabled 1: FIFO port access enabled	R

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
14	BCLR	CPU Buffer Clear 0: No operation 1: Clear FIFO buffer on the CPU side	W
15	BVAL	Buffer Memory Valid Flag 0: Invalid (writing 0 has no effect) 1: Writing ended	R/W

The CFIFOCTR, D0FIFOCTR, and D1FIFOCTR registers correspond to the CFIFO, D0FIFO, and D1FIFO buffers.

DTLN[8:0] bits (Receive Data Length)

The DTLN[8:0] bits indicate the length of the receive data.

While the FIFO buffer is being read, the DTLN[8:0] bits indicate different values depending on the DnFIFOSEL.RCNT bit (n = 0, 1), as follows:

- RCNT = 0

The USBFS sets the DTLN[8:0] bits to indicate the length of the receive data until the CPU or DTC has read all of the received data from a single FIFO buffer plane.

While the PIPECFG.BFRE bit = 1, the USBFS retains the length of the receive data until the BCLR bit is set to 1, even after all the data is read.

- RCNT = 1

The USBFS decrements the value indicated in the DTLN[8:0] bits each time data is read from the FIFO buffer. The value is decremented by 1 when MBW = 0, and by 2 when MBW = 1.

The USBFS sets these bits to 0 when all the data is read from one FIFO buffer plane. In double buffer mode, if data is received in one FIFO buffer plane before all of the data is read from the other plane, the USBFS sets these bits to indicate the length of the receive data in the former plane when all of the data is read from the latter plane.

FRDY bit (FIFO Port Ready)

The FRDY bit indicates whether the FIFO port can be accessed by the CPU or DTC.

In the following cases, the USBFS sets the FRDY bit to 1 but data cannot be read through the FIFO port because there is no data to be read:

- A zero-length packet is received when the FIFO buffer assigned to the selected pipe is empty
- A short packet is received and the data is completely read while the PIPECFG.BFRE bit = 1

In these cases, set the BCLR bit to 1 to clear the FIFO buffer, and enable transmission and reception of the next data.

BCLR bit (CPU Buffer Clear)

Set the BCLR bit to 1 to clear the FIFO buffer on the CPU side for the selected pipe.

When double buffer mode is set for the FIFO buffer assigned to the selected pipe, the USBFS clears only one plane of the FIFO buffer even when both planes are read-enabled.

When the DCP is the selected pipe, setting the BCLR bit to 1 allows the USBFS to clear the FIFO buffer regardless of whether the CPU or SIE has access rights. To clear the buffer when the SIE has access rights, set the DCPCTR.PID[1:0] bits to 00b (NAK response) before setting the BCLR bit to 1.

When the selected pipe is transmitting, if 1 is written to the BVAL flag and the BCLR bit simultaneously, the USBFS clears the data that is already written, enabling transmission of a zero-length packet.

When the selected pipe is not the DCP, only write 1 to the BCLR bit while the FRDY bit in the FIFO port control register is 1 (set by the USBFS).

BVAL flag (Buffer Memory Valid Flag)

Set the BVAL flag to 1 when data is completely written to the FIFO buffer on the CPU side for the pipe selected in CURPIPE[3:0].

When the selected pipe is transmitting, set this flag to 1 in the following cases:

- To transmit a short packet, set this flag to 1 after data is written
- To transmit a zero-length packet, set this flag to 1 before data is written to the FIFO buffer

The USBFS then switches the FIFO buffer from the CPU side to the SIE side, enabling transmission.

When data of the maximum packet size is written for the pipe in continuous transfer mode, the USBFS sets the BVAL flag to 1 and switches the FIFO buffer from the CPU side to the SIE side, enabling transmission.

Only write 1 to the BVAL flag while the FRDY bit is 1 (set by the USBFS). When the selected pipe is receiving, do not set the BVAL flag to 1.

25.2.9 DnFIFOCTR : DnFIFO Port Control Register (n = 0, 1)

Base address: USBFS = 0x4009_0000

Offset address: 0x02A + 0x4 × n

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	BVAL	BCLR	FRDY	—	—	—	—	DTLN[8:0]								
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
8:0	DTLN[8:0]	Receive Data Length Indicates the receive data length. The meaning of the values differs depending on the RCNT bit setting in the port select register. For details, see the description of the DTLN[8:0] bits.	R
12:9	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
13	FRDY	FIFO Port Ready 0: FIFO port access disabled 1: FIFO port access enabled	R
14	BCLR	CPU Buffer Clear 0: No operation 1: Clear FIFO buffer on the CPU side	R/W ¹
15	BVAL	Buffer Memory Valid Flag 0: Invalid (writing 0 has no effect) 1: Writing ended	R/W

Note 1. Only 0 can be read.

The CFIFOCTR, D0FIFOCTR, and D1FIFOCTR registers correspond to the CFIFO, D0FIFO, and D1FIFO buffers.

DTLN[8:0] bits (Receive Data Length)

The DTLN[8:0] bits indicate the length of the receive data.

While the FIFO buffer is being read, the DTLN[8:0] bits indicate different values depending on the DnFIFOSEL.RCNT bit (n = 0, 1), as follows:

- RCNT = 0

The USBFS sets the DTLN[8:0] bits to indicate the length of the receive data until the CPU or DTC has read all of the received data from a single FIFO buffer plane.

While the PIPECFG.BFRE bit = 1, the USBFS retains the length of the receive data until the BCLR bit is set to 1, even after all the data is read.

- RCNT = 1

The USBFS decrements the value indicated in the DTLN[8:0] bits each time data is read from the FIFO buffer. The value is decremented by 1 when MBW = 0, and by 2 when MBW = 1.

The USBFS sets these bits to 0 when all the data is read from one FIFO buffer plane. In double buffer mode, if data is received in one FIFO buffer plane before all of the data is read from the other plane, the USBFS sets these bits to indicate the length of the receive data in the former plane when all of the data is read from the latter plane.

FRDY bit (FIFO Port Ready)

The FRDY bit indicates whether the FIFO port can be accessed by the CPU or DTC.

In the following cases, the USBFS sets the FRDY bit to 1 but data cannot be read through the FIFO port because there is no data to be read:

- A zero-length packet is received when the FIFO buffer assigned to the selected pipe is empty
- A short packet is received and the data is completely read while the PIPECFG.BFRE bit = 1

In these cases, set the BCLR bit to 1 to clear the FIFO buffer, and enable transmission and reception of the next data.

BCLR bit (CPU Buffer Clear)

Set the BCLR bit to 1 to clear the FIFO buffer on the CPU side for the selected pipe.

When double buffer mode is set for the FIFO buffer assigned to the selected pipe, the USBFS clears only one plane of the FIFO buffer even when both planes are read-enabled.

When the DCP is the selected pipe, setting the BCLR bit to 1 allows the USBFS to clear the FIFO buffer regardless of whether the CPU or SIE has access rights. To clear the buffer when the SIE has access rights, set the DCPCTR.PID[1:0] bits to 00b (NAK response) before setting the BCLR bit to 1.

When the selected pipe is transmitting, if 1 is written to the BVAL flag and the BCLR bit simultaneously, the USBFS clears the data that is already written, enabling transmission of a zero-length packet.

When the selected pipe is not the DCP, only write 1 to the BCLR bit while the FRDY bit in the FIFO port control register is 1 (set by the USBFS).

BVAL flag (Buffer Memory Valid Flag)

Set the BVAL flag to 1 when data is completely written to the FIFO buffer on the CPU side for the pipe selected in CURPIPE[3:0].

When the selected pipe is transmitting, set this flag to 1 in the following cases:

- To transmit a short packet, set this flag to 1 after data is written
- To transmit a zero-length packet, set this flag to 1 before data is written to the FIFO buffer

The USBFS then switches the FIFO buffer from the CPU side to the SIE side, enabling transmission.

When data of the maximum packet size is written for the pipe in continuous transfer mode, the USBFS sets the BVAL flag to 1 and switches the FIFO buffer from the CPU side to the SIE side, enabling transmission.

Only write 1 to the BVAL flag while the FRDY bit is 1 (set by the USBFS). When the selected pipe is receiving, do not set the BVAL flag to 1.

25.2.10 INTENB0 : Interrupt Enable Register 0

Base address: USBFS = 0x4009_0000

Offset address: 0x030

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	VBSE	RSME	SOFE	DVSE	CTRE	BEMP E	NRDY E	BRDY E	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7:0	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
8	BRDYE	Buffer Ready Interrupt Enable 0: Disable interrupt request 1: Enable interrupt request	R/W
9	NRDYE	Buffer Not Ready Response Interrupt Enable 0: Disable interrupt request 1: Enable interrupt request	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
10	BEMPE	Buffer Empty Interrupt Enable 0: Disable interrupt request 1: Enable interrupt request	R/W
11	CTRE	Control Transfer Stage Transition Interrupt Enable *1 0: Disable interrupt request 1: Enable interrupt request	R/W
12	DVSE	Device State Transition Interrupt Enable *1 0: Disable interrupt request 1: Enable interrupt request	R/W
13	SOFE	Frame Number Update Interrupt Enable 0: Disable interrupt request 1: Enable interrupt request	R/W
14	RSME	Resume Interrupt Enable *1 0: Disable interrupt request 1: Enable interrupt request	R/W
15	VBSE	VBUS Interrupt Enable 0: Disable interrupt request 1: Enable interrupt request	R/W

Note 1. The RSME, DVSE, and CTRE bits can only be set to 1 in device controller mode.

When a status flag in the INTSTS0 register sets to 1 and the associated interrupt request enable bit setting in the INTENB0 register is 1, the USBFS issues a USBFS interrupt request.

Regardless of the INTENB0 register setting, the status flag in the INTSTS0 register sets to 1 in response to a state change that satisfies the associated condition.

When an interrupt request enable bit in the INTENB0 register is switched from 0 to 1 while the associated status flag in the INTSTS0 register is set to 1, a USBFS interrupt is requested.

25.2.11 BRDYENB : BRDY Interrupt Enable Register

Base address: USBFS = 0x4009_0000

Offset address: 0x036

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	PIPE9 BRDY E	PIPE8 BRDY E	PIPE7 BRDY E	PIPE6 BRDY E	PIPE5 BRDY E	PIPE4 BRDY E	PIPE3 BRDY E	PIPE2 BRDY E	PIPE1 BRDY E	PIPE0 BRDY E
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	PIPE0BRDYE	BRDY Interrupt Enable for Pipe 0 0: Disable interrupt request 1: Enable interrupt request	R/W
1	PIPE1BRDYE	BRDY Interrupt Enable for Pipe 1 0: Disable interrupt request 1: Enable interrupt request	R/W
2	PIPE2BRDYE	BRDY Interrupt Enable for Pipe 2 0: Disable interrupt request 1: Enable interrupt request	R/W
3	PIPE3BRDYE	BRDY Interrupt Enable for Pipe 3 0: Disable interrupt request 1: Enable interrupt request	R/W
4	PIPE4BRDYE	BRDY Interrupt Enable for Pipe 4 0: Disable interrupt request 1: Enable interrupt request	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
5	PIPE5BRDYE	BRDY Interrupt Enable for Pipe 5 0: Disable interrupt request 1: Enable interrupt request	R/W
6	PIPE6BRDYE	BRDY Interrupt Enable for Pipe 6 0: Disable interrupt request 1: Enable interrupt request	R/W
7	PIPE7BRDYE	BRDY Interrupt Enable for Pipe 7 0: Disable interrupt request 1: Enable interrupt request	R/W
8	PIPE8BRDYE	BRDY Interrupt Enable for Pipe 8 0: Disable interrupt request 1: Enable interrupt request	R/W
9	PIPE9BRDYE	BRDY Interrupt Enable for Pipe 9 0: Disable interrupt request 1: Enable interrupt request	R/W
15:10	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

The BRDYENB register enables or disables the INTSTS0.BRDY bit to be set to 1 when a BRDY interrupt is detected for each pipe.

When a status flag in the BRDYSTS register sets to 1 and the associated PIPE_nBRDYE bit (n = 0 to 9) setting in the BRDYENB register is 1, the INTSTS0.BRDY flag sets to 1. In this case, if the BRDYE bit in INTENB0 is 1, the USBFS generates a BRDY interrupt request. While at least one PIPE_nBRDY bit indicates 1, the USB generates the BRDY interrupt request when the associated interrupt request enable bit in the BRDYENB register is changed from 0 to 1 by software.

25.2.12 NRDYENB : NRDY Interrupt Enable Register

Base address: USBFS = 0x4009_0000

Offset address: 0x038

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	PIPE9 NRDY E	PIPE8 NRDY E	PIPE7 NRDY E	PIPE6 NRDY E	PIPE5 NRDY E	PIPE4 NRDY E	PIPE3 NRDY E	PIPE2 NRDY E	PIPE1 NRDY E	PIPE0 NRDY E
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	PIPE0NRDYE	NRDY Interrupt Enable for Pipe 0 0: Disable interrupt request 1: Enable interrupt request	R/W
1	PIPE1NRDYE	NRDY Interrupt Enable for Pipe 1 0: Disable interrupt request 1: Enable interrupt request	R/W
2	PIPE2NRDYE	NRDY Interrupt Enable for Pipe 2 0: Disable interrupt request 1: Enable interrupt request	R/W
3	PIPE3NRDYE	NRDY Interrupt Enable for Pipe 3 0: Disable interrupt request 1: Enable interrupt request	R/W
4	PIPE4NRDYE	NRDY Interrupt Enable for Pipe 4 0: Disable interrupt request 1: Enable interrupt request	R/W
5	PIPE5NRDYE	NRDY Interrupt Enable for Pipe 5 0: Disable interrupt request 1: Enable interrupt request	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
6	PIPE6NRDYE	NRDY Interrupt Enable for Pipe 6 0: Disable interrupt request 1: Enable interrupt request	R/W
7	PIPE7NRDYE	NRDY Interrupt Enable for Pipe 7 0: Disable interrupt request 1: Enable interrupt request	R/W
8	PIPE8NRDYE	NRDY Interrupt Enable for Pipe 8 0: Disable interrupt request 1: Enable interrupt request	R/W
9	PIPE9NRDYE	NRDY Interrupt Enable for Pipe 9 0: Disable interrupt request 1: Enable interrupt request	R/W
15:10	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

The NRDYENB register enables or disables the INTSTS0.NRDY bit to be set to 1 when a NRDY interrupt is detected for each pipe.

When a status flag in the NRDYSTS register sets to 1 and the associated PIPE_nNRDYE (n = 0 to 9) bit setting in the NRDYENB register is 1, the INTSTS0.NRDY flag sets to 1. In this case, if the NRDYE bit in INTENB0 is 1, the USBFS generates a NRDY interrupt request. While at least one PIPE_nNRDYE bit indicates 1, the USBFS generates the NRDY interrupt request when the associated interrupt request enable bit in the NRDYENB register is changed from 0 to 1 by software.

25.2.13 BEMPENB : BEMP Interrupt Enable Register

Base address: USBFS = 0x4009_0000

Offset address: 0x03A

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	PIPE9 BEMP E	PIPE8 BEMP E	PIPE7 BEMP E	PIPE6 BEMP E	PIPE5 BEMP E	PIPE4 BEMP E	PIPE3 BEMP E	PIPE2 BEMP E	PIPE1 BEMP E	PIPE0 BEMP E
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	PIPE0BEMPE	BEMP Interrupt Enable for Pipe 0 0: Disable interrupt request 1: Enable interrupt request	R/W
1	PIPE1BEMPE	BEMP Interrupt Enable for Pipe 1 0: Disable interrupt request 1: Enable interrupt request	R/W
2	PIPE2BEMPE	BEMP Interrupt Enable for Pipe 2 0: Disable interrupt request 1: Enable interrupt request	R/W
3	PIPE3BEMPE	BEMP Interrupt Enable for Pipe 3 0: Disable interrupt request 1: Enable interrupt request	R/W
4	PIPE4BEMPE	BEMP Interrupt Enable for Pipe 4 0: Disable interrupt request 1: Enable interrupt request	R/W
5	PIPE5BEMPE	BEMP Interrupt Enable for Pipe 5 0: Disable interrupt request 1: Enable interrupt request	R/W
6	PIPE6BEMPE	BEMP Interrupt Enable for Pipe 6 0: Disable interrupt request 1: Enable interrupt request	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7	PIPE7BEMPE	BEMP Interrupt Enable for Pipe 7 0: Disable interrupt request 1: Enable interrupt request	R/W
8	PIPE8BEMPE	BEMP Interrupt Enable for Pipe 8 0: Disable interrupt request 1: Enable interrupt request	R/W
9	PIPE9BEMPE	BEMP Interrupt Enable for Pipe 9 0: Disable interrupt request 1: Enable interrupt request	R/W
15:10	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

The BEMPENB register enables or disables the INTSTS0.BEMP bit to be set to 1 when a BEMP interrupt is detected for each pipe.

When a status flag in the BEMPSTS register sets to 1 and the associated PIPE_nBEMPE (n = 0 to 9) bit setting in the BEMPENB register is 1, the INTSTS0.BEMP flag sets to 1. In this case, if the BEMPE bit in INTENB0 is 1, the USBFS generates a BEMP interrupt request. While at least one PIPE_nBEMP bit indicates 1, the USBFS generates the BEMP interrupt request when the associated interrupt request enable bit in the BEMPENB register is changed from 0 to 1 by software.

25.2.14 SOFCFG : SOF Output Configuration Register

Base address: USBFS = 0x4009_0000

Offset address: 0x03C

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	BRDY M	—	EDGE STS	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
3:0	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
4	EDGESTS	Edge Interrupt Output Status Monitor*1 Indicates 1 during the edge processing of an edge interrupt output signal.	R
5	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
6	BRDYM	BRDY Interrupt Status Clear Timing 0: Clear BRDY flag by software 1: Clear BRDY flag by the USBFS through a data read from the FIFO buffer or data write to the FIFO buffer	R/W
15:7	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note 1. Confirm that the EDGESTS flag is 0 before stopping the clock supply to the USBFS.

EDGESTS bit (Edge Interrupt Output Status Monitor)

The EDGESTS bit indicates 1 during the edge processing of an edge interrupt output signal. Confirm that this bit is 0 before stopping the clock supply to the USBFS.

BRDYM bit (BRDY Interrupt Status Clear Timing)

The BRDYM bit specifies how the BRDY interrupt status flags for the pipes are cleared.

25.2.15 INTSTS0 : Interrupt Status Register 0

Base address: USBFS = 0x4009_0000

Offset address: 0x040

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	VBINT	RESM	SOFR	DVST	CTRT	BEMP	NRDY	BRDY	VBSTS	DVSQ[2:0]			VALID	CTSQ[2:0]		
Value after reset:	0	0	0	x	0	0	0	0	x	0	0	x	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
2:0	CTSQ[2:0]	Control Transfer Stage 0 0 0: Idle or setup stage 0 0 1: Control read data stage 0 1 0: Control read status stage 0 1 1: Control write data stage 1 0 0: Control write status stage 1 0 1: Control write (no data) status stage 1 1 0: Control transfer sequence error	R
3	VALID	USB Request Reception 0: Setup packet not received 1: Setup packet received	R/W
6:4	DVSQ[2:0]	Device State Indicates the device state. 0 0 0: Powered state 0 0 1: Default state 0 1 0: Address state 0 1 1: Configured state Others: Suspend state	R
7	VBSTS	VBUS Input Status 0: USB_VBUS pin is low 1: USB_VBUS pin is high	R
8	BRDY	Buffer Ready Interrupt Status 0: No BRDY interrupt occurred 1: BRDY interrupt occurred	R
9	NRDY	Buffer Not Ready Interrupt Status 0: No NRDY interrupt occurred 1: NRDY interrupt occurred	R
10	BEMP	Buffer Empty Interrupt Status 0: No BEMP interrupt occurred 1: BEMP interrupt occurred	R
11	CTRT	Control Transfer Stage Transition Interrupt Status* ² 0: No control transfer stage transition interrupt occurred 1: Control transfer stage transition interrupt occurred	R/W* ¹
12	DVST	Device State Transition Interrupt Status* ² 0: No device state transition interrupt occurred 1: Device state transition interrupt occurred	R/W* ¹
13	SOFR	Frame Number Refresh Interrupt Status 0: No SOF interrupt occurred 1: SOF interrupt occurred	R/W* ¹
14	RESM	Resume Interrupt Status* ² * ³ 0: No resume interrupt occurred 1: Resume interrupt occurred	R/W* ¹
15	VBINT	VBUS Interrupt Status* ³ 0: No VBUS interrupt occurred 1: VBUS interrupt occurred	R/W* ¹

Note: The value of the DVST bit is 0 when the MCU is reset and 1 after a USB bus reset.

Note: The value of the VBSTS bit is 1 when the USB_VBUS pin is high and 0 when the USB_VBUS pin is low.

Note: The value of the DVSQ[2:0] bits is 000b when the MCU is reset and 001b after a USB bus reset.

Note 1. To clear the VBINT, RESM, SOFR, DVST, CTRT, or VALID bits, write 0 only to the bits to be cleared. Write 1 to the other bits. Do not write 0 to the status bits indicating 0.

Note 2. The status of the RESM, DVST, and CTRT bits are changed only in device controller mode.

Note 3. The USBFS detects a change in the status indicated in the VBINT and RESM bits even while the clock supply is stopped (SYSCFG.SCKE bit = 0), and it requests the interrupt when the associated interrupt request bit is 1. Enable the clock supply before clearing the status by software.

DVSQ[2:0] bits (Device State)

The DVSQ[2:0] bits are initialized by a USB bus reset.

BRDY flag (Buffer Ready Interrupt Status)

The BRDY flag indicates the BRDY interrupt status.

The USBFS sets the BRDY bit to 1 when it detects a BRDY interrupt status (PIPE_nBRDY = 1, n = 0 to 9) on at least one pipe for which BRDY interrupts are enabled (BRDYENB.PIPE_nBRDYE = 1).

For the conditions that cause the PIPE_nBRDY status to be asserted, see [section 25.3.3.1. BRDY Interrupt](#).

The USBFS sets the BRDY bit to 0 when software writes 0 to all the PIPE_nBRDY bits associated with the PIPE_nBRDYE bits that are set to 1. Writing 0 to the BRDY flag in the software does not clear the flag.

NRDY flag (Buffer Not Ready Interrupt Status)

The NRDY flag indicates the NRDY interrupt status.

The USBFS sets the NRDY bit to 1 when it detects a NRDY interrupt status (PIPE_nNRDY = 1, n = 0 to 9) on at least one pipe for which NRDY interrupts are enabled (NRDYENB.PIPE_nNRDYE = 1).

For the conditions that cause the PIPE_nNRDY status to be asserted, see [section 25.3.3.2. NRDY Interrupt](#).

The USBFS sets the NRDY bit to 0 when software writes 0 to all the PIPE_nNRDY bits associated with the PIPE_nNRDYE bits that are set to 1. Writing 0 to the NRDY flag in the software does not clear the flag.

BEMP flag (Buffer Empty Interrupt Status)

The BEMP flag indicates the BEMP interrupt status.

The USBFS sets the BEMP bit to 1 when it detects a BEMP interrupt status (PIPE_nBEMP = 1, n = 0 to 9) on at least one pipe for which BEMP interrupts are enabled (BEMPENB.PIPE_nBEMPE = 1).

For the conditions that cause the PIPE_nBEMP status to be asserted, see [section 25.3.3.3. BEMP Interrupt](#).

The USBFS sets the BEMP bit to 0 when software writes 0 to all the PIPE_nBEMP bits associated with the PIPE_nBEMPE bits that are set to 1. Writing 0 to the BEMP flag in the software does not clear the flag.

CTRT flag (Control Transfer Stage Transition Interrupt Status)

In device controller mode, the USBFS updates the value of the CTSQ[2:0] bits and sets the CTRT flag to 1 on detecting a transition in the control transfer stage. When a control transfer stage transition interrupt occurs, clear the CTRT flag before the USBFS detects the next control transfer stage transition.

DVST flag (Device State Transition Interrupt Status)

In device controller mode, the USBFS updates the value of the DVSQ[2:0] bits and sets the DVST flag to 1 on detecting a change in the device state. When a device state transition interrupt occurs, clear the DVST flag before the USBFS detects the next device state transition.

SOFR flag (Frame Number Refresh Interrupt Status)

In device controller mode, the USBFS sets the SOFR flag to 1 on updating the frame number. A frame number refresh interrupt is detected every 1 ms.

The USBFS can detect an SOFR interrupt through the internal interpolation function even when a corrupted SOF packet is received from the USB host.

RESM flag (Resume Interrupt Status)

In device controller mode, the USBFS sets the RESM flag to 1 on detecting the falling edge of the signal on the USB_DP pin in the Suspend state (DVSQ[2:0] = 1xxb).

VBINT flag (VBUS Interrupt Status)

The USBFS sets the VBINT flag to 1 on detecting a level change (high to low or low to high) in the USB_VBUS pin input value. The USBFS sets the VBSTS flag to indicate the USB_VBUS pin input value. When a VBUS interrupt occurs, eliminate transient elements by reading the VBSTS flag at least three times through software processing and check that the values read are the same.

25.2.16 BRDYSTS : BRDY Interrupt Status Register

Base address: USBFS = 0x4009_0000

Offset address: 0x046

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	PIPE9 BRDY	PIPE8 BRDY	PIPE7 BRDY	PIPE6 BRDY	PIPE5 BRDY	PIPE4 BRDY	PIPE3 BRDY	PIPE2 BRDY	PIPE1 BRDY	PIPE0 BRDY
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	PIPE0BRDY	BRDY Interrupt Status for Pipe 0 *2 0: No BRDY interrupt occurred 1: BRDY interrupt occurred	R/W*1
1	PIPE1BRDY	BRDY Interrupt Status for Pipe 1 *2 0: No BRDY interrupt occurred 1: BRDY interrupt occurred	R/W*1
2	PIPE2BRDY	BRDY Interrupt Status for Pipe 2 *2 0: No BRDY interrupt occurred 1: BRDY interrupt occurred	R/W*1
3	PIPE3BRDY	BRDY Interrupt Status for Pipe 3 *2 0: No BRDY interrupt occurred 1: BRDY interrupt occurred	R/W*1
4	PIPE4BRDY	BRDY Interrupt Status for Pipe 4 *2 0: No BRDY interrupt occurred 1: BRDY interrupt occurred	R/W*1
5	PIPE5BRDY	BRDY Interrupt Status for Pipe 5 *2 0: No BRDY interrupt occurred 1: BRDY interrupt occurred	R/W*1
6	PIPE6BRDY	BRDY Interrupt Status for Pipe 6 *2 0: No BRDY interrupt occurred 1: BRDY interrupt occurred	R/W*1
7	PIPE7BRDY	BRDY Interrupt Status for Pipe 7 *2 0: No BRDY interrupt occurred 1: BRDY interrupt occurred	R/W*1
8	PIPE8BRDY	BRDY Interrupt Status for Pipe 8 *2 0: No BRDY interrupt occurred 1: BRDY interrupt occurred	R/W*1
9	PIPE9BRDY	BRDY Interrupt Status for Pipe 9 *2 0: No BRDY interrupt occurred 1: BRDY interrupt occurred	R/W*1
15:10	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note 1. When the SOFCFG.BRDYM bit is set to 0, to clear the status indicated in the bits in BRDYSTS, write 0 only to the bits to be cleared. Write 1 to the other bits.

Note 2. When the SOFCFG.BRDYM bit is set to 0, clear BRDY interrupts before accessing the FIFO.

25.2.17 NRDYSTS : NRDY Interrupt Status Register

Base address: USBFS = 0x4009_0000

Offset address: 0x048

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	PIPE9 NRDY	PIPE8 NRDY	PIPE7 NRDY	PIPE6 NRDY	PIPE5 NRDY	PIPE4 NRDY	PIPE3 NRDY	PIPE2 NRDY	PIPE1 NRDY	PIPE0 NRDY
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	PIPE0NRDY	NRDY Interrupt Status for Pipe 0 0: No NRDY interrupt occurred 1: NRDY interrupt occurred	R/W ¹
1	PIPE1NRDY	NRDY Interrupt Status for Pipe 1 0: No NRDY interrupt occurred 1: NRDY interrupt occurred	R/W ¹
2	PIPE2NRDY	NRDY Interrupt Status for Pipe 2 0: No NRDY interrupt occurred 1: NRDY interrupt occurred	R/W ¹
3	PIPE3NRDY	NRDY Interrupt Status for Pipe 3 0: No NRDY interrupt occurred 1: NRDY interrupt occurred	R/W ¹
4	PIPE4NRDY	NRDY Interrupt Status for Pipe 4 0: No NRDY interrupt occurred 1: NRDY interrupt occurred	R/W ¹
5	PIPE5NRDY	NRDY Interrupt Status for Pipe 5 0: No NRDY interrupt occurred 1: NRDY interrupt occurred	R/W ¹
6	PIPE6NRDY	NRDY Interrupt Status for Pipe 6 0: No NRDY interrupt occurred 1: NRDY interrupt occurred	R/W ¹
7	PIPE7NRDY	NRDY Interrupt Status for Pipe 7 0: No NRDY interrupt occurred 1: NRDY interrupt occurred	R/W ¹
8	PIPE8NRDY	NRDY Interrupt Status for Pipe 8 0: No NRDY interrupt occurred 1: NRDY interrupt occurred	R/W ¹
9	PIPE9NRDY	NRDY Interrupt Status for Pipe 9 0: No NRDY interrupt occurred 1: NRDY interrupt occurred	R/W ¹
15:10	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note 1. To clear the status indicated in the bits in NRDYSTS, write 0 only to the bits to be cleared. Write 1 to the other bits.

25.2.18 BEMPSTS : BEMP Interrupt Status Register

Base address: USBFS = 0x4009_0000

Offset address: 0x04A

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	PIPE9 BEMP	PIPE8 BEMP	PIPE7 BEMP	PIPE6 BEMP	PIPE5 BEMP	PIPE4 BEMP	PIPE3 BEMP	PIPE2 BEMP	PIPE1 BEMP	PIPE0 BEMP
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	PIPE0BEMP	BEMP Interrupt Status for Pipe 0 0: No BEMP interrupt occurred 1: BEMP interrupt occurred	R/W ¹
1	PIPE1BEMP	BEMP Interrupt Status for Pipe 1 0: No BEMP interrupt occurred 1: BEMP interrupt occurred	R/W ¹
2	PIPE2BEMP	BEMP Interrupt Status for Pipe 2 0: No BEMP interrupt occurred 1: BEMP interrupt occurred	R/W ¹
3	PIPE3BEMP	BEMP Interrupt Status for Pipe 3 0: No BEMP interrupt occurred 1: BEMP interrupt occurred	R/W ¹
4	PIPE4BEMP	BEMP Interrupt Status for Pipe 4 0: No BEMP interrupt occurred 1: BEMP interrupt occurred	R/W ¹
5	PIPE5BEMP	BEMP Interrupt Status for Pipe 5 0: No BEMP interrupt occurred 1: BEMP interrupt occurred	R/W ¹
6	PIPE6BEMP	BEMP Interrupt Status for Pipe 6 0: No BEMP interrupt occurred 1: BEMP interrupt occurred	R/W ¹
7	PIPE7BEMP	BEMP Interrupt Status for Pipe 7 0: No BEMP interrupt occurred 1: BEMP interrupt occurred	R/W ¹
8	PIPE8BEMP	BEMP Interrupt Status for Pipe 8 0: No BEMP interrupt occurred 1: BEMP interrupt occurred	R/W ¹
9	PIPE9BEMP	BEMP Interrupt Status for Pipe 9 0: No BEMP interrupt occurred 1: BEMP interrupt occurred	R/W ¹
15:10	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note 1. To clear the status indicated in the bits in BEMPSTS, write 0 only to the bits to be cleared. Write 1 to the other bits.

25.2.19 FRMNUM : Frame Number Register

Base address: USBFS = 0x4009_0000

Offset address: 0x04C

Bit position: 15 14 13 12 11 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0

Bit field:	OVRN	CRCE	—	—	—	FRNM[10:0]									

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
10:0	FRNM[10:0]	Frame Number Latest frame number.	R
13:11	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
14	CRCE	Receive Data Error 0: No error occurred 1: Error occurred	R/W ¹
15	OVRN	Overflow/Underrun Detection Status 0: No error occurred 1: Error occurred	R/W ¹

Note 1. To clear the status, write 0 only to the bits to be cleared. Write 1 to the other bits.

FRNM[10:0] flags (Frame Number)

The USBFS sets the FRNM[10:0] flags to indicate the latest frame number, which is updated every 1 ms, when an SOF packet is issued or received.

CRCE flag (Receive Data Error)

The CRCE flag sets to 1 when a CRC error or bit stuffing error occurs during isochronous transfer.

To clear the CRCE flag, write 0 to it while writing 1 to the other bits in the FRMNUM register.

OVRN flag (Overflow/Underrun Detection Status)

The OVRN flag sets to 1 when an overrun or underrun error occurs during isochronous transfer. To clear the flag, write 0 to it while writing 1 to the other bits in the FRMNUM register.

In device controller mode, the OVRN flag sets to 1 on any of the following conditions:

- For a transmitting isochronous pipe, the IN token is received before all the transmit data is written to the FIFO buffer
- For a receiving isochronous pipe, the OUT token is received when no FIFO buffer planes are empty

25.2.20 USBADDR : USB Address Register

Base address: USBFS = 0x4009_0000

Offset address: 0x050

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	USBADDR[6:0]						
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
6:0	USBADDR[6:0]	USB Address In device controller mode, these bits indicate the USB address assigned by the host when the USBFS processed the SET_ADDRESS request successfully.	R/W
15:7	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

USBADDR[6:0] bits (USB Address)

In device controller mode, the USBADDR[6:0] flags indicate the USB address received when the USBFS processed a SetAddress request successfully. The USBFS sets the USBADDR[6:0] bits to 0x00 on detecting a USB bus reset.

On recovering from a USB power shut-off, the operation can resume from the USB address set before the software shut-off.

25.2.21 USBREQ : USB Request Type Register

Base address: USBFS = 0x4009_0000

Offset address: 0x054

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	BREQUEST[7:0]								BMREQUESTTYPE[7:0]							
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7:0	BMREQUESTTYPE [7:0]	Request Type USB request bmRequestType value	R/W ^{*1}
15:8	BREQUEST[7:0]	Request USB request bRequest value	R/W ^{*1}

Note 1. In device controller mode, these bits can be read, but writing to them has no effect.

USBREQ stores setup requests for control transfers.

In device controller mode, the USBREQ stores the received bRequest and bmRequestType values.

USBREQ is initialized by a USB bus reset.

BMREQUESTTYPE[7:0] bits (Request Type)

The BMREQUESTTYPE[7:0] bits hold the bmRequestType value of USB requests.

- In device controller mode:

These bits indicate the value of the USB request data in reception setup transactions. Writing to the bits has no effect.

BREQUEST[7:0] bits (Request)

The BREQUEST[7:0] bits store bRequest value of the USB request.

- In device controller mode:

These bits indicate the value of the USB request data in reception setup transactions. Writing to the bits has no effect.

25.2.22 USBVAL : USB Request Value Register

Base address: USBFS = 0x4009_0000

Offset address: 0x056

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	WVALUE[15:0]															
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
15:0	WVALUE[15:0]	Value USB request wValue value	R/W ^{*1}

Note 1. In device controller mode, these bits can be read, but writing to them has no effect.

In device controller mode, USBVAL stores the received wValue value.

USBVAL is initialized by a USB bus reset.

WVALUE[15:0] bits (Value)

The WVALUE[15:0] bits store wValue value of the USB request.

- In device controller mode:

These bits indicate the wValue value of USB requests in reception setup transactions. Writing to the bits has no effect.

25.2.23 USBINDX : USB Request Index Register

Base address: USBFS = 0x4009_0000

Offset address: 0x058

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	WINDEX[15:0]															
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
15:0	WINDEX[15:0]	Index USB request wIndex value	R/W ^{*1}

Note 1. In device controller mode, these bits can be read, but writing to them has no effect.

USBINDX stores setup requests for control transfers.

In device controller mode, it stores the received wIndex value.

USBINDX is initialized by a USB bus reset.

WINDEX[15:0] bits (Index)

The WINDEX[15:0] bits hold the wIndex value of a USB request.

- In device controller mode:

These bits indicate the wIndex value in USB requests received in reception setup transactions. Writing to the bits has no effect.

25.2.24 USBLENG : USB Request Length Register

Base address: USBFS = 0x4009_0000

Offset address: 0x05A

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	WLENTUH[15:0]															
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
15:0	WLENTUH[15:0]	Length USB request wLength value	R/W ^{*1}

Note 1. In device controller mode, these bits can be read, but writing to them has no effect.

USBLENG stores setup requests for control transfers.

In device controller mode, the value of wLength that is received is stored.

USBLENG is initialized by a USB bus reset.

WLENTUH[15:0] bits (Length)

The WLENTUH[15:0]bits hold the wLength value of a USB request.

- In device controller mode:

These bits indicate the wLength value in USB requests received in reception setup transactions. Writing to the bits has no effect.

25.2.25 DCPCFG : DCP Configuration Register

Base address: USBFS = 0x4009_0000

Offset address: 0x05C

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	SHTN AK	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
6:0	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
7	SHTNAK	Pipe Disabled at End of Transfer ^{*1} 0: Keep pipe open after transfer ends 1: Disable pipe after transfer ends	R/W
15:8	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note 1. Only set this bit while the PID is NAK. Before setting this bit, check that the DCPCTR.PBUSY bit is 0, and then change the DCPCTR.PID[1:0] bits for the DCP from BUF to NAK. If the PID[1:0] bits are changed to NAK by the USBFS, checking the PBUSY bit through the software is not necessary.

SHTNAK bit (Pipe Disabled at End of Transfer)

The SHTNAK bit specifies whether to change PID to NAK on transfer end when the selected pipe is receiving. It is only valid when the selected pipe is receiving.

When the SHTNAK bit is 1, the USBFS changes the DCPCTR.PID[1:0] bits for the DCP to NAK on determining that a transfer has ended. The USBFS determines transfer end on the following condition:

- A short packet, including a zero-length packet, is successfully received.

25.2.26 DCPMAXP : DCP Maximum Packet Size Register

Base address: USBFS = 0x4009_0000

Offset address: 0x05E

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	MXPS[6:0]						
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
6:0	MXPS[6:0]	Maximum Packet Size*1 Maximum data payload specification (maximum packet size) for the DCP	R/W
15:7	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note 1. Only set the MXPS[6:0] bits while PID is NAK. Before setting these bits, check that the DCPCTR.PBUSY bit is 0, and then change the DCPCTR.PID[1:0] bits for the DCP from BUF to NAK. If the PID[1:0] bits are changed to NAK by the USBFS, checking the PBUSY bit through the software is not necessary. After the MXPS[6:0] bits are set and the DCP is set to the CURPIPE[3:0] bits in a port select register, clear the buffer by setting the BCLR bit in the port control register to 1.

MXPS[6:0] bits (Maximum Packet Size)

The MXPS[6:0] bits specify the maximum data payload (maximum packet size) for the DCP. The initial value is 0x40 (64 bytes). Set the bits to a USB 2.0-compliant value. Do not write to the FIFO buffer or set PID = BUF while MXPS[6:0] is set to 0.

25.2.27 DCPCTR : DCP Control Register

Base address: USBFS = 0x4009_0000

Offset address: 0x060

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	BSTS	—	—	—	—	—	—	SQCL R	SQSE T	SQMO N	PBUS Y	—	—	CCPL	PID[1:0]	
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
1:0	PID[1:0]	Response PID 0 0: NAK response 0 1: BUF response (depends on the buffer state) 1 0: STALL response 1 1: STALL response	R/W
2	CCPL	Control Transfer End Enable 0: Disable control transfer completion 1: Enable control transfer completion	R/W
4:3	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
5	PBUSY	Pipe Busy 0: DCP not used for the USB bus 1: DCP in use for the USB bus	R

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
6	SQMON	Sequence Toggle Bit Monitor 0: DATA0 1: ATA1	R
7	SQSET	Sequence Toggle Bit Set* ² Sets the sequence toggle bit in DCP transfers. 0: Invalid (writing 0 has no effect) 1: Set the expected value for the next transaction to DATA1	R/W* ¹
8	SQCLR	Sequence Toggle Bit Clear* ² Clears the sequence toggle bit in DCP transfers. 0: Invalid (writing 0 has no effect) 1: Clear the expected value for the next transaction to DATA0	R/W* ¹
14:9	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
15	BSTS	Buffer Status 0: Buffer access disabled 1: Buffer access enabled	R

Note 1. This bit is read as 0.

Note 2. Only set the SQSET and SQCLR bits while PID is NAK. Before setting these bits, check that the PBUSY bit is 0, and then change the PID[1:0] bits for the DCP from BUF to NAK. If the PID[1:0] bits are changed to NAK by the USBFS, checking the PBUSY bit through the software is not necessary.

PID[1:0] bits (Response PID)

The PID[1:0] bits control the USB response type during control transfers.

In device controller mode, the USBFS changes the PID[1:0] setting as follows:

- On receiving a setup packet, the USBFS sets PID[1:0] to NAK (00b). The USBFS then sets the INTSTS0.VALID flag to 1, and the PID[1:0] setting cannot be changed until the software clears the VALID flag to 0.
- When the PID[1:0] bits are set to BUF (01b) by software and the USBFS has received data exceeding MaxPacketSize, the USBFS sets PID[1:0] to STALL (11b)
- On detecting a control transfer sequence error, the USBFS sets PID[1:0] to STALL (1xb)
- On detecting a USB bus reset, the USBFS sets PID[1:0] to NAK

The USBFS does not check the PID[1:0] setting while processing a SET_ADDRESS request.

The PID[1:0] bits are initialized by a USB bus reset.

CCPL bit (Control Transfer End Enable)

In device controller mode, setting the CCPL bit to 1 enables the status stage of the control transfer to be completed. When the bit is set to 1 by software while the associated PID[1:0] bits are set to BUF, the USBFS completes the control transfer status stage.

During control read transfers, the USBFS transmits the ACK handshake in response to the OUT transaction from the USB host. During control write or no-data control transfers, it transmits the zero-length packet in response to the IN transaction from the USB host. On detecting a SET_ADDRESS request, the USBFS operates in auto response mode from the setup stage up to status stage completion regardless of the CCPL bit setting.

The USBFS changes the CCPL bit from 1 to 0 on receiving a new setup packet. The software cannot write 1 to the bit while the INTSTS0.VALID bit is 1. The bit is initialized by a USB bus reset.

PBUSY bit (Pipe Busy)

The PBUSY bit indicates whether DCP is used for the transaction when USBFS changes the PID[1:0] bits from BUF to NAK. The USBFS changes the PBUSY bit from 0 to 1 on start of a USB transaction for the selected pipe. It changes the PBUSY bit from 1 to 0 on completion of one transaction.

After PID is set to NAK by software, the value in the PBUSY bit indicates whether changes to pipe settings can proceed.

For details, see [section 25.3.4.1. Pipe Control Register Switching Procedures](#).

SQMON bit (Sequence Toggle Bit Monitor)

The SQMON bit indicates the expected value of the sequence toggle bit for the next transaction during a DCP transfer.

The USBFS toggles the bit on normal completion of the transaction. It does not toggle the bit, however, when a DATAPID mismatch occurs during a transfer in the receiving direction.

In device controller mode, the USBFS sets the SQMON bit to 1 (specifies DATA1 as the expected value) on successful reception of the setup packet.

In device controller mode, the USBFS does not reference this bit during IN or OUT transactions at the status stage, and it does not toggle the bit on normal completion.

SQSET bit (Sequence Toggle Bit Set)

The SQSET bit specifies DATA1 as the expected value of the sequence toggle bit for the next transaction during a DCP transfer.

Do not set the SQCLR and SQSET bits to 1 simultaneously.

SQCLR bit (Sequence Toggle Bit Clear)

The SQCLR bit specifies DATA0 as the expected value of the sequence toggle bit for the next transaction during a DCP transfer. It is read as 0.

Do not set the SQCLR and SQSET bits to 1 simultaneously.

BSTS flag (Buffer Status)

The BSTS flag indicates the status of access to the DCP FIFO buffer. The meaning of this flag varies as follows depending on the CFIFOSEL.ISEL setting:

- When ISEL = 0, the bit indicates whether receive data can be read from the buffer
- When ISEL = 1, the bit indicates whether transmit data can be written to the buffer

25.2.28 PIPESEL : Pipe Window Select Register

Base address: USBFS = 0x4009_0000

Offset address: 0x064

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	PIPESEL[3:0]			
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
3:0	PIPESEL[3:0]	Pipe Window Select 0x0: No pipe selected 0x1: Pipe 1 0x2: Pipe 2 0x3: Pipe 3 0x4: Pipe 4 0x5: Pipe 5 0x6: Pipe 6 0x7: Pipe 7 0x8: Pipe 8 0x9: Pipe 9 Others: Setting prohibited	R/W
15:4	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Set pipes 1 to 9 using the PIPESEL, PIPECFG, PIPEMAXP, PIPEPERI, PIPEnCTR, PIPEnTRE, and PIPEnTRN registers (n = 0 to 9).

After selecting the pipe in the PIPESEL register, pipe functions must be set in the associated PIPECFG, PIPEMAXP, and PIPEPERI registers. PIPEnCTR, PIPEnTRE, and PIPEnTRN can be set independently of the pipe selection in this register.

PIPESEL[3:0] bits (Pipe Window Select)

The PIPESEL[3:0] bits select the pipe number associated with the PIPECFG, PIPEMAXP, and PIPEPERI registers used for data writing and reading. Selecting a pipe number in the PIPESEL[3:0] bits allows writing to and reading from PIPECFG, PIPEMAXP, and PIPEPERI associated with the selected pipe number.

When PIPESEL[3:0] = 0000b, 0 is read from all the bits in PIPECFG, PIPEMAXP, and PIPEPERI. Writing to these bits has no effect.

25.2.29 PIPECFG : Pipe Configuration Register

Base address: USBFS = 0x4009_0000

Offset address: 0x068

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	TYPE[1:0]	—	—	—	BFRE	DBLB	—	SHTN AK	—	—	DIR	EPNUM[3:0]				
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
3:0	EPNUM[3:0]	Endpoint Number* ¹ Specifies the endpoint number for the selected pipe. Setting 0000b indicates that the pipe is not used.	R/W
4	DIR	Transfer Direction* ² * ³ 0: Receiving direction 1: Transmitting direction	R/W
6:5	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
7	SHTNAK	Pipe Disabled at End of Transfer* ¹ 0: Continue pipe operation after transfer ends 1: Disable pipe after transfer ends	R/W
8	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
9	DBLB	Double Buffer Mode* ² * ³ 0: Single buffer 1: Double buffer	R/W
10	BFRE	BRDY Interrupt Operation Specification* ² * ³ 0: Generate BRDY interrupt on transmitting or receiving data 1: Generate BRDY interrupt on completion of reading data	R/W
13:11	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
15:14	TYPE[1:0]	Transfer Type* ¹ 0 0: Pipe not used 0 1: Pipes 1 and 2: Bulk transfer Pipes 3 to 5: Bulk transfer Pipes 6 to 9: Setting prohibited 1 0: Pipes 1 and 2: Setting prohibited Pipes 3 to 5: Setting prohibited Pipes 6 to 9: Interrupt transfer 1 1: Pipes 1 and 2: Isochronous transfer Pipes 3 to 5: Setting prohibited Pipes 6 to 9: Setting prohibited	R/W

Note 1. Only set the TYPE[1:0], SHTNAK, and EPNUM[3:0] bits while PID is NAK. Before setting these bits, check that the PIPEnCTR.PBUSY bit is 0, and then change the PIPEnCTR.PID[1:0] bits from 01b (BUF) to 00b (NAK). If the PID[1:0] bits are changed to 00 (NAK) by the USBFS, checking the PBUSY bit through the software is not necessary.

Note 2. Only set the BFRE, DBLB, and DIR bits while PID is NAK and before the pipe is selected in the CURPIPE[3:0] bits in the port select register. Before setting these bits, check that the PIPEnCTR.PBUSY bit is 0, and then change the PIPEnCTR.PID[1:0] bits from 01b (BUF) to 00b (NAK). If the PID[1:0] bits are changed to 00 (NAK) by the USBFS, checking the PBUSY bit through the software is not necessary.

Note 3. To change the BFRE, DBLB, or DIR bits after completing USB communication on the selected pipe, in addition to the constraints described in Note 2, write 1 and 0 to the PIPEnCTR.ACLRM bit continuously through the software and clear the FIFO buffer assigned to the pipe.

PIPECFG specifies the transfer type, FIFO buffer access direction, and endpoint numbers for pipes 1 to 9. It also selects single or double buffer mode, and whether to continue or disable pipe operation at the end of transfer.

EPNUM[3:0] bits (Endpoint Number)

The EPNUM[3:0] bits specify the endpoint number for the selected pipe. Setting 0000b indicates the pipe not used.

Set these bits so that the combination of the DIR and EPNUM[3:0] settings is different from those for other pipes. The EPNUM[3:0] bits can be set to 0000b for all pipes.

DIR bit (Transfer Direction)

The DIR bit specifies the transfer direction for the selected pipe.

When the software sets this bit to 0, the USBFS uses the selected pipe for receiving. When the software sets this bit to 1, the USBFS uses the selected pipe for transmitting.

SHTNAK bit (Pipe Disabled at End of Transfer)

The SHTNAK bit specifies whether to change the PIPEnCTR.PID[1:0] bits to 00b (NAK) at the end of transfer when the selected pipe is set in the receiving direction. The bit is valid for pipes 1 to 5 in the receiving direction.

When the software sets this bit to 1 for a receiving pipe, the USBFS changes the associated PIPEnCTR.PID[1:0] bits to 00b (NAK) on determining the transfer end. The USBFS determines that the transfer has ended on the following conditions:

- A short packet data (including a zero-length packet) was successfully received
- The transaction counter is used and the number of packets specified for the transaction counter are successfully received

DBLB bit (Double Buffer Mode)

The DBLB bit selects either single or double buffer mode for the FIFO buffer used by the selected pipe. The bit is valid for pipes 1 to 5.

BFRE bit (BRDY Interrupt Operation Specification)

The BFRE bit specifies the BRDY interrupt generation timing from the USBFS to the CPU for the selected pipe.

When the software sets the BFRE bit to 1 and the selected pipe is in the receiving direction, the USBFS detects the transfer completion and generates the BRDY interrupt on reading the packet.

When a BRDY interrupt is generated with this setting, the software must write 1 to the BCLR bit in the port control register. The FIFO buffer assigned to the selected pipe is not enabled for reception until 1 is written to the BCLR bit.

When the BFRE bit is set to 1 by software and the selected pipe is in the transmitting direction, the USBFS does not generate the BRDY interrupt. For details, see [section 25.3.3.1. BRDY Interrupt](#).

TYPE[1:0] bits (Transfer Type)

The TYPE[1:0] bits specify the transfer type for the pipe selected in the PIPESEL.PIPSEL[3:0] bits. Before setting PID to BUF and starting USB communication on the selected pipe, set the TYPE[1:0] bits to a value other than 00b.

25.2.30 PIPEMAXP : Pipe Maximum Packet Size Register

Base address: USBFS = 0x4009_0000

Offset address: 0x06C

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	MXPS[8:0]								
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	x	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
8:0	MXPS[8:0]	Maximum Packet Size*1 - Pipes 1 and 2 1 byte (0x001) to 256 bytes (0x100) (Bit [9] not supported.) - Pipes 3 to 5 8 bytes (0x008), 16 bytes (0x010), 32 bytes (0x020), 64 bytes (0x040) (Bits [9:7] and [2:0] not supported.) - Pipes 6 to 9 1 byte (0x001) to 64 bytes (0x040) (Bits [9:7] not supported.)	R/W
15:9	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note: The value of the MXPS[8:0] bits is 0x000 when no pipe is selected in the PIPESEL.PIPESEL[3:0] bits and 0x040 when a pipe is selected.

Note 1. Only set the MXPS[8:0] bits while PID is NAK and before the pipe is selected in the CURPIPE[3:0] bits in the port select register. Before setting these bits, check that the PIPEnCTR.PBUSY bit is 0, and then change the PIPEnCTR.PID[1:0] bits from 01b (BUF) to 00b (NAK). If the PID[1:0] bits are changed to 00 (NAK) by the USBFS, checking the PBUSY bit through the software is not necessary.

PIPEMAXP specifies the maximum packet size for pipes 1 to 9.

MXPS[8:0] bits (Maximum Packet Size)

The MXPS[8:0] bits specify the maximum data payload (maximum packet size) for the selected pipe.

Set these bits to the appropriate value for each transfer type based on the USB 2.0 specification. When MXPS[8:0] = 0, do not write to the FIFO buffer or set PID to BUF. These writes have no effect.

25.2.31 PIPEPERI : Pipe Cycle Control Register

Base address: USBFS = 0x4009_0000

Offset address: 0x06E

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	IFIS	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	IITV[2:0]		
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
2:0	IITV[2:0]*1	Interval Error Detection Interval Specifies the interval error detection timing for the selected pipe as 2 ⁿ times the frame timing	R/W
11:3	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
12	IFIS	Isochronous IN Buffer Flush 0: Do not flush buffer 1: Flush buffer	R/W
15:13	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note 1. Only set the IITV[2:0] bits while PID is NAK. Before setting these bits, check that the PBUSY bit is 0, and then change the PID[1:0] bits from 01b (BUF) to 00b (NAK). If the PID[1:0] bits are changed to 00 (NAK) by the USBFS, checking the PBUSY bit through the software is not necessary.

PIPEPERI selects whether the buffer is flushed or not when an interval error occurred during isochronous IN transfers, and sets the interval error detection interval for pipes 1 to 9.

IITV[2:0] bits (Interval Error Detection Interval)

To change the IITV[2:0] bits to another value after they are set and USB communication is performed, set the PIPEnCTR.PID[1:0] bits to 00b (NAK) and then set the PIPEnCTR.ACLRM bit to 1 to initialize the interval timer.

The IITV[2:0] bits are not provided for pipes 3 to 5. Write 000b to bit positions of the IITV[2:0] bits associated with pipes 3 to 5.

IFIS bit (Isochronous IN Buffer Flush)

The IFIS bit specifies whether to flush the buffer when the pipe selected in the PIPESEL.PIPESEL[3:0] bits is used for isochronous IN transfers.

In device controller mode when the selected pipe is for isochronous IN transfers, the USBFS automatically clears the FIFO buffer if the USBFS fails to receive the IN token from the USB host within the interval set in the IITV[2:0] bits in terms of frames.

When double buffering is specified (PIPECFG.DBLB = 1), the USBFS only clears the data in the previously used plane.

The USBFS clears the FIFO buffer on receiving the SOF packet immediately after the frame in which the USBFS expected to receive the IN token. Even if the SOF packet is corrupted, the FIFO buffer is cleared at the time the SOF packet is expected to be received by using the internal interpolation function.

Set the IITV[2:0] bits to 000b when the selected pipe is not used for isochronous transfers.

25.2.32 PIPEnCTR : PIPEn Control Registers (n = 1 to 5)

Base address: USBFS = 0x4009_0000

Offset address: 0x070 + 0x2 × (n - 1)

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	BSTS	INBUF M	—	—	—	ATRE PM	ACLR M	SQCL R	SQSE T	SQMO N	PBUS Y	—	—	—	PID[1:0]	
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
1:0	PID[1:0]	Response PID 0 0: NAK response 0 1: BUF response (depends on the buffer state) 1 0: STALL response 1 1: STALL response	R/W
4:2	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
5	PBUSY	Pipe Busy 0: Pipe n not in use for the transaction 1: Pipe n in use for the transaction	R
6	SQMON	Sequence Toggle Bit Confirmation 0: DATA0 1: DATA1	R
7	SQSET	Sequence Toggle Bit Set* ² Sets the sequence toggle bit for pipe n. 0: Invalid (writing 0 has no effect) 1: Set the expected value for the next transaction to DATA1	R/W* ¹
8	SQCLR	Sequence Toggle Bit Clear* ² Clears the sequence toggle bit for pipe n. 0: Invalid (writing 0 has no effect) 1: Clear the expected value for the next transaction to DATA0	R/W* ¹
9	ACLRM	Auto Buffer Clear Mode* ³ 0: Disable 1: Enable (initialize all buffers)	R/W
10	ATREPM	Auto Response Mode* ² 0: Disable auto response mode 1: Enable auto response mode	R/W
13:11	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
14	INBUFM	Transmit Buffer Monitor 0: No data to be transmitted in the FIFO buffer 1: Data to be transmitted in the FIFO buffer	R

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
15	BSTS	Buffer Status 0: Buffer access by the CPU disabled 1: Buffer access by the CPU enabled	R

Note 1. This bit is read as 0.

Note 2. Only set the ATREPM bit or write 1 to the SQCLR or SQSETbit while PID is NAK. Before setting these bits, check that the PBUSY bit is 0, and then change the PID[1:0] bits from 01b (BUF) to 00b (NAK). If the PID[1:0] bits are changed to 00 (NAK) by the USBFS, checking the PBUSYbit through software is not necessary.

Note 3. Only set the ACLRM bit while PID is NAK and before the pipe is selected in the CURPIPE[3:0] bits in the port select register. Before setting this bit, check that the PBUSY bit is 0, and then change the PID[1:0] bits from 01b (BUF) to 00b (NAK). If the PID[1:0] bits are changed to 00 (NAK) by the USBFS, checking the PBUSY bit through software is not necessary.

PIPEnCTR can be set for any pipe selection in the PIPESEL register.

PID[1:0] bits (Response PID)

The PID[1:0]bits specify the response type for the next transaction on the selected pipe.

The default PID[1:0] setting is NAK. Change the PID[1:0] setting to BUF to use the associated pipe for USB transfer.

Table 25.9 shows the basic operations of the USBFS (when there are no errors in the communication packets) based on the PID[1:0] bit setting.

After changing the PID[1:0] setting from BUF to NAK through software during USB communication on the selected pipe, check that the PBUSY bit is 1 to see if USB transfer on the pipe has entered the NAK state. If the USBFS changes the PID[1:0] bits to NAK, checking the PBUSY bit through software is not necessary.

The USBFS changes the PIPEnCTR.PID[1:0] setting in the following cases:

- The USBFS sets PID to NAK on recognizing completion of the transfer when the selected pipe is in the receiving direction and the PIPECFG.SHTNAK bit for the selected pipe is set to 1 by software
- The USBFS sets PID to STALL (11b) on receiving a data packet with a payload exceeding the maximum packet size of the selected pipe
- The USBFS sets PID to NAK on detecting a USB bus reset in device controller mode

To specify the response type, set the PID[1:0] bits as follows:

- To transition from NAK (00b) to STALL, set 10b
- To transition from BUF (01b) to STALL, set 11b
- To transition from STALL (11b) to NAK, set 10b and then 00b
- To transition from STALL to BUF, set 00b (NAK) and then 01b (BUF)

Table 25.9 Operation of the USBFS based on the PID[1:0] setting in device controller mode (1 of 2)

PID[1:0] value	Transfer type	Transfer direction (DIR bit)	USBFS operation
00b (NAK)	Bulk or interrupt	Does not depend on the setting	Returns NAK in response to the token from the USB host
	Isochronous	Does not depend on the setting	Returns nothing in response to the token from the USB host

Table 25.9 Operation of the USBFS based on the PID[1:0] setting in device controller mode (2 of 2)

PID[1:0] value	Transfer type	Transfer direction (DIR bit)	USBFS operation
01b (BUF)	Bulk	Receiving direction (DIR = 0)	Receives data and returns ACK in response to the OUT token from the USB host if the FIFO buffer associated with the selected pipe is ready for reception
	Interrupt	Receiving direction (DIR = 0)	Receives data and returns ACK in response to the OUT token from the USB host if the FIFO buffer associated with the selected pipe is ready for reception
	Bulk or interrupt	Transmitting direction (DIR = 1)	Transmits data in response to the token from the USB host if the FIFO buffer associated with the selected pipe is ready for transmission. Otherwise, returns NAK.
	Isochronous	Receiving direction (DIR = 0)	Receives data in response to the OUT token from the USB host if the FIFO buffer associated with the selected pipe is ready for reception. Otherwise, discards the data.
	Isochronous	Transmitting direction (DIR = 1)	Transmits data in response to the token from the USB host if the associated FIFO buffer is ready for transmission. Otherwise, transmits a zero-length packet.
10b (STALL) or 11b (STALL)	Bulk or interrupt	Does not depend on the setting	Returns STALL in response to the token from the USB host
	Isochronous	Does not depend on the setting	Returns nothing in response to the token from the USB host

PBUSY bit (Pipe Busy)

The PBUSY bit indicates whether the selected pipe is being used for the current transaction.

The USBFS changes the PBUSY bit from 0 to 1 on start of the USB transaction for the selected pipe, and changes the PBUSY bit from 1 to 0 on completion of one transaction.

Reading the PBUSY bit by software after PID is set to NAK allows you to check whether changing the pipe setting is possible. For details, see [section 25.3.4.1. Pipe Control Register Switching Procedures](#).

SQMON bit (Sequence Toggle Bit Confirmation)

The SQMON bit indicates the expected value of the sequence toggle bit for the next transaction of the selected pipe.

When the selected pipe is not the isochronous transfer type, the USBFS toggles the SQMON flag on successful completion of the transaction. However, the USBFS does not toggle the SQMON flag when a DATA-PID mismatch occurs during transfer in the receiving direction.

SQSET bit (Sequence Toggle Bit Set)

Setting the SQSET bit to 1 through software causes the USBFS to set DATA1 as the expected value of the sequence toggle bit for the next transaction on the selected pipe. The USBFS clears the SQSET bit to 0.

SQCLR bit (Sequence Toggle Bit Clear)

Setting the SQCLR bit to 1 through software causes the USBFS to clear the expected value of the sequence toggle bit for the next transaction on the selected pipe to DATA0. The USBFS clears the SQCLR bit to 0.

ACLRM bit (Auto Buffer Clear Mode)

The ACLRM bit enables or disables auto buffer clear mode for the selected pipe. To completely clear the data in the FIFO buffer allocated to the selected pipe, write 1 and then 0 to the ACLRM bit continuously.

Table 25.10 shows the data cleared by writing 1 and 0 to the ACLRM bit continuously and the cases in which this processing is required.

Table 25.10 Data cleared by the USBFS when ACLRM = 1

Number	Data cleared by setting the ACLRM bit	Situations requiring data clear
1	All data in the FIFO buffer allocated to the selected pipe (two FIFO buffers in double buffer mode)	When initializing the selected pipe
2	Interval count value when the selected pipe is the isochronous transfer type	When resetting the interval count value
3	Internal flags related to the PIPECFG.BFRE bit	When changing the PIPECFG.BFRE setting
4	FIFO buffer toggle control	When changing the PIPECFG.DBLB setting
5	Internal flags related to the transaction count	When forcing the transaction count function to terminate

ATREPM bit (Auto Response Mode)

The ATREPM bit enables or disables auto response mode for the selected pipe.

This bit can be set to 1 in device controller mode when the selected pipe is the bulk transfer type. When the bit is set to 1, the USBFS responds to the token from the USB host as follows:

- When the selected pipe is set for bulk IN transfers (PIPECFG.TYPE[1:0] = 01b and PIPECFG.DIR = 1):
 - a. When the ATREPM bit = 1 and PID = BUF, the USBFS transmits a zero-length packet in response to the IN token.
 - b. The USBFS updates the sequence toggle bit (DATA-PID) each time the USBFS receives ACK from the USB host. In a single transaction, the IN token is received, a zero-length packet is transmitted, and then ACK is received. The USBFS does not generate the BRDY or BEMP interrupt.
- When the selected pipe is set for bulk OUT transfers (PIPECFG.TYPE[1:0] = 01b and PIPECFG.DIR = 0):

When the ATREPM bit = 1 and PID = BUF, the USBFS returns NAK in response to the OUT token and generates an NRDY interrupt.

For USB communication in auto response mode, set the ATREPM bit to 1 while the FIFO buffer is empty. Do not write to the FIFO buffer during USB communication in auto response mode. When the selected pipe uses isochronous transfer, always set this bit to 0.

INBUFM bit (Transmit Buffer Monitor)

The INBUFM bit indicates the FIFO buffer status for the selected pipe in the transmitting direction.

When the selected pipe is set in the transmitting direction (PIPECFG.DIR = 1), the USBFS sets this bit to 1 when the CPU or DTC completes writing data to at least one FIFO buffer plane.

The USBFS sets this bit to 0 when the USBFS completes transmission of the data from the FIFO buffer plane to which all the data is written. In double buffer mode (PIPECFG.DBLB = 1), the USBFS sets the INBUFM bit to 0 when the USBFS completes transmission of the data from the two FIFO buffer planes before the CPU or DTC completes writing data to one FIFO buffer plane.

The INBUFM bit indicates the same value as the BSTS bit when the selected pipe is in the receiving direction (PIPECFG.DIR = 0).

BSTS bit (Buffer Status)

The BSTS bit indicates the FIFO buffer status for the selected pipe.

The meaning of the BSTS bit depends on the PIPECFG.DIR, PIPECFG.BFRE, and DnFIFOSEL.DCLRM settings, as shown in Table 25.11.

Table 25.11 BSTS bit operation

DIR value	BFRE value	DCLRM value	BSTS bit function
0	0	0	Sets to 1 when receive data can be read from the FIFO buffer, and clears to 0 on completion of data read
		1	Setting prohibited
	1	0	Sets to 1 when receive data can be read from the FIFO buffer, and clears to 0 when the software sets the BCLR bit in the port control register to 1 after the data read is complete
		1	Sets to 1 when receive data can be read from the FIFO buffer, and clears to 0 on completion of data read
1	0	0	Sets to 1 when transmit data can be written to the FIFO buffer, and clears to 0 on completion of data write
		1	Setting prohibited
	1	0	Setting prohibited
		1	Setting prohibited

25.2.33 PIPEnCTR : PIPEn Control Registers (n = 6 to 9)

Base address: USBFS = 0x4009_0000

Offset address: 0x07A + 0x2 × (n - 6)

Bit position: 15 14 13 12 11 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0

Bit field:	BSTS	—	—	—	—	—	ACL R M	SQCL R	SQSE T	SQM ON	PBUS Y	—	—	—	PID[1:0]

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
1:0	PID[1:0]	Response PID 0 0: NAK response 0 1: BUF response (depends on the buffer state) 1 0: STALL response 1 1: STALL response	R/W
4:2	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
5	PBUSY	Pipe Busy 0: Pipe n not in use for the transaction 1: Pipe n in use for the transaction	R
6	SQMON	Sequence Toggle Bit Confirmation 0: DATA0 1: DATA1	R
7	SQSET	Sequence Toggle Bit Set* ¹ Sets the sequence toggle bit for pipe n. 0: Invalid (writing 0 has no effect) 1: Set the expected value for the next transaction to DATA0	W
8	SQCLR	Sequence Toggle Bit Clear* ¹ Clears the sequence toggle bit for pipe n. 0: Invalid (writing 0 has no effect) 1: Clear the expected value for the next transaction to DATA0	W
9	ACLRM	Auto Buffer Clear Mode* ² 0: Disable 1: Enable (all buffers initialized)	R/W
14:10	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
15	BSTS	Buffer Status 0: Buffer access disabled 1: Buffer access enabled	R

- Note 1. Only write 1 to the SQCLR or SQSET bit while PID is NAK. Before setting these bits, check that the PBUSY bit is 0, and then change the PID[1:0] bits from 01b (BUF) to 00b (NAK). If the PID[1:0] bits are changed to 00b (NAK) by the USBFS, checking the PBUSY bit through software is not necessary.
- Note 2. Only set the ACLRM bit while PID is NAK and before the pipe is selected in the CURPIPE[3:0] bits in the Port Select register. Before setting this bit, check that the PIPEnCTR.PBUSY bit is 0, and then change the PIPEnCTR.PID[1:0] bits from 01b (BUF) to 00b (NAK). If the PID[1:0] bits are changed to 00b (NAK) by the USBFS, checking the PBUSY bit through software is not necessary.

PID[1:0] bits (Response PID)

The PID[1:0]bits specify the response type for the next transaction of the selected pipe.

The default PID[1:0] setting is NAK. Change the PID[1:0] setting to BUF to use the associated pipe for USB transfer. [Table 25.9](#) shows the basic operation (when there are no errors in the transmitted and received packets) of the USBFS depending on the PID[1:0] setting.

After changing the PID[1:0] setting from BUF to NAK through the software during USB communication on the selected pipe, check that the PBUSY bit is 1 to see if USB transfer on the selected pipe has actually entered the NAK state. If the USBFS changes the PID[1:0] bits to NAK, checking the PBUSY bit through the software is not necessary.

The USBFS changes the PIPEnCTR.PID[1:0] setting in the following cases:

- The USBFS sets PID to STALL (11b) on receiving a data packet with a payload exceeding the maximum packet size of the selected pipe
- The USBFS sets PID to NAK on detecting a USB bus reset in device controller mode

To specify each response type, set the PID[1:0] bits as follows:

- To transition from NAK (00b) to STALL, set 10b
- To transition from BUF (01b) to STALL, set 11b
- To transition from STALL (11b) to NAK, set 10b and then 00b
- To transition from STALL to BUF, set 00b (NAK) and then 01b (BUF)

PBUSY bit (Pipe Busy)

The PBUSY bit indicates whether the selected pipe is being used for the current transaction.

The USBFS changes the PBUSY bit from 0 to 1 on start of the USB transaction for the selected pipe, and changes the PBUSY bit from 1 to 0 on completion of one transaction.

Reading the PBUSY bit by software after PID is set to NAK allows you to check whether changing the pipe setting is possible.

SQMON bit (Sequence Toggle Bit Confirmation)

The SQMON bit indicates the expected value of the sequence toggle bit for the next transaction of the selected pipe.

The USBFS toggles the SQMON bit on successful completion of the transaction. However, the USBFS does not toggle the SQMON bit when a DATA-PID mismatch occurs during transfer in the receiving direction.

SQSET bit (Sequence Toggle Bit Set)

Setting the SQSET bit to 1 through the software causes the USBFS to set DATA1 as the expected value of the sequence toggle bit for the next transaction on the selected pipe. The USBFS sets the SQSET bit to 0.

SQCLR bit (Sequence Toggle Bit Clear)

Setting the SQCLR bit to 1 through the software causes the USBFS to clear the expected value of the sequence toggle bit for the next transaction on the selected pipe to DATA0. The USBFS sets the SQCLR bit to 0.

ACLRM bit (Auto Buffer Clear Mode)

The ACLRM bit enables or disables auto buffer clear mode for the selected pipe. To completely clear the data in the FIFO buffer allocated to the selected pipe, write 1 and then 0 to the ACLRM bit continuously.

[Table 25.12](#) shows the data cleared by writing 1 and 0 continuously to the ACLRM bit and the cases in which this processing is required.

Table 25.12 Data cleared by the USBFS when ACLRM = 1

Number	Data cleared by setting the ACLRM bit	Situations requiring data clear
1	All data in the FIFO buffer allocated to the selected pipe	When initializing the selected pipe
2	Interval count value when the selected pipe is the isochronous transfer type	When resetting the interval count value
3	Internal flags related to the PIPECFG.BFRE bit	When changing the PIPECFG.BFRE setting
4	Internal flags related to the transaction count	When forcing the transaction count function to terminate

BSTS bit (Buffer Status)

The BSTS bit indicates the FIFO buffer status for the selected pipe.

The meaning of the BSTS bit depends on the PIPECFG.DIR, PIPECFG.BFRE, and DnFIFOSEL.DCLRM settings, as shown in [Table 25.11](#).

25.2.34 PIPEnTRE : PIPEn Transaction Counter Enable Register (n = 1 to 5)

Base address: USBFS = 0x4009_0000

Offset address: 0x090 + 0x4 × (n - 1)

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	TREN B	TRCL R	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7:0	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
8	TRCLR	Transaction Counter Clear 0: Invalid (writing 0 has no effect) 1: Clear counter value	R/W
9	TRENB	Transaction Counter Enable 0: Disable transaction counter 1: Enable transaction counter	R/W
15:10	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note: Set each bit in PIPEnTRE while PID is NAK. Before setting these bits after changing the PIPEnCTR.PID[1:0] bits for the selected pipe from BUF to NAK, check that the PIPEnCTR.PBUSY bit is 0. However, if the PID[1:0] bits are changed to NAK by the USBFS, checking the PBUSY bit through the software is not necessary.

TRCLR bit (Transaction Counter Clear)

When the TRCLR bit sets to 1, the USBFS clears the value of the transaction counter associated with the selected pipe and then sets the TRCLR bit to 0.

TRENB bit (Transaction Counter Enable)

The TRENB bit enables or disables the transaction counter.

For receiving pipes, setting the TRENB bit to 1 after setting the total number of the packets to be received in the PIPEnTRN.TRNCNT[15:0] bits through the software allows the USBFS to control hardware on having received the number of packets equal to the TRNCNT[15:0] setting, as follows:

- When the PIPECFG.SHTNAK bit is 1, the USBFS changes the PID bits to NAK for the associated pipe on having received the number of packets equal to the TRNCNT[15:0] setting
- When the PIPECFG.BFRE bit is 1, the USBFS asserts the BRDY interrupt on having received the number of packets equal to the TRNCNT[15:0] setting and then reading the last received data

For transmitting pipes, set the TRENB bit to 0.

When the transaction counter is not used, set this bit to 0. When the transaction counter is used, set the TRNCNT[15:0] bits before setting this bit to 1. Set this bit to 1 before receiving the first packet to be counted by the transaction counter.

25.2.35 PIPEnTRN : PIPEn Transaction Counter Register (n = 1 to 5)

Base address: USBFS = 0x4009_0000

Offset address: 0x092 + 0x4 × (n - 1)

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	TRNCNT[15:0]															
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
15:0	TRNCNT[15:0]	Transaction Counter When written to, this bit specifies the total packets (number of transactions) to be received by the selected pipe. When read from, when PIPEnTRE.TRENB is 0, this bit indicates the specified number of transactions. When PIPEnTRE.TRENB is 1, this bit indicates the current transaction count.	R/W

The PIPEnTRN registers retain their settings during a USB bus reset.

TRNCNT[15:0] bits (Transaction Counter)

The USBFS increments the value of the TRNCNT[15:0] bits by 1 when all of the following conditions are satisfied on receiving the packet:

- The PIPEnTRE.TRENB bit = 1
- (TRNCNT[15:0] set value ≠ current counter value + 1) on receiving the packet
- The payload of the received packet agrees with the PIPEMAXP.MXPS[9:0] setting

The USBFS clears the value of the TRNCNT[15:0] bits to 0 when any of the following conditions are satisfied:

All of the following conditions are satisfied:

- The PIPEnTRE.TRENB bit = 1
- (TRNCNT[15:0] set value = current counter value + 1) on receiving the packet
- The payload of the received packet agrees with the PIPEMAXP.MXPS[9:0] setting

Both of the following conditions are satisfied:

- The PIPEnTRE.TRENB bit = 1
- The USBFS received a short packet

Both of the following conditions are satisfied:

- The PIPEnTRE.TRENB bit = 1
- The PIPEnTRE.TRCLR bit is set to 1 by software

For transmitting pipes, set the TRNCNT[15:0] bits to 0. When the transaction counter is not used, set the TRNCNT[15:0] bits to 0.

Setting the number of transactions to be transferred to the TRNCNT[15:0] bits is only enabled when the PIPEnTRE.TRENB bit is 0. To set the number of transactions to be transferred, set the TRCLR bit to 1 to clear the current counter value before setting the PIPEnTRE.TRENB bit to 1.

25.3 Operation

25.3.1 System Control

This section describes register settings required for initializing the USBFS and controlling power consumption.

25.3.1.1 Setting Data to the USBFS Registers

Setting the SYSCFG.USBFE bit to 1 after starting the clock supply (SYSCFG.SCKE bit = 1) enables and starts USBFS operation.

25.3.1.2 Controlling the USB Data Bus Using Resistors

The USBFS provides pull-up resistors for the D+ line. Pull this line up by setting the SYSCFG.DPRPU bit.

In device controller mode, confirm that connection to the USB host is made, and then set the SYSCFG.DPRPU bit to 1 and pull up the D+ line (in full-speed communication).

When the SYSCFG.DPRPU bit is set to 0 during communication with a PC, the USBFS disables the pull-up resistor of the USB data line, thus notifying the USB host of disconnection.

Table 25.13 USB data bus resistor control

SYSCFG register settings	USB data bus control		Function
DPRPU bit	D–	D+	
0	Open	Open	When resistors are not used
1	Open	Pull-up	When operating as a device controller at full-speed

25.3.1.3 Example External Connection Circuits

The USBFS controls the pull-up resistor of the D+ line. Select pull-up for the line in the SYSCFG.DPRPU bit. In device controller mode, the pull-up resistor of the USB data line is disabled if the SYSCFG.DPRPU bit is set to 0 while communicating with the USB host. The USBFS can use this to notify the USB host of a device disconnect.

[Figure 25.2](#) shows an example device connection in a self-powered system.

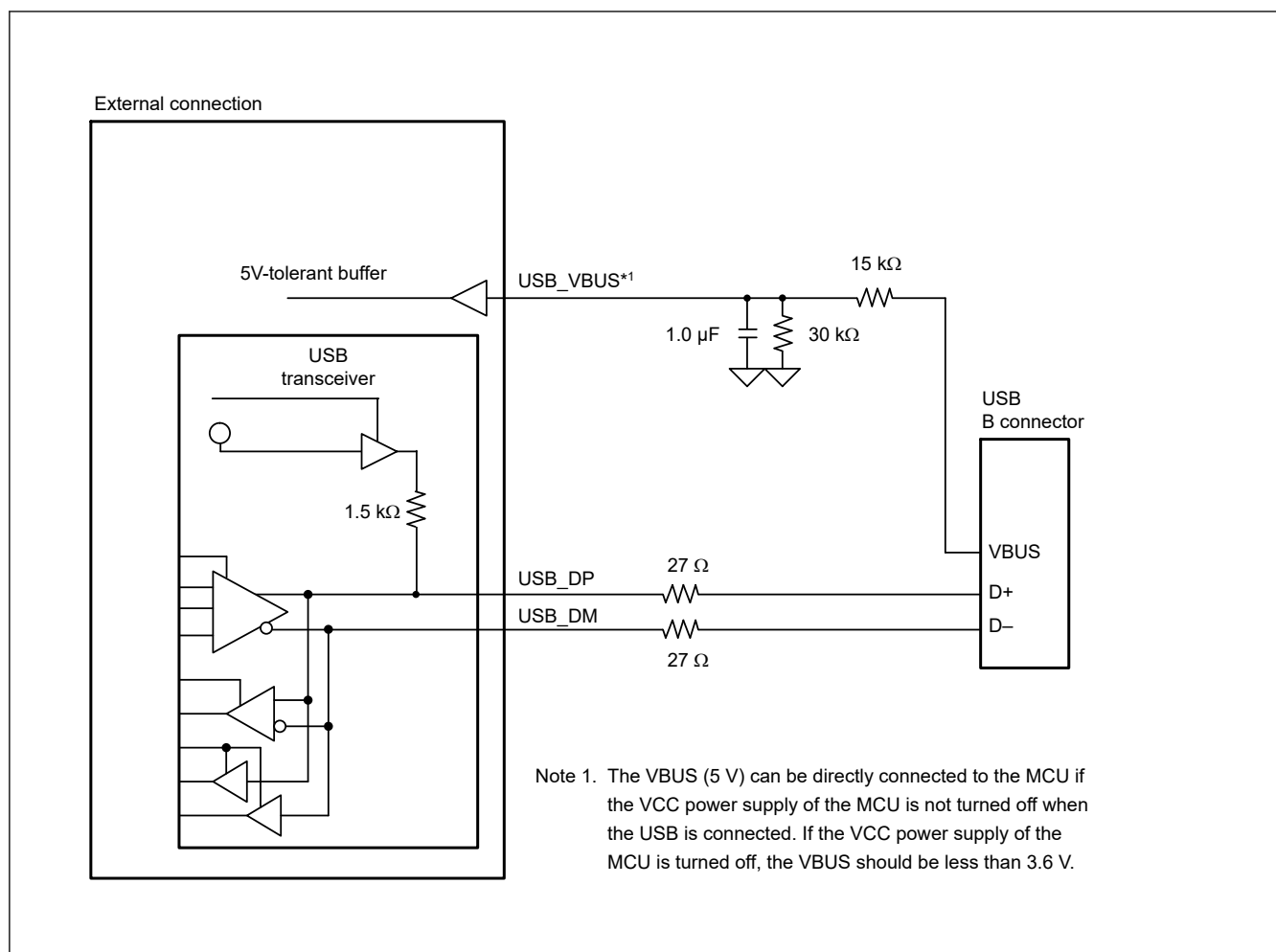


Figure 25.2 Example device connection in a self-powered system

Figure 25.3 shows an example device connection in a bus-powered system.

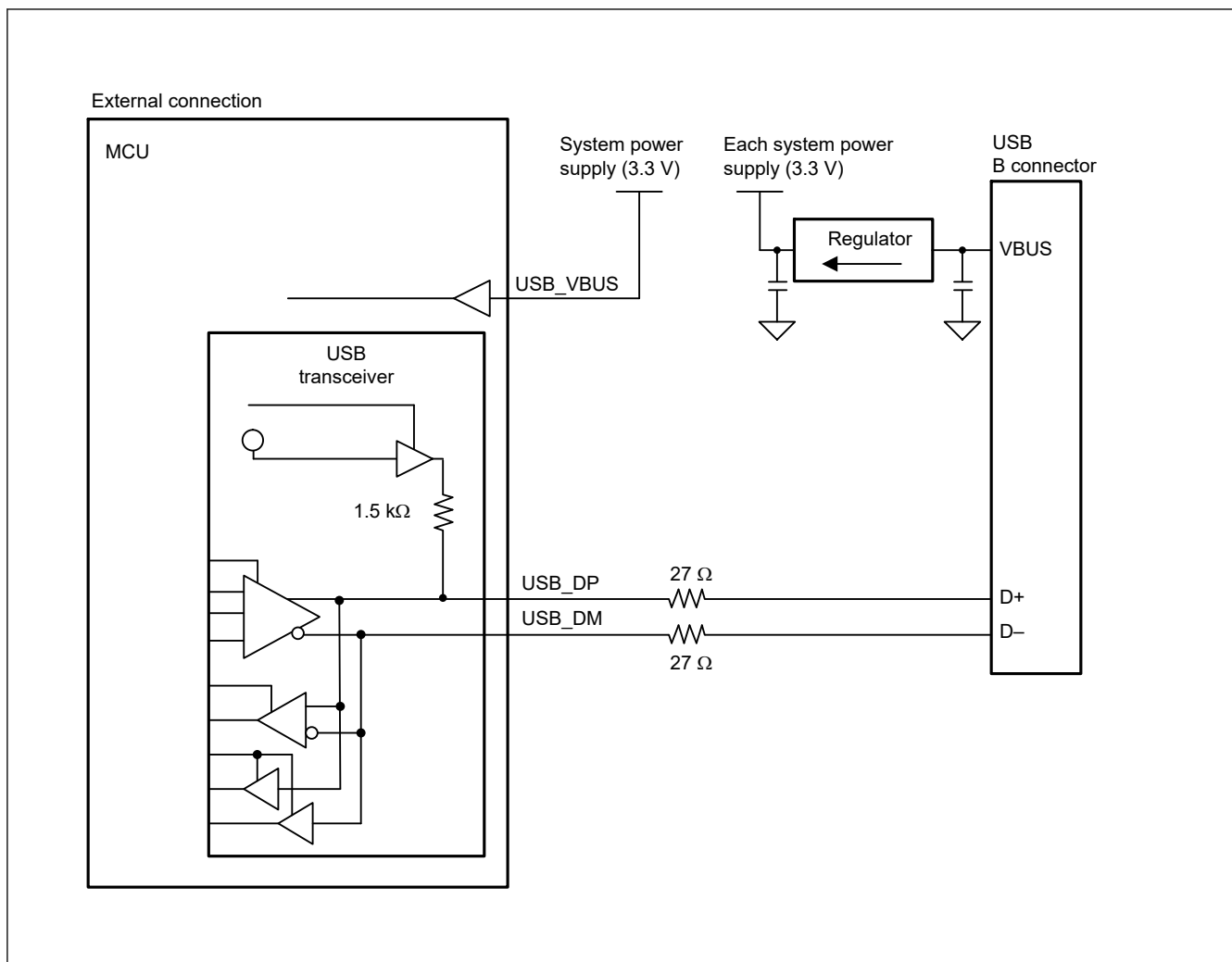


Figure 25.3 Example device connection in a bus-powered state

The examples of external circuits given in this section are simplified circuits, and their operation in every system is not guaranteed.

25.3.2 Interrupts

Table 25.14 lists the interrupt sources in the USBFS. When an interrupt generation condition is satisfied and the interrupt output is enabled using the associated interrupt enable register, a USBFS interrupt request is issued to the Interrupt Controller Unit (ICU) and an USBFS interrupt is generated.

Table 25.14 Interrupt sources (1 of 2)

Bit to be set to 1	Name	Interrupt source	Status flag
VBINT	VBUS interrupt	A change in the state of the USB_VBUS input pin was detected (low to high or high to low)	INTSTS0.VBSTS
RESM	Resume interrupt	A change in the state of the USB bus was detected in the Suspend state (J-state to K-state or J-state to SE0)	—
SOFR	Frame number update interrupt	In device controller mode: An SOF packet with a different frame number was received	—
DVST	Device state transition interrupt	- One of the following device state transitions was detected: - USB bus reset was detected - Suspend state was detected - SET_ADDRESS request was received - SET_CONFIGURATION request was received	INTSTS0.DVSQ[2:0]

Table 25.14 Interrupt sources (2 of 2)

Bit to be set to 1	Name	Interrupt source	Status flag
CTRT	Control transfer stage transition interrupt	- A control transfer stage transition was detected because of one of the following: - Setup stage completed - Control write transfer status stage transition occurred - Control read transfer status stage transition occurred - Control transfer completed - Control transfer sequence error occurred	INTSTS0.CTSQ[2:0]
BEMP	Buffer empty interrupt	- The buffer is empty after all FIFO buffer data was transmitted - A packet larger than the maximum packet size was received	BEMPSTS.PIPEnBEMP
NRDY	Buffer not ready interrupt	In device controller mode - NAK was returned for an IN or OUT token while the PID[1:0] bits were set to 01b (BUF) - A CRC error or bit stuffing error occurred during data reception in isochronous transfer - An overrun or underrun occurred during data reception in isochronous transfer	NRDYSTS.PIPEnNRDY
BRDY	Buffer ready interrupt	The buffer is ready (readable or writable state)	BRDYSTS.PIPEnBRDY

Figure 25.4 shows the circuits related to the USBFS interrupts.

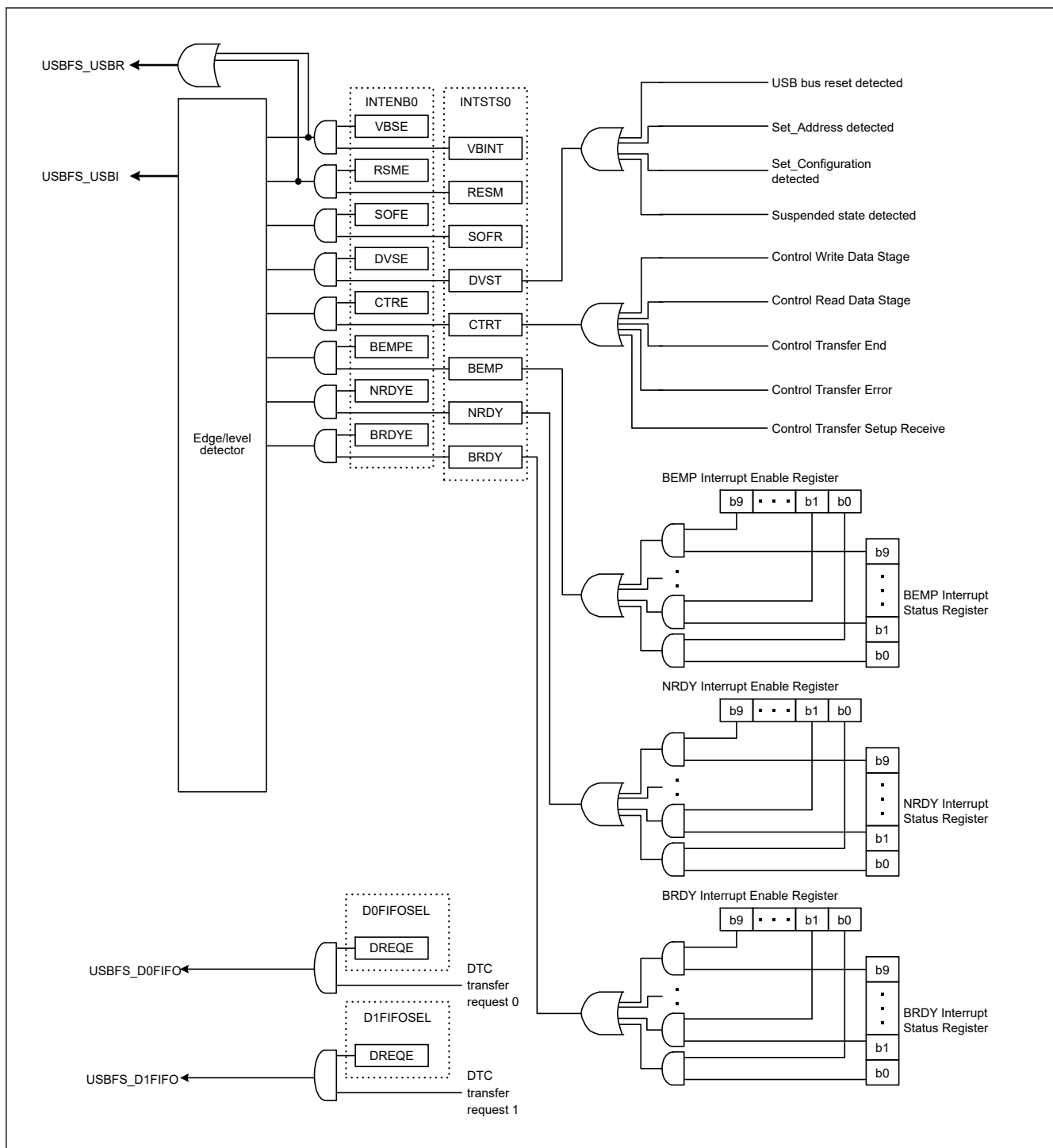
**Figure 25.4 USBFS interrupt-related circuits**

Table 25.15 shows the interrupts generated by the USBFS.

Table 25.15 USBFS interrupts (1 of 2)

Interrupt name	Interrupt status flag	DTC activation	Priority
USBFS_D0FIFO	DTC transfer request 0	Possible	High
USBFS_D1FIFO	DTC transfer request 1	Possible	↑
USBFS_USBI	VBUS interrupt, resume interrupt, frame number update interrupt, device state transition interrupt, control transfer stage transition interrupt, buffer empty interrupt, buffer not ready interrupt, buffer ready interrupt, bus change interrupt	Not possible	Low

Table 25.15 USBFS interrupts (2 of 2)

Interrupt name	Interrupt status flag	DTC activation	Priority
USBFS_USBR	VBUS interrupt, resume interrupt, and bus change interrupt	Not possible	—

25.3.3 Interrupt Descriptions

25.3.3.1 BRDY Interrupt

The BRDY interrupt is generated in device controller mode. This section describes the conditions in which the USBFS sets the associated bit in BRDYSTS to 1. Under these conditions, the USBFS generates a BRDY interrupt if the software has set the bit in BRDYENB associated with the given pipe to 1 and the INTENB0.BRDYE bit to 1.

The conditions for generating and clearing the BRDY interrupt depend on the SOFCFG.BRDYM and PIPECFG.BFRE settings for each pipe as follows:

(1) When SOFCFG.BRDYM = 0 and PIPECFG.BFRE = 0

With these settings, the BRDY interrupt indicates that the FIFO port is accessible.

On any of the following conditions, the USBFS generates an internal BRDY interrupt request trigger and sets the BRDYSTS.PIPEnBRDY bit associated with the selected pipe to 1.

For transmitting pipes

- When the DIR bit is changed from 0 to 1 by software
- When packet transmission is complete for a pipe while write-access from the CPU to the FIFO buffer for the pipe is disabled (when the BSTS bit is read as 0)
- When one FIFO buffer is empty on completion of writing data to the other FIFO buffer in double buffer mode
- No request trigger is generated until completion of writing data to the currently written FIFO buffer even if transmission to the other FIFO buffer is complete
- When the hardware flushes the buffer of the pipe for isochronous transfers
- When 1 is written to the PIPEnCTR.ACLRM bit, which causes the FIFO buffer to transition from the write-disabled to write-enabled state

No request trigger is generated for the DCP, that is, during data transmission for control transfers.

For receiving pipes

- When packet reception is successfully complete, enabling the FIFO buffer to be read while read-access from the CPU to the FIFO buffer for the given pipe is disabled (when the BSTS bit is read as 0). No request trigger is generated for transactions in which a DATA-PID mismatch has occurred.
- When one FIFO buffer is read-enabled on completion of reading data from the other FIFO buffer in double buffer mode. No request trigger is generated until completion of reading data from the currently read FIFO buffer, even if reception by the other FIFO buffer is complete.

In device controller mode, the BRDY interrupt is not generated in the status stage of control transfers. The PIPEBRDY interrupt status of the selected pipe can be set to 0 by writing 0 to the associated PIPEnBRDY bit through software. In this case, the other PIPEBRDY bit should be set to 1.

Clear the BRDY status before accessing the FIFO buffer.

(2) When SOFCFG.BRDYM = 0 and PIPECFG.BFRE = 1

With these settings, the USBFS generates a BRDY interrupt on completion of reading all data for a single transfer using the receiving pipe, and sets the bit in BRDYSTS associated with the pipe to 1.

On any of the following conditions, the USBFS determines that the last data for a single transfer was received.

- When a short packet including a zero-length packet is received
- When the PIPEn transaction counter register (PIPEnTRN) is used and the number of packets specified in the PIPEnTRN.TRNCNT[15:0] bits are completely received

When the data is completely read after any of these conditions is satisfied, the USBFS determines that all data for a single transfer is completely read.

When a zero-length packet is received while the FIFO buffer is empty, the USBFS determines that all data for a single transfer is completely read when the FRDY bit in the FIFO port control register is 1 and the DTLN[8:0] bits are 0. In this case, to start the next transfer, write 1 to the BCLR bit in the associated port control register through the software. With these settings, the USBFS does not detect a BRDY interrupt for the transmitting pipe.

The PIPEBRDY interrupt status of a pipe can be set to 0 by writing 0 to the associated BRDYSTS.PIPEnBRDY bit through the software. In this case, 1s must be written to the PIPEBRDY bits for the other pipes.

In this mode, do not change the PIPECFG.BFRE bit setting until all data for a single transfer is processed. When it is necessary to change the PIPECFG.BFRE bit before completion of processing, all FIFO buffers for the pipe must be cleared using the PIPEnCTR.ACLRM bit.

(3) When SOFCFG.BRDYM = 1 and PIPECFG.BFRE = 0

With these settings, the BRDYSTS.PIPEnBRDY values are linked to the BSTS bit setting for each pipe. In other words, the BRDY interrupt status bits (PIPEBRDY) are set to 1 or 0 by the USB depending on the FIFO buffer status.

For transmitting pipes

The BRDY interrupt status bits are set to 1 when the FIFO buffer is ready for write access, and are set to 0 when it is not ready. The BRDY interrupt is not generated for the DCP in the transmitting direction even when it is ready for write access.

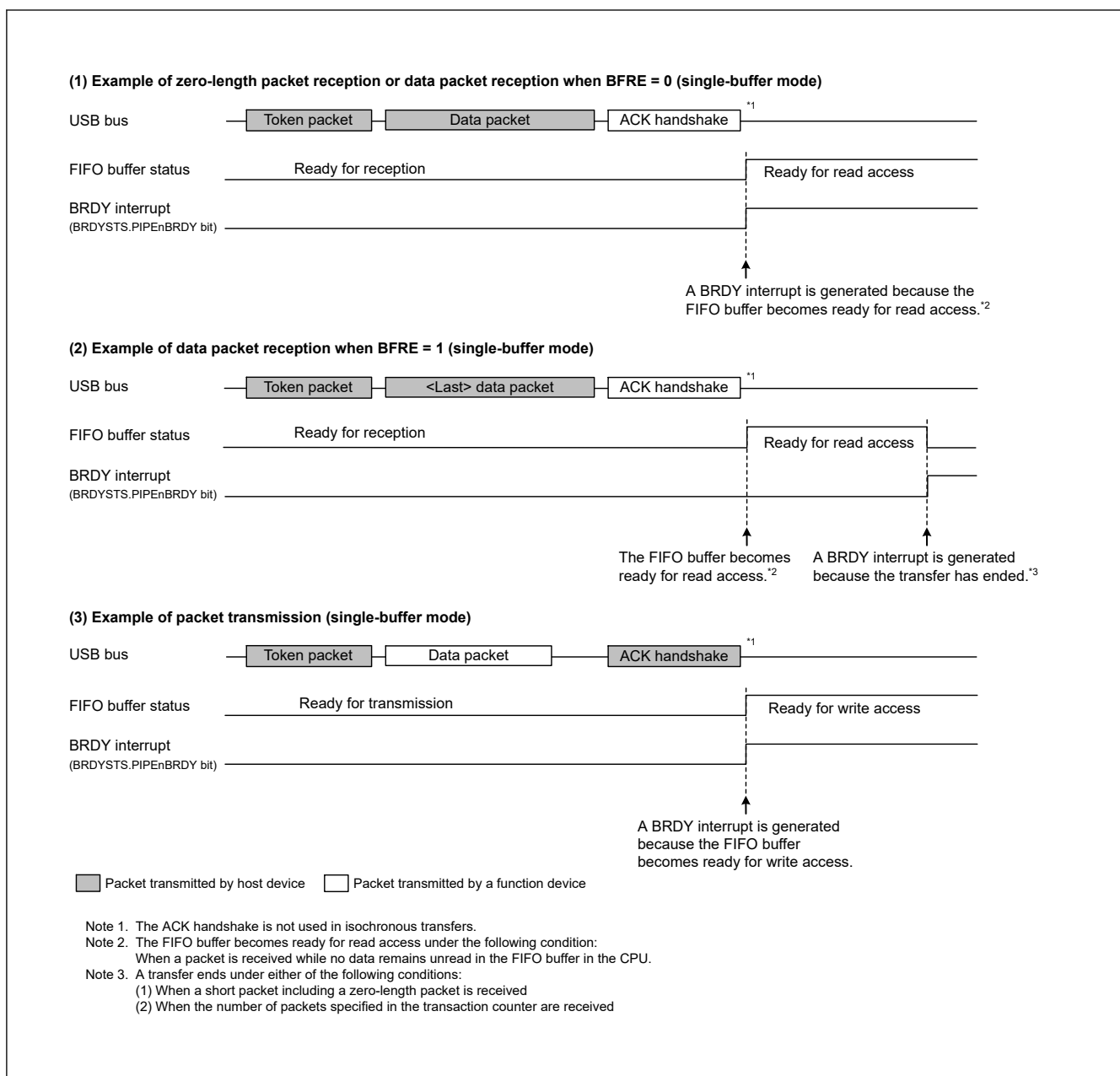
For receiving pipes

The BRDY interrupt status bits set to 1 when the FIFO buffer is ready for read access, and set to 0 when all data is read (not ready for read access).

When a zero-length packet is received while the FIFO buffer is empty, the associated bit is set to 1 and the BRDY interrupt is continuously generated until the software writes 1 to BCLR. With this setting, the PIPEnBRDY bit cannot be set to 0 by software.

When the SOFCFG.BRDYM bit is set to 1, set the PIPECFG.BFRE bit for all pipes to 0.

[Figure 25.5](#) shows the timing of BRDY interrupt generation.

**Figure 25.5 Timing of BRDY interrupt generation**

The condition for clearing the INTSTS0.BRDY bit depends on the SOFCFG.BRDYM bit setting, as shown in [Table 25.16](#).

Table 25.16 Conditions for clearing the BRDY bit

BRDYM bit	Condition for clearing BRDY bit
0	The USBFS clears the BRDY bit to 0 when all bits in BRDYSTS are set to 0 by software.
1	The USBFS clears the BRDY bit to 0 when the BSTS bits for all pipes have cleared to 0.

25.3.3.2 NRDY Interrupt

On generating an internal NRDY interrupt request for the pipe whose PID bits are set to BUF by software, the USBFS sets the associated PIPEnNRDY bit in NRDYSTS to 1. If the associated bit in NRDYENB is set to 1 by software, the USBFS sets the INTSTS0.NRDY bit to 1 and generates a USBFS interrupt.

This section describes the conditions in which the USBFS generates the internal NRDY interrupt request for a given pipe.

The internal NRDY interrupt request is not generated during status stage execution of the control transfer in device controller mode.

(1) In device controller mode

For transmitting pipes

- When an IN token is received while there is no data to be transmitted in the FIFO buffer. In this case, the USBFS generates an NRDN interrupt request on reception of the IN token and sets the NRDYSTS.PIPEnNRDY bit to 1. For an isochronous transfer pipe in which an interrupt is generated, the USBFS transmits a zero-length packet and sets the FRMNUM.OVRN bit to 1.

For receiving pipes

- When an OUT token is received but there is no space available in the FIFO buffer. For an isochronous transfer pipe in which an interrupt is generated, the USBFS generates an NRDY interrupt request on reception of the OUT token and sets the PIPEnNRDY bit to 1 and OVRN bit to 1. For a nonisochronous transfer pipe in which an interrupt is generated, the USBFS generates an NRDY interrupt request when a NAK handshake is transferred after the data following the OUT token is received, and sets the PIPEnNRDY bit to 1. The NRDY interrupt request is not generated during retransmission because of a DATA-PID mismatch. In addition, the NRDY interrupt request is not generated if an error occurs in the DATA packet.
- For isochronous transfer pipes, when a token is not received successfully within an interval frame. In this case, the USBFS generates an NRDY interrupt request when the SOF is received, and sets the PIPEnNRDY bit to 1.

Figure 25.6 shows the timing of NRDY interrupt generation in device controller mode.

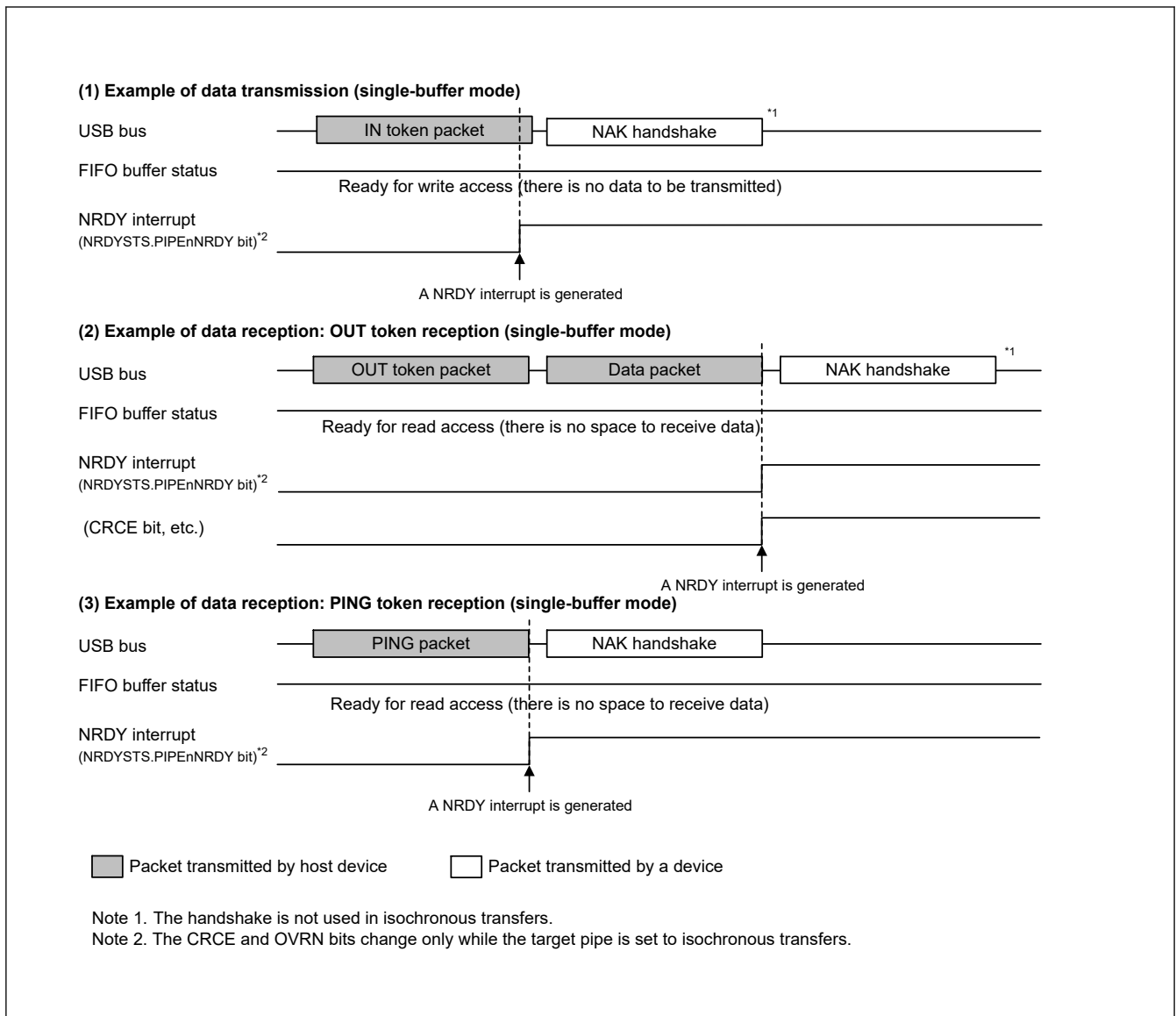


Figure 25.6 Timing of NRDY interrupt generation in device controller mode

25.3.3.3 BEMP Interrupt

On detecting a BEMP interrupt for the pipe whose PID bits are set to BUF by software, the USBFS sets the associated BEMPSTS.PIPEnBEMP bit to 1. If the associated bit in BEMPENB is set to 1 by software, the USBFS sets the INTSTS0.BEMP bit to 1 and generates a USBFS interrupt. This section describes the conditions in which the USBFS generates an internal BEMP interrupt request.

(1) For transmitting pipes

When the FIFO buffer of the associated pipe is empty on completion of transmission, including zero-length packet transmission, and in single buffer mode, an internal BEMP interrupt request is generated simultaneously with the BRDY interrupt for a non-DCP pipe. The internal BEMP interrupt request is not generated in any of the following conditions:

- When the CPU or DTC has already started writing data to the FIFO buffer of the CPU on completion of transmitting data from one FIFO buffer in double buffer mode
- When the buffer is cleared (emptied) by setting the PIPEnCTR.ACLRM or the BCLR bit to 1 in the port control register
- When an IN transfer (zero-length packet transmission) is performed during the control transfer status stage in device controller mode

(2) For receiving pipes

When a successfully received data packet size exceeds the specified maximum packet size. In this case, the USBFS generates a BEMP interrupt request, sets the associated BEMPSTS.PIPEnBEMP bit to 1, discards the received data, and changes the associated PID[1:0] setting for the pipe to STALL (11b). The USBFS returns STALL response in device controller mode.

The internal BEMP interrupt request is not generated in any of the following conditions:

- When a CRC error or a bit stuffing error is detected in the received data
- When a setup transaction is being performed:
 - Writing 0 to the BEMPSTS.PIPEnBEMP bit clears the status
 - Writing 1 to the BEMPSTS.PIPEnBEMP bit has no effect

Figure 25.7 shows the timing of BEMP interrupt generation in device controller mode.

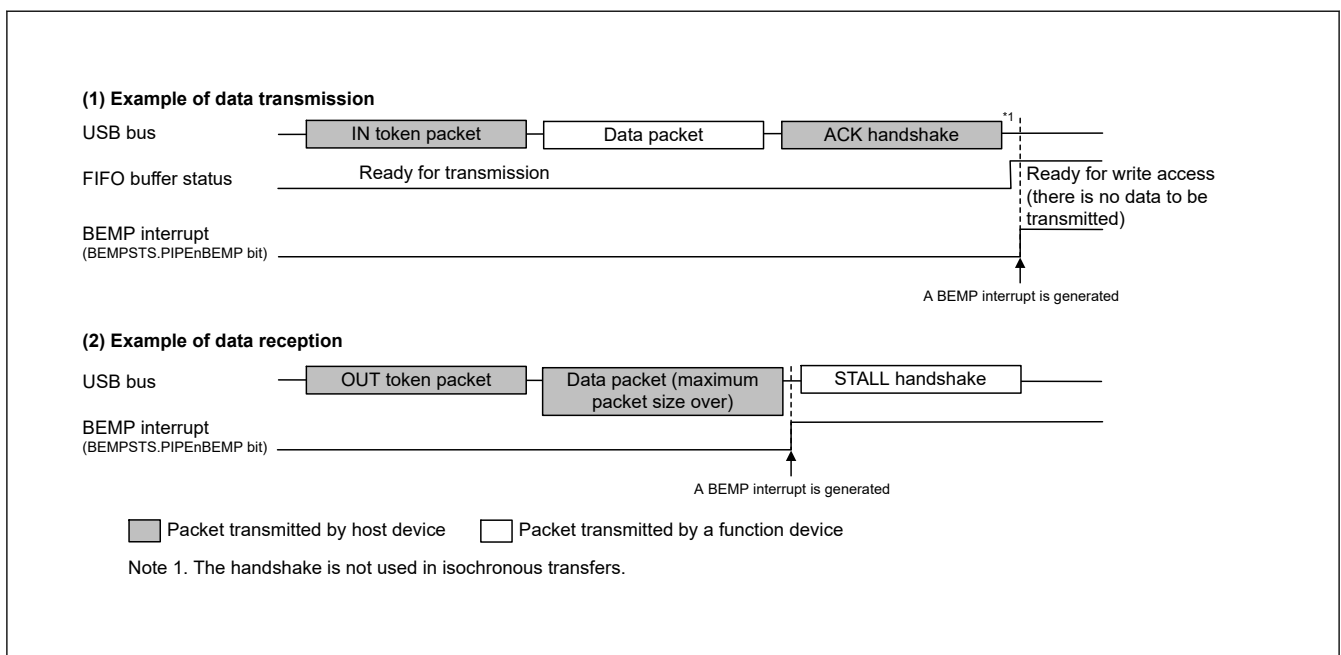


Figure 25.7 Timing of BEMP interrupt generation in device controller mode

25.3.3.4 Device State Transition Interrupt (Device Controller Mode)

Figure 25.8 shows a diagram of the USBFS device state transitions. The USBFS controls device states and generates device state transition interrupts. However, recovery from the Suspend state (resume signal detection) is detected by the resume interrupt. Device state transition interrupts can be enabled or disabled independently in INTENB0. Devices whose states have changed can be checked in the INTSTS0.DVSQ[2:0] bits.

When a transition is made to the default state, a device state transition interrupt is generated after a USB bus reset is detected.

The USBFS controls device states, and device state transition interrupts can be generated only in device controller mode.

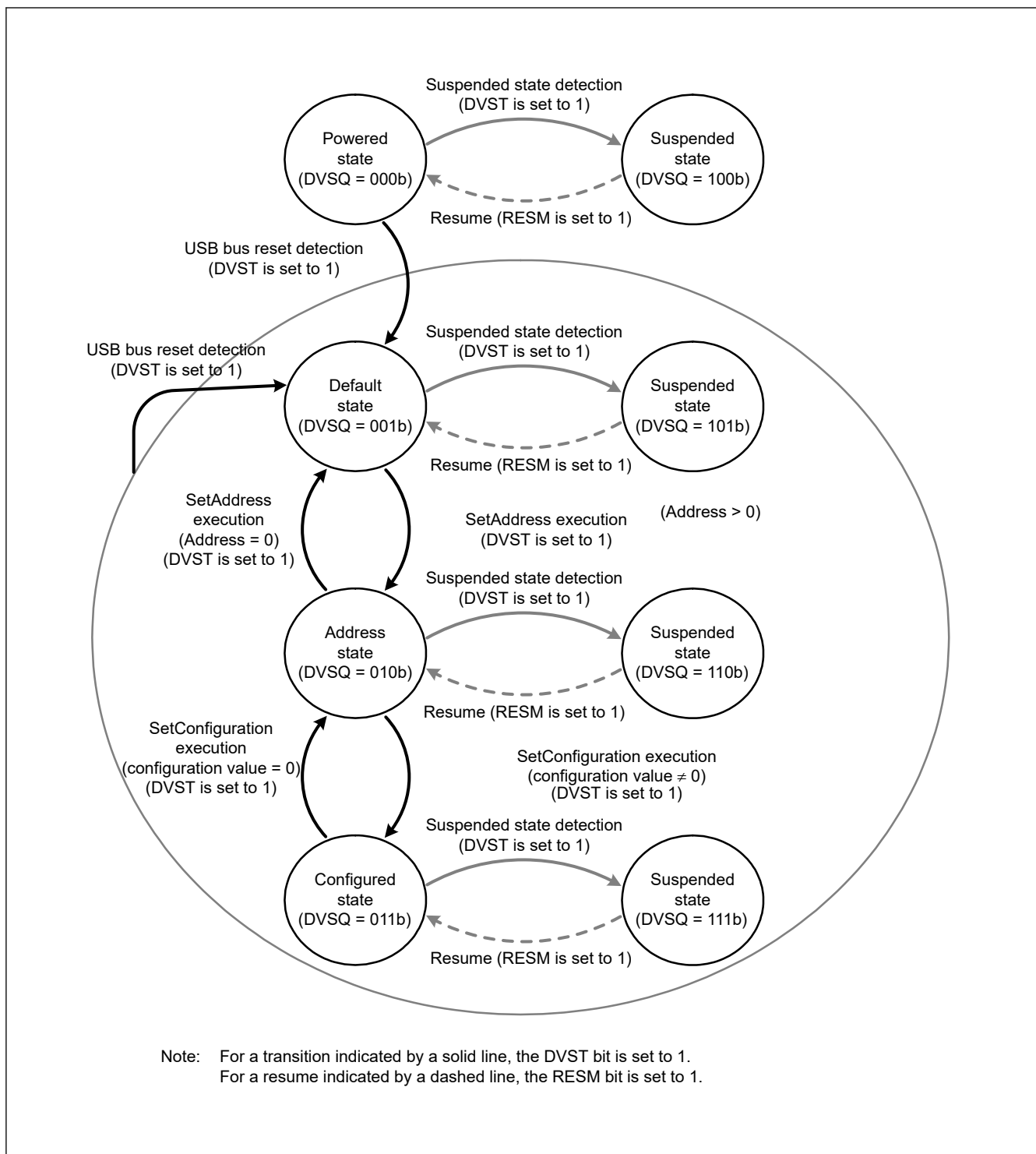


Figure 25.8 Device state transitions

25.3.3.5 Control Transfer Stage Transition Interrupt (Device Controller Mode)

Figure 25.9 shows a diagram of the control transfer stage transitions of the USBFS. The USBFS controls the control transfer sequence and generates control transfer stage transition interrupts. Control transfer stage transition interrupts can be enabled or disabled independently in INTENB0. Transfer stages that have transitioned can be checked in the INTSTS0.CTSQ[2:0] bits.

Control transfer stage transition interrupts are generated only in device controller mode. This section describes control transfer sequence errors. If an error occurs, the DCPCTR.PID[1:0] bits are set to 1xb (STALL response).

(1) Control read transfer errors

- An OUT token is received but no data is transferred in response to the IN token at the data stage
- An IN token is received at the status stage
- A data packet with DATAPID = DATA0 is received at the status stage

(2) Control write transfer errors

- An IN token is received but no ACK is returned in response to the OUT token at the data stage
- A data packet with DATAPID = DATA0 is received as the first data packet at the data stage
- An OUT token is received at the status stage

(3) Control write no data transfer errors

- An OUT token is received at the status stage

At the control write transfer data stage, if the receive data length exceeds the wLength value of the USB request, it is not recognized as a control transfer sequence error. At the control read transfer status stage, packets other than zero-length packets are received by an ACK response and the transfer ends normally.

When a CTRT interrupt occurs in response to a sequence error (INTSTS0.CTRT = 1), the CTSQ[2:0] = 110b value is saved until the CTRT bit is set to 0, clearing the interrupt status. While CTSQ[2:0] = 110b is being saved, no CTRT interrupt for ending the setup stage is generated, even if a new USB request is received. The USBFS saves the setup stage completion status, and it generates a CTRT interrupt after the interrupt status is cleared by software.

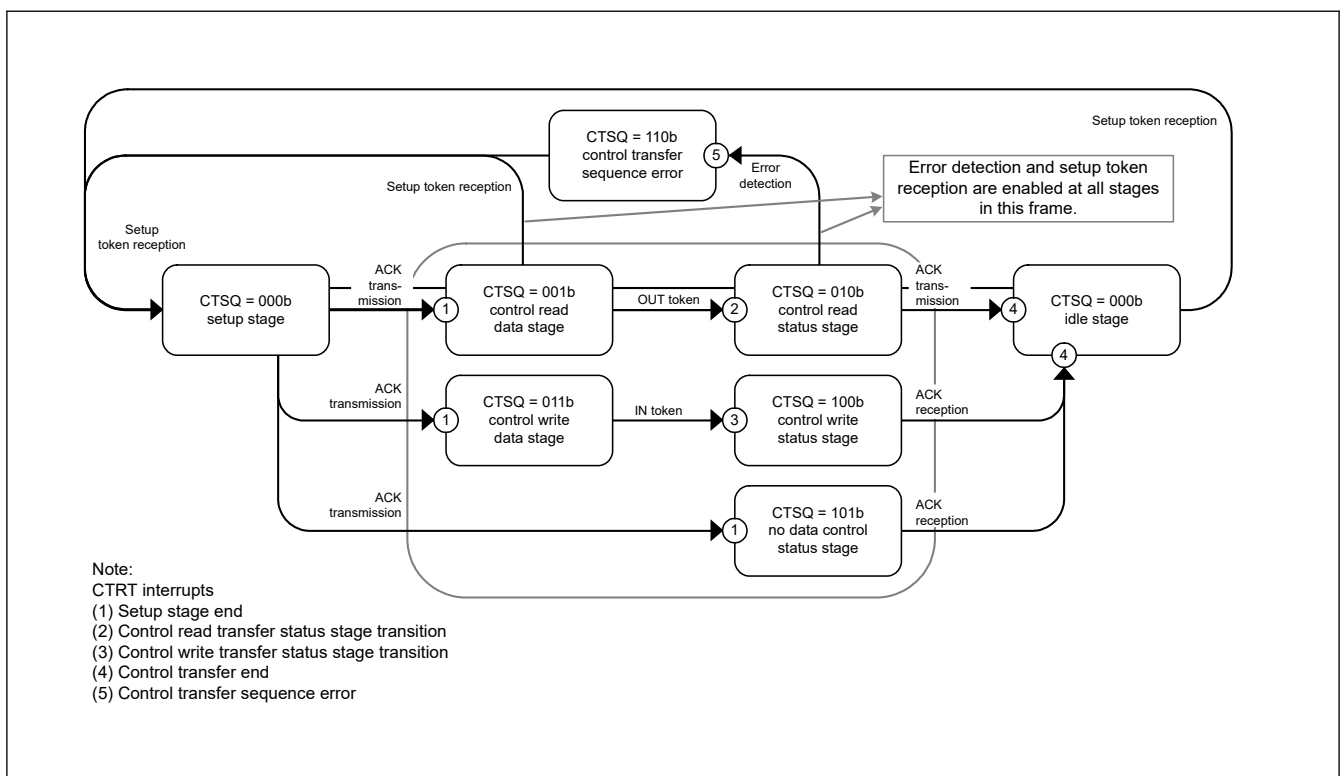


Figure 25.9 Control transfer stage transitions

25.3.3.6 Frame Update Interrupt

In device controller mode, an SOFR interrupt is generated when the frame number is updated. The USBFS updates the frame number and generates an SOFR interrupt if it detects a new SOF packet during full-speed operation.

25.3.3.7 VBUS Interrupt

When the USB_VBUS pin level changes, a VBUS interrupt is generated. The level of the USB_VBUS pin can be checked with the INTSTS0.VBSTS bit. Whether the host controller is connected or disconnected can be confirmed using the VBUS interrupt. If the system is activated with the host controller connected, the first VBUS interrupt is not generated, because there is no change in the USB_VBUS pin level.

25.3.3.8 Resume Interrupt

In device controller mode, a resume interrupt is generated when the device state is the Suspend state and the USB bus state has changed (from J-state to K-state, or from J-state to SE0). Recovery from the Suspend state is detected by the resume interrupt.

25.3.4 Pipe Control

[Table 25.17](#) lists the pipe settings for the USBFS. USB data transfer is performed through logical pipes that the software associates with endpoints. The USBFS provides 10 pipes that are used for data transfer. Set up the pipes based on your system specifications.

Table 25.17 Pipe settings

Register name	Bit name	Setting	Notes
DCPCFG PIPECFG	TYPE	Transfer type	Pipes 1 to 9: Settable
	BFRE	BRDY interrupt mode	Pipes 1 to 5: Settable
	DBLB	Double buffer select	Pipes 1 to 5: Settable
	DIR	Transfer direction select	IN or OUT settable
	EPNUM	Endpoint number	Pipes 1 to 9: Settable A value other than 0000b must be set when the pipe is used.
	SHTNAK	Selects disabled state for pipe when transfer ends	Pipes 1 and 2: Settable only for bulk transfers Pipes 3 to 5: Settable
DCPMAXP PIPEMAXP	MXPS	Maximum packet size	Compliant with the USB 2.0 specification.
PIPEPERI	IFIS	Buffer flush	Pipes 1 and 2: Settable only for isochronous transfers Pipes 3 to 9: Setting disabled
	IITV	Interval counter	Pipes 1 and 2: Settable only for isochronous transfers Pipes 3 to 5: Setting disabled
DCPCTR PIPEnCTR	BSTS	Buffer status	For the DCP, receive buffer status and transmit buffer status are switched with the ISEL bit.
	INBUFM	IN buffer monitor	Available only for pipes 1 to 5.
	ATREPM	Auto response mode	Pipes 1 to 5: Settable only in device controller mode
	ACLRM	Auto buffer clear	Pipes 1 to 9: Settable
	SQCLR	Sequence clear	Clears the data toggle bit
	SQSET	Sequence set	Sets the data toggle bit
	SQMON	Sequence monitor	Monitors the data toggle bit
	PBUSY	Pipe busy status	—
	PID	Response PID	See section 25.3.4.6. Response PID .
PIPEnTRE	TRENB	Transaction counter enable	Pipes 1 to 5: Settable
	TRCLR	Current transaction counter clear	Pipes 1 to 5: Settable
PIPEnTRN	TRNCNT	Transaction counter	Pipes 1 to 5: Settable

25.3.4.1 Pipe Control Register Switching Procedures

The following bits in the pipe control registers can be changed only when USB communication is prohibited (PID = NAK). Do not change the following registers and bits when USB communication is enabled (PID = BUF):

- Bits in DCPCFG and DCPMAXP
- SQCLR and SQSET bits in DCPCTR
- Bits in PIPECFG, PIPEMAXP, and PIPEPERI
- ATREPM, ACLRM, SQCLR, and SQSET bits in PIPEnCTR
- Bits in PIPEnTRE and PIPEnTRN

To set these bits when USB communication is enabled (PID = BUF):

1. A request to change the bits in the pipe control register occurs.
2. Set the PID[1:0] bits associated with the pipe to NAK.
3. Wait until the associated PBUSY bit clears to 0.
4. Set the bits in the pipe control register.

The following bits in the pipe control registers can be changed only when the selected pipe information is not set in the CURPIPE[3:0] bits in CFIFOSEL, D0FIFOSEL, and D1FIFOSEL.

Do not set the following registers when the CURPIPE[3:0] bits are set:

- Bits in DCPCFG and DCPMAXP
- Bits in PIPECFG, PIPEMAXP and PIPEPERI

To change pipe information, you must set the CURPIPE[3:0] bits in the port select registers to a pipe other than the one to be changed. For the DCP, the buffer must be cleared using the BCLR bit in the Port Control Register after the pipe information is changed.

25.3.4.2 Transfer Types

The PIPECFG.TYPE[1:0] bits specify the following transfer types for each pipe:

- DCP: No setting is necessary (fixed at control transfer)
- Pipes 1 and 2: Set to bulk or isochronous transfer
- Pipes 3 to 5: Set to bulk transfer
- Pipes 6 to 9: Set to interrupt transfer

25.3.4.3 Endpoint Number

The PIPECFG.EPNUM[3:0] bits are used to set the endpoint number for each pipe. The DCP is fixed at endpoint 0. The other pipes can be set from endpoint 1 to 15.

- DCP: No setting is necessary (fixed at endpoint 0)
- Pipes 1 to 9: Select and set the endpoint numbers from 1 to 15 so that the combination of the PIPECFG.DIR and EPNUM[3:0] bits is unique

25.3.4.4 Maximum Packet Size Setting

Specify the maximum packet size for each pipe in the DCPMAXP.MXPS[6:0] and PIPEMAXP.MXPS[9:0] bits. The DCP and pipes 1 to 5 can be set to any of the maximum pipe sizes defined in the USB 2.0 specification. For pipes 6 to 9, the maximum packet size is 64 bytes. Set the maximum packet size as follows before starting a transfer (PID = BUF):

- DCP: Set to 8, 16, 32, or 64
- Pipes 1 to 5: Set to 8, 16, 32, or 64 for bulk transfers
- Pipes 1 and 2: Set between 1 and 256 for isochronous transfers
- Pipes 6 to 9: Set between 1 and 64

25.3.4.5 Transaction Counter for Pipes 1 to 5 in the Receiving Direction

When the specified number of transactions is complete in the data packet receiving direction, the USBFS recognizes that the transfer ended. Two transaction counters are provided: one is the PIPEnTRN register, which specifies the number

of transactions to be executed, and the other is the current counter, which internally counts the number of executed transactions. If the PIPECFG.SHTNAK bit is set to 1, when the current counter value matches the specified number of transactions, the associated PIPEnCTR.PID[1:0] bits are set to NAK and the subsequent transfer is disabled. The transactions can be counted again from the beginning by initializing the current counter of the transaction counter function through the PIPEnTRE.TRCLR bit. The data read from PIPEnTRN differs depending on the PIPEnTRE.TRENB setting as follows:

- The TRENB bit = 0: Specified transaction counter value can be read
- The TRENB bit = 1: Current counter value indicating the internally counted number of executed transactions can be read

The following constraints apply when working with the TRCLR bit:

- If the transactions are being counted and PID = BUF, the current counter cannot be cleared
- If there is any data left in the buffer, the current counter cannot be cleared

25.3.4.6 Response PID

Specify the response PID for each pipe in the PID[1:0] bits in DCPCTR and PIPEnCTR. This section describes the USBFS operation with different response PID settings.

(1) Software response PID settings in device controller mode

Select the response PID to respond as follows to transactions from the host:

- NAK setting: A NAK response is returned to all generated transactions
- BUF setting: A response is returned to transactions based on the FIFO buffer
- STALL setting: A STALL response is returned to all generated transactions

Note: For setup transactions, an ACK response is always returned, regardless of the PID[1:0] bits setting, and the USB request is stored in the register.

Sections (2) describe situations in which the USBFS writes to the PID[1:0] bits because of specific transaction results.

(2) Hardware response PID settings in device controller mode

- NAK setting: PID = NAK is set in the following cases, and a NAK response is returned to transactions:
 - When the setup token is received normally (DCP only)
 - If transaction counting ends or a short packet is received when the PIPECFG.SHTNAK bit is set to 1 for bulk transfers
- BUF setting: There is no BUF writing by the USBFS.
- STALL setting: PID = STALL is set in the following cases, and a STALL response is returned to transactions:
 - When a received data packet exceeds the maximum packet size
 - When a control transfer sequence error is detected (DCP only)

25.3.4.7 Data PID Sequence Bit

The USBFS automatically toggles the sequence bit in the data PID when data is transferred successfully in the control transfer data stage, bulk transfer, and interrupt transfer. The sequence bit of the next data PID to be transmitted can be confirmed with the SQMON bit in DCPCTR and PIPEnCTR. When data is transmitted, the sequence bit toggles on ACK handshake reception. When data is received, the sequence bit toggles on ACK handshake transmission. The SQCLR bit in DCPCTR and the SQSET bit in PIPEnCTR can be used to change the data PID sequence bit.

In device controller mode when control transfers are used, the USBFS automatically sets the sequence bit for stage transitions. DATA1 is returned when the setup stage ends. The sequence bit is not referenced and PID = DATA1 is returned in the status stage. Therefore, no software settings are required.

For ClearFeature requests for transmission or reception, the data PID sequence bit must be set by software in device controller mode.

25.3.4.8 Response PID = NAK Function

The USBFS provides a function for disabling pipe operation (PID response = NAK) when the final data packet of a transaction is received. The USBFS automatically distinguishes this based on reception of a short packet or the transaction counter. Enable this function by setting the PIPECFG.SHTNAK bit to 1.

When the double buffer mode is being used for the FIFO buffer, using this function enables reception of data packets in transfer units. If pipe operation is disabled, the software must enable the pipe again (PID response = BUF).

The response PID = NAK function can be used only for bulk transfers.

25.3.4.9 Auto Response Mode

For bulk transfer pipes (1 to 5), when the PIPEnCTR.ATREPM bit is set to 1, a transition is made to auto response mode. During an OUT transfer (PIPECFG.DIR = 0), OUT-NAK mode is invoked, and during an IN transfer (DIR = 1), null auto response mode is invoked.

25.3.4.10 OUT-NAK Mode

For bulk OUT transfer pipes, NAK is returned in response to an OUT token, and an NRDY interrupt is output when the PIPEnCTR.ATREPM bit is set to 1. To transition from normal mode to OUT-NAK mode, specify OUT-NAK mode while pipe operation is disabled (PID[1:0] = 00b for NAK response). Next enable pipe operation (PID[1:0] = 01b for BUF response), on which OUT-NAK mode becomes valid. If an OUT token is received immediately before pipe operation is disabled, the token data is normally received, and an ACK is returned to the host.

To transition from OUT-NAK mode to normal mode, cancel OUT-NAK mode while pipe operation is disabled (NAK). Next enable pipe operation (BUF). In normal mode, reception of OUT data is enabled.

25.3.4.11 Null Auto Response Mode

For bulk IN transfer pipes, zero-length packets are continuously transmitted when the PIPEnCTR.ATREPM bit is set to 1.

To transition from normal mode to null auto response mode, specify null auto response mode while pipe operation is disabled (response PID = NAK). Next enable pipe operation (response PID = BUF) on which null auto response mode becomes valid. Before setting null auto response mode, check that PIPEnCTR.INBUFM = 0, because the mode can be set only when the buffer is empty. If the INBUFM bit is 1, empty the buffer using the PIPEnCTR.ACLRM bit. Do not write data from the FIFO port while a transition to null auto response mode is being made.

To transition from null auto response mode to normal mode, keep pipe operation disabled (response PID = NAK) for the period of the zero-length packet transmission (about 10 μs) before canceling the null auto response mode. In normal mode, data can be written from the FIFO port, so packet transmission to the host is enabled by enabling pipe operation (response PID = BUF).

25.3.5 FIFO Buffer

The USBFS provides a FIFO buffer for data transfers, and it manages the memory area used for each pipe. The FIFO buffer has two states depending on whether the access right is assigned to the system (CPU side) or the USBFS (SIE side).

(1) Buffer status

[Table 25.18](#) and [Table 25.19](#) show the buffer status in the USBFS. The FIFO buffer status can be confirmed using the DCPCTR.BSTS and PIPEnCTR.INBUFM bits. The transfer direction for the FIFO buffer can be specified in either the PIPECFG.DIR or CFIFOSSEL.ISEL bit (when DCP is selected).

The INBUFM bit is valid for pipes 0 to 5 in the transmitting direction.

When a transmitting pipe uses double buffering, the software can read the BSTS bit to monitor the FIFO buffer status on the CPU side and the INBUFM bit to monitor the FIFO buffer status on the SIE side. When write access to the FIFO port by the CPU or DTC is slow and the buffer empty status cannot be determined using the BEMP interrupt, the software can use the INBUFM bit to confirm the end of transmission.

Table 25.18 Buffer status indicated in the BSTS bit

ISEL or DIR	BSTS	FIFO buffer status
0 (receiving direction)	0	There is no received data, or data is being received. Reading from the FIFO port is disabled.
0 (receiving direction)	1	There is received data, or a zero-length packet is received. Reading from the FIFO port is allowed. When a zero-length packet is received, reading is not possible and the buffer must be cleared.
1 (transmitting direction)	0	Transmission has not completed. Writing to the FIFO port is disabled.
1 (transmitting direction)	1	Transmission is complete. CPU write is allowed.

Table 25.19 Buffer status indicated in the INBUFM bit

DIR	INBUFM	FIFO buffer status
0 (receiving direction)	Invalid	Invalid
1 (transmitting direction)	0	Transmission is complete. There is no data waiting to be transmitted.
1 (transmitting direction)	1	The FIFO port has written data to the buffer. There is data to be transmitted.

25.3.6 FIFO Buffer Clearing

Table 25.20 shows the methods for clearing the FIFO buffer. The FIFO buffer can be cleared using BCLR bit in the port control register, DnFIFOSEL.DCLRM, or the PIPEnCTR.ACLRM bit.

Single or double buffering can be selected for pipes 1 to 5 in the PIPECFG.DBLB bit.

Table 25.20 Buffer clearing methods

FIFO buffer clearing mode	Clearing FIFO buffer on the CPU side	Mode for automatically clearing the FIFO buffer after reading the specified pipe data	Auto buffer clear mode for discarding all received packets
Register used	CFIFOCTR DnFIFOCTR	DnFIFOSEL	PIPEnCTR
Bit used	BCLR	DCLRM	ACLRM
Clearing condition	Cleared by writing 1	1: Mode valid 0: Mode invalid	1: Mode valid 0: Mode invalid

(1) Auto buffer clear mode function

The USBFS discards all received data packets if the PIPEnCTR.ACLRM bit is set to 1. If a correct data packet is received, the ACK response is returned to the host controller. The auto buffer clear mode function can only be set in the FIFO buffer reading direction.

Setting the ACLRM bit to 1 and then to 0 clears the FIFO buffer of the selected pipe regardless of the access direction. An access cycle of at least 100 ns is required for the internal hardware sequence processing between ACLRM = 1 and ACLRM = 0.

25.3.7 FIFO Port Functions

Table 25.21 shows the settings for the FIFO port functions. In write access, writing data until the maximum packet size is reached automatically enables transmission of the data. To enable transmission before the maximum packet size is reached, set the BVAL flag in the port control register to end writing. To send a zero-length packet, use the BCLR bit to clear the buffer, and then set the BVAL flag to end writing.

In reading, reception of new packets is automatically enabled when all data is read. Data cannot be read when a zero-length packet is received (DTLN[8:0] = 0), so the buffer must be cleared with the BCLR bit. The length of the receive data can be confirmed in the DTLN[8:0] bits in the port control register.

Table 25.21 FIFO port function settings

Register name	Bit name	Description
CFIFOSEL, DnFIFOSEL (n = 0, 1)	RCNT	Selects DTLN[11:0] read mode
	REW	FIFO buffer rewind (re-read, rewrite)
	DCLRM	Automatically clears receive data for a specified pipe after the data is read (only for DnFIFO)
	DREQE	Enables DTC transfers (only for DnFIFO)
	MBW	FIFO port access bit width
	BIGEND	Selects FIFO port endian
	ISEL	FIFO port access direction (only for DCP)
	CURPIPE	Selects the current pipe
CFIFOCTR, DnFIFOCTR (n = 0, 1)	BVAL	Ends writing to the FIFO buffer
	BCLR	Clears the FIFO buffer on the CPU side
	DTLN	Checks the length of receive data

(1) FIFO port selection

Table 25.22 shows the pipes that can be selected with the different FIFO ports. The pipe to be accessed must be selected in the CURPIPE[3:0] bits in the port select register. After the pipe is selected, the software must check whether the written value can be read correctly from the CURPIPE[3:0] bits. (If the previous pipe number is read, it indicates that the USBFS is modifying the pipe.) Next, the software checks that the FRDY bit in the port control register is 1.

In addition, the software must specify the bus width to be accessed in the MBW bit in the port select register. The FIFO buffer access direction conforms to the PIPECFG.DIR setting. For the DCP only, the ISEL bit in the port select register determines the direction.

Table 25.22 FIFO port access by pipe

Pipe	Access method	Ports that can be used
DCP	CPU access	CFIFO port register
Pipes 1 to 9	CPU access	- CFIFO port register - D0FIFO/D1FIFO port register
	DTC access	D0FIFO/D1FIFO port register

(2) REW bit

It is possible to temporarily stop access to a pipe currently being accessed, access a different pipe, and then continue processing for the first pipe again. The REW bit in the port select register is used for this processing.

If a pipe is selected in the CURPIPE[3:0] bits in the port select register with the REW bit set to 1, the pointer used for reading from and writing to the FIFO buffer is reset, and reading or writing can be carried out from the first byte. If a pipe is selected with 0 set for the REW bit, data can be read and written in continuation from the previous selection, without the pointer being reset.

To access the FIFO port, the software must check that the FRDY bit in the port control register is 1 after selecting a pipe.

25.3.8 DTC Transfers (D0FIFO and D1FIFO Ports)

(1) Overview of DTC transfers

For pipes 1 to 9, the FIFO port can be accessed using the CDTC. When buffer access for a pipe targeted for DTC Transfer is enabled, a DTC transfer request is issued.

Select the unit of transfer to the FIFO port in the DnFIFOSEL.MBW bit, and select the pipe targeted for the DTC Transfer in the DnFIFOSEL.CURPIPE[3:0] bits. Do not change the selected pipe during the DTC transfer.

(2) DnFIFO auto clear mode (D0FIFO and D1FIFO port reading direction)

If 1 is set in the DnFIFOSEL.DCLRM bit, the USBFS automatically clears the FIFO buffer of the selected pipe when reading of data from the FIFO buffer is complete.

Table 25.23 shows the packet reception and FIFO buffer clearing processing by software for each of the settings. As shown in the table, the buffer clearing conditions depend on the value set in the PIPECFG.BFRE bit. Using the DnFIFOSEL.DCLRM bit eliminates the need for the buffer to be cleared by software in any situation that requires buffer clearing. This enables DTC transfers without involving software.

The DnFIFO auto clear mode can only be set in the FIFO buffer reading direction.

Table 25.23 Packet reception and FIFO buffer clearing processing by software

Buffer status when packet is received	Register setting			
	DCLRM = 0		DCLRM = 1	
	BFRE = 0	BFRE = 1	BFRE = 0	BFRE = 1
Buffer full	No clearing required	No clearing required	No clearing required	No clearing required
Zero-length packet reception	Clearing required	Clearing required	No clearing required	No clearing required
Normal short packet reception	No clearing required	Clearing required	No clearing required	No clearing required
Transaction count end	No clearing required	Clearing required	No clearing required	No clearing required

25.3.9 Control Transfers Using the DCP

The DCP is used for data transfers in the control transfer data stage. The FIFO buffer of the DCP is a 64-byte single buffer with a fixed area for both control reads and control writes. The FIFO buffer can be accessed only through the CFIFO port.

25.3.9.1 Control Transfers in Device Controller Mode

(1) Setup stage

The USBFS sends an ACK response to a normal setup packet for the USBFS. The USBFS operates in the setup stage as follows:

On receiving a new setup packet, the USBFS sets the following bits:

- Sets the INTSTS0.VALID bit to 1
- Sets the DCPCTR.PID[1:0] bits to NAK
- Sets the DCPCTR.CCPL bit to 0

When the USBFS receives a data packet following a setup packet, it stores the USB request parameters in USBREQ, USBVAL, USBINDX, and USBLENG.

Before performing the response processing for a control transfer, set the VALID flag to 0. When the VALID bit = 1, PID = BUF cannot be set, and the data stage cannot be terminated.

Using the VALID bit function, the USBFS can suspend a request being processed when it receives a new USB request during a control transfer and return a response to the latest request.

In addition, the USBFS automatically detects the direction bit (bmRequestType bit [8]) and the request data length (wLength) in the received USB request. It distinguishes between control read transfers, control write transfers, and no-data control transfers, and it controls stage transitions. For an incorrect sequence, a sequence error occurs in the control transfer stage transition interrupt, and the interrupt is reported to the software. For a diagram of the stage control by the USBFS, see Figure 25.9.

(2) Data stage

The DCP must be used to execute data transfers for received USB requests. Before accessing the DCP FIFO buffer, specify the access direction in the CFIFOSEL.ISEL bit.

If the transfer data is larger than the size of the DCP FIFO buffer, execute the data transfer using the BRDY interrupt for control write transfers and the BEMP interrupt for control read transfers.

(3) Status stage

Control transfers are terminated by setting the DCPCTR.CCPL bit to 1 while the DCPCTR.PID[1:0] bits are set to BUF.

After this setting is made, the USBFS automatically executes the status stage based on the data transfer direction determined at the setup stage. The procedure is as follows:

- For control read transfers
The USBFS receives a zero-length packet from the USB host and transmits an ACK response.
- For control write transfers and no-data control transfers
The USBFS transmits a zero-length packet and receives an ACK response from the USB host.

(4) Control transfer auto response function

The USBFS automatically responds to a correct SET_ADDRESS request. If any of the following errors occurs in the SET_ADDRESS request, a response from the software is necessary.

- bmRequestType is not 0x00: Any transfer other than a control write transfer
- wIndex is not 0x00: Request error
- wLength is not 0x00: Any transfer other than a no-data control transfer
- wValue is larger than 0x7F: Request error
- INTSTS0.DVSQ[2:0] are 011b (Configured state): Control transfer of a device state error

For all requests other than the SET_ADDRESS request, a response is required from the corresponding software.

25.3.10 Bulk Transfers (Pipes 1 to 5)

The FIFO buffer usage (single/double buffer setting) is configurable for bulk transfers. The USBFS provides the following functions for bulk transfers:

- BRDY interrupt function (PIPECFG.BFRE bit), see [section 25.3.3.1. BRDY Interrupt](#)
- Transaction count function (PIPEnTRE.TRENB, TRCLR, and PIPEnTRN.TRNCNT[15:0] bits), see [section 25.3.4.5. Transaction Counter for Pipes 1 to 5 in the Receiving Direction](#)
- Response PID = NAK function (PIPECFG.SHTNAK bit), see [section 25.3.4.8. Response PID = NAK Function](#)
- Auto response mode (PIPEnCTR.ATREPM bit), see [section 25.3.4.9. Auto Response Mode](#)

25.3.11 Interrupt Transfers (Pipes 6 to 9)

In device controller mode, the USBFS performs interrupt transfers based on the timing dictated by the host controller.

25.3.12 Isochronous Transfers (Pipes 1 and 2)

The USBFS provides the following functions for isochronous transfers:

- Notification of isochronous transfer error
- Interval counter specified in the PIPEPERI.IITV[2:0] bits
- Isochronous IN transfer data setup control (IDLY function)
- Isochronous IN transfer buffer flush function specified in the PIPEPERI.IFIS bit

25.3.12.1 Error Detection in Isochronous Transfers

The USBFS provides a function for detecting the errors described in this section, so that when errors occur in isochronous transfers, they can be controlled by software. [Table 25.24](#) and [Table 25.25](#) show the priority order for errors detected by the USBFS and the associated interrupts.

PID errors

- The PID value of the received packet is invalid.

CRC errors and bit stuffing errors

- A CRC error is found in a received packet or the bit stuffing is illegal.

Maximum packet size exceeded

- The data size of the received packet exceeds the specified maximum packet size.

Overrun and underrun errors

In device controller mode:

- There is no data to be sent in the FIFO buffer at token receive time in the IN (transmitting) direction
- The FIFO buffer is full at token receive time in the OUT (receiving) direction

Interval errors

In device controller mode, the following cases are treated as an interval error:

- Failure to receive an IN token in the interval frame during an isochronous IN transfer
- Failure to receive an OUT token in the interval frame during an isochronous OUT transfer

Table 25.24 Error detection for token transmission and reception

Detection priority	Error	Generated interrupt and status
1	PID error	No interrupts are generated in device controller mode (ignored as a corrupted packet)
2	CRC or bit stuffing error	No interrupts are generated in device controller mode (ignored as a corrupted packet)
3	Overrun or underrun error	An NRDY interrupt is generated to set the FRMNUM.OVRN bit to 1 in device controller mode. In device controller mode, a zero-length packet is transmitted in response to an IN token. No data packets are received in response to the OUT token.
4	Interval error	An NRDY interrupt is generated in device controller mode.

Table 25.25 Error detection for data packet reception

Detection priority	Error	Generated interrupt and status
1	PID error	No interrupts are generated (ignored as a corrupted packet)
2	CRC or bit stuffing error	An NRDY interrupt is generated and the FRMNUM.CRCE bit sets to 1 in device controller mode
3	Maximum packet size exceeded error	A BEMP interrupt is generated and the PID[1:0] bits set to STALL in device controller mode

25.3.12.2 DATA-PID

In device controller mode, the USBFS responds to a received PID as follows:

(1) IN direction

- DATA0: Transmitted as data packet PID
- DATA1: Not transmitted
- DATA2: Not transmitted
- mDATA: Not transmitted

(2) OUT direction

- DATA0: Received normally as data packet PID
- DATA1: Received normally as data packet PID

- DATA2: Packets ignored
- mDATA: Packets ignored

25.3.12.3 Interval Counter

The isochronous transfer interval can be set in the PIPEPERI.IITV[2:0] bits. In device controller mode, the interval counter enables the functions as shown in [Table 25.26](#).

Table 25.26 Interval counter functions in device controller mode

Transfer direction	Function	Conditions for detection
IN	Transmit buffer flush	Failure to receive an IN token successfully in the interval frame during an isochronous IN transfer.
OUT	Notification of no reception of token	Failure to receive an OUT token successfully in the interval frame during an isochronous OUT transfer.

The interval count is performed when an SOF is received or for interpolated SOFs, so the isochronism can be maintained even if an SOF is corrupt. The frame interval can be set to 2^{IITV} frames.

(1) Counter initialization in device controller mode

The USBFS initializes the interval counter under the following conditions:

- Power-on reset
This initializes the PIPEPERI.IITV[2:0] bits.
- FIFO buffer initialization using the ACLRM bit
This does not initialize the IITV[2:0] bits, but does initialize the count value.

After the interval counter is initialized, the interval count starts under one of the following conditions when a packet is transferred successfully:

- An SOF is received after data is transmitted in response to an IN token when PID = BUF
- An SOF is received after data is received in response to an OUT token when PID = BUF

The interval counter is not initialized in the following conditions:

- When the PID[1:0] bits are set to NAK or STALL
This does not stop the interval timer. The USBFS attempts the transaction in the next interval.
- When the USB bus is reset or USBFS is suspended
This does not initialize the IITV[2:0] bits. When an SOF is received, the interval counter starts counting from the value set before the SOF was received.

(2) Interval counting and transfer control in device controller mode

When the selected pipe is for isochronous OUT transfers

The USBFS generates an NRDY interrupt when it fails to receive a data packet within the interval set in the PIPEPERI.IITV[2:0] bits.

The USBFS also generates an NRDY interrupt when it fails to receive data because of a CRC error or other errors contained in the data packet or because the FIFO buffer is full.

The NRDY interrupt is generated on SOF packet reception. Even if the SOF packet is corrupted, internal interpolation allows the interrupt to be generated when the SOF packet is received. However, when the IITV bits are set to a value other than 0, the USBFS generates an NRDY interrupt on receiving an SOF packet for every interval after interval counting starts.

When the PID[1:0] bits are set to NAK by software after starting the interval timer, the USBFS does not generate an NRDY interrupt on receiving an SOF packet.

The timing for starting interval counting depend on the IITV[2:0] setting as follows:

- When the IITV[2:0] bits = 0:

Interval counting starts at the next frame after the software changes the PID[1:0] bits of the selected pipe to BUF.

- When the IITV[2:0] bits $\neq 0$:

Interval counting starts on completion of successful reception of the first data packet after the PID[1:0] bits for the selected pipe are changed to BUF.

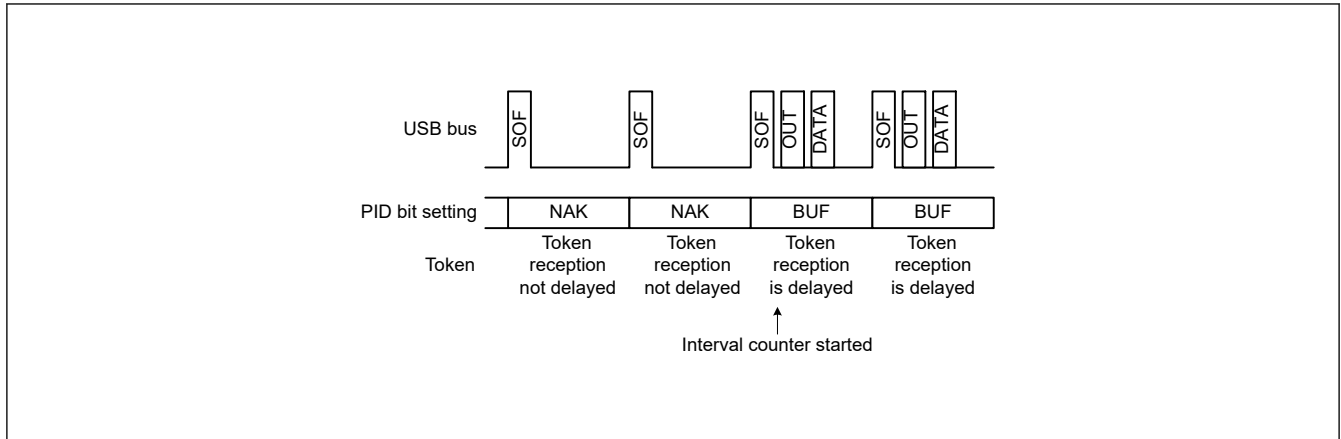


Figure 25.10 Relationship between frames and expected token reception when IITV[2:0] = 0

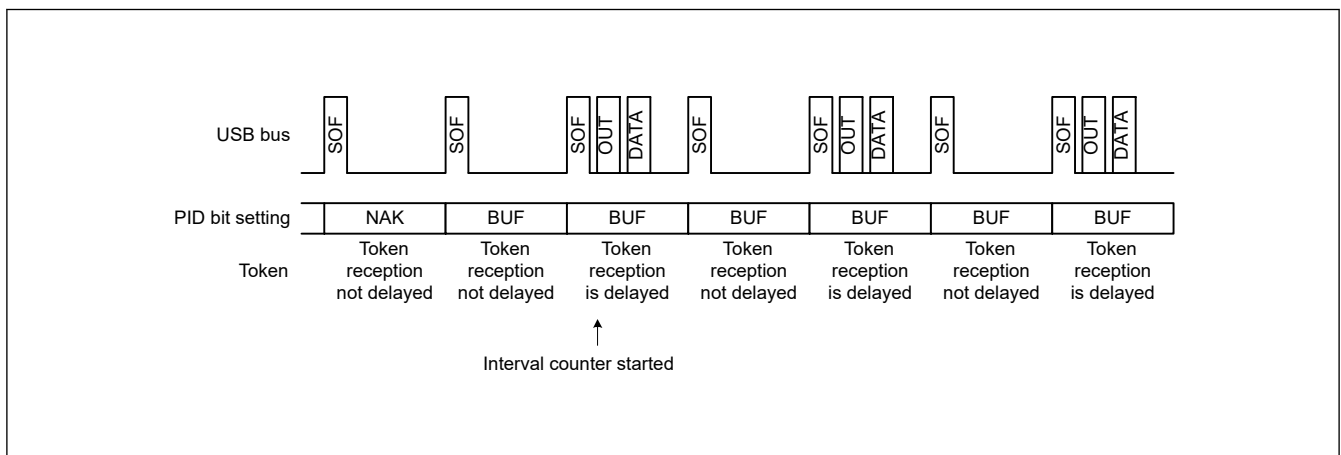


Figure 25.11 Relationship between frames and expected token reception when IITV[2:0] $\neq 0$

When the selected pipe is for isochronous IN transfers

The PIPEPERI.IFIS bit must be 1 for this use case. When IFIS = 0, the USBFS transmits a data packet in response to a received IN token regardless of the PIPEPERI.IITV[2:0] setting.

When IFIS is 1 and there is data to be transmitted in the FIFO buffer, the USBFS clears the FIFO buffer when it fails to receive an IN token in the frame at the interval set in the IITV[2:0] bits.

The USBFS also clears the FIFO buffer when it fails to receive an IN token successfully because of a bus error, such as a CRC error, contained in the IN token.

The FIFO buffer is cleared on SOF packet reception. Even if the SOF packet is corrupted, the internal interpolation allows the FIFO buffer to be cleared when the SOF packet is received.

The timing to start interval counting depends on the IITV[2:0] setting, as with OUT transfers.

The interval is counted on any of the following conditions in device controller mode:

- When a hardware reset is applied to the USBFS (which also sets the IITV[2:0] bits to 000b)
- When the PIPEnCTR.ACLRM bit is set to 1 by software
- When the USBFS detects a USB bus reset

(3) Transmit data setup for isochronous transfers in device controller mode

With isochronous data transmission using the USBFS in device controller mode, after data is written to the FIFO buffer, a data packet can be transmitted in the first frame after the SOF packet is detected. This isochronous transfer transmit data setup function can identify the frame that started transmission.

When the double buffering is used, transmission is only enabled for the buffer where data writing was completed first, even after the data write to both buffers is complete. Accordingly, even if multiple IN tokens are received, only the one packet of FIFO buffer data is transmitted.

When the FIFO buffer is ready to transmit data when an IN token is received, the data is transferred and a normal response is returned. However, if the FIFO buffer cannot transmit data, a zero-length packet is transmitted and an underrun error occurs.

Figure 25.12 shows an example transmission using the isochronous transfer transmission data setup function when IITV = 0 (every frame) is set.

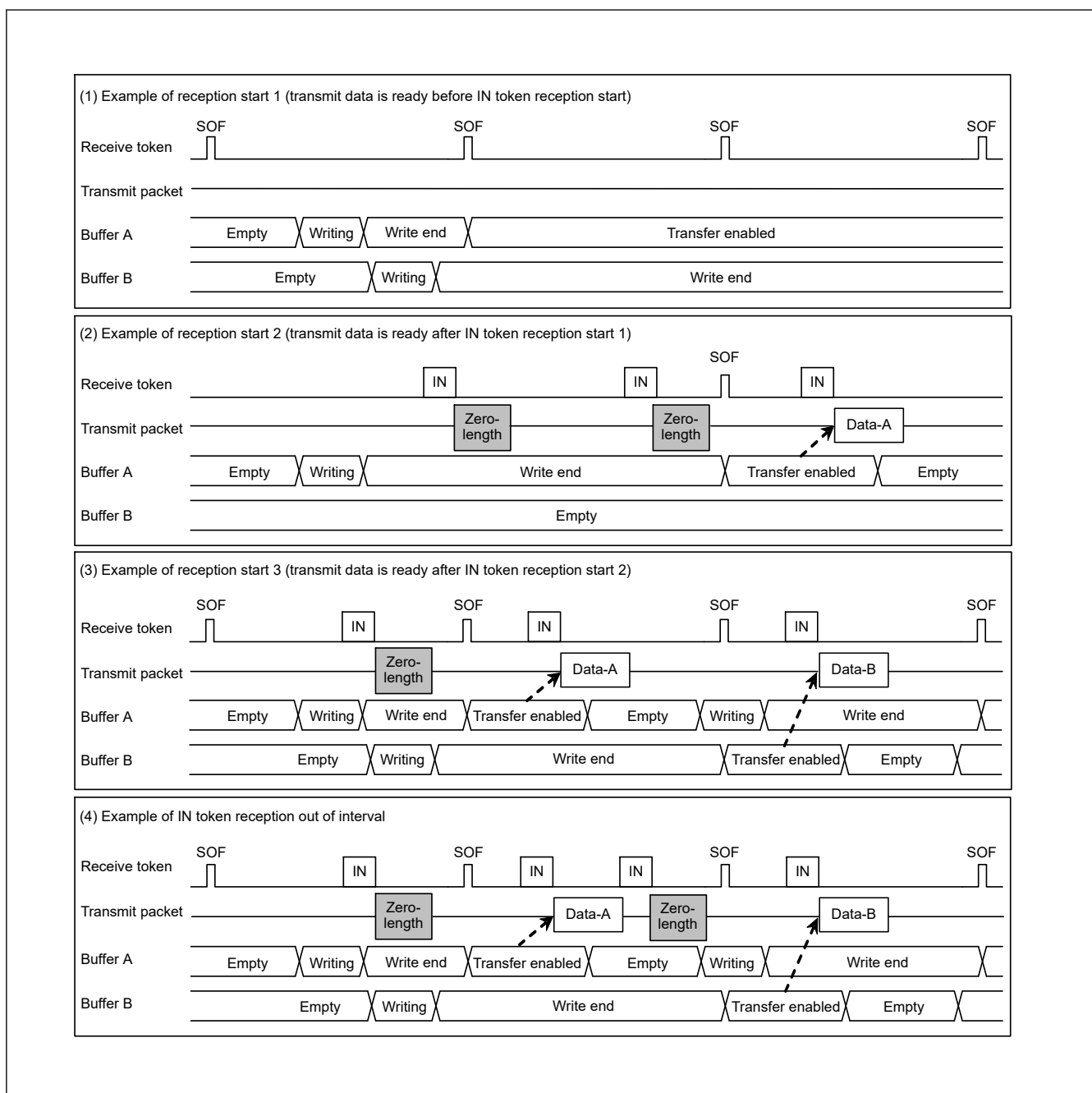


Figure 25.12 Example data setup operation

(4) Transmit buffer flush for isochronous transfers in device controller mode

In device controller mode during isochronous data transmission, if the USBFS receives an SOF packet for the next frame without receiving an IN token in the interval frame, it operates as if the IN token is corrupt and clears the buffer that is enabled for transmission, putting that buffer in the writing enabled state.

When double buffering is used and writing to both buffers is complete, the cleared FIFO buffer is assumed to be the one where the data was transmitted in the interval frame, and transmission is enabled for the FIFO buffer that was not cleared on SOF packet reception.

The timing of the buffer flush function depends on the PIPEPERI.IITV[2:0] setting as follows:

- When IITV = 0:
The buffer flush operation starts from the first frame after the pipe is enabled.
- When IITV $\neq$ 0:
The buffer flush operation starts after the first normal transaction.

Figure 25.13 shows an example buffer flush. When an unanticipated token is received before the interval frame, the USBFS sends the write data or a zero-length packet as an underrun error, depending on the data setup status.

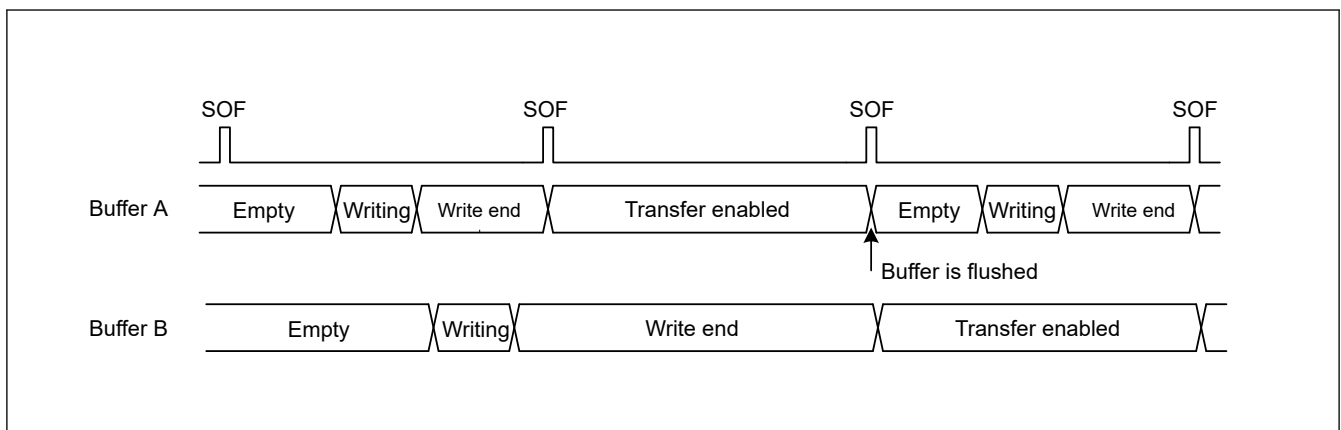


Figure 25.13 Example buffer flush operation

Figure 25.14 shows an example interval error occurrence. There are five types of interval errors, as shown in the figure. An interval error occurs at timing (A), and the buffer flush function is activated.

If an interval error occurs during an IN transfer, the buffer flush function is activated. If it occurs during an OUT transfer, an NRDY interrupt is generated. Use the FRMNUM.OVRN bit to distinguish between this and NRDY interrupts triggered by received packet errors and overrun errors.

For tokens that are shaded in the figure, responses are returned based on the FIFO buffer status.

- IN direction:
 - If the buffer is ready to transfer data, the data is transferred and a normal response is returned
 - If the buffer is not ready to transfer data, a zero-length packet is transmitted and an underrun error occurs
- OUT direction:
 - If the buffer is ready to receive data, the data is received and a normal response is returned
 - If the buffer is not ready to receive data, the received data is discarded and an overrun error occurs

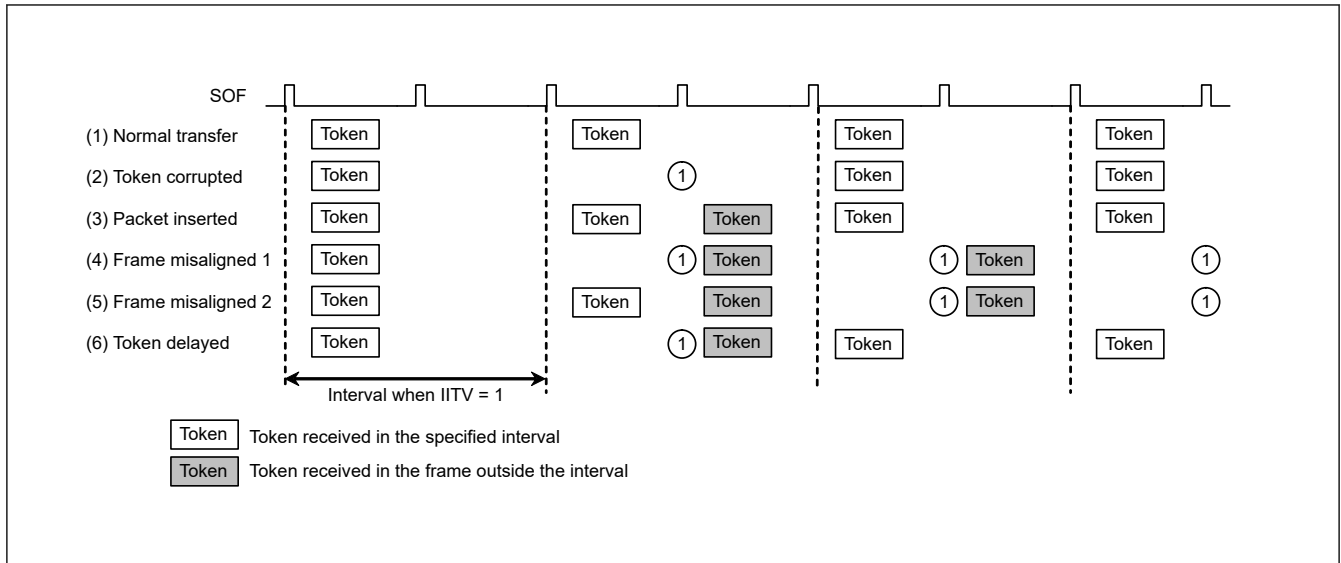


Figure 25.14 Example interval error occurrence when IITV = 1

25.3.13 SOF Interpolation Function

In device controller mode, if packet reception is disabled at intervals of 1 ms because the SOF packet is corrupted or missing, the USBFS interpolates the SOF. SOF interpolation begins when the USBE and SCKE bits in SYSCFG are set to 1 and an SOF packet is received.

The interpolation function is initialized under the following conditions:

- MCU reset
- USB bus reset
- Suspend state detection

The SOF interpolation operates as follows:

- The interpolation function is not activated until an SOF packet is received
- When the first SOF packet is received, interpolation is performed by counting 1 ms on the 48-MHz internal clock
- When the second and subsequent SOF packets are received, interpolation is performed at the previous reception interval
- Interpolation is not performed in the Suspend state or on reception of a USB bus reset

The USBFS supports the following functions controlled by SOF packet reception. These functions operate normally with SOF interpolation if the SOF packet is missing:

- Updating of the frame number
- SOFR interrupt timing
- Isochronous transfer interval count

If an SOF packet is missing during full-speed operation, the FRMNUM.FRNM[10:0] bits are not updated.

25.3.14 Pipe Schedule

25.3.14.1 Transfer Schedule

This section describes the transfer scheduling within a frame of the USBFS. After the USBFS sends an SOF, the transfer is carried out in the following sequence:

1. Execution of periodic transfers:

A pipe is searched for in the order of pipe 1 → pipe 2 → pipe 6 → pipe 7 → pipe 8 → pipe 9, and then if there is a pipe for which an isochronous or interrupt transfer transaction can be generated, the transaction is generated.

2. Setup transactions for control transfers:

The DCP is checked, and if a setup transaction is possible, it is sent.

3. Execution of bulk transfers, control transfer data stages, and control transfer status stages:

A pipe is searched for in the order of DCP → pipe 1 → pipe 2 → pipe 3 → pipe 4 → pipe 5, and then if there is a pipe for which a transaction for a bulk transfer, a control transfer data stage, or a control transfer status stage can be generated, the transaction is generated.

When a transaction is generated, processing moves to the next pipe transaction regardless of whether the response from the peripheral device is ACK or NAK. If there is time for transfer within the frame, step 3 is repeated.

25.4 Usage Notes

25.4.1 Settings for the Module-stop State

USBFS operation can be disabled or enabled using Module Stop Control Register B (MSTPCRB). The USBFS is initially stopped after reset. Releasing the module-stop state enables access to the registers. For details, see [section 10, Low Power Modes](#).

25.4.2 Clearing the Interrupt Status Register on Canceling Software Standby Mode

Because the input buffer is always enabled in Software Standby mode, an unexpected interrupt might occur under the following conditions:

- When the interrupt is enabled in Normal mode
- When the interrupt is disabled in Software Standby mode
- When the input level of the pin that cancels software standby mode is changed in Software Standby mode

These conditions might cause the associated interrupt flag in the Interrupt Status Register to set unexpectedly. After the MCU cancels the Software Standby mode, the unexpected interrupt might be sent to the interrupt controller. To avoid this, always clear the INTSTS0 registers in the canceling sequence.

25.4.3 Clearing the Interrupt Status Register After Setting Up the Port Function

The input buffer is disabled before the PmnPFS.PSEL and PmnPFS.PMR port is set up, so the internal signal is fixed high or low. The input buffer is enabled after the port is set so that the external pin state is propagated to the MCU. An unexpected interrupt might occur at this time, causing the VBINT bit in INTSTS0, or other interrupt status flags to set to 1. To avoid a malfunction, always clear the INTSTS0 registers after setting up the port.

25.4.4 Settings for HOCO User Trimming Control Code

When USBFS selects HOCO as the operation clock (SYSCFG.SCKE=1), writing any other value except 00h to HOCO User Trimming Control Register (HOCOUTCR.HOCOUTRIM[7:0]) is prohibited. For HOCOUTCR register, see [section 8, Clock Generation Circuit](#).

26. USB Type-C Interface

26.1 Overview

The USB Type-C interface complies with Universal Serial Bus Type-C Cable and Connector Specification, Release 2.4.

USB Type-C interface supports the following function through configuration channels (USB_CC1 and USB_CC2) and USB bus power status (USB_VBUS).

- Detection of connection or disconnection for a USB port that complies with the USB Type-C specification
- Detection of source-supplied current capability from Default USB/1.5A/3.0A.

Table 26.1 lists the features based on USB Type-C specification, Figure 26.1 shows a block diagram, Figure 26.2 shows the connection state diagram, and Table 26.2 lists the I/O pins.

Table 26.1 USB Type-C interface specifications

Item	Description
Basic function	• USB Type-C Sink – Controlling of CC termination, enable/disable pull-down R_d and pull-down R_{open}. – Detection of source connection and disconnection – CC timing control (debouncing) – Sink Power Sub-States transition according to detection of source-supplied current capability
Operation mode	• HW controlling mode – State detection and transition according to Figure 26.2 is automatically controlled by the internal sequencer.
Interrupts	• Status change interrupt (USBCC_CCI) – Includes a connection status change, CC status change, VBUS status change, and R_p detection. • R_p detection interrupt (USBCC_CCS) – R_p detection. This interrupt can be used for canceling Software Standby mode or Snooze mode.
Module-stop function	Module-stop state can be set
Other functions	• Sink for USB 2.0 only – Status on USB_CC1 or USB_CC2 is not referred for detecting the connection to a source. Only use USB_VBUS for detecting.

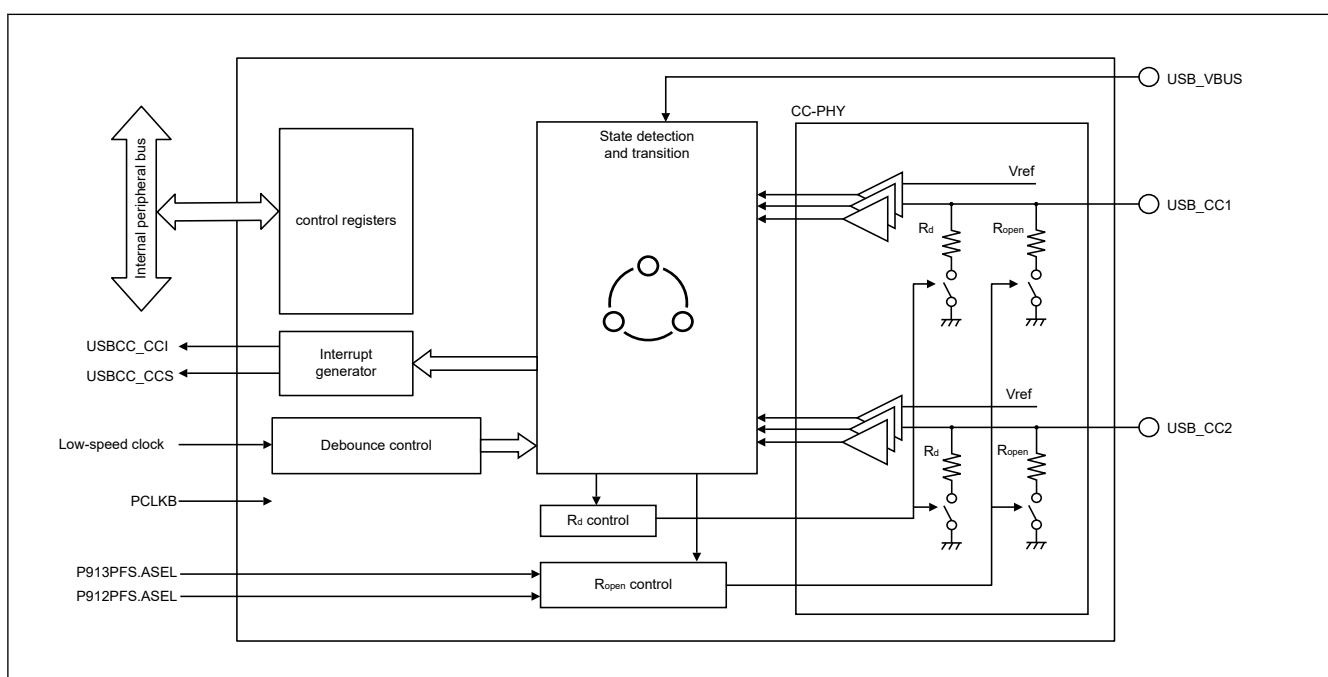


Figure 26.1 Block diagram for USB Type-C interface

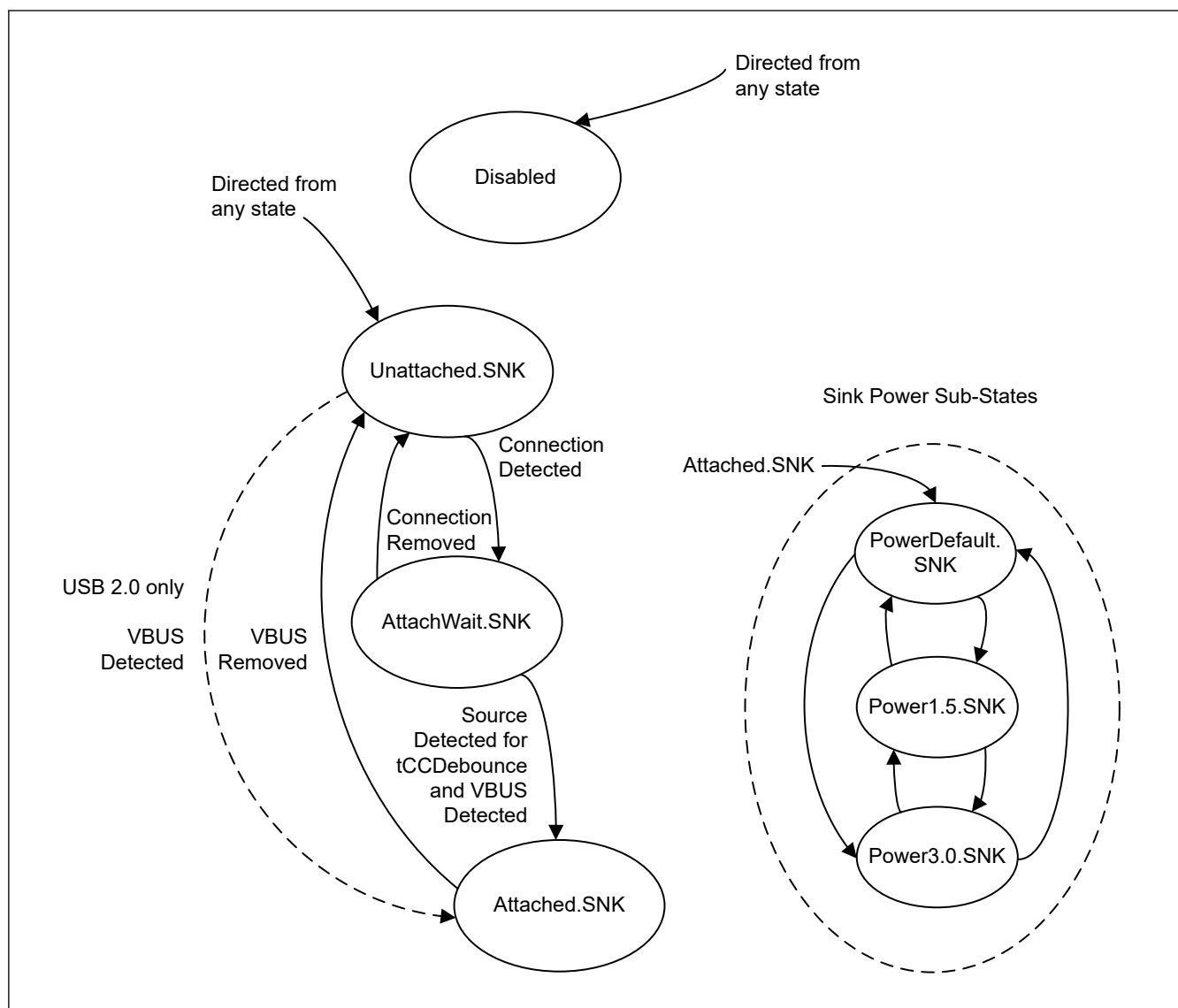


Figure 26.2 Connection state diagram for RA2L2 sink

Table 26.2 USB Type-C interface I/O pins

Functions	Pin name	I/O	Description
USB Type-C interface	USB_CC1	Input	Configuration Channel 1
	USB_CC2	Input	Configuration Channel 2
	USB_VBUS	Input	USB Bus Power Status

26.2 Register Descriptions

26.2.1 TCC : TYPE-C Control Register

Base address: USBCC = 0x4009_1000

Offset address: 0x000

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	RESET	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	—	This bit is read as 1. The write value should be 1.	R/W
30:1	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
31	RESET	Software Reset for USB Type-C Interface 0: In writing: Invalid (writing 0 has no effect). In reading: Normal operation is in progress, or the USB Type-C interface software reset has completed. 1: In writing: Initialize registers to be reset in the USB Type-C interface. In reading: USB Type-C interface software reset is in progress.	R/W

RESET bit (Software Reset for USB Type-C Interface)

The RESET bit initializes the registers to be reset by software. When the initialization is complete, the RESET bit is automatically set to 0. Check that this bit is 0 before proceeding. The initialized state for the USB Type-C interface is Disabled.

26.2.2 MEC : Mode Setting and State Control Register

Base address: USBCC = 0x4009_1000

Offset address: 0x004

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	GUS	GD
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	PMODE[1:0]	MODE	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	MODE	Connection State Mode 0: Sink-only mode 1: USB 2.0-only Sink mode	R/W
2:1	PMODE[1:0]	Source Current Detection Mode 00: Detect Default USB source 01: Detect Default USB and 1.5A source 10: Detect Default USB, 1.5A, and 3.0A source 11: Setting prohibited	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
15:3	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
16	GD	Direct Connection State to Disabled 0: Invalid (writing 0 has no effect) 1: Direct connection state to Disabled from any state	W
17	GUS	Direct Connection State to Unattached.SNK 0: Invalid (writing 0 has no effect) 1: Direct connection state to Unattached.SNK from any state.	W
31:18	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

MODE bit (Connection State Mode)

The MODE bit specifies the connection state mode.

PMODE[1:0] bits (Source Current Detection Mode)

The PMODE[1:0] bits specify the source current detection mode.

GD bit (Direct Connection State to Disabled)

Setting the GD bit to 1 direct the connection state to Disabled.

GUS bit (Direct Connection State to Unattached.SNK)

Setting the GUS bit to 1 direct the connection state to Unattached.SNK.

26.2.3 CCC : CC-PHY Control Register

Base address: USBCC = 0x4009_1000

Offset address: 0x08

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	PDOWN	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	CCSEL	—	—	—	—	—	—	ZOPEN	RD
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	RD	RD Status 0: RD off 1: RD on	R
1	ZOPEN	zOPEN Control 0: zOPEN off 1: zOPEN on	R/W
7:2	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
8	CCSEL	Selection of CC 0: vRd-1.5 or vRd-3.0 detection is applied on USB_CC1 1: vRd-1.5 or vRd-3.0 detection is applied on USB_CC2	R
30:9	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
31	PDOWN	CC-PHY Power Down Control 0: Not power down 1: Power down	R/W

RD bit (RD Status)

The pull-down RD is controlled by hardware and this bit shows the RD on/off status.

ZOPEN bit (zOPEN Control)

The ZOPEN bit specifies the zOPEN applied or not applied when CCC.PDOWN = 1. The zOPEN is controlled by hardware and the ZOPEN bit shows the zOPEN on/off status when CCC.PDOWN = 0.

This bit is ignored when USB_CC1/USB_CC2 pins are not used for the USB Type-C interface.

CCSEL bit (Selection of CC)

This bit shows whether vRd-1.5 or vRd-3.0 detection is applied on CC1 or CC2.

PDOWN bit (CC-PHY Power Down Control)

Setting the PDOWN bit to 1 power down the CC-PHY.

Setting the PDOWN bit to 0 to use the USB Type-C interface. Keep the PDOWN bit to 1 if the USB Type-C interface is not used.

26.2.4 IES : Interrupt Enable Control and Status Register

Base address: USBCC = 0x4009_1000

Offset address: 0x0C

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	VRAIEN	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	VBUSIEN	CCIEN	—	—	—	CIEN
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	ISVRA	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	ISVBUS	ISCC	—	—	—	ISCN
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	ISCN	Connection Status Change Flag 0: In writing: Invalid (writing 0 has no effect). In reading: No connection status change occurred or this bit has already been cleared by software. 1: In writing: Set this bit to 0. In reading: Connection status changed.	R/W
3:1	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
4	ISCC	CC Status Change Flag 0: In writing: Invalid (writing 0 has no effect). In reading: No CC1/CC2 status change occurred or this bit has already been cleared by software. 1: In writing: Set this bit to 0. In reading: CC1/CC2 status changed.	R/W
5	ISVBUS	VBUS Status Change Flag 0: In writing: Invalid (writing 0 has no effect). In reading: No VBUS status change occurred or this bit has already been cleared by software. 1: In writing: Set this bit to 0. In reading: VBUS status changed.	R/W
14:6	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
15	ISVRA	Rp Detection Flag 0: In writing: Invalid (writing 0 has no effect). In reading: No source (Rp) is detected on CC1 or CC2, or this bit has already been cleared by software. 1: In writing: Set this bit to 0. In reading: Source (Rp) is detected on CC1 or CC2.	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
16	CIEN	Connection Status Change Interrupt Enable 0: No interrupt occurs when the ISCN flag is set to 1 1: Interrupt occurs when the ISCN flag is set to 1	R/W
19:17	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
20	CCIEN	CC Status Change Interrupt Enable 0: No interrupt occurs when the ISCC flag is set to 1 1: Interrupt occurs when the ISCC flag is set to 1	R/W
21	VBUSIEN	VBUS Status Change Interrupt Enable 0: No interrupt occurs when the ISVBUS flag is set to 1 1: Interrupt occurs when the ISVBUS flag is set to 1	R/W
30:22	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
31	VRAIEN	Rp Detection Interrupt Enable 0: No interrupt occurs when the ISVRA flag is set to 1 1: Interrupt occurs when the ISVRA flag is set to 1	R/W

ISCN bit (Connection Status Change Flag)

The ISCN bit indicates whether the status of the connection has changed. The changed status can be checked by the TCS.VRD30D bit, TCS.VRD15D bit, and TCS.SRCD bit.

ISCC bit (CC Status Change Flag)

The ISCC bit indicates whether the status of CC1 or CC2 has changed. The changed status of CC1 or CC2 can be checked by the TCS.CC1S bit or TCS.CC2S bit.

ISVBUS bit (VBUS Status Change Flag)

The ISVBUS bit indicates whether the status of VBUS has changed. The changed status of VBUS can be checked by TCS.VBUSS bit.

ISVRA bit (Rp Detection Flag)

The ISVRA bit indicates whether the source (Rp) is detected (CC voltage changed to be greater than vRa) on CC1 or CC2.

CIEN bit (Connection Status Change Interrupt Enable)

The CIEN bit enables or disables the occurrence of a connection status change interrupt when the ISCN flag is set to 1.

CCIEN bit (CC Status Change Interrupt Enable)

The CCIEN bit enables or disables the occurrence of a CC status change interrupt when the ISCC flag is set to 1.

VBUSIEN bit (VBUS Status Change Interrupt Enable)

The VBUSIEN bit enables or disables the occurrence of a VBUS status change interrupt when the ISVBUS flag is set to 1.

VRAIEN bit (Rp Detection Interrupt Enable)

The VRAIEN bit enables or disables the occurrence of a Rp detection interrupt when the ISVRA flag is set to 1.

26.2.5 TCS : Type-CC Connection State and Status Register

Base address: USBCC = 0x4009_1000

Offset address: 0x10

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	VBUS S	CC2S[1:0]	CC1S[1:0]	CNS[3:0]			PLUG	VRD3 0D	VRD1 5D	SRCD			
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	SRCD	Detection of Source Connection 0: Source is not connected (connection status not in Attached.SNK) 1: Source is connected (connection status in Attached.SNK)	R
1	VRD15D	Detection of Power1.5 Source Connection 0: Power1.5 source is not connected 1: Power1.5 source is connected	R
2	VRD30D	Detection of Power3.0 Source Connection 0: Power3.0 source is not connected 1: Power3.0 Source is connected	R
3	PLUG	Connection of Plug Orientation 0: CC1 is connected 1: CC2 is connected	R ^{*1}
7:4	CNS[3:0]	Status of Connection State 0000: Disabled 0001: Unattached.SNK 0010: AttachWait.SNK 0100: Attached.SNK (PowerDefault.SNK) 0101: Attached.SNK (Power1.5.SNK) 0110: Attached.SNK (Power3.0.SNK) Others: Undefined	R
9:8	CC1S[1:0]	Status of CC1 00: Open (below maximum vRa) 01: Default USB (above minimum vRd-Connect) 10: Power1.5 (voltage above minimum vRd-Connect, and within the range of vRd-1.5) 11: Power3.0 (voltage above minimum vRd-Connect, and within the range of vRd-3.0)	R
11:10	CC2S[1:0]	Status of CC2 00: Open (below maximum vRa) 01: Default USB (above minimum vRd-Connect) 10: Power1.5 (voltage above minimum vRd-Connect, and within the range of vRd-1.5) 11: Power3.0 (voltage above minimum vRd-Connect, and within the range of vRd-3.0)	R
12	VBUS	Status of VBUS 0: VBUS is off 1: VBUS is on	R
30:13	—	These bits are read as 0.	R

Note 1. This is valid only when the connection state is Attached.SNK in Sink-only mode (MEC.MODE=0).

SRCD bit (Detection of Source Connection)

The SRCD bit indicates whether a source is connected.

VRD15D bit (Detection of Power1.5 Source Connection)

The VRD15D bit indicates whether a Power1.5 source is connected.

VRD30D bit (Detection of Power3.0 Source Connection)

The VRD30D bit indicates whether a Power3.0 source is connected.

PLUG bit (Connection of Plug Orientation)

The PLUG bit indicates the connection of plug orientation is CC1 or CC2.

CNS[3:0] bits (Status of Connection State)

The CNS[3:0] bits indicate the status of the connection state.

CC1S[1:0] bits (Status of CC1)

The CC1S[1:0] bits indicate the status of CC1.

CC2S[1:0] bits (Status of CC2)

The CC2S[1:0] bits indicate the status of CC2.

VBUSS bit (Status of VBUS)

The VBUSS bit indicates the status of VBUS.

26.2.6 TSET : Type-C Related Timer Value Setting Register

Base address: USBCC = 0x4009_1000

Offset address: 0x14

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	RP_VALUE_CHANGE[7:0]							
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	PD_DEBOUNCE[7:0]								CC_DEBOUNCE[7:0]							
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	1	0	1	1	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7:0	CC_DEBOUNCE [7:0]	tCCDebounce value based on 1 ms unit. tCCDebounce is CC_DEBOUNCE × 1 ms.	R/W
15:8	PD_DEBOUNCE [7:0]	tPDDebounce value based on 1 ms unit. tPDDebounce is PD_DEBOUNCE × 1 ms.	R/W
23:16	RP_VALUE_CHANG E[7:0]	tRpValueChange value based on 1 ms unit. tRpValueChange is RP_VALUE_CHANGE × 1 ms.	R/W
30:24	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note: tCCDebounce, tPDDebounce, and tRpValueChange are specified in Universal Serial Bus Type-C Cable and Connector Specification.

26.3 Operation**26.3.1 HW Controlling Mode**

The operation mode of the USB Type-C interface is HW controlling mode in which state detection and transition according to [Figure 26.2](#) is automatically controlled by the internal sequencer.

Sink-only mode or USB 2.0-only Sink mode can be selected using MEC.MODE bit. These two modes are described in detail in this section.

[Sink-only mode]

When MEC.MODE = 0, the USB Type-C interface works in Sink-only mode. It supports the following states specified in [Figure 26.2](#). Detection of source-supplied current capability from Default USB/1.5A/3.0A can be available according to the

setting of MEC.PMODE[1:0]. When MEC.PMODE[1:0]=01 or 10, Sink Power Sub-States are supported after entering the Attached.SNK state.

Supported states

- Disabled
- Unattached.SNK
- AttachWait.SNK
- Attached.SNK
- PowerDefault.SNK
- Power1.5.SNK
- Power3.0.SNK

[USB 2.0-only Sink mode]

When MEC.MODE = 1, the USB Type-C interface works in USB 2.0-only Sink mode.

In USB 2.0-only Sink mode, only the USB bus power status (USB_VBUS) is used for state detection and transition, and configuration channels (USB_CC1 and USB_CC2) are not used for detecting connection or disconnection. It supports the following states.

Supported states

- Disabled
- Unattached.SNK
- Attached.SNK

26.3.2 CC Timing Control (Debouncing)

CC timing for debouncing shown in [Table 26.3](#) can be customized by setting the TSET register according to USB Type-C Cable and Connector Specification.

Table 26.3 Settings for CC Timing

Symbol	Bit field	Bit value	Note
tCCDebounce	CC_DEBOUNCE[7:0]	120 to 173	100 ms to 200 ms
tPDDebounce	PD_DEBOUNCE[7:0]	12 to 17	10 ms to 20 ms
tRpValueChange	RP_VALUE_CHANGE[7:0]	12 to 17	10 ms to 20 ms

Note: Supplying Low-speed on-chip oscillator (LOCO) clock is necessary in order to generate the CC timing for debouncing. Ensure that the LOCO is operating before using USB Type-C interface.

For details, see [section 8.2.7. LOCOCR : Low-Speed On-Chip Oscillator Control Register](#) and [section 41.3.2. Clock Timing](#).

26.3.3 Initial Setting

After chip reset is released, the CC-PHY is in power down with Ropen off, and the initial state of hardware is Disabled. Set both P913PFS.ASEL bit and P912PFS.ASEL bit to 1 and clear the MSTPCRB.MSTPB14 bit before setting registers in the USB Type-C interface. Then clear the CCC.PDOWN bit. After that, execute register settings according to different modes. For details, see [section 26.3.4. Operation Flow](#).

26.3.4 Operation Flow

26.3.4.1 HW Controlling Mode Flow

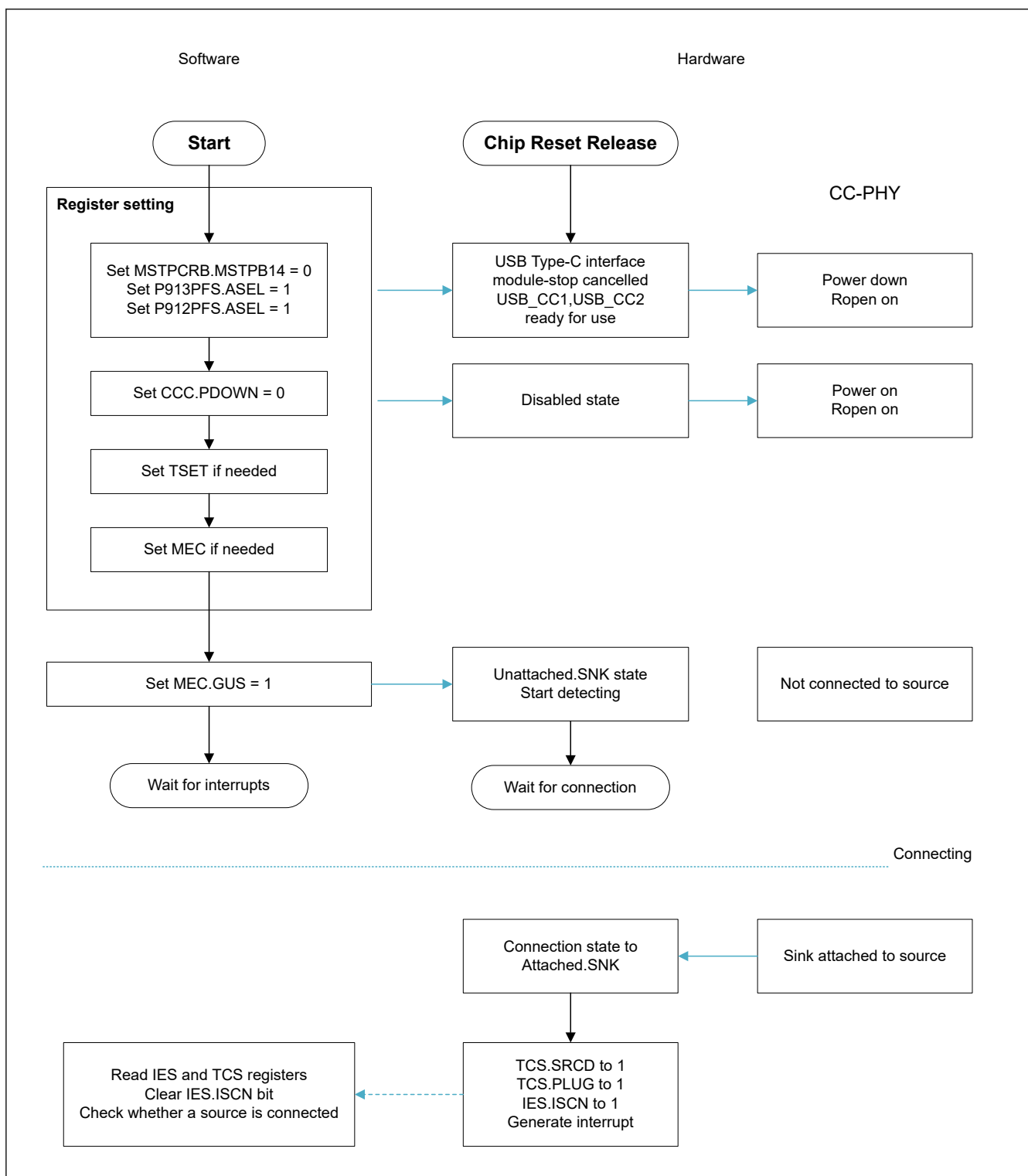


Figure 26.3 Sink-only mode initialization and connection detection flow



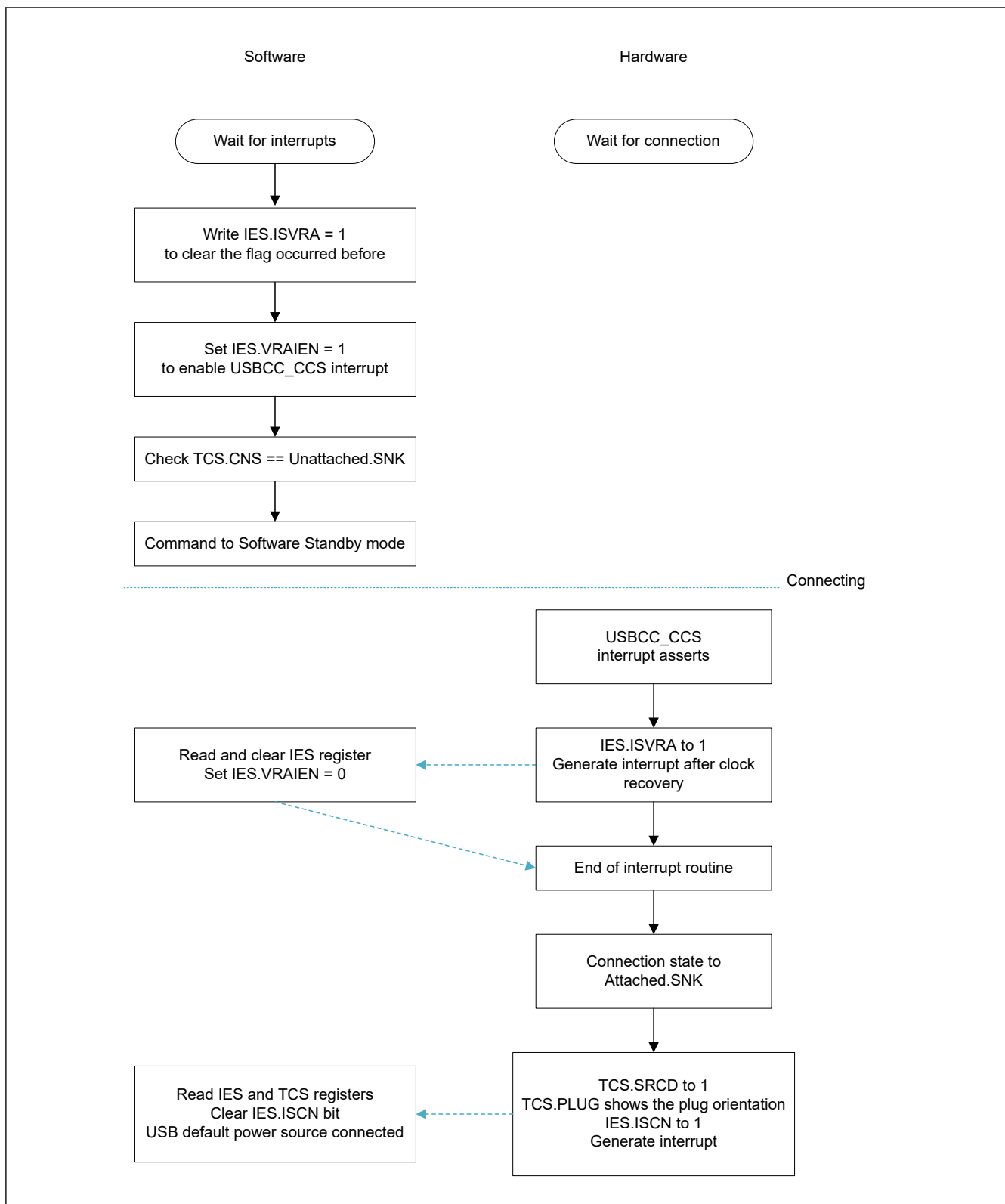


Figure 26.5 Sink-only mode Software Standby mode entry and asynchronous wakeup flow

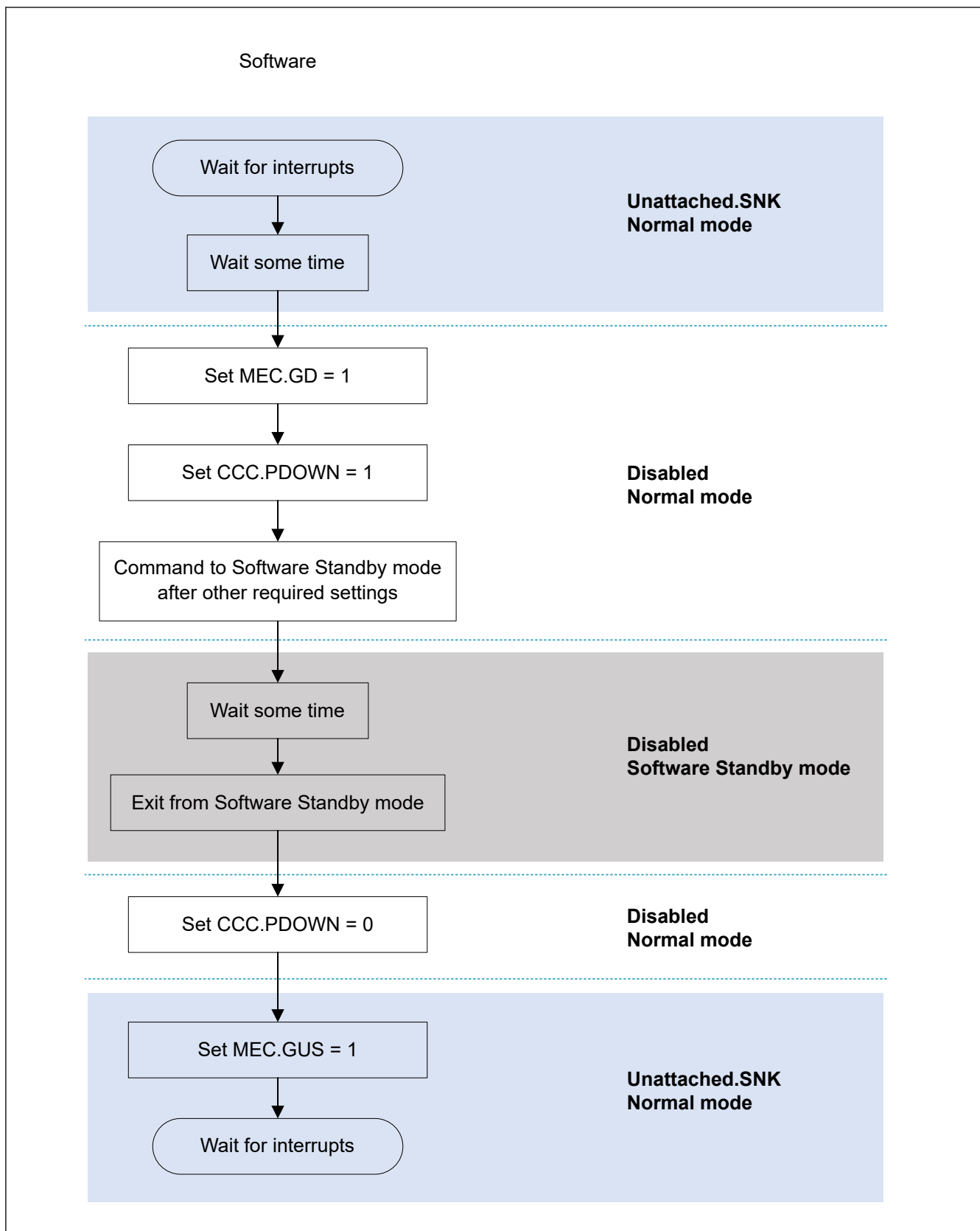


Figure 26.6 Sink-only mode Software Standby mode entry and exit flow

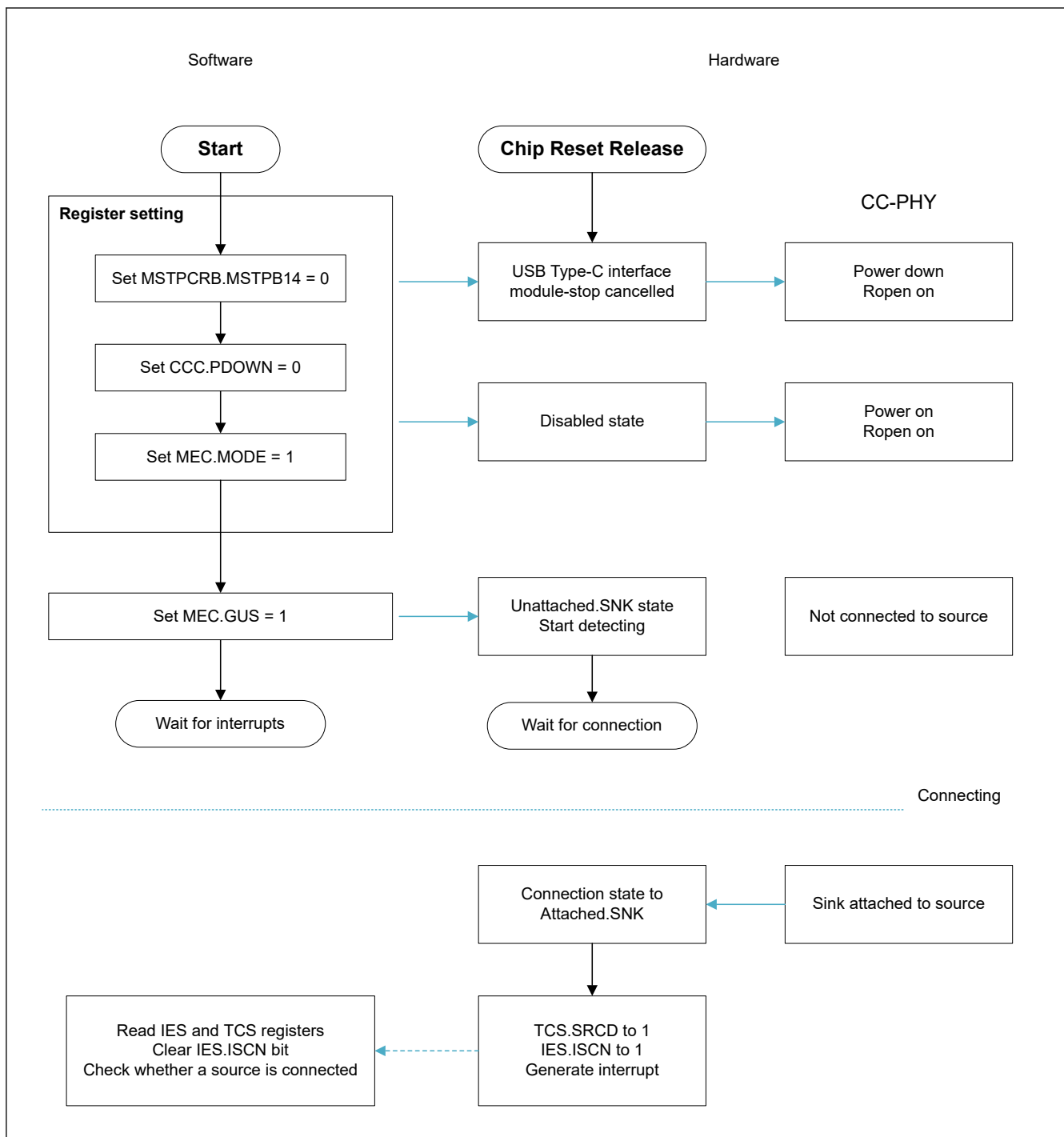


Figure 26.7 USB 2.0-only Sink mode initialization and connection detection flow

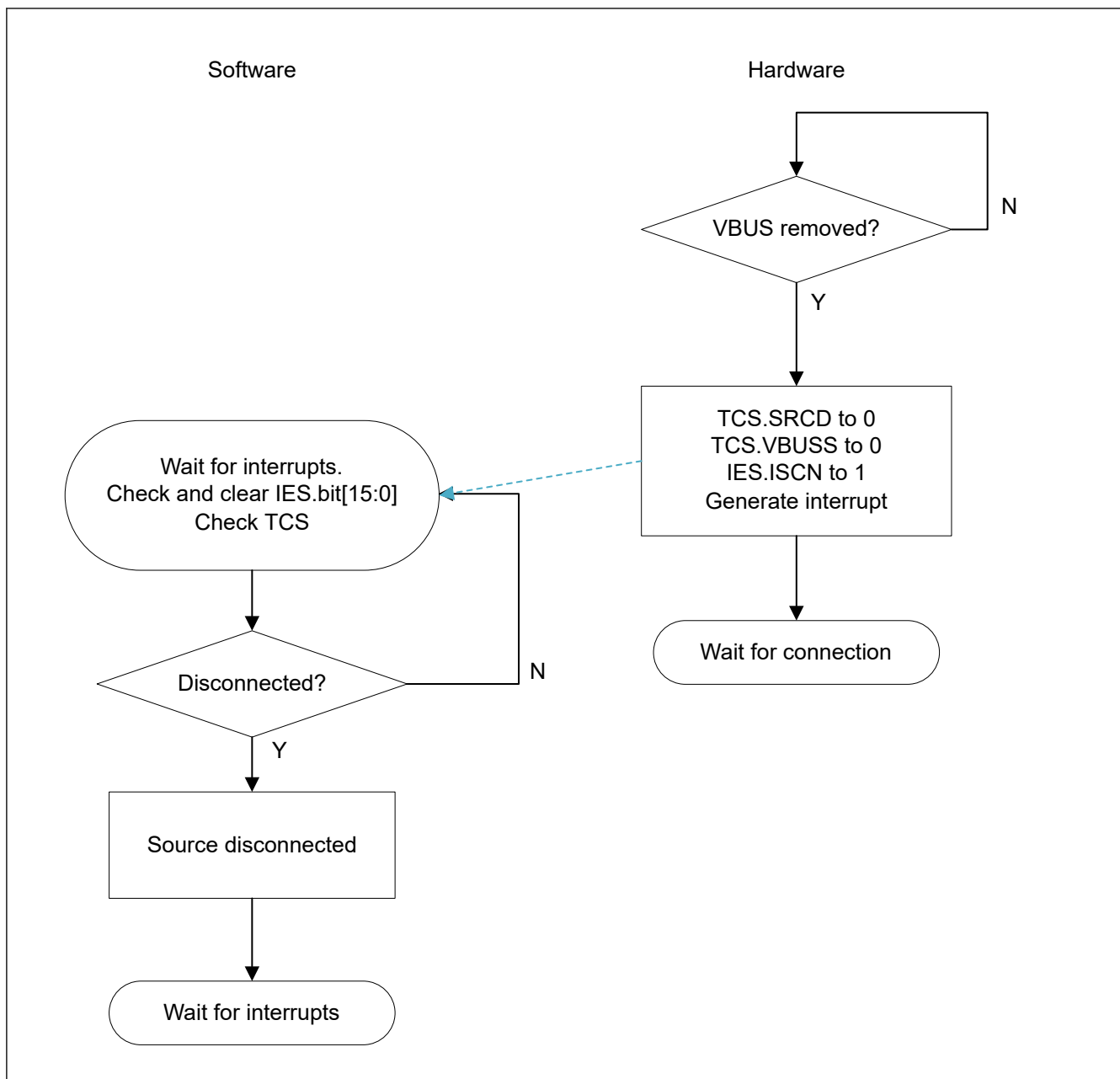


Figure 26.8 USB 2.0-only Sink mode disconnection detection flow

26.3.5 Interrupt

Table 26.4 lists the interrupt sources in the USB Type-C interface.

Table 26.4 USB Type-C interface interrupt sources

Name	Interrupt source	Interrupt flag	Interrupt enable	DTC activation
USBCC_CCI	Connection Status Change	IES.ISCN	IES.CIEN	Not possible
	CC Status Change	IES.ISCC	IES.CCIEN	
	VBUS Status Change	IES.ISVBUS	IES.VBUSIEN	
	Rp Detection	IES.ISVRA	IES.VRAIEN	
USBCC_CCS	Rp Detection	IES.ISVRA	IES.VRAIEN	Not possible

Each interrupt source has its own status flag. When an interrupt source signal is generated, the associated status flag in IES is set to 1. The associated status flag in IES can be cleared by writing 0. The Interrupt Controller Unit can change

the priorities for USBCC_CCI interrupt and USBCC_CCS interrupt. For details, see [section 12, Interrupt Controller Unit \(ICU\)](#). The Rp detection interrupt source can affect USBCC_CCI interrupt and USBCC_CCS interrupt. If the Rp detection is used for canceling Software Standby or Snooze mode, the following should be set before the MCU transitions to Software Standby mode.

1. Don't link the USBCC_CCI event to an interrupt (disable the USBCC_CCI interrupt) by IELSRn registers.
2. Set WUPEN2.USBCCSWUPEN = 1 (enable the use of USBCC_CCS interrupt to cancel Software Standby/Snooze mode).
3. Link the USBCC_CCS event to an interrupt by IELSRn registers.

If the Rp detection is not used for canceling Software Standby or Snooze mode, the following should be set.

1. Don't link the USBCC_CCS event to an interrupt (disable the USBCC_CCS interrupt) by IELSRn registers.
2. Set WUPEN2.USBCCSWUPEN = 0 (disable the use of USBCC_CCS interrupt to cancel Software Standby/Snooze mode).
3. Execute other setting related to the USBCC_CCI interrupt if necessary. And disable the USBCC_CCI interrupt by not linking the USBCC_CCI event to an interrupt by IELSRn registers, before the MCU transitions to Software Standby mode.

Note: The IELSRn register selects the IRQ source used by the NVIC. For details, see [section 12.2.6. IELSRn : ICU Event Link Setting Register n \(n = 0 to 31\)](#).

26.3.6 Usage Notes

26.3.6.1 Module-stop Function Setting

The Module Stop Control Register B (MSTPCRB) can enable or disable USB Type-C interface operation. The USB Type-C interface is initially stopped after reset. Releasing the module-stop state enables access to the registers. For details, see [section 10, Low Power Modes](#).

26.3.6.2 Clock Setting

Ensure that the LOCO is operating when using USB Type-C interface.

27. Serial Communications Interface (SCI)

27.1 Overview

The Serial Communications Interface (SCI) × 4 channels have asynchronous and synchronous serial interfaces:

- Asynchronous interfaces (UART and Asynchronous Communications Interface Adapter (ACIA))
- 8-bit clock synchronous interface
- Simple IIC (master-only)
- Simple SPI
- Smart card interface

The smart card interface complies with the ISO/IEC 7816-3 standard for electronic signals and transmission protocol. SCIn (n = 0) has FIFO buffers to enable continuous and full-duplex communication, and the data transfer speed can be configured independently using an on-chip baud rate generator.

In this section, PCLK refers to PCLKB.

Table 27.1 lists the SCI specifications, Figure 27.1 shows a block diagram of SCI, and Table 27.3 lists the I/O pins.

Table 27.1 SCI specifications (1 of 2)

Parameter		Specifications
Number of modules		4 (SCIn (n = 0 to 2, 9))* ¹
Serial communication modes		• Asynchronous • Clock synchronous • Simple IIC • Simple SPI • Smart card interface
Transfer speed		Bit rate specifiable with the on-chip baud rate generator
Full-duplex communications		• Transmitter: Continuous transmission possible using double-buffering • Receiver: Continuous reception possible using double-buffering
Data transfer		Selectable as LSB-first or MSB-first transfer
Interrupt sources		Transmit end, transmit data empty, receive data full, receive error, receive data ready, address match. Completion of generation of a start condition, restart condition, or stop condition (for simple IIC mode).
Module-stop function		Module-stop state can be set for each channel
Snooze end request		SCI0 address mismatch (SCI0_DCUF)
Clock synchronous mode	Data length	8 bits
	Receive error detection	Overrun error
	Clock source	Selectable to internal clock (master mode) or external clock (slave mode)
	Hardware flow control	Transmission and reception controllable with CTSn_RTSn pins
	Transmission and reception	Selectable to 1-stage register or 16-stage FIFO (only SCIn (n = 0) supports FIFO)
Asynchronous mode	Data length	7, 8, or 9 bits
	Transmission stop bit	1 or 2 bits
	Parity	Even parity, odd parity, or no parity
	Receive error detection	• Parity error • Overrun error • Framing error
	Hardware flow control	Transmission and reception controllable with CTSn_RTSn pins
	Transmission and reception	Selectable to 1-stage register or 16-stage FIFO (SCIn (n = 0) supports FIFO)

Table 27.1 SCI specifications (2 of 2)

Parameter		Specifications
	Address match	Interrupt request/event output can be issued on detecting a match between received data and the value in the compare match register
	Address mismatch (SCI0 only) receive data	Snooze end request can be issued when detecting a mismatch between the received data and the value in the compare match register
	Start-bit detection	Selectable to low level or falling edge detection
	Break detection	Breaks from framing errors detectable by read from SPTR register
	Clock source	Selectable to internal or external clock
	Double-speed mode	Baud rate generator double-speed mode is selectable
	Multi-processor communications function	Serial communication enabled among multiple processors
	Noise cancellation	Digital noise filters included on signal paths from the RXDn pin inputs
Smart card interface mode	Error processing	Error signal can be automatically transmitted on detecting a parity error during reception
		Data can be automatically retransmitted on receiving an error signal during transmission
	Data type	Both direct and inverse convention supported
Simple IIC mode	Transfer format	I ² C bus format (MSB-first only)
	Operating mode	Master (single-master operation only)
	Transfer rate	Up to 400 kbps
	Noise cancellation	The signal paths from input on the SCLn and SDA _n pins incorporate digital noise filters and provide an adjustable interval for noise cancellation
Simple SPI mode	Data length	8 bits
	Error detection	Overrun error
	Clock source	Selectable to internal clock (master mode) or external clock (slave mode)
	SSn input pin function	High impedance state can be invoked on the output pins by driving the SSn pin high.
	Clock settings	Configurable among four clock phase and clock polarity settings
Bit rate modulation function		Error reduction through correction of outputs from the on-chip baud rate generator
Event link function		Error event output for receive error or error signal detection (SCIn_ERI) (n = 0 to 2, 9)
		Receive data full event output (SCIn_RXI) (n = 0 to 2, 9)
		Transmit data empty event output (SCIn_TXI) (n = 0 to 2, 9)
		Address match event output (SCIn_AM) (n = 0 to 2, 9)
		Transmit end event output (SCIn_TEI) (n = 0 to 2, 9)

Note 1. n = 0, 1, 2, 9 (64-pin, 48-pin product)
n = 0, 1, 9 (other than 64-pin, 48-pin product)

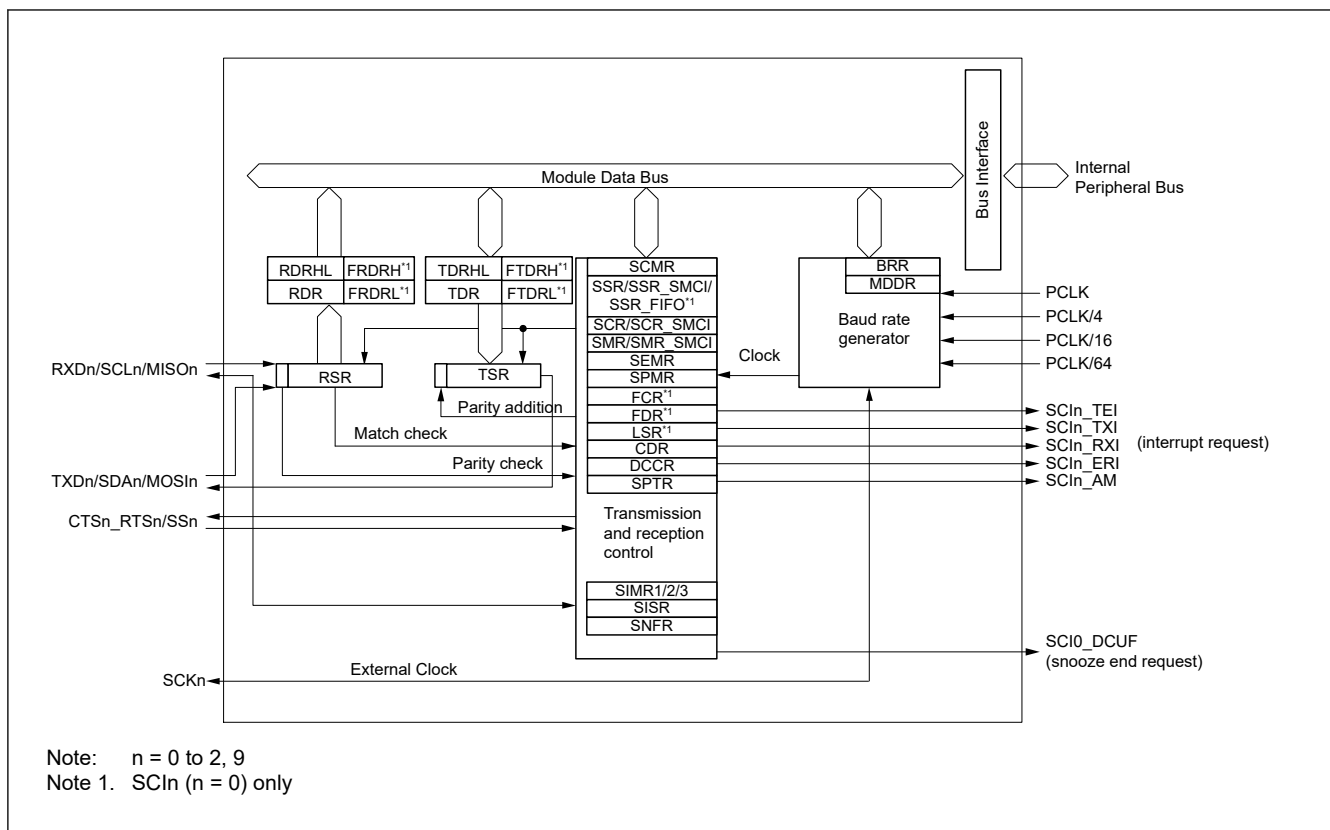


Figure 27.1 SCI block diagram

Table 27.2 Product and support channels

SCI channel	Product				
	64 pin	48 pin	36 pin	32 pin	25 pin
SCI0	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
SCI1	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
SCI2	✓	✓	—	—	—
SCI9	✓	✓	✓	✓*1	✓

Note: ✓ : Support
—: No support

Note 1. SCI9 only support Asynchronous mode and simple I²C

Table 27.3 SCI I/O pins

Function	Pin name	Input/Output	Description
SCIn (n = 0 to 2, 9)	RXDn/SCLn/MISO n	Input/Output	SCIn receive data input SCIn I ² C clock input/output SCIn slave transmit data input/output
	TXDn/SDAn/MOSIn	Input/Output	SCIn transmit data output SCIn I ² C data input/output SCIn master transmit data input/output
	SSn/CTSn_RTsn	Input/Output	SCIn chip select input, active-low SCIn transfer start control input/output, active-low
	SCKn	Input/Output	SCIn clock input/output

27.2 Register Descriptions

27.2.1 RSR : Receive Shift Register

RSR is a shift register that receives serial data input from the RXDn pin and converts it into parallel data. When one frame of data is received, the data is automatically transferred to the RDR, RDRHL, or the receive FIFO register. The RSR register cannot be directly accessed by the CPU.

27.2.2 RDR : Receive Data Register

Base address: SCI0 = 0x4007_0000
 SCIm = 0x4007_0000 + 0x0020 × m (m = 1 to 2, 9)

Offset address: 0x05



RDR is an 8-bit register that stores received data. When one frame of serial data is received, it is transferred from RSR to RDR, and the RSR register can receive more data. Because RSR and RDR function as a double buffer, continuous received operations can be performed.

Read the RDR only once after a receive data full interrupt (SCIn_RXI) occurs.

Note: If the next frame of data is received before reading the received data from RDR, an overrun error occurs. The CPU cannot write to the RDR.

27.2.3 RDRHL : Receive Data Register

Base address: SCI0 = 0x4007_0000
 SCIm = 0x4007_0000 + 0x0020 × m (m = 1 to 2, 9)

Offset address: 0x10



Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
8:0	RDAT[8:0]	Serial Receive Data	R
15:9	—	These bits are read as 0.	R

RDRHL is a 16-bit register that stores received data. Use this register when asynchronous mode and 9-bit data length are selected.

The lower 8 bits of RDRHL are the shadow register of RDR, so access to RDRHL affects the RDR register. Access to the RDRHL register is prohibited if 7-bit or 8-bit data length is selected.

After one frame of data is received, the received data is transferred from the RSR register to the RDR/RDRHL registers, allowing the RSR register to receive more data.

The RSR and RDRHL registers form a double-buffered structure to enable continuous reception. RDRHL should be read-only when a receive data full interrupt (SCIn_RXI) request is issued. An overrun error occurs when the next frame of data is received before the received data is read from RDRHL. The CPU cannot write to the RDRHL register.

27.2.4 FRDRHL/FRDRH/FRDRL : Receive FIFO Data Register

Base address: SCIO = 0x4007_0000

Offset address: 0x10 (FRDRHL/FRDRH)
0x11 (FRDRL)

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	RDF	ORER	FER	PER	DR	MPB	RDAT[8:0]								
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
8:0	RDAT[8:0]	Serial receive data Stores the serial receive data. Valid only in asynchronous mode, including multi-processor mode, and clock synchronous mode, and with FIFO selected.	R
9	MPB	Multi-Processor Bit Flag Stores the value of the multi-processor bit in the serial receive data, RDAT[8:0]. Valid only in asynchronous mode with SMR.MP = 1, and with FIFO selected. 0: Data transmission cycle 1: ID transmission cycle	R
10	DR	Receive Data Ready Flag This flag is the same as SSR_FIFO.DR. 0: Receiving is in progress, or no received data remains in the FRDRH and FRDRL registers after successfully completed reception 1: Next receive data is not received for a period after successfully completed reception	R ^{*1}
11	PER	Parity Error Flag 0: No parity error occurred in the first data of FRDRH and FRDRL 1: Parity error occurred in the first data of FRDRH and FRDRL	R
12	FER	Framing Error Flag 0: No framing error occurred in the first data of FRDRH and FRDRL 1: Framing error occurred in the first data of FRDRH and FRDRL	R
13	ORER	Overrun Error Flag This flag is the same as SSR_FIFO.ORER. 0: No overrun error occurred 1: Overrun error occurred	R ^{*1}
14	RDF	Receive FIFO Data Full Flag This flag is the same as SSR_FIFO.RDF. 0: The amount of receive data written in FRDRH and FRDRL is less than the specified receive triggering number 1: The amount of receive data written in FRDRH and FRDRL is equal to or greater than the specified receive triggering number	R ^{*1}
15	—	This bit is read as 0.	R

Note 1. If this flag is read, it indicates the same value as that read from the SSR_FIFO register. Write 0 to the SSR_FIFO register to clear the flag.

FRDRHL is a 16-bit register that consists of the 8-bit FRDRH and FRDRL registers. FRDRH is assigned to the FRDRHL[15:8] bits, and allocated to the same address as FRDRHL. FRDRL is assigned to the FRDRHL[7:0] bits, and allocated to (the address of FRDRHL + 1) address.

FRDRH and FRDRL constitute a 16-stage FIFO register that stores serial receive data and related status information readable by software. This register is only valid in asynchronous mode, including multi-processor mode, or clock synchronous mode.

The SCI completes reception of one frame of serial data by transferring the received data from the Receive Shift Register (RSR) into FRDRH and FRDRL for storage. Continuous reception is executed until 16 stages are stored. If data is read when there is no received data in FRDRH and FRDRL, the value is undefined. When FRDRH and FRDRL are full, subsequent serial receive data is lost. The CPU can read from the FRDRH and FRDRL registers but cannot write to them.

Reading 1 from the RDF, ORER, or DR flags of the FRDRH register is the same as reading from those bits in the SSR_FIFO register. When writing 0 to clear a flag in the SSR_FIFO register after reading the FRDRH register, write 0 only to the flag that is to be cleared and write 1 to the other flags.

When reading both the FRDRH and FRDRL registers, read in order from FRDRH to FRDRL. The FRDRHL register can be accessed in 16-bit units.

27.2.5 TDR : Transmit Data Register

Base address: SCIO = 0x4007_0000
 SCIm = 0x4007_0000 + 0x0020 × m (m = 1 to 2, 9)

Offset address: 0x03

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:								
Value after reset:	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7:0	n/a	Serial Transmit Data	R/W

TDR is an 8-bit register that stores transmit data.

When the SCI detects that the TSR register is empty, it transfers the transmit data written in the TDR register to the TSR register and starts transmission.

The double-buffered structure of the TDR and TSR registers enables continuous serial transmission. If the next transmit data is already written to TDR when one frame of data is transmitted, the SCI transfers the written data to the TSR register to continue transmission.

The CPU can read from or write to TDR at any time. Only write transmit data to TDR once after each instance of the transmit data empty interrupt (SCIn_TXI).

27.2.6 TDRHL : Transmit Data Register

Base address: SCIO = 0x4007_0000
 SCIm = 0x4007_0000 + 0x0020 × m (m = 1 to 2, 9)

Offset address: 0x0E

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	TDAT[8:0]								
Value after reset:	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
8:0	TDAT[8:0]	Serial Transmit Data	R/W
15:9	—	This bit is read as 1. The write value should be 1.	R/W

TDRHL is a 16-bit register that stores transmit data. Use this register when asynchronous mode and 9-bit data length are selected.

The lower 8 bits of TDRHL are the shadow register of TDR, so access to TDRHL affects the TDR register. Access to the TDRHL register is prohibited if 7-bit or 8-bit data length is selected.

When empty space is detected in the TSR register, the transmit data stored in the TDRHL registers is transferred to TSR and transmission starts.

The TSR and TDRHL registers have a double-buffered structure to support continuous transmission. When the next data to be transmitted is stored in TDRHL after one frame of data is transmitted, the transmitting operation continues by transferring the data to the TSR register.

The CPU can read and write to the TDRHL register. Bits [15:9] in TDRHL are fixed to 1. These bits are read as 1. The write value should be 1.

Write transmit data to the TDRHL register only once when a transmit data empty interrupt (SCIn_TXI) request is issued.

27.2.7 FTDRHL/FTDRH/FTDRL : Transmit FIFO Data Register

Base address: SCIO = 0x4007_0000

Offset address: 0x0E (FTDRHL/FTDRH)
0x0F (FTDRL)

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	MPBT	TDAT[8:0]								
Value after reset:	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
8:0	TDAT[8:0]	Serial transmit data Specifies the serial transmit data. Valid only in asynchronous mode, including multi-processor mode, and clock synchronous mode, and with FIFO selected.	W
9	MPBT	Multi-Processor Transfer Bit Flag Specifies the multi-processor bit in the transmission frame. Valid only in asynchronous mode and SMR.MP = 1, and with FIFO selected. Valid only in asynchronous mode, including multi-processor mode, and clock synchronous mode, and with FIFO selected. 0: Data transmission cycle 1: ID transmission cycle	W
15:10	—	The write value should be 1.	W

FTDRHL is a 16-bit register that consists of the 8-bit FTDRH and FTDRL registers. FTDRH is assigned to the FTDRHL[15:8] bits, and allocated to the same address as FTDRHL. FTDRL is assigned to the FTDRHL[7:0] bits, and allocated to (the address of FTDRHL + 1) address.

FTDRH and FTDRL constitute a 16-stage FIFO register that stores data for serial transmission and a multi-processor transfer bit. This register is only valid in asynchronous mode, including multi-processor mode, or clock synchronous mode.

When the SCI detects that the Transmit Shift Register (TSR) is empty, it transfers data written in the FTDRH and FTDRL registers to the TSR register and starts serial transmission. Continuous serial transmission is executed until no transmit data is left in FTDRH and FTDRL. When FTDRHL is full of transmit data, no more data can be written. If writing new data is attempted, the data is ignored. The CPU can write to the FTDRH and FTDRL registers but cannot read them.

When writing to both the FTDRH and FTDRL registers, write in order from FTDRH to FTDRL.

TDAT[8:0] bits (Serial transmit data)

The TDAT[8:0] bits set the serial transmission data. This is valid only when FIFO is selected in asynchronous mode (including multiprocessor) or clock synchronous mode.

MPBT flag (Multi-Processor Transfer Bit Flag)

The MPBT flag specifies the value of the multi-processor bit of the transmit frame. When FCR.FM = 1, SSR.MPBT is invalid.

27.2.8 TSR : Transmit Shift Register

TSR is a shift register that transmits serial data. To perform serial data transmission, the SCI first automatically transfers transmit data from TDR, TDRHL, or transmit FIFO to TSR, then sends the data to the TXDn pin. The CPU cannot directly access the TSR.

27.2.9 SMR : Serial Mode Register for Non-Smart Card Interface Mode (SCMR.SMIF = 0)

Base address: SCIO = 0x4007_0000
 SCIm = 0x4007_0000 + 0x0020 × m (m = 1 to 2, 9)

Offset address: 0x00

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	CM	CHR	PE	PM	STOP	MP	CKS[1:0]	
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
1:0	CKS[1:0]	Clock Select 0 0: PCLK clock (n = 0) ^{*1} 0 1: PCLK/4 clock (n = 1) ^{*1} 1 0: PCLK/16 clock (n = 2) ^{*1} 1 1: PCLK/64 clock (n = 3) ^{*1}	R/W ^{*4}
2	MP	Multi-Processor Mode Valid only in asynchronous mode. 0: Disable multi-processor communications function 1: Enable multi-processor communications function	R/W ^{*4}
3	STOP	Stop Bit Length Valid only in asynchronous mode. 0: 1 stop bit 1: 2 stop bits	R/W ^{*4}
4	PM	Parity Mode Valid only when the PE bit is 1. 0: Even parity 1: Odd parity	R/W ^{*4}
5	PE	Parity Enable Valid only in asynchronous mode. 0: When transmitting: Do not add parity bit When receiving: Do not check parity bit 1: When transmitting: Add parity bit When receiving: Check parity bit	R/W ^{*4}
6	CHR	Character Length Valid only in asynchronous mode. ^{*2} Selects the transmit/receive character length in on the SCMR.CHR1 bit. 0: SCMR.CHR1 = 0: Transmit/receive in 9-bit data length SCMR.CHR1 = 1: Transmit/receive in 8-bit data length (initial value) 1: SCMR.CHR1 = 0: Transmit/receive in 9-bit data length SCMR.CHR1 = 1: Transmit/receive in 7-bit data length ^{*3}	R/W ^{*4}
7	CM	Communication Mode 0: Asynchronous mode or simple IIC mode 1: Clock synchronous mode or simple SPI mode	R/W ^{*4}

Note 1. n is the decimal notation of the value of n in the BRR register. See [section 27.2.17. BRR : Bit Rate Register](#).

Note 2. In any mode other than asynchronous mode, this bit setting is invalid and a fixed data length of 8 bits is used.

Note 3. LSB-first is fixed and the MSB (bit [7]) in the TDR register is not transmitted in transmit mode.

Note 4. Writable only when SCR.TE = 0 and SCR.RE = 0 (both serial transmission and reception are disabled).

The SMR register sets the communication format and clock source for the on-chip baud rate generator.

CKS[1:0] bits (Clock Select)

The CKS[1:0] bits select the clock source for the on-chip baud rate generator. For the relationship between the settings of these bits and the baud rate, see [section 27.2.17. BRR : Bit Rate Register](#).

MP bit (Multi-Processor Mode)

The MP bit disables or enables the multi-processor communications function. The PE and PM bit settings are invalid in multi-processor mode.

STOP bit (Stop Bit Length)

The STOP bit selects the stop bit length in transmission.

In reception, only the first stop bit is checked regardless of this bit setting. If the second stop bit is 0, it is treated as the start bit of the next transmit frame.

PM bit (Parity Mode)

The PM bit selects the parity mode (even or odd) for transmission and reception. The PM bit setting is invalid in multiprocessor mode.

PE bit (Parity Enable)

When the PE bit is set to 1, the parity bit is added to transmit data, and the parity bit is checked in reception. Regardless of the PE bit setting, the parity bit is not added or checked in multi-processor format.

CHR bit (Character Length)

The CHR bit selects the data length for transmission and reception in on the SCMR.CHR1 bit. In modes other than asynchronous, a fixed data length of 8 bits is used.

CM bit (Communication Mode)

The CM bit selects the communication mode:

- Asynchronous mode or simple IIC mode
- Clock synchronous mode or simple SPI mode

27.2.10 SMR_SMCI : Serial Mode Register for Smart Card Interface Mode (SCMR.SMIF = 1)

Base address: SCIO = 0x4007_0000
SCIm = 0x4007_0000 + 0x0020 × m (m = 1 to 2, 9)

Offset address: 0x00

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	GM	BLK	PE	PM	BCP[1:0]	CKS[1:0]		

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
1:0	CKS[1:0]	Clock Select 0 0: PCLK clock (n = 0)*1 0 1: PCLK/4 clock (n = 1)*1 1 0: PCLK/16 clock (n = 2)*1 1 1: PCLK/64 clock (n = 3)*1	R/W ²
3:2	BCP[1:0]	Base Clock Pulse Selects the number of base clock cycles in on the SCMR.BCP2 bit. Table 27.4 lists the combinations of the SCMR.BCP2 and SMR.BCP[1:0] bits.	R/W ²
4	PM	Parity Mode Valid only when the PE bit is 1. 0: Even parity 1: Odd parity	R/W ²
5	PE	Parity Enable When this bit is set to 1, a parity bit is added to transmit data, and the parity of received data is checked. Set this bit to 1 in smart card interface mode.	R/W ²
6	BLK	Block Transfer Mode 0: Normal mode operation 1: Block transfer mode operation	R/W ²

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7	GM	GSM Mode 0: Normal mode operation 1: GSM mode operation	R/W ²

Note 1. n is the decimal notation of the value of n in the BRR register. See [section 27.2.17. BRR : Bit Rate Register](#).

Note 2. Writable only when SCR_SMCI.TE = 0 and SCR_SMCI.RE = 0 (both serial transmission and reception are disabled).

The SMR_SMCI register sets the communication format and clock source for the on-chip baud rate generator.

CKS[1:0] bits (Clock Select)

The CKS[1:0] bits select the clock source for the on-chip baud rate generator. For the relationship between the settings of these bits and the baud rate, see [section 27.2.17. BRR : Bit Rate Register](#).

BCP[1:0] bits (Base Clock Pulse)

The BCP[1:0] bits select the number of base clock cycles in a 1-bit data transfer time in smart card interface mode. Set these bits with the SCMR.BCP2 bit.

For details, see [section 27.6.4. Receive Data Sampling Timing and Reception Margin](#).

Table 27.4 Combinations of SCMR.BCP2 and SMR_SMCI.BCP[1:0] bits

SCMR.BCP2 bit	SMR_SMCI.BCP[1:0] bits	Number of base clock cycles for 1-bit transfer period ^{*1}
0	00b	93 clock cycles (S = 93)
0	01b	128 clock cycles (S = 128)
0	10b	186 clock cycles (S = 186)
0	11b	512 clock cycles (S = 512)
1	00b	32 clock cycles (S = 32) (initial value)
1	01b	64 clock cycles (S = 64)
1	10b	372 clock cycles (S = 372)
1	11b	256 clock cycles (S = 256)

Note 1. S is the value of S in BRR (see [section 27.2.17. BRR : Bit Rate Register](#)).

PM bit (Parity Mode)

The PM bit selects the parity mode for transmission and reception (even or odd). For details on the usage of this bit in smart card interface mode, see [section 27.6.2. Data Format \(Except in Block Transfer Mode\)](#).

PE bit (Parity Enable)

Set the PE bit to 1. The parity bit is added to transmit data before transmission, and the parity bit is checked in reception.

BLK bit (Block Transfer Mode)

Setting the BLK bit to 1 enables block transfer mode operation. For details, see [section 27.6.3. Block Transfer Mode](#).

GM bit (GSM Mode)

Setting the GM bit to 1 enables GSM mode operation. In GSM mode, the SSR_SMCI.TEND flag set timing is moved forward to 11.0 ETUs (elementary time unit = 1-bit transfer time) from the start bit, and clock output control is added. For details, see [section 27.6.6. Serial Data Transmission \(Except in Block Transfer Mode\)](#) and [section 27.6.8. Clock Output Control](#).

27.2.11 SCR : Serial Control Register for Non-Smart Card Interface Mode (SCMR.SMIF = 0)

Base address: SCIO = 0x4007_0000
 SCIm = 0x4007_0000 + 0x0020 × m (m = 1 to 2, 9)

Offset address: 0x02

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	TIE	RIE	TE	RE	MPIE	TEIE	CKE[1:0]	

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
1:0	CKE[1:0]	Clock Enable 0 0: In asynchronous mode, the SCKn pin is available for use as an I/O port based on the I/O port settings. In clock synchronous mode, the SCKn pin functions as the clock output pin. 0 1: In asynchronous mode, a clock with the same frequency as the bit rate is output from the SCKn pin. In clock synchronous mode, the SCKn pin functions as the clock output pin. Others: In asynchronous mode, input a clock with a frequency 16 times the bit rate from the SCKn pin when the SEMR.ABCS bit is 0. Input a clock signal with a frequency eight times the bit rate when the SEMR.ABCS bit is 1. In clock synchronous mode, the SCKn pin functions as the clock input pin.	R/W ^{*1}
2	TEIE	Transmit End Interrupt Enable 0: Disable SCIn_TEI interrupt requests 1: Enable SCIn_TEI interrupt requests	R/W
3	MPIE	Multi-Processor Interrupt Enable Valid in asynchronous mode when SMR.MP = 1. 0: Normal reception 1: When data with the multi-processor bit set to 0 is received, the data is not read, and setting the status flags RDRF, ORER, and FER in SSR to 1. When data with the multi-processor bit set to 1 is received, the MPIE bit is automatically set to 0, and normal reception is resumed.	R/W ^{*3}
4	RE	Receive Enable 0: Disable serial reception 1: Enable serial reception	R/W ^{*2}
5	TE	Transmit Enable 0: Disable serial transmission 1: Enable serial transmission	R/W ^{*2}
6	RIE	Receive Interrupt Enable 0: Disable SCIn_RXI and SCIn_ERI interrupt requests 1: Enable SCIn_RXI and SCIn_ERI interrupt requests	R/W
7	TIE	Transmit Interrupt Enable 0: Disable SCIn_TXI interrupt requests 1: Enable SCIn_TXI interrupt requests	R/W

Note 1. Writable only when TE = 0 and RE = 0.

Note 2. 1 can be written only when TE = 0 and RE = 0, when the SMR.CM bit is 1. After setting TE or RE to 1, only 0 can be written to TE and RE. When the SMR.CM bit is 0 and the SIMR1.IICM bit is 0, writing is enabled under any condition.

Note 3. When writing a new value to a bit other than the MPIE bit of this register in multi-processor mode (SMR.MP bit = 1), write 0 to the MPIE bit using the store instruction to avoid accidentally setting the MPIE bit to 1 by a read-modify-write operation when using a bit manipulation instruction.

The SCR register controls operation and clock source selection for transmission and reception.

CKE[1:0] bits (Clock Enable)

The CKE[1:0] bits select the clock source and the SCKn pin function.

TEIE bit (Transmit End Interrupt Enable)

The TEIE bit enables or disables SCIn_TEI interrupt requests. Set TEIE to 0 to disable an SCIn_TEI interrupt request.

In simple IIC mode, SCIn_TEI is allocated to the interrupt on completion of issuing a start, restart, or stop condition (STIn). In this case, the TEIE bit can be used to enable or disable the STI.

MPIE bit (Multi-Processor Interrupt Enable)

When the MPIE bit is set to 1 and data with the multi-processor bit set to 0 is received, the data is not read and setting the status flags RDRF, ORER, FER, RDF, and DR in SSR/SSR_FIFO to 1 is disabled. When data with the multi-processor bit set to 1 is received, the MPIE bit is automatically set to 0, and normal reception resumes. For details, see [section 27.4. Multi-processor Communication Function](#).

When the MPB bit in the SSR register is 0, the receive data is not transferred from the RSR register to the RDR register, a receive error is not detected, and setting the flags ORER and FER to 1 is disabled.

When the MPB bit is set to 1, the MPIE bit is automatically set to 0, SCIn_RXI and SCIn_ERI interrupt requests are enabled (if the RIE bit in SCR is set to 1), and setting of the ORER and FER flags to 1 is enabled.

Set MPIE to 0 if the multi-processor communications function is not used.

RE bit (Receive Enable)

The RE bit enables or disables serial reception. When the RE bit is set to 1, serial reception starts by detecting the start bit in asynchronous mode or the synchronous clock input in clock synchronous mode. Set the reception format in the SMR register before setting the RE bit to 1.

In non-FIFO operation, when reception is halted by setting the RE bit to 0, the RDRF, ORER, FER, and PER flags in the SSR register are not affected, and the previous values are retained.

When FIFO operation is selected and reception is halted by setting the RE bit to 0, the RDF, ORER, FER, PER, and DR flags in SSR_FIFO are not affected and the previous values are retained.

TE bit (Transmit Enable)

The TE bit enables or disables serial transmission.

When the TE bit is set to 1, serial transmission is started by writing transmit data to the TDR register. Set the transmission format in the SMR register before setting the TE bit to 1.

RIE bit (Receive Interrupt Enable)

The RIE bit enables or disables SCIn_RXI and SCIn_ERI interrupt requests.

SCIn_RXI and SCIn_ERI interrupt requests are disabled by setting the RIE bit to 0.

An SCIn_ERI interrupt request can be canceled by reading 1 from the ORER, FER, or PER flag in SSR/SSR_FIFO then setting the flag to 0, or by setting the RIE bit to 0.

TIE bit (Transmit Interrupt Enable)

The TIE bit enables or disables SCIn_TXI interrupt requests. SCIn_TXI interrupt requests are disabled by setting the TIE bit to 0.

Note: To switch the TIE bit value from 0 to 1 in FIFO mode, set the TIE and TE bits to 1 simultaneously or set the TIE bit to 1 when TE = 1. When TE = 0 in FIFO mode, setting the TIE bit to 1 is prohibited.

27.2.12 SCR_SMCI : Serial Control Register for Smart Card Interface Mode (SCMR.SMIF = 1)

Base address: SCIO = 0x4007_0000
SCIm = 0x4007_0000 + 0x0020 × m (m = 1 to 2, 9)

Offset address: 0x02

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	TIE	RIE	TE	RE	MPIE	TEIE	CKE[1:0]	

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
1:0	CKE[1:0]	Clock Enable 0 0: When SMR_SMCI.GM = 0: Disable output The SCKn pin is available for use as an I/O port if set up in the I/O port settings When SMR_SMCI.GM = 1: Fix output low 0 1: When SMR_SMCI.GM = 0: Output clock When SMR_SMCI.GM = 1: Output clock 1 0: When SMR_SMCI.GM = 0: Setting prohibited When SMR_SMCI.GM = 1: Fix output high 1 1: When SMR_SMCI.GM = 0: Setting prohibited When SMR_SMCI.GM = 1: Output clock	R/W ^{*1}
2	TEIE	Transmit End Interrupt Enable Set this bit to 0 in smart card interface mode	R/W
3	MPIE	Multi-Processor Interrupt Enable Set this bit to 0 in smart card interface mode	R/W
4	RE	Receive Enable 0: Disable serial reception 1: Enable serial reception	R/W ^{*2}
5	TE	Transmit Enable 0: Disable serial transmission 1: Enable serial transmission	R/W ^{*2}
6	RIE	Receive Interrupt Enable 0: Disable SCIn_RXI and SCIn_ERI interrupt requests 1: Enable SCIn_RXI and SCIn_ERI interrupt requests	R/W
7	TIE	Transmit Interrupt Enable 0: Disable SCIn_TXI interrupt requests 1: Enable SCIn_TXI interrupt requests	R/W

Note 1. Writable only when TE = 0 and RE = 0.

Note 2. 1 can be written only when TE = 0 and RE = 0. After setting TE or RE to 1, only 0 can be written to TE and RE.

The SCR_SMCI register sets transmission and reception control, interrupt control, and clock source selection for transmission and reception.

For details on interrupt requests, see [section 27.10. Interrupt Sources](#).

CKE[1:0] bits (Clock Enable)

The CKE[1:0] bits control the clock output from the SCKn pin. In GSM mode, clock output can be dynamically switched. For details, see [section 27.6.8. Clock Output Control](#).

TEIE bit (Transmit End Interrupt Enable)

Set the TEIE bit to 0 in smart card interface mode.

MPIE bit (Multi-Processor Interrupt Enable)

Set the MPIE bit to 0 in smart card interface mode.

RE bit (Receive Enable)

The RE bit enables or disables serial reception. When the RE bit is set to 1, serial reception starts by detecting the start bit. Set the reception format in the SMR_SMCI register before setting the RE bit to 1.

If reception is halted by setting the RE bit to 0, the ORER, FER, and PER flags in SSR_SMCI are not affected and the previous values are retained.

TE bit (Transmit Enable)

The TE bit enables or disables serial transmission. When the TE bit is set to 1, serial transmission is started by writing transmit data to TDR. Set the transmission format in the SMR_SMCI register before setting the TE bit to 1.

RIE bit (Receive Interrupt Enable)

The RIE bit enables or disables SCIn_RXI and SCIn_ERI interrupt requests.

SCIn_RXI and SCIn_ERI interrupt requests are disabled by setting the RIE bit to 0.

An SCIn_ERI interrupt request can be canceled by reading 1 from the ORER, FER, or PER flag in the SSR_SMCI register, and then setting the flag to 0, or by setting the RIE bit to 0.

TIE bit (Transmit Interrupt Enable)

The TIE bit enables or disables SCIn_TXI interrupt requests. SCIn_TXI interrupt requests are disabled by setting the TIE bit to 0.

27.2.13 SSR : Serial Status Register for Non-Smart Card Interface and Non-FIFO Mode (SCMR.SMIF = 0, FCR.FM = 0)

Base address: SCIO = 0x4007_0000
 SCIm = 0x4007_0000 + 0x0020 × m (m = 1 to 2, 9)

Offset address: 0x04

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	TDRE	RDRF	ORER	FER	PER	TEND	MPB	MPBT

Value after reset: 1 0 0 0 0 1 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	MPBT	Multi-Processor Bit Transfer Sets the value of the multi-processor bit in the transmission frame. 0: Data transmission cycle 1: ID transmission cycle	R/W
1	MPB	Multi-Processor Value of the multi-processor bit in the reception frame. 0: Data transmission cycle 1: ID transmission cycle	R
2	TEND	Transmit End Flag 0: A character is being transmitted 1: Character transfer is complete	R
3	PER	Parity Error Flag 0: No parity error occurred 1: Parity error occurred	R/(W) ^{*1}
4	FER	Framing Error Flag 0: No framing error occurred 1: Framing error occurred	R/(W) ^{*1}
5	ORER	Overrun Error Flag 0: No overrun error occurred 1: Overrun error occurred	R/(W) ^{*1}
6	RDRF	Receive Data Full Flag 0: No received data in RDR register 1: Received data in RDR register	R/(W) ^{*1}
7	TDRE	Transmit Data Empty Flag 0: Transmit data in TDR register 1: No transmit data in TDR register	R/(W) ^{*1}

Note 1. Only 0 can be written to clear the flag after reading 1.

The SSR register provides SCI status flags and transmission and reception multi-processor bits.

MPBT bit (Multi-Processor Bit Transfer)

The MPBT bit sets the value of the multi-processor bit in the transmit frame.

MPB bit (Multi-Processor)

The MPB bit holds the value of the multi-processor bit in the reception frame. This bit does not change when the SCR.RE bit is 0.

TEND flag (Transmit End Flag)

The TEND flag indicates completion of transmission.

[Setting conditions]

- When the SCR.TE bit is set to 0 (serial transmission is disabled) and the FCR.FM bit is set to 0 (non-FIFO selected). When the SCR.TE bit is set to 1, the TEND flag is not affected and retains the value 1.
- When the TDR register is not updated on transmission of the tail-end bit of a character being transmitted.

[Clearing conditions]

- When transmit data is written to the TDR register while the SCR.TE bit is 1
- When 0 is written to TDRE after reading TDRE = 1 while the SCR.TE bit is 1

PER flag (Parity Error Flag)

The PER flag indicates that a parity error occurred during reception in asynchronous mode and the reception ended abnormally.

[Setting condition]

- When a parity error is detected during reception in asynchronous mode when the address match function is disabled (DCCR.DCME = 0).

Although receive data is transferred to the RDR register when the parity error occurs, no SCIn_RXI interrupt request occurs. When the PER flag is set to 1, the subsequent receive data is not transferred to the RDR register.

[Clearing condition]

- When 0 is written to PER after reading PER = 1. After writing 0 to the PER flag, read the PER flag to check that it is actually set to 0.

When the SCR.RE bit is set to 0 (serial reception is disabled), the PER flag is not affected and retains its previous value.

FER flag (Framing Error Flag)

The FER flag indicates that a framing error occurred during reception in asynchronous mode and the reception ended abnormally.

[Setting condition]

- When 0 is sampled as the stop bit during reception in asynchronous mode when the address match function is disabled (DCCR.DCME = 0).

In 2-stop-bit mode, only the first stop bit is checked. The second stop bit is not checked. Although receive data is transferred to the RDR register when the framing error occurs, no SCIn_RXI interrupt request occurs. When the FER flag is set to 1, the subsequent receive data is not transferred to the RDR register.

[Clearing condition]

- When 0 is written to FER after reading FER = 1. After writing 0 to the FER flag, read the FER flag to check that it is actually set to 0.

When the SCR.RE bit is set to 0 (serial reception is disabled), the FER flag is not affected and retains its previous value.

ORER flag (Overrun Error Flag)

The ORER flag indicates that an overrun error occurred during reception and the reception ended abnormally.

[Setting condition]

- When the next data is received before receive data that does not have a parity error and a framing error is read from the RDR register.

The data received before an overrun error occurred is saved in the RDR register, but data received after the error is lost. When the ORER flag is set to 1, receive data is not forwarded to the RDR register. In clock synchronous mode, serial transmission and reception are stopped.

[Clearing condition]

- When 0 is written to ORER after reading ORER = 1. After writing 0 to the ORER flag, read the ORER flag to check that it is actually set to 0.

When the SCR.RE bit is set to 0 (serial reception is disabled), the ORER flag is not affected and retains its previous value.

RDRF flag (Receive Data Full Flag)

The RDRF flag indicates the presence of receive data in the RDR register.

[Setting condition]

- When the reception ends normally, and receive data is forwarded from the RSR register to the RDR register.

[Clearing conditions]

- When 0 is written to RDRF after reading RDRF = 1
- When data is forwarded from the RDR register

TDRE flag (Transmit Data Empty Flag)

The TDRE flag indicates the presence of transmit data in the TDR register.

[Setting conditions]

- When the SCR.TE bit is 0
- When data is transmitted from the TDR register to the TSR register

[Clearing conditions]

- When 0 is written to TDRE after reading TDRE = 1
- When the SCR.TE bit is 1 and data is written to the TDR register

27.2.14 SSR_FIFO : Serial Status Register for Non-Smart Card Interface and FIFO Mode (SCMR.SMIF = 0, FCR.FM = 1)

Base address: SCIO = 0x4007_0000

Offset address: 0x04

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	TDRE	RDRF	ORER	FER	PER	TEND	—	DR
Value after reset:	1	0	0	0	0	0	x	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	DR	Receive Data Ready Flag 0: Receiving is in progress, or no received data remains in FRDRHL after successfully completed reception (receive FIFO empty) 1: Next receive data is not received for a period after normal receiving is complete, when the amount of data stored in the FIFO is equal to or less than the receive triggering number	R/W ^{*1}
1	—	The read value is undefined. The write value should be 1.	R/W
2	TEND	Transmit End Flag 0: A character is being transmitted 1: Character transfer is complete	R/W ^{*1}
3	PER	Parity Error Flag 0: No parity error occurred 1: Parity error occurred	R/W ^{*1}
4	FER	Framing Error Flag 0: No framing error occurred 1: Framing error occurred	R/W ^{*1}

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
5	ORER	Overrun Error Flag 0: No overrun error occurred 1: Overrun error occurred	R/W ^{*1}
6	RDF	Receive FIFO Data Full Flag 0: The amount of receive data written in FRDRHL is less than the specified receive triggering number 1: The amount of receive data written in FRDRHL is equal to or greater than the specified receive triggering number	R/W ^{*1}
7	TDFE	Transmit FIFO Data Empty Flag 0: The amount of transmit data written in FTDRHL exceeds the specified transmit triggering number 1: The amount of transmit data written in FTDRHL is equal to or less than the specified transmit triggering number	R/W ^{*1}

Note 1. Only 0 can be written, to clear the flag after reading 1.

The SSR_FIFO register provides the SCI with FIFO mode status flags.

DR flag (Receive Data Ready Flag)

The DR flag indicates that the amount of data stored in the Receive FIFO Data Register (FRDRHL) falls below the specified receive triggering number, and that no next data is received after 15 etu (elementary time unit) from the last stop bit in asynchronous mode. This flag is valid only in asynchronous mode, including multi-processor mode, when FIFO operation is selected.

In clock synchronous mode, the DR flag is not set to 1.

[Setting condition]

- When FRDRHL contains less data than the specified receive triggering number, and no next data is received after 15 etu^{*1} from the last stop bit, and the SSR_FIFO.FER and SSR_FIFO.PER flags are 0.

[Clearing conditions]

- When 1 is read from DR, after all received data is read
- When the FCR.FM bit is changed from 0 to 1

Note 1. This is equivalent to 1.5 frames in the 8-bit format with one stop bit.

The DR flag is only set to 1 when FIFO is selected in asynchronous mode, including multi-processor mode. It is not set to 1 in other operation modes.

TEND flag (Transmit End Flag)

The TEND flag indicates that FTDRHL does not contain valid data when transmitting the last bit of a serial character, so the transmission is halted.

[Setting condition]

- When FTDRHL does not contain transmit data when the last bit of a 1-byte serial character is transmitted.

[Clearing conditions]

- When transmit data is written to FTDRHL^{*1} while the SCR.TE bit is 1
- When 0 is written to TEND after 1 is read from TEND, when the SCR.TE bit is 1
- When the FCR.FM bit is changed from 0 to 1

Note 1. Do not use the TEND bit as a transmit end flag when the DTC writes data to FTDRHL in response to an SCIn_TXI interrupt request.

PER flag (Parity Error Flag)

The PER flag indicates whether there is a parity error in the data read from the FRDRHL register in asynchronous mode when the address match function is disabled (DCCR.DCME = 0).

[Setting condition]

- When data is received and a parity error is detected, when the address match function is disabled (DCCR.DCME = 0).

[Clearing condition]

- When 0 is written to PER after reading PER = 1.

The reception operation is continuous, and the receive data is stored in the FRDRHL register, even when a parity error occurs during reception.

When the SCR.RE bit is set to 0 (serial reception is disabled), the PER flag is not affected and retains its previous value.

FER flag (Framing Error Flag)

The FER flag indicates whether there is a framing error in the data read from the FRDRHL register in asynchronous mode when the address match function is disabled (DCCR.DCME = 0).

[Setting condition]

- When 0 is sampled as the stop bit during reception when the address match function is disabled (DCCR.DCME = 0).

[Clearing condition]

- When 0 is written to FER after reading FER = 1.

The reception operation is continuous, and the receive data is stored in the FRDRHL register, even when a framing error occurs during reception.

When the SCR.RE bit is set to 0 (serial reception is disabled), the FER flag is not affected and retains its previous value.

ORER flag (Overrun Error Flag)

The ORER flag indicates that the receive operation stopped abnormally because an overrun error occurred.

[Setting condition]

- When the next serial reception completes while the receive FIFO is full with 16-byte receive data.

[Clearing condition]

- When 0 is written to ORER after reading ORER = 1.

When the SCR.RE bit is set to 0 (serial reception is disabled), the ORER flag is not affected and retains its previous value.

RDF flag (Receive FIFO Data Full Flag)

The RDF flag indicates that receive data was transferred to the FRDRHL register, and the amount of data in FRDRHL is equal to or exceeds the specified receive triggering number. When RTRG is set to 0, the RDF flag is not set even when the amount of data in the receive FIFO is equal to 0.

[Setting condition]

- When the amount of receive data equal to or greater than the specified receive triggering number is stored in FRDRHL,^{*1} and the FIFO is not empty.

[Clearing conditions]

- When 0 is written to RDF after reading RDF = 1
- When FRDRHL is read by the DTC, but only when the block transfer is the last transmission
- When the setting and clearing conditions occur at the same time, the RDF bit is set to 0. After that, when the amount of data stored in the FRDRHL register is the same as or greater than the RTRG value, RDF is set to 1 after 1 PCLK.

Note 1. Because FRDRHL is a 16-stage FIFO register, the maximum amount of data that can be read when RDF is 1 is equivalent to the specified receive triggering number. If an attempt is made to read after all the data in FRDRHL is read, the data is undefined.

TDFF flag (Transmit FIFO Data Empty Flag)

The TDFF flag indicates that data is transferred from the FTDRHL register into the TSR register, the amount of data in FTDRHL is below the specified transmit triggering number, and writing of transmit data to FTDRHL is enabled.

[Setting conditions]

- When the TE bit in SCR is 0
- When the amount of transmit data written in FTDRHL is equal to or less than the specified transmit triggering number ^{*1}

[Clearing conditions]

- When writing to FTDRHL is executed on the last transmission while the DTC is activated
- When 0 is written to the TDFE flag after reading TDFE = 1. ^{*2}
The setting conditions are given priority when TE = 0. When the setting condition and clearing condition occur at the same time, the TDFE flag is set to 0. After that, when the amount of data stored in the FTDRHL register is equal to or less than the TTRG value, TDFE is set to 1 after 1 PCLK.

Note 1. Because the FTDRHL register is a 16-stage FIFO register, when the TDFE flag is 1, the maximum amount of data that can be written to the FTDRHL register is 16 minus FDR.T[4:0] bytes. If more data is written, data is discarded.

Note 2. Do not clear the TDFE flag during block transfer processing by the DTC.

27.2.15 SSR_SMCI : Serial Status Register for Smart Card Interface Mode (SCMR.SMIF = 1)

Base address: SCIO = 0x4007_0000
SCIm = 0x4007_0000 + 0x0020 × m (m = 1 to 2, 9)

Offset address: 0x04

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	TDRE	RDRF	ORER	ERS	PER	TEND	MPB	MPBT

Value after reset: 1 0 0 0 0 1 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	MPBT	Multi-Processor Bit Transfer Set this bit to 0 in smart card interface mode	R/W
1	MPB	Multi-Processor Set this bit to 0 in smart card interface mode	R
2	TEND	Transmit End Flag 0: A character is being transmitted 1: Character transfer is complete	R
3	PER	Parity Error Flag 0: No parity error occurred 1: Parity error occurred	R/W ^{*1}
4	ERS	Error Signal Status Flag 0: No low error signal response 1: Low error signal response occurred	R/W ^{*1}
5	ORER	Overrun Error Flag 0: No overrun error occurred 1: Overrun error occurred	R/W ^{*1}
6	RDRF	Receive Data Full Flag 0: No received data in RDR register 1: Received data in RDR register	R/W ^{*1}
7	TDRE	Transmit Data Empty Flag 0: Transmit data in TDR register 1: No transmit data in TDR register	R/W ^{*1}

Note 1. Only 0 can be written, to clear the flag after reading 1.

The SSR_SMCI register provides the SCI with smart card interface mode status flags.

TEND flag (Transmit End Flag)

When there is no error signal from the receiving side, the TEND flag is set to 1 when more data for transfer is ready to be transferred to the TDR register.

[Setting conditions]

- When the SCR_SMCI.TE bit = 0 (serial transmission is disabled).
When the SCR_SMCI.TE bit is changed from 0 to 1, the TEND flag is not affected and retains the value 1.
- When a specified period elapses after the latest transmission of 1 byte, the ERS flag is 0, and the TDR register is not updated.

The set timing is determined by the following register settings:

- When SMR_SMCI.GM = 0 and SMR_SMCI.BLK = 0, 12.5 etus after the start of transmission
- When SMR_SMCI.GM = 0 and SMR_SMCI.BLK = 1, 11.5 etus after the start of transmission
- When SMR_SMCI.GM = 1 and SMR_SMCI.BLK = 0, 11.0 etus after the start of transmission
- When SMR_SMCI.GM = 1 and SMR_SMCI.BLK = 1, 11.0 etus after the start of transmission

[Clearing conditions]

- When transmit data is written to the TDR register while the SCR_SMCI.TE bit is 1
- When 0 is written to TDRE after reading TDRE = 1 while the SCR_SMCI.TE bit is 1

PER flag (Parity Error Flag)

The PER flag indicates that a parity error occurred during reception in asynchronous mode and the reception ended abnormally.

[Setting condition]

- When a parity error is detected during reception. Although receive data is transferred to RDR when a parity error occurs, no SCIn_RXI interrupt request occurs. After the PER flag is set to 1, the subsequent receive data is not transferred to RDR.

[Clearing condition]

- When 0 is written to PER after reading PER = 1. After writing 0 to the PER flag, read the flag to check that it is set to 0.

When the RE bit in SCR_SMCI is set to 0 (serial reception is disabled), the PER flag is not affected and retains its previous value.

ERS flag (Error Signal Status Flag)

[Setting condition]

- When a low error signal is sampled.

[Clearing condition]

- When 0 is written to ERS after reading ERS = 1.

ORER flag (Overrun Error Flag)

The ORER flag indicates that an overrun error occurred during reception and the reception ended abnormally.

[Setting condition]

- When the next data is received before receive data that does not have a parity error is read from the RDR register. The data received before an overrun error occurred is saved in the RDR, but data received after the error is lost. When the ORER flag is set to 1, receive data is not forwarded to the RDR register.

[Clearing condition]

- When 0 is written to ORER after reading ORER = 1. After writing 0 to the ORER flag, read the flag to check that it is set to 0.

When the RE bit in SCR_SMCI is set to 0, the ORER flag is not affected and retains its previous value.

RDRF flag (Receive Data Full Flag)

The RDRF flag indicates the presence of receive data in the RDR register.

[Setting condition]

- When the reception ends normally, and receive data is forwarded from the RSR register to the RDR register.

[Clearing conditions]

- When 0 is written to RDRF after reading RDRF = 1
- When data is forwarded from the RDR register

TDRE flag (Transmit Data Empty Flag)

The TDRE flag indicates the presence of transmit data in the TDR register.

[Setting conditions]

- When the SCR_SMCI.TE bit is 0
- When data is transmitted from the TDR register to the TSR register

[Clearing conditions]

- When 0 is written to TDRE after reading TDRE = 1
- When the SCR_SMCI.TE bit is 1 and data is written to the TDR register

27.2.16 SCMR : Smart Card Mode Register

Base address: SCIO = 0x4007_0000
SCIm = 0x4007_0000 + 0x0020 × m (m = 1 to 2, 9)

Offset address: 0x06

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	BGP2	—	—	CHR1	SDIR	SINV	—	SMIF
Value after reset:	1	1	1	1	0	0	1	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	SMIF	Smart Card Interface Mode Select 0: Non-smart card interface mode (asynchronous mode, clock synchronous mode, simple SPI mode, or simple IIC mode) 1: Smart card interface mode	R/W ^{*1}
1	—	This bit is read as 1. The write value should be 1.	R/W
2	SINV	Transmitted/Received Data Invert Set the SINV bit to 0 for operation in simple IIC mode. The SINV bit can be used in the following modes: • Smart card interface mode • Asynchronous mode (including multi-processor mode) • Clock synchronous mode • Simple SPI mode 0: TDR contents are transmitted as they are. Received data is stored as received in the RDR register. 1: TDR register contents are inverted before transmission. Receive data is stored in inverted form in the RDR register.	R/W ^{*1}

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
3	SDIR	Transmitted/Received Data Transfer Direction Set the SDIR bit to 1 for operation in simple IIC mode. The SDIR bit can be used in the following modes: • Smart card interface mode • Asynchronous mode (including multi-processor mode) • Clock synchronous mode • Simple SPI mode 0: Transfer LSB-first 1: Transfer MSB-first	R/W ^{*1}
4	CHR1	Character Length 1 Valid only in asynchronous mode. ^{*2} Selects the transmit/receive character length in combination with the SMR.CHR bit. 0: SMR.CHR = 0: Transmit/receive in 9-bit data length SMR.CHR = 1: Transmit/receive in 9-bit data length 1: SMR.CHR = 0: Transmit/receive in 8-bit data length (initial value) SMR.CHR = 1: Transmit/receive in 7-bit data length^{*3}	R/W ^{*1}
6:5	—	These bits are read as 1. The write value should be 1.	R/W
7	BCP2	Base Clock Pulse 2 Selects the number of base clock cycles in combination with the SMR_SMCI.BCP[1:0] bits. Table 27.5 lists the combinations of the SCMR.BCP2 and SMR_SMCI.BCP[1:0] bits.	R/W ^{*1}

Note 1. Writable only when the TE and RE bits in SCR/SCR_SMCI are 0 (both serial transmission and reception are disabled).

Note 2. The setting is invalid and a fixed data length of 8 bits is used in modes other than asynchronous mode.

Note 3. LSB-first must be selected and the value of the MSB (bit [7]) in TDR cannot be transmitted.

The SCMR register selects the smart card interface and communication format.

SMIF bit (Smart Card Interface Mode Select)

Setting the SMIF bit to 1 selects smart card interface mode. Setting it to 0 selects all other modes:

- Asynchronous mode, including multi-processor mode
- Clock synchronous mode
- Simple SPI mode
- Simple IIC mode

SINV bit (Transmitted/Received Data Invert)

The SINV bit inverts the transmit and receive data logic level. It does not affect the logic level of the parity bit. To invert the parity bit, invert the PM bit in SMR or SMR_SMCI.

CHR1 bit (Character Length 1)

The CHR1 bit selects the data length of transmit and receive data in combination with the CHR bit in the SMR register. A fixed data length of 8 bits is used in modes other than asynchronous mode.

BCP2 bit (Base Clock Pulse 2)

The BCP2 bit selects the number of base clock cycles in a 1-bit data transfer time in smart card interface mode. Set this bit in combination with the SMR_SMCI.BCP[1:0] bits.

Table 27.5 Combinations of the SCMR.BCP2 and SMR_SMCI.BCP[1:0] bits (1 of 2)

SCMR.BCP2 bit	SMR_SMCI.BCP[1:0] bits	Number of base clock cycles for 1-bit transfer period
0	00b	93 clock cycles (S = 93) ^{*1}
0	01b	128 clock cycles (S = 128) ^{*1}
0	10b	186 clock cycles (S = 186) ^{*1}
0	11b	512 clock cycles (S = 512) ^{*1}
1	00b	32 clock cycles (S = 32) (Initial Value) ^{*1}
1	01b	64 clock cycles (S = 64) ^{*1}

Table 27.5 Combinations of the SCMR.BCP2 and SMR_SMCI.BCP[1:0] bits (2 of 2)

SCMR.BCP2 bit	SMR_SMCI.BCP[1:0] bits	Number of base clock cycles for 1-bit transfer period
1	10b	372 clock cycles (S = 372) ^{*1}
1	11b	256 clock cycles (S = 256) ^{*1}

Note 1. S is the value of S in [section 27.2.17. BRR : Bit Rate Register](#).

27.2.17 BRR : Bit Rate Register

Base address: SCIO = 0x4007_0000
 SCIm = 0x4007_0000 + 0x0020 × m (m = 1 to 2, 9)

Offset address: 0x01

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:								
Value after reset:	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1

BRR is an 8-bit register that adjusts the bit rate.

As each SCI channel has independent baud rate generator control, different bit rates can be set for each channel. [Table 27.6](#) shows the relationship between the setting (N) in the BRR and the bit rate (B) for normal asynchronous mode, multi-processor transfer, clock synchronous mode, smart card interface mode, simple SPI mode, and simple IIC mode.

The initial value of the BRR register is 0xFF. The BRR register can be read by the CPU, but it can be written to only when the TE and RE bits in SCR/SCR_SMCI are 0.

Table 27.6 Relationship between N setting in BRR and bit rate B

Mode	SEMR settings			BRR setting	Error
	BGDM bit	ABCS bit	ABCS E bit		
Asynchronous, multi-processor transfer	0	0	0	$N = \frac{PCLK \times 10^6}{64 \times 2^{2n-1} \times B} - 1$	$Error (\%) = \left\{ \frac{PCLK \times 10^6}{B \times 64 \times 2^{2n-1} \times (N+1)} - 1 \right\} \times 100$
	1	0	0	$N = \frac{PCLK \times 10^6}{32 \times 2^{2n-1} \times B} - 1$	$Error (\%) = \left\{ \frac{PCLK \times 10^6}{B \times 32 \times 2^{2n-1} \times (N+1)} - 1 \right\} \times 100$
	0	1	0		
	1	1	0	$N = \frac{PCLK \times 10^6}{16 \times 2^{2n-1} \times B} - 1$	$Error (\%) = \left\{ \frac{PCLK \times 10^6}{B \times 16 \times 2^{2n-1} \times (N+1)} - 1 \right\} \times 100$
	Don't care	Don't care	1	$N = \frac{PCLK \times 10^6}{12 \times 2^{2n-1} \times B} - 1$	$Error (\%) = \left\{ \frac{PCLK \times 10^6}{B \times 12 \times 2^{2n-1} \times (N+1)} - 1 \right\} \times 100$
Clock synchronous, simple SPI				$N = \frac{PCLK \times 10^6}{8 \times 2^{2n-1} \times B} - 1$	—
Smart card interface				$N = \frac{PCLK \times 10^6}{S \times 2^{2n+1} \times B} - 1$	$Error (\%) = \left\{ \frac{PCLK \times 10^6}{B \times S \times 2^{2n+1} \times (N+1)} - 1 \right\} \times 100$
Simple IIC ^{*1}				$N = \frac{PCLK \times 10^6}{64 \times 2^{2n-1} \times B} - 1$	—

Note: B: Bit rate (bps)

N: BRR setting for on-chip baud rate generator (0 ≤ N ≤ 255)

PCLK: Operating frequency (MHz)

n and S: Determined by the SMR/SMR_SMCI and SCMR register settings as listed in [Table 27.8](#) and [Table 27.9](#).

Note 1. Adjust the bit rate so that the widths of high and low level of the SCLn output in simple IIC mode satisfy the I²C bus standard.

Table 27.7 Calculating widths of SCLn high and low levels

Mode	SCLn	Formula (result in seconds)
IIC	Width at high level (minimum value)	$(N + 1) \times 4 \times 2^{2n-1} \times 7 \times \frac{1}{PCLK \times 10^6}$
	Width at low level (minimum value)	$(N + 1) \times 4 \times 2^{2n-1} \times 8 \times \frac{1}{PCLK \times 10^6}$

Table 27.8 Clock source settings

SMR or SMR_SMCI.CKS[1:0] bits setting	Clock source	n
CKS[1:0] bits		
00b	PCLK clock	0
01b	PCLK/4 clock	1
10b	PCLK/16 clock	2
11b	PCLK/64 clock	3

Table 27.9 Base clock settings in smart card interface mode

SCMR.BCP2 bit setting	SMR_SMCI.BCP[1:0] bits setting	Base clock cycles for 1-bit period	S
BCP2 bit	BCP[1:0] bits		
0	00b	93 clock cycles	93
0	01b	128 clock cycles	128
0	10b	186 clock cycles	186
0	11b	512 clock cycles	512
1	00b	32 clock cycles	32
1	01b	64 clock cycles	64
1	10b	372 clock cycles	372
1	11b	256 clock cycles	256

Table 27.10 lists examples of BRR (N) settings in normal asynchronous mode. Table 27.11 lists the maximum bit rate settable for each operating frequency. Table 27.15 lists examples of BRR (N) settings in smart card interface mode.

In smart card interface mode, the number of base clock cycles S in a 1-bit data transfer time can be selected. For details, see section 27.6.4. Receive Data Sampling Timing and Reception Margin. Table 27.12 and Table 27.14 list the maximum bit rates with external clock input.

When either the Asynchronous Mode Base Clock Select bit (ABCS) or the Baud Rate Generator Double-speed Mode Select bit (BGDM) in the Serial Extended Mode Register (SEMR) is set to 1 in asynchronous mode, the bit rate becomes twice the value listed in Table 27.16. When both of those registers are set to 1, the bit rate becomes four times the listed value.

Table 27.10 Examples of BRR settings for different bit rates in asynchronous mode (1) (1 of 3)

Bit rate (bps)	Operating frequency PCLK (MHz)														
	8			9.8304			10			12			12.288		
	n	N	Error (%)	n	N	Error (%)	n	N	Error (%)	n	N	Error (%)	n	N	Error (%)
110	2	141	0.03	2	174	-0.26	2	177	-0.25	2	212	0.03	2	217	0.08
150	2	103	0.16	2	127	0.00	2	129	0.16	2	155	0.16	2	159	0.00
300	1	207	0.16	1	255	0.00	2	64	0.16	2	77	0.16	2	79	0.00
600	1	103	0.16	1	127	0.00	1	129	0.16	1	155	0.16	1	159	0.00
1200	0	207	0.16	0	255	0.00	1	64	0.16	1	77	0.16	1	79	0.00
2400	0	103	0.16	0	127	0.00	0	129	0.16	0	155	0.16	0	159	0.00
4800	0	51	0.16	0	63	0.00	0	64	0.16	0	77	0.16	0	79	0.00

Table 27.10 Examples of BRR settings for different bit rates in asynchronous mode (1) (2 of 3)

Bit rate (bps)	Operating frequency PCLK (MHz)														
	8			9.8304			10			12			12.288		
	n	N	Error (%)	n	N	Error (%)	n	N	Error (%)	n	N	Error (%)	n	N	Error (%)
9600	0	25	0.16	0	31	0.00	0	32	-1.36	0	38	0.16	0	39	0.00
19200	0	12	0.16	0	15	0.00	0	15	1.73	0	19	-2.34	0	19	0.00
31250	0	7	0.00	0	9	-1.70	0	9	0.00	0	11	0.00	0	11	2.40
38400	—	—	—	0	7	0.00	0	7	1.73	0	9	-2.34	0	9	0.00

Table 27.10 Examples of BRR settings for different bit rates in asynchronous mode (1) (3 of 3)

Bit rate (bps)	Operating frequency PCLK (MHz)														
	14			16			17.2032			18			19.6608		
	n	N	Error (%)	n	N	Error (%)	n	N	Error (%)	n	N	Error (%)	n	N	Error (%)
110	2	248	-0.17	3	70	0.03	3	75	0.48	3	79	-0.12	3	86	0.31
150	2	181	0.16	2	207	0.16	2	223	0.00	2	233	0.16	2	255	0.00
300	2	90	0.16	2	103	0.16	2	111	0.00	2	116	0.16	2	127	0.00
600	1	181	0.16	1	207	0.16	1	223	0.00	1	233	0.16	1	255	0.00
1200	1	90	0.16	1	103	0.16	1	111	0.00	1	116	0.16	1	127	0.00
2400	0	181	0.16	0	207	0.16	0	223	0.00	0	233	0.16	0	255	0.00
4800	0	90	0.16	0	103	0.16	0	111	0.00	0	116	0.16	0	127	0.00
9600	0	45	-0.93	0	51	0.16	0	55	0.00	0	58	-0.69	0	63	0.00
19200	0	22	-0.93	0	25	0.16	0	27	0.00	0	28	1.02	0	31	0.00
31250	0	13	0.00	0	15	0.00	0	16	1.20	0	17	0.00	0	19	-1.70
38400	—	—	—	0	12	0.16	0	13	0.00	0	14	-2.34	0	15	0.00

Note: In this example, SEMR.ABCS = 0, SEMR.ABCSE = 0, and SEMR.BGDM = 0.

When either the ABCS or BGDM bit is set to 1, the bit rate doubles.

When both ABCS and BGDM are set to 1, the bit rate increases four times.

Table 27.11 maximum bit rate for each operating frequency in asynchronous mode (1 of 2)

PCLK (MHz)	SEMR settings					Maximum bit rate (bps)	PCLK (MHz)	SEMR settings					Maximum bit rate (bps)
	BGDM bit	ABCS bit	ABCSE bit	n	N			BGDM bit	ABCS bit	ABCSE bit	n	N	
8	0	0	0	0	0	250000	17.2032	0	0	0	0	0	537600
		1	0	0	0	500000			1	0	0	0	1075200
	1	0	0	0	0			1	0	0	0	0	
		1	0	0	0	1000000			1	0	0	0	2150400
	Don't care	Don't care	1	0	0	1333333		Don't care	Don't care	1	0	0	2867200
9.8304	0	0	0	0	0	307200	18	0	0	0	0	0	562500
		1	0	0	0	614400			1	0	0	0	1125000
	1	0	0	0	0			1	0	0	0	0	
		1	0	0	0	1228800			1	0	0	0	2250000
	Don't care	Don't care	1	0	0	1638400		Don't care	Don't care	1	0	0	3000000

Table 27.11 maximum bit rate for each operating frequency in asynchronous mode (2 of 2)

PCLK (MHz)	SEMR settings					Maximum bit rate (bps)	PCLK (MHz)	SEMR settings					Maximum bit rate (bps)
	BGDM bit	ABCS bit	ABCSE bit	n	N			BGDM bit	ABCS bit	ABCSE bit	n	N	
10	0	0	0	0	0	312500	19.6608	0	0	0	0	0	614400
		1	0	0	0	625000			1	0	0	0	1228800
	1	0	0	0	0			1	0	0	0	0	
		1	0	0	0	1250000			1	0	0	0	2457600
	Don't care	Don't care	1	0	0	1666666		Don't care	Don't care	1	0	0	3276800
12	0	0	0	0	0	375000	20	0	0	0	0	0	625000
		1	0	0	0	750000			1	0	0	0	1250000
	1	0	0	0	0			1	0	0	0	0	
		1	0	0	0	1500000			1	0	0	0	2500000
	Don't care	Don't care	1	0	0	2000000		Don't care	Don't care	1	0	0	3333333
12.288	0	0	0	0	0	384000							
		1	0	0	0	768000							
	1	0	0	0	0								
		1	0	0	0	1536000							
	Don't care	Don't care	1	0	0	2048000							
14	0	0	0	0	0	437500							
		1	0	0	0	875000							
	1	0	0	0	0								
		1	0	0	0	1750000							
	Don't care	Don't care	1	0	0	2333333							
16	0	0	0	0	0	500000							
		1	0	0	0	1000000							
	1	0	0	0	0								
		1	0	0	0	2000000							
	Don't care	Don't care	1	0	0	2666666							

Table 27.12 Maximum bit rate with external clock input in asynchronous mode

Maximum bit rate (bps)			
PCLK (MHz)	External input clock (MHz)	SEMR.ABCS = 0	SEMR.ABCS = 1
8	2.0000	125000	250000
9.8304	2.4576	153600	307200
10	2.5000	156250	312500
12	3.0000	187500	375000
12.288	3.0720	192000	384000
14	3.5000	218750	437500
16	4.0000	250000	500000
17.2032	4.3008	268800	537600
18	4.5000	281250	562500
19.6608	4.9152	307200	614400
20	5.0000	312500	625000

Table 27.13 BBR settings for different bit rates in clock synchronous and simple SPI modes

Bit rate (bps)	Operating frequency PCLK (MHz)							
	8		10		16		20	
	n	N	n	N	n	N	n	N
2.5 k	1	199	1	249	2	99	2	124
5 k	1	99	1	124	1	199	1	249
10 k	0	199	0	249	1	99	1	124
25 k	0	79	0	99	0	159	0	199
50 k	0	39	0	49	0	79	0	99
100 k	0	19	0	24	0	39	0	49
250 k	0	7	0	9	0	15	0	19
500 k	0	3	0	4	0	7	0	9
1 M	0	1			0	3	0	4
2.5 M			0	0 ^{*1}			0	1
5 M							0	0 ^{*1}
7.5 M								

Note: Space: Setting prohibited.

Note 1. Continuous transmission or reception is not possible. After transmitting or receiving one frame of data, a 1-bit period elapses before starting to transmit or receive the next frame of data. The output of the synchronization clock is stopped for a 1-bit period. Therefore, it takes 9 bits worth of time to transfer one frame (8 bits) of data, and the average transfer rate is 8/9 times the bit rate.

Table 27.14 Maximum bit rate with external clock input in clock synchronous mode and simple SPI mode

PCLK (MHz)	External input clock (MHz)	Maximum bit rate (Mbps)
8	1.3333	1.3333333
10	1.6667	1.6666667
12	2.0000	2.0000000
14	2.3333	2.3333333
16	2.6667	2.6666667
18	3.0000	3.0000000
20	3.3333	3.3333333

Table 27.15 BBR settings for different bit rates in smart card interface mode (n = 0, S = 372) (1 of 2)

Bit rate (bps)	Operating frequency PCLK (MHz)											
	7.1424			10.00			10.7136			13.00		
	n	N	Error (%)	n	N	Error (%)	n	N	Error (%)	n	N	Error (%)
9600	0	0	0.00	0	1	-30	0	1	-25	0	1	-8.99

Table 27.15 BBR settings for different bit rates in smart card interface mode (n = 0, S = 372) (2 of 2)

Bit rate (bps)	Operating frequency PCLK (MHz)											
	14.2848			16.00			18.00			20.00		
	n	N	Error (%)	n	N	Error (%)	n	N	Error (%)	n	N	Error (%)
9600	0	1	0.00	0	1	12.01	0	2	-15.99	0	2	-6.66

Table 27.16 Maximum bit rate for each operating frequency in smart card interface mode (S = 32) (1 of 2)

PCLK (MHz)	Maximum bit rate (bps)	n	N
10.00	156250	0	0

Table 27.16 Maximum bit rate for each operating frequency in smart card interface mode (S = 32) (2 of 2)

PCLK (MHz)	Maximum bit rate (bps)	n	N
10.7136	167400	0	0
13.00	203125	0	0
16.00	250000	0	0
18.00	281250	0	0
20.00	312500	0	0

Table 27.17 BBR settings for different bit rates in simple IIC mode

Bit rate (bps)	Operating frequency PCLK (MHz)											
	8			10			16			20		
	n	N	Error (%)	n	N	Error (%)	n	N	Error (%)	n	N	Error (%)
10 k	0	24	0.0	0	30	0.8	1	12	-3.8	1	15	-2.3
25 k	0	9	0.0	0	12	-3.8	1	4	0.0	1	5	4.2
50 k	0	4	0.0	0	5	4.2	1	2	-16.7	1	2	4.2
100 k ^{*1}	0	2	-16.7	0	3	-21.9	0	4	0.0	0	6	-10.7
250 k	0	0	0.0	0	0	25.0	0	1	0.0	0	2	-16.7
350 k	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	0	1	-10.7
400 k ^{*1}	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	0	1	-21.9

Note 1. The bit rate of 100 kbps and 400 kbps indicates the set value at which the error is on the minus side.

Table 27.18 Minimum widths at SCLn high and low levels for different bit rates in simple IIC mode

Bit rate (bps)	Operating frequency PCLK (MHz)											
	8			10			16			20		
	n	N	Minimum widths at SCLn high/low levels (μs)	n	N	Minimum widths at SCLn high/low levels (μs)	n	N	Minimum widths at SCLn high/low levels (μs)	n	N	Minimum widths at SCLn high/low levels (μs)
10 k	0	24	43.75/50.00	0	30	43.40/49.60	1	12	45.5/52.00	1	15	44.80/51.20
25 k	0	9	17.50/20.00	0	12	18.2/20.80	1	4	17.50/20.00	1	5	16.80/19.20
50 k	0	4	8.75/10.00	0	5	8.40/9.60	1	2	10.50/12.00	1	2	8.40/9.60
100 k	0	2	5.25/6.00	0	3	5.60/6.40	0	4	4.37/5.00	0	6	4.90/5.60
250 k	0	0	1.75/2.00	0	0	1.40/1.60	0	1	1.75/2.00	0	2	2.10/2.40
350 k	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	0	1	1.40/1.60
400 k	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	0	1	1.40/1.60

27.2.18 MDDR : Modulation Duty Register

Base address: SCi0 = 0x4007_0000
 SCIm = 0x4007_0000 + 0x0020 × m (m = 1 to 2, 9)

Offset address: 0x12

Bit position: 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0

Bit field:

Value after reset: 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1

MDDR corrects the bit rate adjusted by the BRR register.

When the BRME bit in SEMR is set to 1, the bit rate generated by the on-chip baud rate generator is evenly corrected using the settings in MDDR (M/256). [Table 27.19](#) shows the relationship between the MDDR setting (M) and the bit rate (B).

The initial value of MDDR is 0xFF. Bit [7] in this register is fixed to 1.

The CPU can read the MDDR register, but this register is only writable when the TE and RE bits in SCR/SCR_SMCI are 0.

Table 27.19 Relationship between MDDR setting (M) and bit rate (B) when bit rate modulation function is used

B: Bit rate (bps)

M: MDDR setting ($128 \leq \text{MDDR} \leq 256$)

N: BRR setting for baud rate generator ($0 \leq N \leq 255$)

PCLK: Operating frequency (MHz)

n and S: Determined by the SMR/SMR_SMCI and SCMR register settings as listed in Table 27.8 and Table 27.9 in section 27.2.17. BRR : Bit Rate Register.

x: Don't care

Mode	SEMR settings			BRR setting	Error
	BGDM bit	ABCS bit	ABCSE bit		
Asynchronous multiprocessor transfer	0	0	0	$N = \frac{\text{PCLK} \times 10^6}{64 \times 2^{2n-1} \times \left(\frac{256}{M}\right) \times B} - 1$	$\text{Error}(\%) = \left\{ \frac{\text{PCLK} \times 10^6}{B \times 64 \times 2^{2n-1} \times \left(\frac{256}{M}\right) \times (N+1)} - 1 \right\} \times 100$
	1	0	0	$N = \frac{\text{PCLK} \times 10^6}{32 \times 2^{2n-1} \times \left(\frac{256}{M}\right) \times B} - 1$	$\text{Error}(\%) = \left\{ \frac{\text{PCLK} \times 10^6}{B \times 32 \times 2^{2n-1} \times \left(\frac{256}{M}\right) \times (N+1)} - 1 \right\} \times 100$
	0	1	0		
	1	1	0	$N = \frac{\text{PCLK} \times 10^6}{16 \times 2^{2n-1} \times \left(\frac{256}{M}\right) \times B} - 1$	$\text{Error}(\%) = \left\{ \frac{\text{PCLK} \times 10^6}{B \times 16 \times 2^{2n-1} \times \left(\frac{256}{M}\right) \times (N+1)} - 1 \right\} \times 100$
	x	x	1	$N = \frac{\text{PCLK} \times 10^6}{12 \times 2^{2n-1} \times \left(\frac{256}{M}\right) \times B} - 1$	$\text{Error}(\%) = \left\{ \frac{\text{PCLK} \times 10^6}{B \times 12 \times 2^{2n-1} \times \left(\frac{256}{M}\right) \times (N+1)} - 1 \right\} \times 100$
Clock synchronous, simple SPI ^{*1}				$N = \frac{\text{PCLK} \times 10^6}{8 \times 2^{2n-1} \times \left(\frac{256}{M}\right) \times B} - 1$	—
Smart card interface				$N = \frac{\text{PCLK} \times 10^6}{S \times 2^{2n+1} \times \left(\frac{256}{M}\right) \times B} - 1$	$\text{Error}(\%) = \left\{ \frac{\text{PCLK} \times 10^6}{B \times S \times 2^{2n+1} \times \left(\frac{256}{M}\right) \times (N+1)} - 1 \right\} \times 100$
Simple IIC ^{*2}				$N = \frac{\text{PCLK} \times 10^6}{64 \times 2^{2n-1} \times \left(\frac{256}{M}\right) \times B} - 1$	—

Note 1. Do not use this function in clock synchronous mode or in the highest speed settings in simple SPI mode (SMR.CKS[1:0] = 00b, SCR.CKE[1] = 0, and BRR = 0).

Note 2. Adjust the bit rate so that the widths at high and low level of the SCLn output in simple IIC mode satisfy the IIC standard.

Table 27.20 and Table 27.21 list examples of N settings in BRR and M settings in MDDR in normal asynchronous mode.

Table 27.20 Examples of BRR and MDDR settings for multiple bit rates in asynchronous mode (1) (1 of 4)

Bit rate (bps)	Operating frequency PCLK (MHz)														
	8					9.8304					10				
	n	N	M	BGDM bit	Error (%)	n	N	M	BGDM bit	Error (%)	n	N	M	BGDM bit	Error (%)
38400	0	5	236	0	0.03	0	7	(256)* ¹	0	0.00	0	10	173	1	-0.01
57600	0	3	236	0	0.03	0	4	240	0	0.00	0	4	236	0	0.03
115200	0	1	236	0	0.03	0	1	192	0	0.00	0	4	236	1	0.03

Table 27.20 Examples of BRR and MDDR settings for multiple bit rates in asynchronous mode (1) (2 of 4)

Bit rate (bps)	Operating frequency PCLK (MHz)														
	8					9.8304					10				
	n	N	M	BGDM bit	Error (%)	n	N	M	BGDM bit	Error (%)	n	N	M	BGDM bit	Error (%)
230400	0	0	236	0	0.03	0	0	192	0	0.00	0	1	189	1	0.14
460800	0	0	236	1	0.03	0	0	192	1	0.00	0	0	189	1	0.14

Table 27.20 Examples of BRR and MDDR settings for multiple bit rates in asynchronous mode (1) (3 of 4)

Bit rate (bps)	Operating frequency PCLK (MHz)														
	12					12.288					14				
	n	N	M	BGDM bit	Error (%)	n	N	M	BGDM bit	Error (%)	n	N	M	BGDM bit	Error (%)
38400	0	8	236	0	0.03	0	9	(256)*1	0	0.00	0	16	191	1	0.00
57600	0	5	236	0	0.03	0	4	192	0	0.00	0	13	236	1	0.03
115200	0	2	236	0	0.03	0	4	192	1	0.00	0	6	236	1	0.03
230400	0	2	236	1	0.03	0	2	230	1	-0.17	0	2	202	1	-0.11
460800	0	0	157	1	-0.18	0	0	154	1	-0.26	0	0	135	1	0.14

Table 27.20 Examples of BRR and MDDR settings for multiple bit rates in asynchronous mode (1) (4 of 4)

Bit rate (bps)	Operating frequency PCLK (MHz)														
	16					17.2032					18				
	n	N	M	BGDM bit	Error (%)	n	N	M	BGDM bit	Error (%)	n	N	M	BGDM bit	Error (%)
38400	0	11	236	0	0.03	0	13	(256)*1	0	0.00	0	18	166	1	-0.01
57600	0	7	236	0	0.03	0	6	192	0	0.00	0	18	249	1	-0.01
115200	0	3	236	0	0.03	0	6	192	1	0.00	0	8	236	1	0.03
230400	0	1	236	0	0.03	0	3	219	1	-0.20	0	1	210	0	0.14
460800	0	1	236	1	0.03	0	1	219	1	-0.20	0	0	210	0	0.14

Note 1. In this example, ABCS and ABCSE in SEMR are 0.
SEMR.BRME = 0 (M = 256) disables the bit rate modulation function.

Table 27.21 Examples of BRR and MDDR settings for different bit rates in asynchronous mode (2)

Bit rate (bps)	Operating frequency PCLK (MHz)									
	19.6608					20				
	n	N	M	BGDM bit	Error (%)	n	N	M	BGDM bit	Error (%)
38400	0	15	(256)*1	0	0.00	0	10	173	0	-0.01
57600	0	9	240	0	0.00	0	9	236	0	0.03
115200	0	4	240	0	0.00	0	4	236	0	0.03
230400	0	1	192	0	0.00	0	4	236	1	0.03
460800	0	0	192	0	0.00	0	0	189	0	0.14

Note 1. In this example, ABCS and ABCSE in SEMR are 0.
SEMR.BRME = 0 (M = 256) disables the bit rate modulation function.

27.2.19 SEMR : Serial Extended Mode Register

Base address: SCIO = 0x4007_0000
 SCIm = 0x4007_0000 + 0x0020 × m (m = 1 to 2, 9)

Offset address: 0x07

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	RXDE SEL	BGDM	NFEN	ABCS	ABCS E	BRME	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
1	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
2	BRME	Bit Rate Modulation Enable 0: Disable bit rate modulation function 1: Enable bit rate modulation function	R/W ^{*1}
3	ABCSE	Asynchronous Mode Extended Base Clock Select 1 Valid only in asynchronous mode with SCR.CKE[1] = 0. 0: Clock cycles for 1-bit period determined by combination of the BGDM and ABCS bits in the SEMR register 1: Baud rate is 6 base clock cycles for 1-bit period	R/W ^{*1}
4	ABCS	Asynchronous Mode Base Clock Select Valid only in asynchronous mode. 0: Select 16 base clock cycles for 1-bit period 1: Select 8 base clock cycles for 1-bit period	R/W ^{*1}
5	NFEN	Digital Noise Filter Function Enable The NFEN bit must be 0 in all other modes. 0: In asynchronous mode: Disable noise cancellation function for RXDn input signal In simple I ² C mode: Disable noise cancellation function for SCLn and SDAn input signals 1: In asynchronous mode: Enable noise cancellation function for RXDn input signal In simple I ² C mode: Enable noise cancellation function for SCLn and SDAn input signals	R/W ^{*1}
6	BGDM	Baud Rate Generator Double-Speed Mode Select Valid only in asynchronous mode with SCR.CKE[1] = 0. 0: Output clock from baud rate generator with normal frequency 1: Output clock from baud rate generator with doubled frequency	R/W ^{*1}
7	RXDESEL	Asynchronous Start Bit Edge Detection Select Valid only in asynchronous mode. 0: Detect low level on RXDn pin as start bit 1: Detect falling edge of RXDn pin as start bit	R/W ^{*1}

Note 1. Writable only when the TE and RE bits in SCR/SCR_SMCI are 0 (both serial transmission and reception are disabled).

The SEMR register selects the clock source for the 1-bit period in asynchronous mode.

BRME bit (Bit Rate Modulation Enable)

The BRME bit enables or disables the bit rate modulation function. The bit rate generated by the on-chip baud rate generator is evenly corrected when this function is enabled.

ABCSE bit (Asynchronous Mode Extended Base Clock Select 1)

The ABCSE bit sets the pulse number for the base clock in a 1-bit period to 6, and the double-frequency clock is output from the baud rate generator. When the bit rate is set to 6 while dividing the bus clock frequency, use this bit and set SMR.CKS[1:0] = 00b and BRR = 0.

Set it to 0 in modes other than asynchronous mode. Even in asynchronous mode, set it to 0 when using an external clock.

ABCS bit (Asynchronous Mode Base Clock Select)

The ABCS bit selects the number of clock cycles for a 1-bit period.

NFEN bit (Digital Noise Filter Function Enable)

The NFEN bit enables or disables the digital noise filter function.

When the digital noise filter function is enabled:

- Noise cancellation is applied to the RXDn input signal in asynchronous mode
- Noise cancellation is applied to the SDA_n and SCL_n input signals in simple I²C mode

In all other modes, set the NFEN bit to 0 to disable the digital noise filter function. When the function is disabled, input signals are transferred as received.

BGDM bit (Baud Rate Generator Double-Speed Mode Select)

The BGDM bit selects whether or not to double the base clock frequency output from the baud rate generator.

The BGDM bit is valid when the on-chip baud rate generator is selected as the clock source (SCR.CKE[1] = 0) in asynchronous mode (SMR.CM = 0). When an external clock is selected (SCR.CKE[1] = 1), set it to 0. The base clock is generated by the clock output from the baud rate generator. When the BGDM bit is set to 1, the base clock cycle is halved and the bit rate is doubled.

Set this bit to 0 in modes other than asynchronous mode.

RXDESEL bit (Asynchronous Start Bit Edge Detection Select)

The RXDESEL bit selects the detection method of the start bit for reception in asynchronous mode. When a break occurs, data reception operation depends on the setting of this bit. Set this bit to 1 when reception must be stopped while a break occurs or when reception must be started without keeping the RXDn pin input at the high level for the period of one data frame or longer after completion of the break.

Set this bit to 0 in modes other than asynchronous mode.

27.2.20 SNFR : Noise Filter Setting Register

Base address: SC10 = 0x4007_0000
SC1m = 0x4007_0000 + 0x0020 × m (m = 1 to 2, 9)

Offset address: 0x08

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	NFCS[2:0]		
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
2:0	NFCS[2:0]	Noise Filter Clock Select In asynchronous mode, selects the standard setting for the base clock. In simple I ² C mode, selects the standard settings for the clock source of the on-chip baud rate generator selected in the SMR.CKS[1:0] bits. 0 0 0: In asynchronous mode: Use clock signal divided by 1 with noise filter In simple I ² C mode: Setting prohibited 0 0 1: In asynchronous mode: Setting prohibited In simple I ² C mode: Use clock signal divided by 1 with noise filter 0 1 0: In asynchronous mode: Setting prohibited In simple I ² C mode: Use clock signal divided by 2 with noise filter 0 1 1: In asynchronous mode: Setting prohibited In simple I ² C mode: Use clock signal divided by 4 with noise filter 1 0 0: In asynchronous mode: Setting prohibited In simple I ² C mode: Use clock signal divided by 8 with noise filter Others: Setting prohibited	R/W ¹
7:3	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note 1. Writing to these bits is only possible when the RE and TE bits in SCR/SCR_SMCI are 0 (serial reception and transmission disabled).

The SNFR register sets the digital noise filter clock.

NFCS[2:0] bits (Noise Filter Clock Select)

The NFCS[2:0] bits select the sampling clock for the digital noise filter. To use the noise filter in asynchronous mode, set these bits to 000b. In simple I²C mode, when 32 clocks are selected as one-bit period in the basic clock selection bits of the SEMR register, set the NFCS [2: 0] bits in the range from 001b to 100b. When any other value is selected for the basic clock selection bit, set the NFCS bit to 001b.

27.2.21 SIMR1 : IIC Mode Register 1

Base address: SCIO = 0x4007_0000
 SCIm = 0x4007_0000 + 0x0020 × m (m = 1 to 2, 9)

Offset address: 0x09

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	IICDL[4:0]				—	—	IICM	

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	IICM	Simple IIC Mode Select 0: SCMR.SMIF = 0: Asynchronous mode (including multi-processor mode), clock synchronous mode, or simple SPI mode SCMR.SMIF = 1: Smart card interface mode 1: SCMR.SMIF = 0: Simple IIC mode SCMR.SMIF = 1: Setting prohibited	R/W ^{*1}
2:1	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
7:3	IICDL[4:0]	SDAn Delay Output Select SDAn signal output delay in cycles of the clock signal from the on-chip baud rate generator. 0x00: No output delay Others: (IICDL - 1) to (IICDL) cycles	R/W ^{*1}

Note 1. Writing to these bits is only possible when the RE and TE bits in the SCR register are 0 (both serial transmission and reception are disabled).

SIMR1 selects simple IIC mode and the number of delay stages for the SDAn output.

IICM bit (Simple IIC Mode Select)

With the SCMR.SMIF bit, the IICM bit selects the operating mode.

IICDL[4:0] bits (SDAn Delay Output Select)

The IICDL[4:0] bits specify an output delay on the SDAn pin relative to the falling edge of the output on the SCLn pin.

The available delay settings range from no delay to 31 cycles, with the clock signal from the on-chip baud rate generator as the base. The signal obtained by frequency-dividing PCLK by the divisor set in SMR.CKS[1:0] is supplied as the clock signal from the on-chip baud rate generator. Set 00000b to IICDL[4:0] bits unless operation is in simple IIC mode. In simple IIC mode, set the bits to a value in the range from 00001b to 11111b.

Table 27.22 Settable value of IICDL[4: 0] bits in each communication mode

Communication mode	ABCS	Settable value of IICDL[4:0] bits
Other than simple IIC mode	Don't care	00000b
Simple IIC mode	0	00001b to 11111b
	1	00001b to 00100b

27.2.22 SIMR2 : IIC Mode Register 2

Base address: SCIO = 0x4007_0000
 SCIm = 0x4007_0000 + 0x0020 × m (m = 1 to 2, 9)

Offset address: 0x0A

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	IICACKT	—	—	—	IICCS C	IICINT M
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	IICINTM	IIC Interrupt Mode Select 0: Use ACK/NACK interrupts 1: Use reception and transmission interrupts	R/W ^{*1}
1	IICCS C	Clock Synchronization 0: Do not synchronize with clock signal 1: Synchronize with clock signal	R/W ^{*1}
4:2	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
5	IICACKT	ACK Transmission Data 0: ACK transmission 1: NACK transmission and ACK/NACK reception	R/W
7:6	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note 1. Writing to these bits is only possible when the RE and TE bits in the SCR register are 0 (serial reception and transmission disabled).

SIMR2 selects how reception and transmission are controlled in simple IIC mode.

IICINTM bit (IIC Interrupt Mode Select)

The IICINTM bit selects the sources of interrupt requests in simple IIC mode.

IICCS C bit (Clock Synchronization)

Set the IICCS C bit to 1 if the internally generated SCLn clock signal is to be synchronized when the SCLn pin is driven low because a wait was inserted by another other device.

The SCLn clock signal is not synchronized if the IICCS C bit is 0. The SCLn clock signal is generated according to the rate selected in the BRR register regardless of the level being input on the SCLn pin.

Set the IICCS C bit to 1 except during debugging.

IICACKT bit (ACK Transmission Data)

Transmitted data contains ACK bits. Set the IICACKT bit to 1 when ACK and NACK bits are received.

27.2.23 SIMR3 : IIC Mode Register 3

Base address: SCIO = 0x4007_0000
 SCIm = 0x4007_0000 + 0x0020 × m (m = 1 to 2, 9)

Offset address: 0x0B

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	IICSCLS[1:0]	IICSDAS[1:0]	IICSTI F	IICST PREQ	IICRS TARE Q	IICSTA REQ		
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	IICSTAREQ	Start Condition Generation 0: Do not generate start condition 1: Generate start condition ^{*1 *3 *5 *6}	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
1	IICSTAREQ	Restart Condition Generation 0: Do not generate restart condition 1: Generate restart condition*2 *3 *5 *6	R/W
2	IICSTPREQ	Stop Condition Generation 0: Do not generate stop condition 1: Generate stop condition*2 *3 *5 *6	R/W
3	IICSTIF	Issuing of Start, Restart, or Stop Condition Completed Flag 0: No requests are being made for generating conditions, or a condition is being generated 1: Generation of start, restart, or stop condition is complete. When 0 is written to IICSTIF, it is set to 0*4	R/W*4
5:4	IICSDAS[1:0]	SDAn Output Select 0 0: Output serial data 0 1: Generate start, restart, or stop condition 1 0: Output low on SDAn pin 1 1: Drive SDAn pin to high-impedance state	R/W
7:6	IICSCLS[1:0]	SCLn Output Select 0 0: Output serial clock 0 1: Generate start, restart, or stop condition 1 0: Output low on SCLn pin 1 1: Drive SCLn pin to high-impedance state	R/W

Note 1. Only generate a start condition after checking the bus state and confirming that the bus is free.

Note 2. Generate a restart or stop condition after checking the bus state and confirming that the bus is busy.

Note 3. Do not set more than one of the IICSTAREQ, IICRSTAREQ, and IICSTPREQ bits to 1 at a given time.

Note 4. Only write 0. When 1 is written, the value is ignored.

Note 5. Execute the generation of a condition after the value of the IICSTIF flag is 0.

Note 6. Do not write 0 to this bit while it is 1. Generation of a condition is suspended by writing 0 to this bit while it is 1.

The SIMR3 register is used to control the start, restart, and stop conditions in the simple I²C mode, and to hold the SSDAn and SSCLn pins at fixed levels.

IICSTAREQ bit (Start Condition Generation)

When a start condition is to be generated, set both IICSDAS[1:0] and IICSCLS[1:0] to 01b in addition to setting the IICSTAREQ bit to 1.

[Setting condition]

- On writing 1 to the bit.

[Clearing condition]

- On completion of start condition generation.

IICRSTAREQ bit (Restart Condition Generation)

When a restart condition is to be generated, set both IICSDAS[1:0] and IICSCLS[1:0] to 01b in addition to setting the IICRSTAREQ bit to 1.

[Setting condition]

- On writing 1 to the bit.

[Clearing condition]

- On completion of restart condition generation.

IICSTPREQ bit (Stop Condition Generation)

When a stop condition is to be generated, set both IICSDAS[1:0] and IICSCLS[1:0] to 01b in addition to setting the IICSTPREQ bit to 1.

[Setting condition]

- On writing 1 to the bit.

[Clearing condition]

- On completion of stop condition generation.

IICSTIF flag (Issuing of Start, Restart, or Stop Condition Completed Flag)

After generating a condition, the IICSTIF flag indicates that the condition generation is complete. When using the IICSTAREQ, IICRSTAREQ, or IICSTPREQ bit to cause generation of a condition, do so after setting the IICSTIF flag to 0. When the IICSTIF flag is 1 while an interrupt request is enabled by setting the SCR.TEIE bit, an STI request is output.

[Setting condition]

- On completion of a start, restart, or stop condition generation.

If the setting condition conflicts with any of the clearing conditions for the flag, the clearing condition takes precedence.

[Clearing conditions]

- On writing 0 to the bit. After writing 0 to the IICSTIF bit, read the bit to check that it is set to 0.
- On writing 0 to the SIMR1.IICM bit when operation is not in simple IIC mode.
- On writing 0 to the SCR.TE bit.

IICSDAS[1:0] bits (SDAn Output Select)

The IICSDAS[1:0] bits control output from the SDAn pin. Set IICSDAS[1:0] and IICSCLS[1:0] to the same value during normal operations.

IICSCLS[1:0] bits (SCLn Output Select)

The IICSCLS[1:0] bits control output from the SCLn pin. Set IICSDAS[1:0] and IICSCLS[1:0] to the same value during normal operations.

27.2.24 SISR : IIC Status Register

Base address: SCIO = 0x4007_0000
 SCLm = 0x4007_0000 + 0x0020 × m (m = 1 to 2, 9)

Offset address: 0x0C

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	IICACKR

Value after reset: 0 0 x x 0 x 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	IICACKR	ACK Reception Data Flag 0: ACK received 1: NACK received	R
1	—	This bit is read as 0.	R
2	—	The read value is undefined.	R
3	—	This bit is read as 0.	R
5:4	—	The read value is undefined.	R
7:6	—	These bits are read as 0.	R

SISR monitors the state in simple IIC mode.

IICACKR flag (ACK Reception Data Flag)

Received ACK and NACK bits can be read from the IICACKR flag. The IICACKR flag is updated on the rising edge of the SCLn clock for the received ACK/NACK bit.

27.2.25 SPMR : SPI Mode Register

Base address: SCIO = 0x4007_0000
 SCIm = 0x4007_0000 + 0x0020 × m (m = 1 to 2, 9)

Offset address: 0x0D

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	CKPH	CKPOL	—	MFF	—	MSS	CTSE	SSE

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	SSE	SSn Pin Function Enable 0: Disable SSn pin function 1: Enable SSn pin function	R/W ^{*1}
1	CTSE	CTS Enable 0: Disable CTS function (enable RTS output function) 1: Enable CTS function	R/W ^{*1}
2	MSS	Master Slave Select 0: Transmit through TXDn pin and receive through RXDn pin (master mode) 1: Receive through TXDn pin and transmit through RXDn pin (slave mode)	R/W ^{*1}
3	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
4	MFF	Mode Fault Flag 0: No mode fault error 1: Mode fault error	R/W ^{*2}
5	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
6	CKPOL	Clock Polarity Select 0: Do not invert clock polarity 1: Invert clock polarity	R/W ^{*1}
7	CKPH	Clock Phase Select 0: Do not delay clock 1: Delay clock	R/W ^{*1}

Note 1. Writing to these bits is only possible when the RE and TE bits in the SCR register are 0 (both serial transmission and reception are disabled).

Note 2. Only 0 can be written to this bit, to clear the flag.

SPMR selects the extension settings in asynchronous and clock synchronous modes.

SSE bit (SSn Pin Function Enable)

Set the SSE bit to 1 to use the SSn pin to control transmission and reception in simple SPI mode. Set this bit to 0 in all other modes. In simple SPI mode, when master mode is selected (SCR.CKE[1:0] = 00b and SPMR.MSS = 0) and there is a single master, the SSn pin on the master side is not required to control reception and transmission. In such a case, set the SSE bit to 0. Do not set both the SSE and CTSE bits to 1. If this setting is made, operation is the same as that when these bits are set to 0.

CTSE bit (CTS Enable)

Set the CTSE bit to 1 if the SSn pin is to be used for inputting the CTS control signal to control transmission and reception. The RTS signal is output when this bit is set to 0. Set this bit to 0 in smart card interface mode, simple SPI mode, and simple IIC mode. Do not set both the CTSE and SSE bits to 1. If this setting is made, operation is the same as that when these bits are set to 0.

MSS bit (Master Slave Select)

The MSS bit selects master or slave operation in simple SPI mode. The functions of the TXDn and RXDn pins are reversed when this bit is set to 1, so that data is received through the TXDn pin and transmitted through the RXDn pin.

Set this bit to 0 in modes other than simple SPI mode.

MFF flag (Mode Fault Flag)

The MFF flag indicates mode fault errors. In a multi-master configuration, determine the mode fault error occurrence by reading this flag.

[Setting condition]

- When input on the SSn pin is low during master operation in simple SPI mode (SSE bit = 1 and MSS bit = 0).

[Clearing condition]

- On writing 0 to the bit after it is read as 1.

CKPOL bit (Clock Polarity Select)

The CKPOL bit selects the polarity of the clock signal output through the SCKn pin. See [Figure 27.69](#) for details. Set the CKPOL bit to 0 in all modes other than simple SPI mode and clock synchronous mode.

CKPH bit (Clock Phase Select)

The CKPH bit selects the phase of the clock signal output through the SCKn pin. See [Figure 27.69](#) for details. Set the CKPH bit to 0 in all modes other than simple SPI mode and clock synchronous mode.

27.2.26 FCR : FIFO Control Register

Base address: SCIO = 0x4007_0000

Offset address: 0x14

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	RSTRG[3:0]				RTRG[3:0]				TTRG[3:0]				DRES	TFRS T	RFRS T	FM
Value after reset:	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	FM	FIFO Mode Select Valid only in asynchronous mode, including multi-processor mode, or clock synchronous mode. 0: Non-FIFO mode. Selects TDR/RDR or TDRHL/RDRHL for communication. 1: FIFO mode. Selects FTDRHL/FRDRHL for communication.	R/W ^{*1}
1	RFRST	Receive FIFO Data Register Reset Valid only when FCR.FM = 1. 0: Do not reset FRDRHL 1: Reset FRDRHL	R/W
2	TFRST	Transmit FIFO Data Register Reset Valid only when FCR.FM = 1. 0: Do not reset FTDRHL 1: Reset FTDRHL	R/W
3	DRES	Receive Data Ready Error Select Selects the interrupt requested when detecting receive data ready. 0: Receive data full interrupt (SCIn_RXI) 1: Receive error interrupt (SCIn_ERI)	R/W
7:4	TTRG[3:0]	Transmit FIFO Data Trigger Number Valid only in asynchronous mode, including multi-processor mode, or clock synchronous mode. The trigger number is specified in the TTRG[3:0] bits.	R/W
11:8	RTRG[3:0]	Receive FIFO Data Trigger Number Valid only in asynchronous mode, including multi-processor mode, or clock synchronous mode. The trigger number is specified in the RTRG[3:0] bits.	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
15:12	RSTRG[3:0]	RTS Output Active Trigger Number Select Valid only in asynchronous mode, including multi-processor mode, or clock synchronous mode, when FCR.FM = 1, SPMR.CTSE = 0, and SPMR.SSE = 0. The trigger number is specified in the RSTRG[3:0] bits.	R/W

Note 1. Writable only when TE = 0 and RE = 0.

FCR selects FIFO mode, resets FTDRHL and FRDRHL, selects the FIFO data trigger number for transmission or reception, and selects the RTS output active trigger number.

FM bit (FIFO Mode Select)

When the FM bit is set to 1, FTDRHL and FRDRHL are selected for communication. When the FM bit is set to 0, TDR and RDR, or TDRHL and RDRHL are selected for communication.

RFRST bit (Receive FIFO Data Register Reset)

When the RFRST bit is set to 1, the FRDRHL register is reset and the received data count resets to 0. When 1 is written to the RFRST bit, it clears to 0 after 1 PCLK.

TFRST bit (Transmit FIFO Data Register Reset)

When the TFRST bit is set to 1, the FTDRHL register is reset and the transmit data count resets to 0. When 1 is written to the TFRST bit, it clears to 0 after 1 PCLK.

DRES bit (Receive Data Ready Error Select)

When detecting a receive data ready error, the selection can be made from an SCIn_RXI interrupt request or an SCIn_ERI interrupt request. When starting DTC and reading from the FRDRH and FRDRL registers, set the DRES bit to 1.

TTRG[3:0] bits (Transmit FIFO Data Trigger Number)

The TDFE flag is set to 1 when the amount of transmit data in FTDRHL is equal to or less than the transmit triggering number specified in the TTRG[3:0] bits, and software can write data to FTDRHL. If SCR.TIE = 1, an SCIn_TXI interrupt request occurs.

RTRG[3:0] bits (Receive FIFO Data Trigger Number)

The RDF flag is set to 1 when the amount of receive data in FRDRHL is equal to or greater than the receive triggering number specified in the RTRG[3:0] bits, and software can read data from FRDRHL. If SCR.RIE = 1, an SCIn_RXI interrupt request occurs.

When RTRG[3:0] is 0, the RDF flag is not set even when the amount of data in the receive FIFO is equal to 0, and an SCIn_RXI interrupt does not occur.

RSTRG[3:0] bits (RTS Output Active Trigger Number Select)

When the amount of receive data stored in FRDRHL is equal to or greater than the receive triggering number specified in the RSTRG[3:0] bits, the RTS signal goes high.

When RSTRG[3:0] is 0, the RTS signal does not go high even when the amount of data in FRDRHL is equal to 0.

27.2.27 FDR : FIFO Data Count Register

Base address: SCIO = 0x4007_0000

Offset address: 0x16

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	T[4:0]				—	—	—	R[4:0]					
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
4:0	R[4:0]	Receive FIFO Data Count Valid only in asynchronous mode, including multi-processor mode, or clock synchronous mode, when FCR.FM = 1. Indicates the amount of receive data stored in FRDRHL.	R
7:5	—	These bits are read as 0.	R
12:8	T[4:0]	Transmit FIFO Data Count Valid only in asynchronous mode, including multi-processor mode, or clock synchronous mode, when FCR.FM = 1. Indicate the amount of non-transmitted data stored in FTDRHL.	R
15:13	—	These bits are read as 0.	R

The FDR register indicates the amount of data stored in FRDRHL and FTDRHL.

R[4:0] bits (Receive FIFO Data Count)

The R[4:0] bits indicate the amount of receive data stored in FRDRHL. 0x00 means no receive data, and 0x10 means that the maximum received data is stored in FRDRHL.

T[4:0] bits (Transmit FIFO Data Count)

The T[4:0] bits indicate the amount of non-transmitted data stored in FTDRHL. 0x00 means no transmit data, and 0x10 means that all (maximum amount) of the data to be transmitted is stored in FTDRHL.

27.2.28 LSR : Line Status Register

Base address: SCIO = 0x4007_0000

Offset address: 0x18

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	PNUM[4:0]				—	FNUM[4:0]				—	—	—	ORER
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	ORER	Overflow Error Flag Valid only in asynchronous mode, including multi-processor mode, or clock synchronous mode, and when FIFO is selected. 0: No overrun error occurred 1: Overrun error occurred	R ¹
1	—	This bit is read as 0.	R
6:2	FNUM[4:0]	Framing Error Count Indicates the amount of data with a framing error in the receive data stored in FRDRHL.	R
7	—	This bit is read as 0.	R
12:8	PNUM[4:0]	Parity Error Count Indicates the amount of data with a parity error in the receive data stored in FRDRHL.	R
15:13	—	These bits are read as 0.	R

Note 1. Write 0 to SSR_FIFO.ORER to clear the flag.

The LSR register indicates the receive error status.

ORER flag (Overflow Error Flag)

The ORER flag reflects the value in SSR_FIFO.ORER.

FNUM[4:0] bits (Framing Error Count)

The FNUM[4:0] value indicates the amount of data with a framing error stored in the FRDRHL register.

PNUM[4:0] bits (Parity Error Count)

The PNUM[4:0] value indicates the amount of data with a parity error stored in the FRDRHL register.

27.2.29 CDR : Compare Match Data Register

Base address: SCIO = 0x4007_0000
 SCIm = 0x4007_0000 + 0x0020 × m (m = 1 to 2, 9)

Offset address: 0x1A

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	CMPD[8:0]								
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
8:0	CMPD[8:0]	Compare Match Data Holds compare data pattern for address match wakeup function.	R/W
15:9	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

The CDR register sets the compare data for the address match function.

CMPD[8:0] bits (Compare Match Data)

The CMPD[8:0] bits set the data to be compared to receive data for the address match function, when the address match function is enabled (DCCR.DCME = 1).

Three bit lengths are available:

- CMPD[6:0] with 7-bit length
- CMPD[7:0] with 8-bit length
- CMPD[8:0] with 9-bit length

27.2.30 DCCR : Data Compare Match Control Register

Base address: SCIO = 0x4007_0000
 SCIm = 0x4007_0000 + 0x0020 × m (m = 1 to 2, 9)

Offset address: 0x13

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	DCME	IDSEL	—	DFER	DPER	—	—	DCMF
Value after reset:	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	DCMF	Data Compare Match Flag 0: Not matched 1: Matched	R/(W) ^{*1}
2:1	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
3	DPER	Data Compare Match Parity Error Flag 0: No parity error occurred 1: Parity error occurred	R/(W) ^{*1}
4	DFER	Data Compare Match Framing Error Flag 0: No framing error occurred 1: Framing error occurred	R/(W) ^{*1}
5	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
6	IDSEL	ID Frame Select Valid only in asynchronous mode, including multi-processor mode. 0: Always compare data regardless of the MPB bit value 1: Only compare data when MPB bit = 1 (ID frame)	R/W
7	DCME	Data Compare Match Enable Valid only in asynchronous mode, including multi-processor mode. 0: Disable address match function 1: Enable address match function	R/W

Note 1. Only 0 can be written, to clear the flag after reading 1.

The DCCR register controls the address match function.

DCMF flag (Data Compare Match Flag)

The DCMF flag indicates that the SCI detected a receive data match with the comparison data (CDR.CMPD).

[Setting condition]

- On match of the comparison data (CDR.CMPD) with the receive data when DCCR.DCME = 1.

[Clearing condition]

- When 0 is written after 1 is read from DCMF.

Clearing the SCR.RE bit to 0 does not affect the DCMF flag, which retains its previous value.

DPER flag (Data Compare Match Parity Error Flag)

The DPER flag indicates that a parity error occurred on address match detection (receive data match detection).

[Setting condition]

- When a parity error is detected in a frame in which an address match is detected.

[Clearing conditions]

- When 0 is written after 1 is read from DPER.

When the SCR.RE bit is set to 0 (serial reception is disabled), the DPER flag is not affected and retains its previous value.

DFER flag (Data Compare Match Framing Error Flag)

The DFER flag indicates that a framing error occurred on address match detection (receive data match detection).

[Setting conditions]

- When a stop bit of a frame in which an address match is detected is 0.
When in 2-stop-bit mode, only the first bit of the stop bits is checked for a value of 1 (the second stop bit is not checked).

[Clearing conditions]

- When 0 is written after 1 is read from DFER.

When the SCR.RE bit is set to 0 (serial reception is disabled), the DFER flag is not affected and retains its previous value.

IDSEL bit (ID Frame Select)

The IDSEL bit selects whether to compare data regardless of the MPB bit value or to compare data only when MPB = 1 (ID frame), when the address match function is enabled.

DCME bit (Data Compare Match Enable)

The DCME bit enables or disables the address match function (data compare match function).

If the SCI detects a match to the comparison data (CDR.CMPD) with the receive data, the DCME bit clears automatically, after which SCI operation mode is in normal receive mode. See [section 27.3.6. Address Match \(Receive Data Match Detection\) Function](#).

The write value must be 0 for all modes other than asynchronous mode.

27.2.31 SPTR : Serial Port Register

Base address: SCIO = 0x4007_0000
 SCIm = 0x4007_0000 + 0x0020 × m (m = 1 to 2, 9)

Offset address: 0x1C

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	SPB2IO	SPB2DT	RXDMON
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	RXDMON	Serial Input Data Monitor Indicates the state of the RXDn pin. 0: RXDn terminal is the low level 1: RXDn terminal is the High level	R
1	SPB2DT	Serial Port Break Data Select Selects the output level of the TXDn pin when SCR.TE = 0. 0: Low level is output in TXDn terminal 1: High level is output in TXDn terminal	R/W
2	SPB2IO	Serial Port Break I/O Selects whether the value of SPB2DT is output to TXDn pin. 0: Do not output value of SPB2DT bit on TXDn pin 1: Output value of SPB2DT bit on TXDn pin	R/W
7:3	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

The SPTR register provides confirmation of the serial reception pin (RXDn pin) status and sets the transmission pin status.

This register can only be used in asynchronous mode.

The TXDn pin status is determined by the combination of SCR.TE, SPTR.SPB2IO, and SPTR.SPB2DT settings, as shown in [Table 27.23](#).

Table 27.23 TXDn pin status

Value of SCR.TE	Value of SPTR.SPB2IO	Value of SPTR.SPB2DT	TXDn pin status
0	0	—	Hi-Z (initial value)
0	1	0	Low level output
0	1	1	High level output
1	—	—	Serial transmit data is output

Note: —: Do not care.

Note: Use the SPTR register in asynchronous mode only. Using this register in any other mode is not guaranteed.

27.3 Operation in Asynchronous Mode

[Figure 27.2](#) shows the general format for asynchronous serial communications. One frame consists of a start bit (low level), transmit or receive data, a parity bit, and stop bits (high level). In asynchronous serial communications, the communications line is usually held in the mark state (high level).

The SCI monitors the communications line. When the SCI detects a low, it regards that as a start bit and starts serial communication.

Inside the SCI, the transmitter and receiver are independent units, enabling full-duplex communications. Both the transmitter and receiver have a double-buffered structure in addition to FIFO mode, so that data can be read or written during transmission or reception, enabling continuous data transmission and reception.

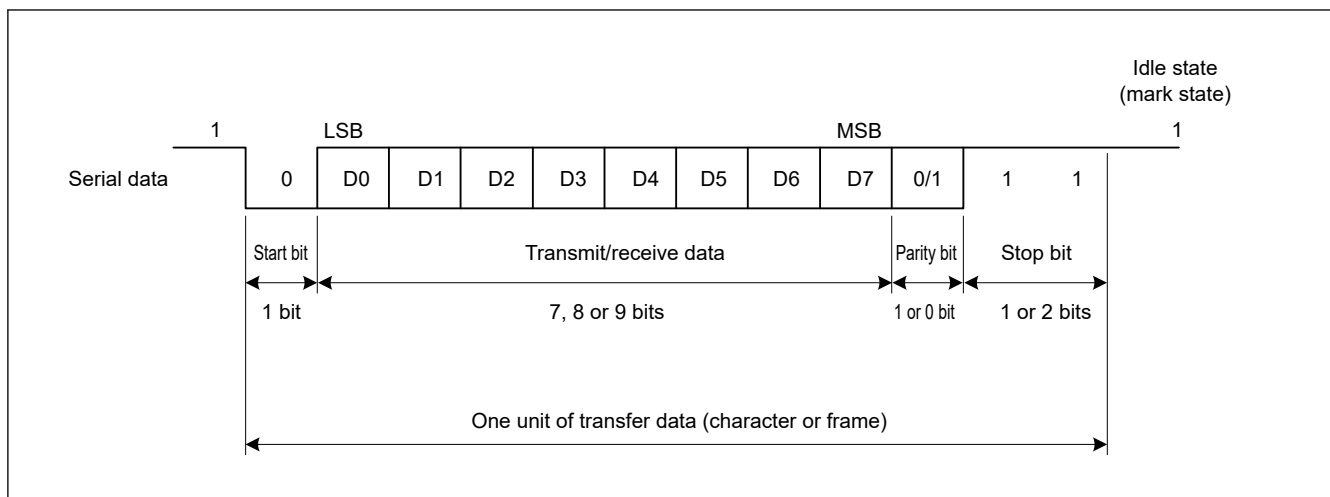


Figure 27.2 Data format in asynchronous serial communications with 8-bit data, parity bit, and 2 stop bits

27.3.1 Serial Data Transfer Format

Table 27.24 lists the serial data transfer formats that can be used in asynchronous mode. Any of 18 transfer formats can be selected with the SMR and SCMR settings. For details on the multi-processor function, see [section 27.4. Multi-processor Communication Function](#).

Table 27.24 Serial transfer formats in asynchronous mode (1 of 2)

SCMR setting	SMR setting				Serial transfer format and frame length													
	CHR1	CHR	PE	MP	STOP	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13
0	0	0	0	0	0	ST	9-bit data									SP		
0	0	0	0	1	0	ST	9-bit data									SP		SP
0	0	1	0	0	0	ST	9-bit data									P	SP	
0	0	1	0	1	0	ST	9-bit data									P	SP	SP
1	0	0	0	0	0	ST	8-bit data							SP				
1	0	0	0	1	0	ST	8-bit data							SP		SP		
1	0	1	0	0	0	ST	8-bit data							P	SP			
1	0	1	0	1	0	ST	8-bit data							P	SP	SP		
1	1	0	0	0	0	ST	7-bit data						SP					
1	1	0	0	1	0	ST	7-bit data						SP		SP			
1	1	1	0	0	0	ST	7-bit data						P	SP				
1	1	1	0	1	0	ST	7-bit data						P	SP	SP			

Table 27.24 Serial transfer formats in asynchronous mode (2 of 2)

SCMR setting	SMR setting				Serial transfer format and frame length														
	CHR1	CHR	PE	MP	STOP	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	
0	0	—	1	0		ST	9-bit data									MPB	SP		
0	0	—	1	1		ST	9-bit data									MPB	SP	SP	
1	0	—	1	0		ST	8-bit data								MPB	SP			
1	0	—	1	1		ST	8-bit data								MPB	SP	SP		
1	1	—	1	0		ST	7-bit data							MPB	SP				
1	1	—	1	1		ST	7-bit data							MPB	SP	SP			

ST: Start bit
 SP: Stop bit
 P: Parity bit
 MPB: Multi-processor bit

27.3.2 Receive Data Sampling Timing and Reception Margin in Asynchronous Mode

In asynchronous mode, the SCI operates on a base clock with a frequency of 16 times^{*1} the bit rate.

In reception, the SCI samples the falling edge of the start bit using the base clock, and performs internal synchronization.

Because receive data is sampled on the rising edge of the 8th pulse^{*1} of the base clock, data is latched at the middle of each bit, as shown in [Figure 27.3](#) The reception margin in asynchronous mode is determined by the following formula (1):

$$M = \left| \left(0.5 - \frac{1}{2N} \right) - (L - 0.5)F - \frac{|D - 0.5|}{N}(1 + F) \right| \times 100 [\%] \quad \dots \quad \text{Formula (1)}$$

Note: M: Reception margin

N: Ratio of bit rate to clock

(N = 16 when SEMR.ABCSE = 0 and SEMR.ABCS = 0,

N = 8 when SEMR.ABCS = 1,

N = 6 when SEMR.ABCSE = 1)

D: Duty cycle of clock (D = 0.5 to 1.0)

L: Frame length (L = 9 to 13)

F: Absolute value of clock frequency deviation

Assuming values of F = 0 and D = 0.5 in formula (1), the reception margin is determined using the following formula:

$$M = \{0.5 - 1/(2 \times 16)\} \times 100 (\%) = 46.875 \%$$

This represents the computed value. Renesas recommends a margin of 20% to 30% in system design.

Note 1. In this example, the SEMR.ABCS bit is 0 and the SEMR.ABCSE is 0. When the ABCS bit is 1 and the ABCSE bit is 0, a frequency of 8 times the bit rate is used as a base clock, and receive data is sampled on the rising edge of the 4th pulse of the base clock.

When the ABCSE bit is 1, a sextuple frequency of a bit rate is used as a base clock, and receive data is sampled on the rising edge of the 3rd pulse of the base clock.

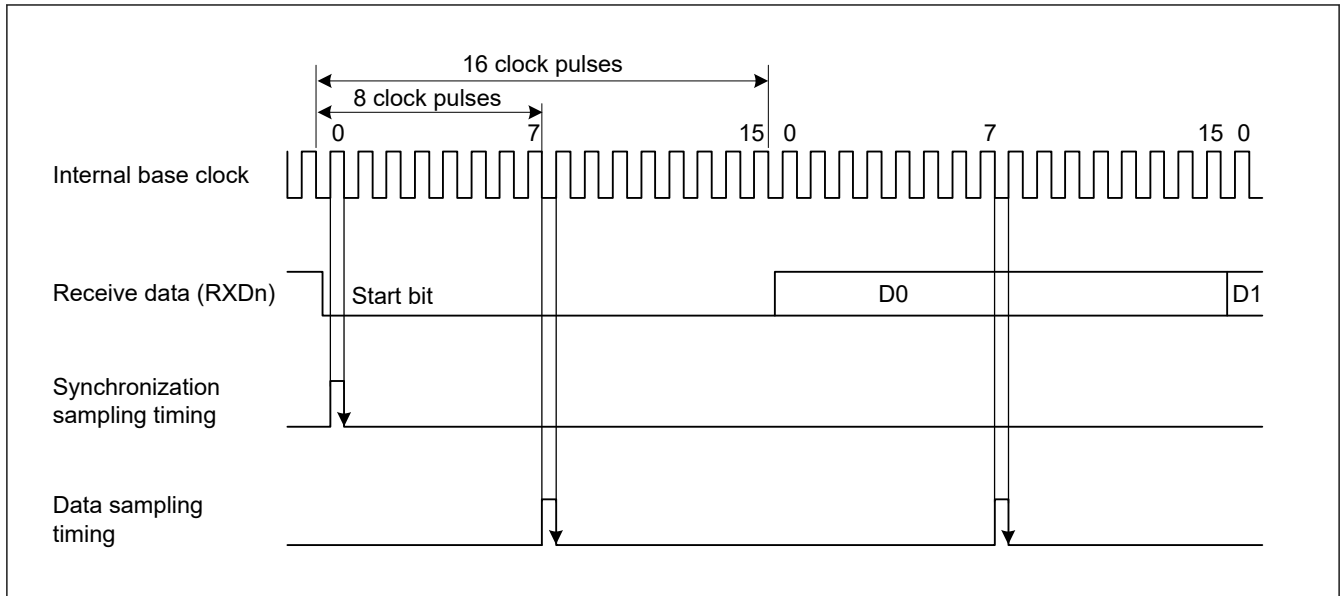


Figure 27.3 Receive data sampling timing in asynchronous mode

27.3.3 Clock

Either an internal clock generated by the on-chip baud rate generator or an external clock input to the SCKn pin can be selected as the transfer clock of the SCI, based on the SMR.CM and SCR.CKE[1:0] settings.

When an external clock is input to the SCKn pin, the clock frequency must be 16 times the bit rate (when SEMR.ABCS = 0) or 8 times the bit rate (when SEMR.ABCS = 1).

When the SCI uses its internal clock, the clock can be output from the SCKn pin. The frequency of the clock output in this case is equal to the bit rate, and the phase is configured so that the rising edge of the clock is in the middle of the transmit data, as shown in [Figure 27.4](#).

When clock output is enabled, the clock is output after setting the SCR.TE or SCR.RE bit to 1.

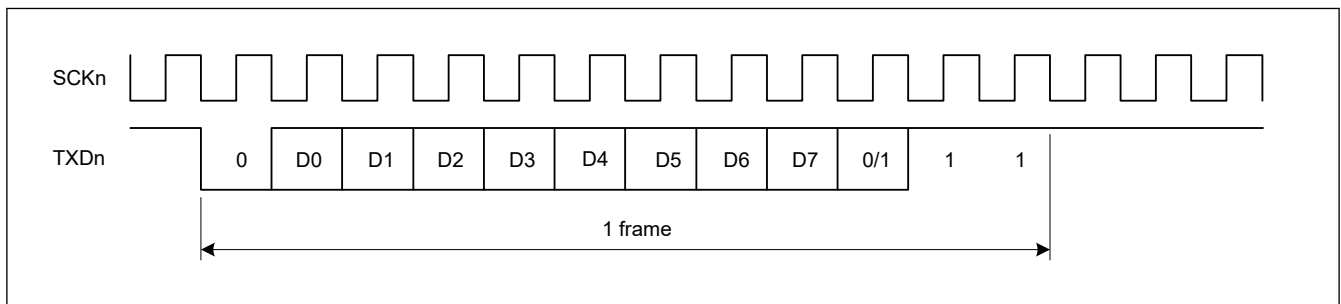


Figure 27.4 Phase relationship between output clock and transmit data in asynchronous mode when SMR.CHR = 0, PE = 1, MP = 0, and STOP = 1

27.3.4 Double-speed Operation and Frequency of Six Times the Bit Rate

When the SEMR.ABCS bit is set to 1 and eight pulses of the base clock for a 1-bit period is selected, the SCI operates on the bit rate twice that of when ABCS is set to 0. When the SEMR.BGDM bit is set to 1, the cycle of the base clock is half and the bit rate is double that of when BGDM is set to 0. When the SCR.CKE[1] bit is set to 0 and the on-chip baud rate generator is selected, setting the ABCS and BGDM bits to 1 allows the SCI to operate at a bit rate four times that when the ABCS and BGDM bits are set to 0.

When the SEMR.ABCSE bit is set to 1, the number of base clock pulses is 6 during a period of 1 bit, and the SCI operates at a bit rate 16/3 times that when SEMR.ABCS = 0, SEMR.BGDM = 0, and SEMR.ABCSE = 0.

As shown by Formula (1) in [section 27.3.2. Receive Data Sampling Timing and Reception Margin in Asynchronous Mode](#), the reception margin decreases when the SEMR.ABCS or SEMR.ABCSE bit is set to 1. Therefore, if the target bit rate can be obtained with ABCS or ABCSE set to 0, Renesas recommends that you use the SCI with ABCS and ABCSE set to 0.

27.3.5 CTS and RTS Functions

The CTS function uses input on the CTSn_RTSn pin in transmission control. Setting the SPMR.CTSE bit to 1 enables the CTS function.

When the CTS function is enabled, placing a low level on the CTSn_RTSn pin causes transmission to start.

Driving the CTSn_RTSn pin high while transmission is in progress does not affect transmission of the current frame.

In the RTS function, which uses output on the CTSn_RTSn pin, a low level is output when reception becomes possible. Conditions for output of the low and high levels are shown in this section.

[Conditions for low-level output]

Satisfaction of all conditions are listed in this section.

Non-FIFO selected

- The value of the SCR.RE bit is 1
- Reception is not in progress
- There is no received data yet to be read
- The ORER, FER, and PER flags in the SSR register are all 0

FIFO selected

- The value of the SCR.RE bit is 1
- The amount of receive data written in FRDRHL is equal to or less than the setting value of FCRH.RSTRG[3:0]
- The ORER flag in the SSR_FIFO register (ORER in FRDRH) is 0

[Condition for high-level output]

- The conditions for low-level output are not satisfied

27.3.6 Address Match (Receive Data Match Detection) Function

The address match function can be used only in asynchronous mode.

If the DCCR.DCME bit is set to 1², when one frame of data is received, the SCI compares that received data with the data set in CDR.CMPD. If the SCI detects a match to the comparison data (CDR.CMPD^{*1}) with the received data, the SCI can issue the SCIn_RXI interrupt request.

If the SMR.MP bit is set to 0, comparison occurs only for valid data in receive format. In multi-processor mode (SMR.MP bit = 1), if the DCCR.IDSEL bit is set to 1, receive data where the MPB bit is 1 is subject to comparison for address match and receive data where the MPB bit is 0 is always treated as a non-match.

If the DCCR.IDSEL bit is set to 0, SCI performs address match detection regardless of the MPB bit value of the received data.

Until SCI detects a match to the comparison data (CDR.CMPD^{*1}) with receive data, received data is skipped (discarded), and the SCI cannot detect a parity error or framing error.

When SCI detects a match, the DCCR.DCME bit is automatically cleared, and the DCCR.DCMF flag is set to 1. If the DCCR.IDSEL bit is set to 1, the SCR.MPIE bit is automatically cleared. If DCCR.IDSEL is set to 0, the value of the SCR.MPIE bit is retained. If the SCR.RIE bit is set to 1, the SCI issues an SCIn_RXI interrupt request.

If the SCI detects a framing error in the receive data for which a match is detected, the DCCR.DFER flag is set to 1, and if the SCI detects a parity error in that frame, the DCCR.DPER flag is set to 1. The compared receive data is not stored in the RDR register, and SSR.RDRF remains 0. When FCR.FM = 1, the RDR register indicates the FRDRHL register, and the SSR.RDRF flag indicates the SSR_FIFO.RDF flag.

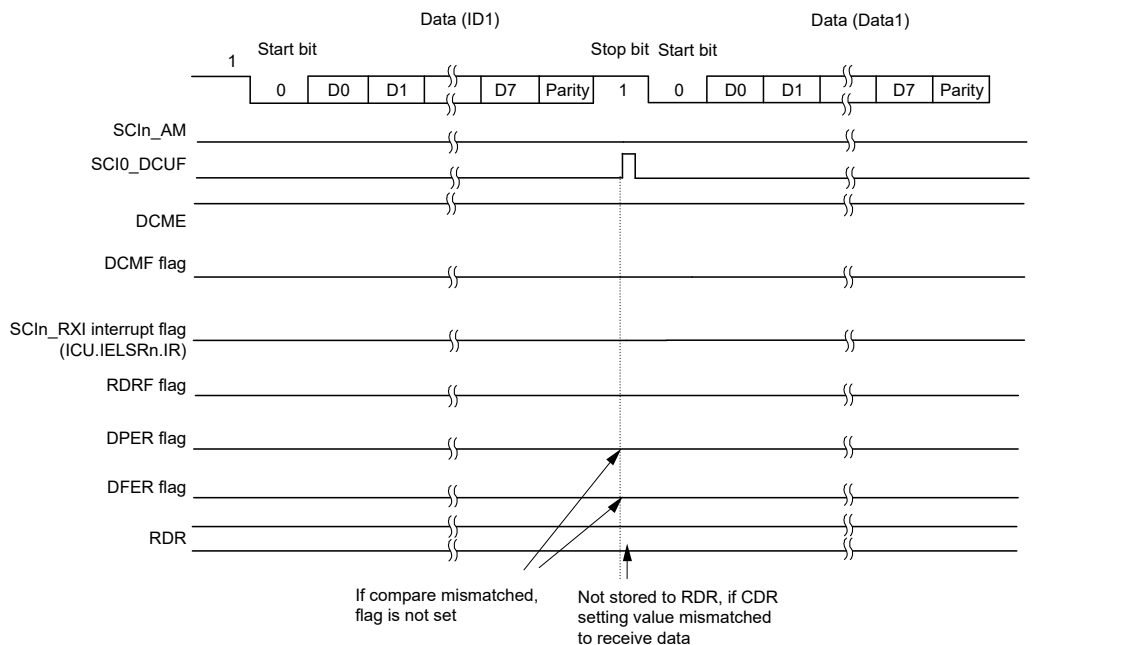
After the SCI detects a match, and DCCR.DCME is automatically cleared, the SCI receives the next data continuously based on the current register setting.

When the DCCR.DFER or DCCR.DPER flag is set, the address match is not performed. Before enabling the address match function, set the DCCR.DFER and DCCR.DPER flags to 0.

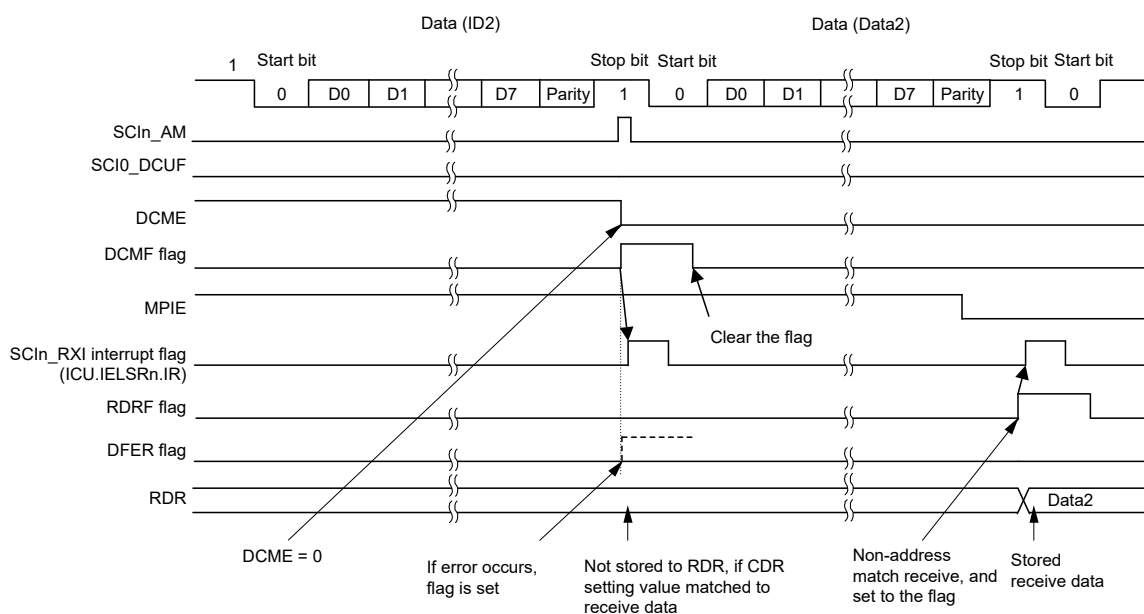
Examples of the address match function are shown in [Figure 27.5](#) and [Figure 27.6](#).

Note 1. This comparative target can select one length of 3 types: CMPD[6:0] with 7-bit length, CMPD[7:0] with 8-bit length, and CMPD[8:0] with 9-bit length.

Note 2. Set the DCCR.DCME bit to 1 before receiving the start bit of the received frame that performs address matching.



(a) Example of compare mismatched between receive data and CDR (8-bit length/parity/non multi-processor mode)



(b) Example of compare matched between receive data and CDR (8-bit length/parity/non multi-processor mode)

Figure 27.5 Example of address match (1) normal mode

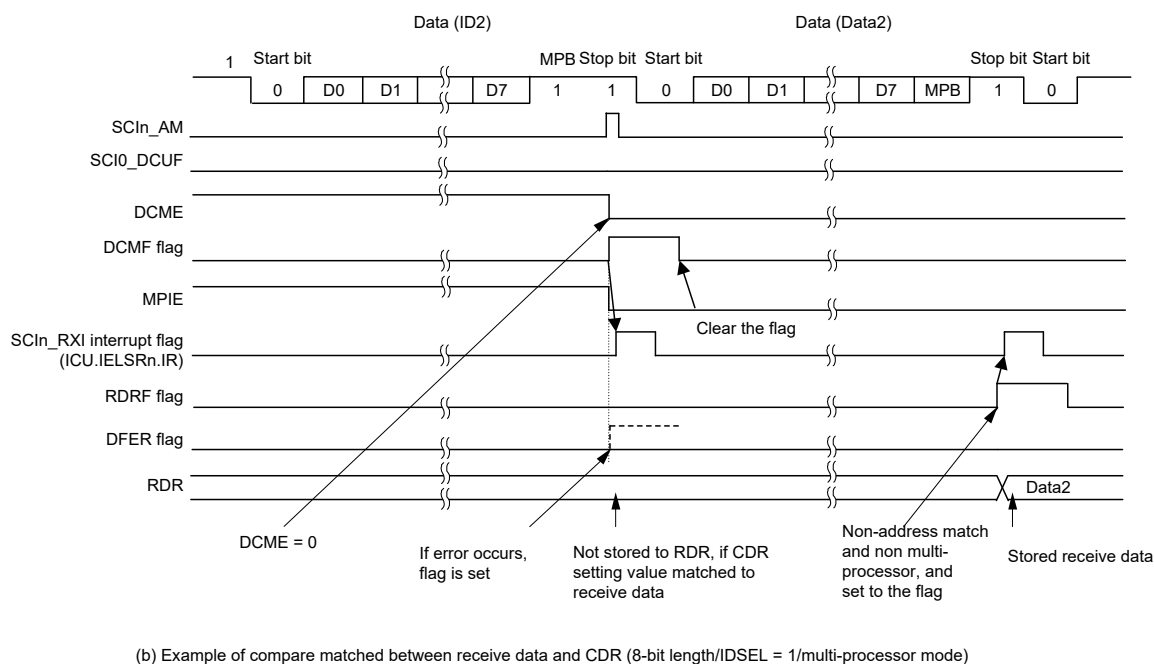
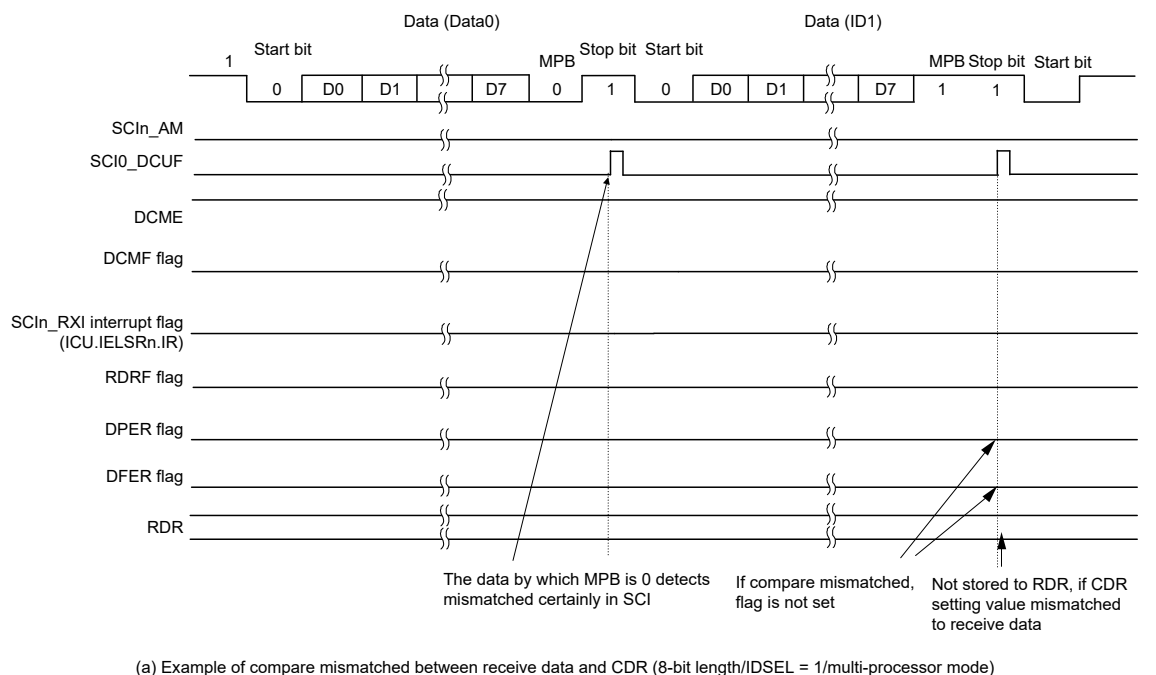


Figure 27.6 Example of address match (2) multi-processor mode

27.3.7 SCI Initialization in Asynchronous Mode

Before transmitting and receiving data, start by writing the initial value 0x00 to the SCR register, then continue through the SCI initialization procedure (select non-FIFO or FIFO) shown in [Table 27.25](#) and [Table 27.26](#). Whenever the operating mode or transfer format is to be changed, the SCR register must be initialized before the change is made.

When the external clock is used in asynchronous mode, ensure that the clock signal is supplied during initialization.

Note: Setting the SCR.RE bit to 0 initializes neither the ORER, FER, RDRF, RDF, PER, and DR flags in SSR/SSR_FIFO nor RDR and RDRHL. When the TE bit is set to 0, the TEND flag for the selected FIFO buffer is not initialized.

Note: In non-FIFO mode, switching the value of the SCR.TE bit from 1 to 0 or 0 to 1 while the SCR.TIE bit is 1 leads to the generation of an SCIn_TXI interrupt request.

Table 27.25 Example flow of SCI initialization in asynchronous mode with non-FIFO selected

No.	Step name	Description
1	Start initialization	
2	Set the SCR.TIE, RIE, TE, RE, and TEIE bits to 0	
3	Set the FCR.FM bit to 0	Set the FCR.FM bit to 0.
4	Set the SCR.CKE[1:0] bits	Set the clock selection in SCR. When the clock output is selected in asynchronous mode, the clock is output immediately after SCR settings are made.
5	Set the SIMR1.IICM bit to 0. Set the SPMR.CKPH and CKPOL bits to 0.	Set the SIMR1.IICM bit to 0. Set the SPMR.CKPH and CKPOL bits to 0. Step 5 can be skipped if the values have not been changed from the initial values.
6	Set the data transmission/reception format in SMR, SCMR, and SEMR	Set data transmission/reception format in SMR, SCMR, and SEMR.
7	Set a value in BRR	Write a value corresponding to the bit rate to BRR. This step is not necessary if an external clock is used.
8	Set a value in MDDR	Write the value obtained by correcting a bit rate error in MDDR. This step is not necessary if the BRME bit in SEMR is set to 0 or an external clock is used.
9	Set the I/O port functions	Make I/O port settings to enable input and output functions as required for TXDn, RXDn, and SCKn pins.
10	Set the SCR.TE or RE bit to 1, and set the SCR.TIE and RIE bits	Set the SCR.TE or RE bit to 1. Also set the SCR.TIE and RIE bits. Setting the TE and RE bits allows TXDn and RXDn pins to be used.
11	Initialization completion	

Table 27.26 Example flow of SCI initialization in asynchronous mode with FIFO selected (1 of 2)

No.	Step Name	Description
1	Start initialization	
2	Set the SCR.TIE, RIE, TE, RE, and TEIE bits to 0	
3	Set the FCR.FM, TFRST, and RFRST bits to 1. Set the FCR.TTRG[3:0], RTRG[3:0], and RSTRG[3:0] bits.	Set the FCR.FM, TFRST, and RFRST bits to 1 (FIFO mode enabled, transmit/receive FIFOs empty). Set the FCR.TTRG[3:0], RTRG[3:0], and RSTRG[3:0] bits.
4	Set the SCR.CKE[1:0] bits	Set the clock selection in SCR. When the clock output is selected in asynchronous mode, the clock is output immediately after SCR settings are made.
5	Set the SIMR1.IICM bit to 0. Set the SPMR.CKPH and CKPOL bits to 0.	Set the SIMR1.IICM bit to 0. Set the SPMR.CKPH and CKPOL bits to 0. Step 5 can be skipped if the values have not been changed from the initial values.
6	Set the data transmission/reception format in SMR, SCMR, and SEMR	Set data transmission/reception format in SMR, SCMR, and SEMR.
7	Set a value in BRR	Write a value corresponding to the bit rate to BRR. This step is not necessary if an external clock is used.
8	Set a value in MDDR	Write the value obtained by correcting a bit rate error in MDDR. This step is not necessary if the BRME bit in SEMR is set to 0 or an external clock is used.
9	Set the FCR.TFRST and RFRST bits to 0	Set the FCR.TFRST and RFRST bits to 0.

Table 27.26 Example flow of SCI initialization in asynchronous mode with FIFO selected (2 of 2)

No.	Step Name	Description
10	Set the I/O port functions	Make I/O port settings to enable input and output functions as required for TXDn, RXDn, and SCKn pins.
11	Set the SCR.TE or RE bit to 1, and set the SCR.TIE and RIE bits	Set the SCR.TE or RE bit to 1. Also set the SCR.TIE and RIE bits. Setting the TE and RE bits allows TXDn and RXDn to be used.
12	Initialization completion	

27.3.8 Serial Data Transmission in Asynchronous Mode

(1) Non-FIFO selected

Figure 27.7, Figure 27.8, and Figure 27.9 show examples of serial transmission in asynchronous mode.

In serial transmission, the SCI operates as described in this section. When the SCR.TE bit is set to 1, the high level is output to TXDn for one frame.

- The SCI transfers data from the TDR^{*1} register to the TSR register when data is written to TDR^{*1} in the SCIn_TXI interrupt handling routine.
The SCIn_TXI interrupt request at the beginning of transmission is generated when the SCR.TE and SCR.TIE bits are set to 1 simultaneously by a single instruction.
- Transmission starts after the SPMR.CTSE bit is set to 0 (CTS function is disabled) or a low level on the CTSn_RTSn pin causes data transfer from the TDR^{*1} register to the TSR register. If the SCR.TIE bit is 1, an SCIn_TXI interrupt request is generated. Continuous transmission is possible by writing the next transmit data to the TDR^{*1} register in the SCIn_TXI interrupt handling routine before transmission of the current transmit data is complete. When SCIn_TEI interrupt requests are in use, set the SCR.TIE bit to 0 (SCIn_TXI interrupt requests are disabled) and the SCR.TEIE bit to 1 (an SCIn_TEI interrupt request is enabled) after the last of the data to be transmitted is written to the TDR^{*1} register from the handling routine for SCIn_TXI requests.
- Data is sent from the TXDn pin in the following order:
 - Start bit
 - Transmit data
 - Parity bit or multi-processor bit (can be omitted depending on the format)
 - Stop bit
- The SCI checks for update of the TDR register on the output of the stop bit.
- When the TDR register is updated, setting the SPMR.CTSE bit to 0 (CTS function is disabled) or a low-level input on the CTSn_RTSn pin causes transfer of the next transmit data from the TDR^{*1} register to the TSR register and transmission of the stop bit, after which serial transmission of the next frame starts.
- If the TDR register is not updated, the SSR.TEND flag is set to 1, the stop bit is sent, and the mark state is entered, in which 1 is output. If the SCR.TEIE bit is 1, the SSR.TEND flag is set to 1 and an SCIn_TEI interrupt request is generated.

Note 1. The TDRHL register when 9-bit data length is selected.

Figure 27.7, Figure 27.8, and Figure 27.9 show examples of serial transmission in asynchronous mode.

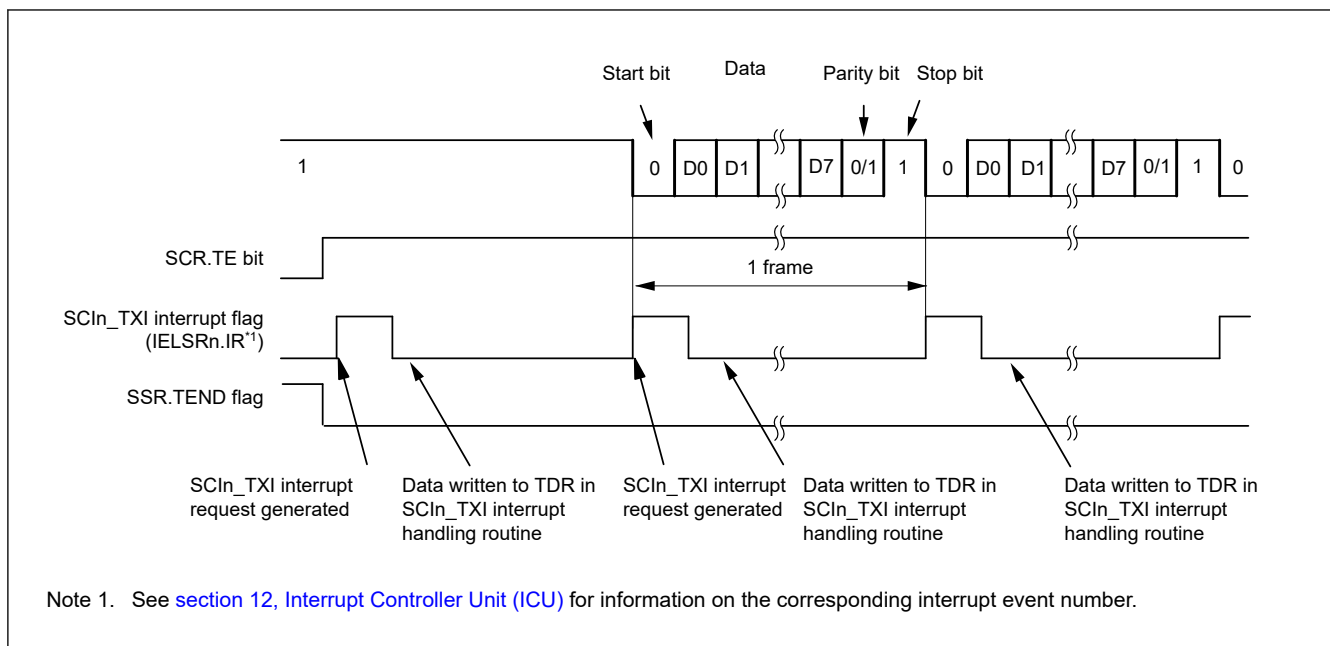


Figure 27.7 Example operation for serial transmission in asynchronous mode (1) with 8-bit data, parity bit, 1 stop bit, CTS function not used, and at the beginning of transmission

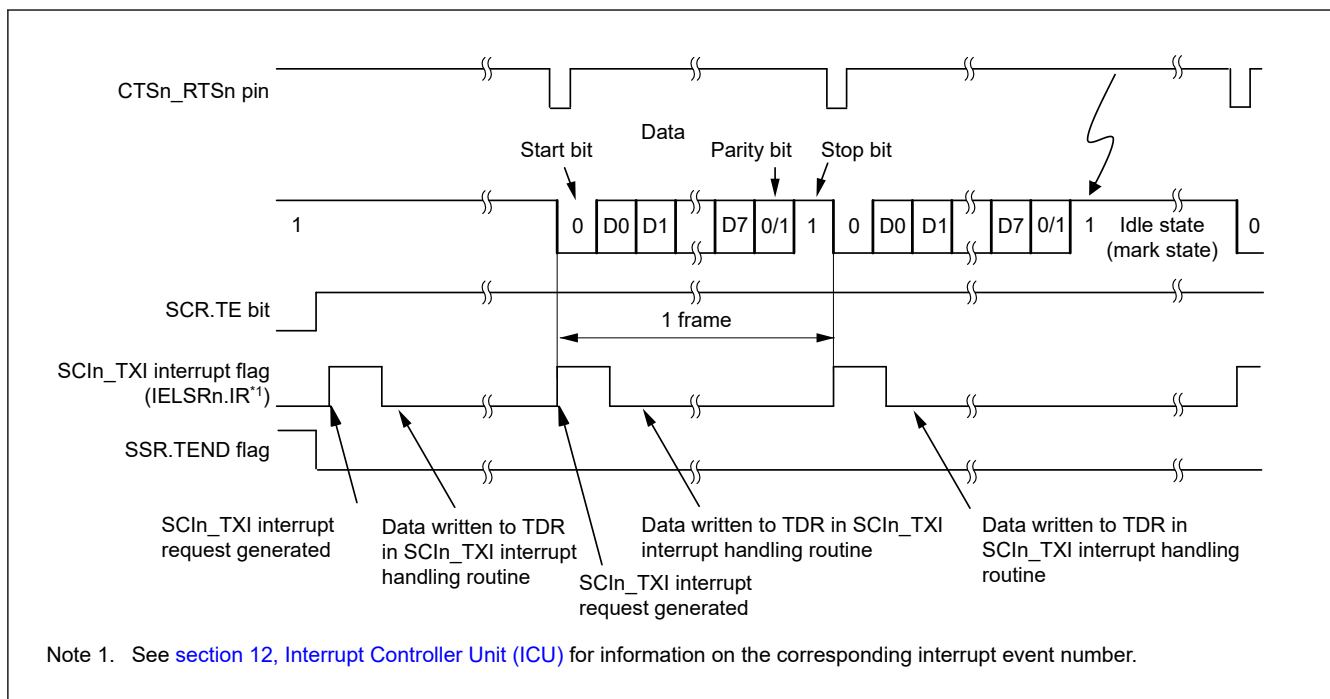


Figure 27.8 Example operation for serial transmission in asynchronous mode (2) with 8-bit data, parity bit, one stop bit, CTS function used, and at the beginning of transmission

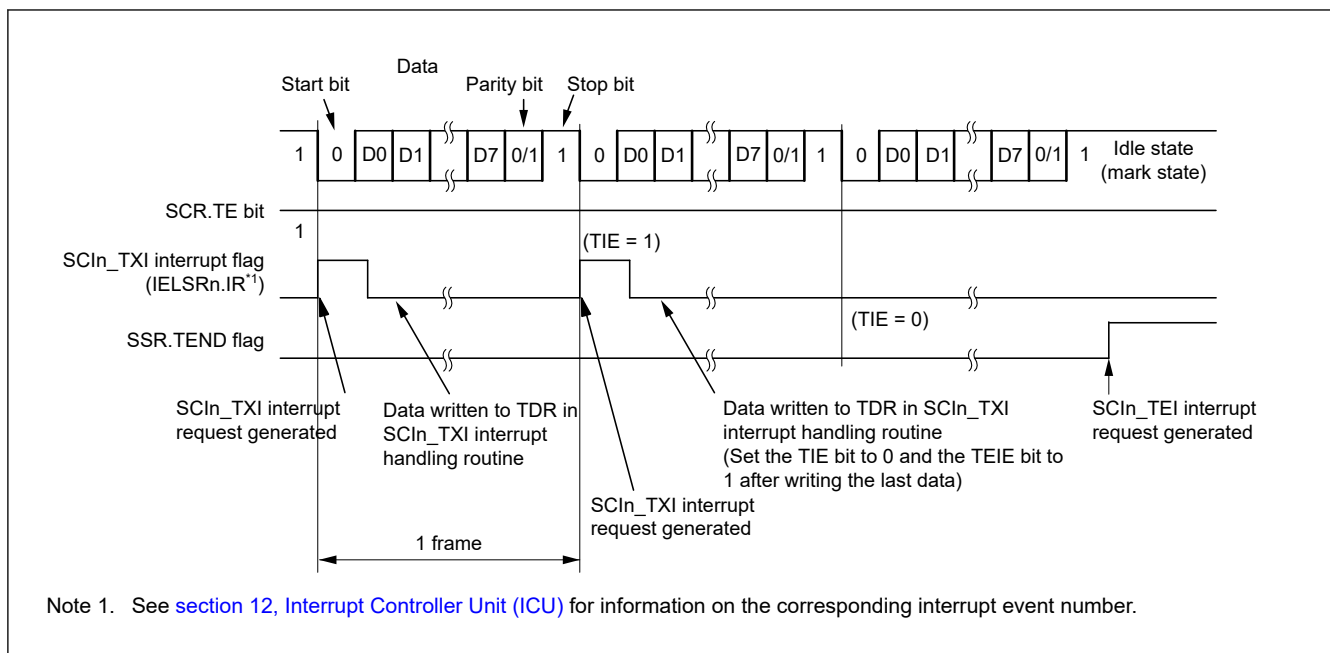


Figure 27.9 Example operation for serial transmission in asynchronous mode (3) with 8-bit data, parity bit, one stop bit, CTS function not used, and from the middle of transmission until transmission completion

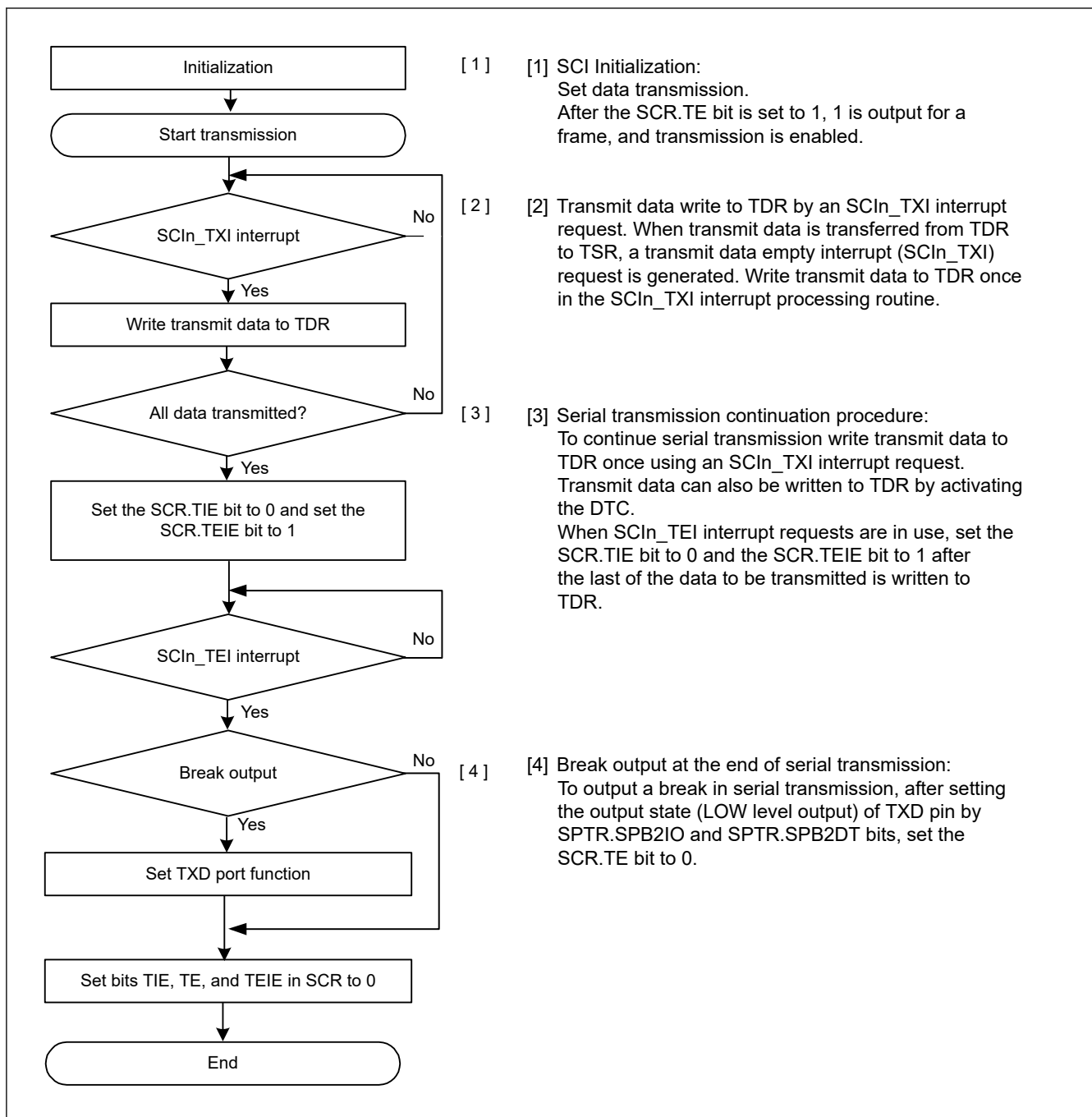


Figure 27.10 Example flow of serial transmission in asynchronous mode with non-FIFO selected

(2) FIFO selected

Figure 27.11 shows an example of a data format that is written to FTDRH and FTDRL register in asynchronous mode.

Data corresponding to the data length is set to FTDRH and FTDRL. Write 0 for unused bits. Write in order from FTDRH to FTDRL.

Data Length	Register Setting		Transmit data in FTDRH, FTDRL																
			FTDRL																
	SCMR. CHR1 SMR. CHR		FTDRH								FTDRL								
			b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0	b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0	
7 bits	1	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	7-bit transmit data							
8 bits	1	1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	8-bit transmit data								
9 bits	0	Don't care	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	9-bit transmit data									

Note: —: Invalid. The write value should be 0.

Figure 27.11 Data format written to FTDRH and FTDRL with FIFO selected

In serial transmission, the SCI operates as described in this section. When the TE bit is set to 1, the high level is output to TXDn for one frame (preamble).

1. The SCI transfers data from the FTDRL^{*1} register to the TSR register when data is written to FTDRL^{*1} in the SCIn_TXI interrupt handling routine. The amount of data that can be written to FTDRL is 16 minus FDR.T[4:0] bytes. The SCIn_TXI interrupt request at the beginning of transmission is generated when the SCR.TE and SCR.TIE bits are set to 1 simultaneously by a single instruction.
2. Transmission starts after the SPMR.CTSE bit is set to 0 (CTS function is disabled) or a low level on the CTSn_RTSn pin causes data transfer from the FTDRL^{*1} register to the TSR register. When the amount of transmit data written in FTDRL is equal to or less than the specified transmit triggering number, SSR_FIFO.TDFE is set to 1. If the SCR.TIE bit is 1, an SCIn_TXI interrupt request is generated. Continuous transmission is possible by writing the next transmit data to FTDRL^{*1} in the SCIn_TXI interrupt handling routine before transmission of the current transmit data is complete. When SCIn_TEI interrupt requests are in use, set the SCR.TIE bit to 0 (SCIn_TXI interrupt requests are disabled) and the SCR.TEIE bit to 1 (an SCIn_TEI interrupt request is enabled) after the last of the data to be transmitted is written to the FTDRL^{*1,2} register from the handling routine for SCIn_TXI requests.
3. Data is sent from the TXDn pin in the following order:
 - Start bit
 - Transmit data
 - Parity bit or multi-processor bit (can be omitted depending on the format)
 - Stop bit
4. On output of the stop bit, the SCI checks whether non-transmitted data remains in the FTDRL^{*3} register.
5. When data is set to FTDRL^{*3}, setting the SPMR.CTSE bit to 0 (CTS function is disabled) or a low-level input on the CTSn_RTSn pin causes transfer of the next transmit data from FTDRL^{*1} to TSR and transmission of the stop bit, after which serial transmission of the next frame starts.
6. If data is not set in FTDRL^{*3}, the TEND flag in SSR_FIFO is set to 1, the stop bit is sent, and the mark state is entered in which 1 is output. If the SCR.TEIE bit is 1, the SSR_FIFO.TEND flag is set to 1 and an SCIn_TEI interrupt request is generated.

Note 1. Write data not to FTDRL but to the FTDRH and FTDRL registers.

Note 2. Write data in order from FTDRH to FTDRL when 9-bit data length is selected.

Note 3. The SCI only checks for update to the FTDRL register and not the FTDRH register when 9-bit data length is selected.

Figure 27.12 shows an example flow of serial transmission in asynchronous mode with FIFO selected.

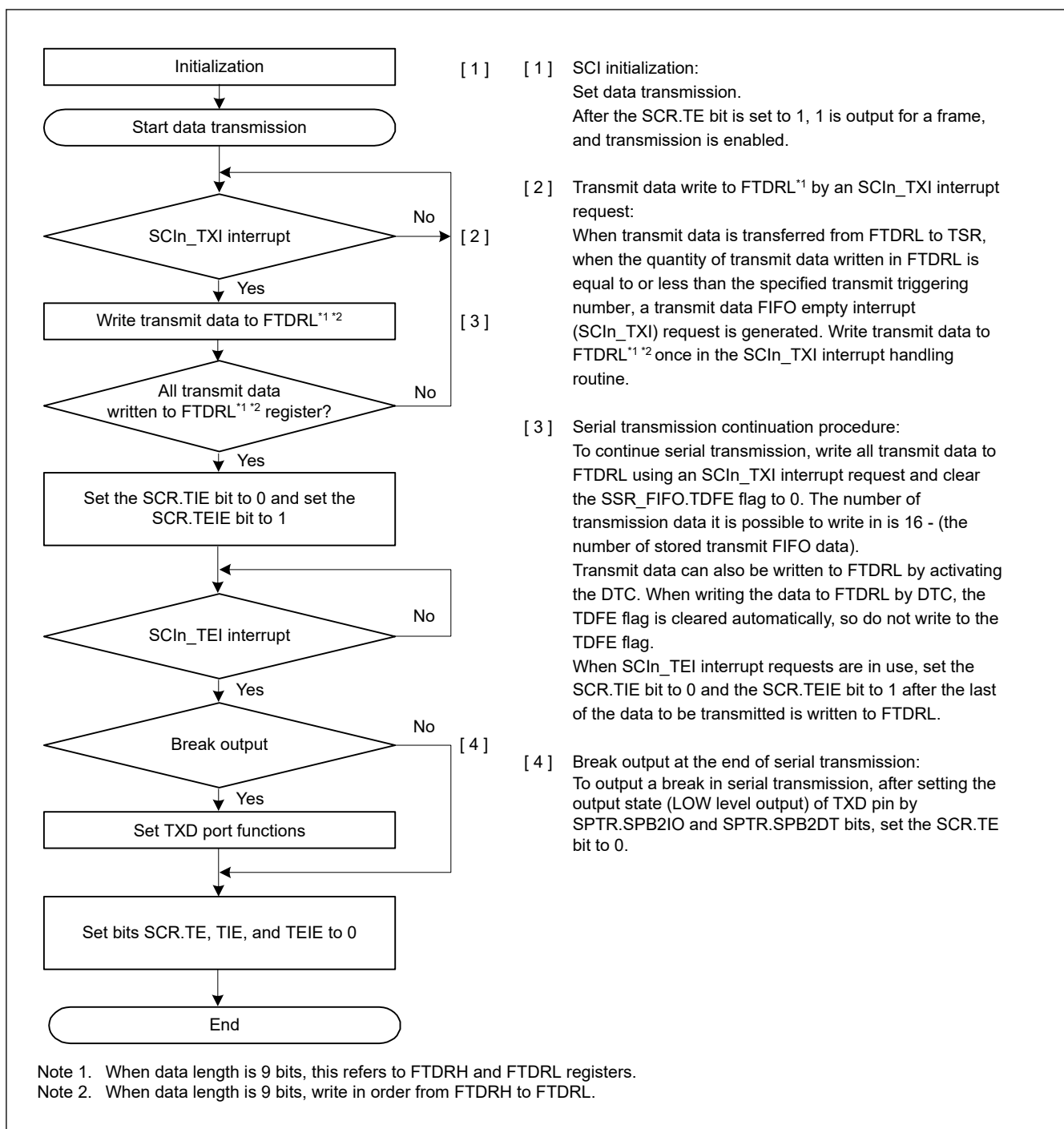


Figure 27.12 Example flow of serial transmission in asynchronous mode with FIFO selected

27.3.9 Serial Data Reception in Asynchronous Mode

(1) Non-FIFO selected

Figure 27.13 and Figure 27.14 show an example of the operation for serial data reception in asynchronous mode.

In serial data reception, the SCI operates as follows:

1. When the value of the SCR.RE bit becomes 1, the output signal on the CTSn_RTSn pin goes low.
2. The SCI monitors the communications line and when it detects a start bit, the SCI performs internal synchronization, stores receive data in RSR.
3. If the multi-processor communication function is enabled (SMR.MP = 1), see [section 27.4.2. Multi-processor Serial Data Reception](#). If the address match function (data compare match function) is enabled (DCCR.DCME = 1), the SCI

cannot detect a parity or framing error as receive data are skipped (discarded) until the SCI detects a match between the receive data and comparison data (CDR.CMPD^{*1}).

4. If the SCI detects an address match, the DCCR.DCME bit is automatically cleared, the DCCR.DCMF flag becomes 1, and an SCIn_AM interrupt^{*2} request is generated. To enable the generation of an SCIn_RXI interrupt request, set the SCR.RIE bit to 1. The compared receive data are not stored in the RDR register^{*3}. The SSR.RDRF flag remains 0.
5. If the SCI detects a framing error in the receive data for which an address match is detected, the DCCR.DFER flag is set to 1, and if the SCI detects a parity error in that frame, the DCCR.DPER flag becomes 1. To enable the generation of an SCIn_ERI interrupt request, set the SCR.RIE bit to 1.
6. If a framing or a parity error is detected (the DCCR.DFER flag or DCCR.DPER flag is 1) in the SCIn_AM interrupt handling routine, set the DCCR.DFER and DCCR.DPER flags to 0 and set the DCCR.DCME bit to 1 to enable the address match function again. If neither a framing nor a parity error has been detected (the DCCR.DFER and DCCR.DPER flags are both 0), set the DCCR.DCMF flag to 0. See [Figure 27.5](#).
7. If an overrun error occurs, the SSR.ORER flag is set to 1. If the SCR.RIE bit is 1, an SCIn_ERI interrupt request is generated. Receive data is not transferred to the RDR^{*3} register.
8. If a parity error is detected, the SSR.PER flag is set to 1 and receive data is transferred to the RDR^{*3} register. If the SCR.RIE bit is 1, an SCIn_ERI interrupt request is generated.
9. If a framing error is detected, the SSR.FER flag is set to 1 and receive data is transferred to the RDR^{*3} register. If the SCR.RIE bit is 1, an SCIn_ERI interrupt request is generated.
10. When reception finishes successfully, receive data is transferred to the RDR^{*3} register. If the SCR.RIE bit is 1, an SCIn_RXI interrupt request is generated. Continuous reception is enabled by reading the receive data transferred to the RDR register in the SCIn_RXI interrupt handling routine before reception of the next receive data is complete. Reading the received data that was transferred to the RDR register causes the CTSn_RTSn pin to output low.

Note 1. This scope of comparison is selectable as one of three lengths: CMPD[6:0] is for 7-bit length, CMPD[7:0] is for 8-bit length, and CMPD[8:0] is for 9-bit length.

Note 2. As no interrupt enable bit is assigned to the SCIn_AM interrupt, an interrupt request is generated by setting the DCCR.DCMF to 1.

Note 3. Only read data in the RDRHL register when 9-bit data length is selected.

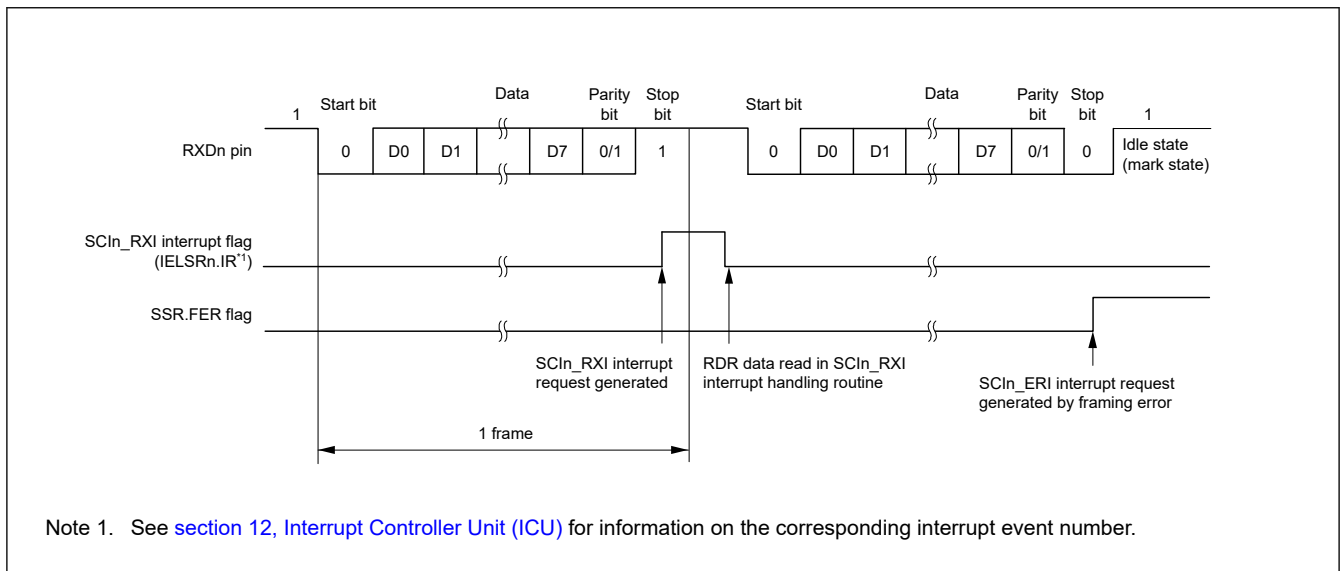


Figure 27.13 Example of SCI operation for serial reception in asynchronous mode (1) when the RTS function is not used, and with 8-bit data, parity bit, and 1 stop bit

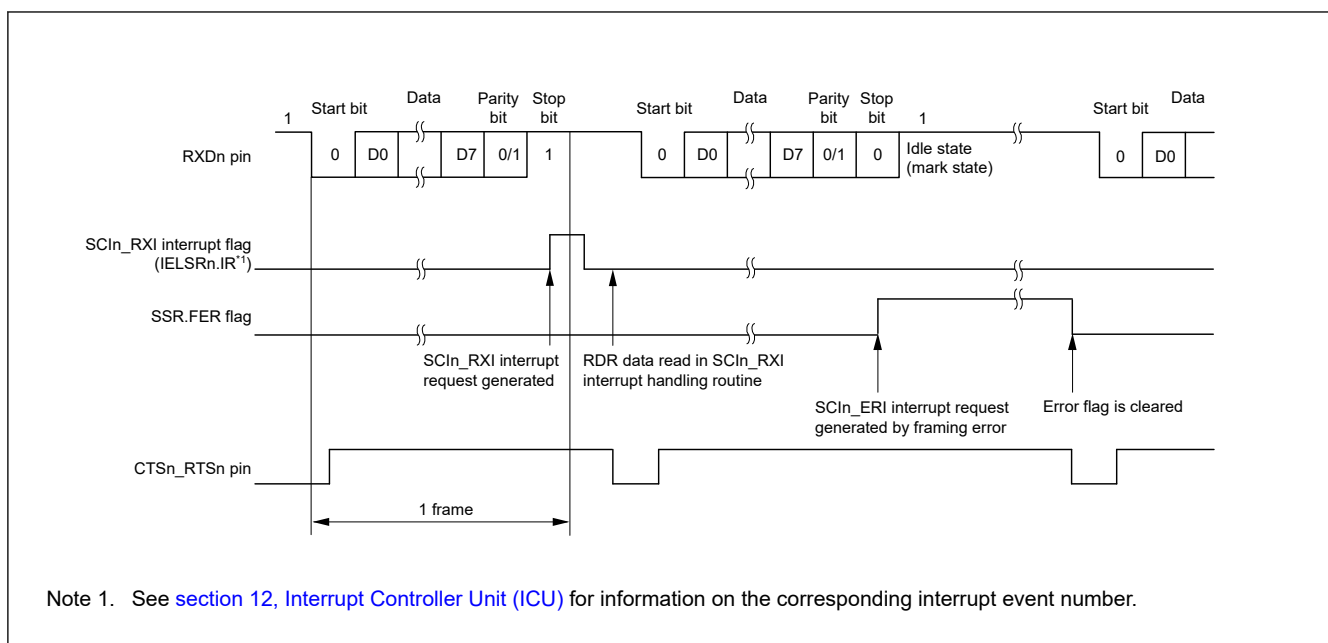


Figure 27.14 Example of SCI operation for serial reception in asynchronous mode (2) when RTS function is used, and with 8-bit data, parity bit, and 1 stop bit

[Table 27.27](#) lists the states of the flags in the SSR register and receive data handling when a receive error is detected.

If a receive error is detected, an SCIn_ERI interrupt request is generated but an SCIn_RXI interrupt request is not generated. Data reception cannot be resumed while the receive error flag is 1. So, set the ORER, FER, and PER bits to 0 before resuming reception. In addition, be sure to read the RDR or RDRHL register during overrun error processing. When a reception is forced to terminate by setting the SCR.RE bit to 0 during operation, read the RDR or RDRHL register because received data that is not yet read might be left in the RDR or RDRHL.

[Figure 27.15](#) and [Figure 27.16](#) show example flows of serial data reception.

Table 27.27 Flags in SSR Status Register and receive data handling

Flags in the SSR Status Register			Receive data	Receive error type
ORER	FER	PER		
1	0	0	Lost	Overrun error
0	1	0	Transferred to RDR*1	Framing error
0	0	1	Transferred to RDR*1	Parity error
1	1	0	Lost	Overrun error + framing error
1	0	1	Lost	Overrun error + parity error
0	1	1	Transferred to RDR*1	Framing error + parity error
1	1	1	Lost	Overrun error + framing error + parity error

Note 1. Only read data in the RDRHL register when 9-bit data length is selected.

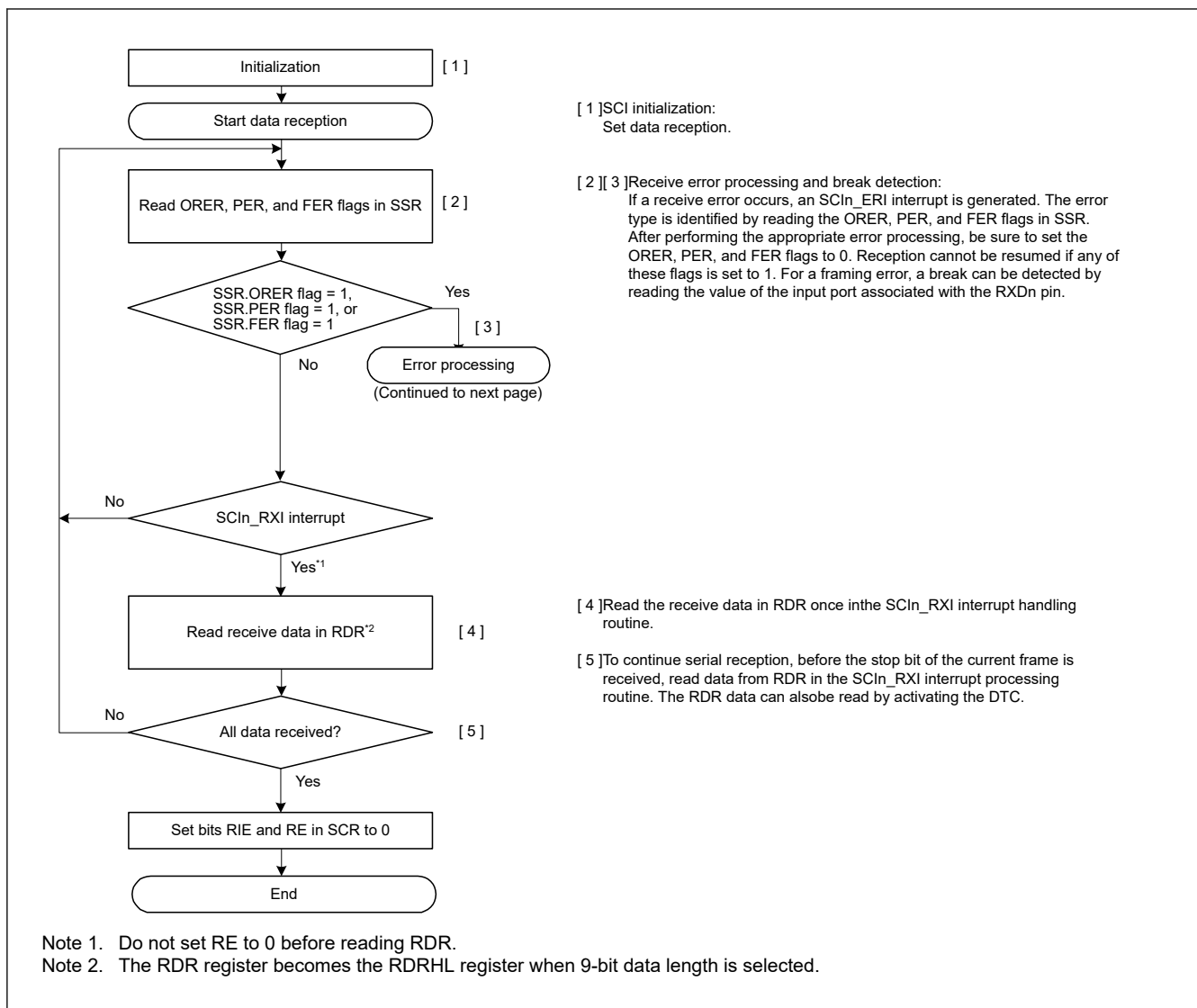


Figure 27.15 Example flow of serial reception in asynchronous mode with non-FIFO selected and address matching disabled (1)

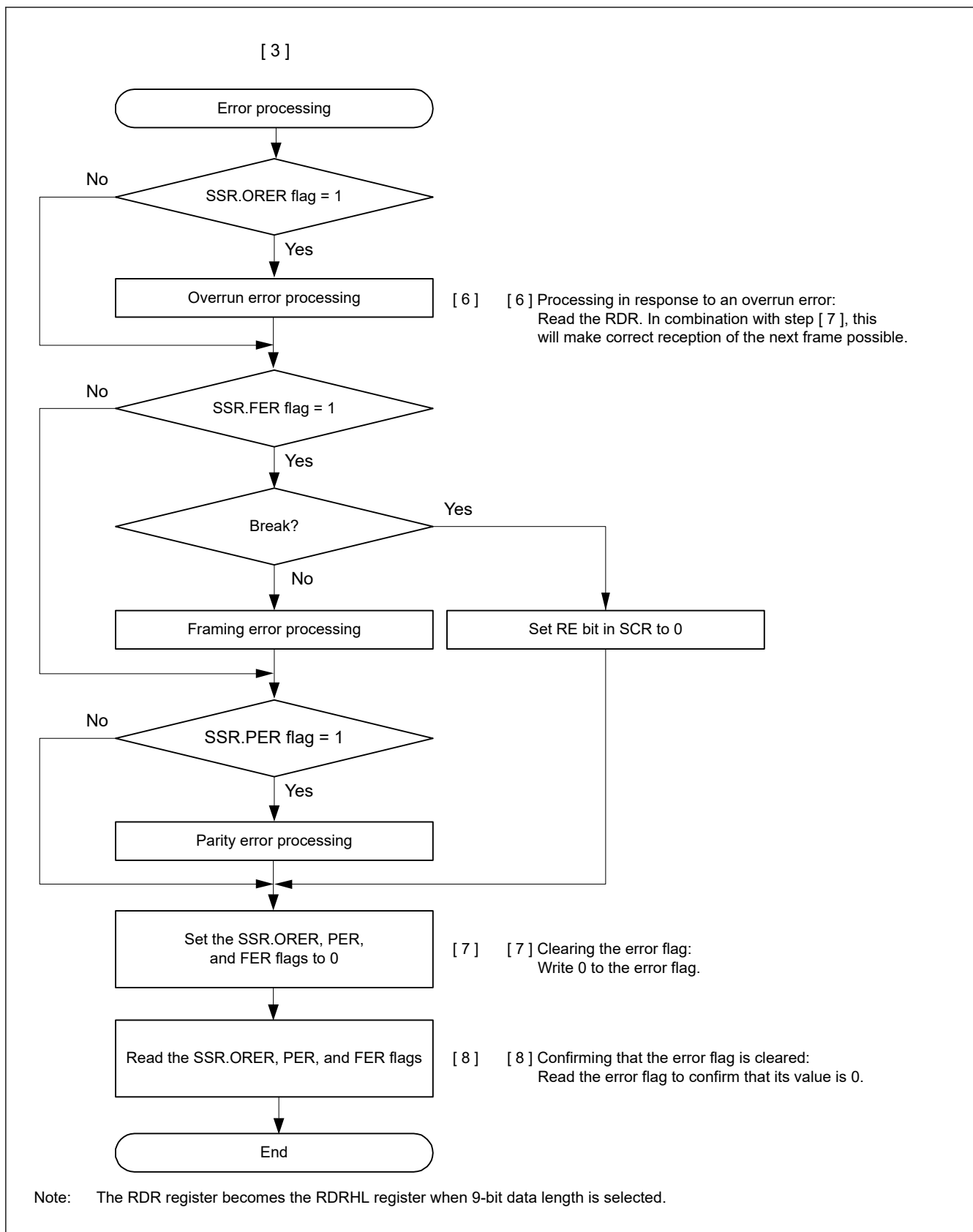
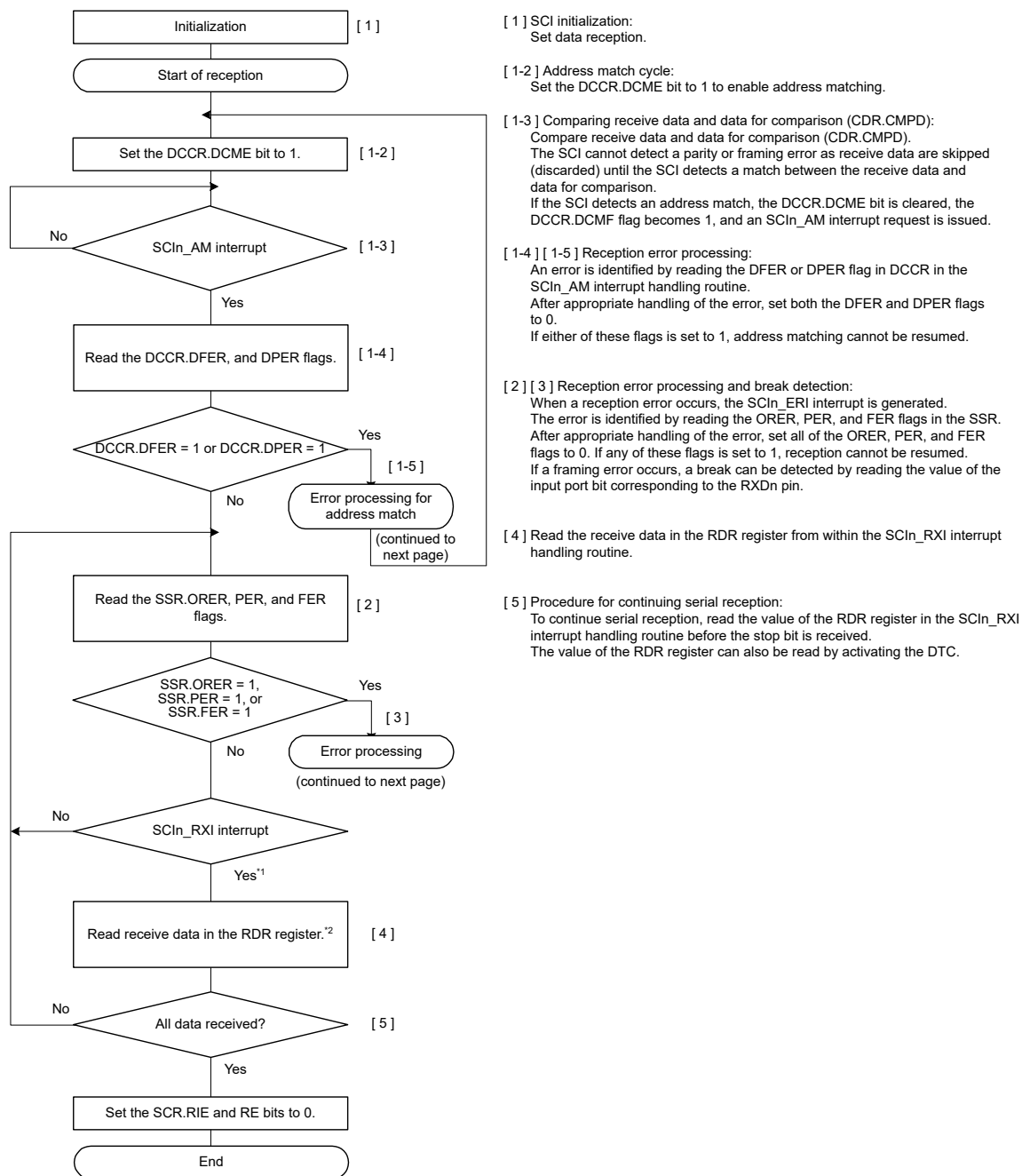


Figure 27.16 Example flow of serial reception in asynchronous mode with non-FIFO selected and address matching disabled (2)



Note 1. Be sure to set the RE bit to 0 before reading the RDR register.

Note 2. The RDRHL register is used instead of the RDR register when 9-bit data length is selected.

Figure 27.17 Example flow of serial reception in asynchronous mode (FIFO not selected and address matching enabled) (1)

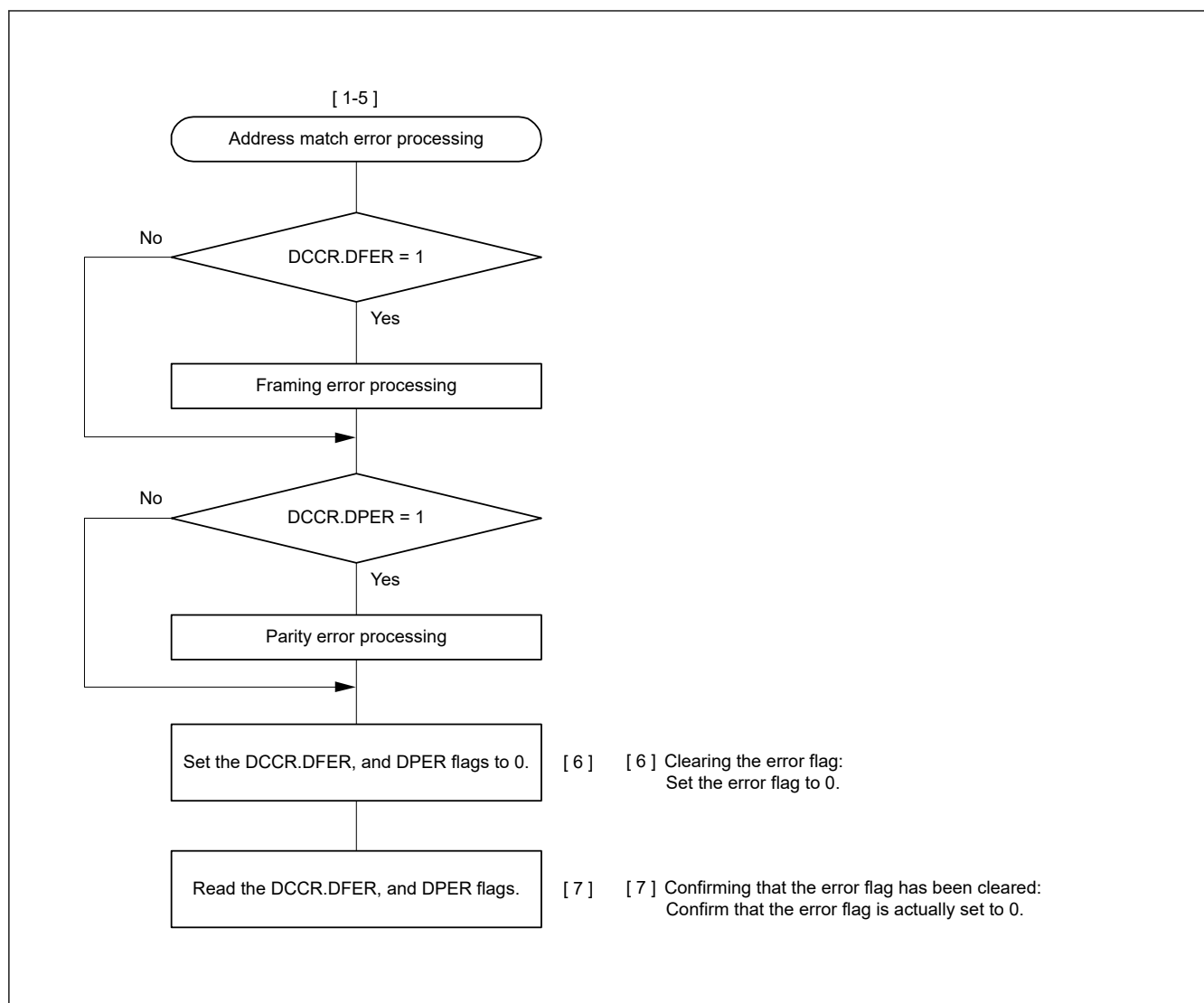


Figure 27.18 Example flow of serial reception in asynchronous mode (FIFO not selected and address matching enabled) (2)

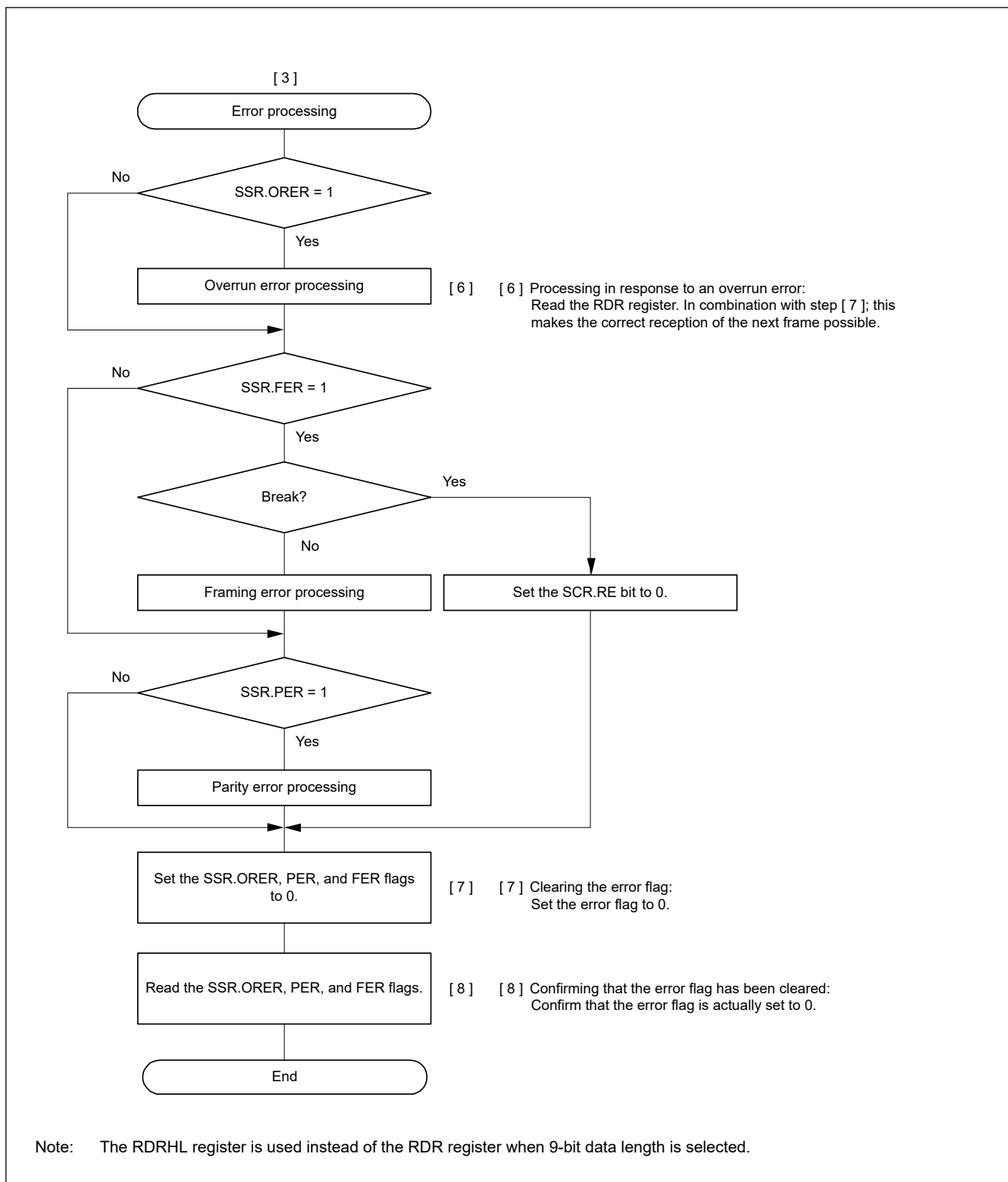


Figure 27.19 Example flow of serial reception in asynchronous mode (FIFO not selected and address matching enabled) (3)

(2) FIFO selected

Figure 27.20 shows an example of a data format that is written to FRDRH register and FRDRL register in asynchronous mode.

In asynchronous mode, 0 is written to the MPB bit in the FRDRH register. Data that corresponds to the data length is written to FRDRH and FRDRL. Unused bits are written as 0. Read in order from FRDRH to FRDRL. If software reads FRDRL, the

SCI updates FER, PER, and receive data (RDAT[8:0]) in the FRDRL register with the next data. The flags RDF, ORER, and DR in the FRDRH register always reflect the associated flags in the SSR_FIFO register.

Data Length	Register Setting		Receive data in FRDRH, FRDRL															
	SCMR. CHR1	SMR. CHR	FRDRHL															
			FRDRH								FRDRL							
			b15	b14	b13	b12	b11	b10	b9	b8	b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
7 bits	1	0	–	RDF	ORER	FER	PER	DR	0	0	0							
8 bits	1	1	–	RDF	ORER	FER	PER	DR	0	0								
9 bits	0	Don't care	–	RDF	ORER	FER	PER	DR	0									

Note: 0 is always read for MPB bit (FRDRH[1])
 When data length is 7 bits, 0 is always read for FRDRH[0] and FRDRL[7]
 When data length is 8 bits, 0 is always read for FRDRH[0]
 FRDRH[7] bit is read as an indefinite value

Figure 27.20 Data format stored in FRDRH and FRDRL with FIFO selected

In serial data reception, the SCI operates as follows:

1. When the value of the SCR.RE bit becomes 1, the output signal on the CTSn_RTSn pin goes low.
2. The SCI monitors the communications line and, when it detects a start bit, the SCI performs internal synchronization, stores receive data in the RSR register.
3. If the multi-processor communications function is enabled (SMR.MP = 1), see [section 27.4.2. Multi-processor Serial Data Reception](#). If the address match function (data compare match function) is enabled (DCCR.DCME = 1), the SCI cannot detect a parity or framing error as receive data are skipped (discarded) until the SCI detects a match between the receive data and the data for comparison (CDR.CMPD^{*1}).
4. If the SCI detects an address match, the DCCR.DCME bit is automatically cleared, the DCCR.DCMF flag becomes 1, and an SCIn_AM interrupt^{*2} request is generated. To enable the generation of an SCIn_RXI interrupt request, set the SCR.RIE bit to 1. The compared receive data are not stored in the RDR register^{*3}. The SSR.RDRF flag remains 0.
5. If the SCI detects a framing error in the receive data for which an address match was detected, the DCCR.DFER flag is set to 1, and if the SCI detects a parity error in that frame, the DCCR.DPER flag becomes 1. To enable the generation of an SCIn_ERI interrupt request, set the SCR.RIE bit to 1.
6. If a framing or a parity error is detected (the DCCR.DFER flag or DCCR.DPER flag is 1) in the SCIn_AM interrupt handling routine, set the DCCR.DFER and DCCR.DPER flags to 0 and set the DCCR.DCME bit to 1 to enable the address match function again. If neither a framing nor a parity error has been detected (the DCCR.DFER and DCCR.DPER flags are 0), set the DCCR.DCMF flag to 0. See [Figure 27.5](#).
7. If an overrun error occurs during normal communications, the SSR_FIFO.ORER flag is set to 1. If the SCR.RIE bit in SCR is 1, an SCIn_ERI interrupt request is generated. Receive data is not transferred to the FRDRL^{*3} register.
8. If a parity error is detected, the PER flag and receive data are transferred to the FRDRL^{*3} register. If the SCR.RIE bit is set to 1, an SCIn_ERI interrupt request is generated.
9. If a framing error is detected, the FER flag and receive data are transferred to the FRDRL^{*3} register. If the SCR.RIE bit is set to 1, an SCIn_ERI interrupt request is generated.
10. After a framing error is detected and when SCI detects that the continuous receive data is zero for one frame, reception stops.
11. When the amount of data stored in the FRDRL register falls below the specified receive triggering number, and the next data is not received after 15 etus from the last stop bit in asynchronous mode, the SSR_FIFO.DR flag is set to 1. When the SCR.RIE bit is 1 and the FCR.DRES bit is 0, the SCI generates an SCIn_RXI interrupt request. When the FCR.DRES bit is 1, SCI generates an SCIn_ERI interrupt request.

12. When reception finishes successfully, receive data is transferred to the FRDRL^{*3} register. The RDF bit is set to 1 when the amount of receive data written to FRDRHL is equal to or greater than the specified receive triggering number. If the SCR.RIE bit in SCR is 1, an SCIn_RXI interrupt request is generated. Continuous reception is enabled by reading the receive data transferred to the FRDRL^{*4} register in the SCIn_RXI interrupt handling routine, before an overrun error occurs. If the received data that is transferred to FRDRL^{*5} is less than the RTS trigger number, the CTSn_RTsn pin outputs low.

Note 1. One of three lengths is selected for the target for comparison: CMPD[6:0] is for 7-bit length, CMPD[7:0] is for 8-bit length, and CMPD[8:0] is for 9-bit length.

Note 2. As no interrupt enable bit is assigned to the SCIn_AM interrupt, an interrupt request is generated by setting the DCCR.DCMF to 1.

Note 3. Only read data in the FRDRH and FRDRL registers when 9-bit data length is selected.

Note 4. Read data in order from FRDRH to FRDRL when 9-bit data length is selected.

Note 5. The SCI only checks for update to the FRDRL register and not to the FRDRH register when 9-bit data length is selected.

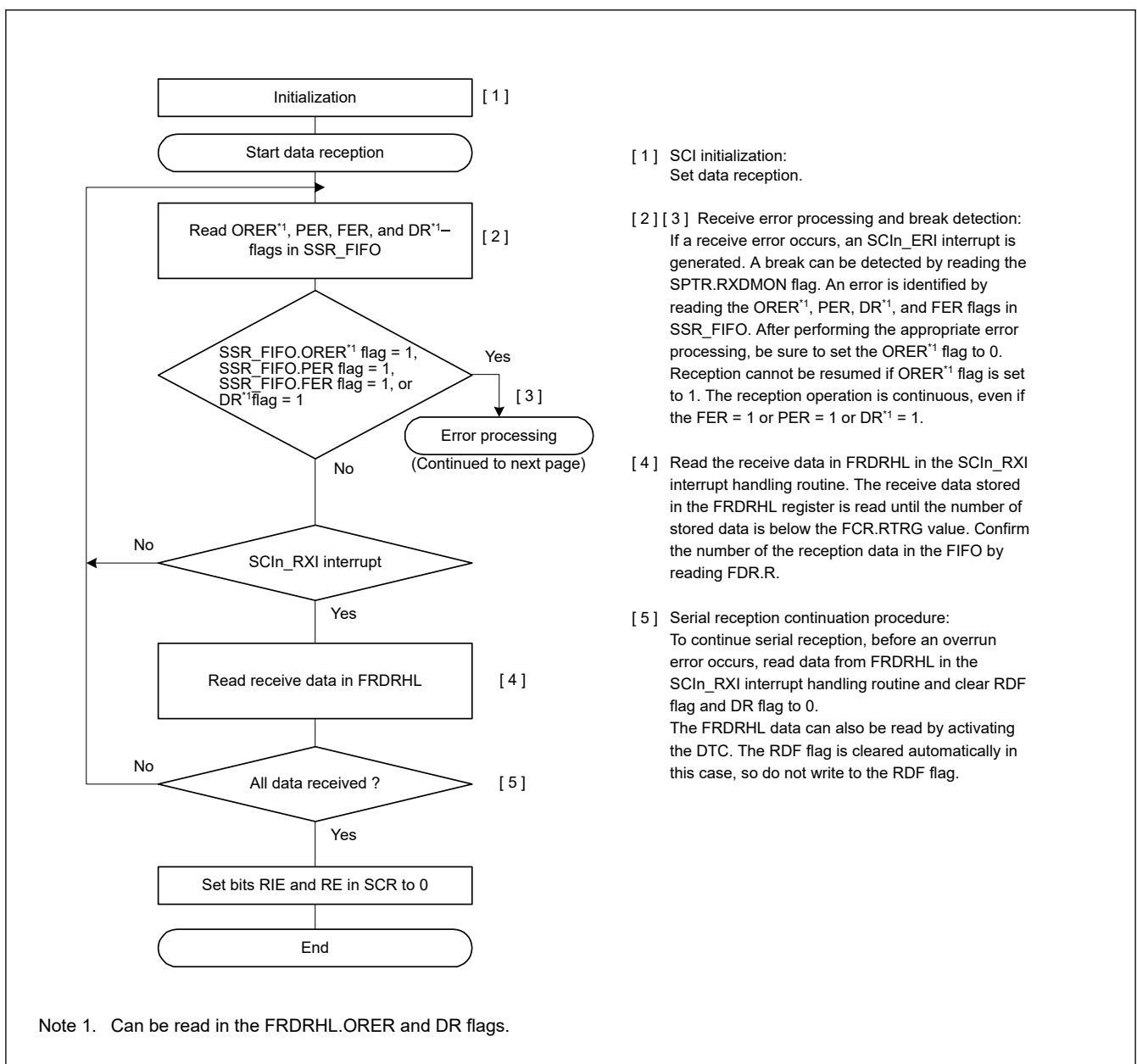


Figure 27.21 Example flow of serial reception in asynchronous mode with FIFO selected and address matching enabled (1)

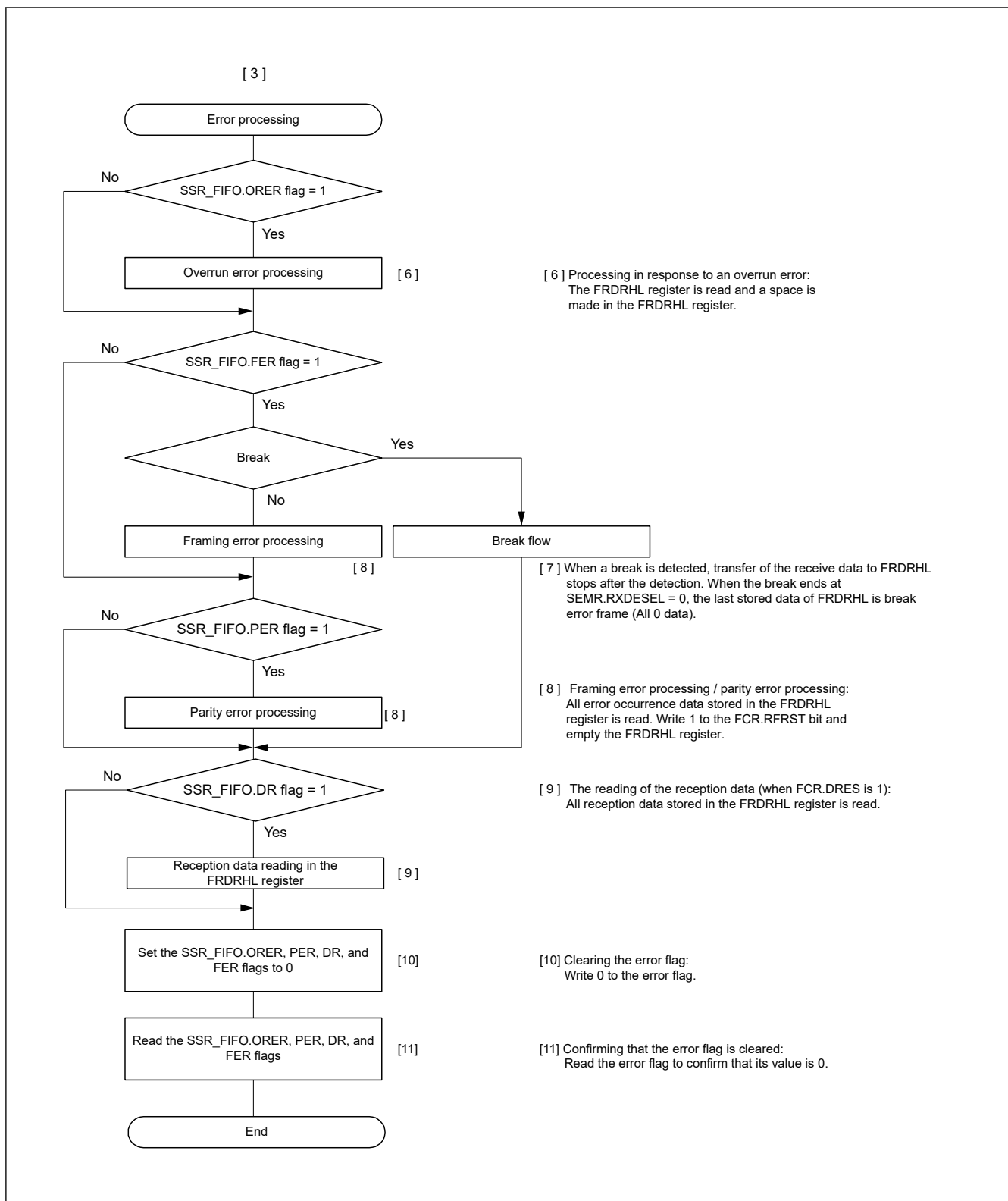
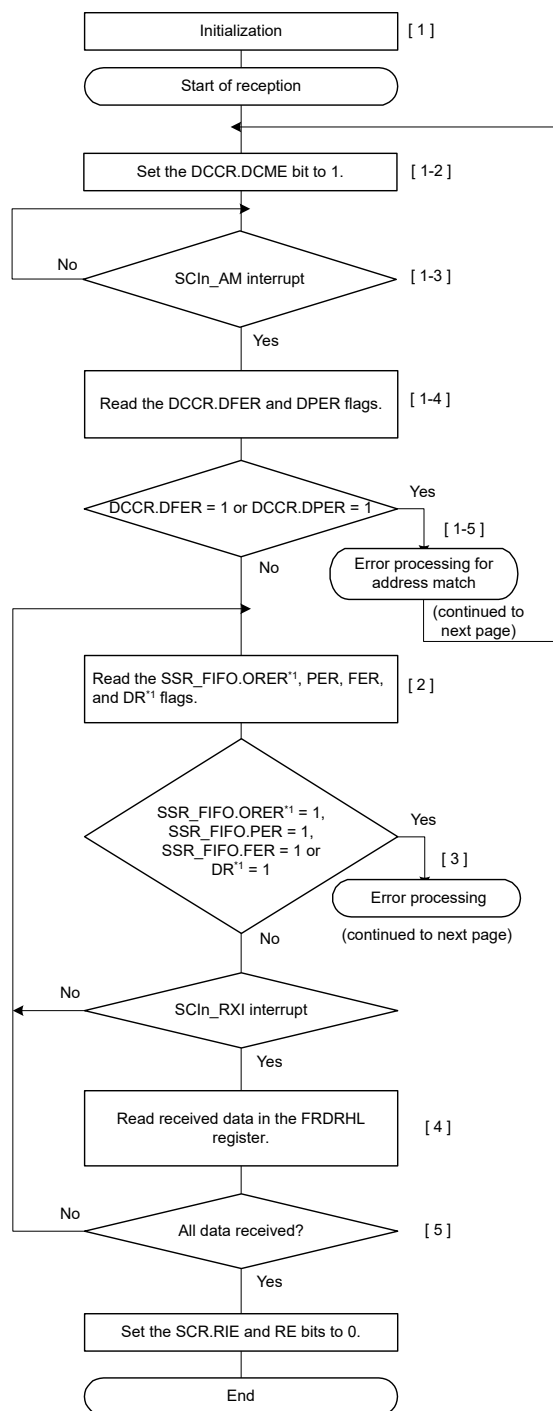


Figure 27.22 Example flow of serial reception in asynchronous mode with FIFO selected address matching disabled (2)



[1] SCI initialization:
Set data reception.

[1-2] Address match cycle:
Set the DCCR.DCME bit to 1 to enable address matching.

[1-3] Comparing received data and data for comparison (CDR.CMPD):
Compare receive data and comparison data.
The SCI cannot detect a parity or framing error as received data are skipped (discarded) until the SCI detects a match between the received data and data for comparison.
If the SCI detects an address match, the DCCR.DCME bit is cleared, the DCCR.DCMF flag becomes 1, and an SCIn_AM interrupt request is issued.

[1-4] [1-5] Reception error processing:
An error is identified by reading the DFER or DPER flag in DCCR from within the SCIn_AM interrupt handling routine.
After appropriate handling of the error, set both the DFER and DPER flags to 0.
If either of these flags is set to 1, address matching cannot be resumed.

[2] [3] Reception error processing and break detection:
When a reception error occurs, an SCIn_ERI interrupt is generated.
A break is identified by reading SPTR.RXDMON.
The error is identified by reading each among the SSR_FIFO.ORER*1, PER, FER, and DR*1 flags.
After appropriate handling of the error, set the ORER*1 flag to 0.
If the ORER*1 flag remains 1, reception cannot be resumed.
The reception operation is continuous, even if the FER = 1, PER = 1 or DR*1 = 1.

[4] Reading the received data in the FRDRHL register from within the SCIn_RXI interrupt handling routine:
The received data stored in the FRDRHL register are read until the amount of stored data is less than the value of the FCR.RTRG[3:0] bits.
Confirm the number of received data in the FIFO with the value of the FDR.R[4:0] bits.

[5] Serial reception continuation procedure:
To continue with serial reception, read data from the FRDRHL register from within the SCIn_RXI interrupt handling routine before an overrun error occurs, and set the RDF and DR flags to 0. The data in the FRDRHL register can also be read by activating the DTC. In this case, do not write to the RDF flag because the flag is automatically cleared.

Note 1. The FRDRHL.ORER and DR flags can also be read.

Figure 27.23 Example flow of serial reception in asynchronous mode (FIFO selected and address matching enabled) (1)

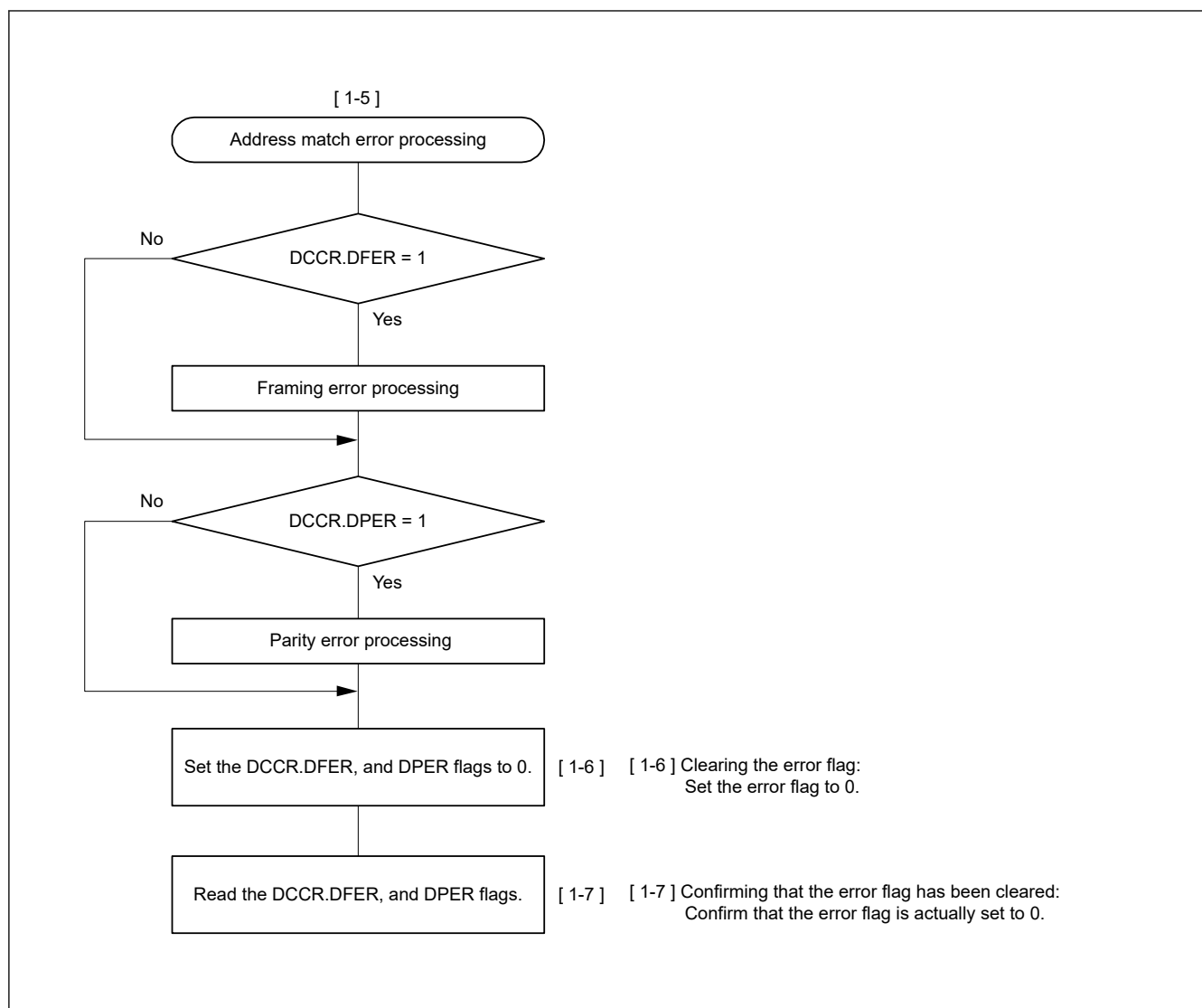


Figure 27.24 Example flow of serial reception in asynchronous mode (FIFO selected and address matching enabled) (2)

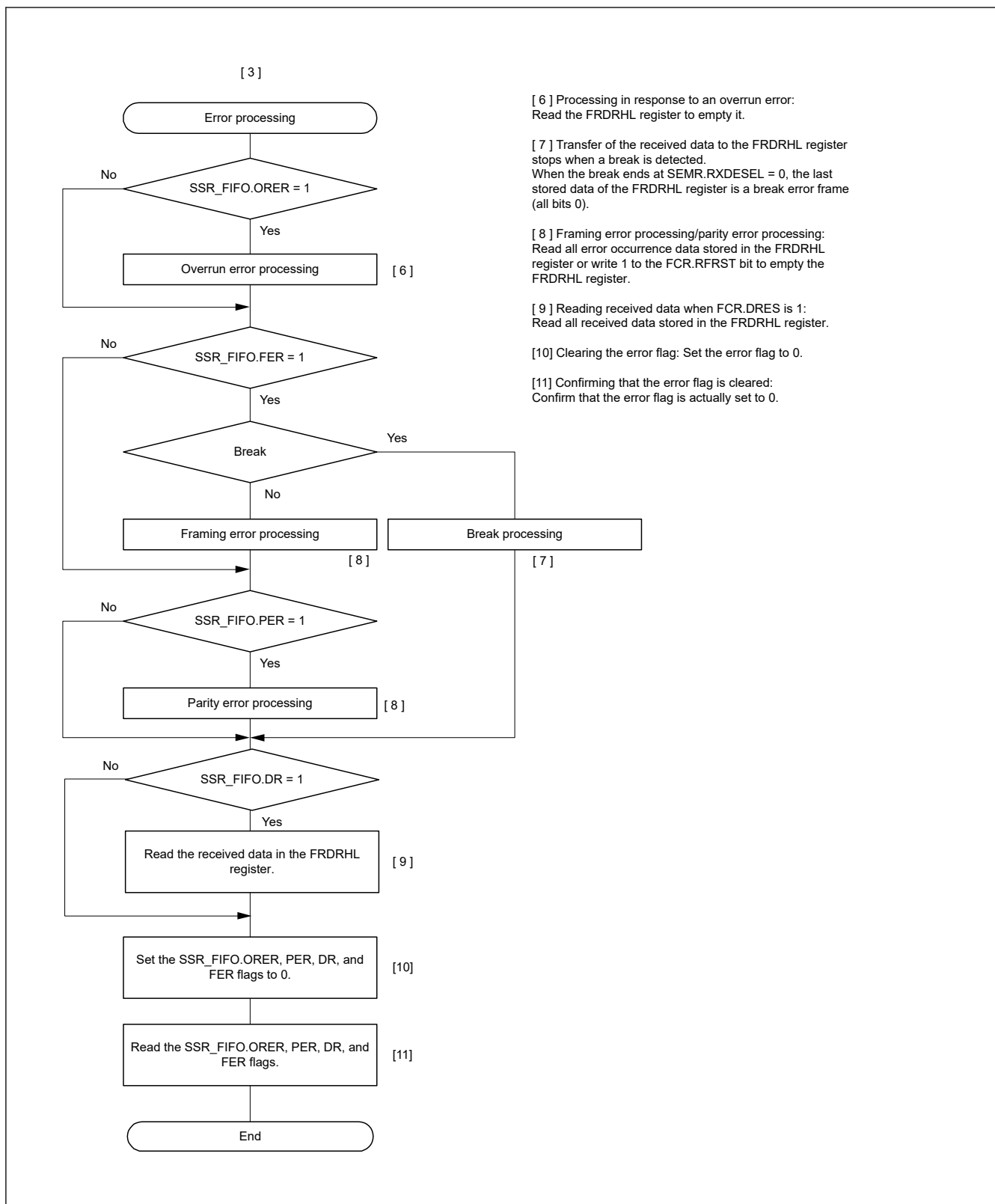


Figure 27.25 Example flow of serial reception in asynchronous mode (FIFO selected and address matching enabled) (3)

27.4 Multi-processor Communication Function

The multi-processor communication function enables the SCI to transmit and receive data between multiple processors by sharing an asynchronous serial communication line that has an added multi-processor bit. In multi-processor communication, a unique ID code is allocated to each receiving station. Serial communication cycles consist of an ID

transmission cycle to specify the receiving station and a data transmission cycle to transmit data to the specified receiving station.

The multi-processor bit is used to distinguish between the ID transmission cycle and the data transmission cycle:

- When the multi-processor bit is set to 1, the transmission cycle is the ID transmission cycle
- When the multi-processor bit is set to 0, the transmission cycle is the data transmission cycle

Figure 27.26 shows an example of communication between processors using a multi-processor format. First, a transmitting station transmits communication data in which the multi-processor bit set to 1 is added to the ID code of the receiving station. Next, the transmitting station transmits communication data in which the multi-processor bit set to 0 is added to the transmit data. After receiving communication data with the multi-processor bit set to 1, the receiving station compares the received ID with the ID of the receiving station itself. If the two match, the receiving station receives communication data that is subsequently transmitted. If the received ID does not match with the ID of the receiving station, the receiving station skips the communication data until it receives data in which the multi-processor bit is set to 1.

(1) Non-FIFO selected

To support this function, the SCI provides the SCR.MPIE bit. When the MPIE bit is set to 1, the following operations are disabled until the reception of data in which the multi-processor bit is set to 1:

- Transfer of receive data from the RSR register to the RDR register (the RDRHL register when 9-bit data length is selected)
- Detection of a receive error
- Setting of the respective RDRF, ORER, and FER status flags in the SSR register

When the SCI receives a character in which the multi-processor bit is set to 1, the SSR.MPBT bit is set to 1 and the SCR.MPIE bit is automatically cleared, returning the SCI to normal reception operation. If the SCR.RIE bit is set to 1, an SCI_{In}_RXI interrupt is generated.

When the multi-processor format is specified, the parity bit function is disabled. Apart from this, there is no difference from operation in normal asynchronous mode. The clock used for the multi-processor communication is the same as the clock used in normal asynchronous mode.

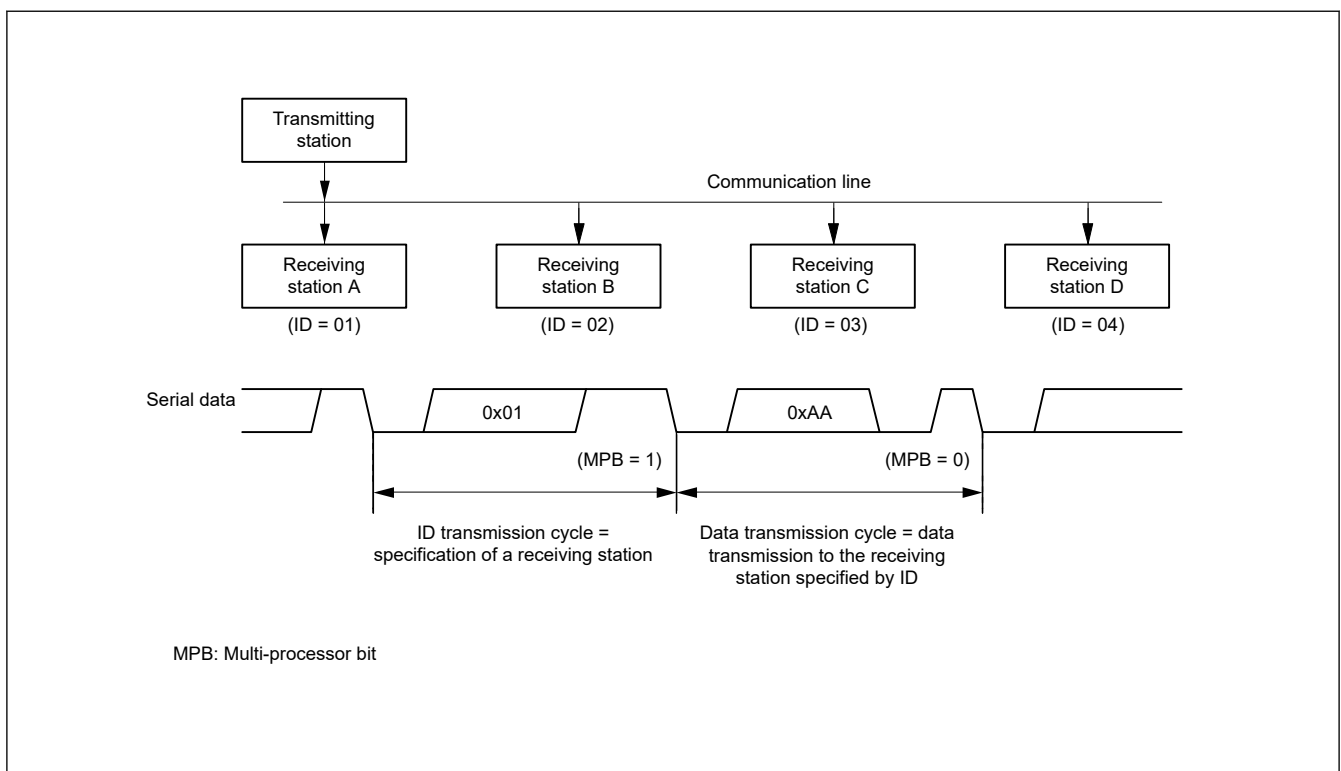


Figure 27.26 Example of communication using multi-processor format with transmission of data 0xAA to receiving station A

(2) FIFO selected

For data transmission, software must write data to FTDRHL.MPBT that corresponds to transmit data in FTDRHL.TDAT. For data reception, the multi-processor bit that is part of the receive data is written to FTDRHL.MPB and receive data is written to FRDRL.

When the MPIE bit is set to 1, the following operations are disabled until reception of data in which the multi-processor bit is set to 1:

- Transfer of receive data from the RSR register to the FRDRHL register
- Detection of a receive error
- Break
- Setting of the respective RDF, ORER, and FER status flags in the SSR_FIFO register

When the SCI receives an 8-bit character in which the multi-processor bit is set to 1, the FTDRHL.MPB bit is set to 1 and receive data is written to FRDRHL.RDAT. The SCR.MPIE bit is automatically cleared, returning the SCI to normal reception operation. If the SCR.RIE bit is set to 1, an SCIn_RXI interrupt is generated.

When the multi-processor format is specified, the parity bit function is disabled. Apart from this, there is no difference from operation in normal asynchronous mode with FIFO selected.

27.4.1 Multi-processor Serial Data Transmission

(1) Non-FIFO selected

Figure 27.27 shows an example flow of multi-processor data transmission. In the ID transmission cycle, the ID must be transmitted with the SSR.MPBT bit set to 1. In the data transmission cycle, the data must be transmitted with the MPBT bit set to 0. The rest of the operations are the same as operations in asynchronous mode. Write the values in the order of the FTDRH register to the FTDRL register.

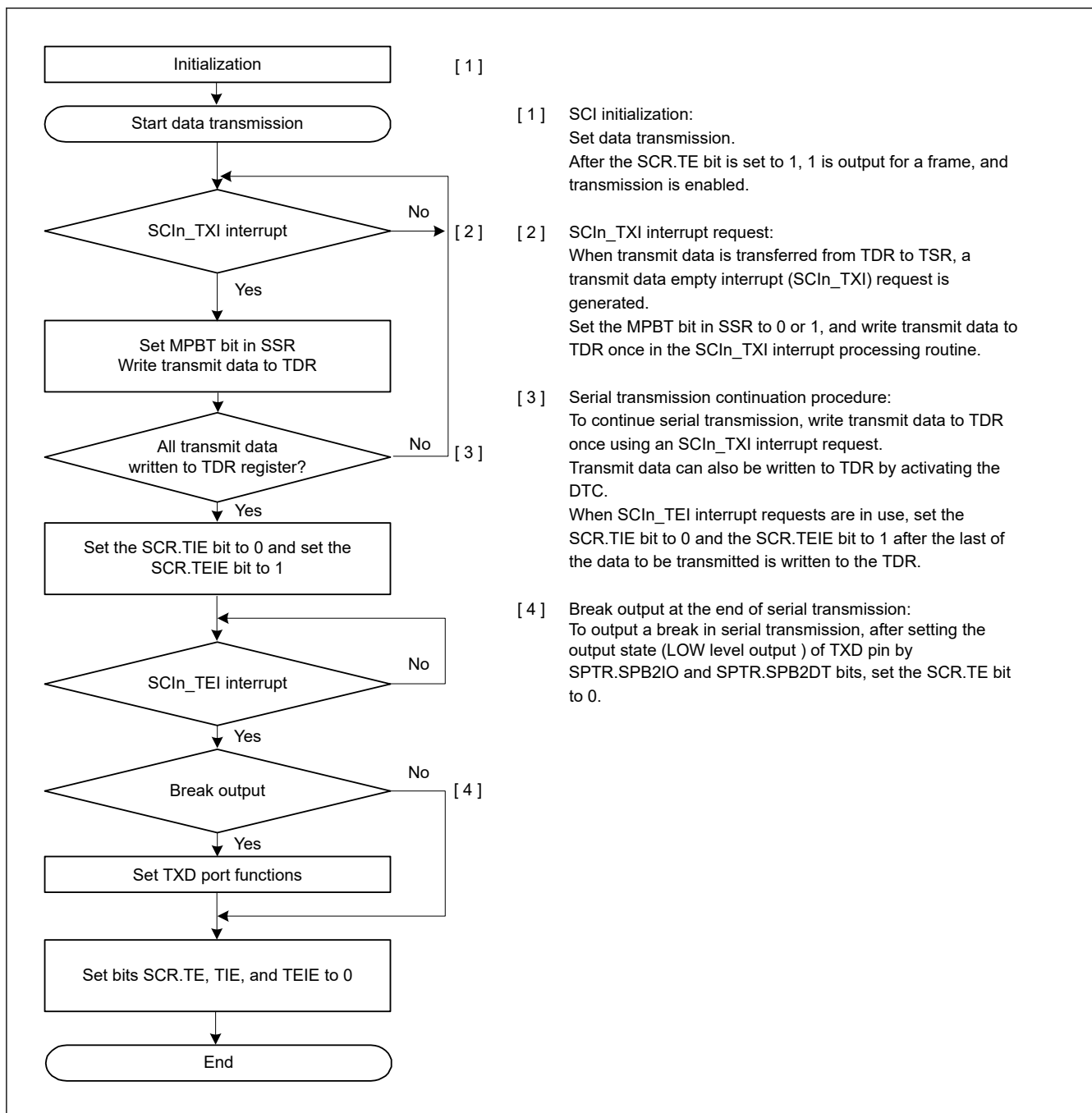


Figure 27.27 Example flow of multi-processor serial transmission with non-FIFO selected

(2) FIFO selected

Figure 27.28 shows an example of data format that is written to FTDRH and FTDRL in multi-processor mode. The FTDRH.MPBT bit is set to 1. Data is set to FTDRH and FTDRL with the correct data length. Write 0 for unused bits. Write in order from FTDRH to FTDRL.

Data Length	Register Setting		Transmit data in FTDRH, FTDRL															
			FTDRHL															
	SCMR. CHR1	SMR. CHR	FTDRH								FTDRL							
			b15	b14	b13	b12	b11	b10	b9	b8	b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
7 bits	1	0	–	–	–	–	–	–	MPBT	–	–	7-bit transmit data						
8 bits	1	1	–	–	–	–	–	–	MPBT	–	8-bit transmit data							
9 bits	0	Don't care	–	–	–	–	–	–	MPBT	9-bit transmit data								

Note: —: Invalid. The write value should be 0.

Figure 27.28 Data format written to FTDRH and FTDRL in multi-processor mode with FIFO selected

Figure 27.29 shows an example flow of multi-processor serial transmission with FIFO selected. In the ID transmission cycle, the ID must be transmitted with the FTDRH.MPBT bit set to 1. In the data transmission cycle, the data must be transmitted with the MPBT bit set to 0. The rest of the operations are the same as operations in asynchronous mode with FIFO selected.

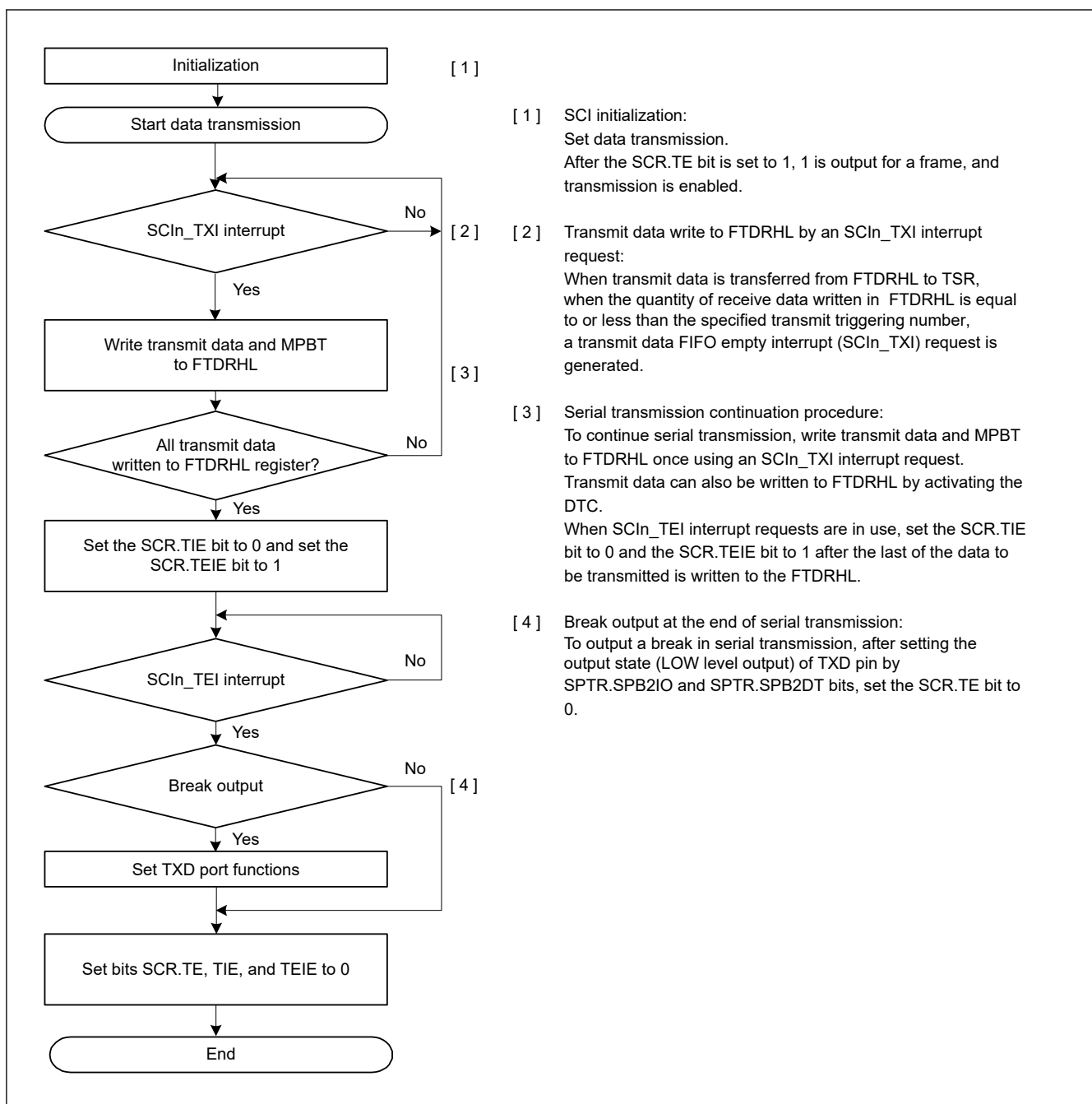


Figure 27.29 Example flow of serial transmission in multi-processor mode with FIFO selected

27.4.2 Multi-processor Serial Data Reception

(1) Non-FIFO selected

Figure 27.31 and Figure 27.32 are example flows of multi-processor serial reception. When the SCR.MPIE bit is set to 1, reading communication data is skipped until reception of communication data in which the multi-processor bit is set to 1. When communication data in which the multi-processor bit is set to 1 is received, the received data is transferred to the RDR register (the RDRHL register when 9-bit data length is selected), and the SCIn_RXI interrupt request is generated. The rest of the operations are the same as operations in asynchronous mode. Read the order from FRDRH to FRDRL.

Figure 27.30 shows an example operation for data reception.

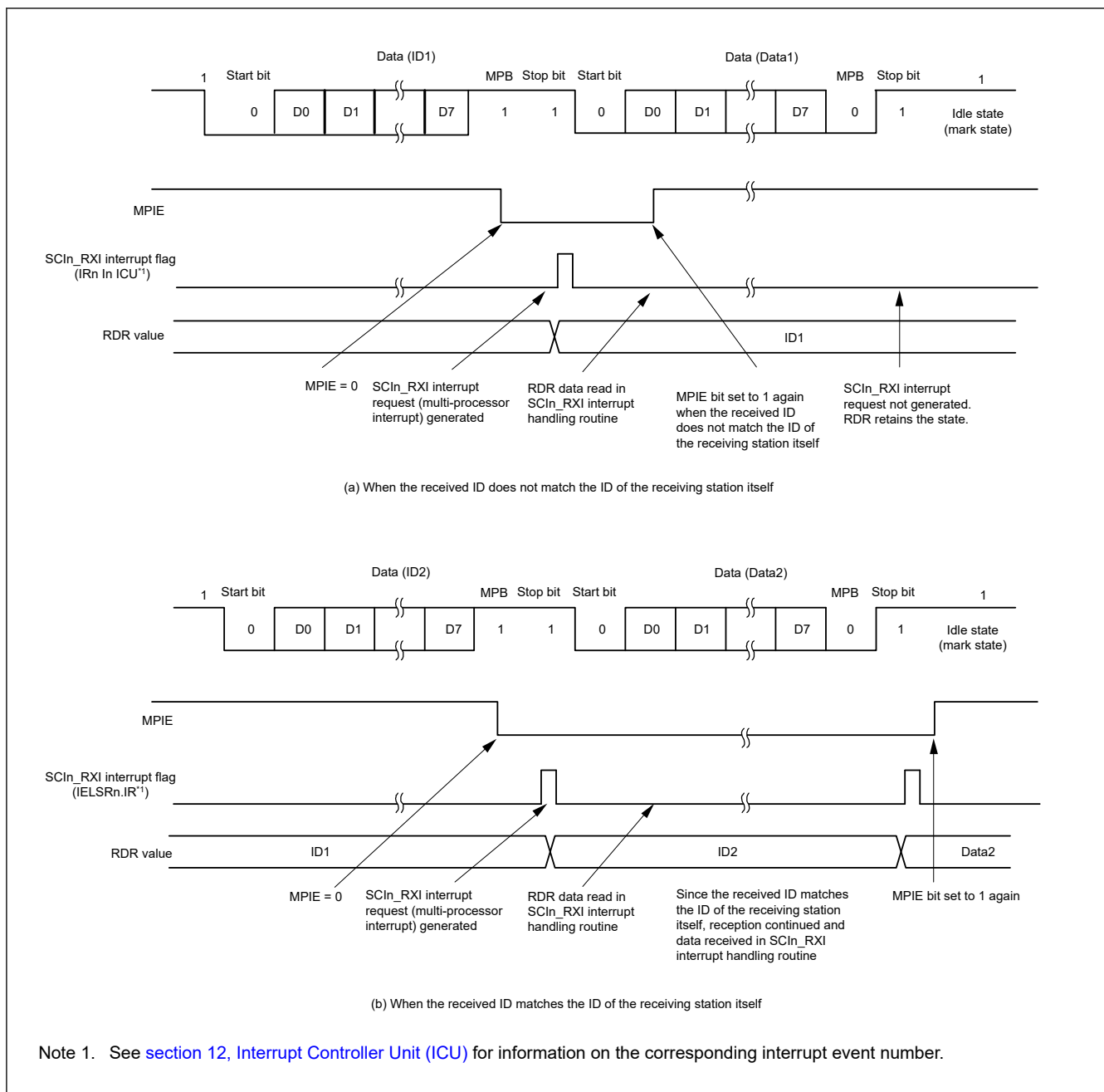


Figure 27.30 Example of SCI reception with 8-bit data, multi-processor bit, and 1 stop bit

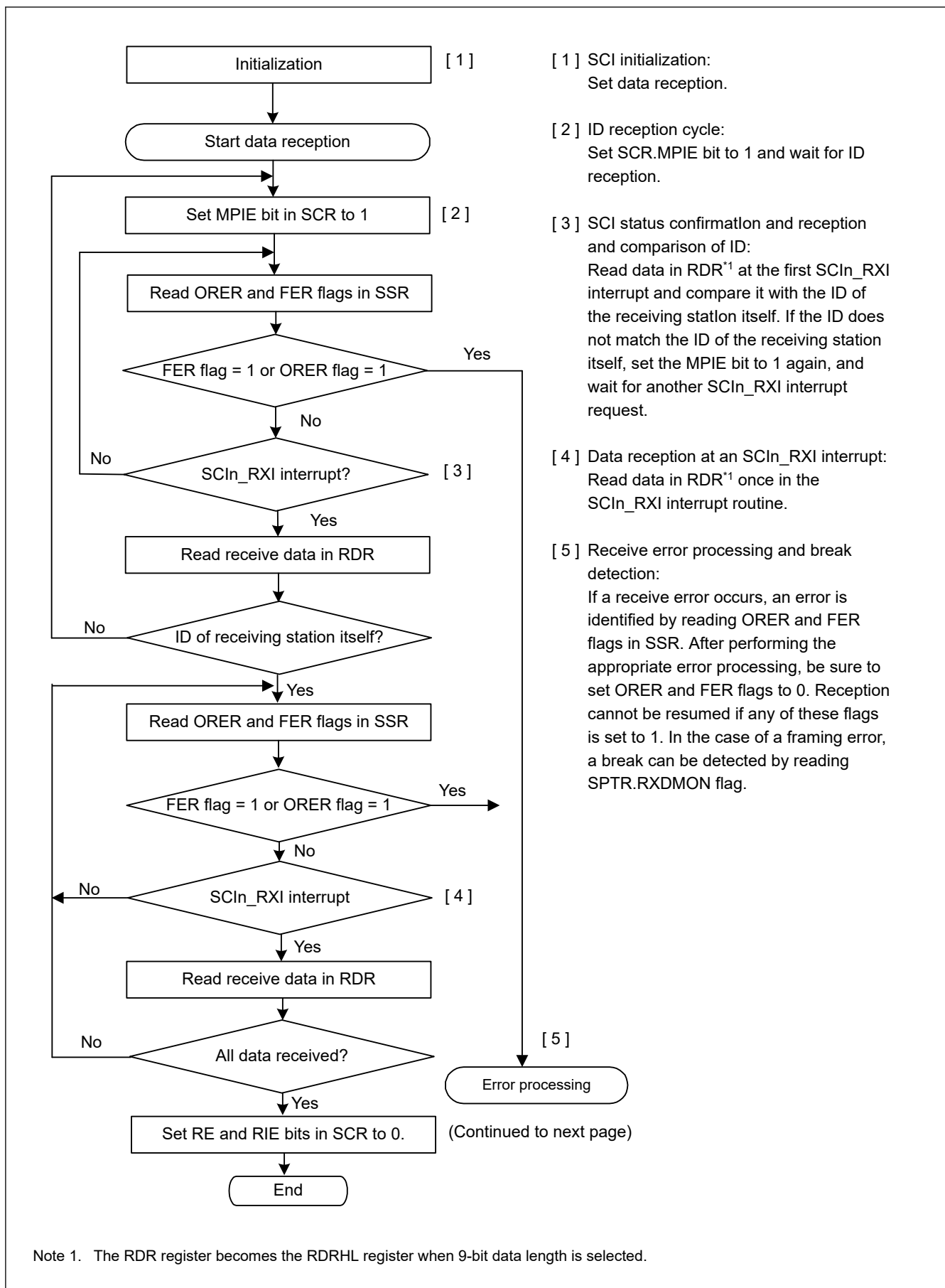


Figure 27.31 Example flow of multi-processor serial reception with non-FIFO selected (1)

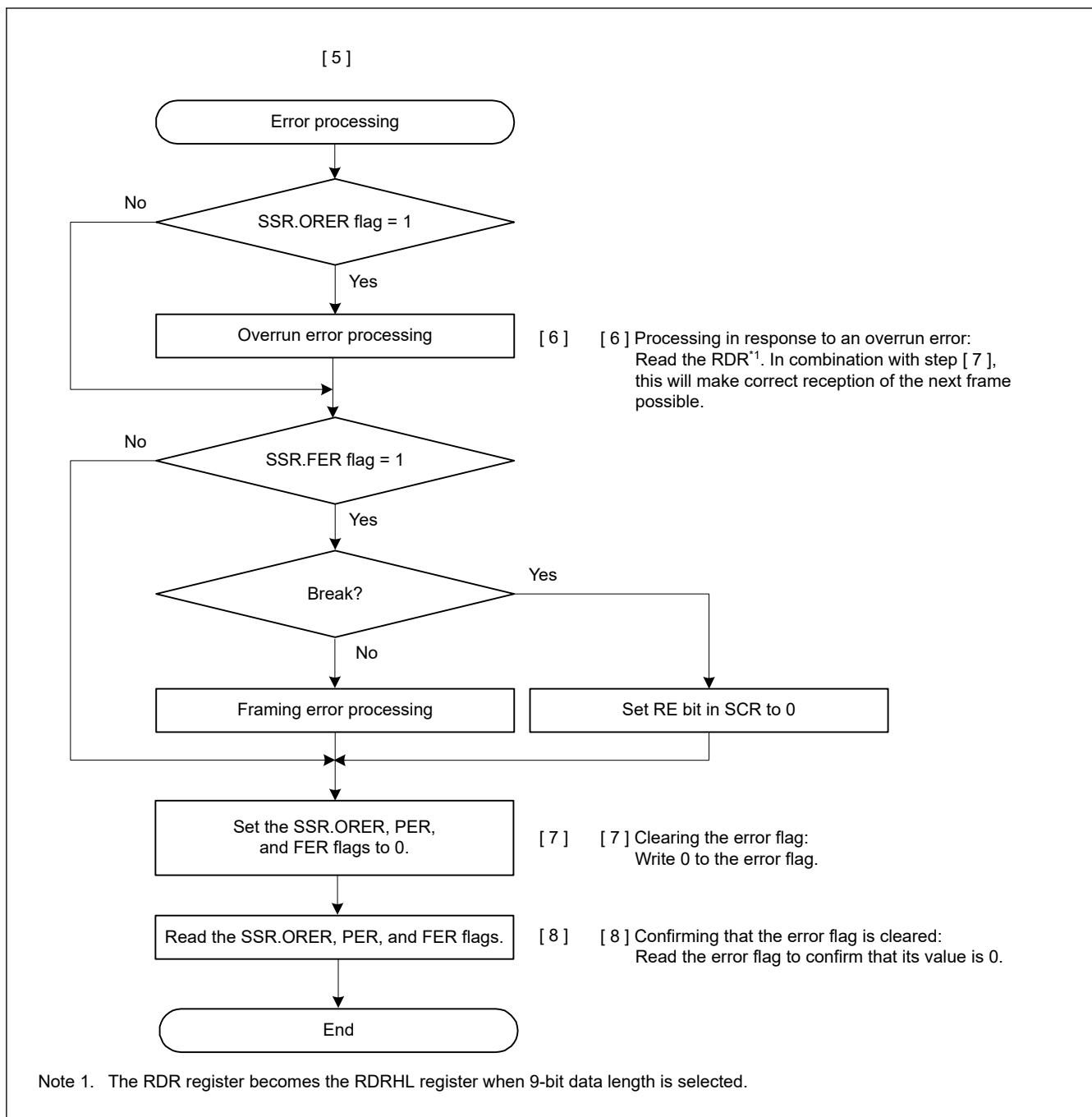


Figure 27.32 Example flow of multi-processor serial reception with non-FIFO selected (2)

(2) FIFO selected

Figure 27.33 shows an example of a data format that is written to FRDRH and FRDRL in multi-processor mode.

In multi-processor mode, the MPB value that is a part of the receive data is written to the FRDRH.MPB bit. A value of 0 is written to the FRDRH.PER flag. Data is written to FRDRH and FRDRL with the correct data length. Unused bits are written with 0. Read in order from FRDRH to FRDRL. When software reads the FRDRL register, the SCI updates FER, MPB, and receive data (RDAT[8:0]) in FRDRL with the next data. The RDE, ORER and DR flags in the FRDRH register always reflect the associated flags in the SSR_FIFO register.

Data Length	Register Setting		Receive data in FRDRH, FRDRL															
	SCMR. CHR1	SMR. CHR	FRDRHL															
			FRDRH								FRDRL							
			b15	b14	b13	b12	b11	b10	b9	b8	b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
7 bits	1	0	–	RDF	ORER	FER	0	DR	MPB	0	0							
8 bits	1	1	–	RDF	ORER	FER	0	DR	MPB	0								
9 bits	0	Don't care	–	RDF	ORER	FER	0	DR	MPB									

Note: When data length is 7 bits, 0 is always read for FRDRH[0] and FRDRL[7]
 When data length is 8 bits, 0 is always read for FRDRH[0]
 FRDRHL[15] bit is read as an indefinite value

Figure 27.33 Data format stored in FRDRH and FRDRL in multi-processor mode with FIFO selected

Figure 27.34 shows an example flow of multi-processor data reception with FIFO selected. When the SCR.MPIE is set to 1, reading communication data is skipped until reception of communication data in which the multi-processor bit is set to 1. When communication data in which the multi-processor bit is set to 1 is received, the received data, MPB and associated errors are transferred to the FRDRHL register. The SCR.MPIE bit is automatically cleared and normal reception continues.

If a framing error occurs and the SSR_FIFO.FER flag is set to 1, the SCI continues data reception. The rest of the operations are the same as operations in asynchronous mode with FIFO selected.

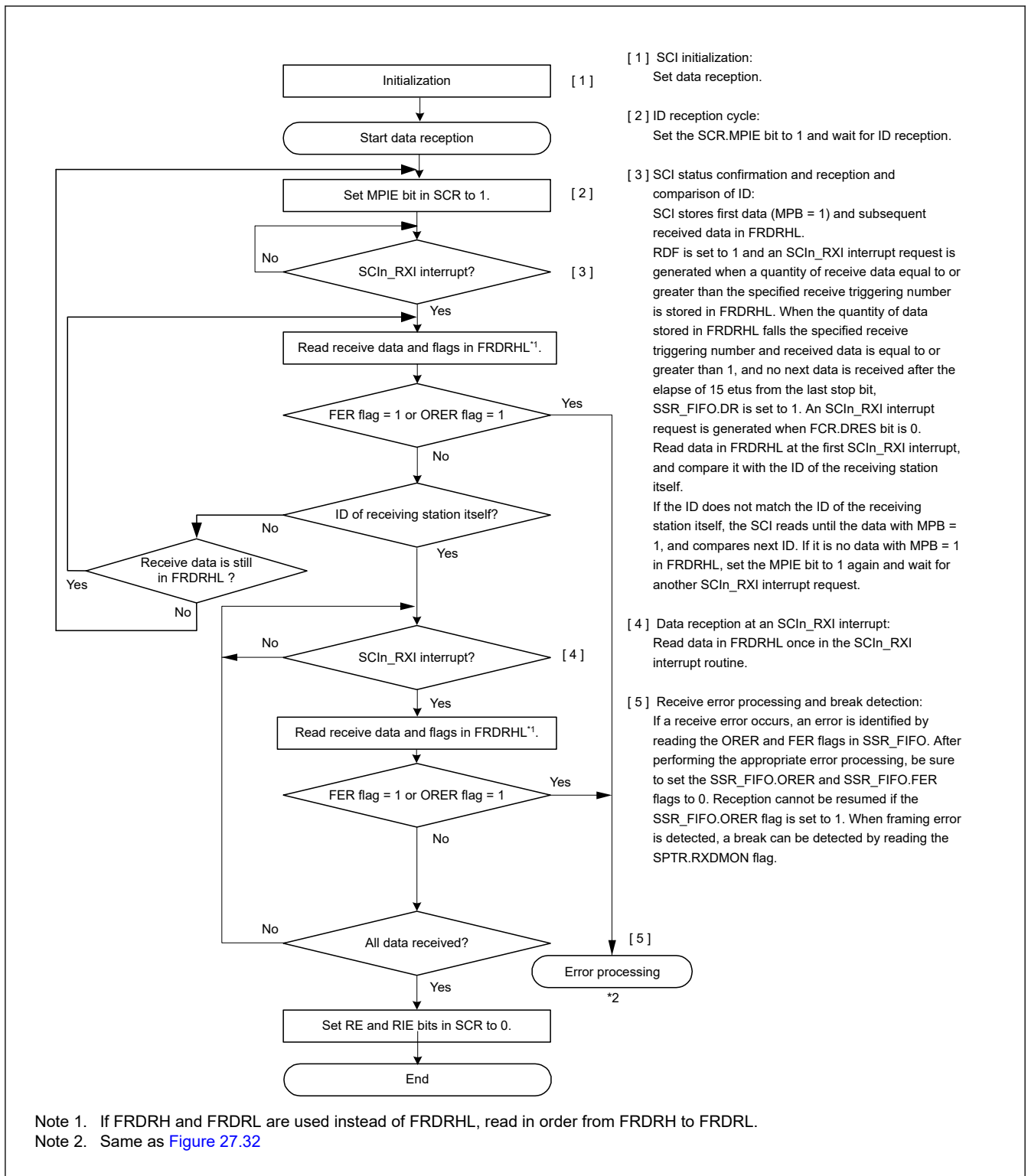


Figure 27.34 Example flow of serial reception in multi-processor mode with FIFO selected

27.5 Operation in Clock Synchronous Mode

Figure 27.35 shows the data format for clock synchronous serial data communications.

In clock synchronous mode, data is transmitted or received in synchronization with clock pulses. For single-character data transfer, data consists of 8-bit. In clock synchronous mode, no parity bit can be added.

In data transmission, the SCI outputs data from one falling edge of the synchronization clock to the next falling edge. In data reception, the SCI receives data in synchronization with the rising edge of the synchronization clock. After 8-bit data

is output, the transmission line holds the last bit as the output state. When the SPMR.CKPH bit is 1 in slave mode, the transmission line holds the first bit output state.

Within the SCI, the transmitter and receiver are independent units, enabling full-duplex communications by using a shared clock. Both the transmitter and the receiver also have a double-buffered structure, so that the next transmit data can be written during transmission or the previous receive data can be read during reception, enabling continuous data transfer.

However, it is not possible to perform continuous transfer in the fastest bit rate setting (BRR[7:0] = 0x00 and SMR.CKS[1:0] = 00b). Therefore, when the FIFO is selected, this setting (BRR[7:0] = 0x00 and SMR.CKS[1:0] = 00b) is not available.

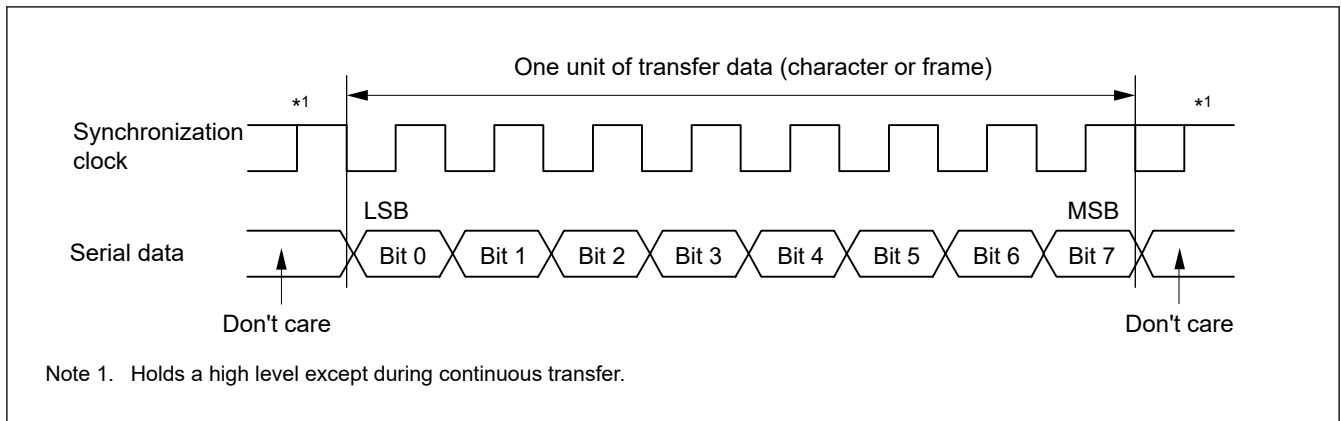


Figure 27.35 Data format in clock synchronous serial communications with LSB-first order

27.5.1 Clock

Either an internal clock generated by the on-chip baud rate generator or an external synchronization clock input at the SCKn pin can be selected based on the SCR.CKE[1:0] setting.

When the SCI operates on an internal clock, the synchronization clock is output from the SCKn pin. Eight synchronization clock pulses are output in the transfer of one character. When no transfer is performed, the clock is held high. However, when only data reception is performed while the CTS function is disabled, the synchronization clock output starts when the SCR.RE bit set to 1. The synchronization clock stops when it goes high^{*1} and an overrun error occurs or the SCR.RE bit is set to 0.

When only data reception is performed and the CTS function is enabled, the clock output does not start when the SCR.RE bit set to 1 and the CTSn_RTSn pin input is high. The synchronization clock output starts when the SCR.RE bit is set to 1 and the CTSn_RTSn pin input is low. Following that, when the CTSn_RTSn pin input is high on completion of the frame reception, the synchronization clock output stops when it goes high. If the CTSn_RTSn pin input continues to be low, the synchronization clock stops when it goes high^{*1} and an overrun error occurs or the SCR.RE bit is set to 0.

Note 1. The signal is held high while (SPMR.CKPH = 0 and SPMR.CKPOL = 1) or (SPMR.CKPH = 1 and SPMR.CKPOL = 1). It is held low while (SPMR.CKPH = 0 and SPMR.CKPOL = 0) or (SPMR.CKPH = 1 and SPMR.CKPOL = 0).

27.5.2 CTS and RTS Functions

In the CTS function, the CTSn_RTSn pin input controls the start of data reception or transmission when the clock source is the internal clock. Setting the SPMR.CTSE bit to 1 enables the CTS function. When the CTS function is enabled, setting the CTSn_RTSn pin low causes data reception or transmission to start.

Setting the CTSn_RTSn pin high while the data transmission or reception is in progress does not affect transmission or reception of the current frame.

In the RTS function, the CTSn_RTSn pin output is used to request the start of data reception or transmission when the clock source is an external synchronizing clock. The CTSn_RTSn output goes low when serial communication is enabled. Conditions for output of the CTSn_RTSn low and high are shown as follows:

[Conditions for low output]

Satisfaction of all the following conditions:

Non-FIFO selected when all of the following conditions are satisfied

- The value of the SCR.RE bit or the SCR.TE bit is 1
- Neither transmission nor reception is in progress
- There is no received data available to be read when the SCR.RE bit is 1
- Transmit data is written when the SCR.TE bit is 1 and the SCR.CKE[1] bit is 0
- Data is available for transmission in the TSR register when the SCR.TE bit is 1 and the SCR.CKE[1] bit is 1
- The SSR.ORER flag is 0

FIFO selected when all of the following conditions are satisfied

- The value of the SCR.RE bit or the SCR.TE bit is 1
- Neither transmission nor reception is in progress
- The amount of receive data written in FRDRHL is less than the setting value of FCRH.RSTRG[3:0] when SCR.RE = 1
- Data that has not been transmitted is available in FTDRHL when the SCR.TE bit is 1 and the SCR.CKE[1] bit is 0
- Data is available for transmission in the TSR register when the SCR.TE bit is 1 and the SCR.CKE[1] bit is 1
- The SSR_FIFO.ORER flag is 0

[Condition for high output]

- The conditions for low output are not satisfied

27.5.3 SCI Initialization in Clock Synchronous Mode

Before transmitting and receiving data, start by writing the initial value 0x00 to the SCR register, then continue through the SCI initialization procedure given in the sections describing non-FIFO and FIFO selection in [section 27.5.2. CTS and RTS Functions](#). Anytime the operating mode or transfer format is to be changed, the SCR register must be initialized before the change can be made.

Note: Setting the SCR.RE bit to 0 initializes neither the ORER, FER, and PER flags in SSR/SSR_FIFO nor the RDR register. When the TE bit is set to 0, the TEND flag for the selected FIFO buffer is not initialized.

Note: In non-FIFO mode, switching the value of the SCR.TE bit from 1 to 0 or 0 to 1 when the SCR.TIE bit is 1 generates an SCIn_TXI interrupt request.

Table 27.28 Example flow of SCI initialization in clock synchronous mode with non-FIFO selected (1 of 2)

No.	Step Name	Description
1	Start initialization	
2	Set the SCR.TIE, RIE, TE, RE, and TEIE bits to 0	
3	Set the FCR.FM bit to 0	Set the FCR.FM bit to 0.
4	Set the SCR.CKE[1:0] bits	Set the clock selection in SCR.
5	Set the SIMR1.IICM bit to 0. Set the SPMR.CKPH and CKPOL bits.	Set the SIMR1.IICM bit to 0. Set the SPMR.CKPH and CKPOL bits. Step 5 can be skipped if the values have not been changed from the initial values.
6	Set the data transmission/reception format in SMR, SCMR, and SEMR	Set data transmission/reception format in SMR, SCMR, and SEMR.
7	Set a value in BRR	Write a value corresponding to the bit rate to BRR. This step is not necessary if an external clock is used.
8	Set a value in MDDR	Write the value obtained by correcting a bit rate error in MDDR. This step is not necessary if the BRME bit in SEMR is set to 0 or an external clock is used.
9	Set the I/O port functions	Make I/O port settings to enable input and output functions as required for TXDn, RXDn, and SCKn pins.

Table 27.28 Example flow of SCI initialization in clock synchronous mode with non-FIFO selected (2 of 2)

No.	Step Name	Description
10	Set the SCR.TE or RE bit to 1, and set the SCR.TIE and RIE bits	Set the SCR.TE or RE bit to 1. Also set the SCR.TIE and RIE bits. Setting the TE and RE bits allows TXDn and RXDn pins to be used.
11	Initialization completion	

Note: In simultaneous transmit and receive operations, the TE and RE bits in SCR must both be set to 0 or set to 1 simultaneously

Table 27.29 Example flow of SCI initialization in clock synchronous mode with FIFO selected

No.	Step Name	Description
1	Start initialization	
2	Set the SCR.TIE, RIE, TE, RE, and TEIE bits to 0	
3	Set the FCR.FM, TFRST, and RFRST bits to 1. Set the FCR.TTRG[3:0], RTRG[3:0], and RSTRG[3:0] bits.	Set the FCR.FM, TFRST, and RFRST bits to 1 (FIFO mode enabled, transmit/receive FIFOs empty). Set the FCR.TTRG[3:0], RTRG[3:0], and RSTRG[3:0] bits.
4	Set the SCR.CKE[1:0] bits	Set the clock selection in SCR.
5	Set the SIMR1.IICM bit to 0. Set the SPMR.CKPH and CKPOL bits.	Set the SIMR1.IICM bit to 0. Set the SPMR.CKPH and CKPOL bits. Step 5 can be skipped if the values have not been changed from the initial values.
6	Set the data transmission/reception format in SMR, SCMR, and SEMR	Set data transmission/reception format in SMR, SCMR, and SEMR.
7	Set a value in BRR	Write a value corresponding to the bit rate to BRR. This step is not necessary if an external clock is used.
8	Set a value in MDDR	Write the value obtained by correcting a bit rate error in MDDR. This step is not necessary if the BRME bit in SEMR is set to 0 or an external clock is used.
9	Set the FCR.TFRST and RFRST bits to 0	Set the FCR.TFRST and RFRST bits to 0.
10	Set the I/O port functions	Make I/O port settings to enable input and output functions as required for TXDn, RXDn, and SCKn pins.
11	Set the SCR.TE or RE bit to 1, and set the SCR.TIE and RIE bits	Set the SCR.TE or RE bit to 1. Also set the SCR.TIE and RIE bits. Setting the TE and RE bits allows TXDn and RXDn pins to be used.
12	Initialization completion	

Note: In simultaneous transmit and receive operations, the TE and RE bits in SCR must both be set to 0 or set to 1 simultaneously.

27.5.4 Serial Data Transmission in Clock Synchronous Mode

(1) Non-FIFO selected

Figure 27.36, Figure 27.37, and Figure 27.38 show examples of serial transmission in clock synchronous mode.

In serial data transmission, the SCI operates as follows:

1. The SCI transfers data from the TDR register to the TSR register when data is written to TDR in the SCIn_TXI interrupt handling routine. The SCIn_TXI interrupt request at the beginning of transmission is generated when the TE bit is set to 1 but only after the TIE bit in the SCR is also set to 1 or when these two bits are set to 1 simultaneously by a single instruction.
2. After transferring data from TDR to TSR, the SCI starts transmission. When the SCR.TIE bit is set to 1, an SCIn_TXI interrupt request is generated. Continuous transmission is enabled by writing the next transmit data to TDR in the SCIn_TXI interrupt handling routine before transmission of the current transmit data finishes. When SCIn_TEI interrupt requests are in use, set the SCR.TIE bit to 0 and the SCR.TEIE bit to 1 after the last of the data to be transmitted is written to the TDR register from the handling routine for SCIn_TXI requests.

3. 8-bit data is sent from the TXDn pin in synchronization with the output clock when the clock output mode is specified and in synchronization with the input clock when the use of an external clock is specified. Output of the clock signal is suspended until the input CTS signal is low when the SPMR.CTSE bit is 1.
4. The SCI checks for update to the TDR register on output of the last bit.
5. When the TDR register is updated, the next transmit data is transferred from TDR to TSR, and serial transmission of the next frame starts.
6. If TDR is not updated, the SSR.TEND flag is set to 1. The TXDn pin retains the output state of the last bit. If the SCR.TEIE bit is 1, an SCIn_TEI interrupt request is generated and the SCKn pin is held high.

Figure 27.36, Figure 27.37, and Figure 27.38 show examples of serial data transmission.

Transmission does not start while a receive error flag (ORER, FER, or PER in SSR) is set to 1. Always set the receive error flags to 0 before starting transmission.

Note: Setting the SCR.RE bit to 0 does not clear the receive error flags.

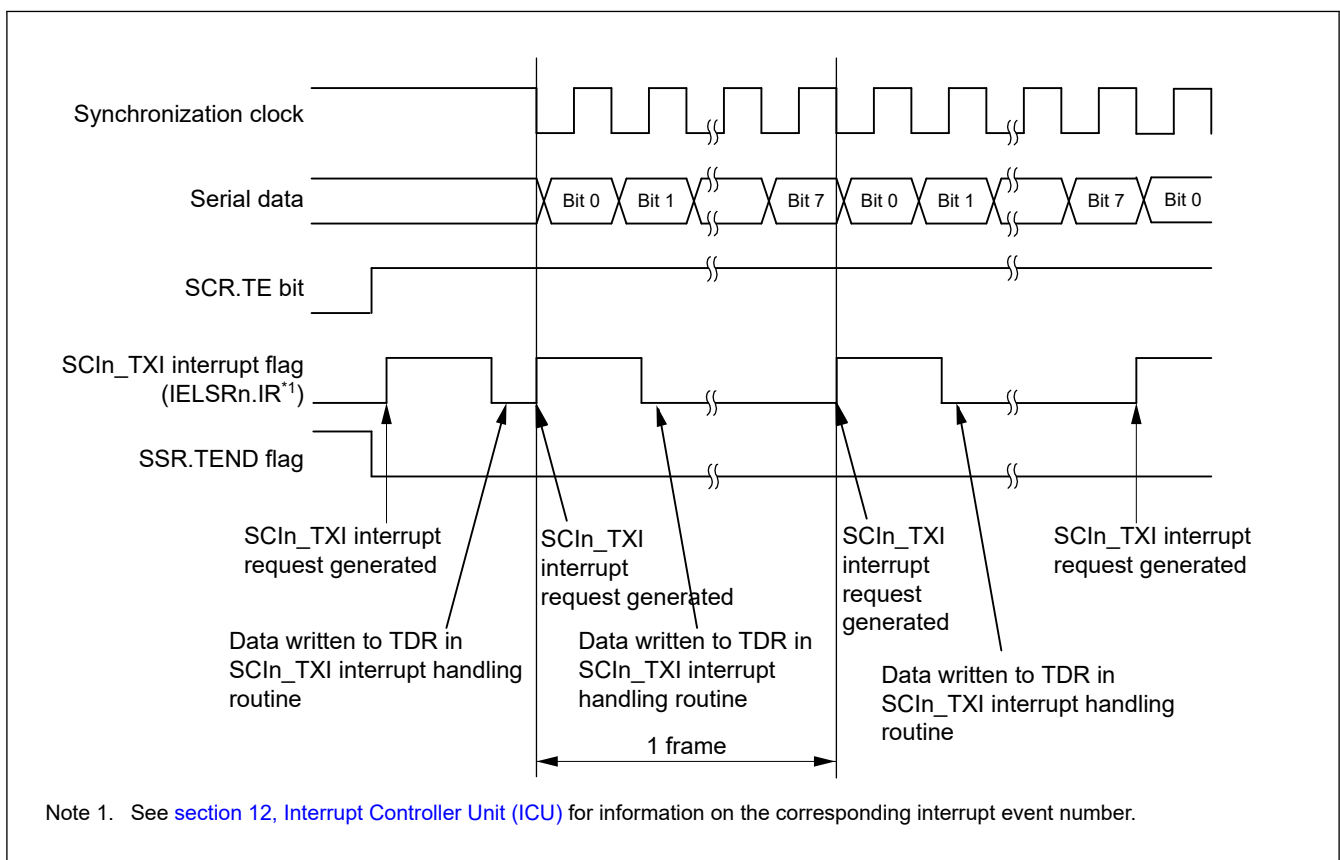


Figure 27.36 Example of serial data transmission in clock synchronous mode when the CTS function is not used at the beginning of transmission

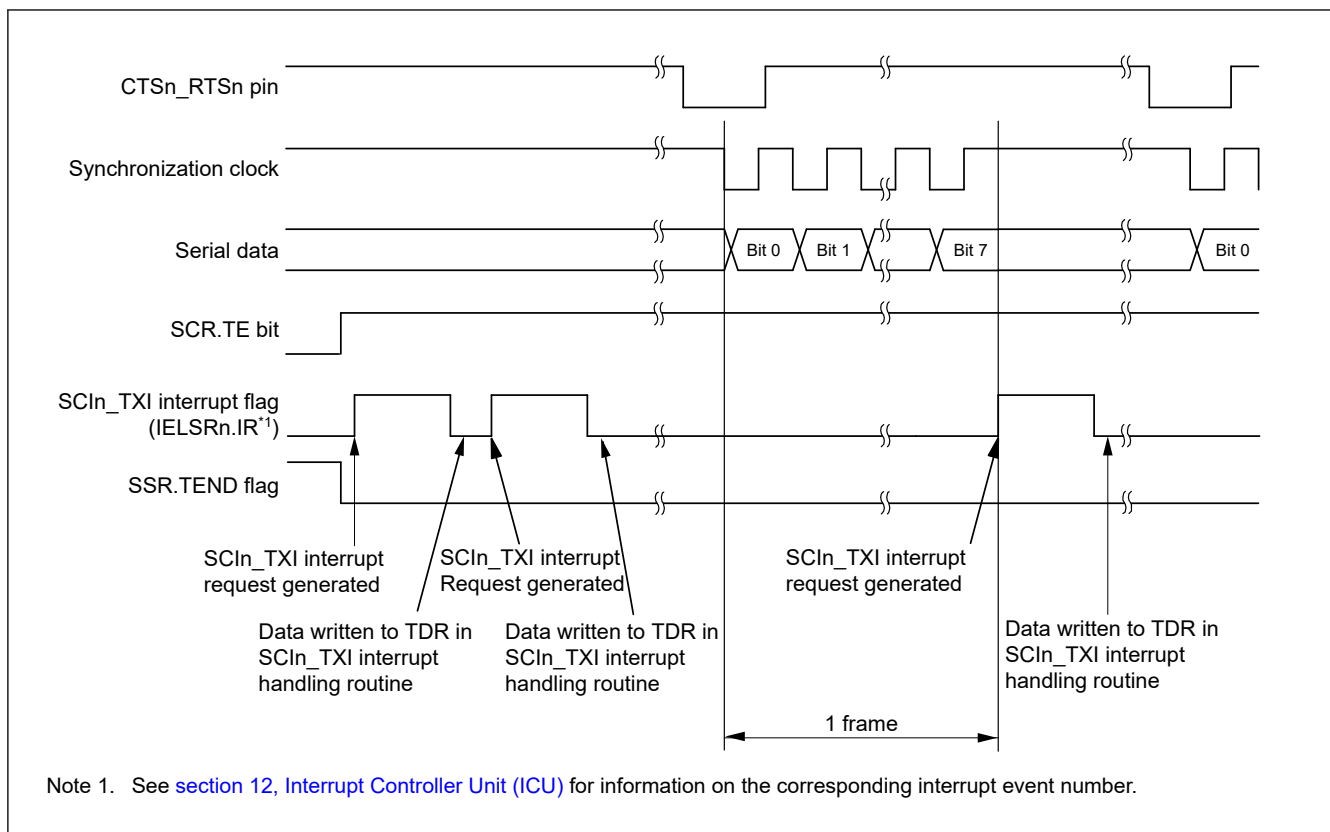


Figure 27.37 Example of serial data transmission in clock synchronous mode when the CTS function is used at the beginning of transmission

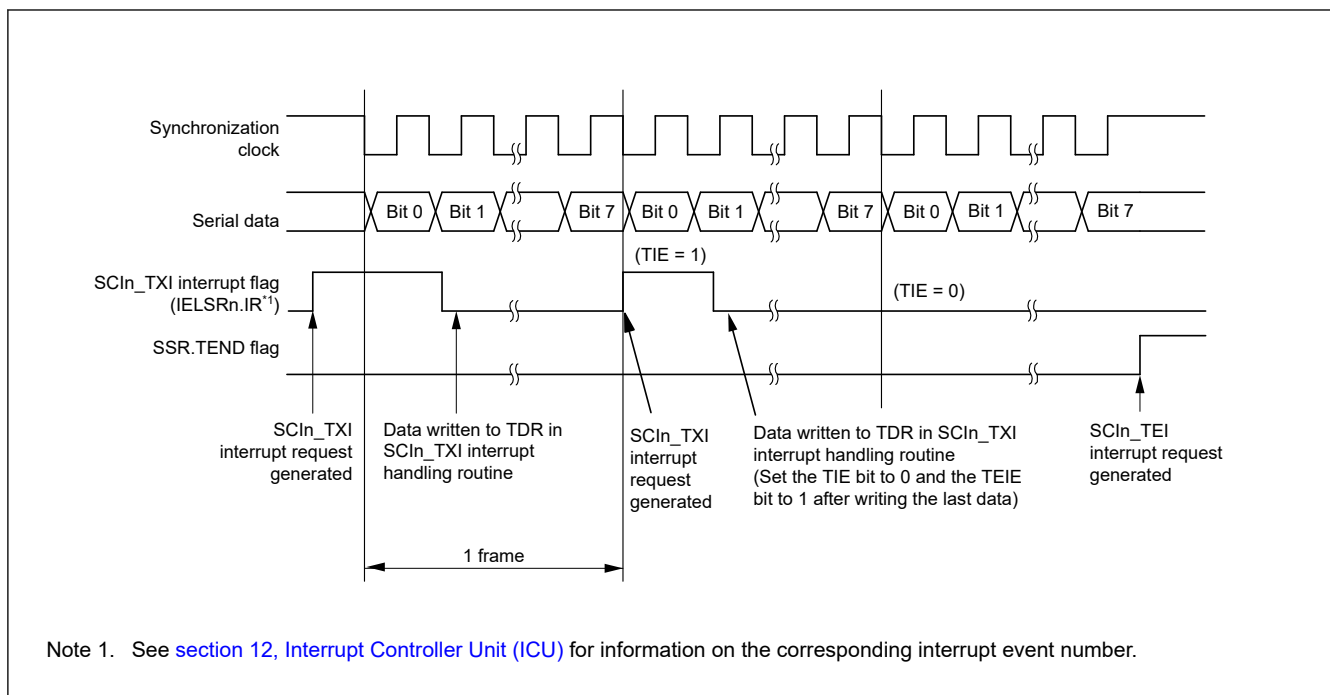


Figure 27.38 Example of serial data transmission in clock synchronous mode from the middle of transmission until transmission completion

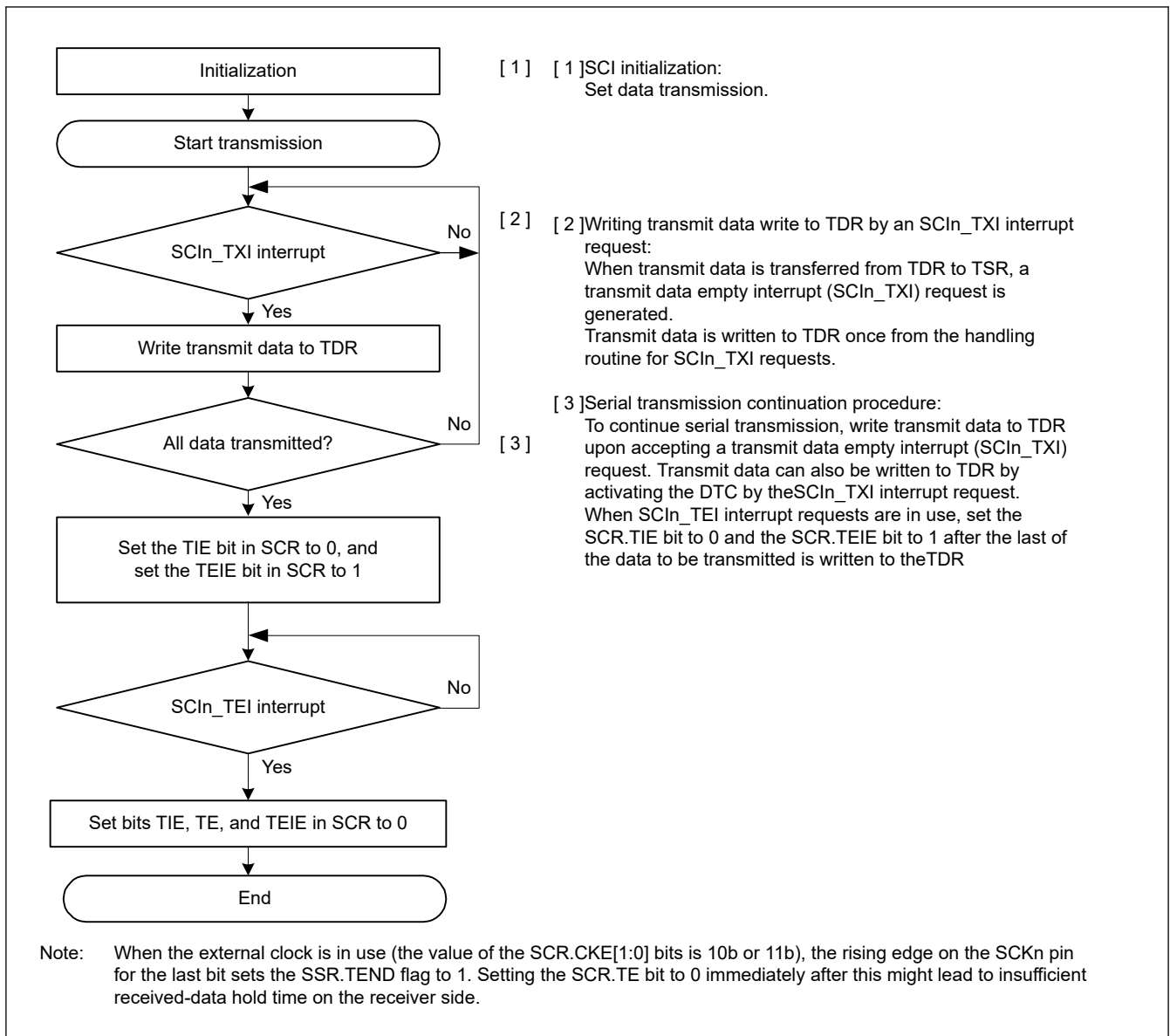


Figure 27.39 Example flow of serial transmission in clock synchronous mode with non-FIFO selected

(2) FIFO selected

Figure 27.40 shows an example of serial transmission in clock synchronous mode with FIFO selected.

In serial data transmission, the SCI operates as follows:

1. The SCI transfers data from the FTDRL^{*1} register to the TSR register when data is written to FTDRL^{*1} in the SCIn_TXI interrupt handling routine. The amount of data that can be written to FTDRL is 16 minus FDR.T[4:0] bytes. The SCIn_TXI interrupt request at the beginning of transmission is generated when the SCR.TE bit is set to 1 but only after the SCR.TIE bit is also set to 1 or when these two bits are set to 1 simultaneously by a single instruction.
2. After transferring data from FTDRL to TSR, the SCI starts transmission. When the amount of transmit data written in FTDRL is equal to or less than the specified transmit triggering number, the SSR_FIFO.TDFE is set to 1. When the SCR.TIE bit is set to 1, an SCIn_TXI interrupt request is generated. Continuous transmission is enabled by writing the next transmit data to FTDRL in the SCIn_TXI interrupt handling routine before transmission of the current transmit data has finished. When SCIn_TEI interrupt requests are in use, set the SCR.TIE bit to 0 and the SCR.TEIE bit to 1 after the last of the data to be transmitted is written to the FTDRL from the handling routine for SCIn_TXI requests.
3. 8-bit data is sent from the TXDn pin in synchronization with the output clock when the clock output mode is specified and in synchronization with the input clock when the use of an external clock is specified. Output of the clock signal is suspended until the input CTS signal is low when the SPMR.CTSE bit is 1.
4. The SCI checks whether non-transmitted data remains in FTDRL on output of the stop bit.

5. When FTDRL is updated, the next transmit data is transferred from FTDRL to TSR and serial transmission of the next frame starts.
6. If FTDRL is not updated, the SSR_FIFO.TEND flag is set to 1. The TXDn pin retains the output state of the last bit. If the SCR.TEIE bit is 1, an SCIn_TEI interrupt request is generated and the SCKn pin is held high.

Note 1. In clock synchronous mode, FTDRH is not used.

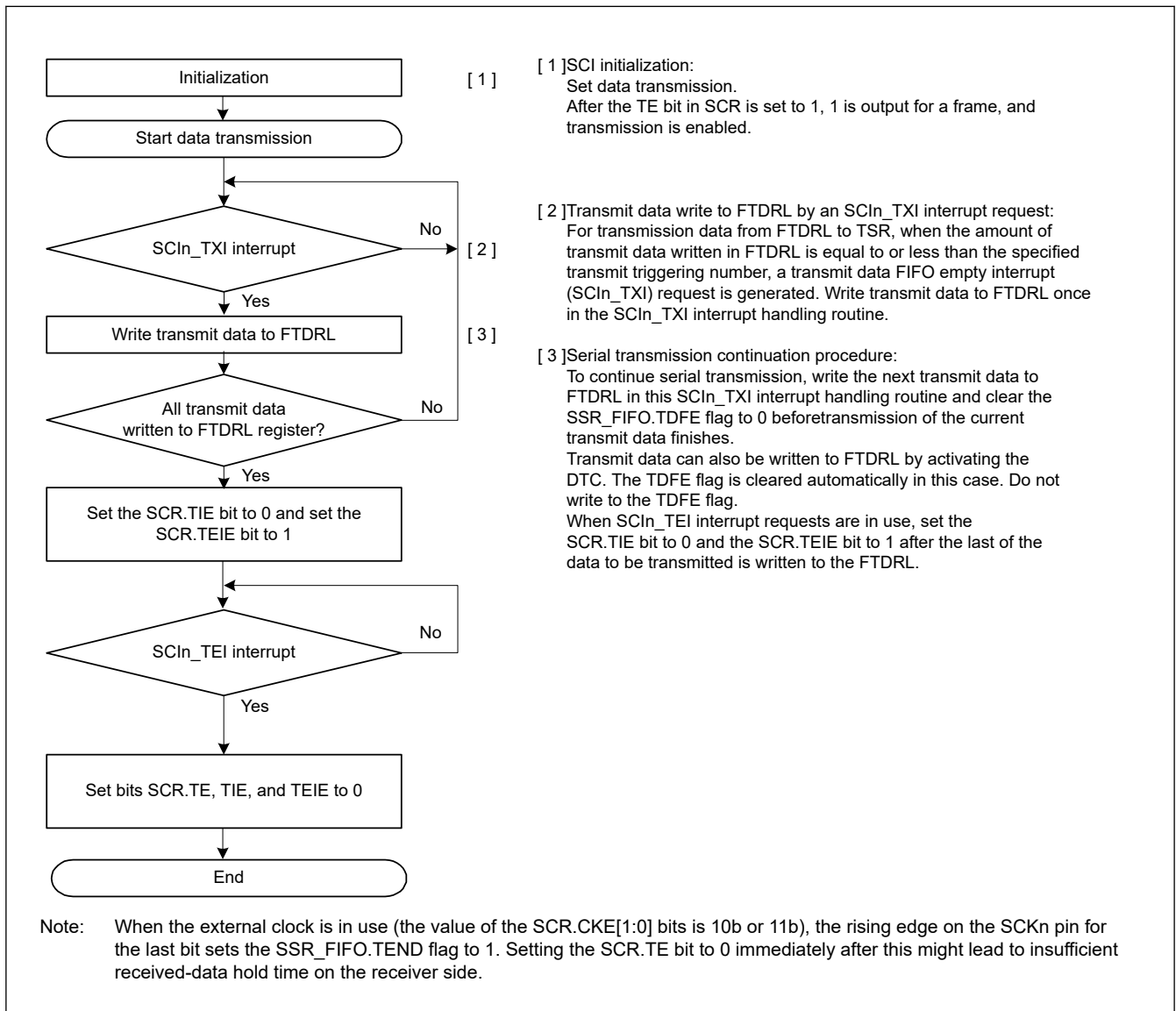


Figure 27.40 Example flow of serial transmission in clock synchronous mode with FIFO selected

27.5.5 Serial Data Reception in Clock Synchronous Mode

(1) Non-FIFO selected

Figure 27.41 and Figure 27.42 show examples of SCI operation for serial reception in clock synchronous mode.

In serial data reception, the SCI operates as follows:

1. When the value of the SCR.RE bit becomes 1, the CTSn_RTSn pin goes low.
2. The SCI performs internal initialization and starts receiving data in synchronization with a synchronization clock input or output, and stores the receive data in the RSR register.
3. If an overrun error occurs, the SSR.ORER flag is set to 1. If the SCR.RIE bit is 1, an SCIn_ERI interrupt request is generated. Receive data is not transferred to the RDR register.

4. When reception completes successfully, receive data is transferred to the RDR register. If the SCR.RIE bit is 1, an SCIn_RXI interrupt request is generated. Continuous reception is enabled by reading the received data transferred to the RDR register in the SCIn_RXI interrupt handling routine before reception of the next receive data completes. Reading the received data that is transferred to RDR causes the CTSn_RTSn pin to output low.

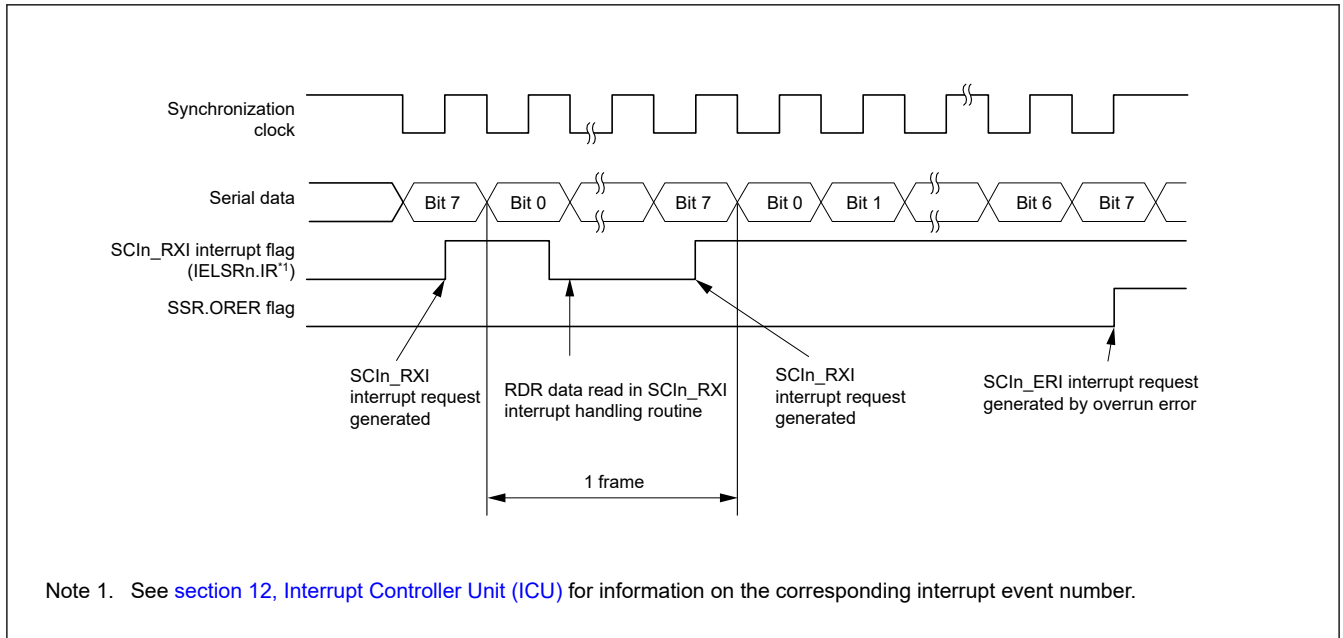


Figure 27.41 Example operation for serial reception in clock synchronous mode (1) when the RTS function is not used

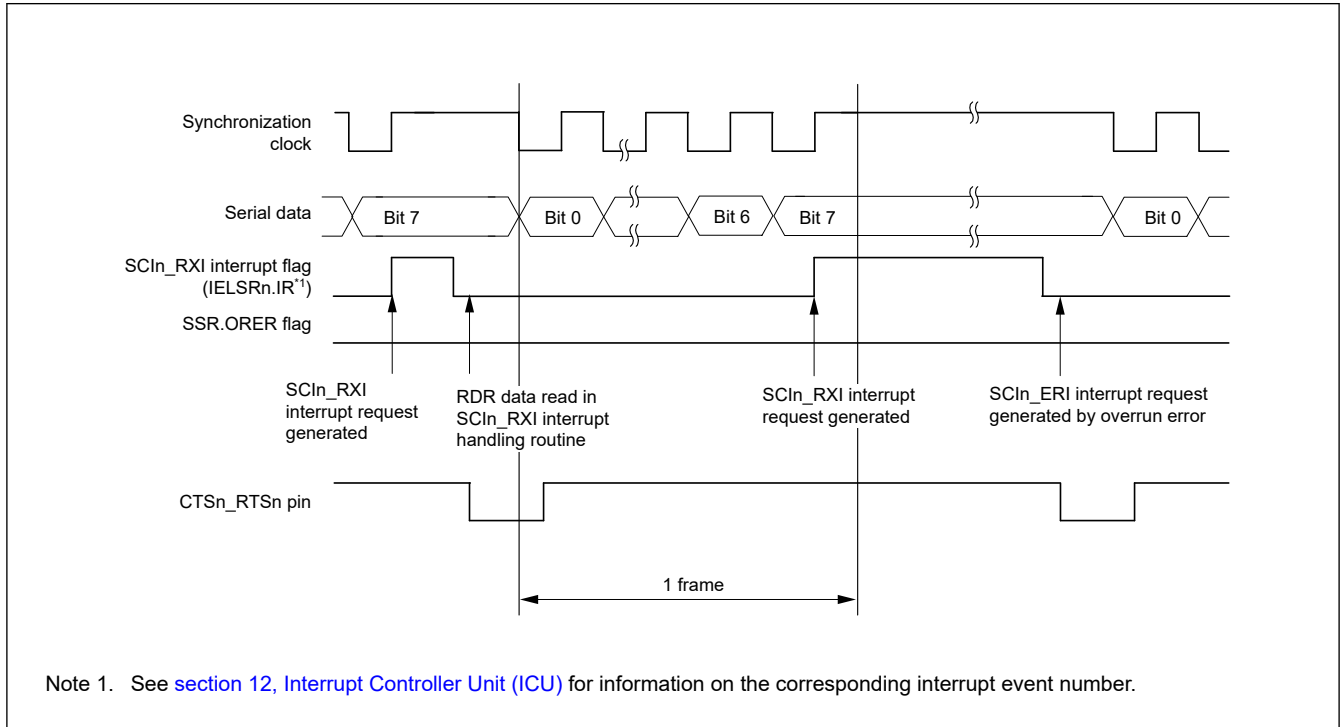


Figure 27.42 Example operation for serial reception in clock synchronous mode (2) when RTS function is used

Data transfer cannot resume while the receive error flag is 1. Therefore, clear the ORER, FER, and PER flags in the SSR register to 0 before resuming data reception. Additionally, always read the RDR register during overrun error processing. When a data reception is forced to terminate by a 0 write to the SCR.RE bit during operation, read the RDR register because received data that is not yet read might be left in the RDR register.

Figure 27.43 shows an example flow of serial data reception.

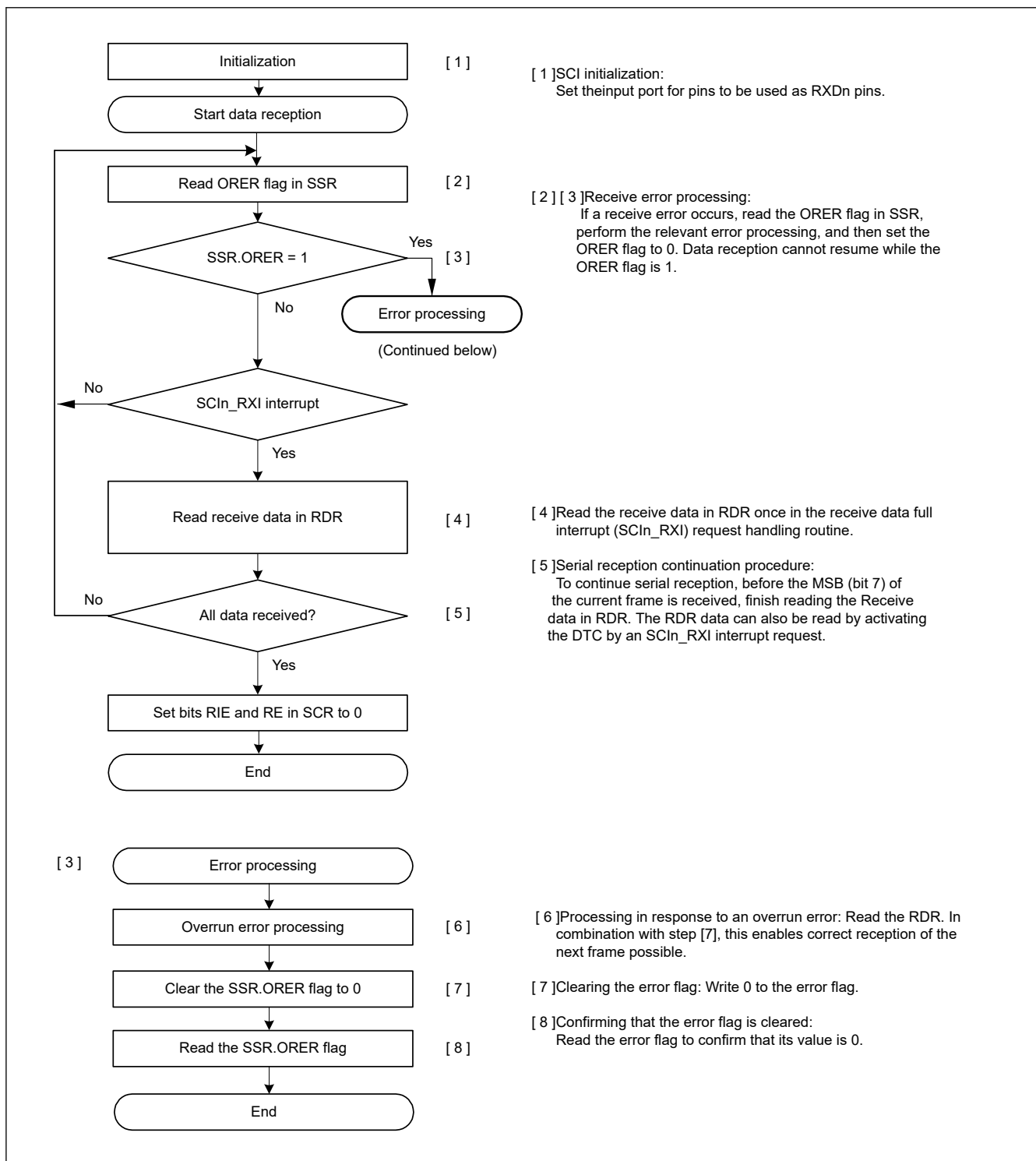


Figure 27.43 Example flow of serial reception in clock synchronous mode with non-FIFO selected

(2) FIFO selected

Figure 27.44 shows an example of serial reception in clock synchronous mode with FIFO selected.

In serial data reception, the SCI operates as follows:

1. When the value of the SCR.RE bit becomes 1, the CTSn_RTSn pin goes low.
2. The SCI performs internal initialization and starts receiving data in synchronization with a synchronization clock input or output, and stores the receive data in the RSR register.

3. If an overrun error occurs, the SSR_FIFO.ORER flag is set to 1. If the SCR.RIE bit is 1, an SCIn_ERI interrupt request is generated. Received data is not transferred to the FRDRL^{*1} register.
4. When data reception completes successfully, the receive data is transferred to the FRDRL^{*1} register. The RDF flag is set to 1 when the amount of the receive data stored in FRDRL is equal to or greater than the specified receive triggering number. If the SCR.RIE bit is 1, an SCIn_RXI interrupt request is generated. Continuous data reception is enabled by reading the receive data transferred to FRDRL^{*2} in the SCIn_RXI interrupt handling routine before an overrun error occurs. If the amount of received data that is transferred to FRDRL is less than the specified receive triggering number, the CTSn_RTSn pin goes low.

Note 1. In clock synchronous mode, FRDRH is not used.

Note 2. Read data in order from FRDRH to FRDRL when RDF and ORER are read with receive data.

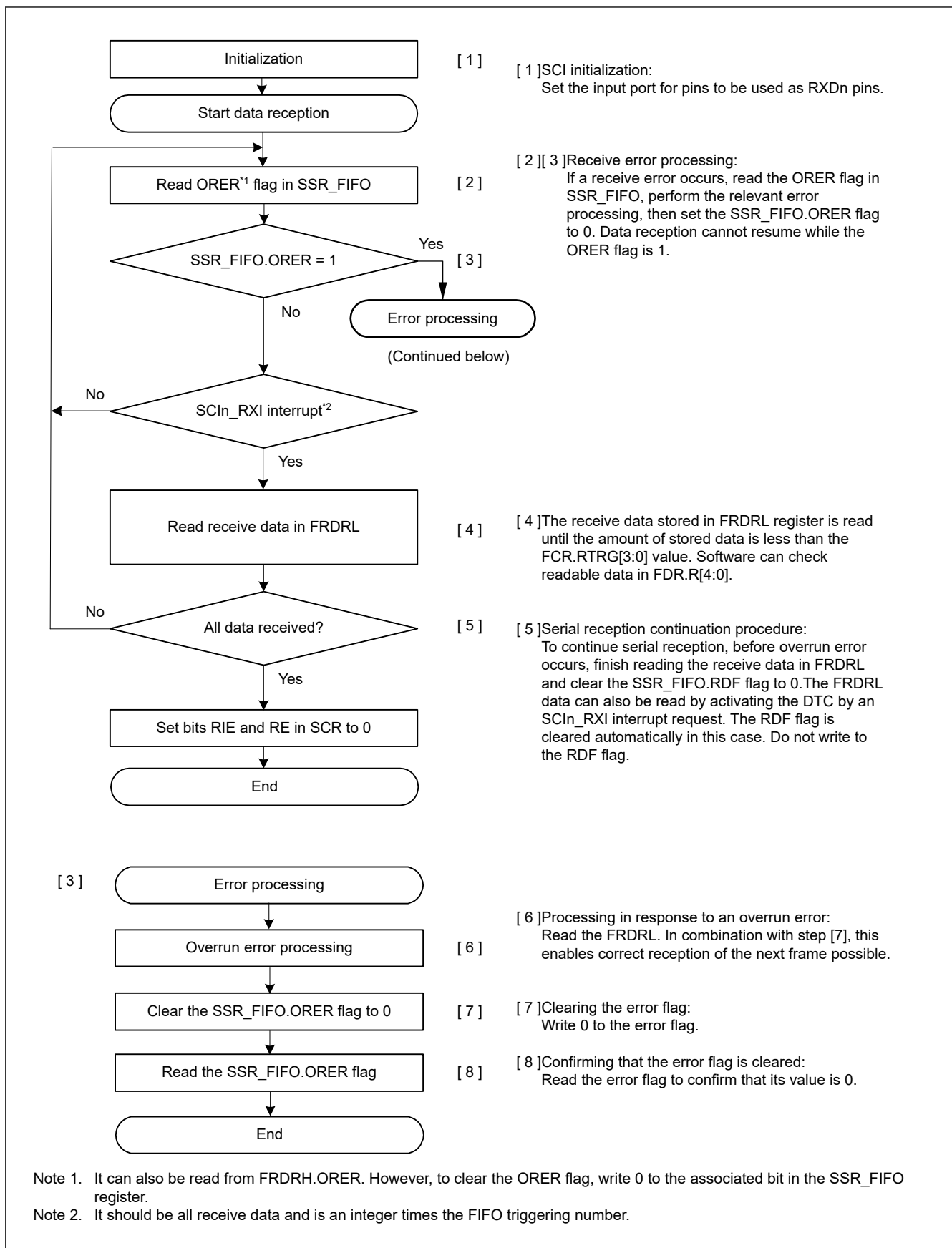


Figure 27.44 Example flow of serial reception in clock synchronous mode with FIFO selected

27.5.6 Simultaneous Serial Data Transmission and Reception in Clock Synchronous Mode

(1) Non-FIFO selected

Figure 27.45 shows an example flow of simultaneous serial transmit and receive operations in clock synchronous mode. After initializing the SCI, use the following procedure for simultaneous serial data transmit and receive operations.

To switch from transmit mode to simultaneous transmit and receive mode:

1. Check that the SCI completes the data transmission by verifying that the SSR.TEND flag is set to 1.
2. Initialize the SCR register, and then set the TIE, RIE, TE, and RE bits in the SCR register to 1 simultaneously by a single instruction.

To switch from receive mode to simultaneous transmit and receive mode:

1. Check that the SCI completes the data reception.
2. Set the RIE and RE bits to 0, and then check that the receive error flag ORER in the SSR register is 0.
3. Set the TIE, RIE, TE, and RE bits in the SCR register to 1 simultaneously by a single instruction.

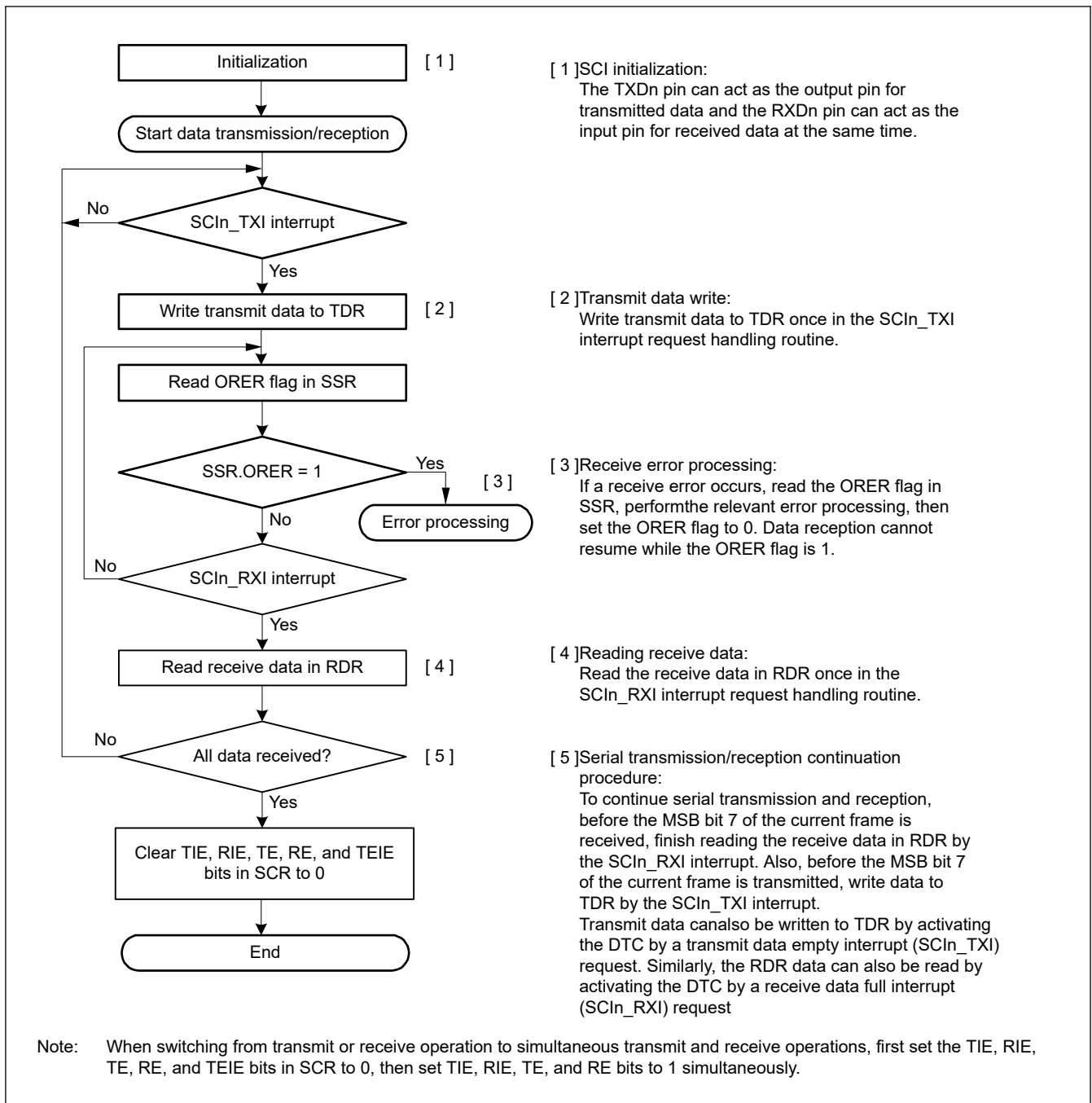


Figure 27.45 Example flow of simultaneous serial transmission and reception in clock synchronous mode with non-FIFO selected

(2) FIFO selected

Figure 27.46 shows an example flow of simultaneous serial transmit and receive operations in clock synchronous mode with FIFO selected.

After initializing the SCI, use the following procedure for simultaneous serial data transmit and receive operations.

To switch from transmit mode to simultaneous transmit and receive mode:

1. Check that the SCI completes the transmission by verifying that the SSR_FIFO.TEND flag is set to 1.
2. Initialize the SCR register, then set the TIE, RIE, TE, and RE bits in the SCR register to 1 simultaneously by a single instruction.

To switch from receive mode to simultaneous transmit and receive mode:

1. Check that the SCI completes the reception.

2. Set the RIE and RE bits to 0.
3. Check that the receive error flags ORER in the SSR_FIFO register are 0, and then set the TIE, RIE, TE, and RE bits in the SCR register to 1 simultaneously by a single instruction.

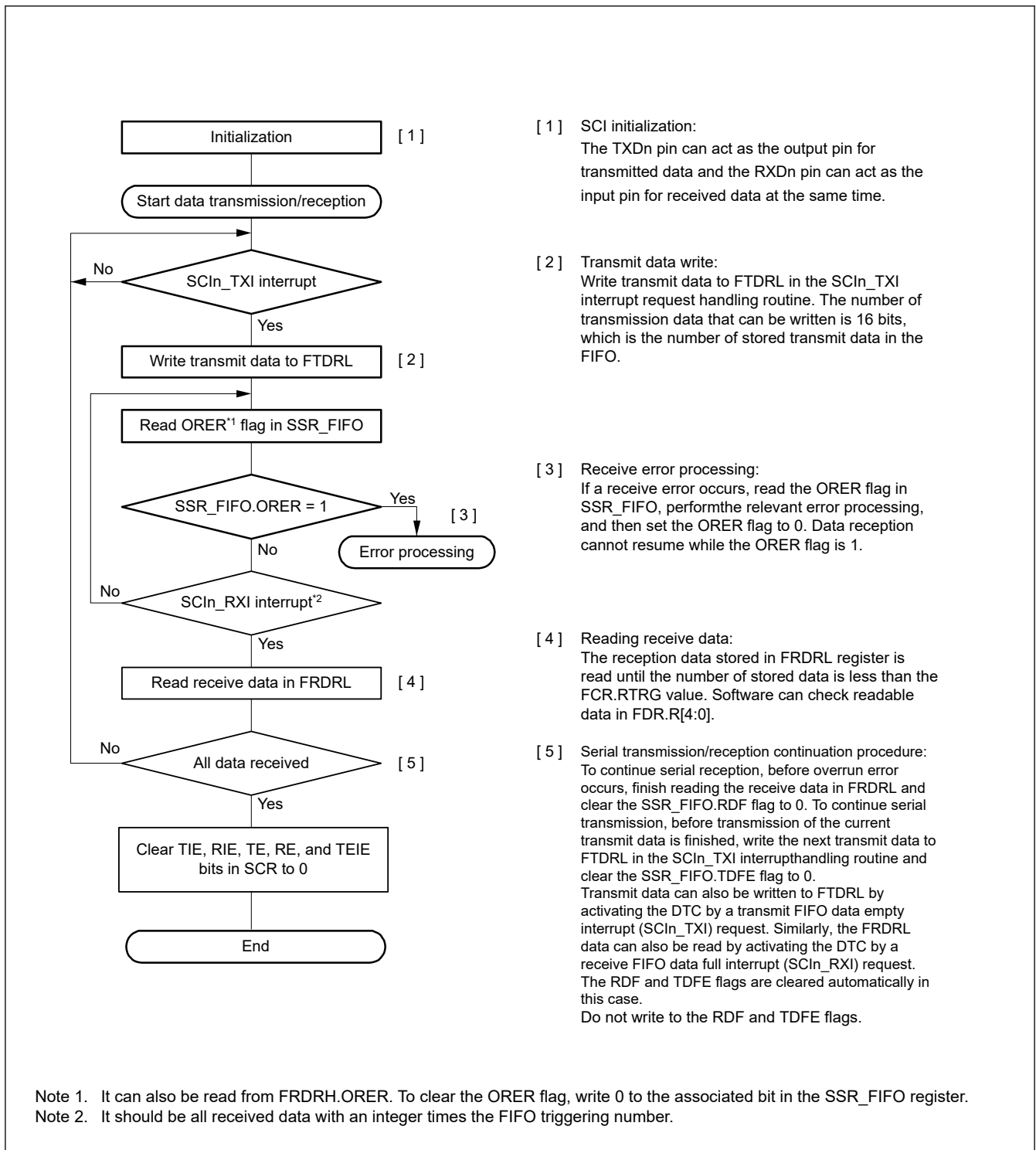


Figure 27.46 Example flow of simultaneous serial transmission and reception in clock synchronous mode with FIFO selected

27.6 Operation in Smart Card Interface Mode

The SCI supports smart card (IC card) interfaces conforming to ISO/IEC 7816-3 (standard for Identification Cards), as an extended function of the SCI.

Smart card interface mode can be selected using the appropriate register.

27.6.1 Example Connection

Figure 27.47 shows an example connection between a smart card (IC card) and the MCU. As shown in Figure 27.47, because the MCU communicates with an IC card using a single transmission line, interconnect the TXDn and RXDn pins and pull up the data transmission line to VCC using a resistor.

Setting the SCR_SMCI.TE and SCR_SMCI.RE bits to 1 with an IC card disconnected enables closed-loop transmission or reception, allowing self-diagnosis. To supply an IC card with the clock pulses generated by the SCI, input the SCKn pin output to the CLK pin of an IC card.

An output port of the MCU can be used to output a reset signal.

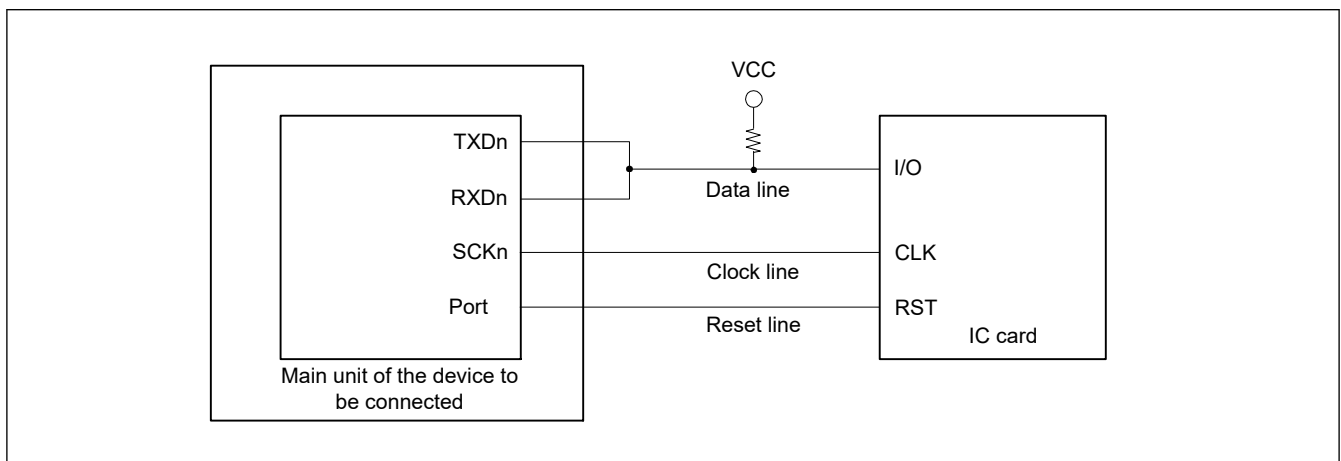


Figure 27.47 Example connection with a smart card (IC card)

27.6.2 Data Format (Except in Block Transfer Mode)

Figure 27.48 shows the data transfer formats in smart card interface mode:

- One frame consists of 8-bit data and a parity bit in asynchronous mode.
- During transmission, at least 2 etu (elementary time unit – the time required for transferring 1 bit) is set as a guard time from the end of the parity bit until the start of the next frame.
- If a parity error is detected during reception, a low error signal is output for 1 etu after 10.5 etu elapse from the start bit.
- If an error signal is sampled during transmission, the same data is automatically retransmitted after at least 2 etu.

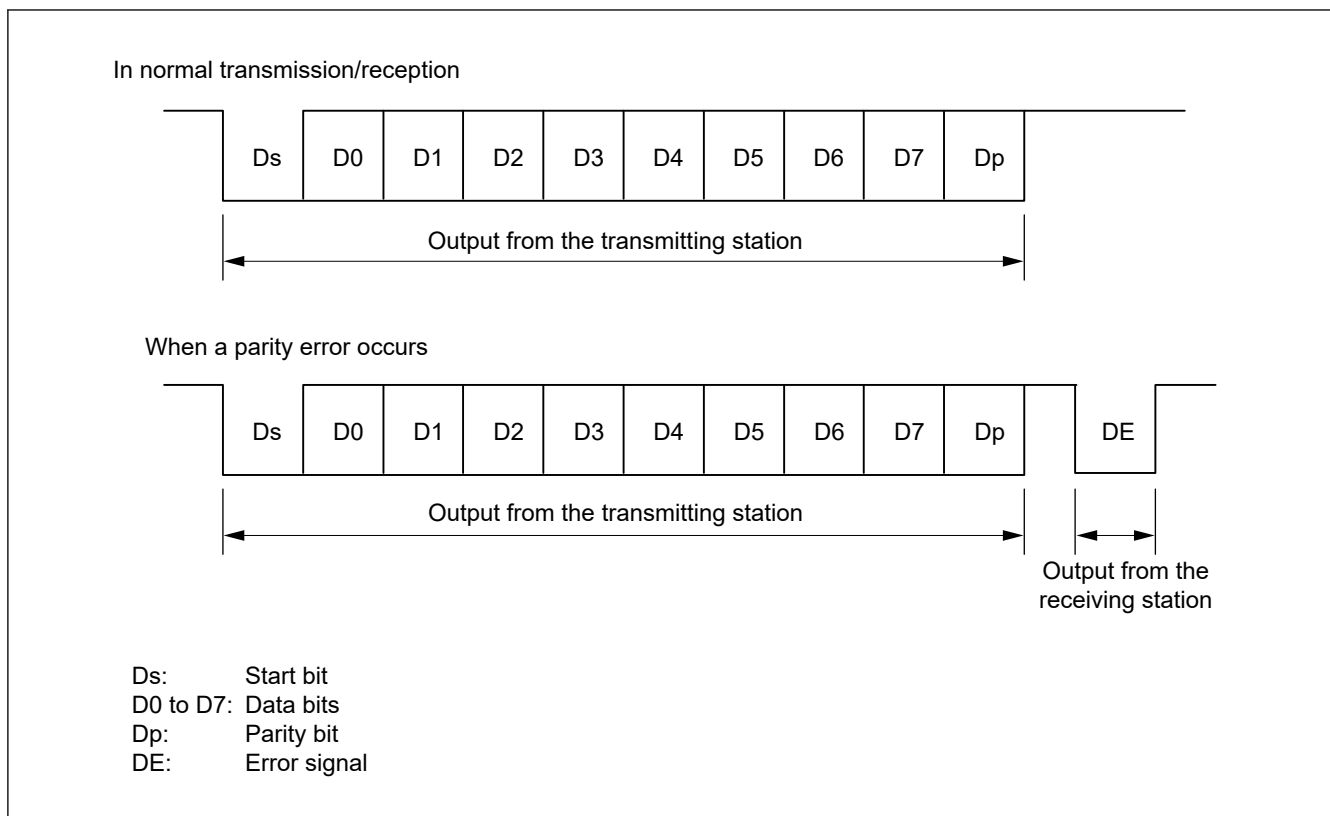


Figure 27.48 Data formats in smart card interface mode

For communications with IC cards of the direct convention type and inverse convention type, follow the procedures in this section.

(1) Direct Convention Type

For the direct convention type, logic levels 1 and 0 indicate the Z and A states, respectively, and data is transferred with LSB-first for the start character, as shown in Figure 27.49. Therefore, the data in the start character in the figure is 0x3B.

When using the direct convention type, write 0 to both the SCMR.SDIR and SCMR.SINV bits. Write 0 to the SMR_SMCI.PM bit to use even parity, which is prescribed by the smart card standard.

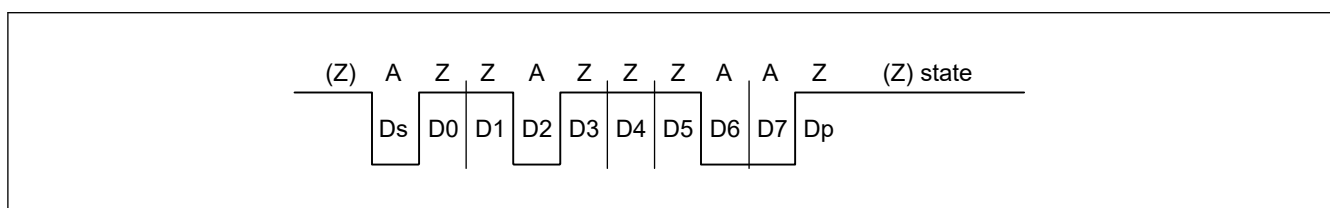


Figure 27.49 Direct convention with SDIR in SCMR = 0, SINV in SCMR = 0, and PM in SMR_SMCI = 0

(2) Inverse Convention Type

For the inverse convention type, logic levels 1 and 0 indicate the A and Z states, respectively, and data is transferred with MSB-first for the start character, as shown in Figure 27.50. Therefore, the data in the start character in the figure is 0x3F.

When using the inverse convention type, write 1 to both the SCMR.SDIR and SCMR.SINV bits. The parity bit is logic level 0 to produce even parity, which is prescribed by the smart card standard, and corresponds to the Z state. Because the SINV bit of the MCU only inverts data bits D7 to D0, write 1 to the PM bit in SMR_SMCI to invert the parity bit for both transmission and reception.

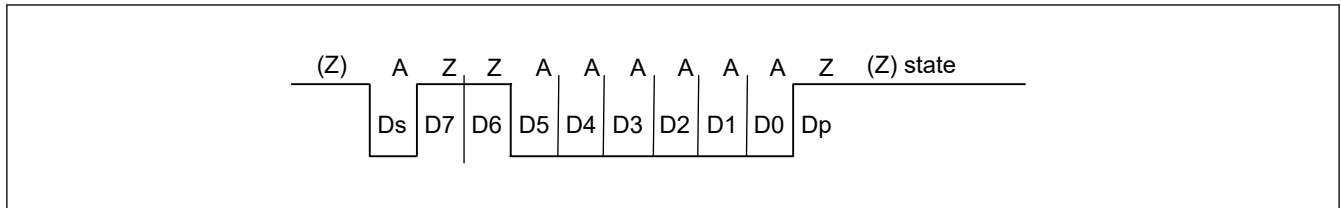


Figure 27.50 Inverse convention with SDIR in SCMR = 1, SINV in SCMR = 1, and PM in SMR_SMCI = 1

27.6.3 Block Transfer Mode

Block transfer mode differs from normal smart card interface mode as follows:

- Even if a parity error is detected during reception, no error signal is output. Because the PER flag in SSR_SMCI is set by error detection, clear the PER flag before receiving the parity bit of the next frame.
- During transmission, at least 1 etu is set as a guard time from the end of the parity bit until the start of the next frame
- Because the same data is not retransmitted, the TEND flag in SSR_SMCI is set to 11.5 etu after transmission starts
- In block transfer mode, the ERS flag in SSR_SMCI indicates the error signal status as in normal smart card interface mode, but the flag is read as 0 because no error signal is transferred

27.6.4 Receive Data Sampling Timing and Reception Margin

Only the internal clock generated by the on-chip baud rate generator can be used as a transfer clock in smart card interface mode.

In this mode, the SCI can operate on a base clock with a frequency of 32, 64, 372, 256, 93, 128, 186, or 512 times the bit rate set up in the SCMR.BCP2 and the SMR_SMCI.BCP[1:0] bits. The frequency is always 16 times the bit rate in normal asynchronous mode.

For data reception, the falling edge of the start bit is sampled with the base clock to perform internal synchronization.

Receive data is sampled on the 16th, 32nd, 186th, 128th, 46th, 64th, 93rd, and 256th rising edges of the base clock so that it can be latched at the middle of each bit as shown in Figure 27.51. The reception margin is determined by the following formula:

$$M = \left| \left(0.5 - \frac{1}{2N} \right) - (L - 0.5)F - \frac{|D - 0.5|}{N}(1 + F) \right| \times 100 \text{ [%]}$$

M: Reception margin (%)

N: Ratio of bit rate to clock (N = 32, 64, 372, 256)

D: Duty cycle of clock (D = 0 to 1.0)

L: Frame length (L = 10)

F: Absolute value of clock frequency deviation

Assuming values of F = 0, D = 0.5, and N = 372 in the specified formula, the reception margin is determined using the following formula:

$$M = \{0.5 - 1/(2 \times 372)\} \times 100 \text{ [%]} = 49.866 \text{ %}$$

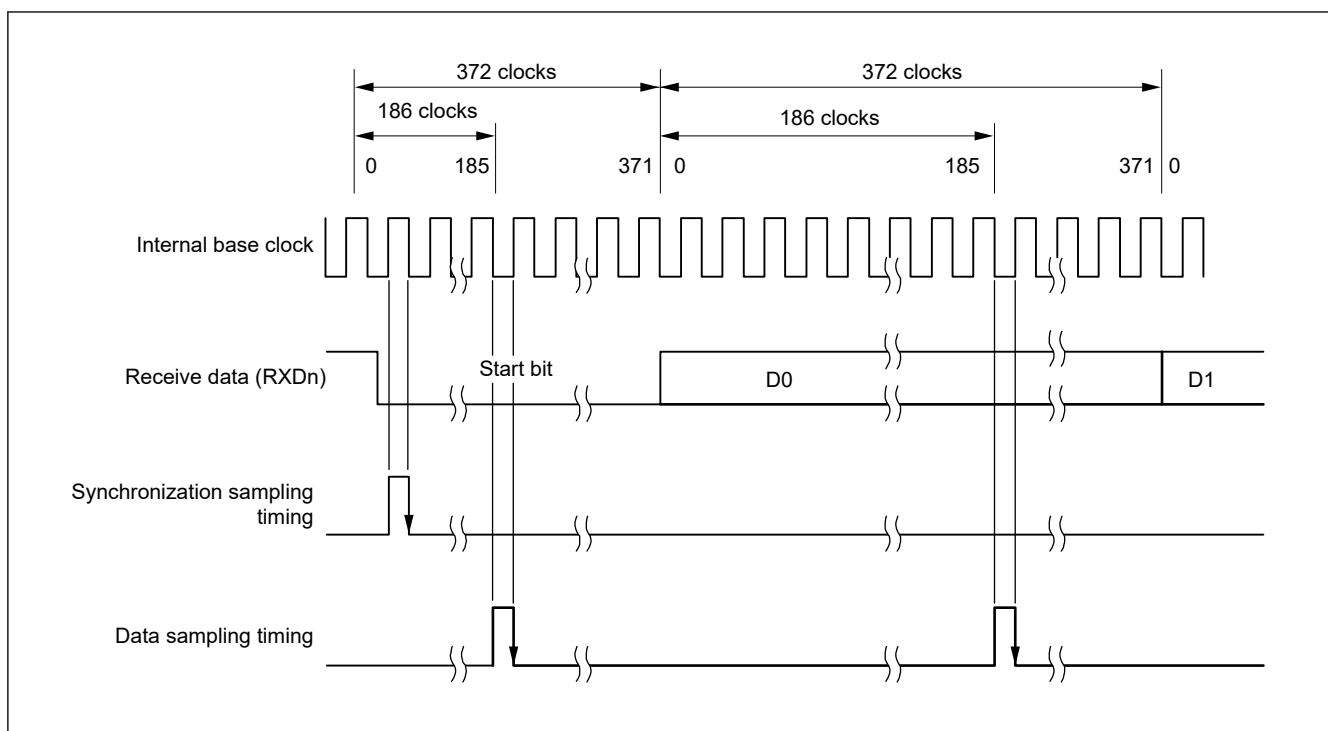


Figure 27.51 Receive data sampling timing in smart card interface mode when the clock frequency is 372 times the bit rate

27.6.5 SCI Initialization (Smart Card Interface Mode)

Before transmitting and receiving data, write the initial value 0x00 in the SCR_SMCI register and initialize the SCI following the example flow shown in [Table 27.30](#).

Always set the initial value in the TIE, RIE, TE, RE, TEIE bits in the SCR_SMCI register before switching from transmission to reception mode or from reception to transmission mode. When SCR_SMCI.RE is set to 0, the RDR register is not initialized.

To change from reception mode to transmission mode, first check that reception has completed, then initialize the SCI. At the end of initialization, set SCR_SMCI.TE = 1 and SCR_SMCI.RE = 0. Reception completion can be verified by reading the SCIn_RXI request, ORER, or PER flag in SSR_SMCI.

To change transmission mode to reception mode, first check that transmission has completed, then initialize the SCI. At the end of initialization, set SCR_SMCI.TE = 0 and SCR_SMCI.RE = 1. Transmission completion can be verified by reading the TEND flag in SSR_SMCI.

Table 27.30 Example flow of SCI initialization in smart card interface mode (1 of 2)

No.	Step name	Description
1	Start initialization	—
2	Set SCR_SMCI.TIE, RIE, TE, RE, TEIE, and CKE[1:0] to 0	—
3	Set I/O port functions	Set the I/O ports so that the necessary pin functions can be enabled among the TXDn, RXDn, and SCKn pins.
4	Set SSR_SMCI.ORER, ERS, PER to 0	Set the SSR_SMCI.ORER, ERS, and PER flags in to 0. After reading the SSR_SMCI register, write 0 to the target flags.
5	Set the SIMR1.IICM bit to 0 Set the SPMR.CKPH and CKPOL bits to 0	Set the SIMR1.IICM bit to 0, and set the SPMR.CKPH and CKPOL bits to 0. Skip this step when the initial values are not changed.
6	Set SMR_SMCI.GM, BLK, PM, BCP[1:0], CKS[1:0], and set SMR_SMCI.PE to 1	Set the operation mode and the transmission or reception format in SMR_SMCI.

Table 27.30 Example flow of SCI initialization in smart card interface mode (2 of 2)

No.	Step name	Description
7	Set SCMR.BCP2, SDIR, SINV Set SCMR.SMIF to 1	Set the transmission or reception format in SCMR.
8	Set SEMR.BRME and SEMR.RXDESEL to 0	Set SEMR.BRME and SEMR.RXDESEL to 0.
9	Set a value in BRR	Write the value for the bit rate in BRR.
10	Set a value in the MDDR	Write the value obtained by correcting a bit rate error in the MDDR register. This step is not required if the bit rate adjustment function is not used.
11	Set a value in SCR_SMCI.CKE [1:0]	Set the SCR_SMCI.CKE[1:0] bits. When the CKE[0] bit is set to 0, the clock is output from the SCKn pin.
12	Set SCR_SMCI.TE or RE to 1, and set SCR_SMCI.TIE, RIE	Set the TE or RE bit in SCR_SMCI to 1, then set the TIE and RIE bits in SCR_SMCI. Do not simultaneously set the TE and RE bits to 1 if self-diagnosis is not used.
13	Initialization completed	—

27.6.6 Serial Data Transmission (Except in Block Transfer Mode)

Serial data transmission in smart card interface mode (except in block transfer mode) is different from that in non-smart card interface mode, in that an error signal is sampled and data can be retransmitted in smart card mode. [Figure 27.52](#) shows the data retransfer operation during transmission.

1. When an error signal from the receiver end is sampled after 1-frame data is transmitted, the SSR_SMCI.ERS flag is set to 1. If the SCR_SMCI.RIE bit is 1, an SCIn_ERI interrupt request is generated. Clear the ERS flag to 0 before the next parity bit is sampled.
2. For a frame in which an error signal is received, the SSR_SMCI.TEND flag is not set. Data is retransferred from TDR to TSR, allowing automatic data retransmission.
3. If no error signal is returned from the receiver, the ERS flag is not set to 1.
4. In this case, the SCI determines that transmission of 1-frame data, including the retransfer, is complete, and the TEND flag is set. If the SCR_SMCI.TIE bit is 1, an SCIn_TXI interrupt request is generated. Write transmit data to the TDR to start transmission of the next data.

[Figure 27.54](#) shows an example flow of serial transmission. All the processing steps are automatically performed using an SCIn_TXI interrupt request to activate the DTC.

When the SSR_SMCI.TEND flag is set to 1 in transmission and when the SCR_SMCI.TIE bit is 1, an SCIn_TXI interrupt request is generated.

The DTC is activated by an SCIn_TXI interrupt request if the SCIn_TXI interrupt request is previously specified as a source of DTC activation, allowing the transfer of transmit data. The TEND flag is automatically set to 0 when the DTC transfers the data.

If an error occurs, the SCI automatically retransmits the same data. During this retransmission, the TEND flag is kept at 0 and the DTC is not activated. Therefore, the SCI and DTC automatically transmit the specified number of bytes, including retransmission when an error occurs. Because the ERS flag is not automatically cleared, set the RIE bit to 1 before enabling an SCIn_ERI interrupt request to be generated if an error occurs, and clear the ERS flag to 0.

When transmitting or receiving data using the DTC, always enable the DTC before making the SCI settings.

For DTC settings, see [section 15, Data Transfer Controller \(DTC\)](#).

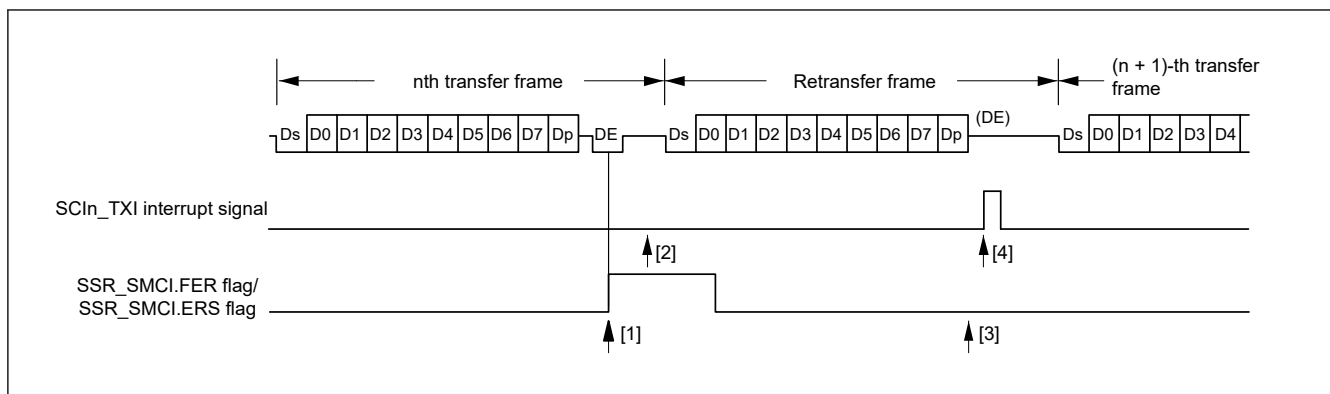


Figure 27.52 Data retransfer operation in smart card interface transmission mode

The SSR_SMCI.TEND flag is set at different timings depending on the SMR_SMCI.GM bit setting. [Figure 27.53](#) shows the TEND flag generation timing.

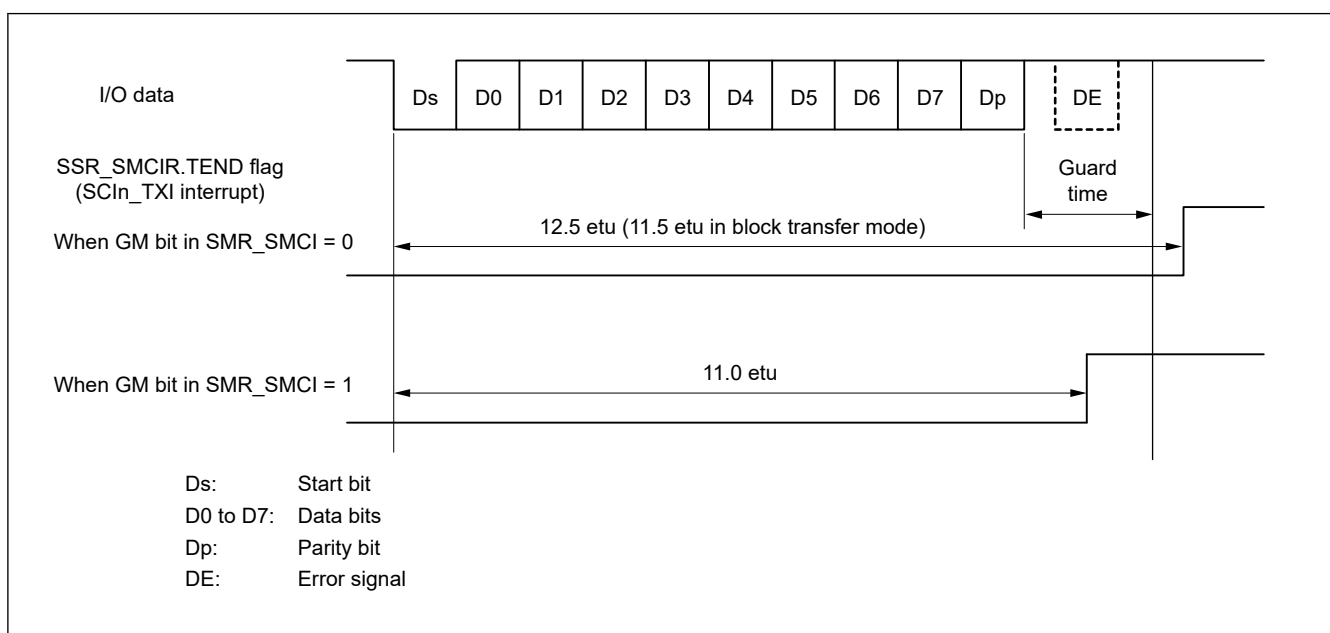


Figure 27.53 SSR.TEND flag generation timing during transmission

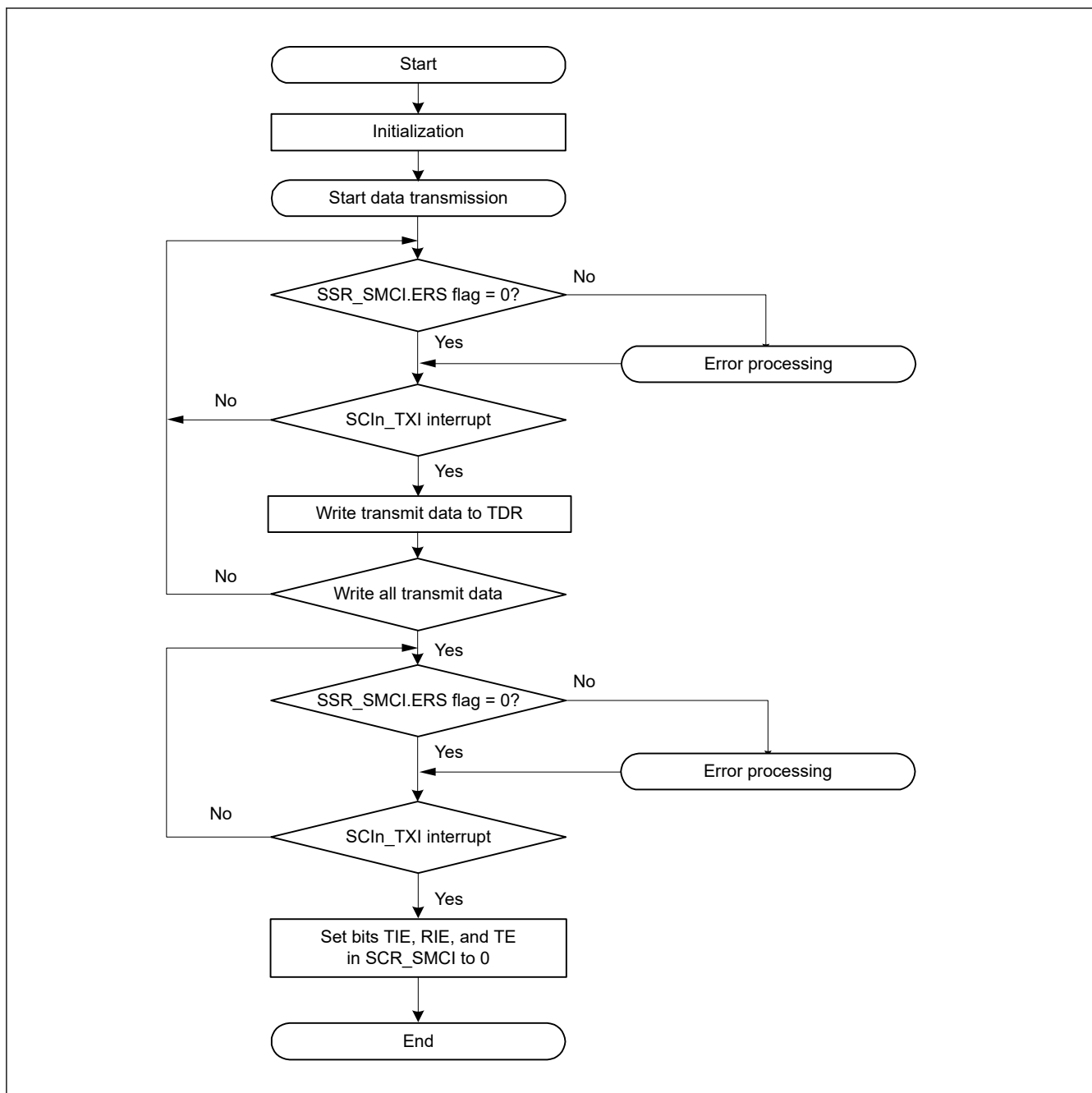


Figure 27.54 Example flow of smart card interface transmission

27.6.7 Serial Data Reception (Except in Block Transfer Mode)

Serial data reception in smart card interface mode is similar to that in non-smart card interface mode. [Figure 27.55](#) shows the data retransfer operation in reception mode.

1. If a parity error is detected in the receive data, the SSR_SMCI.PER flag is set to 1. When the SCR_SMCI.RIE bit is 1, an SCIn_ERI interrupt request is generated. Clear the PER flag to 0 before the next parity bit is sampled.
2. For a frame in which a parity error is detected, no SCIn_RXI interrupt is generated.
3. When no parity error is detected, the SCR_SMCI.PER flag is not set to 1.
4. In this case, data is determined to be received successfully. When the SCR_SMCI.RIE bit is 1, an SCIn_RXI interrupt request is generated.

[Figure 27.56](#) shows an example flow of serial data reception. All the processing steps are automatically performed using an SCIn_RXI interrupt request to activate the DTC.

In reception, setting the RIE bit to 1 allows an SCIn_RXI interrupt request to be generated. The DTC is activated by an SCIn_RXI interrupt request if the SCIn_RXI interrupt request is previously specified as a source of DTC activation, allowing the transfer of receive data.

If an error occurs during reception and either the ORER or PER flag in SSR_SMCI is set to 1, a receive error interrupt (SCIn_ERI) request is generated. Clear the error flag after the error occurrence. If an error occurs, the DTC is not activated and receive data is skipped. Therefore, the number of bytes of receive data specified in the DTC is transferred.

If a parity error occurs and the PER flag is set to 1 during reception, the receive data is transferred to RDR, allowing the data to be read.

When a reception is forced to terminate by setting SCR_SMCI.RE to 0 during operation, read the RDR register because the received data that is not yet read might be left in the RDR.

Note: For operations in block transfer mode, see [section 27.3.9. Serial Data Reception in Asynchronous Mode](#).

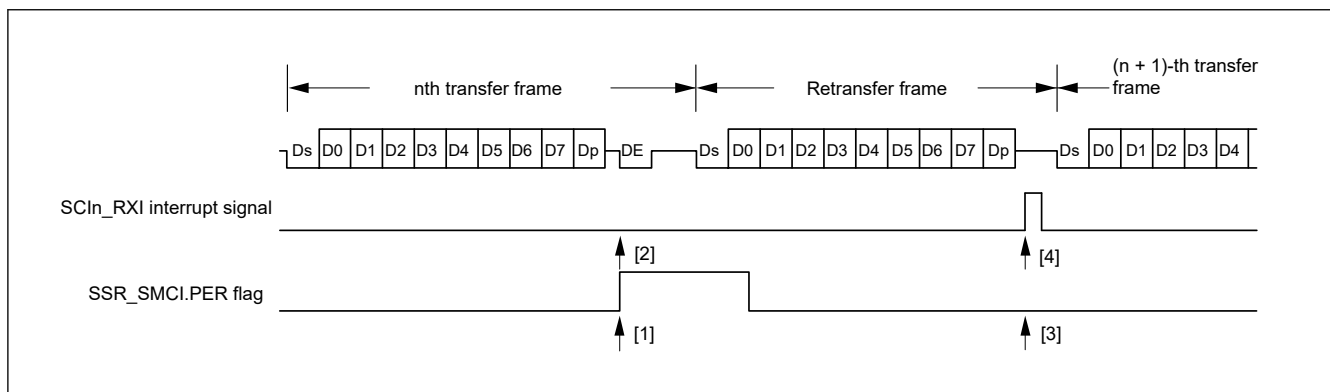


Figure 27.55 Data retransfer operation in smart card interface reception mode

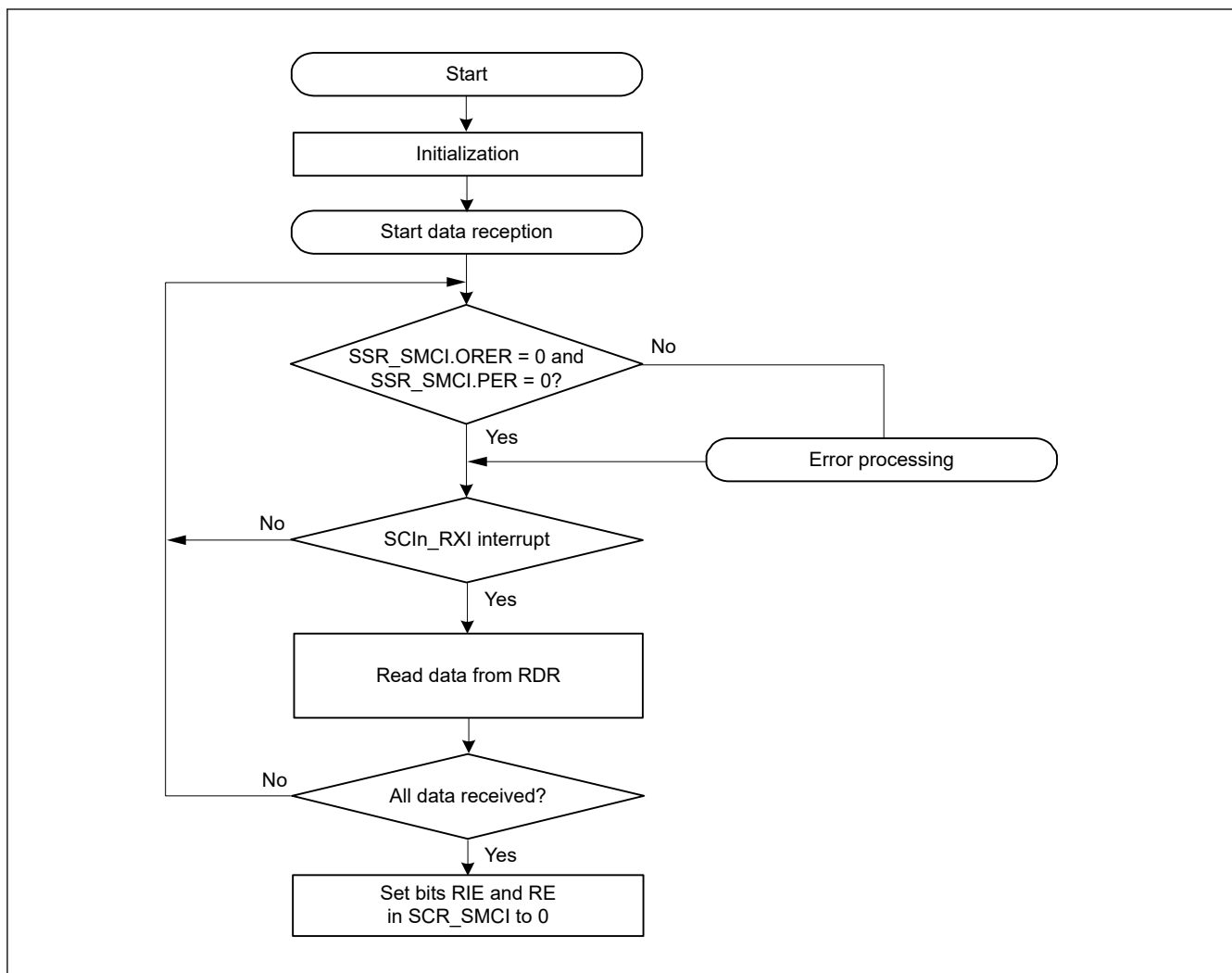


Figure 27.56 Example flow of smart card interface reception

27.6.8 Clock Output Control

When the GM bit in SMR_SMCI is set to 1, the clock output can be controlled by the CKE[1:0] bits in SCR_SMCI. For details on the CKE[1:0] bits, see [section 27.2.12. SCR_SMCI : Serial Control Register for Smart Card Interface Mode \(SCMR.SMIF = 1\)](#). When setting the clock output, the base clock described in [section 27.6.4. Receive Data Sampling Timing and Reception Margin](#) is applied.

[Figure 27.57](#) shows an example timing for the clock output control when the CKE[1] bit in SCR_SMCI is set to 0 and the CKE[0] bit in SCR_SMCI is controlled.

When the GM bit in SMR_SMCI is 0, output control by the CKE[0] bit in SCR_SMCI is immediately reflected on the SCKn pin, so there is a possibility that pulses with an unintended width may be output from the SCKn pin.

When the GM bit in SMR_SMCI is 1, the clock with the same pulse width as the base clock is output even if the CKE[0] bit in SCR_SMCI is changed.

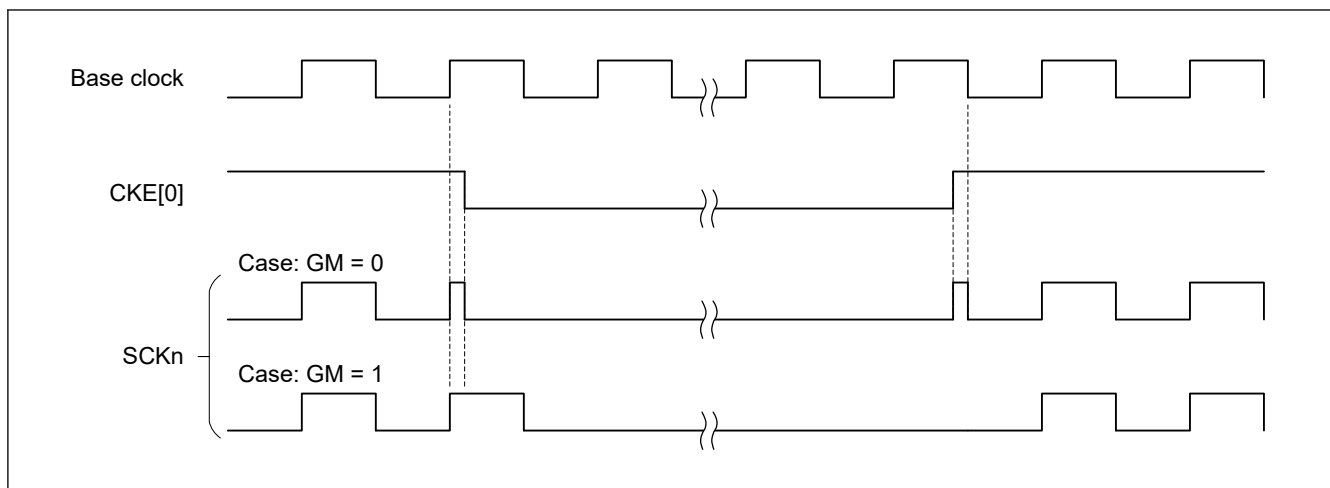
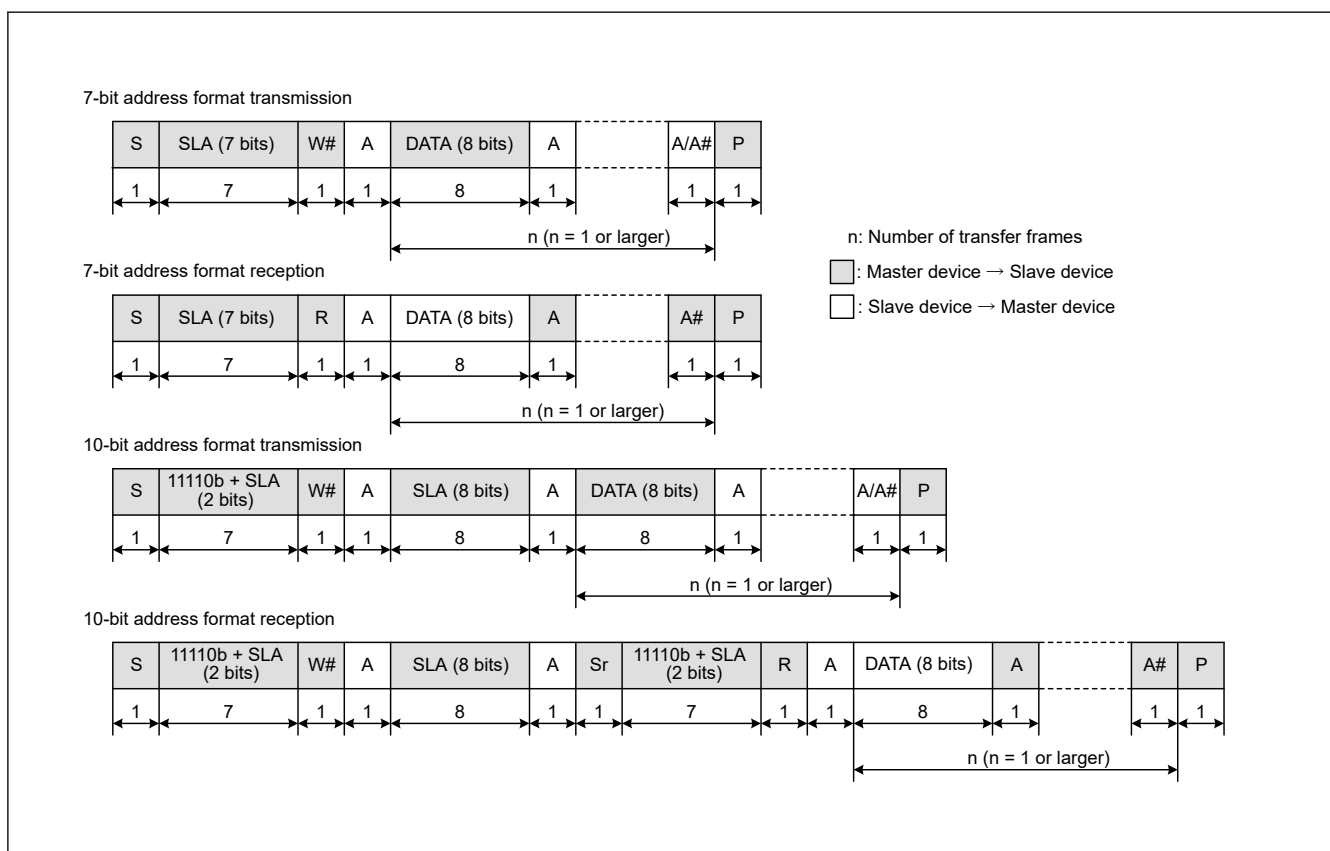


Figure 27.57 Clock Output timing

27.7 Operation in Simple IIC Mode

Simple IIC mode format is composed of 8 data bits and an acknowledge bit. By continuing into a slave-address frame after a start condition or restart condition, a master device can specify a slave device as the partner for communications. The currently specified slave device remains valid until a new slave device is specified or a stop condition is satisfied. The 8 data bits in all frames are transmitted in order from the MSB.

The I²C bus format and timing of the I²C bus are shown in Figure 27.58 and Figure 27.59.

Figure 27.58 I²C bus format

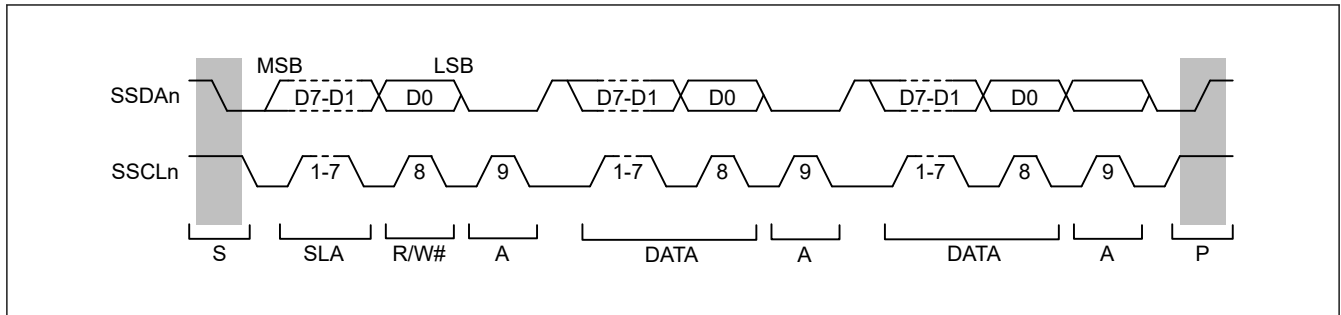


Figure 27.59 I²C bus timing when SLA is 7 bits

- S: Indicates a start condition, when the master device changes the level on the SDAn line from high to low while the SCLn line is high
- SLA: Indicates a slave address, by which the master device selects a slave device
- R/W#: Indicates the direction of transfer (reception or transmission). The value 1 indicates transfer from the slave device to the master device and 0 indicates transfer from the master device to the slave device.
- A/A#: Indicates an acknowledge bit. This is returned by the slave device for master transmission and by the master device for master reception. Return low indicates ACK and return high indicates NACK.
- Sr: Indicates a restart condition, when the master device changes the level on the SDAn line from high to low while the SCLn line is high and after the setup time elapses
- DATA: Indicates the data being received or transmitted
- P: Indicates a stop condition, when the master device changes the level on the SDAn line from low to high while the SCLn line is high

27.7.1 Generation of Start, Restart, and Stop Conditions

Writing 1 to the SIMR3.IICSTAREQ bit causes the generation of a start condition. The generation of a start condition proceeds through the following operations:

- The level on the SDAn line falls (from the high level to the low level) and the SCLn line is kept in the released state
- The hold time for the start condition is set as half of a bit period at the bit rate determined by the BRR setting
- The level on the SCLn line falls (from the high level to the low level), the IICSTAREQ bit in SIMR3 is set to 0, and a start-condition generated interrupt is output

Writing 1 to the IICRSTAREQ bit in SIMR3 causes the generation of a restart condition. The generation of a restart condition proceeds through the following operations:

- The SDAn line is released and the SCLn line is kept at the low level
- The period at low level for the SCLn line is set as half of a bit period at the bit rate determined by the BRR setting
- The SCLn line is released (transition from the low to the high level)
- When a high level is detected on the SCLn line, the setup time for the restart condition is set as half of a bit period at the bit rate determined by the BRR setting
- The level on the SDAn line falls (from the high level to the low level)
- The hold time for the restart condition is set as half of a bit period at the bit rate determined by the BRR setting
- The level on the SCLn line falls (from the high level to the low level), the SIMR3.IICRSTAREQ bit is set to 0, and a restart-condition generated interrupt is output

Writing 1 to the SIMR3.IICSTPREQ bit causes the generation of a stop condition. The generation of a stop condition proceeds through the following operations:

- The level on the SDAn line falls (from the high level to the low level) and the SCLn line is kept at the low level
- The period at low level for the SCLn line is set as half of a bit period at the bit rate determined by the BRR setting
- The SCLn line is released (transition from the low to the high level)

- When a high level is detected on the SCLn line, the setup time for the stop condition is set as half of a bit period at the bit rate determined by the BRR setting
- The SDAn line is released (transition from the low to the high level), the SIMR3.IICSTPREQ bit is set to 0, and a stop-condition generated interrupt is output

Figure 27.60 shows the timing of operations in the generation of start, restart, and stop conditions.

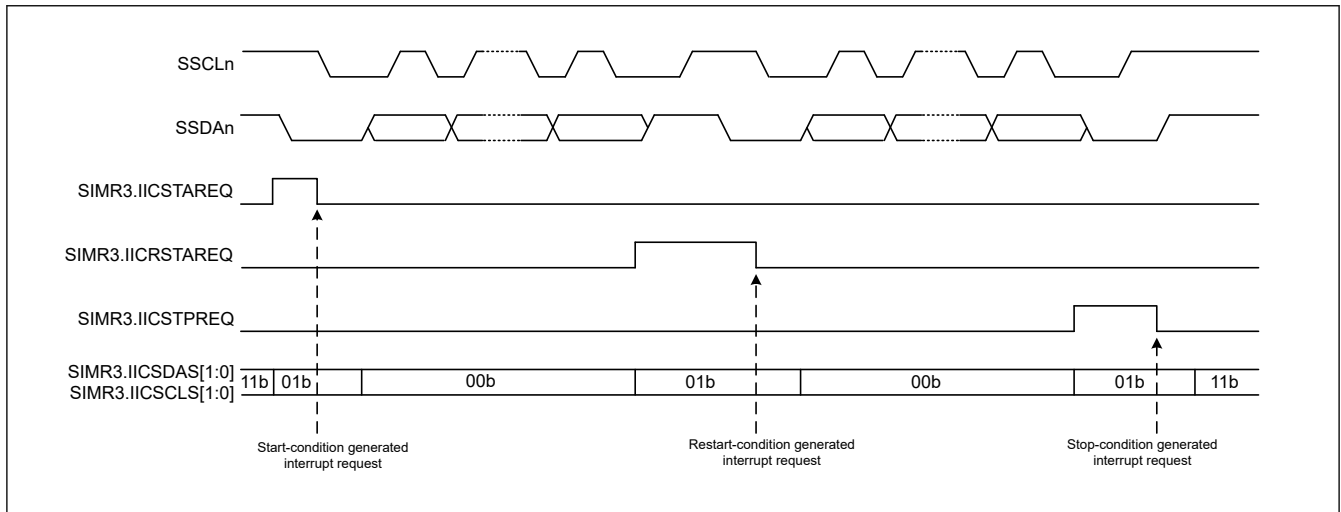


Figure 27.60 Timing of operations in generation of start, restart, and stop conditions

27.7.2 Clock Synchronization

The SCLn line can be driven low if a wait is inserted by a slave device at the other side of the transfer. Setting the SIMR2.IICCSC bit to 1 applies control to obtain synchronization when a difference arises between the levels of the internal SCLn clock signal and the level being input on the SCLn pin.

When the SIMR2.IICCSC bit is set to 1, the level of the internal SCLn clock signal changes from low to high. Counting to determine the period at a high level stops while the low level is being input on the SCLn pin. Counting to determine the period at a high level starts after the transition of the input on the SCLn pin to the high level.

The interval from this time until counting to determine the period at high level starts on the transition of the SCLn pin to the high level, is the total of the delay of SCLn output, delay for noise filtering of the input on the SCLn pin (2 or 3 cycles of sampling clock for the noise filter), and delay for internal processing (1 or 2 cycles of PCLK). The period at high level of the internal SCLn clock is extended even when other devices do not place the low level on the SCLn line.

If the SIMR2.IICCSC bit is 1, synchronization is obtained for the transmission and reception of data by taking the logical AND of the input on the SCLn pin and the internal SCLn clock. If the SIMR2.IICCSC bit is 0, synchronization with the internal SCLn clock is obtained for the transmission and reception of data.

If a slave device inserts a wait period into the interval until the transition of the internal SCLn clock signal from the low to the high level after a request for the generation of a start, restart, or stop condition is issued, the time until generation is prolonged by that period.

If a slave device inserts a wait period after the transition of the internal SCLn clock signal from the low to the high level, although the generation-completed interrupt is issued without stopping the waiting period, generation of the condition itself is not guaranteed.

Figure 27.61 shows an example operation for synchronizing the clocks.

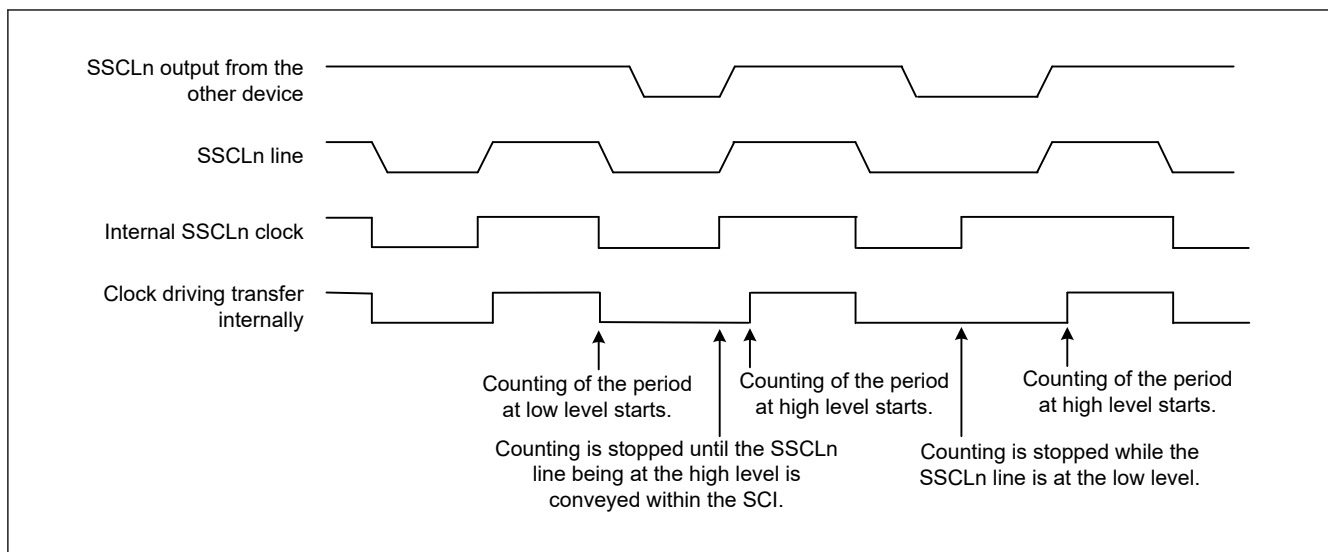


Figure 27.61 Example operations for clock synchronization

27.7.3 SDAn Output Delay

The SIMR1.IICDL[4:0] bits can be used to set a delay for output on the SDAn pin relative to falling edges of output on the SCLn pin. Delay settings from 0 to 31 are selectable, representing periods of the corresponding numbers of cycles of the clock signal from the on-chip baud rate generator (derived by frequency-dividing the base clock, PCLK, by the divisor selected in the SMR.CKS[1:0] bits). A delay for output on the SDAn pin applies to the start condition/restart condition/stop condition signal, 8-bit transmit data, and acknowledge bit.

If the SDAn output delay is shorter than the time for the level on the SCLn pin to fall, the change of the output on the SDAn pin starts while the output level on the SCLn pin is falling, creating a possibility of erroneous operation for slave devices. Ensure that settings for the delay of output on the SDAn pin specify times greater than the time output on the SCLn pin takes to fall (300 ns for IIC in normal mode and fast mode).

Figure 27.62 shows the timing of delays in SDAn output.

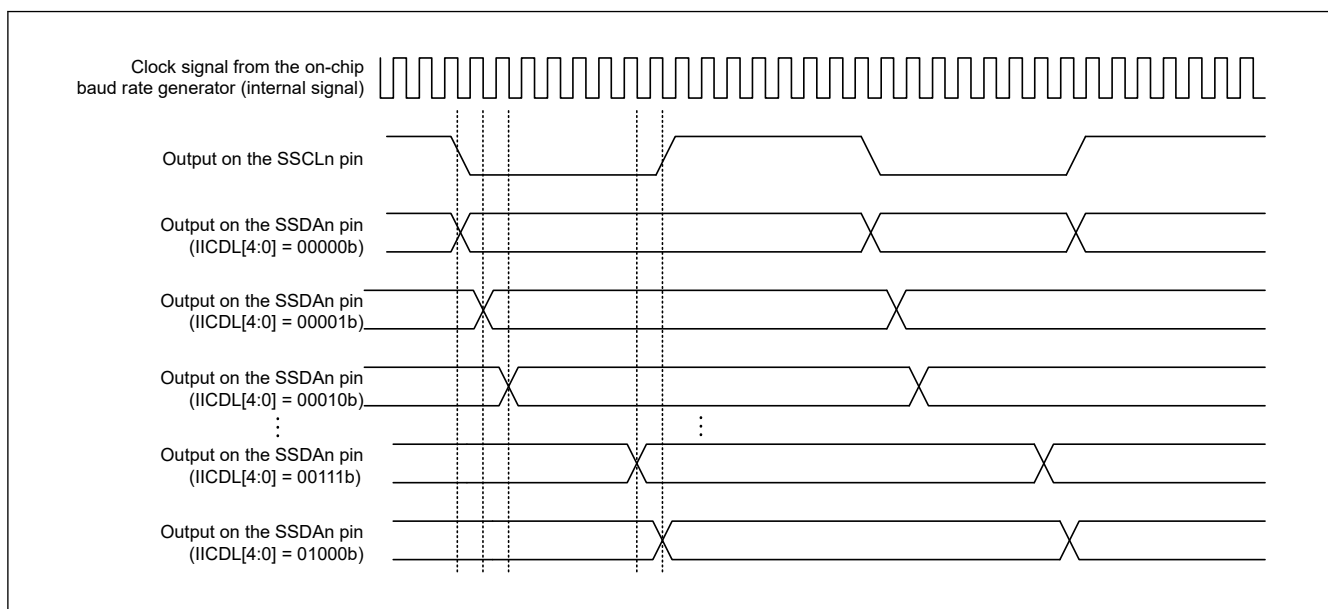


Figure 27.62 Timing of delays in SDAn output

27.7.4 SCI Initialization in Simple IIC Mode

Before transferring data, write the initial value 0x00 to SCR and initialize the interface following the example shown in Table 27.31.

Before making any changes to the operating mode or transfer format, be sure to set SCR to its initial value. In simple IIC mode, the open-drain setting for the communication ports should be made on the port side.

Table 27.31 Example flow of SCI initialization in simple IIC mode

No.	Step Name	Description
1	Start of initialization	
2	Set the TIE, RIE, TE, RE, TEIE and CKE[1:0] bits in SCR to 0	
3	Set the I/O port functions	Set the I/O port to allow use (on N-channel open-drain output pins) of the SSCLn and SSDAn pin functions.
4	Set the IICSDAS[1:0] and IICSCLS[1:0] bits in SIMR3 to 11b	Place the SSCLn and SSDAn pins in the high-impedance state until a start condition is to be generated.
5	Set up the transfer or reception format in SMR and SCMR	Set the format for transmission and reception in SMR and SCMR. In SMR, set the CKS[1:0] bits to the target value and set the other bits to 0. In SCMR, set the SDIR bit to 1 and the SINV and SMIF bits to 0.
6	Set the value in BRR	Write the value for the targeted bit rate to BRR.
7	Set a value in MDDR	Write the value obtained by correcting a bit rate error in MDDR. This step is not required if the BRME bit in SEMR is set to 0.
8	Set the values in SEMR, SNFR, SIMR1, SIMR2, and SPMR	Set the values in SEMR, SNFR, SIMR1, SIMR2, and SPMR. Set the NFEN and BRME bits in SEMR. In SNFR, set the NFCS[2:0] bits. In SIMR1, set the IICM bit to 1 and the IICDL[4:0] bits as required. In SIMR2, set the IICACKT and IICCCSC bits to 1 and the IICINTM bits as required. In SPMR, set all the bits to 0.
9	Set the SCR.RE and TE bit to 1 and set the SCR.TIE, RIE and TEIE bits	Set the RE and TE bits in the SCR to 1. Then, set the SCR.TIE, RIE, and TEIE bits (for transmission and when the SIMR2.IICINTM bit is 1, set the RIE bit to 0). Setting the TE and RE bits to 1 enables the SSCLn and SSDAn pin functions.
10	Start of transmission or reception	

27.7.5 Operation in Master Transmission in Simple IIC Mode

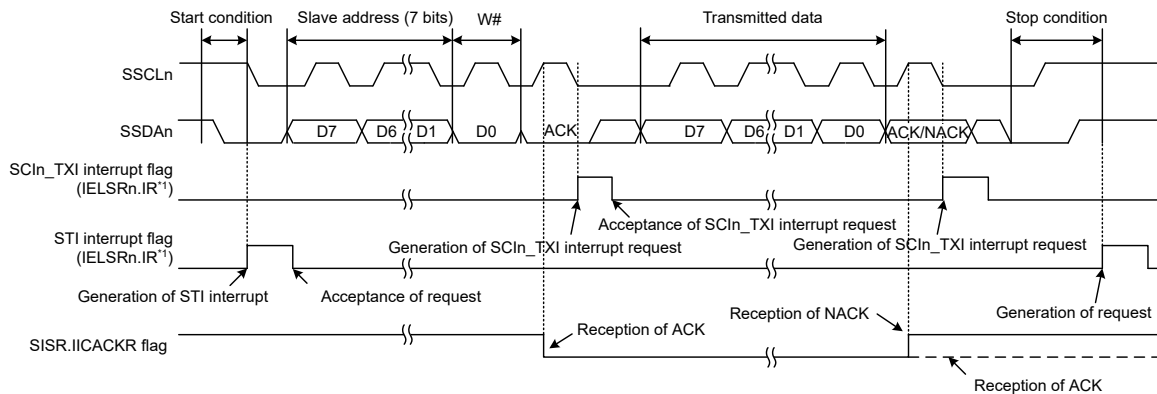
Figure 27.63 and Figure 27.64 show examples of master transmission and Figure 27.65 shows an example flow of data transmission.

Figure 27.63 shows the operation example when SIMR2.IICINTM bit is 1 (use reception and transmission interrupts) and the value of the SCR.RIE bit is assumed to be 0 (SCIn_RXI and SCIn_ERI interrupt requests are disabled).

See Table 27.36 for more information on the STI interrupt.

Figure 27.65 shows a flow chart when SIMR2.IICINTM is 1 and address transmission by CPU and data transmission by DTC. When 10-bit slave addresses are in use, steps [3] and [4] are repeated twice.

In simple IIC mode, the transmit data empty interrupt (SCIn_TXI) is generated when communication of one frame is complete, unlike the SCIn_TXI interrupt request generation timing during clock synchronous transmission.



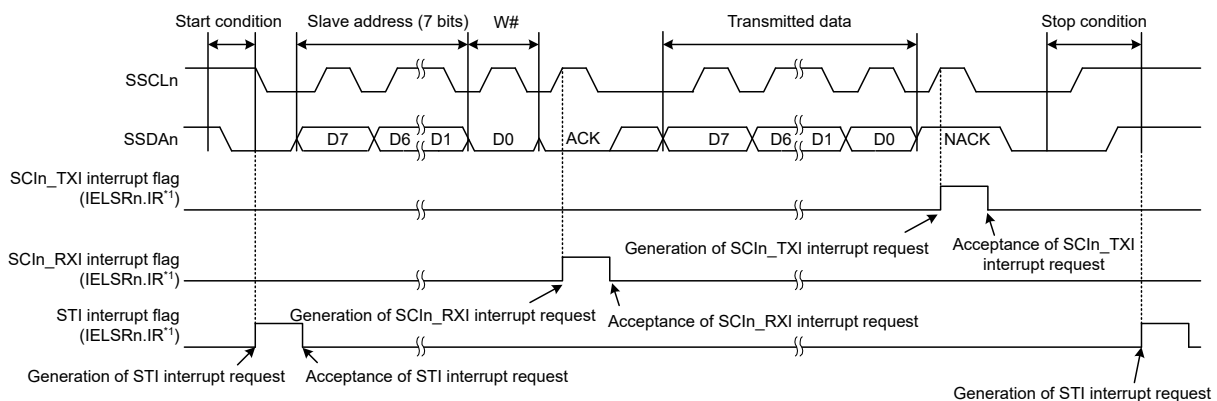
Note 1. See [section 12, Interrupt Controller Unit \(ICU\)](#) for information on the corresponding interrupt event number.

Figure 27.63 Example 1 of operations for master transmission in simple IIC mode with 7-bit slave addresses, transmission interrupts, and reception interrupts

When the SIMR2.IICINTM bit is set to 0 (use ACK/NACK interrupts) during master transmission, the DTC is activated by the ACK interrupt as the trigger and the required number of data bytes are transmitted. When the NACK is received, error processing such as transmission stop and retransmission is performed using the NACK interrupt as the trigger.

To restart communication for some reason after writing data in the TDR register, use the following procedure:

1. Set the TE and RE bits in the SCR register to 0 to stop communication.
2. Set 0xF0 in the SIMR3 register, release the I²C bus, and clear the generation of a condition.
3. If the RDRF flag in the SSR register is set to 1, clear it.
4. Set the TE and RE bits in the SCR register to 1 and start the next communication.



Note 1. See [section 12, Interrupt Controller Unit \(ICU\)](#) for information on the corresponding interrupt event number.

Figure 27.64 Example 2 of operations for master transmission in simple IIC mode with 7-bit slave addresses, ACK interrupts, and NACK interrupts

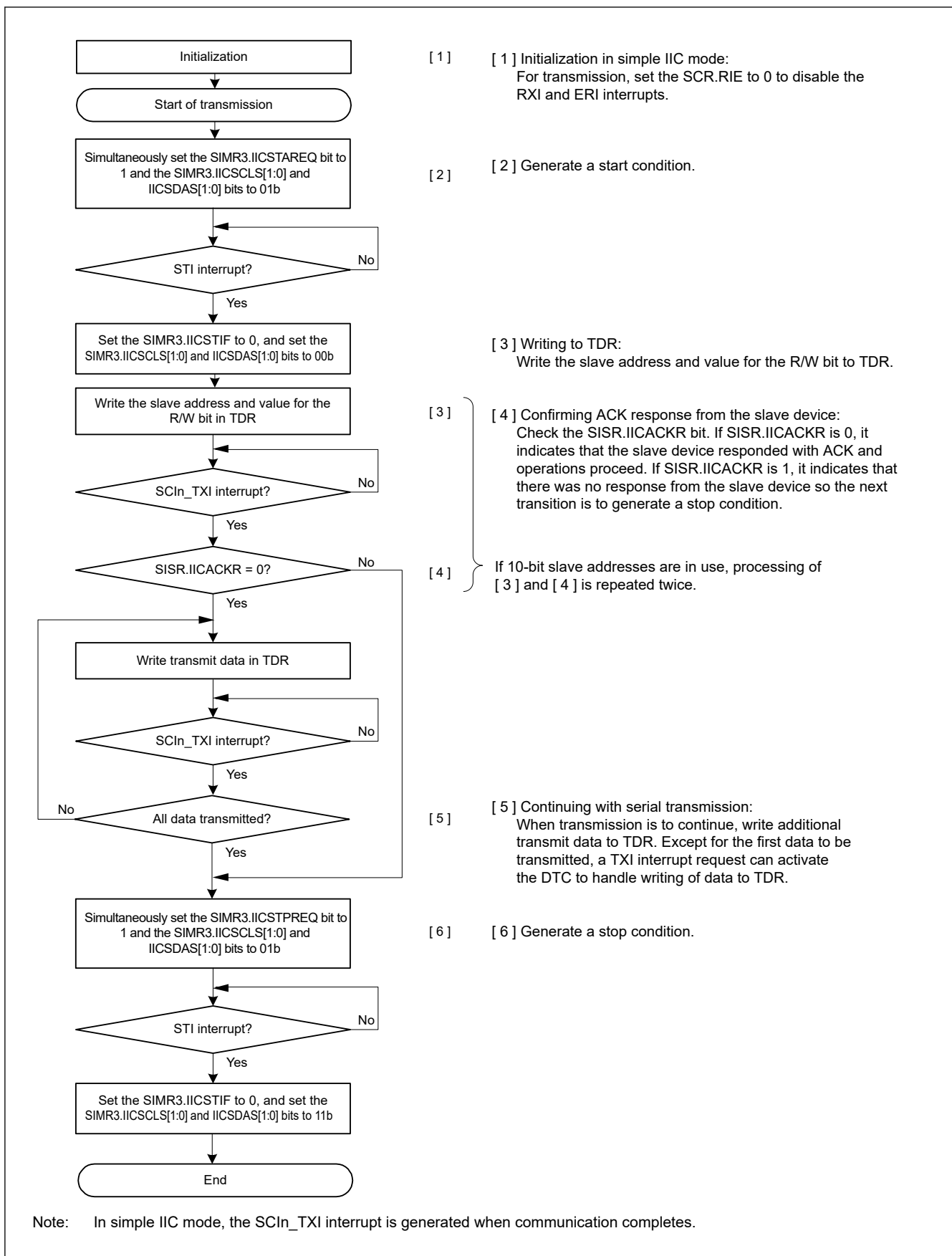


Figure 27.65 Example flow of master transmission in simple IIC mode with transmission interrupts and reception interrupts

27.7.6 Master Reception in Simple IIC Mode

Figure 27.66 shows an example operation in simple IIC mode master reception and Figure 27.67 shows an example flow of master reception.

The value of the SIMR2.IICINTM bit is assumed to be 1 (use reception and transmission interrupts).

In simple IIC mode, the transmit data empty interrupt (SCIn_TXI) is generated when communication of one frame is complete, unlike the SCIn_TXI interrupt request generation timing during clock synchronous transmission.

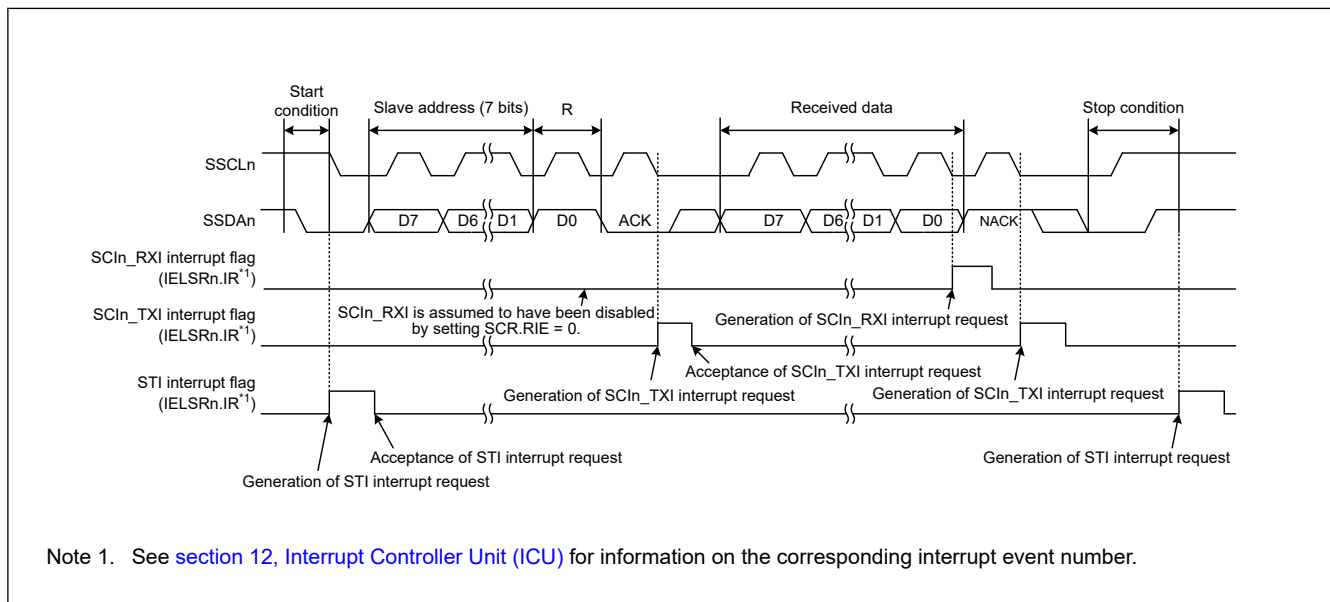
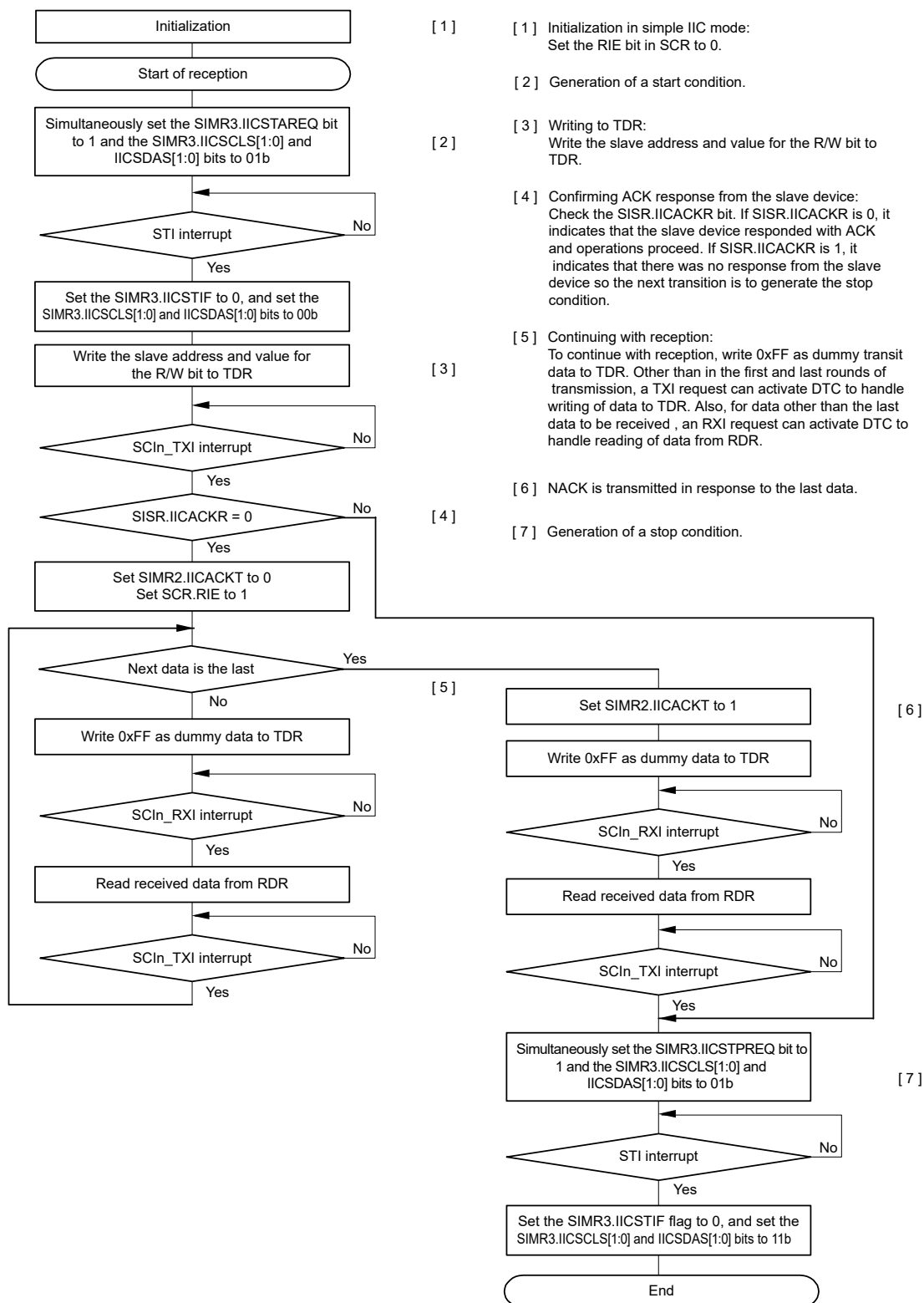


Figure 27.66 Example operations for master reception in simple IIC mode with 7-bit slave addresses, transmission interrupts, and reception interrupts



Note: In simple IIC mode, the SCIn_TXI interrupt request is generated when communication is complete.

Figure 27.67 Example flow of master reception in simple IIC mode with transmission interrupts and reception interrupts

27.8 Operation in Simple SPI Mode

As an extended function, the SCI supports a simple SPI mode that handles transfer among one or multiple master devices and multiple slave devices.

Using the settings for clock synchronous mode (SCMR.SMIF = 0, SIMR1.IICM = 0, SMR.CM = 1) and setting the SPMR.SSE bit to 1 place the SCI in simple SPI mode. However, the SSn pin function on the master side is not required for connection of the device used as the master in simple SPI mode when the configuration only has a single master. Therefore, set the SPMR.SSE bit to 0 in such cases.

Figure 27.68 shows an example of connections for simple SPI mode. Control a general port pin to produce the SSn output signal from the master.

In simple SPI mode, data is transferred in synchronization with clock pulses in the same way as in clock synchronous mode. One character of data for transfer consists of 8 bits of data, and parity bits cannot be appended. The data can be inverted by setting the SCMR.SINV bit to 1.

Because the receiver and transmitter are independent of each other within the SCI module, full-duplex communications are possible, with a shared clock signal. Additionally, because both the transmitter and receiver have a buffered structure, writing the next transmit data while transmission is in progress and reading previously received data while reception is in progress are both possible. This enables continuous transfer.

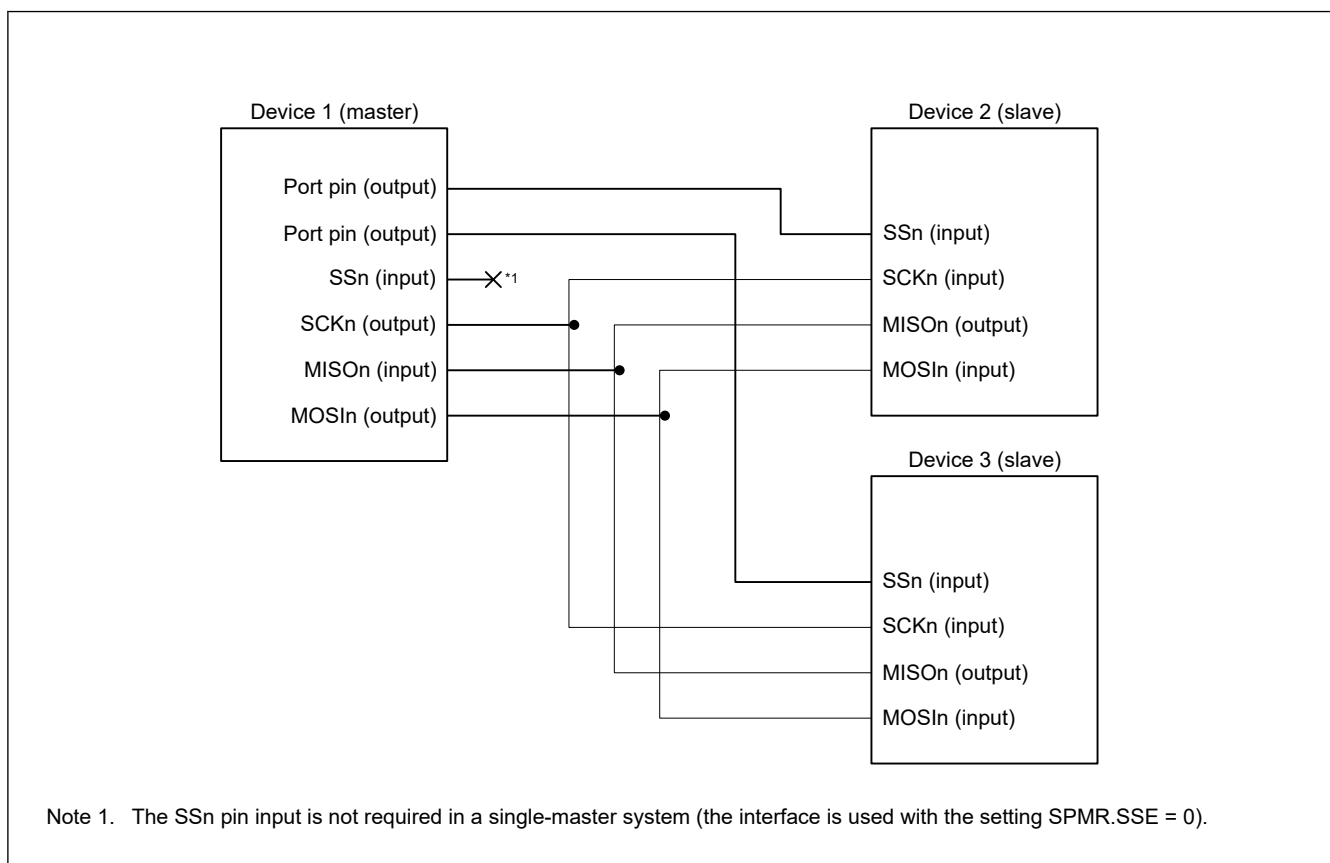


Figure 27.68 Example connections using simple SPI mode in single master mode with SPMR.SSE bit = 0

27.8.1 States of Pins in Master and Slave Modes

The direction (input or output) of pins for the simple SPI mode interface differs according to whether the device is a master (SCR.CKE[1:0] = 00b or 01b and SPMR.MSS = 0) or slave (SCR.CKE[1:0] = 10b or 11b and SPMR.MSS = 1).

Table 27.32 lists the relationship between the pin states, mode, and level on the SSn pin.

Table 27.32 States of pins by mode and input level on SSn pin

Mode	Input on SSn pin	State of MOSIn pin	State of MISO pin	State of SCKn pin
Master mode* ¹	High level (transfer can proceed)	Output for data transmission* ²	Input for received data	Clock output* ³
	Low level (transfer cannot proceed)	High-impedance	Input for received data (but disabled)	High-impedance
Slave mode	High level (transfer cannot proceed)	Input for received data (but disabled)	High-impedance	Clock input (but disabled)
	Low level (transfer can proceed)	Input for received data	Output for data transmission	Clock input

Note 1. When there is only a single master (SPMR.SSE = 0), transfer is possible regardless of the input level on the SSn pin. This is equivalent to input of a high level on the SSn pin.

Note 2. The MOSIn pin output is in the high-impedance state when serial transmission is disabled (SCR.TE bit = 0).

Note 3. The SCKn pin output is in the high-impedance state when serial transmission is disabled (SCR.TE = 0 and SCR.RE = 0) in a multi-master configuration (SPMR.SSE = 1).

27.8.2 SS Function in Master Mode

Setting the CKE[1:0] bits in the SCR to 00b or 01b and the MSS bit in the SPMR to 0 selects master mode operation. The SSn pin is not used in single-master configurations (SPMR.SSE = 0), so transmission or reception can proceed regardless of the value of the SSn pin.

When the level on the SSn pin is high in a multi-master configuration (SPMR.SSE = 1), a master device outputs clock signals from the SCKn pin before starting transmission or reception to indicate that there are no other masters or another master is performing reception or transmission.

When the level on the SSn pin is low in a multi-master configuration (SPMR.SSE = 1), there are other masters, and a transmission or reception is in progress. The MOSIn output and SCKn pins are placed in the high-impedance state and starting transmission or reception is not possible. In addition, the value of the SPMR.MFF bit is 1, indicating a mode fault error. In a multi-master configuration, start error processing by reading the SPMR.MFF flag. If a mode fault error occurs while transmission or reception is in progress, transmission or reception does not stop, but the MOSIn and SCKn outputs are in the high-impedance state after completion of the transfer.

Use a general port pin to produce the SS output signal from the master.

27.8.3 SS Function in Slave Mode

Setting the SCR.CKE[1:0] bits to 10b or 11b and the SPMR.MSS bit to 1 selects slave operation. When the SSn pin is high, the MISO output pin is in the high-impedance state and clock input through the SCKn pin is ignored. When the SSn pin is low, clock input through the SCKn pin is valid and transmission or reception can proceed.

If the input on the SSn pin changes from low to high during transmission or reception, the MISO output pin is placed in the high-impedance state. Meanwhile, the internal processing for transmission or reception continues at the rate of the clock input through the SCKn pin until processing for the character being transmitted or received is complete, after which it stops, and the appropriate interrupt (SCIn_TXI, SCIn_RXI, or SCIn_TEI) is generated.

27.8.4 Relationship Between Clock and Transmit/Receive Data

The CKPOL and CKPH bits in the SPMR register can be used to set up the clock for use in transmission and reception in four different ways. The relation between the clock signal and the transmission and reception of data is shown in [Figure 27.69](#). The relation is the same for both master and slave operation. This is the same as when the level on the SSn pin is high.

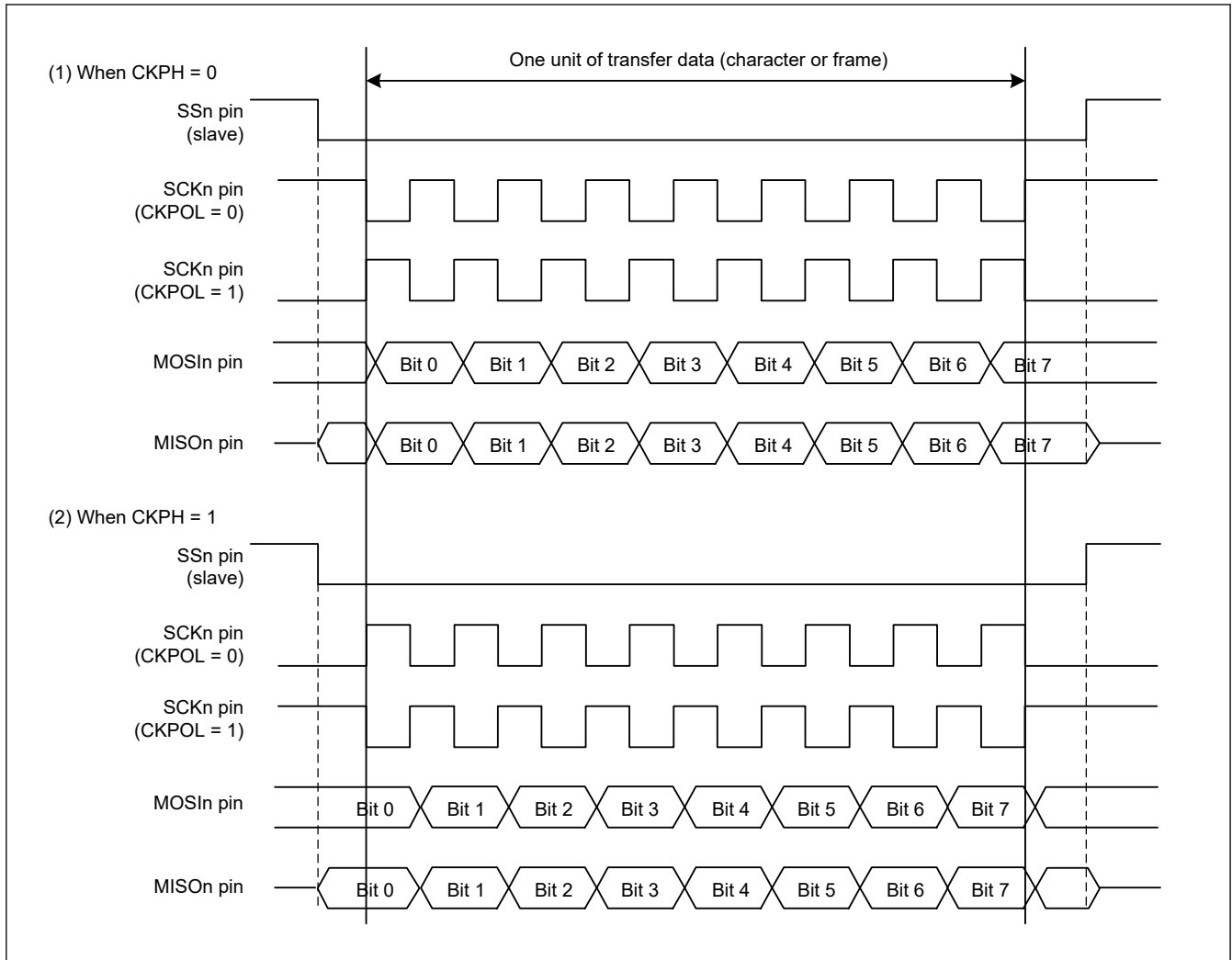


Figure 27.69 Relation between clock signal and transmit or receive data in simple SPI mode

27.8.5 SCI Initialization in Simple SPI Mode

Initialization in simple SPI mode is the same as in clock synchronous mode. See [section 27.5.3. SCI Initialization in Clock Synchronous Mode](#) for an example initialization flow. The CKPOL and CKPH bits in the SPMR register must be set to ensure that the clock signal is suitable for both master and slave devices.

Always initialize the SCR register before making any changes to the operating mode or transfer format.

Note: Only the RE bit is set to 0. The SSR.ORER, FER, PER, and RDR flags are not initialized.

Changing the value of the TE bit from 1 to 0 or from 0 to 1 when the TIE bit in the SCR register is 1 at the same time, leads to the generation of a transmit data empty interrupt (SCIn_TXI).

27.8.6 Transmission and Reception of Serial Data in Simple SPI Mode

In master operation, ensure that the SSn pin of the slave device on the other side of the transfer is at the low level before starting the transfer and at the high level on completion of the transfer. Otherwise, the procedures are the same as in clock synchronous mode.

27.9 Bit Rate Modulation Function

Using the bit rate modulation function, the bit rate can be evenly corrected using the number specified in the MDDR register among 256 clock cycles of internal clocks which is selected by the CKS[1:0] bits in SMR/SMR_SMCI.

Figure 27.70 shows an example where the PCLK is selected in the CKS[1:0] bits in SMR/SMR_SMCI, the BRR bit is set to 0, and the MDDR is set to 160 in asynchronous mode. In this example, the cycle of the base clock is evenly corrected ($256/160$) and the bit rate is also corrected ($160/256$).

Note: Enabling an internal clock causes bias, and expansion and contraction are generated in the pulse width of the internal base clock.

Do not use this function in clock synchronous mode and in the highest speed settings in simple SPI mode (SMR.CKS[1:0] = 00b, SCR.CKE[1] = 0, and BRR = 0).

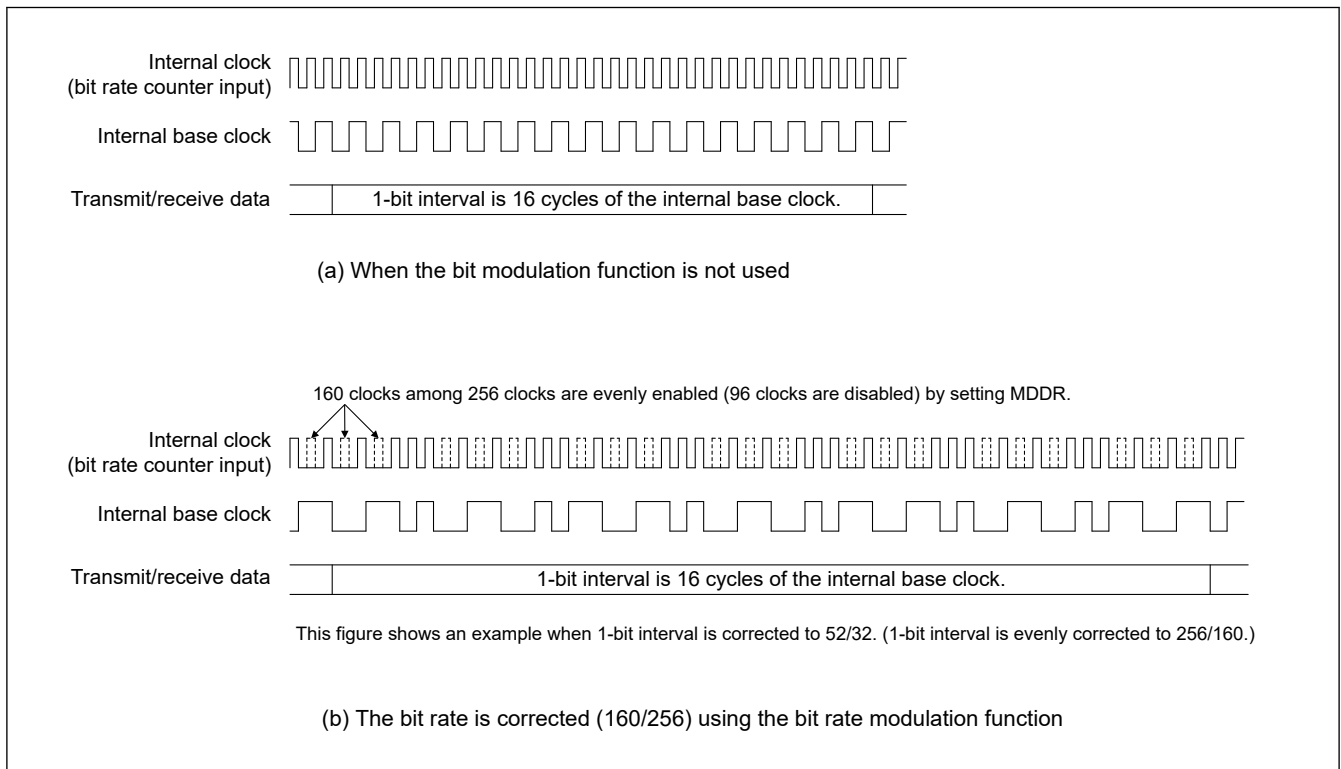


Figure 27.70 Example internal base clock when bit rate modulation function is used

27.10 Interrupt Sources

27.10.1 Buffer Operation for SCIn_TXI and SCIn_RXI Interrupts (Non-FIFO Selected)

If the conditions for an SCIn_TXI and SCIn_RXI interrupt are satisfied while the interrupt status flag in the ICU is 1, the ICU does not output the interrupt request but saves it internally with a capacity for retention of one request per source.

When the interrupt status flag in the ICU is set to 0, the interrupt request retained within the ICU is output. The internally retained interrupt request is automatically discarded when the actual interrupt is output. Clearing of the associated interrupt enable bit (the TIE or RIE bit in the SCR/SCR_SMCI) can also be used to discard an internally retained interrupt request.

27.10.2 Buffer Operation for SCIn_TXI and SCIn_RXI Interrupts (FIFO Selected)

When an interrupt status flag in the ICU is set to 1, the SCIn_TXI and SCIn_RXI interrupts do not output interrupt requests to the ICU. When an interrupt status flag of the ICU is set to 0, and if the conditions for an SCIn_TXI and SCIn_RXI interrupts are satisfied, an interrupt request is generated.

27.10.3 Interrupts in Asynchronous, Clock Synchronous, and Simple SPI Modes

(1) Non-FIFO selected

Table 27.33 lists interrupt sources in asynchronous mode, clock synchronous mode, and simple SPI mode.

A different interrupt vector can be assigned to each interrupt source. Individual interrupt sources can be enabled or disabled with the enable bits in the SCR register.

If the SCR.TIE bit is 1, an SCIn_TXI interrupt request is generated when transmit data is transferred from the TDR or TDRHL register^{*1} to the TSR register. An SCIn_TXI interrupt request can also be generated by using a single instruction to set the SCR.TE and SCR.TIE bits to 1 at the same time. An SCIn_TXI interrupt request can activate the DTC to handle data transfer.

An SCIn_TXI interrupt request is not generated by setting the SCR.TE bit to 1 when SCR.TIE is 0 or by setting the SCR.TIE bit to 1 when the SCR.TE is 1.^{*2}

When new data is not written by the time of transmission of the last bit of the current transmit data and SCR.TEIE is 1, the SSR.TEND flag is set to 1 and an SCIn_TEI interrupt request is generated. Additionally, when SCR.TE is 1, the SSR.TEND flag retains the value 1 until more transmit data is written to the TDR or TDRHL register^{*1}, and setting SCR.TEIE to 1 leads to the generation of an SCIn_TEI interrupt request.

Writing data to the TDR or TDRHL register^{*1} leads to clearing of the SSR.TEND flag and, after a certain time, discarding of the SCIn_TEI interrupt request.

If the SCR.RIE bit is 1, an SCIn_RXI interrupt request is generated when received data is stored in the RDR register. An SCIn_RXI interrupt request can activate the DTC to handle data transfer.

Setting any of the SSR.ORER, FER, PER flags to 1 when the SCR.RIE bit is 1 leads to the generation of an SCIn_ERI interrupt request.

An SCIn_RXI interrupt request is not generated in this case. Clearing all these flags (ORER, FER, PER) leads to discarding of the SCIn_ERI interrupt request.

Note 1. When asynchronous mode and 9-bit data length are selected.

Note 2. To temporarily prohibit SCIn_TXI interrupts on transmission of the last of the data when a new round of transmission is to be started, after handling the transmission-completed interrupt, control activation of the interrupt by using the interrupt request enable bit in the ICU rather than using the SCR.TIE bit. This approach can prevent the suppression of SCIn_TXI interrupt requests in the transfer of new data.

(2) FIFO selected

Table 27.34 lists interrupt sources in FIFO selected mode.

If the SCR.TIE bit is 1, an SCIn_TXI interrupt request is generated when the stored amount of data in the FTDRL register becomes the threshold value indicated in FCR.TTRG or below. An SCIn_TXI interrupt request can also be generated by using a single instruction to set the SCR.TIE and SCR.TE bits to 1 simultaneously or by setting SCR.TIE to 1 when SCR.TE is 1.

An SCIn_TXI interrupt request is not generated by setting SCR.TE to 1 when SCR.TIE is 0.

If SCR.TEIE is 1 and if the next data is not written to the FTDRL register by the time the last bit of the transmit data is sent, the SSR_FIFO.TEND flag is set to 1 and the SCIn_TEI interrupt request is generated.

If SCR.RIE is 1, the SCIn_RXI interrupt request is generated when the stored amount of data in the FRDRL register is equal to or greater than the threshold value indicated in FCR.RTRG. When RTRG is 0, an SCIn_RXI interrupt does not occur even when the amount of data in the receive FIFO is equal to 0.

If the SCR.RIE bit is 1, when the SSR_FIFO.ORER flag is set to 1 or data with a framing error or a parity error is stored in the FRDRL register, the SCIn_ERI interrupt request is generated. When the amount of data stored in the FRDRL register is at the threshold value or above, the SCIn_RXI interrupt request is also generated. The SCIn_ERI interrupt request can be canceled, in which case SSR_FIFO.ORER, FER, and PER flags are all cleared.

Table 27.33 SCI interrupt sources with non-FIFO selected (1 of 2)

Name	Interrupt source	Interrupt flag	Interrupt enable	DTC activation
SCIn_ERI (n = 0 to 2, 9)	Receive error ^{*1}	SSR.ORER, SSR.FER, SSR.PER, DCCR.DFER, DCCR.DPER	SCR.RIE	Not possible
SCIn_RXI (n = 0 to 2, 9)	Receive data full	SSR.RDRF	SCR.RIE	Possible
	Address match	DCCR.DCMF	SCR.RIE	Possible
SCIn_AM (n = 0 to 2, 9)	Address match	DCCR.DCMF	—	Not possible
SCIn_TXI (n = 0 to 2, 9)	Transmit data empty	SSR.TDRE	SCR.TIE	Possible

Table 27.33 SCI interrupt sources with non-FIFO selected (2 of 2)

Name	Interrupt source	Interrupt flag	Interrupt enable	DTC activation
SCIn_TEI (n = 0 to 2, 9)	Transmit end	SSR.TEND	SCR.TEIE	Not possible

Note 1. The interrupt flag is only ORER when in clock synchronous and simple SPI mode.

Table 27.34 SCI interrupt sources with FIFO selected

Name	Interrupt source	Interrupt flag	Interrupt enable	DTC activation
SCIn_ERI (n = 0 to 2, 9)	Receive error* ¹	SSR_FIFO.ORER, SSR_FIFO.FER, SSR_FIFO.PER, DCCR.DFER, DCCR.DPER	SCR.RIE	Not possible
		SSR_FIFO.DR (when FCR.DRES = 1)	SCR.RIE	Not possible
SCIn_RXI (n = 0 to 2, 9)	Receive data full	SSR_FIFO.RDF	SCR.RIE	Possible
	Receive data ready	SSR_FIFO.DR (when FCR.DRES = 0)	SCR.RIE	Possible
	Address match	DCCR.DCMF	SCR.RIE	Possible
SCIn_AM (n = 0 to 2, 9)	Address match	DCCR.DCMF	—	Not possible
SCIn_TXI (n = 0 to 2, 9)	Transmit data empty	SSR_FIFO.TDFE	SCR.TIE	Possible
SCIn_TEI (n = 0 to 2, 9)	Transmit end	SSR_FIFO.TEND	SCR.TEIE	Not possible

Note 1. The interrupt flag is only ORER when in clock synchronous and simple SPI mode.

27.10.4 Interrupts in Smart Card Interface Mode

Table 27.35 lists interrupt sources in smart card interface mode. A transmit end interrupt (SCIn_TEI) request and an address match (SCIn_AM) request cannot be used in this mode.

Table 27.35 SCI Interrupt sources

Name	Interrupt source	Interrupt flag	Interrupt enable	DTC activation
SCIn_ERI (n = 0 to 2, 9)	Receive error or error signal detection	SSR_SMCI.ORER, SSR_SMCI.PER, SSR_SMCI.ERS	SCR_SMCI.RIE	Not possible
SCIn_RXI (n = 0 to 2, 9)	Receive data full	SSR_SMCI.RDRF	SCR_SMCI.RIE	Possible
SCIn_TXI (n = 0 to 2, 9)	Transmit data empty	SSR_SMCI.TEND	SCR_SMCI.TIE	Possible

Data transmission or reception using the DTC is also possible in smart card interface mode, similar to normal SCI mode. In transmission, when the SSR_SMCI.TEND flag is set to 1, an SCIn_TXI interrupt request is generated. This SCIn_TXI interrupt request activates the DTC, allowing transfer of transmit data if the SCIn_TXI request is previously specified as a source of DTC activation. The TEND flag is automatically set to 0 when the DTC transfers the data.

If an error occurs, the SCI automatically retransmits the same data. During the retransmission, the TEND flag is kept at 0 and the DTC is not activated. Therefore, the SCI and DTC automatically transmit the specified number of bytes, including retransmission after an error occurrence. However, the SSR_SMCI.ERS flag is not automatically set to 0 at error occurrence. Therefore, the ERS flag must be cleared by previously setting the SCR_SMCI.RIE bit to 1 to enable an SCIn_ERI interrupt request to be generated at error occurrence.

When transmitting or receiving data using the DTC, always enable the DTC before making the SCI settings. For DTC settings, see [section 15, Data Transfer Controller \(DTC\)](#).

In reception, an SCIn_RXI interrupt request is generated when receive data is set to the RDR register. This SCIn_RXI interrupt request activates the DTC, allowing transfer of the receive data if the SCIn_RXI request is previously specified as a source of DTC activation. If an error occurs, the error flag is set. Therefore, the DTC is not activated and an SCIn_ERI interrupt request is issued to the CPU instead. The error flag must be cleared.

27.10.5 Interrupts in Simple IIC Mode

Table 27.36 lists the interrupt sources in simple IIC mode. The STI interrupt is allocated to the transmit end interrupt (SCIn_TEI) request. The receive error interrupt (SCIn_ERI) and the address match (SCIn_AM) request cannot be used.

The DTC can also be used to handle transfer in simple IIC mode.

When the SIMR2.IICINTM bit is 1:

- An SCIn_RXI request is generated on the falling edge of the SCLn signal for the 8th bit. If SCIn_RXI is previously set up as an activation source for the DTC, the SCIn_RXI request activates the DTC to handle transfer of the received data.
- An SCIn_TXI request is generated on the falling edge of the SCLn signal for the 9th bit (acknowledge bit). If SCIn_TXI is previously set up as an activation source for the DTC, the SCIn_TXI request activates the DTC to handle transfer of the transmit data.

When the SIMR2.IICINTM bit is 0:

- An SCIn_RXI request (ACK detection) is generated if the input on the SDAn pin is low on the rising edge of the SCLn signal for the 9th bit (acknowledge bit)
- An SCIn_TXI request (NACK detection) is generated if the input on the SDAn pin is high on the rising edge of the SCLn signal for the 9th bit (acknowledge bit)
- If SCIn_RXI is previously set up as an activation source for the DTC, the SCIn_RXI request activates the DTC to handle transfer of the received data.

If the DTC is used for data transfer in reception or transmission, always set up and enable the DTC before setting up the SCI.

When the IICSTAREQ, IICRSTAREQ, and IICSTPREQ bits in SIMR3 are used to generate a start condition, restart condition, or stop condition, the STI request is issued when generation is complete.

Table 27.36 SCI interrupt sources

Name	Interrupt source	Interrupt flag	Interrupt enable	DTC activation
SCIn_RXI (n = 0 to 2, 9)	Reception, ACK detection	—	SCMR.RIE	Possible* ¹
SCIn_TXI (n = 0 to 2, 9)	Transmission, NACK detection	—	SCMR.TIE	Possible
SCIn_TEI(STIn) (n = 0 to 2, 9)	Completion of generation of a start, restart, or stop condition	SIMR3.IICSTIF	SCMR.TEIE	Not possible

Note 1. Activation of the DTC is only possible when the SIMR2.IICINTM bit is 1 (use reception and transmission interrupts)

27.11 Event Linking

By using interrupt request signals as event signals, the SCIn can provide linked operation through the ELC for modules selected in advance.

Event signals can be output regardless of the values of the associated interrupt request enable bits.

(1) Error event output (receive error or error signal detected) (SCIn_ERI, n = 0 to 2, 9)

- Indicates abnormal termination because of a parity error during reception in asynchronous mode
- Indicates abnormal termination because of a framing error during reception in asynchronous mode
- Indicates abnormal termination because of an overrun error during reception
- Indicates detection of the error signal during transmission in smart card interface mode
- The SSR_FIFO.FER and PER flags are 0, and receive data less than the receive FIFO data trigger number is set in a reception FIFO buffer, and it indicates that 15 etus elapse when FIFO is selected and the FCR.DRES bit is 1

(2) Receive data full event output (SCIn_RXI, n = 0 to 2, 9)

- Indicates that ACK is detected if the SIMR2.IICINTM bit is 0 in simple IIC mode

- Indicates that the 8th-bit SCLn falling edge is detected if the SIMR2.IICINTM bit is 1 in simple IIC mode
- When the SIMR2.IICINTM bit is 1 during master transmission in simple IIC mode, set the ELC so that receive data full events are not used

Non-FIFO selected

- Indicates that received data is set in the Receive Data Register (RDR or RDRHL).

FIFO selected

- Using this event output is prohibited.

(3) Transmit data empty event output (SCIn_TXI, n = 0 to 2, 9)

- Indicates that the SCR/SCR_SMCI.TE bit is changed from 0 to 1
- Indicates that transmission is complete in smart card interface mode
- Indicates that NACK is detected if the SIMR2.IICINTM bit is 0 in simple IIC mode
- Indicates that the 9th-bit SCLn falling edge is detected if the SIMR2.IICINTM bit is 1 in simple IIC mode

Non-FIFO selected

- Indicates that transmit data is transferred from the Transmit Data Register (TDR or TDRHL) to the Transmit Shift Register (TSR).

FIFO selected

- Using this event output is prohibited.

(4) Transmit end event output (SCIn_TEI, n = 0 to 2, 9)

- Indicates the completion of transmission
- Indicates that the starting condition, resumption condition, or termination condition is generated in simple IIC mode

Note: When FIFO is selected, using this event output is prohibited

(5) Address match event output (SCIn_AM, n = 0 to 2, 9)

- Indicates a match of the comparison data (CDR.CMPD) with one frame of receive data when DCCR.DCME is set to 1 in asynchronous mode, including multi-processor mode.

27.12 Address Non-match Event Output (SCI0_DCUF)

SCI0_DCUF indicates the non-match of comparison data (CDR.CMPD) with receive data that is one frame of the data that is received when DCCR.DCME is set to 1 in asynchronous mode, including multi-processor mode. This event can be used for Snooze end request only. For details, see [section 10, Low Power Modes](#).

27.13 Noise Cancellation Function

[Figure 27.71](#) shows the configuration of the noise filter used for noise cancellation. The noise filter consists of a 2-stage flip-flop circuit and a match detection circuit. When the input signals of the noise filter and the output signals of the 2-stage flip-flop circuits completely match, the matched level is conveyed as an internal signal. Unless otherwise matched, the previous value is retained. When the same level is retained for 3 cycles or longer on the sampling clock of the noise filter, it is considered as a valid receive signal. A change in pulse for 3 cycles or shorter is considered as noise, not as a receive signal.

In asynchronous mode, the noise cancellation function can be applied to the receive signal input to the RXDn pin. The receive level of the RXDn is taken in the flip-flop circuit of the noise filter on the base clock of asynchronous mode.

- When SEMR.ABCS = 0 and SEMR.ABCSE = 0, the cycle is 1/16 of a 1-bit period.
- When SEMR.ABCS = 1 and SEMR.ABCSE = 0, the cycle is 1/8 of a 1-bit period.
- When SEMR.ABCSE = 1, the cycle is 1/6 of a 1-bit period.

In simple IIC mode, this function can be used for each input on SDAn and SCLn. The sampling clock is selected from divided clock of baud rate generator settings SNFR.NFCS[2:0].

If the base clock is stopped once with the noise filter enabled and then the base clock input is restarted again, the noise filter operation resumes from the state where the clock was stopped. When SCR.TE and SCR.RE are set to 0 during base clock input, all the noise filter flip-flop values are initialized to 1. So, if the input data is 1 when reception operation resumes, the function determines that a level match is detected and the result is conveyed as an internal signal. When the level being input corresponds to 0, the initial output of the noise filter is retained until the level matches in three consecutive sampling cycles.

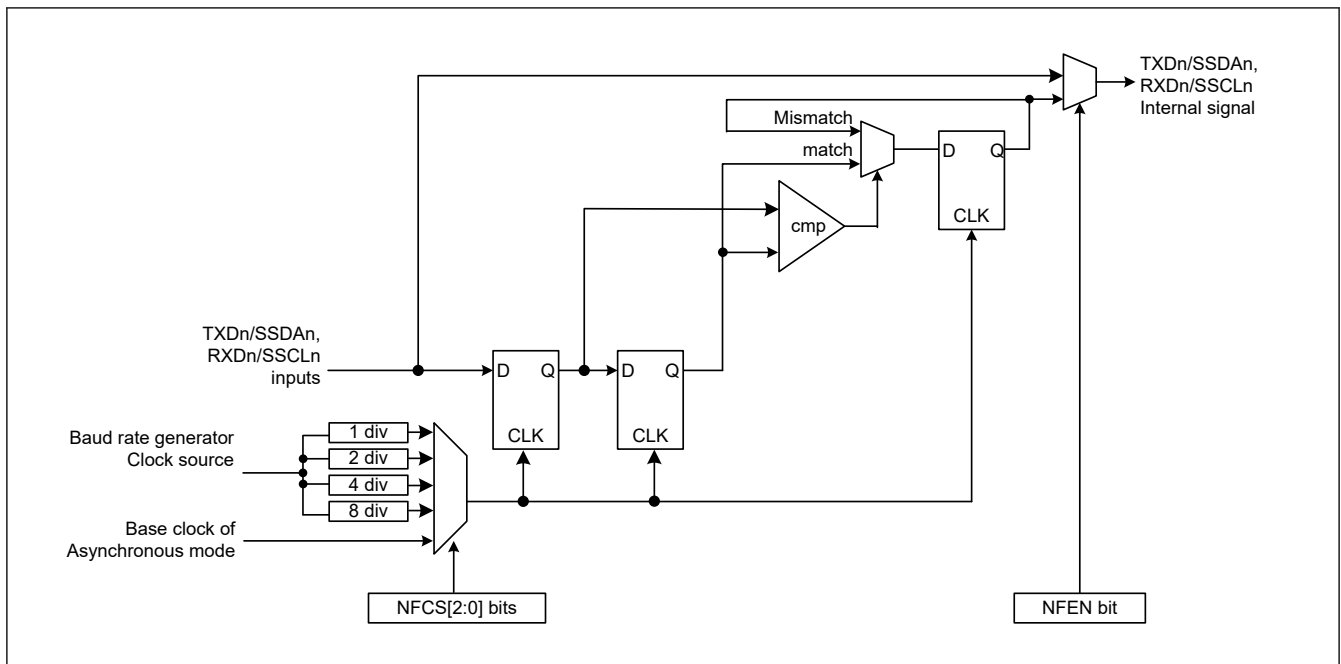


Figure 27.71 Block diagram of digital noise filter circuit

27.14 Usage Notes

27.14.1 Settings for the Module-stop Function

The Module Stop Control Register B (MSTPCRB) can enable or disable SCI operation. The SCI is initially stopped after reset. Releasing the module-stop state enables access to the registers. For details, see [section 10, Low Power Modes](#).

27.14.2 SCI Operation During Low Power State

(1) Transmission

When setting the module to the stopped state or in transitions to Software Standby, stop operations (by setting the TIE, TE, and TEIE bits in the SCR/SCR_SMCI to 0) after switching the TXDn pin to the general I/O port pin function. When setting an I/O port as an SCI connection, the SPTR register can control the state of the TXDn pin. Setting the TE bit to 0 initializes the TSR register and the TEND bit in the SSR/SSR_SMCI is initialized to 1 with non-FIFO selected, and the value is retained, with FIFO selected. Depending on the port settings and SPTR register settings, output pins might output the level before a transition to the low-power state is made after release from the module-stopped state or Software Standby mode. When transitions to these states are made during transmission, the transmitted data becomes indeterminate.

To transmit data in the same transmission mode after cancellation of the low-power state:

1. Set the TE bit to 1.
2. Read SSR/SSR_FIFO/SSR_SMCI.
3. Write data to TDR sequentially to start data transmission.

To transmit data with a different transmission mode, initialize the SCI first.

Figure 27.72 shows an example flow of transition to Software Standby mode during transmission. Figure 27.73 and Figure 27.74 show the port pin states during transition to Software Standby mode.

Before specifying the module-stop state or transitioning to Software Standby mode from the transmission mode using DTC transfer, stop the transmit operations (TE = 0). To start transmission after cancellation using the DTC, set the TE bit to 1. The SCIn_TXI interrupt flag is set to 1 and transmission starts using the DTC.

(2) Reception

When address match function is not used as a wakeup condition

Before specifying the module-stop state or transitioning to Software Standby mode, stop the receive operations (RE = 0 in SCR/SCR_SMCI). If a transition is made during data reception, the received data is invalid.

Figure 27.75 shows an example flow of transition to Software Standby mode during reception.

When address match function is used as a wakeup condition

Before specifying the module-stop state or transitioning to Software Standby mode:

1. Set the operations after cancellation of the low power state.
2. Set CDR.CMPD and DCCR.DCME to 1.
3. Set the receive operations (RE = 1 in SCR/SCR_SMCI).
4. Set the module-stop state or Software Standby mode.

When SCI transfers to low power mode, if the receive data pin (RXD) is at the low level, set SEMR.RXDESEL = 0.

When setting SEMR.RXDESEL = 1, there is a possibility that a start bit (falling edge of RXD pin) cannot be detected on release of the low power mode.

Figure 27.76 shows an example flow of transition to Software Standby mode during reception with address match.

When using SCI0 in Snooze mode

When using SCI0 in Snooze mode, some restrictions apply, including maximum bit rates. For details, see [section 10, Low Power Modes](#).

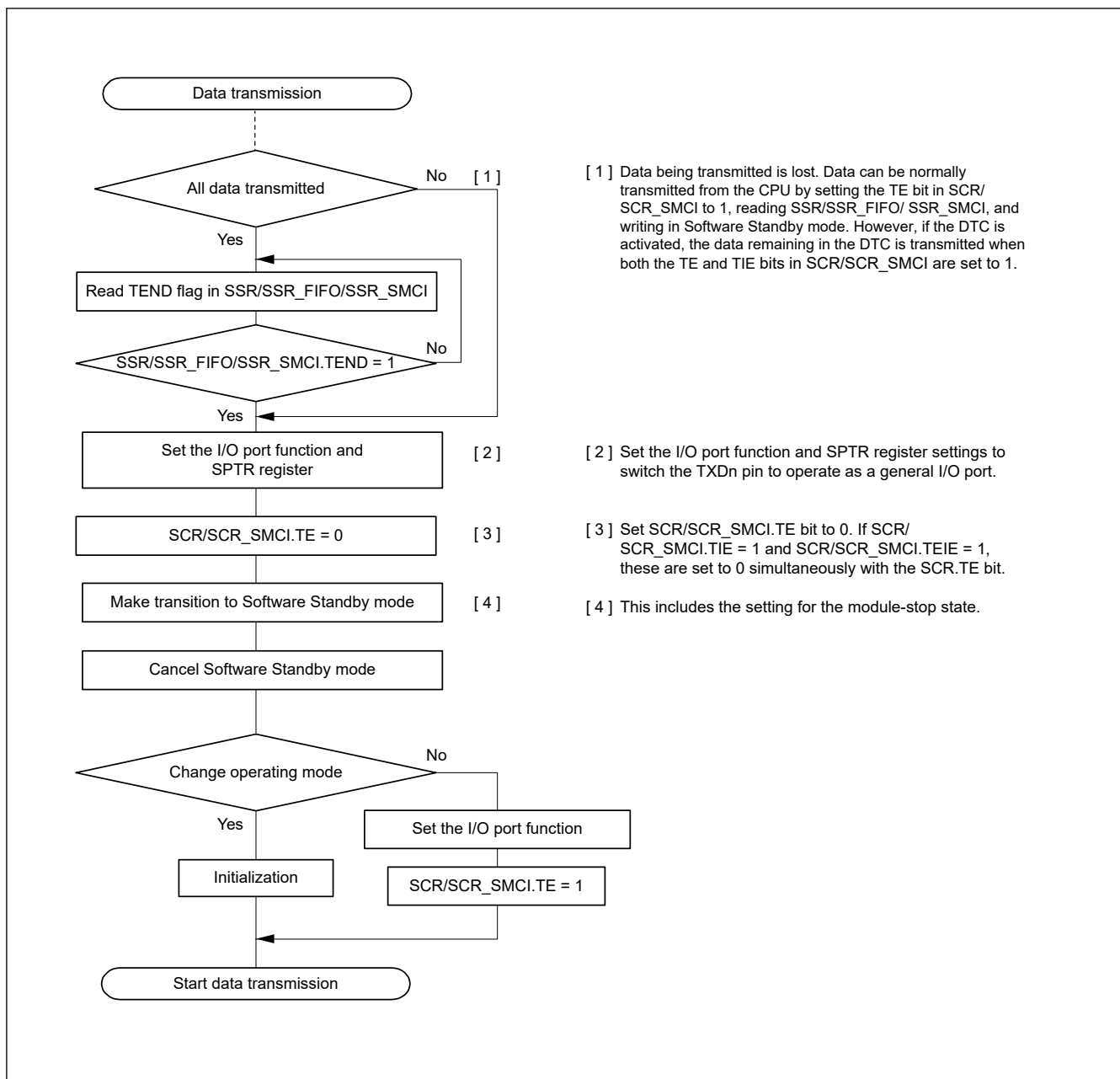


Figure 27.72 Example flow of transition to Software Standby mode during transmission

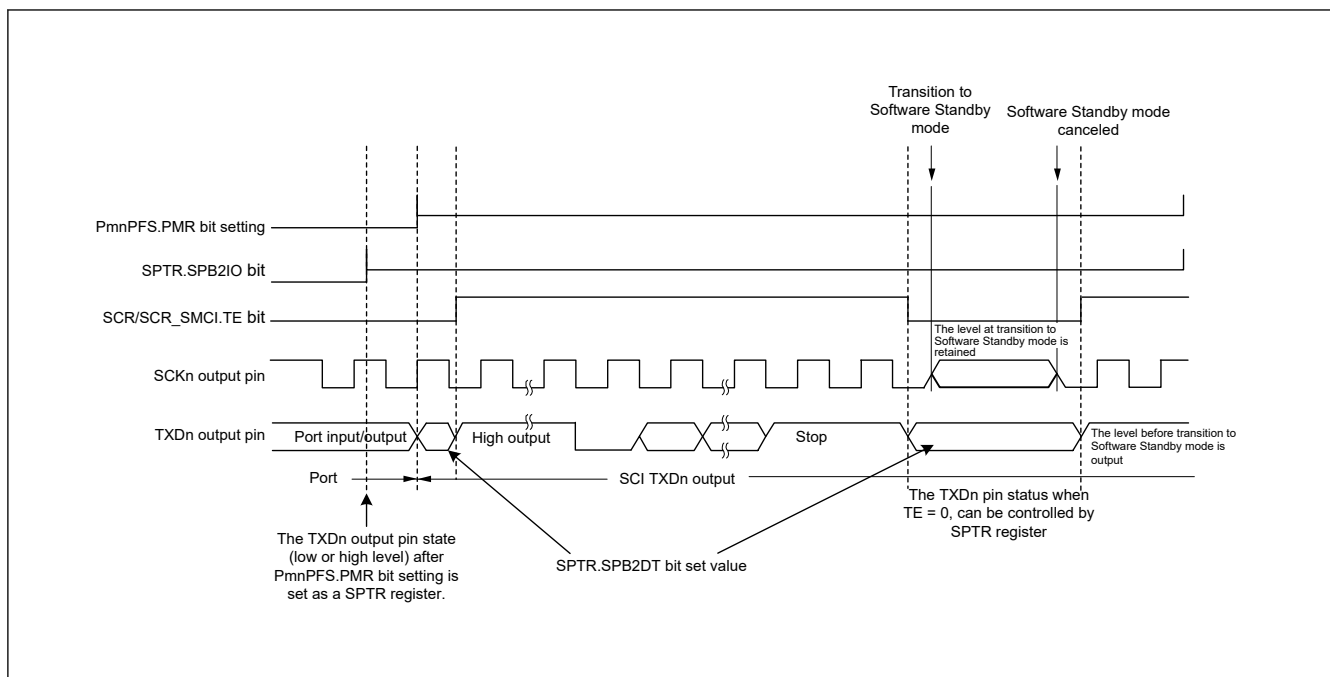


Figure 27.73 Port pin states during transition to Software Standby mode with internal clock and asynchronous transmission

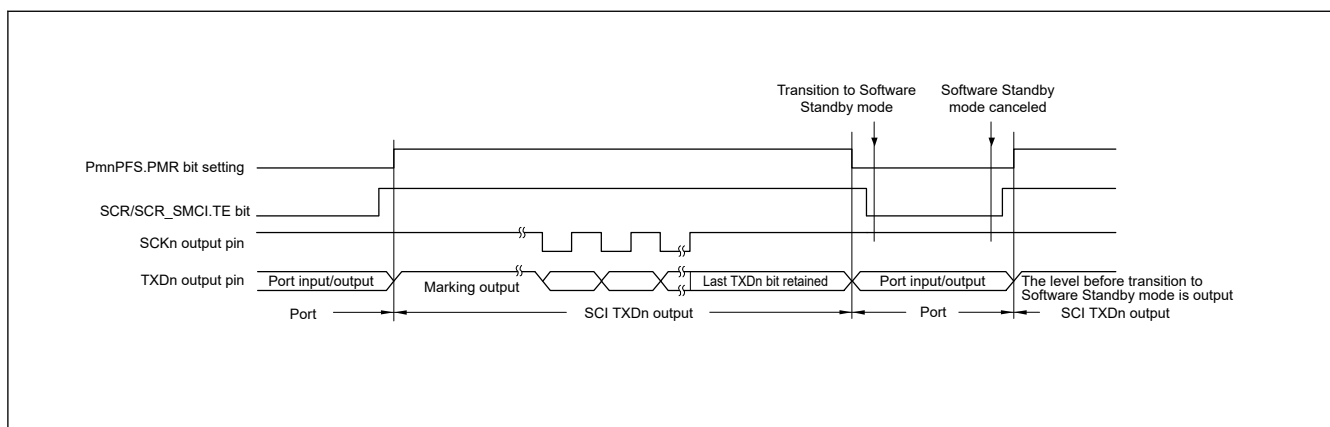
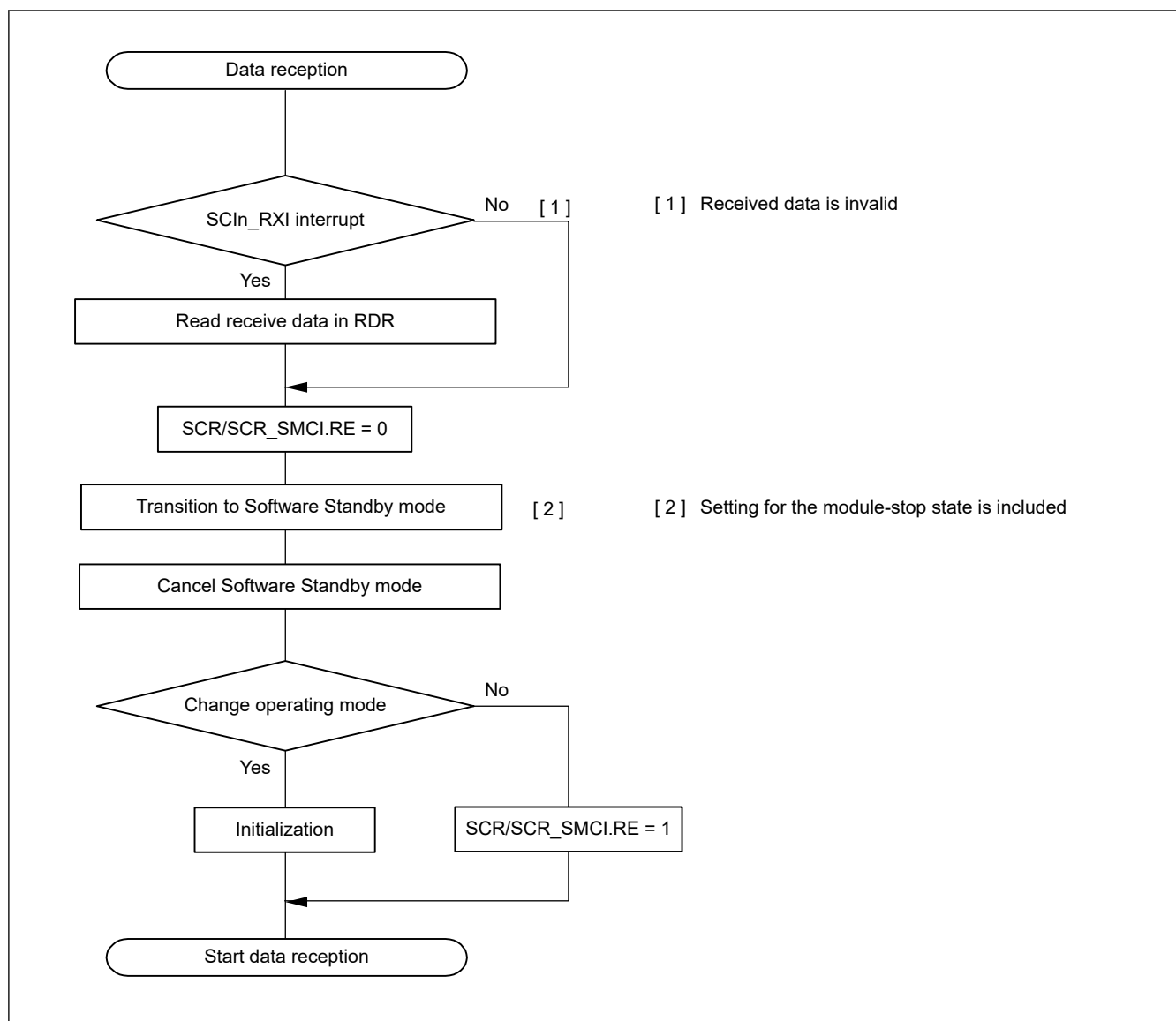


Figure 27.74 Port pin states during transition to Software Standby mode with internal clock and clock synchronous transmission

**Figure 27.75** Example flow of transition to Software Standby mode during reception

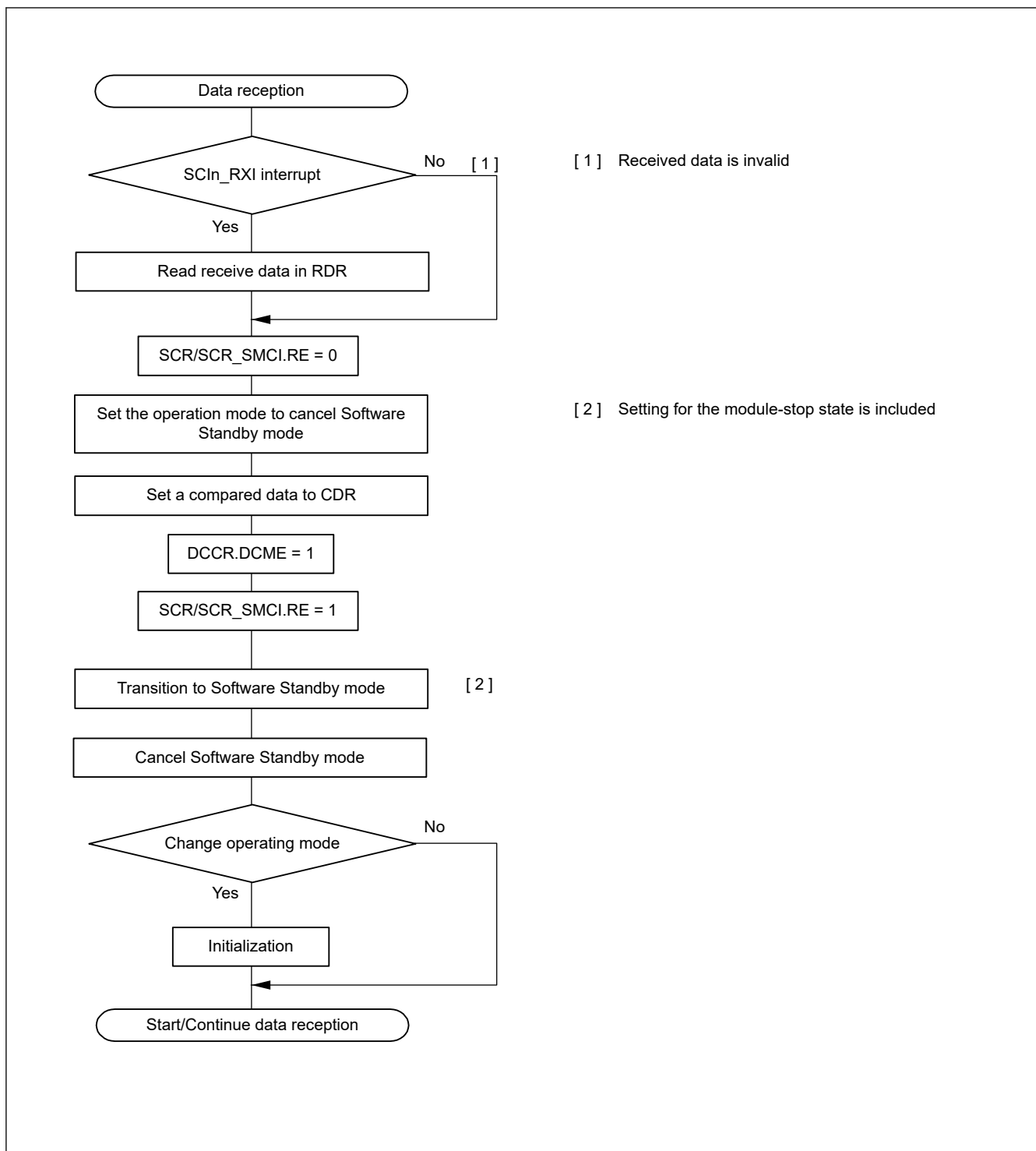


Figure 27.76 Example flow of transition to Software Standby mode during reception with address match

27.14.3 Break Detection and Processing

(1) Non-FIFO selected

When a framing error is detected, a break can be detected by reading the RXDn pin value directly. In a break, the input from the RXDn pin becomes all 0s, and the SSR.FER flag is set to 1 to indicate a framing error, and the SSR.PER flag might also be set to 1 to indicate a parity error. The SCI continues the receive operation even after a break is received. Therefore, even if the FER flag is 0, indicating that no framing error occurred, it is set to 1 again. When the SEMR.RXDESEL bit is 1, the SCI sets the SSR.FER flag to 1 and stops receiving operations until a start bit of the next data frame is detected. If the SSR.FER flag is set to 0, the SSR.FER flag retains 0 during the break.

When the RXDn pin is set to 1 and the break ends, detecting the beginning of the start bit on the first falling edge of the RXDn pin allows the SCI to start the receiving operation.

(2) FIFO selected

After a framing error is detected and when the SCI detects that continuous receive data is 0 for 1 frame, reception stops. When a framing error is detected, a break can be detected by reading the SPTR.RXDMON flag value. After the RXDn signal is in high and the break is finished, data reception to the FRDRHL register resumes.

27.14.4 Mark State and Production of Breaks

When the SCR/SCR_SMCI.TE bit is 0, disabling serial transmission, the state of the TXDn pin can be set using the SPTR.SPB2IO and SPTR.SPB2DT bits. With this approach, a TXDn pin can be placed in the mark state to transmit a break.

Before setting the SCR/SCR_SMCI.TE bit to 1, enabling serial transmission, set the SPB2IO and SPB2DT bits to put the communication line in the mark state (the state of 1), and change the TXDn pin using the I/O port function. To output a break on data transmission, after setting the TXDn pin to output 0 by setting the SPB2IO and SPB2DT bits, change the TXDn pin using the I/O port function and set the SCR/SCR_SMCI.TE bit to 0. When the SCR/SCR_SMCI.TE bit is set to 0, the transmitter is initialized regardless of the current state of transmission.

27.14.5 Receive Error Flags and Transmit Operation in Clock Synchronous Mode and Simple SPI Mode

Transmission cannot start when a receive error flag (ORER) in SSR/SSR_FIFO is set to 1, even when data is written to TDR or FTDR^{*1}. Always set the receive error flags to 0 before starting transmission.

Note: The receive error flags cannot be set to 0 when the RE bit in SCR/SCR_SMCI is set to 0 (serial reception is disabled).

Note 1. Do not use the FTDRH register in simple SPI mode.

27.14.6 Restrictions on Clock Synchronous Transmission in Clock Synchronous Mode and Simple SPI Mode

When the external clock source is used as a synchronization clock, the following restrictions apply.

(1) Start of transmission

Wait at least the following time from writing transmit data to TDR to the start of the external clock input:

1 PCLK cycle + data output delay time for the slave (t_{DO}) + setup time for the master (t_{SU}). See [Figure 27.77](#).

(2) Continuous transmission

Write the next transmit data to TDR or TDRHL before the falling edge of the transmit clock for bit [7]. See [Figure 27.77](#).

When updating TDR after bit [7] has started to transmit, update TDR while the synchronization clock is in the low-level period, and set the high-level width of the transmit clock (bit [7]) to 4 PCLK cycles or longer. See [Figure 27.77](#).

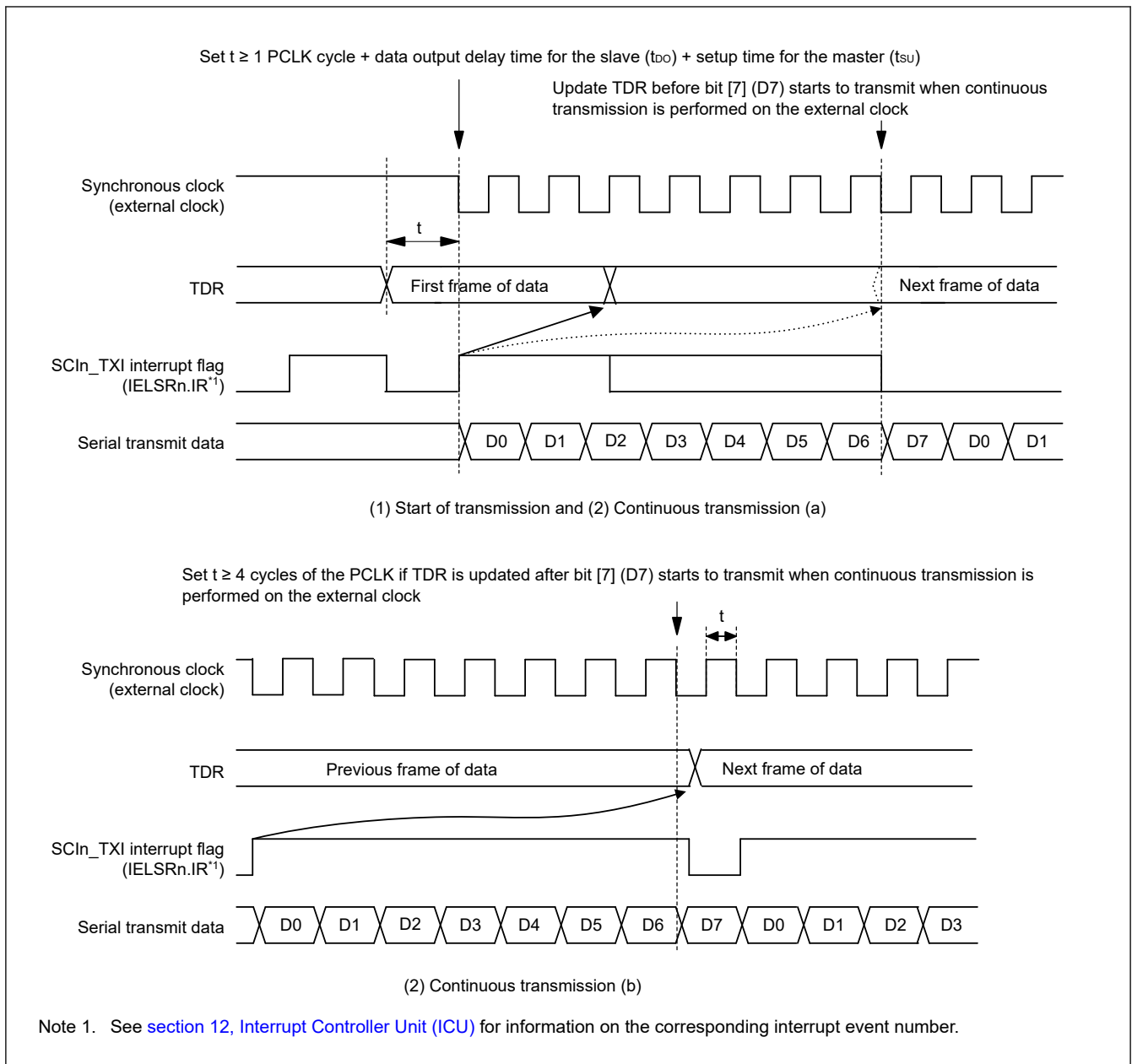


Figure 27.77 Restraints on use of external clock in clock synchronous transmission

27.14.7 Restrictions on Using DTC

During transmission or reception operations using the DTC, do not set transfer data for the DTC.

(1) Writing data to TDR (FTDRHL)

Non-FIFO selected

Data can be written to TDR and TDRHL. However, if new data is written to TDR or TDRHL when transmit data remains in TDR or TDRHL, the previous data in TDR and TDRHL is lost because it was not transferred to TSR yet. When using DTC, always write transmit data to TDR or TDRHL in the SCIn_TXI interrupt request handling routine.

FIFO selected

It is possible to write data to the FTDRH and FTDRL registers when SCR.TE is 1. Confirm the amount of writable data using the FDR.T[4:0] bits.

(2) Reading data from RDR (FRDRHL)

When using the DTC to read RDR and RDRHL, always set the receive data full interrupt (SCIn_RXI) as the activation source of the relevant SCI.

27.14.8 Notes on Starting Transfer

At the point where transfer starts when the interrupt status flag (IELSRn.IR flag) in the ICU is 1, follow the procedure in this section to clear interrupt requests before permitting operations (by setting the SCR/SCR_SMCI.TE or SCR/SCR_SMCI.RE bit to 1). For details on the interrupt status flag, see [section 12, Interrupt Controller Unit \(ICU\)](#).

1. Confirm that transfer has stopped (the SCR/SCR_SMCI.TE or SCR/SCR_SMCI.RE bit is 0)
2. Set the associated interrupt enable bit (SCR/SCR_SMCI.TIE or SCR/SCR_SMCI.RIE bit) to 0
3. Read the associated interrupt enable bit (SCR/SCR_SMCI.TIE or SCR/SCR_SMCI.RIE bit) to check that it actually becomes 0
4. Set the interrupt status flag, IELSRn.IR, in the ICU to 0

27.14.9 External Clock Input in Clock Synchronous Mode and Simple SPI Mode

In clock synchronous mode and simple SPI mode, the external clock SCKn must be input as follows:

High-pulse period, low-pulse period = 2 PCLK cycles or more, period = 6 PCLK cycles or more.

27.14.10 Limitations on Simple SPI Mode

(1) Master mode

- Use a resistor to pull up or pull down the clock line matching the initial settings for the transfer clock set in the SPMR.CKPH and CKPOL bits when the SPMR.SSE bit is 1.

This prevents the clock line from being placed in the high-impedance state when the SCR.TE bit is set to 0 or unexpected edges from being generated on the clock line when the SCR.TE bit changes from 0 to 1. When the SPMR.SSE bit is 0 in single master mode, pulling up or pulling down the clock line is not required because the clock line is not placed in the high-impedance state even when the SCR.TE bit is set to 0.

- For the clock delay setting (SPMR.CKPH bit is 1), the receive data full interrupt (SCIn_RXI) is generated before the final clock edge on the SCKn pin as indicated in [Figure 27.78](#). If the TE and RE bits in the SCR register become 0 before the final edge of the clock signal on the SCKn pin, the SCKn pin is placed in the high-impedance state, so the width of the last clock pulse of the transfer clock is shortened. Additionally, an SCIn_RXI interrupt might lead to the input signal on the SSn pin of a connected slave going to the high level before the final edge of the clock signal on the SCKn pin, leading to incorrect operation of the slave.
- In a multi-master configuration, the SCKn pin output goes to high-impedance while the input on the SSn pin is at the low level if a mode fault error occurs while a character is being transferred, stopping supply of the clock signal to the connected slave. Reset the connected slave to avoid misaligned bits when transfer is restarted.

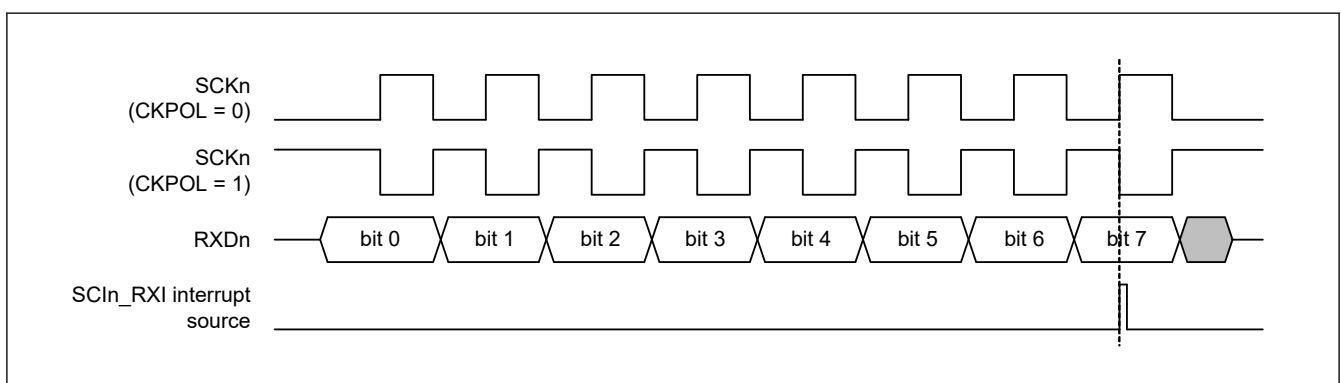


Figure 27.78 Timing of SCIn_RXI interrupt in simple SPI mode with clock delay

(2) Slave mode

- Wait at least the following time from writing transmit data in the TDR register to the start of the external clock input.
1 PCLK cycle + data output delay for the slave (t_{DO}) + setup time for the master (t_{SU})

Also wait at least 5 PCLK cycles from the input of the low level on the SSn pin to the start of the external clock input.

- Provide an external clock signal to the master the same as the data length for transfer
- Control the input on the SSn pin before the start and after the end of data transfer
- When the input level on the SSn pin is to be changed from low to high while a character is being transferred, set the TE and RE bits in the SCR register to 0 and, after restoring the settings, restart transfer of the first byte

27.14.11 Notes on Transmit Enable Bit (SCR.TE)

In the initial register value, when SCR.TE = 0, the state of the TXDn pin is high impedance. The TXDn line should not be high impedance by one of the following ways.

1. The pull-up resistance is connected to the TXDn line.
2. Before setting the SCR.TE bit to 0, the function of the pin should be changed to a general-purpose output port. After that, set the SCR.TE bit to 1, and then change the function of the pin to TXDn.
3. In asynchronous mode, set SPTR and the level of TXDn pin while SCR.TE = 0.

In the Simple SPI mode slave operation, the MISOn pin operates in the same way as the above TXDn pin. The MISOn pin, the same as the TXDn pin, should not be high impedance by the above list number 1 or list number 2.

27.14.12 Note on Stopping Reception When Using the RTS Function in Asynchronous Mode

One clock cycle of PCLK is required for the time from setting the SCR.RE bit to 0 to stopping the RTS signal generator in asynchronous mode.

When reading the RDR (or RDRL) register after setting the SCR.RE bit to 0, confirm that the RE bit has been set to 0 before reading the RDR (or RDRL) register to prevent these two processes from being performed consecutively.

28. I3C Bus Interface (I3C)

28.1 Overview

28.1.1 Functional Overview

The I3C bus interface (I3C) has one channel. The I3C module conform with and provide a subset of the NXP I²C (Inter-Integrated Circuit) bus interface functions and a subset of the MIPI I3C.

Table 28.1 lists the I²C specifications, and Table 28.2 lists the I3C specifications.

Table 28.1 I²C specifications

Item	Description
Operation mode	Master mode and slave mode selectable
Data handler	Single buffer transfer
Communication protocol	- I²C bus format - Standard-mode (Sm) : 0 to 100 kbps - Fast-mode (Fm) : 0 to 400 kbps - Fast-mode Plus (Fm+) : 0 to 1 Mbps - High-speed mode (Hs-mode) : 0 to 3 Mbps - SMBus format : 10 to 100 kbps
Address format	7-bit address 10-bit address
Address detection	- Slave address (static address) (max 3 addresses) - General call address - Hs-mode master code - Device ID - Host address 10-bit slave addressing
Clock stretching	Clock stretching capability
Noise-filter	Digital noise-filter
Interrupt source	- Rx data buffer full - Tx data buffer empty - START condition detection - STOP condition detection - Transmit end - NACK detection - Arbitration lost - Timeout detection
Error detection	- NACK received - Arbitration lost error - Timeout error
Event link output	- Communication event - Rx data buffer full event - Tx data buffer empty event - Transmit end event

Table 28.2 I3C specifications (1 of 2)

Item	Description
Operation mode	Master (main master/secondary master) mode and slave mode selectable
Data handler	- Master : - Normal FIFO buffer transfer - Slave : - Normal FIFO buffer transfer

Table 28.2 I3C specifications (2 of 2)

Item	Description
Communication protocol	• SDR (I3C single data rate) mode – Private message – Broadcast message (common command code) – Direct message (common command code) • Legacy I²C message – Fast-mode (Fm) : 0 to 400 kbps – Fast-mode Plus (Fm+) : 0 to 1 Mbps
In-band interrupt	• Slave interrupt request • Master ship request (secondary master only) • Hot-join event
Address format	7-bit address
Address detection	• Slave address (static address or dynamic address) • Broadcast address (0x7E)
Clock stalling	Clock stalling capability
Interrupt source	• Non-recoverable internal error • Transfer error • Transfer abort • Response queue full • Command queue empty • IBI status queue full • Receive data buffer full • Transmit data buffer empty • Receive status queue full • START condition detection • STOP condition detection • HDR exit pattern detection • Timeout detection
Error detection	• Non-recoverable internal error • CRC error • Parity error • Frame error • Address header error • Address NACKed or dynamic address assignment NACKed • Receive overflow or transfer underflow error • Aborted • NACK received for the I²C write data transfer • Timeout error
Event link output	• Communication event • Response buffer full event • Command buffer empty event • IBI Status buffer full event • Receive data buffer full event • Transmit data buffer empty event • Receive status buffer full event

Table 28.3 I3C I/O pins (n = 0)

Function	Pin name	I/O	Description
I3Cn	SCLn	I/O	Input/output pins for clock
	SDAn	I/O	Input/output pins for data

28.1.2 Block Diagram [I²C/I3C common]

Figure 28.1 shows the main components of this I3C.

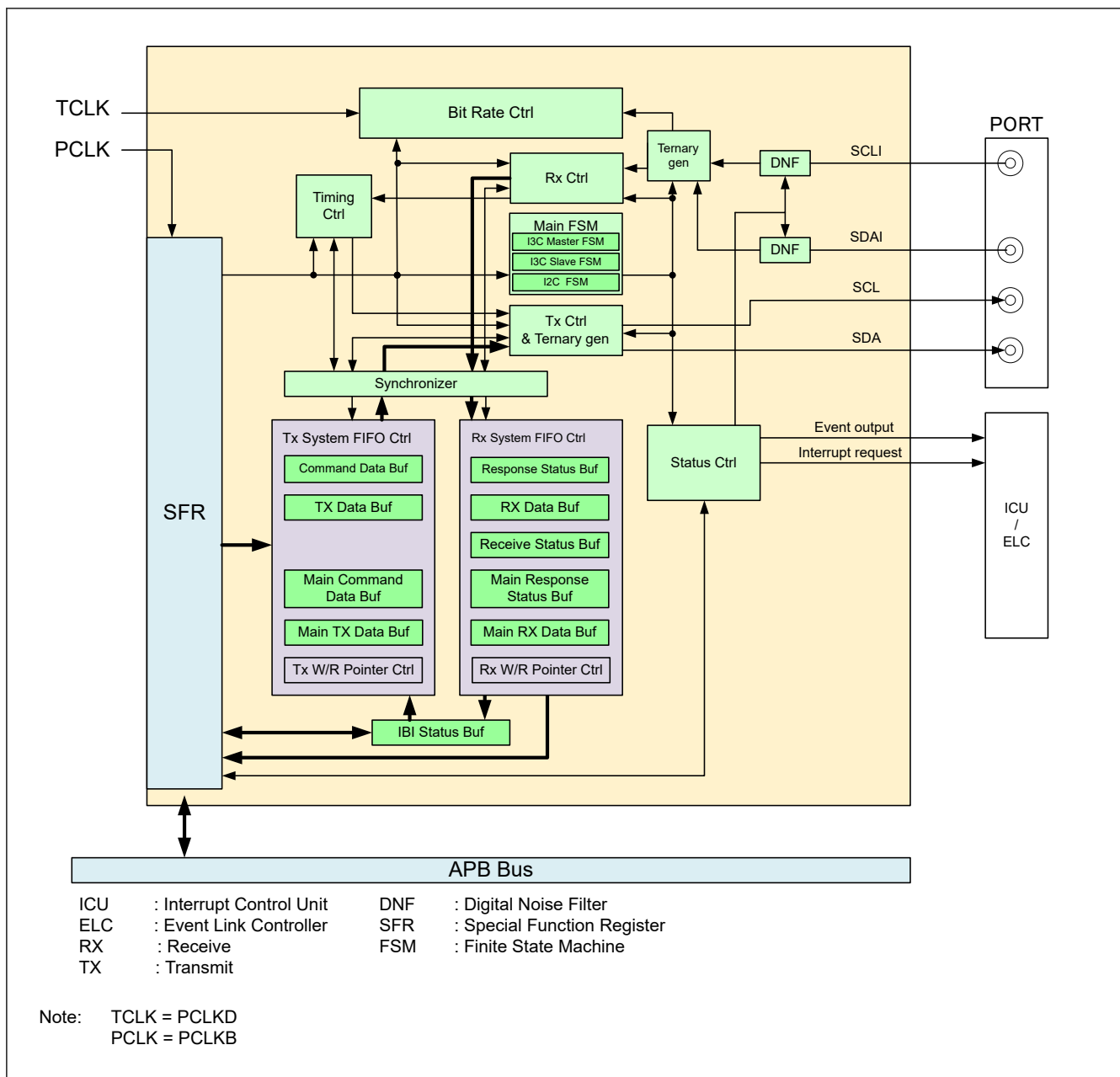


Figure 28.1 I3C block diagram

28.2 Registers

28.2.1 List of Registers

I3C registers are listed in the following table.

Table 28.4 List of I3C registers (1 of 3)

Register	Symbol	Offset address
Protocol Selection Register	PRTS	0x000
Bus Control Register	BCTL	0x014
Master Device Address Register	MSDVAD	0x018
Reset Control Register	RSTCTL	0x020
Present State Register	PRSST	0x024
Internal Status Register	INST	0x030

Table 28.4 List of I3C registers (2 of 3)

Register	Symbol	Offset address
Internal Status Enable Register	INSTE	0x034
Internal Interrupt Enable Register	INIE	0x038
Internal Status Force Register	INSTFC	0x03C
Device Characteristic Table Register	DVCT	0x044
IBI Notify Control Register	IBINCTL	0x058
Bus Function Control Register	BFCTL	0x060
Slave Control Register	SVCTL	0x064
Reference Clock Control Register	REFCKCTL	0x070
Standard Bit Rate Register	STDBR	0x074
Extended Bit Rate Register	EXTBR	0x078
Bus Free Condition Detection Time Register	BFRECDT	0x07C
Bus Available Condition Detection Time Register	BAVLCDT	0x080
Bus Idle Condition Detection Time Register	BIDLCDT	0x084
Output Control Register	OUTCTL	0x088
Input Control Register	INCTL	0x08C
Timeout Control Register	TMOCTL	0x090
Acknowledge Control Register	ACKCTL	0x0A0
SCL Stretch Control Register	SCSTRCTL	0x0A4
SCL Stalling Control Register	SCSTLCTL	0x0B0
Slave Transfer Data Length Register 0	SVTDLG0	0x0C0
Condition Control Register	CNDCTL	0x140
Normal Command Queue Port Register	NCMDQP	0x150
Normal Response Queue Port Register	NRSPQP	0x154
Normal Transfer Data Buffer Port Register 0 ^{*1}	NTDTBP0/ NTDTBP0_BY	0x158
Normal IBI Queue Port Register	NIBIQP	0x17C
Normal Receive Status Queueport Register	NRSQP	0x180
Normal Queue Threshold Control Register	NQTHCTL	0x190
Normal Transfer Data Buffer Threshold Control Register 0	NTBTHCTL0	0x194
Normal Receive Status Queue Threshold Control Register	NRQTHCTL	0x1C0
Bus Status Register	BST	0x1D0
Bus Status Enable Register	BSTE	0x1D4
Bus Interrupt Enable Register	BIE	0x1D8
Bus Status Force Register	BSTFC	0x1DC
Normal Transfer Status Register	NTST	0x1E0
Normal Transfer Status Enable Register	NTSTE	0x1E4
Normal Transfer Interrupt Enable Register	NTIE	0x1E8
Normal Transfer Status Force Register	NTSTFC	0x1EC
Bus Condition Status Register	BCST	0x210
Slave Status Register	SVST	0x214
Device Address Table Basic Register 0	DATBAS0	0x224
Device Address Table Basic Register 1	DATBAS1	0x22C

Table 28.4 List of I3C registers (3 of 3)

Register	Symbol	Offset address
Device Address Table Basic Register 2	DATBAS2	0x234
Device Address Table Basic Register 3	DATBAS3	0x23C
Extended Device Address Table Basic Register	EXDATBAS	0x2A0
Slave Device Address Table Basic Register 0	SDATBAS0	0x2B0
Slave Device Address Table Basic Register 1	SDATBAS1	0x2B4
Slave Device Address Table Basic Register 2	SDATBAS2	0x2B8
Master Device Characteristic Table Register 0	MSDCT0	0x2D0
Master Device Characteristic Table Register 1	MSDCT1	0x2D4
Master Device Characteristic Table Register 2	MSDCT2	0x2D8
Master Device Characteristic Table Register 3	MSDCT3	0x2DC
Slave Device Characteristic Table Register	SVDCT	0x320
Slave Device Characteristic Table Provisional ID Low Register	SDCTPIDL	0x324
Slave Device Characteristic Table Provisional ID High Register	SDCTPIDH	0x328
Slave Device Address Register 0	SVDVAD0	0x330
Slave Device Address Register 1	SVDVAD1	0x334
Slave Device Address Register 2	SVDVAD2	0x338
CCC Slave Events Command Register	CSECMD	0x350
CCC Enter Activity State Register	CEACTST	0x354
CCC Max Write Length Register	CMWLG	0x358
CCC Max Read Length Register	CMRLG	0x35C
CCC Enter Test Mode Register	CETSTMD	0x360
CCC Get Device Status Register	CGDVST	0x364
CCC Max Data Speed W (Write) Register	CMDSPW	0x368
CCC Max Data Speed R (Read) Register	CMDSPR	0x36C
CCC Max Data Speed T (Turnaround) Register	CMDSPT	0x370
CCC Exchange Timing Support Information M (Mode) Register	CETSM	0x374
Bit Count Register	BITCNT	0x380
Normal Queue Status Level Register	NQSTLV	0x394
Normal Data Buffer Status Level Register 0	NDBSTLV0	0x398
Normal Receive Status Queue Status Level Register	NRSQSTLV	0x3C0
Present State Debug Register	PRSTDBG	0x3CC
Master Error Counters Register	MSERRCNT	0x3D0

Note 1. 8-bit access is valid only in I2C mode.

28.2.2 PRTS : Protocol Selection Register

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x000

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	PRTMD
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	PRTMD	Protocol Mode 0: I3C protocol mode 1: I ² C protocol mode	R/W
31:1	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

PRTMD bit (Protocol Mode)

PRTMD = 0 : I3C FIFO buffer transfer (Equivalent to HCI)

PRTMD = 1 : I²C single buffer transfer

28.2.3 BCTL : Bus Control Register

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x014

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	BUSE	RSM	ABT	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	HJACKCTL	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	INCBA
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	INCBA	Include I3C Broadcast Address* ¹ 0: Do not include I3C broadcast address for private transfers 1: Include I3C broadcast address for private transfers	R/W
7:1	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
8	HJACKCTL	Hot-Join Acknowledge Control* ¹ 0: ACK the Hot-Join request 1: NACK and send broadcast CCC to disable Hot-Join	R/W
28:9	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
29	ABT	Abort* ¹ 0: I3C is running 1: I3C has aborted a transfer	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
30	RSM	Resume* ² Values when read: 0: I3C is running 1: I3C is suspended (RW1C)	R/W
31	BUSE	Bus Enable* ² 0: I3C bus operation is disabled 1: I3C bus operation is enabled	R/W

Note 1. This bit supports for I3C master mode and I3C secondary master mode.

Note 2. This bit supports for all I3C mode.

INCBA bit (Include I3C Broadcast Address)

This bit controls whether the I3C broadcast address (0x7E) is included for private transfers.

If the I3C broadcast address is not included for private transfers, then IBIs driven from Slaves might not win the arbitration, potentially delaying acceptance of the IBIs.

HJACKCTL bit (Hot-Join Acknowledge Control)

This bit acts as global control to either ACK (0) or NACK (1) all Hot-Join Requests arriving from the Devices on the I3C Bus. If set to NACK (1), then the NACK is followed by the broadcast CCC to disable Hot-Join.

ABT bit (Abort)

When set to 1, this bit allows I3C to relinquish control of the I3C bus before completing the currently issued transfer.

In response to an ABORT request, I3C issues the STOP condition on the I3C bus after the complete data byte is transferred or received.

The driver should clear the ABT bit to allow operation on the bus.

If BCTL.ABT is set and ABORT processing is performed, ignore ERR_STATUS of Response Descriptor.

RSM bit (Resume)

This bit is used to resume I3C operation following the Halt state.

I3C enters the Halt state (as indicated in register PRSTDBG) as a result of any type of error occurring in a transfer.

The error type is indicated by the field ERR_STATUS in register NRSPQP, NRSQP and NIBIQP).

After I3C has entered the Halt state, the application must write the value 1 to the RSM bit to resume I3C operation. I3C should auto-clear the RSM bit once it has resumed making transfers (it has initiated the next command).

BUSE bit (Bus Enable)

Enables or disables the operation on the I3C Bus by I3C.

Set the BUSE bit to 1 when using I3C. The SCL and SDA pins are placed in the active state when the BUSE bit is set to 1.

Set the BUSE bit to 0 when I3C is not to be used. The SCL and SDA pins are placed in the inactive state when the BUSE bit is set to 0.

If the software sets this bit, then it also confirms that initialization is done, and that I3C can use the programmed register values (for example, generation of SCL on IBI detection). If this bit is not set, then I3C should not generate SCL for incoming IBI.

Software may disable I3C bus operation while it is active, however:

- If a disable request occurs while receiving IBI, the actual disabling does not occur until reception of the IBI is complete.
- When the software reads the value 0 from this field, this indicates that I3C bus operation disable operation has completed.
If commands remain in the command queue, do not set BUSE = 0.

28.2.4 MSDVAD : Master Device Address Register

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x018

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22							16
Bit field:	MDYADV	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	MDYAD[6:0]							
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
15:0	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
22:16	MDYAD[6:0]	Master Dynamic Address	R/W
30:23	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
31	MDYADV	Master Dynamic Address Valid 0: The master dynamic address field is not valid 1: The master dynamic address field is valid	R/W

Note: This register supports for I3C master mode.

MDYAD[6:0] bits (Master Dynamic Address)

This field is used to program I3C master dynamic address. I3C uses this address to respond to master transactions in I3C interface mode (slave or secondary master role).

In I3C main master mode, the software should program the dynamic address as it self-assigns its dynamic address.

MDYADV bit (Master Dynamic Address Valid)

This bit indicates whether the value in the MDYAD field is valid.

In I3C main master mode, the user sets this bit to 1 as it self-assigns its dynamic address.

Note: After setting MSDVAD, and setting BCTL.BUSE = 1, the device acts as the main master.

Without setting MSDVAD, setting SVDCT.TBCR[7:6] = 00b (Device Role Slave), and setting BCTL.BUSE = 1, the device acts as a slave.

Without setting MSDVAD, setting MSDCTm.RBCR[7:6] = 01b (Device Role Master), and setting BCTL.BUSE = 1, the device acts as a slave.

28.2.5 RSTCTL : Reset Control Register

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x020

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	INTLRST
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	RSQRST	IBIQRST	RDBRST	TDBRST	RSPQRST	CMDQRST	RI3CRST
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	RI3CRST	I3C Software Reset 0: Release I3C reset 1: Initiate I3C reset	R/W
1	CMDQRST	Command Queue Software Reset* ¹ 0: The Command Queue in I3C is not flushed 1: The Command Queue in I3C is flushed	R/W
2	RSPQRST	Response Queue Software Reset* ¹ 0: The Response Queue in I3C is not flushed 1: The Response Queue in I3C is flushed	R/W
3	TDBRST	Transmit Data Buffer Software Reset* ¹ 0: The Transmit Queue in I3C is not flushed 1: The Transmit Queue in I3C is flushed	R/W
4	RDBRST	Receive Data Buffer Software Reset* ¹ 0: The Receive Queue in I3C is not flushed 1: The Receive Queue in I3C is flushed	R/W
5	IBIQRST	IBI Queue Software Reset* ¹ 0: The IBI Queue in I3C is not flushed 1: The IBI Queue in I3C is flushed	R/W
6	RSQRST	Receive Status Queue Software Reset* ² 0: The Receive Status Queue in I3C is not flushed 1: The Receive Status Queue in I3C is flushed	R/W
15:7	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
16	INTLRST	Internal Software Reset 0: Releases of some of the registers and internal state 1: Resets of some of the registers and internal state	R/W
31:17	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note 1. This bit supports for all I3C mode.

Note 2. This bit supports for I3C secondary master mode and I3C slave mode.

For details on reset for each register, see [section 28.6. Reset Descriptions](#).

RI3CRST bit (I3C Software Reset)

On Driver setting this bit to 1, I3C should be reset and disabled.

All registers should return to their reset values, and the software should reinitialize I3C.

This field is cleared automatically on I3C reset completion. This field also resets all Queues in I3C.

CMDQRST bit (Command Queue Software Reset)

On software setting this bit to 1, the Command Queues in I3C should be flushed.

This field should be cleared automatically on Command Queue reset completion.

RSPQRST bit (Response Queue Software Reset)

On software setting this bit to 1, the Response Queues in I3C should be flushed.

This field should be cleared automatically on Response Queue reset completion.

TDBRST bit (Transmit Data Buffer Software Reset)

On software setting this bit to 1, the Transmit Data Buffers in I3C should be flushed.

This field should be cleared automatically on Transmit Data Buffer reset completion.

RDBRST bit (Receive Data Buffer Software Reset)

On software setting this bit to 1, the Receive Data Buffers in I3C should be flushed.

This field should be cleared automatically on completion of Receive Data Buffer reset.

IBIQRST bit (IBI Queue Software Reset)

On software setting this bit to 1, the IBI Queues in I3C should be flushed.

This field should be cleared automatically on completion of IBI Queue reset.

RSQRST bit (Receive Status Queue Software Reset)

On software setting this bit to 1, the Receive Status Queues in I3C should be flushed.

This field should be cleared automatically on Receive Status Queue reset completion.

INTLRST bit (Internal Software Reset)

When set to 1, some of registers is reset. For details on the registers to be reset, see [section 28.6. Reset Descriptions](#).

Note: Programming this field while it contains a value of 1 may result in undefined behavior.

28.2.6 PRSST : Present State Register

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x024

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	PRSS TWP	—	—	TRMD	—	CRMS	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
1:0	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
2	CRMS	Current Master ^{*2} 0: The Master is not the Current Master, and must request and acquire bus ownership before initiating any transfer. 1: The Master is the Current Master, and as a result can initiate transfers.	R/W ^{*1}
3	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
4	TRMD	Transmit/Receive Mode ^{*3} 0: Receive mode 1: Transmit mode	R
6:5	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
7	PRSSTWP	Present State Write Protect ^{*2} 0: CRMS bit is protected. 1: CRMS bit can be written when writing simultaneously with the value of the target bit.	W
31:8	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note 1. When the PRSSTWP bit is set to 1, the CRMS bit can be written to.

Note 2. This bit supports for I²C, I3C master, and I3C secondary master mode.

Note 3. This bit supports for I²C mode.

CRMS bit (Current Master)

Indicates the set condition and reset condition of each operation mode.

Operation Mode [I²C/I3C common]

[Clearing conditions]

- When 1 written to the RSTCTL.RI3CRST by the software.
- When 1 written to the RSTCTL.INTLRST by the software.

- When 0 written to the PRSST.CRMS by the software.
- When STOP is issued.
- When Master Arbitration-Lost.

[Setting conditions]

- When 1 written to the PRSST.CRMS by the software.
- When START is issued.

Operation Mode [I3C Main Master]

[Clearing conditions]

- When 0 written to the MSDVAD.MDYADV by the software.
- When GETACCMST transmission is successfully completed by issuing STOP, after responding ACK to the Mastership-Request received from the Secondary Master.

[Setting conditions]

- When 1 written to the MSDVAD.MDYADV by the software.
- When GETACCMST reception is successfully completed by issuing STOP, after the ACK is responded to the Mastership-Request transmitted to the Secondary Master.

Operation Mode [I3C Secondary Master]

[Clearing condition]

- When GETACCMST transmission is successfully completed by issuing STOP, after responding ACK to the Mastership-Request received from the Non-Current Master.

[Setting condition]

- When GETACCMST reception is successfully completed by issuing STOP, after the ACK is responded to the Mastership-Request transmitted to the Current Master.

The PRSST register returns I3C current state.

State has two parts: this register which is mandatory, and an additional optional PRSST_DEBUG register intended for debug purposes (see the Debug Capability registers in the Extended Capabilities list).

TRMD bit (Transmit/Receive Mode*3)

This bit indicates the transmit or receive mode.

I3C is in receive mode when the TRMD bit is set to 0 and is in transmit mode when the bit is set to 1. The combination of this bit and the CRMS bit indicates the operating mode of I3C.

The value of TRMD bit is automatically changed to 1 for transmit mode or 0 for receive mode by issuing or detection of a START condition and setting of the R/W# bit.

[Setting conditions]

- When a START condition is issued normally according to the START condition issuance request (when a START condition is detected with the CNDCTL.STCND bit set to 1).
- When a Repeated START condition is issued normally according to the Repeated START condition issuance request (when a Repeated START condition is detected with the CNDCTL.SRCND bit set to 1).
- When the R/W# bit added to the slave address is set to 0 in master mode.
- When the address received in slave mode matches the address enabled in SVCTL, with the R/W# bit set to 1.

[Clearing conditions]

- When a STOP condition is detected.
- The ALF (arbitration-lost) flag in BST being set to 1.
- In master mode, reception of a slave address to which an R/W# bit with the value 1 is appended.

- In slave mode, a match between the received address and the address enabled in SVCTL when the value of the received R/W# bit is 0 (including cases where the received address is the general call address).
- In slave mode, a Repeated START condition is detected (a Repeated START condition is detected with BCST.BFREF = 0 and CRMS = 0).

PRSSTWP bit (Present State Write Protect)

PRSSTWP is always 0 when reading.

When writing to PRSST, writing 1 to this bit at the same time enables writing to CRMS bit.

28.2.7 INST : Internal Status Register

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x030

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	INEF	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
9:0	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
10	INEF	Internal Error Flag 0: I3C Internal Error has not detected. 1: I3C Internal Error has detected.	R/W ^{*1}
31:11	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note: This register supports for all I3C mode.

Note 1. Clearing (to 0) condition : Writing 0 after the 1 state is read.

The Interrupt Status register reflects the status of outstanding interrupt (s).

The status fields are either RW0C (write 0 to clear), or else are cleared based on queue operations.

INEF bit (Internal Error Flag)

When this bit is 1, it indicates that I3C Internal Error has detected.

When this bit is 0, it indicates that I3C Internal Error has not detected.

[Setting conditions]

- The following 1 is satisfied and any of the following 2 to 9 are satisfied.
 1. The INSTE.INEE bit = 1
 2. When transmit data is written to the Transmit Data Buffer that is completely full.
 3. When received data is read from the Receive Data Buffer that is completely empty.
 4. When Command Descriptor is written to the Command Queue that is completely full.
 5. When Response Descriptor is read from the Response Status Queue that is completely empty.
 6. When Receive Status Descriptor is read from the Receive Status Queue that is completely empty.
 7. When IBI Status Descriptor is read from the IBI Queue under the condition that the IBI Queue is completely empty and PRSST.CRMS = 1.
 8. When IBI Data is written to the IBI Queue under the condition that the IBI Queue is completely full and PRSST.CRMS = 0.
 9. When the Response Status Queue, IBI Status Queue or Receive Status Queue overflows.

[Clearing condition]

- When 0 is written to the INEF bit after reading INEF bit = 1.

28.2.8 INSTE : Internal Status Enable Register

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x034

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	INEE	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
9:0	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
10	INEE	Internal Error Enable 0: Disable INST.INEF 1: Enable INST.INEF	R/W
31:11	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note: This register supports for all I3C mode.

INEE bit (Internal Error Enable)

When this bit is set to 1, it enables detection of I3C internal error.

When this bit is set to 0, it disables detection of I3C internal error.

28.2.9 INIE : Internal Interrupt Enable Register

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x038

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	INEIE	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
9:0	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
10	INEIE	Internal Error Interrupt Enable 0: Disables Non-recoverable Internal Error Interrupt Signal. 1: Enables Non-recoverable Internal Error Interrupt Signal.	R/W
31:11	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note: This register supports for all I3C mode.

INEIE bit (Internal Error Interrupt Enable)

When set to 1 and register INEF is set, the hardware Controller asserts an interrupt to the Host.

28.2.10 INSTFC : Internal Status Force Register

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x03C

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	INEFC	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
9:0	—	The write value should be 0.	W
10	INEFC	Internal Error Force 0: Not force a specific interrupt 1: Force a specific interrupt	W
31:11	—	The write value should be 0.	W

Note: This register supports all I3C mode.

INEFC bit (Internal Error Force)

For debug, the INEFC bit helps to force a specific interrupt.

28.2.11 DVCT : Device Characteristic Table Register

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x044

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23					19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	IDX[4:0]				—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
18:0	—	These bits are read as 0.	R
23:19	IDX[4:0]	DCT Table Index Current index of the DCT, which is used as the starting index for the I3C ENTDAACCC.	R
31:24	—	These bits are read as 0.	R

Note: This register supports for I3C master mode and I3C secondary master mode.

IDX[4:0] bits (DCT Table Index)

Once the complete characteristics of device that won the arbitration are written to the DCT (during ENTDAAC using Address Assignment Command) this index is incremented by 1.

Note: How to check the progress of ENTDAAC using this bit:

1. Read the value of this bit before setting the Command Descriptor for issuing the ENTDAAC command.

2. After starting the ENTDA command, until the value of this bit is updated (that is, it changes from the value read in advance), it indicates that the Dynamic Address is being assigned to the device specified by the first index value (value set in DEV_INDEX[4:0] of Command Descriptor).
3. After the value of this bit is updated, it indicates that Dynamic Address is being assigned according to the value set in DEV_INDEX[4:0] and DEV_COUNT[3:0] of Command Descriptor to the device of the first index value or later.

28.2.12 IBINCTL : IBI Notify Control Register

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x058

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	NRSIR CTL	—	NRMR CTL	NRHJ CTL
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	NRHJCTL	Notify Rejected Hot-Join Control 0: Do not pass rejected IBI Status to IBI Queue, if the incoming HotJoin request is NACKed and is auto-disabled based on field HJACKCTL of BCTL. 1: Pass rejected IBI Status to the IBI Queue, if the incoming Hot Join request is NACKed and is auto-disabled based on field HJACKCTL of BCTL.	R/W
1	NRMRCTL	Notify Rejected Master Request Control 0: Do not pass rejected IBI Status to IBI Queue/Ring, if the incoming Master Request is NACKed and is auto-disabled based on DVMRRJ field in relevant DAT entry. 1: Pass rejected IBI Status to the IBI Queue, if the incoming Master Request is NACKed and is auto-disabled based on DVMRRJ field in relevant DAT entry.	R/W
2	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
3	NRSIRCTL	Notify Rejected Slave Interrupt Request Control 0: Do not pass rejected IBI Status to the IBI Queue/Rings, if the incoming SIR is NACKed and is auto-disabled based on DVSIRRJ field in relevant DAT entry. 1: Pass rejected IBI Status to the IBI Queue/Rings, if the incoming SIR is NACKed and is auto-disabled based on DVSIRRJ field in relevant DAT entry.	R/W
31:4	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note: This register supports for I3C master mode and I3C secondary master mode.

NRHJCTL bit (Notify Rejected Hot-Join Control)

Enables or disables reporting rejection of individual Hot Join requests.

NRMRCTL bit (Notify Rejected Master Request Control)

Enables or disables reporting rejection of individual Master Requests.

NRSIRCTL bit (Notify Rejected Slave Interrupt Request Control)

Enables or disables reporting rejection of individual Slave Interrupt Requests (SIR).

28.2.13 BFCTL : Bus Function Control Register

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x060

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	HSME	FMPE	—	SMBS	—	—	—	SCSYNE	—	—	—	—	—	SALE	NALE	MALE
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	MALE	Master Arbitration-Lost Detection Enable* ¹ 0: Master arbitration-lost detection disables. Disables the arbitration-lost detection function and does not clear the CRMS and TRMD bits in PRSST automatically when arbitration is lost. 1: Master arbitration-lost detection enables. Enables the arbitration-lost detection function and clears the CRMS and TRMD bits in PRSST automatically when arbitration is lost.	R/W
1	NALE	NACK Transmission Arbitration-Lost Detection Enable* ¹ 0: NACK transmission arbitration-lost detection disables. 1: NACK transmission arbitration-lost detection enables.	R/W
2	SALE	Slave Arbitration-Lost Detection Enable* ¹ 0: Slave arbitration-lost detection disables. 1: Slave arbitration-lost detection enables.	R/W
7:3	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
8	SCSYNE	SCL Synchronous Circuit Enable* ¹ 0: No SCL synchronous circuit uses. 1: An SCL synchronous circuit uses.	R/W
11:9	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
12	SMBS	SMBus/I ² C Bus Selection* ¹ 0: The I ² C bus select. 1: The SMBus select.	R/W
13	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
14	FMPE	Fast-mode Plus Enable* ¹ 0: No Fm+ slope control circuit uses for the SCLn pin and SDAn pin. (n = 0) 1: An Fm+ slope control circuit uses for the SCLn pin and SDAn pin. (n = 0)	R/W
15	HSME	High Speed Mode Enable* ¹ 0: Disable High Speed Mode. 1: Enable High Speed Mode.	R/W
31:16	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note 1. This bit supports for I²C mode.

MALE bit (Master Arbitration-Lost Detection Enable)

This bit is used to specify whether to use the arbitration-lost detection function in master mode. Normally, set this bit to 1.

NALE bit (NACK Transmission Arbitration-Lost Detection Enable)

This bit is used to specify whether to cause arbitration to be lost when ACK is detected during transmission of NACK in receive mode (such as when slaves with the same address exist on the bus or when two or more masters select the same slave device simultaneously with different number of receive bytes).

SALE bit (Slave Arbitration-Lost Detection Enable)

This bit is used to specify whether to cause arbitration to be lost when a value different from the value being transmitted is detected on the bus in slave transmit mode (such as when slaves with the same address exist on the bus or when a mismatch with the transmit data occurs due to noise).

SCSYNE bit (SCL Synchronous Circuit Enable)

This bit is used to specify whether to synchronize the SCL clock with the SCL input clock. Normally, set this bit to 1.

When the SCSYNE bit set to 0 (no SCL synchronous circuit used), I3C does not synchronize the SCL clock with the SCL input clock. In this setting, I3C outputs the SCL clock with the transfer rate set in STDBR and EXTBR regardless of the SCLn line state. For this reason, if the bus load of the I²C bus line is much larger than the specification value or if the SCL clock output overlaps in multiple masters, the short-cycle SCL clock that does not meet the specification may be output. When no SCL synchronous circuit uses, it also affects the issuance of a START condition, Repeated START condition, and STOP condition, and the continuous output of extra SCL clock cycles.

This bit must not be set to 0 except for checking the output of the set transfer rate.

FMPE bit (Fast-mode Plus Enable^{*1})

This bit is used to specify whether to use a slope control circuit for Fast-mode Plus [Fm+].

When this bit is set to 1, a slope control circuit conforming to the Fast-mode Plus [Fm+] slope control specification (tof) of the I3C-bus is selected. When this bit is set to 0, a slope control circuit conforming to the Standard-mode [Sm] and Fast-mode [fm] slope control specification (tof) of the I3C-bus is selected.

Set this bit to 1 when using the transmission rate within a range up to 1 Mbps (Fast-mode Plus [Fm+]) of the I3C-bus specification. Set this bit to 0 when using the transmission rate at other rates (up to 100 kbps [Sm], up to 400 kbps [Fm]) or for SMBus (10 to 100 kbps).

Note: When communicating in Hs-mode, set as follows.

- Set FMPE to 0 when sending Hs-mode master code (0000 1XXXb) with Fast-mode.
- Set FMPE to 1 when sending Hs-mode master code (0000 1XXXb) with Fast-mode Plus.

HSME bit (High Speed Mode Enable)

This bit is used for communicating in Hs-mode.

When this bit is set to 1, the Hs-mode master code is recognized and Hs-mode communication is possible.

After the START condition is detected, if Hs-mode master code (0000 1XXXb) transmission is recognized, Hs-mode communication starts from Repeated START after receiving the NACK response.

It communicates at the bit rate set in STDBR until the NACK response, and automatically switches from Repeated START condition issuance after receiving the NACK response to the bit rate set in EXTBR.

Hs-mode continues until a STOP condition is detected.

When the STOP condition is detected, the bit rate is automatically switched to the bit rate set in STDBR.

Note: When this bit is set to 1, the BST.NACKDF bit will not be set even if a NACK response is received after sending the Hs-mode master code.

28.2.14 SVCTL : Slave Control Register

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x064

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	SVAE2	SVAE1	SVAE0
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	HOAE	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	DVIDE	HSMCE	—	—	—	—	GCAE
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	GCAE	General Call Address Enable* ¹ 0: General call address detection disables. 1: General call address detection enables.	R/W
4:1	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
5	HSMCE	Hs-mode Master Code Enable* ¹ 0: Hs-mode Master Code Detection disables. 1: Hs-mode Master Code Detection enables.	R/W
6	DVIDE	Device-ID Address Enable* ¹ 0: Device-ID address detection disables. 1: Device-ID address detection enables.	R/W
14:7	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
15	HOAE	Host Address Enable* ¹ 0: Host address detection disables. 1: Host address detection enables.	R/W
16	SVAE0	Slave Address Enable 0* ² 0: Slave 0 disables 1: Slave 0 enables	R/W
17	SVAE1	Slave Address Enable 1* ² 0: Slave 1 disables 1: Slave 1 enables	R/W
18	SVAE2	Slave Address Enable 2* ² 0: Slave 2 disables 1: Slave 2 enables	R/W
31:19	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note 1. This bit supports for I²C mode.Note 2. These bits support for I²C, I3C secondary master, and I3C slave mode.**GCAE bit (General Call Address Enable)**

This bit is used to specify whether to ignore the general call address (0000 000 + 0 (write): All 0) when it is received. When this bit is set to 1, if the received slave address matches the general call address, I3C recognizes the received slave address as the general call address independently of the slave addresses set in the SVDVADn.SVAD[9:0] bits (n = 0 to 2) and performs data receive operation.

When this bit is set to 0, the received slave address is ignored even if it matches the general call address.

HSMCE bit (Hs-mode Master Code Enable)

This bit is used to specify whether to recognize and execute the Hs-mode master code (00001xxxb) is received in the first byte after a START condition is detected.

When this bit is set to 1, if the received first byte matches the Hs-mode master code, IIC recognizes that the Hs-mode master code has been received.

The first byte after Repeated START after NACK response to Hs-mode master code is recognized as a slave address and compared with the slave address set by SVDVADn.SVAD[9:0].

If the addresses match, the transmission / reception operation continues according to the R/W# bit value.

Hs-mode continues until a STOP condition is detected.

When this bit is set to 0, I3C will ignore the pattern until a STOP condition is detected, even if it matches the Hs-mode master code.

Note: When this bit is set to 1, SCSTRCTL.ACKTWE bit must be set to 0 and SCSTRCTL.RWE bit must be set to 1.

DVIDE bit (Device-ID Address Enable)

This bit is used to specify whether to recognize and execute the Device-ID address when a device ID (1111 100) is received in the first byte after a START condition or Repeated START condition is detected.

When this bit is set to 1, if the received first byte matches the Device-ID, I3C recognizes that the Device-ID address has been received. When the following R/W# bit is 0 (write), I3C recognizes the second and the following bytes as slave addresses and continues the receive operation.

When this bit is set to 0, I3C ignores the received first byte even if it matches the Device ID address and recognizes the first byte as a normal slave address.

For details on the Device-ID address detection, see [\(3\) Device ID address detection \[I²C mode\]](#).

HOAE bit (Host Address Enable)

This bit is used to specify whether to ignore received host address (0001 000) when the BFCTL.SMBS bit = 1.

When this bit is set to 1 while the SMBS bit = 1, if the received slave address matches the host address, I3C recognizes the received slave address as the host address independently of the slave addresses set in the SVDVADn.SVAD[9:0] bits (n = 0 to 2) and performs the receive operation.

When the SMBS bit or the HOAE bit is set to 0, the received slave address is ignored even if it matches the host address.

SVAEn bits (Slave Address Enable n)

These bits are used to enable or disable the slave address set in the SVDVADn.SVAD[9:0] bits.

When this bit is set to 1, the slave address set in the SVAD[9:0] bits is enabled and is compared with the received slave address.

When this bit is set to 0, the slave address set in the SVAD[9:0] bits is disabled and is ignored even if it matches the received slave address.

28.2.15 REFCKCTL : Reference Clock Control Register

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x070

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	0	
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	IREFCKS[2:0]		
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
2:0	IREFCKS[2:0] ^{*1}	Internal Reference Clock Selection Selects the internal reference clock source (I3C ϕ) for I3C. 0 0 0: PCLKD/1 clock 0 0 1: PCLKD/2 clock 0 1 0: PCLKD/4 clock 0 1 1: PCLKD/8 clock 1 0 0: PCLKD/16 clock 1 0 1: PCLKD/32 clock 1 1 0: PCLKD/64 clock 1 1 1: PCLKD/128 clock	R/W
31:3	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note 1. Set the IREFCKS[2:0] bit to 000 in I3C mode.

28.2.16 STDBR : Standard Bit Rate Register

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x074

Bit position:	31	30	29					24	23	22	21					16
Bit field:	DSBR PO	—						SBRHP[5:0]	—	—						SBRLP[5:0]
Value after reset:	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	1
Bit position:	15							8	7							0
Bit field:								SBRHO[7:0]								SBRLO[7:0]
Value after reset:	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7:0	SBRLO[7:0]	Count value of the Low-level period of SCL clock ^{*1}	R/W
15:8	SBRHO[7:0]	Count value of the High-level period of SCL clock ^{*1}	R/W
21:16	SBRLP[5:0]	Standard Bit Rate Low-level Period Push-Pull ^{*2} Count value of the low-level period of SCL clock	R/W
23:22	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
29:24	SBRHP[5:0]	Standard Bit Rate High-Level Period Push-Pull ^{*3} Count value of the high-level period of SCL clock	R/W
30	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
31	DSBRPO	Double the Standard Bit Rate Period for Open-Drain ^{*4} 0: The time period set for SBRHO[7:0] and SBRLO[7:0] is not doubled. 1: The time period set for SBRHO[7:0] and SBRLO[7:0] is doubled.	R/W

Note 1. These bits support for I²C, I3C master, and I3C secondary master mode.

Note 2. These bits support for I3C master mode and I3C secondary master mode.

Note 3. These bits support for all I3C mode.

Note 4. This bit supports for I²C, I3C master, and I3C secondary master mode.

The STDBR register sets the bit rate according to the operating speed.

- I²C mode: Bit rate setting when communicating with Standard-mode / Fast-mode / Fast-mode plus
- I3C master mode: Bit rate setting selected by mode bit of command descriptor
- I3C slave mode: I3C bit rate setting

The I²C transfer rate and the SCL clock duty are calculated using the following expression.

$$\text{Transfer rate} = 1 / \{[(\text{High-Level Period} + \alpha^{*1}) + (\text{Low-Level Period} + \alpha)] / \text{I3C}\phi^{*2} + \text{SCLn line rising time [tr]}^{*3} + \text{SCLn line falling time [tf]}^{*3}\}$$

$$\text{Duty cycle} = \{\text{SCLn line rising time [tr]} + (\text{High-Level Period} + \alpha) / \text{I3C}\phi\} / \{\text{SCLn line falling time [tf]} + (\text{Low-Level Period} + \alpha) / \text{I3C}\phi\}$$

Note 1. α depend on the number of stages in the noise filter.

Note 2. $I3C\phi = PCLKD \times \text{Division ratio}$

Note 3. The SCLn line rising time [tr] and SCLn line falling time [tf] depend on the total bus line capacitance [Cb] and the pull-up resistor [Rp]. For details, see the I²C-bus specification from NXP Semiconductors.

The I3C transfer rate and the SCL clock duty are calculated using the following expression.

Transfer rate = $1 / [(\text{High-Level Period} + \text{Low-Level Period}) / I3C\phi + \text{SCLn line rising time [tr]} + \text{SCLn line falling time [tf]}]$

Duty cycle = $[\text{SCLn line rising time [tr]} + \text{High-Level Period} / I3C\phi] / [\text{SCLn line falling time [tf]} + \text{Low-Level Period} / I3C\phi]$

SBRLO[7:0] bits (Count value of the Low-level period of SCL clock)

The SBRLO[7:0] bits are used to set the low-level period of SCL clock in Open-Drain mode.

I3C counts the low-level period with the internal reference clock source (I3C ϕ) specified by the REFCKCTL.IREFCKS[2:0] bits. It also works to generate the data setup time for automatic SCL low-hold operation (see [section 28.3.2.3.6. Clock Stretching \[I²C Mode\]](#)); when I3C is used in I²C slave mode, these bits need to be set to a value longer than the data setup time^{*1}.

If the digital noise filter is enabled (INCTL.DNFE = 1), set the SBRLO[7:0] bits to a value at least one greater than the number of stages in the noise filter. Regarding the number of stages in the noise filter, see the description of the INCTL.DNFS[3:0] bits.

Note 1. Data setup time (tSU: DAT)

250 ns (up to 100 kbps: Standard-mode [Sm])

100 ns (up to 400 kbps: Fast-mode [Fm])

50 ns (up to 1 Mbps: Fast-mode plus [Fm+])

10 ns (up to 3.4 Mbps: Hs-mode [HS])

SBRHO[7:0] bits (Count value of the High-level period of SCL clock)

The SBRHO[7:0] bits use to set the high-level period of SCL clock in Open-Drain mode. SBRHO[7:0] bits are valid in master mode. If I3C is used only in I²C slave mode, these bits need not to set the highlevel period.

I3C counts the high-level period with the internal reference clock source (I3C ϕ) specified by the REFCKCTL.IREFCKS[2:0] bits.

If the digital noise filter is enabled (the INCTL.DNFE bit = 1), set the SBRHO[7:0] bits to a value at least one greater than the number of stages in the noise filter. Regarding the number of stages in the noise filter, see the description of the INCTL.DNFS[3:0] bits.

SBRLP[5:0] bits (Standard Bit Rate Low-level Period Push-Pull)

SBRLP[5:0] bits are used to set the low-level period of SCL clock in Push-Pull.

I3C counts the low-level period with the internal reference clock source (I3C ϕ) specified by the REFCKCTL.IREFCKS[2:0] bits.

If the digital noise filter is enabled (the INCTL.DNFE bit = 1), set the SBRLP[5:0] bits to a value at least one greater than the number of stages in the noise filter. Regarding the number of stages in the noise filter, see the description of the INCTL.DNFS[3:0] bits.

SBRHP[5:0] bits (Standard Bit Rate High-Level Period Push-Pull)

SBRHP[5:0] bits is used to set the high-level period of SCL clock in Push-Pull mode.

SBRHP[5:0] bits are valid in master mode. If I3C is used only in I²C slave mode, these bits need not to set the highlevel period.

I3C counts the high-level period with the internal reference clock source (I3C ϕ) specified by the REFCKCTL.IREFCKS[2:0] bits.

If the digital noise filter is enabled (the INCTL.DNFE bit = 1), set the SBRHP[5:0] bits to a value at least one greater than the number of stages in the noise filter. Regarding the number of stages in the noise filter, see the description of the INCTL.DNFS[3:0] bits.

DSBRPO bit (Double the Standard Bit Rate Period for Open-Drain)

When DSBRO = 1, double the high-level period that is set in SBRHO[7:0] and double the low-level period that is set in SBRLO[7:0].

Table 28.5 Requirement and usage of setting in each mode

Bit name	Device mode				
	I ² C master	I ² C slave	I3C Master	I3C Secondary Master	I3C Slave
SBRHP[5:0]	Do not use	Do not use	Setting required ^{*3}	Setting required ^{*4}	do not use
SBRLP[5:0]	Do not use	Do not use	Setting required ^{*3}	Setting required ^{*5}	Do not use
SBRHO[7:0]	Setting required ^{*1}	Do not use	Setting required ^{*3}	Setting required ^{*5}	Do not use
SBRLO[7:0]	Setting required ^{*1}	Setting required ^{*2}	Setting required ^{*3}	Setting required ^{*5}	Do not use

Note 1. The setting value is used for the data rate of ST, FM, and FM+ mode.

Note 2. The setting value is used for the data setup time of automatic SCL low-hold operation.

Note 3. The setting value is used for the data rate of each communication.

Note 4. When operating with I3C Master, the setting value is used for the data rate of each communication.

Note 5. When operating with I3C Master, the setting value is used for the data rate of each communication.
When operating with I3C Slave, do not use.

28.2.17 EXTBR : Extended Bit Rate Register

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x078

Bit position: 31 30 29 24 23 22 21 16 15 8 7 0

Bit field:	—	—	EBRHP[5:0]	—	—	EBRLP[5:0]	EBRHO[7:0]	EBRLO[7:0]

Value after reset: 0 0 1 1 1 1 1 0 0 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7:0	EBRLO[7:0]	Extended Bit Rate Low-Level Period Open-Drain ^{*1} Count value of the low-level period of SCL clock	R/W
15:8	EBRHO[7:0]	Extended Bit Rate High-Level Period Open-Drain ^{*1} Count value of the high-level period of SCL clock	R/W
21:16	EBRLP[5:0]	Extended Bit Rate Low-Level Period Push-Pull ^{*2} Count value of the low-level period of SCL clock	R/W
23:22	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
29:24	EBRHP[5:0]	Extended Bit Rate Low-Level Period Push-Pull ^{*2} Count value of the high-level period of SCL clock	R/W
31:30	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note 1. These bits support for I²C, I3C master, and I3C secondary master mode.

Note 2. These bits support for I3C master mode and I3C secondary master mode.

The EXTBR register sets the bit rate according to the operating speed.

- I²C mode: Bit rate setting for communicating in high-speed mode
- I3C master mode: Bit rate setting selected by mode bit of command descriptor
- I3C slave mode: unused

EBRLO[7:0] bits (Extended Bit Rate Low-Level Period Open-Drain)

See SBRLO[7:0] bits of [section 28.2.16. STDBR : Standard Bit Rate Register](#) for details. Watch SBRHO, SBRLO as EBRHO[7:0], EBRLO[7:0].

EBRHO[7:0] bits (Extended Bit Rate High-Level Period Open-Drain)

See SBRHO[7:0] bits of [section 28.2.16. STDBR : Standard Bit Rate Register](#) for details. Watch SBRHO, SBRLO as EBRHO[7:0], EBRLO[7:0].

EBRLP[5:0] bits (Extended Bit Rate Low-Level Period Push-Pull)

See SBRLP[5:0] bits of [section 28.2.16. STDBR : Standard Bit Rate Register](#) for details. Watch SBRHP, SBRLP as EBRHP[5:0], EBRLP[5:0].

EBRHP[5:0] bits (Extended Bit Rate Low-Level Period Push-Pull)

See SBRHP[5:0] bits of [section 28.2.16. STDBR : Standard Bit Rate Register](#) for details. Watch SBRHP, SBRLP as EBRHP[5:0], EBRLP[5:0].

Table 28.6 Requirement and usage of setting in each mode

Bit name	Device mode				
	I ² C master	I ² C slave	I3C Master	I3C Secondary Master	I3C Slave
EBRHP[5:0]	Do not use	Do not use	Setting required ^{*2}	Setting required ^{*3}	Do not use
EBRLP[5:0]	Do not use	Do not use	Setting required ^{*2}	Setting required ^{*3}	Do not use
EBRHO[7:0]	Setting required ^{*1}	Do not use	Setting required ^{*2}	Setting required ^{*3}	Do not use
EBRLO[7:0]	Setting required ^{*1}	Setting required ^{*2}	Setting required ^{*2}	Setting required ^{*3}	Do not use

Note 1. The setting value is used for the data rate of High-Speed mode.

Note 2. The setting value is used for the data rate of each communication.

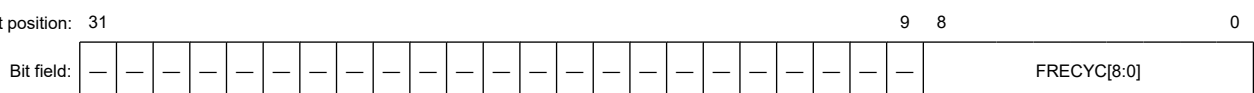
Note 3. When operating with I3C Master, the setting value is used for the data rate of each communication.
When operating with I3C Slave, do not use.

28.2.18 BFRECDT : Bus Free Condition Detection Time Register

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x07C

Bit position: 31



Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
8:0	FRECYC[8:0]	Bus Free Condition Detection Cycle The count value is a period for detecting the Bus free condition.	R/W
31:9	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

FRECYC[8:0] bits (Bus Free Condition Detection Cycle)

I3C counts the period for detecting the Bus free condition with the I3C ϕ .

These bits set the Bus Free period. This Bus Free period is counted by the internal reference clock (I3C_φ) selected by the REFCKCTL.IREFCKS[2:0] bits. See the BCST.BFREF flag for Bus Free detection behavior.

28.2.21 OUTCTL : Output Control Register

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x088

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10		8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	SDODCS	—	—	—	—	SDOD[2:0]		—	—	—	EXCYC	—	SOCWP	SCOC	SDOC	
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	SDOC	SDA Output Control ^{*1} 0: I3C drives the SDA _n pin low. 1: I3C releases the SDA _n pin.	R/W
1	SCOC	SCL Output Control ^{*1} High level output is achieved through an external pull-up resistor. 0: I3C drives the SCL _n pin low. 1: I3C releases the SCL _n pin.	R/W
2	SOCWP	SCL/SDA Output Control Write Protect ^{*1} 0: Bits SCOC and SDOC are protected. 1: Bits SCOC and SDOC can be written (When writing simultaneously with the value of the target bit). This bit is read as 0.	W
3	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
4	EXCYC	Extra SCL Clock Cycle Output ^{*3} The EXCYC bit is cleared automatically after one clock cycle is output. 0: Does not output an extra SCL clock cycle (default). 1: Outputs an extra SCL clock cycle.	R/W
7:5	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
10:8	SDOD[2:0]	SDA Output Delay ^{*2} 0 0 0: No output delay 0 0 1: 1 I3C ϕ cycle (When OUTCTL.SDODCS = 0 (I3C ϕ)) 1 or 2 I3C ϕ cycles (When OUTCTL.SDODCS = 1 (I3C ϕ /2)) 0 1 0: 2 I3C ϕ cycles (When OUTCTL.SDODCS = 0 (I3C ϕ)) 3 or 4 I3C ϕ cycles (When OUTCTL.SDODCS = 1 (I3C ϕ /2)) 0 1 1: 3 I3C ϕ cycles (When OUTCTL.SDODCS = 0 (I3C ϕ)) 5 or 6 I3C ϕ cycles (When OUTCTL.SDODCS = 1 (I3C ϕ /2)) 1 0 0: 4 I3C ϕ cycles (When OUTCTL.SDODCS = 0 (I3C ϕ)) 7 or 8 I3C ϕ cycles (When OUTCTL.SDODCS = 1 (I3C ϕ /2)) 1 0 1: 5 I3C ϕ cycles (When OUTCTL.SDODCS = 0 (I3C ϕ)) 9 or 10 I3C ϕ cycles (When OUTCTL.SDODCS = 1 (I3C ϕ /2)) 1 1 0: 6 I3C ϕ cycles (When OUTCTL.SDODCS = 0 (I3C ϕ)) 11 or 12 I3C ϕ cycles (When OUTCTL.SDODCS = 1 (I3C ϕ /2)) 1 1 1: 7 I3C ϕ cycles (When OUTCTL.SDODCS = 0 (I3C ϕ)) 13 or 14 I3C ϕ cycles (When OUTCTL.SDODCS = 1 (I3C ϕ /2))	R/W
14:11	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
15	SDODCS	SDA Output Delay Clock Source Selection ^{*3} 0: The internal reference clock (I3C ϕ) is selected as the clock source of the SDA output delay counter. 1: The internal reference clock divided by 2 (I3C ϕ /2) is selected as the clock source of the SDA output delay counter. ^{*4}	R/W
31:16	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note 1. This bit supports for I²C, I3C master, and I3C secondary master mode.Note 2. These bits support for I²C mode.

Note 3. This bit supports for I²C mode.

Note 4. The setting SDODCS = 1 (I3C ϕ /2) only becomes valid when SCL is at the low level. When SCL is at the high level, the setting SDODCS = 1 becomes invalid and the clock source becomes the internal reference clock (I3C ϕ).

SDOC bit (SDA Output Control) and SCOC bit (SCL Output Control)

These bits are used to directly control the SDA_n and SCL_n signals output from this module.

When writing to these bits, also write 1 to the SOCWP bit at the same time.

The result of setting these bits is input to I3C via the input buffer. When slave mode is selected, a START condition may be detected and the bus may be released depending on the bit settings.

Do not rewrite these bits during a START condition, STOP condition, Repeated START condition, or during transmission or reception. Operation after rewriting under the above conditions is not guaranteed.

EXCYC bit (Extra SCL Clock Cycle Output)

This bit is used to output an extra SCL clock cycle for debugging or error processing.

Normally, set the bit to 0. Setting the bit to 1 in a normal communication state causes a communication error.

For details on this function, see [section 28.3.2.3.9. Port Control, \(1\) Extra SCL clock cycle output function](#).

28.2.22 INCTL : Input Control Register

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x08C

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3			0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	DNFE	DNFS[3:0]			
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	1	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
3:0	DNFS[3:0]	Digital Noise Filter Stage Selection 0x0: Noise of up to one I3C ϕ cycle is filtered out (singlestage filter). 0x1: Noise of up to two I3C ϕ cycles is filtered out (2-stage filter). 0x2: Noise of up to three I3C ϕ cycles is filtered out (3-stage filter). 0x3: Noise of up to four I3C ϕ cycles is filtered out (4-stage filter). 0x4: Noise of up to five I3C ϕ cycles is filtered out (5-stage filter). : 0xF: Noise of up to sixteen I3C ϕ cycles is filtered out (16-stage filter).	R/W
4	DNFE	Digital Noise Filter Circuit Enable 0: No digital noise filter circuit is used. 1: A digital noise filter circuit is used.	R/W
5	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
7:6	—	These bits are read as 1. The write value should be 1.	R/W
31:8	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note: This register supports for I²C mode.

DNFS[3:0] bits (Digital Noise Filter Stage Selection)

These bits are used to select the number of stages in the digital noise filter.

For details on the digital noise filter function, see [section 28.3.2.5.3. Digital Noise-filter Circuits \[I²C Mode\]](#).

In I²C High Speed mode, the module changes the number of noise filter stage to a quarter of the number of noise filter stage automatically.

- Note:
- Set the noise range to be filtered out by the noise filter within a range less than the SCLn line high-level period or low-level period. If the noise range is set to a value of (SCL clock width: high-level period or lowlevel period, whichever is shorter) - [1.5 internal reference clock (I3C ϕ) cycles] or more, the SCL clock is regarded as noise by the noise filter function of I3C, which may prevent I3C from operating normally.
 - In I²C High Speed mode, the lower 2 bits of the DNFS [3:0] bits are ignored, and the number of filter stages for 1 to 4 stages is selected by the upper 2 bits.

28.2.23 TMOCTL : Timeout Control Register

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x090

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	TOMDS[1:0]	TOHCTL	TOLCTL	—	—	—	TODTS[1:0]	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
1:0	TODTS[1:0]	Timeout Detection Time Selection 0 0: 16-bit timeout 0 1: 14-bit timeout 1 0: 8-bit timeout 1 1: 6-bit timeout	R/W
3:2	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
4	TOLCTL	Timeout L Count Control 0: Count is disabled while the SCLn line is at a low level 1: Count is enabled while the SCLn line is at a low level	R/W
5	TOHCTL	Timeout H Count Control 0: Count is disabled while the SCLn line is at a high level 1: Count is enabled while the SCLn line is at a high level	R/W
7:6	TOMDS[1:0]	Timeout Operation Mode Selection 0 0: Timeout is detected during the following conditions: - The bus is busy (BCST.BFREF = 0) in master mode - I3C's own slave address is detected and the bus is busy in slave mode - The bus is free (BCST.BFREF = 1) while generation of a START condition is requested (CNDCTL.STCND = 1). 0 1: Timeout is detected while the bus is busy 1 0: Timeout is detected while the bus is free 1 1: Setting prohibited	R/W
31:8	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

TODTS[1:0] bits (Timeout Detection Time Selection)

These bits are used to select for the timeout detection time when the timeout function is enabled (BSTE.TODE bit = 1).

When these bits are set to 00b, the timeout detection internal counter functions as a 16-bit counter.

When these bits are set to 01b, the counter functions as a 14-bit counter.

When these bits are set to 10b, the counter functions as an 8-bit counter.

When these bits are set to 11b, the counter functions as a 6-bit counter.

While the SCLn line is in the state that enables this counter as specified by bits TOHCTL and TOLCTL, the counter counts up in synchronization with the internal reference clock (I3C ϕ) as a count source.

For details on the timeout function, see [section 28.3.2.4.3. Timeout Error Detection](#).

TOLCTL bit (Timeout L Count Control)

This bit is used to enable or disable the internal counter of the timeout function to count up while the SCLn line is held low when the timeout function is enabled (BSTE.TODE = 1).

TOHCTL bit (Timeout H Count Control)

This bit is used to enable or disable the internal counter of the timeout function to count up while the SCLn line is held high when the timeout function is enabled (BSTE.TODE = 1).

TOMDS[1:0] bits (Timeout Operation Mode Selection)

These bits are used to select the detection condition for timeout when the timeout function is enabled.

28.2.24 ACKCTL : Acknowledge Control Register

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x0A0

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	ACKT WP	ACKT	ACKR
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	ACKR	Acknowledge Reception 0: A 0 is received as the acknowledge bit (ACK reception). 1: A 1 is received as the acknowledge bit (NACK reception).	R
1	ACKT	Acknowledge Transmission 0: A 0 is sent as the acknowledge bit (ACK transmission). 1: A 1 is sent as the acknowledge bit (NACK transmission).	R/W
2	ACKTWP	ACKT Write Protect 0: The ACKT bit are protected. 1: The ACKT bit can be written (when writing simultaneously with the value of the target bit). This bit is read as 0.	W
31:3	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note: This register supports for I²C mode.

ACKR bit (Acknowledge Reception)

This bit is used to store the acknowledge bit information received from the receive device in transmit mode.

[Setting condition]

- When 1 is received as the acknowledge bit with the PRSST.TRMD bit set to 1.

[Clearing condition]

- When 0 is received as the acknowledge bit with the PRSST.TRMD bit set to 1.

ACKT bit (Acknowledge Transmission)

[Setting condition]

- When 1 is written to the ACKT bit and 1 is written to the ACKTWP bit at the same time.

[Clearing conditions]

- When 0 is written to the ACKT bit and 1 is written to the ACKTWP bit at the same time.

- When a STOP condition is detected. (when a STOP condition is detected with the CNDCTL.SPCND bit set to 1.)

Note: Set the ACKT bit to 0 in I²C Slave mode.

ACKTWP bit (ACKT Write Protect)

This bit is used to control the modification of the ACKT bit.

When changing the ACKT bit, setting this bit to 1 at the same time can change the ACKT bit.

When this bit is read, 0 is always read.

28.2.25 SCSTRCTL : SCL Stretch Control Register

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x0A4

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	RWE	ACKTWE
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	ACKTWE	Acknowledge Transmission Wait Enable 0: NTST.RDBFF0 is set at the rising edge of the ninth SCL clock cycle. (The SCLn line is not held low at the falling edge of the eighth clock cycle.) 1: NTST.RDBFF0 is set at the rising edge of the eighth SCL clock cycle. (The SCLn line is held low at the falling edge of the eighth clock cycle.) Low-hold is released by writing a value to the ACKCTL.ACKT bit.	R/W
1	RWE	Receive Wait Enable 0: No WAIT (The period between ninth clock cycle and first clock cycle is not held low.) 1: WAIT (The period between ninth clock cycle and first clock cycle is held low.) Low-hold is released by reading NTDTBP0.	R/W
31:2	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note: This register supports for I²C mode.

ACKTWE bit (Acknowledge Transmission Wait Enable)

This bit is used to select the NTST.RDBFF0 flag set timing in receive mode and also to select whether to hold the SCLn line low at the falling edge of the eighth SCL clock cycle.

When ACKTWE = 0, the SCLn line is not held low at the falling edge of the eighth SCL clock cycle, and the NTST.RDBFF0 flag is set to 1 at the rising edge of the ninth SCL clock cycle.

When ACKTWE = 1, the NTST.RDBFF0 flag is set to 1 at the rising edge of the eighth SCL clock cycle and the SCLn line is held low at the falling edge of the eighth SCL clock cycle. The low-hold of the SCLn line is released by writing a value to the ACKCTL.ACKT bit.

After data is received with this setting, the SCLn line is automatically held low before the acknowledgment bit is sent. This enables processing to send ACK (ACKCTL.ACKT = 0) or NACK (ACKCTL.ACKT = 1) according to receive data.

RWE bit (Receive Wait Enable)

This bit is used to control whether to hold the period between the ninth SCL clock cycle and the first SCL clock cycle low until the receive data buffer (NTDTBP0) is completely read each time single-byte data is received in receive mode.

When RWE = 0, the receive operation is continued without holding the period between the ninth and the first SCL clock cycle low. When both the ACKTWE and RWE bits = 0, continuous receive operation is enabled with the double buffer.

When $RWE = 1$, the SCL_n line is held low from the falling edge of the ninth clock cycle until the $NTDTBP0$ value is read each time single-byte data is received.

This enables receive operation in byte units.

Note: When the value of the RWE bit is to be read, be sure to read the $NTDTBP0$ beforehand.

28.2.26 SCSTLCTL : SCL Stalling Control Register

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x0B0

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	ACKP E	PARP E	TRAP E	AAPE	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15															0
Bit field:	STLCYC[15:0]															
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
15:0	STLCYC[15:0]	Stalling Cycle Counter setting of stall period (I3C ϕ cycle). Common use for each phase.	R/W
27:16	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
28	AAPE	Assigned Address Phase Enable Enable bit that allows stall by the first bit at address assignment 0: Does not stall the SCL clock during the address assignment phase. 1: Stall the SCL clock during address assignment phase.	R/W
29	TRAPE	Transition Phase Enable Enable bit that enables stall by transition bits during read transfer 0: Does not stall the SCL clock during the transition bit in read transfer. 1: Stall the SCL clock during the transition bit in read transfer.	R/W
30	PARPE	Parity Phase Enable Stall enable bit in parity bit period 0: Does not stall the SCL clock during the parity bit period. 1: Stall the SCL clock during the parity bit period.	R/W
31	ACKPE	ACK phase Enable Stall enable bit during ACK/NACK phase 0: Does not stall the SCL clock during the ACK/NACK phase. 1: Stall the SCL clock during the ACK/NACK phase.	R/W

Note: This register supports for I3C master mode and I3C secondary master mode.

When setting this register, follow Chapter 5.1.2.5 Master Clock Stalling of MIPI I3C Spec V1.0, and use it only when necessary because of its negative impacts on bus performance.

STLCYC[15:0] bits (Stalling Cycle)

These bits set the SCL stall period. The SCL stall period is counted by the internal reference clock (I3C ϕ). This is a counter common to the enable bits of each phase.

AAPE bit (Assigned Address Phase Enable)

The master can stall SCL during the low period of the first bit of the assigned address phase of the Enter Dynamic Address Assignment CCC command. It can gain time in assigning dynamic address to the device based on the BCR and DCR of the slave. However, because the Dynamic Address Assignment procedure sends the dynamic address set in the DATBASm register in sequence, it is not necessary to set this bit and it is prohibited.

TRAPE bit (Transition Phase Enable)

The T-Bit of the received data of I3C Read Transfer can be used for SCL stalling to avoid overflow of the received data FIFO. However, when the received data FIFO of the I3C master becomes full, SCL stalling is performed regardless of the setting of this bit, it is not necessary to set this bit and it is prohibited.

PARPE bit (Parity Phase Enable)

The parity bit of the transmission data of I3C write transfer can be used for SCL stalling to avoid underrun of the transmission data FIFO. However, when the transmission data FIFO of the I3C master becomes empty, SCL stalling is performed regardless of the setting of this bit, it is not necessary to set this bit and it is prohibited. It is necessary to set this bit when the I3C slave requires preparation time to receive data.

ACKPE bit (ACK phase Enable)

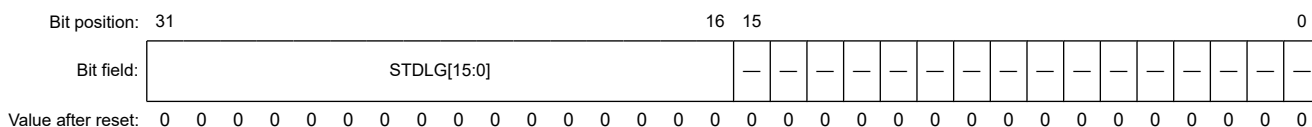
Determine the need to perform SCL stalling in the ACK/NACK phase based on the following criteria:

- It is necessary to set this bit when the I3C and I2C slaves connected to the bus require preparation time to receive or transmit data.
- In legacy I²C communication, if there is a possibility that the data FIFO of the I3C master might underrun or overflow, it is not necessary to set this bit because SCL Stalling is performed by FIFO Empty or Full regardless of the setting of this bit.
- Other than legacy I²C communication, the data FIFO of I3C master might underrun or overflow, and if SCL stalling is required in ACK phase, this bit can be set. However, it is necessary to build the software so that the FIFO does not underrun or overflow due to the interrupt generated according to the FIFO threshold setting (NQTHCTL, NTBTHCTL, NRQTHCTL).
- When I3C master responds ACK/NACK to IBI, it is not necessary to set this bit because ACK/NACK response can be set in advance by BCTL.HJACK, DATBASm.DVMRRJ and DATBASm.DVS IRRJ.
- It is necessary to set this bit when the I3C slave connected to the bus requires preparation time to transmit data for Direct GET CCC.

28.2.27 SVTDLG0 : Slave Transfer Data Length Register 0

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x0C0



Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
15:0	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
31:16	STDLG[15:0]	Slave Transfer Data Length Indicates the number of bytes to be transferred.	R/W

Note: This register supports for I3C secondary master mode and I3C slave mode.

28.2.28 CNDCTL : Condition Control Register

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x140

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	SPCND	SRCND	STCND
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	STCND	START (S) Condition Issuance 0: Does not request to issue a START condition. 1: Requests to issue a START condition.	R/W
1	SRCND	Repeated START (Sr) Condition Issuance 0: Does not request to issue a Repeated START condition. 1: Requests to issue a Repeated START condition.	R/W
2	SPCND	STOP (P) Condition Issuance 0: Does not request to issue a STOP condition. 1: Requests to issue a STOP condition.	R/W
31:3	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note: This register supports for I²C mode.

STCND bit (START (S) Condition Issuance)

This bit is used to request transition to master mode and issuance of a START condition.

For details on the START condition issuance, see [section 28.3.2.3.3. START Condition/Repeated START Condition/STOP Condition Issuing Function](#).

[Setting condition]

- When 1 is written to the STCND bit

[Clearing conditions]

- When 0 is written to the STCND bit
- When a START condition has been issued (A START condition is detected)
- When the BST.ALF (arbitration-lost) flag is set to 1

Note: Set the STCND bit to 1 (START condition issuance request) when the BCST.BFREF flag is set to 1 (bus free state).

Note that arbitration may be lost due to a START condition issuance error if the STCND bit is set to 1 (START condition issuance request) when the BFREF flag is set to 0 (bus busy state).

SRCND bit (Repeated START (Sr) Condition Issuance)

This bit is used to request that a Repeated START condition be issued in master mode.

When this bit is set to 1 to request to issue a Repeated START condition, a Repeated START condition is issued when the BFREF flag is set to 0 (bus busy state) and the PRSST.CRMS bit is set to 1 (master mode).

For details on the Repeated START condition issuance, see [section 28.3.2.3.3. START Condition/Repeated START Condition/STOP Condition Issuing Function](#).

[Setting condition]

- When 1 is written to the SRCND bit with the BCST.BFREF flag set to 0

[Clearing conditions]

- When 0 is written to the SRCND bit
- When a Repeated START condition has been issued (A Repeated START condition is detected)
- When the BST.ALF (arbitration-lost) flag is set to 1

Note: Do not set the SRCND bit to 1 while issuing a STOP condition.

Note: If 1 (requests to issue a Repeated START condition) is written to the SRCND bit in slave mode, the Repeated START condition is not issued but the SRCND bit remains set to 1.

If the operating mode changes to master mode with the bit not being cleared, note that the Repeated START condition may be issued.

SPCND bit (STOP (P) Condition Issuance)

This bit is used to request that a STOP condition be issued in master mode.

When this bit is set to 1 to request to issue a STOP condition, a STOP condition is issued when the BCST.BFREF flag is set to 0 (bus busy state) and the PRSST.CRMS bit is set to 1 (master mode).

For details on the STOP condition issuance, see [section 28.3.2.3.3. START Condition/Repeated START Condition/STOP Condition Issuing Function](#).

[Setting condition]

- When 1 is written to the SPCND bit with the BCST.BFREF flag set to 0 and the PRSST.CRMS bit set to 1

[Clearing conditions]

- When 0 is written to the SPCND bit
- When a STOP condition has been issued (A STOP condition is detected)
- When the BST.ALF (arbitration-lost) flag is set to 1
- When a START condition and a Repeated START condition are detected

Note: Writing to the SPCND bit is not possible while the setting of the BCST.BFREF flag = 1 (bus free state).

Note: Do not set the SPCND bit to 1 while a Repeated START condition is being issued.

28.2.29 NCMDQP : Normal Command Queue Port Register

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x150

Bit position: 31

0

Bit field:

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
31:0	n/a	Normal Command Queue Port	W

Note: This register supports for all I3C mode.

32-bit mailbox register NCMDQP contains a command descriptor structure that depends on the requested transfer type:

1. Address Assignment Command (see [section 28.3.1.1.1. Address Assign Command](#))
2. Immediate Data Transfer (see [section 28.3.1.1.2. Immediate Transfer Command](#))
3. Regular Data Transfer (see [section 28.3.1.1.3. Regular Transfer Command](#))
4. Write + Write/Read Combo Transfer (see [section 28.3.1.1.4. Combo Transfer Command](#))
5. Internal Control Command (see [section 28.3.1.1.5. Internal Control Command](#))

Within the command descriptor, DWORDs appear starting with the Least Significant DWORD, in order until the Most Significant DWORD.

28.2.30 NRSPQP : Normal Response Queue Port Register

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x154

Bit position: 31

0

Bit field:

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
31:0	n/a	Normal Response Queue Port	R

Note: This register supports for all I3C mode.

32-bit mailbox register NRSPQP contains a response structure (see [section 28.3.1.4. Receive Status Descriptor](#)).

28.2.31 NTDTBP0/NTDTBP0_BY : Normal Transfer Data Buffer Port Register 0

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x158

Bit position: 31

0

Bit field:

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
31:0	n/a	Normal Transfer Data Buffer Port NTDTBP0 is a 32-bit read/write register. NTDTBP0_BY (NTDTBP0[7:0]) is a 8-bit read/write register.	R/W

Note: NTDTBP0 is 32-bit access in I3C mode.

NTDTBP0_BY is 8-bit access in I2C mode.

32-bit mailbox register NTDTBP0 is a 32-bit bi-directional data transfer register which is used both to read from the Normal Receive Data Buffer, and to write to the Normal Transmit Data Buffer.

In other words, the Normal Receive Data Buffer and the Normal Transmit Data Buffer have the same offset, forming a single bidirectional port for transmitting or receiving I3C data.

Read Operations:

[I3C protocol mode]

Data Read from the Normal Receive Data Buffer. Its should be read based on Normal Queue Status Level indications. The Receive data is always aligned to a 4-byte boundary, and stored in the Normal Receive Data Buffer. If the length of the data transfer is not aligned to a 4-byte boundary, then there will be extra (unused) bytes at the end of the transferred data. The valid data must be identified using the DATA_LENGTH field in the Response Descriptor.

[I2C protocol mode]

When 1 byte of data has been received, the received data is transferred from the internal shift register to NTDTBP0 to enable the next data to be received. The double-buffer structure of the internal shift register and NTDTBP0 allows continuous receive operation if the received data has been read from NTDTBP0 while the internal shift register is receiving data. Read data from NTDTBP0 once when a receive data full interrupt (I3Cn_RX) request is generated. If NTDTBP0 receives the next receive data before the current data is read from NTDTBP0 (while the RDBFF0 flag in NTST is 1), this module automatically holds the SCL clock low one cycle before the RDBFF0 flag is set to 1 next. The lower 8 bits of the read 32-bit data are valid as received data.

Write Operations:

[I3C protocol mode]

Data Written to the Normal Tx Data Buffer. Data DWORDs written to the Normal Transmit Data Buffer are placed onto the I3C bus one byte at a time, with the DWORD LSB first. Within each byte, bits are placed onto the I3C bus in big-endian order, with bit 7 going out first on the bus. The transmit data should always start aligned to a 4-byte boundary, and written to the NTDTBP0 register. If the length of the transfer is not aligned to a 4-byte boundary, then there will be extra (unused) bytes at the end of the transferred data. I3C shall only send the valid number of bytes indicated in the DATA_LENGTH field of the Command Descriptor.

[I2C protocol mode]

When NTDTBP0 detects a space in the internal shift register, it transfers the transmit data that has been written to NTDTBP0 to the internal shift register and starts transmitting data in transmit mode. The double-buffer structure of NTDTBP0 and the internal shift register allows continuous transmit operation if the next transmit data has been written to NTDTBP0 while the internal shift register data is being transmitted. Write transmit data to NTDTBP0 once when a transmit data empty interrupt (I3Cn_TX) request is generated. The lower 8 bits of the written 32-bit data are valid as transmission data.

28.2.32 NIBIQP : Normal IBI Queue Port Register

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x17C

Bit position: 31

0

Bit field:

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
31:0	n/a	Normal IBI Queue Port	R/W

Note: This register supports for all I3C mode.

When receiving an IBI, 32-bit mailbox register NIBIQP is used for both:

- Read the IBI status descriptor (see [section 28.3.1.3. IBI Status Descriptor](#))
- Read the IBI data (which is raw/opaque data).

The IBI status descriptor is a read-only structure describing an IBI event received from a Slave device on the I3C bus.

Note: If the I3C HCI auto-read feature is used, then the IBI data includes the data received from the auto-generated private read operation.

Even if LAST_STATUS is set to 0, the driver software still evaluates the data payload length by examining the CHUNKS field.

28.2.33 NRSQP : Normal Receive Status Queue Port Register

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x180

Bit position: 31

0

Bit field:

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
31:0	n/a	Normal Receive Status Queue Port	R

Note: This register supports for I3C secondary master mode and I3C slave mode.

32-bit mailbox register NRSQP contains a receive status structure (see [section 28.3.1.4. Receive Status Descriptor](#)).

28.2.34 NQTHCTL : Normal Queue Threshold Control Register

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x190

Bit position:	31	24	23	16	15	8	7	0
Bit field:	IBIQTH[7:0]							CMDQTH[7:0]
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7:0	CMDQTH[7:0]	Normal Command Ready Queue Threshold* ¹ 0x00: Interrupt is issued when the Command Queue is completely empty Others: Interrupt is issued when the Command Queue contains N empties (N = CMDQTH[7:0])	R/W
15:8	RSPQTH[7:0]	Normal Response Queue Threshold* ¹ 0x00: Interrupt is issued when the Response Queue contains 1 entry (DWORD) Others: Interrupt is triggered when the Response Queue contains N + 1 entries (DWORD). (N = CMDQTH[7:0])	R/W
23:16	IBIDSSZ[7:0]	Normal IBI Data Segment Size* ² Supported Values: Minimum: 1 (4 bytes) Maximum: 63 (252 bytes), provided that the configured IBI Queue depth is 64 or more.	R/W
31:24	IBIQTH[7:0]	Normal IBI Queue Threshold* ¹ 0x00: I3C Protocol mode (Master): Interrupt is generated when the Outstanding IBI Status count is 1 or more. I3C Protocol mode (Slave): Interrupt is issued when IBI Data Buffer is completely empty. Others: I3C Protocol mode (Master): Interrupt is generated when the Outstanding IBI Status count is N + 1 or more (N = CMDQTH[7:0]) I3C Protocol mode (Slave): Interrupt is issued when IBI Data Buffer contains N empties.	R/W

Note: This register supports for I3C secondary master mode and I3C slave mode.

Note 1. These bits support for all I3C mode.

Note 2. These bits support for I3C master mode and I3C secondary master mode.

The Queue Threshold Control register controls the interrupt trigger thresholds for the Command Queue, the Response Queue, and the IBI Queue.

The specific reset values are indicative, and could be hardware implementation specific.

CMDQTH[7:0] bits (Normal Command Ready Queue Threshold)

Controls the minimum number of Command Queue empties needed to trigger the INTCMD interrupt.

If this field is greater than (Command Queue size – 1), then only the number of bits required to address the full buffer depth is considered.

Note: It is assumed that I3C has exactly one Command Queue, exactly one Response Queue, and exactly one IBI Queue.

RSPQTH[7:0] bits (Normal Response Queue Threshold)

Controls the minimum number of Response Queue entries needed to trigger the INTRESP interrupt.

If this field is greater than (Response Status Queue size – 1), then only the number of bits required to address the full buffer depth will be considered.

IBIDSSZ[7:0] bits (Normal IBI Data Segment Size)

This is the IBI data segment size, in DWORDs (4 bytes).

In PIO mode, this field allows the incoming IBI data to be sliced into multiple segments generating status individually, to support cut through readout of a long IBI payload data.

IBIQTH[7:0] bits (Normal IBI Queue Threshold)

For I3C protocol mode (Master): PRTS.PRTMD = 0 and PRSST.CRMS = 1.

Controls generation of the INTIBI interrupt, based on the value of the outstanding IBI status count of the IBI Queue.

Each IBI status entry can represent either the complete IBI payload (if the IBI payload byte size is $4 \times \text{IBIDSSZ}$ or less), or a segment of the IBI payload (if the IBI payload byte size is more than $4 \times \text{IBIDSSZ}$).

For I3C protocol mode (Slave) : PRTS.PRTMD bit = 0, PRSST.CRMS bit = 0.

Controls the minimum number of IBI Data Buffer empties needed to trigger the INTIBI interrupt.

If this field is greater than (IBI Data Buffer size – 1), then only the number of bits required to address the full buffer depth is considered.

28.2.35 NTBTHCTL0 : Normal Transfer Data Buffer Threshold Control Register 0

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x194

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	16	
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	RXSTTH[2:0]		—	—	—	—	—	TXSTTH[2:0]		
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	0	
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	RXDBTH[2:0]		—	—	—	—	—	TXDBTH[2:0]		
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
2:0	TXDBTH[2:0]	Normal Transmit Data Buffer Threshold*1 0 0 0: Interrupt triggers at 2 Tx Buffer empties, DWORDs 0 0 1: Reserved Others: Setting prohibited	R/W
7:3	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
10:8	RXDBTH[2:0]	Normal Receive Data Buffer Threshold*1 0 0 0: Interrupt triggers at 2 Rx Buffer entries, DWORDs 0 0 1: Reserved Others: Setting prohibited	R/W
15:11	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
18:16	TXSTTH[2:0]*3	Normal Tx Start Threshold*2 0 0 0: Wait for 2 DWORDs 0 0 1: Reserved Others: Setting prohibited	R/W
23:19	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
26:24	RXSTTH[2:0]*3	Normal Rx Start Threshold*2 0 0 0: Wait for 2 empty DWORDs 0 0 1: Reserved Others: Setting prohibited	R/W
31:27	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note 1. These bits support for all I3C mode.

Note 2. These bits support for I3C master mode and I3C secondary master mode.

Note 3. The RXSTTH[2:0] and TXSTTH[2:0] bits are only present in NTBTHCTL0.

The Data Buffer Control register controls the interrupt trigger thresholds for the Receive Data Buffer Queue and the Transmit Data Buffer Queue.

TXDBTH[2:0] bits (Normal Transmit Data Buffer Threshold)

Minimum number of Transmit FIFO empties, in DWORDs, that will trigger the INTTXn interrupt.

The software must program a value less than Transmit Data Buffer size in this register.

RXDBTH[2:0] bits (Normal Receive Data Buffer Threshold)

Minimum number of Receive FIFO entries in DWORDs that will trigger the INTRXn interrupt.

The software must program a value less than Receive Data Buffer size in this register.

TXSTTH[2:0] bits (Normal Tx Start Threshold)

When preparing to initiate a Write Transfer on the I3C Bus, I3C shall wait until the Transmit Buffer has at least the indicated number of locations available.

Two optional configurable Modes are available:

- ### 1. Store and Forward Mode

If the TXSTTH[2:0] field is set to the Transmit Buffer size, then I3C shall delay initiation of the Write Command as follows:

- If the data length to be transferred is more than the Transmit Buffer size, then this module shall wait until the Transmit FIFO is completely full.
- If the data length to be transferred is less than the Transmit Buffer size, then I3C shall wait until enough Transmit FIFO locations are available to store the data to be transferred.

- ## 2. Threshold Mode

If the TXSTTH[2:0] field value is less than the Transmit Buffer size, then I3C shall initiate the Write Command as soon as the indicated number of Transmit FIFO locations are entries.

RXSTTH[2:0] bits (Normal Rx Start Threshold)

When preparing to initiate a Read Transfer on the I3C bus, I3C shall wait until the Receive Buffer has at least the indicated number of empty locations in DWORDs.

Two optional configurable Modes are available:

1. **Store and Forward Mode** If the RXSTTH[2:0] field is set to the Receive Buffer size, then I3C shall delay initiation of the Read Command as follows:

- If the data length to be transferred is more than the Receive Buffer size, then this module shall wait until the Receive FIFO is completely empty.
- If the data length to be transferred is less than the Receive Buffer size, then I3C shall wait until enough Receive FIFO locations are available to store the data to be transferred.

- ## 2. Threshold Mode

If the RXSTTH[2:0] field value is less than the Receive Buffer size, then I3C shall initiate the Read Command as soon as the indicated number of Receive FIFO locations are empty.

28.2.36 NRQTHCTL : Normal Receive Status Queue Threshold Control Register

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x1C0

Bit position: 31

8 7

0

Bit field:

[illegible][illegible]

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7:0	RSQTH[7:0]	Normal Receive Status Queue Threshold 0x00: Interrupt is issued when Receive Status Queue contains 1 entry (DWORD). Others: Interrupt is triggered when Receive Status Queue contains N+1 entries (DWORD). (N = RSQTH[7:0])	R/W
31:8	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

RSQTH[7:0] bits (Normal Receive Status Queue Threshold)

Controls the minimum number of receive status queue entries needed to trigger the INTRCV interrupt.

If this field is greater than (Receive Status Queue size - 1), then only the number of bits required to address the full buffer depth will be considered.

28.2.37 BST : Bus Status Register

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x1D0

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	TODF	—	—	—	ALF
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	TEND F	—	—	—	NACK DF	—	HDRE XDF	SPCN DDF	STCN DDF
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	STCNDDF	START Condition Detection Flag 0: START condition is not detected 1: START condition is detected	R/W ^{*3}
1	SPCNDDF	STOP Condition Detection Flag 0: STOP condition is not detected 1: STOP condition is detected	R/W ^{*3}
2	HDREXDF	HDR Exit Pattern Detection Flag ^{*1} 0: HDR Exit Pattern Detection Interrupt does not occur 1: HDR Exit Pattern Detection Interrupt occurs	R/W ^{*3}
3	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
4	NACKDF	NACK Detection Flag ^{*2} 0: NACK is not detected 1: NACK is detected	R/W ^{*3}
7:5	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
8	TENDF	Transmit End Flag ^{*2} 0: Data is being transmitted 1: Data has been transmitted	R/W ^{*3}
15:9	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
16	ALF	Arbitration Lost Flag ^{*2} 0: Arbitration is not lost 1: Arbitration is lost	R/W ^{*3}
19:17	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
20	TODF	Timeout Detection Flag 0: Timeout is not detected 1: Timeout is detected	R/W ^{*3}
31:21	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note 1. This bit supports for all I3C mode.

Note 2. This bit supports for I²C mode.

Note 3. Clearing (to 0) condition: Writing 0 after 1 is read.

STCNDDF bit (START Condition Detection Flag)

[Setting conditions]

- All of the followings are satisfied:
 1. The BSTE.STCNDDE bit = 1.
 2. When a START condition (or a Repeated START condition) is detected.

[Clearing conditions]

- When 0 is written to the STCNDDF flag after reading STCNDDF flag = 1.
- When a STOP condition is detected.

SPCNDDF bit (STOP Condition Detection Flag)

[Setting conditions]

- All of the followings are satisfied:
 1. The BSTE.SPCNDDE bit = 1.
 2. When a STOP condition is detected.

[Clearing condition]

- When 0 is written to the SPCNDDF flag after reading SPCNDDF flag = 1.

HDREXDF bit (HDR Exit Pattern Detection Flag)

[Setting conditions]

- All of the followings are satisfied:
 1. The BSTE.HDREXDE bit = 1.
 2. When a HDR EXIT pattern is detected.

[Clearing condition]

- When 0 is written to the HDREXDF flag after reading HDREXDF flag = 1.

NACKDF bit (NACK Detection Flag)

[Setting conditions]

- All of the followings are satisfied:
 1. The PRTS.PRTMD bit = 1 (I²C protocol mode).
 2. The BSTE.NACKDE bit = 1 (Enables NACK detection interrupt status logging).
 3. When acknowledge is not received (NACK is received) from the receive device in transmit mode.

[Clearing condition]

- When 0 is written to the NACKDF flag after reading NACKDF flag = 1.

TENDF bit (Transmit End Flag)

[Setting conditions]

- All of the followings are satisfied:
 1. The PRTS.PRTMD bit = 1 (I²C protocol mode).
 2. The BSTE.TENDE bit = 1 (Enables Transmit End Interrupt Status logging).
 3. At the rising edge of the ninth SCL clock cycle while the NTST.TDBEF0 flag = 1.
Excluding when sending an address.

[Clearing conditions]

- When 0 is written to the TENDF flag after reading TENDF flag = 1.
- When data is written to the NTDTBP0 register.
- When a STOP condition is detected.

ALF bit (Arbitration Lost Flag)

[Setting conditions]

When master arbitration-lost detection is enabled: BSTE.ALE bit = 1, BFCTL.MALE = 1.

- When the internal SDA output state does not match the SDA line level at the rising edge of the SCL clock except for the ACK period during data (including slave address) transmission in master transmit mode (when the SDA line is driven low while the internal SDA output is at a high level (the SDA pin is in the high impedance state)).
- All of the followings are satisfied.
 1. When the START condition is detected while the CNDCTL.STCND bit = 1.
 2. When the internal SDA output state does not match the SDA line level.
- When the CNDCTL.STCND bit is set to 1 (START condition issuance request) while the BCST.BFREF flag = 0.

When NACK arbitration-lost detection is enabled: BSTE.ALE bit = 1, BFCTL.NALE = 1.

- When the internal SDA output state does not match the SDA line level at the rising edge of the SCL clock in the ACK period during NACK transmission in receive mode.

When slave arbitration-lost detection is enabled: BSTE.ALE bit = 1, BFCTL.SALE = 1.

- When the internal SDA output state does not match the SDA line level at the rising edge of the SCL clock except for the ACK period during data transmission in slave transmit mode.

[Clearing condition]

- When 0 is written to the ALF flag after reading ALF flag = 1.

TODF bit (Timeout Detection Flag)

[Setting conditions]

- All of the followings are satisfied.
 1. The BSTE.TODE bit = 1 (Enables Timeout Detection Interrupt Status logging).
 2. When the master mode or the received slave address matches the slave address n in Slave mode.
 3. When the SCL line state remains unchanged for the period specified by the TMOCTL register.

[Clearing condition]

- When 0 is written to the TODF flag after reading TODF flag = 1.

28.2.38 BSTE : Bus Status Enable Register

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x1D4

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	TODE	—	—	—	ALE
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	TEND E	—	—	—	NACK DE	—	HDRE XDE	SPCN DDE	STCN DDE
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	STCNDDE	START Condition Detection Enable 0: Disables START condition Detection Interrupt Status logging. 1: Enables START condition Detection Interrupt Status logging.	R/W
1	SPCNDDE	STOP Condition Detection Enable 0: Disables STOP condition Detection Interrupt Status logging. 1: Enables STOP condition Detection Interrupt Status logging.	R/W
2	HDREXDE	HDR Exit Pattern Detection Enable* ¹ 0: Disables HDR Exit Pattern Detection Interrupt Status logging. 1: Enables HDR Exit Pattern Detection Interrupt Status logging.	R/W
3	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
4	NACKDE	NACK Detection Enable* ² 0: Disables NACK Detection Interrupt Status logging. 1: Enables NACK Detection Interrupt Status logging.	R/W
7:5	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
8	TENDE	Transmit End Enable* ² 0: Disables Transmit End Interrupt Status logging. 1: Enables Transmit End Interrupt Status logging.	R/W
15:9	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
16	ALE	Arbitration Lost Enable* ² 0: Disables Arbitration Lost Interrupt Status logging. 1: Enables Arbitration Lost Interrupt Status logging.	R/W
19:17	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
20	TODE	Timeout Detection Enable 0: Disables Timeout Detection Interrupt Status logging. 1: Enables Timeout Detection Interrupt Status logging.	R/W
31:21	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note 1. This bit supports for all I3C mode.

Note 2. This bit supports for I²C mode.

STCNDDE bit (START Condition Detection Enable)

When this bit is 1, operation of BST.STCNDDE is enabled. For the setting conditions and clearing conditions of the BST.STCNDDE flag, see the details of BST.STCNDDE.

SPCNDDE bit (STOP Condition Detection Enable)

When this bit is 1, operation of BST.SPCNDDE is enabled. For the setting conditions and clearing conditions of the BST.SPCNDDE flag, see the details of BST.SPCNDDE.

HDREXDE bit (HDR Exit Pattern Detection Enable)

When this bit is 1, the operation of BST.HDREXDE is enabled. For the setting conditions and clearing conditions of the BST.HDREXDE flag, see the details of BST.HDREXDE.

NACKDE bit (NACK Detection Enable)

When this bit is 1, the operation of BST.NACKDE is enabled. This bit is used to specify whether to continue or discontinue the transfer operation when NACK is received from the slave device in transmit mode. Normally, set this bit to 1. For the setting conditions and clearing conditions of the BST.NACKDE flag, see the details of BST.NACKDE.

TENDE bit (Transmit End Enable)

When this bit is 1, the operation of BST.TENDE is enabled. For the setting conditions and clearing conditions of the BST.TENDE flag, see the details of BST.TENDE.

ALE bit (Arbitration Lost Enable)

When this bit is 1, the operation of BST.ALE is enabled. For the setting conditions and clearing conditions of the BST.ALE flag, see the details of BST.ALE.

TODE bit (Timeout Detection Enable)

When this bit is 1, the operation of BST.TODF is enabled. For the setting conditions and clearing conditions of the BST.TODF flag, see the details of BST.TODF.

28.2.39 BIE : Bus Interrupt Enable Register

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x1D8

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	TODIE	—	—	—	ALIE
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	TENDIE	—	—	—	NACKDIE	—	HDREXDIE	SPCNDIE	STCNDIE
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	STCNDIE	START Condition Detection Interrupt Enable 0: Disables START condition Detection Interrupt Signal. 1: Enables START condition Detection Interrupt Signal.	R/W
1	SPCNDIE	STOP Condition Detection Interrupt Enable 0: Disables STOP condition Detection Interrupt Signal. 1: Enables STOP condition Detection Interrupt Signal.	R/W
2	HDREXDIE	HDR Exit Pattern Detection Interrupt Enable* ¹ 0: Disables HDR Exit Pattern Detection Interrupt Signal. 1: Enables HDR Exit Pattern Detection Interrupt Signal.	R/W
3	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
4	NACKDIE	NACK Detection Interrupt Enable* ² 0: Disables NACK Detection Interrupt Signal. 1: Enables NACK Detection Interrupt Signal.	R/W
7:5	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
8	TENDIE	Transmit End Interrupt Enable* ² 0: Disables Transmit End Interrupt Signal. 1: Enables Transmit End Interrupt Signal.	R/W
15:9	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
16	ALIE	Arbitration Lost Interrupt Enable* ² 0: Disables Arbitration Lost Interrupt Signal. 1: Enables Arbitration Lost Interrupt Signal.	R/W
19:17	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
20	TODIE	Timeout Detection Interrupt Enable* ² 0: Disables Timeout Detection Interrupt Signal. 1: Enables Timeout Detection Interrupt Signal.	R/W
31:21	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note 1. This bit supports for all I3C mode.

Note 2. This bit supports for I²C mode.

The BIE register enables signaling of outstanding bus interrupts received by I3C.

STCNDIE bit (START Condition Detection Interrupt Enable)

This bit enables or disables the START Condition Detection interrupt requests when the BST.STCNDIE flag is set to 1.

SPCNDDIE bit (STOP Condition Detection Interrupt Enable)

This bit enables or disables the STOP Condition Detection interrupt requests when the BST.SPCNDDF flag is set to 1.

HDREXDIE bit (HDR Exit Pattern Detection Interrupt Enable)

This bit enables or disables the HDR Exit Pattern Detection interrupt requests when the BST.HDREXDF flag is set to 1.

NACKDIE bit (NACK Detection Interrupt Enable)

This bit enables or disables the NACK Detection interrupt requests when the BST.NACKDF flag is set to 1.

TENDIE bit (Transmit End Interrupt Enable)

This bit enables or disables the Transmit End interrupt (I3C_TEND) requests when the BST.TENDF flag is set to 1.

ALIE bit (Arbitration Lost Interrupt Enable)

This bit enables or disables the Arbitration Lost interrupt requests when the BST.ALFC flag is set to 1.

TODIE bit (Timeout Detection Interrupt Enable)

This bit enables or disables the Timeout Detection interrupt requests when the BST.TODF flag is set to 1.

28.2.40 BSTFC : Bus Status Force Register

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x1DC

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	TODF C	—	—	—	ALFC
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	TEND FC	—	—	—	NACK DFC	—	HDRE XDFC	SPCN DDFC	STCN DDFC
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	STCNDDFC	START condition Detection Force 0: Not Force START condition Detection Interrupt for software testing. 1: Force START condition Detection Interrupt for software testing.	W
1	SPCNDDFC	STOP condition Detection Force 0: Not Force STOP condition Detection Interrupt for software testing. 1: Force STOP condition Detection Interrupt for software testing.	W
2	HDREXDFC	HDR Exit Pattern Detection Force*1 0: Not Force HDR Exit Pattern Detection Interrupt for software testing. 1: Force HDR Exit Pattern Detection Interrupt for software testing.	W
3	—	This bit is read as 0.	R
4	NACKDFC	NACK Detection Force*2 0: Not Force NACK Detection Interrupt for software testing. 1: Force NACK Detection Interrupt for software testing.	W
7:5	—	These bits are read as 0.	R
8	TENDFC*3	Transmit End Force*2 0: Not Force Transmit End Interrupt for software testing. 1: Force Transmit End Interrupt for software testing.	W
15:9	—	These bits are read as 0.	R
16	ALFC	Arbitration Lost Force*2 0: Not Force Arbitration Lost Interrupt for software testing. 1: Force Arbitration Lost Interrupt for software testing.	W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
19:17	—	These bits are read as 0.	R
20	TODFC	Timeout Detection Force ^{*2} 0: Not Force Timeout Detection Interrupt for software testing. 1: Force Timeout Detection Interrupt for software testing.	W
31:21	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note 1. This bit supports for all I3C mode.

Note 2. This bit supports for I²C mode.

Note 3. TENDFC does not work unless TDBEF0 = 1.

28.2.41 NTST : Normal Transfer Status Register

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x1E0

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	RSQF F	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	TEF	—	—	—	TABTF	RSPQ FF	CMDQ EF	IBIQE FF	RDBF F0	TDBE F0
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	TDBEF0	Normal Transmit Data Buffer Empty Flag 0 ^{*1} 0: For I2C protocol mode: PRTS.PRTMD bit = 1. Normal Transmit Data Buffer 0 contains transmit data. For I3C protocol mode: PRTS.PRTMD bit = 0. The number of empties in the Normal Transmit Data Buffer 0 is less than the NTBTHCTL0.TXDBTH[2:0] threshold. 1: For I2C protocol mode: PRTS.PRTMD bit = 1. Normal Transmit Data Buffer 0 contains no transmit data. For I3C protocol mode: PRTS.PRTMD bit = 0. The number of empties in the Normal Transmit Data Buffer 0 is the NTBTHCTL0.TXDBTH[2:0] threshold or more.	R/W ^{*3}
1	RDBFF0	Normal Receive Data Buffer Full Flag 0 ^{*1} 0: For I2C protocol mode: PRTS.PRTMD bit = 1. Normal Receive Data Buffer0 contains no receive data. For I3C Protocol mode: PRTS.PRTMD bit = 0. The number of entries in the Normal Receive Data Buffer 0 is less than the NTBTHCTL0.RXDBTH[2:0] threshold. 1: For I2C protocol mode: PRTS.PRTMD bit = 1. Normal Receive Data Buffer0 contains receive data. For I3C Protocol mode: PRTS.PRTMD bit = 0. The number of entries in the Normal Receive Data Buffer 0 is the NTBTHCTL0.RXDBTH[2:0] threshold or more.	R/W ^{*3}

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
2	IBIQEFF	Normal IBI Queue Empty/Full Flag ^{*1} 0: For I3C protocol mode (Master): PRTS.PRTMD bit = 0, PRSST.CRMS bit = 1. The number of IBI Status Queue entries is the NQTHCTL.IBIQTH threshold or less. For I3C protocol mode (Slave): PRTS.PRTMD bit = 0, PRSST.CRMS bit = 0. If the NQTHCTL.IBIQTH = 0: The number of IBI Data Buffer empties is less than the IBI Data Buffer size. If the NQTHCTL.IBIQTH is other than 0: The number of IBI Data Buffer empties is less than the NQTHCTL.IBIQTH threshold. 1: For I3C protocol mode (Master): PRTS.PRTMD bit = 0, PRSST.CRMS bit = 1. The number of IBI Status Queue entries is more than the NQTHCTL.IBIQTH threshold. For I3C protocol mode (Slave): PRTS.PRTMD bit = 0, PRSST.CRMS bit = 0. If the NQTHCTL.IBIQTH = 0: The number of IBI Data Buffer empties is the IBI Data Buffer size. If the NQTHCTL.IBIQTH is other than 0: The number of IBI Data Buffer empties is the NQTHCTL.IBIQTH threshold or more.	R/W ^{*3}
3	CMDQEF	Normal Command Queue Empty Flag ^{*1} 0: If the NQTHCTL.CMDQTH = 0: The number of Command Queue empties is less than the Command Queue size. If the NQTHCTL.CMDQTH is other than 0: The number of Command Queue empties is less than the NQTHCTL.CMDQTH threshold. 1: If the NQTHCTL.CMDQTH = 0: The number of Command Queue empties is the Command Queue size. If the NQTHCTL.CMDQTH is other than 0: 1: The number of Command Queue empties is the NQTHCTL.CMDQTH threshold or more.	R/W ^{*3}
4	RSPQFF	Normal Response Queue Full Flag ^{*1} 0: The number of Response Queue entries is the NQTHCTL.RSPQTH threshold or less. 1: The number of Response Queue entries is more than the NQTHCTL.RSPQTH threshold.	R/W ^{*3}
5	TABTF	Normal Transfer Abort Flag ^{*1} 0: Transfer Abort does not occur. 1: Transfer Abort occur. To clear, write 0 to this bit after 1 state is read.	R/W ^{*3}
8:6	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
9	TEF	Normal Transfer Error Flag ^{*1} 0: Transfer Error does not occur. 1: Transfer Error occurs. To clear, write 0 to this bit after 1 state is read.	R/W ^{*3}
19:10	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
20	RSQFF	Normal Receive Status Queue Full Flag ^{*2} 0: The number of Receive Status Queue entries is the NRQTHCTL.RSQTH threshold or less. 1: The number of Receive Status Queue entries is more than the NRQTHCTL.RSQTH threshold.	R/W ^{*3}
31:21	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note 1. This bit supports for all I3C mode.

Note 2. This bit supports for I3C secondary master mode and I3C slave mode.

Note 3. Clearing (to 0) condition : Writing 0 after the 1 state is read.

TDBEF0 bit (Normal Transmit Data Buffer Empty Flag 0)

[Setting conditions]

For I²C Protocol mode: PRTS.PRTMD bit = 1.

The following condition 1 is satisfied and any of the following conditions 2 to 4 are satisfied:

1. The NTSTE.TDBEE0 bit = 1 (enables Tx0 Data Buffer Empty Interrupt Status logging).

2. When data has been transferred from the Normal Transmit Data Buffer 0 to the Shift Register and the Normal Transmit Data Buffer 0 becomes empty*1.
3. When the PRSST.TRMD bit is set to 1.
4. When the received slave address matches while the TRMD bit = 1.

For I3C Protocol mode: PRTS.PRTMD bit = 0.

The following conditions 1 and 2 are satisfied:

1. The NTSTE.TDBEE0 bit = 1 (enables Tx0 Data Buffer Empty Interrupt Status logging).
2. When the number of empties in the Normal Transmit Data Buffer 0 is the NTBTHCTL0.TXDBTH[2:0] threshold or more (see NTBTHCTL0 register).

[Clearing conditions]

For I²C Protocol mode: PRTS.PRTMD bit = 1.

- When data is written to NTDTBP0.
- When the TRMD bit in PRSST is set to 0.

For I3C protocol mode: PRTS.PRTMD bit = 0.

- Write 0 to this bit after 1 is read.
- On completion of the last write access to Normal Transmit Data by DTC.
- When the number of empties in the Normal Transmit Data Buffer 0 is less than the NTBTHCTL0.TXDBTH[2:0] threshold (see NTBTHCTL0 register).

Note 1. When the BST.NACKDF flag is set to 1 while the BSTE.NACKDE bit = 1, I3C aborts data transmission/reception. If the TDBEF0 flag = 0 (next transmit data has been written), data is transferred to the Shift Register and the Normal Transmit Data Buffer 0 register becomes empty at the rising edge of the 9th clock cycle, but the TDBEF0 flag is not set to 1.

RDBFF0 bit (Normal Receive Data Buffer Full Flag 0)

[Setting conditions]

For I²C Protocol mode: PRTS.PRTMD bit = 1.

The following condition 1 is satisfied and any of the following condition 2 or 3 is satisfied:

1. The NTSTE.RDBFE0 bit = 1 (enables Rx0 Data Buffer Full Interrupt Status logging).
2. When receive data is transferred from Shift Register to Normal Receive Data Buffer 0.
The RDBFF0 flag is set to 1 on the rising edge of the 8th or 9th SCL clock cycle (selected in the ACKTWE bit in SCSTRCTL).
3. When the received slave address matches after a START (or Repeated START) condition is detected with the TRMD bit in PRSST set to 0.

For I3C Protocol mode: PRTS.PRTMD bit = 0.

The following conditions 1 and 2 are satisfied:

1. The NTSTE.RDBFE0 bit = 1 (enables Rx0 Data Buffer Full Interrupt Status logging).
2. When the number of Normal Receive Data Buffer 0 entries is the NTBTHCTL0.RXDBTH[2:0] threshold or more (see NTBTHCTL0 register).

[Clearing conditions]

For I²C Protocol mode: PRTS.PRTMD bit = 1.

- When data is read from NTDTBP0.

For I3C Protocol mode: PRTS.PRTMD bit = 0.

- Write 0 to this bit after 1 is read.

- On completion of the last read access to Normal Receive Data by DTC.
- When the number of Normal Receive Data Buffer 0 entries is less than the NTBTHCTL0.RXDBTH[2:0] threshold (see NTBTHCTL0 register).

IBIQEFF bit (Normal IBI Queue Empty/Full Flag)

[Setting conditions]

The following 2 conditions are satisfied:

1. The NTSTE.IBIQEF bit = 1 (enables IBI Status Buffer Empty/Full Interrupt Status logging)
2. For I3C protocol mode (master): PRTS.PRTMD bit = 0, PRSST.CRMS bit = 1.
 - When the number of IBI Status Queue entries is more than the NQTHCTL.IBIQTH threshold (see NQTHCTL register).

For I3C protocol mode (slave) : PRTS.PRTMD bit = 0, PRSST.CRMS bit = 0.

If the NQTHCTL.IBIQTH = 0:

- When IBI Data Buffer is completely empty.

If the NQTHCTL.IBIQTH is other than 0:

- When the number of IBI Data Buffer empties is the NQTHCTL.IBIQTH threshold or more (see NQTHCTL register).

[Clearing conditions]

For I3C protocol mode (master): PRTS.PRTMD bit = 0, PRSST.CRMS bit = 1.

- Write 0 to this bit after 1 is read.
- On completion of the last read access to IBI Status by DTC.
- When the number of IBI Status Queue entries is the NQTHCTL.IBIQTH threshold or less (see NQTHCTL register).

For I3C protocol mode (slave): PRTS.PRTMD bit = 0, PRSST.CRMS bit = 0.

- Write 0 to this bit after 1 is read.
- On completion of the last write access to IBI Status by DTC.

If the NQTHCTL.IBIQTH = 0:

- When IBI Data Buffer is not completely empty.

If the NQTHCTL.IBIQTH is other than 0:

- When the number of IBI Data Buffer empties is less than the NQTHCTL.IBIQTH threshold (see NQTHCTL register).

CMDQEF bit (Normal Command Queue Empty Flag)

[Setting conditions]

The following 2 conditions are satisfied:

1. The NTSTE.CMDQEE bit = 1 (enables Command Buffer Empty Interrupt Status logging).
2. If the NQTHCTL.CMDQTH = 0:
 - When Command Queue is completely empty.

If the NQTHCTL.CMDQTH is other than 0:

- When the number of Command Queue empties is the NQTHCTL.CMDQTH threshold or more (see NQTHCTL register).

[Clearing conditions]

- Write 0 to this bit after 1 is read.
- On completion of the last write access to Normal Command by DTC.

If the NQTHCTL.CMDQTH = 0:

- When Command Queue is not completely empty.

If the NQTHCTL.CMDQTH is other than 0:

- When the number of Command Queue empties is less than the NQTHCTL.CMDQTH threshold (see NQTHCTL register).

RSPQFF bit (Normal Response Queue Full Flag)

[Setting conditions]

The following 2 conditions are satisfied:

1. The NTSTE.RSPQFE bit = 1 (enables Response Buffer Full Interrupt Status logging).
2. When the number of Response Queue entries is more than the NQTHCTL.RSPQTH threshold (see NQTHCTL register).

[Clearing conditions]

- Write 0 to this bit after 1 is read.
- On completion of the last read access to Normal Receive Status by DTC.
- When the number of Response Queue entries is the NQTHCTL.RSPQTH threshold or less (see NQTHCTL register).

TABTF bit (Normal Transfer Abort Flag)

[Setting conditions]

The following 2 conditions are satisfied:

1. The NTSTE.TABTE bit = 1 (enables Ttransfer Abort Interrupt Status logging).
2. When any transfer is aborted.

[Clearing condition]

- Write 0 to this bit after 1 is read.

TEF bit (Normal Transfer Error Flag)

[Setting conditions]

The following 2 conditions are satisfied:

1. The NTSTE.TEE bit = 1 (enables Ttransfer Error Interrupt Status logging).
2. When any transfer error occurs on the I3C bus. The Error type for this error is available in the Response or Receive Status structure corresponding to the Transfer command.

[Clearing condition]

- Write 0 to this bit after 1 is read.

RSQFF bit (Normal Receive Status Queue Full Flag)

[Setting conditions]

The following 2 conditions are satisfied:

1. The NTSTE.RSQFE bit = 1 (Normal Receive Status Queue Full Enable).
2. When the number of Receive Status Queue entries is more than the NRQTHCTL.RSQTH threshold (see NRQTHCTL register).

[Clearing conditions]

- Write 0 to this bit after 1 is read.
- On completion of the last read access to Normal Receive Status by DTC.
- When the number of Receive Status Queue entries is the NRQTHCTL.RSQTH threshold or less (see register NRQTHCTL).

28.2.42 NTSTE : Normal Transfer Status Enable Register

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x1E4

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	RSQFE	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	TEE	—	—	—	TABTE	RSPQFE	CMDQEE	IBIQEFE	RDBFE0	TDBEE0
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	TDBEE0	Normal Transmit Data Buffer Empty Enable 0 0: Disables Tx0 Data Buffer Empty Interrupt Status logging. 1: Enables Tx0 Data Buffer Empty Interrupt Status logging.	R/W
1	RDBFE0	Normal Receive Data Buffer Full Enable 0 0: Disables Rx0 Data Buffer Full Interrupt Status logging. 1: Enables Rx0 Data Buffer Full Interrupt Status logging.	R/W
2	IBIQEFE	Normal IBI Queue Empty/Full Enable*1 0: Disables IBI Status Buffer Empty/Full Interrupt Status logging. 1: Enables IBI Status Buffer Empty/Full Interrupt Status logging.	R/W
3	CMDQEE	Normal Command Queue Empty Enable*1 0: Disables Command Buffer Empty Interrupt Status logging. 1: Enables Command Buffer Empty Interrupt Status logging.	R/W
4	RSPQFE	Normal Response Queue Full Enable*1 0: Disables Response Buffer Full Interrupt Status logging. 1: Enables Response Buffer Full Interrupt Status logging.	R/W
5	TABTE	Normal Transfer Abort Enable*1 0: Disables Transfer Abort Interrupt Status logging. 1: Enables Transfer Abort Interrupt Status logging.	R/W
8:6	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
9	TEE	Normal Transfer Error Enable*1 0: Disables Transfer Error Interrupt Status logging. 1: Enables Transfer Error Interrupt Status logging.	R/W
19:10	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
20	RSQFE	Normal Receive Status Queue Full Enable*2 0: Disables Receive Status Buffer Full Interrupt Status logging. 1: Enables Receive Status Buffer Full Interrupt Status logging.	R/W
31:21	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note 1. This bit supports for all I3C mode.

Note 2. This bit supports for I3C secondary master mode and I3C slave mode.

TDBEE0 bit (Normal Transmit Data Buffer Empty Enable 0)

When this bit is 1, the operation of NTST.TDBEF0 is enabled.

For the setting conditions and clearing conditions of the NTST.TDBEF0 flag, see the details of NTST.TDBEF0.

RDBFE0 bit (Normal Receive Data Buffer Full Enable 0)

When this bit is 1, the operation of NTST.RDBFF0 is enabled.

For the setting conditions and clearing conditions of the NTST.RDBFF0 flag, see the details of NTST.RDBFF0.

IBIQEFE bit (Normal IBI Queue Empty/Full Enable)

When this bit is 1, the operation of NTST.IBIQEFF is enabled.

For the setting conditions and clearing conditions of the NTST.IBIQEFF flag, see the details of NTST.IBIQEFF.

CMDQEE bit (Normal Command Queue Empty Enable)

When this bit is 1, the operation of NTST.CMDQEF is enabled.

For the setting conditions and clearing conditions of the NTST.CMDQEF flag, see the details of NTST.CMDQEF.

RSPQFE bit (Normal Response Queue Full Enable)

When this bit is 1, the operation of NTST.RSPQFF is enabled.

For the setting conditions and clearing conditions of the NTST.RSPQFF flag, see the details of NTST.RSPQFF.

TABTE bit (Normal Transfer Abort Enable)

When this bit is 1, the operation of NTST.TABTF is enabled.

For the setting conditions and clearing conditions of the NTST.TABTF flag, see the details of NTST.TABTF.

TEE bit (Normal Transfer Error Enable)

When this bit is 1, the operation of NTST.TEF is enabled.

For the setting conditions and clearing conditions of the NTST.TEF flag, see the details of NTST.TEF.

RSQFE bit (Normal Receive Status Queue Full Enable)

When this bit is 1, the operation of NTST.RSQFF is enabled.

For the setting conditions and clearing conditions of the NTST.RSQFF flag, see the details of NTST.RSQFF.

28.2.43 NTIE : Normal Transfer Interrupt Enable Register

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x1E8

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	RSQFI E	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	TEIE	—	—	—	TABTI E	RSPQ FIE	CMDQ EIE	IBIQE FIE	RDBFI E0	TDBEI E0
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	TDBEIE0	Normal Transmit Data Buffer Empty Interrupt Enable 0 0: Disables Tx0 Data Buffer Empty Interrupt Signal. 1: Enables Tx0 Data Buffer Empty Interrupt Signal.	R/W
1	RDBFIE0	Normal Receive Data Buffer Full Interrupt Enable 0 0: Disables Rx0 Data Buffer Full Interrupt Signal. 1: Enables Rx0 Data Buffer Full Interrupt Signal.	R/W
2	IBIQEFIE	Normal IBI Queue Empty/Full Interrupt Enable*1 0: Disables IBI Status Buffer Empty/Full Interrupt Signal. 1: Enables IBI Status Buffer Empty/Full Interrupt Signal.	R/W
3	CMDQEIE	Normal Command Queue Empty Interrupt Enable*1 0: Disables Command Buffer Empty Interrupt Signal. 1: Enables Command Buffer Empty Interrupt Signal.	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
4	RSPQFIE	Normal Response Queue Full Interrupt Enable* ¹ 0: Disables Response Buffer Full Interrupt Signal. 1: Enables Response Buffer Full Interrupt Signal.	R/W
5	TABTIE	Normal Transfer Abort Interrupt Enable* ¹ 0: Disables Transfer Abort Interrupt Signal. 1: Enables Transfer Abort Interrupt Signal.	R/W
8:6	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
9	TEIE	Normal Transfer Error Interrupt Enable* ¹ 0: Disables Transfer Error Interrupt Signal. 1: Enables Transfer Error Interrupt Signal.	R/W
19:10	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
20	RSQFIE	Normal Receive Status Queue Full Interrupt Enable* ² 0: Disables Receive Status Buffer Full Interrupt Signal. 1: Enables Receive Status Buffer Full Interrupt Signal.	R/W
31:21	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note 1. This bit supports for all I3C mode.

Note 2. This bit supports for I3C secondary master mode and I3C slave mode.

The PIO Interrupt Signal Enable register enables signaling of outstanding interrupts received by I3C.

TDBEIE0 bit (Normal Transmit Data Buffer Empty Interrupt Enable 0)

This bit is used to enable or disable the Normal Tx Data buffer 0 empty interrupt (I3Cn_TX) requests when the NTST.TDBEF0 flag is set to 1.

RDBFIE0 bit (Normal Receive Data Buffer Full Interrupt Enable 0)

This bit is used to enable or disable the Normal Rx Data buffer 0 full interrupt (I3Cn_RX) requests when the NTST.RDBFF0 flag is set to 1.

IBIQEFIE bit (Normal IBI Queue Empty/Full Interrupt Enable)

This bit is used to enable or disable the Normal IBI Status buffer full interrupt (INTIBI) requests when the NTST.IBIQEFF flag is set to 1.

CMDQEIE bit (Normal Command Queue Empty Interrupt Enable)

This bit is used to enable or disable the Normal Command buffer empty interrupt (INTCMD) requests when the NTST.CMDQEF flag is set to 1.

RSPQFIE bit (Normal Response Queue Full Interrupt Enable)

This bit is used to enable or disable the Normal Response Status buffer full interrupt (INTRESP) requests when the NTST.RSPQFF flag is set to 1.

TABTIE bit (Normal Transfer Abort Interrupt Enable)

This bit is used to enable or disable the Normal Transfer Abort interrupt (INTABORT) requests when the NTST.TABTF flag is set to 1.

TEIE bit (Normal Transfer Error Interrupt Enable)

This bit is used to enable or disable the Normal Transfer Error interrupt (INTTERR) requests when the NTST.TEF flag is set to 1.

RSQFIE bit (Normal Receive Status Queue Full Interrupt Enable)

This bit is used to enable or disable the Normal Receive Status buffer full interrupt (INTRCV) requests when the NTST.RSQFF flag is set to 1.

28.2.44 NTSTFC : Normal Transfer Status Force Register

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x1EC

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	RSQF FC	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	TEFC	—	—	—	TABTF C	RSPQ FFC	CMDQ EFC	IBIQE FFC	RDBF FC0	TDBE FC0
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	TDBEFC0	Normal Transmit Data Buffer Empty Force 0 0: Not Force Tx0 Data Buffer Empty Interrupt for software testing. 1: Force Tx0 Data Buffer Empty Interrupt for software testing.	W
1	RDBFFC0	Normal Receive Data Buffer Full Force 0 0: Not Force Rx0 Data Buffer Full Interrupt for software testing. 1: Force Rx0 Data Buffer Full Interrupt for software testing.	W
2	IBIQEFFC	Normal IBI Queue Empty/Full Force*1 0: Not Force IBI Status Buffer Full Interrupt for software testing. 1: Force IBI Status Buffer Full Interrupt for software testing.	W
3	CMDQEFC	Normal Command Queue Empty Force*1 0: Not Force Command Buffer Empty Interrupt for software testing. 1: Force Command Buffer Empty Interrupt for software testing.	W
4	RSPQFFC	Normal Response Queue Full Force*1 0: Not Force Response Buffer Full Interrupt for software testing. 1: Force Response Buffer Full Interrupt for software testing.	W
5	TABTFC	Normal Transfer Abort Force*1 0: Not Force Transfer Abort Interrupt for software testing. 1: Force Transfer Abort Interrupt for software testing.	W
8:6	—	The write value should be 0.	W
9	TEFC	Normal Transfer Error Force*1 0: Not Force Transfer Error Interrupt for software testing. 1: Force Transfer Error Interrupt for software testing.	W
19:10	—	The write value should be 0.	W
20	RSQFFC	Normal Receive Status Queue Full Force*2 0: Not Force Receive Status Buffer Full Interrupt for software testing. 1: Force Receive Status Buffer Full Interrupt for software testing.	W
31:21	—	The write value should be 0.	W

Note 1. This bit supports for all I3C mode.

Note 2. This bit supports for I3C secondary master mode and I3C slave mode.

The PIO Interrupt Force register is used to force specific interrupt. It can be used for debug purposes.

TDBEFC0 bit (Normal Transmit Data Buffer Empty Force 0)

For software testing, when set to 1, forces the corresponding interrupt, subject to TDBEE0 and TDBEIE0 configuration.

RDBFFC0 bit (Normal Receive Data Buffer Full Force 0)

For software testing, when set to 1, forces the corresponding interrupt, subject to RDBFE0 and RDBFIE0 configuration.

IBIQEFFC bit (Normal IBI Queue Empty/Full Force)

For software testing, when set to 1, forces the corresponding interrupt, subject to IBIQEFE and IBIQEFIE configuration.

CMDQEFC bit (Normal Command Queue Empty Force)

For software testing, when set to 1, forces the corresponding interrupt, subject to CMDQEE and CMDQEIE configuration.

RSPQFFC bit (Normal Response Queue Full Force)

For software testing, when set to 1, forces the corresponding interrupt, subject to RSPQFE and RSPQFIE configuration.

TABTFC bit (Normal Transfer Abort Force)

For software testing, forces the corresponding interrupt, subject to TABTE and TABTIE configuration.

TEFC bit (Normal Transfer Error Force)

For software testing, when set to 1, forces the corresponding interrupt, subject to TEE and TEIE configuration.

RSQFFC bit (Normal Receive Status Queue Full Force)

For software testing, when set to 1, forces the corresponding interrupt, subject to RSQFE and RSQFIE configuration.

28.2.45 BCST : Bus Condition Status Register

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x210

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	BIDLF	BAVLF	BFREF
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	BFREF	Bus Free Detection Flag 0: Have not Detected Bus Free 1: Have Detected Bus Free	R
1	BAVLF	Bus Available Detection Flag*1 0: Have not Detected Bus Available 1: Have Detected Bus Available	R
2	BIDLF	Bus Idle Detection Flag*1 0: Have not Detected Bus Idle 1: Have Detected Bus Idle	R
31:3	—	These bits are read as 0.	R

Note 1. This bit supports for all I3C mode.

BFREF bit (Bus Free Detection Flag)

The Bus Free Condition is a period occurring after a STOP and before a START, and with the following duration:

- For Pure Bus: A duration of at least tCAS
- For Mixed Bus (at least one Legacy I²C is present on the I3C Bus): A duration of at least tBUF

[Setting conditions]

- After a STOP condition is detected, when the number of cycles (I3Cφ) that are set by BFRECDT.FRECYC[8:0] has passed in the state of SCL = SDA = 1.
- After setting BCTL.BUSE to 1, when the number of cycles (I3Cφ) that are set by BFRECDT.FRECYC[8:0] has passed in the state of SCL = SDA = 1.

[Clearing conditions]

- When SCL and SDA are other than high.
- When the BCTL.BUSE bit is set to 0.

BAVLF bit (Bus Available Detection Flag)

The Bus Available Condition is a period during which the Bus Free Condition is sustained continuously for a duration of at least tAVAL. A Slave can only issue a START Request (for an In-Band Interrupt, or for a Master Handoff Request) after a Bus Available Condition.

[Setting conditions]

- After a STOP condition is detected, when the number of cycles (I3C ϕ) that are set by BAVLCDT.AVLCYC[8:0] has passed in the state of SCL = SDA = 1.
- After setting BCTL.BUSE to 1, when the number of cycles (I3C ϕ) that are set by BAVLCDT.AVLCYC[8:0] has passed in the state of SCL = SDA = 1.

[Clearing conditions]

- When SCL and SDA are other than high.
- When the BCTL.BUSE bit is set to 0.

BIDLF bit (Bus Idle Detection Flag)

The I3C Bus Idle Condition is in order to help ensure Bus stability during Hot-Join events. The Bus Idle Condition is a period during which the Bus Available Condition is sustained continuously for a duration of at least tIDLE.

If a Hot-Join Device is powered up onto the I3C Bus at the same time as the Main Master, then the Hot-Join Device may pull SDA Low after 1 ms if (1) the Main Master has SCL and SDA pulled up, and (2) the Master does not act on the I3C Bus within the same Idle period.

[Setting conditions]

- After a STOP condition is detected, when the number of cycles (I3C ϕ) that are set by BIDLCDT.IDLCYC[17:0] has passed in the state of SCL = SDA = 1.
- After setting BCTL.BUSE to 1, when the number of cycles (I3C ϕ) that are set by BIDLCDT.IDLCYC[17:0] has passed in the state of SCL = SDA = 1.

[Clearing conditions]

- When SCL and SDA are other than high.
- When the BCTL.BUSE bit is set to 0.

28.2.46 SVST : Slave Status Register

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x214

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	SVAF2	SVAF1	SVAF0
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	HOAF	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	DVIDF	HSMC F	—	—	—	—	GCAF
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	GCAF	General Call Address Detection Flag 0: General call address does not detect. 1: General call address detects.	R/W ¹

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
4:1	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
5	HSMCF	Hs-mode Master Code Detection Flag 0: Hs-mode Master Code does not detect. 1: Hs-mode Master Code detects.	R/W ^{*1}
6	DVIDF	Device-ID Address Detection Flag 0: Device-ID command does not detect. 1: Device-ID command detects. • This bit set to 1 when the first frame received immediately after a START condition is detected matches a value of (device ID (1111 100) + 0[W]).	R/W ^{*1}
14:7	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
15	HOAF	Host Address Detection Flag 0: Host address does not detect. 1: Host address detects. • This bit set to 1 when the received slave address matches the host address (0001 000).	R/W ^{*1}
16	SVAF0	Slave Address Detection Flag 0 0: Slave 0 does not detect 1: Slave 0 detect	R/W ^{*1}
17	SVAF1	Slave Address Detection Flag 1 0: Slave 1 does not detect 1: Slave 1 detect	R/W ^{*1}
18	SVAF2	Slave Address Detection Flag 2 0: Slave 2 does not detect 1: Slave 2 detect	R/W ^{*1}
31:19	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note: This register supports for I²C mode.

Note 1. Clearing (to 0) condition : Writing 0 after the 1 state is read.

GCAF flag (General Call Address Detection Flag)

[Setting conditions]

- This flag is set to 1 at the rising edge of the ninth SCL clock cycle in the first byte when all of the followings are satisfied.
 1. The SVCTL.GCAE bit = 1 (General call address detection is enabled).
 2. When the received slave address matches the general call address (0000 000 + 0 (write)).

[Clearing conditions]

- When 0 is written to the GCAF flag after reading GCAF flag to be 1.
- When a STOP condition is detected.
- When a Repeated START condition is detected.

HSMCF flag (Hs-mode Master Code Detection Flag)

[Setting conditions]

- This flag is set to 1 at the rising edge of the ninth SCL clock cycle in the first byte when all of the followings are satisfied.
 1. The SVCTL.HSMCE bit = 1 (Hs-mode master code detection is enabled).
 2. When the first byte received immediately after a START condition is detected matches a value of Hs-mode master code (0000 1XXX) + 1 (NACK).

[Clearing conditions]

- When 0 is written to the HSMCF flag after reading HSMCF flag to be 1.
- When a STOP condition is detected.

DVIDF flag (Device-ID Address Detection Flag)

[Setting conditions]

- This flag is set to 1 at the rising edge of the ninth SCL clock cycle in the first byte when all of the followings are satisfied.
 1. The SVCTL.DVIDE bit = 1 (Device-ID address detection is enabled).
 2. When the first byte received immediately after a START condition or Repeated START condition is detected matches a value of Device ID (1111 100) + 0 (write).

[Clearing conditions]

- When 0 is written to the DVIDF flag after reading DVIDF flag to be 1.
- When a STOP condition is detected.
- This flag is set to 0 at the rising edge of the ninth SCL clock cycle in the first byte when the following 1 and 2 or 1 and 3 are satisfied.
 1. The SVCTL.DVIDE bit = 1 (Device-ID address detection is enabled).
 2. When the first byte received immediately after a START condition or Repeated START condition is detected does not match a value of Device ID (1111 100).
 3. When the first byte received immediately after a START condition or Repeated START condition is detected matches a value of (device ID (1111 100) + 0 [W]) and the second byte does not match any of slave addresses 0 to 2.

HOAF flag (Host Address Detection Flag)

[Setting conditions]

- This flag is set to 1 at the rising edge of the ninth SCL clock cycle in the first byte when all of the followings are satisfied.
 1. The SVCTL.HOAE bit = 1 (Host address detection is enabled).
 2. When the received slave address matches the host address (0001 000).

[Clearing conditions]

- When 0 is written to the HOAF flag after reading HOAF flag to be 1.
- When a STOP condition is detected.
- When a Repeated START condition is detected.

SVAFn flags (Slave Address Detection Flag n)

[Setting conditions]

For 7-bit address format: SVDVADn.SADLG bit = 0.

- This flag is set to 1 at the rising edge of the 9th SCL clock cycle in the first byte when all of the followings are satisfied.
 1. The SVCTL.SVAEn bit = 1 (Slave n enabled).
 2. When the received slave address matches the SVDVADn.SVAD[6:0] bits value.

For 10-bit address format: SVDVADn.SADLG bit = 1.

- This flag is set to 1 at the rising edge of the 9th SCL clock cycle in the second byte when all of the followings are satisfied.
 1. The SVCTL.SVAEn bit = 1 (Slave n enabled).
 2. When the received slave address matches a value of 11110 + SVDVADn.SVAD[9:8] bits and the following address matches the SVDVADn.SVAD[7:0] value.

[Clearing conditions]

- When 0 is written to the SVAFn flag after reading SVAFn flag to be 1.
- When a STOP condition is detected.

For 7-bit address format: SVDVADn.SADLG bit = 0.

- This flag is set to 0 at the rising edge of the 9th SCL clock cycle in the first byte when all of the followings are satisfied.
 1. The SVCTL.SVAEn bit = 1 (Slave n enabled).
 2. When the received slave address does not match SVDVADn.SVAD[6:0] bits value.

For 10-bit address format: SVDVADn.SADLG bit = 1.

- This flag is set to 0 at the rising edge of the 9th SCL clock cycle in the first byte when all of the followings are satisfied.
 1. The SVCTL.SVAEn bit = 1 (Slave n enabled).
 2. When the received slave address does not match a value of 11110 + SVDVADn.SVAD[9:8] bits.
- This flag is set to 0 at the rising edge of the 9th SCL clock cycle in the second byte when all of the followings are satisfied.
 1. The SVCTL.SVAEn bit = 1 (Slave n enabled).
 2. When the received slave address matches a value of 11110 + SVDVADn.SVAD[9:8] bits and the following address does not match the SVDVADn.SVAD[7:0] value.

28.2.47 DATBASm : Device Address Table Basic Register m (m = 0 to 3)

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x224 + 0x08 × m

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23							16
Bit field:	DVTYP	DVNACK[1:0]	—	—	—	—	—	—		DVDYAD[7:0]						
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6						0
Bit field:	—	DVMRRJ	DVSIR RJ	DVIBI PL	—	—	—	—	—		DVSTAD[6:0]					
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
6:0	DVSTAD[6:0]	Device Static Address I3C Static Address	R/W
11:7	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
12	DVIBIPL	Device IBI Payload 0: IBIs from this Device do not carry a Data Payload. 1: IBIs from this Device do carry a Data Payload.	R/W
13	DVSIR RJ	Device In-Band Slave Interrupt Request Reject 0: This Device shall ACK the SIR. 1: This Device shall NACK the SIR and send the auto-disable CCC.	R/W
14	DVMRRJ	Device In-Band Master Request Reject 0: This Device shall ACK Master Requests. 1: This Device shall NACK Master Requests and send the auto-disable command.	R/W
15	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
23:16	DVDYAD[7:0]	Device I3C Dynamic Address Bit 23 is the parity bit, per the I3C specification, computed and updated by the software driver.	R/W
28:24	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
30:29	DVNACK[1:0]	Device NACK Retry Count Device-specific retry count	R/W
31	DVTYP	Device Type 0: I3C Device 1: I ² C Device	R/W

Note: This register supports for I3C master mode and I3C secondary master mode.

DVIBIPL bit (Device IBI Payload)

Indicates whether IBIs from this Device have a Data Payload. This field reflects the IBI Payload bit in the Device's Bus Characteristics Register (BCR).

During IBI handling for this Device, the Master shall use this field to determine whether or not to drive reception of the IBI Data Payload. Data continuation is indicated by the T-Bit.

DVSIRRJ bit (Device In-Band Slave Interrupt Request Reject)

Controls whether this Device, when operating in the Master role, will accept vs. reject Slave Interrupt Requests from other Devices.

DVMRRJ bit (Device In-Band Master Request Reject)

Controls whether this Device, when operating in the Master role, will accept vs. reject Master requests from other Devices.

This bit is only valid if I3C declares Non-Current Master Capability.

DVNACK[1:0] bits (Device NACK Retry Count)

These bits set the number of retries when a NACK response is received from the slave for the transaction set in the Command Descriptor.

Note: When ENTDA is executed by Address Assign Command, the setting of this bit is ignored and the transaction ends when NACK is received once.

28.2.48 EXDATBAS : Extended Device Address Table Basic Register

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x2A0

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23							16
Bit field:	EDTY P	EDNACK[1:0]	—	—	—	—	—	—		EDDYAD[7:0]						
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6						0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—		EDSTAD[6:0]					
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
6:0	EDSTAD[6:0]	Extended Device Static Address I3C / I ² C static address	R/W
15:7	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
23:16	EDDYAD[7:0]	Extended Device I3C Dynamic Address Bit 23 is the parity bit, per the I3C specification, computed and updated by the software driver.	R/W
28:24	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
30:29	EDNACK[1:0]	Extended Device NACK Retry Count Device-specific retry count	R/W
31	EDTYP	Extended Device Type 0: I3C Device 1: I ² C Device	R/W

Note: This register supports for I3C master mode and I3C secondary master mode.

28.2.49 SDATBASn : Slave Device Address Table Basic Register n (n = 0 to 2)

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x2B0 + 0x4 × n (n = 0 to 2)

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22							16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	SDDYAD[6:0]							
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9										0
Bit field:	—	—	—	SDIBI PL	—	SDAD LS	SDSTAD[9:0]										
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
9:0	SDSTAD[9:0]	Slave Device Static Address* ² I3C / I ² C Static Address	R/W
10	SDADLS	Slave Device Address Length Selection* ³ 0: Slave device address length 7 bits selected 1: Slave device address length 10 bits selected (I ² C device only)	R/W
11	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
12	SDIBIPL* ¹	Slave Device IBI Payload* ⁴ This bit is the mirror bit of the SVDCT.TBCR[2]. 0: IBIs from this device do not carry a data payload 1: IBIs from this device carry a data payload	R
15:13	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
22:16	SDDYAD[6:0]* ¹	Slave Device I3C Dynamic Address* ⁵	R/W
31:23	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note: Software writes to the SDATBAS register of the main master is prohibited.

Note 1. This bit is valid only in SDATBAS0 register.

Note 2. These bits support for I²C, I3C secondary master, and I3C slave mode.

Note 3. This bit supports for I²C mode.

Note 4. This bit supports for I3C secondary master mode and I3C slave mode.

Note 5. These bits support for I3C secondary master mode and I3C slave mode.

SDSTAD[9:0] bits (Slave Device Static Address)

When the 7-bit address format is selected (SDADLS bit is 0), the lower 7 bits of SDSTAD[9:0] function as the 7-bit address.

When the 10-bit address format is selected (SDADLS bit is 1), the SDSTAD[9:0] function as the 10-bit address. While the SVCTL.SVAEn bit is 0, the setting of this bit is ignored.

SDIBIPL bit (Slave Device IBI Payload)

Indicates whether IBIs from this device have a Data Payload. This field reflects the IBI Payload bit in the Device's Bus Characteristics Register (BCR).

During IBI handling for this device, the Master should use this field to determine whether to drive reception of the IBI Data Payload. Data continuation is indicated by the T-Bit.

SDDYAD[6:0] bits (Slave Device I3C Dynamic Address)

[Update conditions]

- When writing Dynamic Address value.
- When Slave Address value is its own Static Address in receiving SETDASA CCC (Direct), these bits are updated to Dynamic Address value.*¹
- When the Dynamic Address Assignment procedure that starts by receiving ENTDAAC CCC (Broadcast) is established.*¹

- When receiving RSTDAA CCC (Broadcast), all bits are cleared to 0. *1
- When the Slave Address value is its own Dynamic Address in receiving RSTDAA CCC (Direct), all bits are cleared to 0. *1
- When the Slave Address value is its own Dynamic Address in receiving SETNEWDA CCC (Direct), these bits are updated to the Dynamic Address value. *1
- When receiving SETAASA CCC (Broadcast), these bits are updated to the value of SDSTAD[6:0] bits*2.

Note 1. See the MIPI I3C Specification v1.0.

Note 2. See the MIPI I3C Basic Specification v1.0.

28.2.50 MSDCTm : Master Device Characteristic Table Register m (m = 0 to 3)

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x2D0 + 0x04 × m

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	RBCR76[1:0]	—	—	RBCR 3	RBCR 2	RBCR 1	RBCR 0	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7:0	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
8	RBCR0	Max Data Speed Limitation*1 0: No Limitation 1: Limitation	R/W
9	RBCR1	IBI Request Capable 0: Not Capable 1: Capable	R/W
10	RBCR2	IBI Payload 0: No data byte follows the accepted IBI. 1: Mandatory one or more data bytes follow the accepted IBI. Data byte continuation is indicated by T-Bit.	R/W
11	RBCR3	Offline Capable*2 0: Device will always respond to I3C bus commands. 1: Device will not always respond to I3C bus commands.	R/W
13:12	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
15:14	RBCR76[1:0]	Device Role 0 0: I3C Slave 0 1: I3C Master*3 Others: Setting prohibited	R/W
31:16	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note: This register supports for I3C master mode and I3C secondary master mode.

Note 1. Master shall use the GETMXDS CCC to interrogate the Slave for specific limitation.

Note 2. Offline Capable Devices retain the Dynamic Address.

Note 3. For an I3C Device acting as I3C Main Master, the BCR Device Role bits will contain the value 01.

The DCT table captures the Device characteristics (PID, BCR, DCR) and assigned Dynamic Address of each Device on the I3C Bus that participates in the Dynamic Address Allocation (ENTDAA) procedure.

RBCRn bits (Received Bus Characteristic Register)

Each I3C Device that is connected to the I3C Bus shall have an associated read-only Bus Characteristics Register (BCR). This read-only register describes the I3C compliant Device's role and capabilities for use in Dynamic Address assignment and Common Command Codes.

Note: When RBCR[2] is 0 and when ACK response to Slave Interrupt Request from I3C Slave by DATBASm.DVSIRR J = 0, STOP Condition is issued after ACK response. When RBCR[2] is 1 and when ACK response to Slave Interrupt Request from I3C Slave by DATBASm.DVSIRR J = 0, IBI Payload is received after ACK response. STOP Condition is issued after end of IBI Payload.

[Update condition]

- When receiving of Bus Characteristics Register (BCR) from Device in the Dynamic Address Assignment procedure starting by receiving ENTDAAC CCC (Broadcast).^{*1}

Note 1. See the MIPI I3C Specification v1.0

28.2.51 SVDCT : Slave Device Characteristic Table Register

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x320

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7								0
Bit field:	TBCR76[1:0]		—	—	TBCR 3	TBCR 2	TBCR 1	TBCR 0	TDCR[7:0]								
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7:0	TDCR[7:0]	Transfer Device Characteristic Register 255 available codes for describing the type of sensor, or device. Examples: Accelerometer, gyroscope, composite devices Default value is 0: Generic Device	R/W
8	TBCR0	Max Data Speed Limitation ^{*1} 0: No Limitation 1: Limitation	R/W
9	TBCR1	IBI Request Capable 0: Not Capable 1: Capable	R/W
10	TBCR2	IBI Payload 0: No data byte follows the accepted IBI. 1: Mandatory one or more data bytes follow the accepted IBI. Data byte continuation is indicated by T-Bit.	R/W
11	TBCR3	Offline Capable ^{*2} 0: Device will always respond to I3C bus commands. 1: Device will not always respond to I3C bus commands.	R/W
13:12	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
15:14	TBCR76[1:0]	Device Role 0 0: I3C Slave 0 1: I3C Master ^{*3} 1 0: Reserved for future definition by MIPI Sensor WG 1 1: Reserved for future definition by MIPI Sensor WG	R/W
31:16	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note: This register supports for I3C secondary master mode and I3C slave mode.

Note 1. Master shall use the GETMXDS CCC to interrogate the Slave for specific limitation.

Note 2. Offline Capable Devices retain the Dynamic Address.

Note 3. For an I3C Device acting as I3C Main Master, the BCR Device Role bits will contain the value 01.

The DCT table captures the Device characteristics (PID, BCR, DCR) and assigned Dynamic Address of each device on the I3C bus that participates in the Dynamic Address Allocation (ENTDAA) procedure.

TDCR[7:0] bits (Transfar Device Characteristic Register)

Each I3C device that is connected to the I3C bus has an associated Device Characteristics Register (DCR). This register describes the I3C compliant device type such as accelerometer and gyroscope, for use in Dynamic Address assignment and Common Command Codes.

TBCRn bits (Transfer Bus Characteristic Register)

Each I3C device that is connected to the I3C bus has an associated Bus Characteristics Register (BCR). This register describes the role and capabilities of the I3C compliant device for use in Dynamic Address assignment and Common Command Codes.

When I3C Slave issues IBI by Command Descriptor, the condition of TBCR[7:0] is described as follows:

[Slave Interrupt Request : No IBI Payload follow the accepted IBI]

- TBCR1 = 1
- TBCR2 = 0

Note: Set DATA_LENGTH[15:0] of Command Descriptor to 0.

[Slave Interrupt Request : IBI Payload follow the accepted IBI]

- $\text{TBCR1} = 1$
- $\text{TBCR2} = 1$

Note: Set DATA_LENGTH[15:0] of Command Descriptor to any value.

[Mastership Request]

- TBCR1 = 1
- TBCR76[1:0] = 01b

[Hot-join Event]

- TBCR1 = 1

When I3C Slave receives CCC from I3C Master, it performs the following operations according to the setting of TBCR[7:0]:

- When TBCR2 = 1, CMRLG.IBIPSZ[7:0] is sent as the 3rd byte data to GETMRL CCC from I3C Master
- When TBCR0 = 0, NACK responses to GETMXDS CCC from I3C Master
- When TBCR0 = 1, ACK responses to GETMXDS CCC from I3C Master and sends data from CMDSPW, CMDSPR, and CMDSP registers

28.2.52 SDCTPIDL : Slave Device Characteristic Table Provisional ID Low Register

Base address: I3C = 0x4008 3000

Offset address: 0x324

Bit position: 31

0

Bit field:

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
31:0	n/a	Transfar Device Provisional ID Low Bits 31 to 16 are read as 0. Bits 15 to 0 are bits [15:0] of device's I3C PID.	R/W

Note: This register supports for I3C secondary master mode and I3C slave mode.

28.2.53 SDCTPIDH : Slave Device Characteristic Table Provisional ID High Register

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x328

Bit position: 31

0

Bit field:

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
31:0	n/a	Transfar Device Provisional ID High Bits [47:16] of device's I3C PID.	R/W

Note: This register supports for I3C secondary master mode and I3C slave mode.

28.2.54 SVDVADn : Slave Device Address Register n (n = 0 to 2)

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x330 + 0x4 × n (n = 0 to 2)

Bit position: 31

30

29

28

27

26

25

16

Bit field:

SDYA DV ^{*4}	SSTA DV	—	—	SADL G	—	SVAD[9:0]									

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit position: 15

14

13

12

11

10

9

8

7

6

5

4

3

2

1

0

Bit field:

—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
15:0	—	These bits are read as 0.	R
25:16	SVAD[9:0]	Slave Address ^{*1} A slave address is set. When rewriting SVAD, change to SVAE = 0 and rewrite.	R
26	—	This bit is read as 0.	R
27	SADLG	Slave Address Length ^{*2} 0: The 7-bit address format is selected. 1: The 10-bit address format is selected.	R
29:28	—	These bits are read as 0.	R
30	SSTADV	Slave Static Address Valid ^{*1} 0: Slave address is disabled. 1: Slave address is enabled.	R
31	SDYADV ^{*4}	Slave Dynamic Address Valid ^{*3} 0: Dynamic Address is disabled. 1: Dynamic Address is enabled.	R

Note 1. These bits support for I²C, I3C secondary master, and I3C slave mode.

Note 2. This bit supports for I²C mode.

Note 3. This bit supports for I3C secondary master mode and I3C slave mode.

Note 4. This bit is valid only in SVDVAD0 register.

SVAD[9:0] bits (Slave Address)

The SVAD[9:0] bits indicate a valid slave address.

[The SVDVAD0.SDYADV bit = 1]

Note: This condition is only for SVDVAD0.SVAD[9:0].

- The SVAD[9:7] bits = 0
- The SVAD[6:0] bits = the SDATBAS0.SDDYAD[6:0] bits

[The SVDVADn.SSTADV bit = 1 and the SVDVADn.SADLG bit = 0]

- The SVAD[9:7] bits = 0
- The SVAD[6:0] bits = the SDATBASn.SDSTAD[6:0] bits

[The SVDVADn.SSTADV bit = 1 and the SVDVADn.SADLG bit = 1]

- The SVAD[9:0] bits = the SDATBASn.SDSTAD[9:0] bits

SADLG bit (Slave Address Length)

[Setting conditions]

- All of the followings are satisfied:
 1. The PRTS.PRTMD bit = 1 (I²C Protocol mode).
 2. The SVCTL.SVAEn bit = 1 (Slave y is enabled).
 3. The SDATBASn.SDADLS bit = 1 (the address length is 10 bits).

[Clearing condition]

- [Setting condition] is not satisfied.

SSTADV bit (Slave Static Address Valid)

[Setting conditions]

- All of the followings are satisfied:
 1. The SVCTL.SVAEn bit = 1 (Slave y is enabled).
 2. The SVDVAD0.SDYADV bit = 0 (Dynamic Address is disabled).

Note: This condition is only for SVDVAD0.SSTADV.

3. If the SVDVADn.SADLG bit = 0, the SDATBASn.SDSTAD[6:0] bits are not all 0.
If the SVDVADn.SADLG bit = 1, the SDATBASn.SDSTAD[9:0] bits are not all 0

[Clearing condition]

- [Setting condition] is not satisfied.

SDYADV*4 bit (Slave Dynamic Address Valid)

[Setting conditions]

- All of the followings are satisfied:
 1. The PRTS.PRTMD bit = 0 (I3C Protocol mode).
 2. The SVCTL.SVAEn bit = 1 (Slave y is enabled).
 3. The SDATBAS0.SDDYAD[6:0] bits are not all 0.

Note: This condition is only for SVDVAD0.SDYADV.

[Clearing condition]

- [Setting condition] is not satisfied.

28.2.55 CSECMD : CCC Slave Events Command Register

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x350

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	HJEV E	—	MSRQ E	SVIRQ E
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	SVIRQE	Slave Interrupt Requests Enable 0: DISABLED: Slave-initiated Interrupts is Disabled by the Master to control. 1: ENABLED: Slave-initiated Interrupts is Enabled by the Master to control.	R/W
1	MSRQE	Mastership Requests Enable 0: DISABLED: Mastership requests from Secondary Masters is Disabled by the Current Master to control. 1: ENABLED: Mastership requests from Secondary Masters is Enabled by the Current Master to control.	R/W
2	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
3	HJEVE	Hot-Join Event Enable 0: DISABLED: Slave-initiated Hot-Join is Disabled by the Master to control. 1: ENABLED: Slave-initiated Hot-Join is Enabled by the Master to control.	R/W
31:4	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note: This register supports for I3C secondary master mode and I3C slave mode.

SVIRQE bit (Slave Interrupt Requests Enable)

This bit allows the Master to control when Slave-initiated Interrupts are allowed on the I3C Bus.

These four Direct (ENEC/DISEC Format 1) or Broadcast (ENEC/DISEC Format 2) CCCs allows the Master to control when Slave-initiated traffic is (Enable) vs. is not (Disable) allowed on the I3C Bus. This control governs a Slave's attempts to request an Interrupt (ENI), to request Mastership (ENMR), or to signify a Hot-Join event (ENHJ).

[Setting conditions]

- When writing 1
- When receiving ENEC CCC (Broadcast) with ENINT bit = 1.*¹
- When ENINT bit = 1 with own Slave Address in receiving ENEC CCC (Direct).*¹

[Clearing conditions]

- When writing 0.
- When receiving DISEC CCC (Broadcast) with DISINT bit = 1.*¹
- When DISINT bit = 1 with own Slave Address in receiving DISEC CCC (Direct).*¹

MSRQE bit (Mastership Requests Enable)

This bit allows the Current Master to control when Mastership requests from Secondary Masters are allowed on the I3C Bus.

[Setting conditions]

- When writing 1.

- [Clearing conditions]

- ### HJEVE bit (Hot-Join Event Enable)

[Setting conditions]

- [Clearing conditions]

- Note 1. See the MIPI I3C Specification v1.0

28.2.56 CEA CTST : CCC Enter Activity State Register

Offset address: 0x354

[illegible]

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
3:0	ACTST[3:0]	Activity State 0x1: ENTAS0 (1μs: Latency-free operation) 0x2: ENTAS1 (100 μs) 0x4: ENTAS2 (2 ms) 0x8: ENTAS3 (50 ms: Lowest-activity operation) Others: Setting prohibited	R/W
31:4	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note: This register supports for I3C secondary master mode and I3C slave mode.

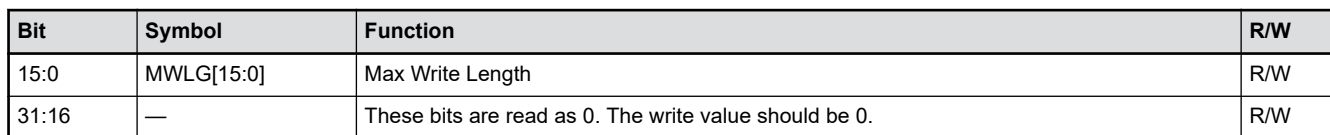
ACTST[3:0] bits (Activity State)

[Update conditions]

- When writing Activity State value.
- When receiving ENTAS0 CCC (Broadcast), these bits are updated to 0x1.^{*1}
- When receiving ENTAS1 CCC (Broadcast), these bits are updated to 0x2.^{*1}
- When receiving ENTAS2 CCC (Broadcast), these bits are updated to 0x4.^{*1}
- When receiving ENTAS3 CCC (Broadcast), these bits are updated to 0x8.^{*1}

- Note 1. See the MIPI I3C Specification v1.0.

Offset address: 0x358



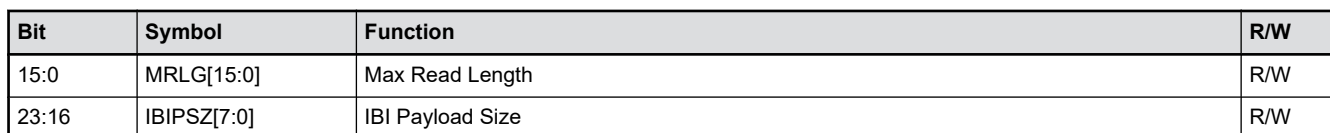
Note: This register supports for I3C secondary master mode and I3C slave mode.

This Max Write Length does not affect data write lengths for Broadcast CCCs. The Set/Get Max Write Length value is transmitted over two bytes, with the most significant byte (MSB) transmitted first. The minimum value that Max Write Length can be set to is 8.

- When writing Max Write Length value.
- When receiving SETMWL CCC (Broadcast), these bits are updated to MWL value.*1
- When Slave Address value is its own Slave Address in receiving SETMWL CCC (Direct), these bits are updated to MWL value.*1

Note 1. See the MIPI I3C Specification v1.0

Offset address: 0x35C



Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
31:8	—	These bits are read as 0.	R

Note: This register supports for I3C secondary master mode and I3C slave mode.

TSTMD[7:0] bits (Test Mode)

When these bits set to 0x00, all I3C Devices remove from Test Mode.

When these bits set to 0x01, I3C Devices shall return a random 32bit value in the Provisional ID during the Dynamic Address Assignment procedure.

The Broadcast CCC informs all I3C Devices that the Master is entering a specified Test Mode during manufacturing or Device test. The Enter Test Mode command Frame format includes a byte that specifies which Test Mode to enter. Supporting I3C Devices shall enter the indicated Test Mode upon receipt of the Enter Test Mode CCC.

[Update condition]

- When receiving ENTDM CCC (Broadcast), these bits are updated to Test Mode Byte value.*1

Note 1. See the MIPI I3C Specification v1.0.

28.2.60 CGDVST : CCC Get Device Status Register

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x364

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15							8	7	6	5	4	3			0
Bit field:	VDRSV[7:0]							ACTMD[1:0]		PRTE	—	PNDINT[3:0]				
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
3:0	PNDINT[3:0]	Pending Interrupt Contains the interrupt number of any pending interrupt, or 0 if no interrupts are pending. This encoding allows for up to 15 numbered interrupts. If more than one interrupt is set, then the highest priority interrupt shall be returned.	R/W
4	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
5	PRTE	Protocol Error 0: The Slave has not detected a protocol error since the last Status read. 1: The Slave has detected a protocol error since the last Status read.	R
7:6	ACTMD[1:0]	Slave Device's current Activity Mode 0 0: Activity Mode 0 0 1: Activity Mode 1 1 0: Activity Mode 2 1 1: Activity Mode 3	R/W
15:8	VDRSV[7:0]	Vendor Reserved Reserved for vendor-specific meaning	R/W
31:16	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note: This register supports for I3C secondary master mode and I3C slave mode.

PRTE bit (Protocol Error)

If this bit set to 1, then the Slave detects a protocol error since the last Status read.

The Slave checks for such errors. Note that this value self-clears by the hardware upon every successful completion of a Master read of the Slave's Status.

The Direct CCC is a Get request for one I3C Slave Device to return its current Status, in the two-byte format detailed. Note that byte 0 is the LSB, and byte 1 is the MSB.

[Setting condition]

- When the Slave detected a protocol error.*1

[Clearing condition]

- When transmission by own Slave Address is completed without error after receiving GETSTATUS CCC (Direct).*1

ACTMD[1:0] bits (Slave Device's current Activity Mode)

Contains the two-bit ID of the Slave Device's current Activity Mode (readiness to support data read of sensor or related information).

Note 1. See the MIPI I3C Specification v1.0.

28.2.61 CMDSPW : CCC Max Data Speed W (Write) Register

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x368

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	0	
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	MSWDR[2:0]		
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
2:0	MSWDR[2:0]	Maximum Sustained Write Data Rate 0 0 0: fsci Max (default value) 0 0 1: 8 MHz 0 1 0: 6 MHz 0 1 1: 4 MHz 1 0 0: 2 MHz Others: Setting prohibited	R/W
31:3	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note: This register supports for I3C secondary master mode and I3C slave mode.

28.2.62 CMDSPR : CCC Max Data Speed R (Read) Register

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x36C

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	3		2	0	
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	CDTTIM[2:0]			MSRDR[2:0]		
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Note: This register supports for I3C secondary master mode and I3C slave mode.

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000
Offset address: 0x370

0

[illegible]

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Note: This register supports for I3C secondary master mode and I3C slave mode.

28.2.64 CETSM : CCC Exchange Timing Support Information M (Mode) Register

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x374

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23		16	15				8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	INAC[7:0]				FREQ[7:0]				—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7:0	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
15:8	FREQ[7:0]	Frequency Byte This byte represents the Slave's internal oscillator frequency in increments of 0.5 MHz (500 kHz), up to 127.5 MHz. 0x00: 32.0 kHz 0x0F: 7.5 MHz 0x1F: 15.5 MHz 0x2F: 23.5 MHz 0x3F: 31.5 MHz 0x4F: 39.5 MHz 0x5F: 47.5 MHz 0x6F: 55.5 MHz 0x7F: 63.5 MHz Others: Setting prohibited	R/W
23:16	INAC[7:0]	Inaccuracy Byte 0x00: 0.0% 0x0F: 1.5% 0x1F: 3.1% 0x2F: 4.7% 0x3F: 6.3% 0x4F: 7.9% 0x5F: 9.5% 0x6F: 11.1% 0x7F: 12.7% 0x8F: 14.3% 0x9F: 15.9% 0xAF: 17.5% 0xBF: 19.1% 0xCF: 20.7% 0xDF: 22.3% 0xEF: 23.9% 0xFF: 25.5%	R/W
31:24	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note: This register supports for I3C secondary master mode and I3C slave mode.

The Directed CCC provides the framework for the Master to query the Exchange Timing capabilities supported by the I3C Slaves. The Get Exchange Timing Support Information CCC causes the addressed Slave to return four data bytes containing key information on supported current state, and internal oscillator/clock frequency and inaccuracy.

28.2.65 BITCNT : Bit Count Register

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x380

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4											0																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																						
Bit field:																													BCNT[4:0]																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
4:0	BCNT[4:0]	Bit Counter Indicates the number of bits remaining to be transferred. For details on the values, see Table 28.7 and Table 28.8 .	R
31:5	—	These bits are read as 0.	R

BCNT[4:0] bits (Bit Counter)

These bits function as a counter that indicates the number of bits remaining to be transferred at the detection of a sampling edge on the SCLn line.

Table 28.7 I²C transfer

BCNT[4:0]	Master		Slave	
	Address phase	Data phase	Address phase	Data phase
0x00	2 bits to 1 bit	2 bits to 1 bit	3 bits to 1 bit	2 bits to 1 bit
0x01	3 bits	3 bits	4 bits	3 bits
0x02	4 bits	4 bits	5 bits	4 bits
0x03	5 bits	5 bits	6 bits	5 bits
0x04	6 bits	6 bits	7 bits	6 bits
0x05	7 bits	7 bits	8 bits	7 bits
0x06	8 bits	8 bits	9 bits	8 bits
0x07	9 bits	9 bits	—	9 bits

Table 28.8 I3C transfer

BCNT[4:0]	SDR*1	
	Transmission	Reception
0x00	1 bit	2 bits to 1 bit
0x01	2 bits	3 bits
0x02	3 bits	4 bits
0x03	4 bits	5 bits
0x04	5 bits	6 bits
0x05	6 bits	7 bits
0x06	7 bits	8 bits
0x07	8 bits	9 bits
0x08	9 bits	—

Note 1. The address phase is the same as in [Table 28.7](#).

28.2.66 NQSTLV : Normal Queue Status Level Register

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

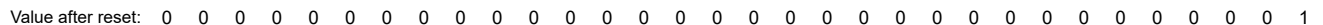
Offset address: 0x394

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	24	23	16	15	8	7	0	
Bit field:	—	—	—	IBISCNT[4:0]			IBIQLV[7:0]		RSPQLV[7:0]		CMDQFLV[7:0]	

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 0

Note 1. These bits support for all I3C mode.
Note 2. These bits support for I3C master mode and I3C secondary master mode.

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000
Offset address: 0x398



Note: This register supports for all I3C mode.

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000
Offset address: 0x3C0



Note: This register supports for I3C secondary master mode and I3C slave mode.

28.2.69 PRSTDBG : Present State Debug Register

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x3CC

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	SDOL V	SCOL V	SDILV	SCILV
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	SCILV	SCL Line Signal Level This bit is used to check the SCL Line level, in order to recover from errors and for debugging.	R
1	SDILV	SDA Line Signal Level This bit is used to check the SDA Line level, in order to recover from errors and for debugging.	R
2	SCOLV	SCL Output Level 0: I3C has driven the SCL pin low. 1: I3C has released the SCL pin.	R
3	SDOLV	SDA Output Level 0: I3C has driven the SDA pin low. 1: I3C has released the SDA pin.	R
31:4	—	These bits are read as 0.	R

SDOLV bit (SDA Output Level) and SCOLV bit (SCL Output Level)

When reading these bits, the state of signals output from I3C can be read.

28.2.70 MSERRCNT : Master Error Counters Register

Base address: I3C = 0x4008_3000

Offset address: 0x3D0

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	M2ECNT[7:0]
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7:0	M2ECNT[7:0]	M2 Error Counter Counts I3C Type M2 errors on the I3C Bus. Cleared upon read out.	R
31:8	—	These bits are read as 0.	R

Note: This register supports for I3C master mode and I3C secondary master mode.

28.3 Operation

28.3.1 Data Structures

28.3.1.1 Command Descriptor

The write-only Command Descriptor structure is 64 bits in length. The Command Descriptor is put to the Command Queue with writes to the Command Queue Port (High Priority or Normal).

Write to the Command Queue Port (High Priority or Normal) in the following order:

1. First write : The least significant DWORD (Command Descriptor Structure Low).
2. Second write : The most significant DWORD (Command Descriptor Structure High).

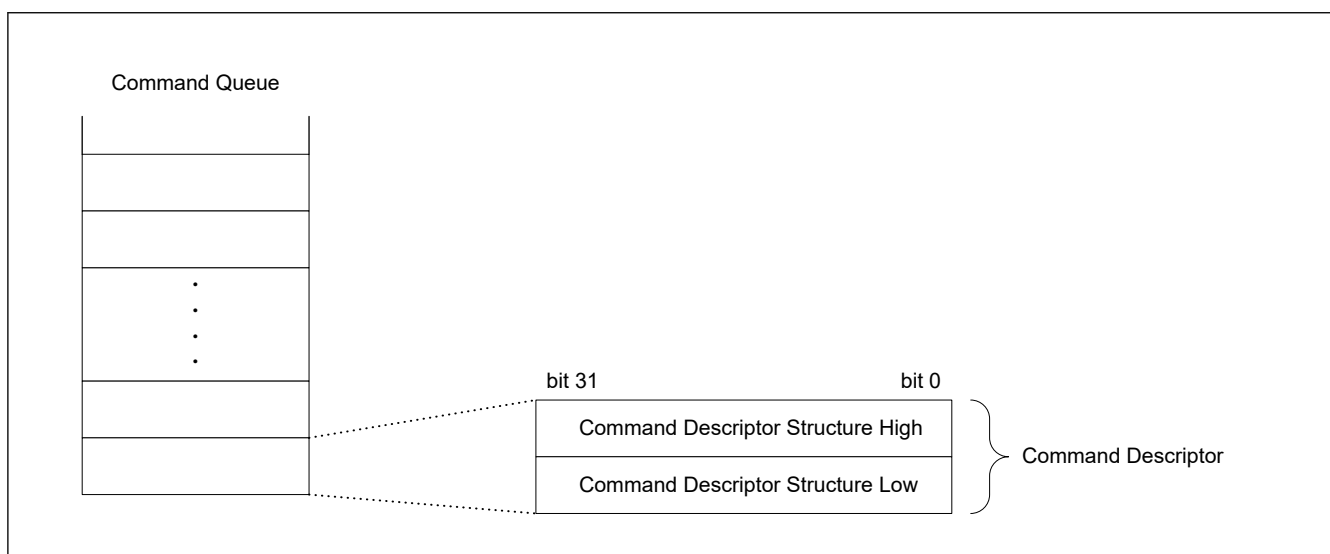


Figure 28.2 Command descriptor data structure

I3C provides a Command Descriptor structure for each command type as follows:

- Address Assign Command
- Immediate Transfer Command
- Regular Transfer Command
- Combo Transfer Command
- Internal Control Command

Details are explained in the following sections.

28.3.1.1.1 Address Assign Command

This command is used for address assignment (ENTDAA, SETDASA).

Note: When issuing SETAASA CCC, use the Immediate Transfer command.

The I3C provides an address assign command for the following mode:

- I3C Master mode

Details of the Address Assign command structure are as follows.

Bit position:	63	62	61	60	59	58	57	56	55	54	53	52	51	50	49	48
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	47	46	45	44	43	42	41	40	39	38	37	36	35	34	33	32
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	TOC	ROC	DEV_COUNT[3:0]				—	—	—	—	EXT_DEVICE	DEV_INDEX[4:0]				
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	CMD[7:0]							TID[3:0]			CMD_ATTR[2:0]				
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
2:0	CMD_ATTR[2:0]	Command Attributes 0x0: XFER: Regular Transfer 0x1: IMMED_DATA_XFER: Immediate Data Transfer 0x2: ADDR_ASSGN_CMD: Address Assignment Command 0x3: WWR_COMBO_XFER: Write + Write/Read Combo Transfer 0x7: INTERNAL_CONTROL: Internal Control command Others: Setting prohibited	W
6:3	TID[3:0]	Transaction ID	W
14:7	CMD[7:0]	Transfer Command CCC Value	W
15	—	The write value should be 0.	W
20:16	DEV_INDEX[4:0]	Device Index	W
21	EXT_DEVICE	Extended Device Index 0: Use the DATBASm table indicated by DEV_INDEX[4:0]. 1: Use the EXDATBAS table.	W
25:22	—	The write value should be 0.	W
29:26	DEV_COUNT[3:0]	Device Count	W
30	ROC	Response on Completion 0: NOT_REQUIRED: Response Status is not required. 1: REQUIRED: Response Status is required.	W
31	TOC	Terminate on Completion 0: RESTART: Issue Repeated START (Sr) at end of transfer 1: STOP: Issue STOP (P) at end of transfer	W
63:32	—	The write value should be 0.	W

CMD_ATTR[2:0] bits (Command Attributes)

Command Type, defining the format of the other fields.

TID[3:0] bits (Transaction ID)

is reflected in the Response Descriptor.

CMD[7:0] bits (Transfer Command CCC Value)

Specifies CCC code indicating whether Address Assignment uses ENTDAAs or SETDASAs commands. The field comprises the entire command code (ENTDAAs or SETDASAs).

DEV_INDEX[4:0] bits (Device Index)

Indicates the DATBASm table index for the Slave device being addressed with the transfer. Static and device addressing related information are stored to this index in the DATBASm.

DEV_COUNT[3:0] bits (Device Count)

Indicates the number of devices that a dynamic address is assigned to.

ROC bit (Response on Completion)

Controls whether Response Status is sent after successful completion of the Transfer command. The successful completion is read from register NRSPQP. Upon unsuccessful transfer the Response Status is sent.

TOC bit (Terminate on Completion)

Controls what bus condition to issue after the Transfer command completes.

For ENTDA, a STOP condition is issued regardless of the setting value of TOC. It is meaningful for SETDASA transfers.

When sending SETDASA CCC by TOC = 0 (RESTART), the next command must be set to SETDASA CCC with the Address Assign Command.

When the next command is not the same SETDASA CCC flame, it must be set to TOC = 1 (STOP).

28.3.1.1.2 Immediate Transfer Command

This structure directly contains data (max 4 bytes) to be transferred, and as a result is only useful for Transfers/CCCs that write data. This structure shall not be used for Read operations (for example, to receive data).

When transmitting data of 4 bytes or less, use this Immediate Transfer Command to communicate.

When transmitting data of 5 bytes or more, use the Regular Transfer Command to communicate.

For the Regular Transfer Command, see [section 28.3.1.1.3. Regular Transfer Command](#).

I3C provides an Immediate Transfer Command for the following mode:

- I3C Master Mode

Details of the Immediate Transfer Command Structure of each mode are shown in this section.

Bit position:	63	62	61	60	59	58	57	56	55	54	53	52	51	50	49	48
Bit field:	DATA_BYTE_4[7:0]								DATA_BYTE_3[7:0]							
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	47	46	45	44	43	42	41	40	39	38	37	36	35	34	33	32
Bit field:	DATA_BYTE_2[7:0]								DATA_BYTE_1[7:0]							
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	TOC	ROC	RNW	MODE[2:0]			BYTE_CNT[2:0]			—	EXT_DEVIC E	DEV_INDEX[4:0]				
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	CP	CMD[7:0]								TID[3:0]				CMD_ATTR[2:0]		
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
2:0	CMD_ATTR[2:0]	Immediate Data Transfer Command Attribute 0x0: XFER: Regular Transfer 0x1: IMMED_DATA_XFER: Immediate Data Transfer 0x2: ADDR_ASSGN_CMD: Address Assignment Command 0x3: WWR_COMBO_XFER: Write + Write/Read Combo Transfer 0x7: INTERNAL_CONTROL: Internal Control command Others: Setting prohibited	W
6:3	TID[3:0]	Immediate Data Transfer Transaction ID	W
14:7	CMD[7:0]	Immediate Data Transfer CCC Value For CCC: 8 bits	W
15	CP	Immediate Data Transfer Command Present 0: TRANFSER: This structure describes an SDR transfer, so the CMD field is not valid. 1: CCC: This structure describes a CCC transfer, so the CMD field is valid.	W
20:16	DEV_INDEX[4:0]	Immediate Data Transfer Device Index	W
21	EXT_DEVICE	Immediate Data Transfer Extended Device Index 0: Use the DATBASm table indicated by DEV_INDEX[4:0]. 1: Use the EXDATBAS table.	W
22	—	The write value should be 0.	W
25:23	BYTE_CNT[2:0]	Immediate Data Transfer Byte Count 0x0: No payload 0x1 to N bytes are valid. 0x4: Others: Setting prohibited	W
28:26	MODE[2:0]	Immediate Data Transfer Mode and Speed Values 0x0: I3C SDR0 / Data rate : STDBR (I3C mode) I ² C Message 0 / Data rate : STDBR (I ² C mode) 0x1: I3C SDR1 / Data rate : EXTBR (I3C mode) I ² C Message 0 / Data rate : EXTBR (I ² C mode) 0x3: I3C SDR2 / Data rate : STDBR × 2 (I3C mode) Reserved (I ² C mode) 0x4: I3C SDR3 / Data rate : EXTBR × 2 (I3C mode) Reserved (I ² C mode) 0x5: I3C SDR4 / Data rate : EXTBR × 4 (I3C mode) Reserved (I ² C mode) Others: Setting prohibited	W
29	RNW	Immediate Data Transfer R/W 0: WRITE: Write transfer 1: READ: Read transfer	W
30	ROC	Immediate Data Transfer Response on Completion 0: NOT_REQUIRED: Response Status is not required. 1: REQUIRED: Response Status is required.	W
31	TOC	Immediate Data Transfer Terminate on Completion 0: RESTART: Issue Repeated START (Sr) at end of data transfer 1: STOP: Issue STOP (P) at end of data transfer	W
39:32	DATA_BYTE_1[7:0]	Immediate Data Transfer Data Byte 1 Direct argument	W
47:40	DATA_BYTE_2[7:0]	Immediate Data Transfer Data Byte 2 Direct argument	W
55:48	DATA_BYTE_3[7:0]	Immediate Data Transfer Data Byte 3 Direct argument	W
63:56	DATA_BYTE_4[7:0]	Immediate Data Transfer Data Byte 4 Direct argument	W

CMD_ATTR[2:0] bits (Immediate Data Transfer Command Attribute)

Command Type, defining the format of the other fields.

TID[3:0] bits (Immediate Data Transfer Transaction ID)

Used as an identification tag for this command. This field shall be populated by the software Driver, and the same value shall be reflected in the Response Descriptor.

CP bit (Immediate Data Transfer Command Present)

Indicates whether CMD field is valid for CCC Transfer.

DEV_INDEX[4:0] bits (Immediate Data Transfer Device Index)

Indicates the DATBASm Table index for the Slave Device being addressed with the transfer. Static and Device addressing related information will be stored to this index in the DATBASm.

BYTE_CNT[2:0] bits (Immediate Data Transfer Byte Count)

Number of valid data bytes to use in this Immediate Data Transfer Descriptor.

This field must be set to non-zero value, except for CCCs that does not have payload defined.

MODE[2:0] bits (Immediate Data Transfer Mode and Speed Values)

Sets the mode and speed for the I3C or I²C transfer.

Interpretation of this field depends on whether the Device is in I3C Mode vs. I²C Mode (see the DEVICE field in the DATBASm Table entry indexed by field DEV_INDEX).

RNW bit (Immediate Data Transfer R/W)

Identifies direction of the transfer.

This field shall always be set to 0, because Immediate transfers are valid for Write transactions only.

ROC bit (Immediate Data Transfer Response on Completion)

Controls whether Response Status is required after successful completion of the data transfer command. The successful completion shall be read from NRSPQP register. Upon unsuccessful transfer the Response Status shall always be sent.

TOC bit (Immediate Data Transfer Terminate on Completion)

Controls what Bus condition is issued after completion of the data transfer.

When sending Direct CCC by TOC = 0 (RESTART), next command must be set to same Direct CCC.

When the next command is not the same Direct CCC, must be set to TOC = 1 (STOP).

28.3.1.1.3 Regular Transfer Command

This structure does not contain data to be transferred.

For Master Mode, the data buffer is available through Transfer Data Queue Port (Receive Data Queue Port and Transmit Data Queue Port).

When transmitting data of 5 bytes or more, use this Regular Transfer Command to communicate.

When transmitting data of 4 bytes or less, use the Immediate Transfer Command to communicate.

For the Regular Transfer Command, see [section 28.3.1.1.2. Immediate Transfer Command](#).

For I3C Slave Mode, the IBI Payload buffer is available through IBI Status Queue Port.

I3C provides a Regular Transfer Command for each mode below.

- I3C Master Mode
- I3C Slave Mode

Details of the regular transfer command structure of each mode are shown below.

(1) I3C Master Mode

Bit position:	63	62	61	60	59	58	57	56	55	54	53	52	51	50	49	48
Bit field:	DATA_LENGTH[15:0]															
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	47	46	45	44	43	42	41	40	39	38	37	36	35	34	33	32
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	TOC	ROC	RNW	MODE[2:0]			—	—	—	—	EXT_DEVICE	DEV_INDEX[4:0]				
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	CP	CMD[7:0]							TID[3:0]			CMD_ATTR[2:0]				
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
2:0	CMD_ATTR[2:0]	Data Transfer Command Attribute Command Type, defining the format of the other fields. Values: 0x0: XFER: Regular Transfer 0x1: IMMED_DATA_XFER: Immediate Data Transfer 0x2: ADDR_ASSGN_CMD: Address Assignment Command 0x3: WWR_COMBO_XFER: Write + Write/Read Combo Transfer 0x7: INTERNAL_CONTROL: Internal Control command Others: Setting prohibited	W
6:3	TID[3:0]	Data Transfer Transaction ID Identification tag for this command	W
14:7	CMD[7:0]	Data Transfer CCC Code Value Specifies the I3C Command code For CCC: 8 bits	W
15	CP	Data Transfer Command Present 0: TRANSFER: This structure describes an SDR transfer, so the CMD field is not valid. 1: CCC: This structure describes a CCC transfer, so the CMD field is valid.	W
20:16	DEV_INDEX[4:0]	Data Transfer Device Index	W
21	EXT_DEVICE	Data Transfer Extended Device Index 0: Use the DATBASm Table indicated by DEV_INDEX[4:0]. 1: Use the EXDATBAS table.	W
25:22	—	The write value should be 0.	W
28:26	MODE[2:0]	Data Transfer Speed and Mode 0x0: I3C SDR0 / Data rate : STDBR (I3C mode) I2C Message 0 / Data rate : STDBR (I2C mode) 0x1: I3C SDR1 / Data rate : EXTBR (I3C mode) I2C Message 0 / Data rate : EXTBR (I2C mode) 0x3: I3C SDR2 / Data rate : STDBR × 2 (I3C mode) Reserved (I2C mode) 0x4: I3C SDR3 / Data rate : EXTBR × 2 (I3C mode) Reserved (I2C mode) Others: Setting prohibited	W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
29	RNW	Data Transfer R/W 0: WRITE: Write transfer 1: READ: Read transfer	W
30	ROC	Data Transfer Response on Completion 0: NOT_REQUIRED: Response Status is not required. 1: REQUIRED: Response Status is required.	W
31	TOC	Data Transfer Terminate on Completion 0: RESTART: Issue Repeated START (Sr) at end of transfer 1: STOP: Issue STOP (P) at end of transfer	W
47:32	—	The write value should be 0.	W
63:48	DATA_LENGTH [15:0]	Data Transfer Data Length Indicates the number of bytes to be transferred. This field must be set to non-zero value, except for CCCs that does not have payload defined.	W

CMD_ATTR[2:0] bits (Data Transfer Command Attribute)

Command Type, defining the format of the other fields.

TID[3:0] bits (Data Transfer Transaction ID Identification tag for this command)

Used as an identification tag for this command. This field shall be populated by the software Driver, and the same value shall be reflected in the Response Descriptor.

CP bit (Data Transfer Command Present)

Indicates whether the contents of the CMD field is valid for a CCC Transfer.

DEV_INDEX[4:0] bits (Data Transfer Device Index)

Indicates the DATBASm Table index for the Slave Device being addressed with the transfer. Static and Device addressing related information will be stored to this index in the DATBASm.

MODE[2:0] bits (Data Transfer Speed and Mode)

Sets the mode and speed for the I3C or I²C transfer.

Interpretation of this field depends on whether the Device is in I3C Mode vs. I²C Mode (see the DEVICE field in the DATBASm Table entry indexed by field DEV_INDEX).

RNW bit (Data Transfer R/W)

Identifies direction of the transfer.

ROC bit (Data Transfer Response on Completion)

Controls whether Response Status is required after successful completion of the transfer command. The successful completion shall be read from NRSPQP register. Upon unsuccessful transfer the Response Status shall always be sent.

TOC bit (Data Transfer Terminate on Completion)

Controls what Bus condition will be issued after completion of the transfer.

When sending Direct CCC by TOC = 0 (RESTART), next command must be set to same Direct CCC.

When the next command is not the same Direct CCC, must be set to TOC = 1 (STOP).

DATA_LENGTH[15:0] bits (Data Transfer Data Length)

Number of valid data bytes to use in this Regular Transfer Descriptor.

This field must be set to non-zero value, except for CCCs that does not have payload defined.

Length setting of GETMXDS command should be fixed to 5.

(2) I3C Slave Mode

Bit position:	63	62	61	60	59	58	57	56	55	54	53	52	51	50	49	48
Bit field:	DATA_LENGTH[15:0]															
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	47	46	45	44	43	42	41	40	39	38	37	36	35	34	33	32
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	ROC	RNW	—	—	—	—	—	—	ITS	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	HJ	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	TID[3:0]			CMD_ATTR[2:0]			
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
2:0	CMD_ATTR[2:0]	Data Transfer Command Attribute Command Type, defining the format of the other fields. Values: 0x0: XFER: Regular Transfer 0x1: IMMED_DATA_XFER: Immediate Data Transfer 0x2: ADDR_ASSGN_CMD: Address Assignment Command 0x3: WWR_COMBO_XFER: Write + Write/Read Combo Transfer 0x4-0x6: Reserved, do not use. 0x7: INTERNAL_CONTROL: Internal Control command	W
6:3	TID[3:0]	Data Transfer Transaction ID Identification tag for this command	W
14:7	—	The write value should be 0.	W
15	HJ	Data Transfer Hot-Join Event 0: Slave Interrupt Request or Mastership Request, so the RNW field is valid. 1: Hot-Join Event, so the RNW field is not valid.	W
21:16	—	The write value should be 0.	W
22	ITS	Include timestamp for Async Mode 0: Do not include timestamp. 1: Include timestamp.	W
28:23	—	The write value should be 0.	W
29	RNW	Data Transfer R/W 0: WRITE: Write transfer (Mastership Request) 1: READ: Read transfer (Slave Interrupt Request)	W
30	ROC	Data Transfer Response on Completion 0: NOT_REQUIRED: Response Status is not required. 1: REQUIRED: Response Status is required.	W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
47:31	—	The write value should be 0.	W
63:48	DATA_LENGTH [15:0]	Data Transfer Data Length Indicates the number of bytes to be transferred. This field must be set to non-zero value, except for CCCs that does not have payload defined.	W

CMD_ATTR[2:0] bits (Data Transfer Command Attribute)

Command Type, defining the format of the other fields.

TID[3:0] bits (Data Transfer Transaction ID Identification tag for this command)

Used as an identification tag for this command. This field shall be populated by the software Driver, and the same value shall be reflected in the Response Descriptor.

HJ bit (Data Transfer Hot-Join Event)

Indicates whether Hot-Join Event is valid in this IBI Data transfer.

RNW bit (Data Transfer R/W)

Identifies direction of the transfer.

ROC bit (Data Transfer Response on Completion)

Controls whether Response Status is required after successful completion of the transfer command. The successful completion shall be read from NRSPQP register. Upon unsuccessful transfer the Response Status shall always be sent.

28.3.1.1.4 Combo Transfer Command

This structure contains a combined Write + Read/Write operation.

The data buffer is available through Transfer Data Queue Port (Receive Data Queue Port and Transmit Data Queue Port).

I3C provides a Combo Transfer Command for the following mode:

- I3C Master mode

Details of the Combo Transfer Command Structure of each mode are as follows.

Bit position:	63	62	61	60	59	58	57	56	55	54	53	52	51	50	49	48
Bit field:	DATA_LENGTH[15:0]															
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	47	46	45	44	43	42	41	40	39	38	37	36	35	34	33	32
Bit field:	OFFSET[15:0]/SUBOFFSET[15:0]															
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	TOC	ROC	RNW	MODE[2:0]		16_BIT_SUBOFFSET	FIRST_PHASE_MODE	DATA_LENGTH_POSITION[1:0]		EXT_DEVICE	DEV_INDEX[4:0]					
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	TID[3:0]				CMD_ATTR[2:0]		
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
2:0	CMD_ATTR[2:0]	Combo Transfer Command Attribute Command Type, defining the format of the other fields. 0x0: XFER: Regular Transfer 0x1: IMMED_DATA_XFER: Immediate Data Transfer 0x2: ADDR_ASSGN_CMD: Address Assignment Command 0x3: WWR_COMBO_XFER: Write + Write/Read Combo Transfer 0x7: INTERNAL_CONTROL: Internal Control command Others: Setting prohibited	W
6:3	TID[3:0]	Combo Transfer Transaction ID Identification tag for the command	W
15:7	—	The write value should be 0.	W
20:16	DEV_INDEX[4:0]	Combo Transfer Device Index Indicates the DAT table index for the Slave device being addressed with the transfer. Static and device addressing related information are stored to this index in the DAT.	W
21	EXT_DEVICE	Combo Transfer Extended Device Index 0: Use the DAT table indicated by DEV_INDEX[4:0]. 1: Use the EXDATBAS table.	W
23:22	DATA_LENGTH_POSITION[1:0]	Data Length Field Position 0 0: NO: Do not put length field. 0 1: FIRST: Put length as first field. 1 0: SECOND: Put length as second field. Others: Setting prohibited	W
24	FIRST_PHASE_MODE	Combo Transfer First Phase Mode 0: SDR: First phase is executed in SDR mode. 1: MODE: First phase is executed in the mode indicated by the MODE field.	W
25	16_BIT_SUBOFFSET	Combo Transfer Sub Offset Size 0: 8_BIT_SUBOFFSET: Sub-offset is 8-bits long. Value is encoded in Lower Byte of OFFSET / SUBOFFSET field. 1: 16_BIT_SUBOFFSET: Sub-offset is 16-bits long.	W
28:26	MODE[2:0]	Combo Transfer Speed and Mode Values for I3C Mode 0x0: I3C SDR0 / Data rate : STDBR 0x1: I3C SDR1 : Data rate : EXTBR 0x3: I3C SDR2 / Data rate : STDBR × 2 0x4: I3C SDR3 / Data rate : EXTBR × 2 0x5: I3C SDR4 / Data rate : EXTBR × 4 Others: Setting prohibited	W
29	RNW	Combo Transfer R/W Identifies direction of the transfer 0: WRITE: Write transfer 1: READ: Read transfer	W
30	ROC	Combo Transfer Response on Completion 0: NOT_REQUIRED: Response Status is not required. 1: REQUIRED: Response Status is required.	W
31	TOC	Combo Transfer Terminate on Completion 0: RESTART: Issue Repeated START (Sr) at end of transfer 1: STOP: Issue STOP (P) at end of transfer	W
47:32	OFFSET[15:0]/SUBOFFSET[15:0]	Combo Transfer Offset / Sub-Offset Offset of the target operation	W
63:48	DATA_LENGTH[15:0]	Combo Transfer Data Length Number of bytes to be transferred. This field must be set to non-zero value.	W

CMD_ATTR[2:0] bits (Combo Transfer Command Attribute)

Command Type, defining the format of the other fields.

TID[3:0] bits (Combo Transfer Transaction ID Identification tag for the command)

Used as an identification tag for this command. This field shall be populated by the software Driver, and the same value shall be reflected in the Response Descriptor.

DEV_INDEX[4:0] bits (Combo Transfer Device Index)

Indicates the DAT table index for the Slave Device being addressed with the transfer. Static and Device addressing related information will be stored to this index in the DAT.

DATA_LENGTH_POSITION[1:0] bits (Data Length Field Position)

Indicates whether and where to put Data Length (DATA_LENGTH) in the first phase of the transfer.

Whether 8-bit or 16-bit of Data Length field is used is indicated with 16_BIT_SUBOFFSET field. In case of 8-bit value, it is encoded in Lower Byte of DATA_LENGTH field.

FIRST_PHASE_MODE bits (Combo Transfer First Phase Mode)

Indicates whether the first phase of the Combo Transfer is executed in SDR Mode, vs. the Mode indicated by the MODE field.

MODE[2:0] bits (Combo Transfer Speed and Mode Values for I3C Mode)

Sets the mode and speed for the I3C or I²C transfer.

Interpretation of this field depends on whether the Device is in I3C Mode vs. I²C Mode (see the DEVICE field in the DAT Table entry indexed by field DEV_INDEX).

RNW bit (Combo Transfer R/W Identifies direction of the transfer)

Identifies direction of the transfer.

ROC bit (Combo Transfer Response on Completion)

Controls whether Response Status is required after successful completion of the data transfer command. The successful completion shall be read from NRSPQP register. Upon unsuccessful transfer the Response Status shall always be sent.

TOC bit (Combo Transfer Terminate on Completion)

Controls what Bus condition is issued after completion of the data transfer.

When the next command is SDR mode, must be set to TOC = 1 (STOP).

DATA_LENGTH[15:0] bit (Combo Transfer Data Length Number of bytes to be transferred. This field must be set to non-zero value.)

Number of valid data bytes to use in this Combo Transfer Descriptor.

This field must be set to non-zero value.

28.3.1.1.5 Internal Control Command

This structure is used for controlling I3C itself (not for transfer commands).

I3C provides an Internal Control Command for the following mode:

- I3C Master mode

Details of the Internal Control Command Structure are as follows:

Bit position:	63	62	61	60	59	58	57	56	55	54	53	52	51	50	49	48
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	47	46	45	44	43	42	41	40	39	38	37	36	35	34	33	32
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	ON_OFF	MIPI_CMD[3:0]				—	TID[3:0]				CMD_ATTR[2:0]		
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
2:0	CMD_ATTR[2:0]	Command Attribute*2 Command Type, defining the format of the other fields. 0x0: XFER: Regular Transfer 0x1: IMMED_DATA_XFER: Immediate Data Transfer 0x2: ADDR_ASSGN_CMD: Address Assignment Command 0x3: WWR_COMBO_XFER: Write + Write/Read Combo Transfer 0x7: INTERNAL_CONTROL: Internal Control command Others: Setting prohibited	W
6:3	TID[3:0]	Transaction ID Identification tag for the command	W
7	—	The write value should be 0.	W
11:8	MIPI_CMD[3:0]	MIPI Alliance Command 0x00: NoOp, so the ON_OFF field is not valid. 0x02: Include 7E (IBA), so the ON_OFF field is valid. Others: Setting prohibited	W
12	ON_OFF	Bus Instance 7E On / Off*1 Enables or disables automatic transmission of the I3C Broadcast Header after every START condition on this I3C Bus instance. 0: IBA_INCLUDE off 1: IBA_INCLUDE on	W
63:13	—	The write value should be 0.	W

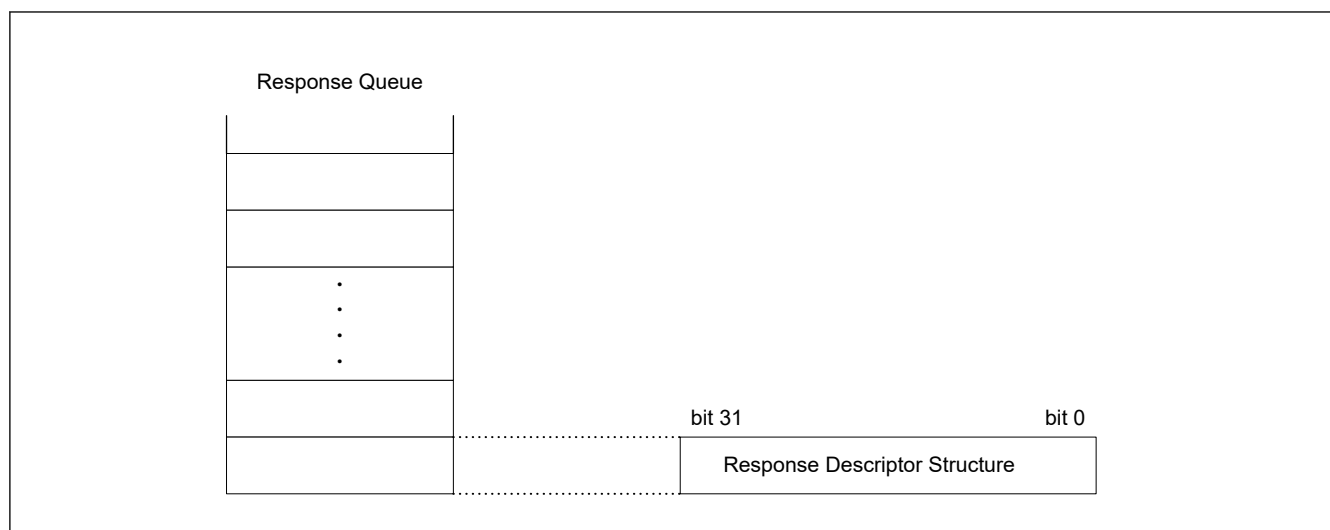
Note 1. The IBA_INCLUDE on state set by MIPI_CMD [3:0] = 0x2 and ON_OFF = 1 is cleared by setting RSTCTL.INTLRST to 1.

Note 2. The Response descriptor is not stored when the Internal Control Command is executed.

28.3.1.2 Response Descriptor

The Response Descriptor is a read-only structure describing the success or failure of a command, and the amount of data transferred.

The Response Descriptor is read from Response Queue with reads from Response Queue Port.

**Figure 28.3 Response descriptor data structure**

I3C provides a Response Descriptor for the following modes:

- I3C Master mode
- I3C Slave mode

Details of the Response Descriptor structure of each mode are shown in the following sections.

(1) I3C Master Mode

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	ERR_STATUS[3:0]				TID[3:0]				—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	DATA_LENGTH[15:0]															
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
15:0	DATA_LENGTH [15:0]	Data Length / Device Count The meaning of this field depends on the context: For Write Transfer: Remaining data length (in bytes) For Read Transfer: Received data length (in bytes) For Address Assignment: Remaining Device count	R
23:16	—	These bits are read as 0.	R
27:24	TID[3:0]	Command/Response Transaction ID Identification tag for the command. This value shall match one of commands sent on the Bus. 0x0-0x 7: Valid Transaction IDs Others: Setting prohibited	R

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
31:28	ERR_STATUS[3:0]	MIPI Alliance Command 0x0: SUCCESS: Transfer successful, no error 0x1: CRC: CRC Error 0x2: PARITY: Parity Error 0x3: FRAME: Frame Error 0x4: ADDR_HEADER: Address Header Error 0x5: NACK: Address NACKed or Dynamic Address Assignment NACKed 0x6: OVL: Receive Overflow or Transfer Underflow Error 0x8: ABORTED: Aborted 0x9: I ² C_WR_DATA_NACK: NACK received for the I ² C Write Data transfer 0xA: NOT_SUPPORTED: Command with specific parameters not supported by I3C implementation (for example, specific Internal Control codes may not be supported) Others: Setting prohibited	R

Note: In I3C Master mode, when an abnormal command with a specific parameter that is not supported is stored in Command Descriptor, it is indicated as NOT_SUPPORTED (0xA) in ERR_STATUS [3:0].

(2) I3C Slave Mode

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	ERR_STATUS[3:0]				TID[3:0]				—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	DATA_LENGTH[15:0]															
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
15:0	DATA_LENGTH [15:0]	Data Length Remaining data length (in bytes) for Slave Interrupt Request	R
23:16	—	These bits are read as 0.	R
27:24	TID[3:0]	Command/Response Transaction ID Identification tag for the command. This value matches one of commands sent on the bus. 0x0-0x 7: Valid Transaction IDs Others: Setting prohibited	R
31:28	ERR_STATUS[3:0]	Response Error Status 0x0: SUCCESS: Transfer successful, no error. 0x3: FRAME: Frame Error 0x4: ADDR_HEADER: Address Header Error 0x5: NACK: Address NACK'ed or Dynamic Address Assignment NACK'ed 0x6: OVL: Receive Overflow or Transfer Underflow Error 0x8: ABORTED: Aborted 0xA: NOT_SUPPORTED: Command with specific parameters not supported by I3C implementation (for example, specific Internal Control codes may not be supported) Others: Setting prohibited	R

Note: In I3C Slave mode, it is indicated as NOT_SUPPORTED (0xA) in ERR_STATUS[3:0] in the following cases:

- When an abnormal command with a specific parameter that is not supported is stored in the Command Descriptor.
- When the IBI to be transmitted is disabled in the CSECMD register.
- After the normal command for IBI transmission is prepared in the Command Queue, when that IBI is disabled in the CSECMD register by the DISEC CCC frame from the I3C Master.

28.3.1.3 IBI Status Descriptor

The IBI Status Descriptor is a read-only structure describing an IBI event received from a Slave device on the I3C Bus. The IBI Status Descriptor is read from IBI Status Queue with reads from IBI Status Queue Port.

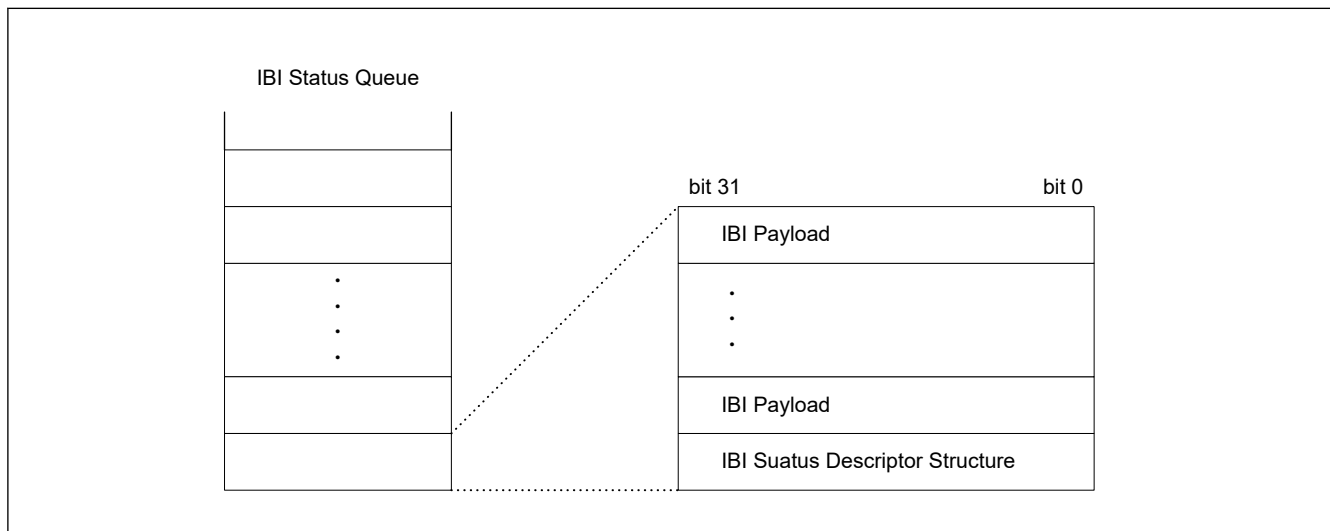


Figure 28.4 IBI status descriptor data structure

I3C provides a IBI Status Descriptor for the following mode:

- I3C Master mode

Details of the IBI Status Descriptor Structure are as follows.

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	IBI_ST	—	—	ERR_STATUS[2:0]	—	—	LAST_STATUS	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	IBI_ID[7:0]								DATA_LENGTH[7:0]							
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7:0	DATA_LENGTH[7:0]	IBI Data Length Number of data bytes in IBI Data.	R
15:8	IBI_ID[7:0]	IBI Received ID The meaning of this field depends on the context: For Slave Interrupt or Master Request: Bits 15:9 contain the Slave's Device Address, and bit 8 contains the R/W bit. For Hot-Join IBI: Bits 15:8 contain the Hot-Join ID for the IBI.	R
23:16	—	These bits are read as 0.	R
24	LAST_STATUS	Last IBI Status Last IBI status for the IBI transaction.	R
25	—	This bit is read as 0.	R

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
28:26	ERR_STATUS[2:0]	IBI Error Status 0x0: SUCCESS 0x3: ERROR: FRAME (Frame Error) 0x4: ERROR: ADDR_HEADER (Address Header Error) 0x5: NACK: Address NACKed 0x7: ERROR: ABORT (Aborted to Master) Others: Setting prohibited	R
30:29	—	These bits are read as 0.	R
31	IBI_ST	IBI Received Status Indicates how the received IBI was handled. 0: The IBI was handled with ACK. 1: NACK: The IBI was handled with NACK, and then Auto-Disabled.	R

LAST_STATUS bits (Last IBI Status)

Even if LAST_STATUS is set to 0, the software driver still evaluates the data payload length by examining the CHUNKS field.

28.3.1.4 Receive Status Descriptor

The Receive Status Descriptor is a read-only structure describing the success or failure of read/write operation from the master, and the amount of data transferred.

The Receive Status Descriptor is read from Receive Status Queue with reads from Receive Status Queue Port.

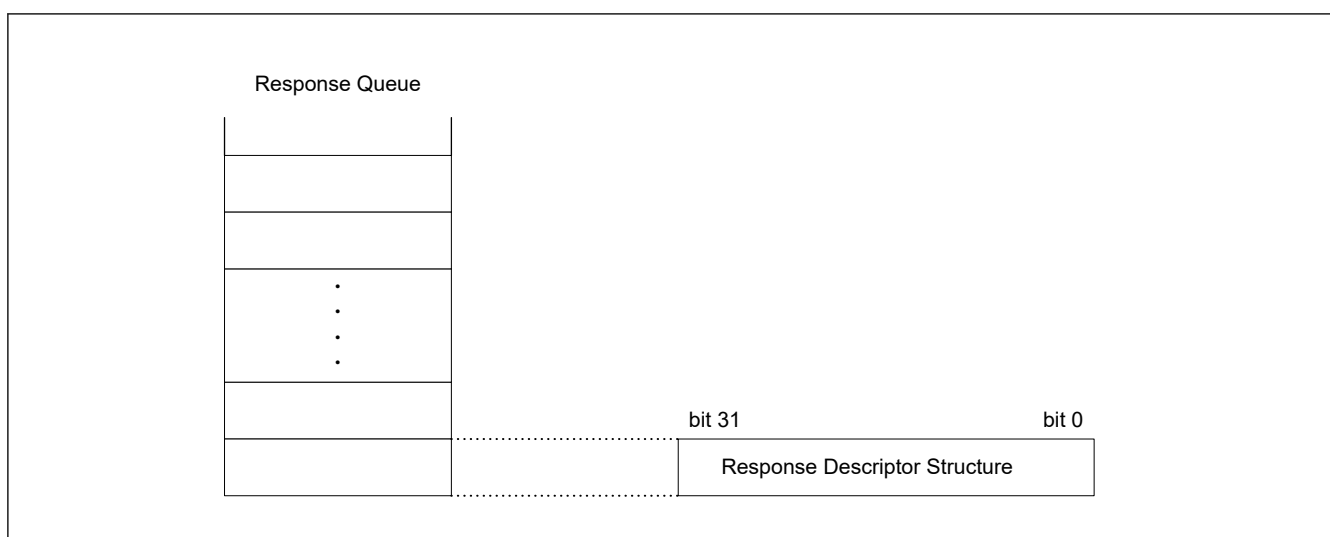


Figure 28.5 Receive status descriptor data structure

I3C provides a Receive Status Descriptor for the following mode:

- I3C Slave mode

Details of the Receive Status Descriptor structure of each mode are as follows.

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	DEV_INDEX[2:0]			TRANSFER_TY PE[1:0]		ERR_STATUS[2:0]			CMD[7:0]							
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	DATA_LENGTH[15:0]															
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
15:0	DATA_LENGTH [15:0]	Data Length The meaning of this field depends on the context. For Write Transfer: Received data length (in bytes) For Read Transfer: Transmitted data length (in bytes)	R
23:16	CMD[7:0]	The contents are different depending on the operation mode. Details are follows: [SDR Private Message Mode] bit 23: R/W Type bit 22 to 20: Setting prohibited bit 19: I3C_I ² C Type bit 18 to 16: Setting prohibited [SDR CCC Mode] CCC code[7:0]	R
26:24	ERR_STATUS[2:0]	Error Status 0x0: SUCCESS 0x1: ERROR: CRC (CRC Error) 0x2: ERROR: PARITY (Parity Error) 0x3: ERROR: FRAME (Frame Error) 0x4: ERROR: ADDR_HEADER (Address Header Error) 0x5: ERROR: NACK (Slave NACKed) 0x6: ERROR: OVL (FIFO Overflow/Underflow) 0x7: ERROR: ABORT (Aborted to Master)	R
28:27	TRANSFER_TYPE [1:0]	Transfer Type 0 0: I3C SDR/I ² C Message 0 1: I3C CCC 1 0: Setting prohibited 1 1: Setting prohibited	R
31:29	DEV_INDEX[2:0]	Device Index Indicates the SVDVADn index for the response with the transfer.	R

28.3.2 Details of Function

28.3.2.1 Operation Mode

The support relationship between the mode select (I3C mode / I²C mode) and operation mode (master/slave) on the I3C bus or the I²C bus is shown in [Table 28.9](#).

Table 28.9 Support of operating mode

I3C/I ² C bus	I3C mode		I ² C mode	
	Master	Slave	Master	Slave
I3C Bus	✓	✓	—	✓
I ² C bus	—	—	✓	✓

Note: ✓: Supported
—: Unsupported

28.3.2.1.1 Master Mode Operation

(1) I²C master operation

(a) Data Write Transfer (Single Buffer transfer)

In master transmit operation, I3C outputs the SCL clock and transmitted data signals as the master device, and the slave device returns acknowledgments. [Figure 28.103](#) shows an example of usage of master transmission and [Figure 28.6](#) to [Figure 28.8](#) show the timing of operations in master transmission.

The following describes the procedure and operations for master transmission.

1. Initial settings. For details, see [section 28.3.3.1. Initial Setting Flow](#).
2. Read the BCST.BFREF flag to check that the bus is open, and then set the CNDCTL.STCND bit to 1 (START condition issuance request). On receiving the request, I3C issues a START condition. At the same time, the BFREF flag bit is

automatically set to 0, the BST.STCNDDF flag is automatically set to 1 and the STCND bit is automatically set to 0. At this time, if the START condition is detected and the internal levels for the SDA output state and the levels on the SDA_n line have matched while the STCND bit = 1, I3C recognizes that issuing of the START condition as requested by the STCND bit has been successfully completed, and bits CRMS and TRMD in the PRSST register are automatically set to 1, placing I3C in master transmit mode. The NTST.TDBEF0 flag is also automatically set to 1 in response to the setting of the TRMD bit to 1.

3. Check that the NTST.TDBEF0 flag = 1, and then write the value for transmission (the slave address and the R/W# bit) to the NTDTBP0 register. Once the data for transmission are written to the NTDTBP0 register, the TDBEF0 flag is automatically set to 0, the data are transferred from the Normal Transmit Data Buffer 0 to the Shift Register, and the TDBEF0 flag is again set to 1. After the byte containing the slave address and R/W# bit has been transmitted, the value of the TRMD bit is automatically updated to select master transmit or master receive mode in accord with the value of the transmitted R/W# bit. If the value of the R/W# bit was 0, I3C continues in master transmit mode. Because the BST.NACKDF flag being 1 at this time indicates that no slave device recognized the address or there was an error in communications, write 1 to the CNDCTL.SPCND bit to issue a STOP condition. For data transmission with an address in the 10-bit format, start by writing 1111 0, the 2 higher-order bits of the slave address, and W to the NTDTBP0 register as the first address transmission. Then, as the second address transmission, write the 8 lower-order bits of the slave address to the NTDTBP0 register.
4. After confirming that the NTST.TDBEF0 flag = 1, write the data for transmission to the NTDTBP0 register. I3C automatically holds the SCL_n line low until the data for transmission are ready or a STOP condition is issued.
5. After all bytes of data for transmission have been written to the NTDTBP0 register, wait until the value of the BST.TENDF flag returns to 1, and then set the CNDCTL.SPCND bit to 1 (STOP condition issuance request). On receiving a STOP condition issuance request, I3C issues the STOP condition.
6. On detecting the STOP condition, I3C automatically sets bits CRMS and TRMD in the PRSST register to 00 and enters slave receive mode. Furthermore, it automatically sets the TDBEF0 and TENDF flags to 0, and sets the BST.SPCNDDF flag to 1.
7. After checking that the BST.SPCNDDF flag = 1, set the BST.NACKDF and SPCNDDF flags to 0 for the next transfer operation.

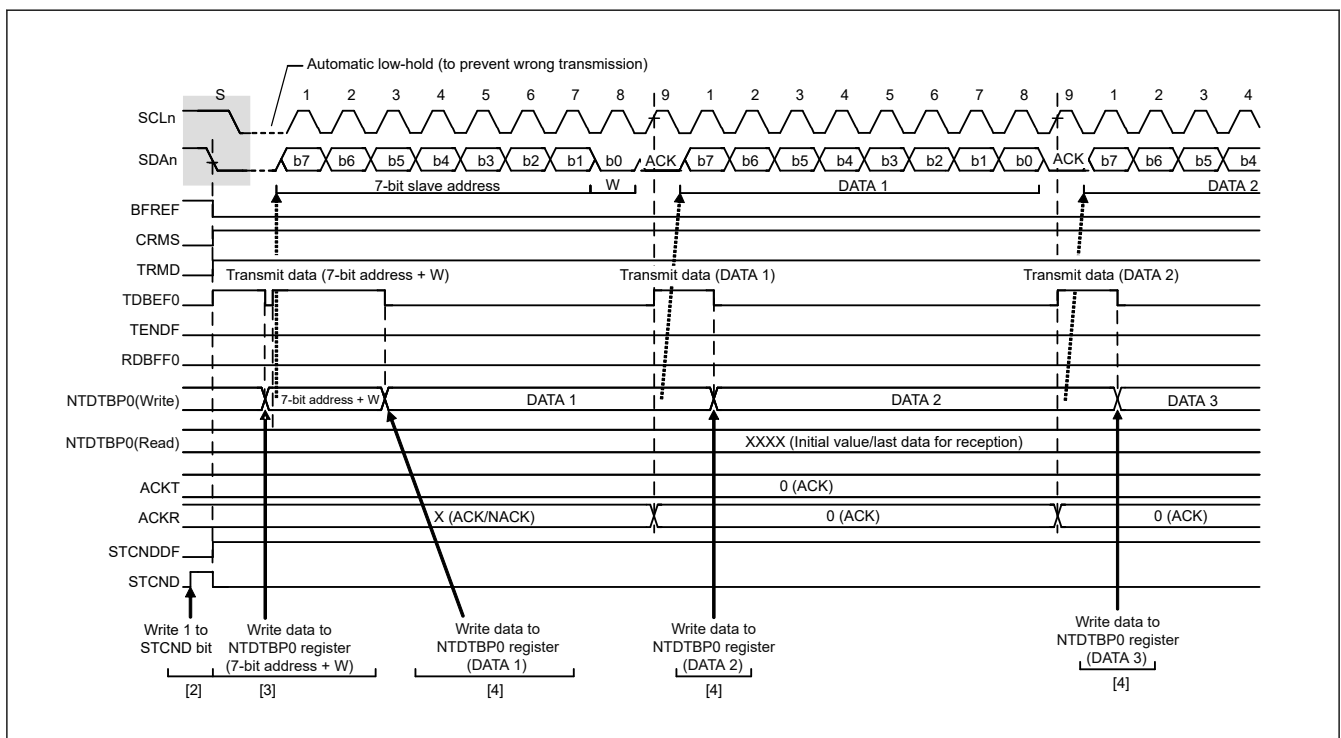


Figure 28.6 Master transmit operation timing (1) (7-bit address format)

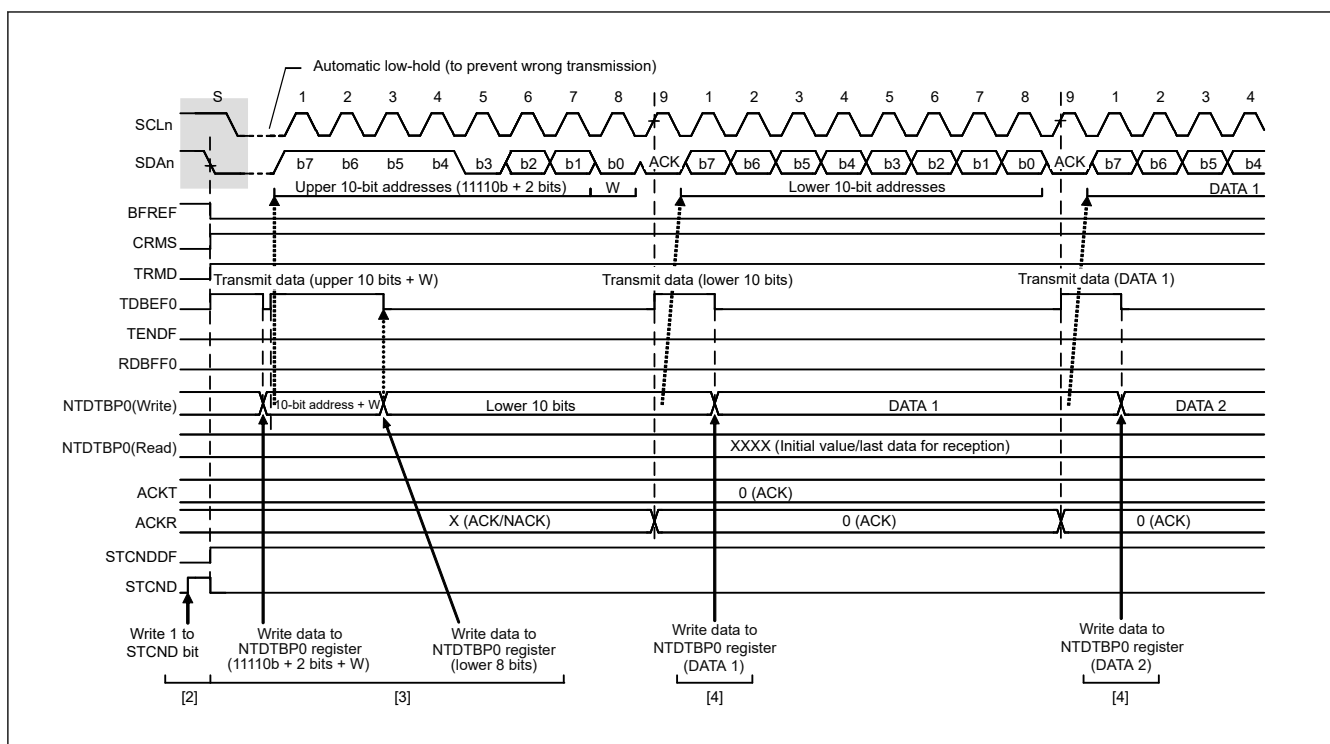


Figure 28.7 Master transmit operation timing (2) (10-bit address format)

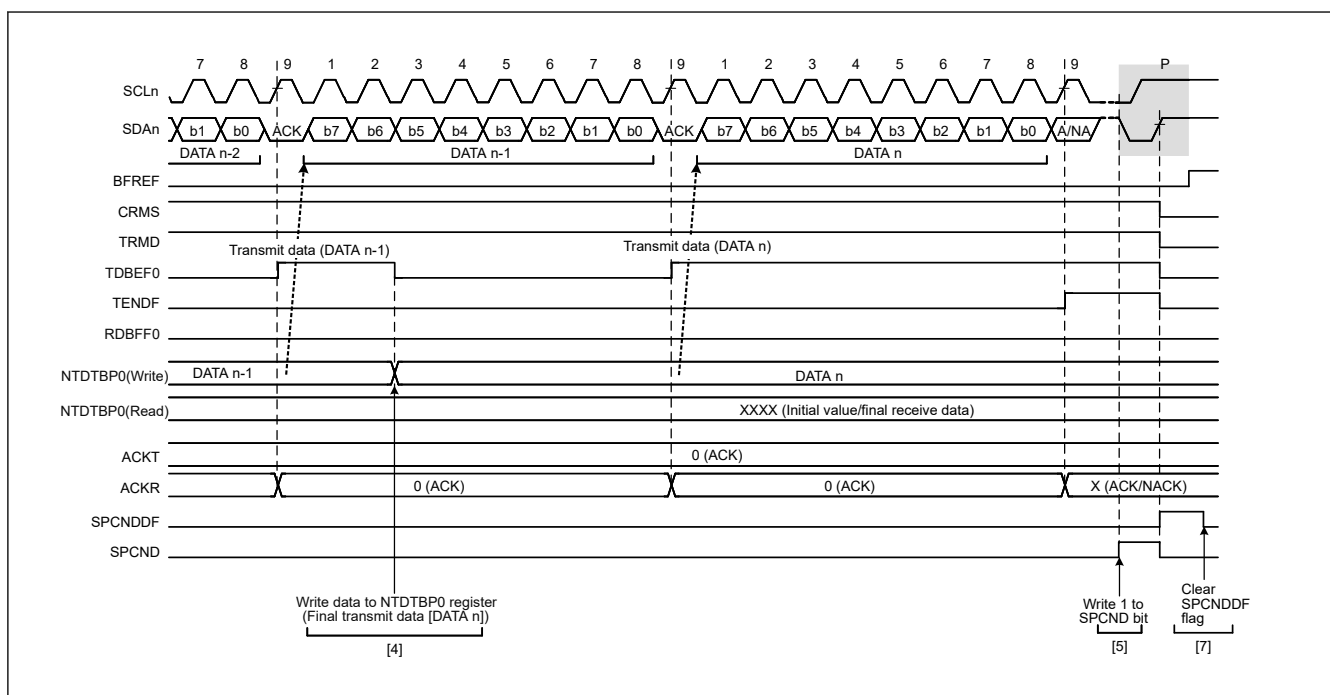


Figure 28.8 Master transmit operation timing (3)

(b) Data Read Transfer (Single Buffer transfer)

In master receive operation, I3C as a master device outputs the SCL clock, receives data from the slave device, and returns acknowledgments. Because I3C must start by sending a slave address to the corresponding slave device, this part of the procedure is performed in master transmit mode, but the subsequent steps are in master receive mode.

Figure 28.104 and Figure 28.105 show examples of usage of master reception (7-bit address format) and Figure 28.9 to Figure 28.11 show the timing of operations in master reception.

The following describes the procedure and operations for master reception.

1. Initial settings. For details, see [section 28.3.3.1. Initial Setting Flow](#).

2. Read the BCST.BFREF flag to check that the bus is open, and then set the CNDCTL.STCND bit to 1 (START condition issuance request). On receiving the request, I3C issues a START condition. When I3C detects the START condition, the BFREF flag is automatically set to 0 and the BST.STCNDDF flag is automatically set to 1 and the STCND bit is automatically set to 0. At this time, if the START condition is detected and the levels for the SDA output and the levels on the SDA_n line have matched while the STCND bit = 1, I3C recognizes that issuing of the START condition as requested by the STCND bit has been successfully completed, and bits CRMS and TRMD in the PRSST register are automatically set to 1, placing I3C in master transmit mode. The NTST.TDBEF0 flag is also automatically set to 1 in response to the setting of the TRMD bit to 1.
3. Check that the NTST.TDBEF0 flag = 1, and then write the value for transmission (the first byte indicates the slave address and value of the R/W# bit) to the NTDTBP0 register. Once the data for transmission are written to the NTDTBP0 register, the TDBEF0 flag is automatically set to 0, the data are transferred from the Normal Transmit Data Buffer 0 to the Shift Register, and the TDBEF0 flag is again set to 1. Once the byte containing the slave address and R/W# bit has been transmitted, the value of the PRSST.TRMD bit is automatically updated to select transmit or receive mode in accord with the value of the transmitted R/W# bit. If the value of the R/W# bit was 1, the TRMD bit is set to 0 on the rising edge of the 9th cycle of the SCL clock, placing I3C in master receive mode. At this time, the TDBEF0 flag is set to 0. The NTST.RDBFF0 flag is automatically set to 1 when ACK response is received from the slave device. If the slave device is not recognized or a communication failure occurs, the BST.NACKDF flag is set to 1. At this time, set 1 to the CNDCTL.SPCND bit to issue a STOP condition. For master reception from a device with a 10-bit address, start by using master transmission to issue the 10-bit address, and then issue a Repeated START condition. After that, transmitting 1111 0, the two higher-order bits of the slave address, and the R bit places I3C in master receive mode.
4. Dummy read the NTDTBP0 register after confirming that the NTST.RDBFF0 flag = 1; this makes I3C start output of the SCL clock and start data reception.
5. After 1 byte of data has been received, the NTST.RDBFF0 flag is set to 1 on the rising edge of the 8th or 9th cycle of the SCL clock (the clock signal) as selected by the SCSTRCTL.ACKTWE bit. Reading the NTDTBP0 register at this time produces the received data, and the RDBFF0 flag is automatically set to 0 at the same time. Furthermore, the value of the acknowledgment field received during the 9th cycle of the SCL clock is returned as the value set in the ACKCTL.ACKT bit. Furthermore, if the next byte to be received is the next to the last byte, set the SCSTRCTL.RWE bit to 1 (for wait insertion) before reading the NTDTBP0 register (containing the second byte from last). Also, enabling NACK output even for delays in processing to set the ACKCTL.ACKT bit to 1 (NACK) in step 6, such as due to other interrupts, this fixes the SCL_n line to the low level on the falling edge of the 9th clock cycle in reception of the last byte, so the state is such that issuing a STOP condition is possible.
6. When the SCSTRCTL.ACKTWE bit = 0 and the slave device must be notified that it is to end transfer for data reception after transfer of the next (final) byte, set the ACKCTL.ACKT bit to 1 (NACK).
7. After reading the byte before last from the NTDTBP0 register, if the value of the NTST.RDBFF0 flag is confirmed to be 1, write 1 to the CNDCTL.SPCND bit (STOP condition issuance request) and then read the last byte from the NTDTBP0 register. When 1 is written to the CNDCTL.SPCND bit, I3C is released from the wait state and issues the STOP condition after low-level output in the 9th clock cycle is completed or the SCL_n line is released from the low-hold state.
8. On detecting the STOP condition, I3C automatically sets bits CRMS and TRMD in the PRSST register to 00 and enters slave receive mode. Furthermore, detection of the STOP condition leads to the setting of the BST.SPCNDDF flag to 1.
9. After checking that the BST.SPCNDDF flag = 1, set the BST.NACKDF and SPCNDDF flags to 0 for the next transfer operation.

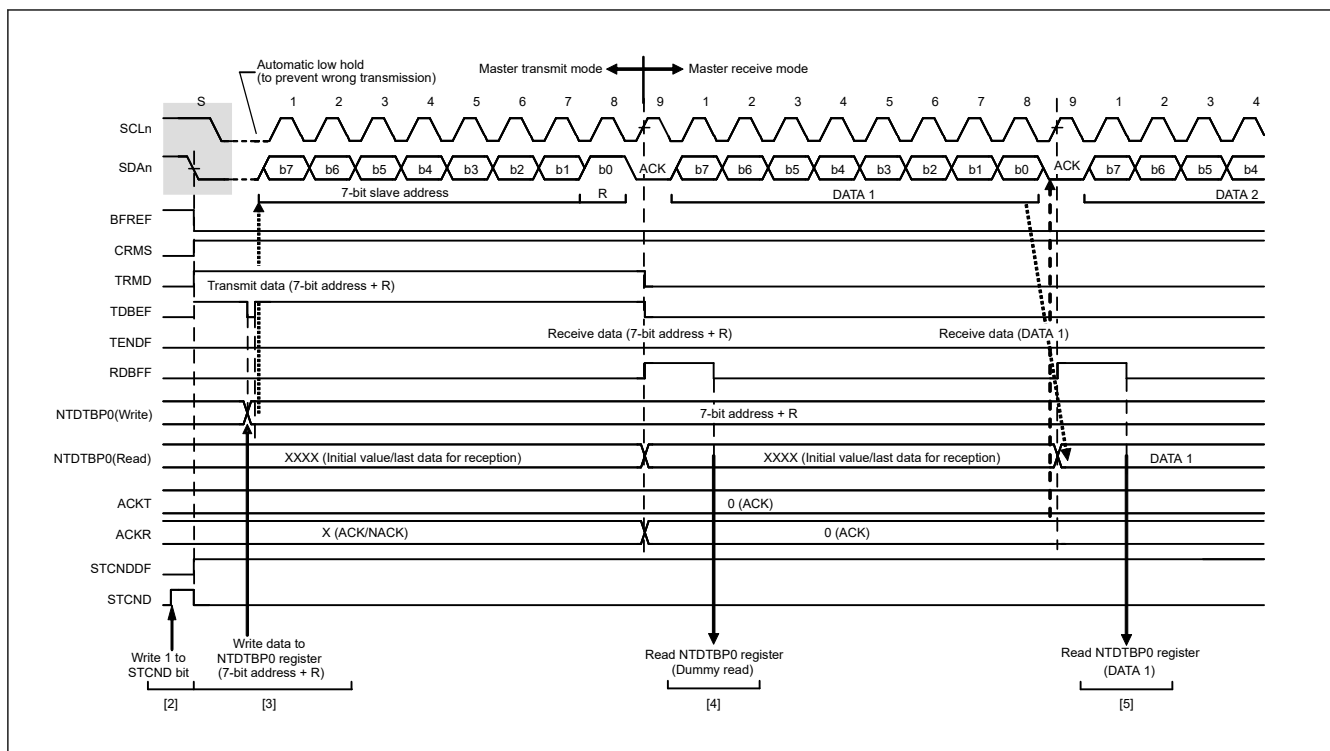


Figure 28.9 Master receive operation timing (1) (7-bit address format, when ACKTWE = 0)

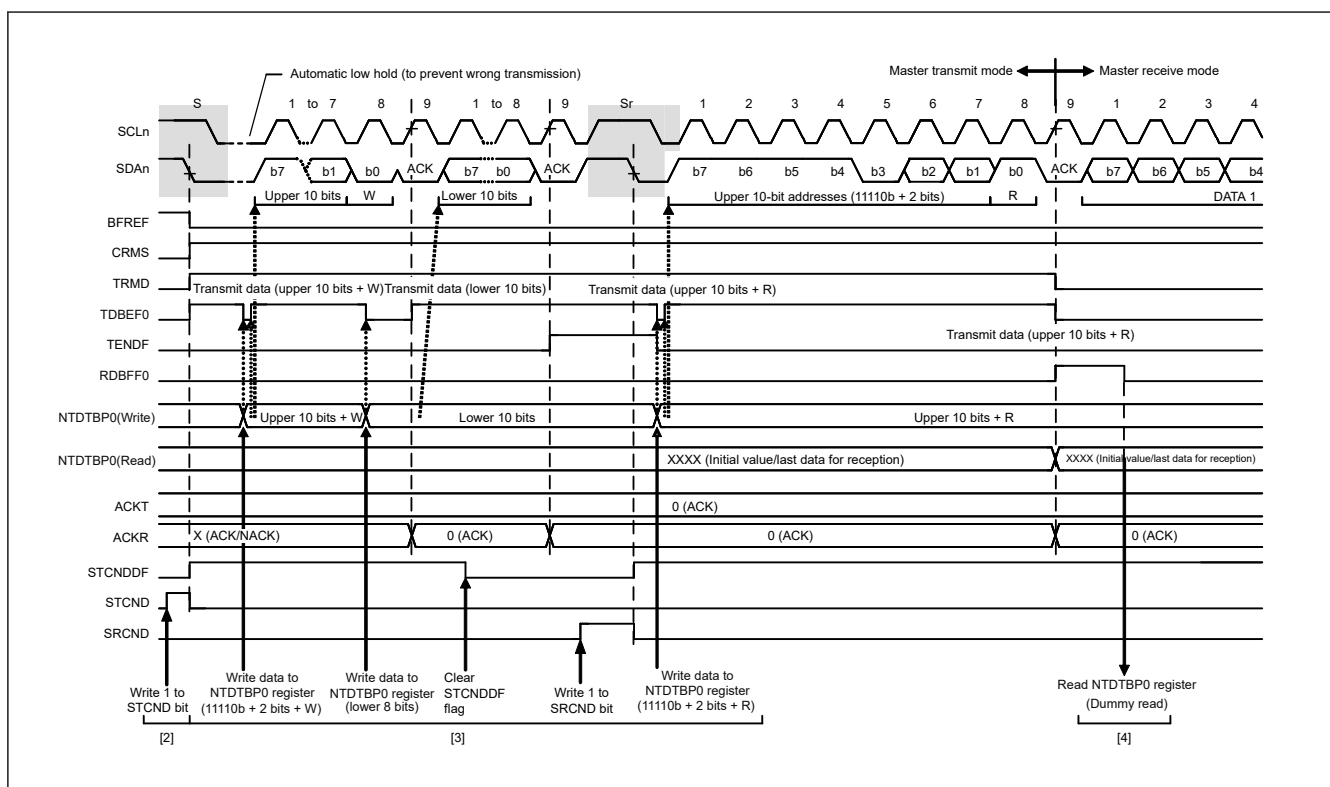


Figure 28.10 Master receive operation timing (2) (10-bit address format, when ACKTWE = 0)

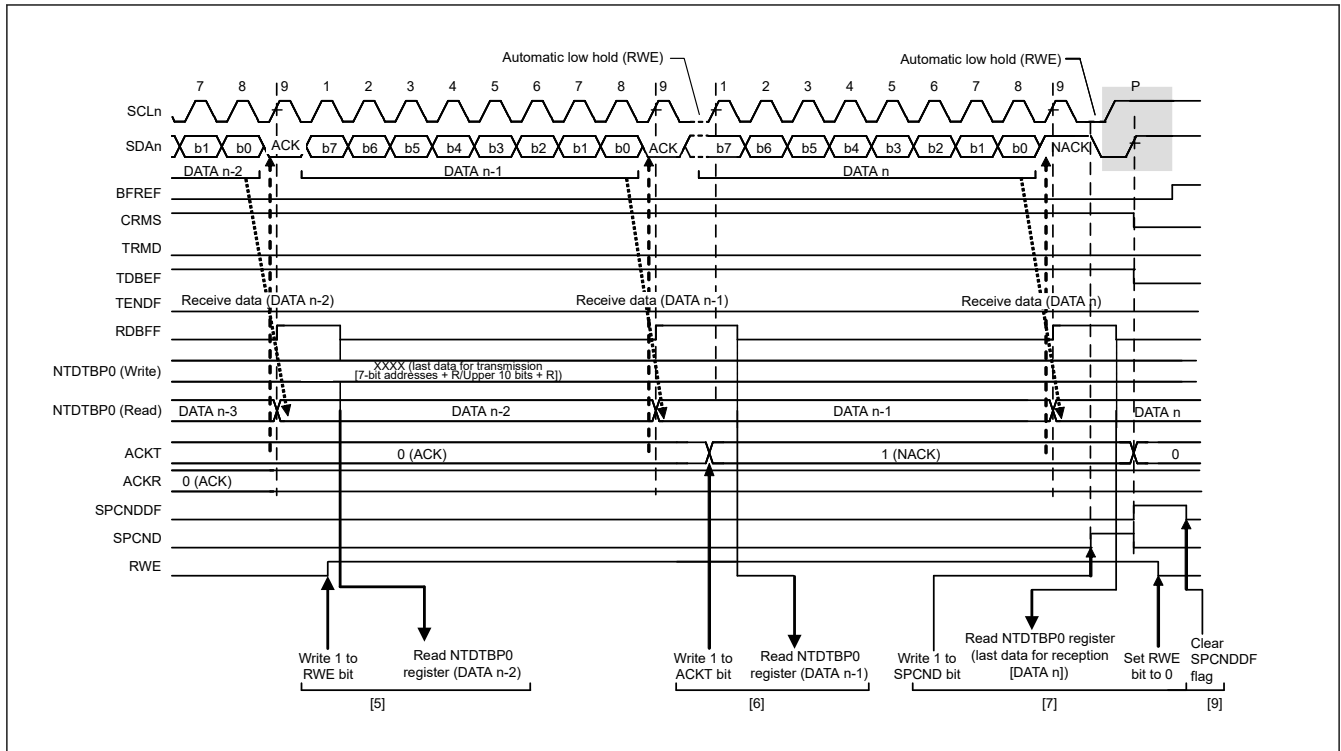


Figure 28.11 Master receive operation timing (3) (when ACKTWE = 0)

(2) I3C master operation

(a) Dynamic Address Assign Procedure

After initializing I3C, first execute Dynamic Address Assign Procedure for I3C Slave connected on the I3C Bus. The following describes the procedure.

1. Initial setting (see [section 28.3.3.1.2. I3C Initial Setting Flow](#) for details)
2. Execute Dynamic Address Assign with ENTDA or SETDASA Common Command Code (CCC) for I3C Slave set in DAT (DATBASm register).
Write Command Descriptor (Address Assign Command) to Command Buffer by the NCMDQP register.
3. When Command Descriptor is written to Command Buffer, a Transaction is issued on I3C Bus.
4. When ENTDA is specified for CMD[7:0] of Address Assign Command:
Execute Dynamic Address Assign for I3C Slave for the number of DATs specified by DEV_COUNT[3:0] starting with DAT specified by DEV_INDEX[4:0] of Address Assign Command.
When SETDASA is specified for CMD[7:0] of Address Assign Command:
Execute Dynamic Address Assign for I3C Slave indicated by DAT specified by DEV_INDEX[4:0] of Address Assign Command.
5. For ENTDA, the Provisional ID, BCR, DCR transmitted from I3C Slave is stored in Receive Data Buffer (BCR is also automatically stored in the MSDCTm register).
Read the Provisional ID, BCR, and DCR from the Receive Data Buffer by the NTDTBPn register with an interrupt by RDBFF0 = 1.
6. When execution of Dynamic Address Assign is completed, issue the STOP condition and store the Response Descriptor into the Response Buffer.
7. Read the Response Descriptor by the NRSPQP register and check the status.
8. Check whether the value of the DATA_LENGTH[15:0] bits of the Response Descriptor matches the value of DEV_COUNT[3:0] of the Address Assign Command.

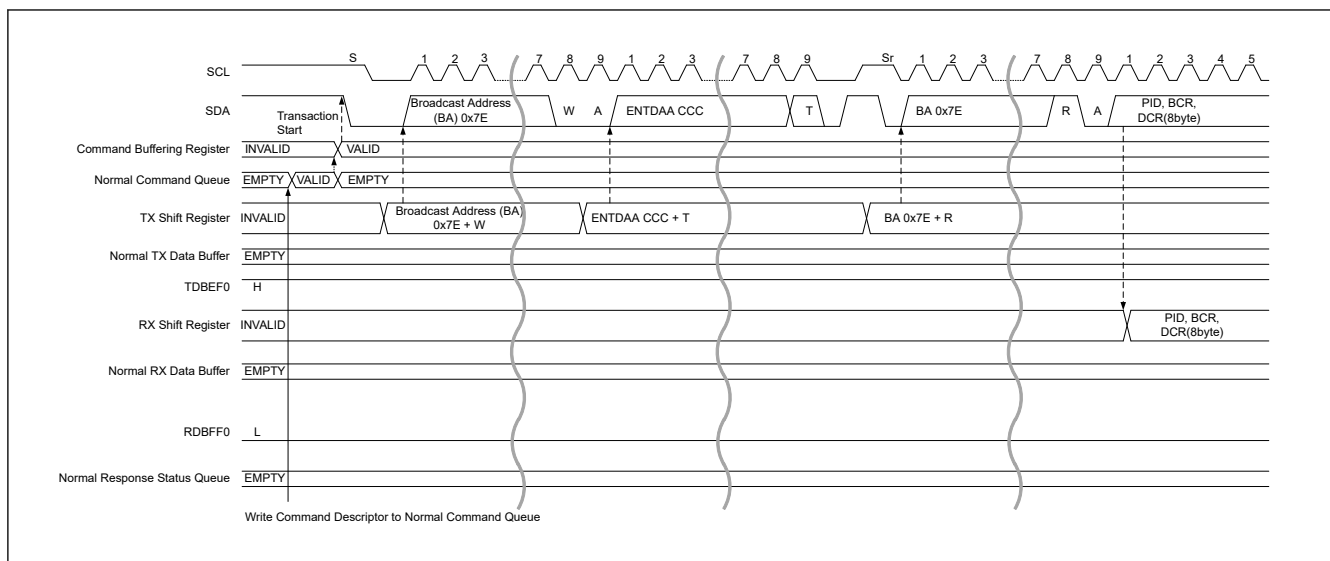


Figure 28.12 Dynamic address assign procedure (ENTDAA CCC) timing (1/3)

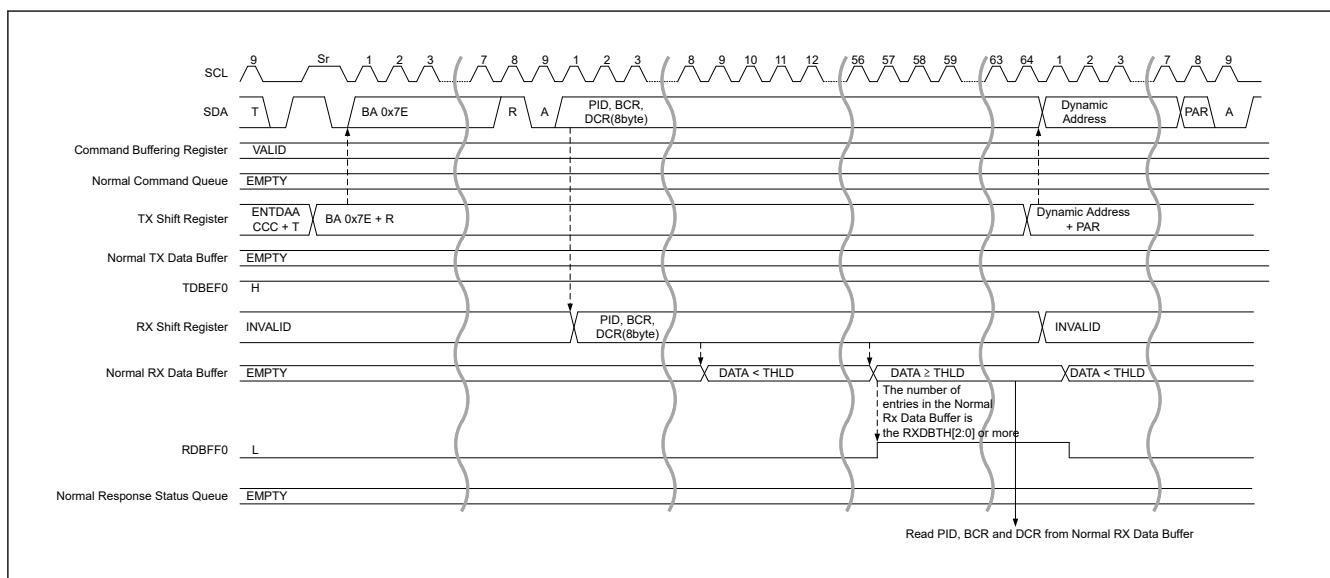


Figure 28.13 Dynamic address assign procedure (ENTDAA CCC) timing (2/3)

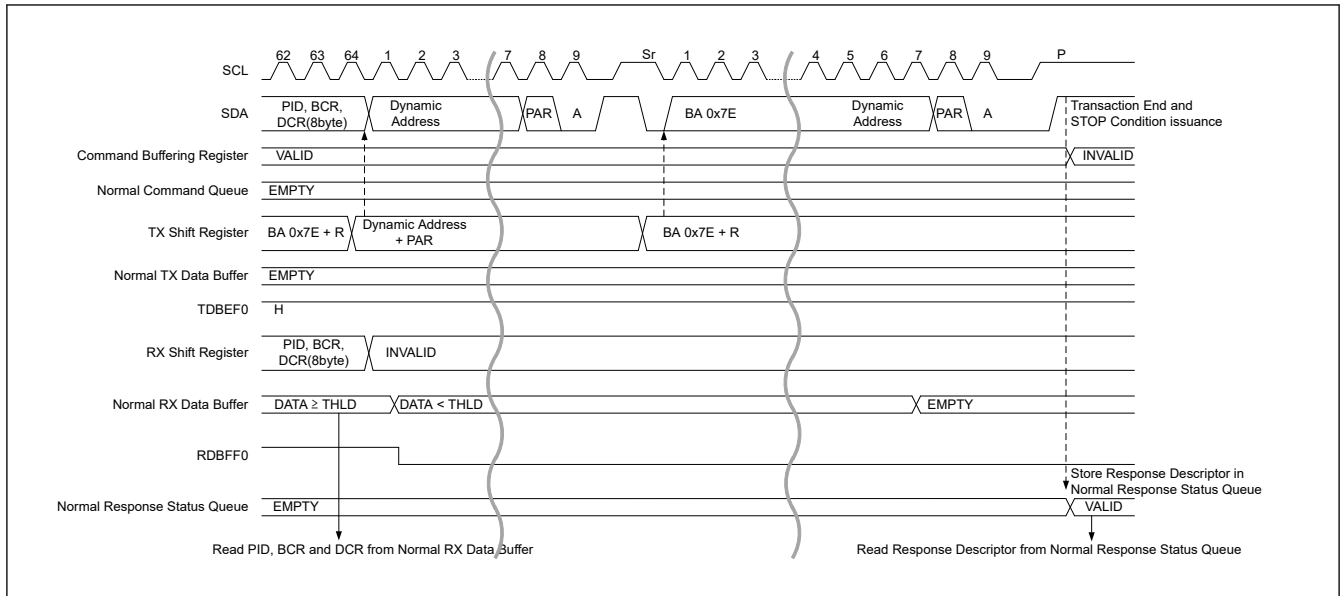


Figure 28.14 Dynamic address assign procedure (ENTDAA CCC) timing (3/3)

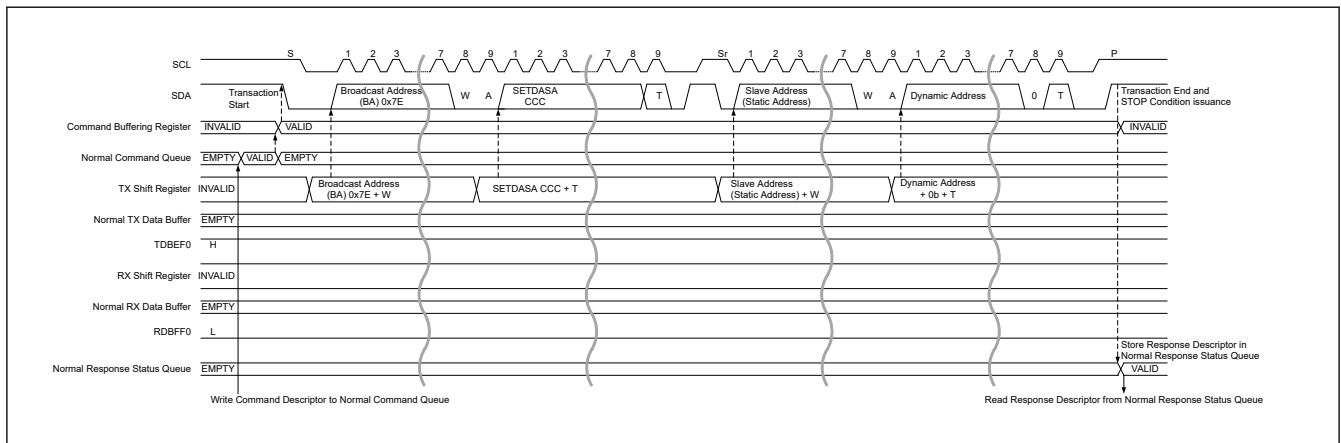


Figure 28.15 Dynamic address assign procedure (SETDASA CCC) timing

(b) SDR Data Write Transfer

1. Write data for transmission to the Transmit Data Buffer by the NTDTBPn register.
2. Write a Command Descriptor (Immediate Transfer Command or Regular Transfer Command or Combo Transfer Command) for Data Transfer to the Command Buffer by the NCMDQP register.
3. When Command Descriptor is written to Command Buffer, a transaction is issued on I3C Bus.
When NACK is received with the Address Header, transaction of the same command is automatically issued according to the NACK Retry Count value (DATBASm.DVNACK) of DAT.
4. If data for transmission still remain, write data for transmission by an interrupt with TDBEF0 = 1 to the Transmit Data Buffer by the NTDTBPn register.
5. When data transmission for the number of Data Length specified by the DATA_LENGTH[15:0] bits of the Command Descriptor is completed, the Repeated START condition or STOP condition is issued and the Response Descriptor is stored in the Response Buffer.
6. Read the Response Descriptor by the NRSPQP register and check the status.
7. Check that the value of the DATA_LENGTH[15:0] bits of the Response Descriptor is 0.

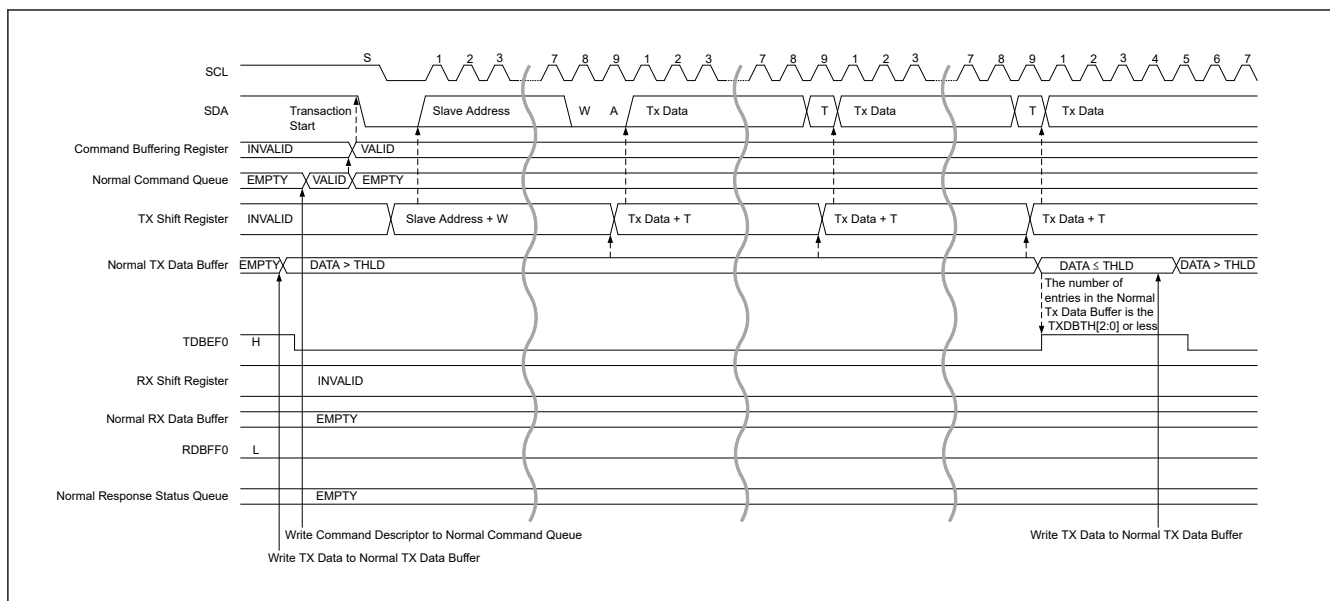


Figure 28.16 SDR data write transfer timing (1/2)

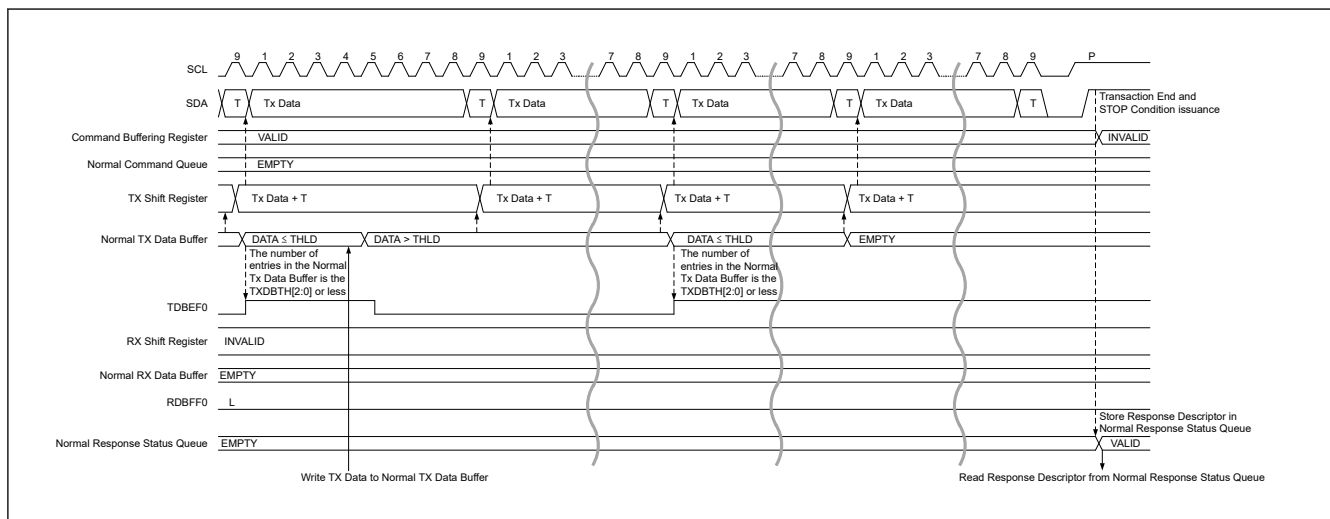
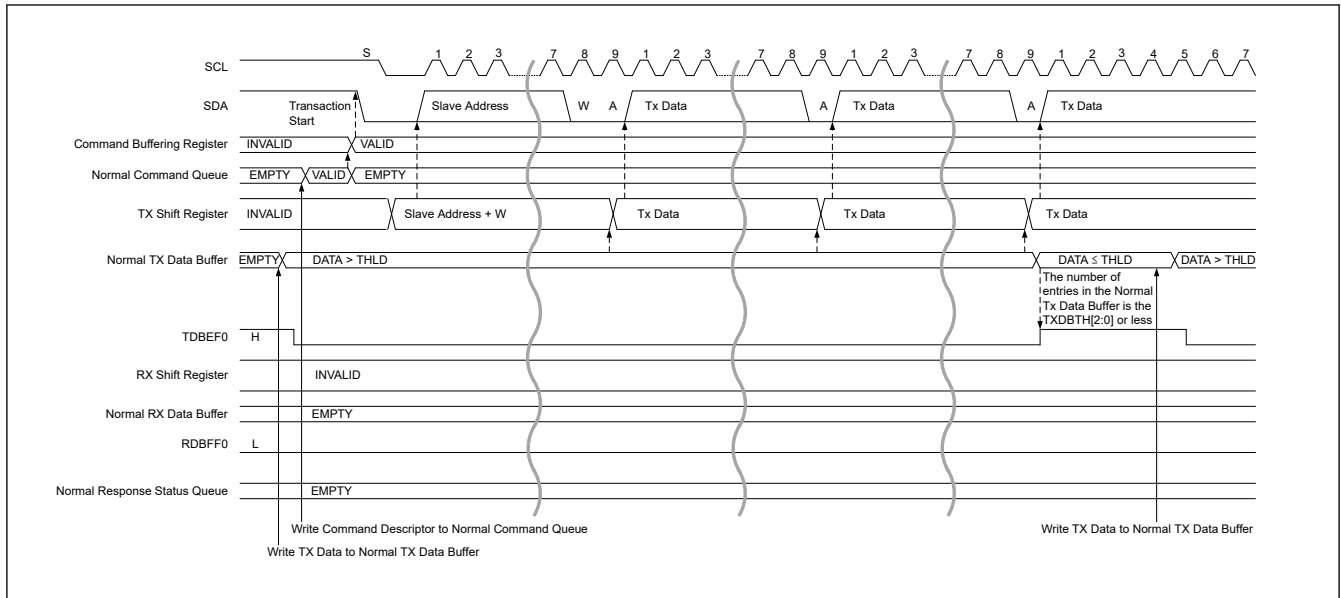
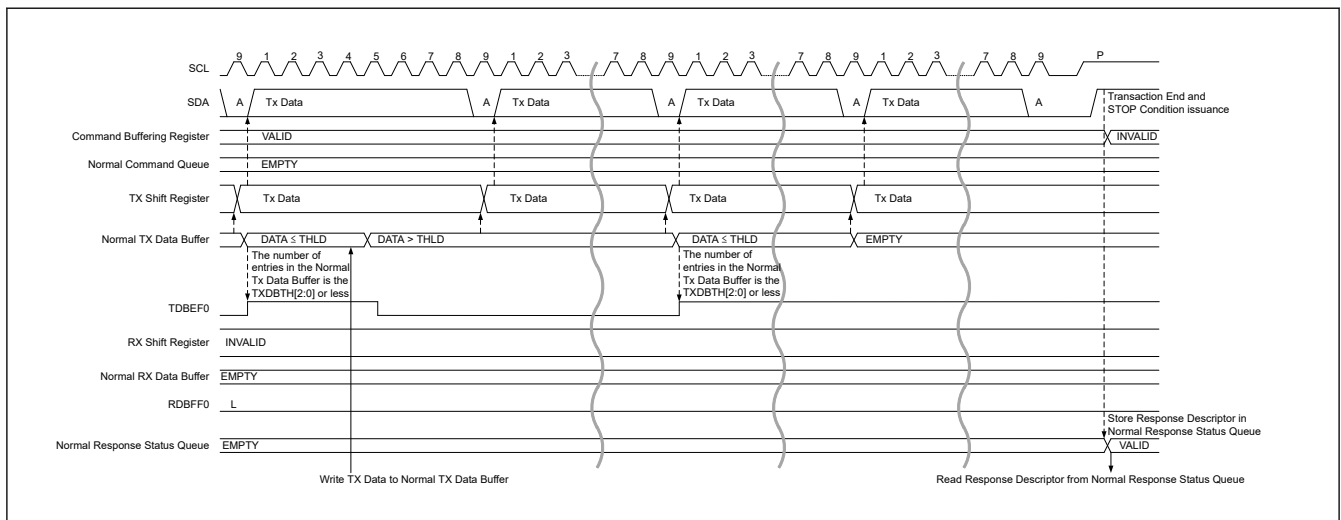


Figure 28.17 SDR data write transfer timing (2/2)

Figure 28.18 Legacy I²C message data write timing (1/2)Figure 28.19 Legacy I²C message data write timing (2/2)

(c) SDR Data Read Transfer

1. Write a Command Descriptor (Immediate Transfer Command or Regular Transfer Command or Combo Transfer Command) for Data Transfer to the Command Buffer by the NCMDQP register.
2. When Command Descriptor is written to Command Buffer, a transaction is issued on I3C Bus.
When NACK is received with the Address Header, transaction of the same command is automatically issued according to the NACK Retry Count value (DATBASm.DVNACK) of DAT.
3. Data received from the I3C Slave is stored in the Receive Data Buffer.
4. With the RDBFF0 = 1 interrupt, the received data is read from the Receive Data Buffer by the NTDTBPN register.
5. SDR:
Detecting Low in T-bit or receiving Data for the number of Data Length specified by the DATA_LENGTH[15:0] bits of Command Descriptor is completed, issue Repeated START condition or STOP condition and store the Response Descriptor into the Response Buffer.

Legacy I²C Message:

When data reception for the number of Data Length specified by the DATA_LENGTH[15:0] bits of Command Descriptor is completed, NACK is issued. After that, issue a Repeated START condition or STOP condition and store the Response Descriptor into the Response Buffer.

-
- The diagram illustrates the timing and data flow for the I2C protocol, showing the sequence of events for a write command descriptor. The signals shown are SCL, SDA, Command Queue Register, Normal Command Queue, TX Shift Register, Normal TX Data Buffer, TDBEF0, RX Shift Register, Normal RX Data Buffer, RDBFF0, and Normal Response Status Queue.
- The sequence of events is as follows:
- Transaction Start:** SCL is high, SDA is low. The Command Queue Register is INVALID. The Normal Command Queue is EMPTY.
 - Slave Address:** SCL is high, SDA is low. The Command Queue Register becomes VALID. The Normal Command Queue becomes VALID. The TX Shift Register becomes INVALID. The Normal TX Data Buffer becomes EMPTY. The TDBEF0 signal is high.
 - Rx Data:** SCL is high, SDA is high. The TX Shift Register becomes VALID. The Normal TX Data Buffer becomes VALID. The RX Shift Register becomes INVALID. The Normal RX Data Buffer becomes EMPTY. The RDBFF0 signal is low.
 - Automatic Response (ACK):** SCL is high, SDA is low. The RX Shift Register becomes VALID. The Normal RX Data Buffer becomes VALID. The RDBFF0 signal becomes high.
 - DATA ≥ THLD:** The Normal RX Data Buffer becomes full. The RDBFF0 signal becomes high. The Normal Response Status Queue becomes VALID.
 - Normal Response Status Queue:** The Normal Response Status Queue becomes VALID. The Normal Response Status Queue becomes VALID.
- The diagram also shows the condition for the Normal RX Data Buffer to be full (DATA ≥ THLD) and the condition for the Normal RX Data Buffer to be empty (DATA < THLD).
- The diagram is divided into four sections by wavy lines, representing different phases of the transaction. The first section shows the initial setup and the start of the transaction. The second section shows the transfer of data from the TX Shift Register to the Normal TX Data Buffer. The third section shows the transfer of data from the Normal RX Data Buffer to the RX Shift Register. The fourth section shows the completion of the transaction and the transfer of data from the Normal Response Status Queue to the Normal RX Data Buffer.

The diagram illustrates the I2C protocol sequence, showing the relationship between the SCL and SDA signals and the internal state of various registers and buffers. The SCL signal is a clock, and the SDA signal carries the data. The sequence of events is as follows:

- Initial State:** The Command Queue Register is VALID, the Normal Command Queue is EMPTY, the TX Shift Register contains the Slave Address + R, the Normal TX Data Buffer is EMPTY, TDBEF0 is H, the RX Shift Register is EMPTY, the Normal RX Data Buffer is DATA < THLD, RDBF0 is L, and the Normal Response Status Queue is EMPTY.
- Data Reception:** Data is received on the SDA line. The RX Shift Register shifts in the data. When the data is received, the Normal RX Data Buffer becomes DATA ≥ THLD. The number of entries in the Normal Rx Data Buffer is the RXDBTH[2:0] or more.
- Acknowledgment (ACK):** The RX Shift Register shifts in the ACK. The Normal RX Data Buffer becomes EMPTY. The Normal Response Status Queue becomes VALID.
- Transaction End and STOP Condition Issuance:** The SDA line transitions to a high state, indicating the end of the transaction. The Command Queue Register becomes EMPTY, the Normal Command Queue becomes EMPTY, the TX Shift Register becomes EMPTY, the Normal TX Data Buffer becomes EMPTY, TDBEF0 becomes L, the RX Shift Register becomes EMPTY, the Normal RX Data Buffer becomes DATA < THLD, RDBF0 becomes L, and the Normal Response Status Queue becomes VALID.
- Read Data from Normal RX Data Buffer:** The data is read from the Normal RX Data Buffer. The Normal Response Status Queue becomes VALID.
- Read Response Descriptor from Normal Response Status Queue:** The response descriptor is read from the Normal Response Status Queue. The Normal Response Status Queue becomes EMPTY.

Page 821 of 1350

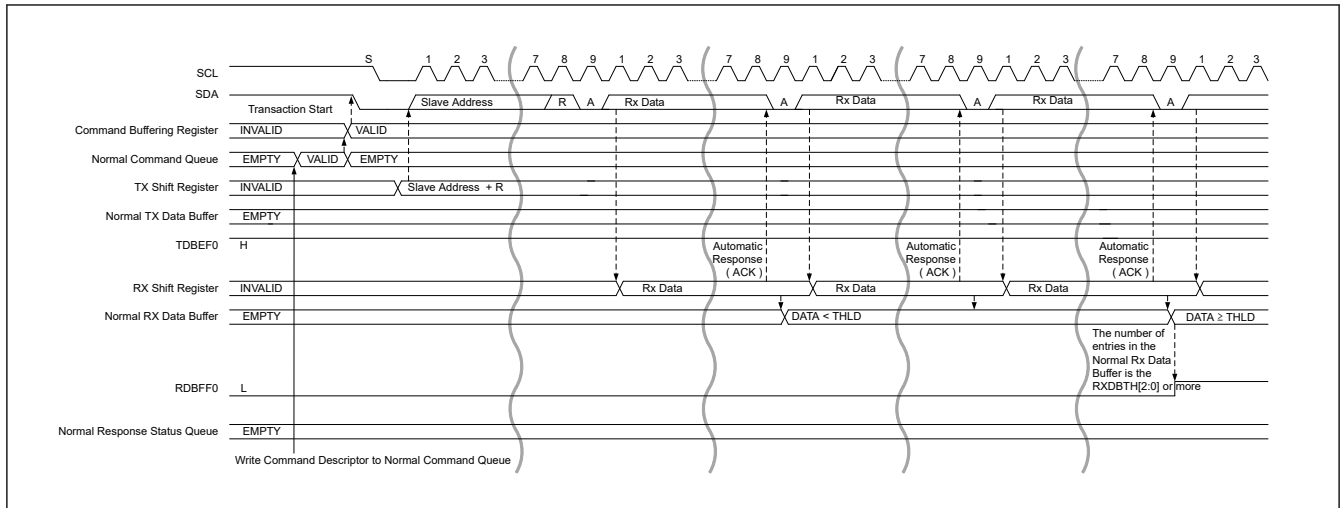


Figure 28.22 Legacy I²C message data read transfer timing (1/2)

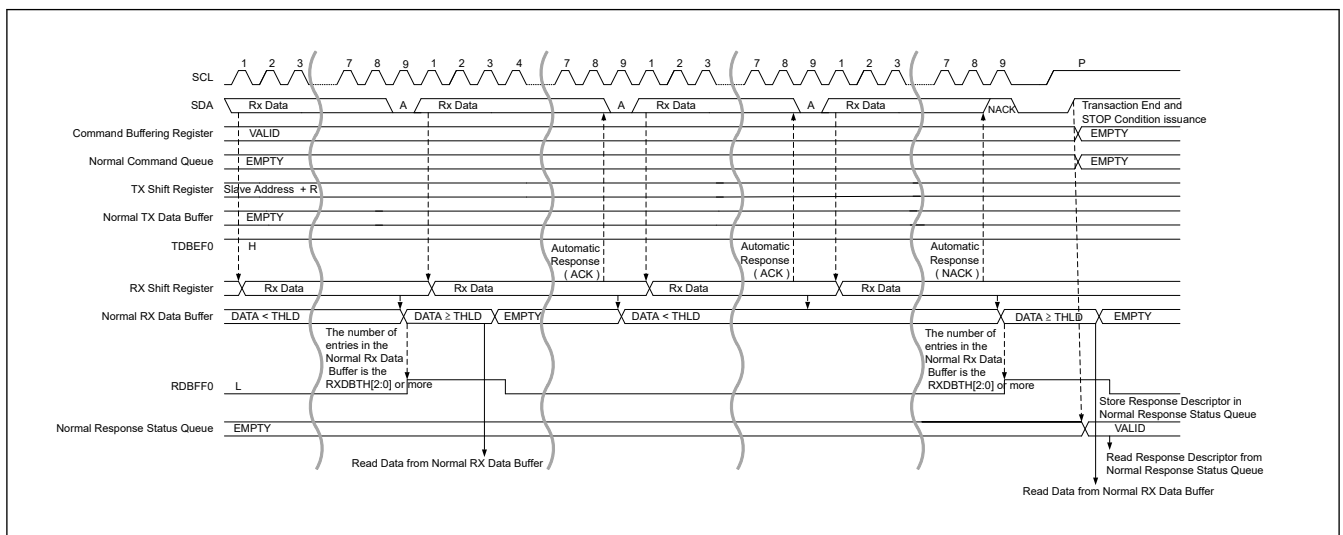


Figure 28.23 Legacy I²C message data read transfer timing (2/2)

(d) IBI Transfer

1. Write Command Descriptor to the Command Buffer and issue Transaction on I3C Bus.
If START Request (SDA Low Drive) is issued from the slave device, I3C drives SCL to Low and completes START condition.
Thereafter, the SCL is supplied and an In-Band Interrupt Request is received.
2. In Slave Address with RnW of the Address Header, if losing Arbitration by issuing an In-Band Interrupt from I3C Slave, stop issuing Transaction.
3. According to [section 28.3.2.3.8. In-band Interrupt \[I3C Mode\]](#), detect In-Band Interrupt and process.
4. In the interrupt with IBIQEFF = 1, read the IBI Status Descriptor from the IBI Status Buffer by the NIBIQP register and check the status.
When detected a Slave Interrupt Request and responded with ACK, Read the IBI Data for the Data Length indicated by the DATA_LENGTH[15:0] bits of the IBI Status Descriptor from the IBI Data Buffer by the NIBIQP register.
5. Restart issuing Transaction of Command of Step1.

An example of the processing procedure after detection of In-Band Interrupt is shown below.

Processing procedure for detecting Mastership Request and transferring master right to Secondary Master

1. If the I3C Secondary Master wins the Arbitration, issue a DEFSLVS CCC and notify Slave information to the Secondary Master.

- Issue a GETACCMST CCC and complete CCC by a STOP condition.

Note:

- After transferring master right to Secondary Master, to get master right again, issue a Mastership Request according to (f) IBI Transfer of (2) I3C slave operation.
- After Mastership Request is accepted by the Current Master, to get master right again at receiving the GETACCMST CCC and complete CCC by a STOP condition.

Processing procedure when Hot-Join Event is detected

- Issue a Broadcast Command Code Enter Dynamic Address Assignment (ENTDAA) to start the Dynamic Address Assignment process.
- Issue a DEFSLVS CCC and notify Slave information to the Secondary Master.

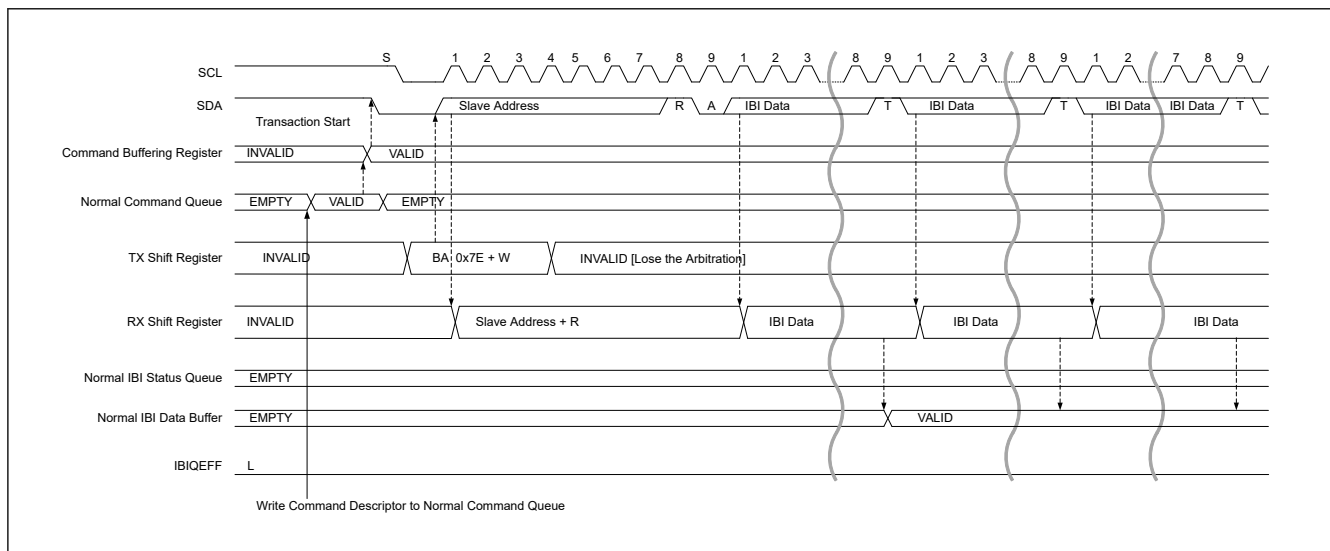


Figure 28.24 I3C master IBI transfer timing (1/2)

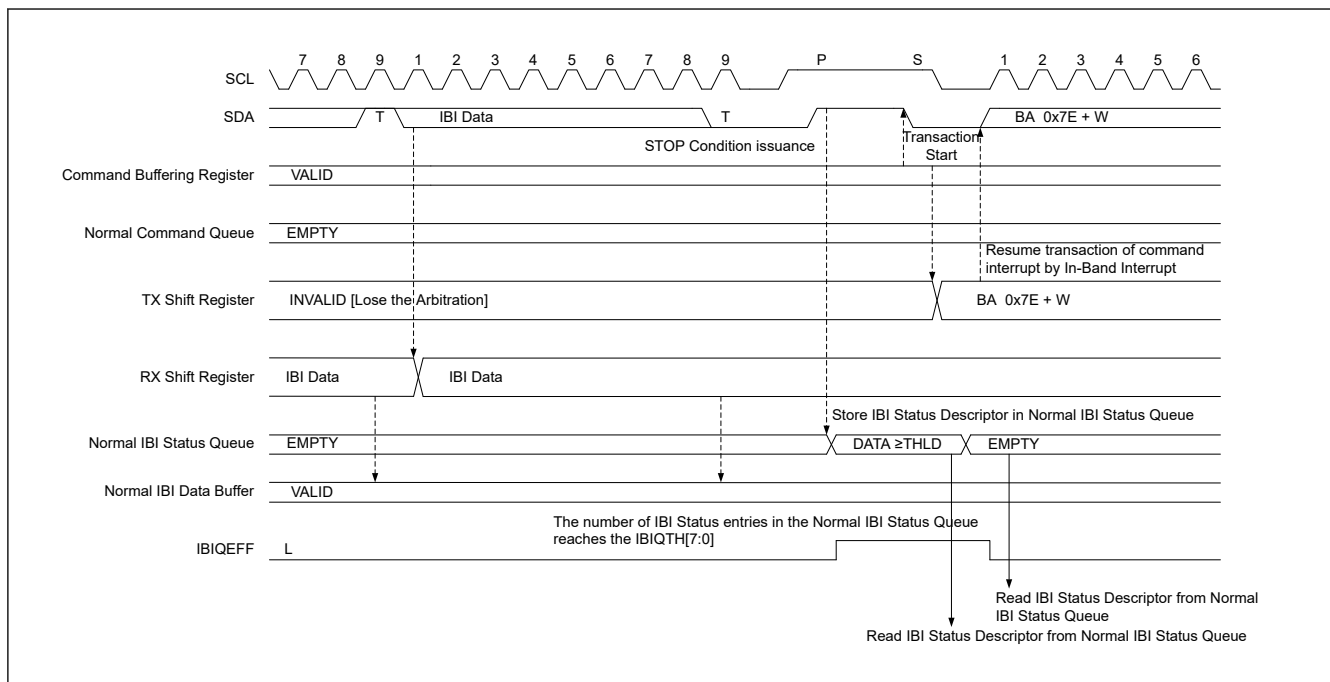


Figure 28.25 I3C master IBI transfer timing (2/2)

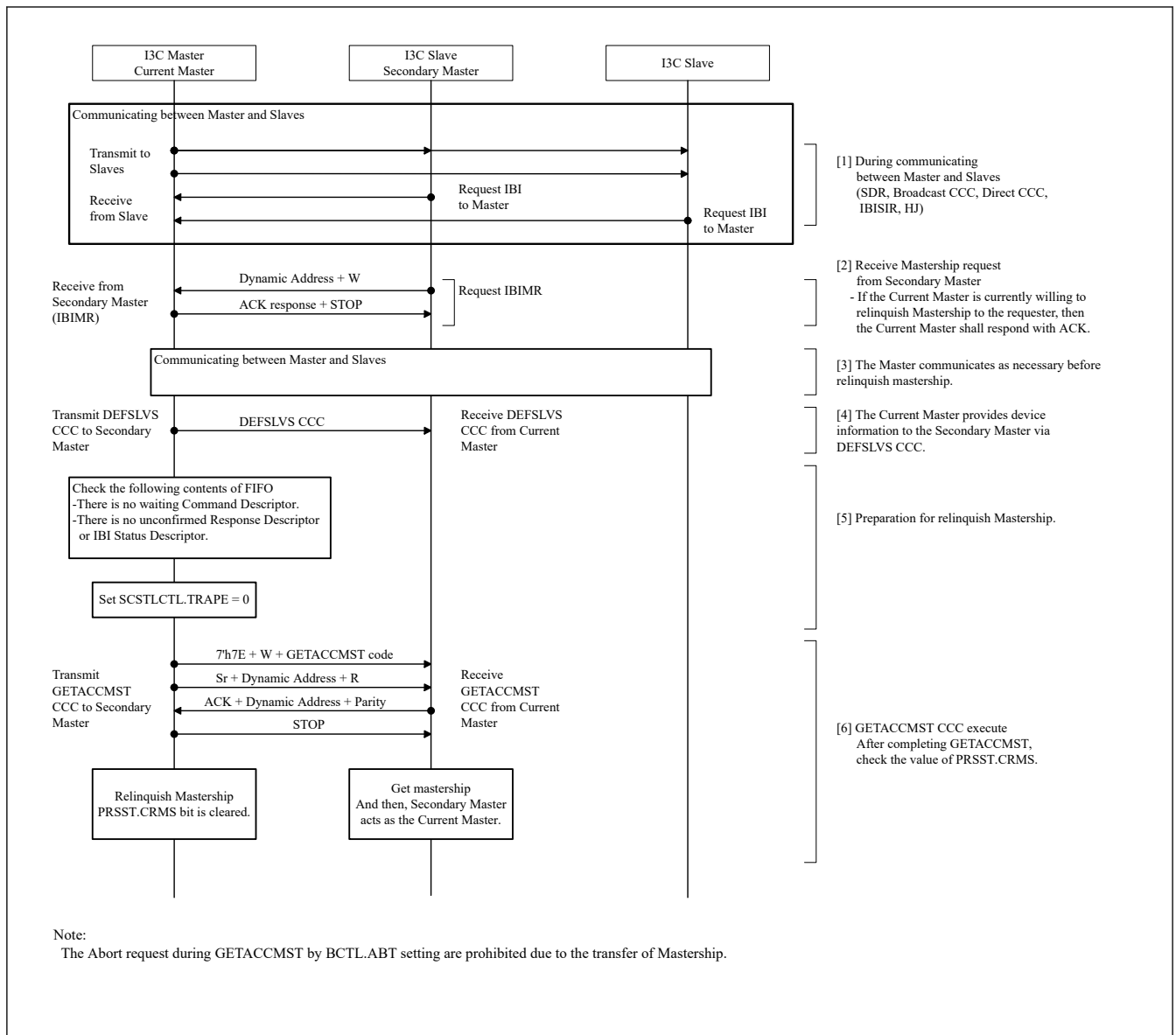


Figure 28.26 I3C Master mastership processing flow

28.3.2.1.2 Slave Mode Operation

(1) I²C slave operation

(a) Data Write Transfer (Single Buffer transfer)

In slave receive operation, the master device outputs the SCL clock and transmit data, and I3C returns acknowledgments as a slave device.

Figure 28.110 shows an example of usage of slave reception and Figure 28.27 and Figure 28.28 show the timing of operations in slave reception.

The following describes the procedure and operations for slave reception.

1. Initial settings. For details, see [section 28.3.3.1. Initial Setting Flow](#). After initial settings, I3C will stay in the standby state until it receives a slave address that it matches.
2. After receiving a matching slave address, I3C sets one of the corresponding bits SVST.HOAF, GCAF, and SVAFn (n = 0 to 2) to 1 on the rising edge of the ninth cycle of SCL clock (the clock signal) and outputs the acknowledgment bit (ACK) on the ninth cycle of SCL clock. If the value of the R/W# bit that was also received at this time is 0, I3C continues to place itself in slave receive mode and sets the NTST.RDBFF0 flag to 1.

- After the BST.SPCNDDF flag is confirmed to be 0 and the NTST.RDBFF0 flag to be 1, dummy read the NTDTBP0 register (the dummy value consists of the slave address and R/W# bit when the 7-bit address format is selected, or the lower 8 bits when the 10-bit address format is selected).
- When the NTDTBP0 register is read, I3C automatically sets the NTST.RDBFF0 flag to 0. If reading of the NTDTBP0 register is delayed and a next byte is received while the RDBFF0 flag is still set to 1, I3C holds the SCLn line low from one SCL cycle before the timing with which RDBFF0 should be set. In this case, reading the NTDTBP0 register releases the SCLn line from being held at the low level. When the BST.SPCNDDF flag = 1 and the NTST.RDBFF0 flag is also 1, read the NTDTBP0 register until all the data is completely received.
- On detecting the STOP condition, I3C automatically clears bits SVST.HOAF, GCAF, and SVAFn (n = 0 to 2) to 0.
- After checking that the BST.SPCNDDF flag = 1, set the BST.SPCNDDF flag to 0 for the next transfer operation.

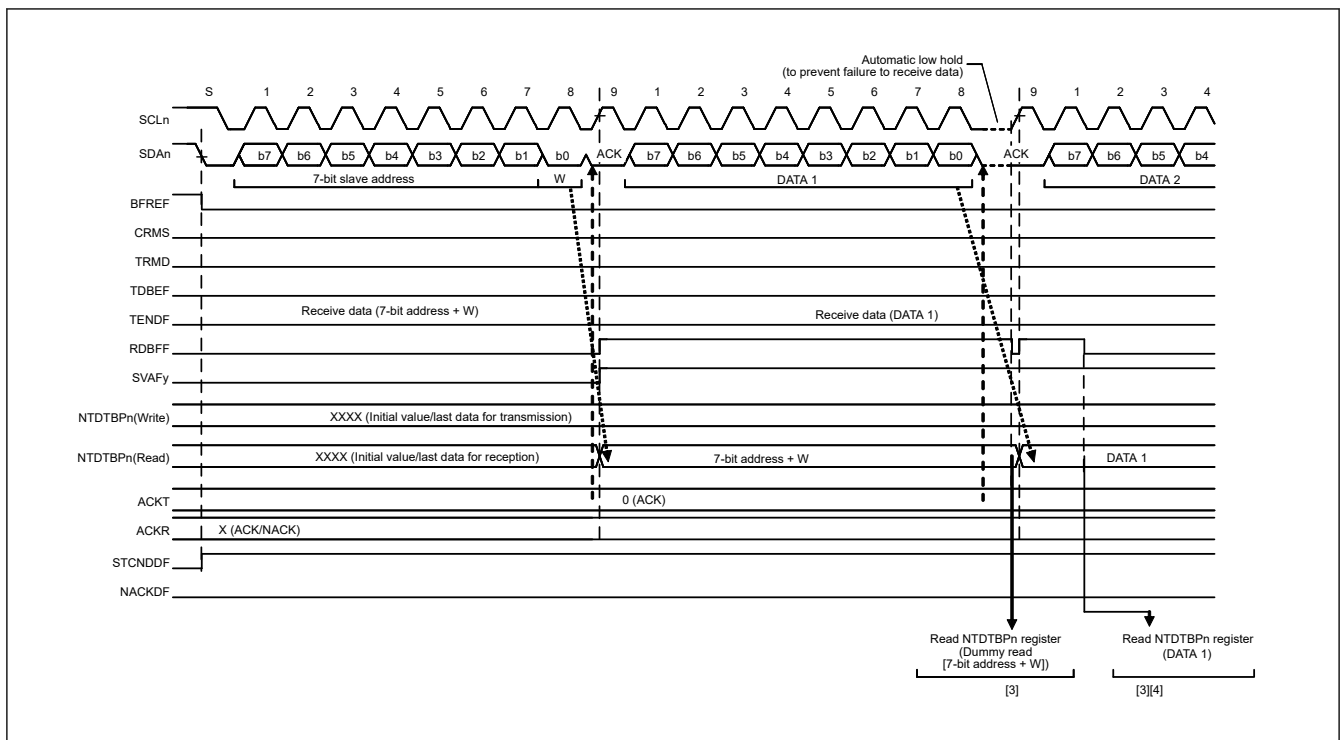


Figure 28.27 Slave receive operation timing (1) (7-bit address format, when ACKTWE = 0)

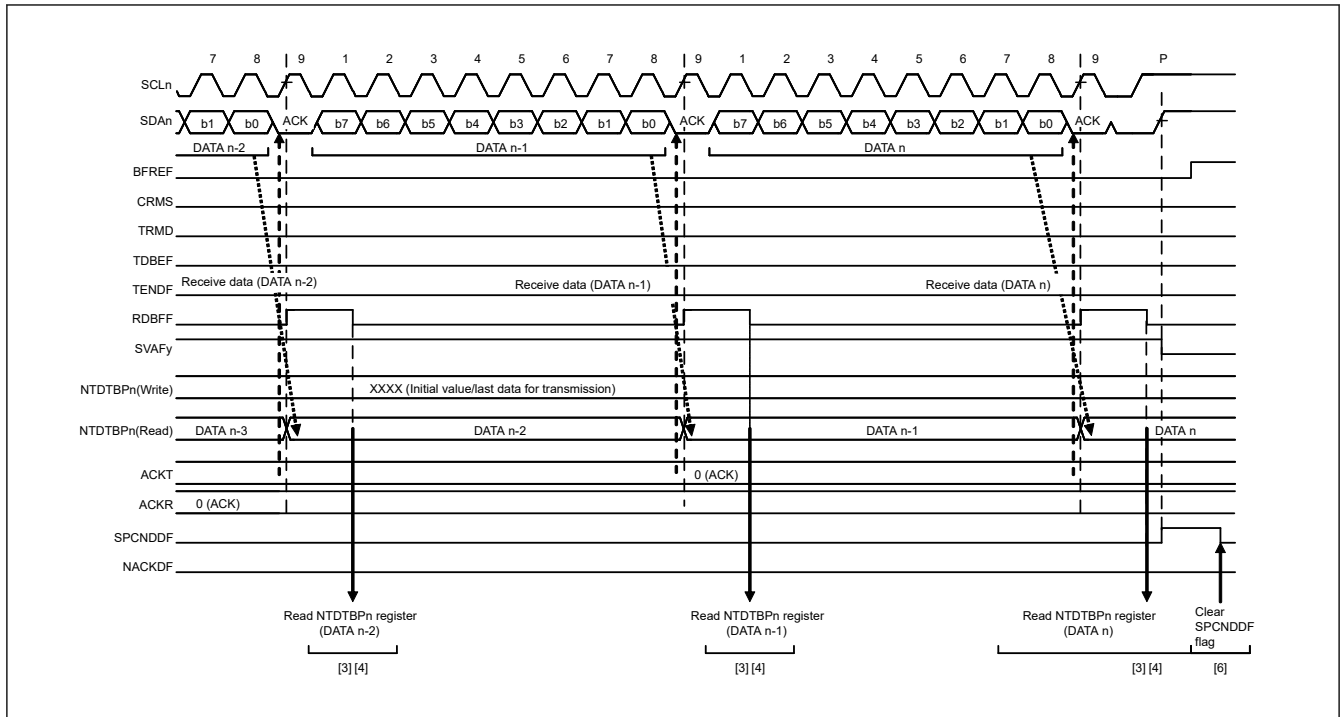


Figure 28.28 Slave receive operation timing (2) (when ACKTWE = 0)

(b) Data Read Transfer (Single Buffer transfer)

In slave transmit operation, the master device outputs the SCL clock, I3C transmits data as a slave device, and the master device returns acknowledgments.

Figure 28.109 shows an example of usage of slave transmission and Figure 28.29 and Figure 28.30 show the timing of operations in slave transmission.

The following describes the procedure and operations for slave transmission.

1. Initial settings. For details, see [section 28.3.3.1. Initial Setting Flow](#).
After initial settings, I3C will stay in the standby state until it receives a slave address that it matches.
2. After receiving a matching slave address, I3C sets one of the corresponding bits SVST.HOAF, GCAF, and SVAfn ($n = 0$ to 2) to 1 on the rising edge of the ninth cycle of SCL clock (the clock signal) and outputs the acknowledgment bit (ACK) on the ninth cycle of SCL clock. If the value of the R/W# bit that was also received at this time is 1, I3C automatically places itself in slave transmit mode by setting both the PRSST.TRMD bit and the NTST.TDBEF0 flag to 1.
3. After the NTST.TDBEF0 flag is confirmed to be 1, write the data for transmission to the NTDTBP0 register.
At this time, if I3C does not receive acknowledge from the master device (receives a NACK signal) while the BSTE.NACKDE bit = 1, I3C aborts transfer of the next data.
4. Wait for the following (a) or (b) condition.
 - (a) The BST.NACKDF flag is set to 1.
 - (b) The BST.TENDF flag is set to 1 while the NTST.TDBEF0 flag = 1, after the last byte for transmission is written to the NTDTBP0 register.

When the BST.NACKDF flag or the TENDF flag = 1, I3C drives the SCLn line low on the ninth falling edge of the SCL clock.

5. When the BST.NACKDF flag or the BST.TENDF flag = 1, the dummy read the NTDTBP0 register to complete the processing. This releases the SCLn line.
6. On detecting the STOP condition, I3C automatically sets bits SVST.HOAF, GCAF, and SVAfn ($n = 0$ to 2), flags NTST.TDBEF0 and BST.TENDF, and the PRSST.TRMD bit to 0, and enters slave receive mode.
7. After checking that the BST.SPCNDDF flag = 1, set the BST.NACKDF and SPCNDDF flags to 0 for the next transfer operation.

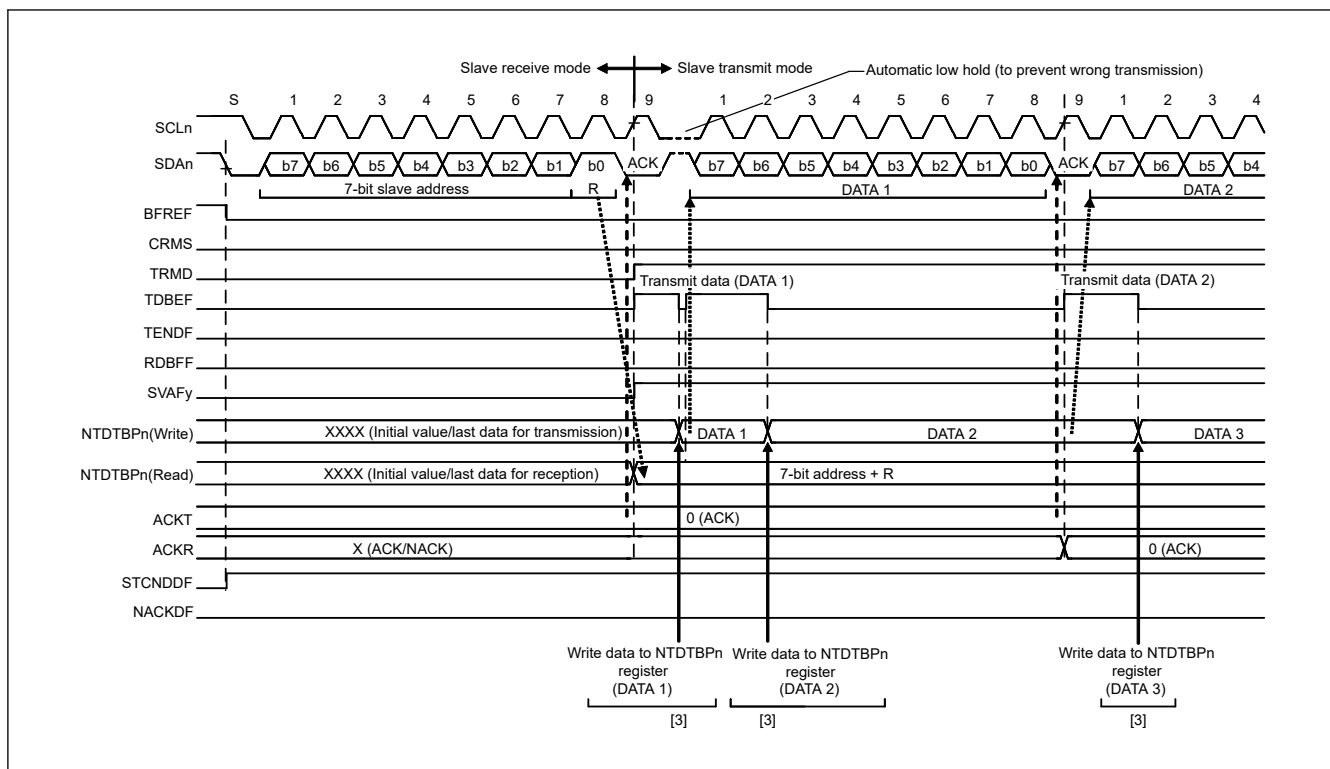


Figure 28.29 Slave transmit operation timing (1) (7-bit address format)

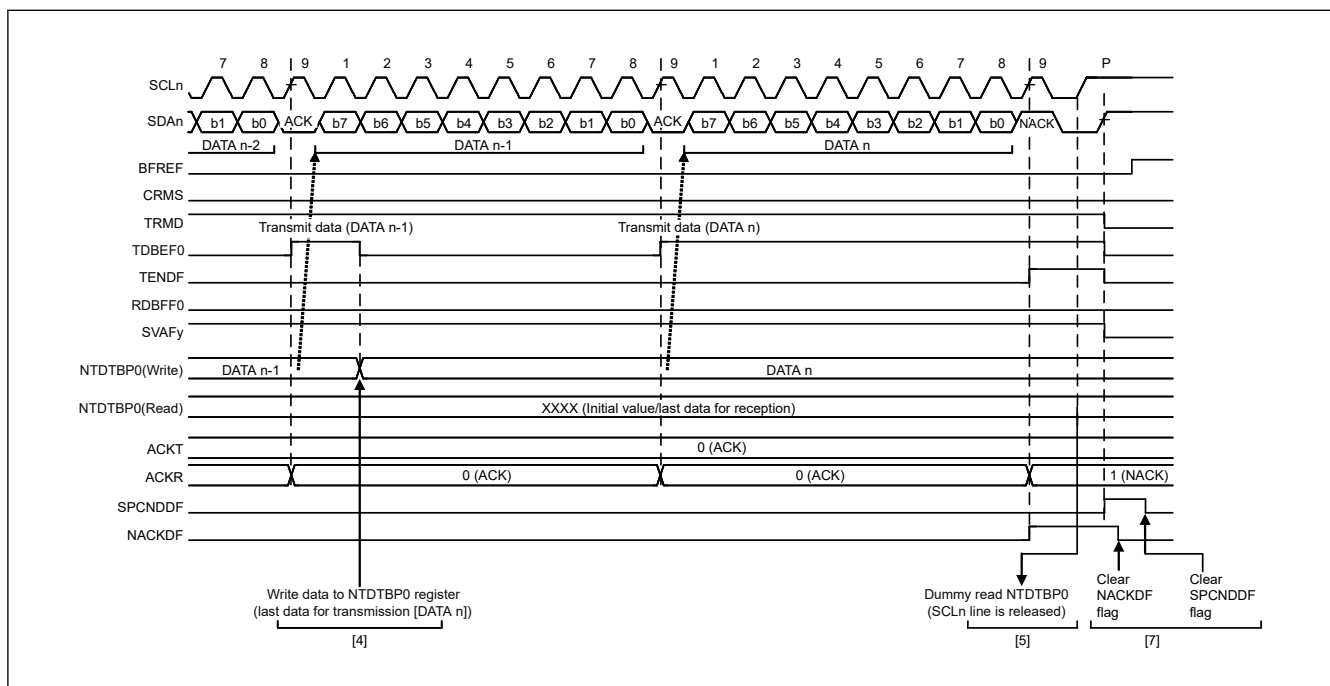


Figure 28.30 Slave transmit operation timing (2)

(2) I3C slave operation

(a) Dynamic Address Assign Procedure

After initializing I3C, the I3C master first performs the Dynamic Address Assign Procedure.

The operation of R-I3 during the Dynamic Address Assign Procedure by ENTDAACCC is described below.

1. Initial setting (For details, see [section 28.3.3.1.2. I3C Initial Setting Flow](#))

- When ENTDAACCC is received, I3C transmits Provisional ID (SDCTPIDH[31:0], SDCTPIDL[15:0]), BCR (SVDCT.TBCR[7:0]), DCR (SVDCT.TDCR[7:0]) until a dynamic address is assigned. (For details, see "In case of Broadcast CCC (ENTDAA)" of (6) CCC detection function [I3C mode].)
- When ENTDAACCC is completed and a STOP condition is detected, the Receive Status Descriptor is stored in the Receive Status Buffer.
- Read Receive Status Descriptor with the NRSQP register and check the status.
- Read the data for the Data Length indicated by the DATA_LENGTH[15:0] bits of the Receive Status Descriptor from the Receive Data Buffer with the NDTBP0 register.

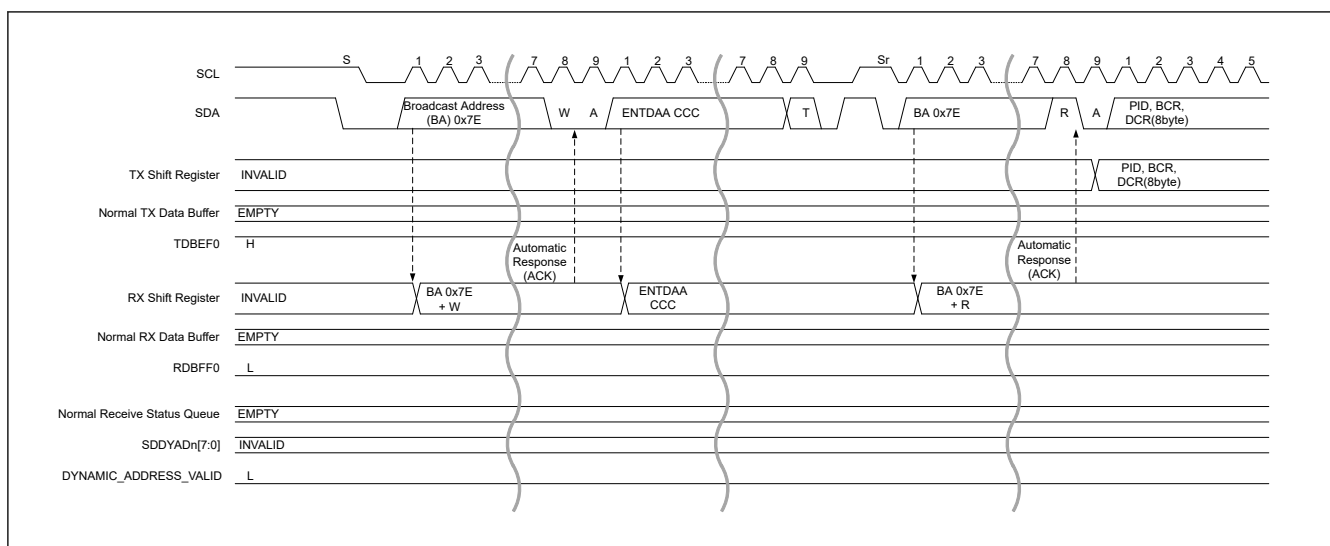


Figure 28.31 Dynamic address assign procedure (ENTDAA CCC) timing (1/3)

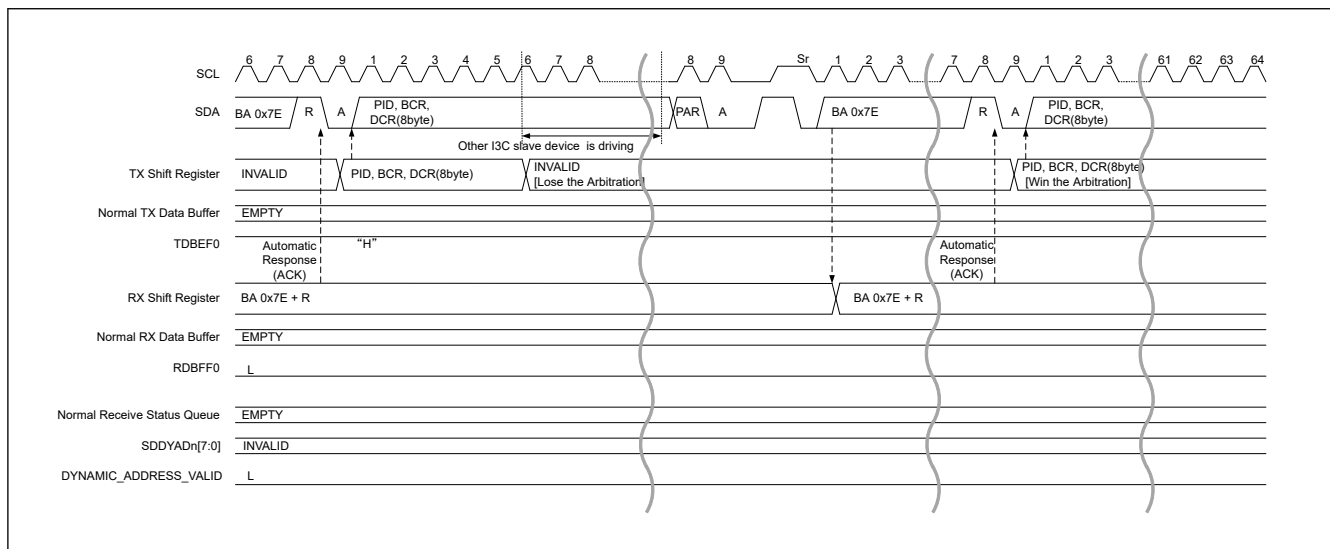


Figure 28.32 Dynamic address assign procedure (ENTDAA CCC) timing (2/3)

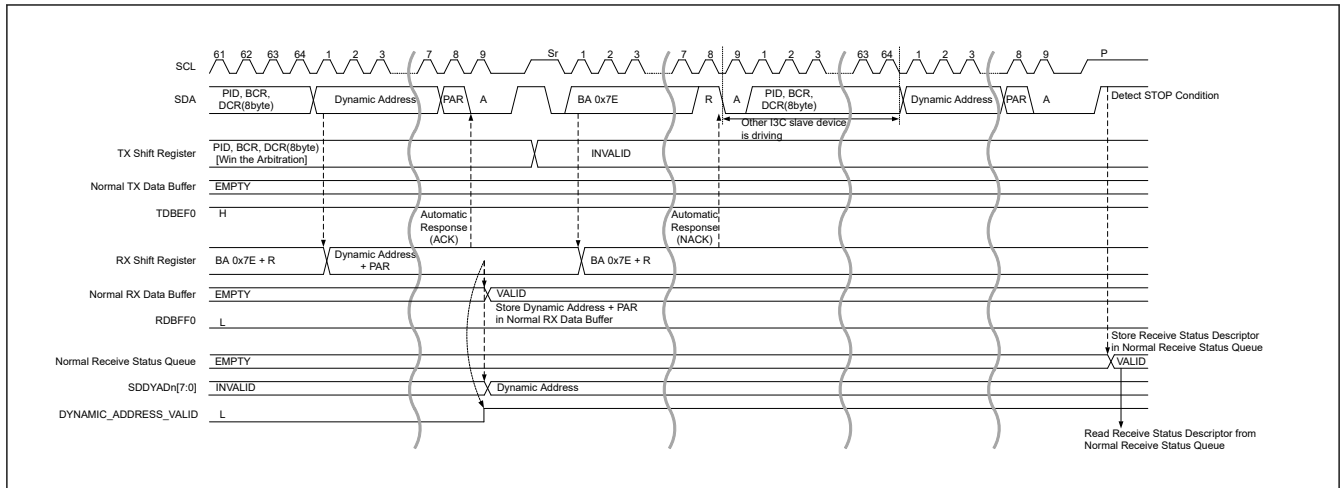


Figure 28.33 Dynamic address assign procedure (ENTDAA CCC) timing (3/3)

When communicating with a Static Address until the Dynamic Address is assigned from the I3C Master, by setting to the DVSTAD[6:0] bit of DAT (SDATBASn register), the SSTADV bit of the SVDVADn register is set to 1 and the Static Address Will be effective.

If the I3C Slave has a Static Address and the I3C Master executes the Dynamic Address Assign Procedure, it is possible to assign a Dynamic Address with SETDASA CCC.

The operation of I3C during SETDASA CCC Dynamic Address Assign Procedure is described below.

1. Initial setting (For details, see [section 28.3.3.1.2. I3C Initial Setting Flow](#))
2. When SETDASA CCC which agrees with its own Static Address is received, the SDDYAD [7:0] bit of DAT (SDATBAS0 register) is renewed and SDYADV bit of SVDVAD0 register is set in 1. (For details, see "In case of Direct Write CCC" of [\(6\) CCC detection function \[I3C mode\]](#).)
3. When SETDASA CCC is completed and a STOP condition is detected, the Receive Status Descriptor is stored in the Receive Status Buffer.
4. Read Receive Status Descriptor with the NRSQP register and check the status.

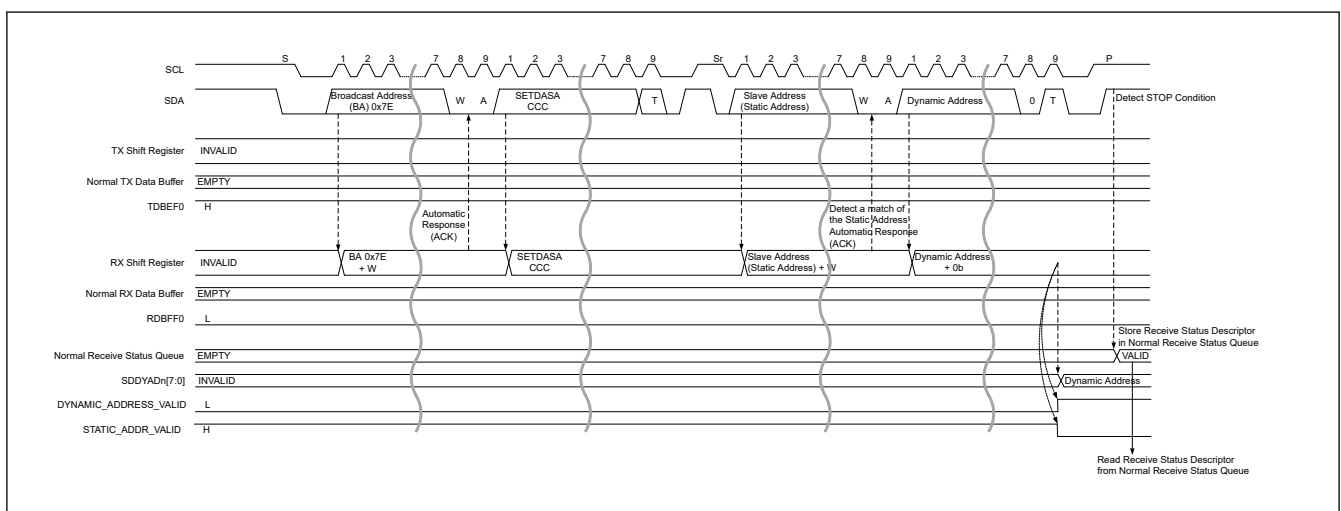


Figure 28.34 Dynamic address assign procedure (SETDASA CCC) timing

(b) SDR Data Write Transfer

1. When a transaction is issued from the I3C Master, it compares the Slave Address of the Address Header with its own Slave Address, and if it matches, I3C responds with ACK.
When a transaction is received, if the Receive Data Buffer is full, the I3C Slave responds with NACK in the Address Header.
In preparation for retrying the I3C Master, read the data from the Receive Data Buffer with the NTDTBPn register, and empty the Receive Data Buffer.

2. Data received from I3C Master is stored in the Receive Data Buffer.
3. With the RDBFF0 = 1 interrupt, the received data is read from the Receive Data Buffer with the NTDTBPn register.
4. When Repeated START condition or STOP condition is detected, the Receive Status Descriptor is stored in the Receive Status Buffer.
5. Read Receive Status Descriptor with NRSQP register and check the status.

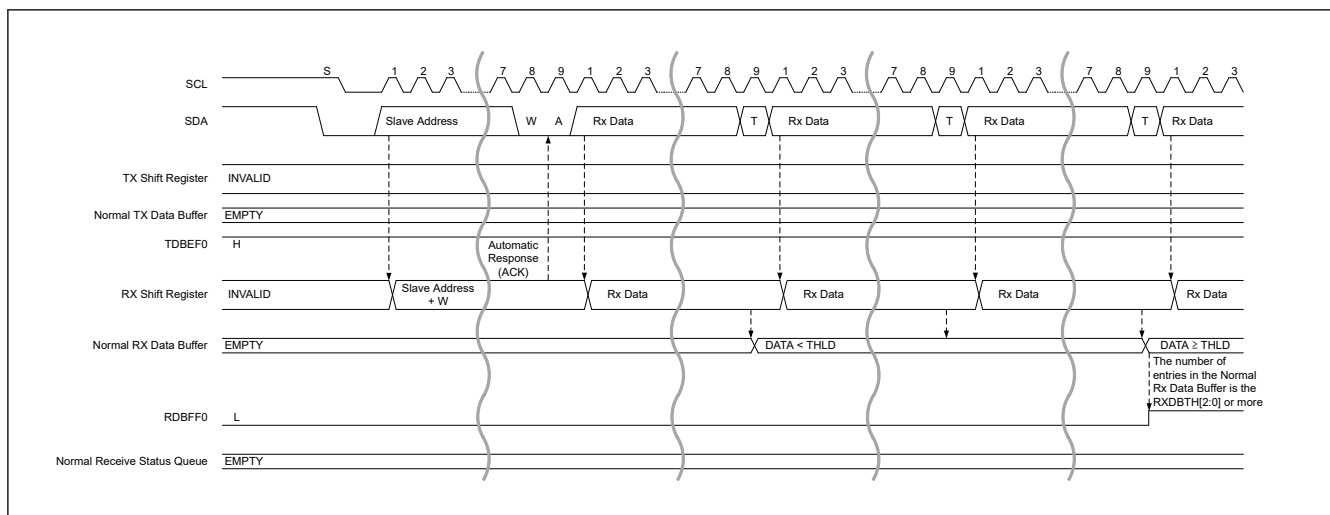


Figure 28.35 SDR data write transfer timing (1/2)

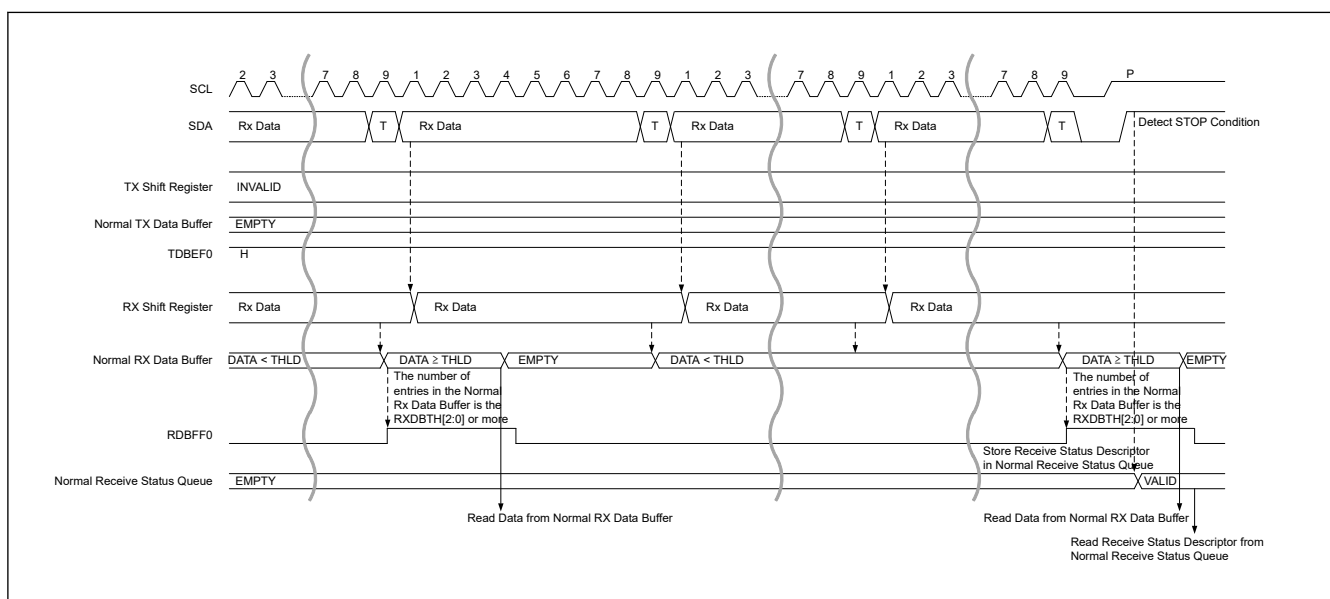


Figure 28.36 SDR data write transfer timing (2/2)

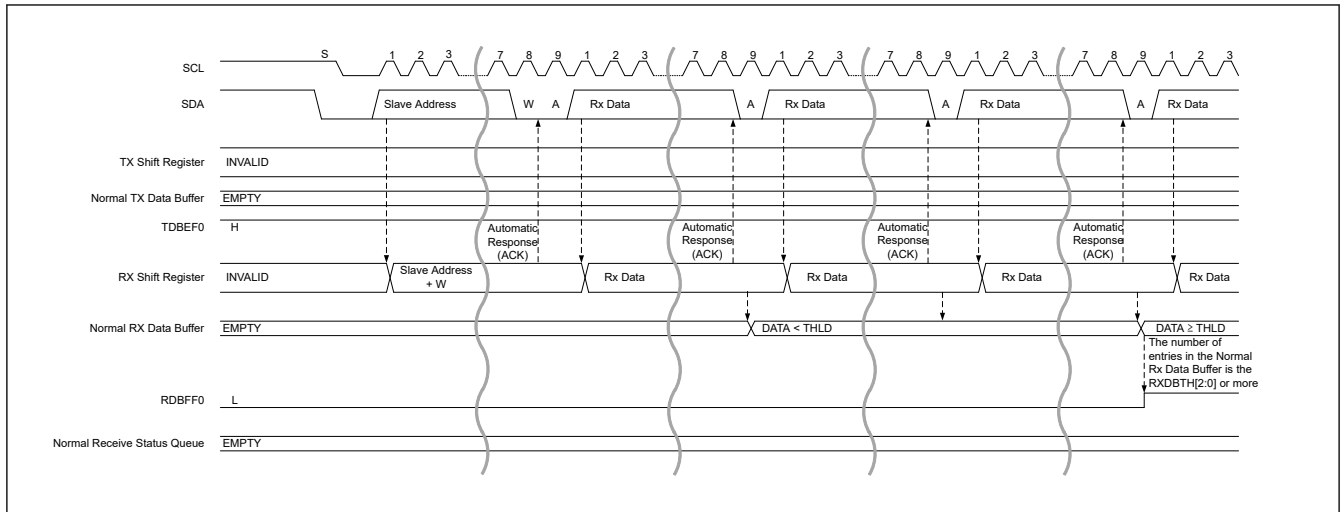


Figure 28.37 Legacy I²C message data write transfer timing (1/2)

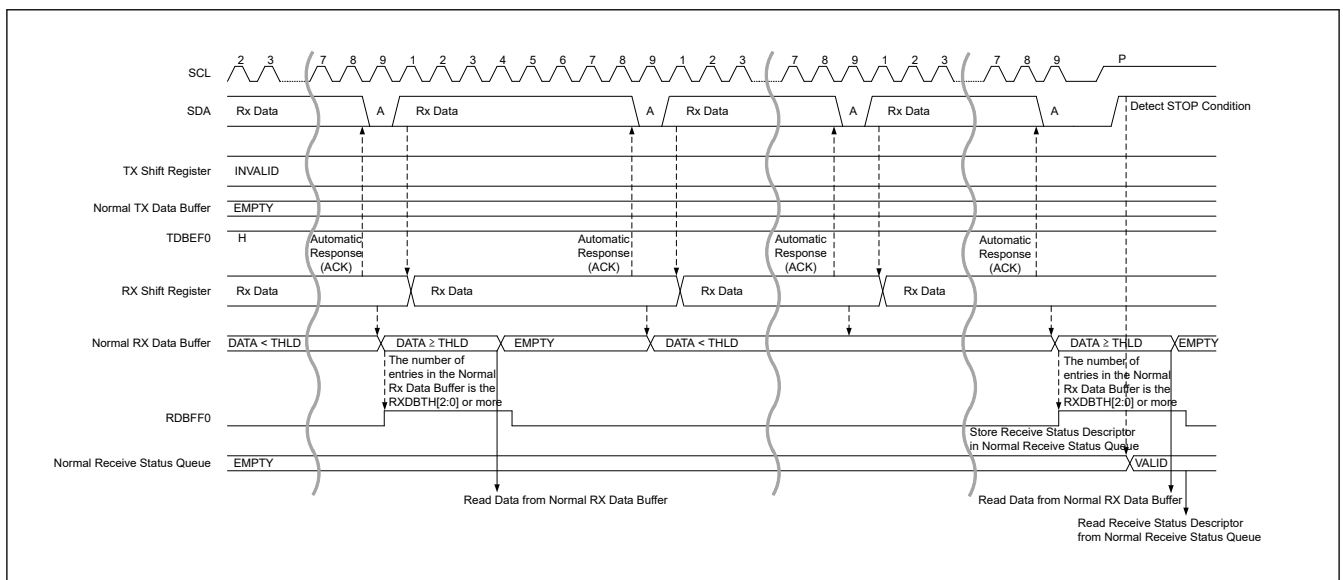


Figure 28.38 Legacy I²C message data write transfer timing (2/2)

(c) SDR Data Read Transfer

1. Write the data requested from the I3C Master to the Transmit Data Buffer with the NTDTBPn register.
2. When a transaction is issued from the I3C Master, it compares the Slave Address of the Address Header with its own Slave Address, and if it matches, I3C responds with ACK.
When a transaction is received, if the Transmit Data Buffer is EMPTY, I3C Slave responds with NACK with the Address Header.
In preparation for retrying the I3C Master, write data to the Transmit Data Buffer with the NTDTBPn register.
3. Transmit the data stored in the Transmit Data Buffer.
4. If data to be transmitted still remains, write the data to be transmitted with an interrupt by TDBEF0 = 1 to the Transmit Data Buffer with the NTDTBPn register.
5. SDR:
When the transmission of the data stored in the Transmit Data Buffer is completed, Low is output to the T-bit following Data, and it is notified to the I3C Master that it is the final data.
Legacy I²C Message:
When NACK is detected, data transmission is terminated.
6. When a Repeated START condition or STOP condition is detected, the Receive Status Descriptor is stored in the Receive Status Buffer.

7. Read the Receive Status Descriptor with NRSQP and check the status.

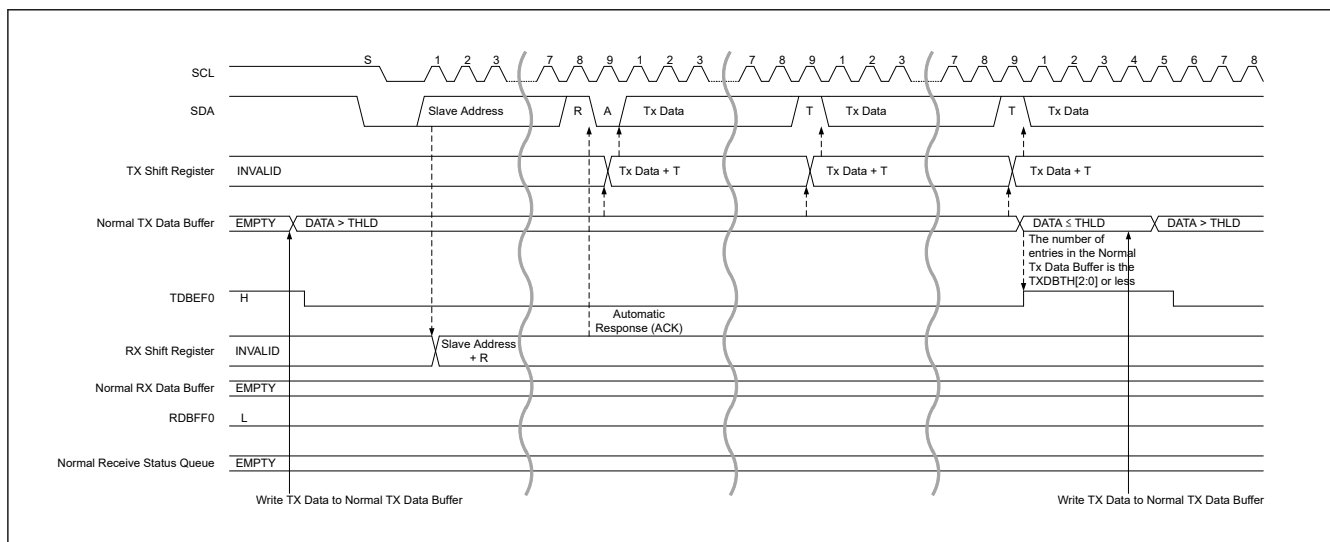


Figure 28.39 SDR data read transfer timing (1/2)

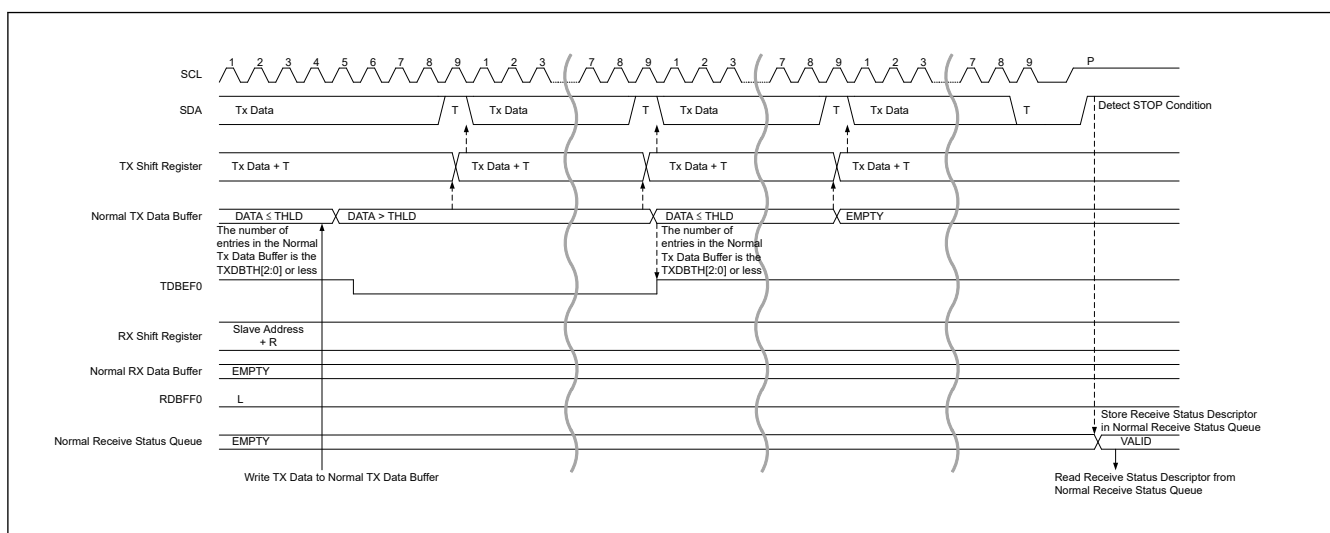


Figure 28.40 SDR data read transfer timing (2/2)

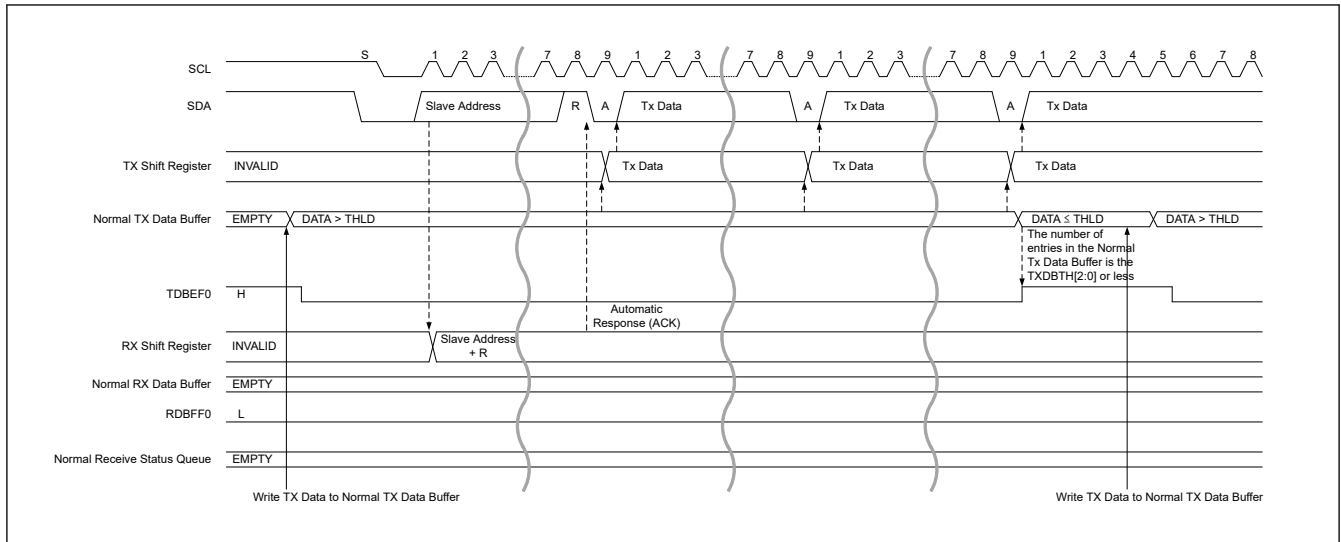


Figure 28.41 Legacy I²C message data read transfer timing (1/2)

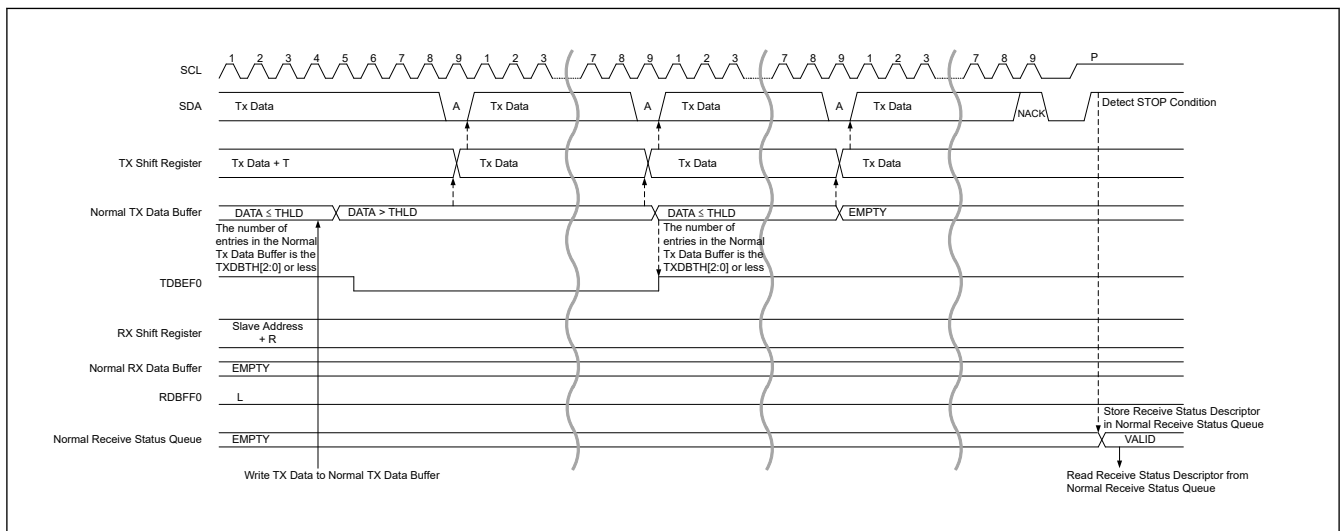


Figure 28.42 Legacy I²C message data read transfer timing (2/2)

(d) IBI Transfer

- When sending a Slave Interrupt Request.
When transmitting IBI Data, write IBI Data to the IBI Data Buffer with the NIBIQP register.
- Write Command Descriptor (Immediate Transfer Command or Regular Transfer Command) to the Command Buffer for IBI Transfer with the NCMDQP register.
- When Command Descriptor is written to Command Buffer, IBI Transaction is issued under the following conditions.
 - Detect a START condition (does not apply to a Repeated START condition).
 - If no START is forthcoming within the following Bus Condition, then this module issue a START Request by pulling the SDA line Low.
 - Slave Interrupt Request, Mastership Request : Bus Available
 - Hot-Join Event : Bus Idle
- In Slave Address with RnW of the Address Header, if losing Arbitration by issuing a transaction from I3C Master, stop issuing transaction.
When detecting a Repeated START condition or STOP condition, store the Response Descriptor into the Response Buffer.
- When sending a Slave Interrupt Request:

- When IBI data for transmission still remain, write IBI data with an interrupt by IBIQEFF = 1 to the IBI Data Buffer with the NIBIQP register.
 - When the transmission of IBI Data for the number of Data Length specified by the DATA_LENGTH[15:0] bits of the Command Descriptor is completed, output Low to the T-bit following IBI Data and notify the I3C Master that it is the final IBI Data.
- When detecting a Repeated START condition or STOP condition, store the Response Descriptor into the Response Buffer.
 - Read the Response Descriptor from the Response Buffer with the NRSPQP register and check the status. If NACK is responded, repeat steps 1 to 7.
 - When sending a Slave Interrupt Request:
Check that the value of the DATA_LENGTH[15:0] bit of the Response Descriptor is 0.

The mastership processing flow is shown in [Figure 28.45](#). When joining the I3C Bus by Hot-Join after the I3C Bus has already been configured, issue the Hot-Join according to the flow shown in [Figure 28.115](#).

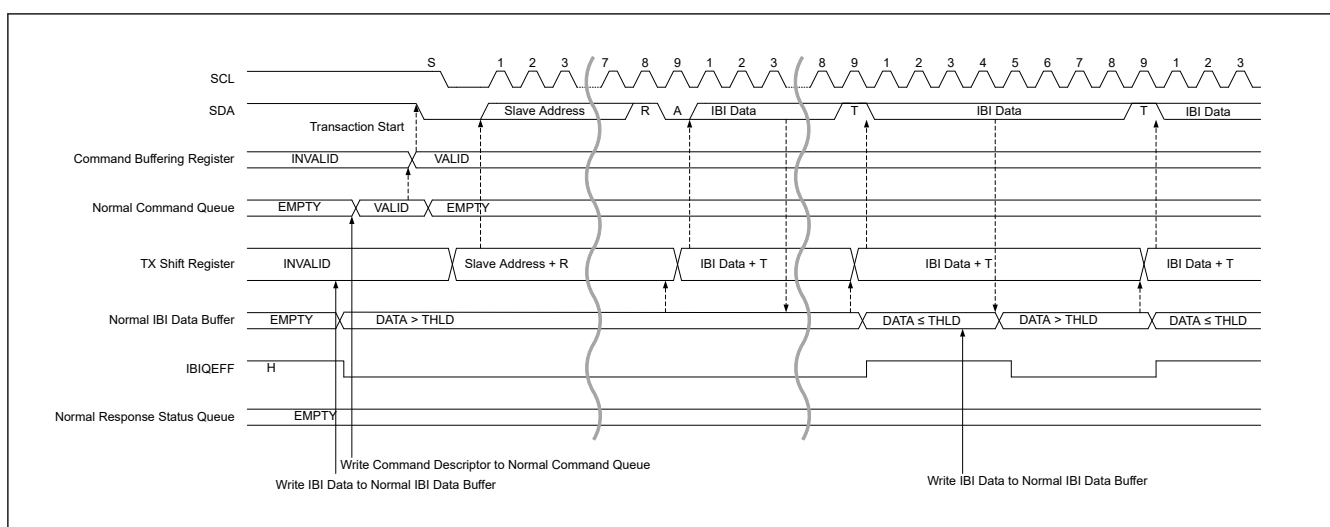


Figure 28.43 I3C slave IBI transfer timing (1/2)

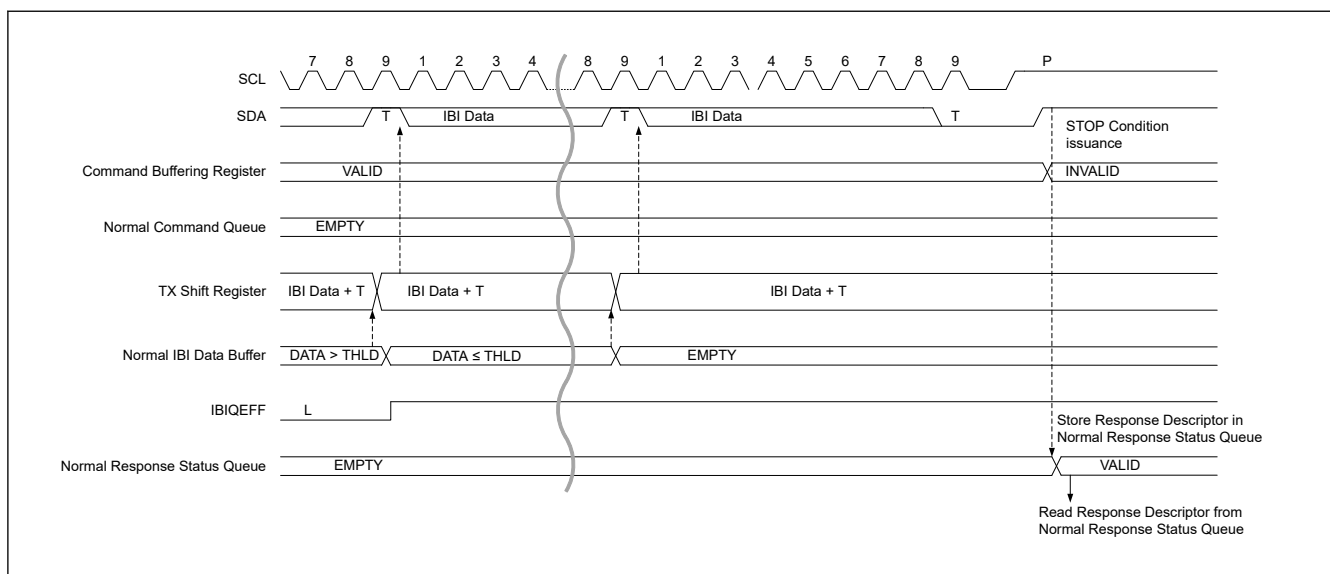


Figure 28.44 I3C slave IBI transfer timing (2/2)

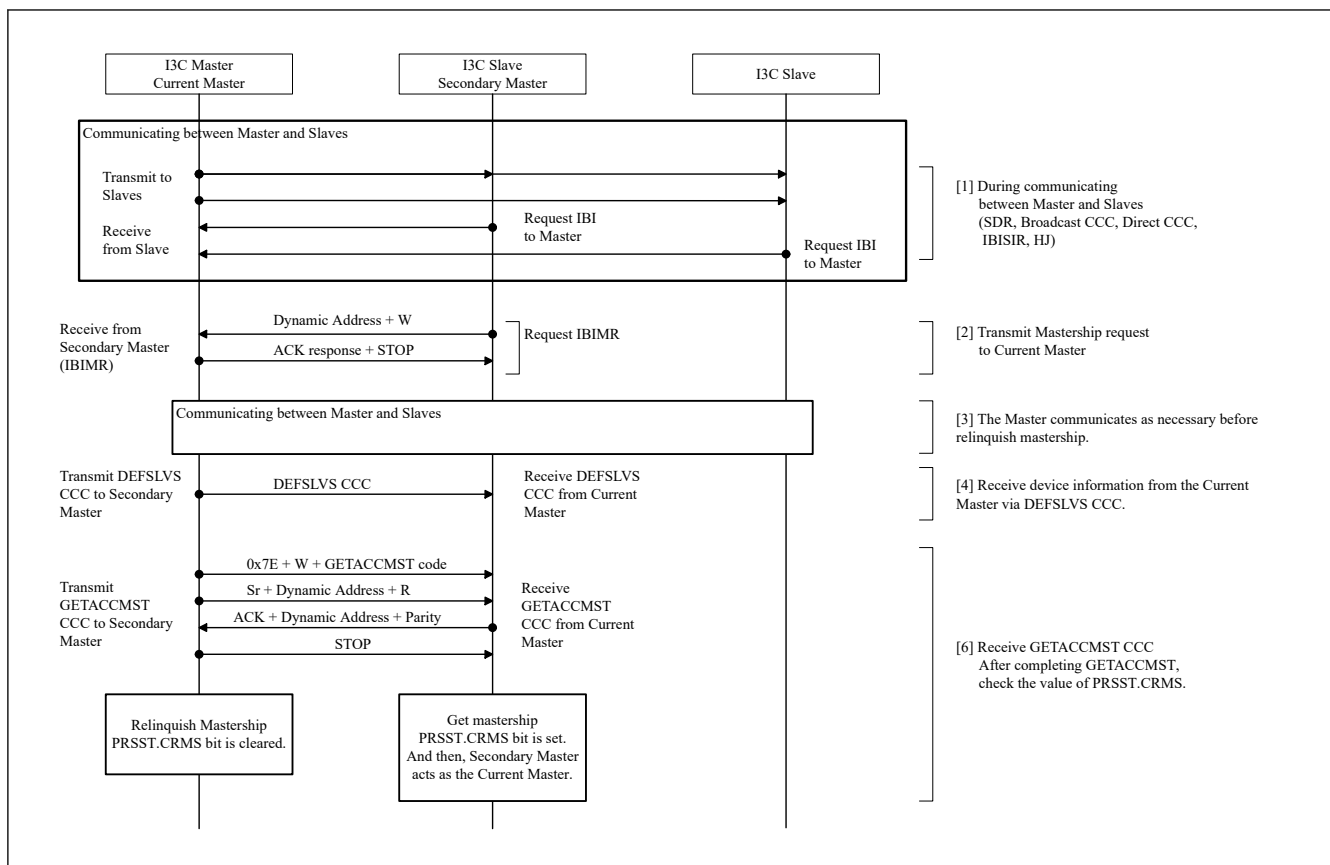


Figure 28.45 I3C slave mastership processing flow

28.3.2.2 Data Handler

The relationship between the transfer method and the queue is shown in [Table 28.10](#).

Table 28.10 Transfer method and queue

Protocol	Transfer method	Queue/Buffer	size	Master	Slave	Secondary Master
I ² C Mode	Single buffer transfer	Normal Transmit Data	1 byte	✓	✓	—
		Normal Receive Data	1 byte	✓	✓	—
I3C Mode	Normal FIFO buffer transfer	Normal Command	2 QUEUES	✓	✓	✓
		Normal Response Status	2 QUEUES	✓	✓	✓
		Normal Transmit Data	2 DWORDS	✓	✓	✓
		Normal Receive Data	2 DWORDS	✓	✓	✓
		Normal Receive Status	2 QUEUES	—	✓	✓
		Normal IBI Status	2 QUEUES	✓	—	✓
		Normal IBI Data	6 DWORDS	✓	✓	✓

28.3.2.2.1 Transfer Method in I²C Mode

(1) Single buffer transfer

Each process (condition issue, data transfer, ACK / NACK response) is controlled by software.

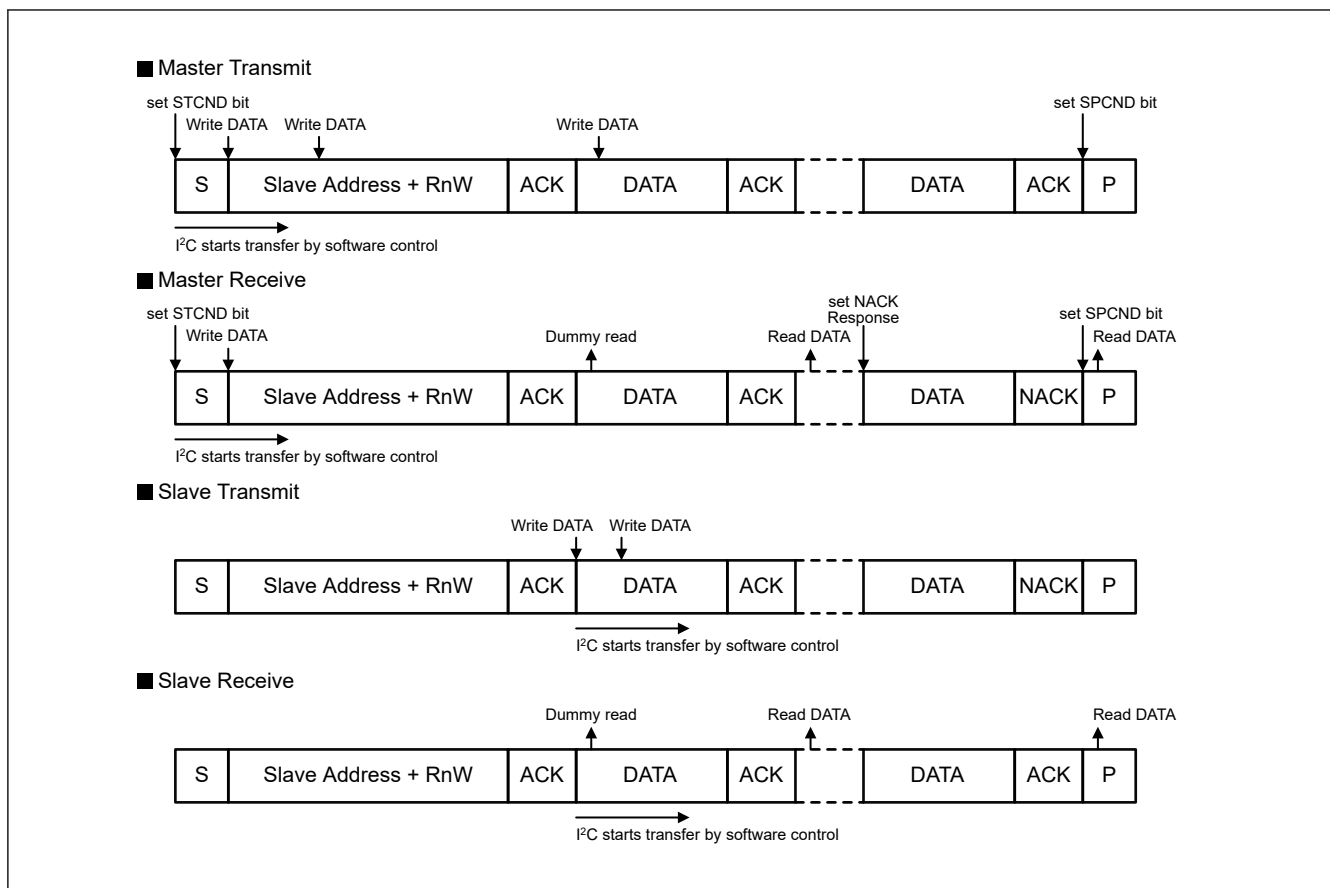


Figure 28.46 Data handler with single buffer transfer

28.3.2.2.2 Transfer Method in I3C Mode

(1) Normal FIFO buffer transfer

I3C autonomously starts transfer when data and command are written.

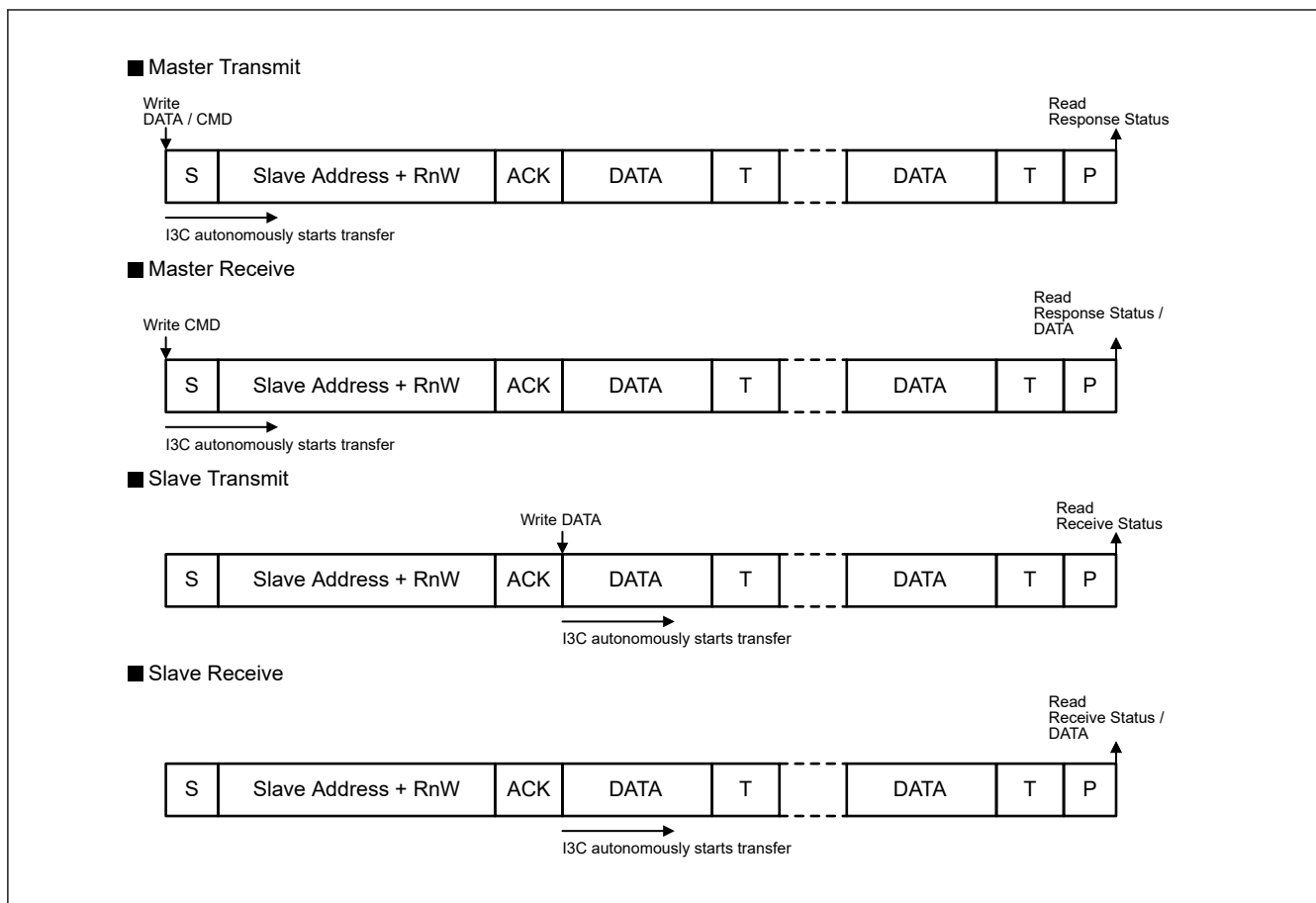


Figure 28.47 Data handler with normal FIFO buffer transfer

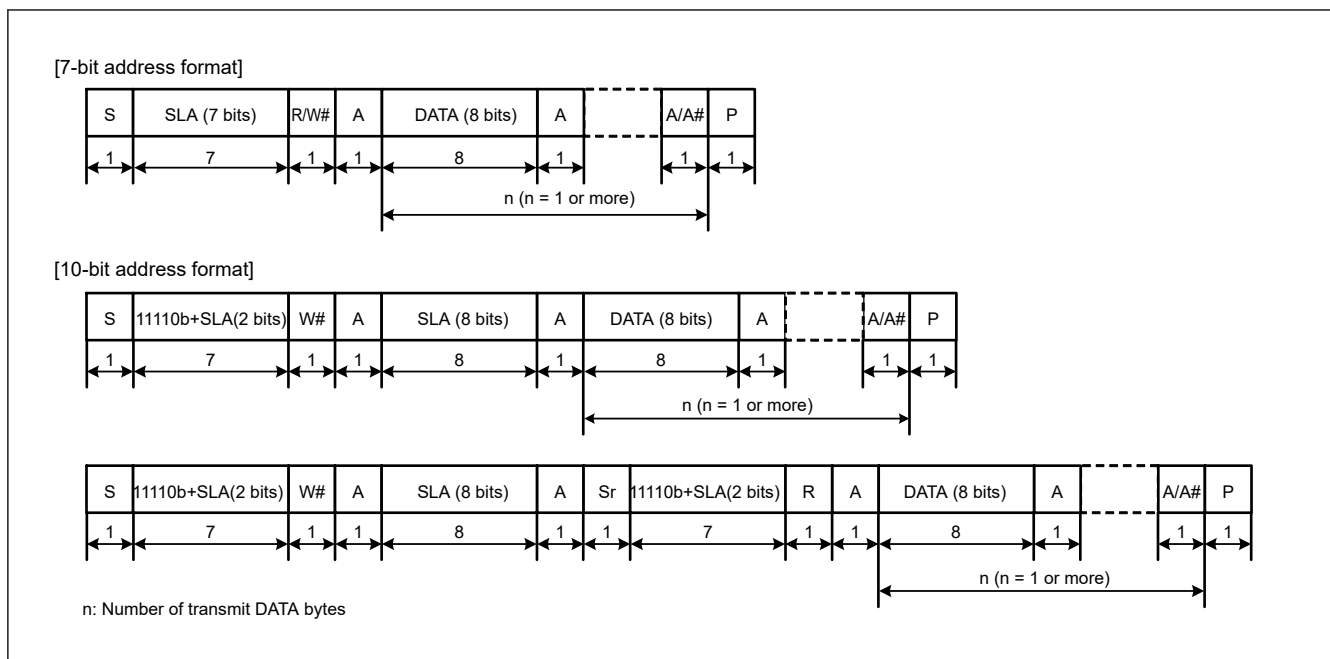
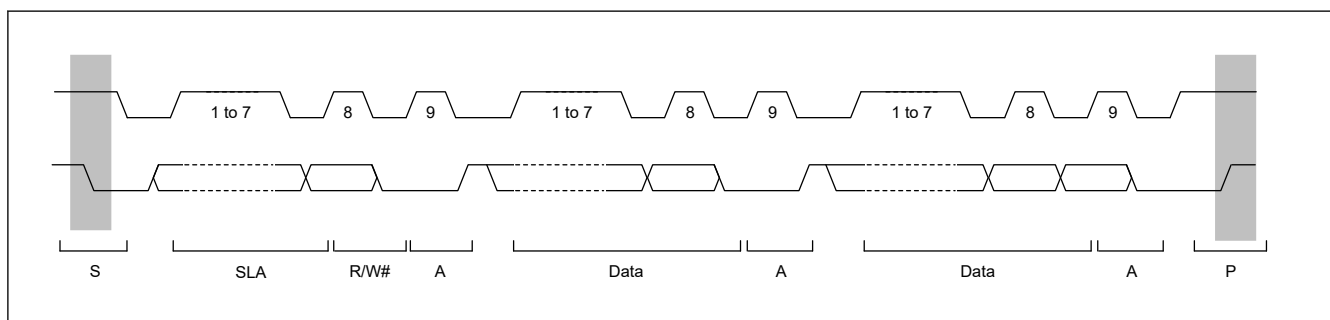
28.3.2.3 I²C/I3C Protocol

28.3.2.3.1 Communication Protocol

(1) I²C communication data format

The I²C bus format consists of 8-bit data and 1-bit acknowledge. The frame following a START condition or Repeated START condition is an address frame used to specify a slave device with which the master device communicates. The specified slave is valid until a new slave is specified or a STOP condition is issued.

Figure 28.48 shows the I²C bus format, and Figure 28.49 shows the I²C bus timing.

Figure 28.48 I²C bus formatFigure 28.49 I²C bus timing (SLA = 7 bits)

- S: START condition. The master device drives the SDA line low from a high level while the SCL line is at a high level.
- SLA: Slave address, by which the master device selects a slave device.
- R/W#: Indicates the direction of data transfer: from the slave device to the master device when R/W = 1, or from the master device to the slave device when R/W = 0.
- A: Acknowledge. The receive device drives the SDA line low. (In master transmit mode, the slave device returns acknowledge. In master receive mode, the master device returns acknowledge.)
- A#: Not Acknowledge. The receive device drives the SDA line high.
- Sr: Repeated START condition. The master device drives the SDA line low from a high level after the setup time has elapsed with the SCL line at a high level.
- DATA: Transmitted or received data
- P: STOP condition. The master device drives the SDA line high from a low level while the SCL line is at a high level.

(2) I3C communication data format

Figure 28.50 through Figure 28.53 illustrate a typical communication for each of the six I3C Protocols. While these diagrams do not exhaustively illustrate all possible I3C communications, they do serve as useful introductions to the signaling and transmission formatting used in each I3C Protocol.

Figure 28.50 illustrates example communication using I3C Single Data Rate (SDR) coding with Broadcast (0x7E). It shows the Master reading a byte of data from the Slave at Address 0x2B in SDR Mode. From the Bus Free Condition, the Master issues a START by driving the SDA line Low while keeping the SCL line High. It then issues the Broadcast Address (0x7E) followed by RnW (0 for Write). Then the Master turns on a pull-up resistor and goes to Open Drain.

All Slaves ACK by pulling the SDA line Low (in the figure, pink fill means the Slave is in control of the SDA line at this time). The Master then issues a Repeated START, then the Address of the Slave (0x2B) it wants to read followed by RnW (1 for Read). The Master then turns on a pull-up resistor and goes to Open Drain, allowing the Slave to acknowledge by pulling the SDA line Low. At this point, the Master continues to toggle the SCL line and release the SDA line, allowing the Slave to drive SDA to send one byte of data (0x4A) followed by T. T = 1 informs the Master that there is additional data, whereas T = 0 signals the end. Here there is additional data, so the Slave drives SDA High until SCL goes High, at which time it releases SDA. The Master has the option of holding SDA High with a weak pull-up, which signals to the Slave that the Master allows another byte to be transmitted, or to pull SDA Low (while SCL is High, therefore a Repeated START), which would signal to the Slave that the Master has terminated the Read and is taking over.

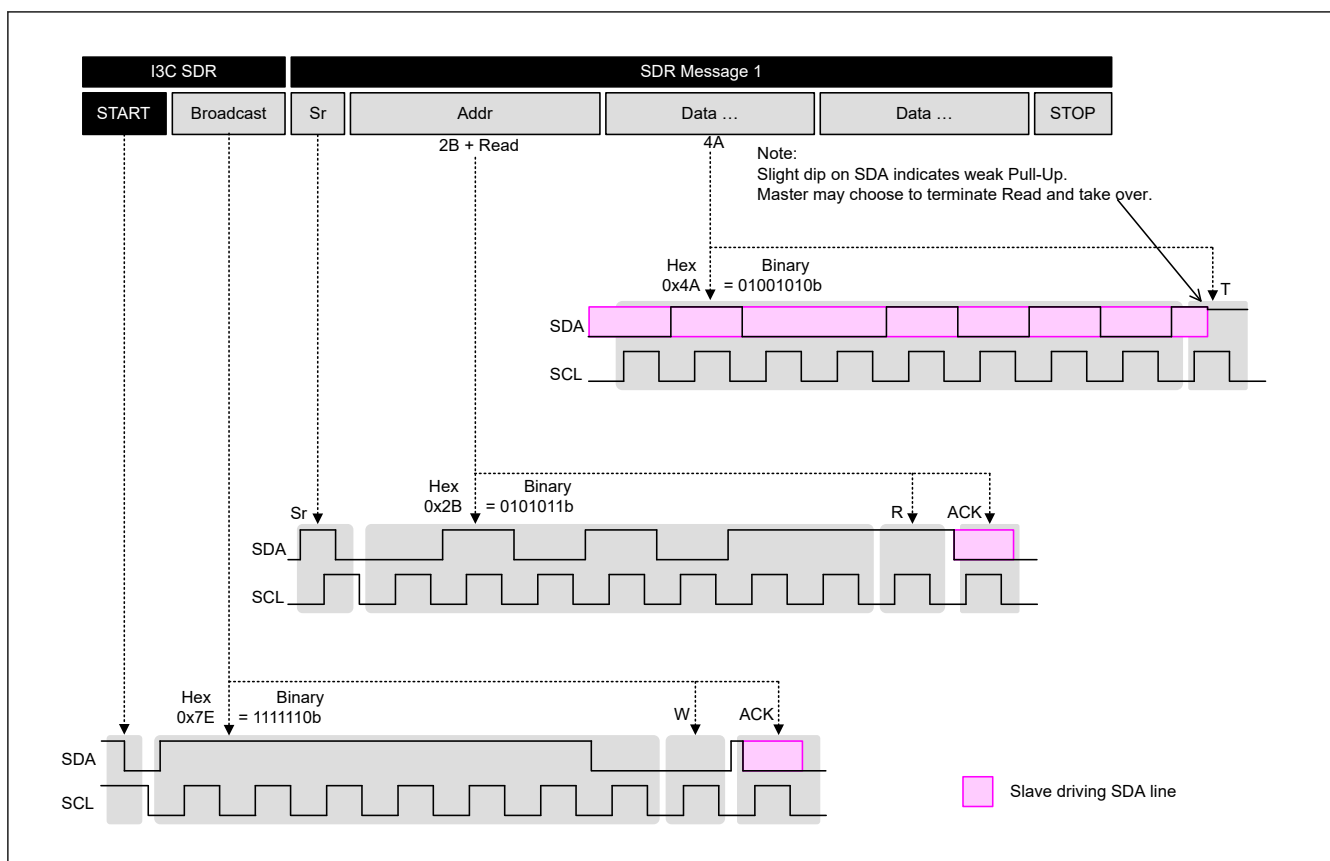


Figure 28.50 Example communication using I3C coding SDR with broadcast (0x7E)

[Figure 28.51](#) illustrates example communication using I3C Single Data Rate (SDR) coding without Broadcast (0x7E). It shows the Master reading a byte of data from the Slave at Address 0x2B in SDR Mode. From the Bus Free Condition, the Master then issues a START, then the Address of the Slave (0x2B) it wants to read followed by RnW (1 for Read).

The Master then turns on a pull-up resistor and goes to Open Drain, allowing the Slave to acknowledge by pulling the SDA line Low. At this point, the Master continues to toggle the SCL line and release the SDA line, allowing the Slave to drive SDA to send one byte of data (0x4A) followed by T. T = 1 informs the Master that there is additional data, whereas T = 0 signals the end. Here there is additional data, so the Slave drives SDA High until SCL goes High, at which time it releases SDA. The Master has the option of holding SDA High with a weak pull-up, which signals to the Slave that the Master allows another byte to be transmitted, or to pull SDA Low (while SCL is High, therefore a Repeated START), which signals to the Slave that the Master has terminated the Read and is taking over.

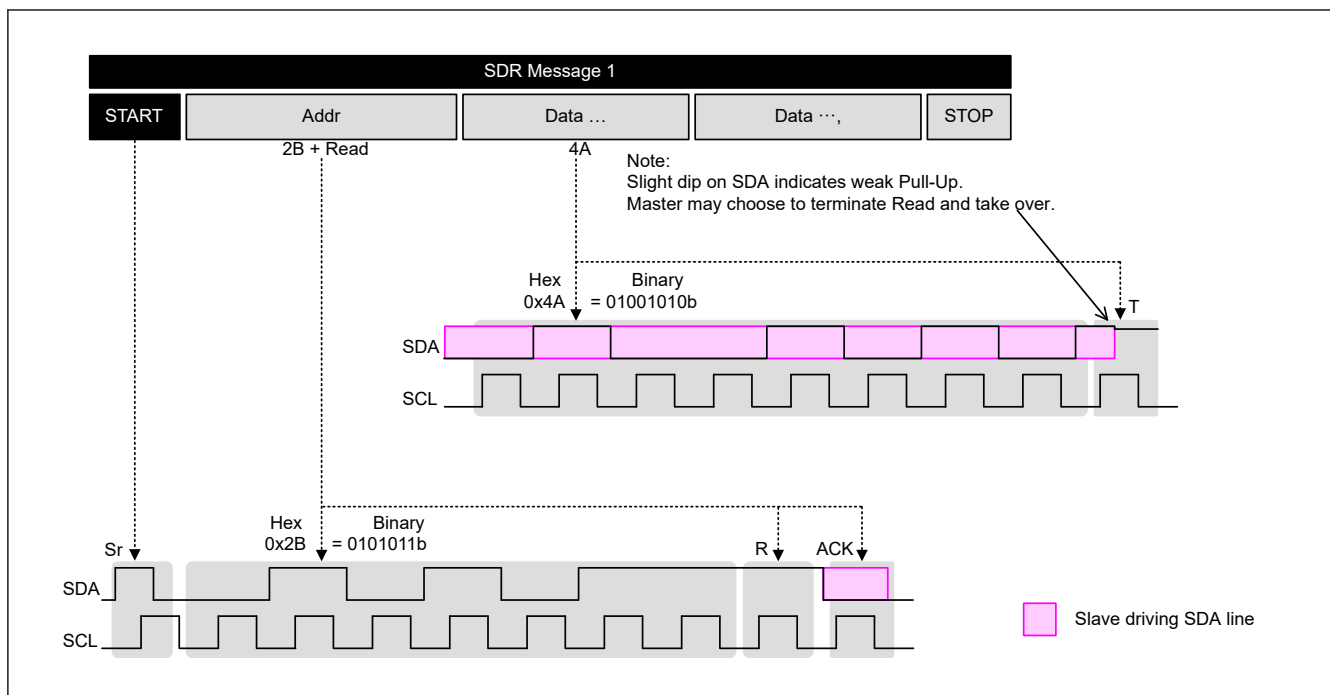


Figure 28.51 Example communication using I3C coding SDR without broadcast (0x7E)

Figure 28.52 shows the Master issuing a CCC Direct Command to a single Slave. This particular command (GETPID) reads the Provisional ID of a Slave.

From the Bus Free Condition, the Master issues a START by driving the SDA line Low while keeping the SCL line High. It then issues the Broadcast Address (0x7E) followed by RnW (0 for Write). Then the Master turns on a pull-up resistor and goes to Open Drain. All Slaves ACK by pulling SDA Low (in the figure, pink fill means the Slaves are in control of SDA at this time). The Master then issues the Direct Common Command Code for GETPID (0x8C) followed by parity bit T (odd parity = 0 for 0x8C) then the 7-bit Dynamic Address of the Slave (chosen arbitrarily here to be 0x2B) followed by a RnW bit (1 for Read). Then the Master turns on a pull-up resistor and goes to Open Drain, allowing the Slave at Address 0x2B to ACK by pulling SDA Low, which tells the Master that the Slave Acknowledges the command and complies. (Alternatively, the Slave may NACK by not pulling SDA Low, which informs the Master that the Slave does not comply – in this case, that an error occurred.) Following the ACK the Slave outputs its 48-bit PID one byte at a time, and then the Master issues a Repeated START (this part of the waveform sequence is not shown in the figure).

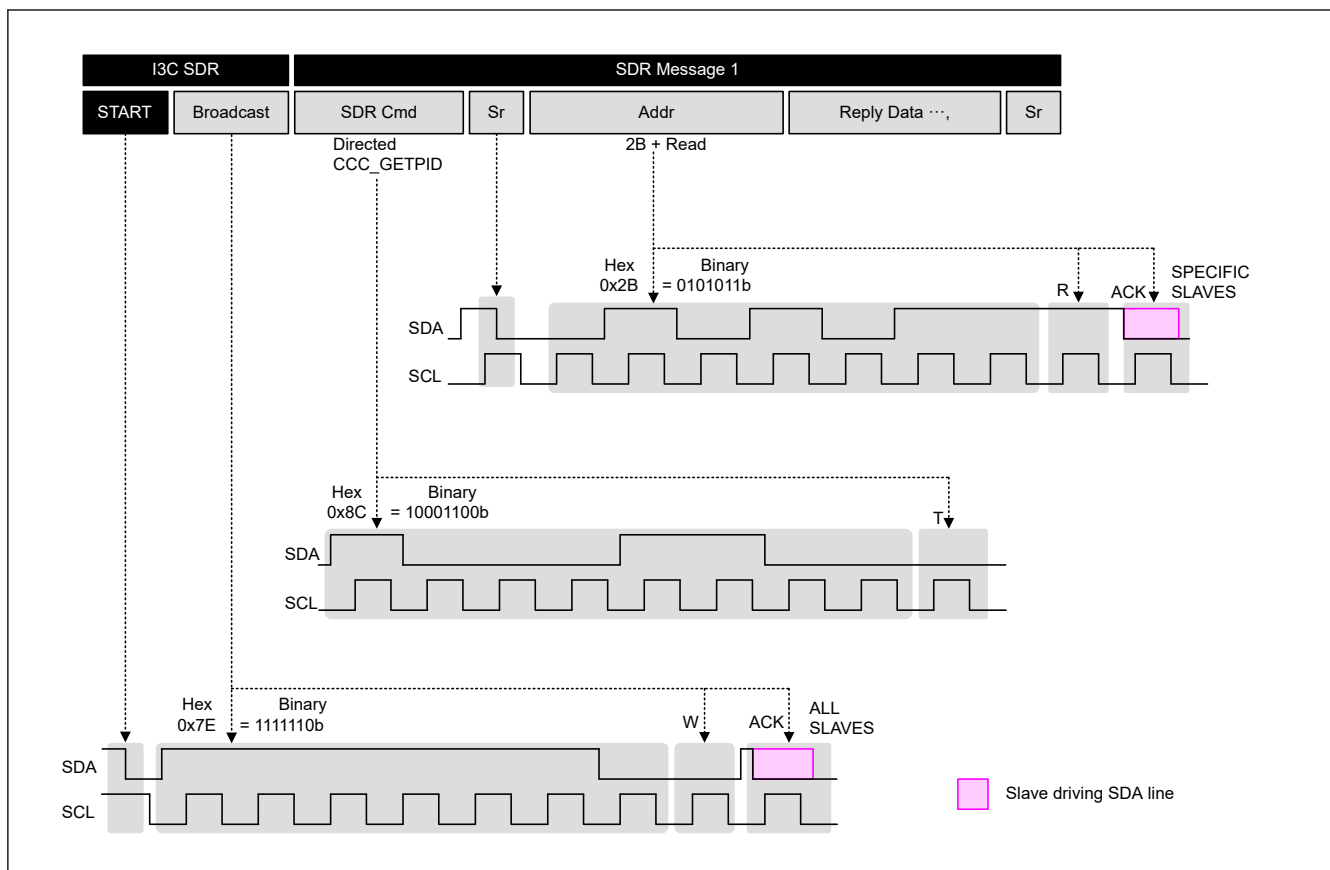


Figure 28.52 Example communication using I3C coding SDR with CCC direct addressing

Figure 28.53 illustrates example SDR communication with a CCC Broadcast command. The command used in this example sets the Maximum Read Length of all Slaves to 43 bytes (0x002B).

From the Bus Free Condition, the Master issues a START by driving the SDA line Low while keeping the SCL line High. It then issues the Broadcast Address (0x7E) followed by RnW (0 for Write). Then the Master turns on a pull-up resistor and goes to Open Drain. All Slaves ACK by pulling SDA Low (in the figure, pink fill means the Slaves are in control of SDA at this time). The Master then issues the Broadcast Common Command Code for SETMRL (0x09) followed by parity bit T (odd parity = 1 for 0x09), and then 2 data bytes (MSB first) to define the maximum number of bytes which can be read from a Slave in a single read operation. Each data byte is followed by a T bit (parity bit – odd parity). After this the Master issues a Repeated START.

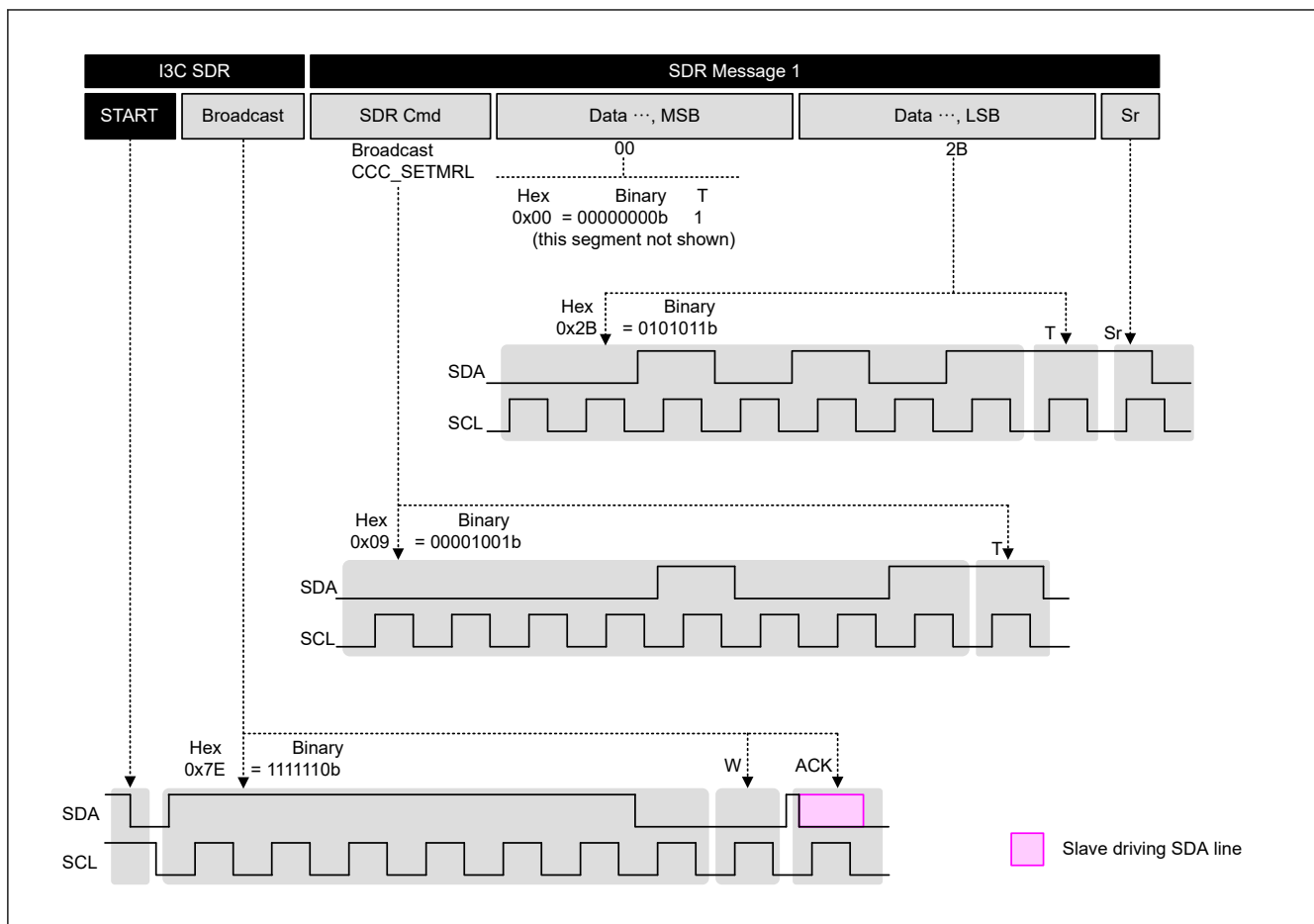


Figure 28.53 Example communication using I3C coding SDR with CCC broadcast

28.3.2.3.2 Bus Conditions

I3C defines three distinct conditions in which the I3C Bus must be considered inactive: Bus Free, Bus Available, and Bus Idle (see [Figure 28.54](#)).

(1) Bus free condition

State on the I3C Bus where both the SCL line and the SDA line are High for at least the period set by `BFRECDT.FRECYC[8:0]` bit.

(2) Bus available condition [I3C mode]

State on the I3C Bus where both the SCL line and the SDA line are High for at least the period set by `BAVLCDT.AVLCYC[8:0]` bit.

A Slave may only issue a START Request (For example, for an In-Band Interrupt, or for a Master Handoff Request) after a Bus Available Condition.

(3) Bus idle condition [I3C mode]

State on the I3C Bus where both the SCL line and the SDA line are High for at least the period set by `BIDLCDT.IDLCYC[17:0]` bit.

A Slave may only issue a START Request (For example, for a Hot-Join) after a Bus Idle Condition.

Specifications are as follows. IDLE needs to be the largest.

$\text{BFRECDT.FRECYC}[8:0] < \text{BAVLCDT.AVLCYC}[8:0] < \text{BIDLCDT.IDLCYC}[17:0]$

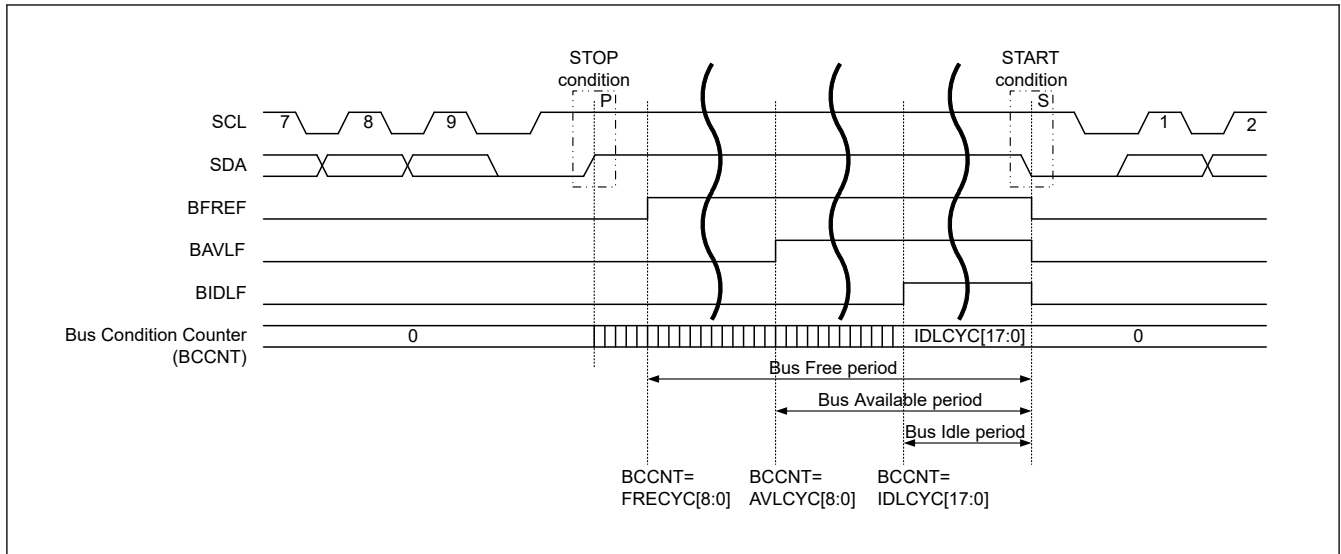


Figure 28.54 Bus conditions

28.3.2.3.3 START Condition/Repeated START Condition/STOP Condition Issuing Function

(1) Issuing a START condition

I3C issues a START condition when the CNDCTL.STCND bit is set to 1.

Set the STCND bit to 1 (START condition issuance request) when the BCST.BFREF flag is set to 1 (bus free state).

I3C issues a START condition.

When a START condition is issued normally, I3C automatically shifts to the master transmit mode. A START condition is issued in the following sequence.

[START condition issuance]

- Drive the SDA_n line low (high level to low level).
- Ensure the time set in STDBR.SBRHO[7:0] and the START condition hold time.
- Drive the SCL_n line low (high level to low level).
- Detect low level of the SCL_n line and ensure the low-level period of SCL_n line set in STDBR.SBRLO[7:0].

(2) Issuing a Repeated START condition

I3C issues a Repeated START condition when the CNDCTL.SRCND bit is set to 1.

When the SRCND bit is set to 1, a Repeated START condition issuance request is made and I3C issues a Repeated START condition when the BCST.BFREF flag = 0 (bus busy state) and the PRSST.CRMS bit = 1 (master mode).

A Repeated START condition is issued in the following sequence.

[Repeated START condition issuance]

- Release the SDA_n line.
- Ensure the low-level period of SCL_n line set in STDBR.SBRLO[7:0].
- Release the SCL_n line (low level to high level).
- Detect a high level of the SCL_n line and ensure the time set in STDBR.SBRLO[7:0] and the Repeated START condition setup time.
- Drive the SDA_n line low (high level to low level).
- Ensure the time set in STDBR.SBRHO[7:0] and the Repeated START condition hold time.
- Drive the SCL_n line low (high level to low level).
- Detect a low level of the SCL_n line and ensure the low-level period of SCL_n line set in STDBR.SBRLO[7:0].

Note: When issuing a Repeated START condition request, write the slave address to NTDTBP0 after confirming CNDCTL.SRCND = 0. Data written in the period of CNDCTL.SRCND = 1 is not forwarded because retransmission condition before the occurrence.

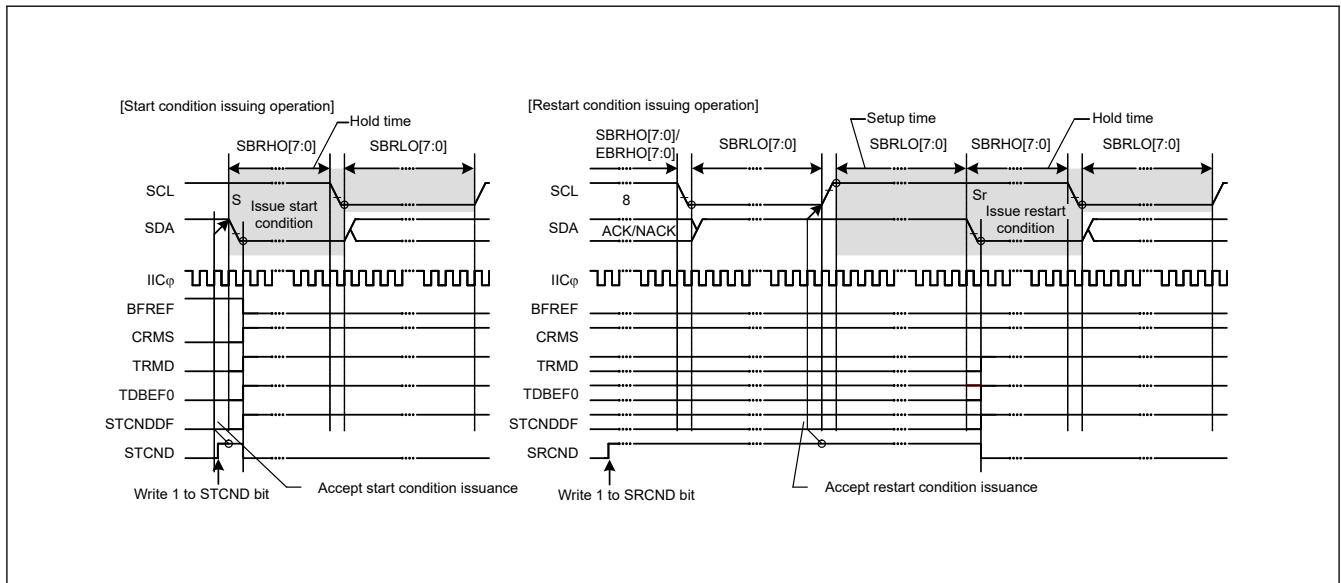


Figure 28.55 START condition/repeated START condition issue timing (STCND and SRCND bits)

Figure 28.56 shows the operation to issue a Repeated START condition after the master transmission.

[Repeated START condition issuance after the master transmission]

- Initial setting. For details, see [section 28.3.3.1. Initial Setting Flow](#).
- Read the BFREF flag in BCST to check that the bus is open, and then set the STCND bit in CNDCTL to 1 (START condition issuance request). On receiving the request, I3C issues a START condition. At the same time, the BFREF flag is automatically set to 0 and the STCNDDF flag in BST is automatically set to 1 and the STCND bit is automatically set to 0. At this time, if the START condition is detected and the internal levels for the SDA output state and the levels on the SDAin line have matched while the STCND bit = 1, I3C recognizes that issuing of the START condition as requested by the STCND bit has been successfully completed, and CRMS and TRMD bits in PRSST is automatically set to 1, placing I3C in master transmit mode. The NTST.TDBEF0 flag is also automatically set to 1 in response to the setting of the TRMD bit to 1.
- Check that the NTST.TDBEF0 flag = 1, and then write the value for transmission (the slave address and the R/W# bit) to NTDTBP0. Once the data for transmission are written to NTDTBP0, the TDBEF0 flag is automatically set to 0, the data are transferred from NTDTBP0, and the TDBEF0 flag is again set to 1. After the byte containing the slave address and R/W# bit has been transmitted, the value of the TRMD bit is automatically updated to select master transmit or master receive mode in accord with the value of the transmitted R/W# bit. If the value of the R/W# bit was 0, I3C continues in master transmit mode. Since the BST.NACKDF flag being 1 at this time indicates that no slave device recognized the address or there was an error in communications, write 1 to CNDCTL.SPCND bit to issue a STOP condition. For data transmission with an address in the 10-bit format, start by writing 1111 0, the 2 higher-order bits of the slave address, and W to NTDTBP0 as the first address transmission. Then, as the second address transmission, write the 8 lower-order bits of the slave address to NTDTBP0.
- After confirming that the NTST.TDBEF0 flag = 1, write the data for transmission to the NTDTBP0 register. I3C automatically holds the SCLn line low until the data for transmission are ready, a Repeated START condition is issued or a STOP condition is issued.
- After all bytes of data for transmission have been written to the NTDTBP0 register, wait until the value of the BST.TENDF flag returns to 1, and then, after checking that the BST.STCNDDF flag = 1, set the BST.STCNDDF flag to 0.
- Set the SRCND bit in CNDCTL to 1 (Repeated START condition issuance request). On receiving the request, I3C issues a Repeated START condition.
- After checking that the BST.STCNDDF flag = 1, write the value for transmission (the slave address and the R/W# bit) to NTDTBP0.

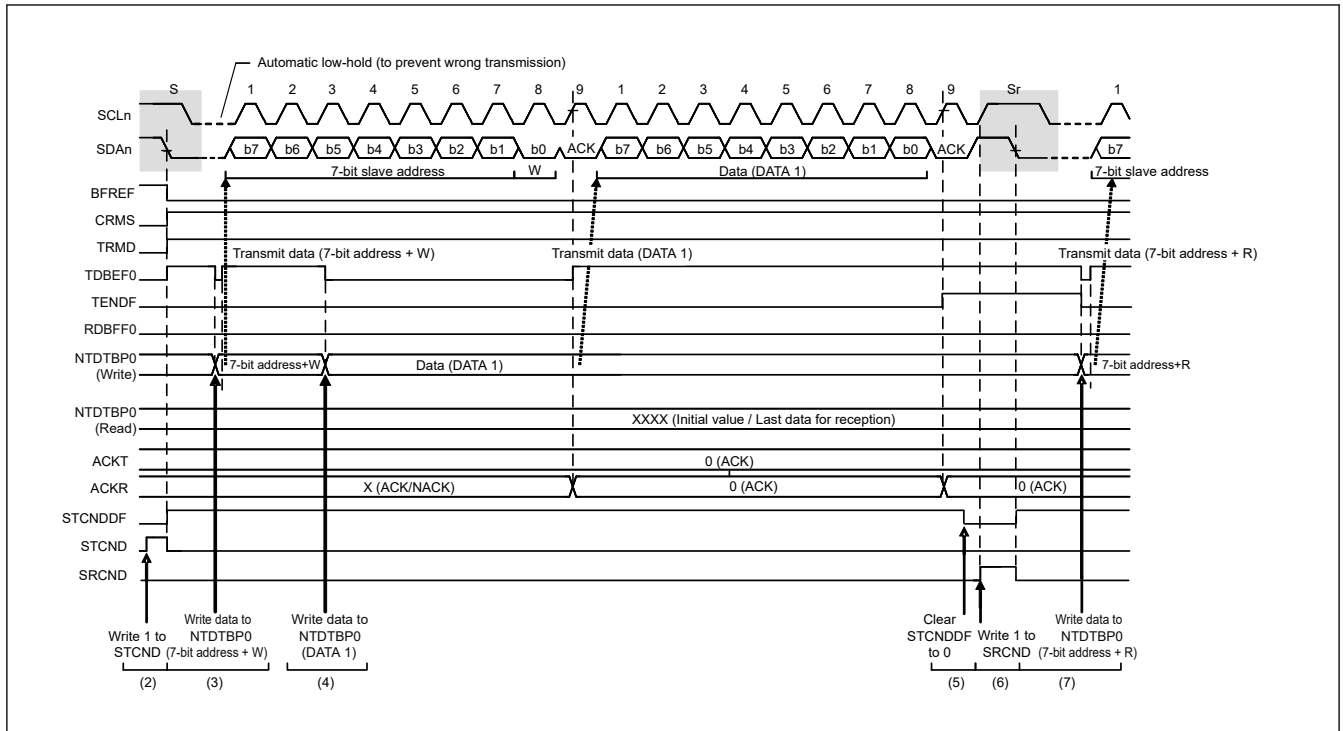


Figure 28.56 Repeated START condition issuance after the master transmission timing

(3) Issuing a STOP condition

I3C issues a STOP condition when the SPCND bit in CNDCTL is set to 1.

When the SPCND bit is set to 1, a STOP condition issuance request is made and I3C issues a STOP condition when the BCST.BFREF flag = 0 (bus busy state) and the PRSST.MST bit = 1 (master mode).

A STOP condition is issued in the following sequence.

[STOP condition issuance]

- Drive the SDA line low (high level to low level).
- Ensure the low-level period of SCLn line set in STDBR.SBRLO[7:0].
- Release the SCLn line (low level to high level).
- Detect a high level of the SCLn line and ensure the time set in STDBR.SBRHO[7:0] and the STOP condition setup time.
- Release the SDA line (low level to high level).
- Ensure the time set in STDBR.SBRLO[7:0] and the bus free time.
- Set the BFREF flag to 1 (to release the bus mastership).

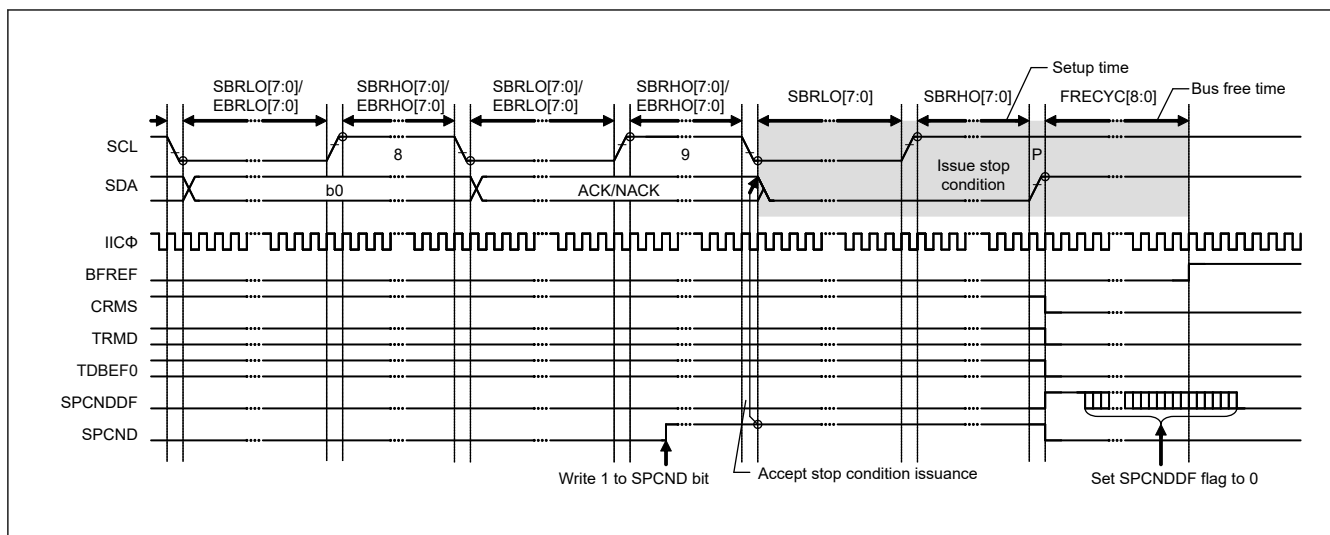


Figure 28.57 STOP condition issue timing (SPCND bit)

28.3.2.3.4 Address Match Detection

I3C can set three unique slave addresses in addition to the general call address and host address, and also can set 7-bit or 10-bit slave addresses.

(1) Slave address match detection [I²C mode]

I3C can set three unique slave addresses, and has a slave address detection function for each unique slave address.

When the SVCTL.SVAEn bit ($n = 0$ to 2) is set to 1, the slave addresses set in the SVDVADn register ($n = 0$ to 2) can be detected.

When I3C detects a match of the set slave address, the corresponding SVST.SVAFn flag ($n = 0$ to 2) is set to 1 at the rising edge of the 9th SCL clock cycle, and the NTST.RDBFF0 flag or the NTST.TDBEF0 flag is set to 1 by the following R/W# bit. This causes a receive data full interrupt (I3Cn_RX) or transmit data empty interrupt (I3Cn_TX) to be generated. The SVAFy flag is used to identify which slave address has been specified.

[Figure 28.58](#) and [Figure 28.59](#) show the SVAFy flag set timing in two cases.

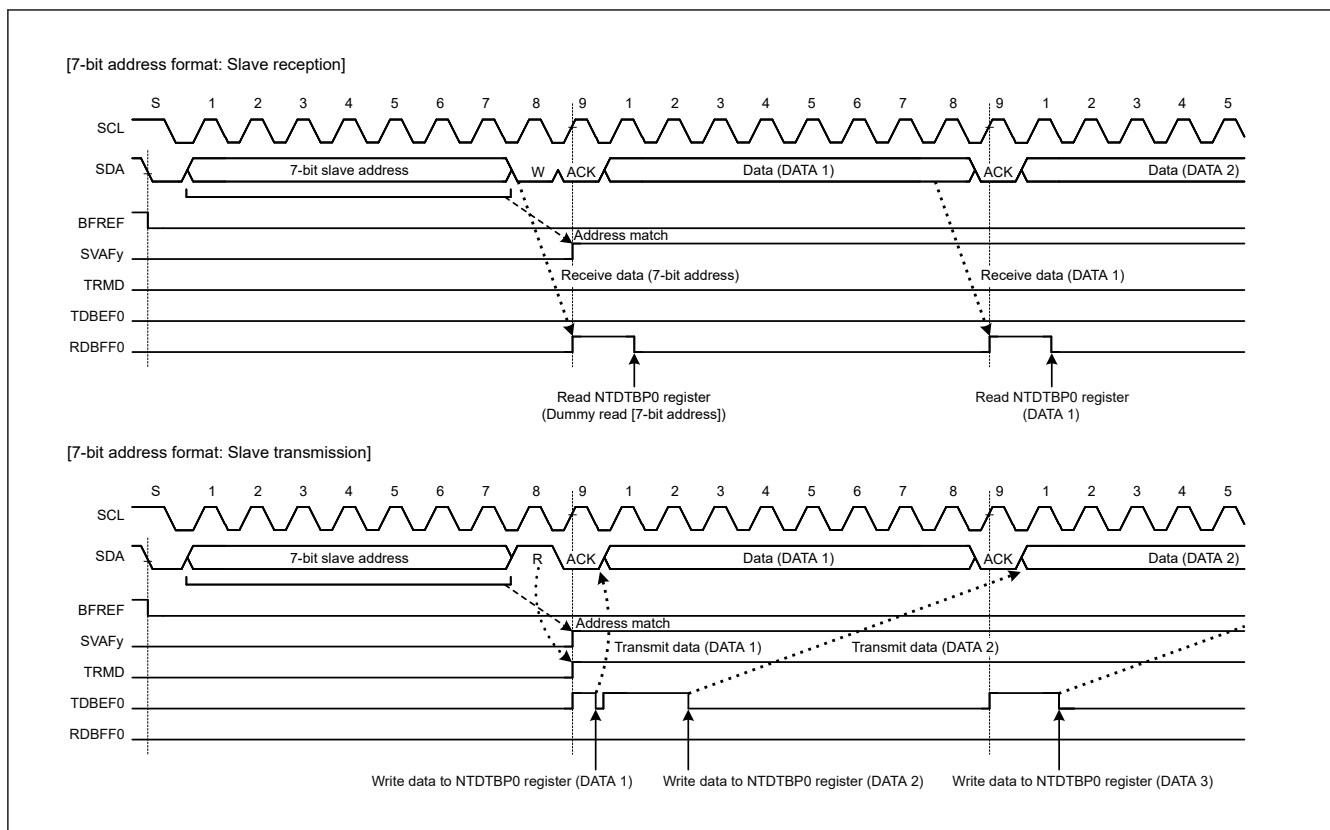


Figure 28.58 SVAfy flag set timing with 7-bit address format selected

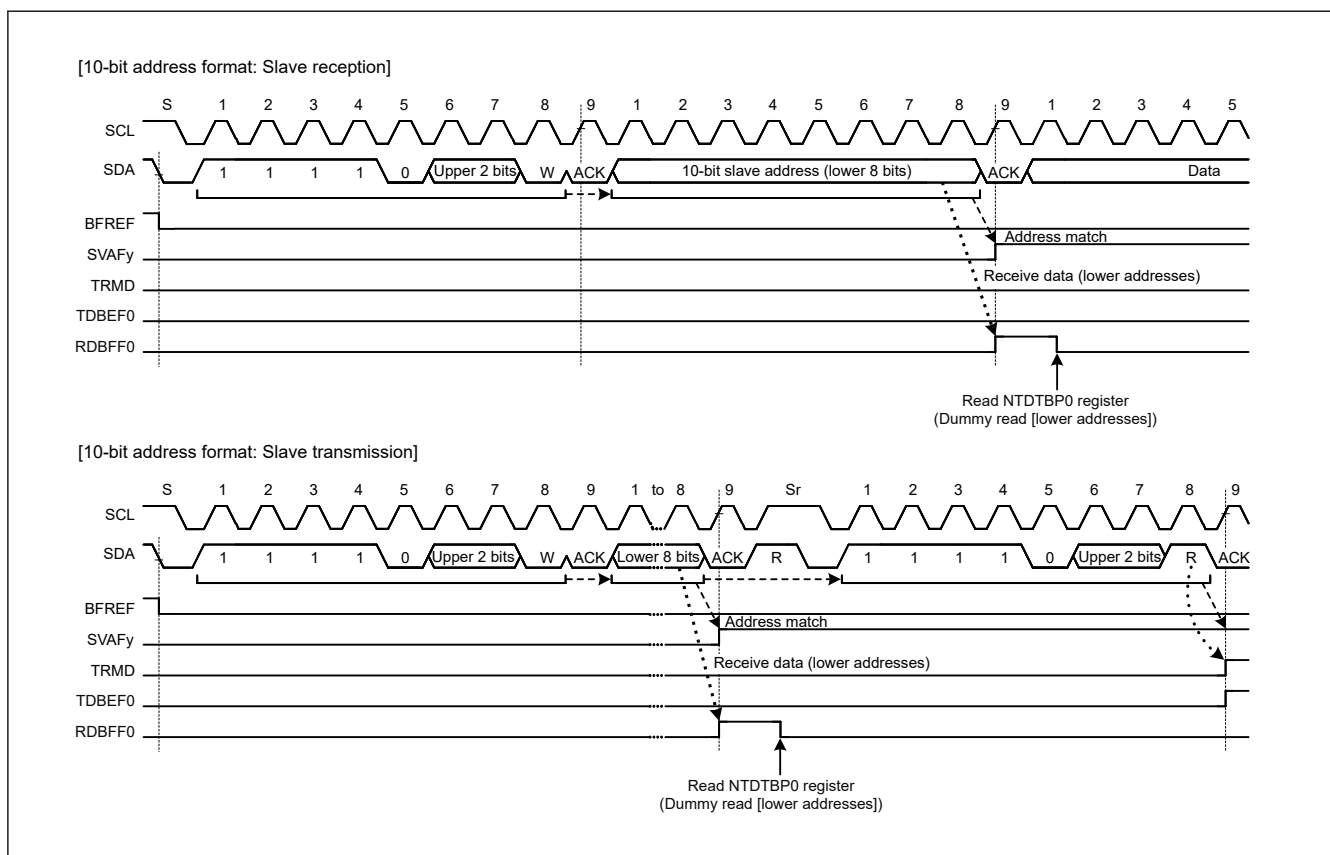


Figure 28.59 SVAfy flag set timing with 10-bit address format selected

(2) Detection of the general call address [I²C mode]

I3C has a facility for detecting the general call address (0000 000 + 0 (write)). This is enabled by setting the SVCTL.GCAE bit to 1.

If the address received after a START or Repeated START condition is issued as 0000 000 + 1 (read) (start byte), I3C recognizes this as the address of a slave device with an all-zero address but not as the general call address.

When I3C detects the general call address, both the SVST.GCAF flag and the NTST.RDBFF0 flag are set to 1 on the rising edge of the 9th cycle of the SCL clock. This leads to the generation of a receive data full interrupt (I3Cn_RX). The value of the GCAF flag can be confirmed to recognize that the general call address has been transmitted.

Operation after detection of the general call address is the same as normal slave receive operation.

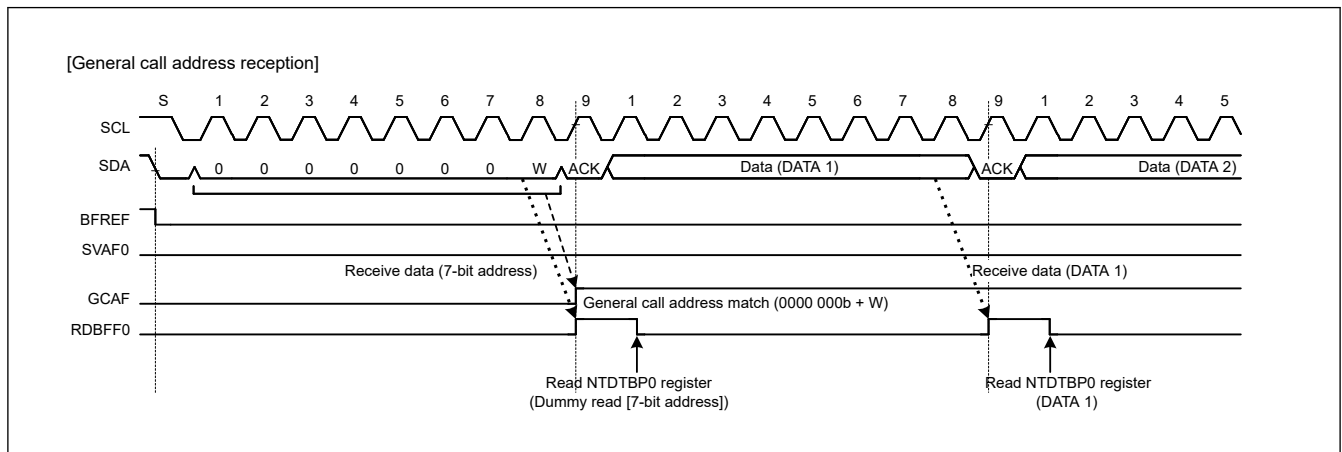


Figure 28.60 Timing of GCAF flag setting during reception of general call address

(3) Device ID address detection [I²C mode]

I3C module has a facility for detecting device-ID addresses conformant with the I²C-bus specification (Rev.03). When I3C receives 1111 100 as the first byte after a START condition or Repeated START condition was issued with the SVCTL.DVIDE bit set to 1, I3C recognizes the address as a device ID, sets the SVST.DVIDF flag to 1 on the rising edge of the 9th SCL clock cycle when the following R/W# bit = 0, and then compares the second and subsequent bytes with its own slave address. If the address matches the value in the slave address register, I3C sets the corresponding SVST.SVAFn flag (n = 0 to 2) to 1.

After that, when the first byte received after a START or Repeated START condition is issued matches the device ID address (1111 100) again and the following R/W# bit = 1, I3C does not compare the second and subsequent bytes and sets the NTST.TDBEF0 flag to 1.

In the device-ID address detection function, I3C sets the DVIDF flag to 0 if a match with I3C's own slave address is not obtained or a match with the device ID address is not obtained after a match with I3C's own slave address and the detection of a Repeated START condition. If the first byte after detection of a START or Repeated START condition matches the device ID address (1111 100) and the R/W# bit = 0, I3C sets the DVIDF flag to 1 and compares the second and subsequent bytes with I3C's slave address. If the R/W# bit = 1, the DVIDF flag holds the previous value and I3C does not compare the second and subsequent bytes. Therefore, the reception of a device-ID address can be checked by reading the DVIDF flag after confirming that TDBEF0 flag = 1.

Furthermore, prepare the device-ID fields (3 bytes: 12 bits indicating the manufacturer + 9 bits identifying the part + 3 bits indicating the revision) that must be sent to the host after reception of a continuous device-ID field as normal data for transmission. For details of the information that must be included in device-ID fields, contact NXP Semiconductors.

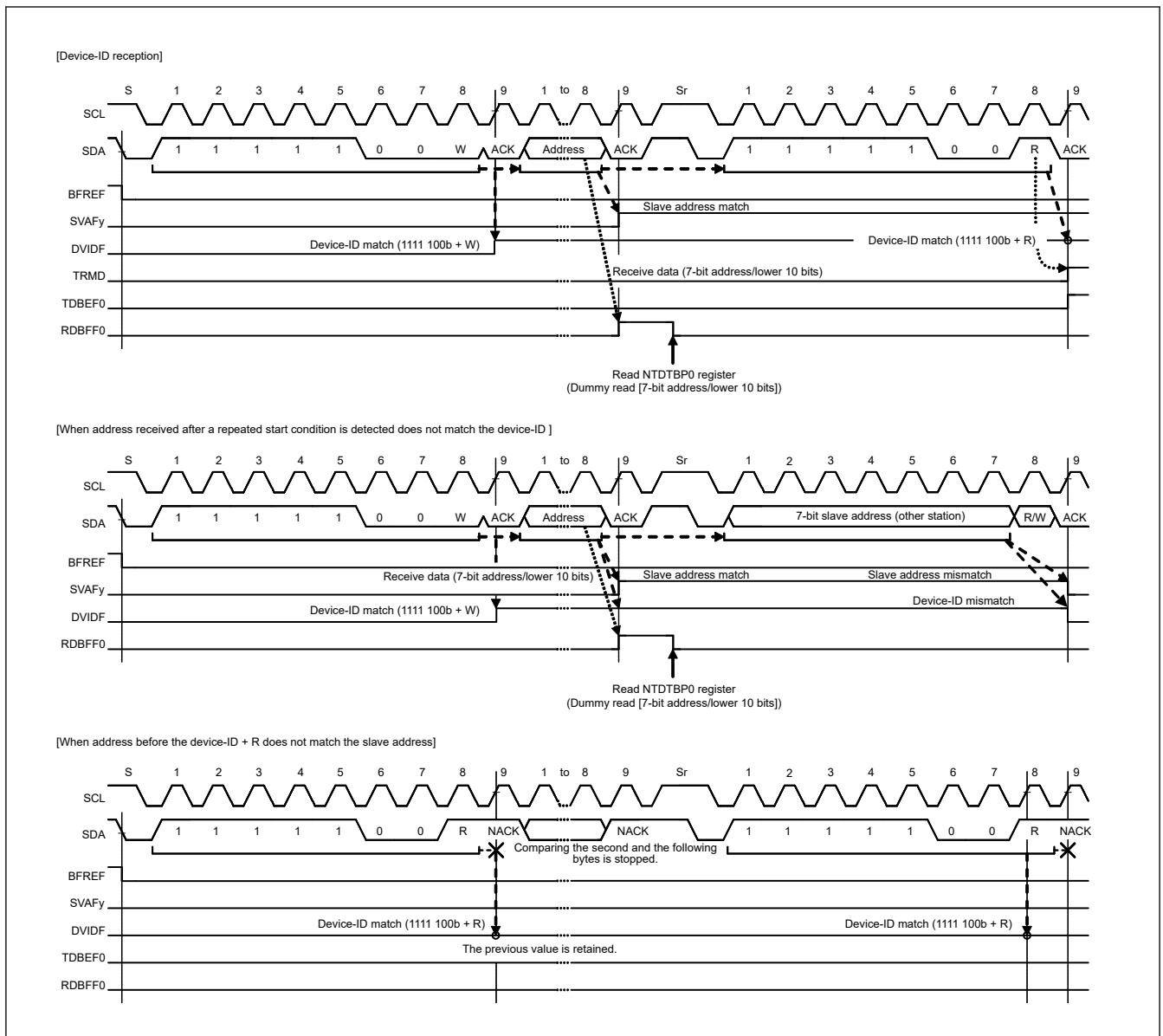


Figure 28.61 SVAfY/DVIDF flag set/clear timing during reception of device-ID

(4) Host address detection [I²C mode]

I3C has a function to detect the host address while the SMBus is operating. When the SVCTL.HOAE bit is set to 1 while the BFCTL.SMBS bit = 1, I3C can detect the host address (0001 000) in slave receive mode (bits CRMS and TRMD in the PRSST register = 00).

When I3C detects the host address, the SVST.HOAF flag is set to 1 at the rising edge of the 9th SCL clock cycle, and at the same time, the NTST.RDBFF0 flag is set to 1 when the R/W# bit = 0 (Wr bit). This causes a receive data full interrupt (I3C_RXI2C_RX) to be generated. The HOAF flag is used to recognize that the host address was sent from the smart battery or other devices.

If the bit following the host address (0001 000) is an Rd bit (R/W# bit = 1), I3C can also detect the host address. After the host address is detected, I3C operates in the same manner as normal slave operation.

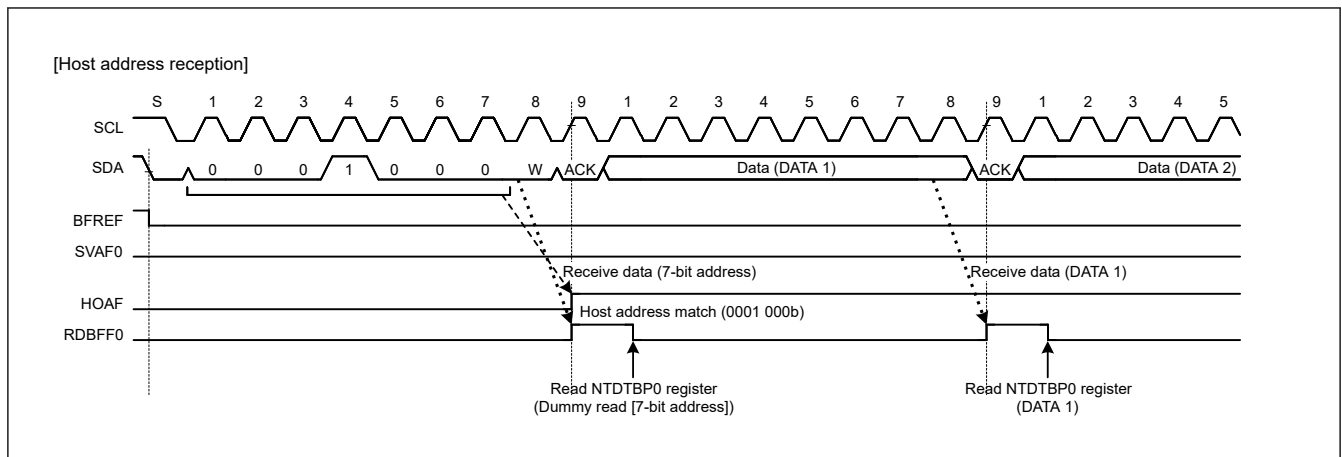
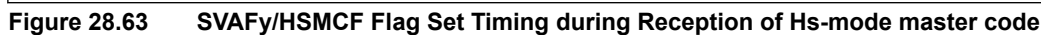


Figure 28.62 HOAF flag set timing during reception of host address

(5) Hs-mode master code detection [²C mode]

IIC has a facility for detecting the Hs-mode master code (0000 1XXXb). When IIC receives the Hs-mode master code (0000 1XXXb) as the first byte after a START condition was issued with the SVCTL.HSMCE bit set to 1, this module recognizes the address as the Hs-mode master code, sets the SVST.HSMCF flag to 1 on the rising edge of the 9th SCL clock cycle. The first byte after Repeated START after NACK response to Hs-mode master code is recognized as a slave address and compared with the slave address set by SVDVADn.SVAD[9:0] (n = 0 to 2). When IIC detects a match of the set slave address, the corresponding SVST.SVAFn flag (n = 0 to 2) is set to 1 at the rising edge of the 9th SCL clock cycle, and the NTST.RDBFF0 flag or the NTST.TDBEF0 flag is set to 1 by the following R/W# bit. This causes a receive data full interrupt (IICn_RX) or transmit data empty interrupt (IICn_TX) to be generated. The SVAfY flag is used to identify which slave address has been specified. The SVST.HSMCF flag is cleared to 0 when the STOP condition is detected.

Note: If the Hs-mode master code (0000 1XXXb) is received with the SVCTL.HSMCE bit set to 0, other patterns are ignored until the STOP condition is detected.



- For Broadcast CCC
 1. It receives Broadcast Address (0x7E) and R/W# = 0 after START condition or Repeated START.
 2. Respond to ACK.
 3. Receive Common Command Code (CCC).
 4. In accordance with the CCC, the following data is stored. (Storage destination: see [Table 28.11](#))
 5. Store the Receive Status Descriptor into the Receive Status Queue.
- For Broadcast CCC (ENTDAA)
 1. It receives Broadcast Address (0x7E) and R/W# = 0 after the START condition.
 2. Respond to ACK.
 3. Receive ENTDAA.
 4. If receives Broadcast Address (0x7E) and R/W# = 1 after Repeated START.
 5. When the Dynamic Address is not assigned, ACK response is done.
 6. This Provisional ID (SDCTPIDH[31:0], SDCTPIDL[15:0]), BCR (SVDCT.TBCR[7:0]) and DCR (SVDCT.TDCR[7:0]) are transmitted.
 7. When winning the arbitration in a transmission of the above Step 6, the dynamic address following that is received. When losing arbitration in a transmission of the above Step 6, processing of Step 6 is repeated from Step 4.
 8. When parity of the Dynamic Address is valid, the ACK response is done.
 9. When parity of the Dynamic Address is invalid, NACK replies, and repeats the process from Steps 4 to 7.
 10. SDATBAS0.SDDYAD[7:0] is renewed and the SVDVAD0.SDYADV bit is set to 1.

11. On detecting the STOP condition, store the Receive Status Descriptor into the Receive Status Queue.

- For Direct Write CCC

1. It receives Broadcast Address (0x7E) and R/W# = 0 after START condition or Repeated START.
2. Respond to ACK.
3. Receive Common Command Code (CCC).
4. Receive Dynamic Address and R/W# = 0 after Repeated START.
5. Compare the received Dynamic Address with the assigned Dynamic Address, and if it matches, I3C responds with ACK.
If they do not match, it responds with NACK and waits for Repeated START or STOP.
6. In accordance with the CCC, the following data is stored. (Storage destination: see [Table 28.11](#))
7. Store the Receive Status Descriptor into the Receive Status Queue.

- For Direct Read CCC

1. It receives Broadcast Address (0x7E) and R/W# = 1 after START condition or Repeated START.
2. Respond to ACK.
3. Receive Common Command Code (CCC).
4. Receive Dynamic Address and R/W# = 1 after Repeated START.
5. Compare the received Dynamic Address with the assigned Dynamic Address, and if it matches, I3C responds with ACK.
If they do not match, it responds with NACK and waits for Repeated START or STOP.
6. Respond from SFR according to CCC. (Responding CCC: see [Table 28.11](#))
7. Store the Receive Status Descriptor into the Receive Status Queue.

Table 28.11 Common command code operation (1 of 2)

Command Code	CCC Type	Command Name	With Data	Auto Response	Storage
0x00	Broadcast	ENEC	Yes	—	SFR
0x01	Broadcast	DISEC	Yes	—	SFR
0x02	Broadcast	ENTAS0	No	—	SFR
0x03	Broadcast	ENTAS1	No	—	SFR
0x04	Broadcast	ENTAS2	No	—	SFR
0x05	Broadcast	ENTAS3	No	—	SFR
0x06	Broadcast	RSTDAA	No	—	SFR
0x07	Broadcast	ENTDAA	Yes	Yes	SFR
0x08	Broadcast	DEFSLVS	Yes	—	FIFO
0x09	Broadcast	SETMWL	Yes	—	SFR
0x0A	Broadcast	SETMRL	Yes	—	SFR
0x0B	Broadcast	ENTTM	Yes	—	SFR
0x29	Broadcast	SETAASA	No	—	SFR
0x80	Direct Write	ENEC	Yes	—	SFR
0x81	Direct Write	DISEC	Yes	—	SFR
0x82	Direct Write	ENTAS0	No	—	SFR
0x83	Direct Write	ENTAS1	No	—	SFR
0x84	Direct Write	ENTAS2	No	—	SFR
0x85	Direct Write	ENTAS3	No	—	SFR
0x86	Direct Write	RSTDAA	No	—	SFR

Table 28.11 Common command code operation (2 of 2)

Command Code	CCC Type	Command Name	With Data	Auto Response	Storage
0x87	Direct Write	SETDASA	Yes	—	SFR
0x88	Direct Write	SETNEWDA	Yes	—	SFR
0x89	Direct Write	SETMWL	Yes	—	SFR
0x8A	Direct Write	SETMRL	Yes	—	SFR
0x8B	Direct Read	GETMWL	—	Yes	SFR
0x8C	Direct Read	GETMRL	—	Yes	SFR
0x8D	Direct Read	GETPID	—	Yes	SFR
0x8E	Direct Read	GETBCR	—	Yes	SFR
0x8F	Direct Read	GETDCR	—	Yes	SFR
0x90	Direct Read	GETSTATUS	—	Yes	SFR
0x91	Direct Read	GETACCMST	—	Yes	SFR
0x94	Direct Read	GETMXDS	—	Yes	SFR

28.3.2.3.5 Arbitration-lost Detection [I²C Mode]

In addition to the normal arbitration-lost detection function defined by the I²C-bus specification, the I3C has functions to prevent double-issue of a start condition, to detect arbitration-lost during transmission of NACK, and to detect arbitration-lost in slave transmit mode.

(1) Master arbitration-lost detection (MALE Bit)

The I3C drives the SDAn line low to issue a start condition. However, if the SDAn line has already been driven low by another master device issuing a start condition, this module causes arbitration to be lost, so priority is given to transfer by the other master device. Similarly, if the CNDCTL.STCND bit is set to 1 while the BCST.BFREF flag is 0 (bus busy state), arbitration is lost, so priority is given to transfer by the other master device. No start condition is issued in this case.

When a start condition is issued successfully, if the data for transmission including the address bits (the internal SDA output level) and the level on the SDAn line do not match (the high output as the internal SDA output, that is, the SDA pin is in the high-impedance state) and the low level is detected on the SDAn line, the I3C loses in arbitration.

I3C detects master arbitration-lost when the following conditions are met while the BSTE.ALE bit = 1 and the BFCTL.MALE bit = 1 (master arbitration-lost detection enabled).

If arbitration of mastership is lost, I3C immediately enters slave receive mode.

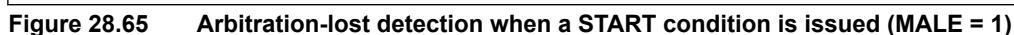
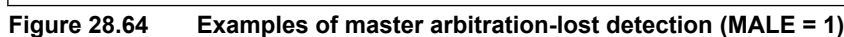
If a slave address (including the general call address) matches its own address at this time, I3C continues in slave operation.

[Conditions for master arbitration-lost]

- Non-matching of the internal level for output on SDA and the level on the SDAn line after a START condition was issued by setting the CNDCTL.STCND bit to 1 while the BCST.BFREF flag was set to 1 (erroneous issuing of a START condition)
- Setting of the CNDCTL.STCND bit to 1 (START condition double-issue error) while the BFREF flag is set to 0

Note: I3C does not issue a START condition.

- When the transmit data excluding acknowledge (internal SDA output level) does not match the level on the SDAn line in master transmit mode (bits CRMS and TRMD in the PRSST register = 11)



(2) Arbitration-lost detection during NACK transmission (NALE bit)

The I3C has a function to cause arbitration to be lost if the internal SDA output level does not match the level on the SDAn line (the high output as the internal SDA output; i.e. the SDAn pin is in the high-impedance state) and the low level is detected on the SDAn line during transmission of NACK in receive mode. Arbitration is lost due to a conflict of NACK transmission and ACK transmission when two or more master devices receive data from the same slave device simultaneously in a multi-master system. Such conflict occurs when multiple master devices send/receive the same information through a single slave device.

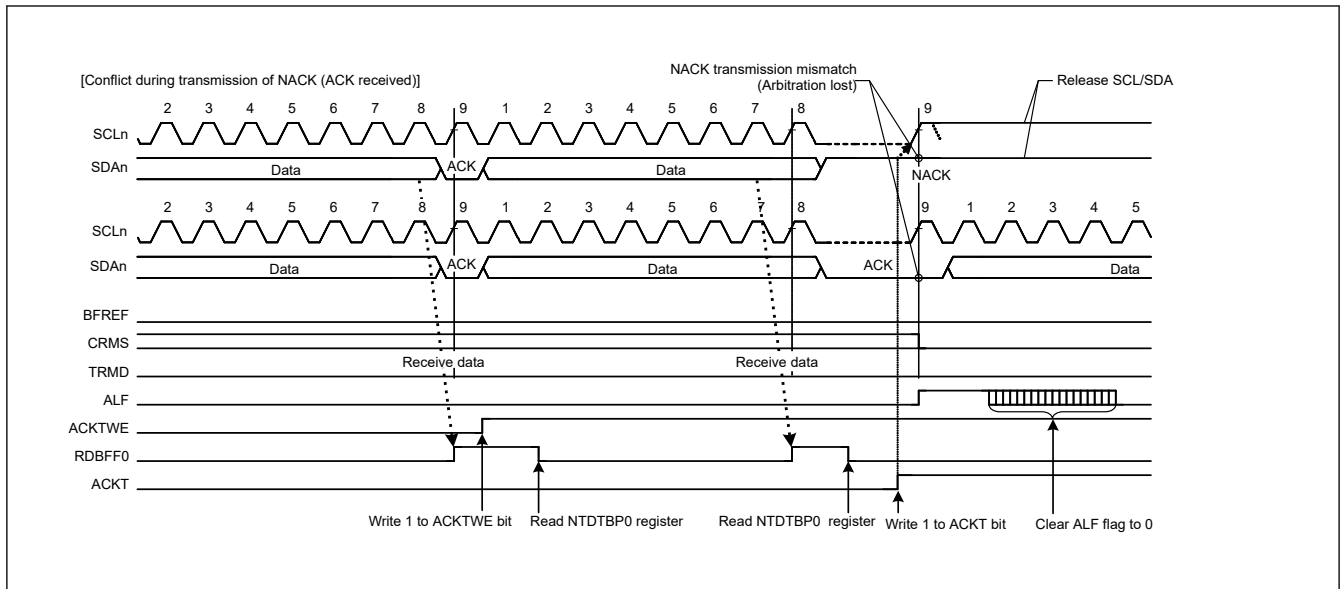


Figure 28.66 Example of arbitration-lost detection during transmission of NACK (NALE = 1)

The following section explains arbitration-lost detection using an example where two master devices (master A and master B) and a single slave device are connected through the bus. In this example, master A receives 2 bytes of data from the slave device, and master B receives 4 bytes of data from the slave device.

If master A and master B access the slave device simultaneously, because the slave address is identical, arbitration is not lost in both master A and master B during access to the slave device. Therefore, both master A and master B recognize that they have obtained the bus mastership and operate as such. In this example, master A sends NACK when it has received 2 final bytes of data from the slave device. Meanwhile, master B sends ACK because it has not received the necessary 4 bytes of data. At this time, the NACK transmission from master A and the ACK transmission from master B conflict. In general, if a conflict like this occurs, master A cannot detect ACK transmitted by master B and issues a stop condition. Therefore, the issuance of the stop condition conflicts with the SCL clock output of master B, which disturbs communication.

When this module receives ACK during transmission of NACK, it detects a defeat in conflict with other master devices and causes arbitration to be lost.

If arbitration is lost during transmission of NACK, this module is immediately released from the slave-matched state and enters slave receive mode. This prevents a stop condition from being issued, preventing a communication failure on the bus.

Similarly, in the ARP command processing of SMBus, the function to detect loss of arbitration during transmission of NACK is also available for eliminating the extra clock cycle processing (such as FFh transmission processing) necessary if the UDID (Unique Device Identifier) of assign address does not match in the Get UDID (general) processing after the Assign Address command.

The I3C detects arbitration-lost during transmission of NACK when the following condition is met while the BSTE.ALE bit = 1 and the BFCTL.NALE bit = 1 (arbitration-lost detection during NACK transmission enabled).

[Condition for arbitration-lost during NACK transmission]

- When the internal SDA output level does not match the SDA_n line (ACK is received) during transmission of NACK (ACKCTL.ACKT bit = 1)

(3) Slave arbitration-lost detection (SALE bit)

The I3C has a function to cause arbitration to be lost if the data for transmission (the internal SDA output level) and the level on the SDA_n line do not match (the high output as the internal SDA output, that is, the SDA_n pin is in the high impedance state) and the low level is detected on the SDA_n line in slave transmit mode. This arbitration-lost detection function is mainly used when transmitting a UDID (Unique Device Identifier) over an SMBus.

If arbitration is lost during transmission of DATA, this module is immediately released from the slave-matched state and enters slave receive mode. This function can detect conflicts of data during transmission of UDIDs over an SMBus and eliminate subsequent redundant processing (processing for the transmission of 0xFF).

The I3C detects slave arbitration-lost when the following condition is met while the BSTE.ALE bit = 1 and the BFCTL.SALE bit = 1 (slave arbitration-lost detection enabled).

[Condition for slave arbitration-lost]

- When the transmit data excluding acknowledge (internal SDA output level) does not match the level on the SDA_n line in slave transmit mode (bits CRMS and TRMD in the PRSST register = 01).

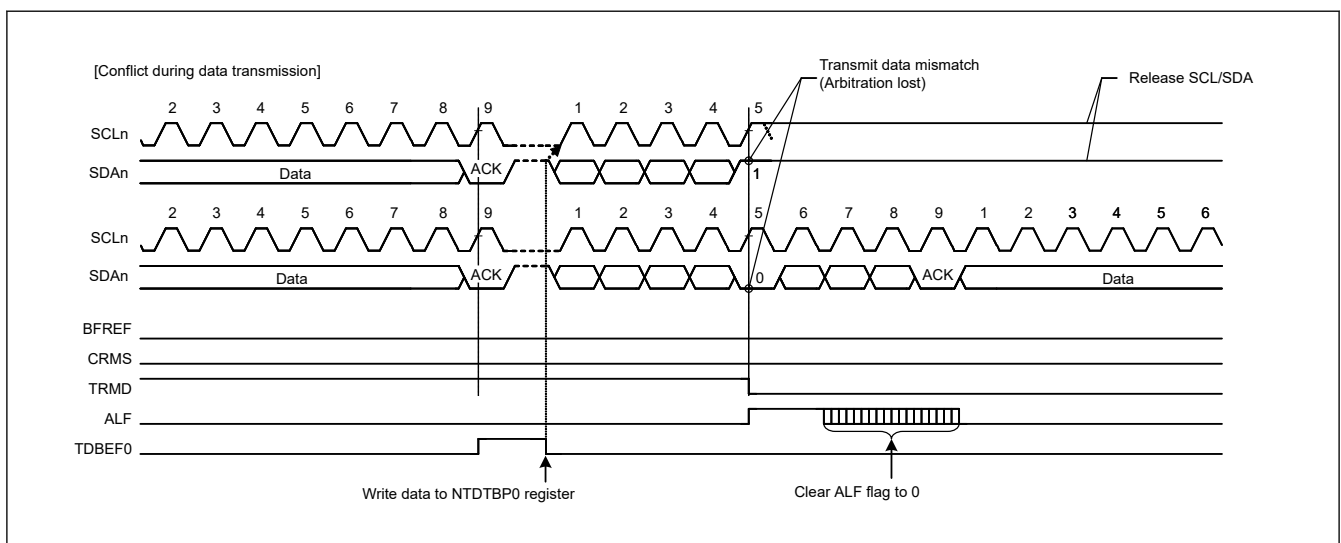


Figure 28.67 Example of slave arbitration-lost detection (SALE = 1)

28.3.2.3.6 Clock Stretching [I²C Mode]

(1) Function to prevent wrong transmission of transmit data

When data have not been written to the I²C bus transmit data register (NTDTBP0) with I3C in transmission mode (PRSST.TRMD = 1), the SCLn line is automatically held at the low level over the intervals shown below. This low-hold period is extended until data for transmission have been written, which prevents the unintended transmission of erroneous data.

Master transmit mode

- Low-level interval after a START condition or Repeated START condition is issued
- Low-level interval between the 9th clock cycle of one transfer and the first clock cycle of the next

Slave transmit mode

- Low-level interval between the 9th clock cycle of one transfer and the first clock cycle of the next

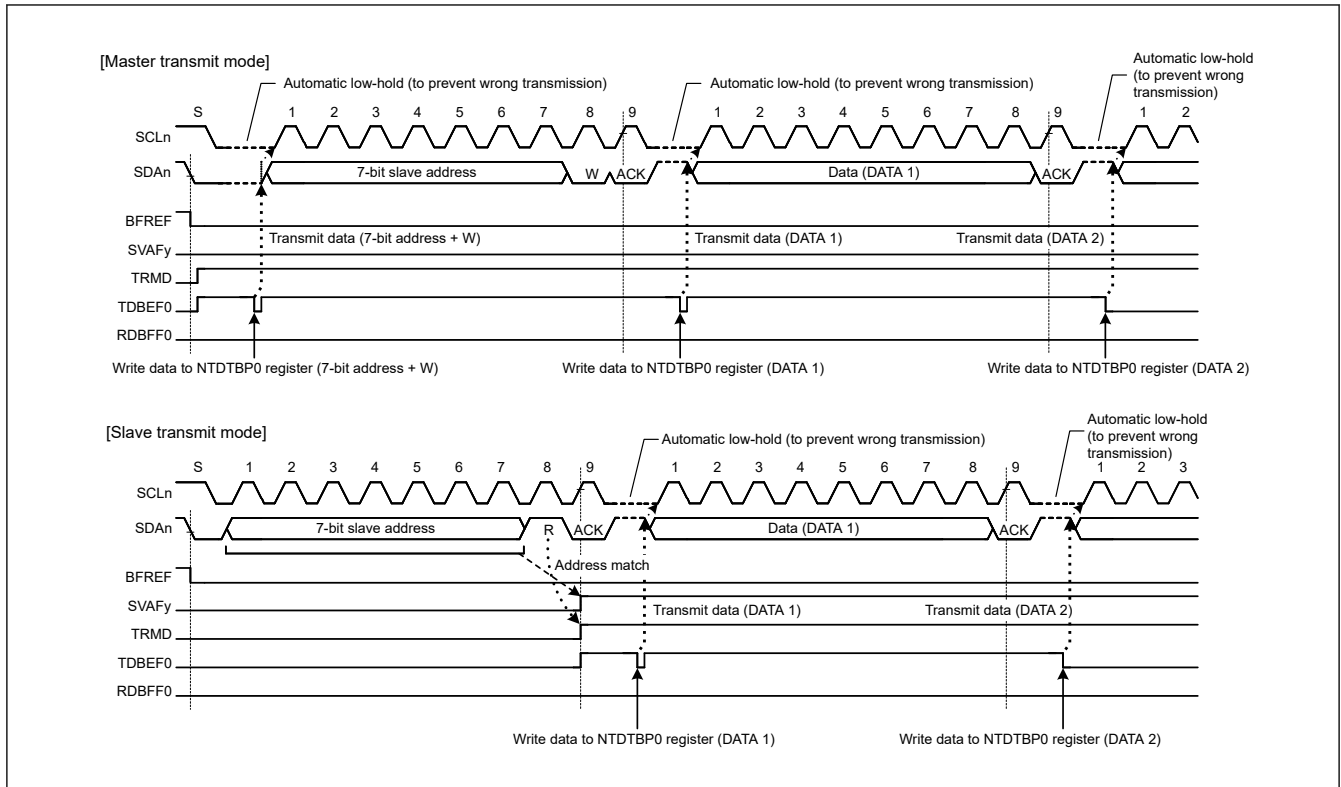


Figure 28.68 Automatic low-hold operation in transmit mode

(2) NACK reception transfer abort function

I3C has a function to abort transfer operation when NACK is received in transmit mode ($\text{PRST.TRMD} = 1$). This function is enabled when the BSTE.NACKDE bit is set to 1 (transfer abort enabled). If the next transmit data has already been written ($\text{NTST.TDBEF0} = 0$) when NACK is received, the next data transmission at the falling edge of the 9th SCL clock cycle is automatically aborted. This prevents the SDA line output level from being held low when the MSB of the next transmit data is 0.

If the transfer operation is aborted by this function ($\text{BST.NACKDF} = 1$), transmit operation and receive operation are discontinued. To restore transmit/receive operation, be sure to set the NACKDF flag to 0. In master transmit mode, restore operation using either of the methods below:

- After issuing a Repeated START condition, set the NACKDF flag to 0
- After issuing a STOP condition, set the NACKDF flag to 0 and then issue a START condition

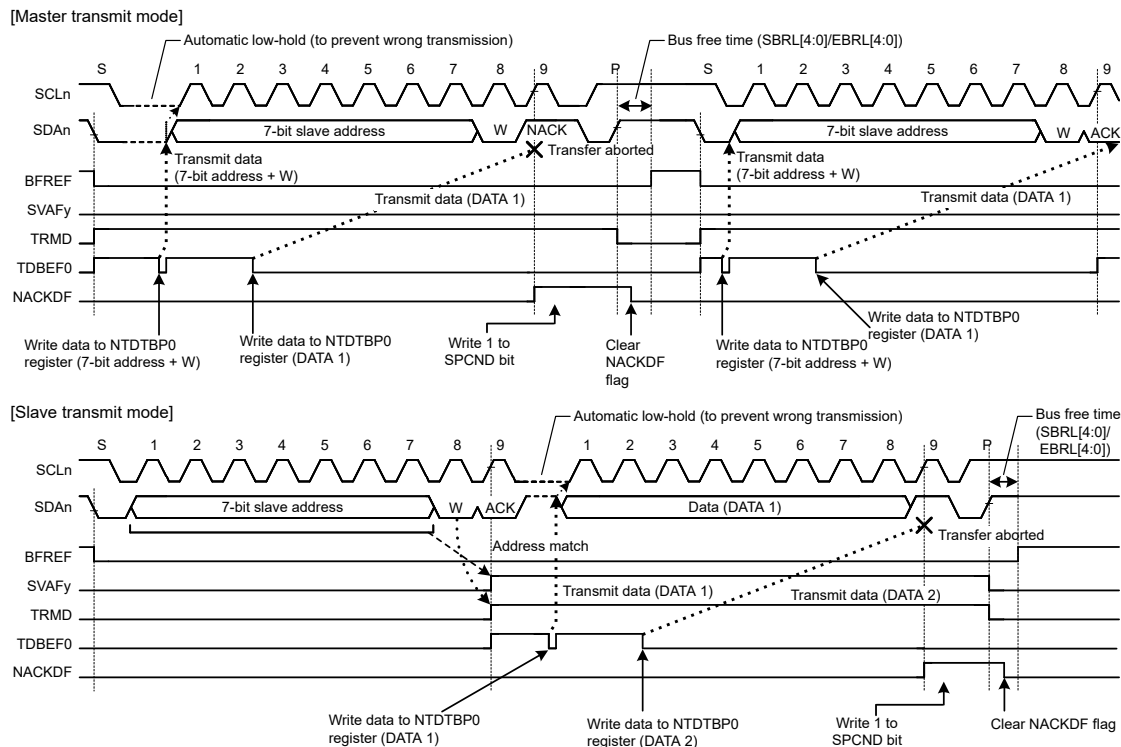


Figure 28.69 Abort of data transfer when NACK is received (NACK = 1)

(3) Function to prevent failure to receive data

If response processing is delayed when receive data (NTDTBP0) read is delayed for a period of one transfer frame or more with receive data full (NTST.RDBFF0 = 1) in receive mode (PRST.TRMD = 0), I3C holds the SCLn line low automatically immediately before the next data is received to prevent failure to receive data.

This function to prevent failure to receive data using the automatic low-hold function is also enabled even if the read processing of the final receive data is delayed and, in the meantime, I3C's own slave address or another slave address is received after a STOP condition is issued.

Sections in which the SCLn line is held low can be selected with a combination of the RWE and ACKTWE bits in SCSTRCTL.

(a) 1-Byte Receive Operation and Automatic Low-Hold Function Using the RWE Bit

When the SCSTRCTL.RWE bit is set to 1, I3C performs 1-byte receive operation using the RWE bit function.

Furthermore, when the SCSTRCTL.ACKTWE bit = 0, I3C automatically sends the ACKCTL.ACKT bit value for the acknowledge bit in the period from the falling edge of the eighth SCL clock cycle to the falling edge of the 9th SCL clock cycle, and automatically holds the SCLn line low at the falling edge of the 9th SCL clock cycle using the RWE bit function. This low-hold is released by reading data from NTDTBP0, which enables bitwise receive operation.

The RWE bit function is enabled for receive frames after a match with I3C's own slave address (including the general call address and host address) is obtained in master receive mode or slave receive mode.

(b) 1-Byte Receive Operation (ACK/NACK Transmission Control) and Automatic Low-Hold Function Using the ACKTWE Bit

When the SCSTRCTL.ACKTWE bit is set to 1, I3C performs 1-byte receive operation using the ACKTWE bit function.

When the ACKTWE bit is set to 1, the NTST.RDBFF0 flag (receive data full) is set to 1 at the rising edge of the eighth SCL clock cycle, and the SCLn line is automatically held low at the falling edge of the eighth SCL clock cycle. This lowhold

is released by writing a value to the ACKCTL.ACKT bit, but cannot be released by reading data from NTDTP0, which enables receive operation by the ACK/NACK transmission control according to the data received in byte units.

The ACKTWE bit function is enabled for receive frames after a match with I3C's own slave address (including the general call address and host address) is obtained in master receive mode or slave receive mode.

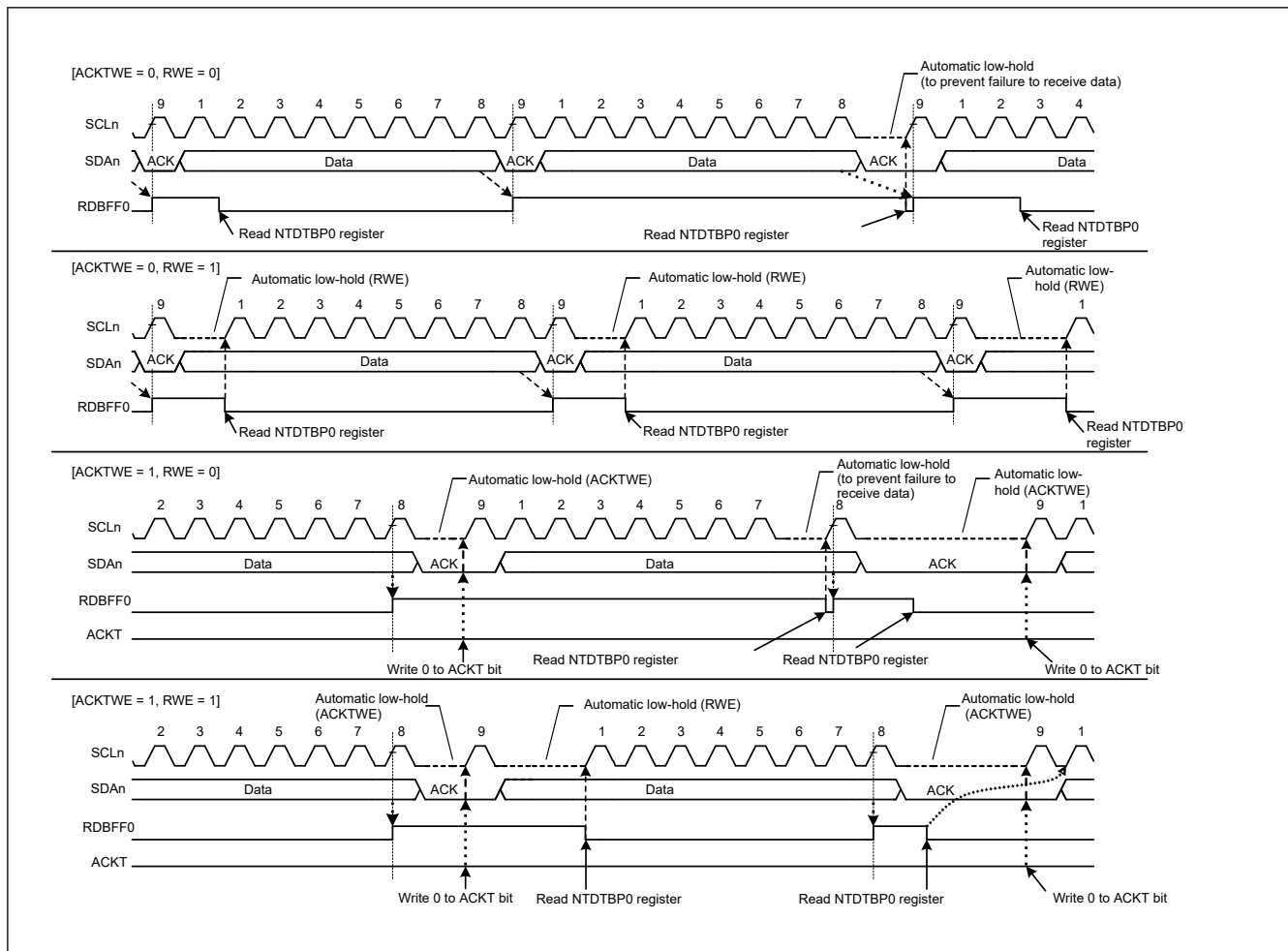


Figure 28.70 Automatic low-hold operation in receive mode (using ACKTWE and RWE bits)

28.3.2.3.7 Clock Stalling [I3C Mode]

I3C has the function of stalling the SCL during the SCL Low period.

Table 28.12 describes the SCL stall control.

Table 28.12 I3C clock stalling (1 of 2)

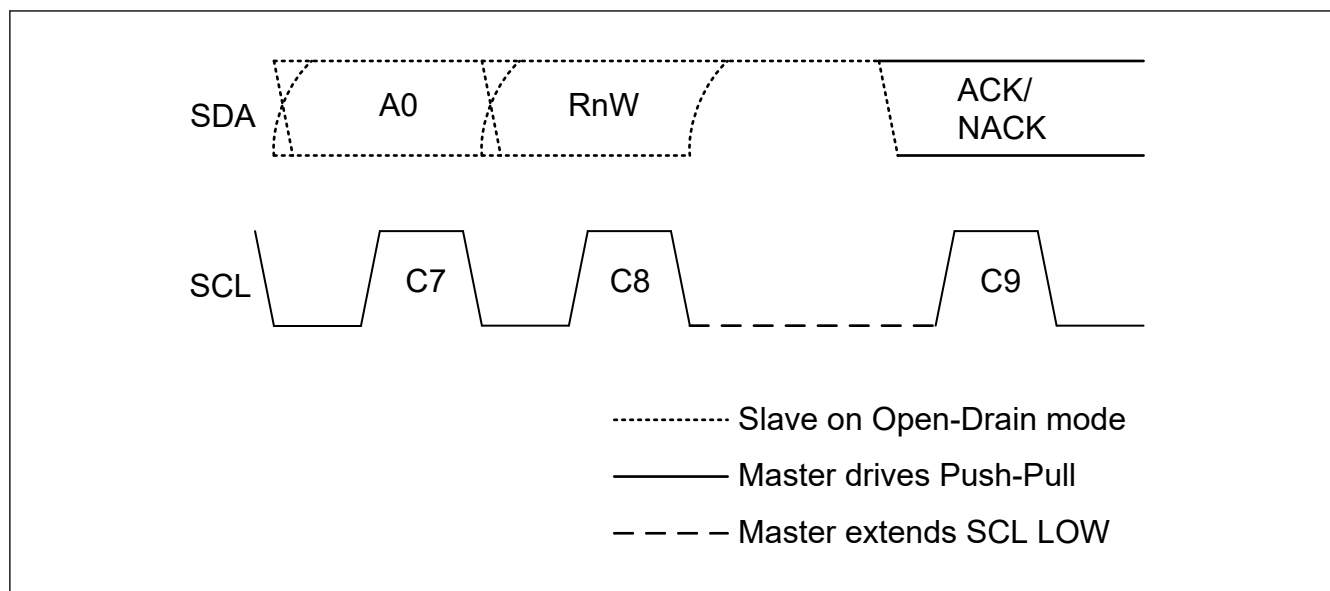
Clock stalling condition	Clock stalling control	Clock stalling period
I3C Transfer, ACK/NACK Phase	SCSTLCTL.ACKPE bit setting	During the count period of SCSTLCTL.STLCYC [15: 0] value
	Transmit Data FIFO Empty	Until data is written to the TX FIFO
	Receive Data FIFO Full	Until data is read from the RX FIFO
I3C Write Data Transfer, Parity Bit	SCSTLCTL.PARPE bit setting	During the count period of SCSTLCTL.STLCYC [15: 0] value
	Transmit Data FIFO Empty	Until data is written to the TX FIFO
I3C Read Transfer, Transition Bit	SCSTLCTL.TRAPE bit setting	During the count period of SCSTLCTL.STLCYC [15: 0] value
	Receive Data FIFO Full	Until data is read from the RX FIFO

Table 28.12 I3C clock stalling (2 of 2)

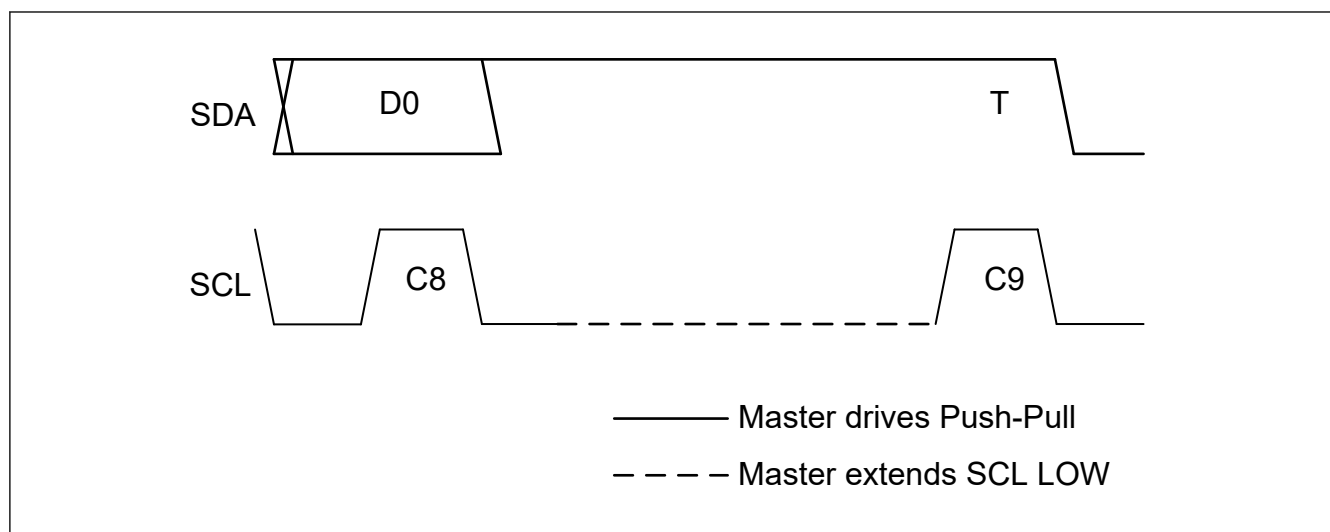
Clock stalling condition	Clock stalling control	Clock stalling period
Assigned Address Phase	SCSTLCTL.AAPE bit setting	During the count period of SCSTLCTL.STLCYC [15: 0] value

The following figures show the stalling timing of each condition.

(1) I3C transfer, ACK/NACK phase

**Figure 28.71 Master clock stalling in ACK phase**

(2) I3C write data transfer, parity bit

**Figure 28.72 Master clock stalling in write parity bit**

(3) I3C read transfer, transition bit

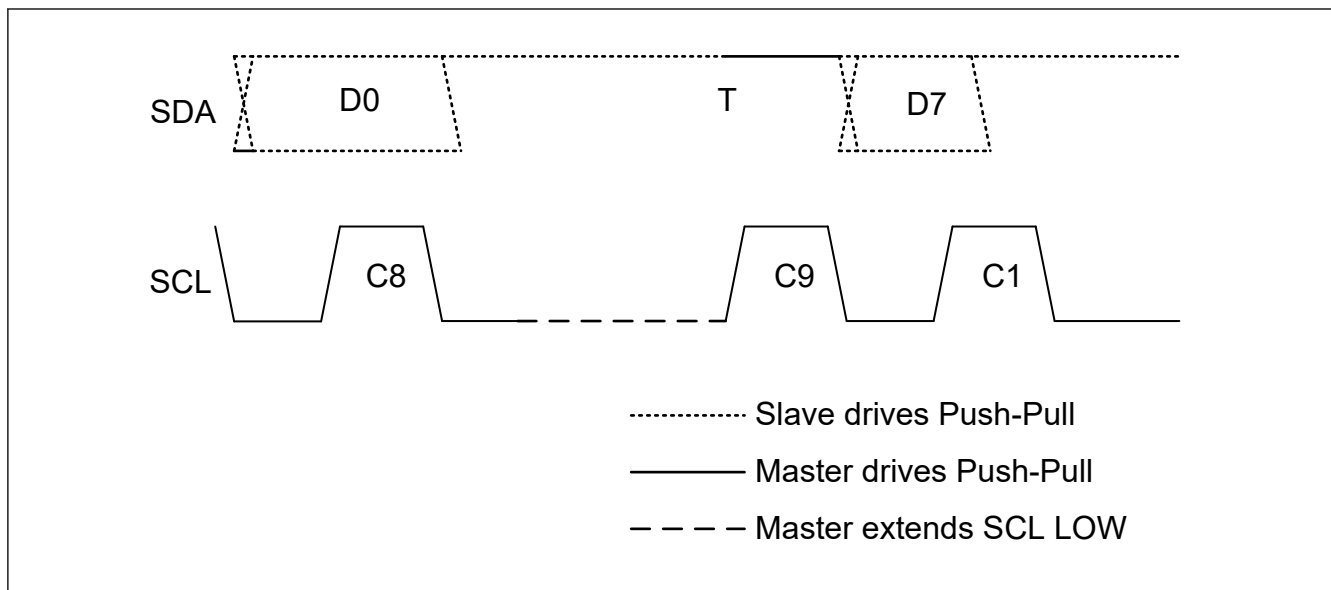


Figure 28.73 Master clock stalling in T-bit before next read data

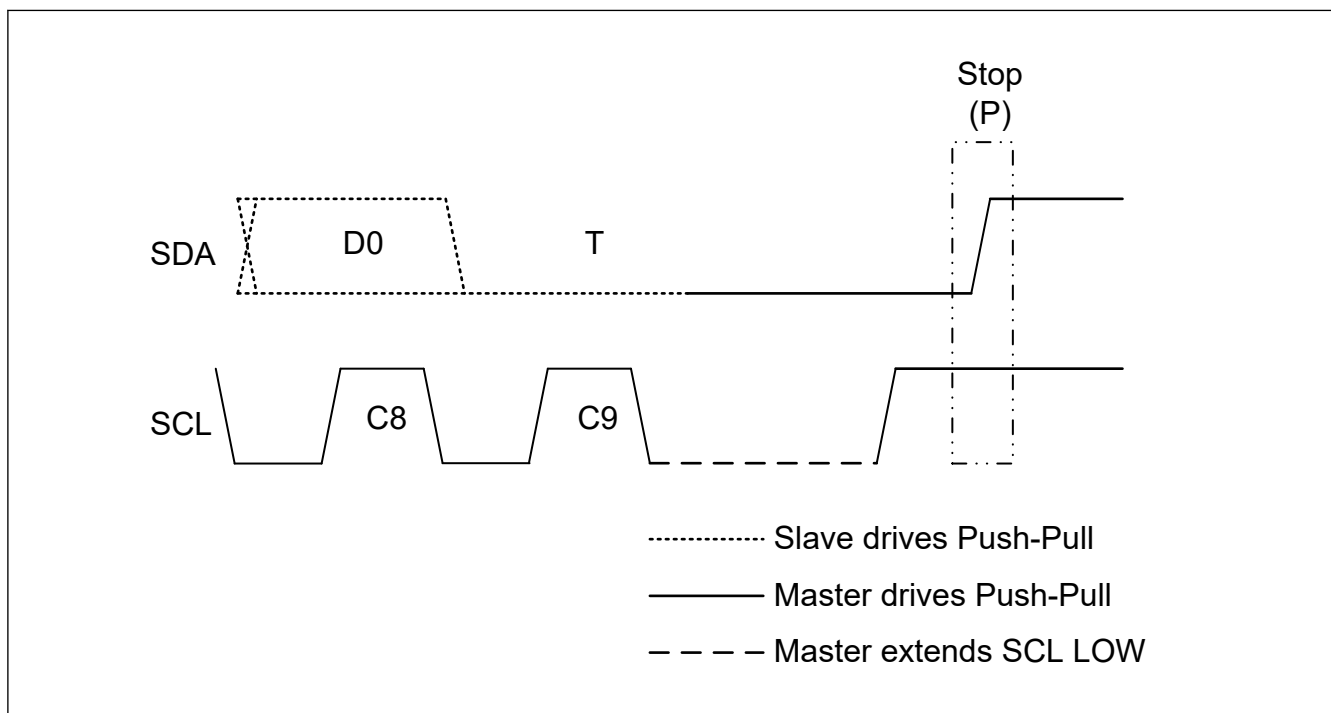


Figure 28.74 Master clock stalling in T-bit before STOP

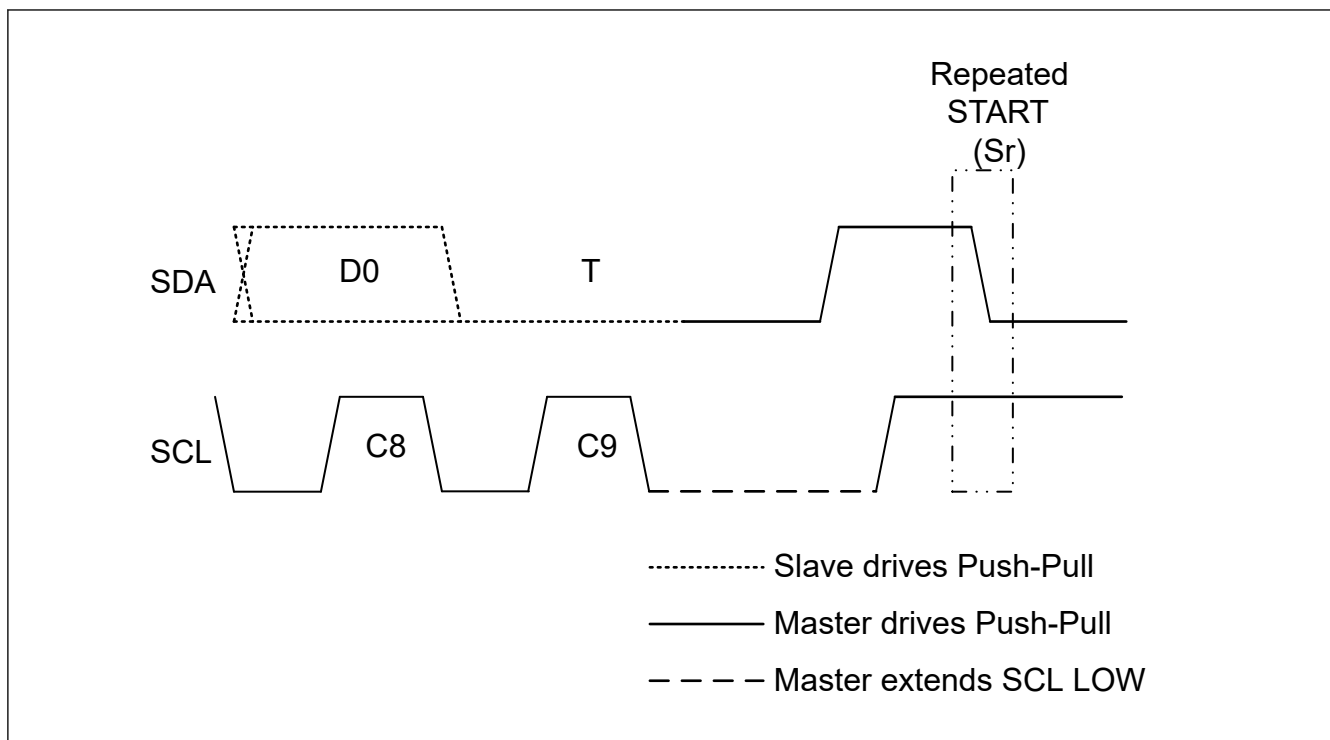


Figure 28.75 Master clock stalling in low T-bit before repeated START

(4) Dynamic address assignment, first bit of assigned address

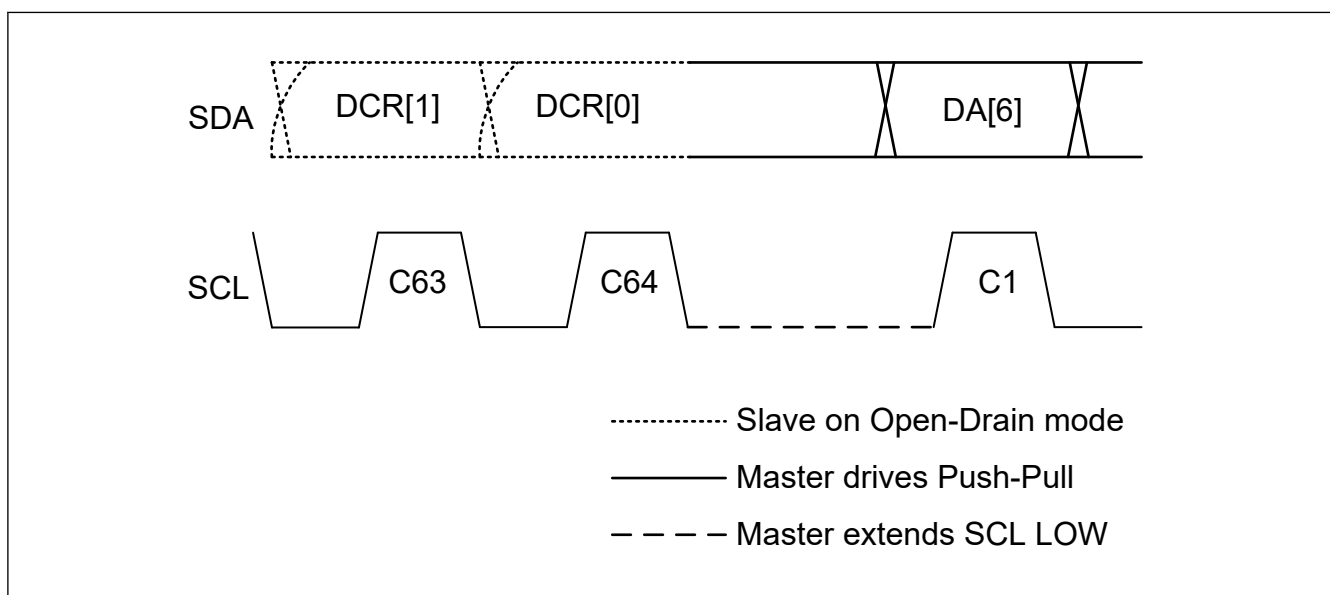


Figure 28.76 Master clock stalling in dynamic address first bit

28.3.2.3.8 In-band Interrupt [I3C Mode]

I3C detects an In-Band Interrupt in the arbitrated Address Header following a START condition (but not following a Repeated START). If START Request (SDA Low Drive) is issued from Slave Device, I3C drives SCL low and completes the START condition. After that, it supplies SCL and receives an In-Band Interrupt Request.

The In-Band Interrupt to be detected is classified into the following three types.

- Slave Interrupt Request
- Mastership Request
- Hot-Join Event

The operation when detecting each In-Band Interrupt is described below.

(1) Slave interrupt request

1. Detect Slave Address with RnW bit High in Address Header.
2. Compare the detected Slave Address with the DVDYAD[7:0] in each DAT (DATBASm register).
3. When it does not match DAT.DVDYAD[7:0]:
Responds NACK, then issues the STOP condition.
When it matches the DAT.DVDYAD[7:0] bits and the DAT.DVSIRRJ bit = 1:
It operates in the following order:
 - (a) Responds NACK.
 - (b) Issues Repeated START condition, then automatically issues Direct DISEC CCC to the detected Slave.
 - (c) Issues the STOP condition.

When it matches the DAT.DVDYAD[7:0] bits and the DAT.DVSIRRJ bit = 0:
Responds ACK.

4. When DAT.DVIBIPL = 0:
Issues the STOP condition.
When DAT.DVIBIPL = 1:
Drives the SCL to receive the IBI Data from the Slave following the ACK response and receives IBI Data.
It stores the received IBI Data into the IBI Data Queue.
Each time IBI Data of the size set by the NQTHCTL.IBIDSSZ[7:0] bits is received, the IBI Status Descriptor is stored in the IBI Status Queue.
5. After detection of Low of T-bit following IBI Data, issues STOP condition.
6. After issues of STOP condition
NACK response:
 - If IBINCTL.NRSIRCTL = 0, the IBI Status Descriptor is not stored into the IBI Status Queue.
 - If IBINCTL.NRSIRCTL = 1, the IBI Status Descriptor is stored into the IBI Status Queue.

ACK response:

Stores the IBI Status Descriptor into the IBI Status Queue.

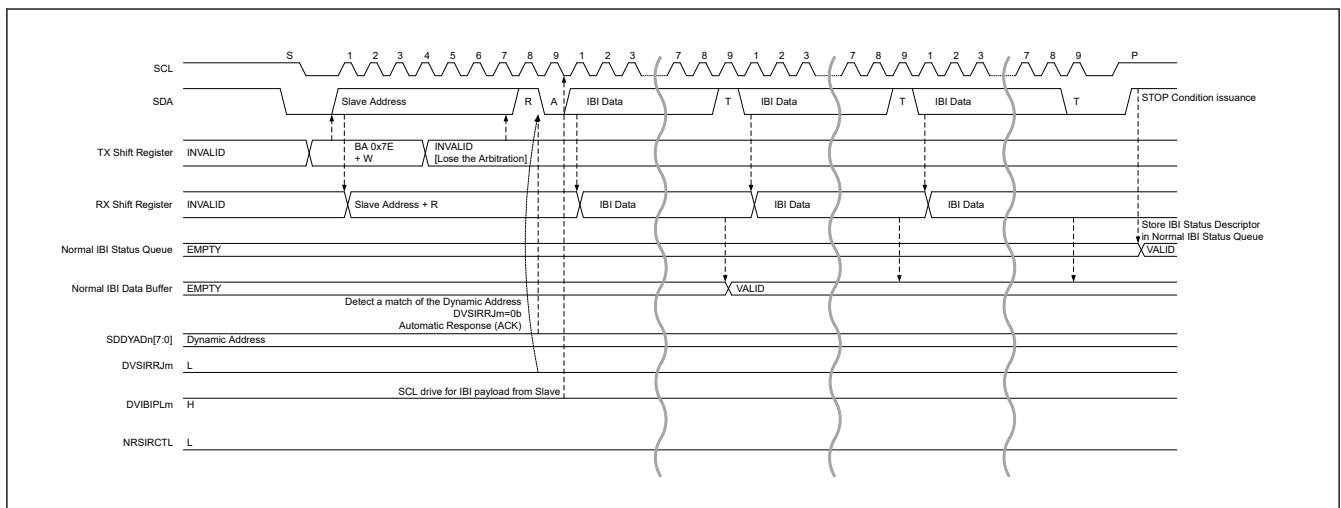


Figure 28.77 Slave interrupt request : ACK and DVIBIPL = 1

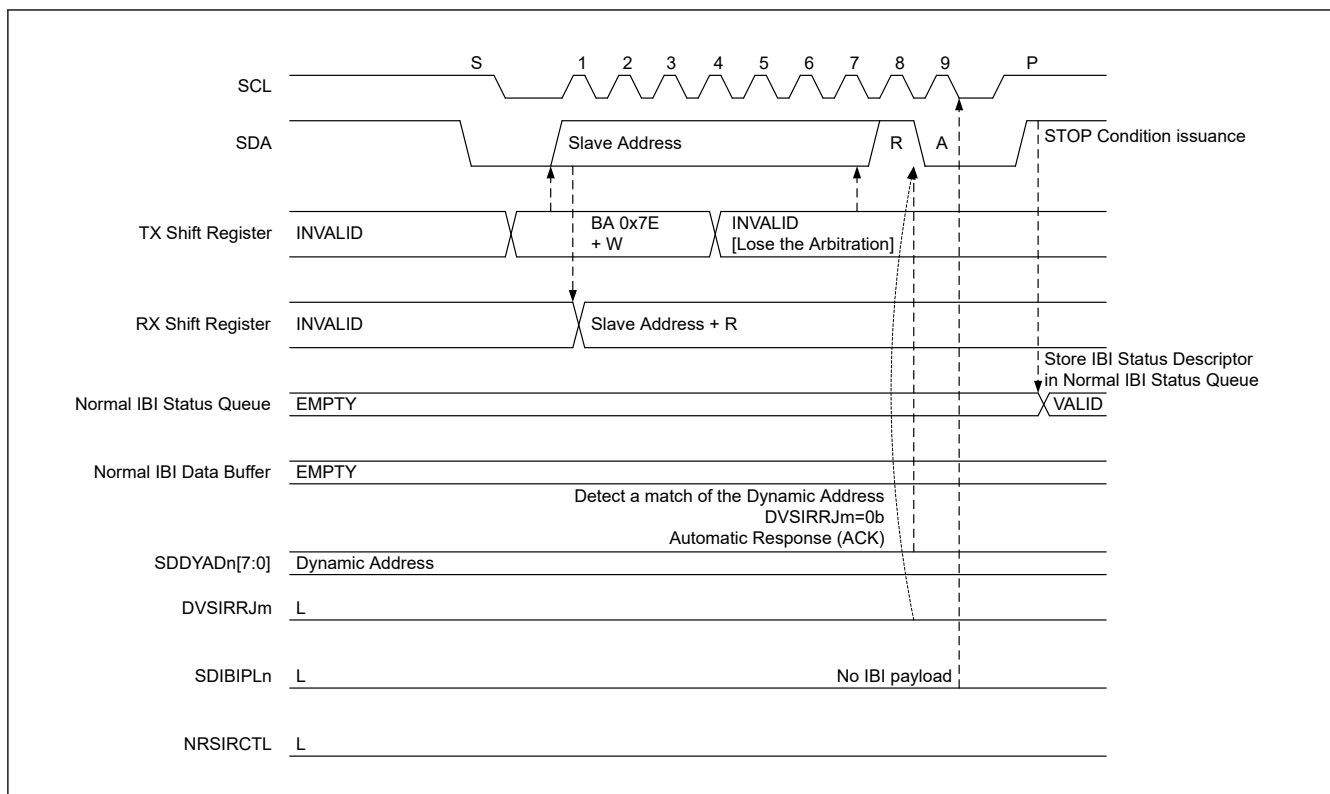


Figure 28.78 Slave interrupt request : ACK and DVIBIPL = 0

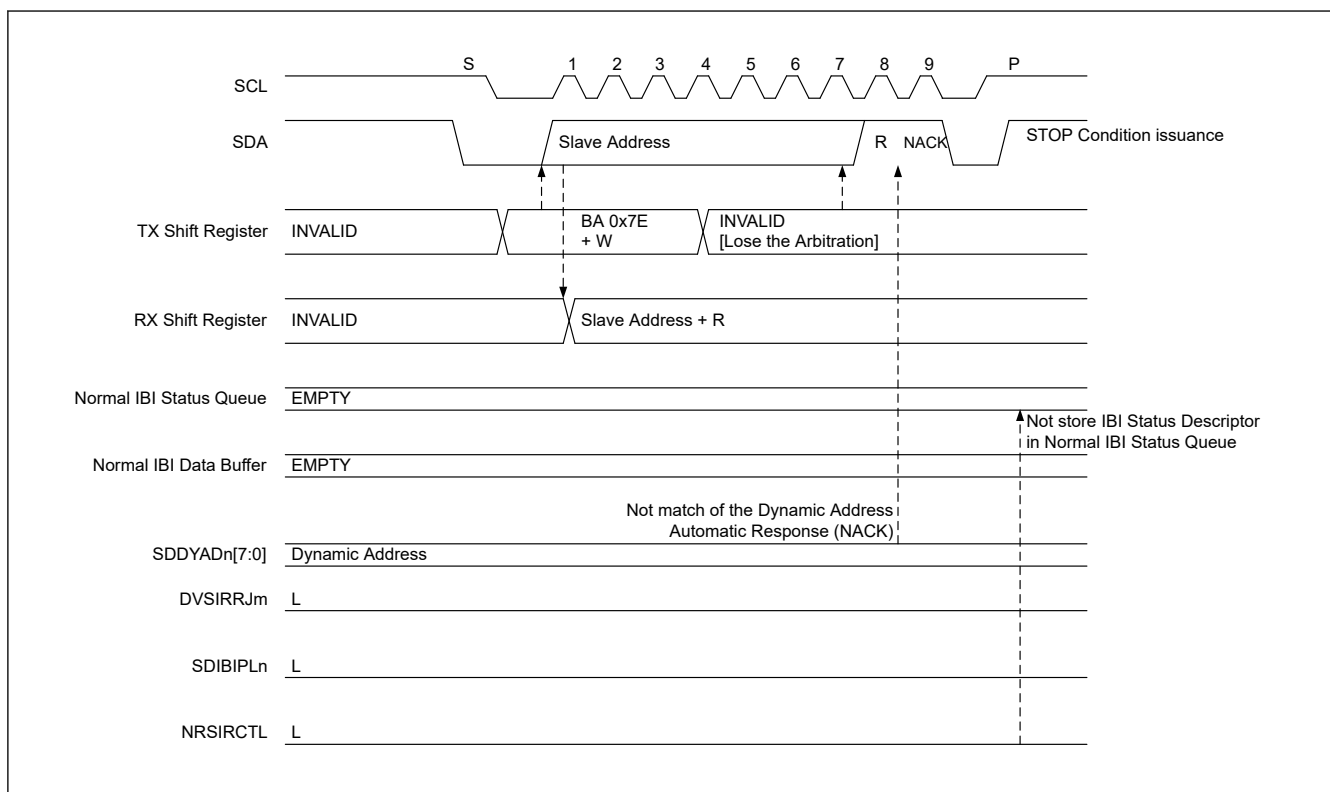


Figure 28.79 Slave interrupt request : NACK (not match the SDDYAD[7:0] of DAT) and NRSIRCTL = 0

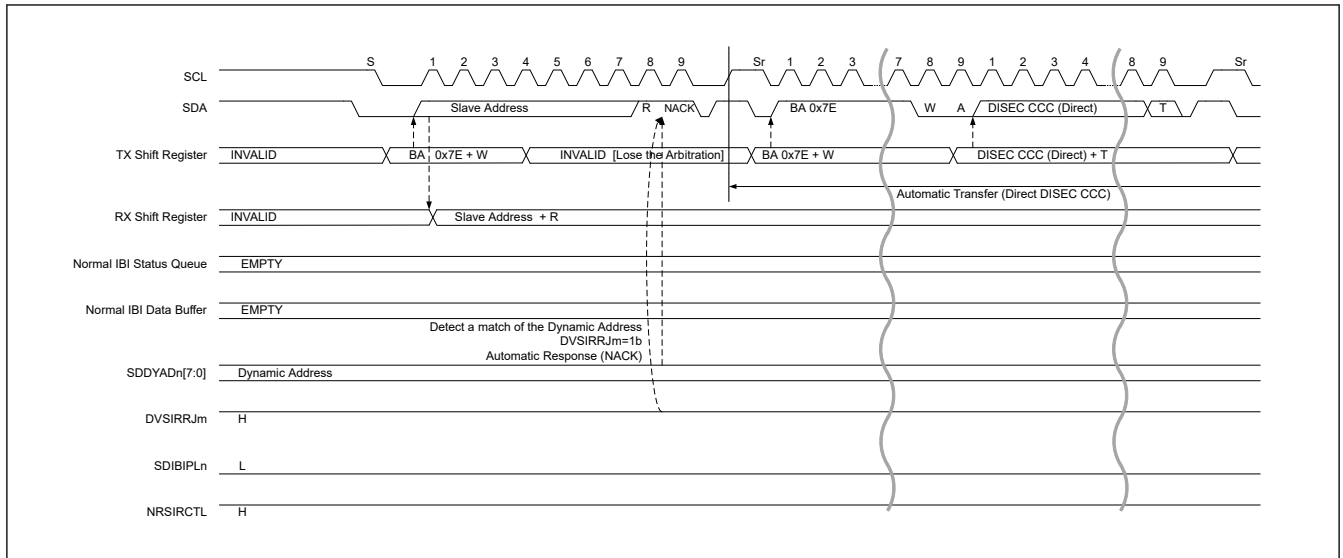


Figure 28.80 Slave interrupt request : NACK (DVSIRRJ = 1) and NRSIRCTL = 1 (1/2)

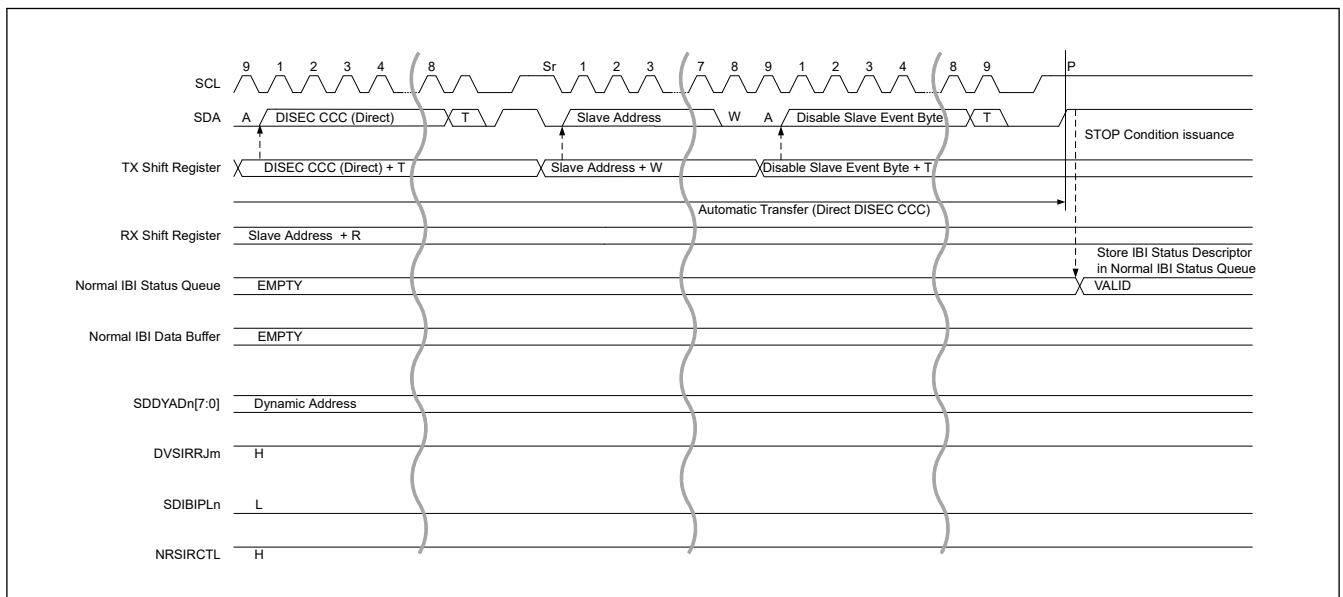


Figure 28.81 Slave interrupt request : NACK (DVSIRRJ = 1) and NRSIRCTL = 1 (2/2)

(2) Mastership request

1. Detect Slave Address with RnW bit low in Address Header.
2. Compare the detected Slave Address with the DVDYAD[7:0] in each DAT (DATBAS register).
3. When it does not match DAT.DVDYAD[7:0]:
Responds NACK, then issues the STOP condition.
When it matches the DAT.DVDYAD[7:0] bits and Device Role[1:0] in RBCR (MSDCTm) is other than I3C Master (01):
Responds NACK, then issues the STOP condition.
When it matches the DAT.DVDYAD[7:0] bits and Device Role[1:0] in RBCR (MSDCTm) is I3C Master (01):
 - When DAT.DVMRRJ = 1
It operates in the following order.
 - (a) Responds NACK.
 - (b) Issued Repeated START condition and automatically issues Direct DISEC CCC to the detected Slave.
 - (c) Issues the STOP condition.

- When $\text{DAT.DVMRRJ} = 0$
Responds ACK, then issues STOP condition.
4. After issues of STOP condition,
NACK response:
- If $\text{IBINCTL.NMRCTL} = 0$, the IBI Status Descriptor is not stored into the IBI Status Queue.
 - If $\text{IBINCTL.NMRCTL} = 1$, the IBI Status Descriptor is stored into the IBI Status Queue.

ACK response:

Stores the IBI Status Descriptor into the IBI Status Queue.

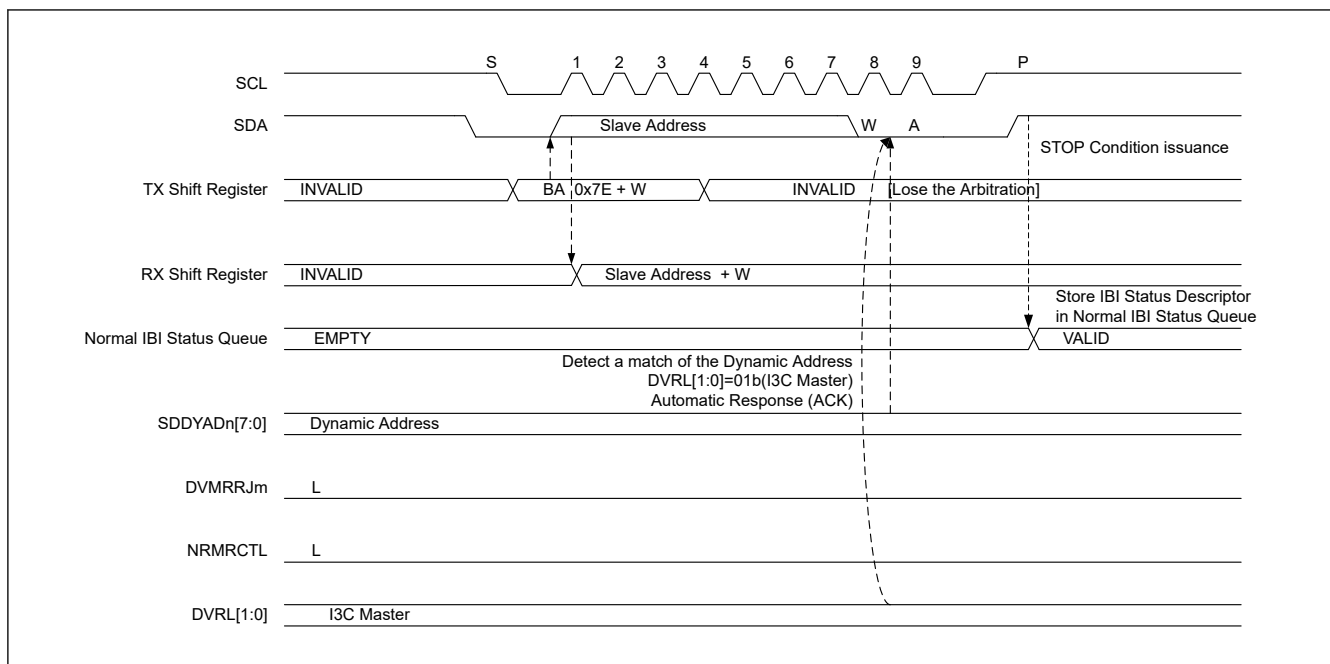


Figure 28.82 Mastership request : ACK

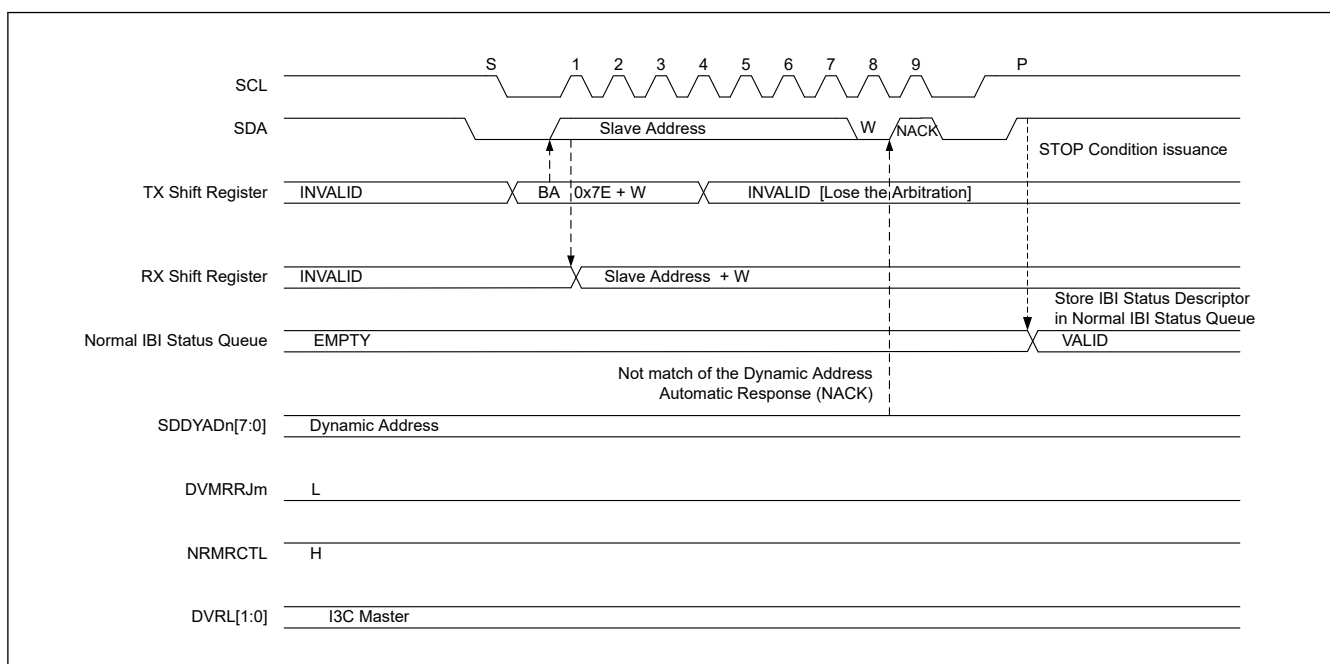


Figure 28.83 Mastership request : NACK (not match the DVDYAD[7:0] of DAT) and NMRCTL = 1

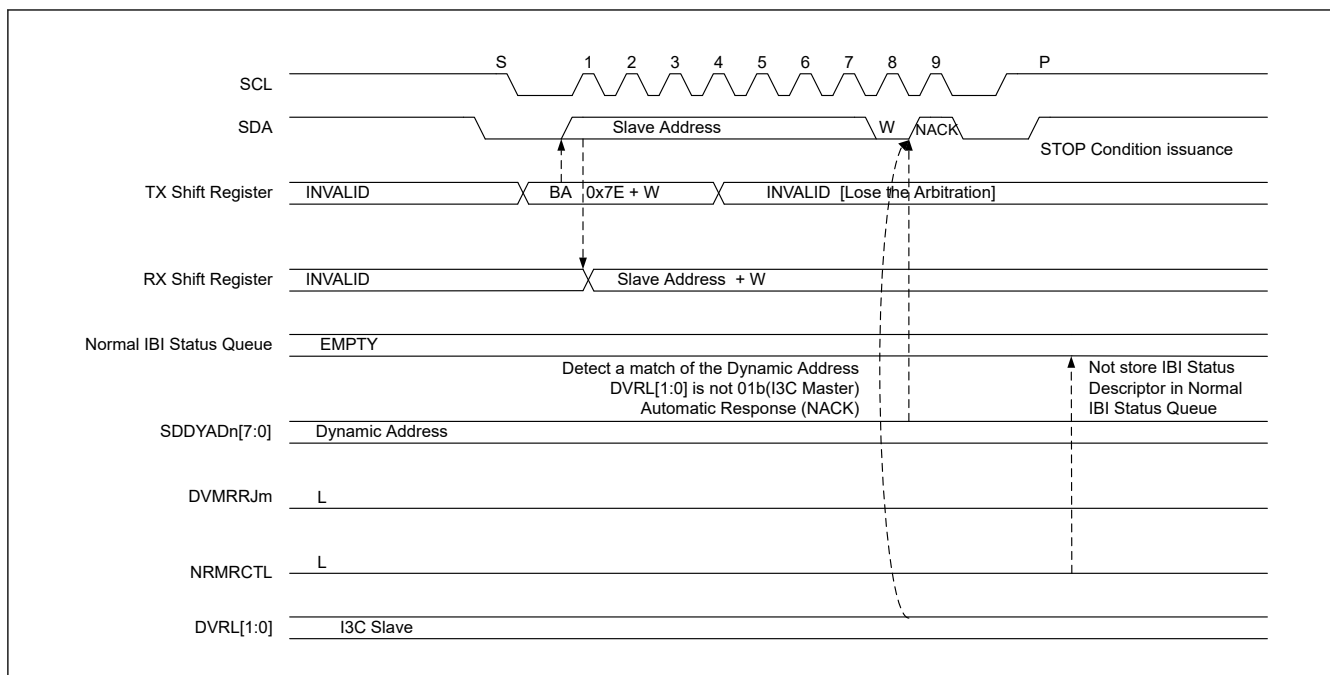


Figure 28.84 Mastership request : NACK (Device Role[1:0] is not 01 (I3C master)) and NRMRCTL = 0

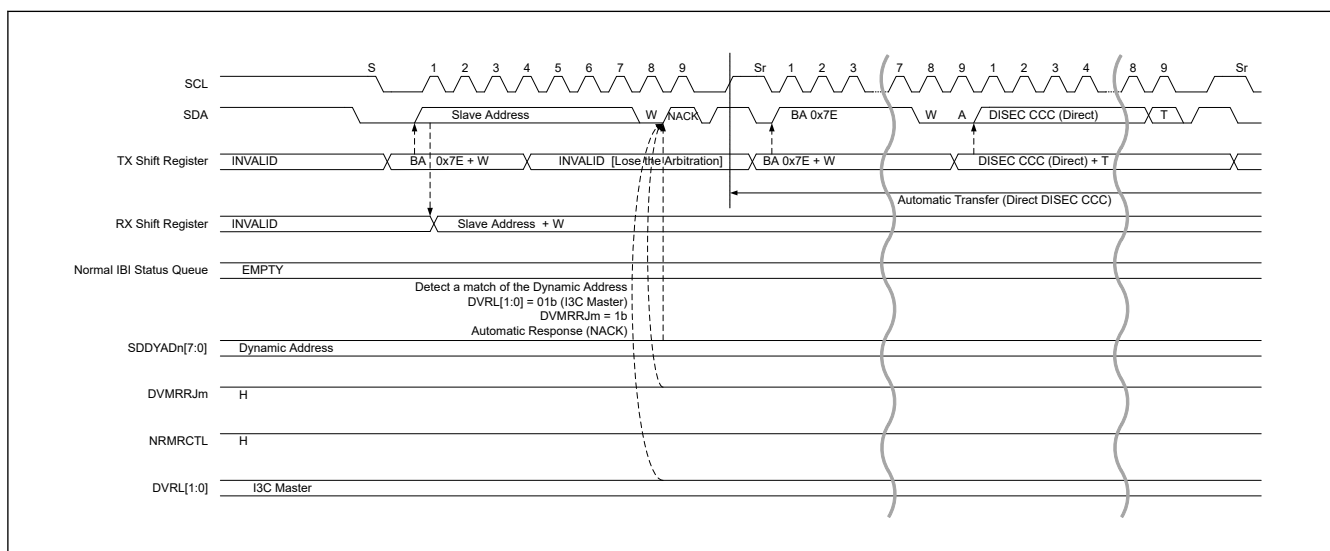


Figure 28.85 Mastership request : NACK (DVMRRJ = 1) and NRMRCTL = 1 (1/2)

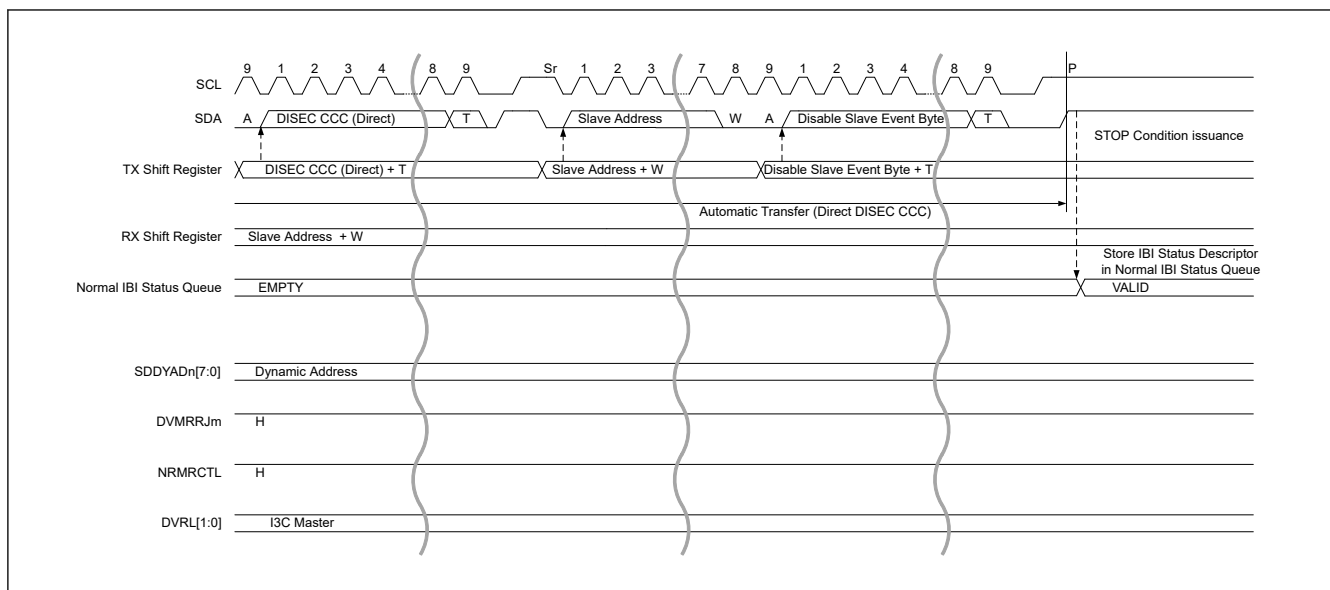


Figure 28.86 Mastership request : NACK (DVMRRJ = 1) and NRMRCTL = 1 (2/2)

(3) Hot-Join event

1. Detect the Hot-Join Address (0x02) with RnW bit low in the Address Header.
2. When BCTL.HJACKCTL = 1,
It operates in the following order.
 - (a) Responds NACK.
 - (b) Issues Repeated START condition and automatically issues Broadcast DISEC CCC.
 - (c) Issues the STOP condition.

When BCTL.HJACKCTL = 0,
Responds ACK, then issues STOP condition.

3. After issues of STOP condition,
NACK response:

- If IBINCTL.NRHJCTL = 0, the IBI Status Descriptor is not stored into the IBI Status Queue.
- If IBINCTL.NRHJCTL = 1, store the IBI Status Descriptor into the IBI Status Queue.

ACK response:

Stores the IBI Status Descriptor into the IBI Status Queue.

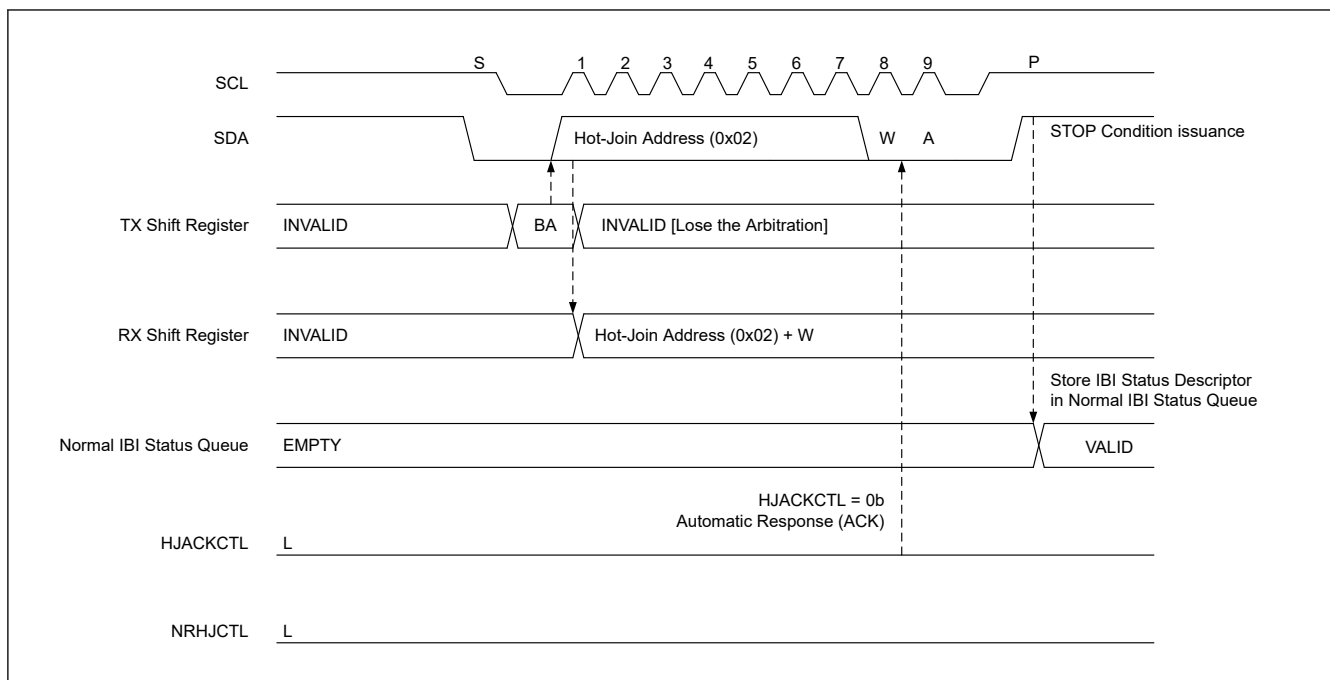


Figure 28.87 Hot-Join event : ACK

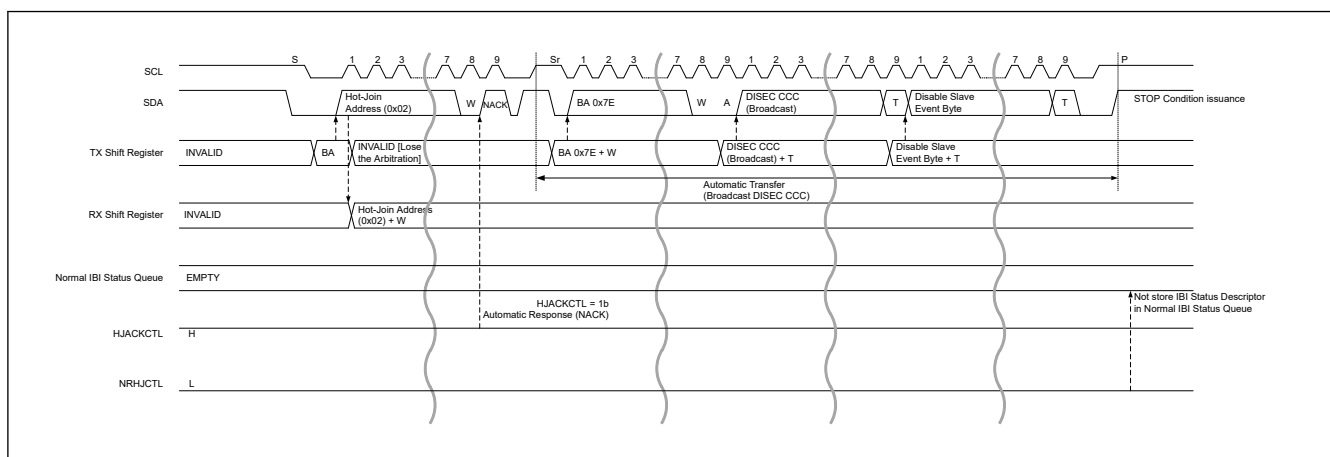


Figure 28.88 Hot-Join event : NACK (HJACKCTL = 1) and NRHJCTL = 0

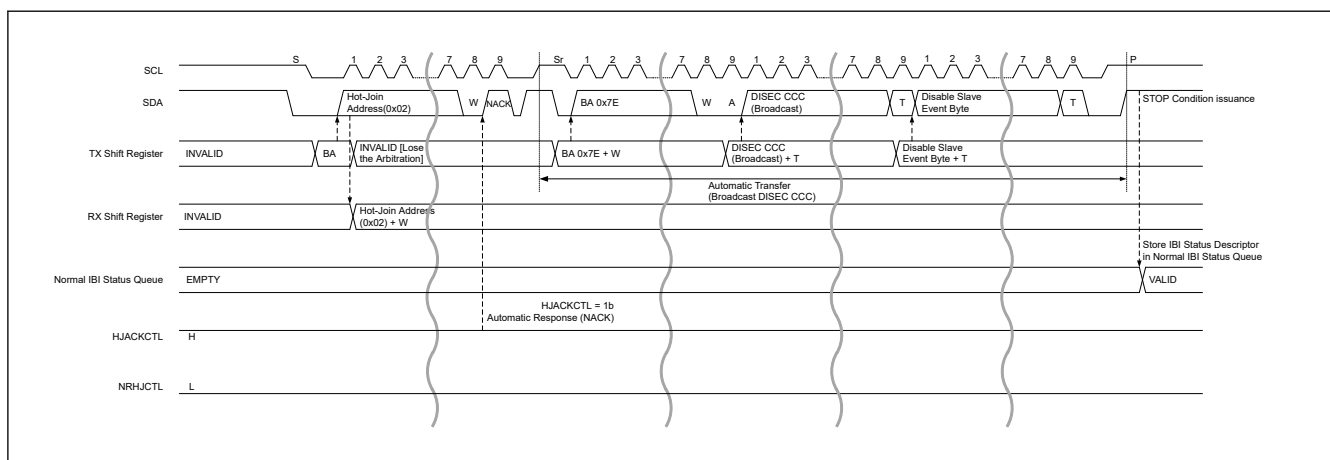


Figure 28.89 Hot-Join event : NACK (HJACKCTL = 1) and NRHJCTL = 1

28.3.2.3.9 Port Control

(1) Extra SCL clock cycle output function

In master mode, the I3C module has a facility for the output of extra SCL clock cycles to release the SDAn line of the slave device from being held at the low level due to the master being out of synchronization with the slave device.

This function is mainly used in master mode to release the SDAn line of the slave device from the state of being fixed to the low level by including extra cycles of SCL output from I3C with single cycles of the SCL clock as the unit for a bus error where I3C cannot issue a Repeated START condition or a STOP condition because the slave device is holding the SDAn line at the low level. Do not use this facility in normal situations. Using it when communications are proceeding correctly leads to malfunctions.

When the OUTCTL.EXCYC bit is set to 1, an additional clock pulse at the frequency set by the REFCKCTL.IREFCKS[2:0] bits and the STDBR.SBRHO[7:0] and STDBR.SBRLO[7:0] registers is output from the SCLn pin. After output of this clock pulse, the EXCYC bit automatically becomes 0. After confirming that the EXCYC bit is 0, wait for the setup time of the Repeated START condition or STOP condition, and then confirm the detection of the Repeated START condition or STOP condition. If the Repeated START condition or STOP condition is not detected, consecutive additional clock pulses can be output by writing 1 to the EXCYC bit again.

When the I3C module is in master mode and the slave device is holding the SDAn line at the low level because synchronization with the slave device has been lost such as due to the effects of noise, the output of a Repeated START condition or a STOP condition is not possible. The facility for output of an extra cycle of the SCL clock can be used to output extra cycles of SCL one by one to make the slave device release the SDAn line from being held at the low level, thus recovering the bus from an unusable state. Release of the SDAn line by the slave device can be monitored by reading the SDILV bit in PRSTDBG. After the SDAn line has been released by the slave device, the preset of a Repeated START condition or a STOP condition is issued.

Use this function with the BFCTL.MALE bit set to 0 (master arbitration-lost detection is disabled).

[Output conditions for using the EXCYC bit in OUTCTL]

- When the bus is free (BFREF flag in BCST = 1) or in master mode (CRMS bit = 1 in PRSST and BFREF flag = 0 in BCST)
- When the communication device does not hold the SCLn line low

Figure 28.90 shows the operation timing of the extra SCL clock cycle output function (EXCYC bit).

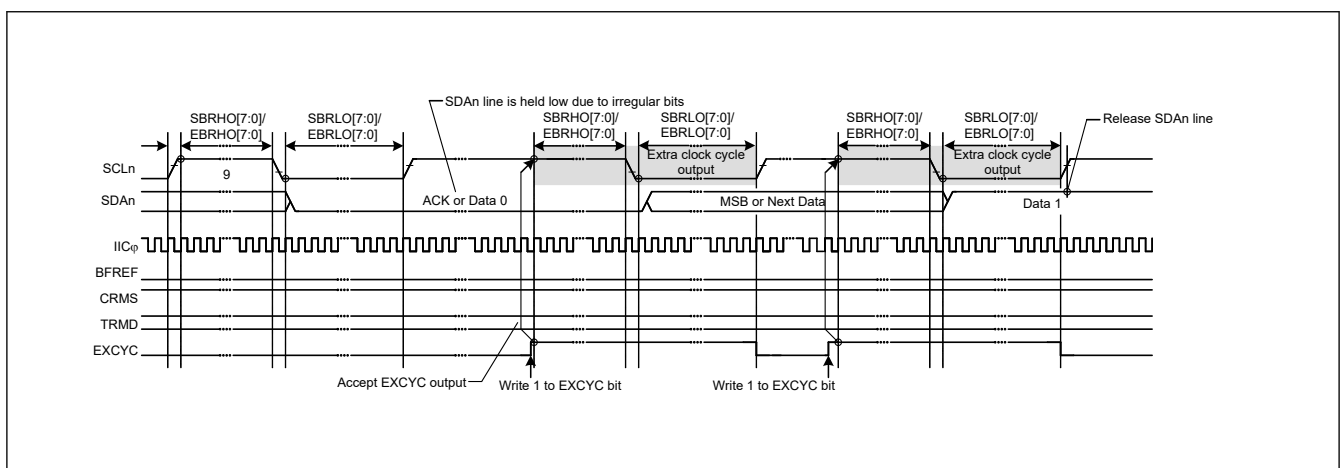


Figure 28.90 Extra SCL clock cycle output function (EXCYC bit)

28.3.2.3.10 SMBus Operation [I²C Mode]

I3C is available for data communication conforming to the SMBus (Version 2.0). To perform SMBus communication, set the BFCTL.SMBS bit to 1. To use the transfer rate within a range of 10 kbps to 100 kbps of the SMBus specification, set the REFCKCTL.IREFCKS[2:0] bits, the STDBR.SBRHO[7:0] bits, and the STDBR.SBRLO[7:0] bits. In addition, determine the values of the OUTCTL.SDODCS bit and the OUTCTL.SDOD[2:0] bits to meet the data hold time specification

of 300 ns or more. If I3C is used only as an I²C slave device, the transfer rate setting is not necessary, whereas the STDBR.SBRLO[7:0] bits needs to be set to a value longer than the data setup time (250 ns).

For the SMBus device default address (1100 001), use one of the slave device address table basic registers 0 (SDATBASn.SDSTAD[6:0] bits (n = 0 to 2), and set the corresponding SDATBASn.SDADLS bit (7-bit/10-bit address format select) (n = 0 to 2) to 0 (7-bit address format).

When transmitting the UDID (Unique Device Identifier), set the BFCTL.SALE bit to 1 to enable the slave arbitration-lost detection function.

(1) SMBus timeout measurement

(a) Measuring timeout of slave device

The following period (timeout interval: $T_{\text{LOW:SEXT}}$) must be measured for slave devices in SMBus communication.

- From START condition to STOP condition

To measure timeout for slave devices, measure the period from START condition detection to STOP condition detection with the GPT timer using a START condition detection interrupt (I3Cn_EEI) and STOP condition detection interrupt (I3Cn_EEI) of I3C. The measured timeout period must be within the total clock low-level period [slave device] $T_{\text{LOW:SEXT}}$: 25 ms (max.) of the SMBus specification.

If the time measured with the GPT exceeds the clock low-level detection timeout T_{TIMEOUT} : 25 ms (min.) of the SMBus specification, the slave device must release the bus by writing 1 to the RSTCTL.INTLRST bit to issue an internal reset of I3C. When an internal reset is issued, I3C stops driving the bus for the SCLn pin and SDAn pin and make the SCLn/SDAn pin outputs high-impedance, which releases the bus.

(b) Measuring timeout of master device

The following periods (timeout interval: $T_{\text{LOW:MEXT}}$) must be measured for master devices in SMBus communication.

- From START condition to acknowledge bit
- Between acknowledge bits
- From acknowledge bit to STOP condition

To measure timeout for master devices, measure these periods with the GPT timer using a START condition detection interrupt (I3Cn_EEI), STOP condition detection interrupt (I3Cn_EEI), and transmit end interrupt (I3Cn_TEND) or receive data buffer full interrupt (I3Cn_RX) of I3C. The measured timeout period must be within the total clock low-level extended period (master device) $T_{\text{LOW:MEXT}}$: 10 ms (max.) of the SMBus specification, and the total of all $T_{\text{LOW:MEXT}}$ from START condition to STOP condition must be within $T_{\text{LOW:SEXT}}$: 25 ms (max.).

For the ACK receive timing (rising edge of the ninth SCL clock cycle), monitor the BST.TENDF flag in master transmit mode (master transmitter) and the NTST.RDBFF0 flag in master receive mode (master receiver). For this reason, perform bitwise transmit operation in master transmit mode, and hold the SCSTRCTL.ACKTWE bit 0 until the byte just before reception of the final byte in master receive mode. While the ACKTWE bit = 0, the RDBFF0 flag is set to 1 at the rising edge of the ninth SCL clock cycle.

If the period measured with the GPT exceeds the total clock low-level extended period (master device) $T_{\text{LOW:MEXT}}$: 10 ms (max.) of the SMBus specification or the total of measured periods exceeds the clock low-level detection timeout T_{TIMEOUT} : 25 ms (min.) of the SMBus specification, the master device must stop the transaction by issuing a STOP condition. In master transmit mode, immediately stop the transmit operation (writing data to NTDTBP0).

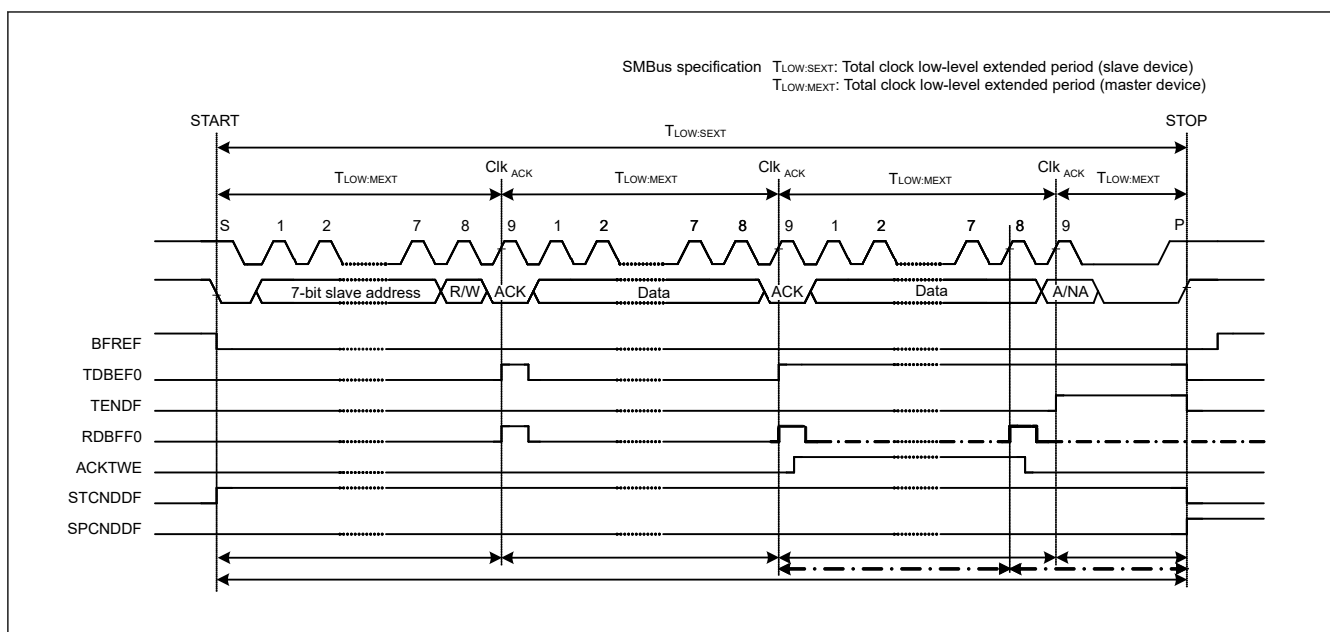


Figure 28.91 SMBus timeout measurement

(2) Packet error code (PEC)

This MCU incorporates a CRC calculator. The CRC calculator enables transmission of a packet error code (PEC) or checking the received data of the SMBus in data communication of I3C. For the CRC generating polynomials of the CRC calculator, see [section 33, Cyclic Redundancy Check \(CRC\)](#).

The PEC data in master transmit mode can be generated by writing all transmit data to the CRC data input register (CRCDIR) in the CRC calculator.

The PEC data in master receive mode can be checked by writing all receive data to CRCDIR in the CRC calculator and comparing the obtained value in the CRC data output register (CRCDOR) with the received PEC data.

To send ACK or NACK according to the match or mismatch result when the final byte is received as a result of the PEC code check, set the SCSTRCTL.ACKTWE bit to 1 before the rising edge of the eighth SCL clock cycle during reception of the final byte, and hold the SCLn line low at the falling edge of the eighth clock cycle.

(3) SMBus host notification protocol (notify ARP master command)

In communications over an SMBus, a slave device can temporarily act as a master device to notify the SMBus host (or ARP master) of its own slave address or to request its own slave address from the SMBus host.

For a product of this MCU to operate as an SMBus host (or ARP master), the host address (0001 000) sent from the slave device must be detected as a slave address, so I3C has a function for detecting the host address. To detect the host address as a slave address, set the BFCTL.SMBS bit and the SVCTL.HOAE bit to 1. Operation after the host address has been detected is the same as normal slave operation.

28.3.2.3.11 Common Command Codes (CCC) [I3C Mode]

For the common command code (CCC), refer to 5.1.9 Common Command Codes (CCC) in MIPI I3C Specification v1.0. This I3C is based on Table 15 I3C Common Command Codes in 5.1.9.3 Common Command Definitions of MIPI I3C Specification v1.0.

The MIPI Reserved area and Vendor Extension area of Command Code are described below.

I3C Master mode:

When sending CCCs in the MIPI Reserved area and Vendor Extension area from the I3C Master, only Broadcast/Direct SET CCCs using the Immediate Transfer Command can be sent. Sending Direct GET CCC is not supported.

I3C Slave mode:

Only Broadcast/Direct SET CCC can be received for CCC in MIPI Reserved area and Vendor Extension area. Receiving Direct GET CCC is not supported.

28.3.2.4 Error Detection

28.3.2.4.1 SDR Error Detection and Recovery Methods for I3C Slave Devices [I3C Mode]

The seven error types summarized in [Table 28.13](#) are supported for all I3C slave devices. Each error type is further explained below the table.

Table 28.13 SDR slave error types

Error type	Description	Error detection method	Error recovery method
S0	Broadcast address/W (= 0x7E/W) or Dynamic address/RW	Detect any of the following: 0x3E / W 0x5E / W 0x6E / W 0x76 / W 0x7A / W 0x7C / W 0x7F / W 0x7E / R	Enable HDR EXIT Detector and ignore all other patterns
S1	CCC code	Parity check, using T-Bit	Enable HDR EXIT detector and neglect other patterns
S2	Write data	Parity check, using T-Bit	Enable STOP detector and neglect other patterns
S3	Assigned address during Dynamic address arbitration	Parity check, using PAR Bit	Generate NACK (after PAR), then wait for another Repeated START and 7E/R to re-transmit the Provisional ID
S4	0x7E/R after Sr during Dynamic address arbitration	Detect any value other than 0x7E/R after Sr during Dynamic Address Arbitration	Generate NACK (after 0x7E/R), then enable STOP Detector and ignore all other patterns
S5	Transaction after detecting CCC	Detect illegally formatted CCC	Generate NACK (after Slave Address), then enable STOP Detector and ignore all other patterns
S6 (optional)	Monitoring error	Slave detects (through monitoring) that transmitted Data differs from what it intended to transmit (Does not apply during Dynamic address arbitration)	Stop the transmission, then enable STOP Detector and ignore all other patterns

28.3.2.4.2 SDR Error Detection and Recovery Methods for I3C Master Devices [I3C Mode]

The two error types summarized in [Table 28.14](#) are supported for all I3C master devices. Each error type is further explained below the table.

Table 28.14 SDR master error types

Error type	Description	Error detection method	Error recovery method
M0	Transaction after sending CCC	Detect illegally formatted CCC	Stop the transmission, then send STOP and retry the transmission.
M1 (optional)	Monitoring error	Master detects (through monitoring) transmitted data different from what it intended to transmit (Does not apply during Dynamic address arbitration)	Stop the transmission, then send STOP and retry the transmission.
M2	No response to Broadcast address (0x7E)	Master detects NACK after Broadcast address (0x7E) transmission	On detection of NACK, master transmits HDR exit pattern followed by STOP

28.3.2.4.3 Timeout Error Detection

I3C includes a timeout function for detecting when the SCLn line has been stuck longer than the predetermined time. I3C can detect an abnormal bus state by monitoring that the SCLn line is stuck low or high for a predetermined time.

The timeout function monitors the SCLn line state and counts the low-level period or high-level period using the internal counter. The timeout function resets the internal counter each time the SCLn line changes (rising or falling), but continues to count unless the SCLn line changes. If the internal counter overflows due to no SCLn line change, I3C can detect the timeout and report the bus hung state.

This timeout function is enabled when $BSTE.TODE = 1$. It detects a hung state that the SCLn line is stuck low or high during the following conditions: (When $TMOCTL.TOMDS[1:0] = 00b$)

- The bus is busy ($BCST.BFREF = 0$) in master mode ($PRST.CRMS = 1$).
- I3C's own slave address is detected ($SVST$ register is not $0x0000$) and the bus is busy ($BCST.BFREF = 0$) in slave mode ($PRST.CRMS = 0$).
- The bus is free ($BCST.BFREF = 1$) while generation of a START condition is requested ($CNDCTL.STCND = 1$).

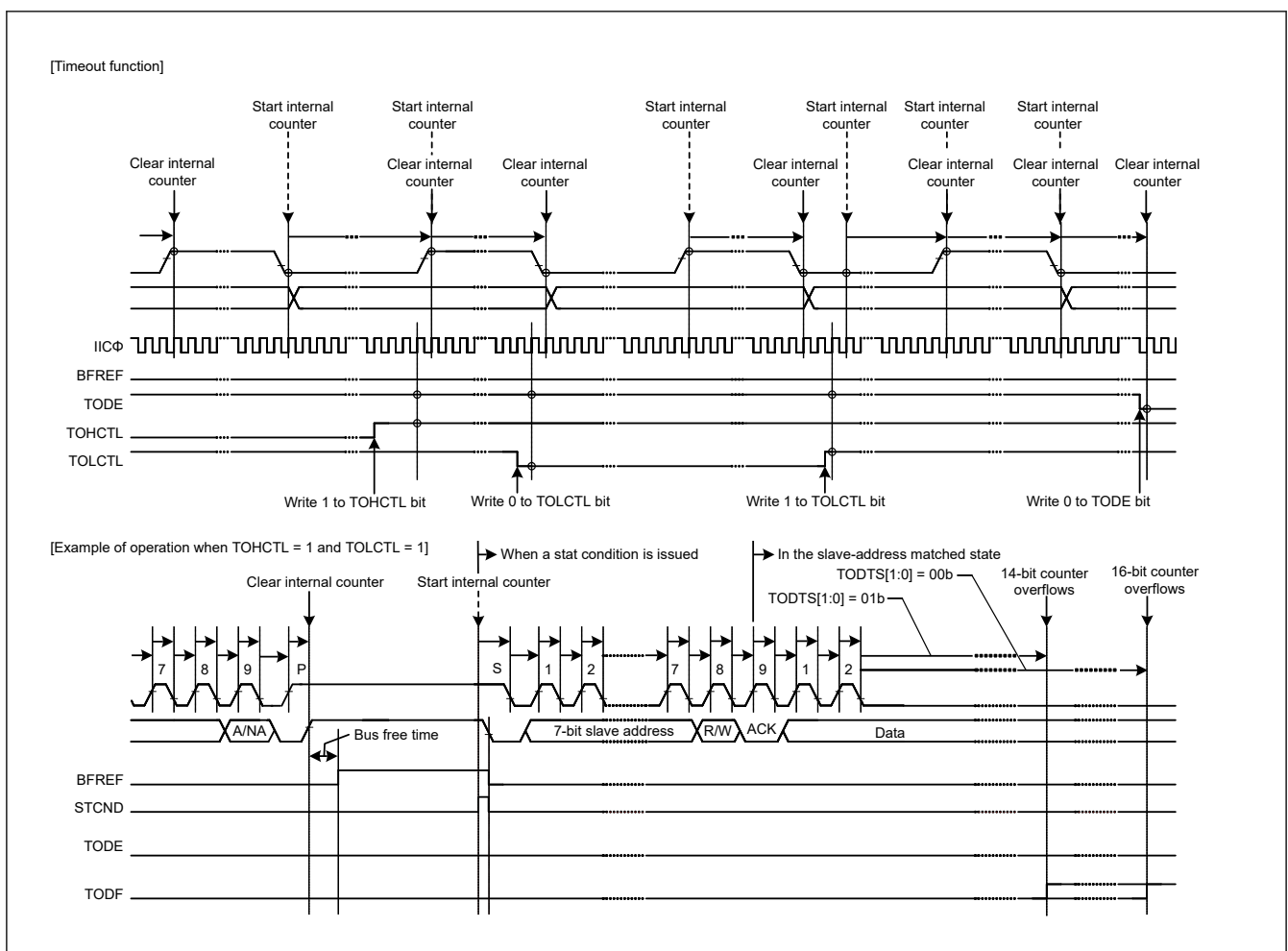


Figure 28.92 Timeout error detection (TODE, TODTS[1:0], TOHCTL, and TOLCTL bits)

28.3.2.4.4 Resume Operation [I3C Mode]

I3C enters the Halt state as a result of any type of error occurring in a transfer.

The error type is indicated by the field `ERR_STATUS` in Response Descriptor or Receive Status Descriptor. After I3C has entered the Halt state, the user must write the value 1 to the RSM bit to resume operation. I3C must auto-clear the RSM bit once it has initiated the next Command transfer or detected the START condition.

28.3.2.4.5 Abort Operation [I3C Mode]

When the BCTL.ABT bit is set to 1, I3C relinquishes control of the bus before completing the currently issued transfer. In response to an abort request, I3C issues the STOP condition on the bus after the complete data byte is transferred or received. After I3C has aborted, the user must clear the BCTL.ABT bit to allow operation on the bus.

Note: For read transaction, when BCTL.ABT is set to 1, that receive data is stored in the receive data buffer.

Abbreviations

Pa: Parity

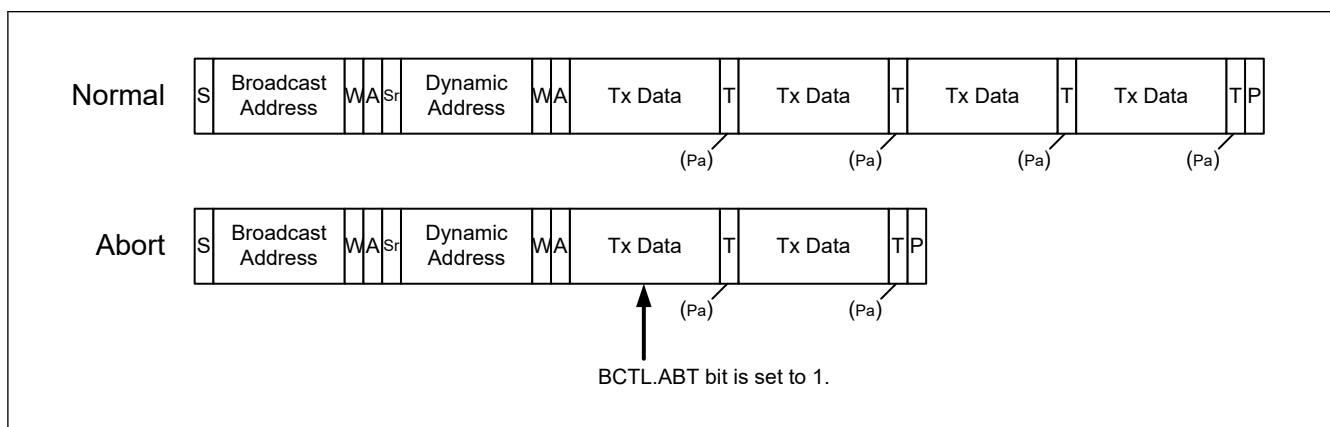


Figure 28.93 Abort operation of SDR write transfer

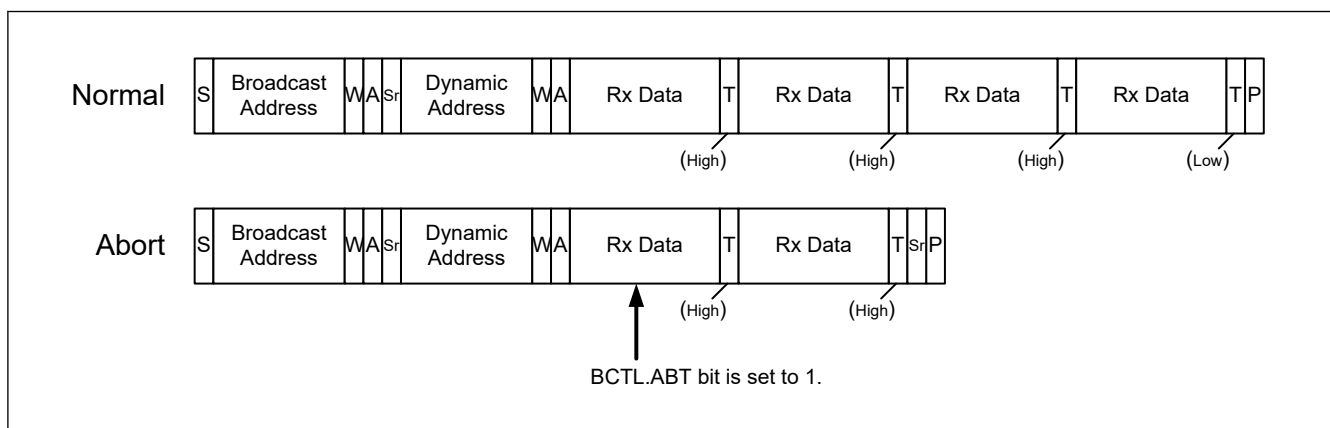


Figure 28.94 Abort operation of SDR read transfer

28.3.2.4.6 Error Recovery Operation [I3C Mode]

When an error occurs, the INST.INEF, NTST.TEF, and NTST.TABTF flags are set to 1 according to the cause of the error, or the interrupts associated with each flag are asserted (when detection and interrupts are enabled.)

There is a possibility of communication error or internal module error.

Note: Apply the following error recovery flow.

If an error occurs, I3C is suspended. (BCTL.RSM becomes 1.) After I3C is suspended, the application must write the value 1 to the BCTL.RSM bit to resume I3C operation and recover from the suspended state. [Figure 28.95](#) and [Figure 28.96](#) show the error recovery flow.

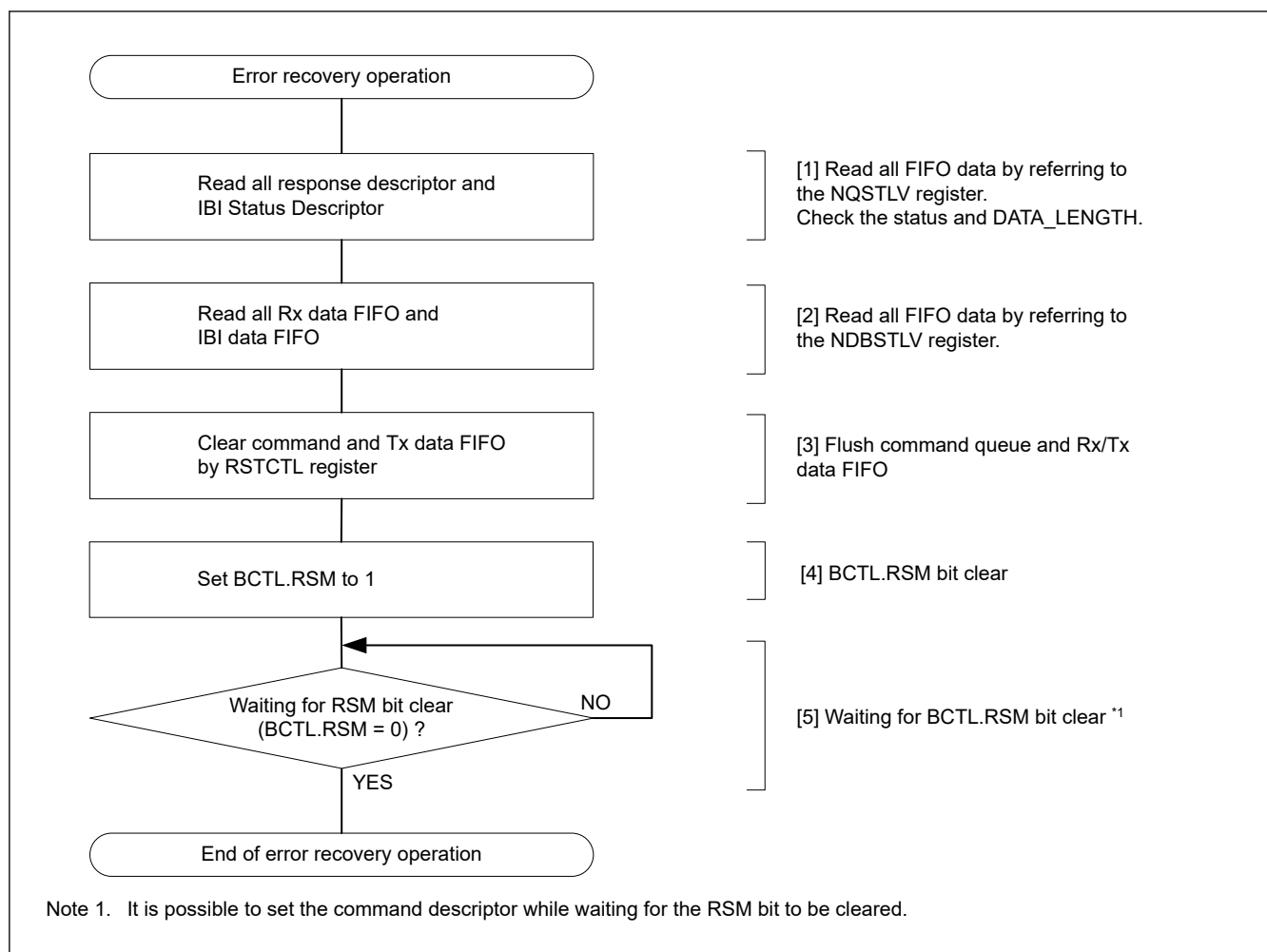


Figure 28.95 Example flowchart of an error recovery operation for I3C master

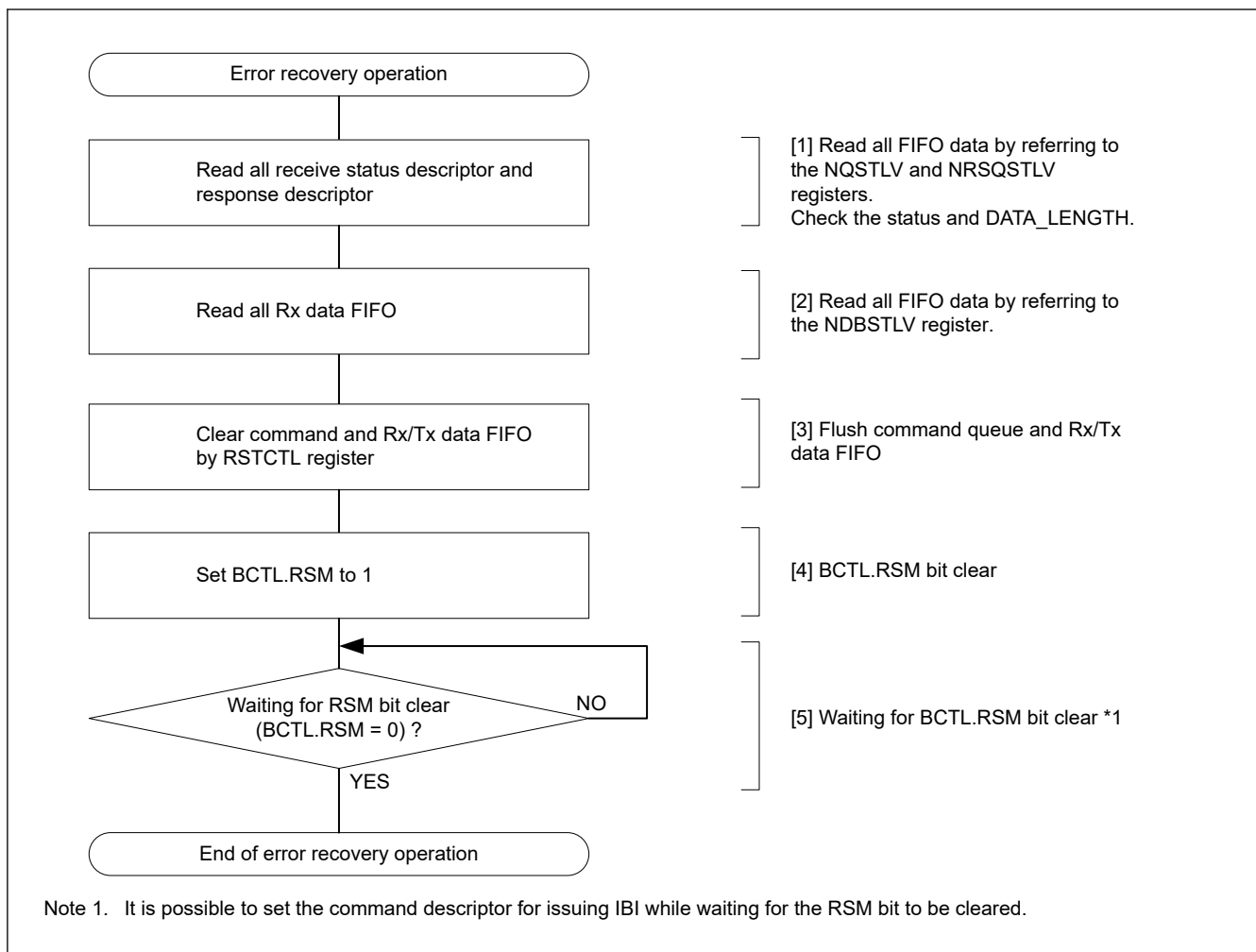


Figure 28.96 Example flowchart of an error recovery operation for I3C slave

28.3.2.5 Other

28.3.2.5.1 SCL Synchronization Circuit [I²C Mode]

This function is enabled while the PRTS.PRTMD bit is set to 1.

In generation of the SCL clock, I3C starts counting out the value for width at high level specified in STDBR.SBRHO[7:0] when it detects a rising edge on the SCLn line and drives the SCLn line low once counting of the width at high level is complete.

When I3C detects the falling edge of the SCLn line, it starts counting out the width at the low-level period specified in STDBR.SBRLO[7:0], and then stops driving the SCLn line (releases the line) once counting of the width at low level is complete. The SCL clock is then generated.

If multiple master devices are connected to the I²C bus, a collision of SCL signals may arise due to contention with another master device. In such cases, the master devices have to synchronize their SCL signals. Since this synchronization of SCL signals must be bit by bit, I3C is equipped with a facility (the SCL synchronization circuit) to obtain bit-by-bit synchronization of the SCL clock signals by monitoring the SCLn line while in master mode.

When I3C has detected a rising edge on the SCLn line and then started counting out the width at the high level specified in STDBR.SBRHO[7:0], and the level on the SCLn line falls because an SCL signal is being generated by another master device, I3C stops counting when it detects the falling edge, drives the level on the SCLn line low, and starts counting out the width at low level specified in STDBR.SBRLO[7:0]. When I3C finishes counting out the width at low level, it stops driving the SCLn line to the low level (releases the line). At this time, if the width at low level of the SCL clock signal from the other master device is longer than the width at low level set in this module, the width at low level of the SCL signal is extended. Once the width at low level for the other master device has ended, the SCL signal rises because the SCLn line has been released. When I3C finishes outputting the low-level period of the SCL clock, the SCLn line is released and the

SCL clock rises. That is, in cases of contention of SCL signals from more than one master, the width at the high level of the SCL signal is synchronized with that of the clock having the narrower width, and the width at low level of the SCL signal is synchronized with that of the clock having the broader width. However, such synchronization of the SCL signal is only enabled when the SCSYNE bit in BFCTL is set to 1.

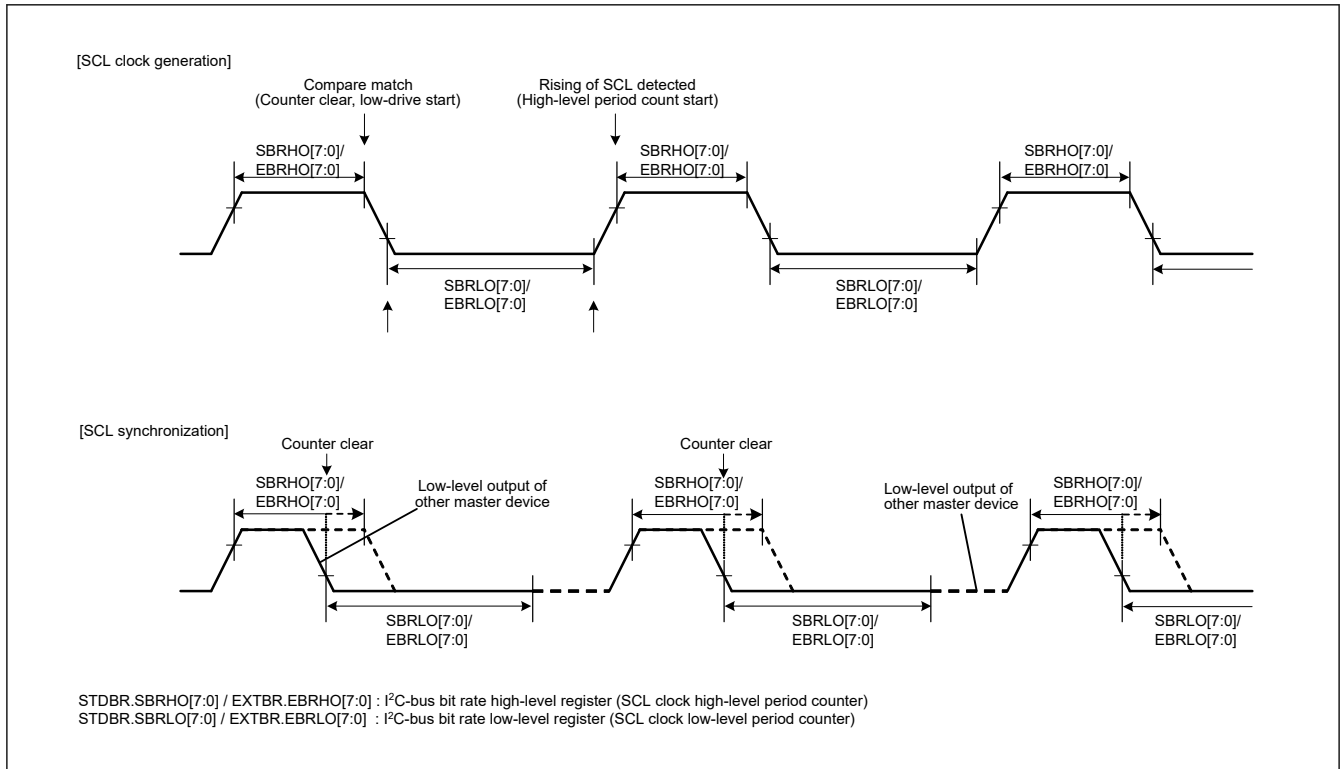


Figure 28.97 Generation and synchronization of the SCL signal

28.3.2.5.2 Facility for Delaying SDA Output [I²C Mode]

I3C module incorporates a facility for delaying output on the SDA line. The delay can be applied to all output (issuing of the START, Repeated START, and STOP conditions, data, and the ACK and NACK signals) on the SDA line.

With the SDA output delay facility, SDA output is delayed from detection of a falling edge of the SCL signal to ensure that the SDA signal is output within the interval over which the SCL clock is at the low level. Doing this leads to usage with the aim of preventing erroneous operation of communications devices, with the aim of satisfying the 300 ns (minimum) data-hold time requirement of the SMBus specification.

The output delay facility is enabled by setting the SDOD[2:0] bits in OUTCTL to any value other than 000b, and disabled by setting the same bits to 000b.

While the SDA output delay facility is enabled (while the SDOD[2:0] bits in OUTCTL are set to any value other than 000b), the SDODCS bit in OUTCTL selects the clock source for counting by the SDA output delay counter as the internal base clock (I3C ϕ) for I3C module or as a clock signal derived by dividing the frequency of the internal base clock by two (I3C ϕ /2). The counter counts the number of cycles set in the SDOD[2:0] bits in OUTCTL. After counting of the set number of cycles of delay is completed, the I3C module places the required output (START, Repeated START, or STOP condition, data, or an ACK or NACK signal) on the SDA line.

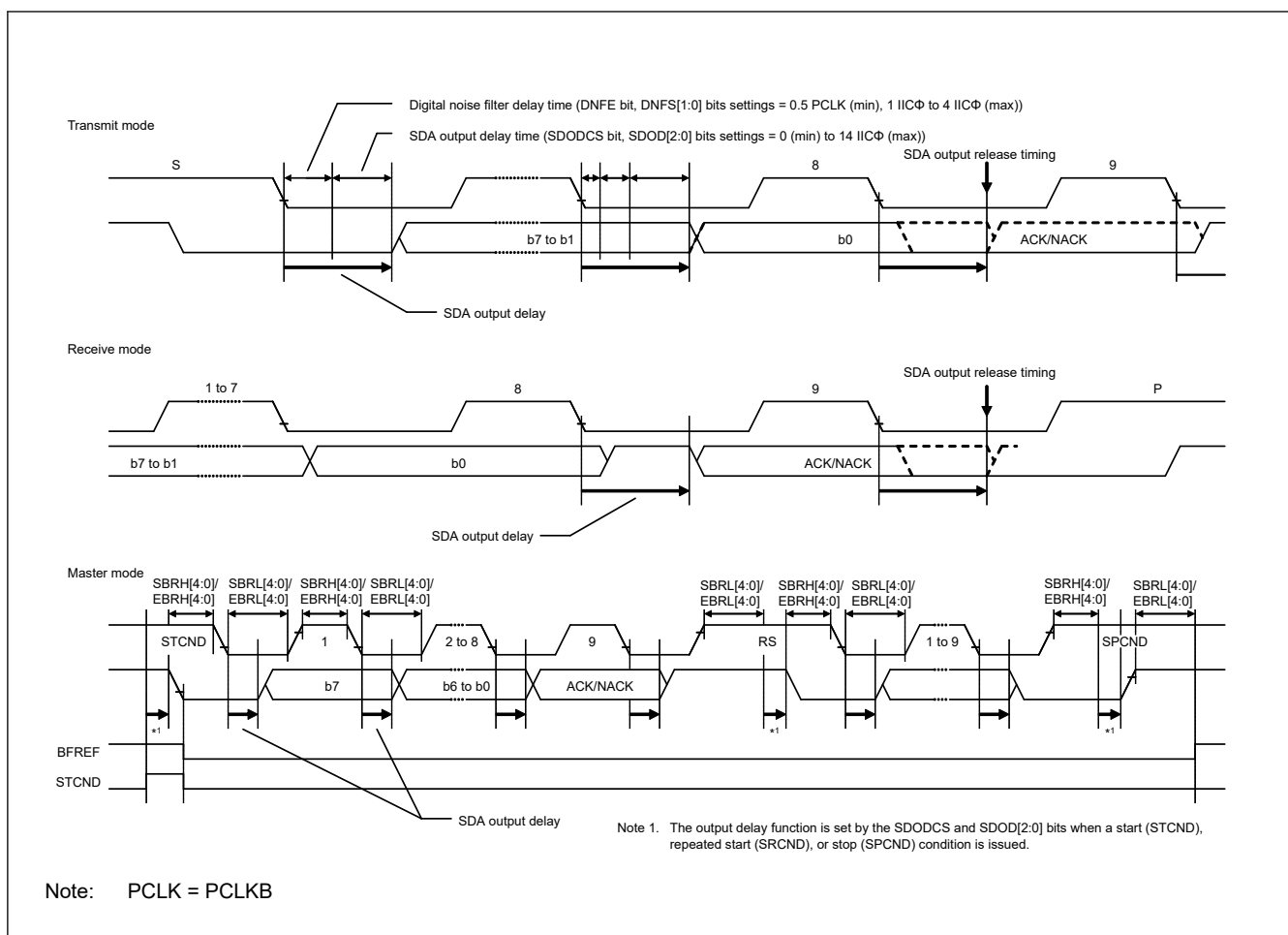


Figure 28.98 SDA output delay facility

28.3.2.5.3 Digital Noise-filter Circuits [I²C Mode]

The states of the SCLn and SDAn pins are conveyed to the internal circuitry through digital noise-filter circuits. [Figure 28.99](#) is a block diagram of the digital noise-filter circuit.

The on-chip digital noise-filter circuit of I3C consists of 16 flip-flop circuit stages connected in series and a match detection circuit. When HS mode is selected, only the first four flip-flop circuit stages are enabled.

The number of effective stages in the digital noise filter is selected by the INCTL.DNFS[3:0] bits. The selected number of effective stages determines the noise-filtering capability as a period from one to sixteen I3Cφ cycles.

The input signal to the SCLn pin (or SDAn pin) is sampled on the rising edges of the I3Cφ signal. When the input signal level matches the output level of the number of effective flip-flop circuit stages as selected by the INCTL.DNFS[3:0] bits, the signal level is conveyed to the subsequent stage. If the signal levels do not match, the previous value is retained.

If the ratio between the frequency of the internal operating clock (PCLKD) and the transfer rate is small (For example, data transfer at 400 kbps with PCLKD = 4 MHz), the characteristics of the digital noise filter may lead to the elimination of needed signals as noise.

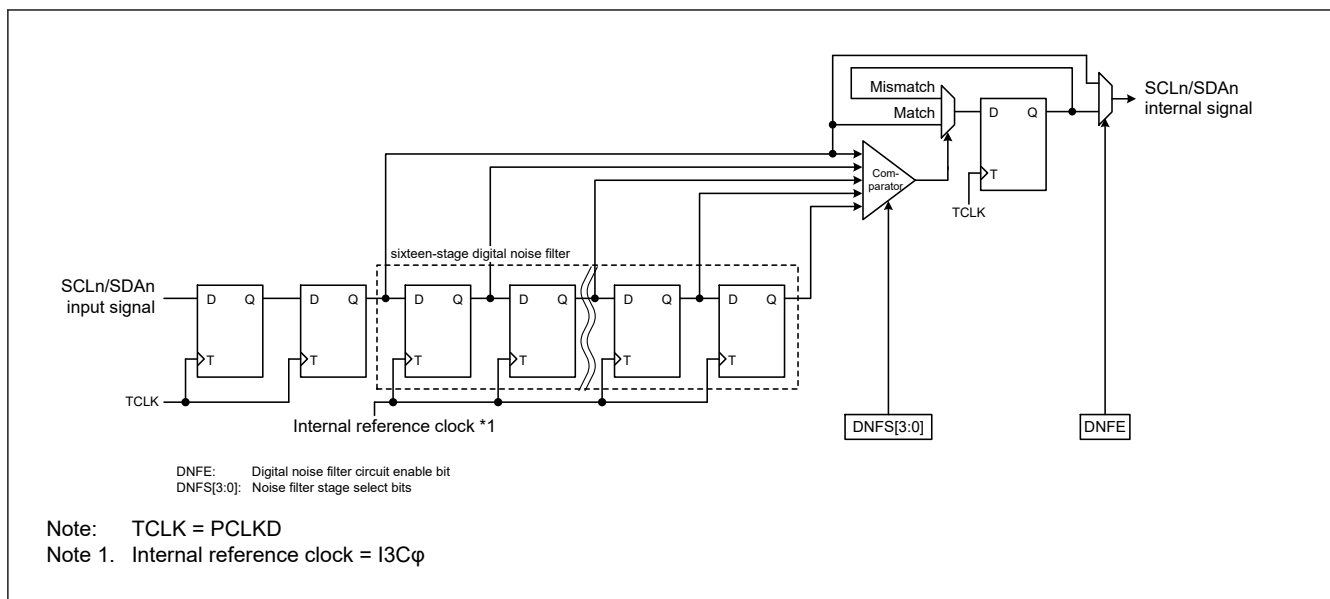


Figure 28.99 Block diagram of a digital noise filter circuit

28.3.3 Operation

28.3.3.1 Initial Setting Flow

28.3.3.1.1 I²C Initial Setting Flow (Single Buffer Transfer)

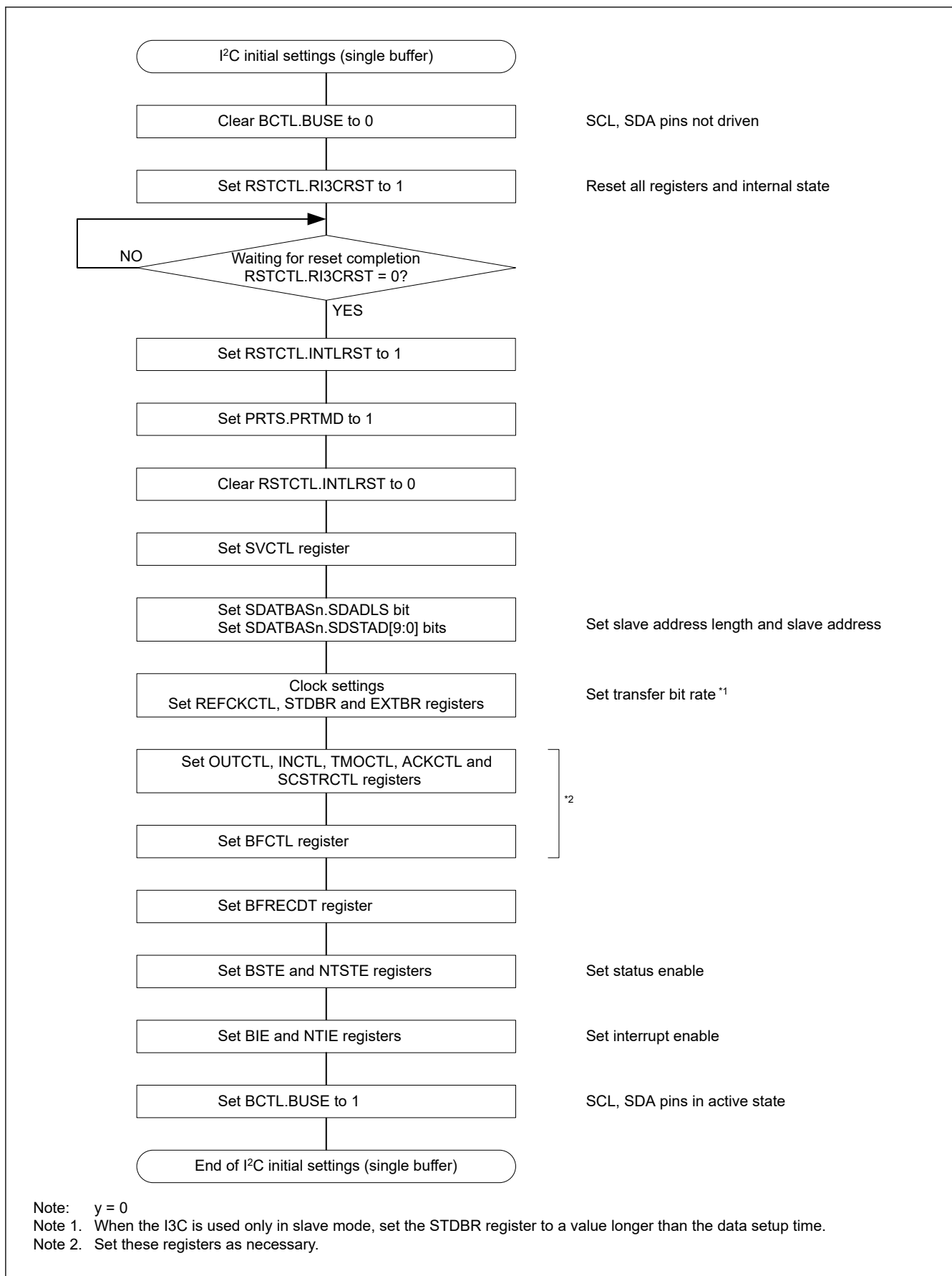
Before starting data transmission and reception, initialize I3C according to the procedure in [Figure 28.100](#).

First, set the BCTL.BUSE bit to 0 (SCLn, SDAn pins not driven).

Next, set the RSTCTL.RI3CRST bit to 1 (I3C reset). This initializes the all registers and internal state. Then, waits for RI3CRST to become 0.

This initializes the various flags and some registers. See [section 28.6. Reset Descriptions](#).

After that, set registers SDATBAS.SDADLS, SDATBAS.SDATAD[9:0], STDBR, INCTL, OUTCTL, TMOCTL, SCSTRCTL, ACKCTL, and BFCTL, then set the other registers as necessary (for initial settings of I3C, see [Figure 28.100](#)).

**Figure 28.100** Example flowchart of I2C initialization (single buffer transfer)

28.3.3.1.2 I3C Initial Setting Flow

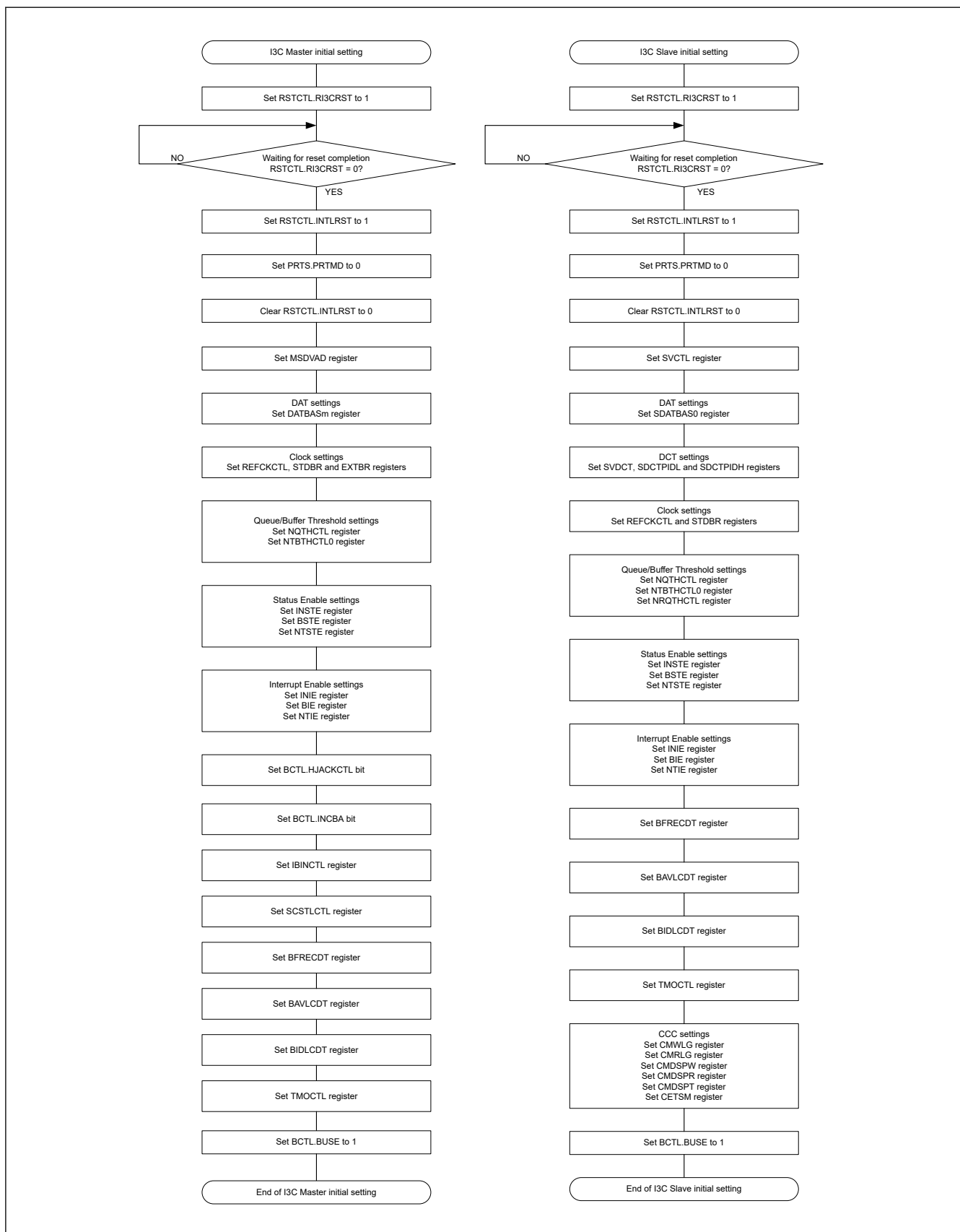


Figure 28.101 Example flowchart of I3C initialization

28.3.3.2 I3C Communication Flow

Figure 28.102 illustrates how I3C communication is initiated:

- All I3C communication occurs within a frame. The frame begins with a START, followed by one or more transfers, and a STOP.

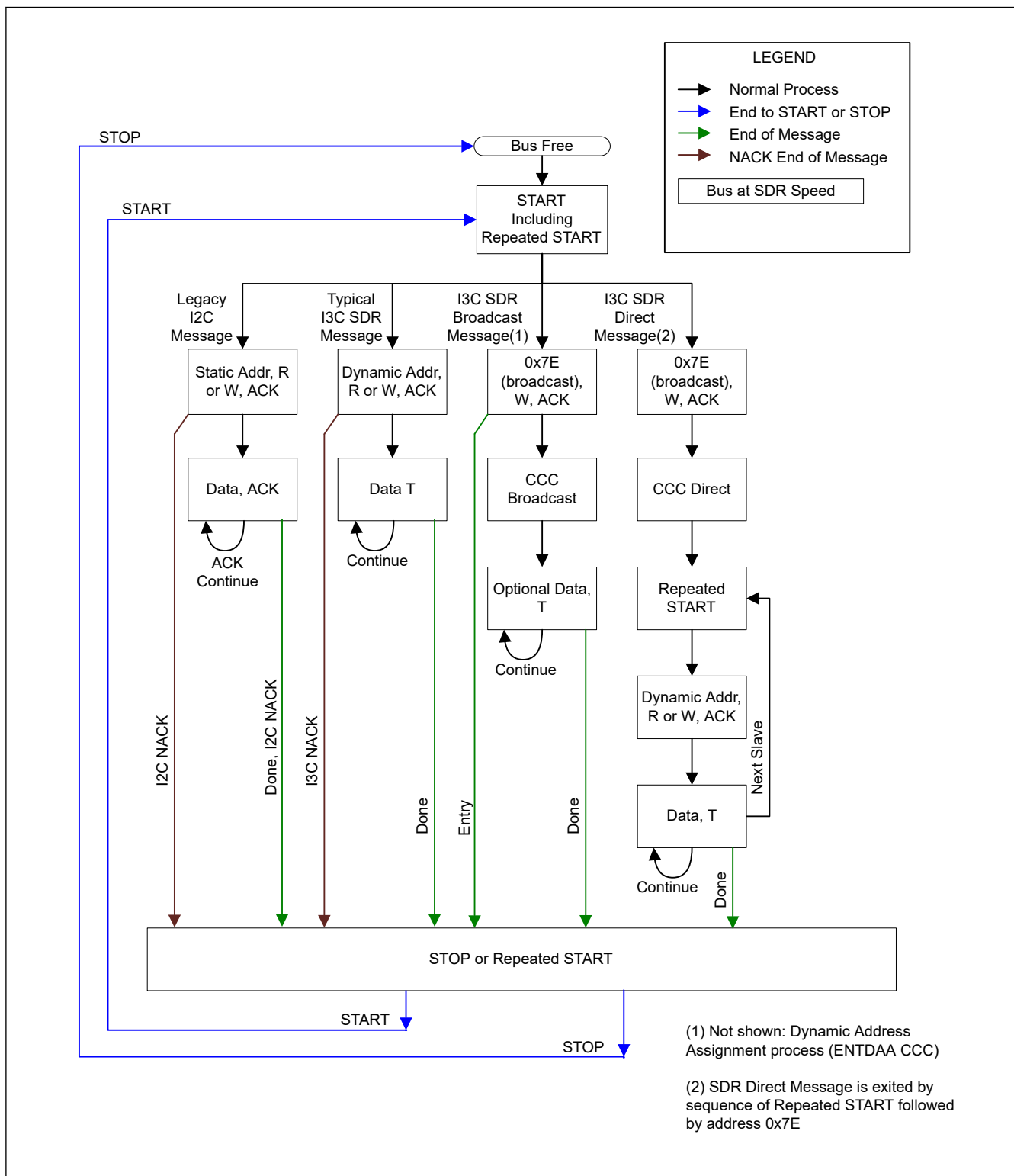


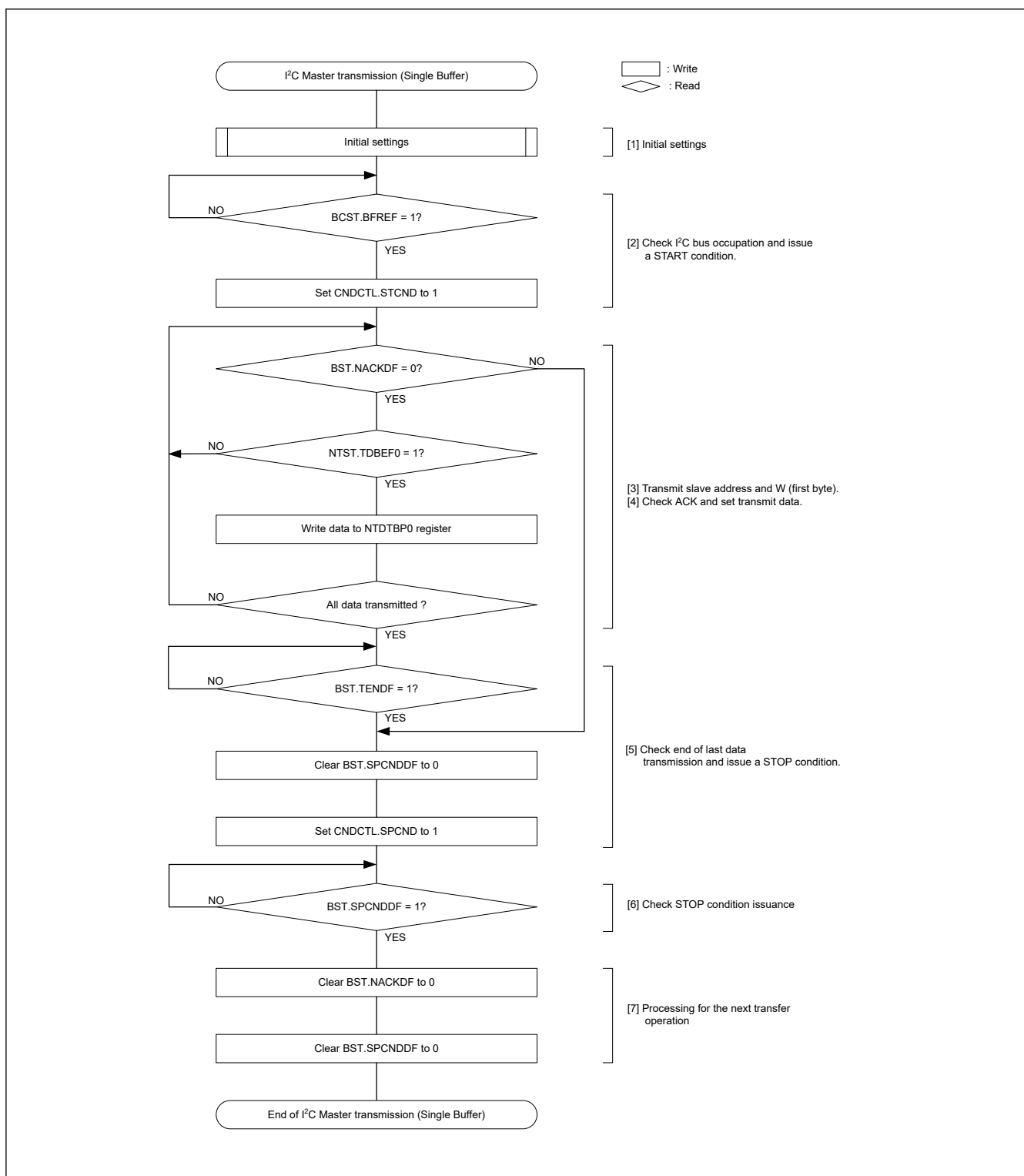
Figure 28.102 I3C communication flow

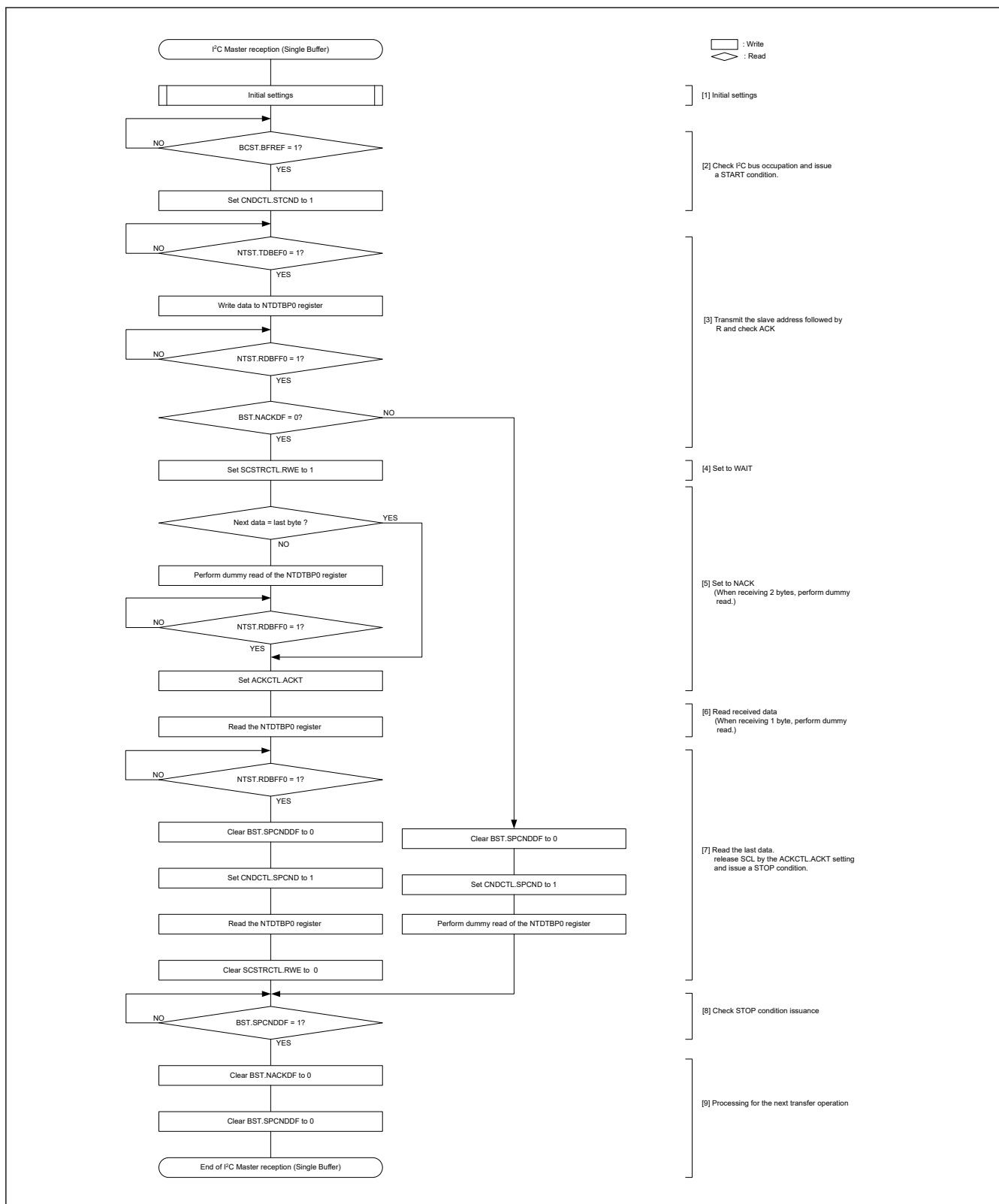
I3C is based on a frame encapsulation approach. A frame includes a data payload. The transfer protocol for the data payload is either SDR. Frames are bordered by I²C-like bus management.

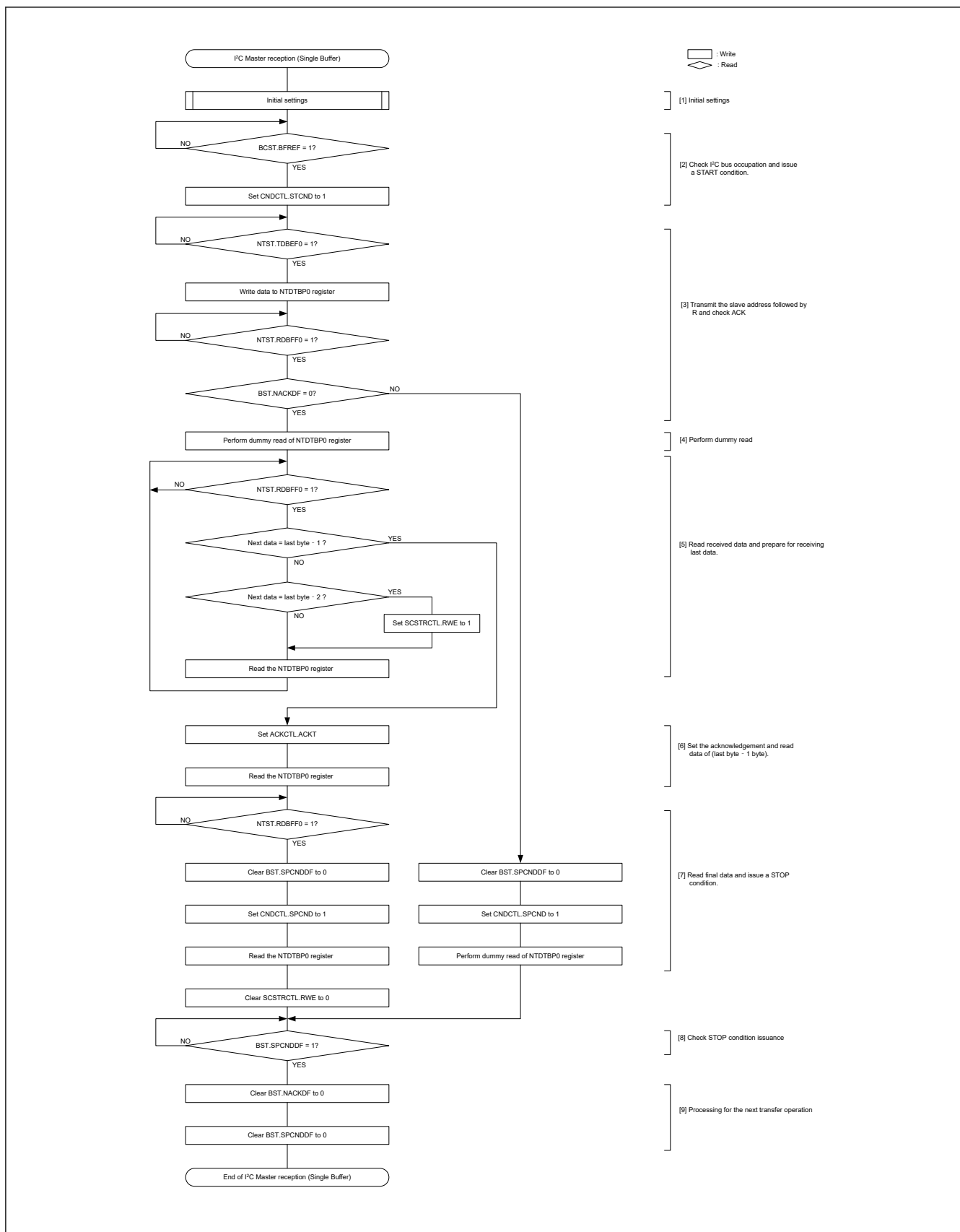
The I3C frame always includes at least the START, the Header, the Data, and the STOP. The Header following a START allows for Bus Arbitration. The Master uses the Header to address Slave device (s). Slave devices (s) may use the Header Arbitration for multiple purposes: for In-Band Interrupt, for Hot-Join, and for Secondary Master functionality.

I3C allows only one Master to have control of the I3C bus at a time. Mechanisms for handoff of the Master role from one device to another device are provided.

28.3.3.3 Master Mode Communication Flow

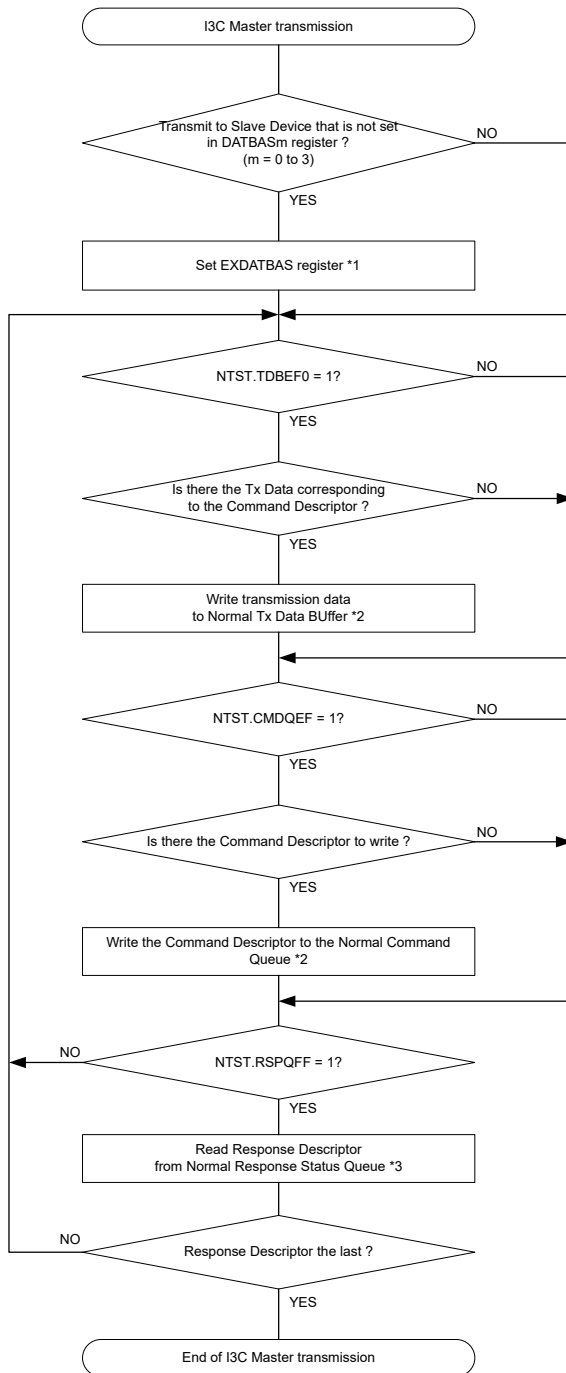
28.3.3.3.1 I²C Master Transmission Flow (Single Buffer Transfer)Figure 28.103 Example flowchart of I²C master transmission (single buffer transfer)

28.3.3.3.2 I²C Master Reception Flow (Single Buffer Transfer)Figure 28.104 Example flowchart of I²C master reception (7-bit address format, 1 or 2 bytes)

Figure 28.105 Example flowchart of I²C master reception (7-bit address format, 3 bytes or more)

28.3.3.3.3 I3C Master Transmission Flow (Normal FIFO Buffer Transfer)

Master transmission flow in I3C normal FIFO buffer transfer is common to Legacy I²C and SDR (Private Transfer, Broadcast CCC, Direct CCC).



Note 1. Changing the EXDATBAS register is prohibited until all response descriptors of command for the Slave device set in the EXDATBAS register are stored.

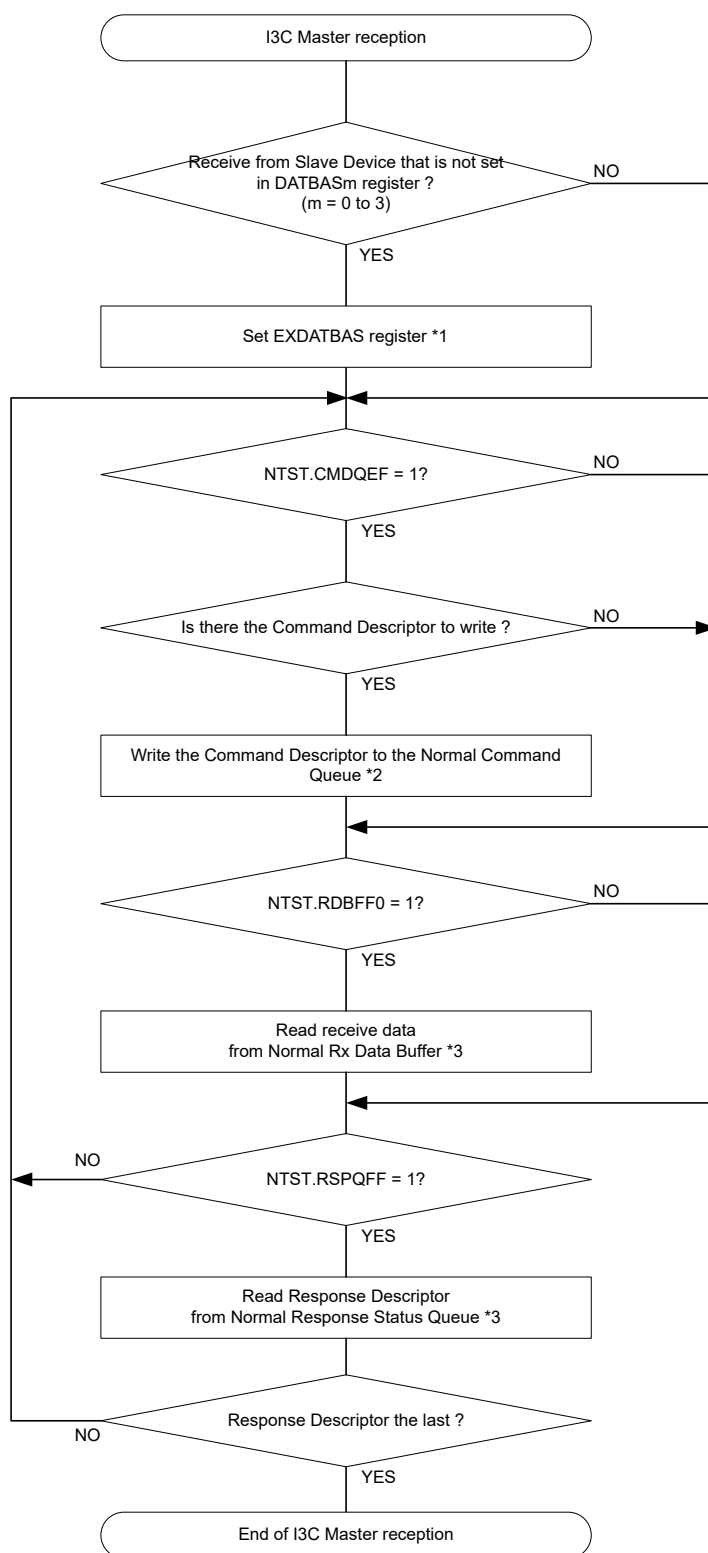
Note 2. When the register is written by way other than DTC, clear the corresponding flags after write access.

Note 3. When the register is read by way other than DTC, clear the corresponding flags after read access.

Figure 28.106 Example flowchart of I3C master transmission (normal FIFO buffer transfer)

28.3.3.3.4 I3C Master Reception Flow (Normal FIFO Buffer Transfer)

Master reception flow in I3C normal FIFO buffer transfer is common to Legacy I²C and SDR (Private Transfer, Broadcast CCC, Direct CCC).



Note 1. Changing the EXDATBAS register is prohibited until all response descriptors of command for the Slave device set in the EXDATBAS register are stored.

Note 2. In the case the register is write by a way other than DTC, clear corresponding flags after write access.

Note 3. In the case the register is read by a way other than DTC, clear corresponding flags after read access.

Figure 28.107 Example flowchart of I3C master reception (normal FIFO buffer transfer)

28.3.3.3.5 I3C Master IBI Reception Flow

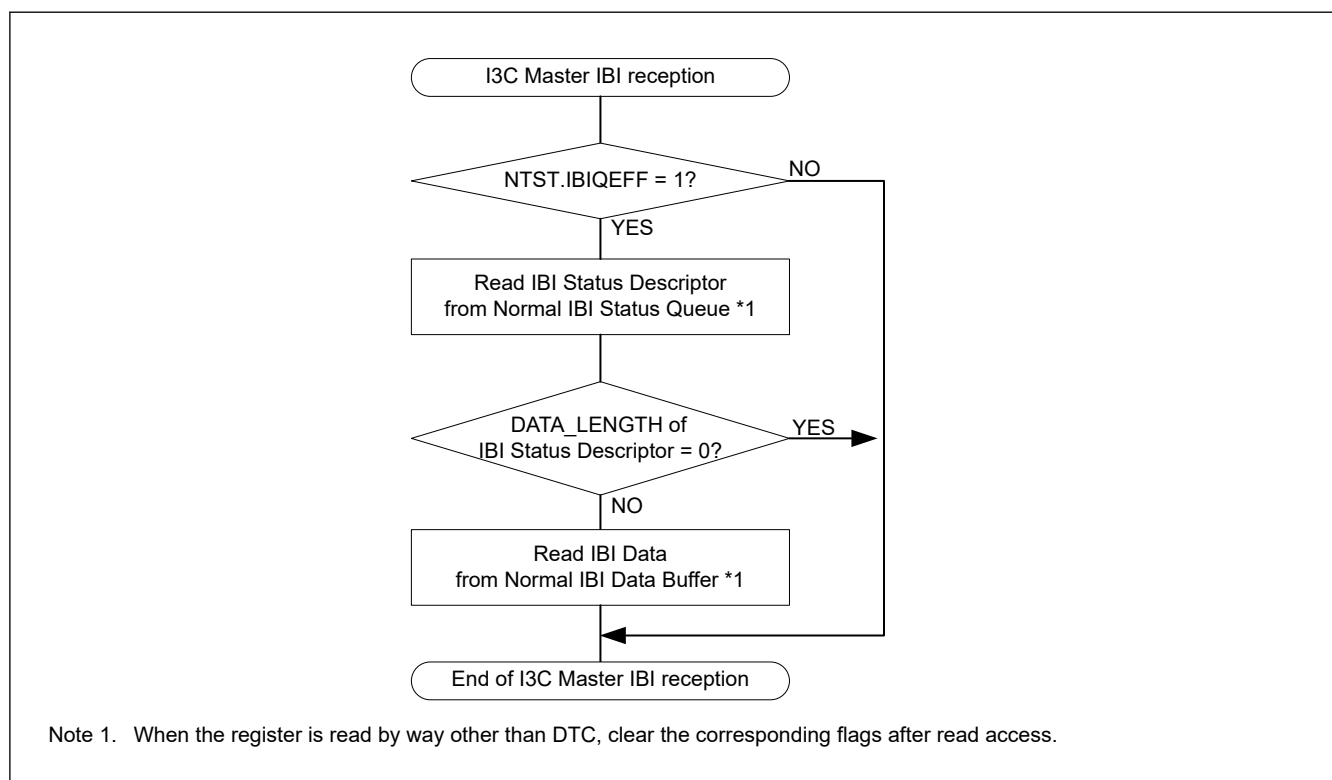
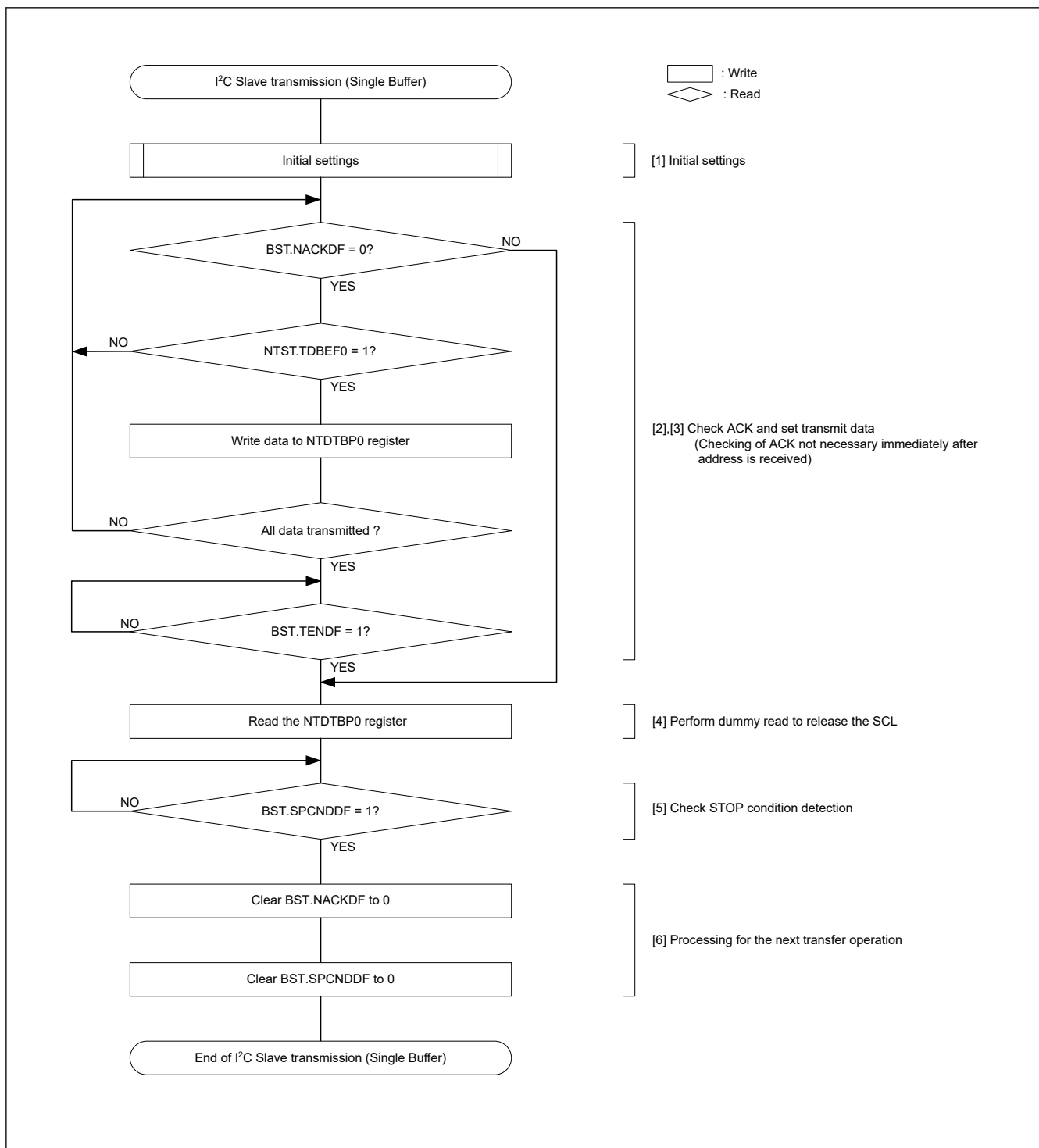
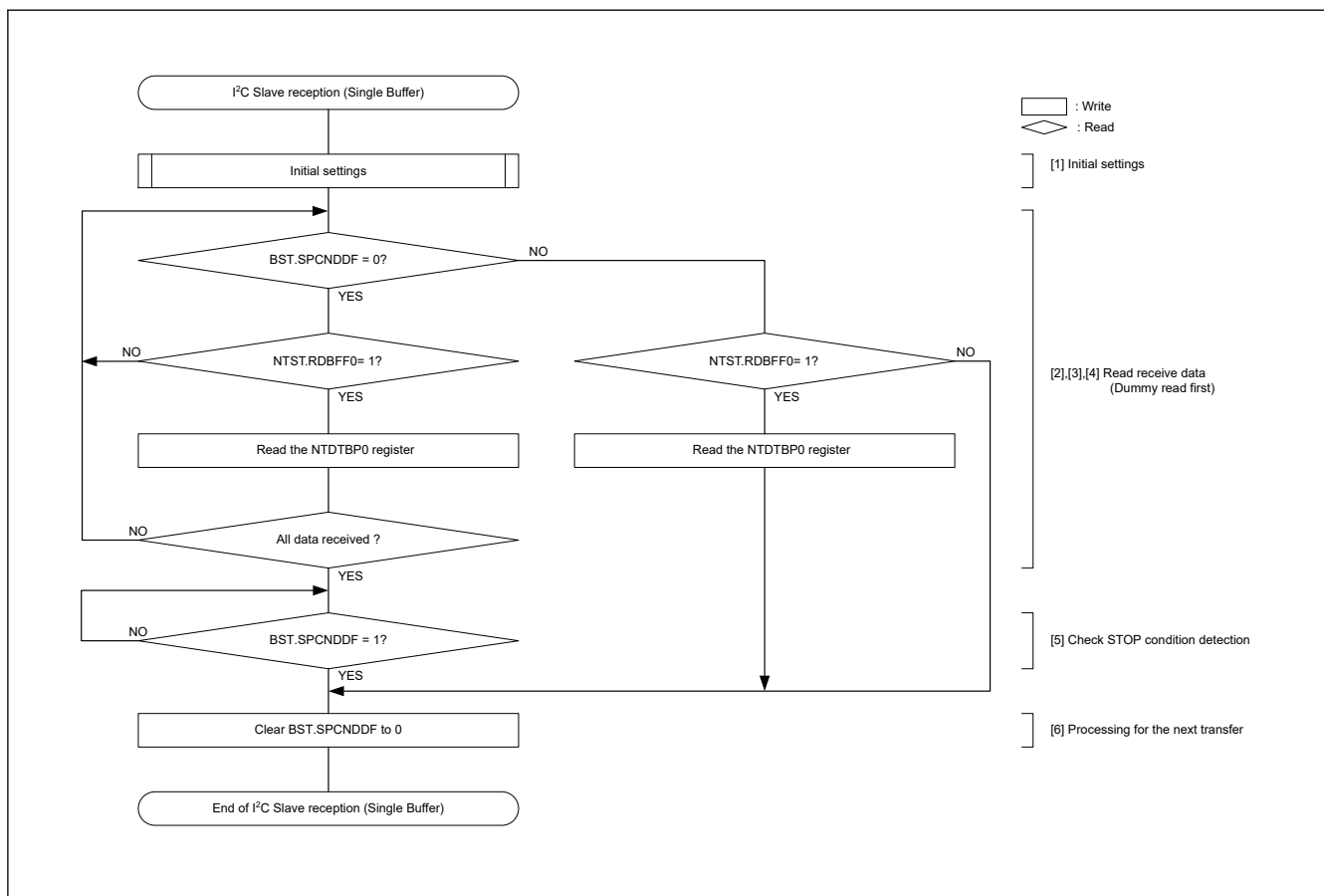


Figure 28.108 Example flowchart of I3C master IBI reception

28.3.3.4 Slave Mode Communication Flow

28.3.3.4.1 I²C Slave Transmission Flow (Single Buffer Transfer)Figure 28.109 Example flowchart of I²C slave transmission (single buffer transfer)

28.3.3.4.2 I²C Slave Reception Flow (Single Buffer Transfer)Figure 28.110 Example flowchart of I²C slave reception (single buffer transfer)

28.3.3.4.3 I3C Slave Transmission Flow (Normal FIFO Buffer Transfer)

Slave Transmission Flow in I3C normal FIFO buffer transfer is common to Legacy I²C, SDR (Private Transfer, Broadcast CCC, Direct CCC).

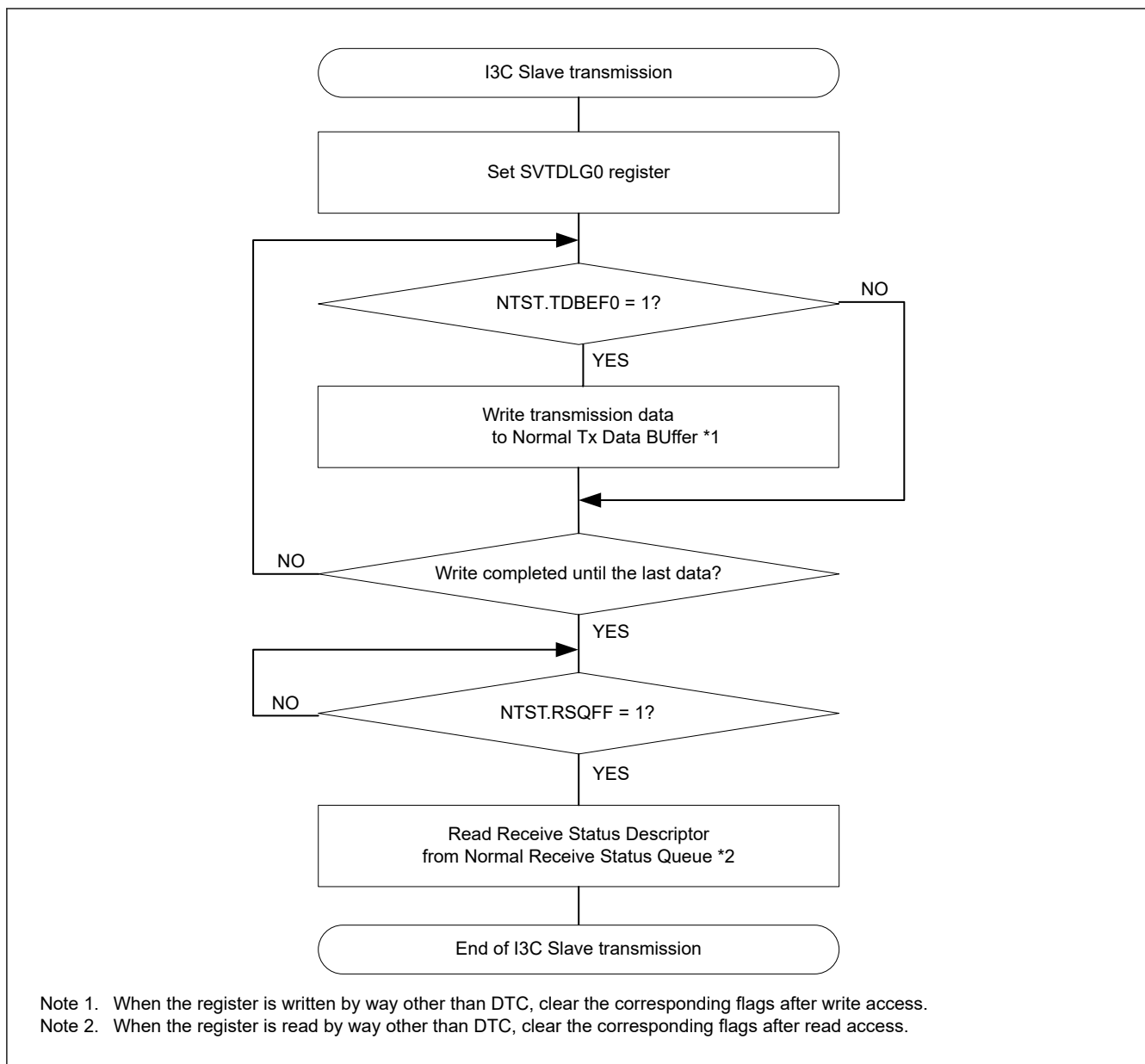


Figure 28.111 Example flowchart of I3C slave transmission (normal FIFO buffer transfer)

When using the I3C as an I3C slave, if I3C slave receives GET CCC while data exists by writing from the NTDTBP0 register to the transmission buffer, follow the flow below.

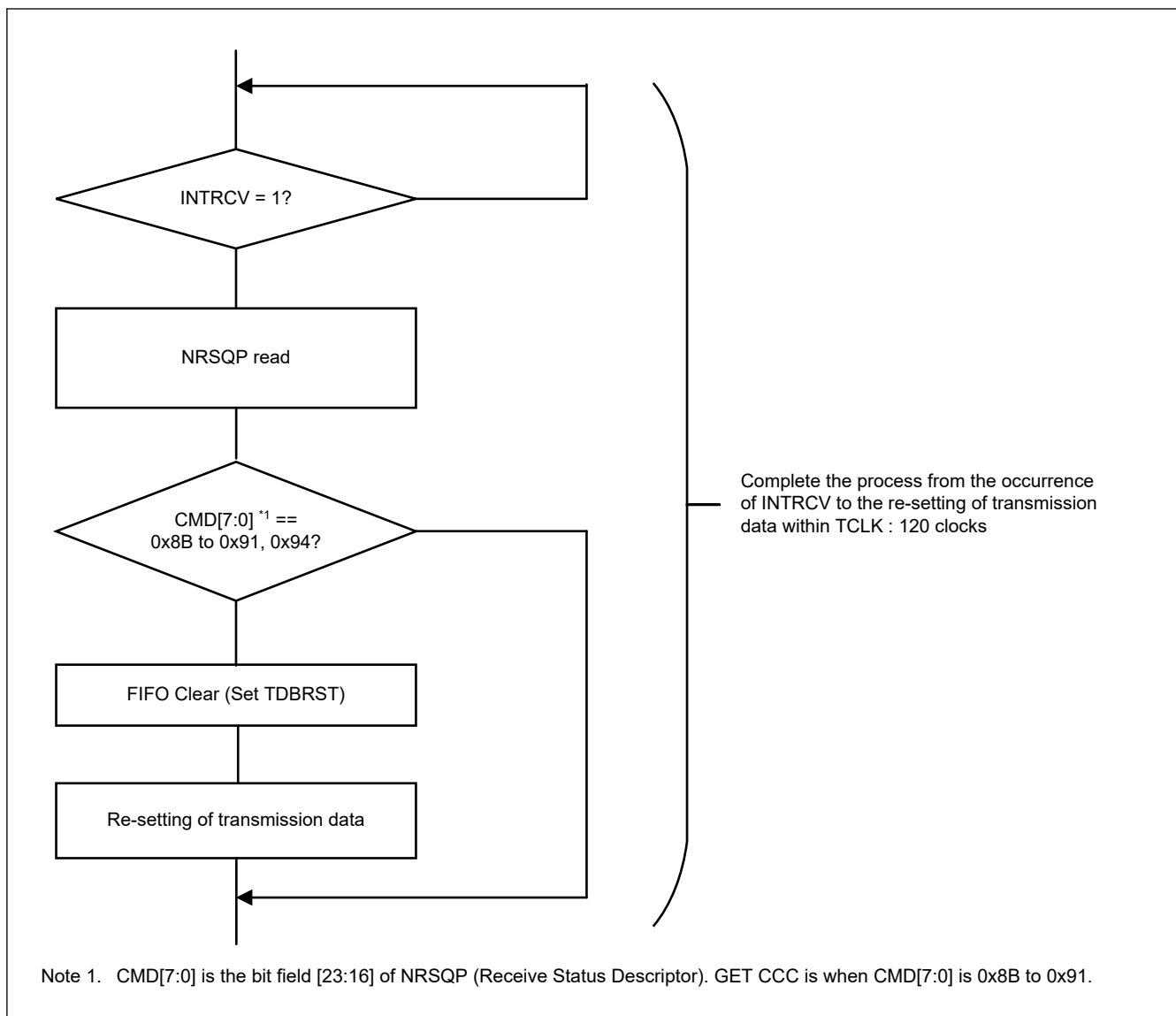
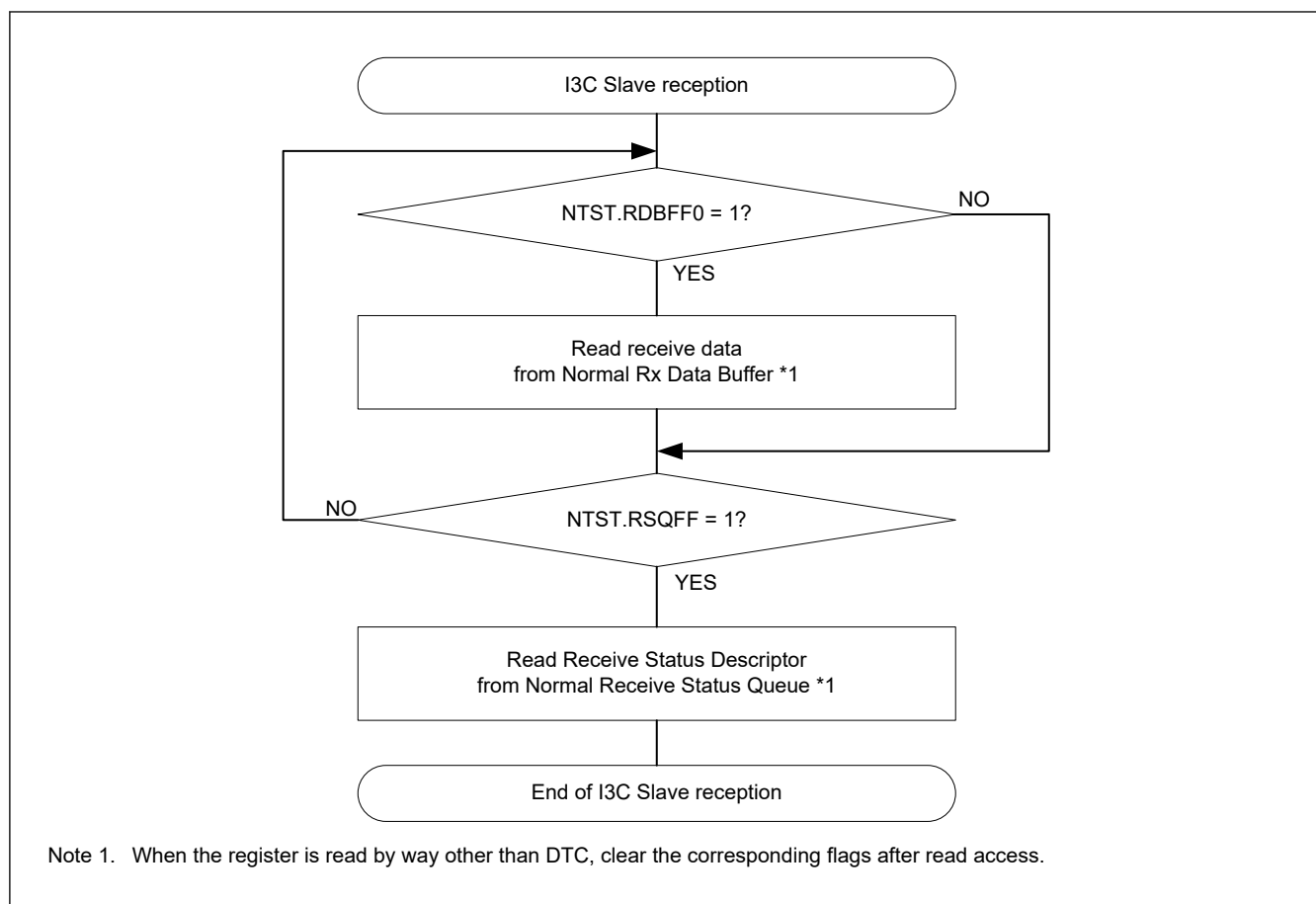


Figure 28.112 I3C slave receives GET CCC while data exists by writing from the NTDTBP0 register to the transmission buffer

28.3.3.4.4 I3C Slave Reception Flow (Normal FIFO Buffer Transfer)

Slave Reception Flow in I3C normal FIFO buffer transfer is common to Legacy I²C, SDR (Private Transfer, Broadcast CCC, Direct CCC).

**Figure 28.113** Example flowchart of I3C slave reception (normal FIFO buffer transfer)

28.3.3.4.5 I3C Slave IBI Transmission Flow

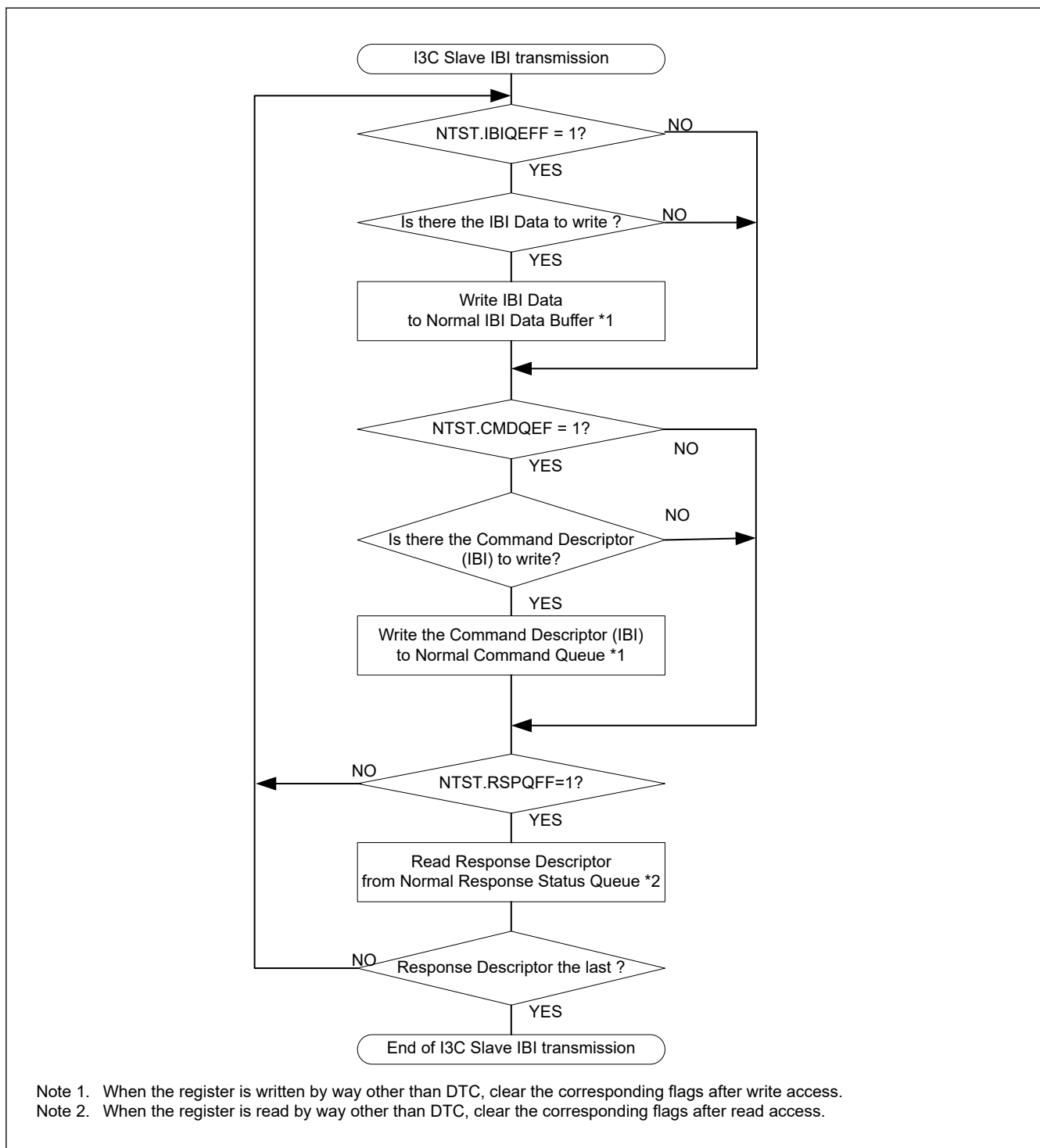


Figure 28.114 Example flowchart of I3C slave IBI transmission

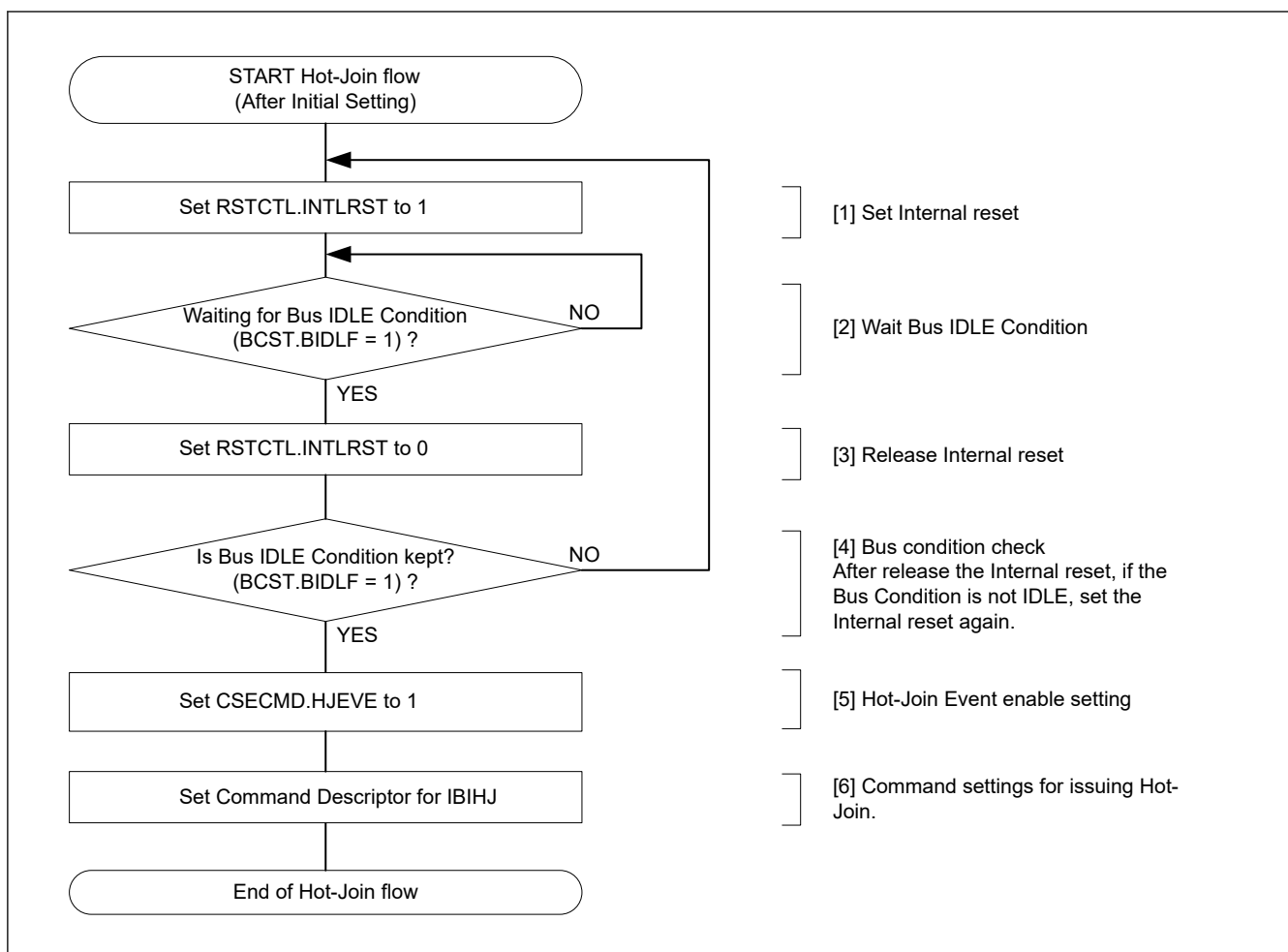


Figure 28.115 Hot-Join flowchart after the I3C bus has already been configured

28.4 Interrupt Sources

I3C can generate the following interrupt requests:

28.4.1 Overview

The I3C has the interrupt factors shown in [Table 28.15](#).

The interrupt indicated by Possible in the DTC Activation column are capable of activating data transfer by the DTC.

Table 28.15 Interrupt generation (1 of 2)

Symbol	Interrupt source	Interrupt flag	Support			
			I ² C	I3CM	I3C2M	I3CS
I3C_RESP	Normal response status buffer full	NTST.RSPQFF	—	✓	✓	✓
I3C_CMD	Normal command buffer empty	NTST.CMDQEF	—	✓	✓	✓
I3C_IBI	Normal IBI status buffer empty/full	NTST.IBIQEFF	—	✓	✓	✓
I3C_RX	Normal receive data buffer empty/full	NTST.RDBEF0	✓	✓	✓	✓
I3C_TX	Normal transmit data buffer empty	NTST.TDBEF0	✓	✓	✓	✓
I3C_RCV	Normal receive status buffer full	NTST.RSQFF	—	—	✓	✓
I3C_TEND	Transmit end	BST.TENDF	✓	—	—	—

Table 28.15 Interrupt generation (2 of 2)

Symbol	Interrupt source		Interrupt flag	Support			
				I ² C	I3CM	I3C2M	I3CS
I3C_EEI	Transfer error or event occurrence	Start condition detection interrupt	BST.STCNDDF	✓	✓	✓	✓
		STOP condition detection interrupt	BST.SPCNDDF	✓	✓	✓	✓
		HDR Exit Pattern detection interrupt	BST.HDREXDF	—	✓	✓	✓
		NACK detection interrupt	BST.NACKDF	✓	—	—	—
		Arbitration lost interrupt	BST.ALF	✓	—	—	—
		Timeout detection interrupt	BST.TODF	✓	✓	✓	✓
		Non-recoverable internal error interrupt	INST.INEF	—	✓	✓	✓
		Transfer Error interrupt	NTST.TEF	—	✓	✓	✓
		Transfer Abort interrupt	NTST.TABTF	—	✓	✓	✓

Note: ✓ : Support

— : Not support

Note: I²C: I²C Master/Slave (Single Buffer)

I3CM: I3C Master

I3C2M: I3C Secondary Master

I3CS: I3C Slave

28.4.2 Buffer Operation for Buffer Full/Empty Interrupts

If the conditions for generating each buffer full/empty interrupt are satisfied while the corresponding IR flag is 1, the interrupt request is not output for the ICU but retained internally (the capacity for internal retention is one request per source).

An interrupt request that was being retained within the ICU is output when the value of the ICU.IRn.IR flag becomes 0. Internally retained interrupt requests are automatically cleared under normal conditions of usage. Internally retained interrupt requests can also be cleared by writing 0 to the interrupt enable bit within the given peripheral module.

28.5 Event Link Output

The I3C handles event output for the event link controller (ELC) corresponding to the following sources.

(1) Communication event

When a Communication event (arbitration-lost detection, detection of NACK, detection of timeout, detection of a START condition, or detection of a STOP condition) occurs, the corresponding event signal can be output for another module via the ELC.

(2) Receive data full

When a receive data register becomes full, the corresponding event signal can be output for another module via the ELC.

(3) Transmit data empty

When a transmit data register becomes empty, the corresponding event signal can be output for another module via the ELC.

(4) Transmit end

On completion of transfer, the corresponding event signal can be output for another module via the ELC.

28.5.1 Interrupt Handling and Event Linking

The I3C module produces four kinds of interrupt: communication event (arbitration-lost detection, detection of NACK, detection of timeout, detection of a START condition, or detection of a STOP condition), receive data full, transmit data

empty, and transmit end interrupts. Each of these has an enable bit to control enabling and disabling of the interrupt signal. An interrupt request signal is output for the CPU when an interrupt source condition is satisfied while the setting of the corresponding enable bit is enabled.

The corresponding event link output signals are sent to other modules as event signals through the ELC when the interrupt source conditions are satisfied, regardless of the settings of the interrupt enable bits. For details on interrupt sources, see [section 28.4.1. Overview](#).

28.6 Reset Descriptions

Table 28.16 Register states when issuing each condition (1) (1 of 2)

Register symbol	Register bit name	System reset	RSTCTL Register							
			RI3CRST	INTLRST	CMDQRST	RSPQRST	TDBRST	RDBRST	IBIQRST	RSQRST
PRTS	PRTMD	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
BCTL	BUSE	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	RSM	In reset	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	ABT	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	HJACKCTL	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	INCBA	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
MSDVAD	MDYADV	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	MDYAD[6:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
RSTCTL	INTLRST	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	RSQRST	In reset	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	IBIQRST	In reset	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	RDBRST	In reset	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	TDBRST	In reset	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	RSPQRST	In reset	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	CMDQRST	In reset	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	RI3CRST	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
PRSST	PRSSTWP	In reset	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	TRMD	In reset	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	CRMS	In reset	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
INST	INEF	In reset	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
INSTE	INEE	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
INIE	INEIE	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
INSTFC	INEFC	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
DVCT	IDX[4:0]	In reset	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
IBINCTL	NRSIRCTL	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	NRMRACTL	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	NRHJCTL	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved

Table 28.16 Register states when issuing each condition (1) (2 of 2)

Register symbol	Register bit name	System reset	RSTCTL Register							
			R13CRST	INTLRST	CMDQRST	RSPQRST	TDBRST	RDBRST	IBIQRST	RSQRST
BFCTL	HSME	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	FMPE	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	SMBS	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	SCSYNE	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	SALE	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	NALE	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	MALE	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved

Note: In reset: To be reset (the FIFO corresponding to this register is cleared)

Table 28.17 Register states when issuing each condition (2) (1 of 2)

Register symbol	Register bit name	System reset	RSTCTL Register							
			R13CRST	INTLRST	CMDQRST	RSPQRST	TDBRST	RDBRST	IBIQRST	RSQRST
SVCTL	SVAE0	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	SVAE1	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	SVAE2	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	HOAE	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	DVIDE	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	HSMCE	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	GCAE	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
REFCKCTL	IREFCKS[2:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
STDBR	DSBRPO	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	SBRHP[5:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	SBRLP[5:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	SBRHO[7:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	SBRL0[7:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
EXTBR	EBRHP[5:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	EBRLP[5:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	EBRHO[7:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	EBRL0[7:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
BFRECDT	FRECYC[8:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
BAVLCDT	AVLCYC[8:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
BIDLCDT	IDLCYC[17:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved

Table 28.17 Register states when issuing each condition (2) (2 of 2)

Register symbol	Register bit name	System reset	RSTCTL Register							
			R13CRST	INTLRST	CMDQRST	RSPQRST	TDBRST	RDBRST	IBIQRST	RSQRST
OUTCTL	SDODCS	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	SDOD[2:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	EXCYC	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	SOCWP	In reset	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	SCOC	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	SDOC	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
INCTL	DNFE	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	DNFS[3:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
TMOCTL	TOMDS[1:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	TOHCTL	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	TOLCTL	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	TODTS[1:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
ACKCTL	ACKTWP	In reset	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	ACKT	In reset	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	ACKR	In reset	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
SCSTRCTL	RWE	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	ACKTWE	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
SCSTLCTL	ACKPE	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	PARPE	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	TRAPE	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	AAPE	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	STLCYC[15:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
SVTDLG0	STDLG[15:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved

Note: In reset: To be reset (The FIFO corresponding to this register is cleared)

Table 28.18 Register states when issuing each condition (3) (1 of 2)

Register symbol	Register bit name	System reset	RSTCTL Register							
			R13CRST	INTLRST	CMDQRST	RSPQRST	TDBRST	RDBRST	IBIQRST	RSQRST
CNDCTL	SPCND	In reset	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	SRCND	In reset	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	STCND	In reset	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
NCMDQP	NCMDQP[31:0]	In reset	In reset	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
NRSPQP	NRSPQP[31:0]	In reset	In reset	In reset	Saved	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
NTDTBP0	NTDTBP0[31:0]	In reset	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved
NIBIQP	NIBIQP[31:0]	In reset	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	In reset	Saved
NRSQP	NRSQP[31:0]	In reset	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	In reset

Table 28.18 Register states when issuing each condition (3) (2 of 2)

Register symbol	Register bit name	System reset	RSTCTL Register							
			R13CRST	INTLRST	CMDQRST	RSPQRST	TDBRST	RDBRST	IBIQRST	RSQRST
NQTHCTL	IBIQTH[7:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	IBIDSSZ[7:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	RSPQTH[7:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	CMDQTH[7:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
NTBTHCTL0	RXSTTH[2:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	TXSTTH[2:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	RXDBTH[2:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	TXDBTH[2:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
NRQTHCTL	RSQTH[7:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
BST	TODF	In reset	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	ALF	In reset	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	TENDF	In reset	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	NACKDF	In reset	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	HDREXDF	In reset	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	SPCNDDF	In reset	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	STCNDDF	In reset	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
BSTE	TODE	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	ALE	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	TENDE	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	NACKDE	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	HDREXDE	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	SPCNDDDE	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	STCNDDDE	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved

Note: In reset: To be reset (The FIFO corresponding to this register is cleared)

Table 28.19 Register states when issuing each condition (4) (1 of 2)

Register symbol	Register bit name	System reset	RSTCTL Register							
			R13CRST	INTLRST	CMDQRST	RSPQRST	TDBRST	RDBRST	IBIQRST	RSQRST
BIE	TODIE	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	ALIE	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	TENDIE	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	NACKDIE	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	HDREXDIE	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	SPCNDDIE	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	STCNDDIE	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved

Table 28.19 Register states when issuing each condition (4) (2 of 2)

Register symbol	Register bit name	System reset	RSTCTL Register							
			R13CRST	INTLRST	CMDQRST	RSPQRST	TDBRST	RDBRST	IBIQRST	RSQRST
BSTFC	TODFC	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	ALFC	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	TENDFC	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	NACKDFC	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	HDREXDFC	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	SPCNDDFC	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	STCNDDFC	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
NTST	RSQFF	In reset	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	In reset
	TEF	In reset	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	TABTF	In reset	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	RSPQFF	In reset	In reset	In reset	Saved	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	CMDQEF	In reset	In reset	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	IBIQEFF	In reset	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	In reset	Saved
	RDBFF0	In reset	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	In reset	Saved	Saved
	TDBEF0	In reset	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved
NTSTE	RSQFE	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	TEE	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	TABTE	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	RSPQFE	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	CMDQEE	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	IBIQEFE	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	RDBFE0	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	TDBEE0	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
NTIE	RSQFIE	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	TEIE	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	TABTIE	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	RSPQFIE	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	CMDQEIE	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	IBIQEFIE	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	RDBFIE0	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	TDBEIE0	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved

Note: In reset: To be reset (The FIFO corresponding to this register is cleared)

Table 28.20 Register states when issuing each condition (5)

Register symbol	Register bit name	System reset	RSTCTL Register							
			R13CRST	INTLRST	CMDQRST	RSPQRST	TDBRST	RDBRST	IBIQRST	RSQRST
NTSTFC	RSQFFC	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	TEFC	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	TABTFC	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	RSPQFFC	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	CMDQEFC	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	IBIQEFC	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	RDBFFC0	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	TDBEFC0	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved

Note: In reset: To be reset (The FIFO corresponding to this register is cleared)

Table 28.21 Register states when issuing each condition (6)

Register symbol	Register bit name	System reset	RSTCTL Register							
			R13CRST	INTLRST	CMDQRST	RSPQRST	TDBRST	RDBRST	IBIQRST	RSQRST
BCST	BIDLF	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	BAVLF	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	BFREF	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
SVST	SVAF0	In reset	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	SVAF1	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	SVAF2	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	HOAF	In reset	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	DVIDF	In reset	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	HSMCF	In reset	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	GCAF	In reset	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
DATBAS _m (m = 0 to 3)	DVTYP	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	DVNACK[1:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	DVDYAD[7:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	DVMRRJ	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	DVSIRRJ	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	DVIBIPL	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	DVSTAD[6:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved

Note: In reset: To be reset (The FIFO corresponding to this register is cleared)

Table 28.22 Register states when issuing each condition (7)

Register symbol	Register bit name	System reset	RSTCTL Register							
			R13CRST	INTLRST	CMDQRST	RSPQRST	TDBRST	RDBRST	IBIQRST	RSQRST
EXDATBAS	EDTYP	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	EDNACK[1:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	EDDYAD[7:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	EDSTAD[6:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
SDATBASn (n = 0 to 2)	SDDYAD[6:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	SDIBIPL	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	SDADLS	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	SDSTAD[9:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
MSDCTm (m = 0 to 3)	RBCR[7:6], RBCR[3:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
SVDCT	TBCR[7:6], TBCR[3:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	TDCR[7:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved

Note: In reset: To be reset (The FIFO corresponding to this register is cleared)

Table 28.23 Register states when issuing each condition (8) (1 of 2)

Register symbol	Register bit name	System reset	RSTCTL Register							
			R13CRST	INTLRST	CMDQRST	RSPQRST	TDBRST	RDBRST	IBIQRST	RSQRST
SDCTPIDL	SDCTPIDL[31:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
SDCTPIDH	SDCTPIDH[31:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
SVDVADn (n = 0 to 2)	SDYADV	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	SSTADV	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	SADLG	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	SVAD[9:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
CSECMD	HJEVE	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	MSRQE	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	SVIRQE	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
CEACTST	ACTST[3:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
CMWLG	MWLG[15:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
CMRLG	IBIPSZ[7:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	MRLG[15:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
CETSTMD	TSTMD[7:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
CGDVST	VDRSV[7:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	ACTMD[1:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	PRTE	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	PNDINT[3:0]	In reset	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
CMDSPW	MSWDR[2:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved

Table 28.23 Register states when issuing each condition (8) (2 of 2)

Register symbol	Register bit name	System reset	RSTCTL Register							
			R13CRST	INTLRST	CMDQCRST	RSPQCRST	TDBRST	RDBRST	IBIQCRST	RSQCRST
CMDSPR	CDTTIM[2:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	MSRDR[2:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
CMDSPR	MRTE	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	MRTTIM[23:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved

Note: In reset: To be reset (The FIFO corresponding to this register is cleared)

Table 28.24 Register states when issuing each condition (9)

Register symbol	Register bit name	System reset	RSTCTL Register							
			R13CRST	INTLRST	CMDQCRST	RSPQCRST	TDBRST	RDBRST	IBIQCRST	RSQCRST
CETSM	INAC[7:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	FREQ[7:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
BITCNT	BCNT[4:0]	In reset	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
NQSTLV	IBISCNT[4:0]	In reset	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	In reset	Saved
	IBIQLV[7:0]	In reset	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	In reset	Saved
	RSPQLV[7:0]	In reset	In reset	In reset	Saved	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	CMDQFLV[7:0]	In reset	In reset	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
NDBSTLV0	RDBLV[7:0]	In reset	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	In reset	Saved	Saved
	TDBFLV[7:0]	In reset	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved
NRSQSTLV	RSQLV[7:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
PRSTDBG	SDOLV	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	SCOLV	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	SDILV	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
	SCILV	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved
MSERRCNT	M2ECNT[7:0]	In reset	In reset	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved	Saved

Note: In reset: To be reset (The FIFO corresponding to this register is cleared)

28.7 Usage Notes

28.7.1 Settings for the Operating Clock

The clock frequency ratio of PCLKD and PCLKB must be 2:1 or 1:1 when using the I3C module. Operation is not guaranteed for other settings.

29. Controller Area Network (CAN) Module

29.1 Overview

The Controller Area Network (CAN) module uses a message-based protocol to receive and transmit data between multiple slaves and masters in electromagnetically noisy applications. The module complies with the ISO 11898-1 (CAN 2.0A/CAN 2.0B) standard and supports up to 32 mailboxes, which can be configured for transmission or reception in normal mailbox and FIFO modes. Both standard (11-bit) and extended (29-bit) messaging formats are supported. The CAN module requires an additional external CAN transceiver.

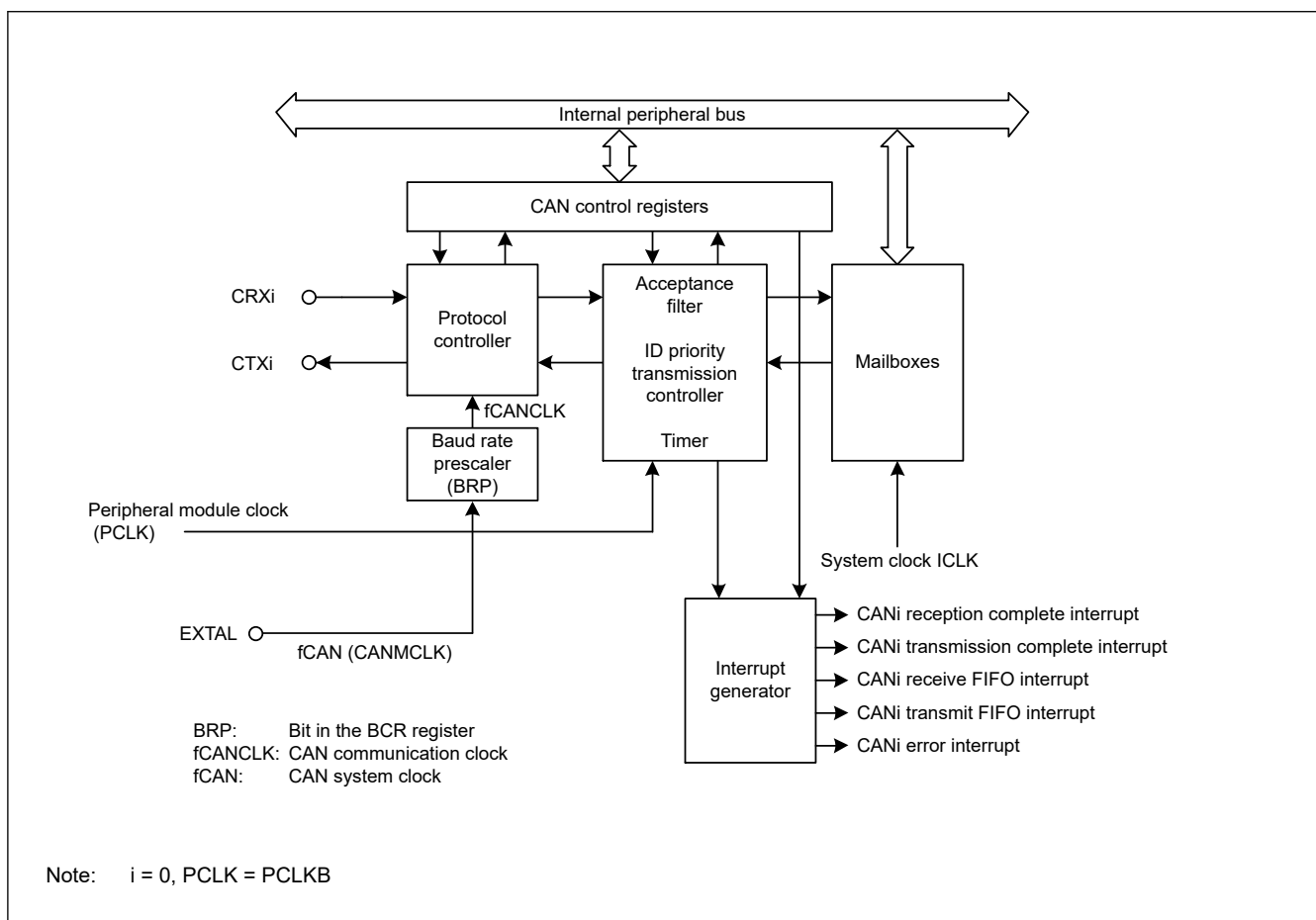
Table 29.1 lists the CAN specifications and Figure 29.1 shows a block diagram.

Table 29.1 CAN specifications (1 of 2)

Parameter	Specifications
Data transfer rate	ISO11898-1-compliant for standard and extended frames
Bit rate	Data transfer rate programmable up to 1 Mbps ($f_{CAN} \geq 8$ MHz) fCAN: CAN clock source
Message box	32 mailboxes, with two selectable mailbox modes - Normal mode: 32 mailboxes independently configurable for either transmission or reception - FIFO mode: 24 mailboxes independently configurable for either transmission or reception, with the remaining mailboxes used for receive (RX) and transmit (TX) 4-stage FIFOs
Reception	- Support for data frame and remote frame reception - Reception ID format selectable to only standard ID, only extended ID, or mixed IDs - Programmable one-shot reception function - Selectable between overwrite mode (unread message overwritten) and overrun mode (unread message saved) - Reception complete interrupt independently enabled or disabled for each mailbox
Acceptance filter	- Eight acceptance masks (one for every four mailboxes) - Masks independently enabled or disabled for each mailbox
Transmission	- Support for data frame and remote frame transmission - Transmission ID format selectable to only standard ID, only extended ID, or mixed IDs - Programmable one-shot transmission function - Broadcast messaging function - Priority mode selectable based on message ID or mailbox number - Support for transmission request abort, with abort completion confirmed in status flag - Transmission complete interrupt independently enabled or disabled for each mailbox
Mode transition for bus-off recovery	Mode transition for the recovery from the bus-off state selectable to: - ISO11898-1 specification-compliant - Automatic invoking of CAN halt mode on bus-off entry - Automatic invoking of CAN halt mode on bus-off end - Invoking of CAN halt mode through software - Transition to error-active state through software
Error status monitoring	- Monitoring of CAN bus errors, including stuff error, form error, ACK error, 15-bit CRC error, bit error, and ACK delimiter error - Detection of transition to error states, including error-warning, error-passive, bus-off entry, and bus-off recovery - Supports reading of error counters
Time stamping	- Time stamp function using a 16-bit counter - Reference clock selectable to 1-bit, 2-bit, 4-bit, and 8-bit time periods
Interrupt function	Support for five interrupt sources: - Reception complete - Transmission complete - Receive FIFO - Transmit FIFO - Error interrupts
CAN sleep mode	CAN clock stopped to reduce power consumption

Table 29.1 CAN specifications (2 of 2)

Parameter	Specifications
Software support unit	Three software support units: • Acceptance filter support • Mailbox search support, including receive mailbox search, transmit mailbox search, and message lost search • Channel search support
CAN clock source	CANMCLK
Test mode	Three test modes available for evaluation purposes: • Listen-only mode • Self-test mode 0 (external loopback) • Self-test mode 1 (internal loopback)

**Figure 29.1 CAN module block diagram**

The CAN module includes the following blocks:

- CAN input and output pins
CRXi and CTXi (i = 0)

- Protocol controller

Handles CAN protocol processing such as bus arbitration, bit timing during transmission and reception, stuffing, and error handling.

- Mailboxes

Consists of 32 mailboxes, which can be configured as either transmit or receive. Each mailbox has an individual ID, data length code (DLC), data field (8 bytes), and a time stamp.

- Acceptance filter

Performs filtering of received messages. MKR0 to MKR7 are used for the filtering process.

- Timer

Used for the time stamp function. The timer value when a message is stored in the mailbox is written as the time stamp value.

- Interrupt generator for five types of interrupts:

- CANi reception complete interrupt
- CANi transmission complete interrupt
- CANi receive FIFO interrupt
- CANi transmit FIFO interrupt
- CANi error interrupt

Table 29.2 lists the CAN module pins. These pins are multiplexed with other signals on the MCU. For details, see [section 17, I/O Ports](#).

Table 29.2 CAN module I/O pins (i = 0)

Pin name	I/O	Function
CRXi	Input	Data receive
CTXi	Output	Data transmit

29.2 Register Descriptions

29.2.1 CTLR : Control Register

Base address: CAN0 = 0x4005_0000

Offset address: 0x840

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	RBOC	BOM[1:0]	SLPM	CANM[1:0]	TSPS[1:0]	TSRC	TPM	MLM	IDFM[1:0]	MBM				
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	MBM	CAN Mailbox Mode Select ^{*1} 0: Normal mailbox mode 1: FIFO mailbox mode	R/W
2:1	IDFM[1:0]	ID Format Mode Select ^{*1} 0 0: Standard ID mode All mailboxes, including FIFO mailboxes, handle only standard IDs 0 1: Extended ID mode All mailboxes, including FIFO mailboxes, handle only extended IDs 1 0: Mixed ID mode All mailboxes, including FIFO mailboxes, handle both standard and extended IDs. In normal mailbox mode, use the associated IDE bit to differentiate standard and extended IDs. In FIFO mailbox mode, the associated IDE bits are used for mailboxes 0 to 23, the IDE bits in FIDCR0 and FIDCR1 are used for the receive FIFO, and the IDE bit associated with mailbox 24 is used for the transmit FIFO. 1 1: Setting prohibited	R/W
3	MLM	Message Lost Mode Select ^{*1} 0: Overwrite mode 1: Overrun mode	R/W
4	TPM	Transmission Priority Mode Select ^{*1} 0: ID priority transmit mode 1: Mailbox number priority transmit mode	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
5	TSRC	Time Stamp Counter Reset Command ^{*4} 0: Do not reset time stamp counter 1: Reset time stamp counter ^{*3}	R/W
7:6	TSPS[1:0]	Time Stamp Prescaler Select ^{*1} 0 0: Every 1-bit time 0 1: Every 2-bit time 1 0: Every 4-bit time 1 1: Every 8-bit time	R/W
9:8	CANM[1:0]	CAN Operating Mode Select ^{*5} 0 0: CAN operation mode 0 1: CAN reset mode 1 0: CAN halt mode 1 1: CAN reset mode (forced transition)	R/W
10	SLPM	CAN Sleep Mode ^{*5 *6} 0: All other modes 1: CAN sleep mode	R/W
12:11	BOM[1:0]	Bus-Off Recovery Mode ^{*1} 0 0: Normal mode (ISO11898-1-compliant) 0 1: Enter CAN halt mode automatically on entering bus-off state 1 0: Enter CAN halt mode automatically at the end of bus-off state 1 1: Enter CAN halt mode during bus-off recovery period through a software request	R/W
13	RBOC	Forcible Return from Bus-Off ^{*2} 0: No return occurred 1: Forced return from bus-off state ^{*3}	R/W
15:14	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note 1. Write to the BOM[1:0], TSPS[1:0], TPM, MLM, IDFM[1:0], and MBM bits in CAN reset mode.

Note 2. Set the RBOC bit to 1 in the bus-off state.

Note 3. This bit is automatically set to 0 after being set to 1. It should read as 0.

Note 4. Set the TSRC bit to 1 in CAN operation mode.

Note 5. When the CANM[1:0] and SLPM bits are changed, check STR to ensure that the mode is switched. Do not change the CANM[1:0] bits or SLPM bit until the mode is switched.

Note 6. Write to the SLPM bit in CAN reset mode or CAN halt mode. When changing the SLPM bit, write 0 or 1 only to the SLPM bit.

MBM bit (CAN Mailbox Mode Select)

When the MBM bit is 0 (normal mailbox mode), mailboxes 0 to 31 are configured as transmit or receive mailboxes. When the MBM bit is 1 (FIFO mailbox mode):

- Mailboxes 0 to 23 are configured as transmit or receive mailboxes
- Mailboxes 24 to 27 are configured as transmit FIFO
- Mailboxes 28 to 31 are configured as receive FIFO

Transmit data is written into mailbox 24, a window mailbox for the transmit FIFO. Receive data is read from mailbox 28, a window mailbox for the receive FIFO.

Table 29.3 lists the mailbox configuration.

IDFM[1:0] bits (ID Format Mode Select)

The IDFM[1:0] bits specify the ID format.

MLM bit (Message Lost Mode Select)

The MLM bit specifies the operation when a new message is captured in an unread mailbox. Overwrite mode or overrun mode can be selected. In both cases, the mode applies to all mailboxes, including the receive FIFO.

When the MLM bit is 0, all mailboxes are set to overwrite mode. Any new message received overwrites the pre-existing message.

When the MLM bit is 1, all mailboxes are set to overrun mode. Any new message received does not overwrite the pre-existing message, and it is discarded.

TPM bit (Transmission Priority Mode Select)

The TPM bit specifies the priority when transmitting messages. ID priority transmit mode or mailbox number transmit mode can be selected. All mailboxes are set for either ID priority transmission or mailbox number priority transmission.

When TPM is 0, ID priority transmit mode is selected and transmission priority is arbitrated as defined in the ISO11898-1 CAN specification. In ID priority transmit mode, mailboxes 0 to 31 (in normal mailbox mode), and mailboxes 0 to 23 (in FIFO mailbox mode), and the transmit FIFO are compared for the IDs of mailboxes configured for transmission. If two or more mailbox IDs are the same, the mailbox with the smaller number has higher priority.

Only the next message to be transmitted from the transmit FIFO is included in the transmission arbitration. If a FIFO message is being transmitted, the next pending message within the transmit FIFO is included in the transmission arbitration.

When TPM is 1, mailbox number transmit mode is selected and the transmit mailbox with the smallest mailbox number has the highest priority. In FIFO mailbox mode, the transmit FIFO has lower priority than normal mailboxes (0 to 23).

TSRC bit (Time Stamp Counter Reset Command)

The TSRC bit resets the time stamp counter. When it is set to 1, TSR is set to 0x0000. TSRC is set to 0 automatically.

TSPS[1:0] bits (Time Stamp Prescaler Select)

The TSPS[1:0] bits select the prescaler for the time stamp. The reference clock for the time stamp can be selected to 1-bit, 2-bit, 4-bit, or 8-bit time periods.

CANM[1:0] bits (CAN Operating Mode Select)

The CANM[1:0] bits select one of the following modes for the CAN module:

- CAN operation mode
- CAN reset mode
- CAN halt mode

The CAN sleep mode is set in the SLPM bit. For details, see [section 29.3. Operation Modes](#).

When the CAN module enters CAN halt mode based on the BOM[1:0] setting, the CANM[1:0] bits are automatically set to 10b.

SLPM bit (CAN Sleep Mode)

When the SLPM bit is set to 1, the CAN module enters CAN sleep mode. When the SLPM bit is set to 0, the CAN module exits CAN sleep mode. For details, see [section 29.3. Operation Modes](#).

BOM[1:0] bits (Bus-Off Recovery Mode)

The BOM[1:0] bits select bus-off recovery mode for the CAN module.

When the BOM[1:0] bits are 00b, the recovery from bus-off is compliant with the ISO11898-1 CAN specification. The CAN module recovers CAN communication (error-active state) after detecting 11 consecutive recessive bits 128 times. A bus-off recovery interrupt request occurs when recovering from bus-off.

When the BOM[1:0] bits are 01b and the CAN module reaches the bus-off state, the CANM[1:0] bits in CTRLR are set to 10b to enter CAN halt mode. No bus-off recovery interrupt request occurs when recovering from bus-off, and TECR and RECR are set to 0x00.

When the BOM[1:0] bits are 10b, the CANM[1:0] bits are set to 10b as soon as the CAN module reaches the bus-off state. The CAN module enters CAN halt mode after the recovery from the bus-off state, and after detecting 11 consecutive recessive bits 128 times. A bus-off recovery interrupt request occurs when recovering from bus-off, and TECR and RECR are set to 0x00.

When the BOM[1:0] bits are 11b, the CAN module enters CAN halt mode by setting the CANM[1:0] bits to 10b while the CAN module is still in the bus-off state. No bus-off recovery interrupt request occurs when recovering from bus-off, and TECR and RECR are set to 0x00. However, if the CAN module recovers from bus-off after detecting 11 consecutive recessive bits 128 times before the CANM[1:0] bits are set to 10b, a bus-off recovery interrupt request is generated.

If the CPU requests an entry to CAN reset mode at the same time as the CAN module attempts to enter CAN halt mode (at bus-off entry when the BOM[1:0] bits are 01b, or at bus-off end when the BOM[1:0] bits are 10b), then the CPU request has higher priority.

RBOC bit (Forcible Return from Bus-Off)

When the RBOC bit is set to 1 in the bus-off state, the CAN module forcibly exits the bus-off state. It is set to 0 automatically, and the error state changes from bus-off to error-active. When the RBOC bit is set to 1, RECR and TECR are set to 0x00 and the BOST bit in STR is set to 0, indicating that the CAN module is not in bus-off state. The other registers remain unchanged when RBOC is set to 1. No bus-off recovery interrupt request occurs by this recovery from the bus-off state. Use the RBOC bit only when the BOM[1:0] bits are 00b (normal mode).

Table 29.3 Mailbox configuration

Mailbox	MBM bit = 0 (normal mailbox mode)	MBM bit = 1 (FIFO mailbox mode)*1 *2 *3 *4 *5
Mailboxes 0 to 23	Normal mailbox	Normal mailbox
Mailboxes 24 to 27		Transmit FIFO
Mailboxes 28 to 31		Receive FIFO

Note 1. The transmit FIFO is controlled by TFCR. The MCTL_TX[j] registers associated with mailboxes 24 to 27 are disabled. MCTL_TX[24] to MCTL_TX[27] cannot be used by the transmit FIFO.

Note 2. The receive FIFO is controlled by RFCR. The MCTL_RX[j] registers associated with mailboxes 28 to 31 are disabled. MCTL_RX[28] to MCTL_RX[31] cannot be used by the receive FIFO.

Note 3. See the MIER_FIFO description for information on the FIFO interrupts.

Note 4. The bits in MKIVLR associated with mailboxes 24 to 31 are disabled. Set these bits to 0.

Note 5. The transmit and receive FIFOs can be used for both data frames and remote frames.

29.2.2 BCR : Bit Configuration Register

Base address: CAN0 = 0x4005_0000

Offset address: 0x844

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	TSEG1[3:0]				—	—	BRP[9:0]									
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	SJW[1:0]		—	TSEG2[2:0]			—	—	—	—	—	—	—	CCLK S
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	CCLKS	CAN Clock Source Selection 0: Reserved 1: CANMCLK (generated by the main clock oscillator)	R/W
7:1	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
10:8	TSEG2[2:0]	Time Segment 2 Control 0 0 0: Setting prohibited 0 0 1: 2 Tq 0 1 0: 3 Tq 0 1 1: 4 Tq 1 0 0: 5 Tq 1 0 1: 6 Tq 1 1 0: 7 Tq 1 1 1: 8 Tq	R/W
11	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
13:12	SJW[1:0]	Synchronization Jump Width Control 0 0: 1 Tq 0 1: 2 Tq 1 0: 3 Tq 1 1: 4 Tq	R/W
15:14	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
25:16	BRP[9:0]	Baud Rate Prescaler Select*1 These bits set the frequency of the CAN communication clock (fCANCLK).	R/W
27:26	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
31:28	TSEG1[3:0]	Time Segment 1 Control 0x3: 4 Tq 0x4: 5 Tq 0x5: 6 Tq 0x6: 7 Tq 0x7: 8 Tq 0x8: 9 Tq 0x9: 10 Tq 0xA: 11 Tq 0xB: 12 Tq 0xC: 13 Tq 0xD: 14 Tq 0xE: 15 Tq 0xF: 16 Tq Others: Setting prohibited	R/W

Note: Tq: Time Quantum

Note 1. Do not select a value less than or equal to 1 while the SCKSCR.CKSEL[2:0] bits are 011b (selecting the main clock oscillator).

For details about setting the bit timing, see [section 29.4. Data Transfer Rate Configuration](#). Set BCR before entering CAN halt or CAN operation mode from CAN reset mode. After the setting is made once, this register can be written to in CAN reset or CAN halt mode. A 32-bit read/write accesses must be performed carefully so as not to change bits [7:0].

CCLKS bit (CAN Clock Source Selection)

The CCLKS bit selects CAN clock source. This bit must be set to 1 when using the CAN module.

TSEG2[2:0] bits (Time Segment 2 Control)

The TSEG2[2:0] bits specify the length of the phase buffer segment 2 (PHASE_SEG2) with a Tq value. A value from 2 to 8 Tq can be set. Set a value smaller than that in the TSEG1[3:0] bits.

SJW[1:0] bits (Synchronization Jump Width Control)

The SJW[1:0] bits specify the synchronization jump width with a Tq value. A value from 1 to 4 Tq can be set. Set a value smaller than or equal to that in the TSEG2[2:0] bits.

BRP[9:0] bits (Baud Rate Prescaler Select)

The BRP[9:0] bits set the frequency of the CAN communication clock (fCANCLK). The fCANCLK cycle is 1 Tq. If the setting is P (0 to 1023), the baud rate prescaler divides fCAN by P + 1.

TSEG1[3:0] bits (Time Segment 1 Control)

The TSEG1[3:0] bits specify the total length of the propagation time segment (PROP_SEG) and phase buffer segment 1 (PHASE_SEG1) with a time quantum (Tq) value. A value from 4 to 16 Tq can be set.

29.2.3 MKR[k] : Mask Register k (k = 0 to 7)

Base address: CAN0 = 0x4005_0000

Offset address: 0x400 + 0x04 × k

Bit position: 31 30 29 28

18 17

0

Bit field:

—	—	—	SID[10:0]										EID[17:0]																

Value after reset: x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x

SID[10:0] bits (Standard ID of data and remote frames)

The SID[10:0] bits set the standard ID of data frames and remote frames. These bits are used to receive both standard ID and extended ID messages.

RTR bit (Remote Transmission Request)

The RTR bit sets the frame format to data frames or remote frames:

- When the RTR bits in both FIDCR0 and FIDCR1 registers are set to 0, only data frames are received
- When the RTR bits in both FIDCR0 and FIDCR1 registers are set to 1, only remote frames are received
- When the RTR bits in both FIDCR0 and FIDCR1 registers are set to different values, both data frames and remote frames are received

IDE bit (ID Extension)

The IDE bit sets the ID format to standard ID or extended ID. The IDE bit is enabled when the IDFM[1:0] bits in CTRL are 10b (mixed ID mode):

- When the IDE bits in both FIDCR0 and FIDCR1 registers are set to 0, only standard ID frames are received
- When the IDE bits in both FIDCR0 and FIDCR1 registers are set to 1, only extended ID frames are received
- When the IDE bits in both FIDCR0 and FIDCR1 registers are set to different values, both standard ID and extended ID frames are received

29.2.5 MKIVLR : Mask Invalid Register

Base address: CAN0 = 0x4005_0000

Offset address: 0x428

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	MB31	MB30	MB29	MB28	MB27	MB26	MB25	MB24	MB23	MB22	MB21	MB20	MB19	MB18	MB17	MB16
Value after reset:	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	MB15	MB14	MB13	MB12	MB11	MB10	MB9	MB8	MB7	MB6	MB5	MB4	MB3	MB2	MB1	MB0
Value after reset:	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
31:0	MB31 to MB0	Mask Invalid 0: Mask valid 1: Mask invalid	R/W

Each bit in MKIVLR is associated with a mailbox of the same number. Bit [0] in MKIVLR corresponds to mailbox 0 (MB0), and bit [31] corresponds to mailbox 31 (MB31).^{*1}

When a bit is set to 1, the associated acceptance mask register becomes invalid for the associated mailbox. When a mask invalid bit is set to 1, a message is received by the associated mailbox only if the receive message ID matches the mailbox ID exactly.

Write to MKIVLR in CAN reset or halt mode.

Note 1. Set bits [31:24] to 0 in FIFO mailbox mode.

29.2.6 Mailbox Registers

Table 29.4 lists the CANi mailbox memory mapping, and Table 29.5 lists the CAN data frame configuration.

The value of the CANi mailbox after reset is undefined.

Write to MBj_ID, MBj_DL, MBj_Dm, and MBj_TS only when the related MCTL_TX[j] or MCTL_RX[j] register (j = 0 to 31) is 0x00 and the associated mailbox is not processing an abort request.

See Table 29.4 for detailed on register addresses.

Table 29.4 CAN_i mailbox memory mapping (i = 0)

Address	Message content
CAN _n (n = 0)	Memory mapping
0x4005_0200 + 1000 × n + 16 × j + 0	IDE, RTR, SID10 to SID6
0x4005_0200 + 1000 × n + 16 × j + 1	SID5 to SID0, EID17, EID16
0x4005_0200 + 1000 × n + 16 × j + 2	EID15 to EID8
0x4005_0200 + 1000 × n + 16 × j + 3	EID7 to EID0
0x4005_0200 + 1000 × n + 16 × j + 4	—
0x4005_0200 + 1000 × n + 16 × j + 5	Data length code (DLC[3:0])
0x4005_0200 + 1000 × n + 16 × j + 6	Data byte 0
0x4005_0200 + 1000 × n + 16 × j + 7	Data byte 1
0x4005_0200 + 1000 × n + 16 × j + 8	Data byte 2
0x4005_0200 + 1000 × n + 16 × j + 9	Data byte 3
0x4005_0200 + 1000 × n + 16 × j + 10	Data byte 4
0x4005_0200 + 1000 × n + 16 × j + 11	Data byte 5
0x4005_0200 + 1000 × n + 16 × j + 12	Data byte 6
0x4005_0200 + 1000 × n + 16 × j + 13	Data byte 7
0x4005_0200 + 1000 × n + 16 × j + 14	Time stamp upper byte
0x4005_0200 + 1000 × n + 16 × j + 15	Time stamp lower byte

Table 29.5 CAN data frame configuration

SID10 to SID6	SID5 to SID0	EID17 to EID16	EID15 to EID8	EID7 to EID0	DLC3 to DLC1	DATA0	DATA1	...	DATA7

The previous value of each mailbox is retained unless a new message is received.

29.2.6.1 MB_j_ID : Mailbox ID Register j (j = 0 to 31)

Base address: CAN0 = 0x4005_0000

Offset address: 0x200 + 0x10 × j

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	IDE	RTR	—	SID[10:0]												EID[17:0]
Value after reset:	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	EID[17:0]															
Value after reset:	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
17:0	EID[17:0]	Extended ID of data and remote frames*1	R/W
28:18	SID[10:0]	Standard ID of data and remote frames	R/W
29	—	The read value is undefined. The write value should be 0.	R/W
30	RTR	Remote Transmission Request 0: Data frame 1: Remote frame	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
31	IDE	ID Extension*2 0: Standard ID 1: Extended ID	R/W

Note 1. If the mailbox receives a standard ID message, the EID bits in the mailbox are undefined.

Note 2. The IDE bit is enabled when the CTLR.IDFM[1:0] bits are 10b (mixed ID mode). When the IDFM[1:0] bits are not 10b, only write 0 to IDE. It reads as 0.

EID[17:0] bits (Extended ID of data and remote frames)

The EID[17:0] bits set the extended ID of data frames and remote frames. They are used to transmit or receive extended ID messages.

SID[10:0] bits (Standard ID of data and remote frames)

The SID[10:0] bits set the standard ID of data frames and remote frames. They are used to transmit or receive both standard ID and extended ID messages.

RTR bit (Remote Transmission Request)

The RTR bit sets the frame format of data frames or remote frames.

- The receive mailbox only receives frames with the format specified in the RTR bit
- The transmit mailbox transmits with the frame format specified in the RTR bit
- The receive FIFO mailbox receives the data frame, remote frame, or both frames specified in the RTR bit in FIDCR0 and FIDCR1
- The transmit FIFO mailbox transmits the data frame or remote frame specified in the RTR bit in the transmit message

IDE bit (ID Extension)

The IDE bit sets the ID format to standard IDs or extended IDs. The IDE bit is enabled when the IDFM[1:0] bits in CTLR are 10b (mixed ID mode).

- The receive mailbox only receives the ID format specified in the IDE bit
- The transmit mailbox transmits with the ID format specified in the IDE bit
- The receive FIFO mailbox receives messages with the standard ID and extended ID settings specified in the IDE bit in FIDCR0 and FIDCR1
- The transmit FIFO mailbox transmits messages with the standard ID or extended ID settings specified in the IDE bit in the transmit message

29.2.6.2 MBj_DL : Mailbox Data Length Register j (j = 0 to 31)

Base address: CAN0 = 0x4005_0000

Offset address: 0x204 + 0x10 × j

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	DLC[3:0]			
Value after reset:	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
3:0	DLC[3:0]	Data Length Code*1 0x0: Data length = 0 byte 0x1: Data length = 1 byte 0x2: Data length = 2 bytes 0x3: Data length = 3 bytes 0x4: Data length = 4 bytes 0x5: Data length = 5 bytes 0x6: Data length = 6 bytes 0x7: Data length = 7 bytes Others: Data length = 8 bytes	R/W
15:4	—	The read values are undefined. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note 1. If the mailbox receives a message with data length (set in DLC[3:0]) of n bytes, where n is less than 8, the data in DATA_n to DATA₇ registers in the mailbox is undefined. DATA₀ to DATA₇ are data registers for this mailbox. For example, if data length is 6 bytes (DLC[3:0] = 0x6), the data in DATA₆ and DATA₇ registers is undefined.

DLC[3:0] bits (Data Length Code)

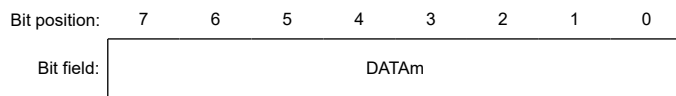
The DLC[3:0] bits specify the data length to be transmitted in data frames. When a remote frame is used to request data, this field specifies the requested data length.

When a data frame is received, the received data length is stored in this field. When a remote frame is received, this field stores the requested data length.

29.2.6.3 MB_j_D_m : Mailbox Data Register j (j = 0 to 31, m = 0 to 7)

Base address: CAN0 = 0x4005_0000

Offset address: (0x206 + m) + 0x10 × j



Value after reset: x x x x x x x x

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7:0	DATA ₀ to DATA ₇	Data Bytes 0 to 7*1 *2 DATA ₀ to DATA ₇ store the transmitted or received CAN message data. Transmission or reception starts from DATA ₀ . The bit order on the CAN bus is MSB-first, and transmission or reception starts from bit [7].	R/W

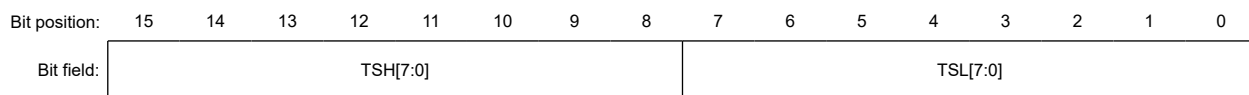
Note 1. If the mailbox receives a message with n bytes, where n is less than 8 bytes, the values of DATA_n to DATA₇ in the mailbox are undefined.

Note 2. If the mailbox receives a remote frame, the previous values of DATA₀ to DATA₇ in the mailbox are saved.

29.2.6.4 MB_j_TS : Mailbox Time Stamp Register j (j = 0 to 31)

Base address: CAN0 = 0x4005_0000

Offset address: 0x20E + 0x10 × j



Value after reset: x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x x

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7:0	TSL[7:0]	Time Stamp Lower Byte The TSH[7:0] and TSL[7:0] bits store the counter value of the time stamp when received messages are stored in the mailbox.	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
15:8	TSH[7:0]	Time Stamp Higher Byte The TSH[7:0] and TSL[7:0] bits store the counter value of the time stamp when received messages are stored in the mailbox.	R/W

29.2.7 MIER : Mailbox Interrupt Enable Register

Base address: CAN0 = 0x4005_0000

Offset address: 0x42C

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	MB31	MB30	MB29	MB28	MB27	MB26	MB25	MB24	MB23	MB22	MB21	MB20	MB19	MB18	MB17	MB16
Value after reset:	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	MB15	MB14	MB13	MB12	MB11	MB10	MB9	MB8	MB7	MB6	MB5	MB4	MB3	MB2	MB1	MB0
Value after reset:	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
31:0	MB31 to MB0	Interrupt Enable Bit [31] is associated with mailbox 31 (MB31), and bit [0] with mailbox 0 (MB0). 0: Disable interrupt 1: Enable interrupt	R/W

MIER can enable interrupts for each mailbox independently. This register is available in normal mailbox mode. Do not access this register in FIFO mailbox mode.

Each bit is associated with the mailbox having the same number. These bits enable or disable transmission and reception complete interrupts for the associated mailboxes as follows:

- Bit [0] in MIER corresponds to mailbox 0 (MB0)
- Bit [31] in MIER corresponds to mailbox 31 (MB31)

Write to MIER only when the associated MCTL_TX[j] or MCTL_RX[j] register (j = 0 to 31) is 0x00 and the associated mailbox is not processing a transmission or reception abort request.

29.2.8 MIER_FIFO : Mailbox Interrupt Enable Register for FIFO Mailbox Mode

Base address: CAN0 = 0x4005_0000

Offset address: 0x42C

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	MB29	MB28	—	—	MB25	MB24	MB23	MB22	MB21	MB20	MB19	MB18	MB17	MB16
Value after reset:	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	MB15	MB14	MB13	MB12	MB11	MB10	MB9	MB8	MB7	MB6	MB5	MB4	MB3	MB2	MB1	MB0
Value after reset:	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
23:0	MB23 to MB0	Interrupt Enable Bit [23] is associated with mailbox 23 (MB23), and bit [0] with mailbox 0 (MB0). 0: Disable interrupt 1: Enable interrupt	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
24	MB24	Transmit FIFO Interrupt Enable 0: Disable interrupt 1: Enable interrupt	R/W
25	MB25	Transmit FIFO Interrupt Generation Timing Control 0: Generate every time transmission completes 1: Generate when the transmit FIFO empties on transmission completion	R/W
27:26	—	The read values are undefined. The write value should be 0.	R/W
28	MB28	Receive FIFO Interrupt Enable 0: Disable interrupt 1: Enable interrupt	R/W
29	MB29	Receive FIFO Interrupt Generation Timing Control* ¹ 0: Generate every time reception completes 1: Generate when the receive FIFO becomes a buffer warning* ² on reception completion	R/W
31:30	—	The read values are undefined. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note 1. No interrupt request occurs when the receive FIFO becomes buffer warning because it is full.

Note 2. Buffer warning indicates a state in which the third message is stored in the receive FIFO.

MIER_FIFO can independently enable interrupts for each mailbox and FIFO. This register is available in FIFO mailbox mode. Do not access it in normal mailbox mode.

The MB0 to MB23 bits are associated with the mailbox of the same number. These bits enable or disable transmission and reception complete interrupts for the associated mailboxes:

- Bit [0] in MIER_FIFO is associated with mailbox 0 (MB0)
- Bit [23] in MIER_FIFO is associated with mailbox 23 (MB23)

MB24, MB25, MB28, and MB29 specify whether transmit and receive FIFO interrupts are enabled or disabled, and the timing of interrupt requests.

Write to MIER_FIFO only when the associated MCTL_TX[j] or MCTL_RX[j] register (j = 0 to 31) is 0x00 and the associated mailbox is not processing a transmission or reception abort request. In addition, change the bits in MIER_FIFO for the associated FIFO only when all of the following conditions are true:

- The TFE bit in TFCR is 0 and the TFEST bit is 1.
- The RFE bit in RFCR is 0 and the RFEST bit in RFCR is 1.

29.2.9 MCTL_TX[j] : Message Control Register for Transmit (j = 0 to 31)

Base address: CAN0 = 0x4005_0000

Offset address: 0x820 + 0x01 × j

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	TRMR EQ	RECR EQ	—	ONES HOT	—	TRMA BT	TRMA CTIVE	SENT DATA
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	SENTDATA	Transmission Complete Flag* ¹ * ² 0: Transmission not complete 1: Transmission complete	R/W
1	TRMACTIVE	Transmission-in-Progress Status Flag 0: Transmission pending or not requested 1: Transmission in progress	R
2	TRMABT	Transmission Abort Complete Flag* ¹ * ² 0: Transmission started, transmission abort failed because transmission completed, or transmission abort not requested 1: Transmission abort complete	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
3	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
4	ONESHOT	One-Shot Enable*2 *3 0: Disable one-shot transmission 1: Enable one-shot transmission	R/W
5	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
6	RECREQ	Receive Mailbox Request*2 *3 *4 *5 0: Do not configure for reception 1: Configure for reception	R/W
7	TRMREQ	Transmit Mailbox Request*2 *4 0: Do not configure for transmission 1: Configure for transmission	R/W

Note 1. Write 0 only. Writing 1 has no effect.

Note 2. When writing to bits of this register, write 1 to SENTDATA and TRMABT flags if these bits are not the write target.

Note 3. To enter one-shot transmit mode, write 1 to the ONESHOT bit at the same time as setting the TRMREQ bit to 1. To exit one-shot transmit mode, write 0 to the ONESHOT bit after the message is transmitted or aborted.

Note 4. Do not set both the RECREQ and TRMREQ bits to 1.

Note 5. When setting the RECREQ bit to 0, set the SENTDATA, TRMACTIVE, and TRMABT flags to 0 simultaneously.

MCTL_TX[j] sets mailbox j to transmit mode or receive mode. In transmit mode, MCTL_TX[j] also controls and indicates the transmission status. Do not access MCTL_TX[j] if mailbox j is in receive mode. Only write to MCTL_TX[j] in CAN operation or halt mode. Do not use MCTL_TX24 to MCTL_TX31 in FIFO mailbox mode.

SENTDATA flag (Transmission Complete Flag)

The SENTDATA flag is set to 1 when data transmission from the associated mailbox is complete. This flag is set to 0 through a software write. To set this flag to 0, first set the TRMREQ bit to 0. The SENTDATA flag and the TRMREQ bit cannot be set to 0 simultaneously. To transmit a new message from the associated mailbox, set the SENTDATA flag to 0.

TRMACTIVE flag (Transmission-in-Progress Status Flag)

The TRMACTIVE flag is set to 1 when the associated mailbox of the CAN module begins to transmit a message. It is set to 0 when the CAN module loses the CAN bus arbitration, when a CAN bus error occurs, or when data transmission completes.

TRMABT flag (Transmission Abort Complete Flag)

The TRMABT flag is set to 1 in the following cases:

- Following a transmission abort request, when the transmission abort is complete before starting transmission
- Following a transmission abort request, when the CAN module detects CAN bus arbitration-lost or a CAN bus error
- In one-shot transmission mode (RECREQ = 0, TRMREQ = 1, and ONESHOT = 1), when the CAN module detects a CAN bus arbitration-lost or a CAN bus error.

The TRMABT flag is not set to 1 when data transmission is complete. The SENTDATA flag is set to 1, and the TRMABT flag is set to 0 through a software write.

ONESHOT bit (One-Shot Enable)

When the ONESHOT bit is set to 1 in transmit mode (RECREQ = 0 and TRMREQ = 1), the CAN module transmits a message only one time. The CAN module does not transmit the message again if a CAN bus error or CAN bus arbitration-lost occurs. When transmission is complete, the SENTDATA flag is set to 1. If transmission does not complete because of a CAN bus error or CAN bus arbitration-lost error, the TRMABT flag is set to 1. Set the ONESHOT bit to 0 after the SENTDATA or TRMABT flag is set to 1.

RECREQ bit (Receive Mailbox Request)

The RECREQ bit selects the receive modes listed in [Table 29.10](#).

When the RECREQ bit is set to 1, the associated mailbox is configured for reception of a data or remote frame.

When the RECREQ bit is set to 0, the associated mailbox is not configured for reception of a data or remote frame.

Due to hardware protection, the RECREQ bit cannot be set to 0 through a software write during the following period:

- Hardware protection is started from the acceptance filter processing (the beginning of the CRC field)
- Hardware protection is released:
 - For the mailbox that is specified to receive the incoming message, after the received data is stored in the mailbox or a CAN bus error occurs. This means that the maximum period of hardware protection is from the beginning of the CRC field to the end of the 7th bit of EOF.
 - For the other mailboxes, after acceptance filter processing
 - If no mailbox is specified to receive the message, after acceptance filter processing.

When setting the RECREQ bit to 1, do not set the TRMREQ bit to 1. To change the configuration of a mailbox from transmission to reception, first abort the transmission, then set the SENTDATA and TRMABT flags to 0 before changing to reception.

Note: MCTL_TX[j].RECREQ is the mirror bit of MCTL_RX[j].RECREQ.

TRMREQ bit (Transmit Mailbox Request)

The TRMREQ bit selects the transmit modes listed in [Table 29.10](#).

When the TRMREQ bit is set to 1, the associated mailbox is configured for transmission of a data or remote frame.

When the TRMREQ bit is set to 0, the associated mailbox is not configured for transmission of a data or remote frame.

If the TRMREQ bit is changed from 1 to 0 to cancel the associated transmission request, either the TRMABT or SENTDATA flag is set to 1. When setting the TRMREQ bit to 1, do not set the RECREQ bit to 1. To change the configuration of a mailbox from reception to transmission, first abort the reception, then set the NEWDATA and MSGLOST flags to 0 before changing to transmission.

Note: MCTL_TX[j].TRMREQ is the mirror bit of MCTL_RX[j].TRMREQ.

29.2.10 MCTL_RX[j] : Message Control Register for Receive (j = 0 to 31)

Base address: CAN0 = 0x4005_0000

Offset address: 0x820 + 0x01 × j

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	TRMR EQ	RECR EQ	—	ONES HOT	—	MSG LOST	INVA L DATA	NEW DATA

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	NEWDATA	Reception Complete Flag*1 *2 0: No data received, or 0 was written to the flag 1: New message being stored or was stored in the mailbox	R/W
1	INVALIDDATA	Reception-in-Progress Status Flag 0: Message valid 1: Message being updated	R
2	MSGLOST	Message Lost Flag*1 *2 0: Message not overwritten or overrun 1: Message overwritten or overrun	R/W
3	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
4	ONESHOT	One-Shot Enable*2 *3 0: Disable one-shot reception 1: Enable one-shot reception	R/W
5	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
6	RECREQ	Receive Mailbox Request*2 *3 *4 *5 0: Do not configure for reception 1: Configure for reception	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7	TRMREQ	Transmit Mailbox Request* ² * ⁴ 0: Do not configure for transmission 1: Configure for transmission	R/W

Note 1. Write 0 only. Writing 1 has no effect.

Note 2. When writing to bits of this register, write 1 to the NEWDATA and MSGLOST flags if they are not the write target.

Note 3. To enter one-shot receive mode, write 1 to the ONESHOT bit at the same time as setting the RECREQ bit to 1. To exit one-shot receive mode, write 0 to the ONESHOT bit after writing 0 to the RECREQ bit and confirming that it is 0.

Note 4. Do not set both the RECREQ and TRMREQ bits to 1.

Note 5. When setting the RECREQ bit to 0, set MSGLOST, NEWDATA, and RECREQ to 0 simultaneously.

MCTL_RX[j] sets mailbox j to transmit or receive mode. In receive mode, MCTL_RX[j] also controls and indicates the reception status. Do not access MCTL_RX[j] if mailbox j is in transmit mode. Only write to the MCTL_RX[j] in CAN operation or halt mode. Do not use MCTL_RX24 to MCTL_RX31 in FIFO mailbox mode.

NEWDATA flag (Reception Complete Flag)

The NEWDATA flag is set to 1 when a new message is being stored or was stored in the mailbox. Always set this bit to 1 simultaneously with the INVALIDDATA flag. The NEWDATA flag is set to 0 through a software write. The NEWDATA flag cannot be set to 0 through a software write while the associated INVALIDDATA flag is 1.

INVALIDDATA flag (Reception-in-Progress Status Flag)

After the completion of a message reception, the INVALIDDATA flag is set to 1 while the received message is updated in the associated mailbox. The INVALIDDATA flag is set to 0 immediately after the message is stored. If the mailbox is read while the INVALIDDATA flag is 1, the data is undefined.

MSGLOST flag (Message Lost Flag)

The MSGLOST flag is set to 1 when the mailbox is overwritten or overrun by a new received message while the NEWDATA flag is 1. The MSGLOST flag is set to 1 at the end of the 6th bit of EOF. The MSGLOST flag is set to 0 through a software write.

In both overwrite and overrun modes, the MSGLOST flag cannot be set to 0 through a software write during the 5 PCLKB cycles following the 6th bit of EOF.

ONESHOT bit (One-Shot Enable)

When the ONESHOT bit is set to 1 in receive mode (RECREQ = 1 and TRMREQ = 0), the mailbox receives a message only one time. The mailbox does not behave as a receive mailbox after having received a message one time. The behavior of the NEWDATA and INVALIDDATA flags is the same as in normal receive mode. In one-shot receive mode, the MSGLOST flag is not set to 1. To set the ONESHOT bit to 0, first write 0 to the RECREQ bit and ensure that it is 0.

RECREQ bit (Receive Mailbox Request)

The RECREQ bit selects receive modes listed in [Table 29.10](#).

When the RECREQ bit is set to 1, the associated mailbox is configured for reception of a data or remote frame.

When the RECREQ bit is set to 0, the associated mailbox is not configured for reception of a data or remote frame.

Due to hardware protection, the RECREQ bit cannot be set to 0 through a software write during the following period:

- Hardware protection is started from the acceptance filter processing (the beginning of the CRC field)
- Hardware protection is released:
 - For the mailbox that is specified to receive the incoming message, after the received data is stored in the mailbox or a CAN bus error occurs. This means that the maximum period of hardware protection is from the beginning of the CRC field to the end of the 7th bit of EOF.
 - For the other mailboxes, after acceptance filter processing
 - If no mailbox is specified to receive the message, after acceptance filter processing.

When setting the RECREQ bit to 1, do not set the TRMREQ bit to 1. To change the configuration of a mailbox from transmission to reception, first abort the transmission, then set the SENTDATA and TRMABT flags to 0 before changing to reception.

Note: MCTL_RX[j].RECREQ is the mirror bit of MCTL_TX[j].RECREQ.

TRMREQ bit (Transmit Mailbox Request)

The TRMREQ bit selects the transmit modes listed in [Table 29.10](#).

When the TRMREQ bit is set to 1, the associated mailbox is configured for transmission of a data or remote frame.

When the TRMREQ bit is set to 0, the associated mailbox is not configured for transmission of a data or remote frame.

If the TRMREQ bit is changed from 1 to 0 to cancel the associated transmission request, either the TRMABT or SENTDATA flag is set to 1. When setting the TRMREQ bit to 1, do not set the RECREQ bit to 1. To change the configuration of a mailbox from reception to transmission, first abort the reception, then set the NEWDATA and MSGLOST flags to 0 before changing to transmission.

Note: MCTL_RX[j].TRMREQ is the mirror bit of MCTL_TX[j].TRMREQ.

29.2.11 RFCR : Receive FIFO Control Register

Base address: CAN0 = 0x4005_0000

Offset address: 0x848

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	RFES T	RFWS T	RFFS T	RFML F	RFUST[2:0]			RFE
Value after reset:	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	RFE	Receive FIFO Enable 0: Disable receive FIFO 1: Enable receive FIFO	R/W
3:1	RFUST[2:0]	Receive FIFO Unread Message Number Status 0 0 0: No unread message 0 0 1: 1 unread message 0 1 0: 2 unread messages 0 1 1: 3 unread messages 1 0 0: 4 unread messages 1 0 1: Reserved 1 1 0: Reserved 1 1 1: Reserved	R
4	RFMLF	Receive FIFO Message Lost Flag 0: Receive FIFO message not lost 1: Receive FIFO message lost	R/W
5	RFFST	Receive FIFO Full Status Flag 0: Receive FIFO not full 1: Receive FIFO full (4 unread messages)	R
6	RFWST	Receive FIFO Buffer Warning Status Flag 0: Receive FIFO is not buffer warning 1: Receive FIFO is buffer warning (3 unread messages)	R
7	RFEST	Receive FIFO Empty Status Flag 0: Unread message in receive FIFO 1: No unread message in receive FIFO	R

Write to RFCR in CAN operation or halt mode.

RFE bit (Receive FIFO Enable)

When the RFE bit is set to 1, the receive FIFO is enabled.

When the RFE bit is set to 0, the receive FIFO is disabled for reception and becomes empty (RFEST bit = 1). Write 0 to the RFE bit simultaneously with the RFMLF flag setting.

Do not set this bit to 1 in normal mailbox mode (MBM bit in CTRL = 0). Due to hardware protection, the RFE bit cannot be set to 0 through a software write during the following period:

- Hardware protection is started from acceptance filter processing (the beginning of the CRC field)
- When hardware protection is released:
 - If the receive FIFO is specified to receive the incoming message, after the received data is stored in the receive FIFO or a CAN bus error occurs. This means that the maximum period of hardware protection is from the beginning of the CRC field to the end of the 7th bit of EOF.
 - If the receive FIFO is not specified to receive the message, after acceptance filter processing.

RFUST[2:0] bits (Receive FIFO Unread Message Number Status)

The RFUST[2:0] bits indicate the number of unread messages in the receive FIFO. The values of the RFUST[2:0] bits are initialized to 000b when the RFE bit is set to 0.

RFMLF flag (Receive FIFO Message Lost Flag)

The RFMLF flag is set to 1 (receive FIFO message lost) when the receive FIFO receives a new message and is full. It is set to 1 at the end of the 6th bit of EOF.

The RFMLF flag is set to 0 through a software write. Writing 1 has no effect. In both overwrite and overrun modes, if the receive FIFO is full and determined to have received a message, the RFMLF flag cannot be set to 0 (no receive FIFO message lost) through a software write during the 5 PCLKB cycles following the 6th bit of EOF.

RFFST flag (Receive FIFO Full Status Flag)

The RFFST flag is set to 1 (receive FIFO is full) when the number of unread messages in the receive FIFO is 4. The flag is 0 (receive FIFO is not full) when the number of unread messages in the receive FIFO is less than 4. The flag is set to 0 when the RFE bit is 0.

RFWST flag (Receive FIFO Buffer Warning Status Flag)

The RFWST flag is set to 1 (receive FIFO is a buffer warning) when the number of unread messages in the receive FIFO is 3. The flag is 0 (receive FIFO is not a buffer warning) when the number of unread messages in the receive FIFO is less than 3 or equal to 4. The RFWST flag is set to 0 when the RFE bit is 0.

RFEST flag (Receive FIFO Empty Status Flag)

The RFEST flag is set to 1 (no unread message in receive FIFO) when the number of unread messages in the receive FIFO is 0. The flag is set to 1 when the RFE bit is set to 0. The flag is set to 0 (unread message in receive FIFO) when the number of unread messages in the receive FIFO is one or more.

Figure 29.2 shows the receive FIFO mailbox operation.

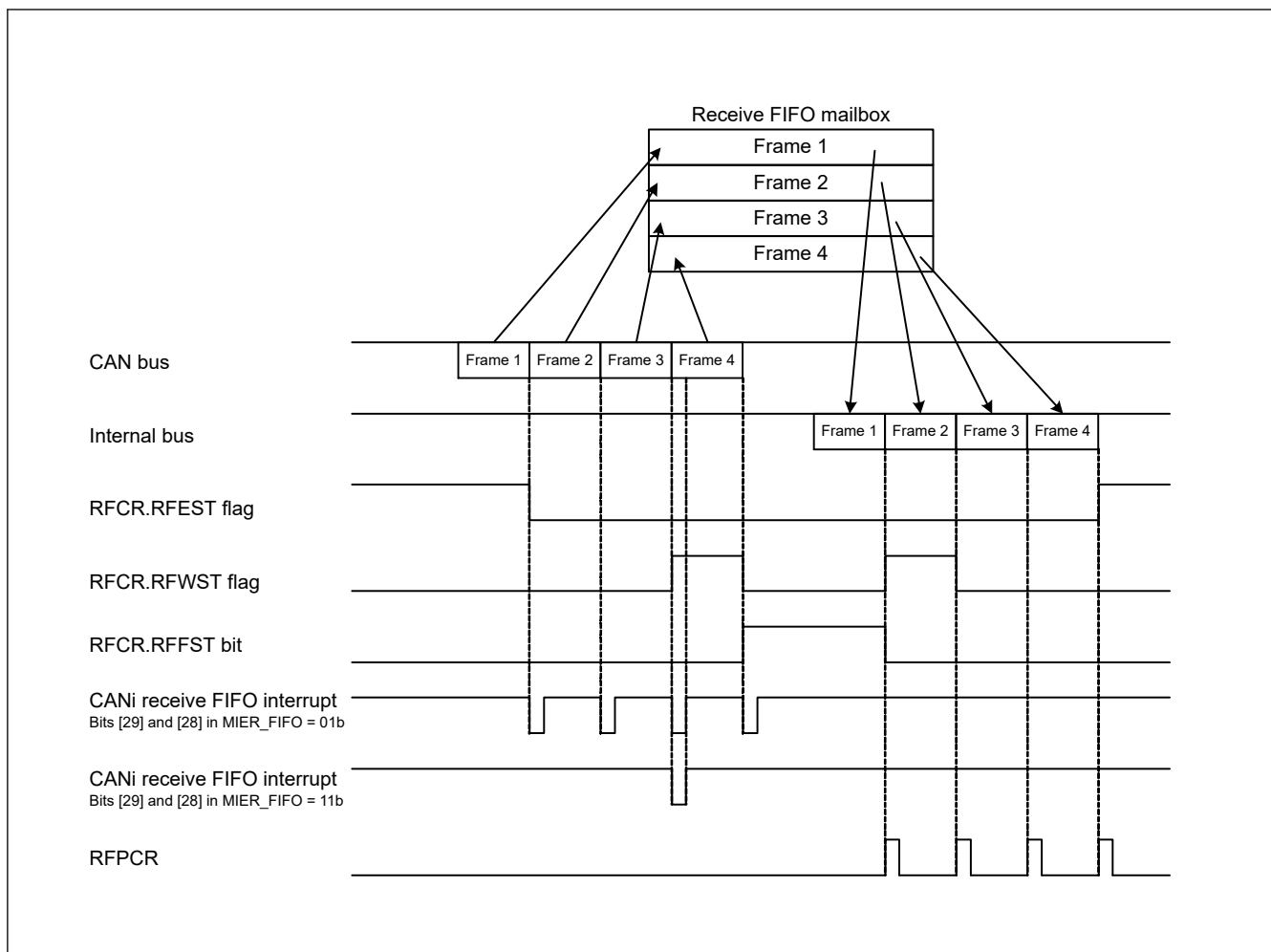


Figure 29.2 Receive FIFO mailbox operation when bits [29] and [28] in MIER_FIFO = 01b or 11b

29.2.12 RFPCR : Receive FIFO Pointer Control Register

Base address: CAN0 = 0x4005_0000

Offset address: 0x849

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:								

Value after reset: x x x x x x x x

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7:0	n/a	The CPU pointer for the receive FIFO is incremented by writing 0xFF to RFPCR.	W

When the receive FIFO is not empty, write 0xFF to RFPCR through software to increment the CPU pointer to the next mailbox location. Do not write to RFPCR when the RFE bit in RFCR is 0 (receive FIFO disabled).

Both the CAN and CPU pointers are incremented when a new message is received and the RFFST flag is 1 (receive FIFO is full) in overwrite mode. When the RFMLF flag is 1 in this condition, the CPU pointer does not increment on a software write to RFPCR.

29.2.13 TFCR : Transmit FIFO Control Register

Base address: CAN0 = 0x4005_0000

Offset address: 0x84A

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	TFEST	TFFST	—	—	TFUST[2:0]		TFE	
Value after reset:	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	TFE	Transmit FIFO Enable 0: Disable transmit FIFO 1: Enable transmit FIFO	R/W
3:1	TFUST[2:0]	Transmit FIFO Unsent Message Number Status 0 0 0: 0 unsent messages 0 0 1: 1 unsent message 0 1 0: 2 unsent messages 0 1 1: 3 unread messages 1 0 0: 4 unread messages 1 0 1: Reserved 1 1 0: Reserved 1 1 1: Reserved	R
5:4	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
6	TFFST	Transmit FIFO Full Status 0: Transmit FIFO not full 1: Transmit FIFO full (4 unsent messages)	R
7	TFEST	Transmit FIFO Empty Status 0: Unsent message in transmit FIFO 1: No unsent message in transmit FIFO	R

Write to TFCR in CAN operation or halt mode.

TFE bit (Transmit FIFO Enable)

Setting the TFE bit set to 1 enables the transmit FIFO. Setting the TFE bit to 0 empties the transmit FIFO (TFEST bit = 1), and unsent messages in the transmit FIFO are lost in the following ways:

- Immediately if a message from the transmit FIFO is not scheduled for the next transmission or is already in transmission
- On completion of transmission, on a CAN bus error, CAN bus arbitration-lost, or entry to CAN halt mode, if a message from the transmit FIFO is scheduled for the next transmission or is already in transmission.

Before setting the TFE bit to 1 again, ensure that the TFEST bit is set to 1. After setting the TFE bit to 1, write transmit data to mailbox 24.

Do not set the TFE bit to 1 in normal mailbox mode (MBM bit in CTRL = 0).

TFUST[2:0] bits (Transmit FIFO Unsent Message Number Status)

The TFUST[2:0] bits indicate the number of unsent messages in the transmit FIFO. These bits are set to 000b after the TFE bit is set to 0 and transmission is aborted or completes.

TFFST bit (Transmit FIFO Full Status)

The TFFST bit is set to 1 (transmit FIFO is full) when the number of unsent messages in the transmit FIFO is 4. The TFFST bit is set to 0 (transmit FIFO is not full) when the number of unsent messages in the transmit FIFO is less than 4. The TFFST bit is set to 0 when transmission from the transmit FIFO is aborted.

TFEST bit (Transmit FIFO Empty Status)

The TFEST bit is set to 1 (no message in transmit FIFO) when the number of unsent messages in the transmit FIFO is 0. The TFEST bit is set to 1 when transmission from the transmit FIFO is aborted. The TFEST bit is set to 0 (message in transmit FIFO) when the number of unsent messages in the transmit FIFO is not 0.

Figure 29.3 shows the transmit FIFO mailbox operation.

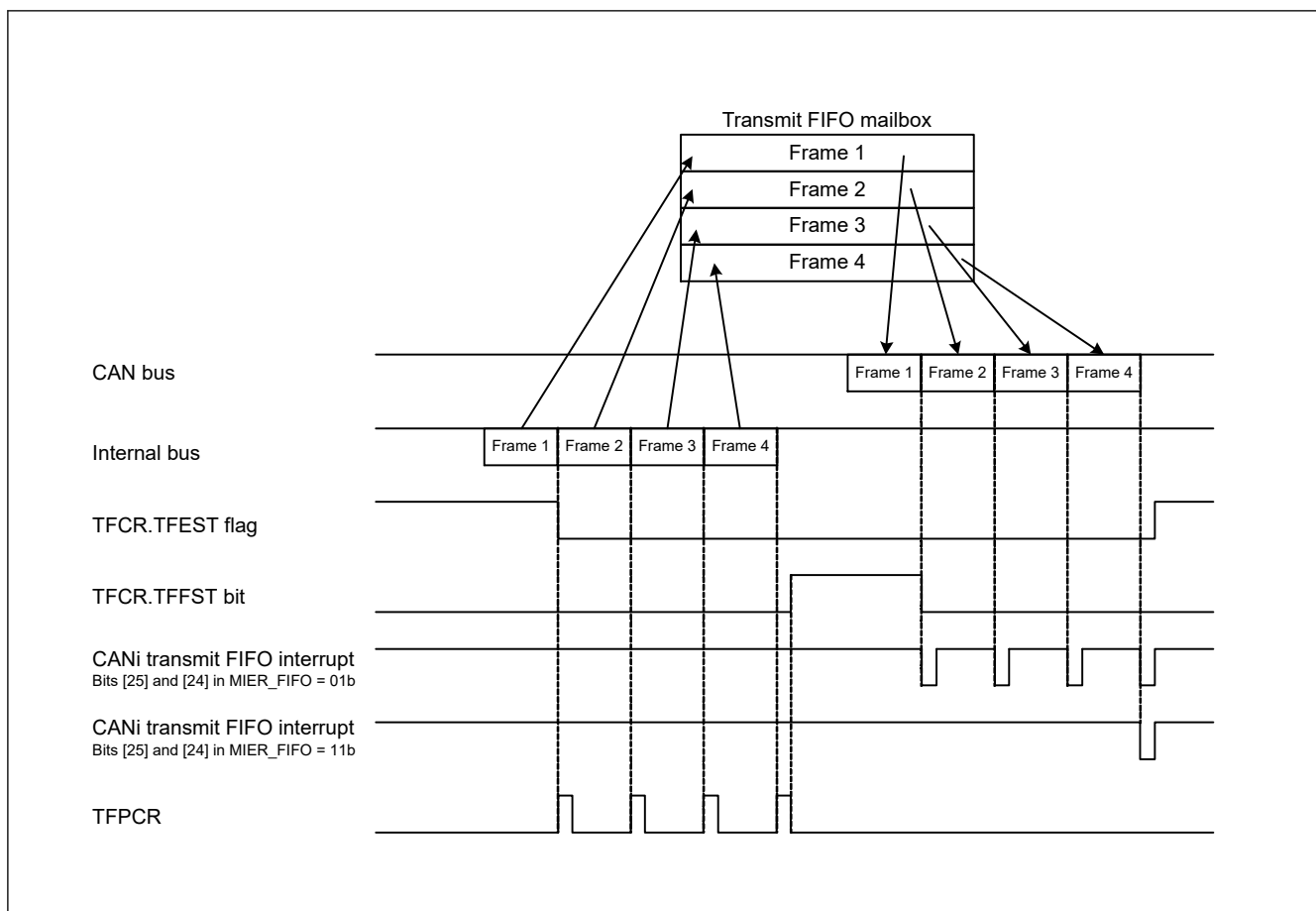


Figure 29.3 Transmit FIFO mailbox operation when bits [25] and [24] in MIER_FIFO = 01b or 11b

29.2.14 TFPCR : Transmit FIFO Pointer Control Register

Base address: CAN0 = 0x4005_0000

Offset address: 0x84B

Bit position: 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0

Bit field:

Value after reset: x x x x x x x x

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7:0	n/a	The CPU pointer for the transmit FIFO is incremented by writing 0xFF to TFPCR.	W

When the transmit FIFO is not full, write 0xFF to TFPCR through software to increment the CPU pointer for the transmit FIFO to the next mailbox location.

Do not write to TFPCR when the TFE bit in TFCR is 0 (transmit FIFO disabled).

29.2.15 STR : Status Register

Base address: CAN0 = 0x4005_0000

Offset address: 0x842

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	RECS T	TRMS T	BOST	EPST	SLPST	HLTST	RSTS T	EST	TABST	FMLS T	NMLS T	TFST	RFST	SDST	NDST
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	NDST	NEWDATA Status Flag 0: No mailbox with NEWDATA = 1 1: One or more mailboxes with NEWDATA = 1	R
1	SDST	SENTDATA Status Flag 0: No mailbox with SENTDATA = 1 1: One or more mailboxes with SENTDATA = 1	R
2	RFST	Receive FIFO Status Flag 0: Receive FIFO empty 1: Message in receive FIFO	R
3	TFST	Transmit FIFO Status Flag 0: Transmit FIFO is full 1: Transmit FIFO is not full	R
4	NMLST	Normal Mailbox Message Lost Status Flag 0: No mailbox with MSGLOST = 1 1: One or more mailboxes with MSGLOST = 1	R
5	FMLST	FIFO Mailbox Message Lost Status Flag 0: RFMLF = 0 1: RFMLF = 1	R
6	TABST	Transmission Abort Status Flag 0: No mailbox with TRMABT = 1 1: One or more mailboxes with TRMABT = 1	R
7	EST	Error Status Flag 0: No error occurred 1: Error occurred	R
8	RSTST	CAN Reset Status Flag 0: Not in CAN reset mode 1: In CAN reset mode	R
9	HLTST	CAN Halt Status Flag 0: Not in CAN halt mode 1: In CAN halt mode	R
10	SLPST	CAN Sleep Status Flag 0: Not in CAN sleep mode 1: In CAN sleep mode	R
11	EPST	Error-Passive Status Flag 0: Not in error-passive state 1: In error-passive state	R
12	BOST	Bus-Off Status Flag 0: Not in bus-off state 1: In bus-off state	R
13	TRMST	Transmit Status Flag 0: Bus idle or reception in progress 1: Transmission in progress or module in bus-off state	R
14	RECS	Receive Status Flag 0: Bus idle or transmission in progress 1: Reception in progress	R

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
15	—	This bit is read as 0.	R

NDST flag (NEWDATA Status Flag)

The NDST flag is set to 1 when at least one NEWDATA flag in MCTL_RX[j] (j = 0 to 31) is 1, regardless of the value of MIER or MIER_FIFO. The NDST flag is set to 0 when all NEWDATA flags are 0.

SDST flag (SENTDATA Status Flag)

The SDST flag is set to 1 when at least one SENTDATA flag in MCTL_TX[j] (j = 0 to 31) is 1, regardless of the value of MIER or MIER_FIFO. The SDST flag is set to 0 when all SENTDATA flags are 0.

RFST flag (Receive FIFO Status Flag)

The RFST flag is set to 1 when the receive FIFO is not empty. The RFST flag is set to 0 when the receive FIFO is empty or normal mailbox mode is selected.

TFST flag (Transmit FIFO Status Flag)

The TFST flag is set to 1 when the transmit FIFO is not full. The TFST flag is set to 0 when the transmit FIFO is full or normal mailbox mode is selected.

NMLST flag (Normal Mailbox Message Lost Status Flag)

The NMLST flag is set to 1 when at least one MSGLOST flag in MCTL_RX[j] (j = 0 to 31) is 1, regardless of the value of MIER or MIER_FIFO. The NMLST flag is set to 0 when all MSGLOST flags are 0.

FMLST flag (FIFO Mailbox Message Lost Status Flag)

The FMLST flag is set to 1 when the RFMLF flag in RFCR is 1, regardless of the value of MIER_FIFO. The FMLST flag is set to 0 when the RFMLF flag is 0.

TABST flag (Transmission Abort Status Flag)

The TABST flag is set to 1 when at least one TRMABT flag in MCTL_TX[j] (j = 0 to 31) is 1, regardless of the value of MIER or MIER_FIFO. The TABST flag is set to 0 when all TRMABT flags are 0.

EST flag (Error Status Flag)

The EST flag is set to 1 when at least one error is detected by EIFR, regardless of the value of EIER. The EST flag is set to 0 when no error is detected by EIFR.

RSTST flag (CAN Reset Status Flag)

The RSTST flag is set to 1 when the CAN module is in CAN reset mode. The RSTST flag is 0 when the CAN module is not in CAN reset mode. Even when the state changes from CAN reset mode to CAN sleep mode, the flag remains 1.

HLTST flag (CAN Halt Status Flag)

The HLTST flag is set to 1 when the CAN module is in CAN halt mode. The HLTST is set to 0 when the CAN module is not in CAN halt mode. Even when the state changes from CAN halt mode to CAN sleep mode, the flag remains 1.

SLPST flag (CAN Sleep Status Flag)

The SLPST flag is set to 1 when the CAN module is in CAN sleep mode. The SLPST flag is set to 0 when the CAN module is not in CAN sleep mode.

EPST flag (Error-Passive Status Flag)

The EPST flag is set to 1 when the value of TECR or RECR exceeds 127 and the CAN module is in the error-passive state ($128 \leq \text{TEC} < 256$ or $128 \leq \text{REC} < 256$). The EPST flag is set to 0 when the CAN module is not in the error-passive state.

BOST flag (Bus-Off Status Flag)

The BOST flag is set to 1 when the value of TECR exceeds 255 and the CAN module is in the bus-off state ($\text{TEC} \geq 256$). The BOST flag is set to 0 when the CAN module is not in the bus-off state.

TRMST flag (Transmit Status Flag)

The TRMST flag is set to 1 when the CAN module performs as a transmitter node or is in the bus-off state. The TRMST flag is set to 0 when the CAN module performs as a receiver node or is in the bus-idle state.

RECST flag (Receive Status Flag)

The RECST flag is set to 1 when the CAN module performs as a receiver node. The RECST flag is set to 0 when the CAN module performs as a transmitter node or is in the bus-idle state.

29.2.16 MSMR : Mailbox Search Mode Register

Base address: CAN0 = 0x4005_0000

Offset address: 0x853

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	MBSM[1:0]	
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
1:0	MBSM[1:0]	Mailbox Search Mode Select 0 0: Receive mailbox search mode 0 1: Transmit mailbox search mode 1 0: Message lost search mode 1 1: Channel search mode	R/W
7:2	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Write to MSMR in CAN operation or halt mode.

MBSM[1:0] bits (Mailbox Search Mode Select)

The MBSM[1:0] bits select the search mode for the mailbox search function.

When the MBSM[1:0] bits are 00b, receive mailbox search mode is selected. In this mode, the search targets are the NEWDATA flag in MCTL_RX[j] (j = 0 to 31) for the normal mailbox and the RFEST flag in RFCR.

When the MBSM[1:0] bits are 01b, transmit mailbox search mode is selected. In this mode, the search target is the SENTDATA flag in MCTL_TX[j].

When the MBSM[1:0] bits are 10b, message lost search mode is selected. In this mode, the search targets are the MSGLOST flag in MCTL_RX[j] for the normal mailbox and the RFMLF flag in RFCR.

When the MBSM[1:0] bits are 11b, channel search mode is selected. In this mode, the search target is CSSR. See [section 29.2.18. CSSR : Channel Search Support Register](#).

29.2.17 MSSR : Mailbox Search Status Register

Base address: CAN0 = 0x4005_0000

Offset address: 0x852

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	SEST	—	—	MBNST[4:0]				
Value after reset:	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
4:0	MBNST[4:0]	Search Result Mailbox Number Status These bits output the smallest mailbox number that is found in each search mode selected in the MSMR.	R
6:5	—	These bits are read as 0.	R

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7	SEST	Search Result Status 0: Search result found 1: No search result	R

MBNST[4:0] bits (Search Result Mailbox Number Status)

In all mailbox search modes, the MBNST[4:0] bits output the smallest found mailbox number. In receive mailbox search mode, transmit mailbox search mode, and message lost search mode, the value of the mailbox (the search result to be output) is updated under the following conditions:

- When the associated NEWDATA, SENTDATA, or MSGLOST flag is set to 0 for a mailbox output by MBNST[4:0]
- When the associated NEWDATA, SENTDATA, or MSGLOST flag is set to 1 for a mailbox with a smaller number than that in MBNST[4:0]

If the MBSM[1:0] bits are set to 00b (receive mailbox search mode) or 10b (message lost search mode), the receive FIFO (mailbox 28) is output when it is not empty and there are no unread received messages and no lost messages in any of the normal mailboxes 0 to 23. If the MBSM[1:0] bits are set to 01b (transmit mailbox search mode), the transmit FIFO (mailbox 24) is not output. Table 29.6 lists the behavior of the MBNST[4:0] bits in FIFO mailbox mode.

In channel search mode, the MBNST[4:0] bits output the associated channel number. After MSSR is read by software, the next target channel number is output.

SEST bit (Search Result Status)

The SEST bit is set to 1 (no search result) when no associated mailbox is found after searching all mailboxes. For example, in transmit mailbox search mode, the SEST bit is set to 1 when no SENTDATA flag is 1 for any mailbox. The SEST bit is set to 0 when at least one SENTDATA flag is 1. When the SEST bit is 1, the value of the MBNST[4:0] bits is undefined.

Table 29.6 Behavior of MBNST[4:0] bits in FIFO mailbox mode

MBSM[1:0] bits	Mailbox 24 (transmit FIFO)	Mailbox 28 (receive FIFO)
00b	Mailbox 24 is not output.	Mailbox 28 is output when no MCTL_RX[j].NEWDATA flag for the normal mailboxes is set to 1 (new message is being stored or was stored in the mailbox) and the receive FIFO is not empty.
01b		Mailbox 28 is not output.
10b		Mailbox 28 is output when no MCTL_RX[j].MSGLOST flag for the normal mailboxes is set to 1 (message is overwritten or overrun) and the RFCR.RFMLF flag is set to 1 (receive FIFO message lost) in the receive FIFO.
11b		Mailbox 28 is not output.

29.2.18 CSSR : Channel Search Support Register

Base address: CAN0 = 0x4005_0000

Offset address: 0x851

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:								

Value after reset: x x x x x x x x

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7:0	n/a	When the value for the channel search is input, the channel number is output to MSSR.	R/W

The bits that are set to 1 in CSSR, are encoded by an 8/3 encoder (the LSB position has the higher priority) and output to the MBNST[4:0] bits in MSSR. MSSR outputs the updated value whenever it is read by software.

Write to CSSR only when the MSMR.MBSM[1:0] bits are 11b (channel search mode). Write to CSSR in CAN operation mode or CAN halt mode.

Figure 29.4 shows the write and read operations of the CSSR and MSSR registers.

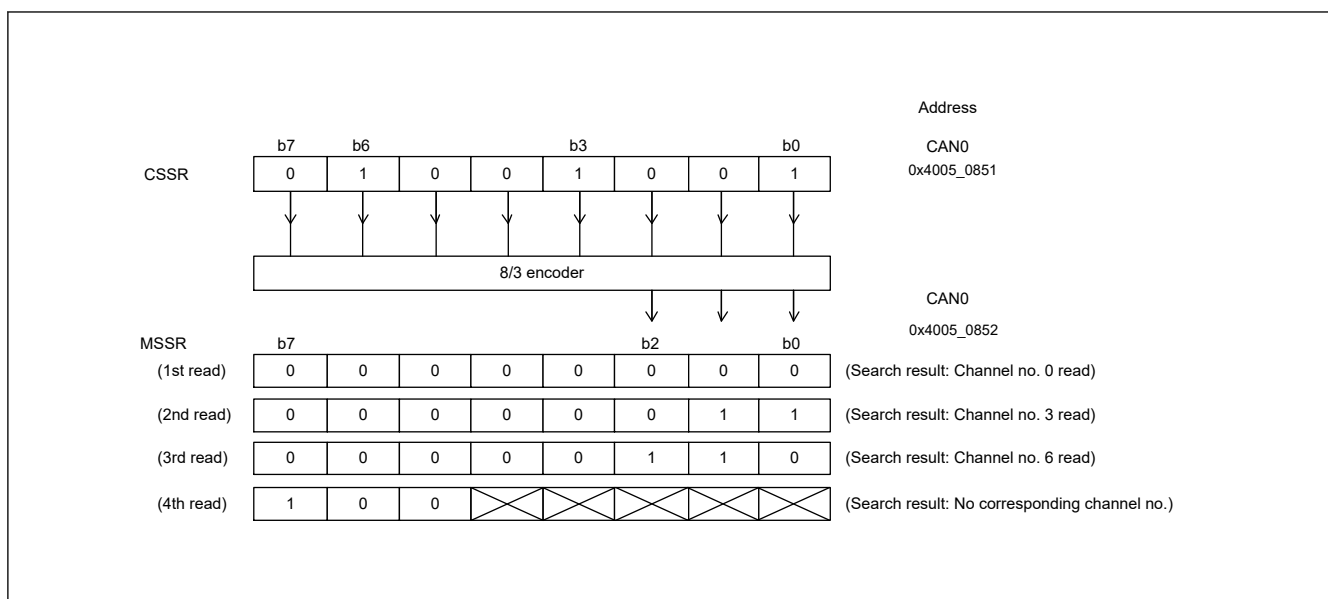


Figure 29.4 Write and read operations of the CSSR and MSSR registers

The value of CSSR is also updated whenever MSSR is read. On this read, the value prior to conversion by the 8/3 encoder can be read.

29.2.19 AFSR : Acceptance Filter Support Register

Base address: CAN0 = 0x4005_0000

Offset address: 0x856

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:																
Value after reset:	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
15:0	n/a	After the standard ID of a received message is written, the value converted for data table search can be read.	R/W

Note: Write to AFSR in CAN operation mode or CAN halt mode.

The acceptance filter support unit (ASU) can be used for data table (8 bits × 256) searches. In the data table, all standard IDs that are created are set as valid or invalid in bit units. When AFSR is written with data in 16-bit units including the SID[10:0] bits in MBj_ID (j = 0 to 31), in which a received standard ID is stored, a decoded row (byte offset) position and column (bit) position for data table search can be read. The ASU can be used for standard (11-bit) IDs only.

The ASU is enabled in the following cases:

- When the ID to be received cannot be masked by the acceptance filter. For example, if the IDs to be received are 0x078, 0x087, and 0x111.
- When there are too many IDs to receive, and the software filtering time is expected to be shortened.

Note: AFSR cannot be set in CAN reset mode.

Figure 29.5 shows the write and read operations in the AFSR register.

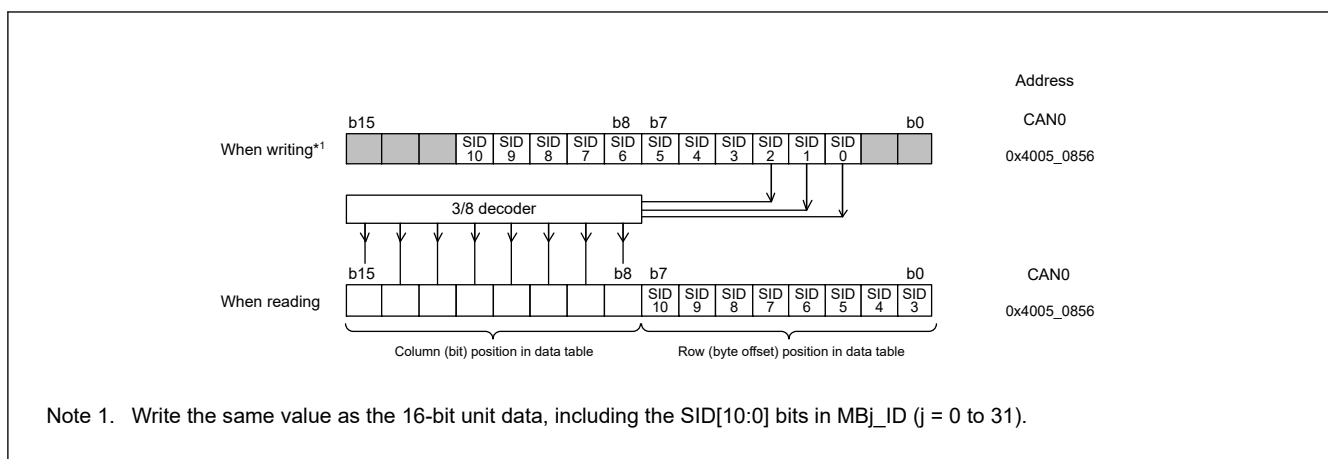


Figure 29.5 Write and read operations in the AFSR register

29.2.20 EIER : Error Interrupt Enable Register

Base address: CAN0 = 0x4005_0000

Offset address: 0x84C

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	BLIE	OLIE	ORIE	BORIE	BOEIE	EPIE	EWIE	BEIE

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	BEIE	Bus Error Interrupt Enable 0: Disable interrupt 1: Enable interrupt	R/W
1	EWIE	Error-Warning Interrupt Enable 0: Disable interrupt 1: Enable interrupt	R/W
2	EPIE	Error-Passive Interrupt Enable 0: Disable interrupt 1: Enable interrupt	R/W
3	BOEIE	Bus-Off Entry Interrupt Enable 0: Disable interrupt 1: Enable interrupt	R/W
4	BORIE	Bus-Off Recovery Interrupt Enable 0: Disable interrupt 1: Enable interrupt	R/W
5	ORIE	Overrun Interrupt Enable 0: Disable interrupt 1: Enable interrupt	R/W
6	OLIE	Overload Frame Transmit Interrupt Enable 0: Disable interrupt 1: Enable interrupt	R/W
7	BLIE	Bus Lock Interrupt Enable 0: Disable interrupt 1: Enable interrupt	R/W

The EIER register enables or disables each error interrupt source independently in EIFR. Write to EIER in CAN reset mode.

BEIE bit (Bus Error Interrupt Enable)

When the BEIE bit is 0, no error interrupt request occurs even if the BEIF flag in EIFR is 1. When the BEIE bit is 1, an error interrupt request occurs if the BEIF flag is set to 1.

EWIE bit (Error-Warning Interrupt Enable)

When the EWIE bit is 0, no error interrupt request occurs even if the EWIF flag in EIFR is 1. When the EWIE bit is 1, an error interrupt request is generated if the EWIF flag is set to 1.

EPIE bit (Error-Passive Interrupt Enable)

When the EPIE bit is 0, no error interrupt request occurs even if the EPIF flag in EIFR is 1. When the EPIE bit is 1, an error interrupt request occurs if the EPIF flag is set to 1.

BOEIE bit (Bus-Off Entry Interrupt Enable)

When the BOEIE bit is 0, no error interrupt request occurs even if the BOEIF flag in EIFR is 1. When the BOEIE bit is 1, an error interrupt request occurs if the BOEIF flag is set to 1.

BORIE bit (Bus-Off Recovery Interrupt Enable)

When the BORIE bit is 0, no error interrupt request occurs even if the BORIF flag in EIFR is 1. When the BORIE bit is 1, an error interrupt request occurs if the BORIF flag is set to 1.

ORIE bit (Overrun Interrupt Enable)

When the ORIE bit is 0, no error interrupt request occurs even if the ORIF flag in EIFR is 1. When the ORIE bit is 1, an error interrupt request occurs if the ORIF flag is set to 1.

OLIE bit (Overload Frame Transmit Interrupt Enable)

When the OLIE bit is 0, no error interrupt request occurs even if the OLIF flag in EIFR is 1. When the OLIE bit is 1, an error interrupt request occurs if the OLIF flag is set to 1.

BLIE bit (Bus Lock Interrupt Enable)

When the BLIE bit is 0, no error interrupt request occurs even if the BLIF flag in EIFR is 1. When the BLIE bit is 1, an error interrupt request occurs if the BLIF flag is set to 1.

29.2.21 EIFR : Error Interrupt Factor Judge Register

Base address: CAN0 = 0x4005_0000

Offset address: 0x84D

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	BLIF	OLIF	ORIF	BORIF	BOEIF	EPIF	EWIF	BEIF

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	BEIF	Bus Error Detect Flag 0: No bus error detected 1: Bus error detected	R/W
1	EWIF	Error-Warning Detect Flag 0: No error-warning detected 1: Error-warning detected	R/W
2	EPIF	Error-Passive Detect Flag 0: No error-passive detected 1: Error-passive detected	R/W
3	BOEIF	Bus-Off Entry Detect Flag 0: No bus-off entry detected 1: Bus-off entry detected	R/W
4	BORIF	Bus-Off Recovery Detect Flag 0: No bus-off recovery detected 1: Bus-off recovery detected	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
5	ORIF	Receive Overrun Detect Flag 0: No receive overrun detected 1: Receive overrun detected	R/W
6	OLIF	Overload Frame Transmission Detect Flag 0: No overload frame transmission detected 1: Overload frame transmission detected	R/W
7	BLIF	Bus Lock Detect Flag 0: No bus lock detected 1: Bus lock detected	R/W

If an event associated with an EIFR flag occurs, the associated bit in EIFR is set to 1, regardless of the setting of EIER.

Clear the bits to 0 through a software write. If a bit is set to 1 at the same time that the software clears it, it becomes 1.

When setting a single bit to 0 in software, use the transfer instruction (MOV) to ensure that only the specified bit is set to 0 and the other bits are set to 1. Writing 1 has no effect to these bit values.

BEIF flag (Bus Error Detect Flag)

The BEIF flag is set to 1 when a bus error is detected.

EWIF flag (Error-Warning Detect Flag)

The EWIF flag is set to 1 when the value of the receive error counter (REC) or transmit error counter (TEC) exceeds 95. The EWIF flag is set to 1 only when REC or TEC initially exceeds 95. If software writes 0 to this flag while the REC or TEC value remains greater than 95, the EWIF flag does not set to 1 until the REC or TEC value goes below 95, and then exceeds 95 again.

EPIF flag (Error-Passive Detect Flag)

The EPIF flag is set to 1 when the CAN error state becomes error-passive, when the REC or TEC value exceeds 127. The EPIF flag is set to 1 only when the REC or TEC value initially exceeds 127. If software writes 0 to this flag while REC or TEC remains greater than 127, the EPIF flag is not set to 1 until REC or TEC goes below 127, and then exceeds 127 again.

BOEIF flag (Bus-Off Entry Detect Flag)

The BOEIF flag is set to 1 when the CAN error state becomes bus-off, when the TEC value exceeds 255. The BOEIF flag is also set to 1 when the BOM[1:0] bits in CTLR are 01b (automatic entry to CAN halt mode on bus-off entry) and the CAN module becomes the bus-off state.

BORIF flag (Bus-Off Recovery Detect Flag)

The BORIF flag is set to 1 when the CAN module recovers from the bus-off state normally by detecting 11 consecutive bits 128 times in the following conditions:

- When the BOM[1:0] bits in CTLR are 00b
- When the BOM[1:0] bits in CTLR are 10b
- When the BOM[1:0] bits in CTLR are 11b

The BORIF flag is not set to 1 if the CAN module recovers from the bus-off state in the following conditions:

- When the CANM[1:0] bits in CTLR are set to 01b or 11b (CAN reset mode)
- When the RBOC bit in CTLR is set to 1 (forced return from bus-off)
- When the BOM[1:0] bits in CTLR are set to 01b
- When the BOM[1:0] bits in CTLR are set to 11b and the CANM[1:0] bits in CTLR are set to 10b (CAN halt mode) before normal recovery occurs

Table 29.7 lists the behavior of the BOEIF and BORIF flags for each CTLR.BOM[1:0] bits setting.

Table 29.7 Behavior of BOEIF and BORIF flags for each CTRL.BOM[1:0] setting

BOM[1:0] bits	BOEIF flag	BORIF flag
00b	Set to 1 on entry to the bus-off state	Sets to 1 on exit from the bus-off state
01b		Do not set to 1
10b		Set to 1 on exit from the bus-off state
11b		Set to 1 if normal bus-off recovery occurs before the CANM[1:0] bits are set to 10b (CAN halt mode)

ORIF flag (Receive Overrun Detect Flag)

The ORIF flag is set to 1 when a receive overrun occurs. This flag is not set to 1 in overwrite mode.

In overwrite mode, a reception complete interrupt request occurs if an overwrite condition occurs and the ORIF flag is not set to 1.

In overrun mode with normal mailbox mode, if an overrun occurs in any of mailboxes 0 to 31, the ORIF flag is set to 1. In overrun mode with FIFO mailbox mode, if an overrun occurs in any of mailboxes 0 to 23 or the receive FIFO, this flag is set to 1.

OLIF flag (Overload Frame Transmission Detect Flag)

The OLIF flag is set to 1 if the transmitting condition of an overload frame is detected when the CAN module is transmitting or receiving.

BLIF flag (Bus Lock Detect Flag)

The BLIF flag is set to 1 if 32 consecutive dominant bits are detected on the CAN bus while the CAN module is in CAN operation mode. After the BLIF flag is set to 1, 32 consecutive dominant bits are detected again in either of the following conditions:

- Recessive bits are detected after the BLIF flag changes to 0 from 1
- The CAN module enters CAN reset or halt mode and then enters CAN operation mode again after the BLIF flag changes to 0 from 1

29.2.22 RECR : Receive Error Count Register

Base address: CAN0 = 0x4005_0000

Offset address: 0x84E

Bit position: 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0

Bit field:

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7:0	n/a	Receive error count function. RECR increments or decrements the counter value based on the error status of the CAN module during reception.	R

RECR indicates the value of the receive error counter. See the CAN specification (ISO11898-1) for information on the increment and decrement conditions of the receive error counter.

The value of RECR in the bus-off state is undefined.

29.2.23 TECR : Transmit Error Count Register

Base address: CAN0 = 0x4005_0000

Offset address: 0x84F

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:								
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7:0	n/a	Transmit error count function. TECR increments or decrements the counter value based on the error status of the CAN module during transmission.	R

TECR indicates the value of the transmit error counter. See the CAN specification (ISO11898-1) for information on the increment and decrement conditions of the transmit error counter.

The value of TECR in the bus-off state is undefined.

29.2.24 ECSR : Error Code Store Register

Base address: CAN0 = 0x4005_0000

Offset address: 0x850

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	EDPM	ADEF	BE0F	BE1F	CEF	AEF	FEF	SEF
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	SEF	Stuff Error Flag ^{*1 *2} 0: No stuff error detected 1: Stuff error detected	R/W
1	FEF	Form Error Flag ^{*1 *2} 0: No form error detected 1: Form error detected	R/W
2	AEF	ACK Error Flag ^{*1 *2} 0: No ACK error detected 1: ACK error detected	R/W
3	CEF	CRC Error Flag ^{*1 *2} 0: No CRC error detected 1: CRC error detected	R/W
4	BE1F	Bit Error (recessive) Flag ^{*1 *2} 0: No bit error (recessive) detected 1: Bit error (recessive) detected	R/W
5	BE0F	Bit Error (dominant) Flag ^{*1 *2} 0: No bit error (dominant) detected 1: Bit error (dominant) detected	R/W
6	ADEF	ACK Delimiter Error Flag ^{*1 *2} 0: No ACK delimiter error detected 1: ACK delimiter error detected	R/W
7	EDPM	Error Display Mode Select ^{*3 *4} 0: Output first detected an error code 1: Output accumulated an error code	R/W

Note 1. Writing 1 has no effect on these bit values.

Note 2. To write 0 to the SEF, FEF, AEF, CEF, BE1F, BE0F, and ADEF bits, use the transfer (MOV) instruction to ensure that only the specified bit is set to 0 and the other bits are set to 1.

Note 3. Write to the EDPM bit in CAN reset or halt mode.

Note 4. If more than one error condition is detected simultaneously, all related bits are set to 1.

ECSR indicates whether an error occurs on the CAN bus. See the CAN specification (ISO11898-1) for the conditions when each error occurs.

Clear all the bits, except for the EDPM bit, to 0 through a software write. If the ECSR bit is set to 1 at the same time that software writes 0 to it, the bit becomes 1.

SEF flag (Stuff Error Flag)

The SEF flag is set to 1 when a stuff error is detected.

FEF flag (Form Error Flag)

The FEF flag is set to 1 when a form error is detected.

AEF flag (ACK Error Flag)

The AEF flag is set to 1 when an ACK error is detected.

CEF flag (CRC Error Flag)

The CEF flag is set to 1 when a CRC error is detected.

BE1F flag (Bit Error (recessive) Flag)

The BE1F flag is set to 1 when a recessive bit error is detected.

BE0F flag (Bit Error (dominant) Flag)

The BE0F flag is set to 1 when a dominant bit error is detected.

ADEF flag (ACK Delimiter Error Flag)

The ADEF flag is set to 1 when a form error is detected with the ACK delimiter during transmission.

EDPM bit (Error Display Mode Select)

The EDPM bit selects the output mode of ECSR. When the EDPM bit is set to 0, ECSR outputs the first error code. When the EDPM bit is set to 1, ECSR outputs the accumulated error code.

29.2.25 TSR : Time Stamp Register

Base address: CAN0 = 0x4005_0000

Offset address: 0x854

Bit position: 15 14 13 12 11 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0

Bit field:

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
15:0	n/a	Free-running counter value for the time stamp function	R

Note: Read TSR in 16-bit units.

Reading the TSR register returns the current value of the 16-bit free-running time stamp counter. The time stamp counter reference clock is configured in the TSPS[1:0] bits in CTRL. The counter stops in CAN sleep mode and CAN halt mode, and is initialized in CAN reset mode. The time stamp counter value is stored in the TSL[7:0] and TSH[7:0] bits in MBj_TS when a received message is stored in a receive mailbox.

29.2.26 TCR : Test Control Register

Base address: CAN0 = 0x4005_0000

Offset address: 0x858

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	TSTM[1:0]	TSTE	
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	TSTE	CAN Test Mode Enable 0: Disable CAN test mode 1: Enable CAN test mode	R/W
2:1	TSTM[1:0]	CAN Test Mode Select 0 0: Not CAN test mode 0 1: Listen-only mode 1 0: Self-test mode 0 (external loopback) 1 1: Self-test mode 1 (internal loopback)	R/W
7:3	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

TCR controls the CAN test mode. Write to TCR in CAN halt mode only.

(1) Listen-only mode

The CAN specification (ISO11898-1) recommends an optional bus monitoring mode. In listen-only mode, valid data frames and valid remote frames can be received. However, only recessive bits can be sent on the CAN bus. The ACK bit, overload flag, and active error flag cannot be sent.

Listen-only mode can be used for baud rate detection. Do not request transmission from any mailboxes in listen-only mode.

Figure 29.6 shows the connection when listen-only mode is selected.

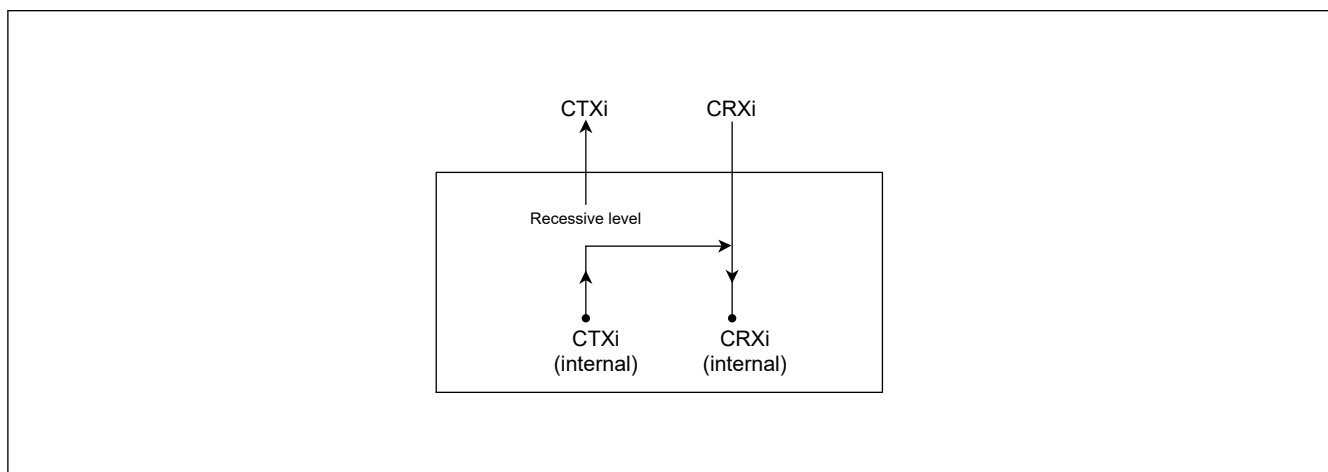


Figure 29.6 Connection when listen-only mode is selected (i = 0)

(2) Self-test mode 0 (external loopback)

Self-test mode 0 is provided for CAN transceiver tests. In this mode, the protocol module treats its own transmitted messages as those received by the CAN transceiver and stores them into the receive mailbox. To be independent from external stimulation, the protocol module generates the ACK bit. Connect the CTXi and CRXi pins to the transceiver.

Figure 29.7 shows the connection when self-test mode 0 is selected.

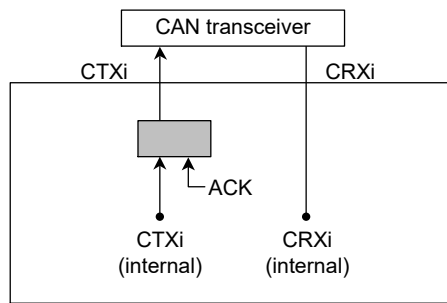


Figure 29.7 Connection when self-test mode 0 is selected ($i = 0$)

(3) Self-test mode 1 (internal loopback)

Self-test mode 1 is provided for self-test functions. In this mode, the protocol controller treats its transmitted messages as received messages and stores them into the receive mailbox. To be independent from external stimulation, the protocol controller generates the ACK bit.

In self-test mode 1, the protocol controller performs an internal feedback from the internal CTXi pin to the internal CRXi pin. The input value of the external CRXi pin is ignored. The external CTXi pin outputs only recessive bits. The CTXi and CRXi pins are not required to be connected to the CAN bus or any external device.

Figure 29.8 shows the connection when self-test mode 1 is selected.

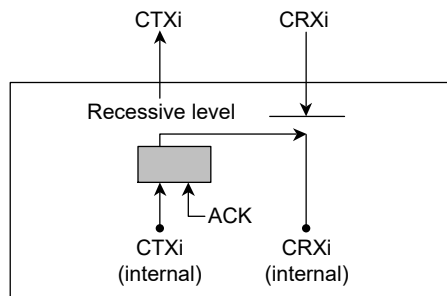


Figure 29.8 Connection when self-test mode 1 is selected ($i = 0$)

29.3 Operation Modes

The CAN module operation includes the following modes:

- CAN reset mode
- CAN halt mode
- CAN operation mode
- CAN sleep mode

Figure 29.9 shows the transitions between different operation modes.

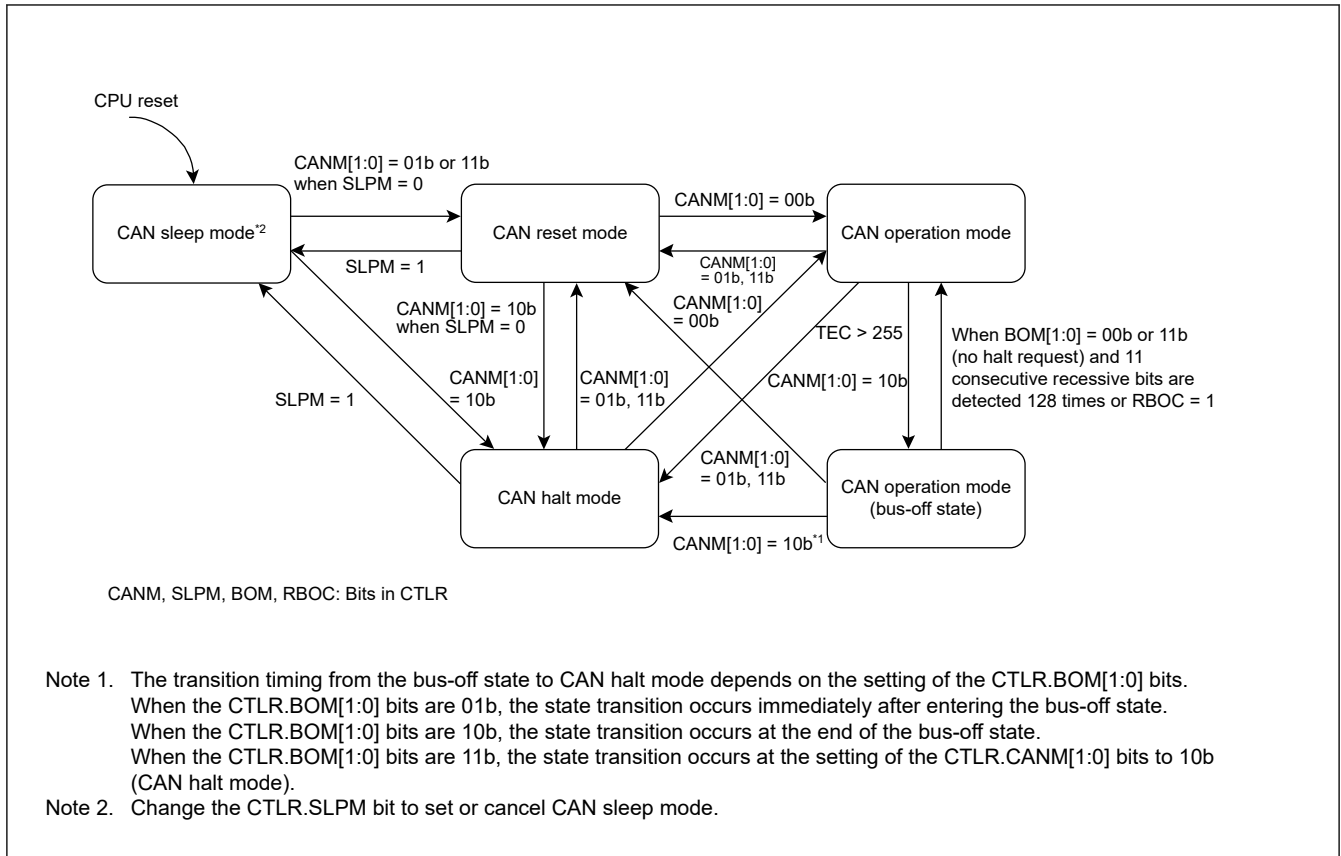


Figure 29.9 Transition between different operation modes

29.3.1 CAN Reset Mode

CAN reset mode is provided for CAN communication configuration. When the CTLR.CANM[1:0] bits are set to 01b or 11b, the CAN module enters CAN reset mode. The STR.RSTST bit is then set to 1. Do not change the CTLR.CANM[1:0] bits until the RSTST flag is 1. Set BCR before exiting CAN reset mode to enter any other modes.

The following registers are initialized to their reset values after entering CAN reset mode, and their initial values are saved during CAN reset mode:

- MCTL_TX[j] and MCTL_RX[j]
- STR (except for the SLPST and TFST bits)
- EIFR
- RECR
- TECR
- TSR
- MSSR
- MSMR
- RFCR
- TFCR
- TCR
- ECSR (except for the EDPM bit)

The following registers retain their previous values even after entering CAN reset mode:

- CTLR
- STR (only the SLPST and TFST bits)

- MIER and MIER_FIFO
- EIER
- BCR
- CSSR
- ECSR (only the EDPM bit)
- MBj_ID, MBj_DL, MBj_Dm and MBj_TS
- MKRk
- FIDCR0 and FIDCR1
- MKIVLR
- AFSR
- RFPCR
- TFPCR

29.3.2 CAN Halt Mode

CAN halt mode is used for mailbox configuration and test mode setting.

When the CTLR.CANM[1:0] bits are set to 10b, CAN halt mode is selected, and the STR.HLTST bit is set to 1. Do not change the CTLR.CANM[1:0] bits until the HLTST bit is 1.

See [Table 29.8](#) for the state transition conditions when transmitting or receiving.

All registers except for the RSTST, HLTST, and SLPST bits in STR remain unchanged when the CAN enters CAN halt mode. Do not change CTLR (except for the CANM[1:0] and SLPM bits) and EIER in CAN halt mode. BCR can be changed in CAN halt mode only when listen-only mode is selected for automatic baud rate detection.

Table 29.8 Operation in CAN reset mode and CAN halt mode

Operation mode	Receiver	Transmitter	Bus-off
CAN reset mode (forced transition) CANM[1:0] = 11b	CAN module enters CAN reset mode without waiting for the end of message reception.	CAN module enters CAN reset mode without waiting for the end of message transmission.	CAN module enters CAN reset mode without waiting for the end of bus-off recovery.
CAN reset mode CANM[1:0] = 01b	CAN module enters CAN reset mode without waiting for the end of message reception.	CAN module enters CAN reset mode after waiting for the end of message transmission. ^{*1 *4}	CAN module enters CAN reset mode without waiting for the end of bus-off recovery.
CAN halt mode	CAN module enters CAN halt mode after waiting for the end of message reception. ^{*2 *3}	CAN module enters CAN halt mode after waiting for the end of message transmission. ^{*1 *4}	• When the BOM[1:0] bits are 00b: A halt request from software is accepted only after bus-off recovery. • When the BOM[1:0] bits are 01b: CAN module automatically enters CAN halt mode without waiting for the end of bus-off recovery, regardless of a halt request from the software. • When the BOM[1:0] bits are 10b: CAN module automatically enters CAN halt mode after waiting for the end of bus-off recovery, regardless of a halt request from software. • When the BOM[1:0] bits are 11b: CAN module enters CAN halt mode without waiting for the end of bus-off recovery, if a halt is requested by software during bus-off.

Note: BOM[1:0] bits: Bits in CTLR.

Note 1. If transmission of multiple messages is requested, a mode transition occurs on completion of the first transmission. If the CAN reset mode is being requested during suspend transmission, mode transition occurs when the bus is idle, the next transmission ends, or the CAN module becomes a receiver.

Note 2. If the CAN bus is locked at the dominant level, the program can detect this state by monitoring the BLIF flag in EIFR.

Note 3. If a CAN bus error occurs during reception after CAN halt mode is requested, the CAN module transitions to CAN halt mode.

Note 4. If a CAN bus error or arbitration-lost occurs during transmission after CAN reset mode or CAN halt mode is requested, the CAN module transitions to the requested CAN mode.

29.3.3 CAN Sleep Mode

CAN sleep mode reduces power consumption by stopping the clock supply to the CAN module. After a reset from an MCU pin or a software reset, the CAN module starts from CAN sleep mode.

When the SLPM bit in CTLR is set to 1, the CAN module enters CAN sleep mode, and the SLPST bit in STR is set to 1. Do not change the value of the SLPM bit until the SLPST bit is 1. The other registers remain unchanged when the CAN module enters CAN sleep mode.

Write to the SLPM bit in CAN reset mode and CAN halt mode. Do not change any registers (except for the SLPM bit) during CAN sleep mode. Read operation is still allowed.

When the SLPM bit is set to 0, the CAN module is released from CAN sleep mode. When the CAN module exits CAN sleep mode, the other registers remain unchanged.

29.3.4 CAN Operation Mode (Excluding Bus-off State)

CAN operation mode is used for CAN communication.

When the CANM[1:0] bits in CTLR are set to 00b, the CAN module enters CAN operation mode. The RSTST and HLTST bits in STR are set to 0. Do not change the value of the CANM[1:0] bits until the RSTST and HLTST bits are 0.

If 11 consecutive recessive bits are detected after entering CAN operation mode:

- The CAN module becomes an active node on the network, which enables transmission and reception of CAN messages.
- Error monitoring of the CAN bus, such as receive and transmit error counters, is performed.

During CAN operation mode, the CAN module might be in one of the following three sub-modes, depending on the status of the CAN bus:

- Idle mode: No transmission or reception occurs.
- Receive mode: A CAN message sent by another node is being received.
- Transmit mode: A CAN message is being transmitted. The CAN module receives a message transmitted by the local node simultaneously when self-test mode 0 (TSTM[1:0] bits in TCR = 10b) or self-test mode 1 (TSTM[1:0] bits = 11b) is selected.

Figure 29.10 shows the sub-modes of CAN operation mode.

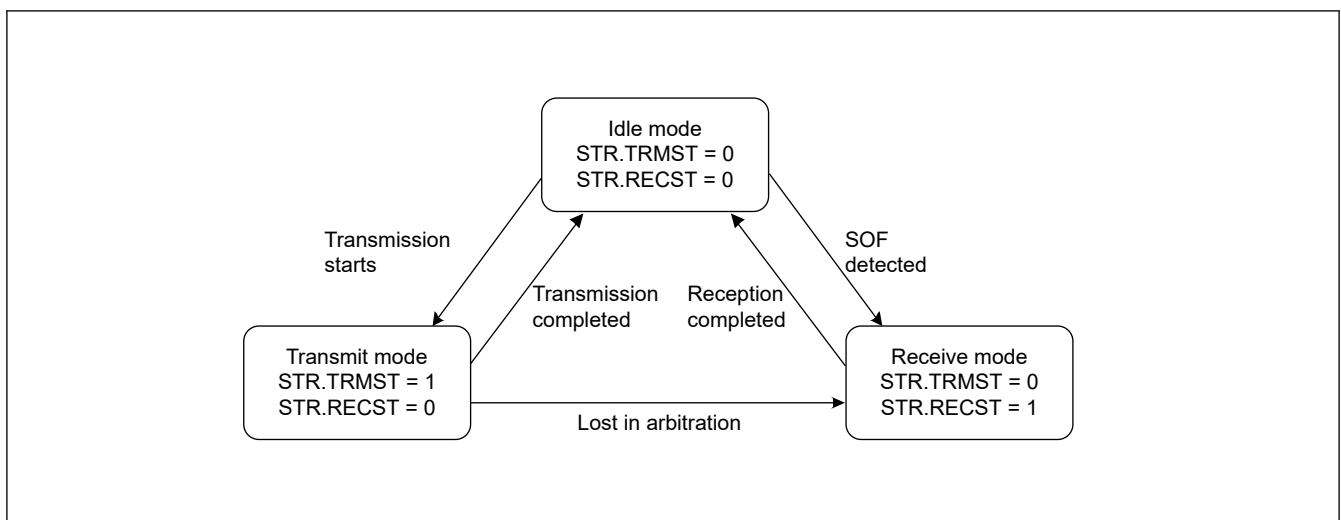


Figure 29.10 Sub-modes of CAN operation mode

29.3.5 CAN Operation Mode (Bus-off State)

The CAN module enters the bus-off state based on the incrementing or decrementing rules for the transmit and error counters defined in the CAN specifications.

The following cases apply when the CAN module is recovering from the bus-off state. When the CAN module is in the bus-off state, the values of the CAN module registers remain unchanged, except for those in STR, EIFR, RECR, TECR, and TSR.

(1) When CTLR.BOM[1:0] = 00b (normal mode)

The CAN module enters the error-active state after it completes recovery from the bus-off state and CAN communication is enabled. The BORIF flag in EIFR is set to 1 (bus-off recovery detected).

(2) When CTLR.RBOC = 1 (forced return from bus-off)

The CAN module enters the error-active state when it is in the bus-off state and the RBOC bit is 1. CAN communication is enabled again after 11b consecutive recessive bits are detected. The BORIF flag is not set to 1.

(3) When CTLR.BOM[1:0] = 01b (automatic transition to CAN halt mode on bus-off entry)

The CAN module enters CAN halt mode when it reaches the bus-off state. The BORIF flag is not set to 1.

(4) When CTLR.BOM[1:0] = 10b (automatic transition to CAN halt mode on bus-off end)

The CAN module enters CAN halt mode when it completes recovery from bus-off. The BORIF flag is set to 1.

(5) When CTLR.BOM[1:0] = 11b (automatic transition to CAN halt mode through software) and CTLR.CANM[1:0] = 10b (CAN halt mode) during bus-off state

The CAN module enters CAN halt mode when it is in the bus-off state and the CANM[1:0] bits are set to 10b (CAN halt mode). The BORIF flag is not set to 1.

If the CANM[1:0] bits are not set to 10b during bus-off, the same behavior as (1) applies.

29.4 Data Transfer Rate Configuration

This section describes how to configure the data transfer rate.

29.4.1 Clock Setting

The CAN module provides a CAN clock generator. [Figure 29.11](#) shows a block diagram of the CAN clock generator.

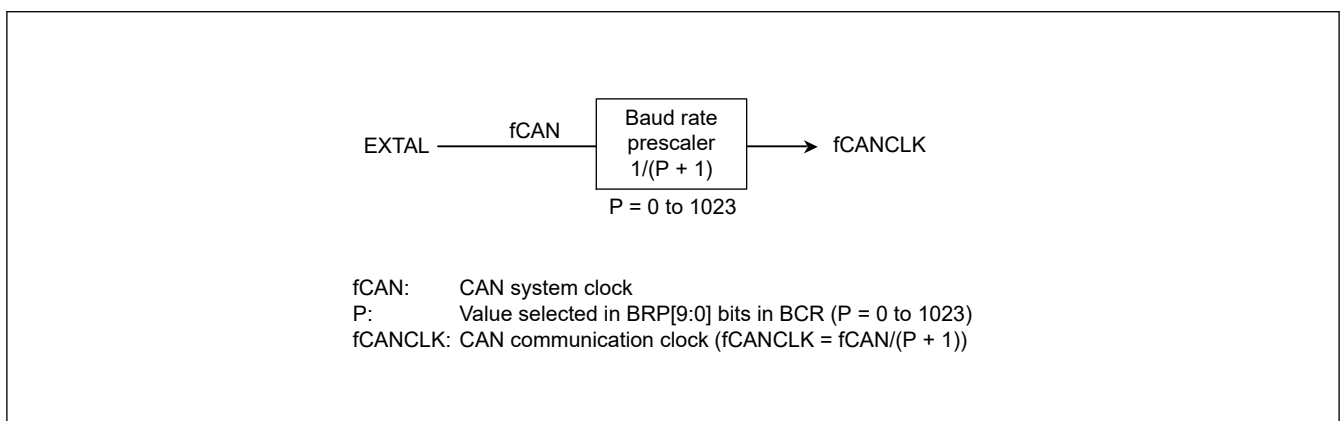
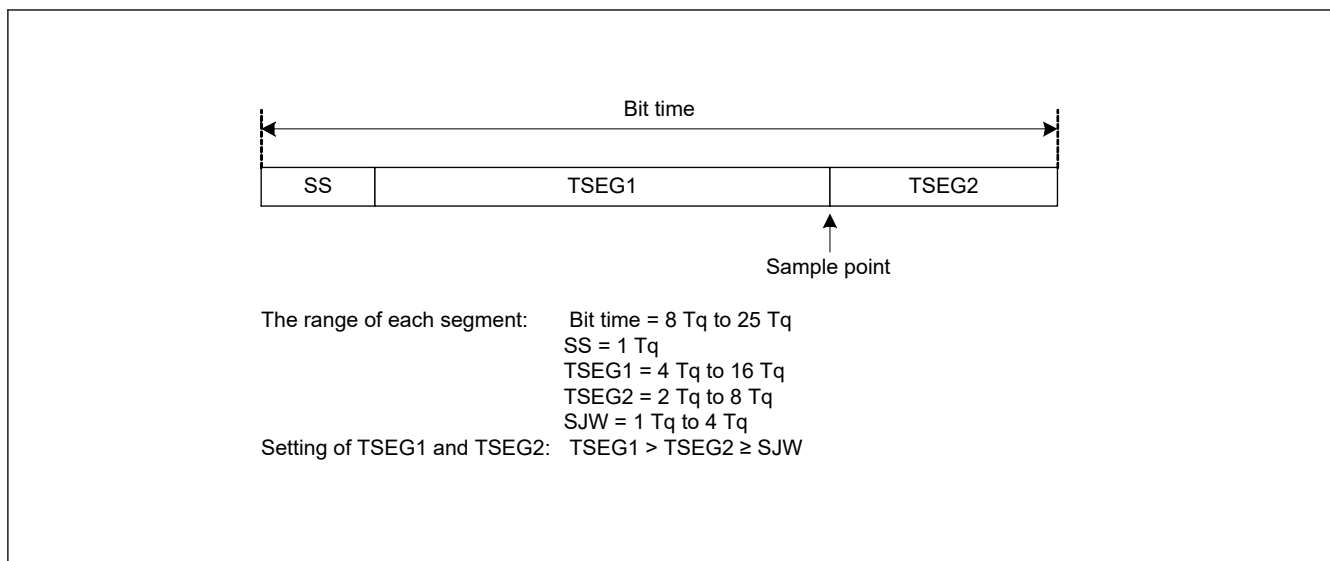


Figure 29.11 Block diagram of CAN clock generator

29.4.2 Bit Timing Setting

The bit timing consists of three segments as shown in [Figure 29.12](#).

**Figure 29.12 Bit timing**

29.4.3 Data Transfer Rate

The data transfer rate depends on the division value of fCAN (CAN system clock), the division value of the baud rate prescaler, and the Tq count for 1-bit time.

The division value of baud rate prescaler = P + 1 (P: 0 to 1023), where P is the BRP[9:0] setting in BCR.

$$\text{Data transfer rate (bps)} = \frac{f_{\text{CAN}}}{\text{Baud rate prescaler division value} \times \text{Tq count for 1 bit time}} = \frac{f_{\text{CANCLK}}}{\text{Tq count for 1 bit time}}$$

Table 29.9 lists data transfer rate examples.

Table 29.9 Data transfer rate examples

fCAN	20 MHz		
Data transfer rate	Tq count	P + 1	
1 Mbps	5 Tq	4	
	10 Tq	2	
500 kbps	5 Tq	8	
	10 Tq	4	
250 kbps	5 Tq	16	
	10 Tq	8	
125 kbps	5 Tq	32	
	10 Tq	16	
83.3 kbps	5 Tq	48	
	10 Tq	24	
33.3 kbps	5 Tq	120	
	8 Tq	75	
	10 Tq	60	

29.5 Mailbox and Mask Register Structure

Figure 29.13 shows the structure of the 32 mailbox registers: MBj_ID, MBj_DL, MBj_Dm, and MBj_TS.

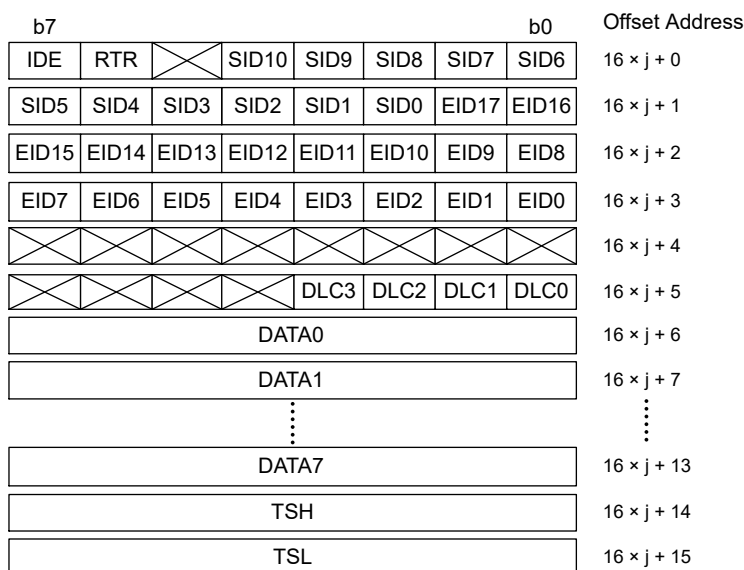


Figure 29.13 Structure of the mailbox registers ($j = 0$ to 31)

Figure 29.14 shows the structure of the eight mask registers MKRk.

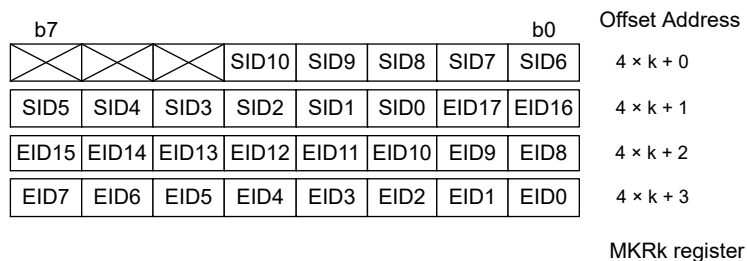


Figure 29.14 Structure of the MKRk registers ($k = 0$ to 7)

Figure 29.15 shows the structure of the two FIFO receive ID compare registers FIDCR0 and FIDCR1.

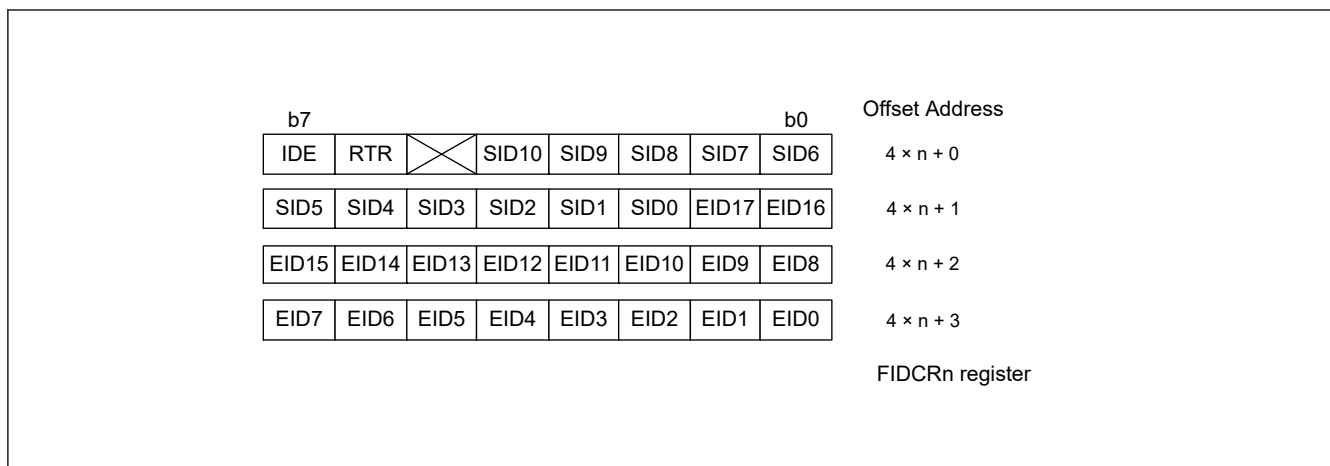


Figure 29.15 Structure of the FIDCRn registers (n = 0)

29.6 Acceptance Filtering and Masking Functions

The acceptance filtering and masking functions allow you to select and receive messages with multiple IDs for mailboxes within a specified range.

The MKRk registers can mask the standard ID and the extended ID of 29 bits.

- MKR0 controls mailboxes 0 to 3
- MKR1 controls mailboxes 4 to 7
- MKR2 controls mailboxes 8 to 11
- MKR3 controls mailboxes 12 to 15
- MKR4 controls mailboxes 16 to 19
- MKR5 controls mailboxes 20 to 23
- MKR6 controls mailboxes 24 to 27 in normal mailbox mode and the receive FIFO mailboxes 28 to 31 in FIFO mailbox mode
- MKR7 controls mailboxes 28 to 31 in normal mailbox mode and the receive FIFO mailboxes 28 to 31 in FIFO mailbox mode

MKIVLR disables acceptance filtering independently for each mailbox.

The IDE bit in MBj_ID is valid when the IDFM[1:0] bits in CTRLR are 10b (mixed ID mode).

The RTR bit in MBj_ID selects a data or remote frame.

In FIFO mailbox mode, normal mailboxes 0 to 23 use one associated register from MKR0 to MKR5 for acceptance filtering. The receive FIFO mailboxes 28 to 31 use two registers, MKR6 and MKR7, for acceptance filtering.

The receive FIFO also uses two registers, FIDCR0 and FIDCR1, for ID comparison. The EID[17:0], SID[10:0], RTR, and IDE bits in MB28 to MB31 for the receive FIFO are disabled. As acceptance filtering depends on the result of two logic AND operations, two ranges of IDs can be received into the receive FIFO. MKIVLR is disabled for the receive FIFO.

If different standard ID and extended ID values are set in the IDE bits in FIDCR0 and FIDCR1, both ID formats are received.

If different data frame and remote frame values are set in the RTR bits in FIDCR0 and FIDCR1, both data and remote frames are received.

When a combination of two ranges of IDs is not required, set the same mask value and the same ID into both the FIFO ID and mask registers.

Figure 29.16 shows the associations between the mask registers and mailboxes. Figure 29.17 shows the acceptance filtering.

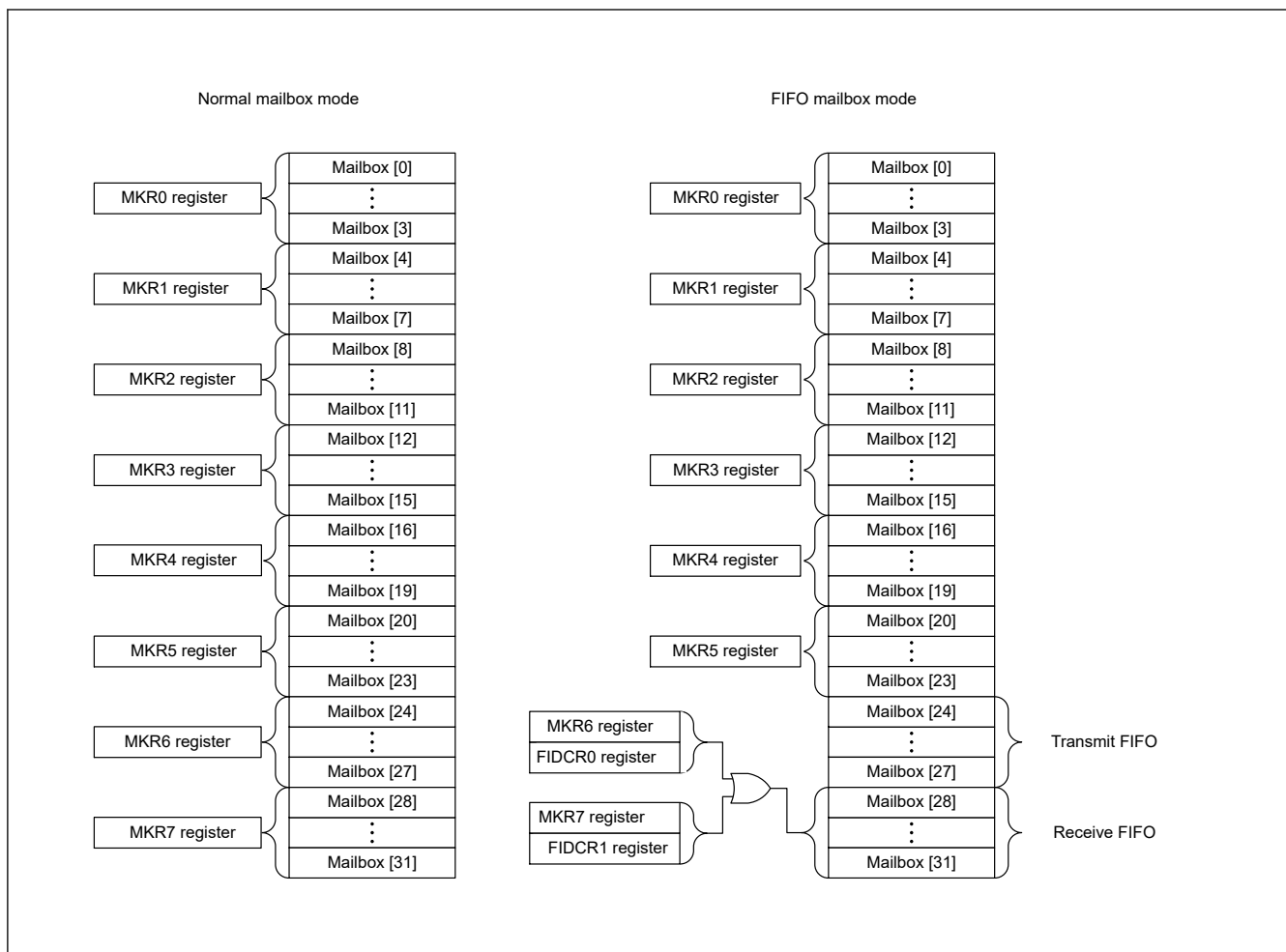


Figure 29.16 Associations between mask registers and mailboxes

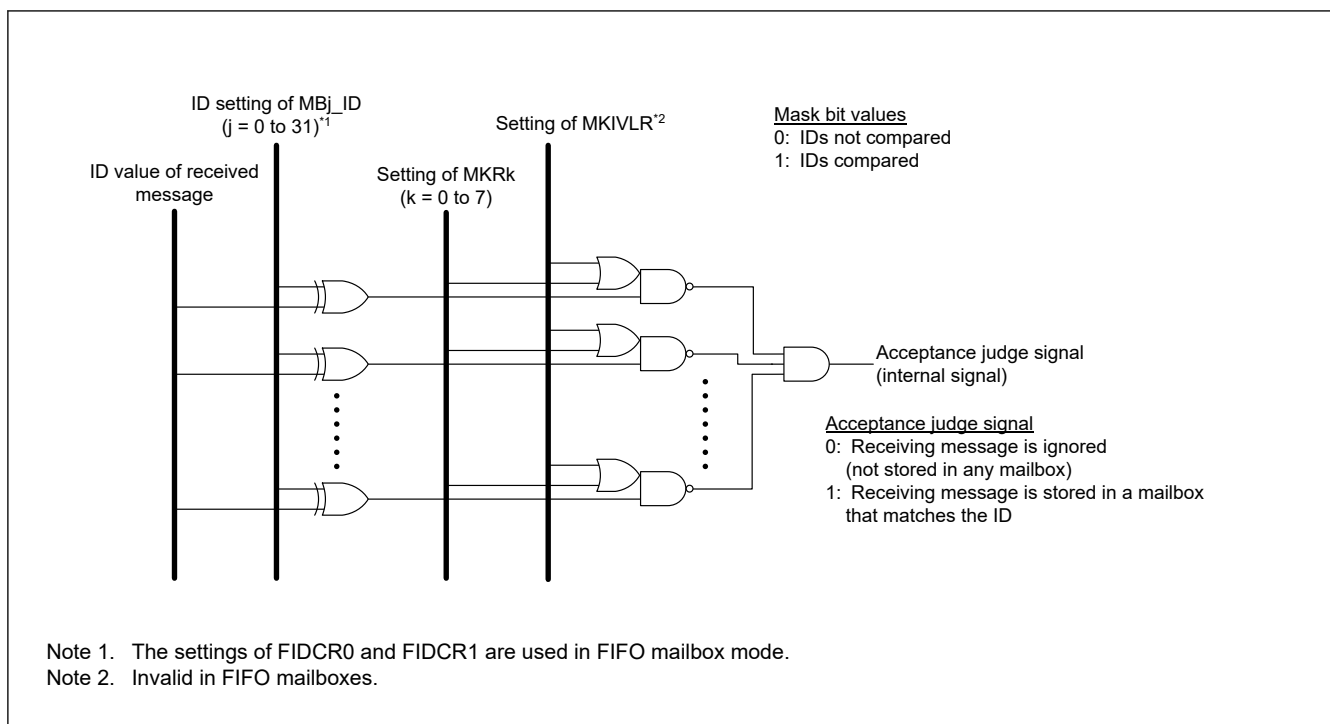


Figure 29.17 Acceptance filtering

29.7 Reception and Transmission

Table 29.10 lists the CAN communication mode settings.

Table 29.10 Settings for CAN receive and transmit modes

MCTL_TX[j].TRMREQ and MCTL_RX [j].TRMREQ	MCTL_TX[j].RECREQ and MCTL_RX [j].RECREQ	MCTL_TX[j].ONESHOT and MCTL_RX [j].ONESHOT	Mailbox communication mode
0	0	0	Mailbox disabled or transmission being aborted
0	0	1	Can be configured only when transmission or reception from a mailbox programmed in one-shot mode is aborted
0	1	0	Configured as a receive mailbox for a data or remote frame
0	1	1	Configured as a one-shot receive mailbox for a data or remote frame.
1	0	0	Configured as a transmit mailbox for a data or remote frame.
1	0	1	Configured as a one-shot transmit mailbox for a data or remote frame.
1	1	0	Do not set.
1	1	1	Do not set.

Note: j = 0 to 31

When a mailbox is configured as a receive mailbox or a one-shot receive mailbox, the following restrictions apply:

- Before configuring the mailbox, set MCTL_RX[j] to 0x00.
- A received message is stored in the first mailbox that matches the condition resulting from the receive mode settings and acceptance filtering. The matching mailbox with the smallest number takes priority for storing the received message.
- In CAN operation mode, the CAN module does not receive its own transmitted data even when the ID is a match. In self-test mode, however, the CAN module receives its own transmitted data and returns ACK.

When configuring a mailbox as a transmit mailbox or a one-shot transmit mailbox, the following constraint applies:

- Before configuring a mailbox, ensure that MCTL_TX[j] is 0x00 and that there is no pending abort process.

29.7.1 Reception

Figure 29.18 shows an operation example of data frame reception in overwrite mode. The example shows the overwriting of the first message when the CAN module receives two consecutive CAN messages that match the receiving conditions in MCTL_RX[j] (j = 0 to 31).

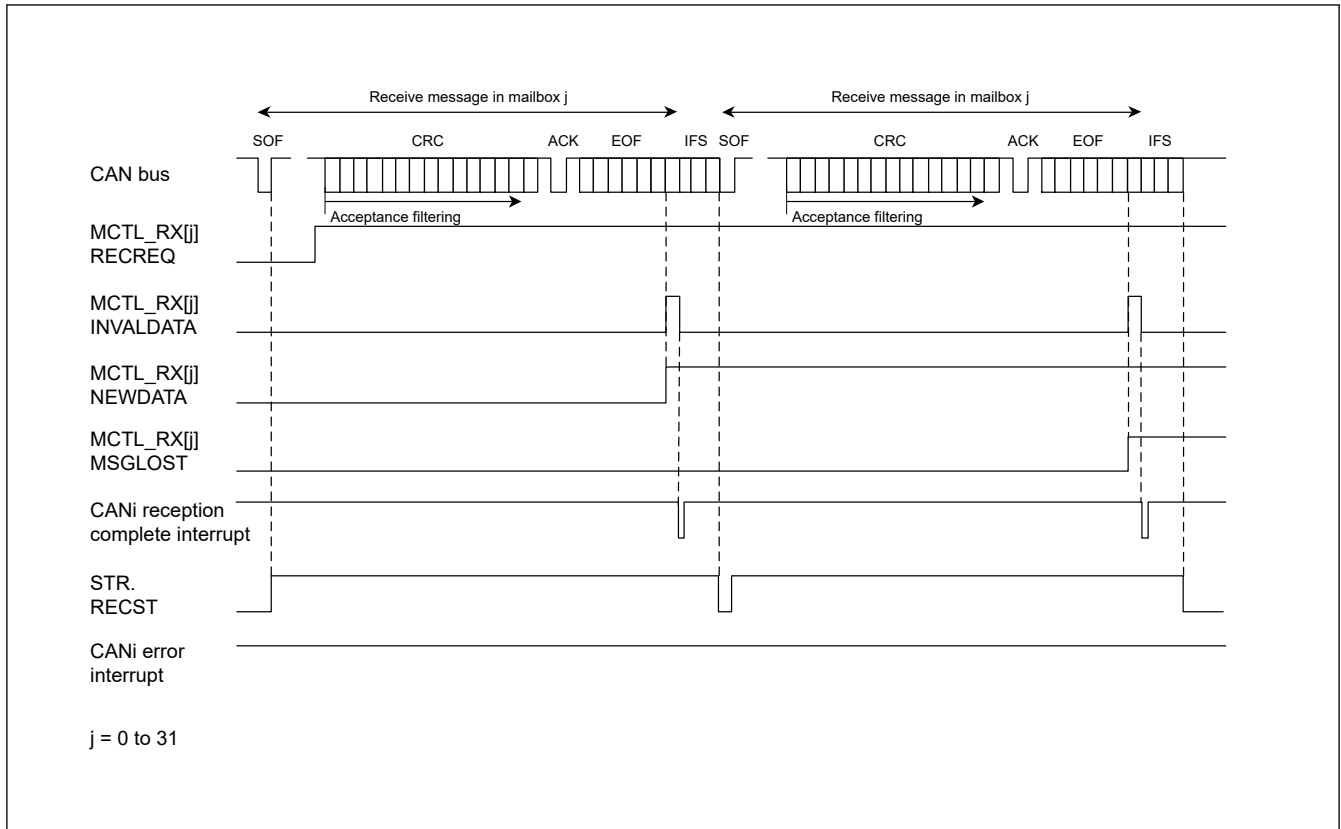


Figure 29.18 Operation example of data frame reception in overwrite mode

1. When an SOF is detected on the CAN bus, the RECST bit in STR is set to 1 (reception in progress) if the CAN module has no message ready to start transmission.
2. Acceptance filtering starts at the beginning of the CRC field to select the receive mailbox.
3. After a message is received, the NEWDATA flag in MCTL_RX[j] for the receive mailbox is set to 1 (a new message is being stored or was stored in the mailbox). The INVALIDDATA flag in MCTL_RX[j] is set to 1 (the message is being updated) at the same time, and then the INVALIDDATA flag is set to 0 (message valid) again after the complete message is transferred to the mailbox.
4. When the interrupt enable bit in MIER for the receive mailbox is 1 (interrupt enabled), the INVALIDDATA flag is set to 0, which triggers a CAN0 reception complete interrupt request.
5. After reading the message from the mailbox, the NEWDATA flag must be set to 0 by software.
6. In overwrite mode, if the next CAN message is received before the NEWDATA flag in MCTL_RX[j] is set to 1, the MSGLOST flag in MCTL_RX[j] is set to 1 (message was overwritten). The new received message is transferred to the mailbox. The CAN0 reception complete interrupt request occurs the same as in step 4.

Figure 29.19 shows an operation example of data frame reception in overrun mode. The example shows the overrunning of the second message when the CAN module receives two consecutive CAN messages that match the receiving conditions in MCTL_RX[j] (j = 0 to 31).

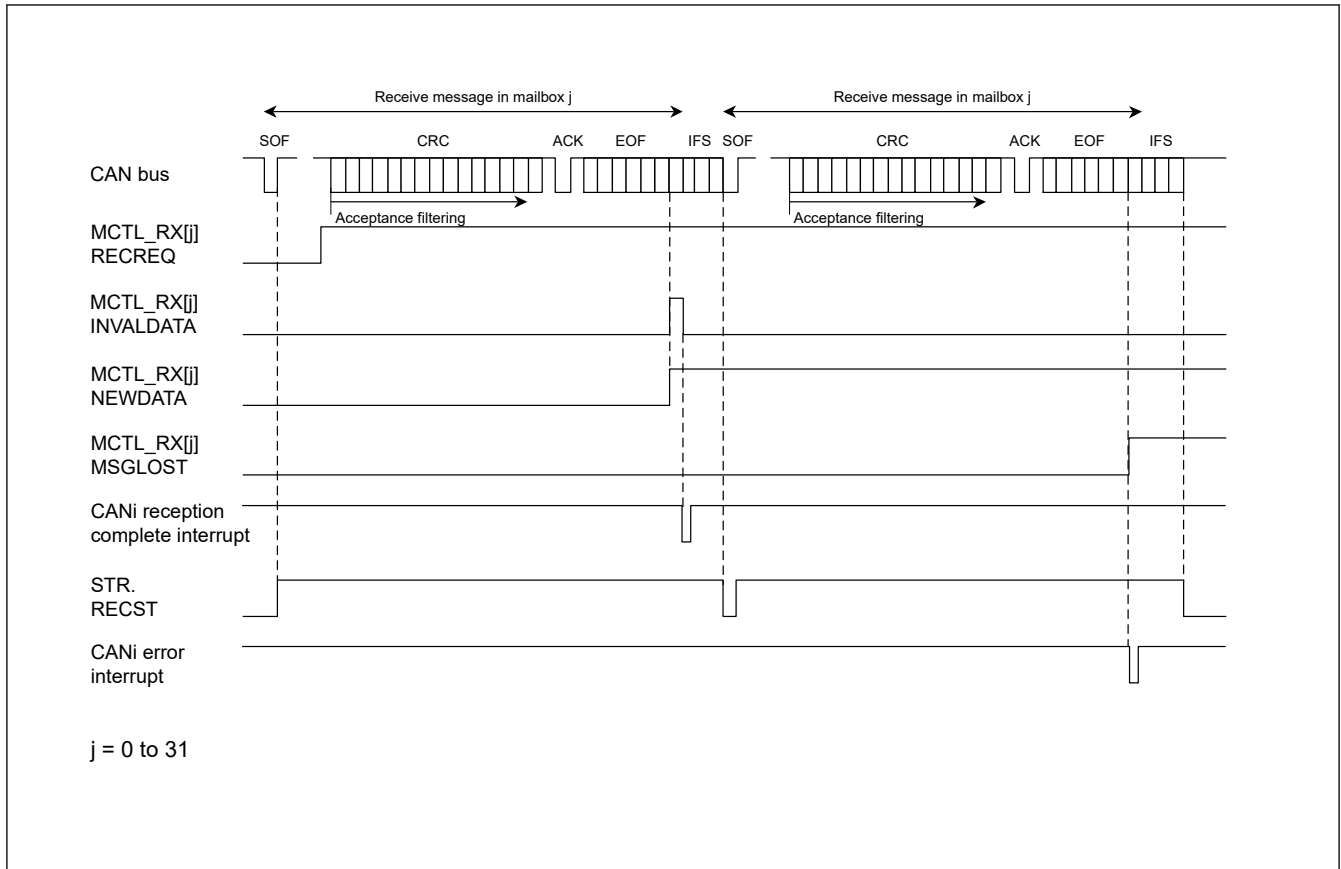


Figure 29.19 Operation example of data frame reception in overrun mode

1. When an SOF is detected on the CAN bus, the RECST bit in STR is set to 1 (reception in progress) if the CAN module has no message ready to start transmission.
2. Acceptance filtering starts at the beginning of the CRC field to select the receive mailbox.
3. After a message is received, the NEWDATA flag in MCTL_RX[j] for the receive mailbox is set to 1 (a new message is being stored or was stored in the mailbox). The INVALIDDATA flag in MCTL_RX[j] is set to 1 (the message is being updated) at the same time, and then the INVALIDDATA flag is set to 0 (message valid) again after the complete message is transferred to the mailbox.
4. When the interrupt enable bit in MIER for the receive mailbox is 1 (interrupt enabled), the INVALIDDATA flag is set to 0, which triggers a CAN0 reception complete interrupt request.
5. After reading the message from the mailbox, the NEWDATA flag must be set to 0 by software.
6. In overrun mode, if the next CAN message is received before the NEWDATA flag in MCTL_RX[j] is set to 0, the MSGLOST flag in MCTL_RX[j] is set to 1 (the message was saved). The new received message is discarded and a CANi error interrupt request occurs if the associated interrupt enable bit in EIER is set to 1 (interrupt enabled).

29.7.2 Transmission

Figure 29.20 shows an operation example of data frame transmission.

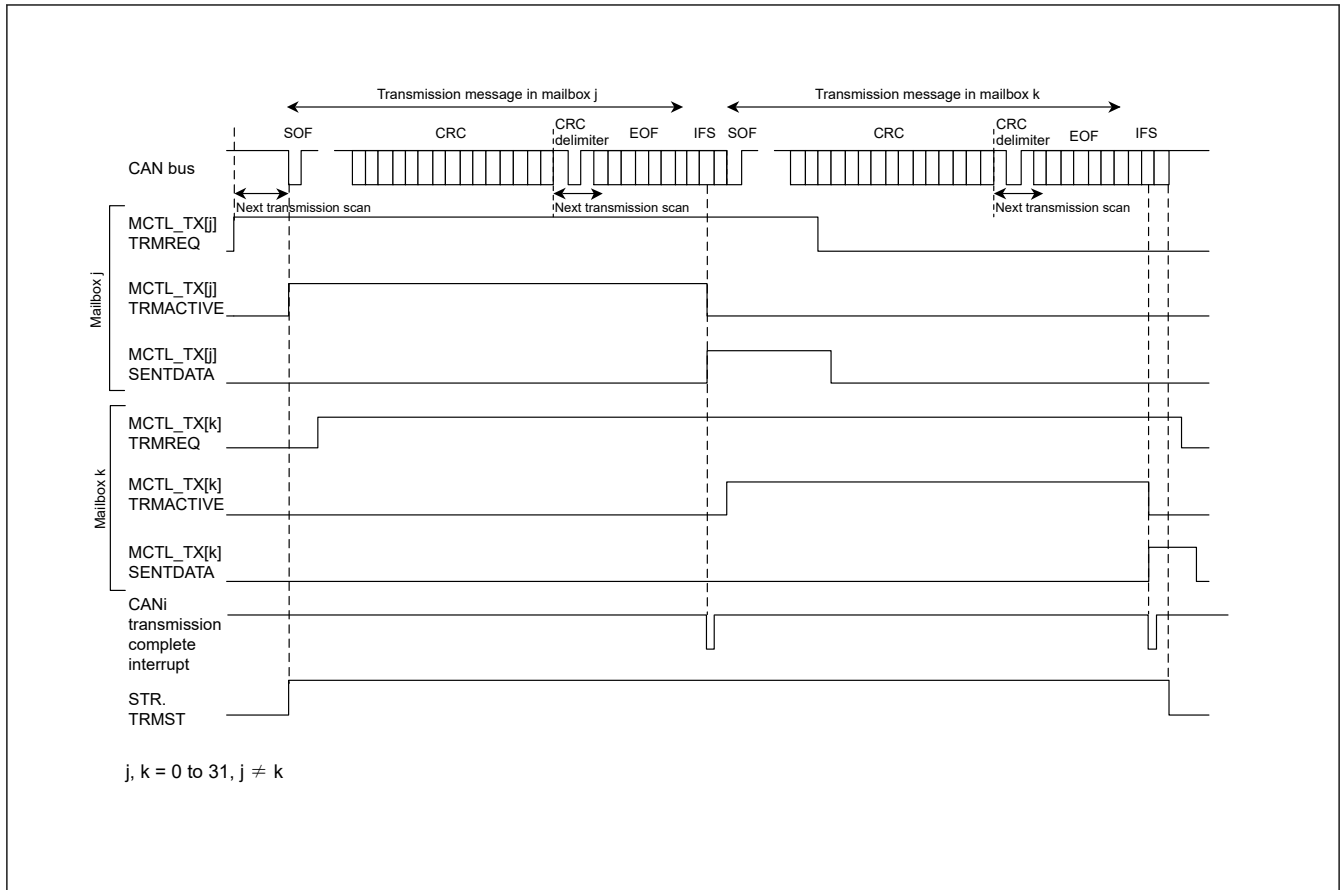


Figure 29.20 Operation example of data frame transmission

1. When a TRMREQ bit in MCTL_TX[j] ($j = 0$ to 31) is set to 1 (transmit mailbox) in the bus-idle state, mailbox scanning starts to decide the highest-priority mailbox for transmission. When the transmit mailbox is decided, the TRMACTIVE flag in MCTL_TX[j] is set to 1 (from acceptance of transmission request to completion of transmission, or error or arbitration-lost), the TRMST bit in STR is set to 1 (transmission in progress), and the CAN module starts transmission.^{*1}
2. If other TRMREQ bits are set, the transmission scanning starts with the CRC delimiter for the next transmission.
3. If transmission is complete without losing arbitration, the SENTDATA flag in MCTL_TX[j] is set to 1 (transmission complete) and the TRMACTIVE flag is set to 0 (transmission is pending or transmission is not requested). If the interrupt enable bit in MIER is 1 (interrupt enabled), the CANi transmission complete interrupt request is generated.
4. When requesting the next transmission from the same mailbox, set the SENTDATA flag and TRMREQ bit to 0, and then set the TRMREQ bit to 1 after checking that the SENTDATA flag and TRMREQ bit are set to 0.

Note 1. If arbitration is lost after the CAN module starts transmission, the TRMACTIVE flag is set to 0. Transmission scanning is performed again to search for the highest-priority transmit mailbox from the beginning of the CRC delimiter. If an error occurs either during transmission or following arbitration-lost, transmission scanning is performed again to search for the highest-priority transmit mailbox from the start of the error delimiter.

29.8 Interrupts

The CAN module provides the following interrupts for each channel. [Table 29.11](#) lists the CAN interrupts.

- CANi reception complete interrupt for mailboxes 0 to 31 (CANi_RXM)
- CANi transmission complete interrupt for mailboxes 0 to 31 (CANi_TXM)
- CANi receive FIFO interrupt (CANi_RXF)
- CANi transmit FIFO interrupt (CANi_TXF)
- CANi error interrupt (CANi_ERS)

Eight interrupt sources are available for CANi error interrupts. Check the EIFR to determine the interrupt sources:

- Bus error
- Error warning
- Error passive
- Bus-off entry
- Bus-off recovery
- Receive overrun
- Overload frame transmission
- Bus lock

Table 29.11 CAN interrupts

Module	Interrupt name	Interrupt source	Source flag
CANi (i = 0)	CANi_ERS	Bus lock detected	EIFR.BLIF
		Overload frame transmission detected	EIFR.OLIF
		Overrun detected	EIFR.ORIF
		Bus-off recovery detected	EIFR.BORIF
		Bus-off entry detected	EIFR.BOEIF
		Error passive detected	EIFR.EPIF
		Error warning detected	EIFR.EWIF
		Bus error detected	EIFR.BEIF
	CANi_RXF	Receive FIFO message received (MIER_FIFO.MB29 = 0)	RFCR.RFUST[2:0]
		Receive FIFO warning (MIER_FIFO.MB29 = 1)	
	CANi_TXF	Transmit FIFO message transmission completed (MIER_FIFO.MB25 = 0)	TFCR.TFUST[2:0]
		FIFO last message transmission completed (MIER_FIFO.MB25 = 1)	
	CANi_RXM	Mailbox 0 to 31 message received	MCTL_RX0.NEWDATA to MCTL_RX31.NEWDATA
	CANi_TXM	Mailbox 0 to 31 message transmission completed	MCTL_TX0.SENTDATA to MCTL_TX31.SENTDATA

29.9 Usage Notes

29.9.1 Settings for the Module-stop State

The MSTPCRB can enable or disable CAN operation. The CAN module is initially stopped after reset. Releasing the module-stop state enables access to the registers. For details, see [section 10, Low Power Modes](#).

29.9.2 Settings for the Operating Clock

The settings for the operating clock can be made as follows:

- The following clock constraint must be satisfied for the CAN module:

$$PCLKB \geq CANMCLK$$

- The clock frequency ratio of ICLK and PCLKB must be 2:1 when using the CAN module. Operation is not guaranteed for other settings.

30. Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI)

30.1 Overview

The Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI) has 1 channel. The SPI provides high-speed full-duplex synchronous serial communications with multiple processors and peripheral devices. [Table 30.1](#) lists the SPI specifications, [Figure 30.1](#) shows a block diagram, and [Table 30.2](#) lists the I/O pins.

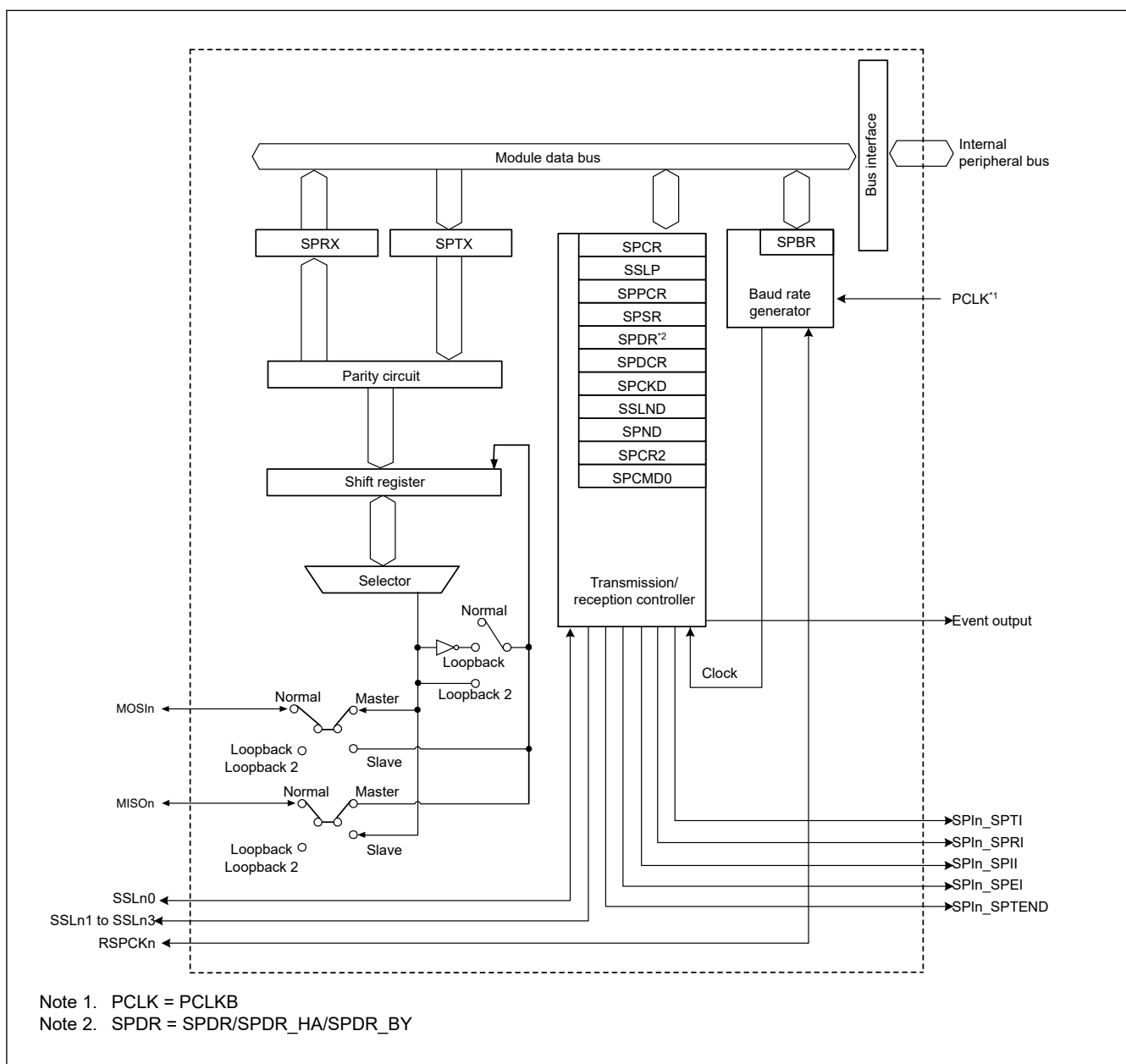
Table 30.1 SPI specifications (1 of 2)

Parameter	Specifications
Number of channels	One channel
SPI transfer functions	• Use of MOSI (master out/slave in), MISO (master in/slave out), SSL (slave select), and RSPCK (SPI clock) signals allows serial communications through SPI operation (4-wire method) or clock synchronous operation (3-wire method) • Transmit-only operation available • Communication mode selectable to full-duplex or transmit-only • RSPCK polarity switching • RSPCK phase switching
Data format	• MSB-first or LSB-first selectable • Transfer bit length selectable to 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 20, 24, or 32 bits • 32-bit transmit and receive buffers
Bit rate	• In master mode, the on-chip baud rate generator generates RSPCK by frequency-dividing PCLKB (the division ratio ranges from divided by 2 to divided by 4096) • In slave mode, the minimum PCLKB clock divided by 6 can be input as RSPCK (PCLKB divided by 6 is the maximum RSPCK frequency) Width at high level: 3 PCLKB cycles; width at low level: 3 PCLKB cycles
Buffer configuration	• Double buffer configuration for the transmit and receive buffers • 32 bits for the transmit and receive buffers
Error detection	• Mode fault error detection • Underrun error detection • Overrun error detection*1 • Parity error detection
SSL control function	• Four SSL pins (SSLn: SSLn0 to SSLn3) (n = A, B) for each channel • In single-master mode, SSLn0 to SSLn3 pins are output • In multi-master mode, SSLn0 pin for input, and SSLn1 to SSLn3 pins either for output or unused • In slave mode, SSLn0 pin for input and SSLn1 to SSLn3 pins are unused • Controllable delay from SSL output assertion to RSPCK operation (RSPCK delay) Range: 1 to 8 RSPCK cycles (set in RSPCK-cycle units) • Controllable delay from RSPCK stop to SSL output negation (SSL negation delay) Range: 1 to 8 RSPCK cycles (set in RSPCK-cycle units) • Controllable wait for next-access SSL output assertion (next-access delay) Range: 1 to 8 RSPCK cycles (set in RSPCK-cycle units) • Function for changing SSL polarity
Control in master transfer	• For each command, the following can be set: SSL signal value, bit rate, RSPCK polarity and phase, transfer data length, MSB- or LSB-first, burst, RSPCK delay, SSL negation delay, and next-access delay • Transfers can be initiated by writing to the transmit buffer • MOSI signal value specifiable in SSL negation • RSPCK auto-stop function
Interrupt sources	Interrupt sources: • Receive buffer full interrupt • Transmit buffer empty interrupt • SPI error interrupt (mode fault error, overrun error, parity error) • SPI idle interrupt (SPI idle) • Transmission-complete interrupt
Event link function	The following events can be output to the Event Link Controller (ELC): • Receive buffer full signal • Transmit buffer empty signal • Mode fault, underrun, overrun, or parity error signal • SPI idle signal • Transmission-complete signal

Table 30.1 SPI specifications (2 of 2)

Parameter	Specifications
Other functions	- Switching between CMOS output and open-drain output - SPI initialization function - Loopback mode
Module-stop function	Module-stop state can be set to reduce power consumption.

Note 1. In master reception and when the RSPCK auto-stop function is enabled, an overrun error does not occur because the transfer clock is stopped on overrun error detection.

**Figure 30.1 SPI block diagram**

The SPI automatically switches the I/O direction of the SSLn0 pin. SSLn0 is set as an output when the SPI is a single master, and as an input when the SPI is a multi-master or a slave. The RSPCKn, MOSIn, and MISOOn pins are automatically set as inputs or outputs based on the master or slave setting and the level input on the SSLn0 pin. For details, see [section 30.3.2. Controlling the SPI Pins](#).

Table 30.2 SPI I/O pins

Channel	Pin name	I/O	Description
SPI0	RSPCKA	I/O	Clock input/output pin
	SSLA0	I/O	Slave selection input/output
	SSLA1 to SSLA3	Output	Slave selection output
	MOSIA	I/O	Master transmit data input/output
	MISOA	I/O	Slave transmit data input/output

30.2 Register Descriptions

30.2.1 SPCR : SPI Control Register

Base address: SPI0 = 0x4007_2000

Offset address: 0x00

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	SPRIE	SPE	SPTIE	SPEIE	MSTR	MODFEN	TXMD	SPMS

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	SPMS	SPI Mode Select 0: Select SPI operation (4-wire method) 1: Select clock synchronous operation (3-wire method)	R/W
1	TXMD	Communications Operating Mode Select 0: Select full-duplex synchronous serial communications 1: Select serial communications with transmit-only	R/W
2	MODFEN	Mode Fault Error Detection Enable 0: Disable detection of mode fault errors 1: Enable detection of mode fault errors	R/W
3	MSTR	SPI Master/Slave Mode Select 0: Select slave mode 1: Select master mode	R/W
4	SPEIE	SPI Error Interrupt Enable 0: Disable SPI error interrupt requests 1: Enable SPI error interrupt requests	R/W
5	SPTIE	Transmit Buffer Empty Interrupt Enable 0: Disable transmit buffer empty interrupt requests 1: Enable transmit buffer empty interrupt requests	R/W
6	SPE	SPI Function Enable 0: Disable SPI function 1: Enable SPI function	R/W
7	SPRIE	SPI Receive Buffer Full Interrupt Enable 0: Disable SPI receive buffer full interrupt requests 1: Enable SPI receive buffer full interrupt requests	R/W

SPMS bit (SPI Mode Select)

The SPMS bit selects SPI operation (4-wire method) or clock synchronous operation (3-wire method).

The SSLn0 to SSLn3 pins are not used in clock synchronous operation. The RSPCKn, MOSIn, and MISO pins handle communications. For clock synchronous operation in master mode (MSTR = 1), the SPCMD0.CPHA bit can be set to either 0 or 1. For clock synchronous operation in slave mode (MSTR = 0), always set the CPHA bit to 1. Do not perform operations if the CPHA bit is set to 0 for clock synchronous operation in slave mode (MSTR = 0).

TXMD bit (Communications Operating Mode Select)

The TXMD bit selects full-duplex synchronous serial communications or transmit-only operations. When this bit is set to 1, the SPI only performs transmit operations and not receive operations (see [section 30.3.6. Data Transfer Modes](#)), and receive buffer full interrupt requests cannot be used.

MODFEN bit (Mode Fault Error Detection Enable)

The MODFEN bit enables or disables the detection of mode fault errors (see [section 30.3.8. Error Detection](#)). In addition, the SPI determines the I/O direction of the SSLn pins based on combination of the MODFEN and MSTR bits (see [section 30.3.2. Controlling the SPI Pins](#)).

MSTR bit (SPI Master/Slave Mode Select)

The MSTR bit selects master or slave mode for the SPI. Based on the MSTR bit settings, the SPI determines the direction of the RSPCKn, MOSIn, MISO_n, and SSLn pins.

SPEIE bit (SPI Error Interrupt Enable)

The SPEIE bit enables or disables the generation of SPI error interrupt requests when one of the following occurs:

- The SPI detects a mode fault error or underrun error and sets the SPSR.MODF flag to 1
- The SPI detects an overrun error and sets the SPSR.OVRF flag to 1
- The SPI detects a parity error and sets the SPSR.PERF flag to 1

For details, see [section 30.3.8. Error Detection](#).

SPTIE bit (Transmit Buffer Empty Interrupt Enable)

The SPTIE bit enables or disables the generation of transmit buffer empty interrupt requests when the SPI detects that the transmit buffer is empty. To generate a transmit buffer empty interrupt request when transmission starts, set the SPE and SPTIE bits to 1 at the same time or set the SPE bit to 1 after setting the SPTIE bit to 1.

When the SPTIE bit is 1, transmit buffer interrupts are generated even when the SPI function is disabled (when the SPE bit is changed to 0).

SPE bit (SPI Function Enable)

The SPE bit enables or disables the SPI function. The SPE bit cannot be set to 1 when the SPSR.MODF flag is 1. For details, see [section 30.3.8. Error Detection](#).

Setting the SPE bit to 0 disables the SPI function and initializes a part of the module function. For details, see [section 30.3.9. Initializing the SPI](#). In addition, a transmit buffer empty interrupt request is generated when the SPE bit is changed from 0 to 1 or from 1 to 0.

SPRIE bit (SPI Receive Buffer Full Interrupt Enable)

The SPRIE bit enables or disables the generation of an SPI receive buffer full interrupt request when the SPI detects a receive buffer full write after completion of a serial transfer.

30.2.2 SSLP : SPI Slave Select Polarity Register

Base address: SPI0 = 0x4007_2000

Offset address: 0x01

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	SSL3P	SSL2P	SSL1P	SSL0P
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	SSL0P	SSLn0 Signal Polarity Setting 0: Set SSLn0 signal to active-low 1: Set SSLn0 signal to active-high	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
1	SSL1P	SSLn1 Signal Polarity Setting 0: Set SSLn1 signal to active-low 1: Set SSLn1 signal to active-high	R/W
2	SSL2P	SSLn2 Signal Polarity Setting 0: Set SSLn2 signal to active-low 1: Set SSLn2 signal to active-high	R/W
3	SSL3P	SSLn3 Signal Polarity Setting 0: Set SSLn3 signal to active-low 1: Set SSLn3 signal to active-high	R/W
7:4	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

30.2.3 SPPCR : SPI Pin Control Register

Base address: SPI0 = 0x4007_2000

Offset address: 0x02

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	MOIFE	MOIFV	—	—	SPLP2	SPLP

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	SPLP	SPI Loopback 0: Normal mode 1: Loopback mode (receive data = inverted transmit data)	R/W
1	SPLP2	SPI Loopback 2 0: Normal mode 1: Loopback mode (receive data = transmit data)	R/W
3:2	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
4	MOIFV	MOSI Idle Fixed Value 0: Set level output on MOSIn pin during MOSI idling to low 1: Set level output on MOSIn pin during MOSI idling to high	R/W
5	MOIFE	MOSI Idle Value Fixing Enable 0: Set MOSI output value to equal final data from previous transfer 1: Set MOSI output value to equal value set in the MOIFV bit	R/W
7:6	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

SPLP bit (SPI Loopback)

The SPLP bit selects the mode of the SPI pins. When this bit is set to 1, the SPI shuts off the path between the MISO_{in} pin and the shift register if the SPCR.MSTR bit is 1, and between the MOSI_{in} pin and the shift register if the SPCR.MSTR bit is 0. The SPI then inverts the value of the input path for the shift register and connects it to the output path (loopback mode). For more information, see [section 30.3.12. Loopback Mode](#).

SPLP2 bit (SPI Loopback 2)

The SPLP2 bit selects the mode of the SPI pins. When this bit is set to 1, the SPI shuts off the path between the MISO_{in} pin and the shift register if the SPCR.MSTR bit is 1, and between the MOSI_{in} pin and the shift register if the SPCR.MSTR bit is 0. The SPI then connects the value of the input path for the shift register to the output path (loopback mode) without inverting the value. For more information, see [section 30.3.12. Loopback Mode](#).

MOIFV bit (MOSI Idle Fixed Value)

The MOIFV bit determines the MOSI_{in} pin output value during the SSL negation period when the MOIFE bit is 1 in master mode.

MOIFE bit (MOSI Idle Value Fixing Enable)

The MOIFE bit fixes the MOSIn output value when the SPI is in master mode and in an SSL negation period. When the MOIFE bit is 0, the SPI outputs the last data from the previous serial transfer during the SSL negation period to the MOSIn pin. When the MOIFE bit is 1, the SPI outputs the fixed value set in the MOIFV bit to the MOSIn pin.

30.2.4 SPSR : SPI Status Register

Base address: SPI0 = 0x4007_2000

Offset address: 0x03

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	SPRF	—	SPTE F	UDRF	PERF	MODF	IDLNF	OVRF
Value after reset:	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	OVRF	Overrun Error Flag 0: No overrun error occurred 1: Overrun error occurred	R/W ^{*1}
1	IDLNF	SPI Idle Flag 0: SPI is in the idle state 1: SPI is in the transfer state	R
2	MODF	Mode Fault Error Flag 0: No mode fault or underrun error occurred 1: Mode fault error or underrun error occurred	R/W ^{*1}
3	PERF	Parity Error Flag 0: No parity error occurred 1: Parity error occurred	R/W ^{*1}
4	UDRF	Underrun Error Flag The UDRF bit is valid when MODF flag is 1. 0: Mode fault error occurred (MODF = 1) 1: Underrun error occurred (MODF = 1)	R/W ^{*1 *2}
5	SPTEF	SPI Transmit Buffer Empty Flag 0: Data is in the transmit buffer 1: No data is in the transmit buffer	R/W ^{*3}
6	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
7	SPRF	SPI Receive Buffer Full Flag 0: No valid data is in SPDR/SPDR_HA 1: Valid data is in SPDR/SPDR_HA	R/W ^{*3}

Note 1. Only 0 can be written to clear the flag after reading 1.

Note 2. Clear the UDRF flag at the same time as the MODF flag.

Note 3. The write value should be 1.

OVRF flag (Overrun Error Flag)

The OVRF flag indicates the occurrence of an overrun error. In master mode (SPCR.MSTR bit = 1) and when the RSPCK clock auto-stop function is enabled (SPCR1.SCKASE bit = 1), overrun errors do not occur. This flag does not set to 1. For details, see [section 30.3.8.1. Overrun Errors](#).

[Setting condition]

- When the next serial transfer ends while the SPCR.TXMD bit is 0 and the receive buffer is full.

[Clearing condition]

- When 0 is written to the OVRF flag after the OVRF flag is confirmed to be 1 by a read of SPSR.

IDLNF flag (SPI Idle Flag)

The IDLNF flag indicates the transfer status of the SPI.

[Setting conditions]**Master mode**

- When none of the conditions in the master mode [Clearing condition] is met.

Slave mode

- When the SPE bit in SPCR is 1, enabling the SPI function.

[Clearing conditions]**Master mode**

When condition 1 or all other conditions are satisfied.

Condition 1: The SPE bit in SPCR is 0, indicating that the SPI is initialized.

Condition 2: The transmit buffer (SPTX) is empty, indicating that data for the next transfer is not set.

Condition 3: The SPI internal sequencer is in the idle state, indicating that operation up to next-access delay is complete.

Slave mode

- When condition 1 is satisfied.

MODF flag (Mode Fault Error Flag)

The MODF flag indicates the occurrence of a mode fault error or an underrun error. The UDRF flag indicates which error occurred.

[Setting conditions]**Multi-master mode**

- When the input level of the SSLni pin changes to the active level while the SPCR.MSTR bit is 1 (master mode) and the SPCR.MODFEN bit is 1 (mode fault error detection is enabled), triggering a mode fault error.

Slave mode

- When condition 1 or 2 is satisfied.

Condition 1: The SSLni pin is negated before the RSPCK cycle required for data transfer ends while the SPCR.MSTR bit is 0 (slave mode) and the SPCR.MODFEN bit is 1 (mode fault error detection is enabled), triggering a mode fault error.

Condition 2: The serial transfer begins with the SPCR.MSTR bit set to 0 (slave mode), the SPCR.SPE bit set to 1, and the transmission data not prepared, triggering an underrun error.

The active level of the SSLni signal is determined by the SSLP.SSLiP bit (SSLi signal polarity setting).

[Clearing condition]

- When SPSR is read while this flag is 1, and then 0 is written to this flag.

PERF flag (Parity Error Flag)

The PERF flag indicates the occurrence of a parity error.

[Setting condition]

- When a serial transfer ends while the SPCR.TXMD bit is 0 and the SPCR2.SPPE bit is 1, triggering a parity error.

[Clearing condition]

- When SPSR is read while this flag is 1, and then 0 is written to this flag.

UDRF flag (Underrun Error Flag)

The UDRF flag indicates the occurrence of an underrun error.

[Setting condition]

- When the serial transfer begins with the SPCR.MSTR bit is set to 0 (slave mode), the SPCR.SPE bit is set to 1, and the transmission data not prepared, triggering an underrun error.

[Clearing condition]

- When SPSR is read while this flag is 1, and then 0 is written to this flag.

SPTEF flag (SPI Transmit Buffer Empty Flag)

The SPTEF flag indicates the status of the transmit buffer for the SPI Data Register (SPDR/SPDR_HA).

[Setting conditions]

- When condition 1. or 2. is satisfied.
 1. The SPCR.SPE bit is 0, indicating that the SPI is initialized.
 2. Transmit data is transferred from the transmit buffer to the shift register.

[Clearing condition]

- When data written to SPDR/SPDR_HA/SPDR_BY.

Data can only be written to SPDR/SPDR_HA/SPDR_BY when the SPTEF flag is 1. If data is written to the transmit buffer of SPDR/SPDR_HA when the SPTEF flag is 0, data in the transmit buffer is not updated.

SPRF flag (SPI Receive Buffer Full Flag)

The SPRF flag indicates the status of the receive buffer for the SPI Data Register (SPDR/SPDR_HA).

[Setting condition]

- Received data have been transferred to the SPDR from the shift register while the SPRF flag is 0. And satisfy the following. However, the SPRF flag does not change from 0 to 1 while the OVRF flag = 1.
 - The SPCR.TXMD bit is 0 (transmit-receive master mode, transmit-receive slave mode)

[Clearing condition]

- When received data is read from the SPDR/SPDR_HA.

30.2.5 SPDR/SPDR_HA/SPDR_BY : SPI Data Register

Base address: SPI0 = 0x4007_2000

Offset address: 0x04

Bit position: 31

0

Bit field:

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
31:0	n/a	SPI Data	R/W

SPDR/SPDR_HA/SPDR_BY is the interface with the buffers that hold data for transmission and reception by the SPI. When accessing this register in words (the SPDCR.SPLW bit is 1), access SPDR. When accessing it in halfwords (the SPLW bit is 0), access SPDR_HA. When accessing it in byte (the SPDCR.SPBYT bit is 1), access SPDR_BY.

The transmit buffer (SPTX) and receive buffer (SPRX) are independent but are both mapped to SPDR/SPDR_HA. [Figure 30.2](#) shows the configuration of the SPDR/SPDR_HA register.

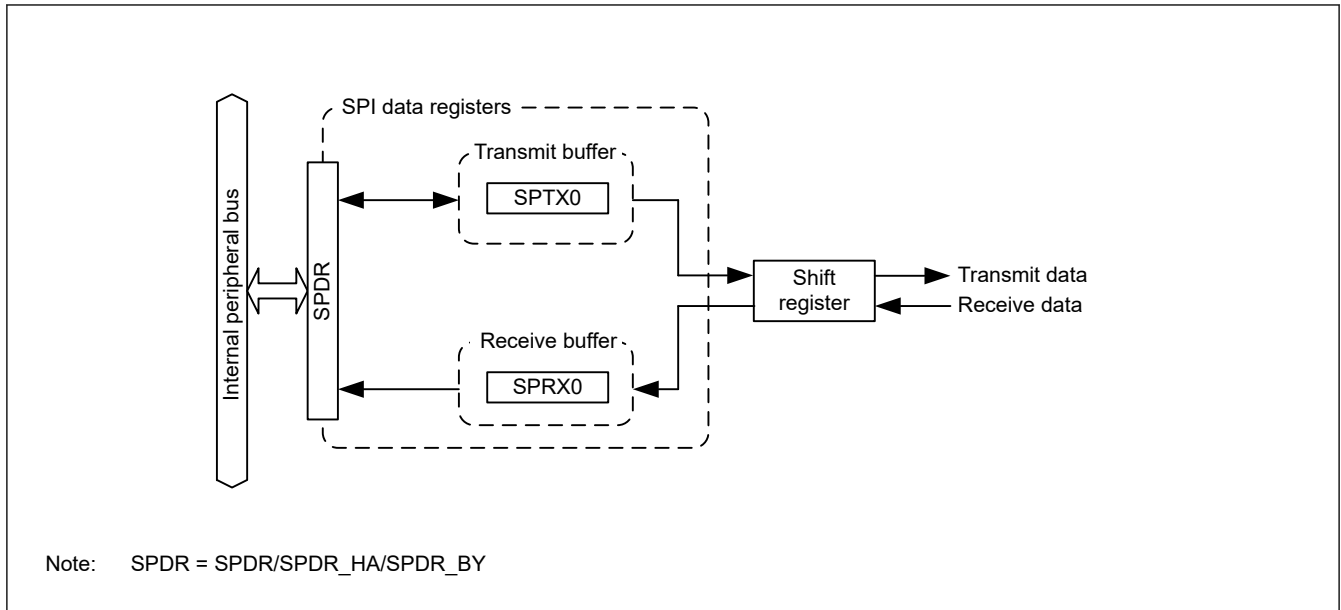


Figure 30.2 Configuration of SPDR/SPDR_HA/SPDR_BY

The transmit and receive buffers each have one stage. The two stages of the buffer are all mapped to the single address of SPDR/SPDR_HA/SPDR_BY.

Data written to SPDR/SPDR_HA/SPDR_BY is written to a transmit-buffer stage (SPTX_n) ($n = 0$), and then transmitted from the buffer. The receive buffer holds received data on completion of reception. The receive buffer is not updated if an overrun is generated.

Additionally, if the data length is not 32 bits, bits not referred to in SPTX_n ($n = 0$) are stored in the associated bits in SPRX_n ($n = 0$). For example, if the data length is 9 bits, the received data is stored in the SPRX_n[8:0] bits, and the SPTX_n[31:9] bits are stored in the SPRX_n[31:9] bits.

(1) Bus interface

SPDR/SPDR_HA/SPDR_BY is an interface with 32-bit wide transmit and receive buffers, each of which has one stage, for a total of 8 bytes. The 8 bytes are mapped to the 4-byte address space for SPDR/SPDR_HA/SPDR_BY. Additionally, the unit of access for SPDR/SPDR_HA/SPDR_BY is selected by the SPI Word Access/Halfword Access Specification bit in the SPI Data Control Register (SPDCR.SPLW). SPDR can also be accessed with the access size specified by the SPI Byte Access bit in the SPI Data Control Register (SPDCR.SPBYT).

Flush the transmission data at the LSB end of the register, and store the received data at the LSB end.

The following sections describe the operations involved in writing to and reading from SPDR/SPDR_HA/SPDR_BY.

Writing

Data written to SPDR/SPDR_HA/SPDR_BY is written to a transmit buffer (SPTX_n). This is not affected by the value of the SPDCR.SPRDTD bit, unlike when reading from SPDR/SPDR_HA/SPDR_BY.

Figure 30.3 shows the configuration of the bus interface with the transmit buffer when writing to SPDR/SPDR_HA/SPDR_BY.

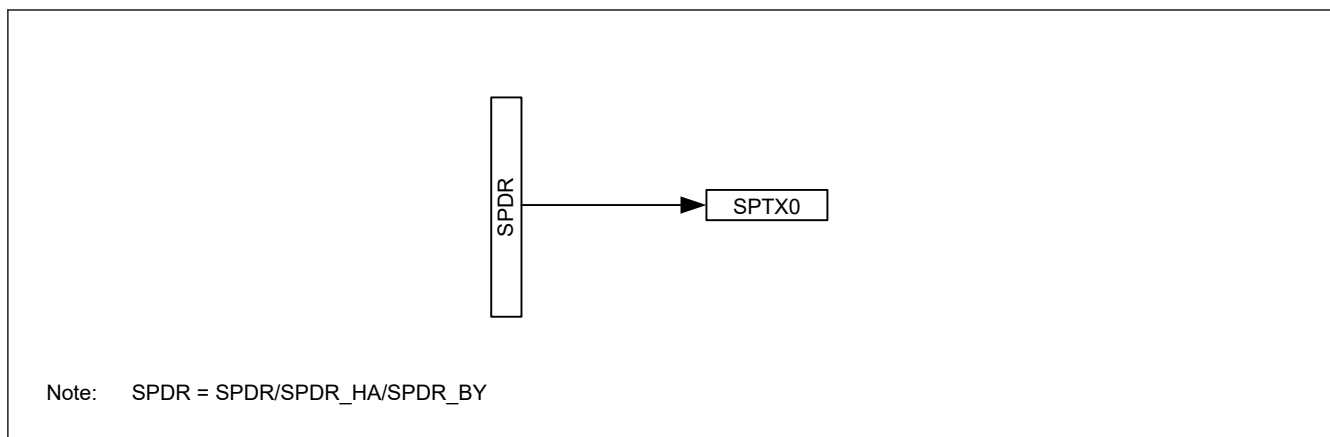


Figure 30.3 Configuration of SPDR/SPDR_HA/SPDR_BY for write access

Even when the specified number of frames is written to the transmit buffer (SPTXn), the value of the buffer is not updated after completion of the writing and before generation of the next transmit buffer empty interrupt (when SPTEF is 0).

Reading

SPDR/SPDR_HA/SPDR_BY can be accessed to read the value of a receive buffer (SPRXn) or a transmit buffer (SPTXn). The setting in the SPI Receive/Transmit Data Select bit in the SPI Data Control Register (SPDCR.SPRDTD) selects whether reading is of the receive or transmit buffer.

Figure 30.4 shows the configuration of the bus interface with the receive and transmit buffers for reading from SPDR/SPDR_HA/SPDR_BY.

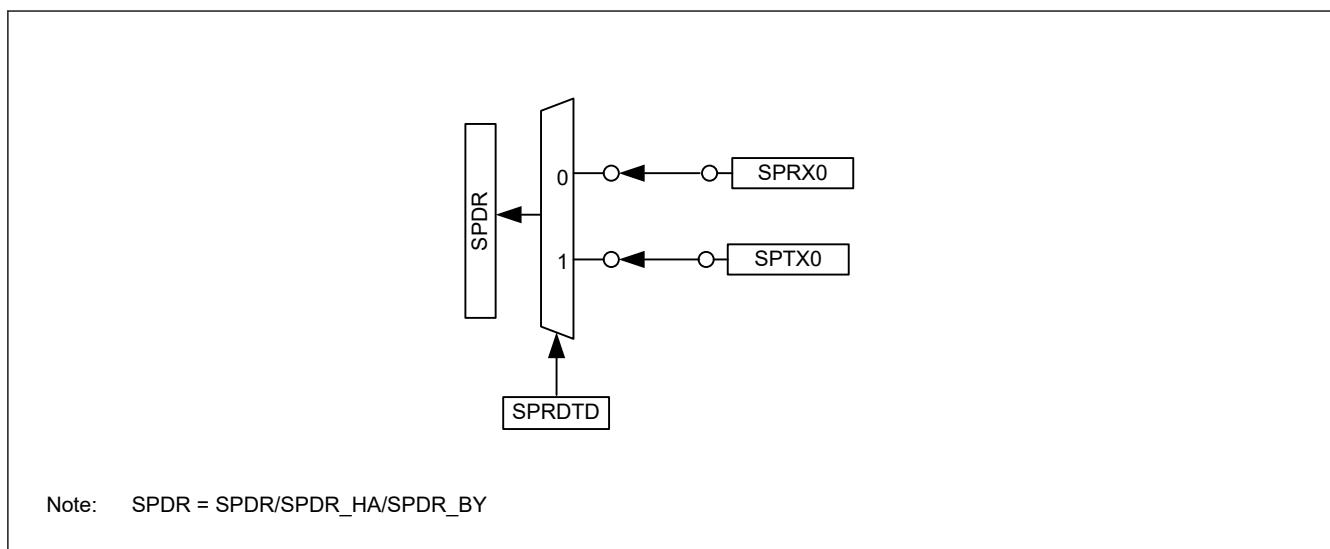


Figure 30.4 Configuration of SPDR/SPDR_HA/SPDR_BY for read access

After a transmit buffer empty interrupt is generated, reading from the transmit buffer returns all 0s after the completion of writing the data, until the next buffer empty interrupt is generated (when SPTEF is 0).

30.2.6 SPBR : SPI Bit Rate Register

Base address: SPI0 = 0x4007_2000

Offset address: 0x0A

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:								

Value after reset: 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7:0	n/a	Bit rate	R/W

SPBR sets the bit rate in master mode.

When the SPI is in slave mode, the bit rate depends on the bit rate of the input clock, regardless of the settings in SPBR and the SPCMD0.BRDV[1:0] bits (bit rate division setting). Use bit rates that satisfy the electrical characteristics of the device.

The bit rate is determined by combinations of the SPBR and SPCMD0.BRDV[1:0] settings in the SPI Command Register. The equation for calculating the bit rate is given as follows:

$$\text{Bit rate} = \frac{f(\text{PCLK})}{2 \times (n + 1) \times 2^N}$$

(PCLK = PCLKB)

In the equation, n denotes an SPBR setting (0, 1, 2, ..., 255), and N denotes a BRDV[1:0] setting (0, 1, 2, 3).

Table 30.3 lists examples of the relationship between the SPBR settings, the BRDV[1:0] settings, and bit rates.

Table 30.3 Relationship between SPBR settings, BRDV[1:0] settings, and bit rates

SPBR (n)	BRDV[1:0] bits (N)	Division ratio	Bit rate
			PCLKB = 32 MHz
0	0	2	16.0 Mbps
1	0	4	8.00 Mbps
2	0	6	5.33 Mbps
3	0	8	4.00 Mbps
4	0	10	3.20 Mbps
5	0	12	2.67 Mbps
5	1	24	1.33 Mbps
5	2	48	667 kbps
5	3	96	333 kbps
255	3	4096	7.81 kbps

30.2.7 SPDCR : SPI Data Control Register

Base address: SPI0 = 0x4007_2000

Offset address: 0x0B

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	SPBY T	SPLW	SPRD TD	—	—	—	—

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
1:0	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
3:2	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
4	SPRDTD	SPI Receive/Transmit Data Select 0: Read SPDR/SPDR_HA values from the receive buffer 1: Read SPDR/SPDR_HA values from the transmit buffer, but only if the transmit buffer is empty	R/W
5	SPLW	SPI Word Access/Halfword Access Specification 0: Set SPDR_HA to valid for halfword access 1: Set SPDR to valid for word access	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
6	SPBYT	SPI Byte Access Specification 0: SPDR/SPDR_HA is accessed in halfword or word (SPLW is valid) 1: SPDR_BY is accessed in byte (SPLW is invalid)	R/W
7	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

SPRDTD bit (SPI Receive/Transmit Data Select)

The SPRDTD bit selects whether the SPDR/SPDR_HA reads values from the receive buffer or from the transmit buffer. If reading is from the transmit buffer, the last value written to the SPDR/SPDR_HA register is read. Read the transmit buffer after an SPI transmit buffer empty interrupt is generated.

For details, see [section 30.2.5. SPDR/SPDR_HA/SPDR_BY : SPI Data Register](#).

SPLW bit (SPI Word Access/Halfword Access Specification)

The SPLW bit specifies the access width for SPDR. Access to SPDR_HA in halfwords is valid when the SPLW bit is 0 and access to SPDR in words is valid when the SPLW bit is 1. Also, when this bit is 0, set the SPI data length setting bits, SPCMD0.SPB[3:0], from 8 to 16 bits. Do not perform any operations when a data length of 20, 24, or 32 bits is specified.

SPBYT bit (SPI Byte Access Specification)

The SPBYT bit is used to set the data width of access to the SPI Data Register (SPDR). When SPBYT = 0, use word or half word access to SPDR/SPDR_HA. When SPBYT = 1 (in that case, SPLW is invalid), use byte access to SPDR_BY.

When SPBYT = 1, set the SPI data length bits (SPB[3:0]) in the SPI Command Register 0 (SPCMD0) to 8 bits. If SPB[3:0] are set to 9 to 16, 20, 24, or 32 bit, subsequent operation is not guaranteed.

30.2.8 SPCKD : SPI Clock Delay Register

Base address: SPI0 = 0x4007_2000

Offset address: 0x0C

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	SCKDL[2:0]		
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
2:0	SCKDL[2:0]	RSPCK Delay Setting 0 0 0: 1 RSPCK 0 0 1: 2 RSPCK 0 1 0: 3 RSPCK 0 1 1: 4 RSPCK 1 0 0: 5 RSPCK 1 0 1: 6 RSPCK 1 1 0: 7 RSPCK 1 1 1: 8 RSPCK	R/W
7:3	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

SPCKD specifies the RSPCK delay, the period from the beginning of SSLni signal assertion to RSPCK oscillation, when the SPCMD0.SCKDEN bit is 1.

SCKDL[2:0] bits (RSPCK Delay Setting)

The SCKDL[2:0] bits specify an RSPCK delay value when the SPCMD0.SCKDEN bit is 1. When using the SPI in slave mode, set the SCKDL[2:0] bits to 000b.

30.2.9 SSLND : SPI Slave Select Negation Delay Register

Base address: SPI0 = 0x4007_2000

Offset address: 0x0D

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	SLNDL[2:0]		
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
2:0	SLNDL[2:0]	SSL Negation Delay Setting 0 0 0: 1 RSPCK 0 0 1: 2 RSPCK 0 1 0: 3 RSPCK 0 1 1: 4 RSPCK 1 0 0: 5 RSPCK 1 0 1: 6 RSPCK 1 1 0: 7 RSPCK 1 1 1: 8 RSPCK	R/W
7:3	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

SSLND specifies the SSL negation delay, the period from the transmission of a final RSPCK edge to the negation of the SSLni signal during a serial transfer by the SPI in master mode. If the contents of SSLND are changed while both the SPCR.MSTR and SPCR.SPE bits are 1, do not perform subsequent operations.

SLNDL[2:0] bits (SSL Negation Delay Setting)

The SLNDL[2:0] bits specify an SSL negation delay value when the SLNDEN bit in SPCMDn is 1 and the SPI is in master mode. When using the SPI in slave mode, set the SLNDL[2:0] bits to 000b.

30.2.10 SPND : SPI Next-Access Delay Register

Base address: SPI0 = 0x4007_2000

Offset address: 0x0E

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	SPNDL[2:0]		
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
2:0	SPNDL[2:0]	SPI Next-Access Delay Setting 0 0 0: 1 RSPCK + 2 PCLKB 0 0 1: 2 RSPCK + 2 PCLKB 0 1 0: 3 RSPCK + 2 PCLKB 0 1 1: 4 RSPCK + 2 PCLKB 1 0 0: 5 RSPCK + 2 PCLKB 1 0 1: 6 RSPCK + 2 PCLKB 1 1 0: 7 RSPCK + 2 PCLKB 1 1 1: 8 RSPCK + 2 PCLKB	R/W
7:3	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

SPND specifies the next-access delay, the non-active period of the SSLni signal after termination of a serial transfer, when the SPCMD0.SPNDEN bit is 1.

SPNDL[2:0] bits (SPI Next-Access Delay Setting)

The SPNDL[2:0] bits specify a next-access delay when the SPCMD0.SPNDEN bit is 1. When using the SPI in slave mode, set the SPNDL[2:0] bits to 000b.

30.2.11 SPCR2 : SPI Control Register 2

Base address: SPI0 = 0x4007_2000

Offset address: 0x0F

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	SCKA SE	PTE	SPIIE	SPOE	SPPE
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	SPPE	Parity Enable 0: Do not add parity bit to transmit data and do not check parity bit of receive data 1: When SPCR.TXMD = 0: Add parity bit to transmit data and check parity bit of receive data When SPCR.TXMD = 1: Add parity bit to transmit data but do not check parity bit of receive data	R/W
1	SPOE	Parity Mode 0: Select even parity for transmission and reception 1: Select odd parity for transmission and reception	R/W
2	SPIIE	SPI Idle Interrupt Enable 0: Disable idle interrupt requests 1: Enable idle interrupt requests	R/W
3	PTE	Parity Self-Testing 0: Disable self-diagnosis function of the parity circuit 1: Enable self-diagnosis function of the parity circuit	R/W
4	SCKASE	RSPCK Auto-Stop Function Enable 0: Disable RSPCK auto-stop function 1: Enable RSPCK auto-stop function	R/W
7:5	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

SPPE bit (Parity Enable)

The SPPE bit enables or disables the parity function.

When the SPCR.TXMD bit is 0 and this bit is 1, the parity bit is added to transmit data and parity checking is performed for receive data.

When the SPCR.TXMD bit is 1 and this bit is 1, the parity bit is added to transmit data but parity checking is not performed for receive data.

SPOE bit (Parity Mode)

The SPOE bit specifies odd or even parity.

When even parity is set, parity bit addition is performed so that the total number of bits whose value is 1 in the transmit or receive character plus the parity bit is even. Similarly, when odd parity is set, parity bit addition is performed so that the total number of bits whose value is 1 in the transmit or receive character plus the parity bit is odd.

The SPOE bit is only valid when the SPPE bit is 1.

SPIIE bit (SPI Idle Interrupt Enable)

The SPIIE bit enables or disables the generation of SPI idle interrupt requests when an idle state is detected in the SPI and the SPSR.IDLNF flag clears is set to 0.

PTE bit (Parity Self-Testing)

The PTE bit enables self-diagnosis of the parity circuit to check whether the parity function is operating correctly.

SCKASE bit (RSPCK Auto-Stop Function Enable)

The SCKASE bit enables or disables the RSPCK auto-stop function. When this function is enabled, the RSPCK clock is stopped before an overrun error occurs, when data is received in master mode. For details, see [section 30.3.8.1. Overrun Errors](#).

30.2.12 SPCMD0 : SPI Command Register 0

Base address: SPI0 = 0x4007_2000

Offset address: 0x10

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	SCKD EN	SLND EN	SPND EN	LSBF	SPB[3:0]			—	SSLA[2:0]			BRDV[1:0]		CPOL	CPHA	
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	1	1	0	1

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	CPHA	RSPCK Phase Setting 0: Select data sampling on leading edge, data change on trailing edge 1: Select data change on leading edge, data sampling on trailing edge	R/W
1	CPOL	RSPCK Polarity Setting 0: Set RSPCK low during idle 1: Set RSPCK high during idle	R/W
3:2	BRDV[1:0]	Bit Rate Division Setting 0 0: Base bit rate 0 1: Base bit rate divided by 2 1 0: Base bit rate divided by 4 1 1: Base bit rate divided by 8	R/W
6:4	SSLA[2:0]	SSL Signal Assertion Setting 0 0 0: SSL0 0 0 1: SSL1 0 1 0: SSL2 0 1 1: SSL3 Others: Setting prohibited	R/W
7	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
11:8	SPB[3:0]	SPI Data Length Setting 0x0: 20 bits 0x1: 24 bits 0x2: 32 bits 0x3: 32 bits 0x8: 9 bits 0x9: 10 bits 0xA: 11 bits 0xB: 12 bits 0xC: 13 bits 0xD: 14 bits 0xE: 15 bits 0xF: 16 bits Others: 8 bits	R/W
12	LSBF	SPI LSB First 0: MSB-first 1: LSB-first	R/W
13	SPNDEN	SPI Next-Access Delay Enable 0: Select next-access delay of 1 RSPCK + 2 PCLKB 1: Select next-access delay equal to the setting in the SPI Next-Access Delay Register (SPND)	R/W
14	SLNDEN	SSL Negation Delay Setting Enable 0: Select SSL negation delay of 1 RSPCK 1: Select SSL negation delay equal to the setting in the SPI Slave Select Negation Delay Register (SSLND)	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
15	SCKDEN	RSPCK Delay Setting Enable 0: Select RSPCK delay of 1 RSPCK 1: Select RSPCK delay equal to the setting in the SPI Clock Delay Register (SPCKD)	R/W

The SPCMD0 register sets the transfer format for the SPI in master mode.

Set this register while the transmit buffer is empty (SPSR.SPTEF is 1 and data for the next transfer is not set), and before the setting of data to be transmitted when this register is referenced.

If the contents of SPCMD0 are changed while the SPCR.SPE bit is 1, do not perform subsequent operations.

CPHA bit (RSPCK Phase Setting)

The CPHA bit selects the RSPCK phase of the SPI in master or slave mode. Data communications between SPI modules require the same RSPCK phase setting between the modules.

CPOL bit (RSPCK Polarity Setting)

The CPOL bit selects the RSPCK polarity of the SPI in master or slave mode. Data communications between SPI modules require the same RSPCK polarity setting between the modules.

BRDV[1:0] bits (Bit Rate Division Setting)

The BRDV[1:0] bits determine the bit rate with the settings in the SPBR register. (See [section 30.2.6. SPBR : SPI Bit Rate Register](#)). The SPBR settings determine the base bit rate. The BRDV[1:0] setting selects the bit rate obtained by dividing the base bit rate by 1, 2, 4, or 8. Different BRDV[1:0] bit settings can be specified in the SPCMD0 register. This enables execution of serial transfers at different bit rates for each command.

SSLA[2:0] bits (SSL Signal Assertion Setting)

The SSLA[2:0] bits control the SSLn_i signal assertion when the SPI performs serial transfers in master mode. When an SSLn_i signal is asserted, its polarity is determined by the value set in the associated SSLP. When the SSLA[2:0] bits are set to 000b in multi-master mode, serial transfers are performed with all the SSL signals in the negated state (as the SSLn₀ pin acts as input).

When using the SPI in slave mode, set the SSLA[2:0] bits to 000b.

SPB[3:0] bits (SPI Data Length Setting)

The SPB[3:0] bits specify the transfer data length for the SPI in master or slave mode.

LSBF bit (SPI LSB First)

The LSBF bit specifies the data format of the SPI in master or slave mode to MSB-first or LSB-first.

SPNDEN bit (SPI Next-Access Delay Enable)

The SPNDEN bit specifies the next-access delay, the period from the time the SPI in master mode terminates a serial transfer and sets the SSLn_i signal inactive until the SPI enables the SSLn_i signal assertion for the next access. If the SPNDEN bit is 0, the SPI sets the next-access delay to 1 RSPCK + 2 PCLKB. If the SPNDEN bit is 1, the SPI inserts a next-access delay according to the SPND setting.

When using the SPI in slave mode, set the SPNDEN bit to 0.

SLNDEN bit (SSL Negation Delay Setting Enable)

The SLNDEN bit specifies the SSL negation delay, the period from the time the SPI in master mode stops RSPCK oscillation until the SPI sets the SSLn_i signal to inactive. If the SLNDEN bit is 0, the SPI sets the SSL negation delay to 1 RSPCK. If the SLNDEN bit is 1, the SPI negates the SSL signal at the SSL negation delay according to the SSLND setting.

When using the SPI in slave mode, set the SLNDEN bit to 0.

SCKDEN bit (RSPCK Delay Setting Enable)

The SCKDEN bit specifies the SPI clock delay, the period from the point when the SPI in master mode asserts the SSLn_i signal until the RSPCK starts oscillation. If the SCKDEN bit is 0, the SPI sets the RSPCK delay to 1 RSPCK. If the SCKDEN bit is 1, the SPI starts the oscillation of RSPCK at an RSPCK delay according to the SPCKD setting.

When using the SPI in slave mode, set the SCKDEN bit to 0.

30.3 Operation

In this section, the serial transfer period refers to the period from the beginning of driving valid data to the fetching of the final valid data.

30.3.1 Overview of SPI Operation

The SPI is capable of synchronous serial transfers in the following modes:

- Slave mode (SPI operation)
- Single master mode (SPI operation)
- Multi-master mode (SPI operation)
- Slave mode (clock synchronous operation)
- Master mode (clock synchronous operation)

The SPI mode can be selected by using the MSTR, MODFEN, and SPMS bits in SPCR. [Table 30.4](#) lists the relationship between SPI modes and SPCR settings, and a description of each mode.

Table 30.4 Relationship between SPCR settings and SPI modes (1 of 2)

Mode	Slave (SPI operation)	Single-master (SPI operation)	Multi-master (SPI operation)	Slave (clock synchronous operation)	Master (clock synchronous operation)
MSTR bit setting	0	1	1	0	1
MODFEN bit setting	0 or 1	0	1	0	0
SPMS bit setting	0	0	0	1	1
RSPCKn pins	Input	Output	Output/Hi-Z	Input	Output
MOSIn pin	Input	Output	Output/Hi-Z	Input	Output
MISO pin	Output/Hi-Z	Input	Input	Output	Input
SSLn0 pins	Input	Output	Input	Hi-Z ^{*1}	Hi-Z ^{*1}
SSLn1 to SSLn3 pins	Hi-Z ^{*1}	Output	Output/Hi-Z	Hi-Z ^{*1}	Hi-Z ^{*1}
SSL polarity change function	Supported	Supported	Supported	—	—
Max transfer rate	PCLKB/6	PCLKB/2	PCLKB/2	PCLKB/6	PCLKB/2
Clock source	RSPCK input	On-chip baud rate generator	On-chip baud rate generator	RSPCK input	On-chip baud rate generator
Clock polarity	Two				
Clock phase	Two	Two	Two	One (CPHA = 1)	Two
First transfer bit	MSB/LSB				
Transfer data length	8 to 16, 20, 24, 32 bits				
RSPCK delay control	Not supported	Supported	Supported	Not supported	Supported
SSL negation delay control	Not supported	Supported	Supported	Not supported	Supported
Next-access delay control	Not supported	Supported	Supported	Not supported	Supported
Transfer trigger	SSL input active or RSPCK oscillation	Write to transmit buffer on generation of transmit buffer empty interrupt request (SPTEF = 1)	Write to transmit buffer on generation of transmit buffer empty interrupt request (SPTEF = 1)	RSPCK oscillation	Write to transmit buffer on generation of transmit buffer empty interrupt request (SPTEF = 1)
Transmit buffer empty detection	Supported				

Table 30.4 Relationship between SPCR settings and SPI modes (2 of 2)

Mode	Slave (SPI operation)	Single-master (SPI operation)	Multi-master (SPI operation)	Slave (clock synchronous operation)	Master (clock synchronous operation)
Receive buffer full detection	Supported*2				
Overrun error detection	Supported*2	Supported*2*4	Supported*2*4	Supported*2	Supported*2
Parity error detection	Supported*3*2				
Mode fault error detection	Supported (MODFEN = 1)	Not supported	Supported	Not supported	Not supported
Underrun error detection	Supported	Not supported	Not supported	Supported	Not supported

Note 1. This function is not supported in this mode.

Note 2. When the SPCR.TXMD bit is 1, detection of receiver buffer full, overrun error, and parity error are not performed.

Note 3. When the SPCR2.SPPE bit is 0, parity error detection is not performed.

Note 4. When the SPCR2.SCKASE bit is 1, overrun error detection does not proceed.

30.3.2 Controlling the SPI Pins

Based on the settings of the MSTR, MODFEN, and SPMS bits in SPCR and the PmnPFS.NCODR bit for I/O Ports, the SPI can switch pin states. Table 30.5 lists the relationship between pin states and bit settings. Setting the PmnPFS.NCODR bit for an I/O port to 0 selects the CMOS output. Setting it to 1 selects the open-drain output. The I/O port settings must follow this relationship.

Table 30.5 Relationship between pin states and bit settings (1 of 2)

Mode	Pin	Pin state*2	
		PmnPFS.NCODR bit for I/O ports = 0	PmnPFS.NCODR bit for I/O ports = 1
Single-master mode (SPI operation) (MSTR = 1, MODFEN = 0, SPMS = 0)	RSPCKn	CMOS output	Open-drain output
	SSLn0 to SSLn3	CMOS output	Open-drain output
	MOSIn	CMOS output	Open-drain output
	MISOn	Input	Input
Multi-master mode (SPI operation) (MSTR = 1, MODFEN = 1, SPMS = 0)	RSPCKn*3	CMOS output/Hi-Z	Open-drain output/Hi-Z
	SSLn0	Input	Input
	SSLn1 to SSLn3*3	CMOS output/Hi-Z	Open-drain output/Hi-Z
	MOSIn*3	CMOS output/Hi-Z	Open-drain output/Hi-Z
	MISOn	Input	Input
Slave mode (SPI operation) (MSTR = 0, SPMS = 0)	RSPCKn	Input	Input
	SSLn0	Input	Input
	SSLn1 to SSLn3*5	Hi-Z*1	Hi-Z*1
	MOSIn	Input	Input
	MISOn*4	CMOS output/Hi-Z	Open-drain output/Hi-Z
Master mode (clock synchronous operation) (MSTR = 1, MODFEN = 0, SPMS = 1)	RSPCKn	CMOS output	Open-drain output
	SSLn0 to SSLn3*5	Hi-Z*1	Hi-Z*1
	MOSIn	CMOS output	Open-drain output
	MISOn	Input	Input
Slave mode (clock synchronous operation) (MSTR = 0, SPMS = 1)	RSPCKn	Input	Input

Table 30.5 Relationship between pin states and bit settings (2 of 2)

Mode	Pin	Pin state ^{*2}	
		PmnPFS.NCODR bit for I/O ports = 0	PmnPFS.NCODR bit for I/O ports = 1
	SSLn0 to SSLn3 ^{*5}	Hi-Z ^{*1}	Hi-Z ^{*1}
	MOSIn	Input	Input
	MISOn	CMOS output	Open-drain output

Note 1. This function is not supported in this mode.

Note 2. SPI settings are reflected in multiplexed pins for which the SPI function is selected.

Note 3. When SSLn0 is at the active level, the pin state is Hi-Z. Whether the input signal is at the active level determines the setting of the SSLP.SSL0P bit.

Note 4. When SSLn0 is at the non-active level or the SPCR.SPE bit is 0, the pin state is Hi-Z. Whether the input signal is at the active level determines the setting of the SSLP.SSL0P bit.

Note 5. These pins are available for use as I/O port pins.

The SPI in single-master mode (SPI operation) or multi-master mode (SPI operation) determines the MOSI signal values during the SSL negation period based on the MOIFE and MOIFV bit settings in SPPCR, as listed in [Table 30.6](#).

Table 30.6 MOSI signal value determination during SSL negation

MOIFE bit	MOIFV bit	MOSIn signal value during SSL negation
0	0, 1	Final data from the previous transfer
1	0	Low
1	1	High

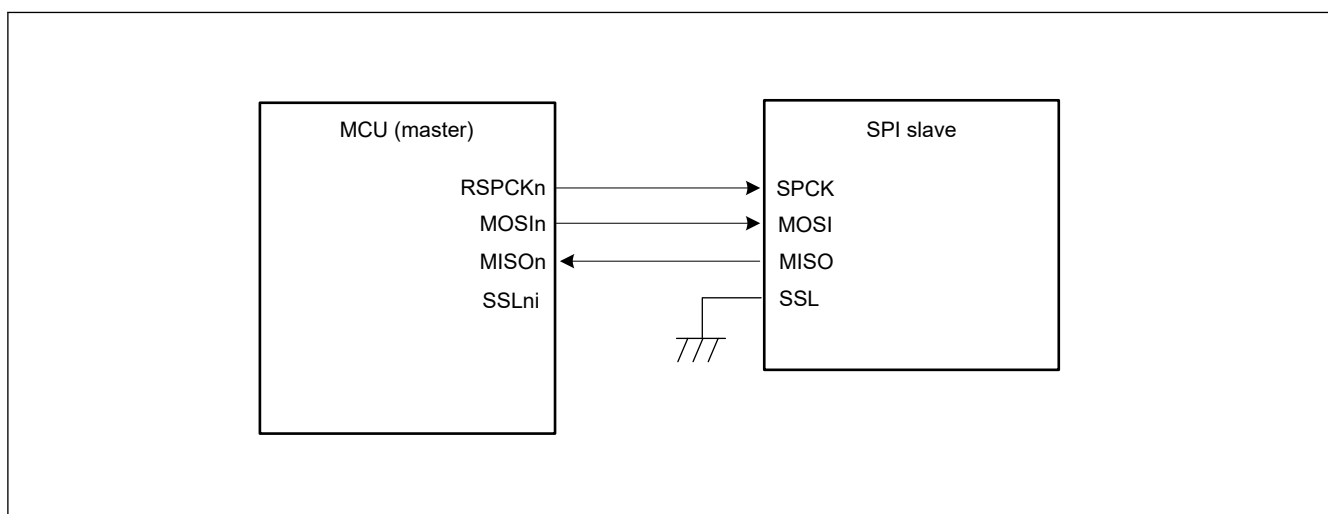
30.3.3 SPI System Configuration Examples

30.3.3.1 Single-master/Single-slave With the MCU as a Master

[Figure 30.5](#) shows a single-master/single-slave SPI system configuration example where the MCU is used as a master. In the single-master/single-slave configuration, the SSLni outputs of the MCU (master) are not used. The SSL input of the SPI slave is fixed to the low level, and the SPI slave is maintained in the selected state.^{*1}

Note 1. In the transfer format configured when the SPCMD0.CPHA bit is 0, the SSL signal for some slave devices cannot be fixed to an active level. In this case, always connect the SSLni output of the MCU to the SSL input of the slave device.

The MCU (master) drives the RSPCKn and MOSIn signals. The SPI slave drives the MISO signal.

**Figure 30.5 Single-master/single-slave configuration example with the MCU as a master**

30.3.3.2 Single-master/Single-slave With the MCU as a Slave

Figure 30.6 shows a single-master/single-slave SPI system configuration example where the MCU is used as a slave. When the MCU operates as a slave, the SSLn0 pin is used as SSL input. The SPI master drives the RSPCK and MOSI signals. The MCU (slave) drives the MISO signal.^{*1}

Note 1. When SSLn0 is at a non-active level, the pin state is Hi-Z.

In the single-slave configuration when the SPCMD0.CPHA bit is set to 1, the SSLn0 input of the MCU (slave) is fixed to the low level and the MCU (slave) is maintained in the selected state. This enables serial transfer execution (Figure 30.7).

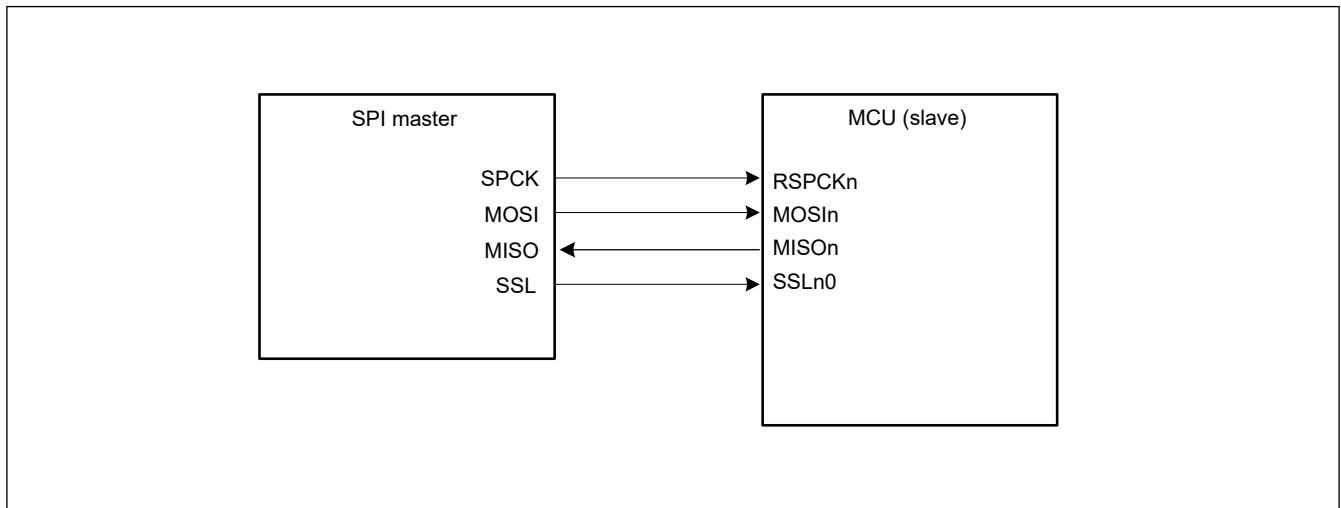


Figure 30.6 Single-master/single-slave configuration example with the MCU as a slave and CPHA = 0

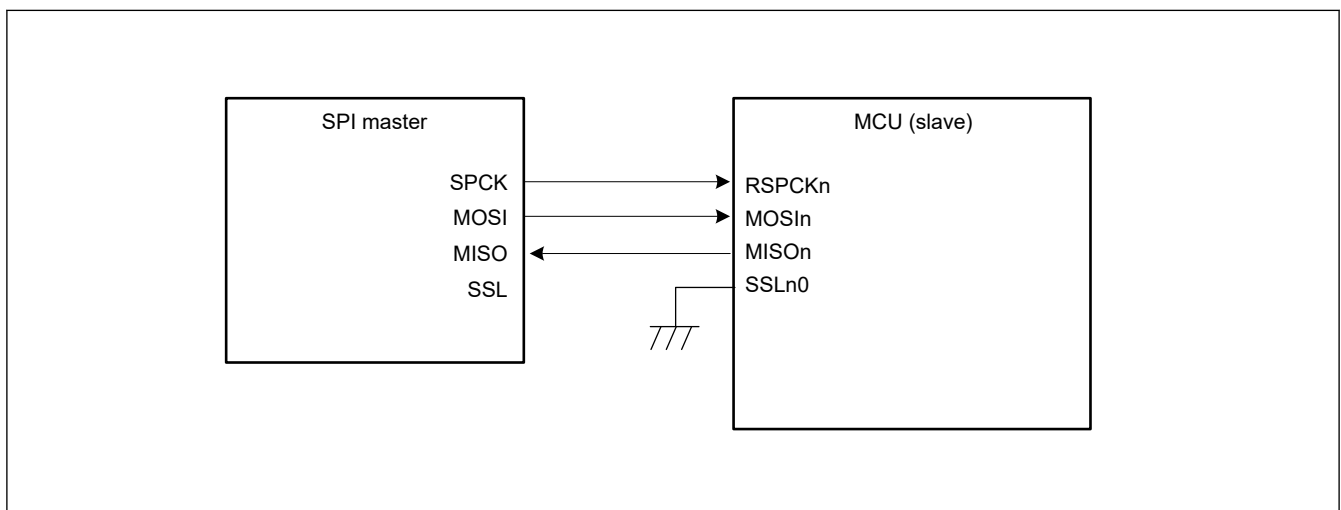


Figure 30.7 Single-master/single-slave configuration example with the MCU as a slave and CPHA = 1

30.3.3.3 Single-master/Multi-slave With the MCU as a Master

Figure 30.8 shows a single-master/multi-slave SPI system configuration example where the MCU is used as a master. In this example, the SPI system includes the MCU (master) and four slaves (SPI slave 0 to SPI slave 3).

The RSPCKn and MOSIn outputs of the MCU (master) are connected to the RSPCK and MOSI inputs of SPI slaves 0 to 3. The MISO outputs of SPI slaves 0 to 3 are all connected to the MISO input of the MCU (master). The SSLn0 to SSLn3 outputs of the MCU (master) are connected to the SSL inputs of SPI slaves 0 to 3, respectively.

The MCU (master) drives the RSPCKn, MOSIn, and SSLn0 to SSLn3 signals. Out of the SPI slaves 0 to 3, the slave that receives low-level input into the SSL input drives the MISO signal.

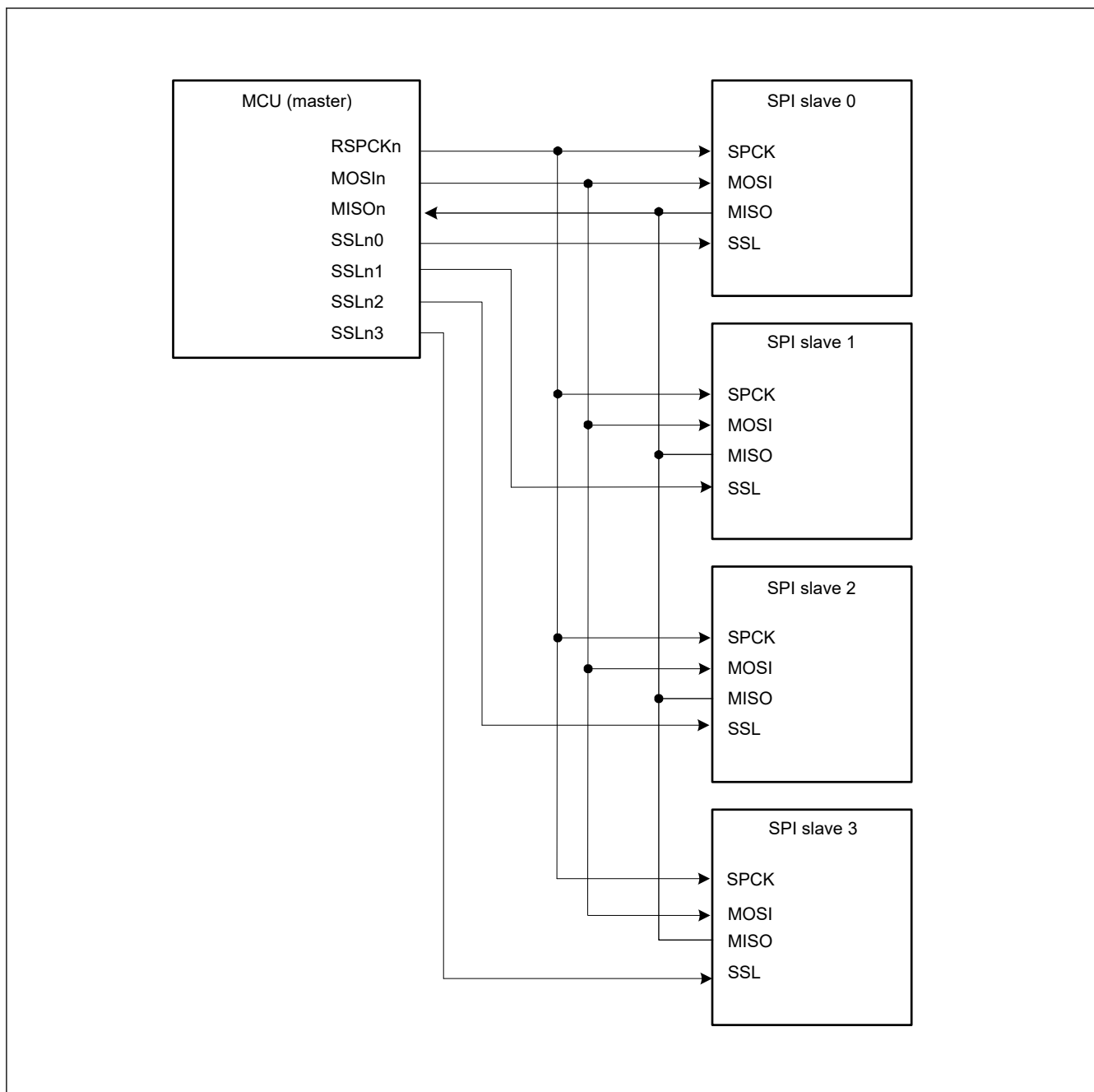


Figure 30.8 Single-master/multi-slave configuration example with the MCU as a master

30.3.3.4 Single-master/Multi-slave With the MCU as a Slave

Figure 30.9 shows a single-master/multi-slave SPI system configuration example where the MCU is used as a slave. In this example, the SPI system includes an SPI master and two MCUs (slaves X and Y).

The SPCK and MOSI outputs of the SPI master are connected to the RSPCKn and MOSIn inputs of the MCUs (slaves X and Y). The MISO outputs of the MCUs (slaves X and Y) are all connected to the MISO input of the SPI master. The SSLX and SSLY outputs of the SPI master are connected to the SSLn0 inputs of the MCUs (slaves X and Y, respectively).

The SPI master drives the SPCK, MOSI, SSLX, and SSLY signals. Of the MCUs (slaves X and Y), the slave that receives low-level input into the SSLn0 input drives the MISO signal.

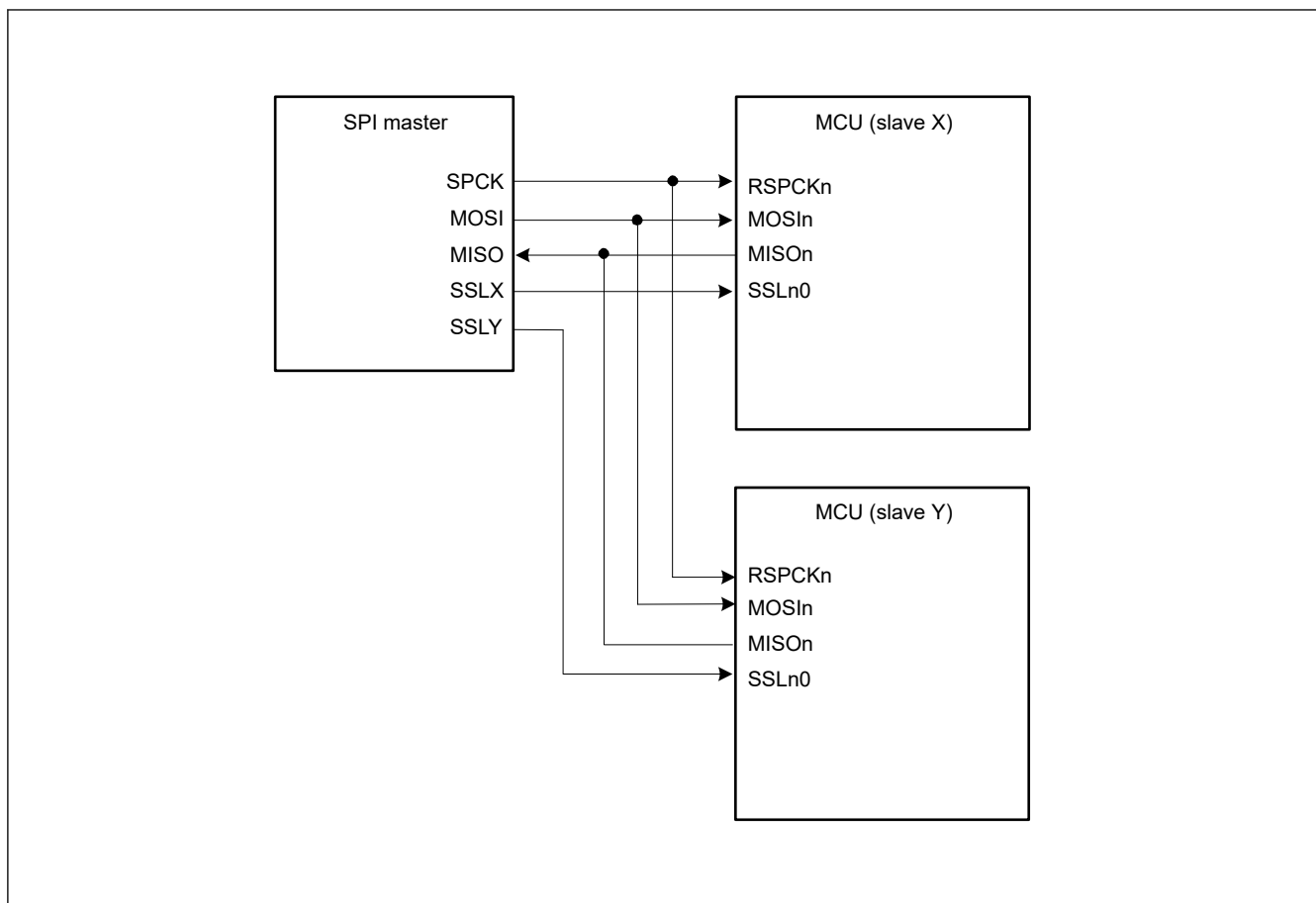


Figure 30.9 Single-master/multi-slave configuration example with the MCU as a slave

30.3.3.5 Multi-master/Multi-slave With the MCU as a Master

[Figure 30.10](#) shows a multi-master/multi-slave SPI system configuration example where the MCU is used as a master. In this example, the SPI system includes two MCUs (masters X and Y) and two SPI slaves (SPI slaves 1 and 2).

The RSPCKn and MOSIn outputs of the MCUs (masters X and Y) are connected to the RSPCK and MOSI inputs of SPI slaves 1 and 2. The MISO outputs of SPI slaves 1 and 2 are connected to the MISOn inputs of the MCUs (masters X and Y). Any generic port Y output from the MCU (master X) is connected to the SSLn0 input of the MCU (master Y). Any generic port X output of the MCU (master Y) is connected to the SSLn0 input of the MCU (master X). The SSLn1 and SSLn2 outputs of the MCUs (masters X and Y) are connected to the SSL inputs of the SPI slaves 1 and 2. In this configuration example, because the system can be comprised solely of SSLn0 input, and SSLn1 and SSLn2 outputs for slave connections, the SSLn3 output of the MCU is not required.

The MCU drives the RSPCKn, MOSIn, SSLn1, and SSLn2 signals when the SSLn0 input level is high. When the SSLn0 input level is low, the MCU detects a mode fault error, sets RSPCKn, MOSIn, SSLn1, and SSLn2 to Hi-Z, and releases the SPI bus directly to the other master. Of the SPI slaves 1 and 2, the slave that receives low-level input into the SSL input drives the MISO signal.

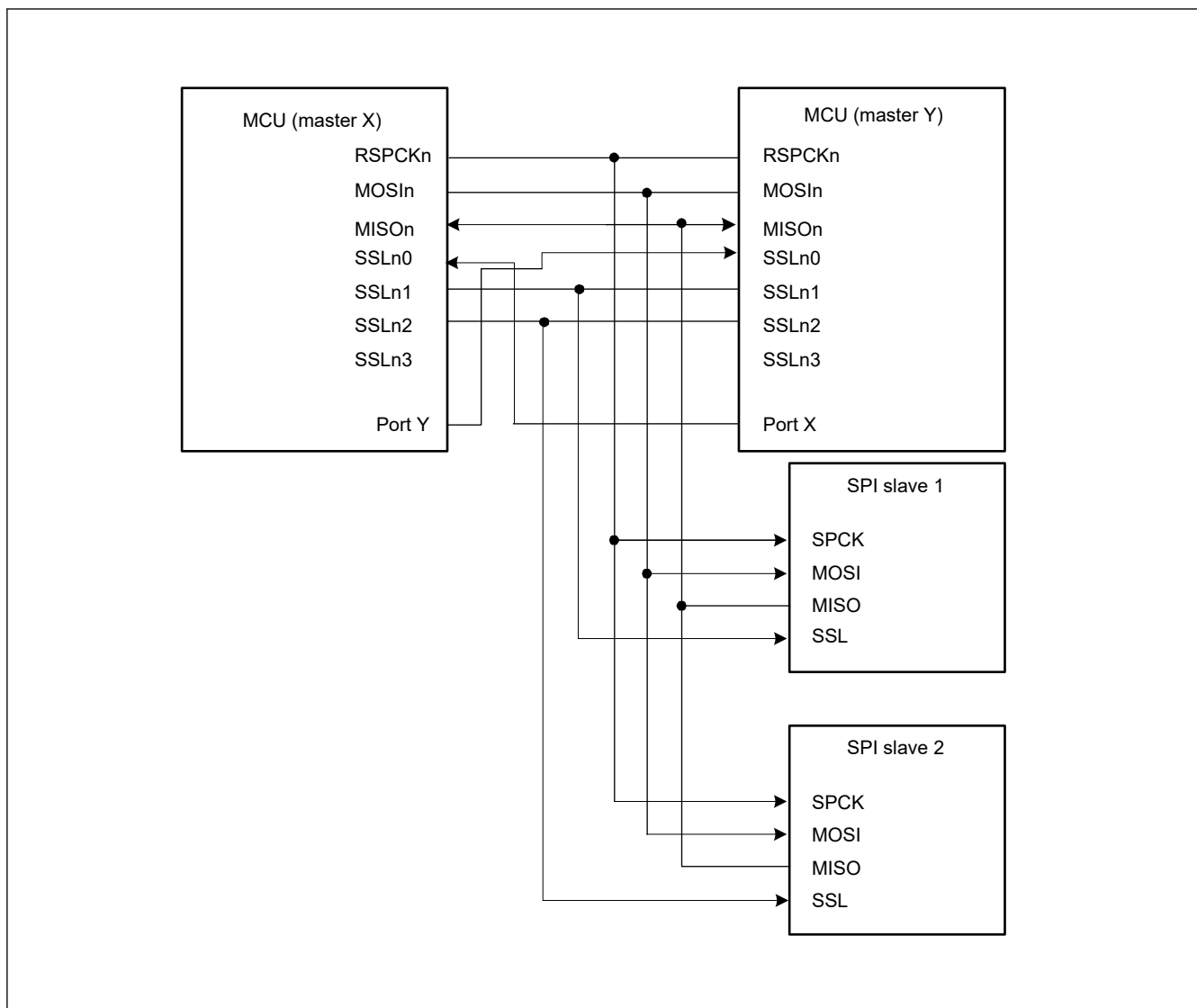


Figure 30.10 Multi-master/multi-slave configuration example with the MCU as a master

30.3.3.6 Master and Slave in Clock Synchronous Mode With the MCU Configured as a Master

Figure 30.11 shows a master and slave in clock synchronous mode configuration example where the MCU is used as a master. In this configuration, SSLni of the MCU (master) is not used.

The MCU (master) drives the RSPCKn and MOSIn signals. The SPI slave drives the MISO signal.

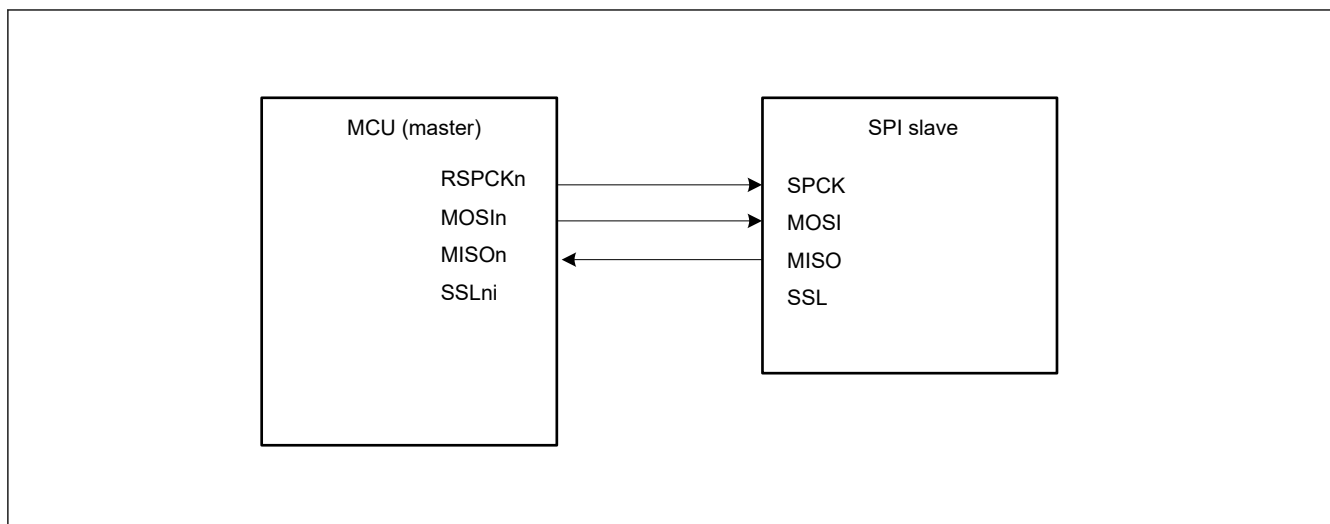


Figure 30.11 Clock synchronous master/slave configuration example with the MCU as a master

30.3.3.7 Master and Slave in Clock Synchronous Mode With the MCU as a Slave

Figure 30.12 shows a master and slave in clock synchronous mode configuration example where the MCU is used as a slave. When the MCU operates as a slave (clock synchronous operation), the MCU (slave) drives the MISOOn signal and the SPI master drives the SPCK and MOSI signals. In addition, SSLn0 to SSLn3 of the MCU (slave) are not used.

The MCU (slave) can only execute serial transfers in the single-slave configuration when the SPCMD0.CPHA bit is set to 1.

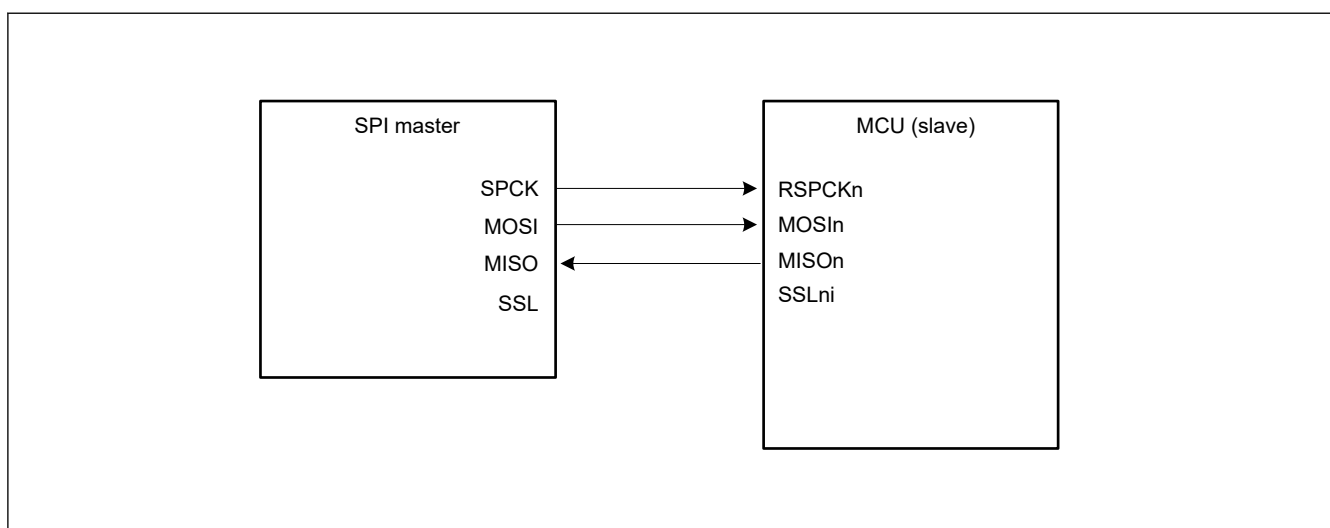


Figure 30.12 Clock synchronous master/slave configuration example with the MCU as a slave and CPHA = 1

30.3.4 Data Formats

The data format of the SPI depends on the settings in SPI Command Register 0 (SPCMD0) and the parity enable bit in SPI Control Register 2 (SPCR2.SPPE). Regardless of whether the MSB or LSB is first, the SPI treats the range from the LSB bit in the SPI Data Register (SPDR/SPDR_HA) to the bit associated with the selected data length, as transfer data.

This section shows the format of one frame of data before or after transfer.

Data format with parity disabled

When parity is disabled, transmission or reception of data proceeds with the length in bits selected in the SPI data length setting in SPI Command Register 0 (SPCMD0.SPB[3:0]).

Data format with parity enabled

When parity is enabled, transmission or reception of data proceeds with the length in bits selected in the SPI data length setting in SPI Command Register 0 (SPCMD0.SPB[3:0]). In this case, however, the last bit is a parity bit.

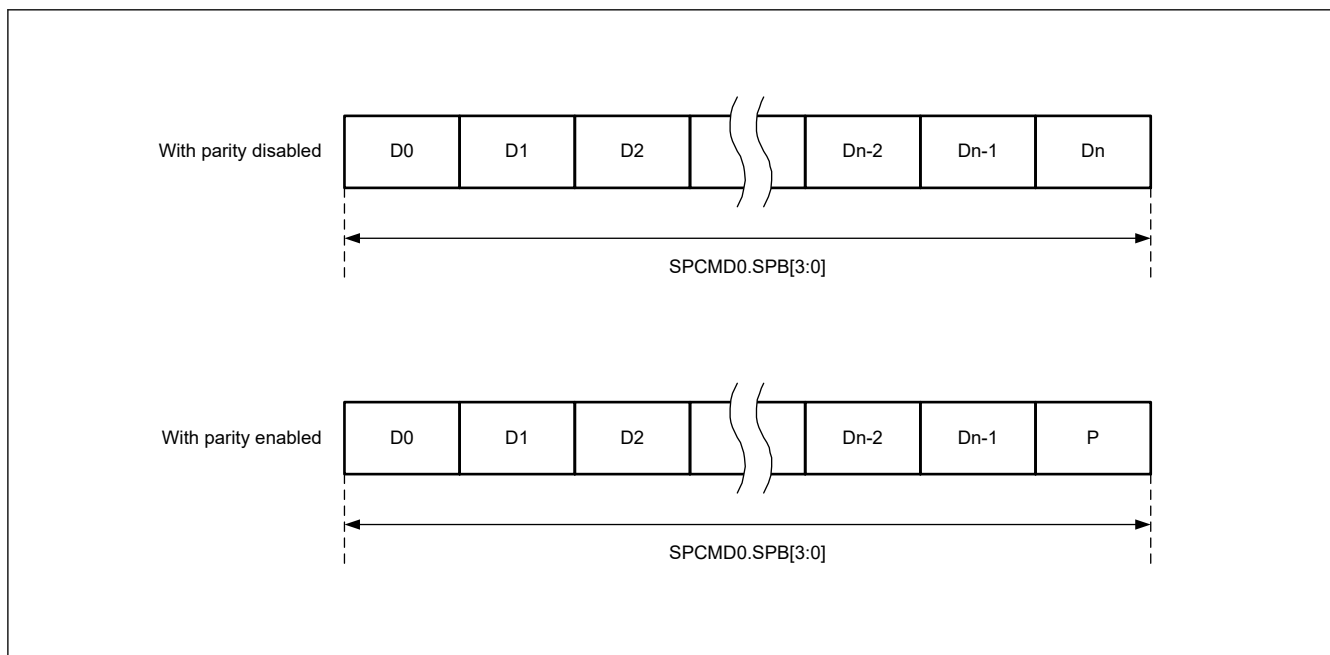


Figure 30.13 Data format with parity disabled and enabled

30.3.4.1 Operation When Parity is Disabled (SPCR2.SPPE = 0)

When parity is disabled, data for transmission is copied to the shift register with no pre-processing. This section describes the connection between the SPI Data Register (SPDR/SPDR_HA) and the shift register in terms of the combination of MSB- or LSB-first order and data length.

(1) MSB-first transfer with 32-bit data

Figure 30.14 shows the operation of the SPI Data Register (SPDR) and the shift register in a transfer with parity disabled, a SPI data length of 32 bits, and MSB-first selected.

In transmission, bits T31 to T00 from the current stage of the transmit buffer are copied to the shift register. Data for transmission is shifted out from the shift register from T31 to T30, and continuing to T00.

In reception, received data is shifted in bit-by-bit through bit[0] of the shift register. When the R31 to R00 bits are collected after input of the required number of RSPCK cycles, the value in the shift register is copied to the receive buffer.

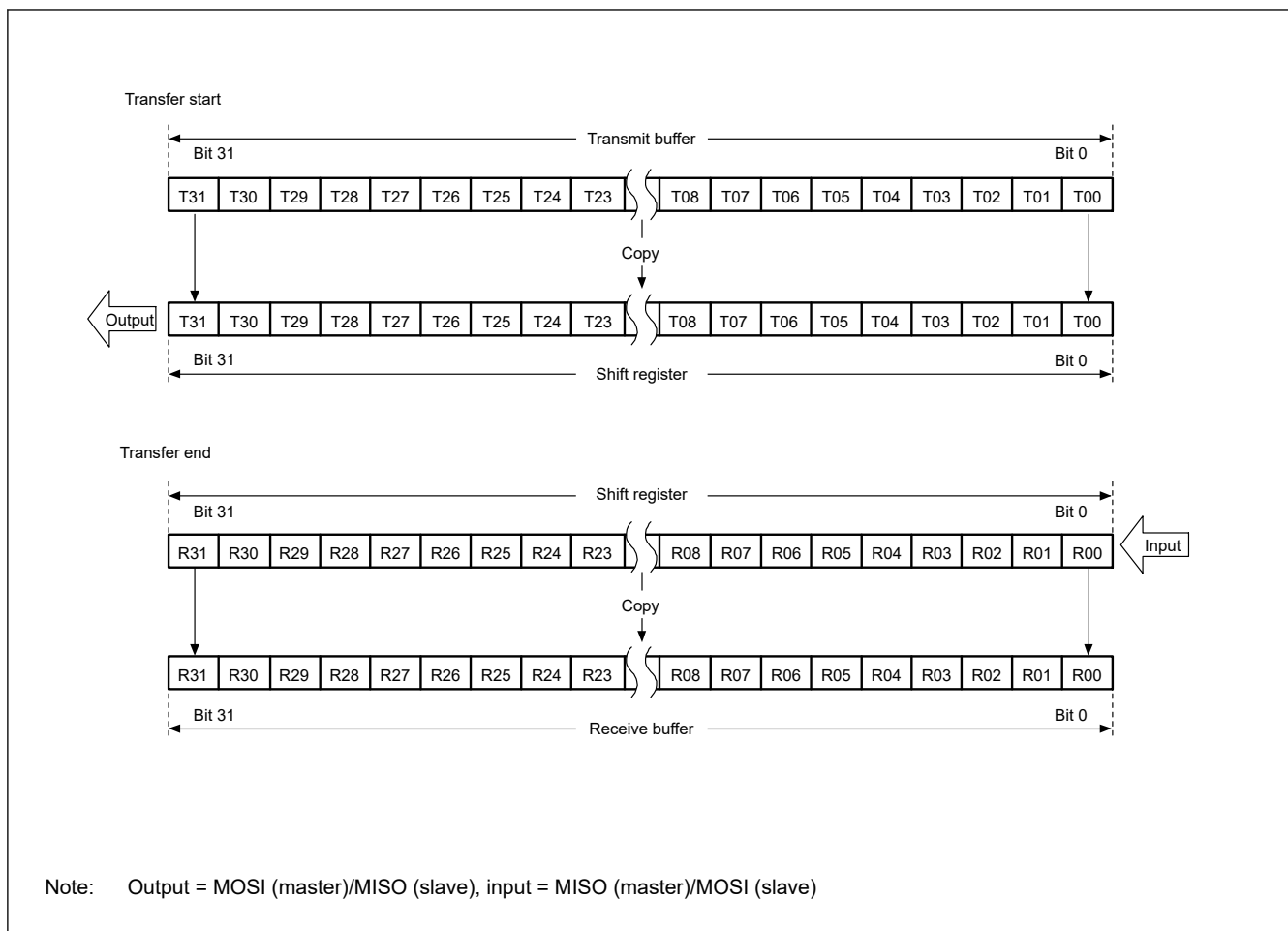


Figure 30.14 MSB-first transfer with 32-bit data and parity disabled

(2) MSB-first transfer with 24-bit data

Figure 30.15 shows the operation of the SPI Data Register (SPDR) and the shift register in a transfer with parity disabled, an SPI data length of 24 bits for an example that is not 32 bits, and MSB-first selected.

In transmission, the lower 24 bits (T23 to T00) from the current stage of the transmit buffer are copied to the shift register. Data for transmission is shifted out from the shift register from T23 to T22, and continuing to T00.

In reception, received data is shifted in bit-by-bit through bit[0] of the shift register. When the R23 to R00 bits are collected after input of the required number of RSPCK cycles, the value in the shift register is copied to the receive buffer. The upper 8 bits of the transmit buffer are stored in the upper 8 bits of the receive buffer. Writing 0 to bits T31 to T24 during transmission leads to 0 being inserted in the upper 8 bits of the receive buffer.

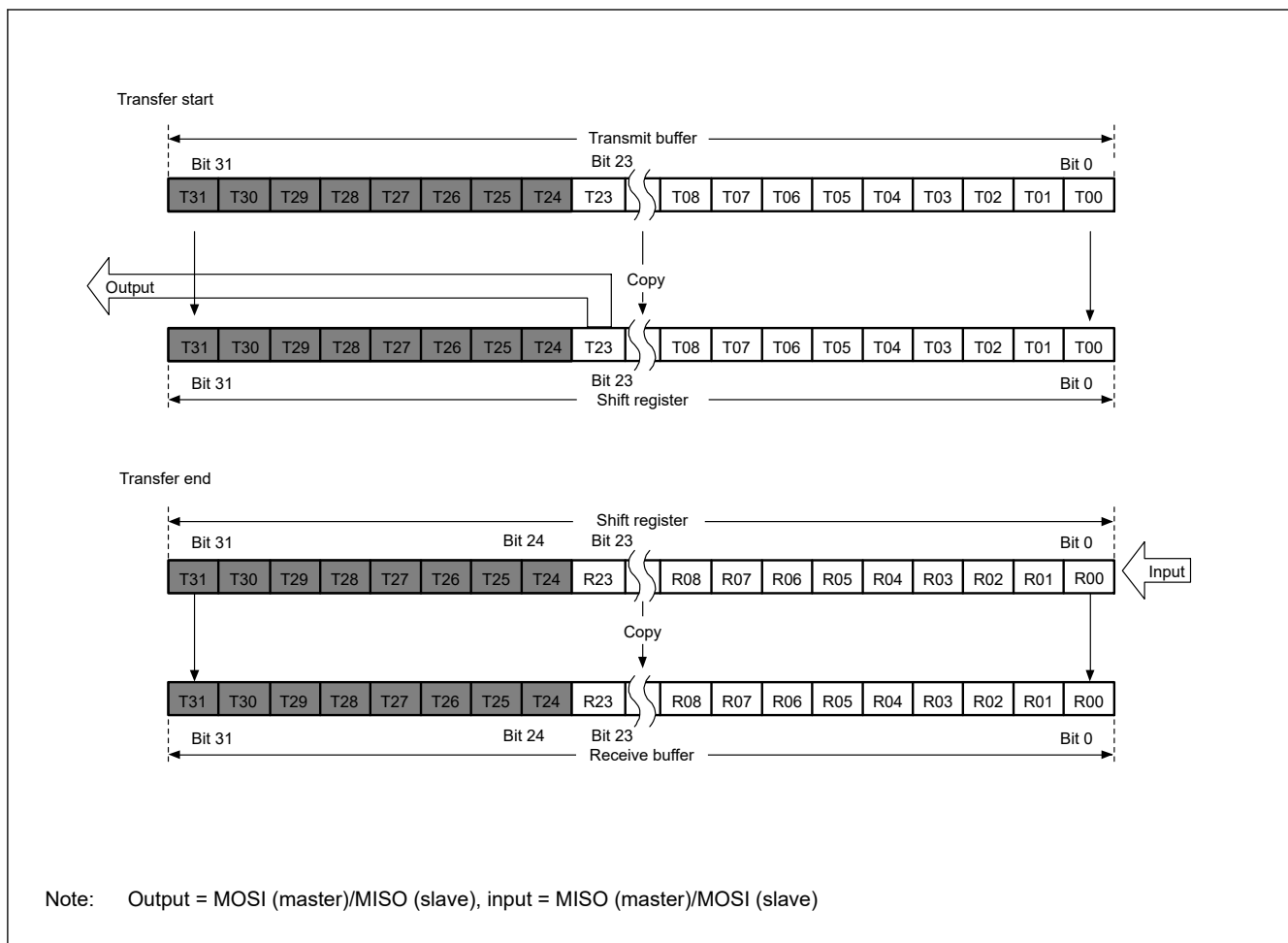


Figure 30.15 MSB-first transfer with 24-bit data and parity disabled

(3) LSB-first transfer with 32-bit data

Figure 30.16 shows the operation of the SPI Data Register (SPDR) and the shift register in a transfer with parity disabled, an SPI data length of 32 bits, and LSB-first selected.

In transmission, bits T31 to T00 from the current stage of the transmit buffer are reordered bit-by-bit to obtain the order T00 to T31 for copying to the shift register. Data for transmission is shifted out from the shift register in order from T00 to T01, and continuing to T31.

In reception, received data is shifted in bit-by-bit through bit[0] of the shift register. When the R00 to R31 bits are collected after input of the required number of RSPCK cycles, the value in the shift register is copied to the receive buffer.

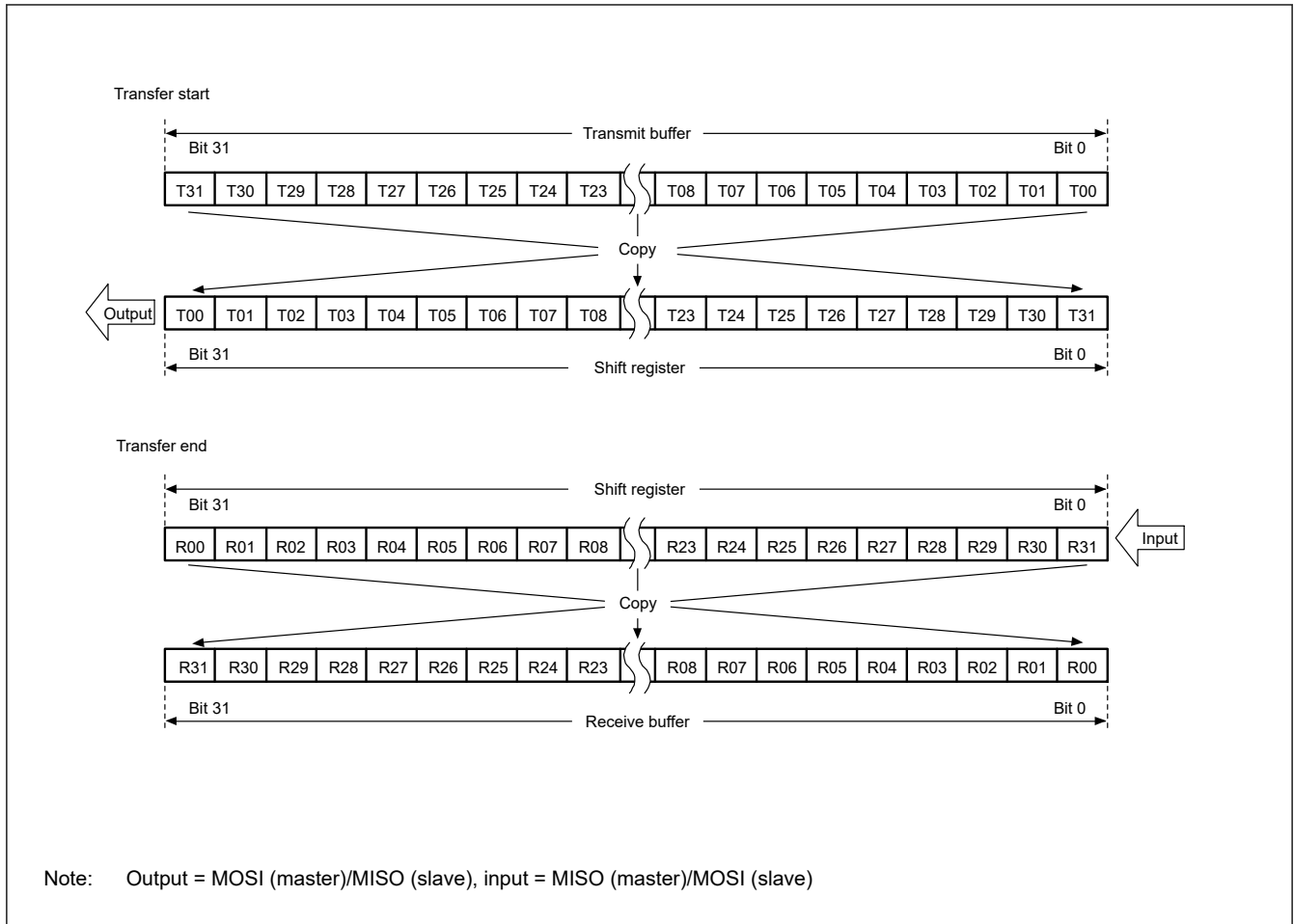


Figure 30.16 LSB-first transfer with 32-bit data and parity disabled

(4) LSB-first transfer with 24-bit data

Figure 30.17 shows the operation of the SPI Data Register (SPDR) and the shift register in transfers with parity disabled, an SPI data length of 24 bits for an example that is not 32, and LSB-first selected.

In transmission, the lower 24 bits (T23 to T00) from the current stage of the transmit buffer are reordered bit-by-bit to obtain the order T00 to T23 for copying to the shift register. Data for transmission is shifted out from the shift register from T00 to T01, and continuing to T23.

In reception, received data is shifted in bit-by-bit through bit[8] of the shift register. When the R00 to R23 bits are collected after input of the required number of RSPCK cycles, the value in the shift register is copied to the receive buffer.

The upper 8 bits of the transmit buffer are stored in the upper 8 bits of the receive buffer. Writing 0 to T31 to T24 during transmission leads to 0 being inserted in the upper 8 bits of the receive buffer.

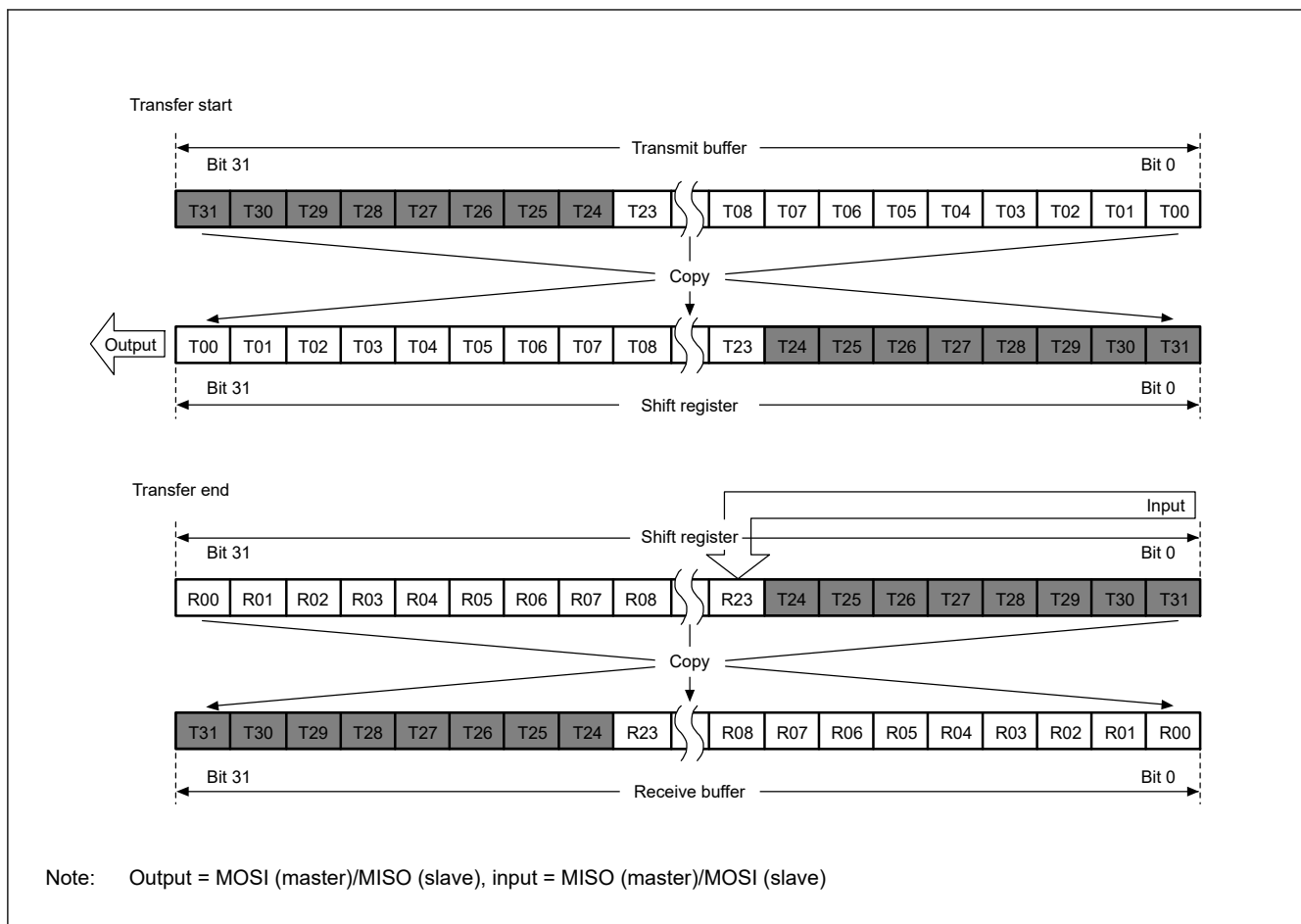


Figure 30.17 LSB-first transfer with 24-bit data and parity disabled

30.3.4.2 Operation When Parity is Enabled (SPCR2.SPPE = 1)

When parity is enabled, the lowest-order bit of the data for transmission becomes a parity bit. Hardware calculates the value of the parity bit.

(1) MSB-first transfer with 32-bit data

Figure 30.18 shows the operation of the SPI Data Register (SPDR) and the shift register in a transfer with parity enabled, an SPI data length of 32 bits, and MSB-first selected.

In transmission, the value of the parity bit (P) is calculated from bits T31 to T01. This replaces the final bit, T00, and the whole value is copied to the shift register. Data is transmitted in the order T31, T30, ..., T01, and P.

In reception, received data is shifted in bit-by-bit through bit[0] of the shift register. When the R31 to P bits are collected after input of the required number of RSPCK cycles, the value in the shift register is copied to the receive buffer. On copying of data to the shift register, the data from R31 to P is checked for parity.

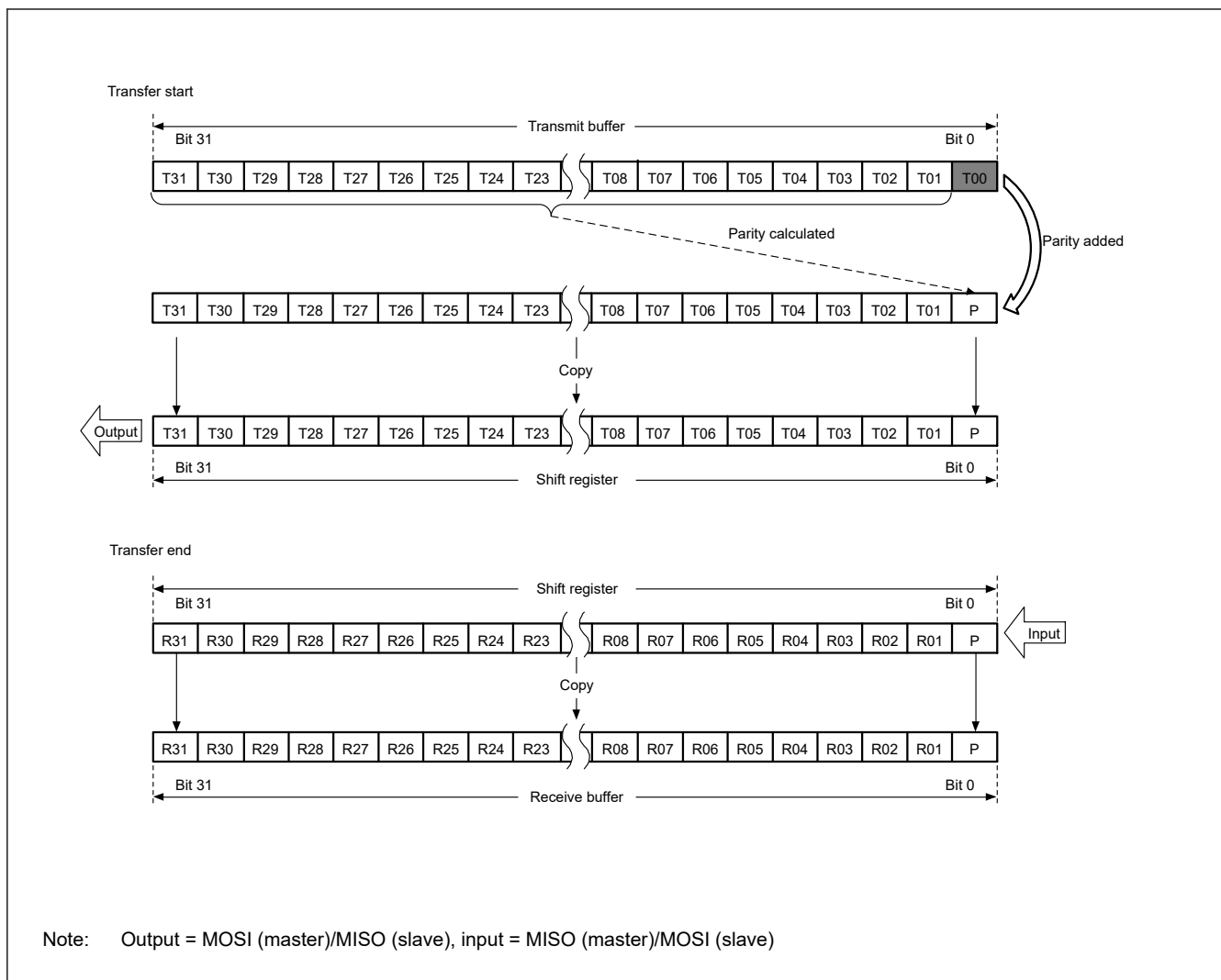


Figure 30.18 MSB-first transfer with 32-bit data and parity enabled

(2) MSB-first transfer with 24-bit data

Figure 30.19 shows the operation of the SPI Data Register (SPDR) and the shift register in a transfer with parity enabled, a SPI data length of 24 bits, and MSB-first selected.

In transmission, the value of the parity bit (P) is calculated from bits T23 to T01. This replaces the final bit, T00, and the whole value is copied to the shift register. Data is transmitted in the order T23, T22, ..., T01, and P.

In reception, received data is shifted in bit-by-bit through bit[0] of the shift register. When the R23 to P bits are collected after input of the required number of RSPCK cycles, the value in the shift register is copied to the receive buffer. On copying of data to the shift register, the data from R23 to P is checked for parity. The upper 8 bits of the transmit buffer is stored in the upper 8 bits of the receive buffer. Writing 0 to T31 to T24 during transmission leads to 0 being inserted in the upper 8 bits of the receive buffer.

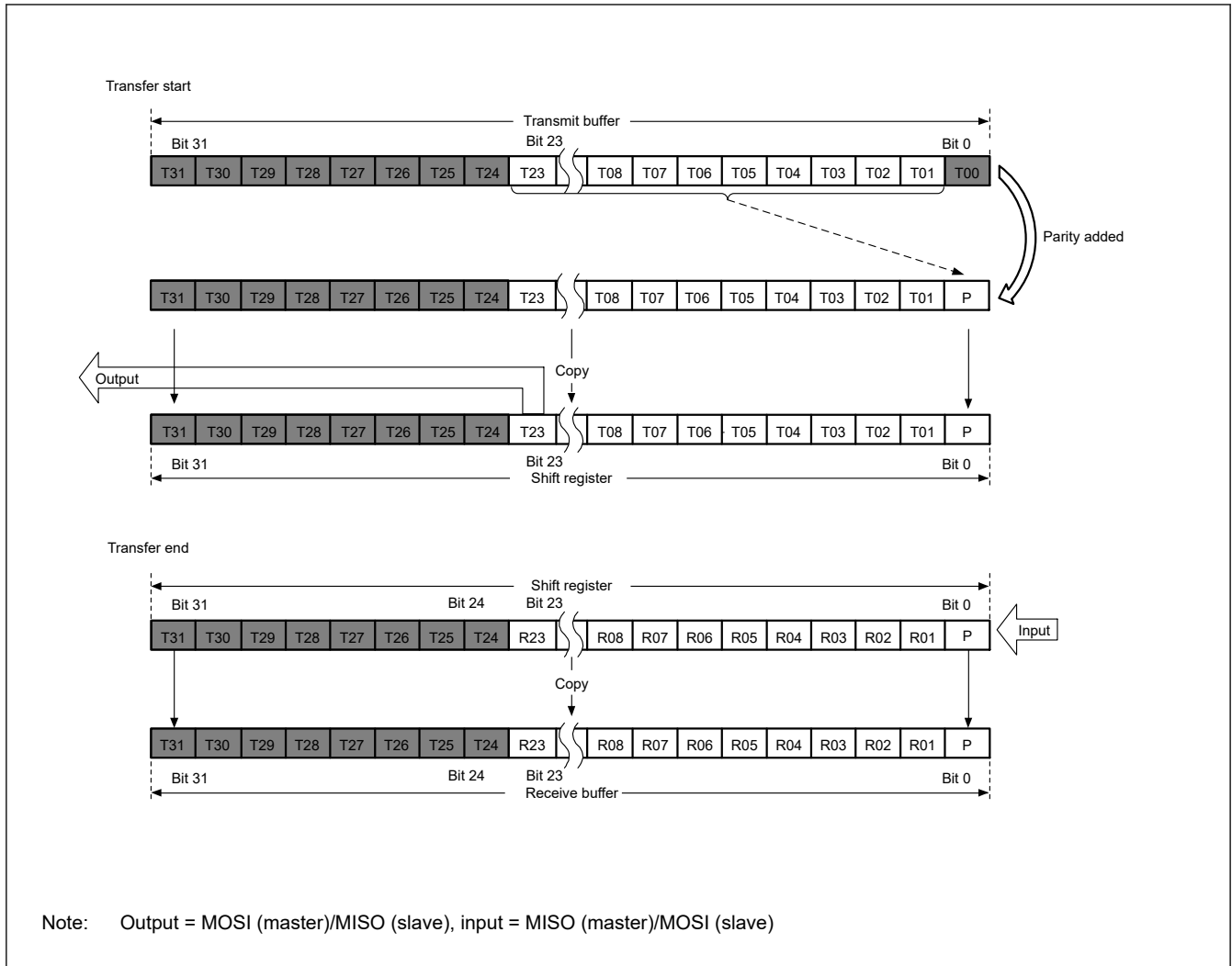


Figure 30.19 MSB-first transfer with 24-bit data and parity enabled

(3) LSB-first transfer with 32-bit data

Figure 30.20 shows the operation of the SPI Data Register (SPDR) and the shift register in a transfer with parity enabled, an SPI data length of 32 bits, and LSB-first selected.

In transmission, the value of the parity bit (P) is calculated from bits T30 to T00. This replaces the final bit, T31, and the whole value is copied to the shift register. Data is transmitted in the order T00, T01, ..., T30, and P.

In reception, received data is shifted in bit-by-bit through bit[0] of the shift register. When the R00 to P bits are collected after input of the required number of RSPCK cycles, the value in the shift register is copied to the receive buffer. On copying of data to the shift register, the data from R00 to P is checked for parity.

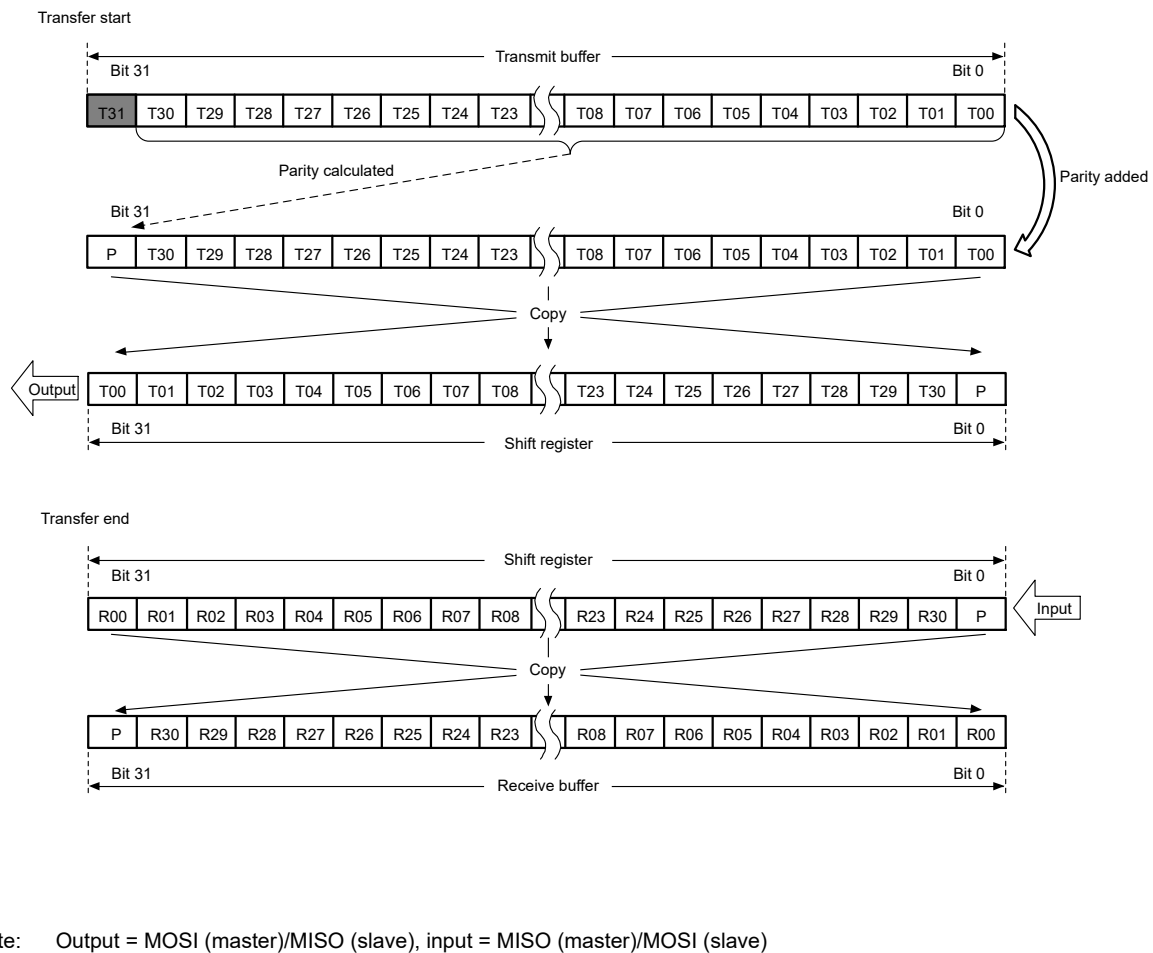


Figure 30.20 LSB-first transfer with 32-bit data and parity enabled

(4) LSB-first transfer with 24-bit data

Figure 30.21 shows the operation of the SPI Data Register (SPDR) and the shift register in a transfer with parity enabled, a SPI data length of 24 bits, and LSB-first selected.

In transmission, the value of the parity bit (P) is calculated from bits T22 to T00. This replaces the final bit, T23, and the whole value is copied to the shift register. Data is transmitted in the order T00, T01, ..., T22, and P.

In reception, received data is shifted in bit-by-bit through bit[8] of the shift register. When the R00 to P bits are collected after input of the required number of RSPCK cycles, the value in the shift register is copied to the receive buffer. On copying of data to the shift register, the data from R00 to P is checked for parity. The upper 8 bits of the transmit buffer is stored in the upper 8 bits of the receive buffer. Writing 0 to T31 to T24 during transmission leads to 0 being inserted in the upper 8 bits of the receive buffer.

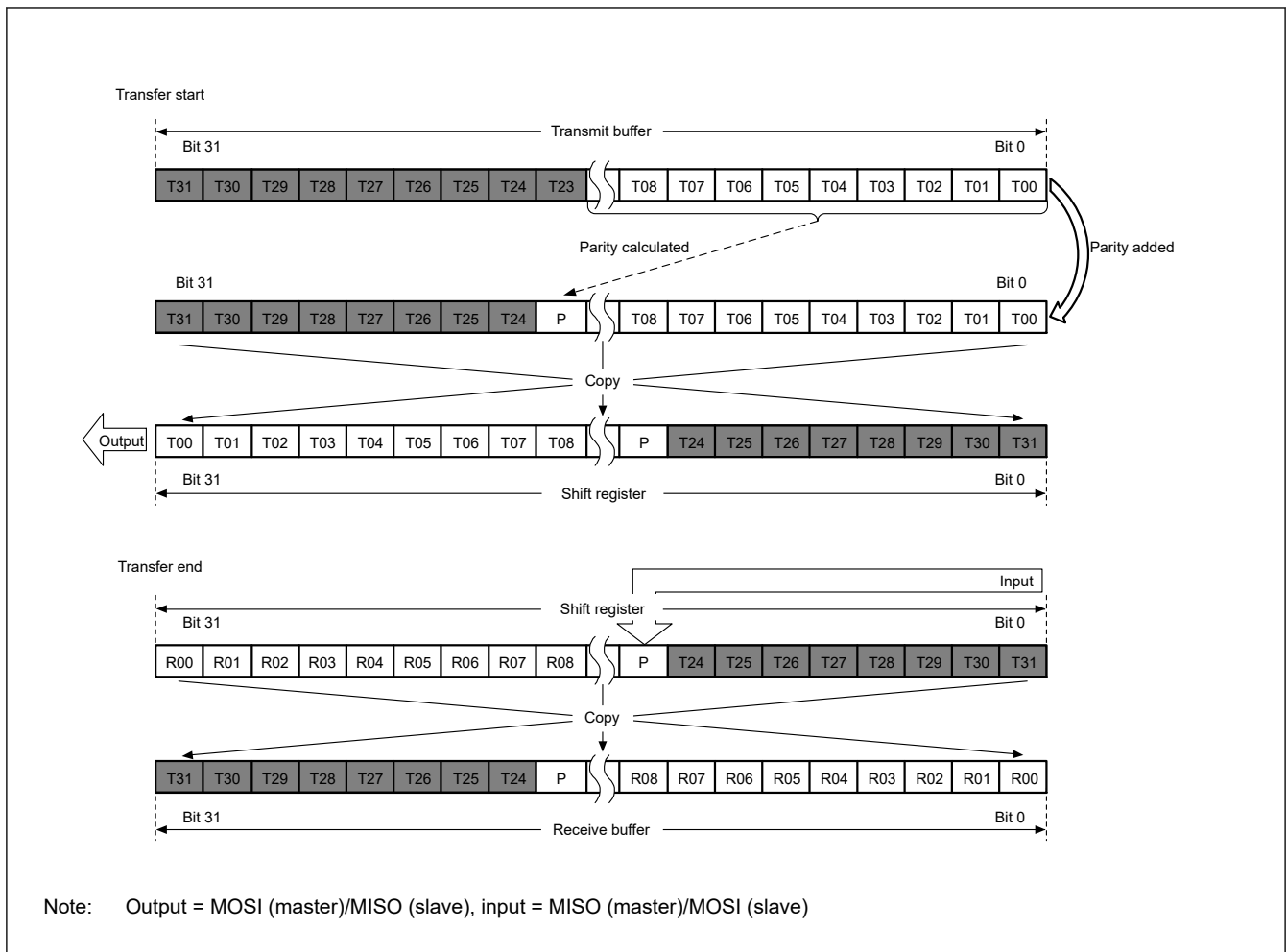


Figure 30.21 LSB-first transfer with 24-bit data and parity enabled

30.3.5 Transfer Formats

30.3.5.1 When CPHA = 0

Figure 30.22 shows an example transfer format for the serial transfer of 8-bit data when the SPCMD0.CPHA bit is 0. Do not perform clock synchronous operation (SPCR.SPMS = 1) when the SPI operates in slave mode (SPCR.MSTR = 0) and the CPHA bit is 0. In Figure 30.22, RSPCKn (CPOL = 0) indicates the RSPCKn signal waveform when the SPCMD0.CPOL bit is 0, and RSPCKn (CPOL = 1) indicates the RSPCKn signal waveform when the CPOL bit is 1. The sampling timing represents the timing at which the SPI fetches serial transfer data into the shift register. The I/O directions of the signals depend on the SPI settings. For details, see [section 30.3.2. Controlling the SPI Pins](#).

When the SPCMD0.CPHA bit is 0, the driving of valid data to the MOSIn and MISO signals begins at an SSLni signal assertion. The first RSPCKn signal change that occurs after the SSLni signal assertion becomes the first transfer data fetch. After this, data is sampled every 1 RSPCKn cycle. The change timing for MOSIn and MISO signals is 1/2 RSPCK cycles after the transfer data fetch timing. The CPOL bit setting does not affect the RSPCK signal operation timing as it only affects the signal polarity.

t1 denotes the RSPCK delay, the period from an SSLni signal assertion to RSPCKn oscillation. t2 denotes the SSL negation delay, the period from the termination of RSPCKn oscillation to an SSLni signal negation. t3 denotes the next-access delay, the period in which SSLni signal assertion is suppressed for the next transfer after the end of serial transfer. t1, t2, and t3 are controlled by a master device running on the SPI system. For a description of t1, t2, and t3 when the SPI is in master mode, see [section 30.3.10.1. Master Mode Operation](#).

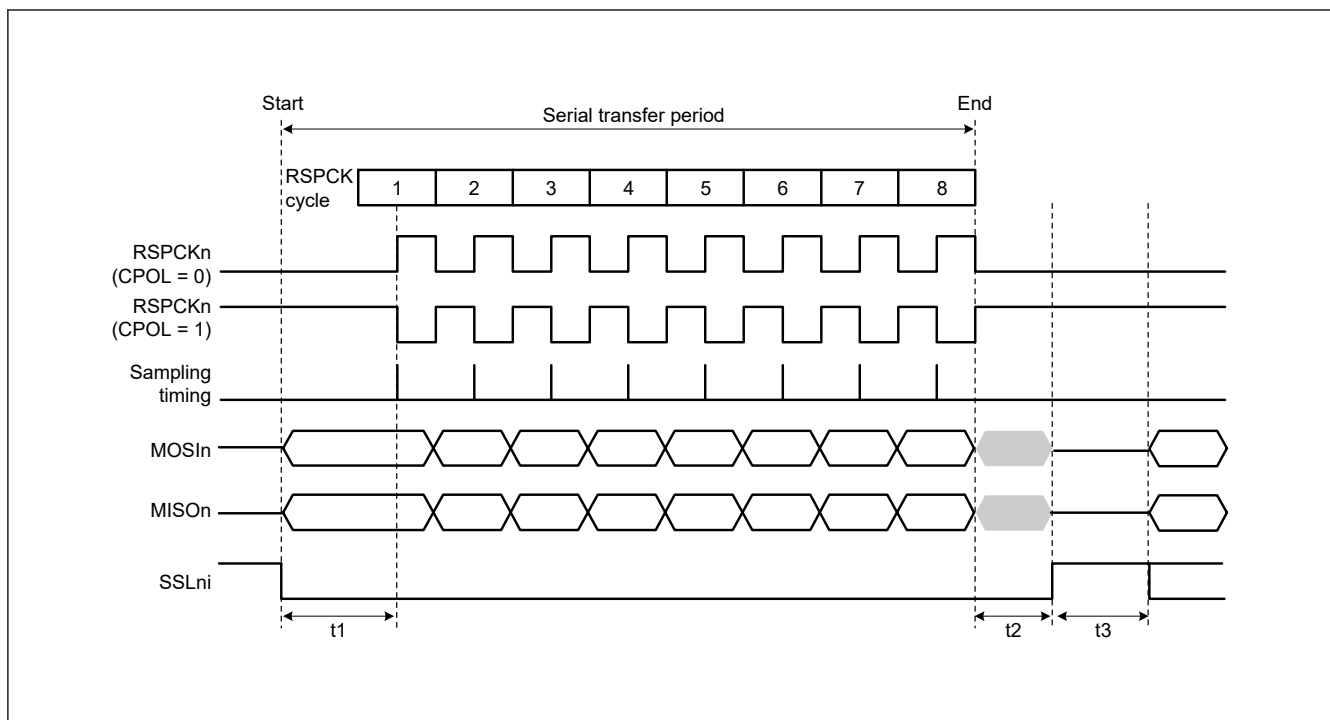


Figure 30.22 SPI transfer format when CPHA = 0

30.3.5.2 When CPHA = 1

[Figure 30.23](#) shows an example transfer format for the serial transfer of 8-bit data when the SPCMD0.CPHA bit is 1. However, when the SPCR.SPMS bit is 1, the SSLni signals are not used, and only the three signals RSPCKn, MOSIn, and MISOOn handle communications. In [Figure 30.23](#), RSPCK (CPOL = 0) indicates the RSPCKn signal waveform when the SPCMD0.CPOL bit is 0 and RSPCK (CPOL = 1) indicates the RSPCKn signal waveform when the CPOL bit is 1. The sampling timing represents the timing at which the SPI fetches serial transfer data into the shift register. The I/O directions of the signals depend on the SPI mode (master or slave mode). For details, see [section 30.3.2. Controlling the SPI Pins](#).

When the SPCMD0.CPHA bit is 1, the driving of invalid data to the MISOOn signal begins at an SSLni signal assertion. The output of valid data to the MOSIn and MISOOn signals begins at the first RSPCKn signal change that occurs after the SSLni signal assertion. After this, data is updated every 1 RSPCK cycle. The transfer data fetch timing is 1/2 RSPCK cycles after the data update timing. The SPCMD0.CPOL bit setting does not affect the RSPCKn signal operation timing. It only affects the signal polarity.

t1, t2, and t3 are the same as those when CPHA = 0. For a description of t1, t2, and t3 when the SPI of the MCU is in master mode, see [section 30.3.10.1. Master Mode Operation](#).

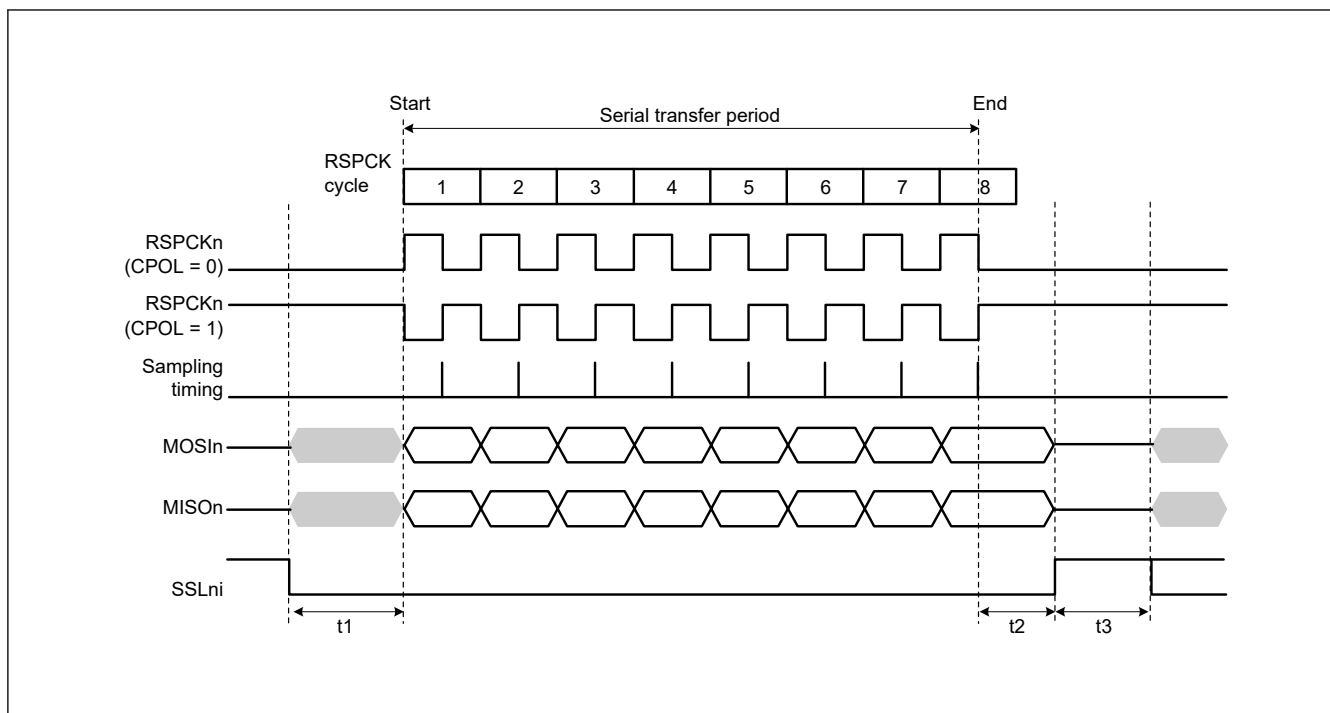


Figure 30.23 SPI transfer format when CPHA = 1

30.3.6 Data Transfer Modes

Full-duplex synchronous serial communications or transmit operations can only be selected in the Communications Operating Mode Select bit (SPCR.TXMD). The register accesses shown in [Figure 30.24](#) and [Figure 30.25](#) indicate the condition of access to the SPDR/SPDR_HA register, where W denotes a write cycle.

30.3.6.1 Full-duplex Synchronous Serial Communications (SPCR.TXMD = 0)

[Figure 30.24](#) shows an example of operation when the Communications Operating Mode Select bit (SPCR.TXMD) is set to 0. In this example, the SPI performs an 8-bit serial transfer when the SPCMD0.CPHA bit is 1, and the SPCMD0.CPOL bit is 0. The numbers given for RSPCKn in the waveform represent the number of RSPCK cycles, such as the number of transferred bits.

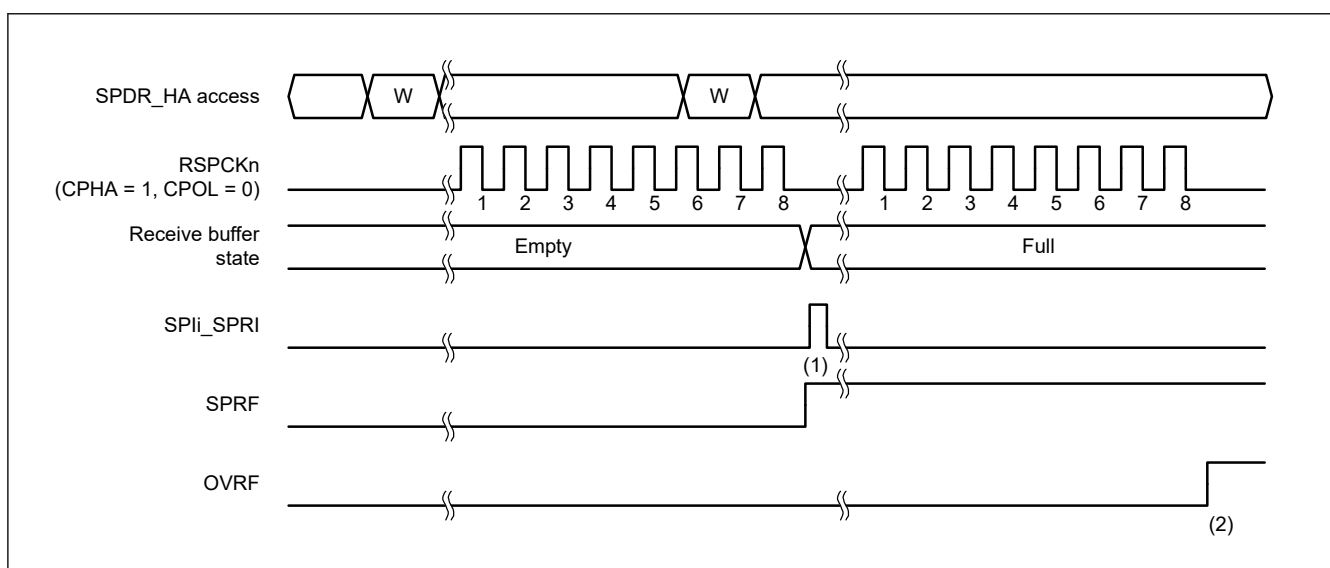


Figure 30.24 Operation example when SPCR.TXMD = 0

The operation of the flags at timings (1) and (2) in [Figure 30.24](#) is as follows:

1. When a serial transfer ends with the receive buffer of SPDR_HA empty, the SPI generates a receive buffer full interrupt request (SPIi_SPRI), the SPI sets the SPSR.SPRF flag to 1, and copies the received data in the shift register to the receive buffer.
2. When a serial transfer ends with the receive buffer of SPDR_HA holding data that was received in the previous serial transfer, the SPI sets the SPSR.OVRF flag to 1, and discards the received data in the shift register. For details about the operation of the SPSR.OVRF flag, see [section 30.3.8.1. Overrun Errors](#).

30.3.6.2 Transmit-only Serial Communications (SPCR.TXMD = 1)

[Figure 30.25](#) shows an example of operation when the Communications Operating Mode Select bit (SPCR.TXMD) is set to 1. In this example, the SPI performs an 8-bit serial transfer when the SPCMD0.CPHA bit is 1, and the SPCMD0.CPOL bit is 0. The numbers given for RSPCKn in the waveform represent the number of RSPCK cycles, such as the number of transferred bits.

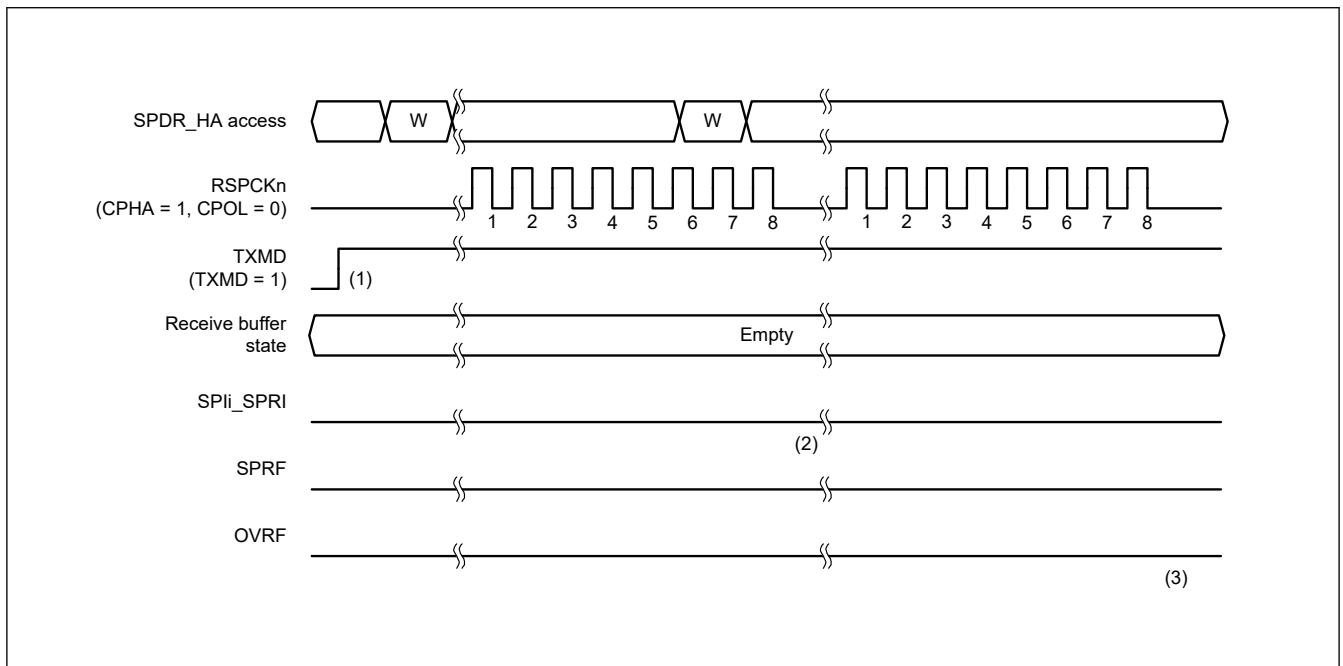


Figure 30.25 Operation example when SPCR.TXMD = 1

The operation of the flags at timings (1) to (3) in [Figure 30.25](#) is as follows:

1. Make sure there is no data left in the receive buffer (the SPSR.SPRF flag is 0) and the SPSR.OVRF flag is 0 before entering transmit-only mode (SPCR.TXMD = 1).
2. When a serial transfer ends with the receive buffer of SPDR_HA empty, if the transmit-only mode is selected (SPCR.TXMD = 1), the SPSR.SPRF flag retains the value of 0, and the SPI does not copy the data in the shift register to the receive buffer.
3. Because the receive buffer of SPDR_HA does not hold data that was received in the previous serial transfer, even when a serial transfer ends, the SPSR.OVRF flag retains the value of 0, and the data in the shift register is not copied to the receive buffer.

In transmit-only mode (SPCR.TXMD = 1), the SPI transmits data but does not receive data. Therefore, the SPSR.SPRF and SPSR.OVRF flags remain 0 at timings (1) to (3).

30.3.7 Transmit Buffer Empty and Receive Buffer Full Interrupts

[Figure 30.26](#) and [Figure 30.27](#) show examples of operation of the transmit buffer empty interrupt (SPIi_SPTI) and the receive buffer full interrupt (SPIi_SPRI). The SPDR_HA register accesses shown in these figures indicate the conditions of access to the register, where W denotes a write cycle and R a read cycle. In [Figure 30.26](#), the SPI performs an 8-bit serial transfer when SPCR.TXMD bit is 0, the SPCMD0.CPHA bit is 0, and the SPCMD0.CPOL bit is 0. In [Figure 30.27](#), the SPI performs an 8-bit serial transfer when SPCR.TXMD bit is 0, the SPCMD0.CPHA bit is 1, and the SPCMD0.CPOL bit is 0.

Timing diagram for SPI master and slave signals. The diagram shows the relationship between SPDR_HA access, RSPCKn, Transmit buffer state, SPIi_SPTI, SPTEF, Receive buffer state, SPIi_SPRI, and SPRF. The transmit buffer state transitions from Empty to Full (1), Full to Empty (2), Empty to Full (3), and Full to Empty (4). The receive buffer state transitions from Empty to Full (4) and Full to Empty (5). Vertical dashed lines mark the start of each buffer state transition.

The diagram illustrates the timing of SPDR_HA access. The top signal, SPDR_HA access, shows a sequence of Write (W) and Read (R) operations. The RSPCKn signal is a periodic clock. The Transmit buffer state transitions from Empty to Full at the start of the first write cycle and back to Empty at the end of the fourth write cycle. The Receive buffer state transitions from Empty to Full at the start of the first read cycle and back to Empty at the end of the fourth read cycle. The SPli_SPTI signal is active during the first two write cycles and the first read cycle. The SPTEF signal is active during the first two write cycles and the first read cycle. The SPli_SPRI signal is active during the first read cycle and the eighth clock cycle. The SPRF signal is active during the first read cycle and the eighth clock cycle.

The operation of the SPI at timings (1) to (5) in [Figure 30.26](#) and [Figure 30.27](#) is as follows:

- Page 992 of 1350

when received data is not copied from the shift register to the receive buffer in an overrun error status, on completion of the serial transfer, the SPI determines that the shift register is empty, so data transfer from the transmit buffer to the shift register is enabled.

5. When SPDR_HA is read either by the receive buffer full interrupt routine or processing of the receive buffer full interrupt using the SPRF flag, the receive data can be read.

If SPDR_HA is written to when the transmit buffer holds data that is not yet transmitted (the SPTEF flag is 0), the SPI does not update data in the transmit buffer. When writing to SPDR_HA, always use either a transmit buffer empty interrupt request or processing of the transmit buffer empty interrupt using the SPTEF flag. To use a transmit buffer empty interrupt, set the SPTIE bit in SPCR to 1. If the SPI function is disabled (the SPCR.SPE bit is 0), set the SPTIE bit to 0.

When serial transfer ends and the receive buffer is full (the SPRF flag is 1), the SPI does not copy data from the shift register to the receive buffer, and it detects an overrun error (see [section 30.3.8. Error Detection](#)). To prevent a receive data overrun error, read the received data using a receive buffer full interrupt request before the next serial transfer ends. To use an SPI receive buffer full interrupt, set the SPCR.SPRIE bit to 1.

Transmission and reception interrupts or the associated IELSRn.IR flags (where n is the interrupt vector number) in the ICU can be used to confirm the states of the transmit and receive buffers.

Similarly, the SPTEF and SPRF flags can be used to confirm the states of the transmit and receive buffers. See [section 12, Interrupt Controller Unit \(ICU\)](#) for the interrupt vector numbers.

30.3.8 Error Detection

In normal SPI serial transfers, data written to the transmit buffer of SPDR/SPDR_HA is transmitted, and received data can be read from the receive buffer of SPDR/SPDR_HA. If access is made to SPDR/SPDR_HA, an abnormal transfer might occur, depending on the status of the transmit or receive buffer or the status of the SPI at the beginning or end of serial transfer.

If an abnormal transfer occurs, the SPI detects the event as an underrun error, overrun error, parity error, or mode fault error. [Table 30.7](#) lists the relationship between non-normal transfer operations and the SPI error detection function.

Table 30.7 Relationship between non-normal transfer operations and SPI error detection (1 of 2)

Operation	Occurrence condition	SPI operation	Error detection
1	SPDR/SPDR_HA is written when the transmit buffer is full.	- The contents of the transmit buffer are kept - Write data is missing	None
2	SPDR/SPDR_HA is read when the receive buffer is empty.	The contents of the receive buffer and previously received data are output.	None
3	Serial transfer is started in slave mode when the SPI is not able to transmit data.	- Serial transfer is suspended - Transmit or receive data is missing - Driving of the MISO output signal is stopped - SPI function is disabled	Underrun error
4	Serial transfer terminates when the receive buffer is full.	- Keeps the contents of the receive buffer - Missing receive data	Overrun error
5	An incorrect parity bit is received during full-duplex synchronous serial communication with the parity function enabled in following mode: - Transmit-receive master mode - Transmit-receive slave mode	The parity error flag is asserted	Parity error
6	The SSLn0 input signal is asserted when the serial transfer is idle in multi-master mode.	- Driving of the RSPCKn, MOSIn, SSLn1 to SSLn3 output signals is stopped - SPI function is disabled	Mode fault error
7	The SSLn0 input signal is asserted during serial transfer in multi-master mode.	- Serial transfer is suspended - Transmit or receive data is missing - Driving of the RSPCKn, MOSIn, SSLn1 to SSLn3 output signals is stopped - SPI function is disabled	Mode fault error

Table 30.7 Relationship between non-normal transfer operations and SPI error detection (2 of 2)

Operation	Occurrence condition	SPI operation	Error detection
8	The SSLn0 input signal is negated during serial transfer in slave mode.	- Serial transfer is suspended - Transmit or receive data is missing - Driving of the MISOn output signal is stopped - SPI function is disabled	Mode fault error

In operation 1 described in [Table 30.7](#), the SPI does not detect an error. To prevent data omission during writes to SPDR/SPDR_HA, the writes to SPDR/SPDR_HA must be executed using a transmit buffer empty interrupt request (when the SPSR.SPTEF flag is 1).

Similarly, the SPI does not detect an error in operation 2. To prevent extraneous data from being read, SPDR/SPDR_HA read must be executed with an SPI receive buffer full interrupt request (when the SPSR.SPRF flag is 1).

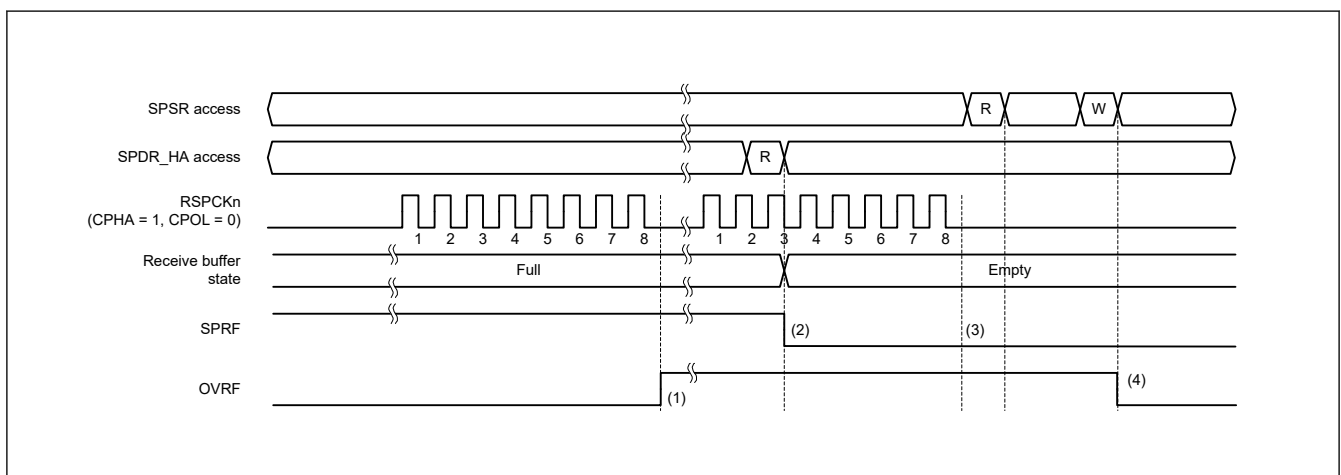
For information on the other errors, see the following sections:

- Underrun error, indicated in operation 3, see [section 30.3.8.4. Underrun Errors](#)
- Overrun error, indicated in operation 4, see [section 30.3.8.1. Overrun Errors](#)
- Parity error, indicated in operation 5, see [section 30.3.8.2. Parity Errors](#)
- Mode fault error, indicated in operations 6 to 8, see [section 30.3.8.3. Mode Fault Errors](#)
- For the transmit and receive interrupts, see [section 30.3.7. Transmit Buffer Empty and Receive Buffer Full Interrupts](#).

30.3.8.1 Overrun Errors

If a serial transfer ends when the receive buffer of SPDR/SPDR_HA is full, the SPI detects an overrun error and sets the SPSR.OVRF flag to 1. When the OVRF flag is 1, the SPI does not copy data from the shift register to the receive buffer, so the data prior to the error occurrence is retained in the receive buffer. To set the OVRF flag to 0, write 0 to the OVRF flag after the CPU reads SPSR with the OVRF flag set to 1.

[Figure 30.28](#) shows an example of operation of the OVRF and SPRF flags. The SPSR and SPDR_HA accesses shown in [Figure 30.28](#) indicate the condition of accesses to the SPSR and SPDR_HA register, where W denotes a write cycle, and R a read cycle. In this example, the SPI performs an 8-bit serial transfer when SPCMD0.CPHA bit is 1 and the SPCMD0.CPOL bit is 0. The numbers given for RSPCKn in the waveform represent the number of RSPCK cycles, such as the number of transferred bits.

**Figure 30.28 Operation example of the OVRF and SPRF flags**

The operation of the flags at timings (1) to (4) in [Figure 30.28](#) is as follows:

1. If a serial transfer terminates with the SPRF flag set to 1 (receive buffer full), the SPI detects an overrun error, and sets the OVRF flag to 1. The SPI does not copy the data in the shift register to the receive buffer. Even when the SPPE bit is 1, parity errors are not detected.
2. When SPDR/SPDR_HA is read, the SPI outputs the data in the receive buffer. The SPRF flag is then set to 0. The receive buffer becoming empty does not set the OVRF flag to 0.

3. If the serial transfer ends with the OVRF flag set to 1 (an overrun error occurred), the SPI does not copy data in the shift register to the receive buffer (the SPRF flag does not set to 1). A receive buffer full interrupt is not generated. Even when the SPPE bit is 1, parity errors are not detected. In an overrun error state when the SPI does not copy the received data from the shift register to the receive buffer, on termination of the serial transfer, the SPI determines that the shift register is empty. This enables data transfer from the transmit buffer to the shift register.
4. If 0 is written to the OVRF flag after SPSR is read when the OVRF flag is 1, the OVRF flag clears is set to 0.

The occurrence of an overrun can be checked either by reading SPSR or by using an SPI error interrupt and reading SPSR. When executing a serial transfer, you must ensure that overrun errors are detected early, for example by reading SPSR immediately after SPDR/SPDR_HA/SPDR_BY is read.

If an overrun error occurs and the OVRF flag sets to 1, normal reception operations cannot be performed until the OVRF flag is set to 0.

When the RSPCK auto-stop function is enabled (SPCR2.SCKASE = 1) in master mode, an overrun error does not occur. [Figure 30.29](#) and [Figure 30.30](#) show the clock stop waveform when a serial transfer continues while the receive buffer is full in master mode.

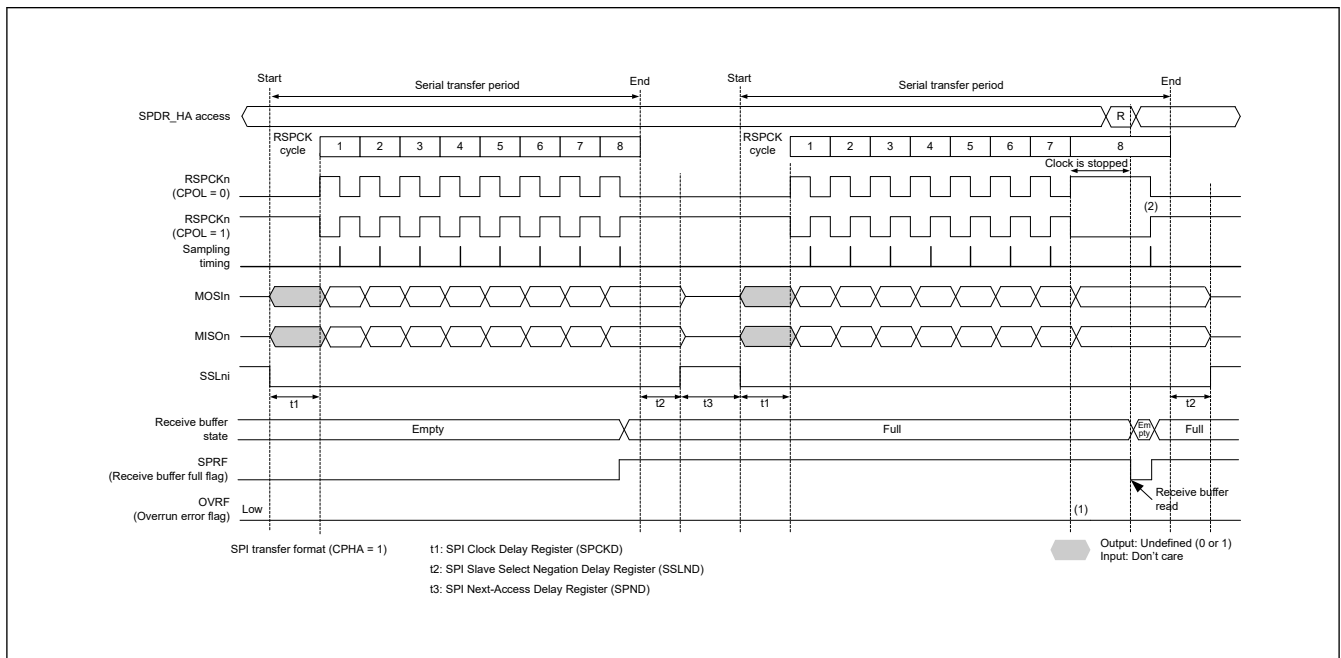


Figure 30.29 Clock stop waveform when serial transfer continues while receive buffer is full in master mode (CPHA = 1)

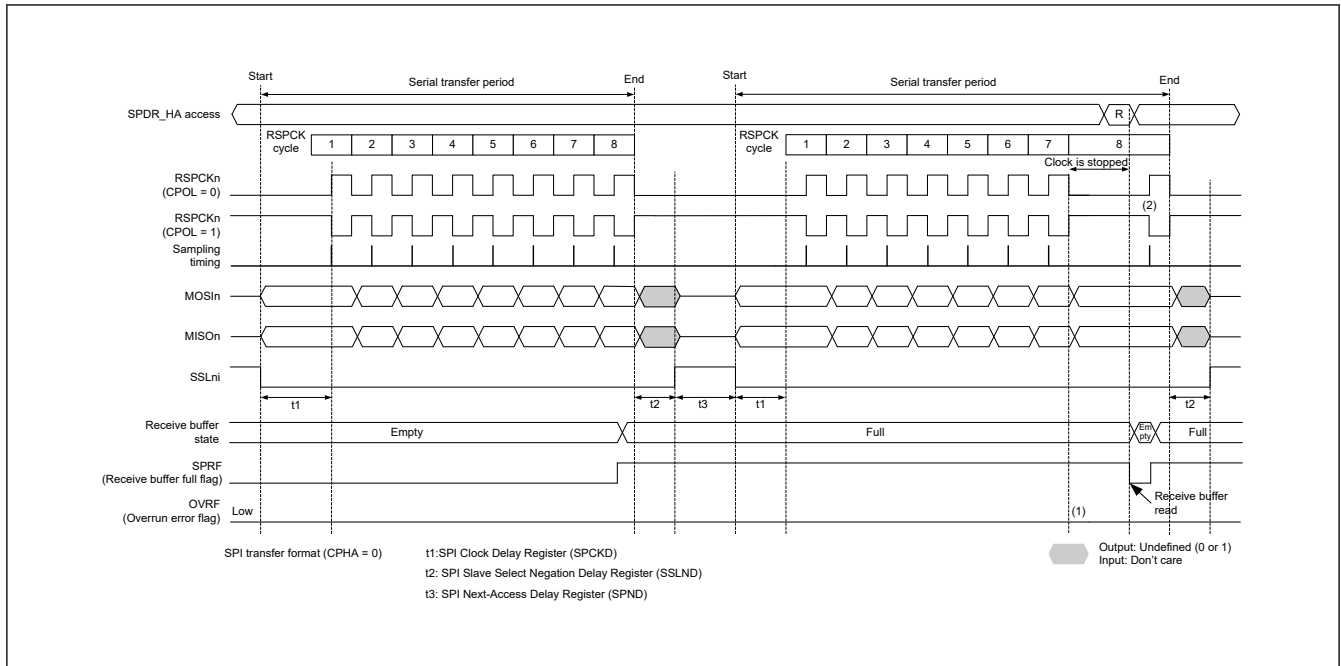


Figure 30.30 Clock stop waveform when serial transfer continues while receive buffer is full in master mode (CPHA = 0)

The operation of the flags at timings (1) and (2) in [Figure 30.29](#) and [Figure 30.30](#) is as follows:

1. When the receive buffer is full, an overrun error does not occur because the RSPCK clock is stopped.
2. If SPDR/SPDR_HA is read while the clock is stopped, data in the receive buffer can be read. The RSPCK clock restarts after reading the receive buffer (after the SPSR.SPRF flag is set to 0).

30.3.8.2 Parity Errors

When full-duplex synchronous serial communication is performed with the SPCR.TXMD bit set to 0 and the SPCR2.SPPE bit set to 1, when serial transfer ends, the SPI checks whether there are parity errors. On detecting a parity error in the received data, the SPI sets the SPSR.PERF flag to 1. Because the SPI does not copy data in the shift register to the receive buffer when the SPSR.OVRF flag is set to 1, parity error detection is not performed for the received data. To set the PERF flag to 0, write 0 to the PERF flag after the SPSR register is read with the PERF flag set to 1.

[Figure 30.31](#) shows an example of operation of the OVRF and PERF flags. The SPSR access shown in [Figure 30.31](#) indicates the condition of access to the register, where W denotes a write cycle, and R a read cycle. In this example, full-duplex serial communication is performed while the SPCR2.SPPE bit is 1. The SPI performs an 8-bit serial transfer when SPCMD0.CPHA bit is 1 and the SPCMD0.CPOL bit is 0. The numbers given for RSPCKn in the waveform represent the number of RSPCK cycles, such as the number of transferred bits.

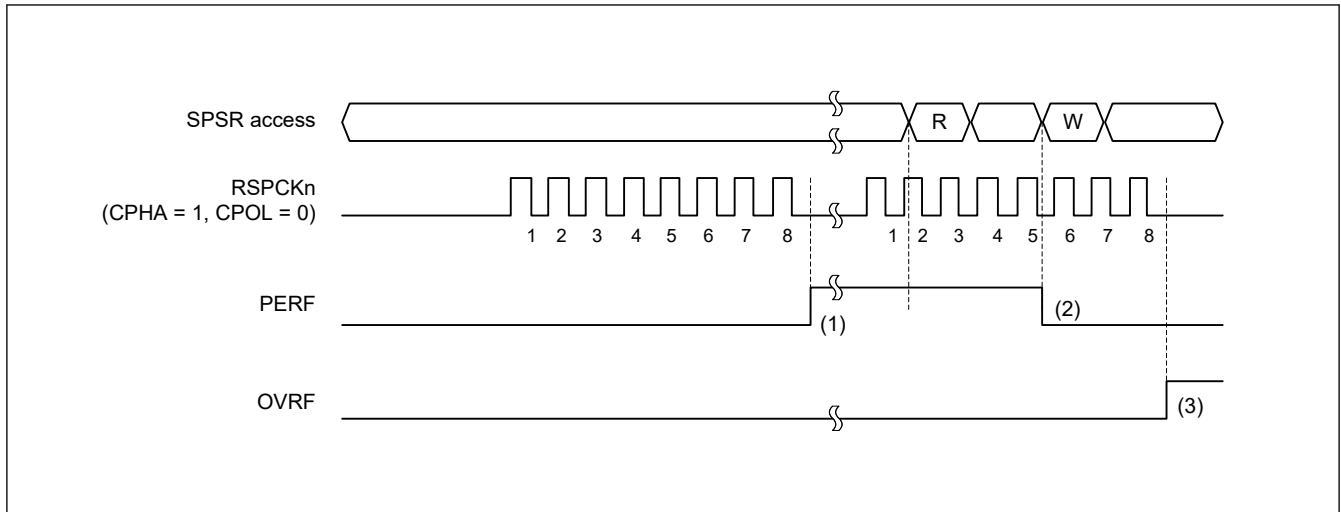


Figure 30.31 Operation example of the OVRF and PERF flags

The operation of the flags at timings (1) to (3) in [Figure 30.31](#) is as follows:

1. If a serial transfer terminates with the SPI not detecting an overrun error, the SPI copies the data in the shift register to the receive buffer. The SPI checks the received data at this time and sets the PERF flag to 1 if a parity error is detected.
2. If 0 is written to the PERF flag after the SPSR register is read when the PERF flag is 1, the PERF flag is set to 0.
3. When the SPI detects an overrun error and serial transfer is terminated, the data in the shift register is not copied to the receive buffer. The SPI does not perform parity error detection at this time.

Parity errors can be checked for by either reading the SPSR register or using an SPI error interrupt and reading the SPSR register. When executing a serial transfer, such checks are required to ensure early detection of parity errors.

30.3.8.3 Mode Fault Errors

The SPI operates in multi-master mode when the SPCR.MSTR bit is 1, the SPCR.SPMS bit is 0, and the SPCR.MODFEN bit is 1. If the active level is input for the SSLn0 input signal of the SPI in multi-master mode, the SPI detects a mode fault error regardless of the status of the serial transfer, and sets the SPSR.MODF flag to 1. The active level of the SSLn0 signal is determined by the SSLP.SSL0P bit.

When the MSTR bit is 0, the SPI operates in slave mode. The SPI detects a mode fault error if the MODFEN bit of the SPI in slave mode is 1, and the SPMS bit is 0, and if the SSLn0 input signal is negated during the serial transfer period (from the time the driving of valid data is started to the time the final valid data is fetched).

On detecting a mode fault error, the SPI stops the driving of the output signals and clears the SPCR.SPE bit to 0 (see [section 30.3.9. Initializing the SPI](#)). For multi-master configuration, detection of a mode fault error is used to stop the driving of output signals and the SPI function, which allows the master to be released.

The occurrence of a mode fault error can be checked either by reading SPSR or by using an SPI error interrupt and reading SPSR. Detecting mode-fault errors without using the SPI error interrupt requires polling of SPSR.

When the MODF flag is 1, writing 1 to the SPE bit is ignored by the SPI. To enable the SPI function after the detection of a mode fault error, the MODF flag must be set to 0.

30.3.8.4 Underrun Errors

While the SPI is operating in slave mode (SPCR.MSTR bit = 0), if serial transfer is started before transmit data output is ready with the SPCR.SPE bit set to 1 (SPI function enabled), the SPI detects an underrun error and sets the SPSR.MODF and SPSR.UDRF flags to 1.

On detecting an underrun error, the SPI stops the driving of output signals and clears the SPCR.SPE bit to 0 (see [section 30.3.9. Initializing the SPI](#)).

The occurrence of underrun errors can be checked either by reading SPSR or by using an SPI error interrupt and reading SPSR. Detecting underrun errors without using the SPI error interrupt requires polling of SPSR.

When the MODF flag is 1, writing 1 to the SPE bit is ignored by the SPI. To enable the SPI function after the detection of an underrun error, the MODF flag must be set to 0.

30.3.9 Initializing the SPI

If 0 is written to the SPCR.SPE bit or if the SPI sets the SPE bit to 0 because it detected a mode fault error or an underrun error, the SPI disables the SPI function and initializes some of the module functions. When a system reset is generated, the SPI initializes all the module functions. This section describes initialization by clearing of the SPCR.SPE bit and by a system reset.

30.3.9.1 Initialization by Clearing of the SPCR.SPE Bit

When the SPCR.SPE bit is set to 0, the SPI initializes by:

- Suspending any serial transfer that is being executed
- Stopping the driving of output signals (Hi-Z) in slave mode
- Initializing the internal state of the SPI
- Initializing the transmit buffer of the SPI (the SPSR.SPTEF flag sets to 1)

Initialization by clearing of the SPE bit does not initialize the control bits of the SPI. For this reason, the SPI can be started in the same transfer mode in use prior to initialization when the SPE bit is set to 1 again.

The SPSR.SPRF, SPSR.OVRF, SPSR.MODF, SPSR.PERF, and SPSR.UDRF flags are not initialized. Therefore, even after the SPI is initialized, data from the receive buffer can be read to check the error status during an SPI transfer.

The transmit buffer is initialized to an empty state (the SPSR.SPTEF flag sets to 1). Therefore, if the SPCR.SPTIE bit is set to 1 after SPI initialization, a transmit buffer empty interrupt is generated. To disable any transmit buffer empty interrupts when the SPI is initialized, write 0 to the SPTIE bit simultaneously while writing 0 to the SPE bit.

30.3.9.2 Initialization by System Reset

A system reset completely initializes the SPI by initializing all SPI control bits, status bits, and data registers, in addition to meeting the requirements described in [section 30.3.9.1. Initialization by Clearing of the SPCR.SPE Bit](#).

30.3.10 SPI Operation

30.3.10.1 Master Mode Operation

The only difference between single- and multi-master mode operation is the use of mode fault error detection (see [section 30.3.8. Error Detection](#)). In single-master mode, the SPI does not detect mode fault errors whereas in multi-master mode, it does. This section explains operations that are common to both modes.

(1) Starting a serial transfer

The SPI updates the data in the transmit buffer (SPTX) when data is written to the SPI Data Register (SPDR/SPDR_HA) with the SPI transmit buffer empty, data for the next transfer is not set, and the SPSR.SPTEF flag is 0. When the shift register is empty, the SPI copies data from the transmit buffer to the shift register and starts serial transfer. On copying transmit data to the shift register, the SPI changes the status of the shift register to full. On termination of the serial transfer, it changes the status of the shift register to empty. The status of the shift register cannot be referenced.

The polarity of the SSLn output pins depends on the SSLP register settings. For details on the SPI transfer format, see [section 30.3.5. Transfer Formats](#).

(2) Terminating a serial transfer

Regardless of the SPCMD0.CPHA bit setting, the SPI terminates the serial transfer after transmitting an RSPCKn edge associated with the final sampling timing. If free space is available in the receive buffer (SPRX) (the SPSR.SPRF flag is 0), on termination of the serial transfer, the SPI copies data from the shift register to the receive buffer of the SPDR/SPDR_HA register.

The final sampling timing varies depending on the bit length of transfer data. In master mode, the SPI data length depends on the SPCMD0.SPB[3:0] bit settings. The polarity of the SSLn output pin depends on the SSLP register settings. For details on the SPI transfer format, see [section 30.3.5. Transfer Formats](#).

(3) RSPCK delay (t1)

The RSPCK delay value of the SPI in master mode depends on the SPCMD0.SCKDEN bit setting and the SPCKD.SCKDL[2:0] bits setting. The SPI determines an RSPCK delay using the SPCMD0.SCKDEN bit and SPCKD.SCKDL[2:0] bits, as listed in [Table 30.8](#). For a definition of RSPCK delay, see [section 30.3.5. Transfer Formats](#).

Table 30.8 Relationship between the SPCMDm.SCKDEN bit, SPCKD.SCKDL[2:0] bits, and RSPCK delay

SPCMD0.SCKDEN bit	SPCKD.SCKDL[2:0] bits	RSPCK delay
0	000b to 111b	1 RSPCK
1	000b	1 RSPCK
	001b	2 RSPCK
	010b	3 RSPCK
	011b	4 RSPCK
	100b	5 RSPCK
	101b	6 RSPCK
	110b	7 RSPCK
	111b	8 RSPCK

(4) SSL negation delay (t2)

The SSL negation delay value of the SPI in master mode depends on the SPCMD0.SLNDEN bit setting and the SSLND.SLNDL[2:0] bits setting. The SPI determines an SSL negation delay using the SPCMD0.SLNDEN bit and SSLND.SLNDL[2:0] bits, as listed in [Table 30.9](#). For a definition of SSL negation delay, see [section 30.3.5. Transfer Formats](#).

Table 30.9 Relationship between the SPCMDm.SLNDEN bit, SSLND.SLNDL[2:0] bits, and SSL negation delay

SPCMD0.SLNDEN bit	SSLND.SLNDL[2:0] bits	SSL negation delay
0	000b to 111b	1 RSPCK
1	000b	1 RSPCK
	001b	2 RSPCK
	010b	3 RSPCK
	011b	4 RSPCK
	100b	5 RSPCK
	101b	6 RSPCK
	110b	7 RSPCK
	111b	8 RSPCK

(5) Next-access delay (t3)

The next-access delay value of the SPI in master mode depends on the SPCMD0.SPNDEN bit setting and the SPND.SPNDL[2:0] bits setting. The SPI determines a next-access delay during serial transfer using the SPCMD0.SPNDEN bit and SPND.SPNDL[2:0] bits, as listed in [Table 30.10](#). For a definition of next-access delay, see [section 30.3.5. Transfer Formats](#).

Table 30.10 Relationship between the SPCMDm.SPNDEN bit, SPND.SPNDL[2:0] bits, and next-access delay (1 of 2)

SPCMD0.SPNDEN bit	SPND.SPNDL[2:0] bits	Next-access delay
0	000b to 111b	1 RSPCK + 2 PCLKB

Table 30.10 Relationship between the SPCMDm.SPNDEN bit, SPND.SPNDL[2:0] bits, and next-access delay (2 of 2)

SPCMD0.SPNDEN bit	SPND.SPNDL[2:0] bits	Next-access delay
1	000b	1 RSPCK + 2 PCLKB
	001b	2 RSPCK + 2 PCLKB
	010b	3 RSPCK + 2 PCLKB
	011b	4 RSPCK + 2 PCLKB
	100b	5 RSPCK + 2 PCLKB
	101b	6 RSPCK + 2 PCLKB
	110b	7 RSPCK + 2 PCLKB
	111b	8 RSPCK + 2 PCLKB

(6) Initialization flow

[Figure 30.32](#) shows an example of SPI initialization flow when the SPI is in master mode. For information on how to set up the Interrupt Controller Unit (ICU), and I/O ports, see the descriptions given in the individual blocks.

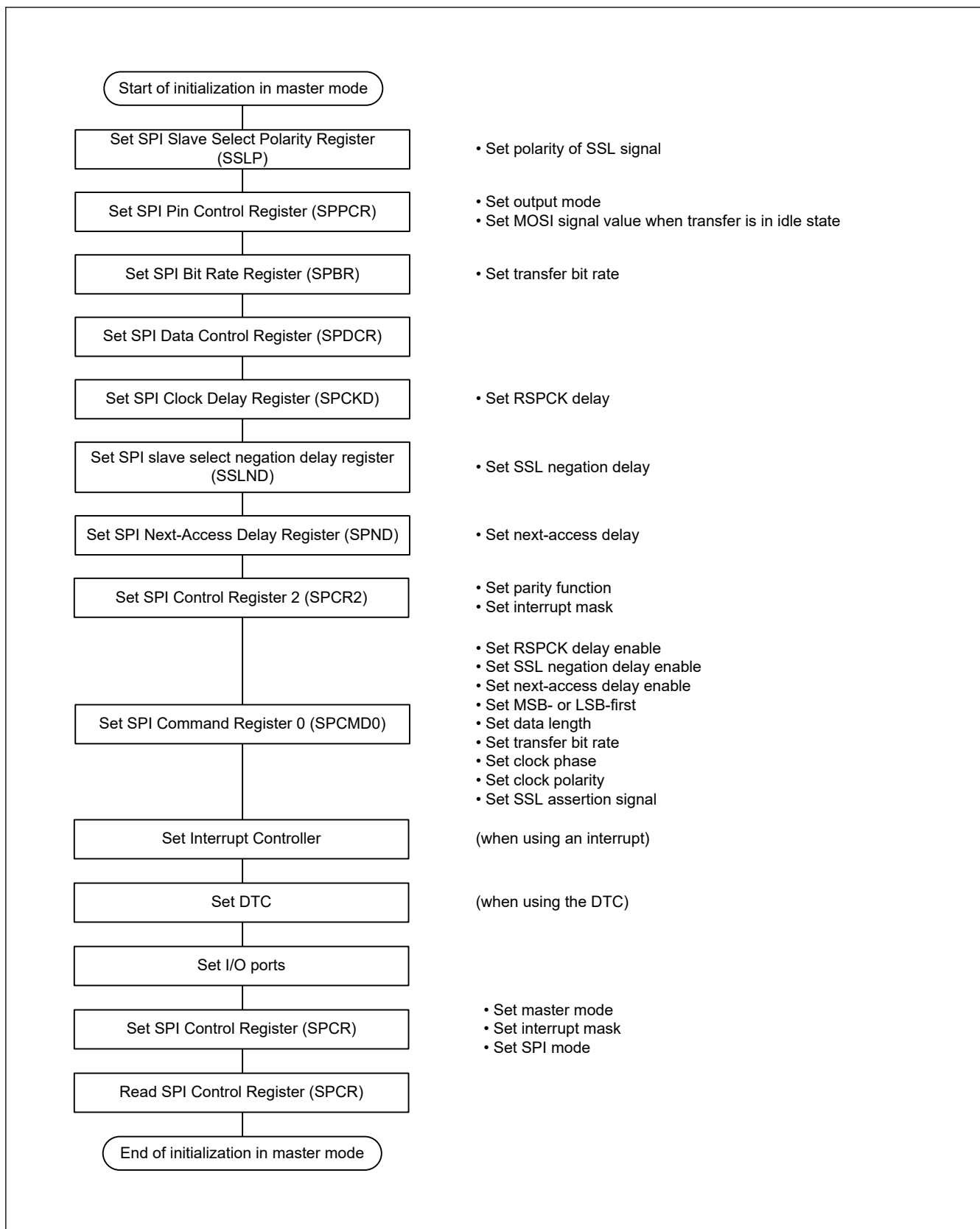


Figure 30.32 Example of initialization flow in master mode for SPI operation

(7) Software processing flow

Figure 30.33 to Figure 30.35 show examples of the software processing flow.

Transmit processing flow

When transmitting data, with the SPI_i_SPII interrupt enabled, the CPU is notified of the completion of data transmission after the last data write for transmission.

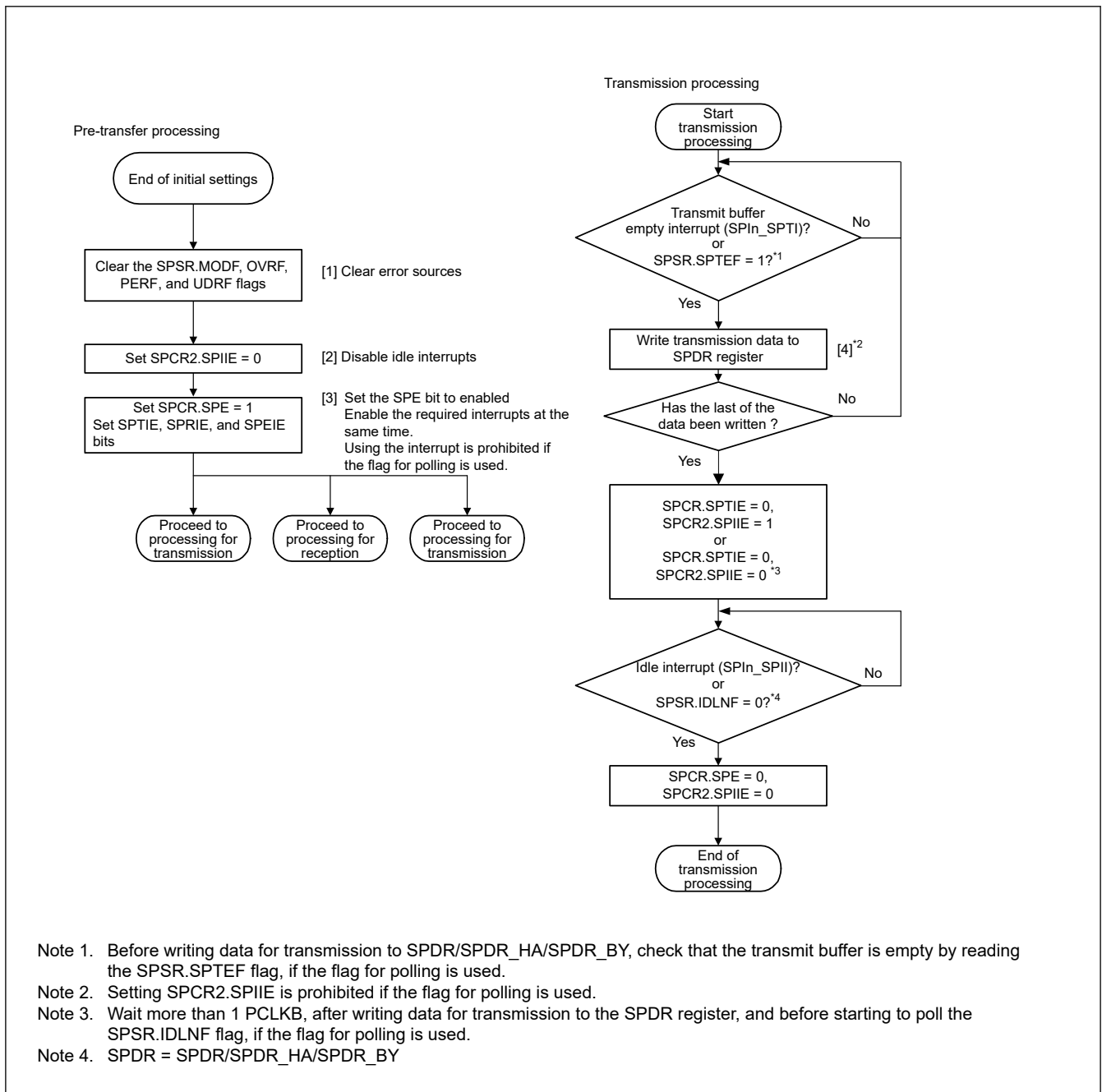


Figure 30.33 Transmission flow in master mode

Receive processing flow

The SPI cannot handle receive-only operation. Even when there is no data to transmit, it is necessary to transmit dummy data.

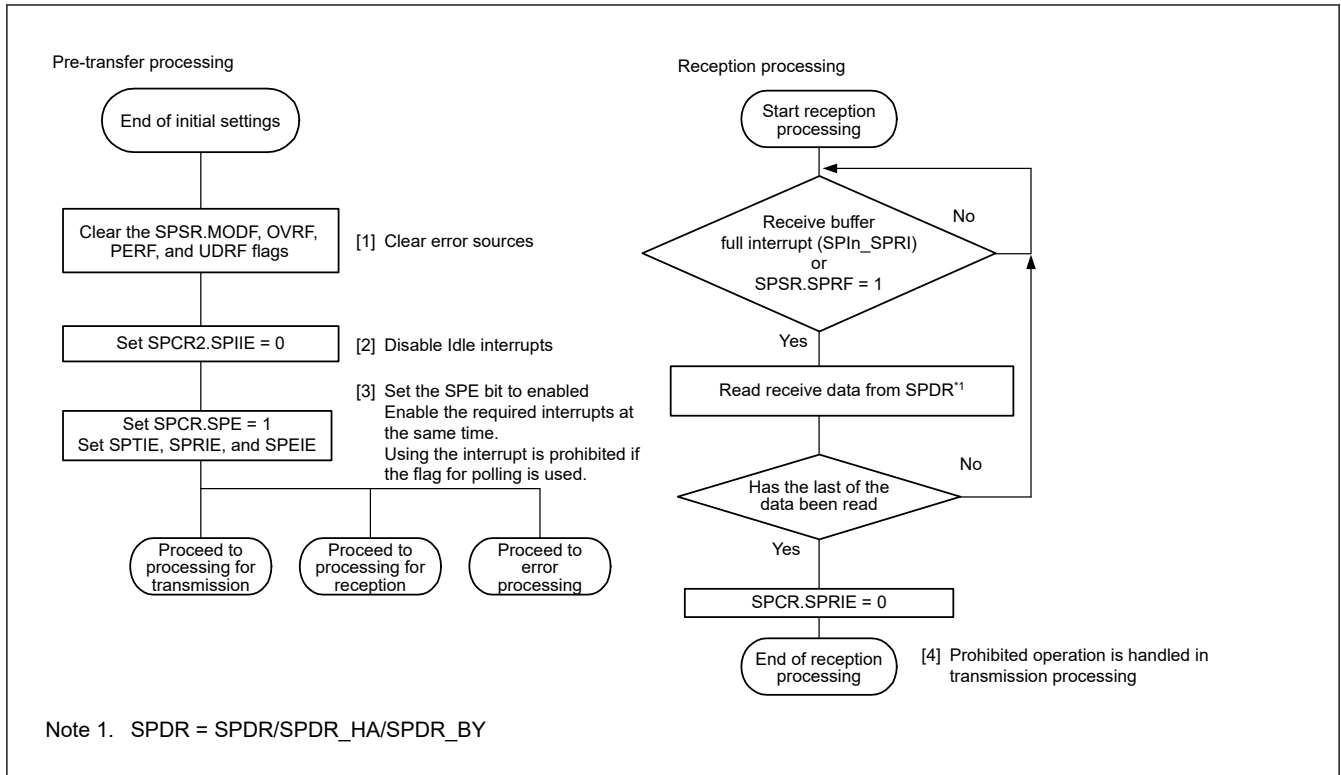


Figure 30.34 Reception flow in master mode

Error processing flow

The SPI detects the following errors:

- Mode fault error
- Underrun error
- Overrun error
- Parity error

When a mode fault error is generated, the SPCR.SPE bit is automatically cleared, stopping operations for transmission and reception. Then Renesas recommends clearing the SPCR.SPE bit to stop operations for errors other than mode fault errors.

When an error is detected using an interrupt, clear the ICU.IELSRn.IR flag in the error processing routine. If this is not done, the ICU.IELSRn.IR flag might continue to indicate the SPIi_SPTI or SPIi_SPRI interrupt request. If the SPIi_SPRI interrupt request is indicated, read the receive buffer and initialize the sequencer in the SPI.

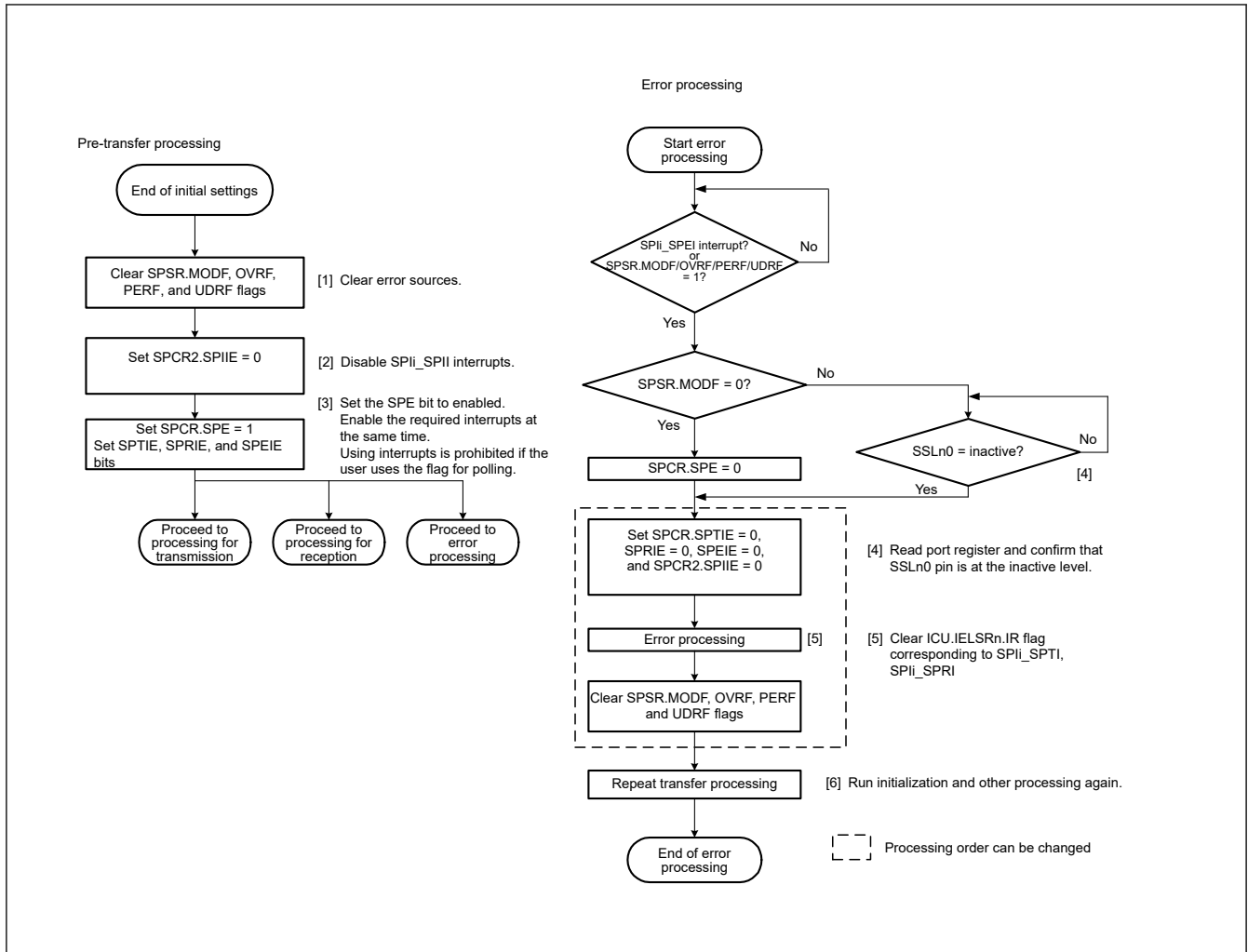


Figure 30.35 Error processing flow in master mode

30.3.10.2 Slave Mode Operation

(1) Starting a serial transfer

When the SPCMD0.CPHA bit is 0, if the SPI detects an SSLn0 input signal assertion, it must drive valid data to the MISON output signal. For this reason, when the CPHA bit is 0, the assertion of the SSLn0 input signal triggers the start of a serial transfer.

When the CPHA bit is 1, if the SPI detects the first RSPCKn edge in an SSLn0 signal asserted condition, it must drive valid data to the MISON output signal. For this reason, when the CPHA bit is 1, the first RSPCKn edge in an SSLn0 signal asserted condition triggers the start of a serial transfer.

Regardless of the CPHA bit setting, the SPI drives the MISON output signal on SSLn0 signal assertion. The data that is output by the SPI is either valid or invalid, depending on the CPHA bit setting.

For details on the SPI transfer format, see [section 30.3.5. Transfer Formats](#). The polarity of the SSLn0 input signal depends on the SSLP.SSL0P setting.

(2) Terminating a serial transfer

Regardless of the SPCMD0.CPHA bit setting, the SPI terminates the serial transfer after detecting an RSPCKn edge corresponding to the final sampling timing. When free space is available in the receive buffer (the SPSR.SPRF flag is 0), on termination of serial transfer, the SPI copies received data from the shift register to the receive buffer of the SPDR/SPDR_HA register. On termination of a serial transfer, the SPI changes the status of the shift register to empty, regardless of the receive buffer state. A mode fault error occurs if the SPI detects an SSLn0 input signal negation from the beginning of serial transfer to the end of serial transfer (see [section 30.3.8. Error Detection](#)).

The final sampling timing changes depending on the bit length of transfer data. In slave mode, the SPI data length is determined by the SPCMD0.SPB[3:0] bits setting. The polarity of the SSLn0 input signal is determined by the SSLP.SSL0P bit setting. For details on the SPI transfer format, see [section 30.3.5. Transfer Formats](#).

(3) Notes on single-slave operations

If the SPCMD0.CPHA bit is 0, the SPI starts serial transfers when it detects the assertion edge for an SSLn0 input signal. In the configuration shown in [Figure 30.7](#), if the SPI is used in single-slave mode, the SSLn0 signal is fixed at an active state. Therefore, when the CPHA bit is set to 0, the SPI cannot correctly start a serial transfer. For the SPI to correctly execute transmit and receive operations in slave mode when the SSLn0 input signal is fixed at an active state, the CPHA bit must be set to 1. Do not fix the SSLn0 input signal if there is a requirement for setting the CPHA bit to 0.

(4) Burst transfer

If the SPCMD0.CPHA bit is 1, continuous serial transfer (burst transfer) can be executed while retaining the assertion state for the SSLn0 input signal. When the CPHA bit is 1, the serial transfer period is the period from the first RSPCKn edge to the sampling timing for the reception of the final bit in an SSLn0 signal active state. Even when the SSLn0 input signal remains at the active level, the SPI can accommodate burst transfers, because it can detect the start of an access.

When the CPHA bit is 0, the second and subsequent serial transfers during burst transfer cannot be executed correctly.

(5) Initialization flow

[Figure 30.36](#) shows an example of initialization flow for SPI operation when the SPI is in slave mode. For a description of how to set up the ICU, DTC, and I/O ports, see the descriptions given in the individual blocks.

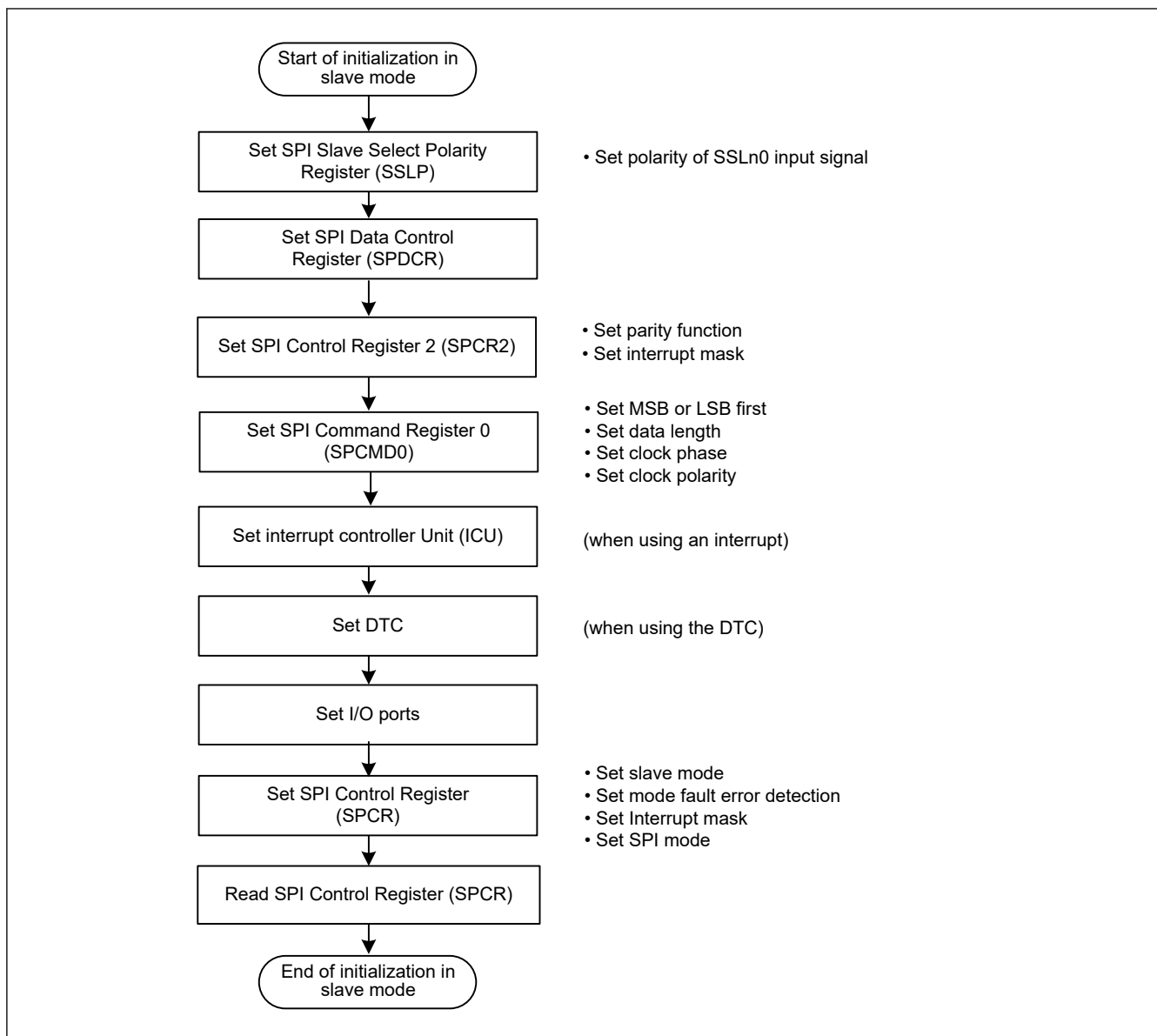


Figure 30.36 Example initialization flow in slave mode for SPI operation

(6) Software processing flow

Transmit processing flow

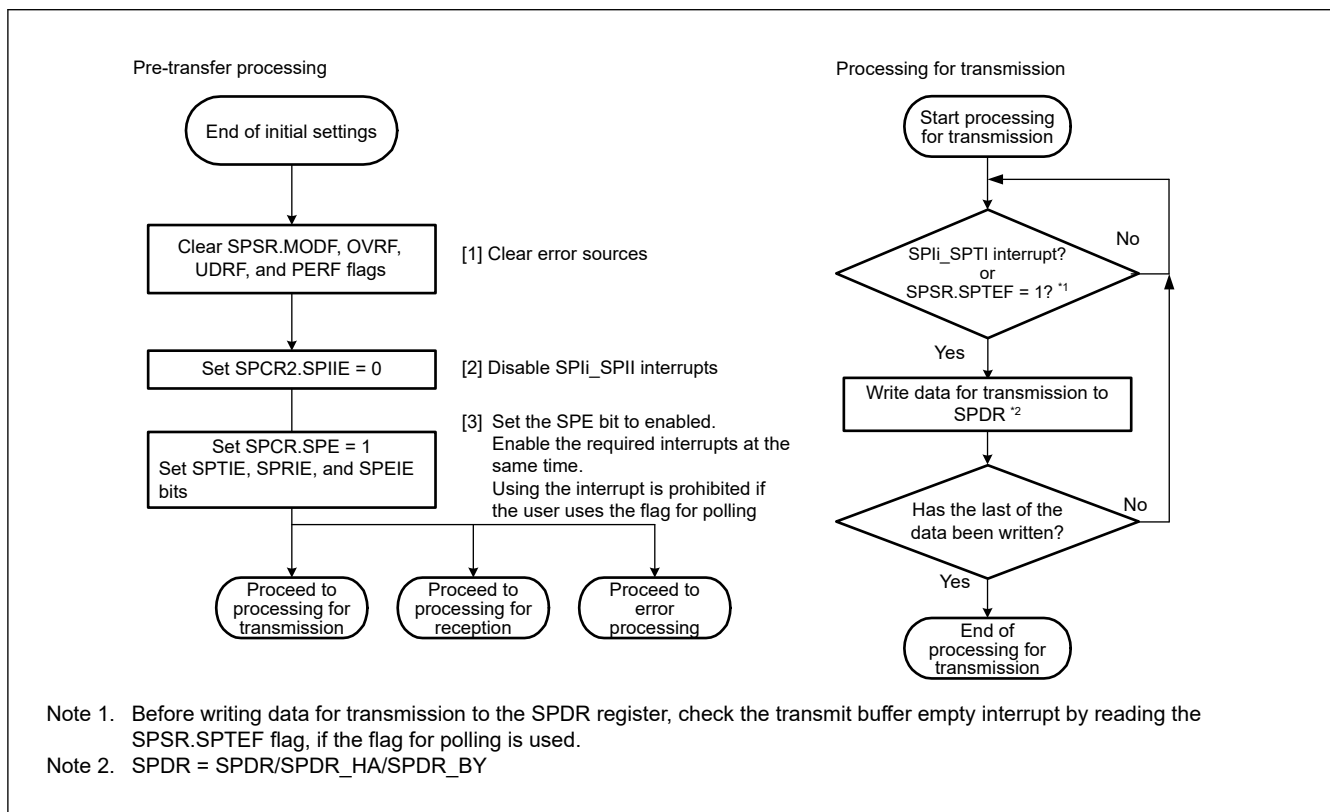


Figure 30.37 Transmission flow in slave mode

Receive processing flow

The SPI does not handle receive-only operation, so processing for transmission is required.

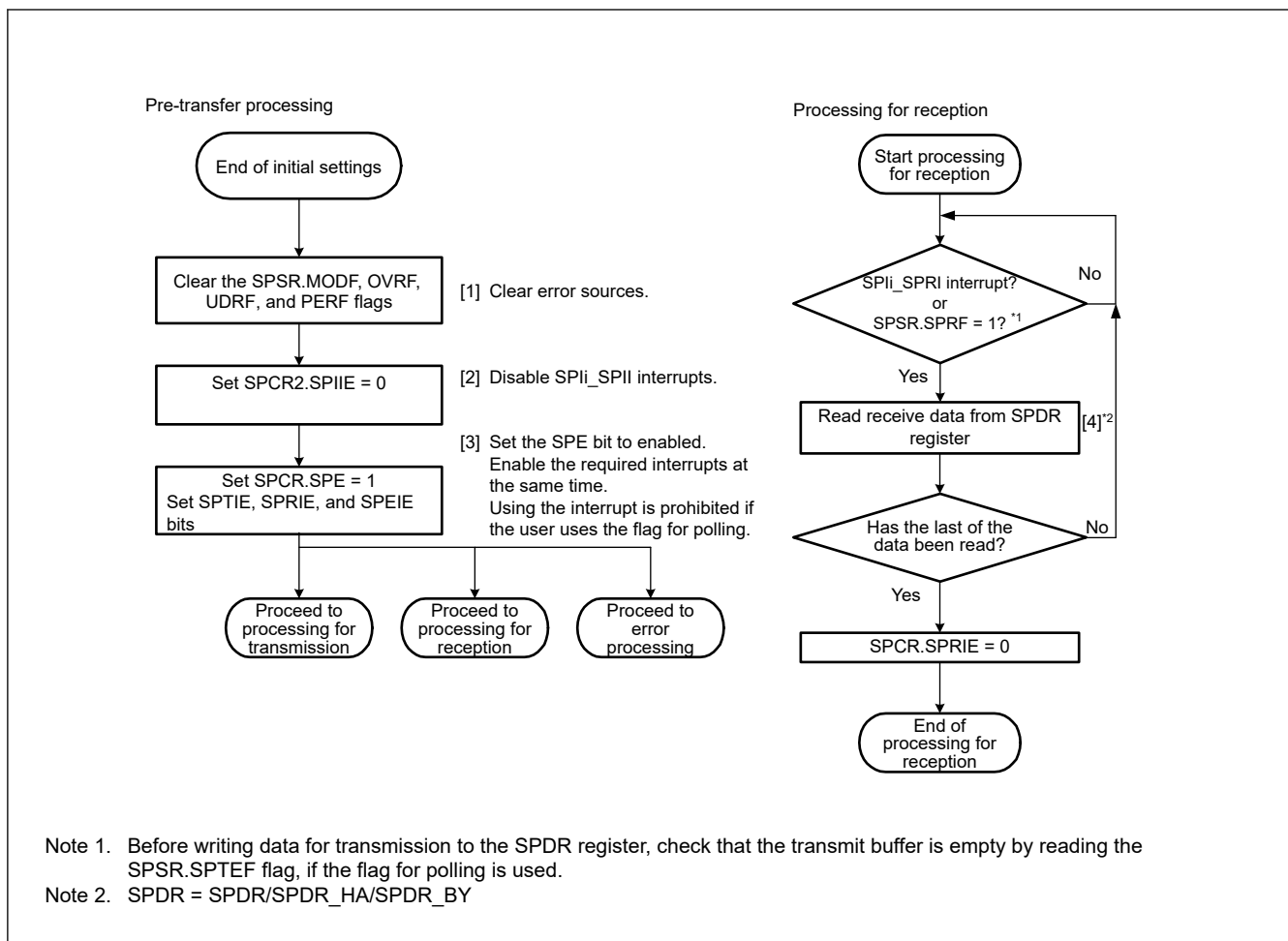


Figure 30.38 Reception flow in slave mode

Error processing flow

In slave mode operation, even when a mode fault error is generated, the SPSR.MODF flag can be cleared regardless of the state of the SSLn0 pin.

When an error is detected by using an interrupt, clear the ICU.IELSRn.IR flag in the error processing routine. If this is not done, the ICU.IELSRn.IR flag might continue to indicate the SPIi_SPTI or SPIi_SPRI interrupt request. If the SPIi_SPRI interrupt request is indicated, read the receive buffer and initialize the sequencer in the SPI.

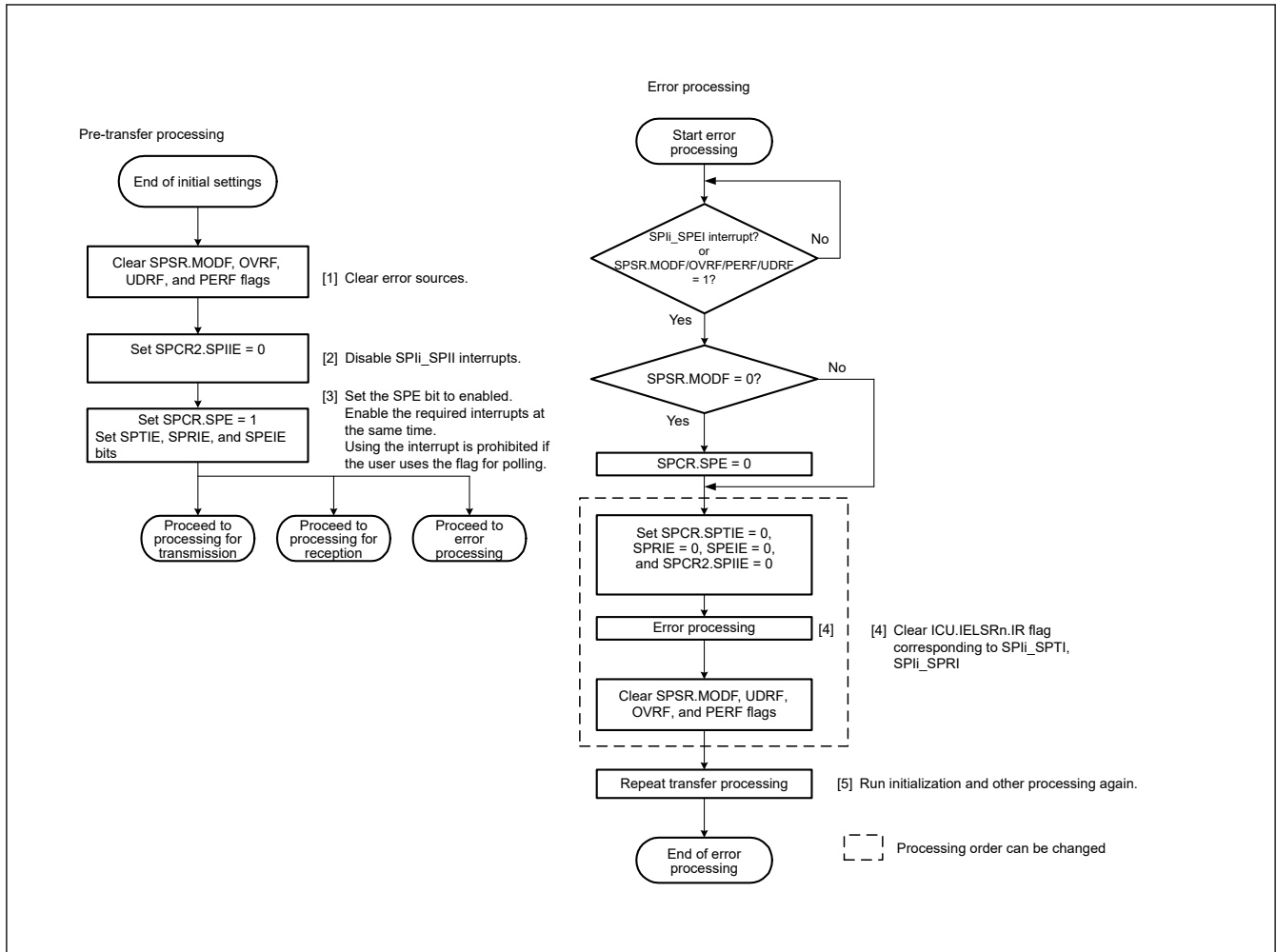


Figure 30.39 Error processing flow for slave mode

30.3.11 Clock Synchronous Operation

Setting the SPCR.SPMS bit to 1 selects clock synchronous operation of the SPI. In clock synchronous operation, the SSLn_i pin is not used, and the RSPCK_n, MOS_{In}, and MISO_n pins handle communications. All SSLn_i pins are available as I/O port pins.

Although clock synchronous operation does not require the use of the SSLn_i pin, operation of the module is the same as in SPI operation. In both master mode and slave mode operations, communications can be performed with the same flow as in SPI operation. However, mode fault errors are not detected, because the SSLn_i pin is not used.

Additionally, do not perform operation if clock synchronous operation is enabled when the SPCMD0.CPHA bit is set to 0 in slave mode (SPCR.MSTR = 0).

30.3.11.1 Master Mode Operation

(1) Starting serial transfer

The SPI updates the data in the transmit buffer (SPTX) of SPDR/SPDR_HA when data is written to the SPDR/SPDR_HA register with the transmit buffer empty, the data for the next transfer not set and the SPSR.SPTEF flag is 1. When the shift register is empty the SPI copies data from the transmit buffer to the shift register and starts serial transmission. On copying transmit data to the shift register, the SPI changes the status of the shift register to full, and on termination of serial transfer, it changes the status of the shift register to empty. The status of the shift register cannot be referenced.

Transfer in clock synchronous operation is conducted without the SSLn₀ output signal. For details on the SPI transfer format, see [section 30.3.5. Transfer Formats](#).

(2) Terminating serial transfer

The SPI terminates the serial transfer after transmitting an RSPCKn edge corresponding to the sampling timing. If free space is available in the receive buffer (the SPSR.SPRF flag is 0), on termination of serial transfer, the SPI copies data from the shift register to the receive buffer of the SPI Data Register (SPDR/SPDR_HA).

The final sampling timing varies depending on the bit length of transfer data. In master mode, the SPI data length depends on the SPCMD0.SPB[3:0] bits setting. Transfer in clock synchronous operation is conducted without the SSLn0 output signal. For details on the SPI transfer format, see [section 30.3.5. Transfer Formats](#).

(3) Initialization flow

[Figure 30.40](#) shows an example of initialization flow for clock synchronous operation when the SPI is used in master mode. For information on how to set up the ICU, DTC, and I/O ports, see the descriptions given in the individual blocks.

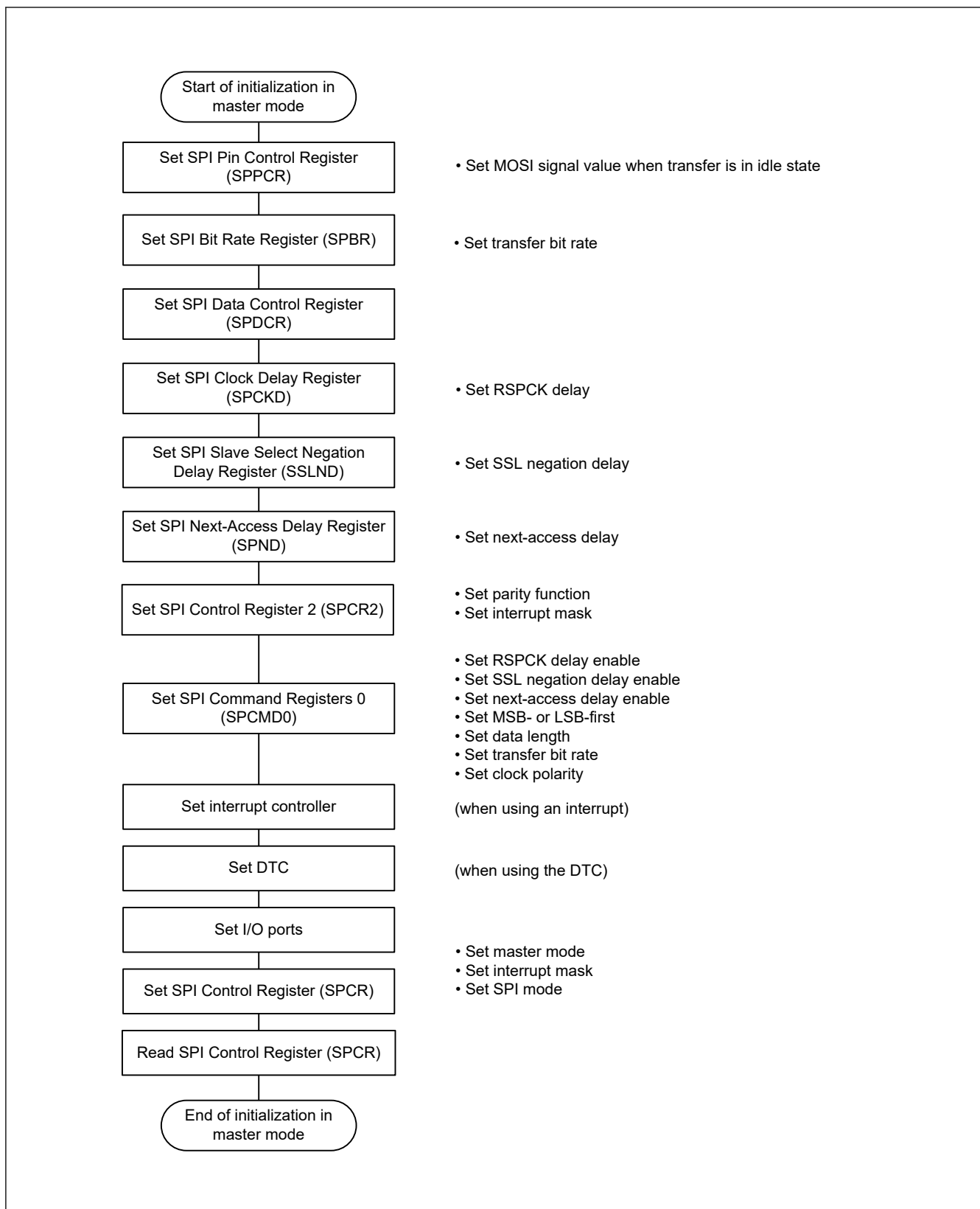


Figure 30.40 Example of initialization flow in master mode for clock synchronous operation

(4) Software processing flow

Software processing during clock synchronous master operation is the same as that for SPI master operation. For details, see (9) Software processing flow in [section 30.3.10.1. Master Mode Operation](#). Mode fault errors do not occur in clock synchronous operation.

30.3.11.2 Slave Mode Operation

(1) Starting serial transfer

When the SPCR.SPMS bit is 1, the first RSPCKn edge triggers the start of a serial transfer in the SPI, and the SPI drives the MISO_n output signal. The SSL0 input signal is not used in clock synchronous operation. For details on the SPI transfer format, see [section 30.3.5. Transfer Formats](#).

(2) Terminating serial transfer

The SPI terminates the serial transfer after detecting an RSPCKn edge corresponding to the final sampling timing. When free space is available in the receive buffer (the SPSR.SPRF flag is 0), on termination of serial transfer, the SPI copies received data from the shift register to the receive buffer of the SPDR/SPDR_HA register. On termination of a serial transfer, the SPI changes the status of the shift register to empty regardless of the receive buffer.

The final sampling timing changes depending on the bit length of transfer data. In slave mode, the SPI data length depends on the SPCMD0.SPB[3:0] bits setting. For details on the SPI transfer format, see [section 30.3.5. Transfer Formats](#).

(3) Initialization flow

[Figure 30.41](#) shows an example of initialization flow for clock synchronous operation when the SPI is used in slave mode. For a description of how to set up the ICU, DTC, and I/O ports, see the descriptions given in the individual blocks.

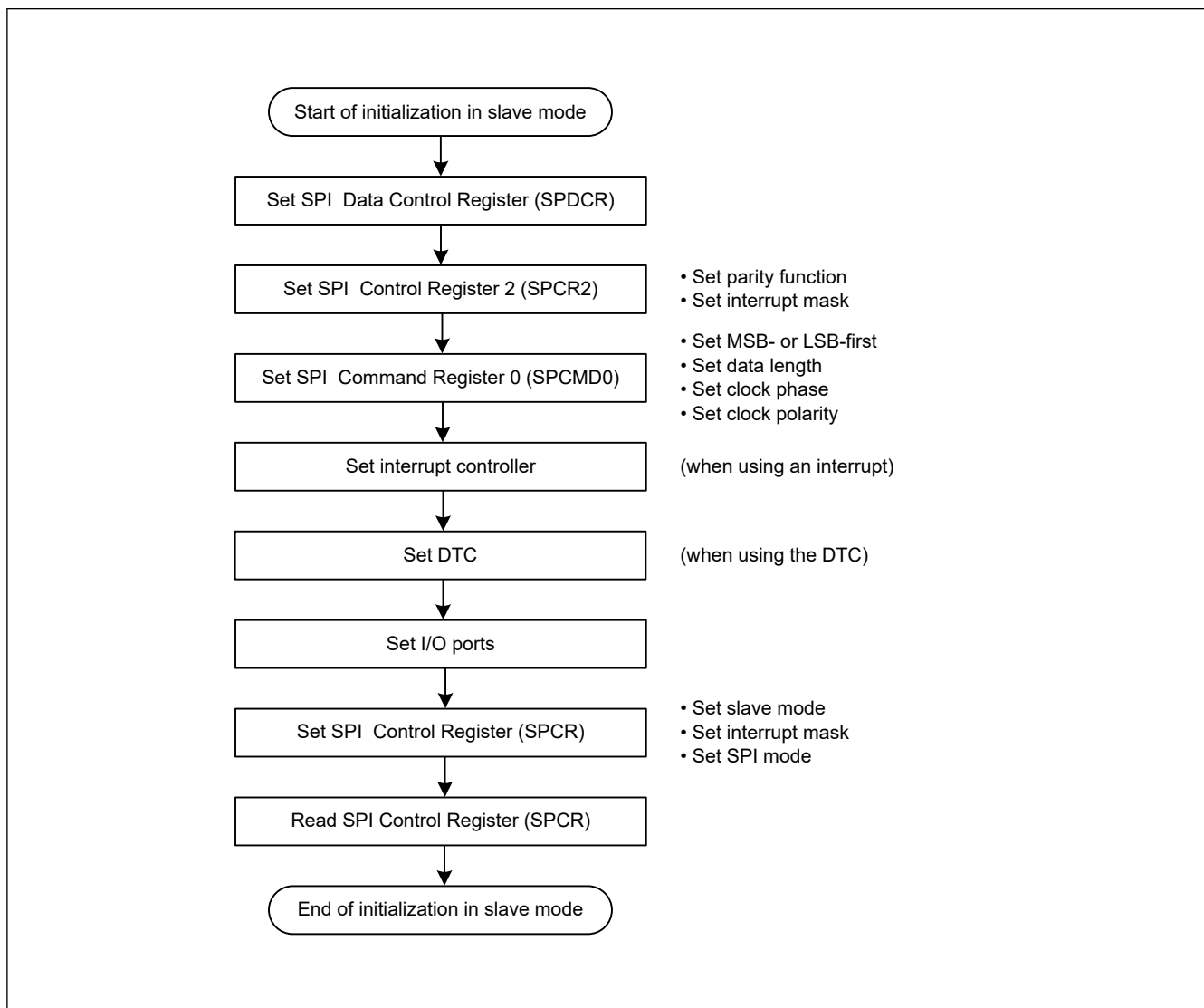


Figure 30.41 Example of initialization flow in slave mode for clock synchronous operation

(4) Software processing flow

Software processing during clock synchronous slave operation is the same as that for SPI slave operation. For details, see [\(6\) Software processing flow](#). Mode fault errors do not occur in clock synchronous mode.

30.3.12 Loopback Mode

When 1 is written to the SPPCR.SPLP2 bit or SPPCR.SPLP bit, the SPI shuts off the path between the MISO pin and the shift register if the SPCR.MSTR bit is 1, or between the MOSI pin and the shift register if the SPCR.MSTR bit is 0, and connects the input and output paths of the shift register, establishing a loopback mode. The SPI does not shut off the path between the MOSI pin and the shift register if the SPCR.MSTR bit is 1, or between the MISO pin and the shift register if the SPCR.MSTR bit is 0. This is called loopback mode. When a serial transfer is executed in loopback mode, the transmit data for the SPI or the reversed transmit data becomes the received data for the SPI.

[Table 30.11](#) lists the relationship between the SPLP2 and SPLP bits and the received data. [Figure 30.42](#) shows the configuration of the shift register I/O paths when the SPI in master mode is set to loopback mode (SPPCR.SPLP2 = 0, SPPCR.SPLP = 1).

Table 30.11 SPLP2 and SPLP bit settings and received data

SPPCR.SPLP2 bit	SPPCR.SPLP bit	Received data
0	0	Input data from the MOSI pin or MISO pin
0	1	Inverted transmit data
1	0	Transmit data
1	1	Transmit data

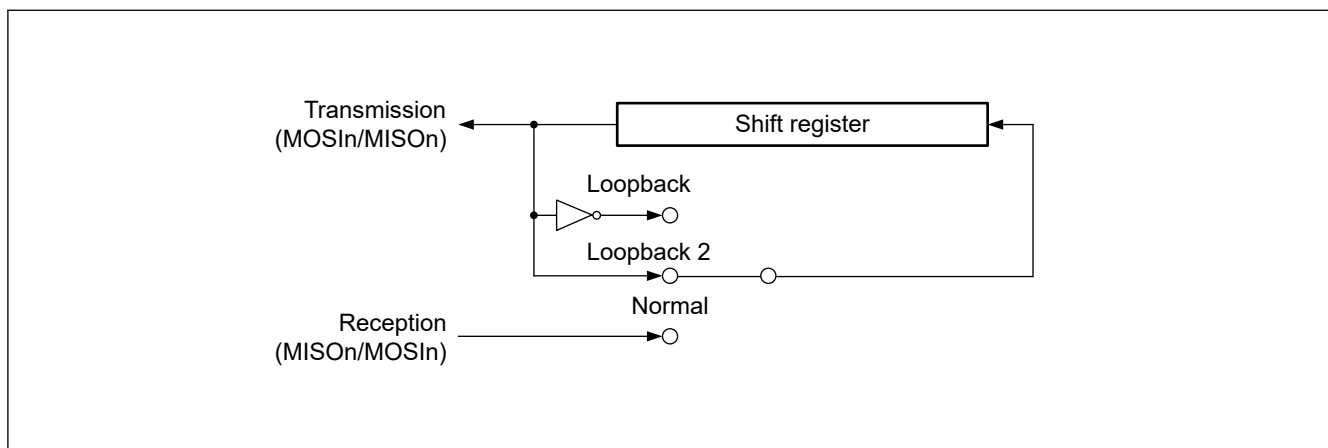


Figure 30.42 Configuration of shift register I/O paths in loopback mode for master mode

30.3.13 Self-diagnosis of Parity Bit Function

The parity circuit consists of a parity bit adding unit used for transmit data and an error detecting unit used for received data. To detect defects in the parity bit adding unit and error detecting unit, the parity circuit performs self-diagnosis as shown in [Figure 30.43](#).

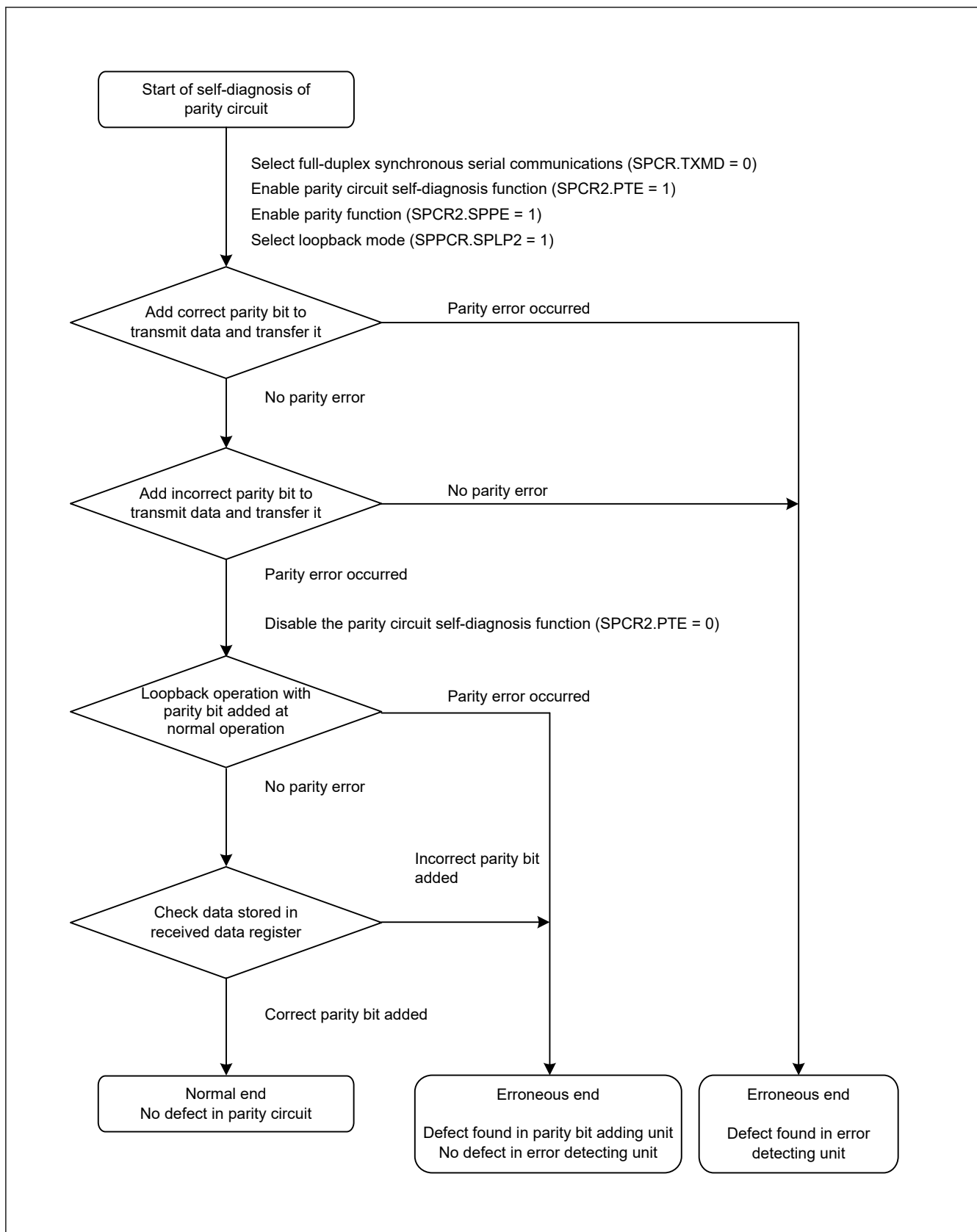


Figure 30.43 Self-diagnosis flow for parity circuit

30.3.14 Interrupt Sources

The SPI has the following interrupt sources:

- Receive buffer full
- Transmit buffer empty
- SPI error (mode-fault, underrun, overrun, or parity error)
- SPI idle
- Transmission-complete

The DTC can be activated by the receive buffer full or transmit buffer empty interrupt to perform data transfer.

Because the vector address for the SPI_i_SPEI (SPI error interrupt) is allocated to interrupt requests on mode-fault, underrun, overrun, and parity errors, the actual interrupt source must be determined from the flags. Interrupt sources for the SPI are listed in [Table 30.12](#). An interrupt is generated on satisfaction of one of the interrupt conditions in [Table 30.12](#). Clear the receive buffer full and transmit buffer empty sources through a data transfer.

When using the DTC to perform data transmission and reception, you must first set up the DTC to be in a transfer-enabled status before setting the SPI. For information on setting up the DTC, see [section 15, Data Transfer Controller \(DTC\)](#).

If the conditions for generating a transmit buffer empty or receive buffer full interrupt occur while the ICU.IELSRn.IR flag is 1, the interrupt is not output as a request for the ICU but is retained internally (the capacity for retention is one request per source). A retained interrupt request is output when the ICU.IELSRn.IR flag becomes 0. A retained interrupt request is automatically discarded when it is output as an actual interrupt request. The interrupt enable bit (the SPCR.SPTIE or SPCR.SPRIE bit) for an internally retained interrupt request can also be set to 0.

Table 30.12 SPI interrupt sources

Interrupt source	Symbol	Interrupt condition	DTC activation
Receive buffer full	SPI _i _SPRI	The receive buffer becomes full (SPSR.SPRF flag is 1) while the SPCR.SPRIE bit is 1	Possible
Transmit buffer empty	SPI _i _SPTI	The transmit buffer becomes empty (SPSR.SPTEF flag is 1) while the SPCR.SPTIE bit is 1	Possible
SPI error (mode-fault, underrun, overrun, or parity error)	SPI _i _SPEI	The SPSR.MODF, OVRF, UDRF or PERF flag sets to 1 while the SPCR.SPEIE bit is 1	Impossible
SPI idle	SPI _i _SPII	The SPSR.IDLNF flag sets to 0 while the SPCR2.SPIIE bit is 1	Impossible
Transmission-complete	SPI _i _SPTEND	• Master mode: an interrupt is generated when the IDLNF flag (SPI idle flag) changes from 1 to 0 • Slave mode: an interrupt occurs on conditions shown in Table 30.14	Impossible

30.4 Event Link Controller Event Output

The Event Link Controller (ELC) can produce the following event output signals:

- Receive buffer full event output
- Transmit buffer empty event output
- Mode-fault, underrun, overrun, or parity error event output
- SPI idle event output
- Transmission-completed event output

The event link output signal is output regardless of the interrupt enable bit setting.

30.4.1 Receive Buffer Full Event Output

This event signal is output when received data is transferred from the shift register to the SPDR/SPDR_HA on completion of serial transfer.

30.4.2 Transmit Buffer Empty Event Output

This event signal is output when data for transmission is transferred from the transmit buffer to the shift register and when the value of the SPE bit changes from 0 to 1.

30.4.3 Mode-fault, Underrun, Overrun, or Parity Error Event Output

This event signal is output when mode-fault, underrun, overrun, or parity error is detected. See [section 30.5.4. Constraints on Mode-fault, Underrun, Overrun, or Parity Error Event Output](#) if using this event signal.

(1) Mode-fault

[Table 30.13](#) lists the conditions for occurrence of a mode-fault event.

Table 30.13 Conditions for mode-fault occurrence

SPI mode	SPCR.MODFEN bit	SSLn0 pin	Remarks
SPI operation (SPMS = 0) Slave (SPCR.MSTR = 0)	1	Not active	Event is output only when the SSLn0 pin is deactivated during transmission

(2) Underrun

This event signal is output in response to an underrun when a serial transfer starts while the transmission data is not ready, and the value of the SPCR.MSTR bit is 0 and the SPCR.SPE bit is 1. Under these conditions, the MODF and UDRF flags are set to 1.

(3) Overrun

This event signal is output in response to an overrun when a serial transfer completes while the receive buffer contains unread data and the value of the SPCR.TXMD bit is 0. Under these conditions, the OVRF flag is set to 1.

(4) Parity error

This event signal is output in response to a parity error detected on completion of a serial transfer while the value of the TXMD bit in SPCR is 0 and the value of the SPPE bit in SPCR2 is 1.

30.4.4 SPI Idle Event Output

(1) In master mode

In master mode, an event is output when the condition for setting the IDLNF flag (SPI idle flag) to 0 is satisfied.

(2) In slave mode

In slave mode, an event is output when the SPCR.SPE bit is set to 0 (SPI is initialized).

30.4.5 Transmission-completed Event Output

During both SPI and clock synchronous operations in master mode, an event is output when the IDLNF flag (SPI idle flag) changes from 1 to 0. [Table 30.14](#) lists the conditions for occurrence of a transmission-completed event in slave mode.

Table 30.14 Conditions for generation of transmission-complete event in slave mode

Conditions	Transmit buffer state	Shift register state	Other
SPI operation (SPMS = 0)	Empty	Empty	Negation of SSLn0 input
Clock synchronous operation (SPMS = 1)	Empty	Empty	Edge detection of the last RSPCKn

Whether the operation is in master mode or slave mode, an event is not output if 0 is written to the SPCR.SPE bit in transmission or the SPCR.SPE bit is cleared by the mode-fault error or the underrun error.

30.5 Usage Notes

30.5.1 Settings for the Module-stop State

The Module Stop Control Register B (MSTPCRB) can enable or disable the SPI operation. The SPI is initially stopped after reset. Releasing the module-stop state enables access to the registers. For details on the Module Stop Control Register B, see [section 10, Low Power Modes](#).

30.5.2 Constraint on Low-power Functions

When using the module-stop function and entering a low-power mode other than Sleep mode, set the SPCR.SPE bit to 0 before completing communication.

30.5.3 Constraints on Starting Transfer

If the ICU.IELSRn.IR flag is 1 when transfer starts, the interrupt request is internally retained, which can lead to unanticipated behavior of the ICU.IELSRn.IR flag.

To prevent this, use the following procedure to clear interrupt requests before enabling operations (by setting the SPCR.SPE bit to 1):

1. Confirm that the transfer stopped (the SPCR.SPE bit is 0).
2. Set the associated interrupt enable bit (SPCR.SPTIE bit or SPCR.SPRIE bit) to 0.
3. Read the associated interrupt enable bit (SPCR.SPTIE bit or SPCR.SPRIE bit) and confirm that its value is 0.
4. Set the ICU.IELSRn.IR flag to 0.

30.5.4 Constraints on Mode-fault, Underrun, Overrun, or Parity Error Event Output

Using the mode-fault, underrun, overrun, or parity error event is prohibited if the SPI is in multi-master mode (when the SPCR.SPMS bit is 0, the SPCR.MSTR bit is 1, and the SPCR.MODFEN bit is 1).

30.5.5 Constraints on the SPSR.SPRF and SPSR.SPTEF Flags

If the polling flags, SPRF and SPTEF, are used, using the interrupts is prohibited, and you must set the SPCR.SPRIE and SPCR.SPTIE bits to 0. Either the interrupts or the flags can be used, but not both.

31. Serial Interface UARTA (UARTA)

31.1 Overview

[Table 31.1](#) lists specifications of the serial interface UARTA.

Table 31.1 UARTA specifications

Item	Specifications
Serial interface modes	- Operation stop mode - UART mode
Interfaces	- TxDAn: Transmit data output pin - RxDAn: Receive data input pin - CLKAn: Transmit clock output pin
Operation clock sources	Operating clock independent of the system/peripheral module clock selectable to UARTAMCLK, UARTALOCK, UARTASCLK, UARTAHOCK, and UARTAMOCK
Transfer rate	Up to 153.6 kbps
Baud rate	Settable with the dedicated internal 8-bit baud rate generator
Data format	- MSB-first or LSB-first selectable - Transfer bit length selectable to 5, 7, or 8 bits
Interrupt sources	- Transfer completion interrupt - Reception transfer end - Reception error interrupt
Other functions	- Transmission and reception independent of each other (full-duplex communication) - Inversion control of communication logic level provided
Module-stop function	Module-stop state can be set to reduce power consumption
TrustZone Filter	Security attribution can be set

Note:

- UARTAMCLK: UARTA external clock
- UARTASCLK: UARTA sub clock
- UARTAHOCK: UARTA HOCO clock
- UARTAMOCK: UARTA MOCO clock
- UARTALOCK: UARTA LOCO clock

Note: n: Unit number (n = 0, 1)

[Figure 31.1](#) shows a block diagram of UARTAn and [Table 31.2](#) shows the pin configuration of UARTAn.

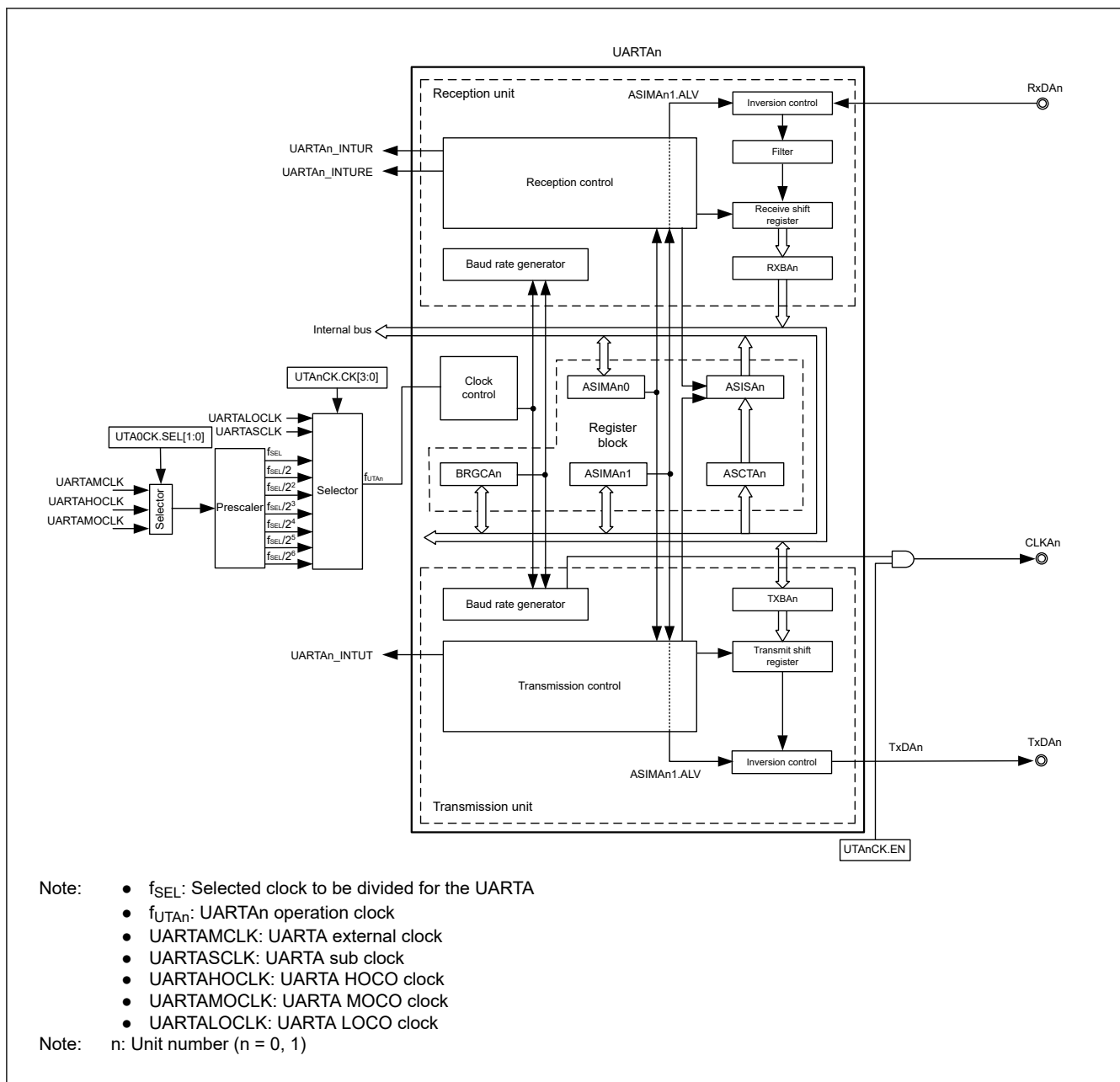


Figure 31.1 Block diagram of UARTAn

Table 31.2 UARTAn pin configuration

Name	I/O	Function
RxDA[n]	Input	Serial data input signal
TxDA[n]	Output	Serial data output signal
CLKA[n]	Output	Serial clock output signal

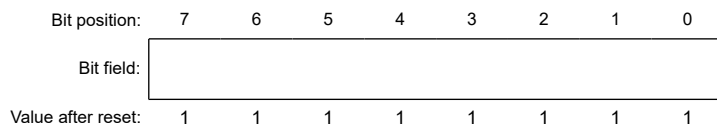
Note: n: Unit number (n = 0, 1)

31.2 Register Descriptions

31.2.1 TXBAn : Transmit Buffer Register n (n = 0, 1)

Base address: UARTA = 0x4009_7000

Offset address: 0x00 + 0x8 × n



Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7:0	n/a	Transmit data buffer	R/W

TXBAn is a buffer register for setting transmit data.

Transmission starts by writing data for transmission to the TXBAn register.

When a character length of 8 bits is specified:

- Data in bits [7:0] of TXBAn are transferred.

When a character length of 7 bits is specified:

- Data in bits [6:0] of TXBAn are transferred in either MSB- or LSB-first mode. Bit 7 is invalid.

When a character length of 5 bits is specified:

- Data in bits [4:0] of TXBAn are transferred in either MSB- or LSB-first mode. Bits [7:5] are invalid.

Note: When the TXBFA bit of the ASISAn register is 1, do not write data for transmission to the TXBAn register.

Note: After setting the TXEA bit of the ASIMAn0 register to 1, wait for the period of at least one cycle of the UARTAn operation clock (f_{UARTn}) before setting the first data for transmission in the TXBAn register. If data for transmission is set within one cycle of the UARTAn operation clock after the ASIMAn0.TXEA bit is set to 1, the start of transmission is delayed by one cycle of the UARTAn operation clock.

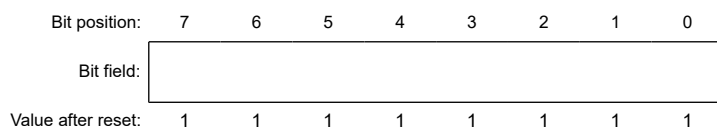
Note: Data is transferred from the TXBAn register to the transmit shift register, and is then transmitted as serial data through the TxDAn pin. In the first transmission, data is transferred from the TXBAn register to the transmit shift register immediately after data is written to the TXBAn register. In continuous transmission, data is transferred after transmission of one frame and just before generation of the transfer completion interrupt.

The transmit shift register cannot be manipulated directly by software.

31.2.2 RXBAn : Receive Buffer Register n (n = 0, 1)

Base address: UARTA = 0x4009_7000

Offset address: 0x01 + 0x8 × n



Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7:0	n/a	Receive data buffer	R

The RXBAn register stores the parallel data converted by the receive shift register. Every time one byte of data is received, the next receive data is transferred from the receive shift register^{*1} to this register.

Note 1. The receive shift register converts the serial data that is input through the RxDAn pin to parallel data.

The receive shift register cannot be manipulated directly by software.

When a character length of 8 bits is specified:

- Receive data is transferred to bits [7:0] of this register.

When a character length of 7 bits is specified:

- Receive data is transferred to bits [6:0] of this register in either MSB- or LSB-first mode. Bit 7 is always 0.

When a character length of 5 bits is specified:

- Receive data is transferred to bits [4:0] of this register in either MSB- or LSB-first mode. Bits [7:5] are always 0.

Note: If an overrun error (ASISAn.OVEA) occurs, the data received at that time is not stored in the RXBAn register.

31.2.3 ASIMAn0 : Operation Mode Setting Register n0 (n = 0, 1)

Base address: UARTA = 0x4009_7000

Offset address: 0x02 + 0x8 × n

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	EN	TXEA	RXEA	—	—	—	ISSMA	ISRMA
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	ISRMA	Receive interrupt mode select 0: The UARTAn_INTURE interrupt is generated when a reception error occurs (UARTAn_INTUR is not generated) 1: The UARTAn_INTUR interrupt is generated when a reception error occurs (UARTAn_INTURE is not generated)	R/W
1	ISSMA	Transmit interrupt mode select 0: The UARTAn_INTUT interrupt is generated on completion of transmission 1: The UARTAn_INTUT interrupt is generated when the transmit buffer becomes empty (for continuous transmission)	R/W
4:2	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.*1	R/W
5	RXEA	Reception enable 0: Disables reception (reset the reception circuit) 1: Enables reception	R/W
6	TXEA	Transmission enable 0: Disables transmission (resets the transmission circuit) 1: Enables transmission	R/W
7	EN*2	UART operation enable 0: Disables the UART operation clock (resets the internal circuits*3) 1: Enables the UART operation clock	R/W

Note 1. Be sure to clear bits [4:2] to 0.

Note 2. When EN = 0, the level being output from the TxDAn pin and the level being input from the RxDA pin are determined according to the setting of the ASIMAn1.ALV bit as follows:

- When ASIMAn1.ALV = 0, output from the TxDAn pin is high.
- When ASIMAn1.ALV = 1, output from the TxDAn pin is low.

Note 3. The ASISAn and RXBAn registers are reset by clearing the EN bit to 0.

The ASIMAn0 register controls serial communication of the serial interface UARTAn.

To start transmission, set the EN bit to 1 and then set the TXEA bit to 1. To stop transmission, clear the TXEA bit to 0 and then clear the EN bit to 0.

To start reception, set the EN bit to 1 and then set the RXEA bit to 1. To stop reception, clear the RXEA bit to 0 and then clear the EN bit to 0.

Use the following procedure when setting the EN bit to 1 and then setting the RXEA bit to 1.

- When ASIMAn1.ALV = 0

The setting must be made while the level being input to the RxDAn pin is high. Otherwise, reception starts at that point and a framing error may occur.

- When ASIMAn1.ALV = 1

The setting must be made while the level being input to the RxDAn pin is low. Otherwise, reception starts at that point and a framing error may occur.

The TXEA and RXEA bits are synchronized with the UARTAn operation clock (f_{UARTn}).

To enable transmission or reception again, set the TXEA or RXEA bit to 1 at least two cycles of the UARTAn operation clock after clearing the TXEA or RXEA bit to 0. If the bit is set to 1 within two cycles of the UARTAn operation clock after the clearing, the transmission or reception circuit may not be able to initialize.

After setting TXEA bit to 1, wait for at least one cycle of the UARTAn operation clock (f_{UARTn}) before setting the transmit data in the TXBAn register.

Clear the RXEA bit to 0 before modifying the ISRMA bit.

31.2.4 ASIMAn1 : Operation Mode Setting Register n1 (n = 0, 1)

Base address: UARTA = 0x4009_7000

Offset address: 0x03 + 0x8 × n

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	PS[1:0]	CL[1:0]	SL	DIR	ALV		
Value after reset:	0	0	0	1	1	0	1	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	ALV	Transmission and reception level setting 0: Positive logic (wait state = high level, start bit = low level, stop bit = high level) 1: Negative logic (wait state = low level, start bit = high level, stop bit = low level)	R/W
1	DIR	Transmission and reception order setting 0: MSB-first 1: LSB-first	R/W
2	SL	Transmission stop bit length setting 0: Stop bit length = 1 bit 1: Stop bit length = 2 bits	R/W
4:3	CL[1:0]	Transmission and reception character length setting 0 0: Character length of data = 5 bits 0 1: Setting prohibited 1 0: Character length of data = 7 bits 1 1: Character length of data = 8 bits	R/W
6:5	PS[1:0]	Transmission and reception parity bit setting 0 0: Transmission: No parity bit is output. Reception: Data is received without parity. 0 1: Transmission: 0 parity is output. Reception: Data is received with 0 parity.*1 1 0: Transmission: Odd parity is output. Reception: A check is made for odd parity. 1 1: Transmission: Even parity is output. Reception: A check is made for even parity.	R/W
7	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note 1. When Data is received with 0 parity is set, a parity check is not performed. Therefore, the PEA bit of the ASISAn register is not set and no reception error interrupts are generated.

The ASIMAn1 register controls serial communication of the serial interface UARTAn.

The ASIMAn1 register must be modified while ASIMAn0.TXEA = 0 and ASIMAn0.RXEA = 0.

Clear both the ASIMAn0.TXEA and RXEA bits to 0 before modifying the ASIMAn1 register. Reception is always handled as including a stop bit. The setting of the SL bit does not affect reception.

31.2.5 BRGCAn : Baud Rate Generator Control Register n (n = 0, 1)

Base address: UARTA = 0x4009_7000

Offset address: 0x04 + 0x8 × n

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:								
Value after reset:	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7:0	n/a	Controls the UART baud rate (serial transfer speed) Selection of 8-bit counter output clock ($f_{\text{UTAn}} / \text{BRGCAn}$) 0x02: $f_{\text{UTAn}}/2$ 0x03: $f_{\text{UTAn}}/3$ ⋮ 0xFC: $f_{\text{UTAn}}/252$ 0xFD: $f_{\text{UTAn}}/253$ 0xFE: $f_{\text{UTAn}}/254$ 0xFF: $f_{\text{UTAn}}/255$ Others: Setting prohibited	R/W

The BRGCAn register sets the frequency divisor for the 8-bit counter in the serial interface UARTAn.

Modify the BRG[7:0] bits while the ASIMAn0.TXEA and RXEA bits are 0 (in the transmission and reception stopped state). The baud rate is one half the frequency of the output clock signal from the 8-bit counter. For an example of the baud rate setting, see (c) [Baud rate setting example](#).

31.2.6 ASISAn : Status Register n (n = 0, 1)

Base address: UARTA = 0x4009_7000

Offset address: 0x05 + 0x8 × n

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	TXBFA	TXSFA	—	PEA	FEA	OVEA
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	OVEA	Overrun error flag 0: No error has occurred 1: An error has occurred	R
1	FEA	Framing error flag 0: No error has occurred 1: An error has occurred	R
2	PEA	Parity error flag 0: No error has occurred 1: An error has occurred	R
3	—	This bit is read as 0.	R
4	TXSFA	Transmit shift register data flag 0: Data is not being transmitted 1: Data is being transmitted	R
5	TXBFA	Transmit buffer data flag 0: No valid data exists in the TXBAn register 1: Valid data exists in the TXBAn register	R
7:6	—	These bits are read as 0.	R

The ASISAn register indicates the error status and the transmission status on completion of reception by the serial interface UARTAn. It consists of three error flag bits (PEA, FEA, and OVEA) and two transmission status flag bits (TXBFA and TXSFA).

The PEA, FEA, and OVEA bits are initialized by clearing the ASIMAn0.EN or RXEA bit to 0. These bits are also cleared by writing to the corresponding bit of the ASCTAn register. The TXBFA and TXSFA flags are initialized by clearing the ASIMAn0.EN or TXEA bit to 0.

For continuous transmission, be sure to check that the TXBFA flag is 0 after writing the first transmit data (the first byte) to the TXBAn register and then write the next transmit data (the second byte) to the TXBAn register. Otherwise, the transmit data becomes undefined. However, the TXBFA flag need not be checked when continuous transmission is performed using the buffer empty interrupt (ASIMAn0.ISSMA bit = 1).

When initializing the transmission unit (ASIMAn0.TXEA = 0) after completion of continuous transmission, be sure to check that the TXSFA flag is 0 after the transfer completion interrupt is generated, and then initialize the unit. Otherwise, the transmit data becomes undefined.

The operation of the PEA bit depends on the setting of the PS[1:0] bits of the ASIMAn1 register. For receive data, only the first one bit of the stop bits is checked regardless of the stop bit length. When an overrun error occurs, the next receive data is not written to the RXBAn register and is discarded.

OVEA flag (Overrun error flag)

[Clearing condition]

- The ASIMAn0.EN or RXEA bit is cleared to 0.
- 1 is written to the ASCTAn.OVECTA bit.

[Setting condition]

- The next reception is completed before the receive data in the RXBAn register is read.

FEA flag (Framing error flag)

[Clearing condition]

- The ASIMAn0.EN or RXEA bit is cleared to 0.
- 1 is written to the ASCTAn.FECTA bit.

[Setting condition]

- A stop bit is not detected when receiving data.

PEA flag (Parity error flag)

[Clearing condition]

- The ASIMAn0.EN or RXEA bit is cleared to 0.
- 1 is written to the ASCTAn.PECTA bit.

[Setting condition]

- The parity of the received data does not match the parity bit.

TXSFA flag (Transmit shift register data flag)

[Clearing condition]

- The ASIMAn0.EN or TXEA bit is cleared to 0.
- Data is transferred from the transmit shift register and then no subsequent data is transferred from the TXBAn register.

[Setting condition]

- Data is transferred from the TXBAn register. (Data is being transmitted.)

TXBFA flag (Transmit buffer data flag)

[Clearing condition]

- The ASIMAn0.EN or TXEA bit is cleared to 0.
- Data is transferred to the transmit shift register.

[Setting condition]

- Data is written to the TXBAn register. (Data exists in the TXBAn register.)

31.2.7 ASCTAn : Status Clear Trigger Register n (n = 0, 1)

Base address: UARTA = 0x4009_7000

Offset address: 0x06 + 0x8 × n

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	PECT A	FECT A	OVEC TA
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	OVECTA* ¹	Overrun error flag clear trigger 0: Does not clear the ASISAn.OVEA flag (the flag is retained) 1: Clears the ASISAn.OVEA flag	R/W
1	FECTA* ¹	Framing error flag clear trigger 0: Does not clear the ASISAn.FEA flag (the flag is retained) 1: Clears the ASISAn.FEA flag	R/W
2	PECTA* ¹	Parity error flag clear trigger 0: Does not clear the ASISAn.PEA flag (the flag is retained) 1: Clears the ASISAn.PEA flag	R/W
7:3	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note 1. When reading the ASCTAn register, 0 is returned.

The ASCTAn register sets the trigger to clear the error status on completion of reception of the serial interface UARTAn. It contains 3 bits of the error clear trigger flags (PECTA, FECTA, and OVECTA).

When the ASCTAn register is read, 0x00 is always read.

Writing 1 to the PECTA, FECTA, and OVECTA bits clear the PEA, FEA, and OVEA flags of the ASISAn register, respectively. When writing 0, the corresponding error flags are not cleared.

After writing 1 to the trigger bit, the corresponding error flag is cleared on the next rising edge of the operating clock (f_{UTAn}). So, if reading the ASISAn register immediately after writing 1 to the trigger bit, the corresponding error flag may not have been cleared yet.

31.2.8 UTA0CK : UARTA Clock Select Register 0

Base address: UARTA = 0x4009_7000

Offset address: 0x10

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	EN	—	SEL[1:0]	CK[3:0]				
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
3:0	CK[3:0]	UARTA0 operation clock select (f_{UTA0}) 0x0: f_{SEL} 0x1: $f_{\text{SEL}}/2$ 0x2: $f_{\text{SEL}}/4$ 0x3: $f_{\text{SEL}}/8$ 0x4: $f_{\text{SEL}}/16$ 0x5: $f_{\text{SEL}}/32$ 0x6: $f_{\text{SEL}}/64$ 0x8: UARTALOCLK 0x9: UARTASCLK Others: Setting prohibited	R/W
5:4	SEL[1:0]	f_{SEL} clock select 0 0: Stop 0 1: UARTAMCLK 1 0: UARTAHCLK 1 1: UARTAMOCLK	R/W
6	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
7	EN	UARTA0 clock output function enable 0: Disables CLKA0 output 1: Enables CLKA0 output	R/W

Note:

- f_{SEL} : Selected clock to be divided for the UARTA
- UARTAMCLK: UARTA external clock
- UARTASCLK: UARTA sub clock
- UARTAHCLK: UARTA HOCO clock
- UARTAMOCLK: UARTA MOCO clock
- UARTALOCLK: UARTA LOCO clock

The UTA0CK register selects the operating clock of the UARTAn. The SEL[1:0] bits select the clock source, f_{SEL} , for UARTAn from UARTAMCLK, UARTAHCLK, and UARTAMOCLK. The CK[3:0] bits select the operating clock for UARTA0 from f_{SEL} to $f_{\text{SEL}}/64$, UARTALOCLK, and UARTASCLK.

Setting the EN bit to 1 selects the UARTA0 clock output mode, and the operating clock for UARTA0 is output from the CLKA0 pin.

This register should be read or written when the ASIMAn0.TXEA and RXEA bits are 0 (in the transmission and reception stopped state).

31.2.9 UTA1CK : UARTA Clock Select Register 1

Base address: UARTA = 0x4009_7000

Offset address: 0x11

Bit position: 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0

Bit field:	EN	—	—	—	CK[3:0]		

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
3:0	CK[3:0]	UARTA1 operation clock select (f_{UTA1}) 0x0: f_{SEL} 0x1: $f_{\text{SEL}}/2$ 0x2: $f_{\text{SEL}}/4$ 0x3: $f_{\text{SEL}}/8$ 0x4: $f_{\text{SEL}}/16$ 0x5: $f_{\text{SEL}}/32$ 0x6: $f_{\text{SEL}}/64$ 0x8: UARTALOCLK 0x9: UARTASCLK Others: Setting prohibited	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
6:4	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
7	EN	UARTA1 clock output function enable 0: Disables CLKA1 output 1: Enables CLKA1 output	R/W

Note:

- f_{SEL} : Selected clock to be divided for the UARTA
- UARTALOCK: UARTA LOCO clock
- UARTASCLK: UARTA sub clock

The UTA1CK register selects the operating clock of UARTA1. The CK[3:0] bits select the operating clock for UARTA1 from f_{SEL} to $f_{SEL}/64$, UARTALOCK, and UARTASCLK.

Setting the EN bit to 1 selects the UARTA1 clock output mode, and the operating clock for UARTA1 is output from the CLKA1 pin.

This register should be read or written when the ASIMA10.TXEA and RXEA bits are 0 (in the transmission and reception stopped state).

31.3 Operation

UARTAn operates in the following two modes:

- Operation stop mode
- UART mode

31.3.1 Operation Stop Mode

In the operation stop mode, serial communication is not performed, and thus the power consumption can be reduced. In addition, in this mode, the pins can be used as ordinary port pins. To set the operation stop mode, clear the EX, TXEA, RXEA, and EN bits of the ASIMAn0 register to 0.

31.3.2 UART Mode

In this mode, one byte of data is transmitted and one byte is received following the start bit. This means that operation is full duplex.

A dedicated UART baud rate generator is incorporated, so that communication can be executed at a wide range of baud rates.

(1) Communication procedure

Table 31.3 shows the step of communication procedure.

Table 31.3 Step of communication procedure

Step	Process	Detail
Step of communication procedure	<1>	Enable clock supply Set bit 0 of the MSTPCRB register to 0.
	<2>	Baud rate setting Set the BRGCAn register.
	<3>	Operation mode setting 1 Set the ALV, DIR, SL, CL[1:0], and PS[1:0] bits of the ASIMAn1 register.
	<4>	Operation mode setting 2 Set the ISSMA and ISRMA bits of the ASIMAn0 register.
	<5>	Enable operation Set the EN bit of the ASIMAn0 register to 1.
	<6>	Enable communication Set the TXEA bit of the ASIMAn0 register to 1 to enable transmission. Set the RXEA bit of the ASIMAn0 register to 1 to enable reception.
	<7>	Write transmit data Write transmit data to the TXBAn register.
	<8>	Start of transmission —

Note: Make I/O port settings to enable input and output functions as required for TXDAn, RXDAn, and CLKAn pins in advance. For details, see [section 17, I/O Ports](#).

Note: n: Unit number (n = 0, 1)

(2) Format and waveform example of transmit and receive data

The following describes the communication data format of UARTAn.

Figure 31.2 shows the data format.

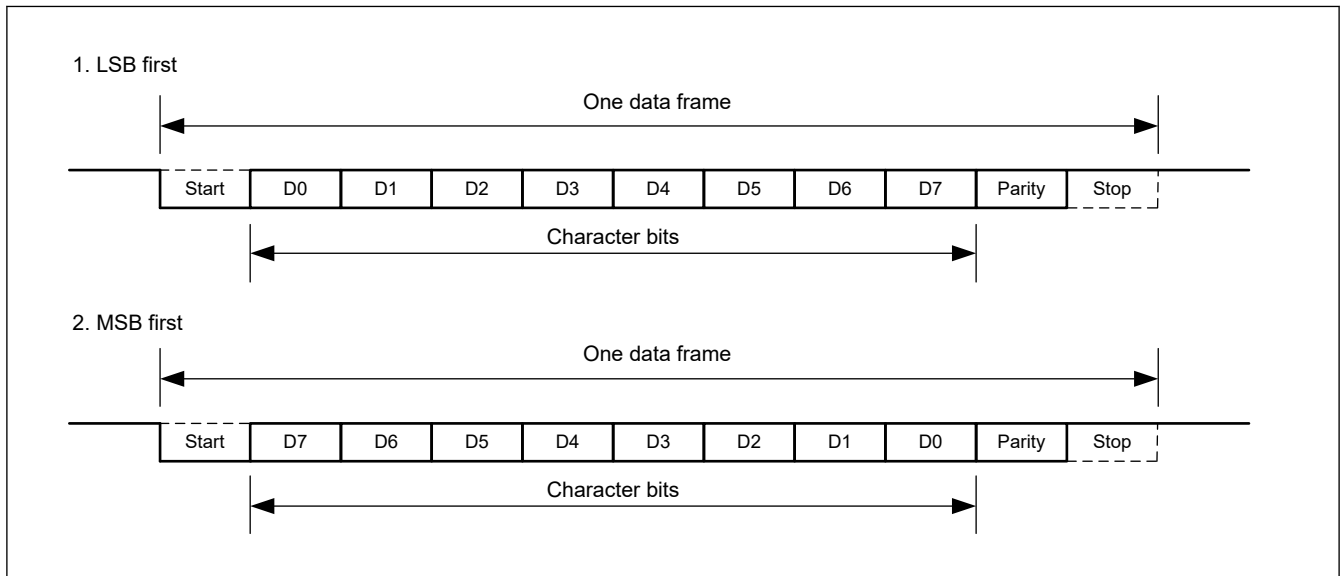


Figure 31.2 Transmit and receive data format

One data frame consists of the following bits.

- Start bit: 1 bit
- Character bits: 5, 7 or 8 bits
- Parity bit: Even parity, odd parity, 0 parity, or no parity
- Stop bit: 1 or 2 bits

The character bit length, the parity, the stop bit length, the transfer direction (LSB or MSB first), and the TxDAn pin output (direct or inverted) in one data frame are specified by the ASIMAn1 register.

Note: n: Unit number (n = 0, 1)

Figure 31.3 shows the examples of transmit and receive data waveforms.

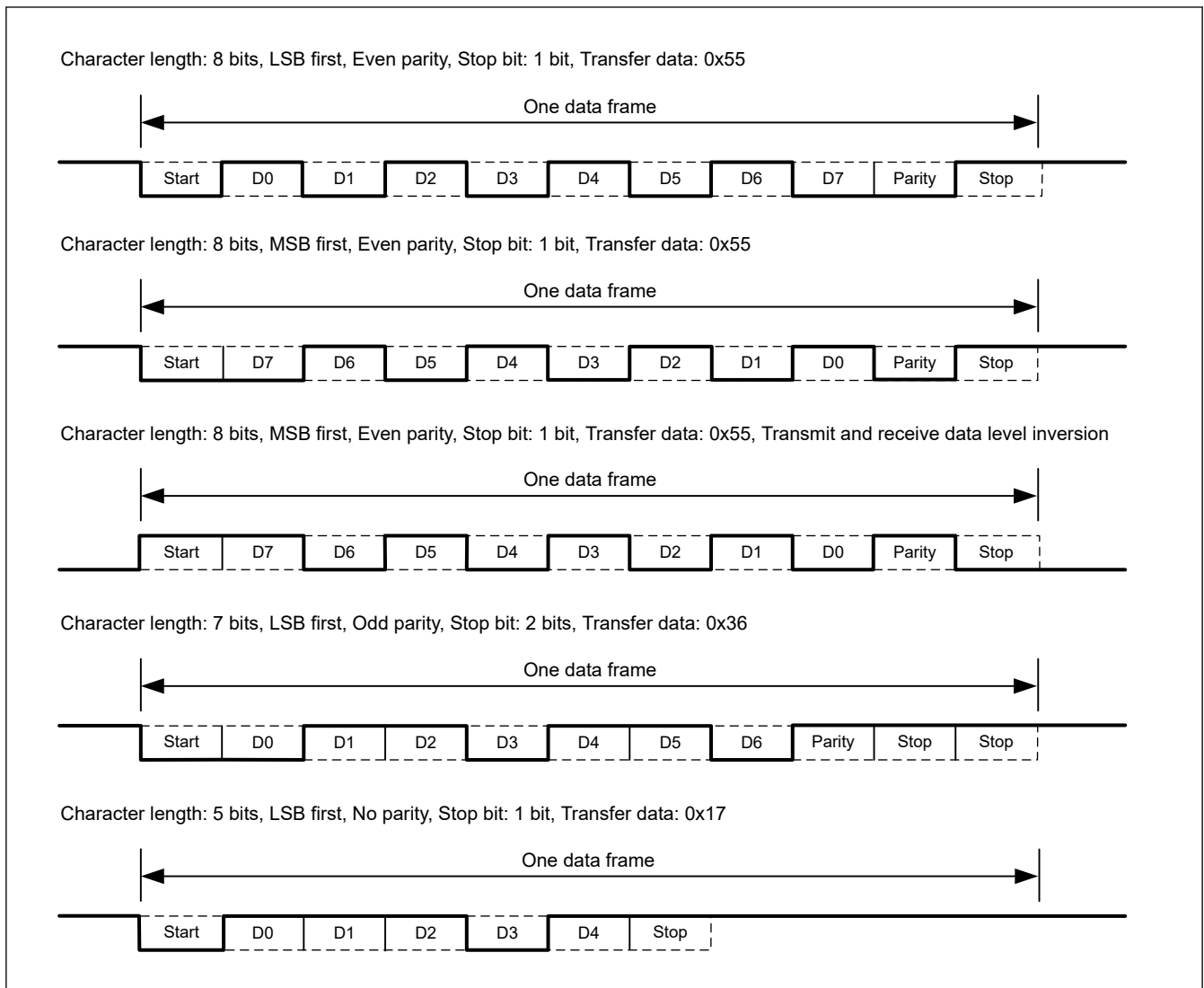


Figure 31.3 Example of transmit and receive data waveform

(3) Parity types and operation

The parity bit is used to detect a bit error in communication data. Usually, the same type of parity bit is used on both the transmitting and reception sides. With even and odd parity, a 1-bit (odd number) error can be detected. With zero and no parity, an error cannot be detected.

(a) Even parity

- In transmission

Data for transmission, including the parity bit, are controlled so that an even number of bits have the value 1. The value of the parity bit is set as follows.

If the data for transmission have an odd number of bits with the value 1:1

If the data for transmission have an even number of bits with the value 1:0

- In reception

In the data for reception, including the parity bit, the number of bits with the value 1, is counted. If it is odd, a parity error occurs.

(b) Odd parity

- In transmission

Unlike even parity, data for transmission, including the parity bit, are controlled so that an odd number of bits have the value 1.

If the data for transmission have an odd number of bits with the value 1:0

If the data for transmission have an even number of bits with the value 1:1

- In reception
In the data for reception, including the parity bit, the number of bits with the value 1, is counted. If it is even, a parity error occurs.

(c) 0 parity

The parity bit is cleared to 0 when data is transmitted, regardless of the transmit data.

The parity bit is not detected when the data is received. Therefore, a parity error does not occur regardless of whether the parity bit is 0 or 1.

(d) No parity

No parity bit is appended to the transmit data.

Reception is performed assuming that there is no parity bit. A parity error does not occur, because there is no parity bit.

(4) Normal transmission

Transmission is enabled by setting the EN bit of the operation mode setting register 0 (ASIMAn0) to 1 and then setting the TXEA bit of ASIMAn0 to 1. Transmission can be started by writing the data for transmission to the transmission buffer register (TXBAn). The start bit, parity bit, and stop bit are automatically appended to the data. When transmission is started, the data in the TXBAn register are transferred to the transmit shift register. After that, the transmit data are sequentially output from the transmit shift register to the TxDAn pin in the specified transfer direction. When transmission is completed, the parity and stop bits which are set by the ASIMAn0 register are appended and a transfer completion interrupt request signal (UARTAn_INTUT) is generated.

Transmission is suspended until the next transmit data is written to the TXBAn register.

Figure 31.4 shows the timing of the transfer completion interrupt request signal (UARTAn_INTUT). UARTAn_INTUT is issued at the following timing.

- When ASIMAn0.ISSMA = 0 (UARTAn_INTUT functions as a transfer completion interrupt.)
UARTAn_INTUT is issued after the output of the last stop bit.
- ASIMAn0.ISSMA = 1 (UARTAn_INTUT functions as a buffer empty interrupt.)
UARTAn_INTUT is issued when the start bit is output.

Note: n: Unit number (n = 0, 1)

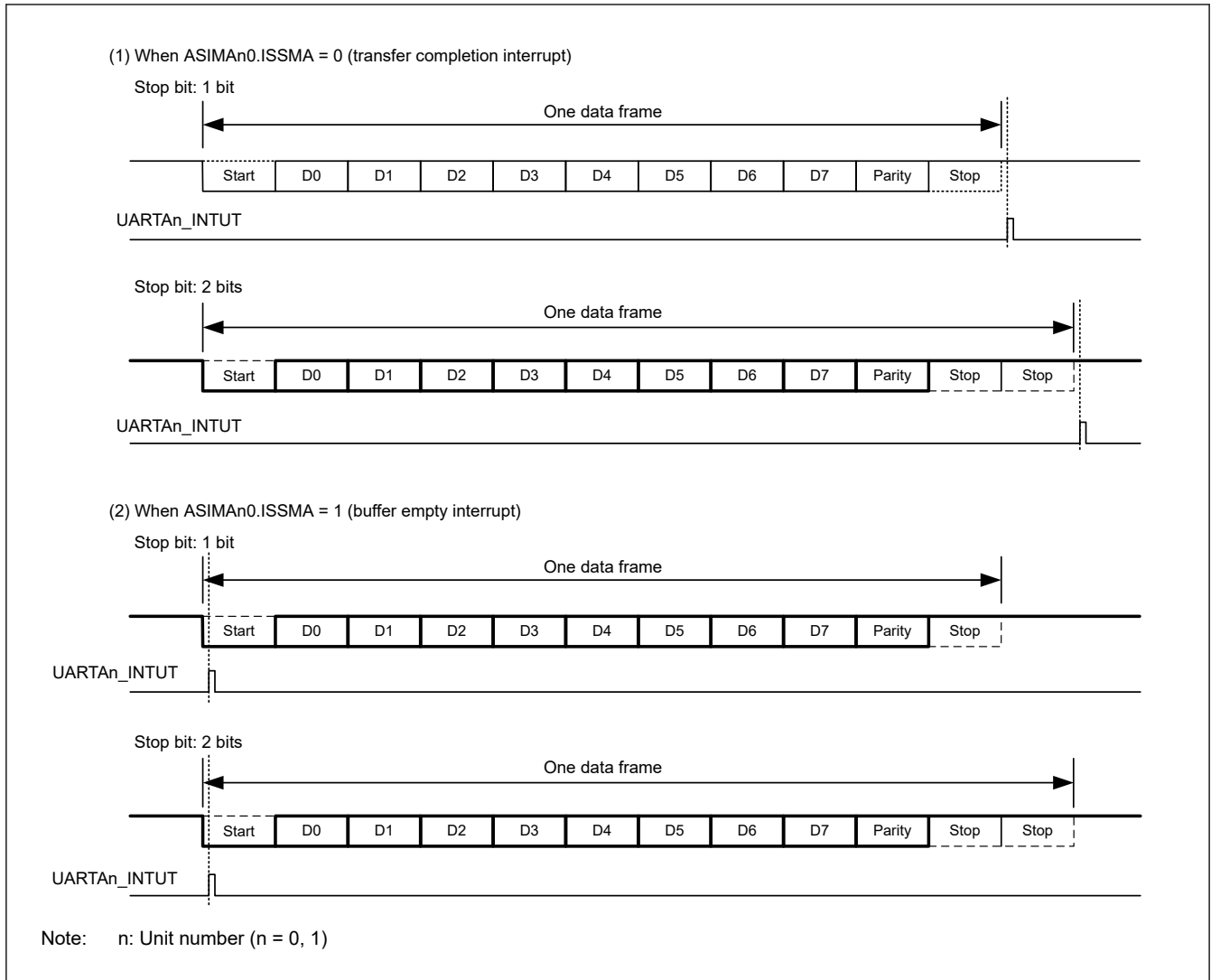


Figure 31.4 Interrupt output timing

(5) Continuous transmission

UARTAn has two separate registers for continuous transmission: the transmit buffer register (TXBAn) and the transmit shift register.

At the moment the transmit shift register starts a shift operation, the next transmit data can be written to the transmit buffer register (TXBAn). This operation enables continuous transmission, thereby improving communication rate.

Note that continuous transmission is not achieved when writing to the TXBAn register is not completed within the maximum number of clock cycles defined below from generation of the buffer empty interrupt.

Maximum number of clock cycles = Data transfer length $\times 2k - (2k + 3)$

k: the value set with the BRGCAn register (k = 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, ..., 255)

An example of calculating the maximum number of clock cycles is described below. When the BRGCAn register = 0x02 (k = 2)

Start bit = 1 bit, character length = 8 bits, parity used, and stop bit = 1 bit:

The maximum number of clock cycles = Transfer length $\times 2k - (2k + 3) = 11 \times 2 \times 2 - (2 \times 2 + 3) = 37$

(Writing must be completed within 37 cycles of the UARTAn operating clock (f_{UARTAn}).)

Continuous transmission is achieved by the following two methods.

(a) Continuous transmission by polling

Continuous transmission is achieved by polling the TXBFA and TXSFA flags of the status register (ASISAn).

When using this method, clear the ISSMA bit of the operation mode setting register 0 (ASIMAn0) to 0.

At the start of and during continuous transmission

At the start of continuous transmission, write the first byte of data to the TXBAn register, check that the transmit buffer data flag (ASISAn.TXBFA) is 0, and then write the second byte of data. Similarly, check that the ASISAn.TXBFA flag is 0 and then write the subsequent data to the TXBAn register.

Table 31.4 shows the determination flag indicating that writing to the TXBAn register is enabled or disabled at the start of continuous transmission.

Table 31.4 Determination flag indicating that writing to the TXBAn register is enabled or disabled at the start of continuous transmission

ASISAn.TXBFA	Description
0	Writing is enabled
1	Writing is disabled

Note: To determine if continuous transmission is enabled or disabled, only check the ASISAn.TXBFA flag. The ASISAn.TXSFA flag must not be used for the determination in combination with this flag.

Note: n: Unit number (n = 0, 1)

Completion of continuous transmission

In continuous transmission, when data in the transmit shift register and the TXBAn register are transmitted after the required number of transmit data are written to the TXBAn register, the continuous transmission is completed. To confirm the completion, check the setting of the transmit shift register data flag (ASISAn.TXSFA).

Table 31.5 shows the confirmation flag indicating whether transmission is in progress or not.

Table 31.5 Confirmation flag indicating whether transmission is in progress or not

ASISAn.TXSFA	Description
0	Transmission is completed.
1	Transmission is in progress.

Note: When initializing the transmission unit after completion of continuous transmission, check that the ASISAn.TXSFA flag is 0 after the transfer completion interrupt is generated, and then initialize the unit.

Note: During continuous transmission, after transmission of one data frame, the subsequent transmission may be completed before execution of the UARTAn_INTUT interrupt processing.
This can be detected by incorporating the program that counts the number of transmit data and by referencing the ASISAn.TXSFA flag.

Note: n: Unit number (n = 0, 1)

Table 31.6 shows a step example of continuous transmission processing by polling.

Table 31.6 Step example of continuous transmission processing by polling

Step	Process	Detail
Step example of continuous transmission processing by polling	<1> Set registers	ASIMAn0.ISSMA = 0
	<2> Check if the required number of transmit data are written to the TXBAn register. If yes, go to <5> If no, go to <3>	—
	<3> Wait until the ASISAn.TXBFA flag is cleared.	Data is transferred to the transmit shift register.
	<4> Write transmit data to the TXBAn register. Go to <2>	—
	<5> Wait until the ASISAn.TXSFA flag is cleared.	Data is transferred from the transmit shift register and then no subsequent data is transferred from the TXBAn register.
	<6> End of transmission processing	—

Note: n: Unit number (n = 0, 1)

(b) Continuous transmission by using an interrupt

Continuous transmission is achieved by using the interrupt (UARTAn_INTUT).

An interrupt can be generated when data in the transmit buffer register (TXBAn) are transferred to the transmit shift register by setting the ISSMA bit to 1 in the operation mode setting register 0 (ASIMAn0).

With this setting, continuous transmission is enabled by writing data to the TXBAn register on occurrence of the buffer empty interrupt.

In addition, the transfer completion interrupt can be generated on completion of continuous transmission by clearing the ISSMA bit to 0 after writing the last transmit data to the TXBAn register.

Table 31.7 shows a step example of continuous transmission using interrupt.

Table 31.7 Step example of continuous transmission using interrupt

Step	Process	Detail
Step example of continuous transmission using interrupt	<1> Set registers	ASIMAn0.ISSMA = 1
	<2> Write to the TXBAn register	—
	<3> Waiting for UARTAn_INTUT	Buffer empty interrupt
	<4> Generation of UARTAn_INTUT	—
	<5> Check if the required number of transmit data are written to the TXBAn register. If yes, go to step <6>. If no, go to step <2>.	—
	<6> Set the ASIMAn0 register	ASIMAn0.ISSMA = 0
	<7> Waiting for UARTAn_INTUT	Transfer completion interrupt
	<8> Generation of UARTAn_INTUT	—
	<9> End of transmission processing	—

Note: n: Unit number (n = 0, 1)

Figure 31.5 and Figure 31.6 show the timing when continuous transmission is started and completed, respectively.

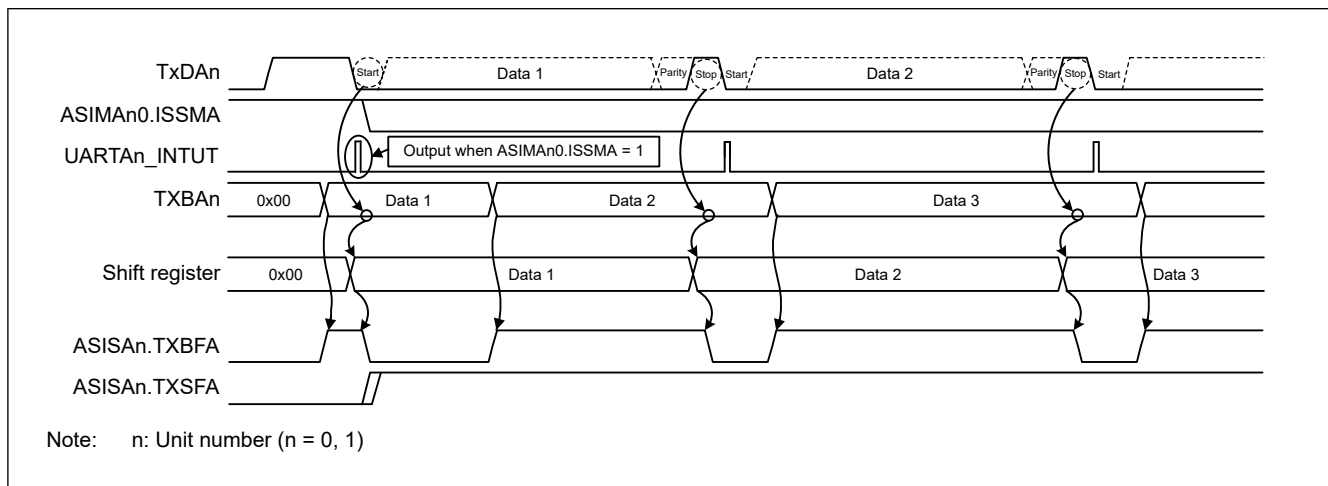


Figure 31.5 Timing when continuous transmission is started

Note: When the ASISAn register is read, both the ASISAn.TXBFA and TXSFA flags are read as 1 within this period. So, use only the ASISAn.TXBFA flag to determine if writing is enabled or disabled.

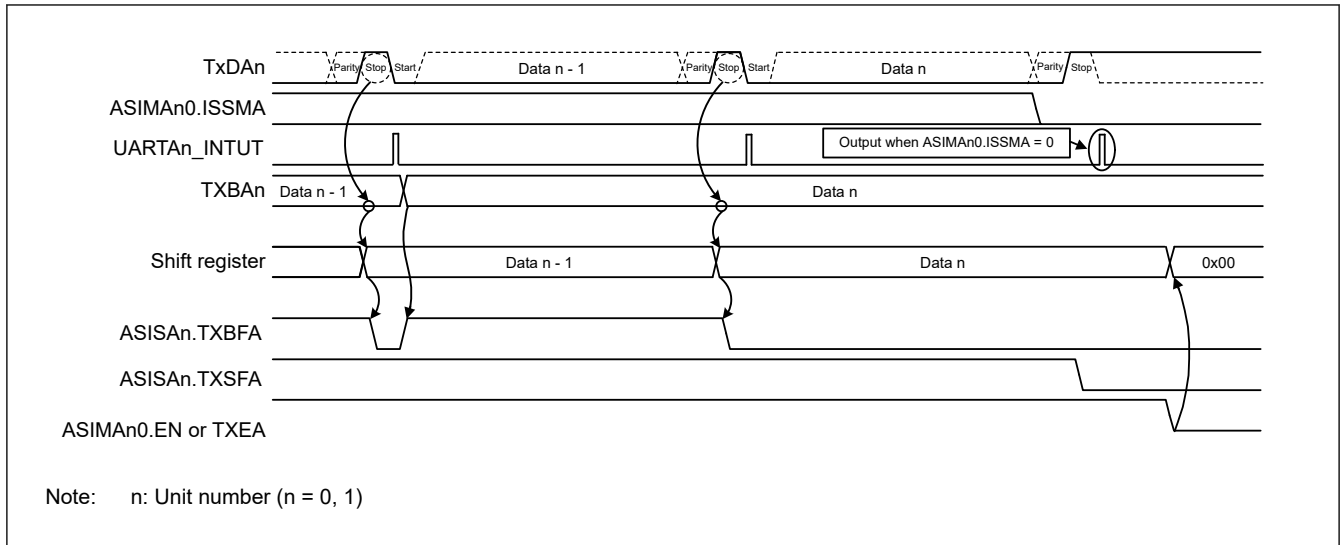


Figure 31.6 Timing when continuous transmission is completed

(6) Normal reception

When setting the EN bit of the operation mode setting register 0 (ASIMAn0) to 1 and then setting the RXEA bit of the ASIMAn0 register to 1, reception is enabled, and sampling of the input to the RxDAn pin is performed.

When the ASIMAn1.ALV bit is 0, the 8-bit counter of the baud rate generator starts counting on detection of the falling edge on the RxDAn pin. When the counter reaches the set value of the baud rate generator control register (BRGCAn), the input to the RxDAn pin is sampled again (at the point indicated with ∇ in Figure 31.7). If the RxDAn pin is low, it is regarded as a start bit.

When the ASIMAn1.ALV bit is 1, the 8-bit counter of the baud rate generator starts counting on detection of the rising edge on the RxDAn pin. When the counter reaches the set value of the baud rate generator control register (BRGCAn), the input to the RxDAn pin is sampled again (at the point indicated with ∇ in Figure 31.7). If the RxDAn pin is high, it is regarded as a start bit.

Figure 31.7 shows the timing diagram of receive operation.

On detection of a start bit, receive operation is started: serial data is sequentially stored in the receive shift register at a specified baud rate. On reception of a stop bit, the transfer completion interrupt (UARTAn_INTUR) is generated, and at the same time, the data in the receive shift register is written to the receive buffer register (RXBA[n]).

When an overrun error (ASISAn.OVEA) occurs, the data received on occurrence of the error is not written to the RXBA[n] register.

When a parity error (ASISAn.PEA) or a framing error (ASISAn.FEA) occurs during reception, reception continues until a stop bit is received. After completion of the reception, the reception error interrupt (UARTAn_INTUR or UARTAn_INTURE) set in the ASIMAn0.ISRMA bit is generated.

When a reception error occurs, read the status register (ASISAn) and then read the receive buffer register (RXBA[n]) to clear the error flag.

If the receive buffer register (RXBA[n]) is not read, an overrun error occurs when the next data is received and the reception error state continues.

Reception is always handled as including a stop bit. So, the second stop bit is ignored.

Note: n: Unit number (n = 0, 1)

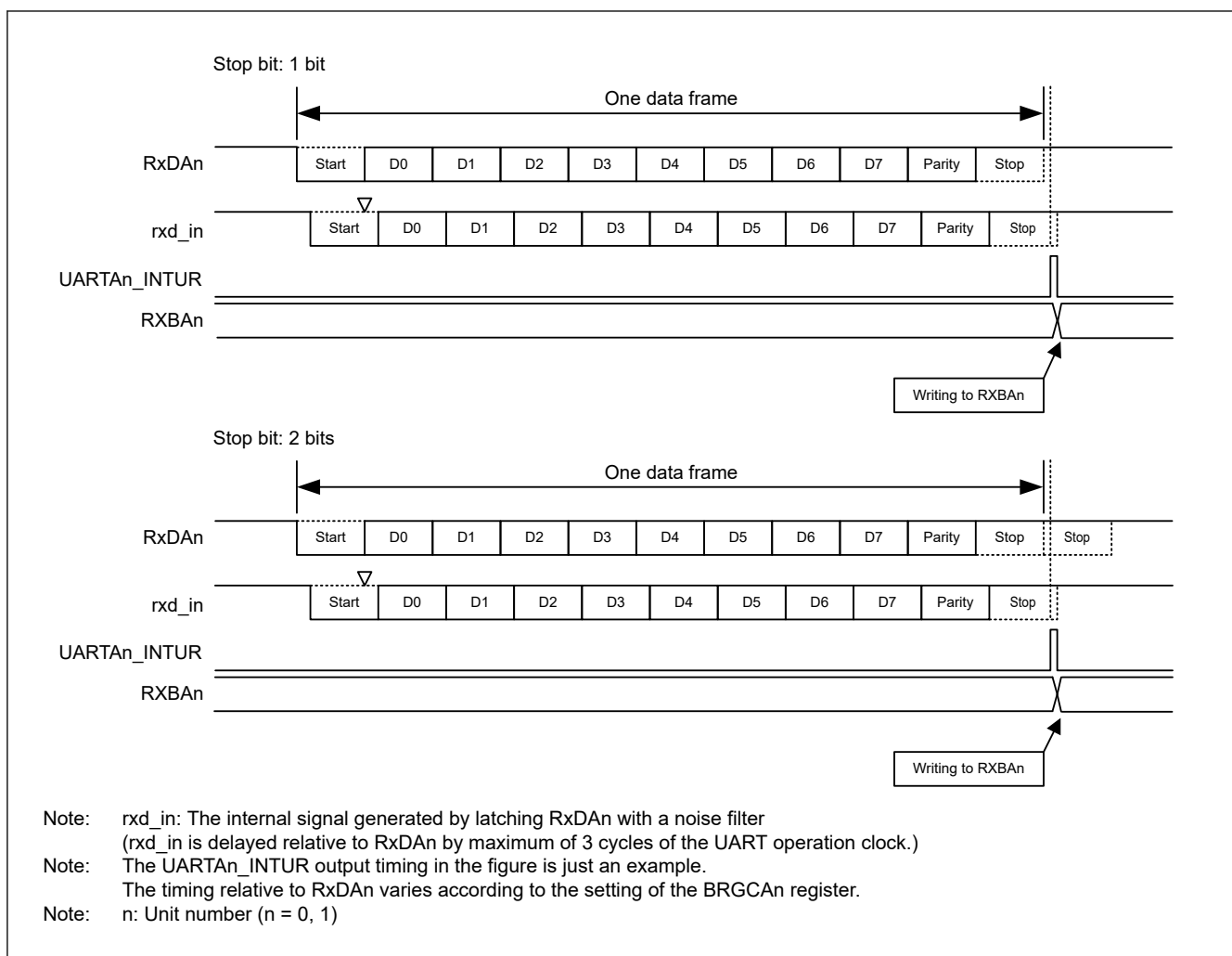


Figure 31.7 Timing of UART receive operation

(7) Reception error

Three types of errors may occur during reception; parity error, framing error, and overrun error.

When these errors occur, the corresponding error flag in the status register (ASISAn) is set, and the reception error interrupt request signal (UARTAn_INTUR or UARTAn_INTURE) is generated.

The type of the reception error can be identified by the reception error interrupt processing routine, which reads and checks the contents of the status register (ASISAn).

The contents of the ASISAn register is cleared to 0 by setting the corresponding bit of the status clear trigger register (ASCTAn) to 1.

Table 31.8 shows the causes of the reception errors.

Table 31.8 Causes of reception errors

Error flag	Reception error	Cause
ASISAn.PEA	Parity error	The parity specified for reception does not match the parity of receive data.
ASISAn.FEA	Framing error	No stop bit is detected.
ASISAn.OVEA	Overrun error	Before the receive data is read from the receive buffer, the next data reception is completed.

Setting the ISRMA bit of the operation mode setting register 0 (ASIMAn0) to 0 allows the reception error interrupt to be separated from UARTAn_INTUR and allows it to be generated as UARTAn_INTURE.

Figure 31.8 shows the interrupt output waveform which varies depending on the setting of the ASIMAn0.ISRMA bit.

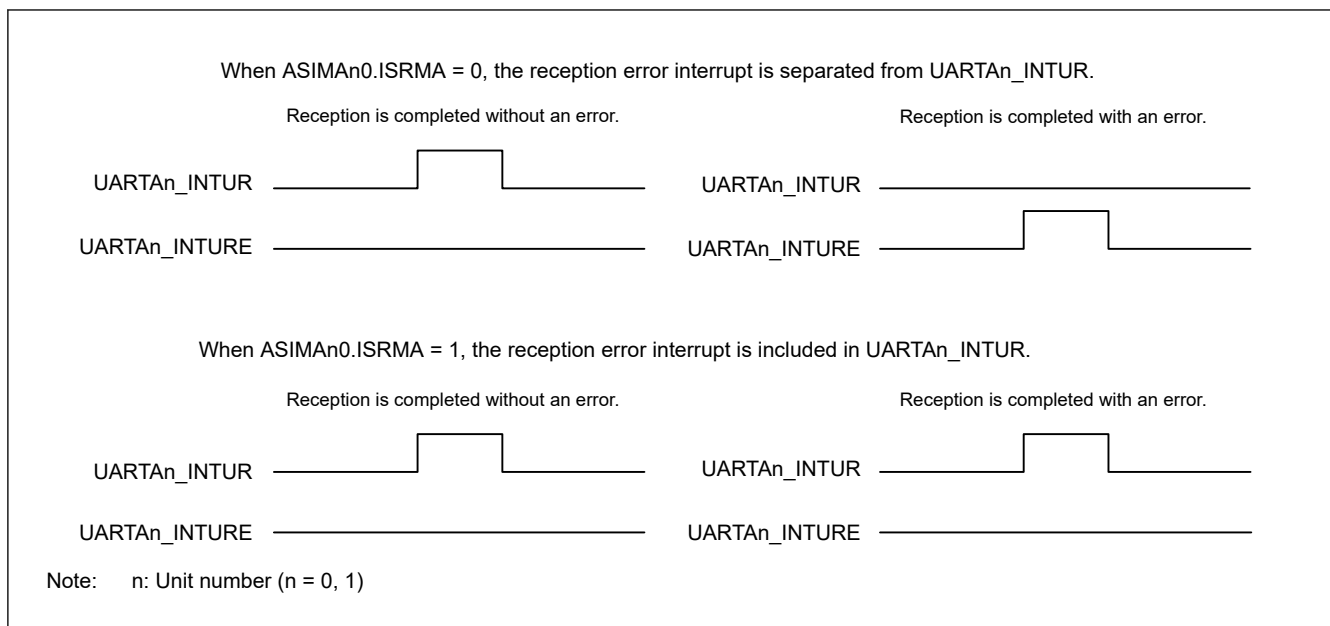


Figure 31.8 Various interrupt output waveforms depending on ASIMAn0.ISRMA setting

31.3.3 Receive Data Noise Filter

This filter samples the receive data (RxDAn), and determines the level when the same level is sampled twice.

The receive data is delayed by a maximum of 3 cycles of the operating clock because of the circuit configuration.

Figure 31.9 shows the noise filter circuit.

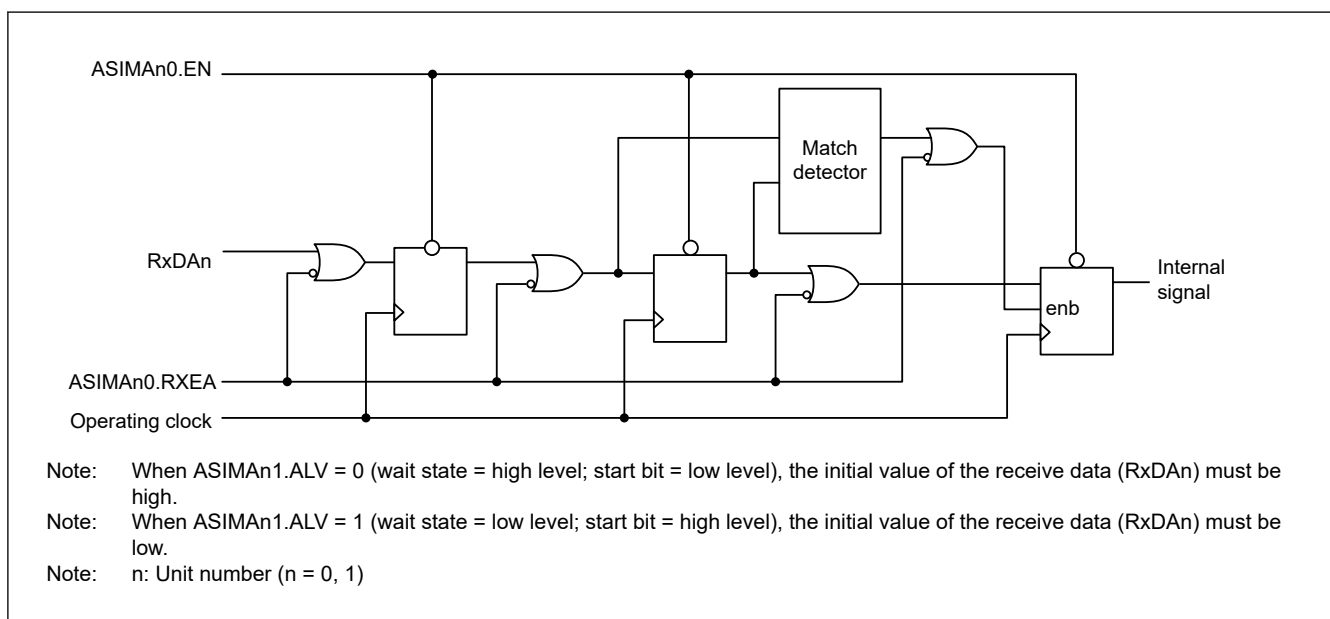


Figure 31.9 Noise filter

31.3.4 Baud Rate Generator

The baud rate generator consists of 8-bit programmable counters, and generates a serial clock for transmission and reception of UARTAn.

An 8-bit counter is provided each for transmission and reception.

(1) Configuration of baud rate generator

(a) UARTAn operation clock

When ASIMAn0.EN = 1, the UARTAn operation clock (f_{UTAn}) is supplied to each module. When ASIMAn0.EN = 0, the UARTAn operation clock is fixed to low level.

(b) Transmission counter

This counter is cleared to 0 and stops when ASIMAn0.EN = 0 or ASIMAn0.TXEA = 0. It starts counting when ASIMAn0.EN = 1 and ASIMAn0.TXEA = 1.

The counter is cleared to 0 when the first transmit data is written to the transmit buffer register (TXBAn).

When continuous transmission is performed, the counter is cleared to 0 again when transmission of one frame of data has been completed. If there is no data to be transmitted next, the counter is not cleared to 0 and continues counting until the ASIMAn0.EN or TXEA bit is cleared to 0. When ASIMAn0.EN = 0 or ASIMAn0.TXEA = 0, the counter stops at 0x00.

(c) Reception counter

This counter is cleared to 0 and stops when ASIMAn0.EN = 0 or ASIMAn0.RXEA = 0. It starts counting when the start bit is detected.

The counter stops operation after one frame has been received, until the next start bit is detected. When ASIMAn0.EN = 0 or ASIMAn0.RXEA = 0, the counter stops at 0x00.

Note: n: Unit number (n = 0, 1)

Figure 31.10 shows the configuration of the baud rate generator.

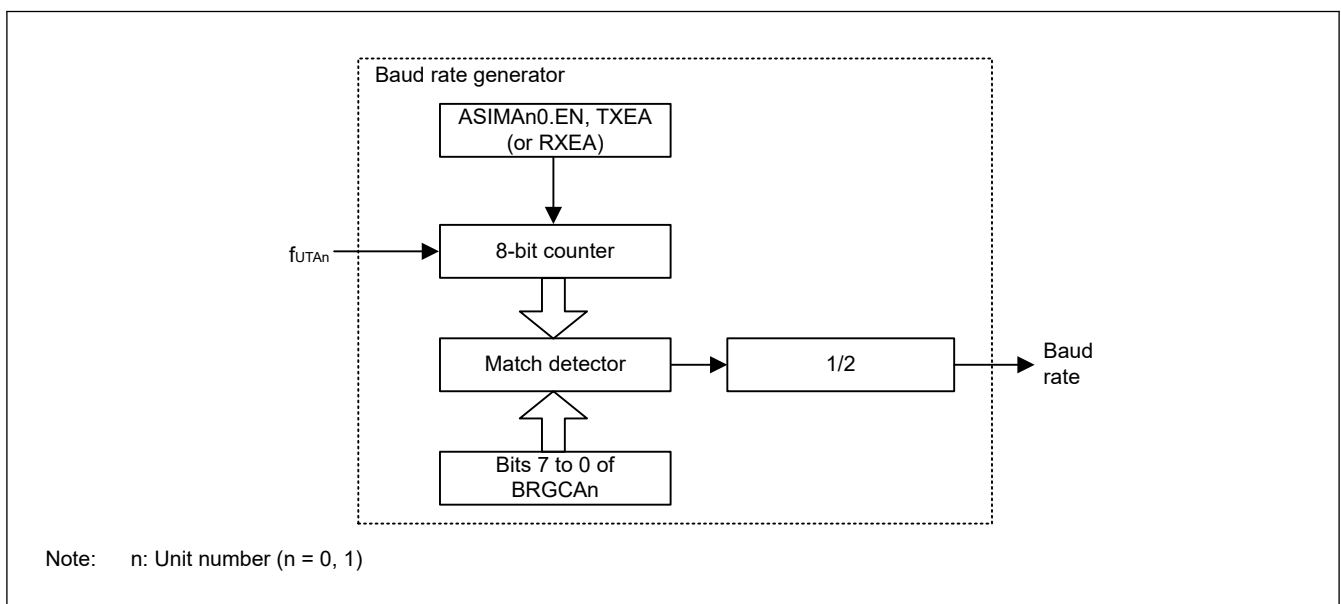


Figure 31.10 Configuration of baud rate generator

(2) Generation of serial clock

A serial clock to be generated can be specified by using the baud rate generator control register (BRGCAn).

The baud rate generator divides the frequency of the input clock signal to the 8-bit counter (f_{UTAn}) by the divisor set by the BRGCAn register. The result of this division is further divided by 2 to produce the serial clock.

(3) Baud rate calculation

(a) Baud rate calculation expression

The baud rate can be calculated by the following expression.

$$\text{Baud rate} = f_{UTAn} \div (2 \times k) \text{ [bps]}$$

f_{UTAn} : Frequency of operating clock

k: Value set by bits 7 to 0 of the BRGCAn register (k = 2, 3, 4, ..., 255)

(b) Baud rate error

The baud rate error can be calculated by the following expression.

$$\text{Error} = \left[\frac{\text{Actual baud rate (baud rate with error)}}{\text{Desired baud rate (correct baud rate)}} - 1 \right] \times 100[\%]$$

Note: Keep the baud rate error during transmission to within the permissible error range on the reception side.

Note: Make sure that the baud rate error during reception satisfies the permissible baud rate error range during reception. Permissible baud rate error during reception is described in (d) [Permissible baud rate range during reception](#).

Note: n: Unit number (n = 0, 1)

(c) Baud rate setting example

[Table 31.9](#) to [Table 31.12](#) show the set data of the baud rate generator.

Table 31.9 Set data of baud rate generator (1/4)

Desired baud rate	In operation with UARTAHOCLK = 64 MHz (UTA0CK.SEL[1:0] = 10b)													
	No division		×1/2		×1/4		×1/8		×1/16		×1/32		×1/64	
	(UTAnCK.CK [3:0] = 0x0)		(UTAnCK.CK [3:0] = 0x1)		(UTAnCK.CK [3:0] = 0x2)		(UTAnCK.CK [3:0] = 0x3)		(UTAnCK.CK [3:0] = 0x4)		(UTAnCK.CK [3:0] = 0x5)		(UTAnCK.CK [3:0] = 0x6)	
	k	Error from the desired baud rate	k	Error from the desired baud rate	k	Error from the desired baud rate	k	Error from the desired baud rate	k	Error from the desired baud rate	k	Error from the desired baud rate	k	Error from the desired baud rate
200 bps	Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		Disabled	
300 bps	Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		Disabled	
600 bps	Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		Disabled	
1200 bps	Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		Disabled	
2400 bps	Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		204	0.16%
4800 bps	Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		208	0.16%	104	0.16%
9600 bps	Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		208	0.16%	104	0.16%	52	0.16%
19200 bps	Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		208	0.16%	104	0.16%	52	0.16%	26	0.16%
38400 bps	Disabled		Disabled		208	0.16%	104	0.16%	52	0.16%	26	0.16%	13	0.16%
76800 bps	Disabled		208	0.16%	104	0.16%	52	0.16%	26	0.16%	13	0.16%	Disabled	
115200 bps	Disabled		139	-0.08%	69	0.64%	35	-0.79%	17	2.12%	Disabled		Disabled	
153600 bps	208	0.16%	104	0.16%	52	0.16%	26	0.16%	13	0.16%	Disabled		Disabled	

Table 31.10 Set data of baud rate generator (2/4) (1 of 2)

Desired baud rate	In operation with UARTAMOCLK = 8 MHz (UTA0CK.SEL[1:0] = 11b)													
	No division		×1/2		×1/4		×1/8		×1/16		×1/32		×1/64	
	(UTAnCK.CK [3:0] = 0x0)		(UTAnCK.CK [3:0] = 0x1)		(UTAnCK.CK [3:0] = 0x2)		(UTAnCK.CK [3:0] = 0x3)		(UTAnCK.CK [3:0] = 0x4)		(UTAnCK.CK [3:0] = 0x5)		(UTAnCK.CK [3:0] = 0x6)	
	k	Error from the desired baud rate	k	Error from the desired baud rate	k	Error from the desired baud rate	k	Error from the desired baud rate	k	Error from the desired baud rate	k	Error from the desired baud rate	k	Error from the desired baud rate
200 bps	Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		Disabled	
300 bps	Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		208	0.16%
600 bps	Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		208	0.16%	104	0.16%
1200 bps	Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		208	0.16%	104	0.16%	52	0.16%
2400 bps	Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		208	0.16%	104	0.16%	52	0.16%	26	0.16%
4800 bps	Disabled		Disabled		208	0.16%	104	0.16%	52	0.16%	26	0.16%	13	0.16%

Table 31.10 Set data of baud rate generator (2/4) (2 of 2)

Desired baud rate	In operation with UARTAMOCLK = 8 MHz (UTA0CK.SEL[1:0] = 11b)													
	No division		×1/2		×1/4		×1/8		×1/16		×1/32		×1/64	
	(UTAnCK.CK [3:0] = 0x0)		(UTAnCK.CK [3:0] = 0x1)		(UTAnCK.CK [3:0] = 0x2)		(UTAnCK.CK [3:0] = 0x3)		(UTAnCK.CK [3:0] = 0x4)		(UTAnCK.CK [3:0] = 0x5)		(UTAnCK.CK [3:0] = 0x6)	
	k	Error from the desired baud rate	k	Error from the desired baud rate	k	Error from the desired baud rate	k	Error from the desired baud rate	k	Error from the desired baud rate	k	Error from the desired baud rate	k	Error from the desired baud rate
9600 bps	Disabled		208	0.16%	104	0.16%	52	0.16%	26	0.16%	13	0.16%	Disabled	
19200 bps	208	0.16%	104	0.16%	52	0.16%	26	0.16%	13	0.16%	Disabled		Disabled	
38400 bps	104	0.16%	52	0.16%	26	0.16%	13	0.16%	Disabled		Disabled		Disabled	
76800 bps	52	0.16%	26	0.16%	13	0.16%	Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		Disabled	
115200 bps	35	-0.79%	17	2.12%	Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		Disabled	
153600 bps	26	0.16%	13	0.16%	Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		Disabled	

Table 31.11 Set data of baud rate generator (3/4)

Desired baud rate	In operation with UARTAMCLK = 20 MHz (UTA0CK.SEL[1:0] = 01b)													
	No division		×1/2		×1/4		×1/8		×1/16		×1/32		×1/64	
	(UTAnCK.CK [3:0] = 0x0)		(UTAnCK.CK [3:0] = 0x1)		(UTAnCK.CK [3:0] = 0x2)		(UTAnCK.CK [3:0] = 0x3)		(UTAnCK.CK [3:0] = 0x4)		(UTAnCK.CK [3:0] = 0x5)		(UTAnCK.CK [3:0] = 0x6)	
	k	Error from the desired baud rate	k	Error from the desired baud rate	k	Error from the desired baud rate	k	Error from the desired baud rate	k	Error from the desired baud rate	k	Error from the desired baud rate	k	Error from the desired baud rate
200 bps	Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		Disabled	
300 bps	Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		Disabled	
600 bps	Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		255	2.12%
1200 bps	Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		255	2.12%	130	0.16%
2400 bps	Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		255	2.12%	130	0.16%	65	0.16%
4800 bps	Disabled		Disabled		Disabled		255	2.12%	130	0.16%	65	0.16%	33	−1.36%
9600 bps	Disabled		Disabled		255	2.12%	130	0.16%	65	0.16%	33	−1.36%	16	1.73%
19200 bps	Disabled		255	2.12%	130	0.16%	65	0.16%	33	−1.36%	16	1.73%	8	1.73%
38400 bps	255	2.12%	130	0.16%	65	0.16%	33	−1.36%	16	1.73%	8	1.73%	4	1.73%
76800 bps	130	0.16%	65	0.16%	33	−1.36%	16	1.73%	8	1.73%	4	1.73%	Disabled	
115200 bps	87	−0.22%	43	0.94%	22	−1.36%	11	−1.36%	Disabled		Disabled		Disabled	
153600 bps	65	0.16%	33	−1.36%	16	1.73%	8	1.73%	4	1.73%	Disabled		Disabled	

Table 31.12 Set data of baud rate generator (4/4) (1 of 2)

Desired baud rate	In operation with UARTALCLK = 32.768 kHz (UTAnCK.CK[3:0] = 0x8)	
	k	Error from the desired baud rate
200 bps	82	-0.10%
300 bps	55	-0.70%
600 bps	27	-1.14%
1200 bps	14	-2.48%

Table 31.12 Set data of baud rate generator (4/4) (2 of 2)

Desired baud rate	In operation with UARTALOCK = 32.768 kHz (UTAnCK.CK[3:0] = 0x8)	
	k	Error from the desired baud rate
2400 bps	7	-2.48%
4800 bps	Disabled	
9600 bps	Disabled	
19200 bps	Disabled	
38400 bps	Disabled	
76800 bps	Disabled	
115200 bps	Disabled	
153600 bps	Disabled	

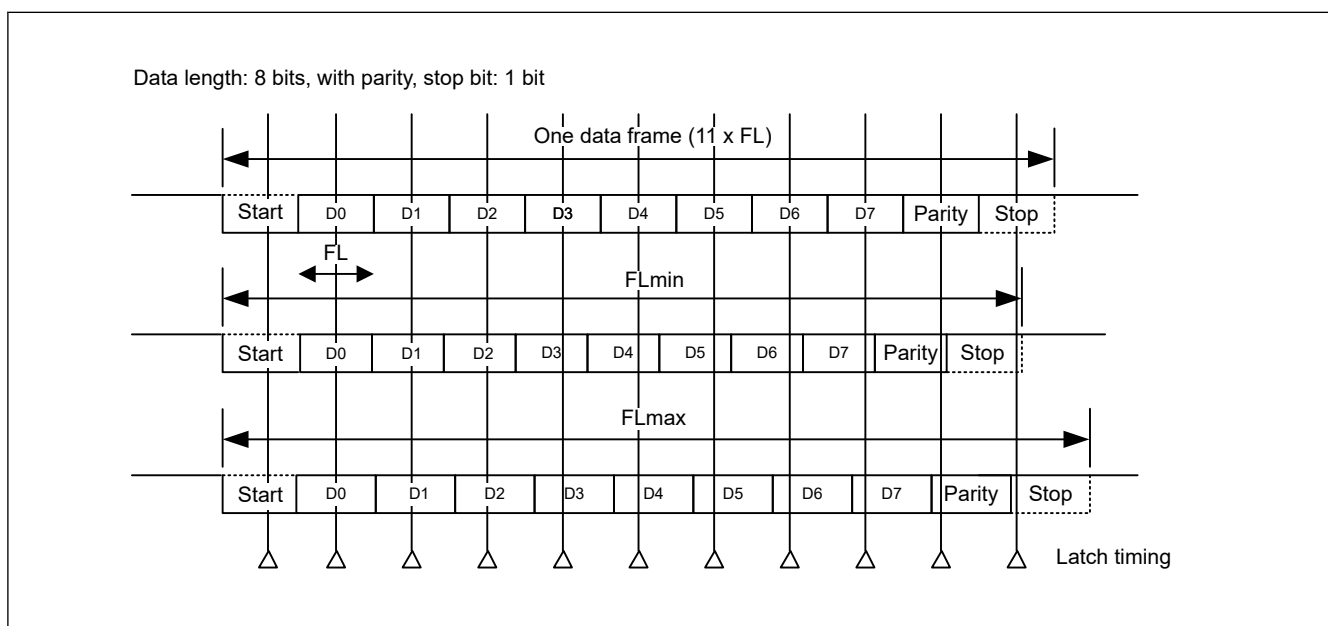
Note:

- UARTAMCLK: UARTA external clock
- UARTASCLK: UARTA sub clock
- UARAHOCCLK: UARTA HOCO clock
- UARTAMOCK: UARTA MOCO clock
- UARTALOCK: UARTA LOCO clock

Note: k: Value set by bits 7 to 0 of the baud rate generator control register (BRGCAn) (k = 2, 3, 4, ..., 255)
n: Unit number (n = 0, 1)

(d) Permissible baud rate range during reception

Figure 31.11 shows the permissible error from the baud rate on the transmitting side during reception.

**Figure 31.11 Permissible baud rate range during reception**

Note: Be sure to make settings so that the baud rate error during reception is within the permissible error range. Use the calculation expression below to check if the error is within the permissible range.

After the start bit is detected, the latch timing of receive data is determined by the counter specified with the baud rate generator control register (BRGCAn). If the whole frame including the stop bit has been received before this latching, reception can proceed correctly.

Assuming that 11 bits of data are received, the theoretical values can be calculated as follows.

- The relation between 1-bit data length and baud rate
 $FL = (\text{Brate}) - 1$
 Brate: Baud rate of UART
 k: Set value of the BRGCAn register

FL: 1-bit data length

Margin of latch timing: 1 clock

- Minimum permissible data frame length (FLmin)

$$FL_{min} = 11 \times FL - \frac{k-1}{2k} \times FL = \frac{21k+1}{2k} FL$$

- Maximum permissible baud rate for reception on the transmitting side (BRmax)

$$BR_{max} = (FL_{min}/11)^{-1} = \frac{22k}{21k+2} Brate$$

- Maximum permissible data frame length (FLmax)

$$FL_{max} = \frac{21k+1}{20k} FL \times 11$$

- Minimum permissible baud rate for reception on the transmitting side (BRmin)

$$BR_{min} = (FL_{max}/11)^{-1} = \frac{20k}{21k-2} Brate$$

Table 31.13 shows the permissible baud rate error between UART and the transmitting side that can be calculated from the above minimum and maximum baud rate expressions.

Table 31.13 Maximum and minimum permissible baud rate error

Division ratio (k)	Maximum permissible baud rate error	Minimum permissible baud rate error
2	+2.32%	-2.43%
4	+3.52%	-3.61%
8	+4.14%	-4.19%
20	+4.51%	-4.53%
50	+4.66%	-4.67%
100	+4.71%	-4.71%
255	+4.74%	-4.74%

Note: The permissible error of reception depends on the number of bits in one frame, input clock frequency, and division ratio (k).
The higher the input clock frequency and the division ratio (k), the higher the permissible error.

Note: k: Set value of the BRGCAn register

Note: n: Unit number (n = 0, 1)

31.4 Usage Notes

31.4.1 Port Setting for RxDA_n Pin

When ASIMAn1.ALV = 0 (wait state = high level, start bit = low level), the initial value of receive data (RxDA_n) must be high. When ASIMAn1.ALV = 1 (wait state = low level, start bit = high level), the initial value of receive data (RxDA_n) must be low. So, port setting is required for the RxDA_n pin before setting ASIMAn0.EN = 1.

31.4.2 Point for Caution When Selecting the UARTAn Operation Clock (f_{UTAn})

When UARTAMOCK is selected for f_{UTAn}, communication may not be executed correctly due to the oscillation frequency accuracy of the middle-speed on-chip oscillator. Adjust the accuracy, therefore, by using the MOCO user trimming control register (MOCOUTCR).

When the low-speed on-chip oscillator peripheral clock (UARTALOCK) is selected for f_{UTAn}, communication may not be executed correctly due to the oscillation frequency accuracy of the low-speed on-chip oscillator. Adjust the accuracy, therefore, by using the LOCO user trimming control register (LOCOUTCR).

31.4.3 Settings for the Module-stop State

The Module Stop Control Register B (MSTPCRB) can enable or disable the UARTA operation. The UARTA is initially stopped after reset. Releasing the module-stop state enables access to the registers. For details on the Module Stop Control Register B, see [section 10, Low Power Modes](#).

32. Serial Sound Interface Enhanced (SSIE)

32.1 Overview

The Serial Sound Interface Enhanced (SSIE) can transmit and receive audio data to and from various devices that support any of audio data formats, such as I²S, monaural, and TDM.

32.2 Features

Table 32.1 Features of SSIE

Item		Description
Number of channels		One channel: SSIE0
Communication mode		- Master/slave - Transmission/reception (SSIE0 full-duplex communication or half-duplex communication).
Communication format		- I²S format - Monaural format - TDM format.
Serial data		- MSB-first - Data can be left-justified or right-justified - Data delay (1 clock cycle) or no delay selectable for the period from SSILRCK0/SSIFS0 to SSITXD0/SSIRXD0/SSIDATA0 - System word length: 8, 16, 24, 32, 48, 64, 128, or 256 bits - Data word length: 8, 16, 18, 20, 22, 24, or 32 bits - Padding polarity: Low or high.
Bit clock (SSIBCK0)	In master mode	- Two clock sources available (AUDIO_CLK/GPT output (GTIOC4A)) - Clock source division ratio: 1/1, 1/2, 1/4, 1/6, 1/8, 1/12, 1/16, 1/24, 1/32, 1/48, 1/64, 1/96, and 1/128 - Supply/stop is selectable while communication is halted.
	In master/slave mode	Polarity (rising edge or falling edge) selectable.
LR clock/frame synchronization (SSILRCK0/SSIFS0)	In master mode	- Polarity (low level or high level) selectable - Supply/stop is selectable while communication is halted.
Transmit data (SSITXD0/SSIDATA0) and receive data (SSIRXD0/SSIDATA0)	Transmission	Muting method (transmission of transmit FIFO data or transmission of data fixed to 0) selectable.
FIFO	Capacity	Transmit FIFO/receive FIFO: 4 bytes × 32 stages.
	Data alignment	Data alignment method (left-justification or right-justification) selectable for the data transfer between FIFO and shift register
Interrupt	Interrupt output	- Communication error/idle mode - Receive data full - Transmit data empty.
Low power consumption function		Whether to supply the audio clock selectable in master mode
Module stop function	Module stop state can be set to reduce power consumption.	
TrustZone Filter	Security attribution can be set.	

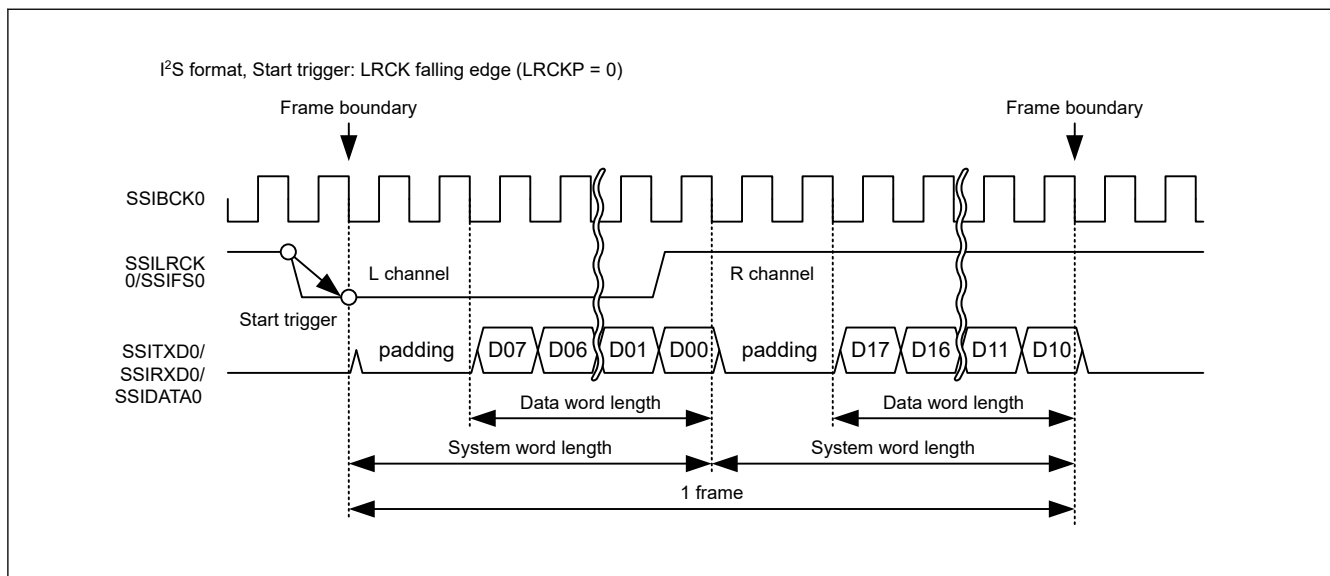
The following table lists and defines the terms used for the communication formats SSIE can use:

Table 32.2 Definition of terms (1 of 2)

Term	Definition
Start trigger	First edge of the signal on the SSILRCK0/SSIFS0 pin when the signal is set to the value specified in LRCKP to enable communication

Table 32.2 Definition of terms (2 of 2)

Term	Definition
Frame boundary	Point where SSIE starts transferring the first data of a frame or the point where SSIE ends transferring the last data of the frame
Frame word number	Number of sound channels per frame
System word length	Number of bits per channel
Data word length	Number of significant bits per channel
Control bits for communication formats	- SSICR register: FRM, DWL, SWL, LRCKP, SPDP, SDTA, PDTA, and DEL bits - SSIFCR register: BSW bit - SSIOFR register: OMOD bit - SSISCR register: TDES[4:0] and RDFS[4:0] bits.

**Figure 32.1** Definition of communication format

32.3 Block Diagram

Figure 32.2 shows a block diagram of SSIE.

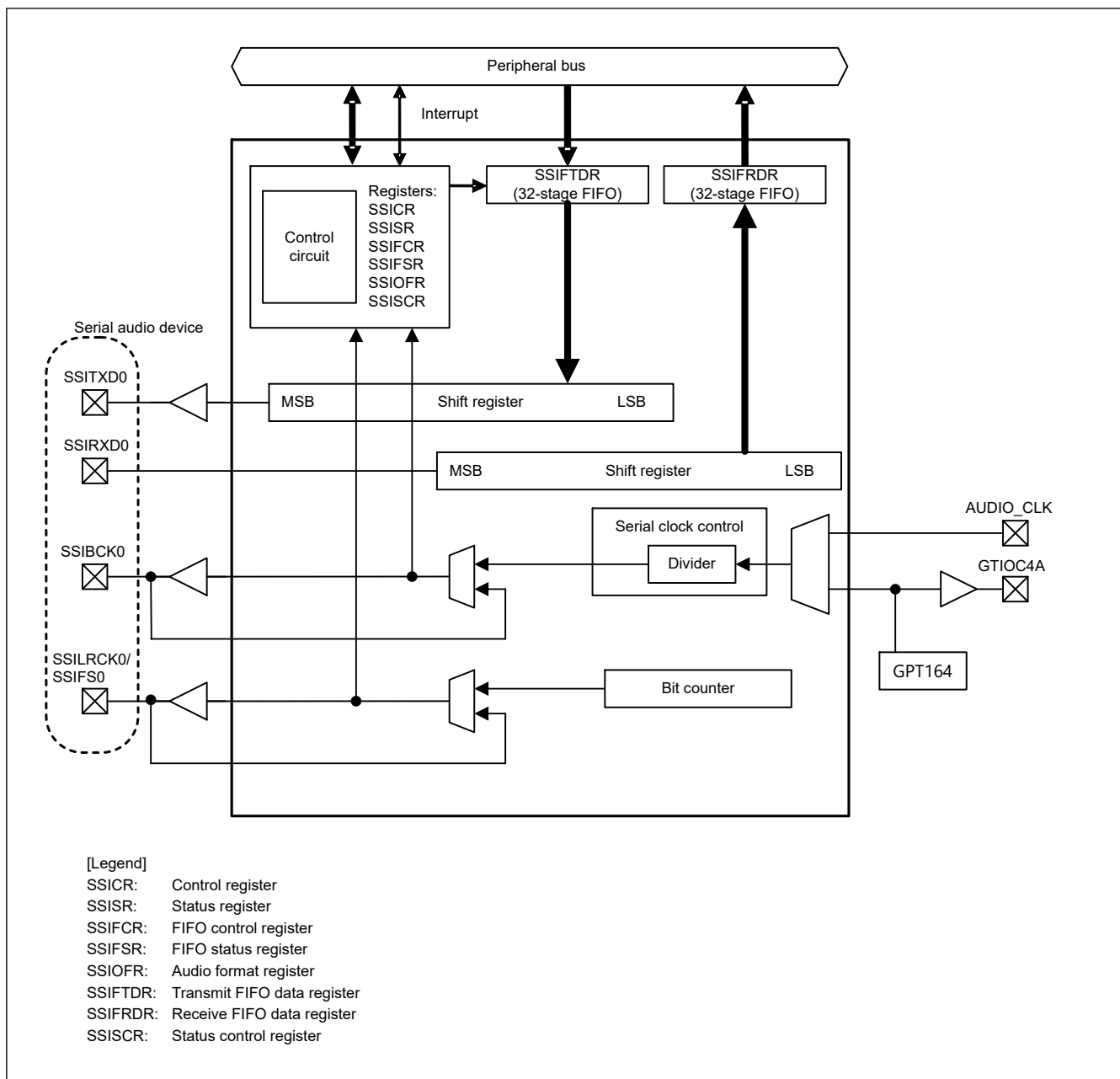


Figure 32.2 SSIE block diagram for full-duplex communication

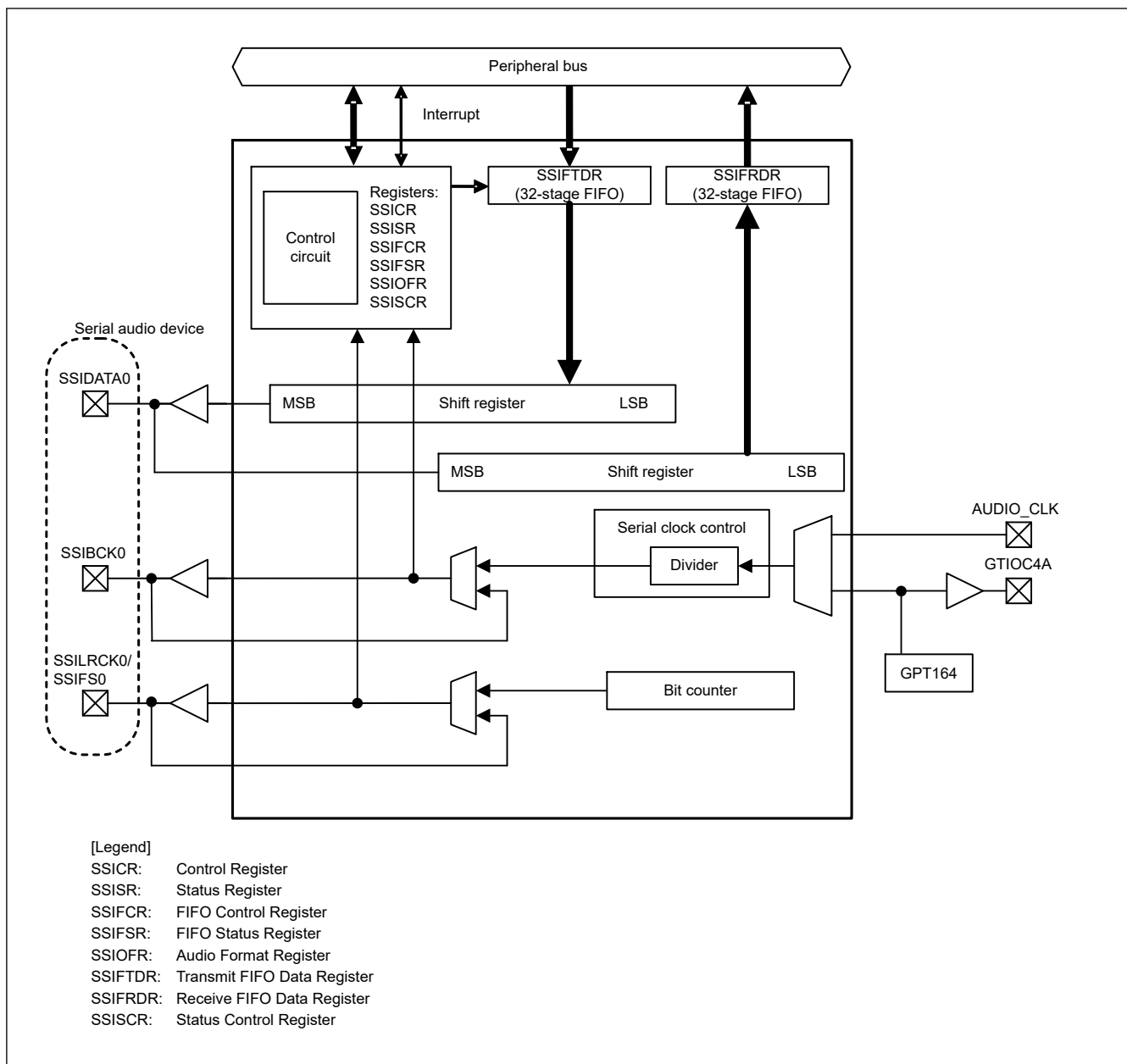


Figure 32.3 SSIE block diagram for half-duplex communication

Figure 32.4 shows the clock configuration of SSIE.

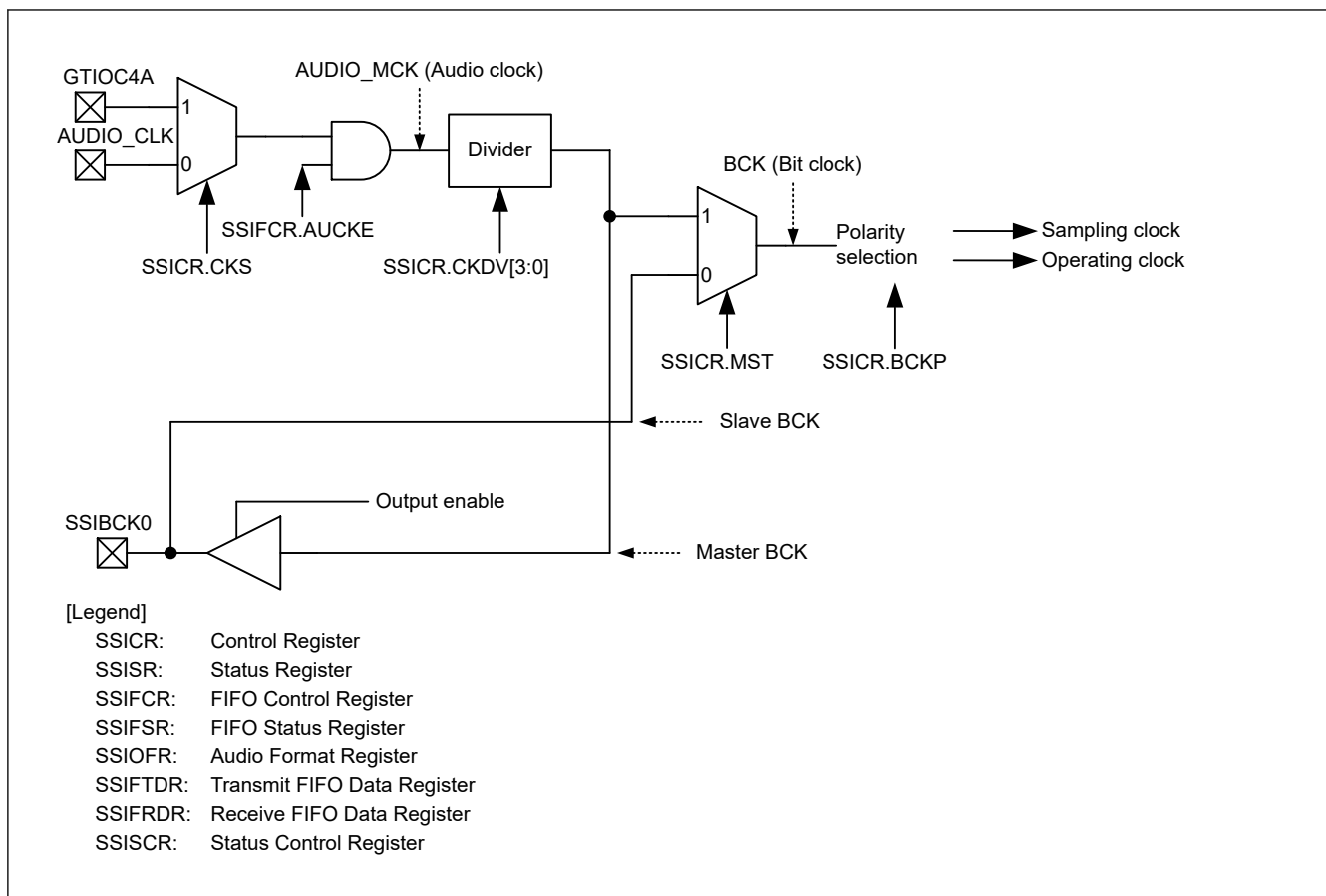


Figure 32.4 SSIE clock configuration

32.4 Register Descriptions

32.4.1 SSICR : Control Register

Base address: SSIE0 = 0x4004_E000

Offset address: 0x00

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	CKS	TUIEN	TOIEN	RUIEN	ROIEN	IEN	—	FRM[1:0]	DWL[2:0]			SWL[2:0]			
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	MST	BCKP	LRCK P	SPDP	SDTA	PDTA	DEL	CKDV[3:0]			MUEN	—	TEN	REN	
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	REN	Reception Enable*2 0: Disables reception 1: Enables reception (starts reception)	R/W
1	TEN	Transmission Enable*2 0: Disables transmission 1: Enables transmission (starts transmission)	R/W
2	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
3	MUEN	Mute Enable 0: Disables muting on the next frame boundary 1: Enables muting on the next frame boundary	R/W
7:4	CKDV[3:0]	Selects Bit Clock Division Ratio* ¹ 0x0: AUDIO_MCK 0x1: AUDIO_MCK/2 0x2: AUDIO_MCK/4 0x3: AUDIO_MCK/8 0x4: AUDIO_MCK/16 0x5: AUDIO_MCK/32 0x6: AUDIO_MCK/64 0x7: AUDIO_MCK/128 0x8: AUDIO_MCK/6 0x9: AUDIO_MCK/12 0xA: AUDIO_MCK/24 0xB: AUDIO_MCK/48 0xC: AUDIO_MCK/96 Others: Setting prohibited	R/W
8	DEL	Selects Serial Data Delay* ¹ In the monaural format, this bit controls the waveform of SSILRCK0/SSIFS0. For details, see section 32.5.2. Monaural Format . 0: Delay of 1 cycle of SSIBCK0 between SSILRCK0/SSIFS0 and SSITXD0/SSIRXD0/SSIDATA0 1: No delay between SSILRCK0/SSIFS0 and SSITXD0/SSIRXD0/SSIDATA0	R/W
9	PDTA	Selects Placement Data Alignment* ¹ 0: Left-justifies placement data (SSIFTDR, SSIFRDR) 1: Right-justifies placement data (SSIFTDR, SSIFRDR)	R/W
10	SDTA	Selects Serial Data Alignment* ¹ 0: Transmits and receives serial data first and then padding bits 1: Transmit and receives padding bits first and then serial data	R/W
11	SPDP	Selects Serial Padding Polarity* ¹ 0: Padding data is at a low level 1: Padding data is at a high level	R/W
12	LRCKP	Selects the Initial Value and Polarity of LR Clock/Frame Synchronization Signal* ¹ 0: The initial value is at a high level. The start trigger for a frame is synchronized with a falling edge of SSILRCK0/SSIFS0. 1: The initial value is at a low level. The start trigger for a frame is synchronized with a rising edge of SSILRCK0/SSIFS0.	R/W
13	BCKP	Selects Bit Clock Polarity* ¹ 0: SSILRCK0/SSIFS0 and SSITXD0/SSIRXD0/SSIDATA0 change at a falling edge (SSILRCK0/SSIFS0 and SSIRXD0/SSIDATA0 are sampled at a rising edge of SSIBCK0). 1: SSILRCK0/SSIFS0 and SSITXD0/SSIRXD0/SSIDATA0 change at a rising edge (SSILRCK0/SSIFS0 and SSIRXD0/SSIDATA0 are sampled at a falling edge of SSIBCK0).	R/W
14	MST	Master Enable* ¹ 0: Slave-mode communication 1: Master-mode communication	R/W
15	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
18:16	SWL[2:0]	Selects System Word Length* ¹ 0 0 0: 8 bits 0 0 1: 16 bits 0 1 0: 24 bits 0 1 1: 32 bits 1 0 0: 48 bits 1 0 1: 64 bits 1 1 0: 128 bits 1 1 1: 256 bits	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W																				
21:19	DWL[2:0]	Selects Data Word Length* ¹ 0 0 0: 8 bits 0 0 1: 16 bits 0 1 0: 18 bits 0 1 1: 20 bits 1 0 0: 22 bits 1 0 1: 24 bits 1 1 0: 32 bits 1 1 1: Setting prohibited	R/W																				
23:22	FRM[1:0]	Selects Frame Word Number* ¹ <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="4">Communication format (SSIOFR.OMOD[1:0])</th></tr> <tr> <th>FRM[1:0]</th><th>I²S (00b)</th><th>Monaural (10b)</th><th>TDM (01b)</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>00b</td><td>2</td><td>1</td><td>Setting prohibited</td></tr> <tr> <td>01b</td><td rowspan="3">Setting prohibited</td><td rowspan="3">Setting prohibited</td><td>4</td></tr> <tr> <td>10b</td><td>6</td></tr> <tr> <td>11b</td><td>8</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Communication format (SSIOFR.OMOD[1:0])				FRM[1:0]	I ² S (00b)	Monaural (10b)	TDM (01b)	00b	2	1	Setting prohibited	01b	Setting prohibited	Setting prohibited	4	10b	6	11b	8	R/W
Communication format (SSIOFR.OMOD[1:0])																							
FRM[1:0]	I ² S (00b)	Monaural (10b)	TDM (01b)																				
00b	2	1	Setting prohibited																				
01b	Setting prohibited	Setting prohibited	4																				
10b			6																				
11b			8																				
24	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W																				
25	IEN	Idle Mode Interrupt Output Enable 0: Disables idle mode interrupt output 1: Enables idle mode interrupt output	R/W																				
26	ROIEN	Receive Overflow Interrupt Output Enable 0: Disables receive overflow interrupt output 1: Enables receive overflow interrupt output	R/W																				
27	RUIEN	Receive Underflow Interrupt Output Enable 0: Disables receive underflow interrupt output 1: Enables receive underflow interrupt output	R/W																				
28	TOIEN	Transmit Overflow Interrupt Output Enable 0: Disables transmit overflow interrupt output 1: Enables transmit overflow interrupt output	R/W																				
29	TUIEN	Transmit Underflow Interrupt Output Enable 0: Disables transmit underflow interrupt output 1: Enables transmit underflow interrupt output	R/W																				
30	CKS	Selects an Audio Clock for Master-mode Communication* ¹ 0: Selects the AUDIO_CLK input 1: Selects the GTIOC4A (GPT output)	R/W																				
31	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W																				

Note 1. Writing to these bits while SSIE is in a communication state (SSISR.IIRQ = 0) is prohibited. If the value of these bits is changed by rewriting, subsequent operation is unpredictable.

Note 2. If the TEN bit or REN bit is rewritten, make sure that the SSISR.IIRQ bit is in the desired status. If the value of the TEN or REN bit is changed by rewriting, subsequent operation is unpredictable. For example, when transmission or reception is enabled, check that SSISR.IIRQ is 0; when transmission or reception is disabled, check that SSISR.IIRQ is 1.

With this register, select an audio clock, control interrupt requests, select data formats, and set an operation mode.

TEN and REN bits (Transmission and Reception Enable)

The TEN and REN bits enable/disable transmission and reception. When 1 is written to one of these bits, the corresponding communication operation starts in synchronization with a start trigger by the SSILRCK0/SSIFS0 signal. For details, see [section 32.8.2. Transmission](#) to [section 32.8.4. Transmission and Reception](#). When 0 is written to this bit, the current communication operation stops at the next frame boundary. To use SSIE for both transmission and reception, always write 1 to these bits together. When stopping the communication using SSIE, always disable both transmission and reception (write 0 to the TEN and REN bits).

If you want to stop SSIE before a frame boundary is reached, perform a software reset procedure.

MUEN bit (Mute Enable)

The MUEN bit sets/clears the mute function for the data output from the SSITXD0/SSIDATA0 pin. When this bit is set to 1 in the middle of a frame, the SSITXD0/SSIDATA0 output changes to 0 at the next frame boundary. When this bit is set to 0 in the middle of a frame, the SSITXD0/SSIDATA0 output changes to the data of transmit FIFO data register at the next frame boundary. Note that this bit controls data only. Status flags and interrupt signals are normally generated.

Changing the value of this bit must be performed only after setting the communication format to be used.

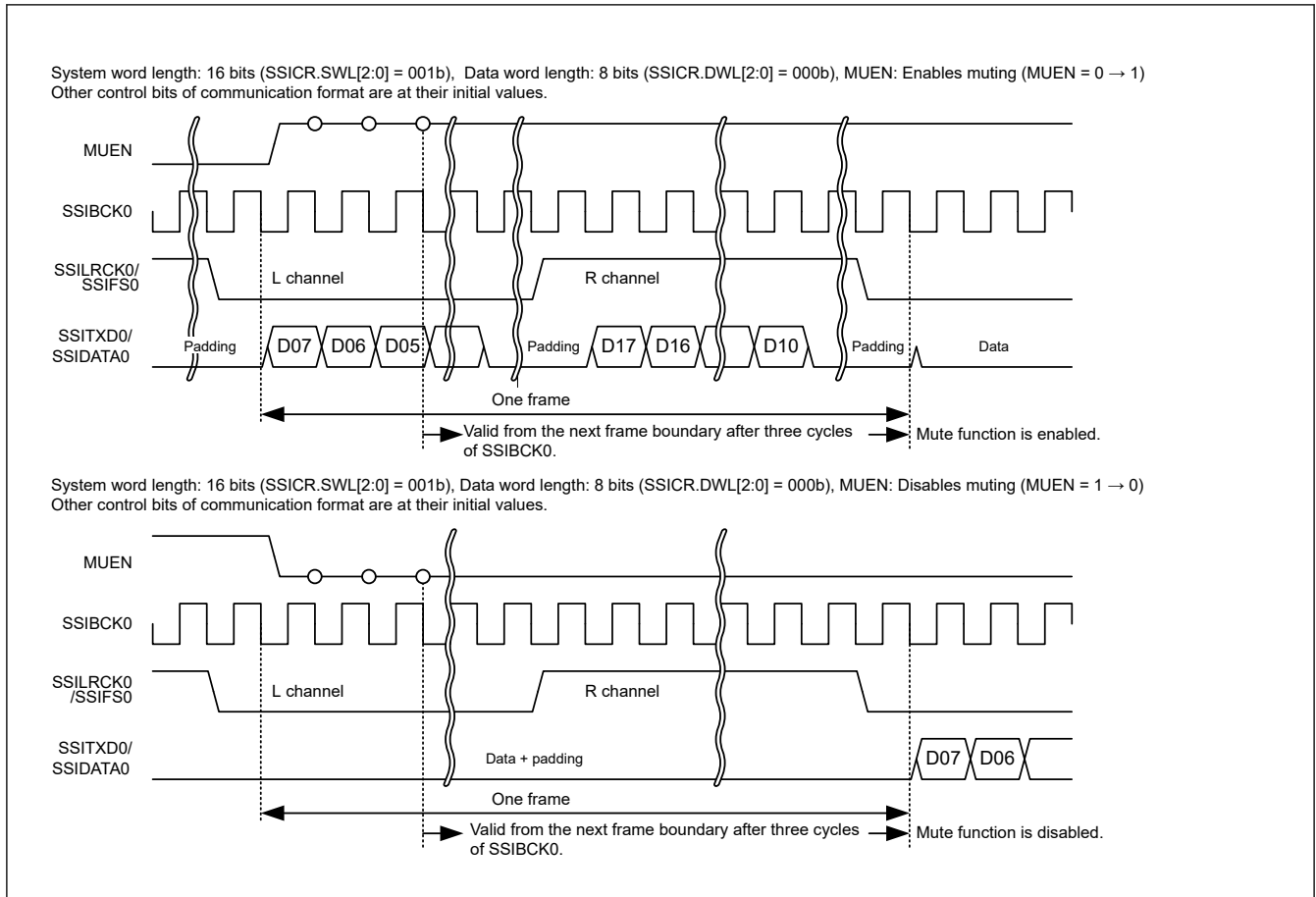


Figure 32.5 Transmit data with the mute function set

CKDV[3:0] bits (Selects Bit Clock Division Ratio)

The CKDV[3:0] bits set the division ratio of the bit clock based on AUDIO_MCK in master-mode communication (MST=1). In slave-mode communication (MST = 0), setting of these bits are invalid.

Writing to this bit must be performed when the supply of AUDIO_MCK is stopped. For details about the timing, see the detailed description of the AUCKE bit in [section 32.4.3. SSIFCR : FIFO Control Register](#).

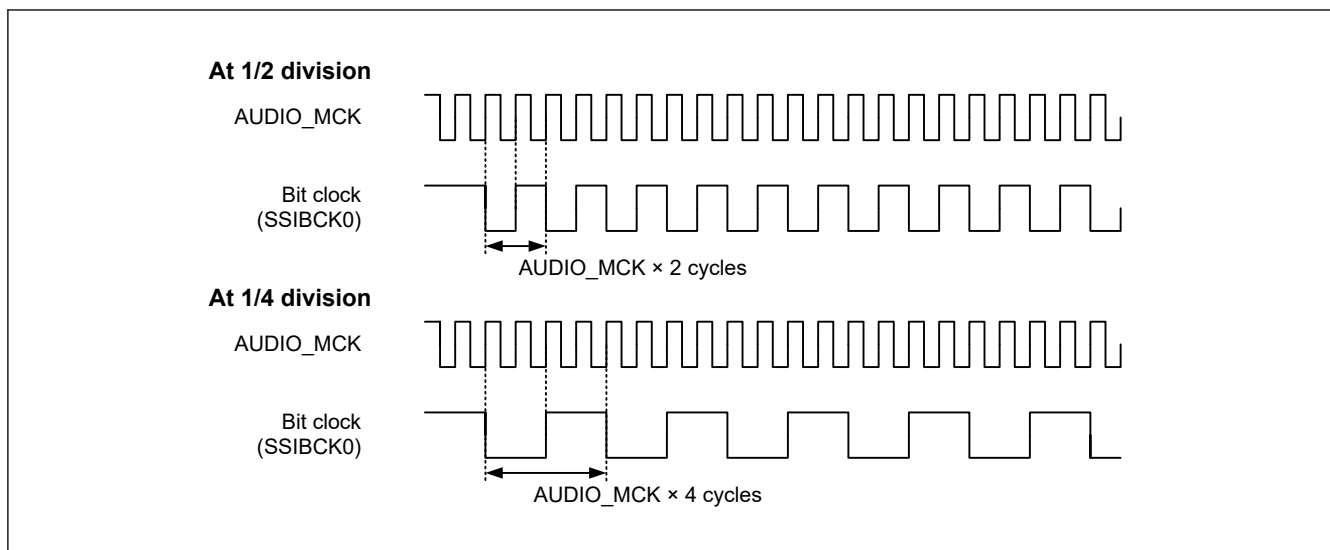


Figure 32.6 Sampling frequencies in master-mode communication

DEL bit (Selects Serial Data Delay)

The DEL bit sets whether there will be a delay between SSILRCK0/SSIFS0 and SSITXD0/SSIRXD0/SSIDATA0.

For the I²S or TDM format, set the DEL bit to 0. When the monaural format is used, setting of this bit changes the high period width of SSILRCK0/SSIFS0. For details, see [section 32.5.2. Monaural Format](#). When using a compatible communication format, specify a setting of this bit that enables communication.

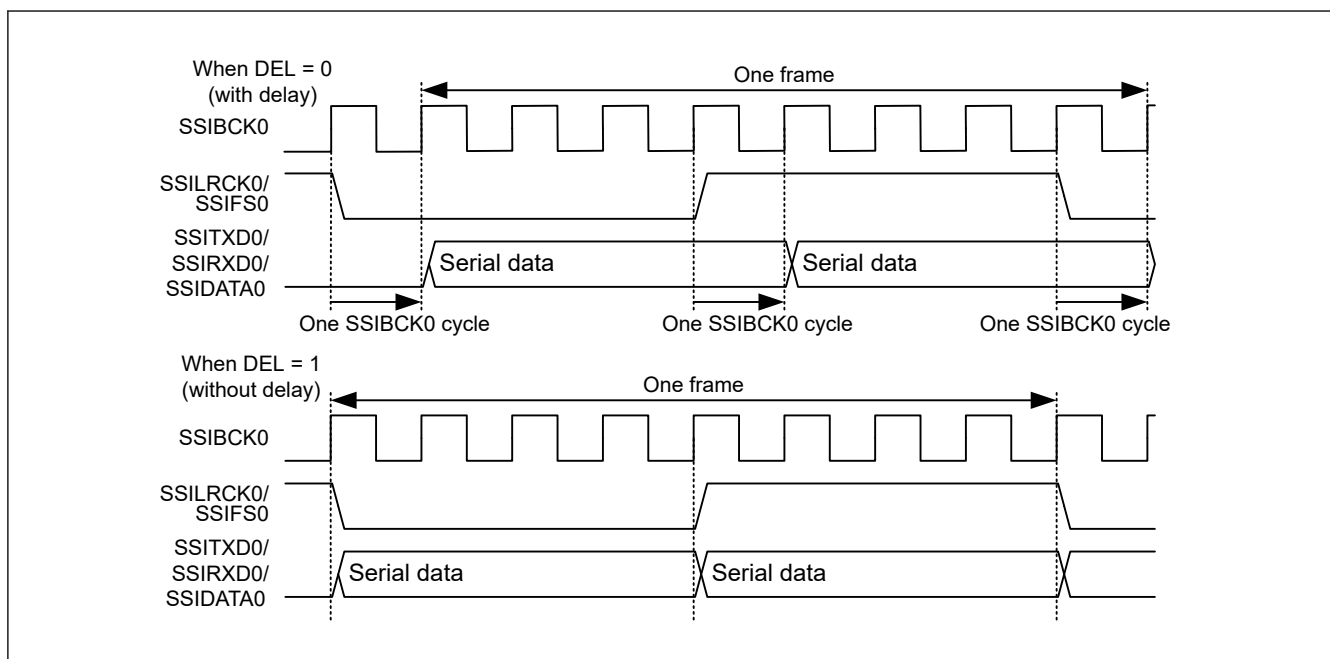


Figure 32.7 Setting of delay in serial data

PDTA bit (Selects Placement Data Alignment)

The PDTA bit sets how to align placement data. With the setting of data word length as 32 bits (SSICR.DWL[2:0] = 110b), this bit is invalid.

At transmission, see [Figure 32.8](#).

First transmission data			Second transmission data			Third transmission data			Fourth transmission data			
DWL[2:0]	SSIFTDR						Transmission shift register					
	PDTA = 0 (left-justify)			PDTA = 1 (right-justify)								
000 (8 bits)	7	0	Invalid	Setting prohibited			7	0	Invalid			
	7	0	Invalid				7	0	Invalid			
	7	0	Invalid				7	0	Invalid			
	7	0	Invalid				7	0	Invalid			
001 (16 bits)	15	0	Invalid	Setting prohibited			15	0	Invalid			
	15	0	Invalid				15	0	Invalid			
	15	0	Invalid				15	0	Invalid			
	15	0	Invalid				15	0	Invalid			
010 to 100 18bit : X = 17 20bit : X = 19 22bit : X = 21 24bit : X = 23	X	0	Invalid	Invalid	X	0	X	0	Invalid			
	X	0	Invalid	Invalid	X	0	X	0	Invalid			
	X	0	Invalid	Invalid	X	0	X	0	Invalid			
	X	0	Invalid	Invalid	X	0	X	0	Invalid			
110 (32 bits)	31	0	Invalid	31	0	Invalid	31	0	Invalid			
	31	0	Invalid	31	0	Invalid	31	0	Invalid			
	31	0	Invalid	31	0	Invalid	31	0	Invalid			
	31	0	Invalid	31	0	Invalid	31	0	Invalid			
111 (Setting prohibited)												

Figure 32.8 Alignment of placement data at transmission

At reception, see Figure 32.9.

First transmission data		Second transmission data		Third transmission data		Fourth transmission data	
DWL[2:0]	Receive shift register	SSIFRDR					
		PDTA = 0 (left-justify)		PDTA = 1 (right-justify)			
000 (8 bits)	Invalid 7 0	7 0	Invalid	Setting prohibited			
	Invalid 7 0	7 0	Invalid				
	Invalid 7 0	7 0	Invalid				
	Invalid 7 0	7 0	Invalid				
001 (16 bits)	Invalid 15 0	15 0	Invalid	Setting prohibited			
	Invalid 15 0	15 0	Invalid				
	Invalid 15 0	15 0	Invalid				
	Invalid 15 0	15 0	Invalid				
010 to 100 18bit : X = 17 20bit : X = 19 22bit : X = 21 24bit : X = 23	Invalid X 0	X 0	Invalid	Invalid X 0			
	Invalid X 0	X 0	Invalid	Invalid X 0			
	Invalid X 0	X 0	Invalid	Invalid X 0			
	Invalid X 0	X 0	Invalid	Invalid X 0			
110 (32 bits)	31 0	31 0	0	31 0			
	31 0	31 0	0	31 0			
	31 0	31 0	0	31 0			
	31 0	31 0	0	31 0			
111 (Setting prohibited)							

Figure 32.9 Alignment of placement data at reception

SDTA bit (Selects Serial Data Delay)

The SDTA bit sets how to align serial data and padding bits. For communication without padding bits, this bit is invalid.

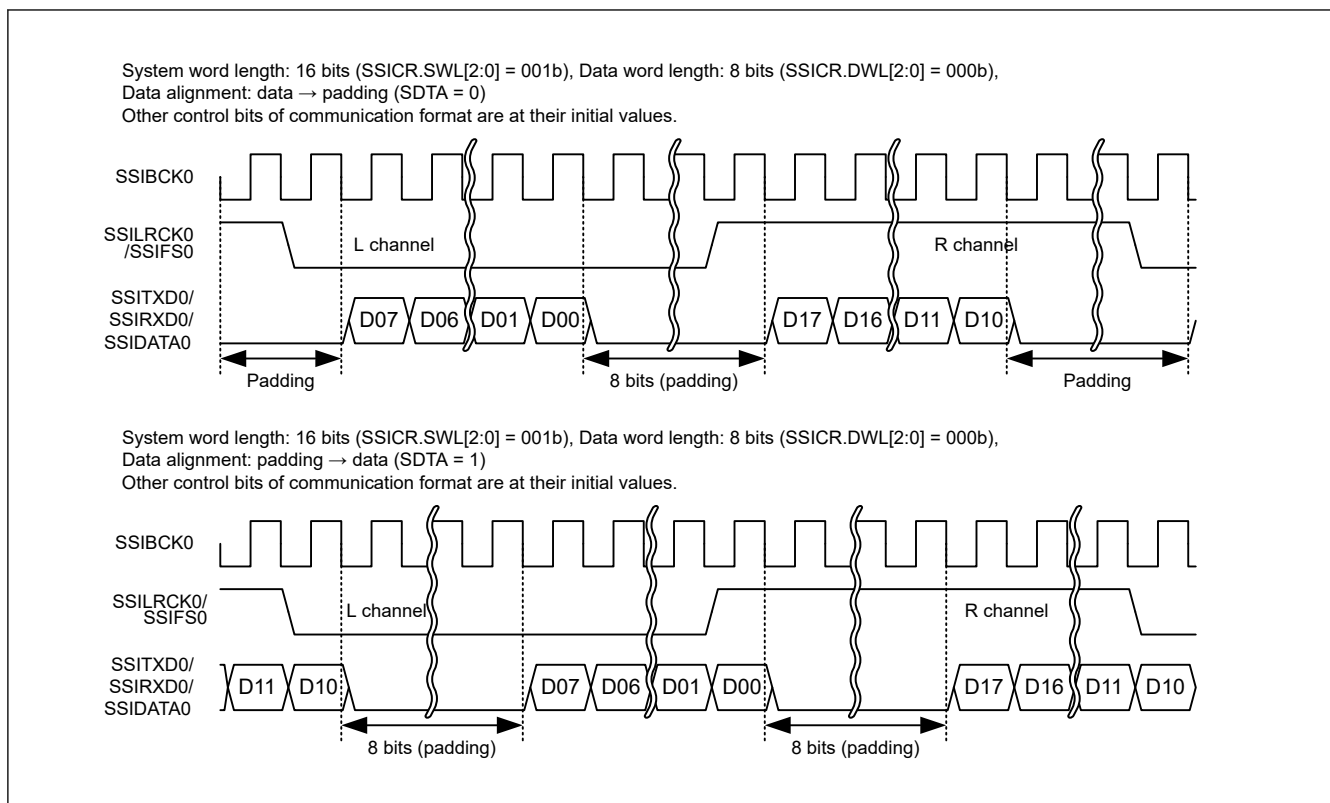


Figure 32.10 Alignment setting of serial data with padding bits

SPDP bit (Selects Serial Padding Polarity)

The SPDP bit sets polarity of padding bits.

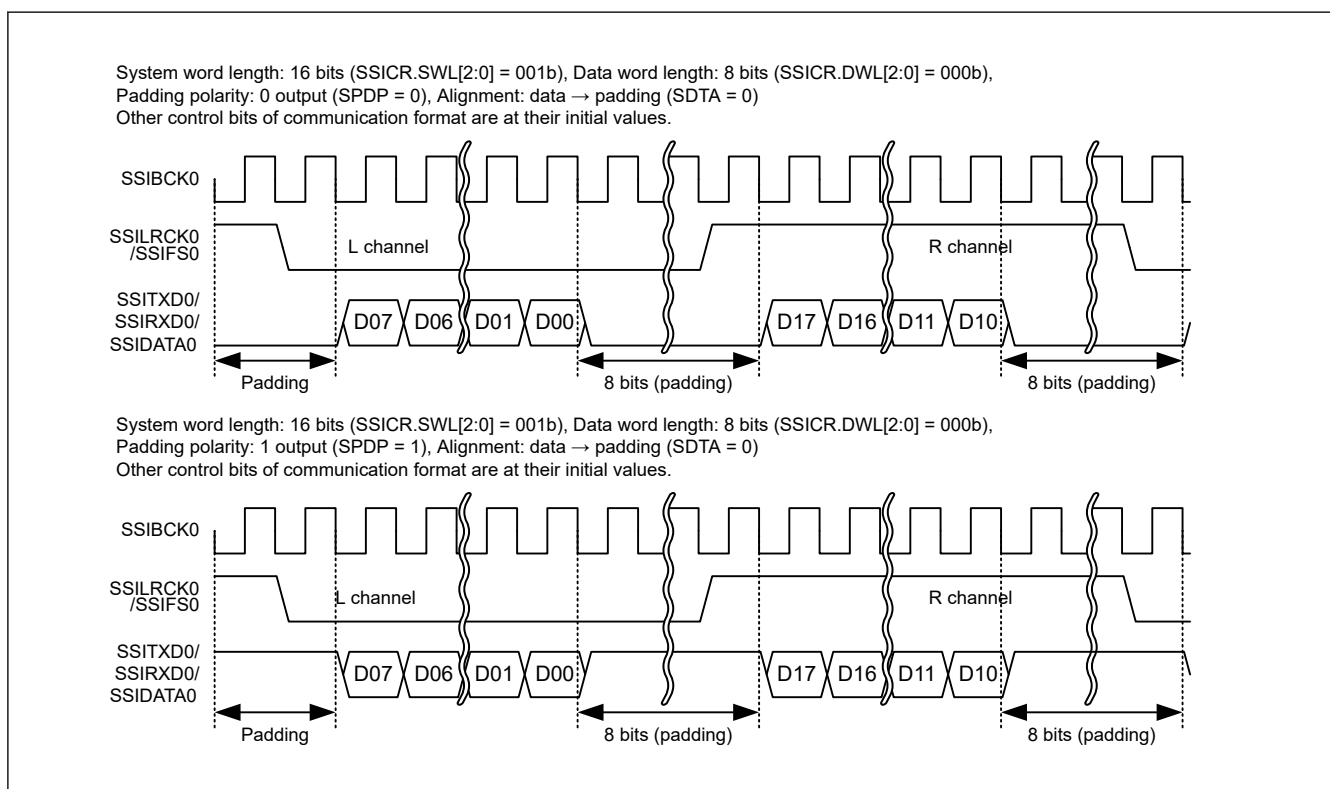


Figure 32.11 Padding bit polarity

LRCKP bit (Selects the Initial Value and Polarity of LR Clock/Frame Synchronization Signal)

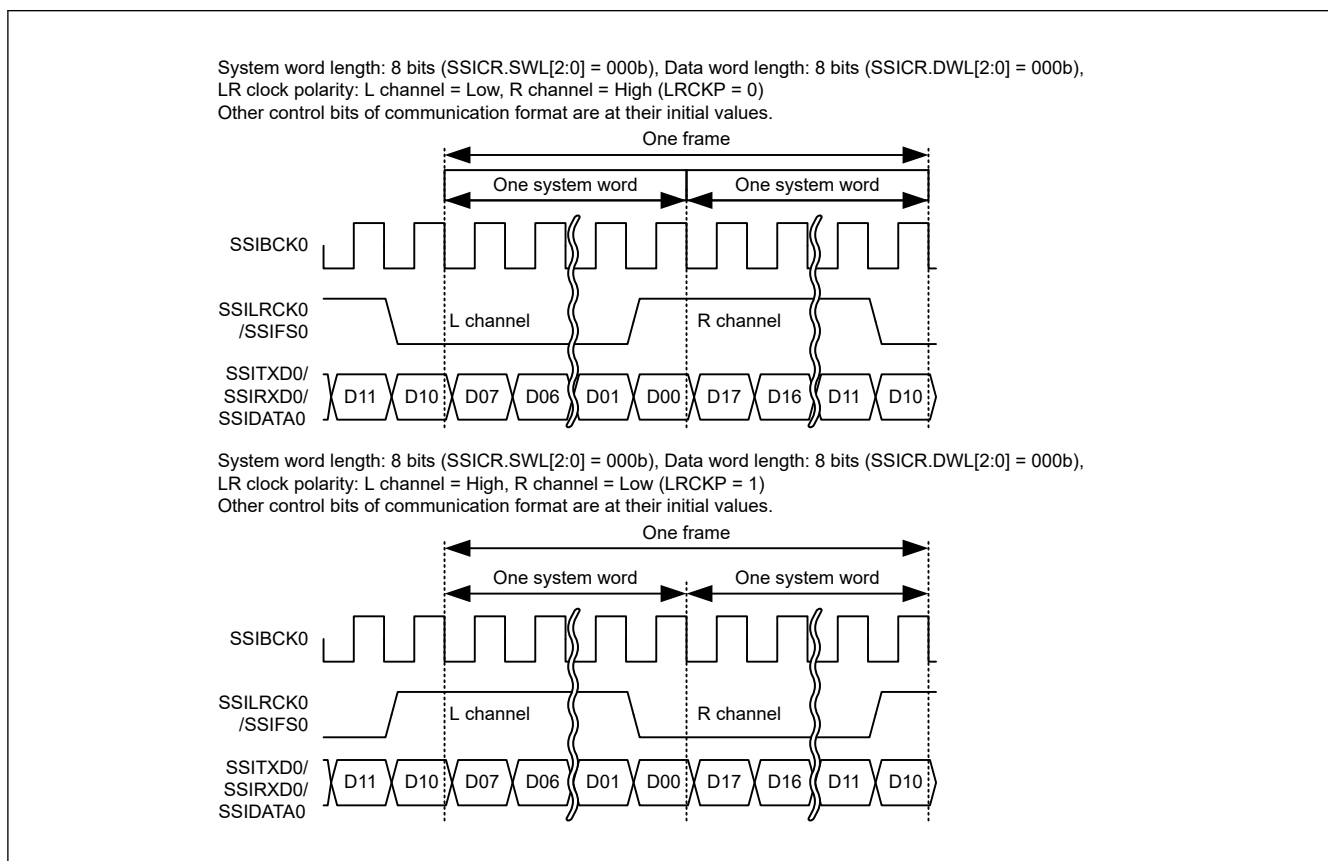
The LRCKP bit sets the initial value and polarity of SSILRCK0/SSIFS0. Set this bit according to the communication format to be used in SSIE. See [Table 32.3](#) Initial output value and polarity of SSILRCK0/SSIFS0 pin. For the slave-mode communication (MST = 0), only the start trigger is used.

Writing to these bits must be performed when the LR clock supply to the SSILRCK0/SSIFS0 pin is stopped. For details about the output of LR clock, see the detailed description of the LRCONT bit in [section 32.4.7. SSIOFR : Audio Format Register](#).

Table 32.3 Initial output value and polarity of SSILRCK0/SSIFS0 pin

Communication Format	Expected Initial State	Setting Value of LRCKP
I ² S	High	0
Monaural	Low	1
TDM	Low	1

Note: When the format to be used is compatible with the I²S, monaural, or TDM format, specify settings to enable communication with the respective formats.

**Figure 32.12 LR clock/frame synchronization polarity setting****BCKP bit (Selects Bit Clock Polarity)**

The BCKP bit sets the bit clock polarity.

Writing to this bit must be performed when the supply of AUDIO_MCK is stopped. For details about the timing, see the detailed description of the AUCKE bit in [section 32.4.3. SSIFCR : FIFO Control Register](#).

Table 32.4 Bit clock polarity

Communication	Master/Slave	Timing	BCKP = 0	BCKP = 1
Reception	Slave	At SSILRCK0/SSIFS0 sampling	SSIBCK0 rising edge	SSIBCK0 falling edge
	Master/slave	At SSIRXD0/SSIDATA0 sampling	SSIBCK0 rising edge	SSIBCK0 falling edge
Transmission	Master	At change of SSILRCK0/SSIFS0 output	SSIBCK0 falling edge	SSIBCK0 rising edge
	Master/slave	At change of SSITXD0/SSIDATA0 output	SSIBCK0 falling edge	SSIBCK0 rising edge

MST bit (Master Enable)

The MST bit sets master-/slave-mode communication.

Writing to this bit must be performed when the supply of AUDIO_MCK is stopped. For details about the timing, see the detailed description of the AUCKE bit in [section 32.4.3. SSIFCR : FIFO Control Register](#).

SWL[2:0] bits (Selects System Word Length)

The SWL[2:0] bits set the number of bits in one system word. Padding bits are sent and received in relation with one data word set with DWL[2:0]. See [Table 32.11](#) for details.

Writing to these bits must be performed when the LR clock supply to the SSILRCK0/SSIFS0 pin is stopped. For details about the output of LR clock, see the detailed description of the LRCONT bit in [section 32.4.7. SSIOFR : Audio Format Register](#).

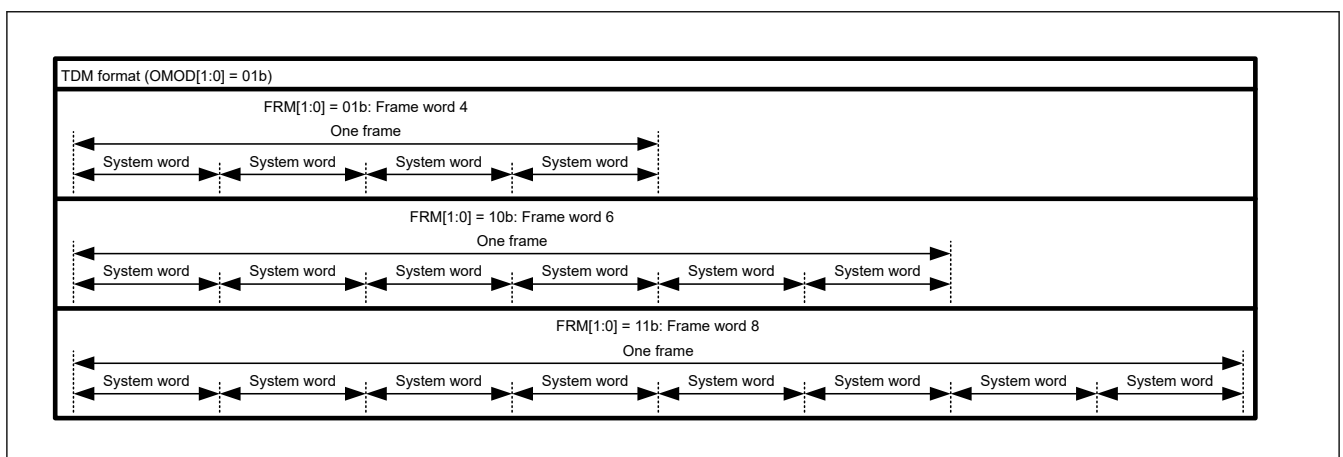
DWL[2:0] bits (Selects Data Word Length)

The DWL[2:0] bits set the number of bits in one data word. The data word length (number of bits per data word) must not exceed the system word length (number of bits per system word). For details, see [Table 32.11](#).

FRM[1:0] bits (Selects Frame Word Number)

The FRM[1:0] bits set the frame word number in individual communication formats.

Writing to these bits must be performed when the LR clock supply to the SSILRCK0/SSIFS0 pin is stopped. For details about the output of LR clock, see the detailed description of the LRCONT bit in [section 32.4.7. SSIOFR : Audio Format Register](#).

**Figure 32.13 Frame word number****IEN bit (Idle Mode Interrupt Output Enable)**

The IEN bit enables/disables output of idle mode interrupts. By enabling this bit (set it to 1), an interrupt is output at a rising edge of SSISR.IIRQ = 1. An interrupt is also output when this bit is changed from 0 to 1 while SSISR.IIRQ = 1.

ROIEN bit (Receive Overflow Interrupt Output Enable)

The ROIEN bit enables/disables output of receive overflow interrupts. By enabling this bit (set it to 1), an interrupt is output at a rising edge of SSISR.ROIRQ = 1. An interrupt is also output when this bit is changed from 0 to 1 while SSISR.ROIRQ = 1.

RUIEN bit (Receive Underflow Interrupt Output Enable)

The RUIEN bit enables/disables output of receive underflow interrupts. By enabling this bit (set it to 1), an interrupt is output at a rising edge of SSISR.RUIRQ = 1. An interrupt is also output when this bit is changed from 0 to 1 while SSISR.RUIRQ = 1.

TOIEN bit (Transmit Overflow Interrupt Output Enable)

The TOIEN bit enables/disables output of transmit overflow interrupts. By enabling this bit (set it to 1), an interrupt is output at a rising edge of SSISR.TOIRQ = 1. An interrupt is also output when this bit is changed from 0 to 1 while SSISR.TOIRQ = 1.

TUIEN bit (Transmit Underflow Interrupt Output Enable)

The TUIEN bit enables/disables output of transmit underflow interrupts. By enabling this bit (set it to 1), an interrupt is output at a rising edge of SSISR.TUIRQ = 1. An interrupt is also output when this bit is changed from 0 to 1 while SSISR.TUIRQ = 1.

CKS bit (Selects an Audio Clock for Master-mode Communication)

The CKS bit sets the audio clock in master-mode communication (MST = 1). In slave-mode communication (MST = 0), setting of this bit is invalid.

Writing to this bit must be performed when the supply of AUDIO_MCK is stopped. For details about the timing, see the detailed description of the AUCKE bit in [section 32.4.3. SSIFCR : FIFO Control Register](#).

32.4.2 SSISR : Status Register

Base address: SSIE0 = 0x4004_E000

Offset address: 0x04

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	TUIRQ	TOIRQ	RUIRQ	ROIRQ	IIRQ	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
24:0	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
25	IIRQ	Idle Mode Status Flag 0: In the communication state 1: In the idle state	R
26	ROIRQ	Receive Overflow Error Status Flag 0: No receive overflow error is generated. 1: A receive overflow error is generated.	R/W
27	RUIRQ	Receive Underflow Error Status Flag 0: No receive underflow error is generated. 1: A receive underflow error is generated.	R/W
28	TOIRQ	Transmit Overflow Error Status Flag 0: No transmit overflow error is generated. 1: A transmit overflow error is generated.	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
29	TUIRQ	Transmit Underflow Error Status flag 0: No transmit underflow error is generated. 1: A transmit underflow error is generated.	R/W
31:30	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

This register is configured with status flags that indicate SSIE operational state.

IIRQ flag (Idle Mode Status Flag)

The IIRQ flag is a status flag that indicates the idle state. It indicates whether SSIE is in the idle state or communication state.

For details, see [Figure 32.14](#) and [Figure 32.15](#).

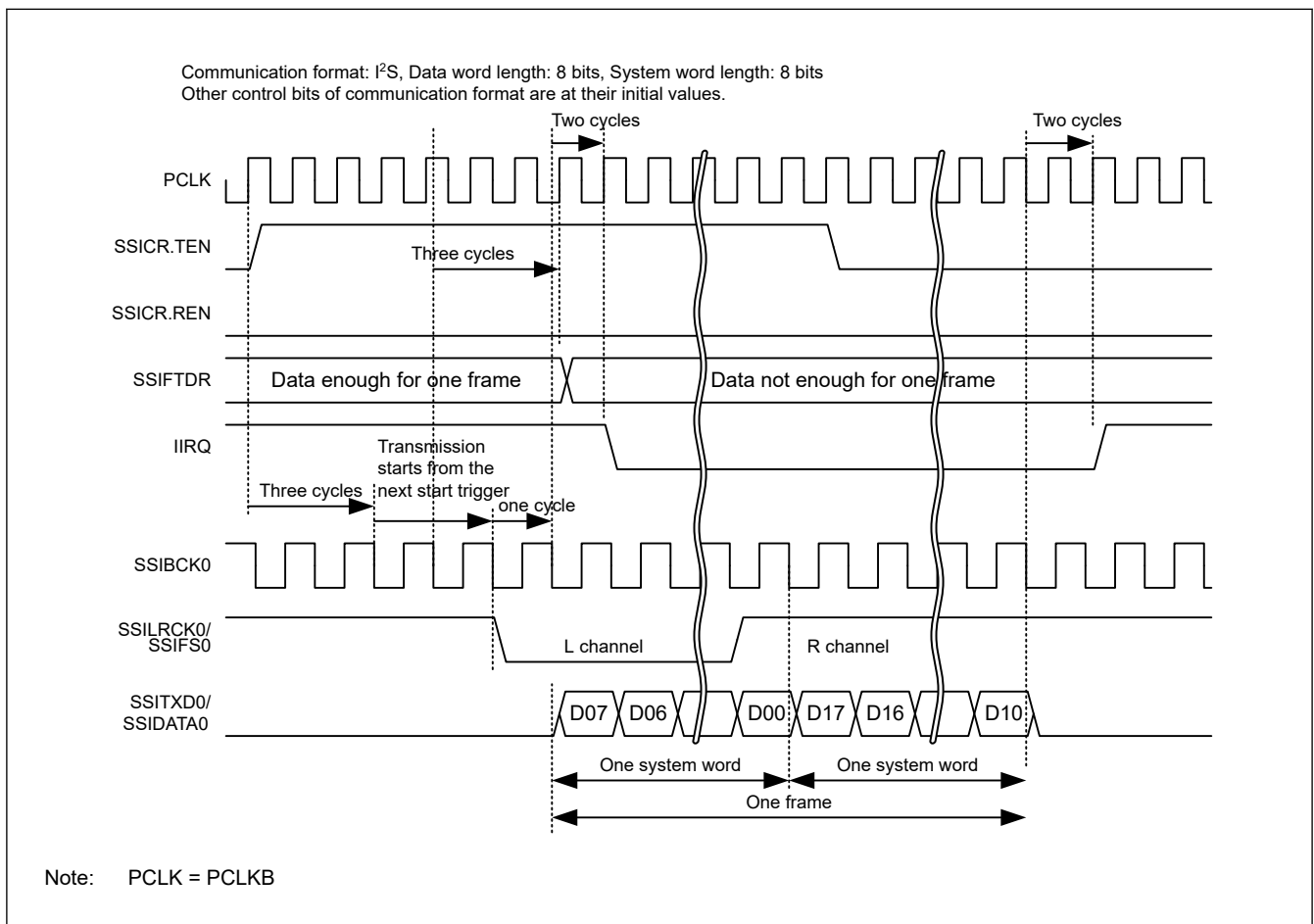


Figure 32.14 IIRQ setting timing (transmission)

- Transmitter (dedicated to transmission)

[Clearing condition]

While transmission was enabled (SSICR.TEN = 1 and SSICR.REN = 0), the transmit data for a transmission frame was written to the SSIFTDR register, and a start trigger was generated by the SSILRCK0/SSIFS0 signal.

[Clearing timing]

1 SSIBCK0 cycle + 2 PCLKB cycles after generation of the start trigger that is the clearing condition.

[Setting condition]

While transmission and reception were disabled (SSICR.TEN = 0 and SSICR.REN = 0), transmission of one frame was complete.

[Setting timing]

2 PCLKB cycles after the end of transmission (at a frame boundary) that is the setting condition.

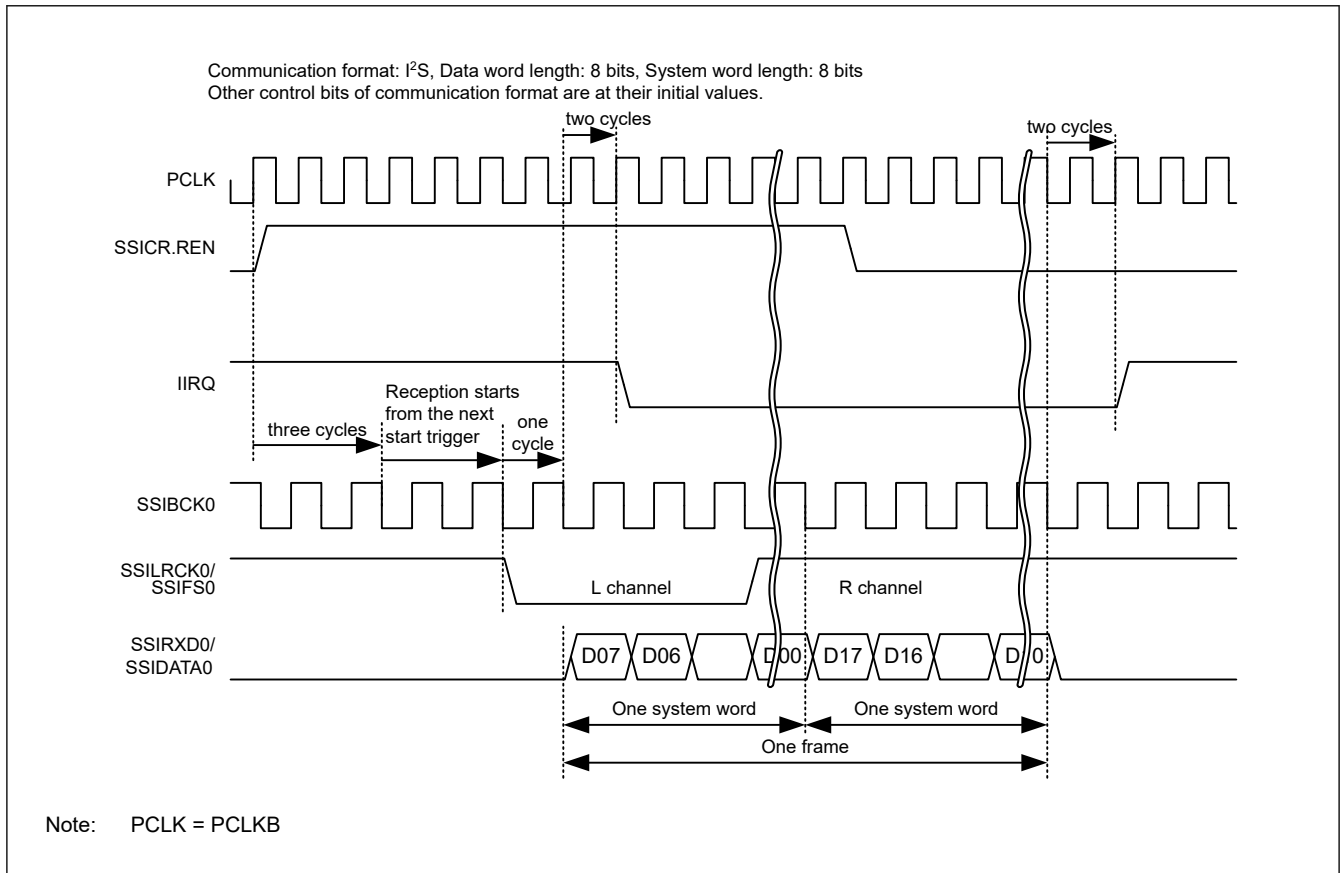


Figure 32.15 IIRQ setting timing (reception)

- Receiver (dedicated to reception)

[Clearing condition]

While reception was enabled (SSICR.TEN = 0 and SSICR.REN = 1), a start trigger was generated by the SSILRCK0/SSIFS0 signal.

[Clearing timing]

1 SSIBCK0 cycle + 2 PCLKB cycles after generation of the start trigger that is the clearing condition.

[Setting condition]

While transmission and reception were disabled (SSICR.TEN = 0 and SSICR.REN = 0), reception of one frame was complete.

[Setting timing]

2 PCLKB cycles after the end of reception (at a frame boundary) that is the setting condition.

- Transceiver (transmission and reception)

[Clearing condition]

While transmission and reception were enabled (SSICR.TEN = 1 and SSICR.REN = 1), the transmit data for a transmission frame was written to the SSIFTDR register, and a start trigger is generated by the SSILRCK0/SSIFS0 signal.

[Clearing timing]

1 SSIBCK0 cycle + 2 PCLKB cycles after generation of the start trigger that is the clearing condition.

[Setting condition]

While transmission and reception were disabled (SSICR.TEN = 0 and SSICR.REN = 0), transmission of one frame was complete.

[Setting timing]

2 PCLKB cycles after the end of transmission (at a frame boundary) that is the setting condition.

ROIRQ flag (Receive Overflow Error Status Flag)

The ROIRQ flag is a status flag that indicates a receive overflow error. This flag is set by automatic determination but it must be cleared by register access. This flag indicates that received data is supplied at a higher rate than requested. Data is not transferred from the receive shift register to SSIFRDR where a receive overflow error is generated. For the procedure to recover from the overflow error, see [section 32.8.6. Error Handling](#). This flag is not cleared by a receive FIFO data register reset (SSIFCR.RFRST).

[Priority order for setting and clearing]

Setting is prioritized.*¹

[Clearing condition]

When either of the following operations is done:

1. Writing 0 to this bit after reading 1 from this bit*²
2. Enabling communication (changing SSICR.REN from 0 to 1).

[Clearing timing]

Clearing timing corresponding to the above clearing condition:

1. When 0 is written to this bit after reading 1 from this bit (same as the timing in [Figure 32.19](#))
2. 1 PCLKB cycle after writing 1 to SSICR.REN.*³

[Setting condition]

At completion of receiving new data while SSIFRDR is full.

[Setting timing]

3 cycles of PCLKB after reception is completed.

Note 1. This bit is cleared by a software reset (SSIFCR.SSIRST = 1). The software reset has priority over all the clearing conditions described above.

Note 2. After reading 1 from this bit, this bit is cleared when one of the following three conditions is met:

- A software reset (SSIFCR.SSIRST = 1) is done.
- After 1 has been read, writing of 0 is complete.
- 1 PCLKB cycle passes after 1 has been written to SSICR.REN.

Note 3. After communication is enabled (by changing the value of SSICR.REN bit from 0 to 1), the reception error flags (RUIRQ and ROIRQ in the SSISR register) are cleared. If, however, the SSISR register is read continuously, the cleared status of the reception error flags might be unable to be read.

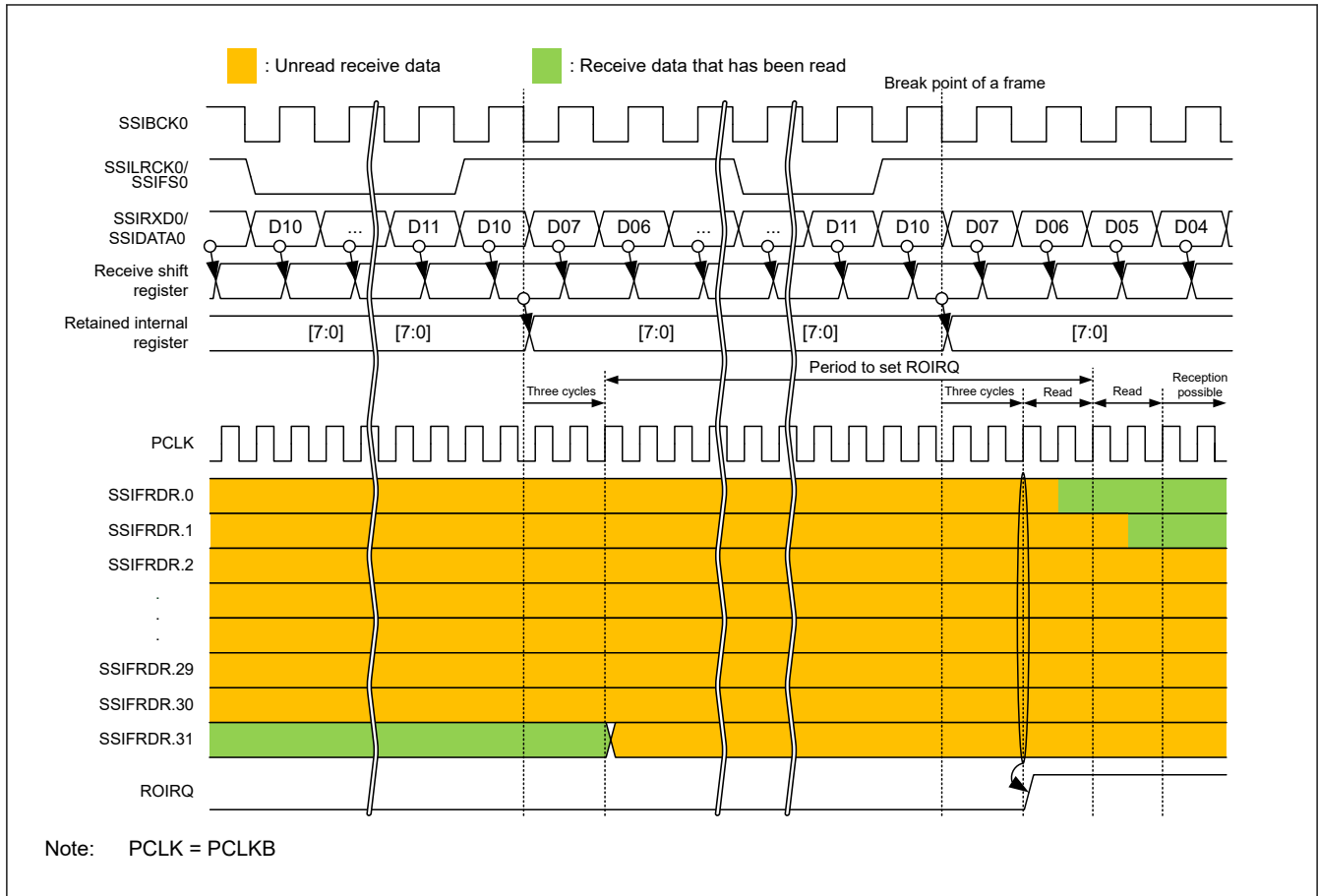


Figure 32.16 ROIRQ setting timing

RUIRQ flag (Receive Underflow Error Status Flag)

The RUIRQ flag is a status flag that indicates a receive underflow error. This flag is set by automatic determination but it must be cleared by register access. This flag indicates that SSIFRDR is read while it is empty. Data read from SSIFRDR where a receive underflow error is generated is invalid. See [section 32.8.6. Error Handling](#) for the error recovery procedure. This flag is not cleared by a receive FIFO data register reset (SSIFCR.RFRST). Note, however, that this flag is not set even if the SSIFRDR register is read while the receive FIFO data register is reset (by setting SSIFCR.RFRST to 1).

[Priority order for setting and clearing]

Setting is prioritized.*1

[Clearing condition]

When either of the following operations is done:

1. Writing 0 to this bit after reading 1 from this bit*2
2. Enabling communication (changing SSICR.REN from 0 to 1).

[Clearing timing]

Clearing timing corresponding to the above clearing condition

1. When 0 is written to this bit after reading 1 from this bit (same as the timing in [Figure 32.19](#))
2. 1 PCLKB cycle after writing 1 to SSICR.REN.*3

[Setting condition]

Reading from SSIFRDR while it is empty.

[Setting timing]

At completion of reading from SSIFRDR. See [Figure 32.17](#).

- Note 1. This bit is cleared by a software reset (SSIFCR.SSIRST = 1). The software reset has priority over all the clearing conditions described above.
- Note 2. After reading 1 from this bit, this bit is cleared when one of the following three conditions is met:
- A software reset (SSIFCR.SSIRST = 1) is done.
 - After 1 has been read, writing of 0 is complete.
 - 1 PCLKB cycle passes after 1 has been written to SSICR.REN.
- Note 3. After communication is enabled (by changing the value of SSICR.REN bit from 0 to 1), the reception error flags (RUIRQ and ROIRQ in the SSISR register) are cleared. If, however, the SSISR register is read continuously, the cleared status of the reception error flags might be unable to be read.

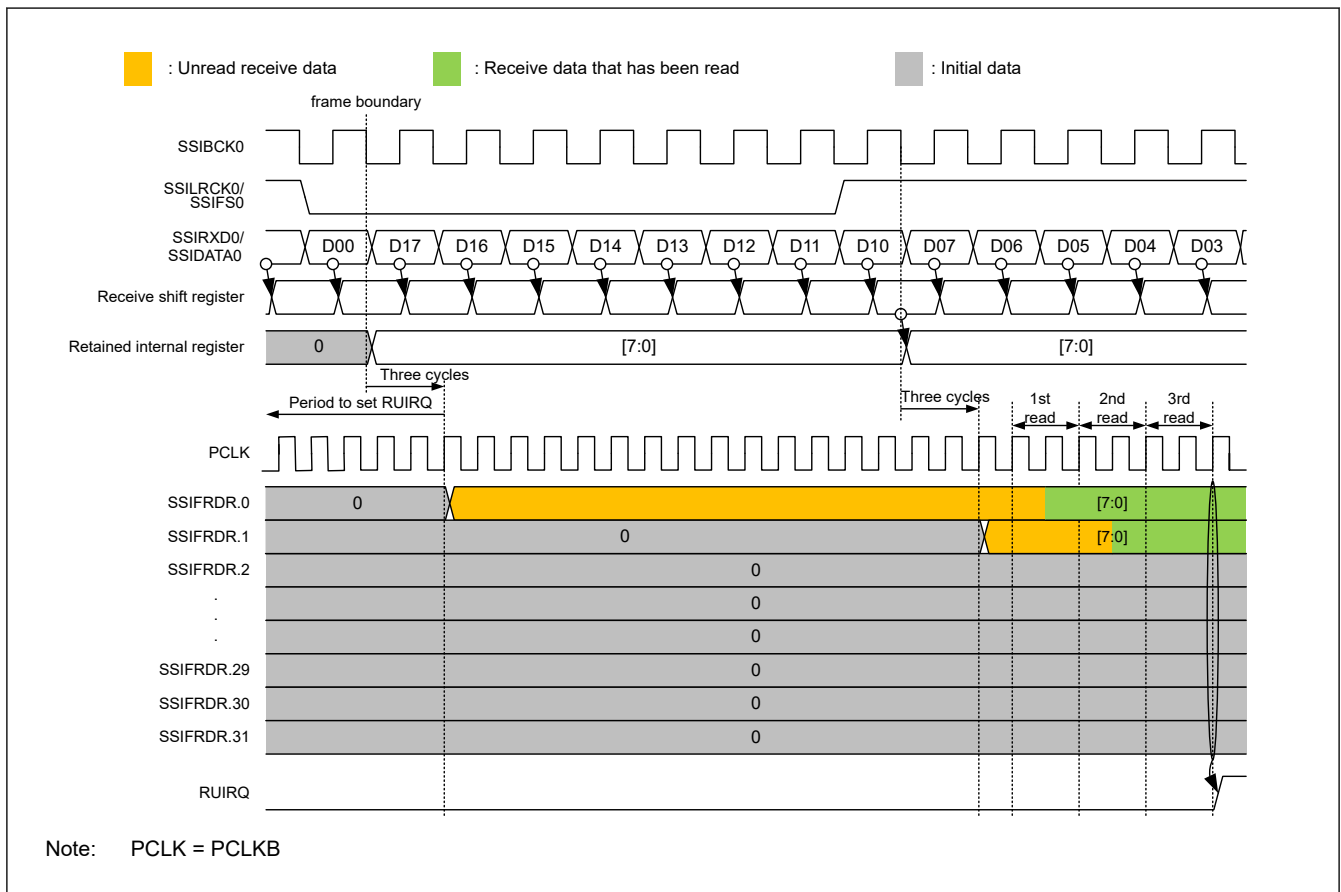


Figure 32.17 RUIRQ setting timing

TOIRQ flag (Transmit Overflow Error Status Flag)

The TOIRQ flag is a status flag that indicates a transmit overflow error. This flag is set by automatic determination but it must be cleared by register access. This flag indicates that an attempt has been made to write data to the SSIFTDR register when the register is full of data. The data writing that causes a transmit overflow is ignored. For the procedure to recover from the overflow error, see [section 32.8.6. Error Handling](#). This flag is not cleared by a transmit FIFO data register reset (SSIFCR.TFRST).

[Priority order for setting and clearing]

Setting is prioritized.*1

[Clearing condition]

When either of the following operations is done:

1. Writing 0 to this bit after reading 1 from this bit*2
2. Enabling communication (changing SSICR.TEN from 0 to 1).

[Clearing timing]

Clearing timing corresponding to the above clearing condition

1. When 0 is written to this bit after reading 1 from this bit (same as the timing in [Figure 32.19](#))
2. 1 PCLKB cycle after writing 1 to SSICR.TEN.*³

[Setting condition]

An attempt was made to write data to the SSIFTDR register when the register is full of data.

[Setting timing]

At completion of writing to SSIFTDR. For details, see [Figure 32.18](#).

- Note 1. This bit is cleared by a software reset (SSIFCR.SSIRST = 1). The software reset has priority over all the clearing conditions described above.
- Note 2. After reading 1 from this bit, this bit is cleared when one of the following three conditions is met:
- A software reset (SSIFCR.SSIRST = 1) is done.
 - After 1 has been read, writing of 0 is complete.
 - 1 PCLKB cycle passes after 1 has been written to SSICR.TEN.
- Note 3. After communication is enabled (by changing the value of SSICR.TEN bit from 0 to 1), the transmission error flags (TOIRQ and TUIRQ in the SSISR register) are cleared. If, however, the SSISR register is read continuously, the cleared status of the transmission error flags might be unable to be read.

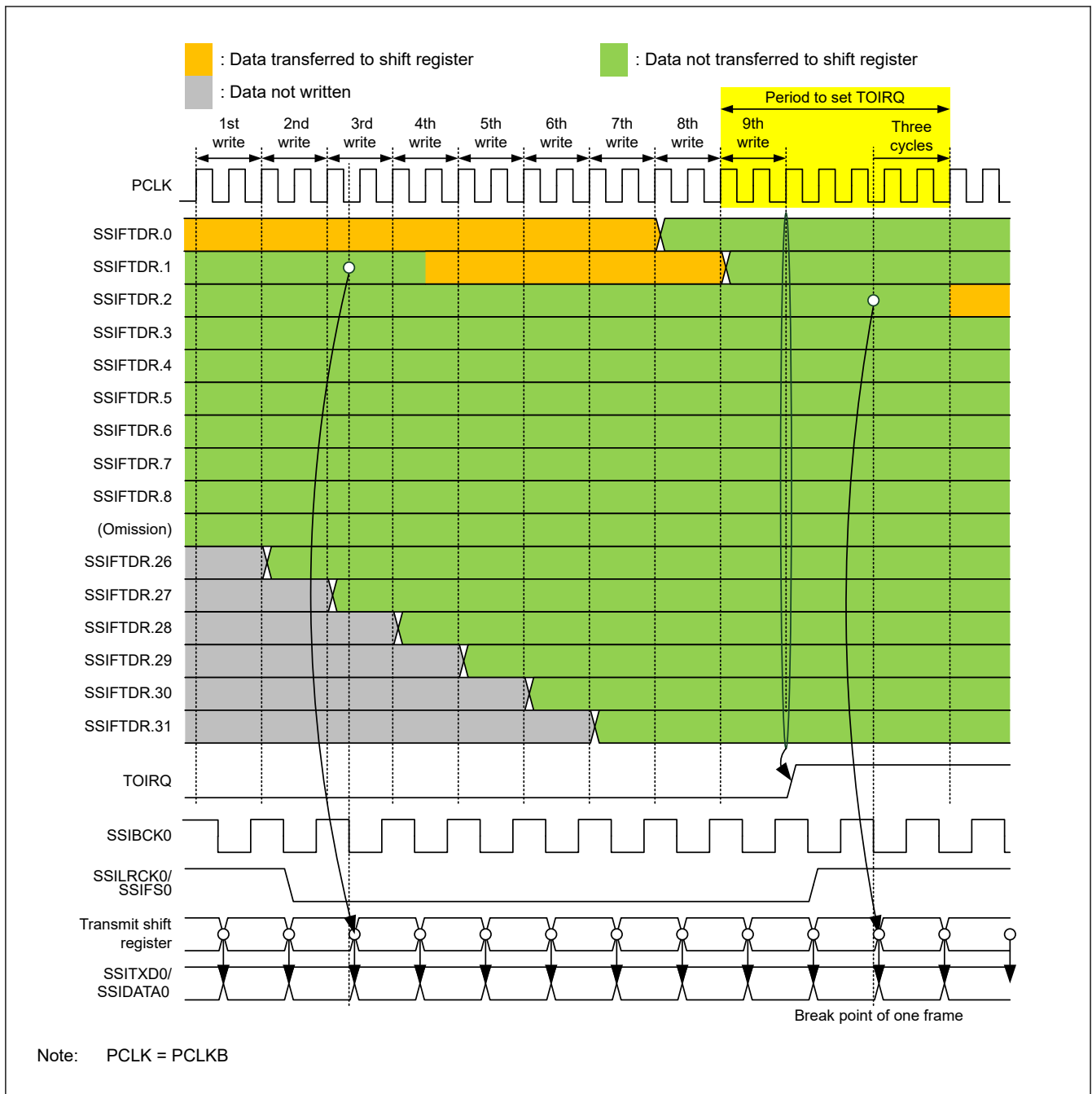


Figure 32.18 TOIRQ setting timing

TUIRQ flag (Transmit Underflow Error Status flag)

The TUIRQ flag is a status flag that indicates a transmit underflow error. This flag is set by automatic determination but it must be cleared by register access. This flag indicates that writing the serial data required for a frame to SSIFTDR did not catch up with transmission of the frame. Even if this flag is cleared after it has been set, the SSITXD0/SSIDATA0 output remains to be 0. To output the data written to the transmit FIFO data register (SSIFTDR) to the SSITXD0/SSIDATA0 pin, follow the communication stop procedure in [Figure 32.56](#) and error-handling procedure in [Figure 32.57](#). For the procedure to recover from an error, see [section 32.8.6. Error Handling](#). This flag is not cleared by a reset of the Transmit FIFO Data register (by the SSIFCR.TFRST signal).

[Priority order for setting and clearing]

Setting is prioritized.*1

[Clearing condition]

When either of the following operations is done:

1. Writing 0 to this bit after reading 1 from this bit.^{*2}
2. Enabling communication (changing SSICR.TEN from 0 to 1).

[Clearing timing]

Clearing timing corresponding to the above clearing condition

1. When 0 is written to this bit after reading 1 from this bit.
2. 1 PCLKB cycle after writing 1 to SSICR.TEN.^{*3}

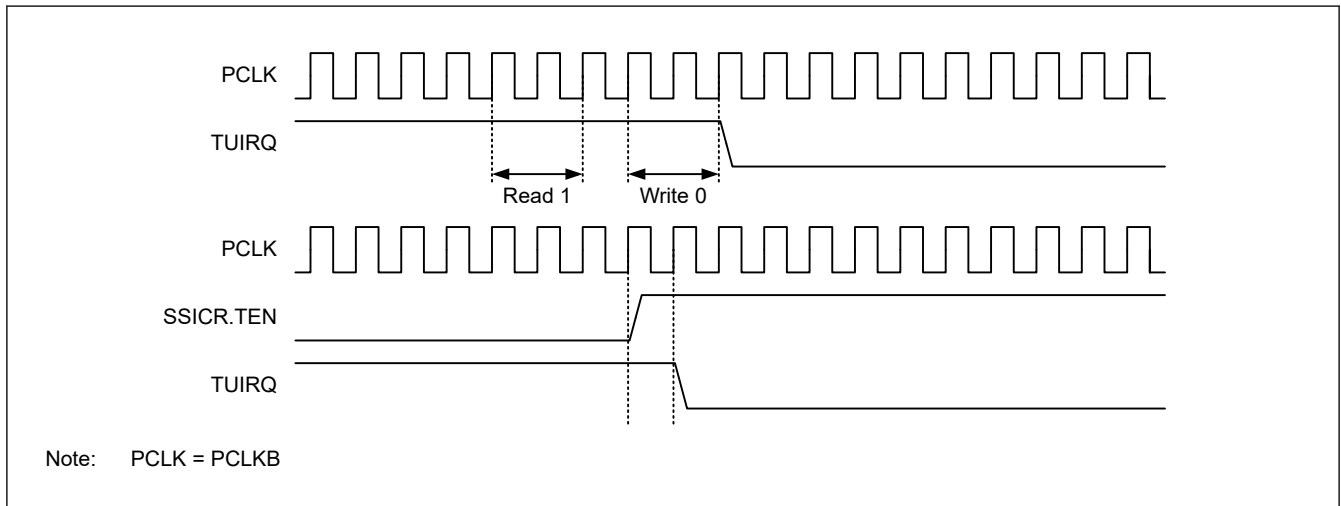


Figure 32.19 TUIRQ clearing timing

Note 1. This bit is cleared by a software reset (SSIFCR.SSIRST = 1). The software reset has priority over all the clearing conditions described above.

Note 2. After reading 1 from this bit, this bit is cleared when one of the following three conditions is met:

- A software reset (SSIFCR.SSIRST = 1) is done.
- After 1 has been read, writing of 0 is complete.
- 1 PCLKB cycle passes after 1 has been written to SSICR.TEN.

Note 3. After communication is enabled (by changing the value of SSICR.TEN bit from 0 to 1), the transmission error flags (TOIRQ and TUIRQ in the SSISR register) are cleared. If, however, the SSISR register is read continuously, the cleared status of the transmission error flags might be unable to be read.

[Setting condition]

When communication continues over a frame boundary, the transmit data required for the next frame has not been written to SSIFTDR. For details, see [Figure 32.20](#) and [Figure 32.21](#).

[Setting timing]

3 PCLKB cycles after the frame boundary. For details, see [Figure 32.20](#).

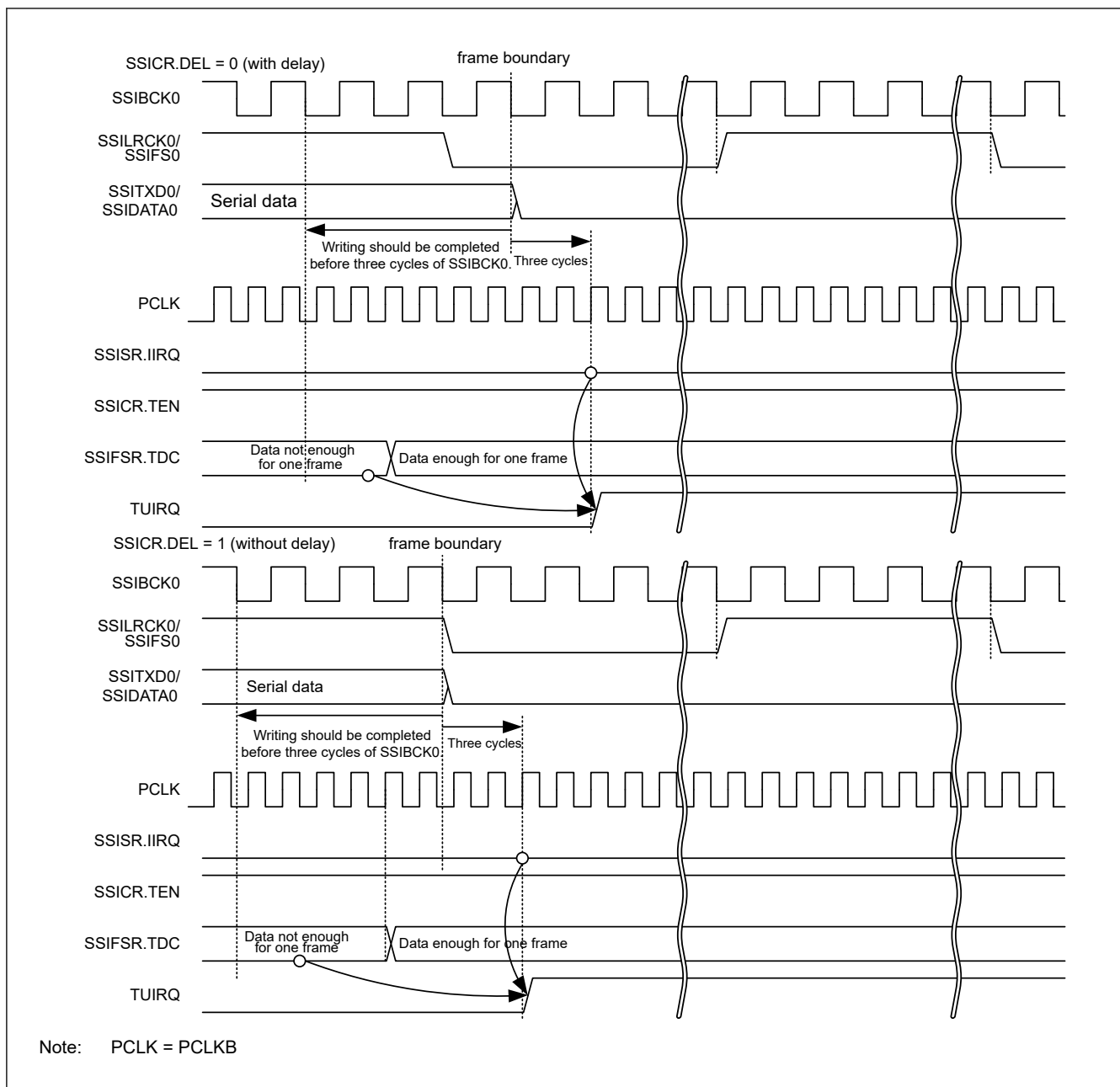


Figure 32.20 TUIRQ setting timing (when communication continues)

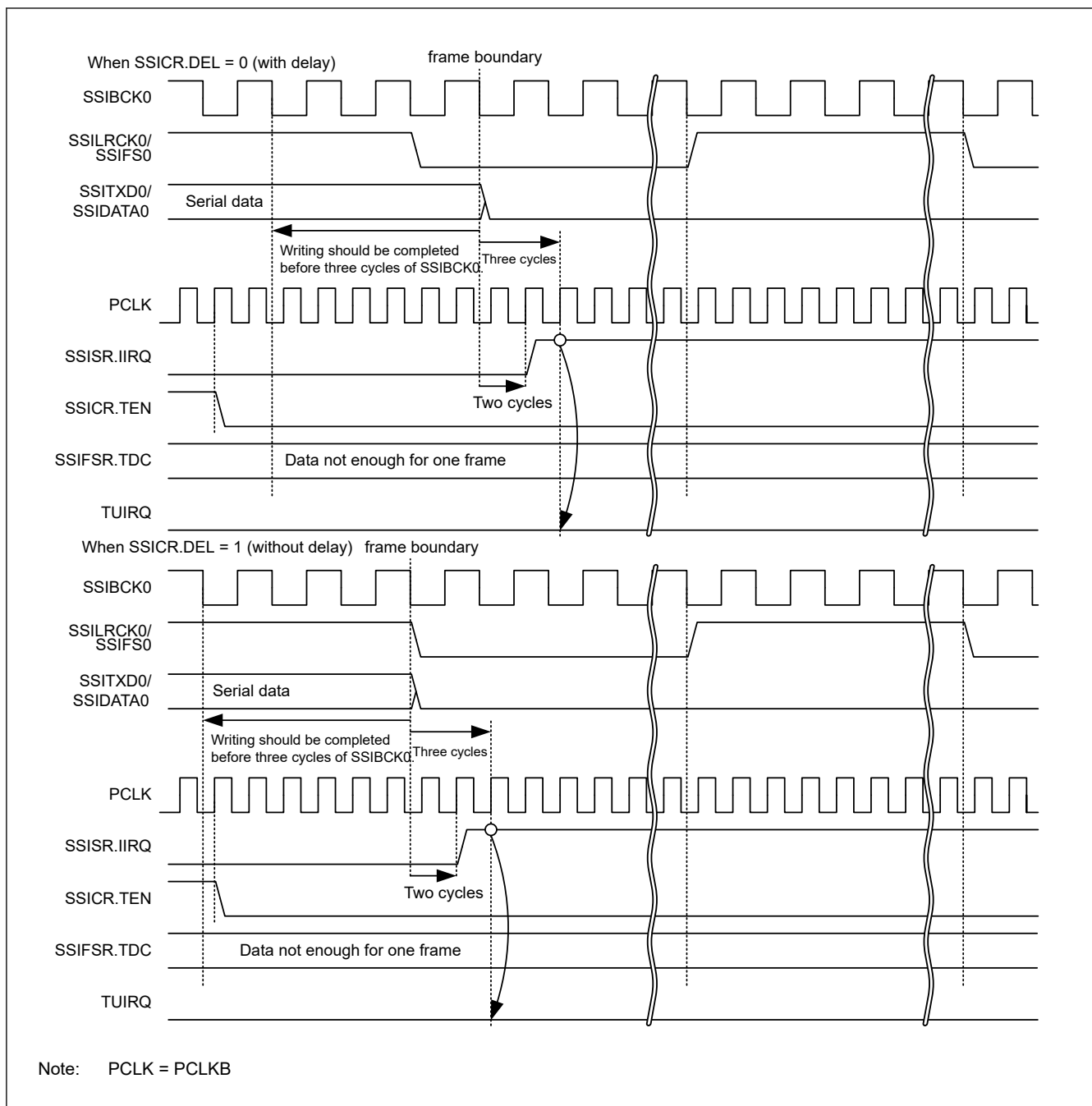


Figure 32.21 TUIRQ setting timing (when communication stops)

32.4.3 SSIFCR : FIFO Control Register

Base address: SSIE0 = 0x4004_E000

Offset address: 0x10

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	AUCK E	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	SSIRS T
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	BSW	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	TIE	RIE	TFRS T	RFRS T
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	RFRST	Receive FIFO Data Register Reset* ¹ 0: Clears a receive data FIFO reset condition 1: Sets a receive data FIFO reset condition	R/W
1	TFRST	Transmit FIFO Data Register Reset* ¹ 0: Clears a transmit data FIFO reset condition 1: Sets a transmit data FIFO reset condition	R/W
2	RIE	Receive Data Full Interrupt Output Enable 0: Disables receive data full interrupts 1: Enables receive data full interrupts	R/W
3	TIE	Transmit Data Empty Interrupt Output Enable 0: Disables transmit data empty interrupts 1: Enables transmit data empty interrupts	R/W
10:4	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
11	BSW	Byte Swap Enable* ¹ 0: Disables byte swap 1: Enables byte swap	R/W
15:12	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
16	SSIRST	Software Reset 0: Clears a software reset condition 1: Sets a software reset condition	R/W
30:17	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
31	AUCKE	AUDIO_MCK Enable in Master-mode Communication* ¹ 0: Disables supply of AUDIO_MCK 1: Enables supply of AUDIO_MCK	R/W

Note 1. Writing to these bits while SSIE is in a communication state (SSISR.IIRQ = 0) is prohibited. If the value of these bits is changed by rewriting, subsequent operation is unpredictable.

This register sets a software reset, byte swap, and enable/disable of interrupt requests.

RFRST bit (Receive FIFO Data Register Reset)

The RFRST bit sets a software reset of the receive FIFO data register (SSIFRDR). Writing 1 to this bit initializes the internal state related to SSIFRDR. The register bits subject to the software reset triggered by this bit are indicated by shading in [Table 32.5](#). Because this bit is not automatically cleared after it has been set, write 0 to this bit to release the register bits from the software reset. After writing 0 to this bit, be sure to check that this bit is 0 before starting the next procedural step.

This bit is subject to the software reset by the SSIRST bit. Because the software reset by the SSIRST bit has priority over the reset by this bit, setting this bit is ignored when the SSIRST bit is set.

Table 32.5 Bits subject to software reset by the RFRST bit

Symbol	Address (BASE+)		+0								+1							
			31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
			15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
SSICR	0x00	+0	—	CKS	TUI EN	TOI EN	RUI EN	ROI EN	IIEN	—	FRM[1:0]		DWL[2:0]		SWL[2:0]			
		+2	—	MST	BCK P	LRC KP	SPD P	SDT A	PDT A	DEL	CKDV[3:0]				MU EN	—	TEN	REN
SSISR	0x04	+0	—	—	TUI RQ	TOI RQ	RUI RQ	ROI RQ	IIRQ	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
		+2	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
SSIFCR	0x10	+0	AUC KE	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	SSI RST	
		+2	—	—	—	—	BS W	—	—	—	—	—	—	TIE	RIE	TFR ST	RFR ST	
SSIFSR	0x14	+0	—	—	TDC[5:0]					—	—	—	—	—	—	—	TDE	
		+2	—	—	RDC[5:0]					—	—	—	—	—	—	—	RDF	
SSIFTDR	0x18	+0	SSIFTDR[31:16]															
		+2	SSIFTDR[15:0]															
SSIFRDR	0x1C	+0	SSIFRDR[31:16]															
		+2	SSIFRDR[15:0]															
SSIOFR	0x20	+0	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
		+2	—	—	—	—	—	—	BCK AST P	LRC ONT	—	—	—	—	—	—	OMOD[1:0]	
SSISCR	0x24	+0	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
		+2	—	—	—	TDES[4:0]					—	—	—	RDFS[4:0]				

TFRST bit (Transmit FIFO Data Register Reset)

The TFRST bit sets a software reset of the transmit FIFO data register (SSIFTDR). Writing 1 to this bit initializes the internal state related to SSIFTDR. The register bits subject to the software reset triggered by this bit are indicated by shading in [Table 32.6](#). Because this bit is not automatically cleared after it has been set, write 0 to this bit to release the register bits from the software reset. After writing 0 to this bit, be sure to check that this bit is 0 before starting the next procedural step.

This bit is subject to the software reset by the SSIRST bit. Because the software reset by the SSIRST bit has priority over the reset by this bit, setting this bit is ignored when the SSIRST bit is set.

Table 32.6 Bits subject to software reset by the TFRST bit (1 of 2)

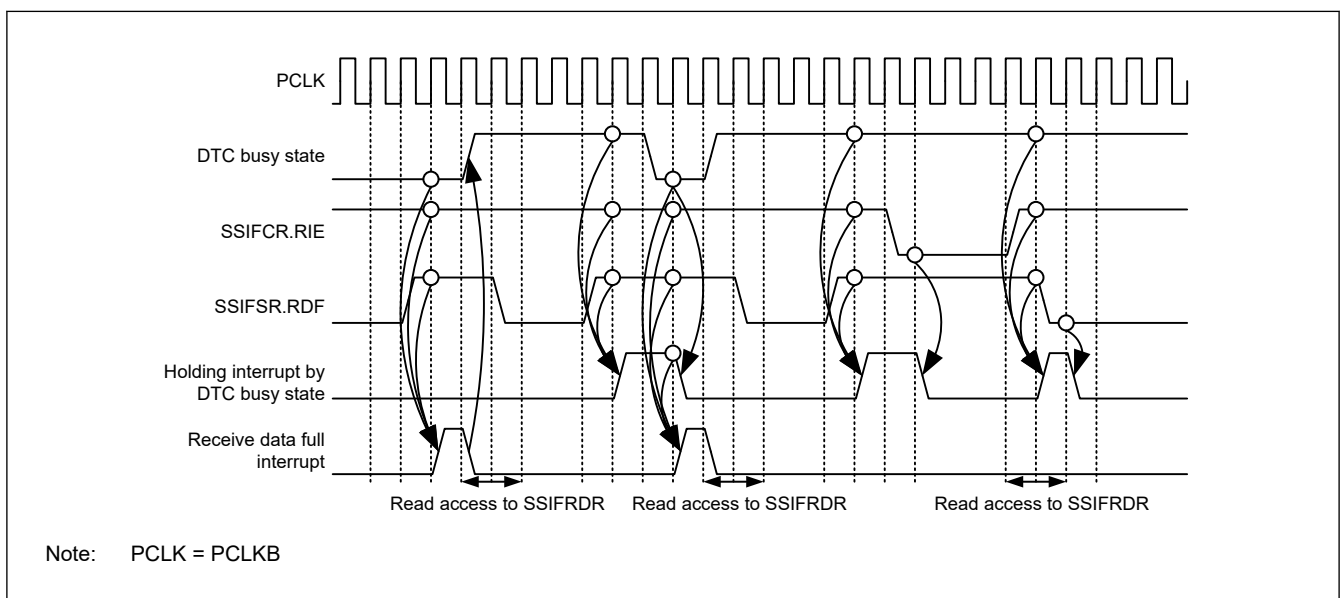
Symbol	Address (BASE+)		+0								+1							
			31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
			15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
SSICR	0x00	+0	—	CKS	TUI EN	TOI EN	RUI EN	ROI EN	IIEN	—	FRM[1:0]		DWL[2:0]			SWL[2:0]		
		+2	—	MST	BCK P	LRC KP	SPD P	SDT A	PDT A	DEL	CKDV[3:0]				MU EN	—	TEN	REN
SSISR	0x04	+0	—	—	TUI RQ	TOI RQ	RUI RQ	ROI RQ	IIRQ	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
		+2	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

Table 32.6 Bits subject to software reset by the TFRST bit (2 of 2)

Symbol	Address (BASE+)		+0								+1							
			31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
			15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
SSIFCR	0x10	+0	AUC KE	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	SSI RST	
		+2	—	—	—	—	BS W	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	TIE	RIE	TFR ST	RFR ST
SSIFSR	0x14	+0	—	—	TDC[5:0]						—	—	—	—	—	—	—	TDE
		+2	—	—	RDC[5:0]						—	—	—	—	—	—	—	RDF
SSIFTDR	0x18	+0	SSIFTDR[31:16]															
		+2	SSIFTDR[15:0]															
SSIFRDR	0x1C	+0	SSIFRDR[31:16]															
		+2	SSIFRDR[15:0]															
SSIOFR	0x20	+0	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
		+2	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	BCK AST P	LRC ONT	—	—	—	—	—	—	OMOD[1:0]
SSISCR	0x24	+0	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
		+2	—	—	—	TDES[4:0]						—	—	—	RDFS[4:0]			

RIE bit (Receive Data Full Interrupt Output Enable)

The RIE bit enables/disables output of receive data full interrupts. Use a receive data full interrupt as an interrupt to trigger data reading from the receive FIFO data register. Write 1 to this bit after specifying the setting condition for receive data full interrupt (by using the SSISCR.RDFS bit). [Figure 32.22](#) shows the timing of generating the receive data full interrupt.

**Figure 32.22 Timing of receive data full interrupt****TIE bit (Transmit Data Empty Interrupt Output Enable)**

The TIE bit enables/disables output of transmit data empty interrupts. Use a transmit data empty interrupt as an interrupt to trigger data writing to the transmit FIFO data register. Write 1 to this bit after specifying the setting condition for transmit data empty interrupt (by using the SSISCR.TDES[4:0] bits). [Figure 32.23](#) shows the timing of generating the transmit data empty interrupt.

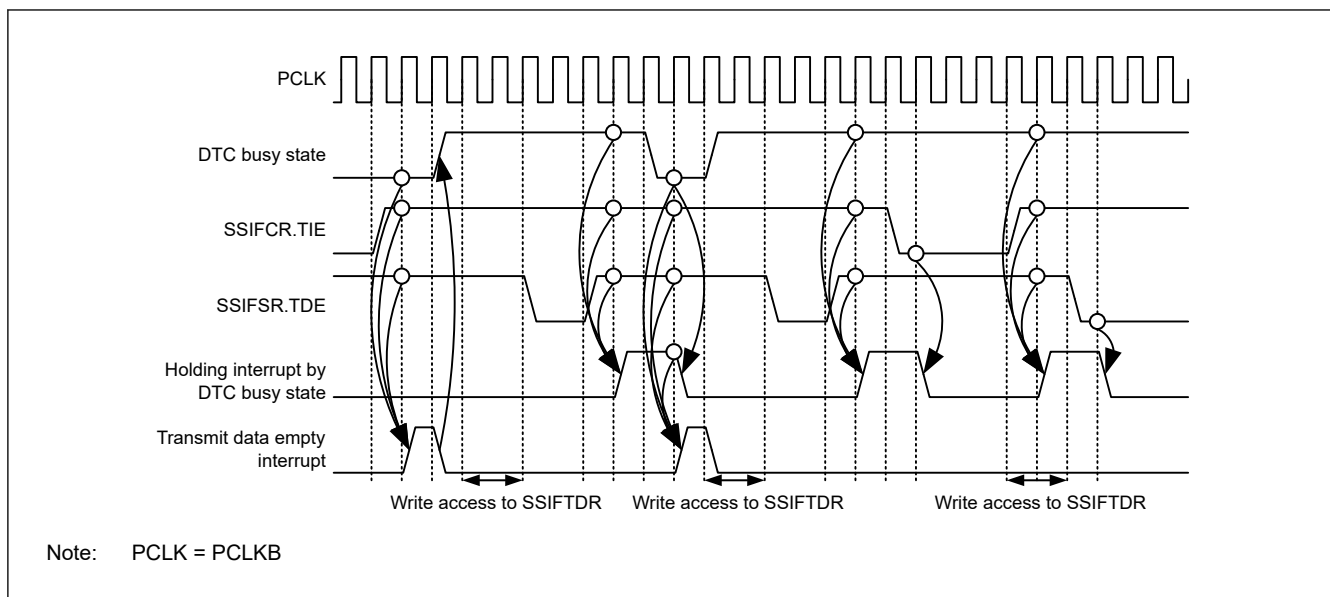


Figure 32.23 Timing of transmit data empty interrupt

BSW bit (Byte Swap Enable)

The BSW bit enables/disables byte swap of register access for the transmit FIFO data register (SSIFTDR) and the receive FIFO data register (SSIFRDR). This bit is valid only with 16-bit access or 32-bit access to SSIFTDR and SSIFRDR. For details, see [Figure 32.24](#).

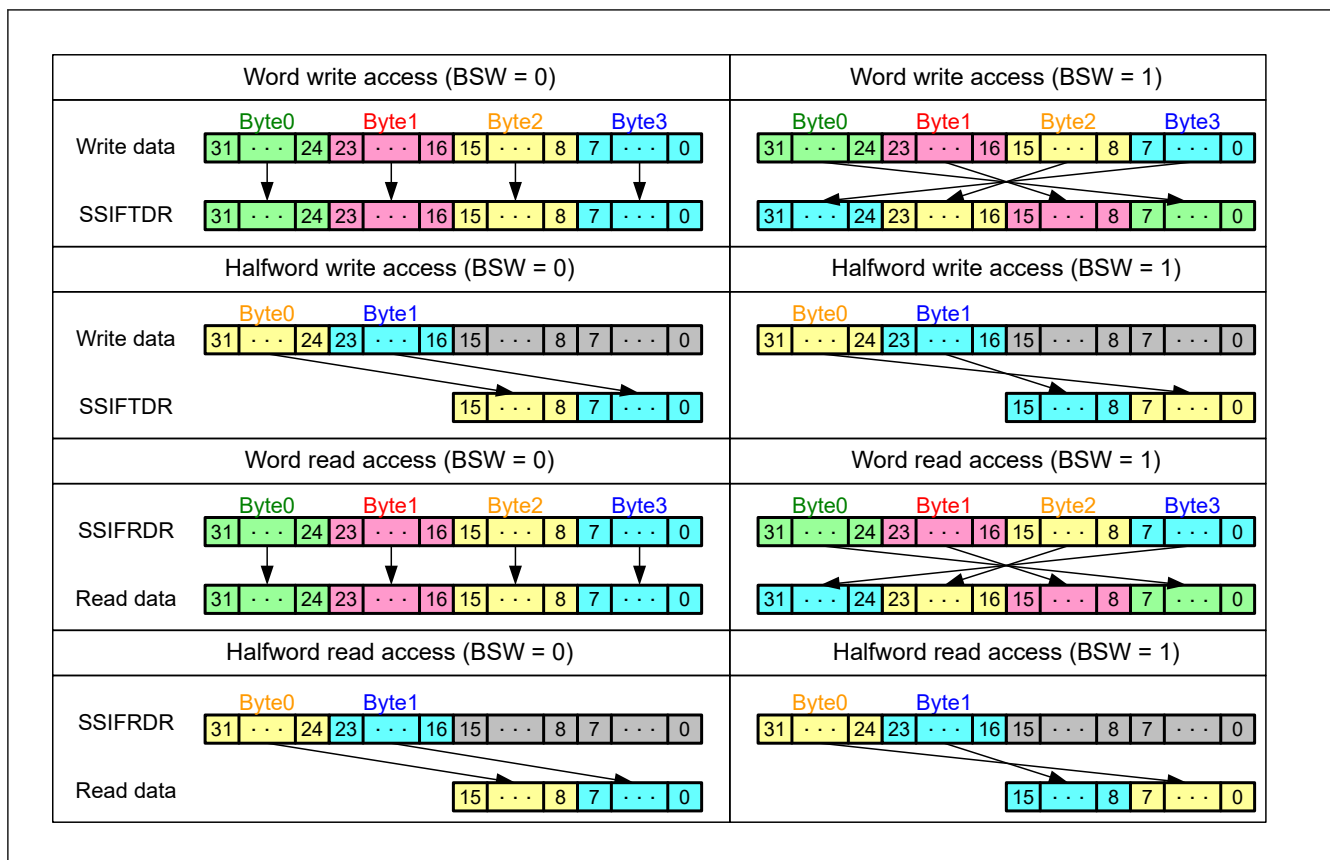


Figure 32.24 Operation example of byte swap

SSIRST bit (Software Reset)

The SSIRST bit sets a software reset of SSIE. Writing 1 to this bit initializes the internal state of SSIE. The register bits subject to the software reset triggered by this bit are indicated by shading in [Table 32.7](#). Because this bit is not automatically

cleared after it has been set, write 0 to this bit to release the register bits from the software reset. After writing 0 to this bit, be sure to check that this bit is 0 before starting the next procedural step.

To stop communication of SSIE immediately, after turning off the peripheral functions, write 1 to this bit. Initialization by a software reset is performed without any relation with the bit clock.

Table 32.7 Bits subject to software reset by the SSIRST bit

Symbol	Address (BASE+)		+0								+1							
			31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
			15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
SSICR	0x00	+0	—	CKS	TUI EN	TOI EN	RUI EN	ROI EN	IIE N	—	FRM[1:0]		DWL[2:0]		SWL[2:0]			
		+2	—	MST	BCK P	LRC KP	SPD P	SDT A	PDT A	DEL	CKDV[3:0]				MU EN	—	TEN	REN
SSISR	0x04	+0	—	—	TUI RQ	TOI RQ	RUI RQ	ROI RQ	IIR Q	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
		+2	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
SSIFCR	0x10	+0	AUC KE	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	SSI RST	
		+2	—	—	—	—	BS W	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	TIE	RIE	TFR ST	RFR ST
SSIFSR	0x14	+0	—	—	TDC[5:0]					—	—	—	—	—	—	—	TDE	
		+2	—	—	RDC[5:0]					—	—	—	—	—	—	—	RDF	
SSIFTDR	0x18	+0	SSIFTDR[31:16]															
		+2	SSIFTDR[15:0]															
SSIFRDR	0x1C	+0	SSIFRDR[31:16]															
		+2	SSIFRDR[15:0]															
SSIOFR	0x20	+0	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
		+2	—	—	—	—	—	—	BCK AST P	LRC ONT	—	—	—	—	—	—	OMOD[1:0]	
SSISCR	0x24	+0	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
		+2	—	—	—	TDES[4:0]					—	—	—	RDFS[4:0]				

AUCKE bit (AUDIO_MCK Enable in Master-mode Communication)

The AUCKE bit enables/disables supply to AUDIO_MCK while in master-mode communication (MST = 1).

Changing the value of this bit must be performed only after specifying the settings related to AUDIO_MCK (by using the CKS, MST, BCKP, and CKDV bits in the SSICR register).

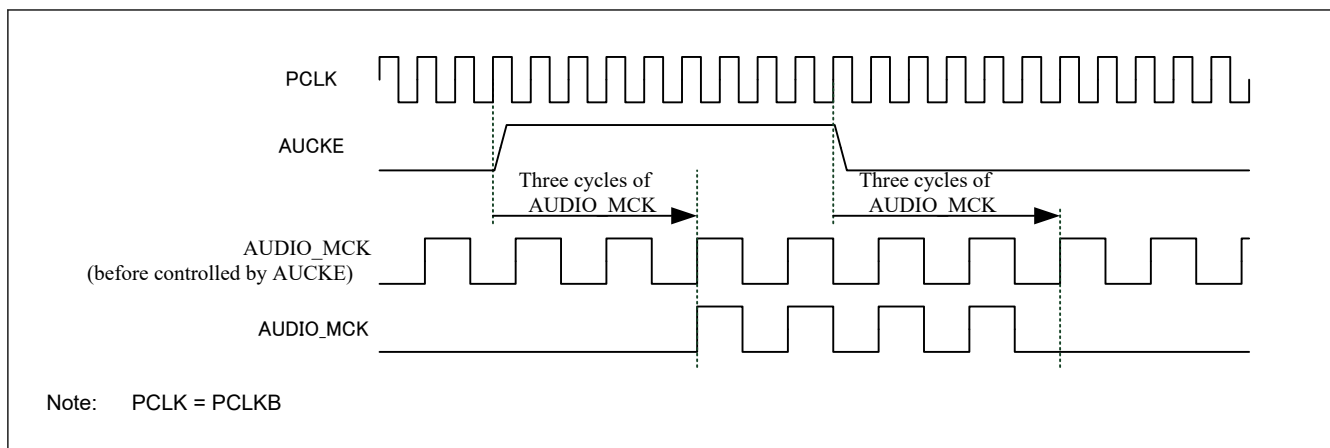


Figure 32.25 Stop/resume of AUDIO_MCK

Note: In slave-mode communication (SSICR.MST = 0), SSIE needs supply of SSIBCK0. To stop BCK on the master side, make sure that SSIE is in the idle state (SSISR.IIRQ = 1). If BCK is stopped before SSIE becomes idle, take the procedure to start communication in [Figure 32.52](#) or wait for an idle state by taking the procedure to resume communication in [Figure 32.58](#).

In master-mode communication (SSICR.MST = 1), SSIE operates with the audio clock (AUDIO_MCK). To stop SSIE completely, make sure that SSIE is in the idle state (SSISR.IIRQ = 1) and then write 0 to SSIFCR.AUCKE. If 0 is written to SSIFCR.AUCKE before SSIE becomes idle, take the procedure to start communication in [Figure 32.52](#).

[Figure 32.26](#) and [Figure 32.27](#) show the timings of signal operation in the period from setting this bit to 1 to the output to the SSIBCK0 pin.

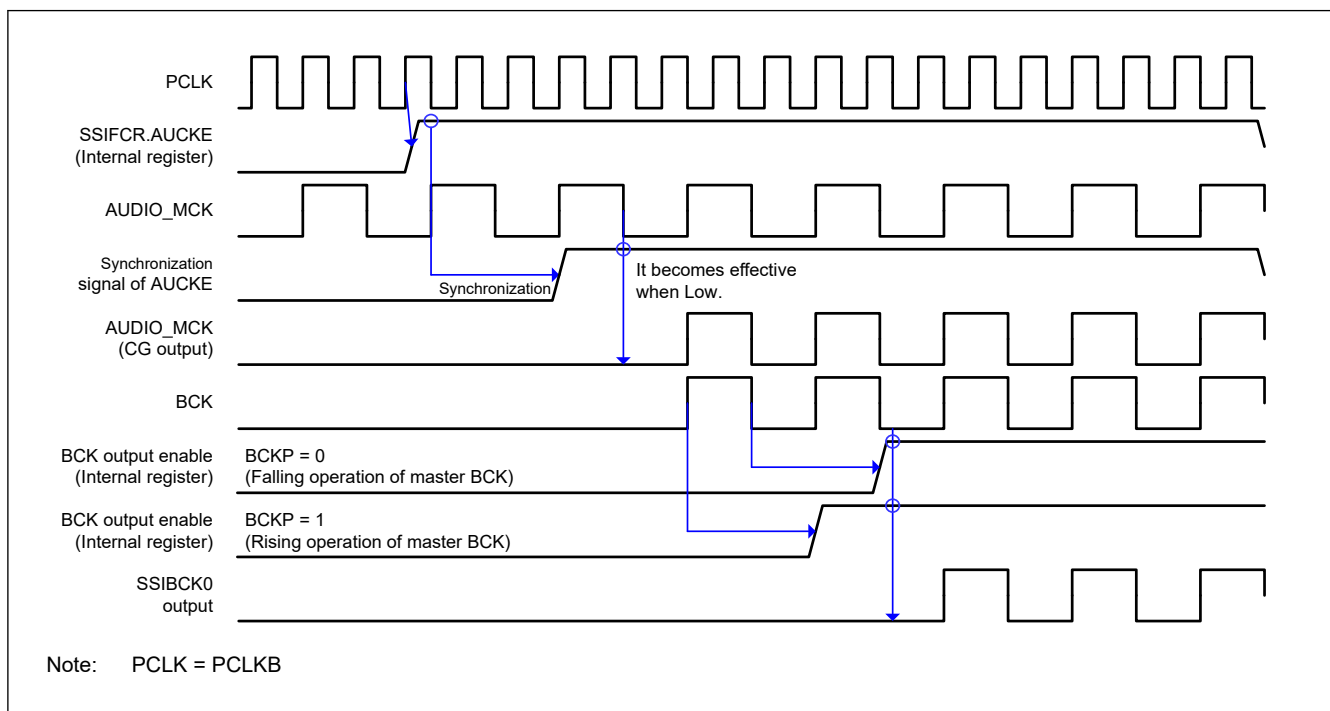


Figure 32.26 Timing diagram for the operation from system reset to start of master-mode communication

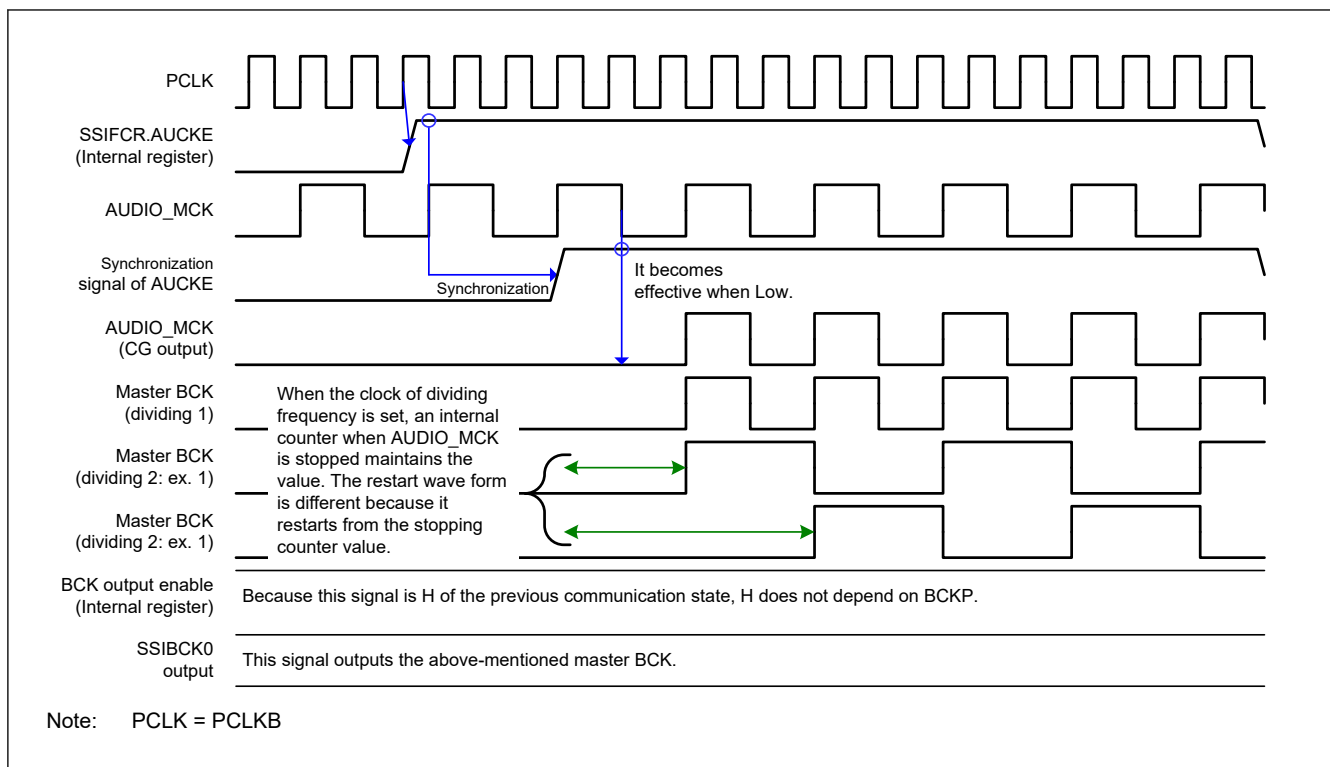


Figure 32.27 Timing diagram for the operation from stop of communication to start of master-mode communication

Note: If the supply of AUDIO_MCK stops, the value of the SSIBCK0 pin is held. Therefore, the SSIBCK0 signal might stop in the H (high level) state.

32.4.4 SSIFSR : FIFO Status Register

Base address: SSIE0 = 0x4004_E000

Offset address: 0x14

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	TDC[5:0]										—	—	—	TDE
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	RDC[5:0]										—	—	—	RDF
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	RDF	Receive Data Full Flag 0: The size of received data in SSIFRDR is not more than the value of SSISCR.RDFS 1: The size of received data in SSIFRDR is not less than the value of SSISCR.RDFS plus one	R/W
7:1	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
13:8	RDC[5:0]	Receive Data Count Number of valid data stored in the receive FIFO data register	R
15:14	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
16	TDE	Transmit Data Empty Flag 0: The free space of SSIFTDR is not more than the value of SSISCR.TDES 1: The free space of SSIFTDR is not less than the value of SSISCR.TDES plus one	R/W
23:17	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
29:24	TDC[5:0]	Transmit Data Count Number of valid data stored in the transmit FIFO data register	R
31:30	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

This register is configured with status flags that indicate the status of the transmit FIFO data register and the receive FIFO data register.

RDF flag (Receive Data Full Flag)

The RDF flag indicates that the receive FIFO data register (SSIFRDR) has unread received data not less than the amount set with the SSISCR.RDFS bit plus one. This flag is set by automatic determination but it must be cleared by register access.

[Priority order for setting and clearing]

Clearing is prioritized.

[Clearing condition]

Either of the following two:^{*1}

1. Writing 0 to this bit after reading 1 from this bit (CPU operation)^{*2}
2. Last access (DTC operation) to read data from SSIFRDR by an interrupt routine using the DTC.

[Clearing timing]

Clearing timing corresponding to the above clearing condition

1. When 0 is written to this bit after reading 1 from this bit (same as the timing in [Figure 32.19](#))
2. After the PCLKB cycle in which the last access instruction is issued to read data from SSIFRDR by an interrupt routine using the DTC.

[Setting condition]

SSIFRDR has free space not less than the amount set with the SSISCR.RDFS bits plus one.

[Setting timing]

At completion of transfer from the shift register that results in SSIFRDR having data not less than the amount set with the SSISCR.RDFS bits plus one.

Note 1. These bits are cleared by a software reset (SSIFCR.SSIRST = 1) and receive FIFO data register reset (SSIFCR.RFRST = 1). Reset conditions available for these bits are the software reset and receive FIFO data register reset as well as the clearing conditions described above.

Note 2. After reading 1 from this bit, this bit is cleared when one of the following four conditions is met:

- A software reset is done (SSIFCR.SSIRST = 1).
- A receive FIFO data register reset is done (SSIFCR.RFRST = 1).
- After 1 has been read, writing of 0 is complete.
- Last access is performed to read data from SSIFRDR by an interrupt routine using the DTC.

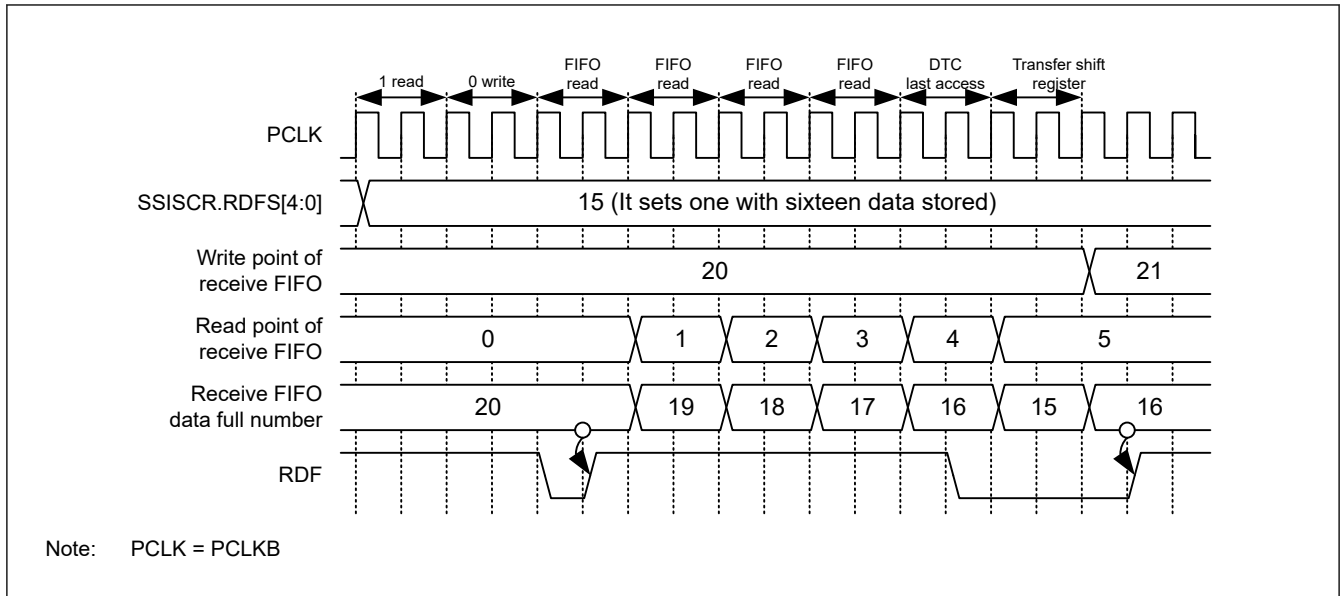


Figure 32.28 Timing diagram for setting and clearing RDF

RDC[5:0] bits (Receive Data Count)

The RDC[5:0] bits indicate the number of valid data that are stored in the receive FIFO data register (SSIFRDR). With these bits as 0x00, there is no received data. With 0x20, the register is filled with received data and there is no free space.

TDE flag (Transmit Data Empty Flag)

The TDE flag indicates that the transmit FIFO data register (SSIFTDR) has free space not less than the amount set with the SSISCR.TDES bits plus one. This flag is set by automatic determination but it must be cleared by register access.

[Priority order for setting and clearing]

Clearing is prioritized.*1

[Clearing condition]

Either of the following two:

1. Writing 0 to this bit after reading 1 from this bit (CPU operation)*2
2. Last access (DTC operation) to write data to SSIFTDR by an interrupt routine using the DTC.

[Clearing timing]

Clearing timing corresponding to the above clearing condition

1. When 0 is written to this bit after reading 1 from this bit (same as the timing in [Figure 32.19](#))
2. Last access (DTC operation) to write data to SSIFTDR by an interrupt routine using the DTC.

[Setting condition]

SSIFTDR has free space not less than the amount set with the SSISCR.TDES bits plus one.

[Setting timing]

While operating on PCLKB, SSIFTDR is found to have free space not less than “size set in the SSISCR.TDES bits + 1.”

Note 1. This bit is cleared by a software reset (SSIFCR.SSIRST = 1) and transmit FIFO data register reset (SSIFCR.TFRST = 1). The software reset and transmit FIFO data register reset have priority over all the clearing conditions described above.

Note 2. After reading 1 from this bit, this bit is cleared when one of the following four conditions is met:

- A software reset is done (SSIFCR.SSIRST = 1).
- A transmit FIFO data register reset is done (SSIFCR.TFRST = 1).
- After 1 has been read, writing of 0 is complete.
- Last access is performed to write data to SSIFTDR by an interrupt routine using the DTC.

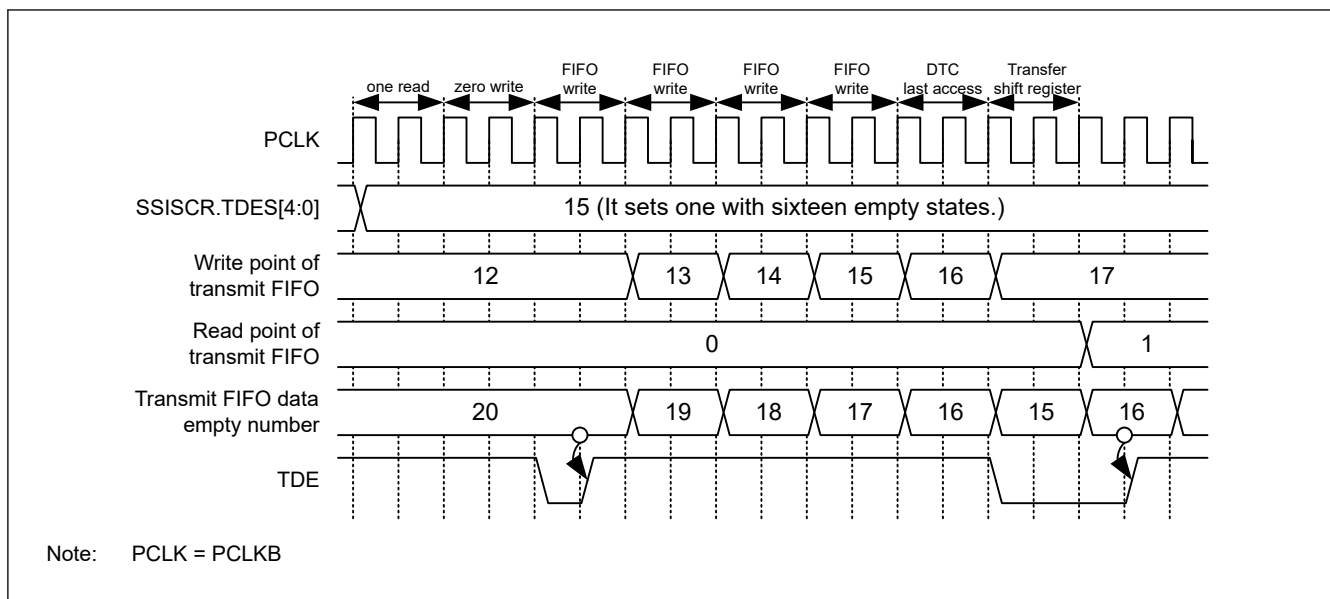


Figure 32.29 Timing diagram for setting and clearing TDE

TDC[5:0] bits (Transmit Data Count)

The TDC[5:0] bits indicate the number of valid data that are stored in the transmit FIFO data register (SSIFTDR). With these bits as 0x00, there is no data to be transmitted. With 0x20, there is no space to write data.

32.4.5 SSIFTDR : Transmit FIFO Data Register

Base address: SSIE0 = 0x4004_E000

Offset address: 0x18

Bit position: 31

0

Bit field:

SSIFTDR[31:0]

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
31:0	SSIFTDR[31:0]	Transmit FIFO Data	W

This register stores data to be serially transmitted. 0 is returned when this register is read.

When you use this register for transmission, specify data writing to this register as the DTC operation that is triggered by a transmit data empty interrupt. Determine the access size to this register according to the data word length to be communicated in [Table 32.8](#).

Table 32.8 Register access restriction to FIFOs (1 of 2)

Access Size		Byte	Halfword	Word
SSICR.DWL[2:0]	Data Word Length			
000b	8	✓	—	—
001b	16	—	✓	—
010b	18	—	—	✓
011b	20	—	—	✓
100b	22	—	—	✓
101b	24	—	—	✓
110b	32	—	—	✓

Table 32.8 Register access restriction to FIFOs (2 of 2)

Access Size		Byte	Halfword	Word
SSICR.DWL[2:0]	Data Word Length			
111b	Setting prohibited	—	—	—

Figure 32.30 shows register access to the transmit FIFO data register.

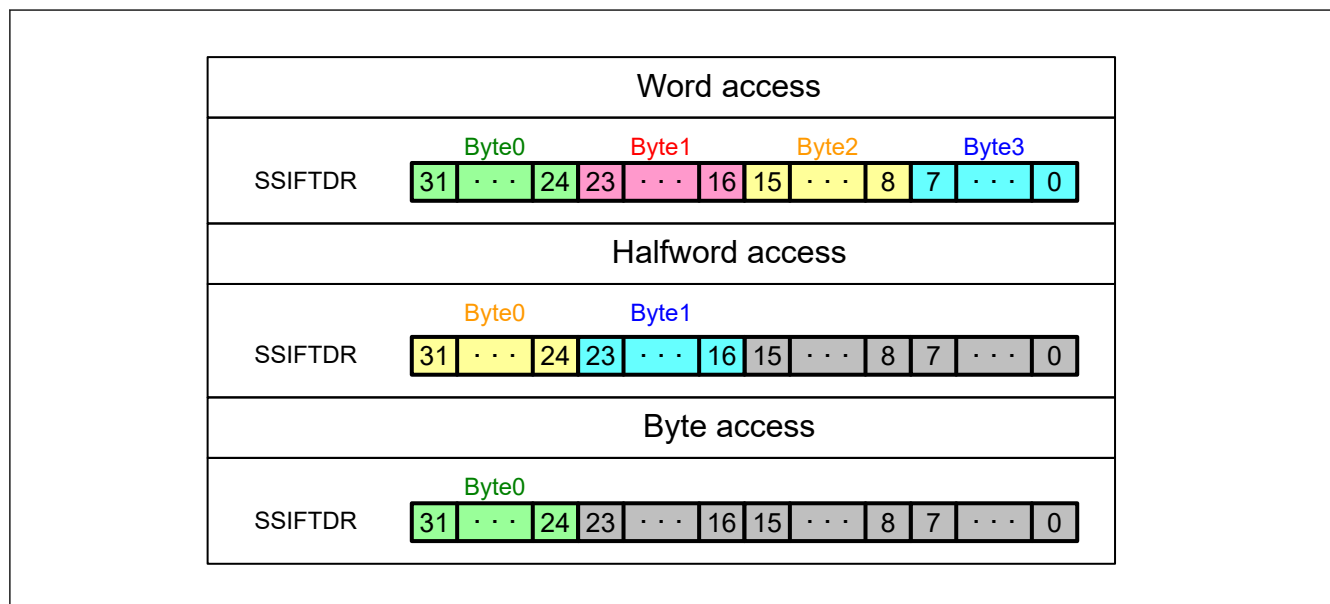
**Figure 32.30 Example of register access to the transmit FIFO data register**

Figure 32.31 shows the configurations and operation examples of the transmit FIFO data register and transmit shift register. The configurations are for storing data to FIFO and not related with communication.

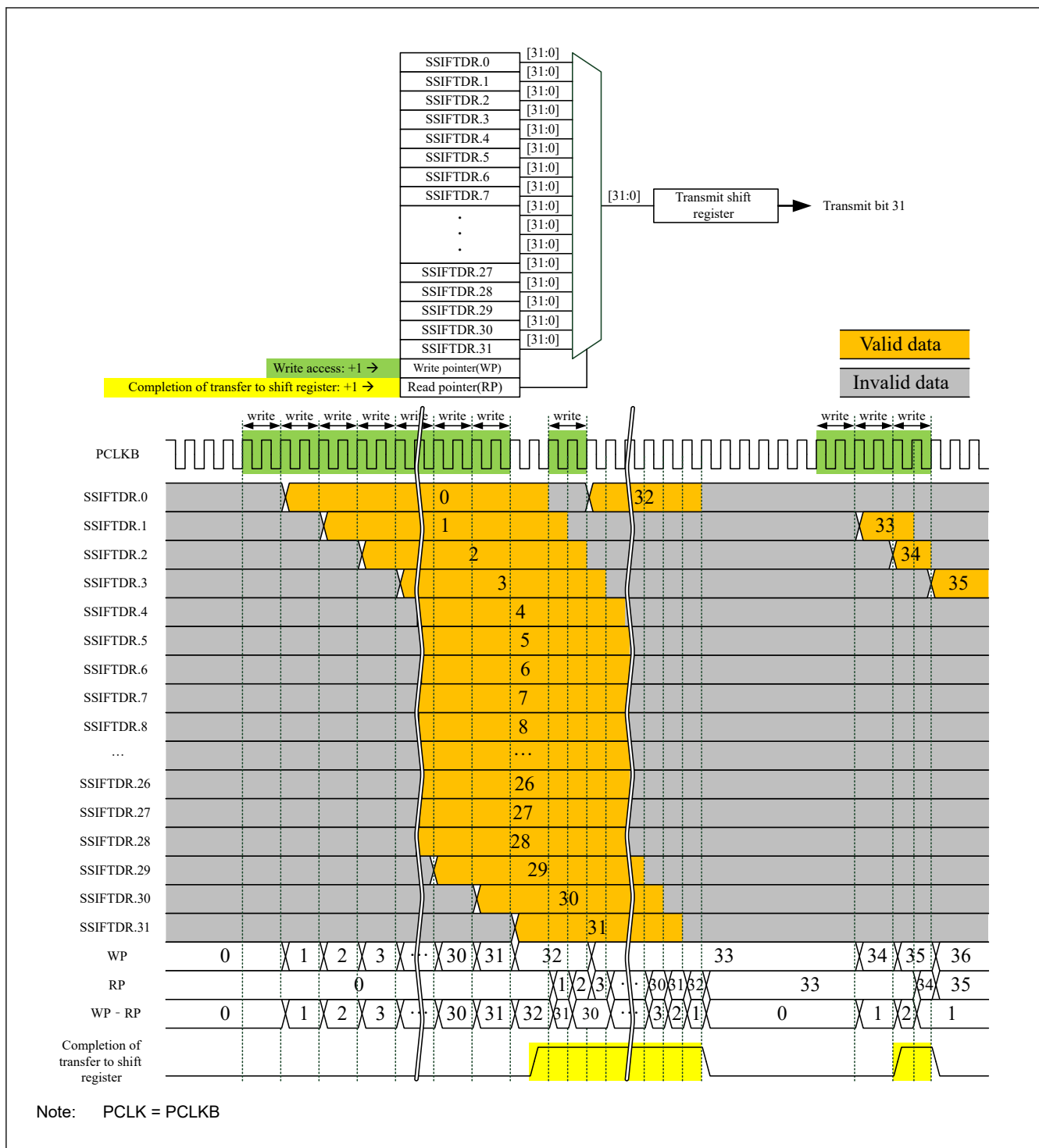


Figure 32.31 Configuration of the transmit FIFO data register and transmit shift register, and FIFO operation example

32.4.6 SSIFRDR : Receive FIFO Data Register

Base address: SSIE0 = 0x4004_E000

Offset address: 0x1C

Bit position: 31

0

Bit field:

SSIFRDR[31:0]

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
31:0	SSIFRDR[31:0]	Receive FIFO Data	R

When you use this register for reception, specify data reading from this register as the DTC operation that is triggered by a transmit data empty interrupt. Determine the access size to this register according to the data word length to be communicated in [Table 32.8](#).

Register access to the receive FIFO data register is same as for the transmit FIFO data register.

[Figure 32.32](#) shows the configurations and operation examples of the receive FIFO data register and receive shift register.

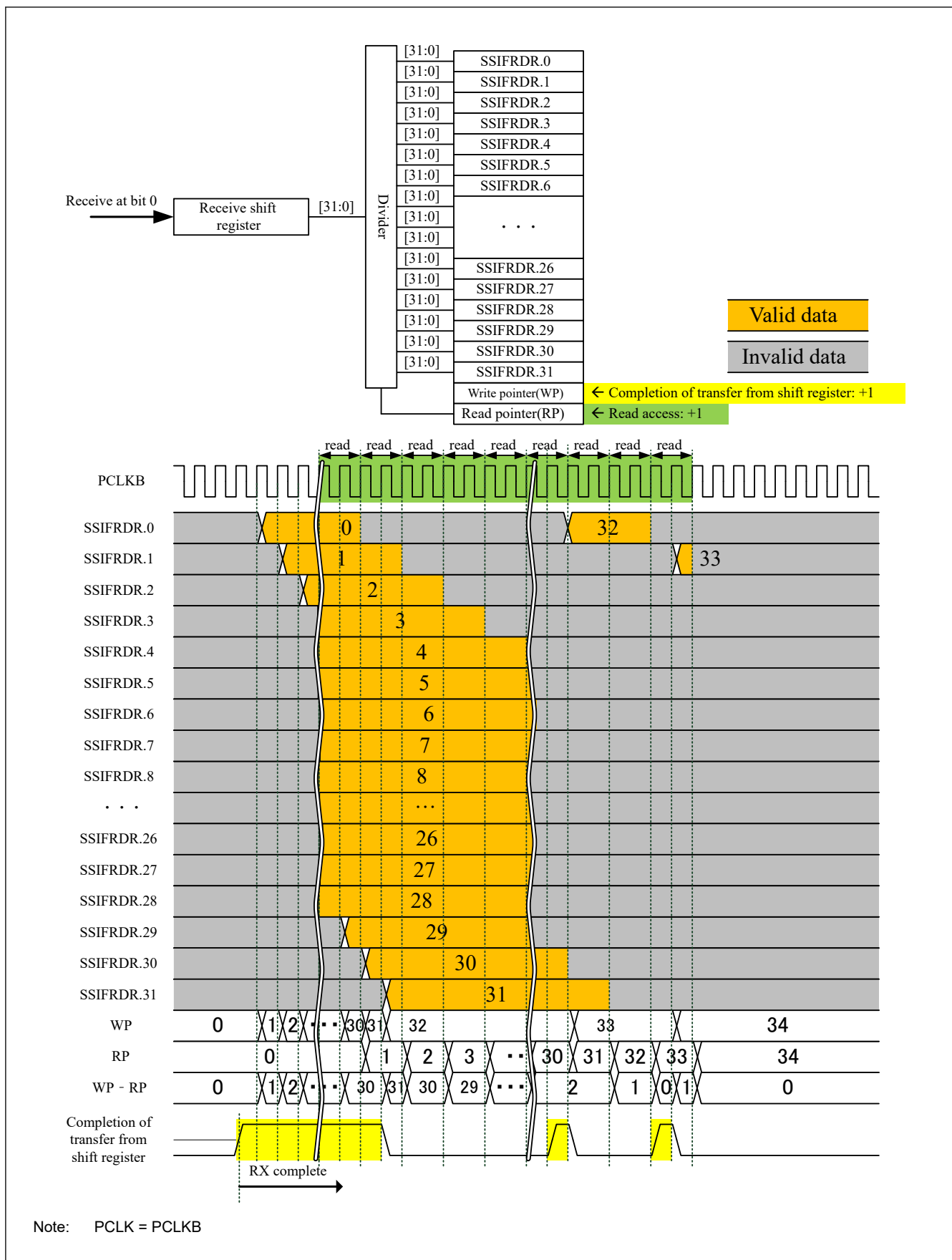


Figure 32.32 Configuration of the receive FIFO data register and receive shift register, and FIFO operation example

32.4.7 SSIOFR : Audio Format Register

Base address: SSIE0 = 0x4004_E000

Offset address: 0x20

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	BCKA STP	LRCO NT	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	OMOD[1:0]
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
1:0	OMOD[1:0]	Audio Format Select ^{*3 *4} 0 0: I ² S format 0 1: TDM format 1 0: Monaural format 1 1: Setting prohibited	R/W
7:2	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
8	LRCONT	Whether to Enable LRCK/FS Continuation ^{*1 *2} 0: Disables LRCK/FS continuation 1: Enables LRCK/FS continuation	R/W
9	BCKASTP	Whether to Enable Stopping BCK Output When SSIE is in Idle Status ^{*1 *2} 0: Always outputs BCK to the SSIBCK0 pin 1: Automatically controls output of BCK to the SSIBCK0 pin	R/W
31:10	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note 1. This bit is valid only in master-mode communication (SSICR.MST = 1). The setting is invalid in slave-mode communication (SSICR.MST = 0).

Note 2. The BCKASTP and LRCONT bits must not be set to 1 together.

Note 3. While SSIE is communicating (SSISR.IIRQ = 0), writing to these bits is prohibited. If the value of these bits is changed by writing, subsequent operation is unpredictable.

Note 4. If the communication format of other-party device is compatible with a communication format of SSIE, specify and use the communication format that enables communication with the other-party device.

This register is used to set an audio format (which involves the settings of communication format, LR clock/frame synchronization continuation mode, and BCK output stop).

OMOD[1:0] bits (Audio Format Select)

The OMOD[1:0] bits set an audio format. Writing to these bits must be performed when the LR clock supply to the SSILRCK0/SSIFS0 pin is stopped. For details about the output of LR clock, see the detailed description of the LRCONT bit in [section 32.4.7. SSIOFR : Audio Format Register](#).

LRCONT bit (Whether to Enable LRCK/FS Continuation)

The LRCONT bit enables or disables the output from SSILRCK0/SSIFS0 pin when the communication mode is master-mode communication (SSICR.MST = 1) and SSIE is in the idle state (SSISR.IIRQ = 1).

Even in the idle state, a signal can output from the SSILRCK0/SSIFS0 pin when this bit is set to 1 (to enable LR clock/frame synchronization continuation) in master mode (SSICR.MST = 1).

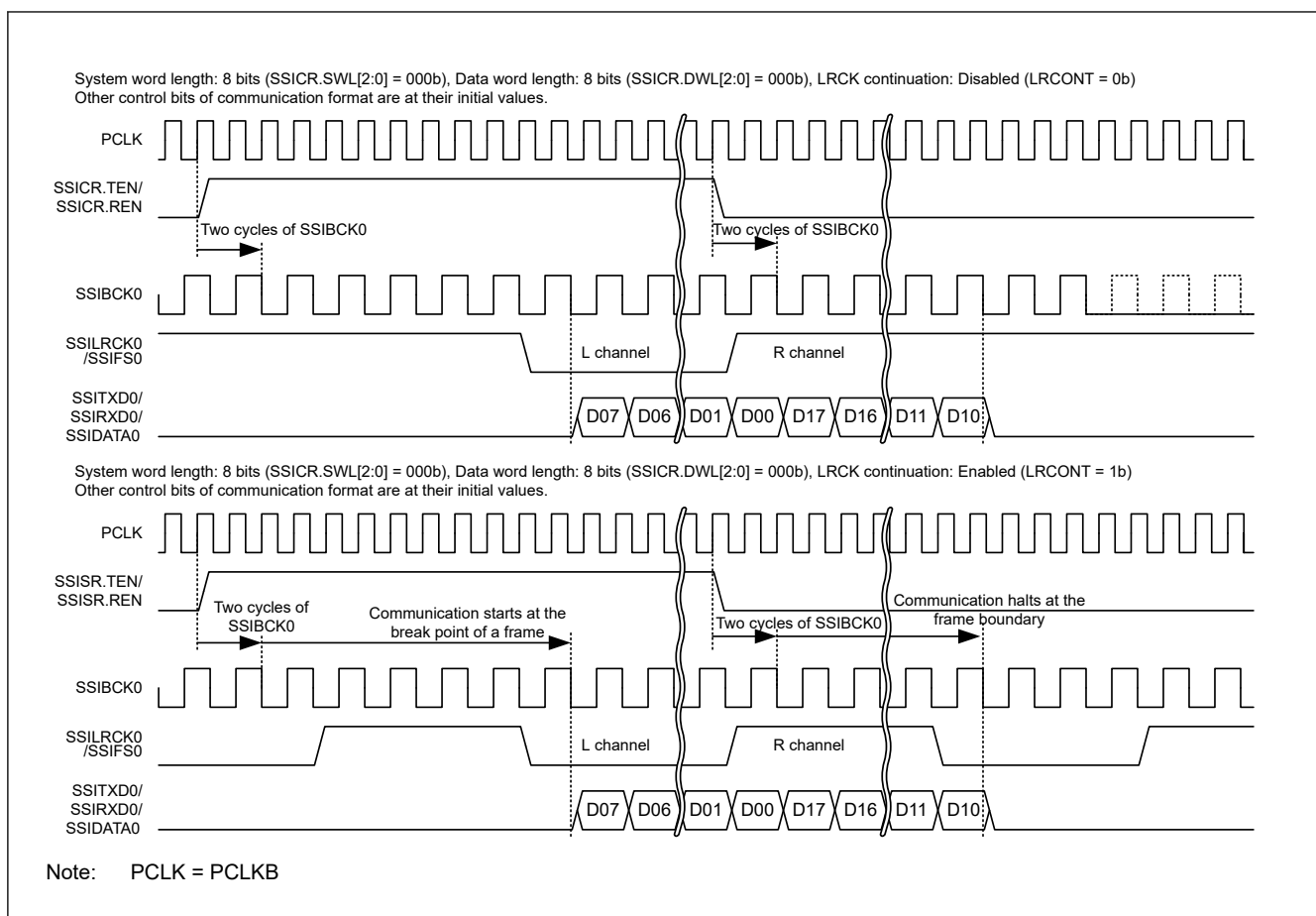


Figure 32.33 Example of LR clock/frame synchronization continuation operation

BCKASTP bit (Whether to Enable Stopping BCK Output When SSIE is in Idle Status)

The BCKASTP bit turns on or off the function to output BCK to the SSIBCK0 pin according to the communication shown in [Figure 32.34](#) and [Figure 32.35](#) in master-mode communication (SSICR.MST = 1).

Changing the value of this bit must be performed only after setting the communication format to be used.

This bit must be used in the following way:

Write 0 to the BCKASTP bit, and then start communication. During the communication, write 1 to the BCKASTP bit. By this operation, the bit clock output to the SSIBCK0 pin stops automatically when the communication stops. To resume the communication, set SSIE to the idle state (SSICR.IIRQ = 1), enable the supply of AUDIO_MCK (SSIFCR.AUCKE = 1), and then write 0 to the BCKASTP bit.

When the communication mode is master-mode communication (SSICR.MST = 1) and SSIE is in the idle state (SSICR.IIRQ = 1):

Table 32.9 BCKASTP bit status and SSIBCK0 pin output

BCKASTP bit	SSIBCK0 pin output status
0	Output
1	Stopped

Note: The BCKASTP bit cannot be used when the other-party device (which is a slave) requires the clock output from the SSIBCK0 pin before and during communication. In such a case, use the BCKASTP bit to stop the clock only after communication. For the timing of enabling the clock stop function, see [Figure 32.34](#).

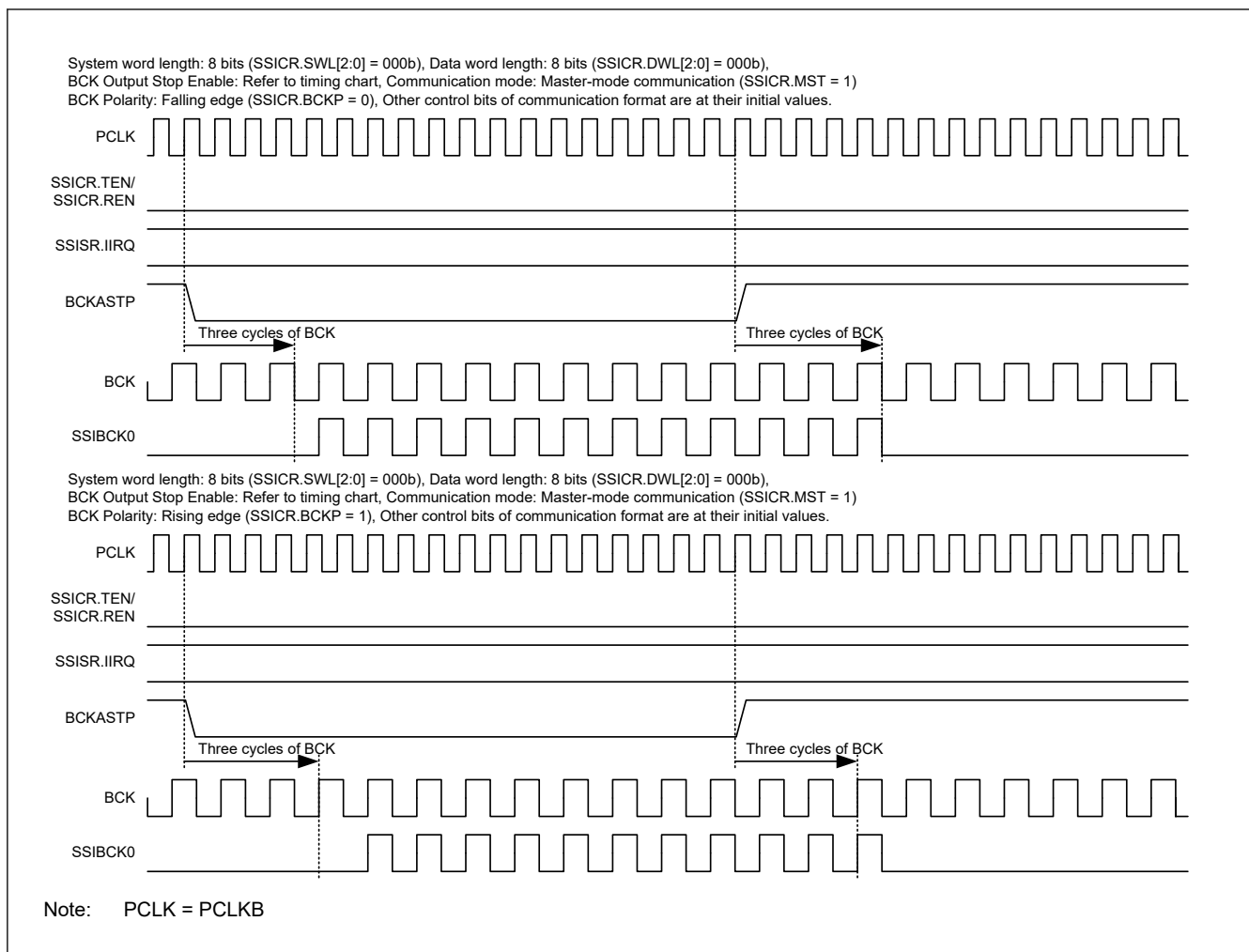


Figure 32.34 Example operation of the BCKASTP bit (idle state)

When the communication mode is master-mode communication (SSICR.MST = 1) and the BCK output stop function is enabled (BCKASTP = 1):

Details of the BCK output to the SSIBCK0 pin are as follows:

Output start timing: BCK is output in appropriate timing so that a valid edge is generated when the LR clock/frame synchronization signal shifts to a valid value.

Output stop timing: 1 to 1.5 clock cycles after a frame boundary.

For details about the timings, see the timing diagram in [Figure 32.35](#).

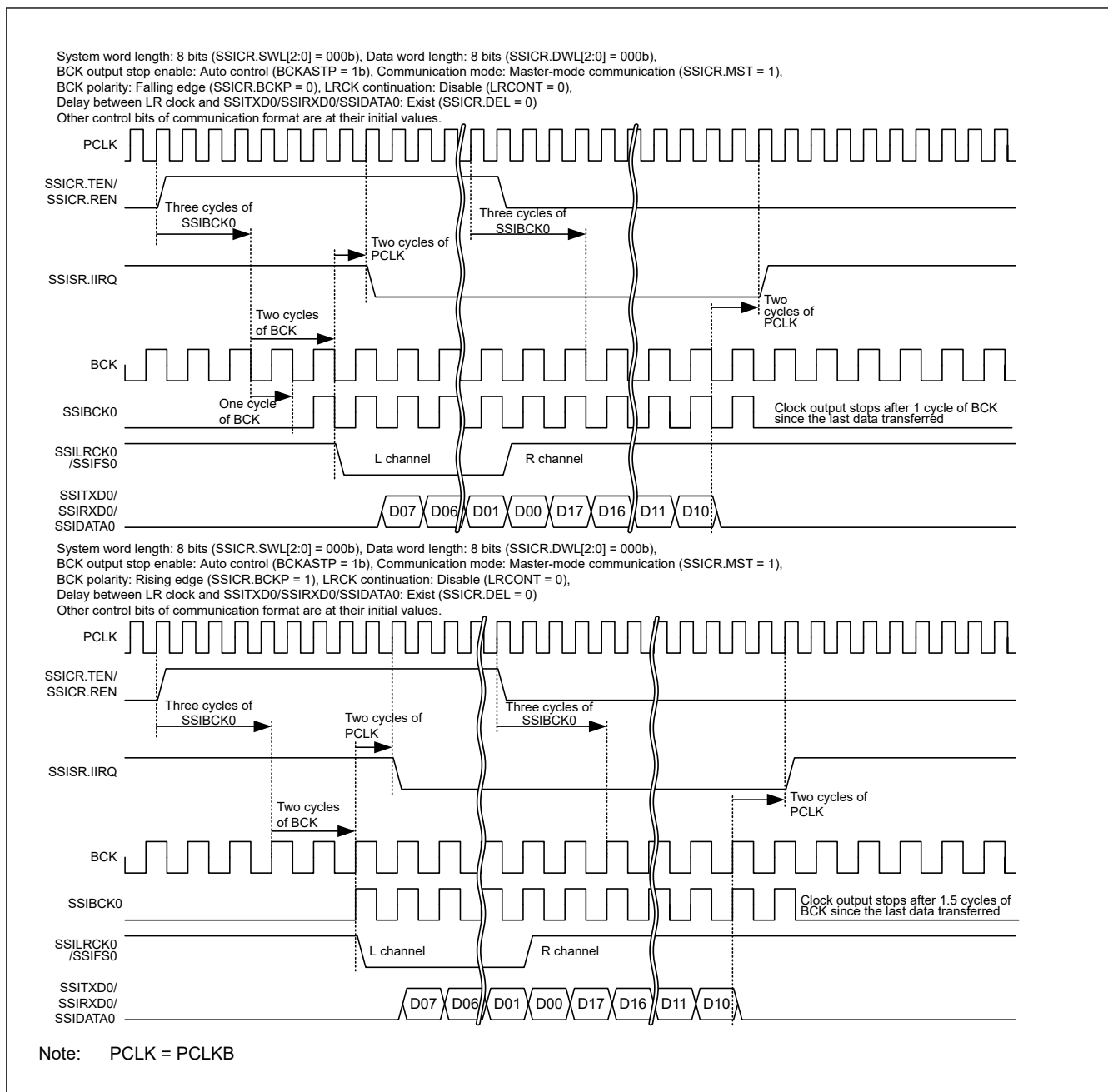


Figure 32.35 Example operation of the BCKASTP bit (communication operation with BCKASTP = 1)

32.4.8 SSICR : Status Control Register

Base address: SSIE0 = 0x4004_E000

Offset address: 0x24

Bit position:	31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	TDES[4:0]				—	—	—	RDFS[4:0]					
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
4:0	RDFS[4:0]	RDF Setting Condition Select* ¹ 0x00: SSIFRDR has one stage or more data size 0x01: SSIFRDR has two stages or more data size ⋮ 0x1E: SSIFRDR has 31 stages or more data size 0x1F: SSIFRDR has 32 stages or more data size	R/W
7:5	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
12:8	TDES[4:0]	TDE Setting Condition Select* ¹ 0x00: SSIFTDR has one stage or more free space 0x01: SSIFTDR has two stages or more free space ⋮ 0x1E: SSIFTDR has 31 stages or more free space 0x1F: SSIFTDR has 32 stages or more free space	R/W
31:13	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note 1. Writing to these bits while SSIE is in a communication state (SSISR.IIRQ = 0) is prohibited. If written, the operation performed immediately after writing is not guaranteed.

RDFS[4:0] bits (RDF Setting Condition Select)

The RDFS[4:0] bits set the setting condition of the receive data full flag (RDF).

TDES[4:0] bits (TDE Setting Condition Select)

The TDES[4:0] bits set the setting condition of the transmit data empty flag (TDE).

32.5 Communication Formats

SSIE supports three communication formats. Table 32.10 shows supported communication formats.

Table 32.10 Supported communication formats

Communication format	SSIOFR.OMOD[1:0]
I ² S format	00
TDM format	01
Monaural format	10

The following describes the serial data structure shared by communication formats. A serial data structure is defined by the system word length (set in SSICR.SWL[2:0]) and the data word length (set in SSICR.DWL[2:0]). If the data word length is shorter than the system word length, padding bits are transferred in the serial data. For details, see Figure 32.36.

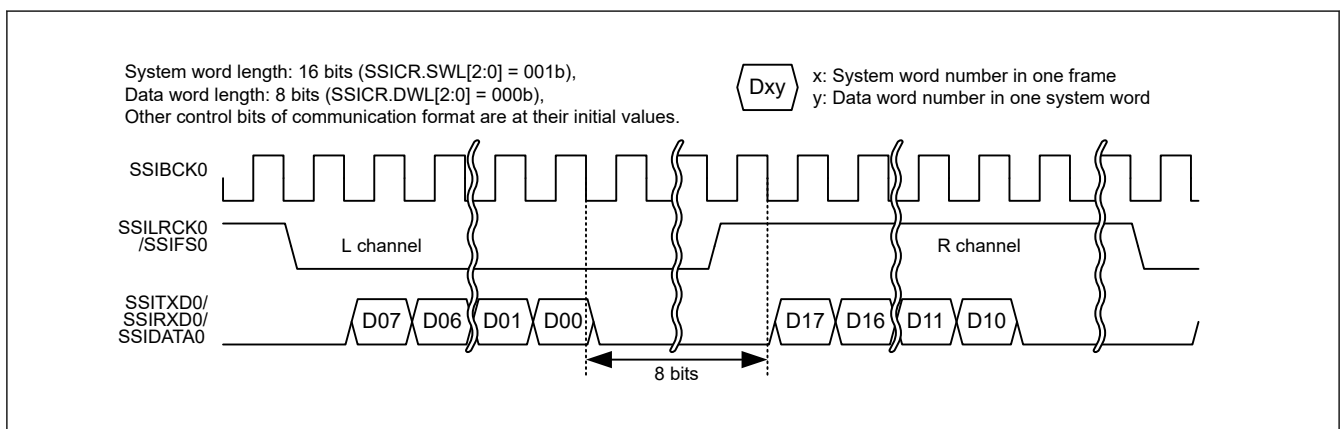


Figure 32.36 Example of padding bit transfer (I²S format: system word length > data word length)

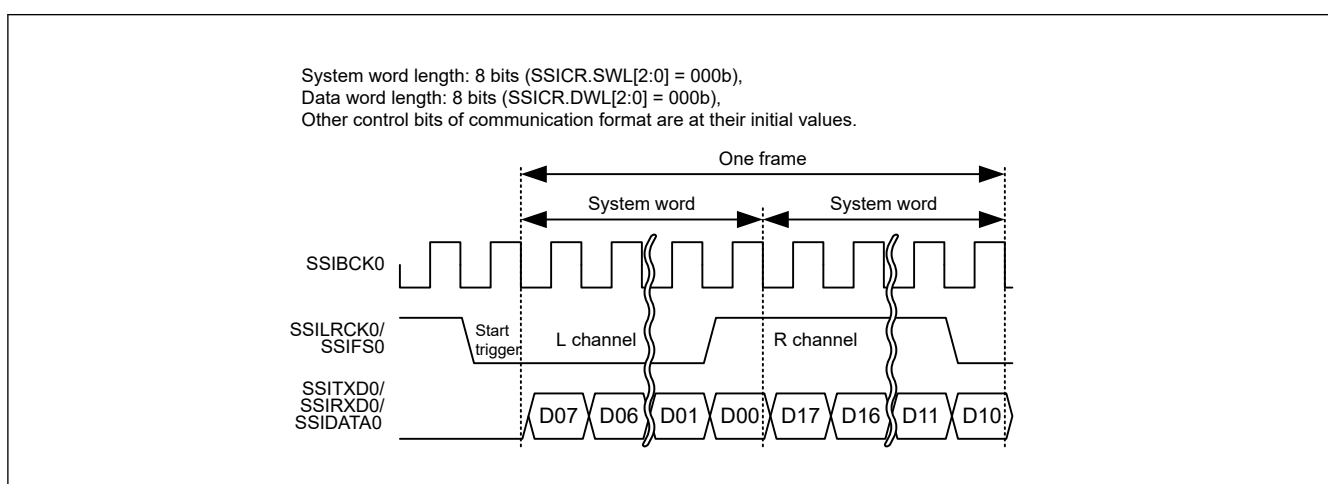
Table 32.11 lists the number of padding bits to be transferred with each combination of system word length (SSICR.SWL[2:0]) and data word length (SSICR.DWL[2:0]). “-” indicates that the setting is prohibited.

Table 32.11 Number of padding bits

	SSICR.DWL[2:0]	000b	001b	010b	011b	100b	101b	110b	111b
SSICR.SWL[2:0]	System Word Length	8	16	18	20	22	24	32	Setting prohibited
000b	8	0	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
001b	16	8	0	—	—	—	—	—	—
010b	24	16	8	6	4	2	0	—	—
011b	32	24	16	14	12	10	8	0	—
100b	48	40	32	30	28	26	24	16	—
101b	64	56	48	46	44	42	40	32	—
110b	128	120	112	110	108	106	104	96	—
111b	256	248	240	238	236	234	232	224	—

32.5.1 I²S Format

The I²S format is a communication format used for connection with I²S-compatible serial devices. With this format setting (SSIOFR.OMOD[1:0] = 00b), one frame is configured with two system words, one for the channel L and the other for the channel R. The SSILRCK0/SSIFS0 signals are at a low level for the channel L and at a high level for the channel R. Set the polarity of the signals with the SSICR.LRCKP bit. [Figure 32.37](#) shows the I²S format without padding. See [Figure 32.36](#) for the format with padding.

**Figure 32.37** I²S format (without padding: system word length = data word length)

For the state of external pins when SSIE is in the idle state, see [section 32.7.1. Idle State](#).

Note: SSIE has the SSILRCK0/SSIFS0 pin, which indicates the synchronization of communication. When SSIE is in slave mode (SSICR.MST = 0), the communication format SSIE uses must match that of the other-party device to communicate. SSIE uses the signal input by the SSILRCK0/SSIFS0 pin only as a trigger to start communication.

32.5.2 Monaural Format

The monaural format is a communication format used for connection with monaural-compatible serial devices. When the monaural format is specified (SSIOFR.OMOD[1:0] = 10b) for use, one frame consists of one system word. Also, a rising edge of the SSILRCK0/SSIFS0 signal indicates a communication start trigger. [Figure 32.38](#) and [Figure 32.39](#) respectively show the monaural formats without and with padding.

System word length: 8 bits (SSICR.SWL[2:0] = 000b),
 Data word length: 8 bits (SSICR.DWL[2:0] = 000b),
Number of frame words: One word (SSICR.FRM[1:0] = 00b),
 BCK polarity: Rising edge (BCKP = 1)
 Other control bits of communication format are at their initial values.

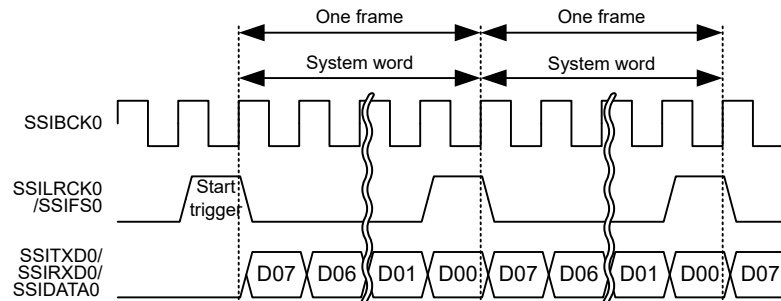
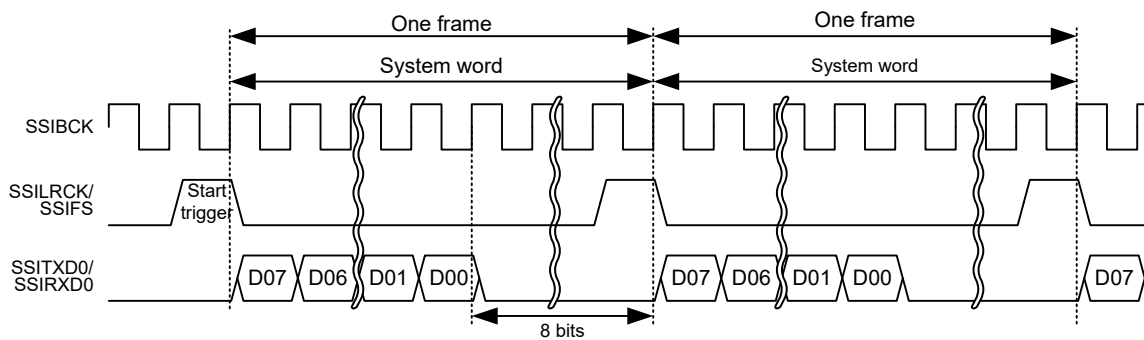


Figure 32.38 Short frame in monaural format (without padding: system word length = data word length)

System word length: 16 bits (SSICR.SWL[2:0] = 001b), Data word length: 8 bits (SSICR.DWL[2:0] = 000b),
 Number of frame words: One word (SSICR.FRM[1:0] = 00b), BCK polarity: Rising edge (BCKP = 1)
 Other control bits of communication format are at their initial values.



System word length: 16 bits (SSICR.SWL[2:0] = 001b), Data word length: 8 bits (SSICR.DWL[2:0] = 000b),
 Number of frame words: One word (SSICR.FRM[1:0] = 00b), BCK polarity: Rising edge (BCKP = 1)
 Other control bits of communication format are at their initial values.

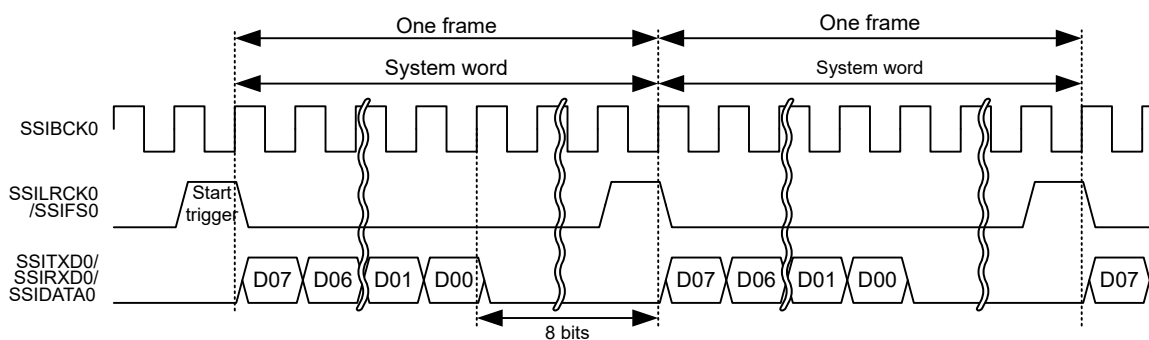


Figure 32.39 Short frame in monaural format (with padding: system word length > data word length)

The monaural formats supported by SSIE consist of short frames and long frames. See [section 32.5.2.1. Short Frame](#) and [section 32.5.2.2. Long Frame](#) for the difference between these two frames.

For the state of external pins state when SSIE is in the idle state, see [section 32.7.1. Idle State](#).

Note: SSIE has the SSILRCK0/SSIFS0 pin, which indicates the synchronization of communication. When SSIE is in slave mode (SSICR.MST = 0), the communication format SSIE uses must match that of the other-party device to communicate. SSIE uses the signal input by the SSILRCK0/SSIFS0 pin only as a trigger to start communication.

32.5.2.1 Short Frame

When a short frame is used (SSICR.DEL = 0), the SSILRCK0/SSIFS0 signal indicating the start of serial data is set to high level only for 1 cycle of SSIBCK0. Data transfer starts at the falling edge of the signal.

32.5.2.2 Long Frame

When a long frame is used (SSICR.DEL = 1), the SSILRCK0/SSIFS0 signal indicating the start of serial data is set to high level only for 2 cycles of SSIBCK0. See Figure 32.40. Data transfer starts at the rising edge of the signal.

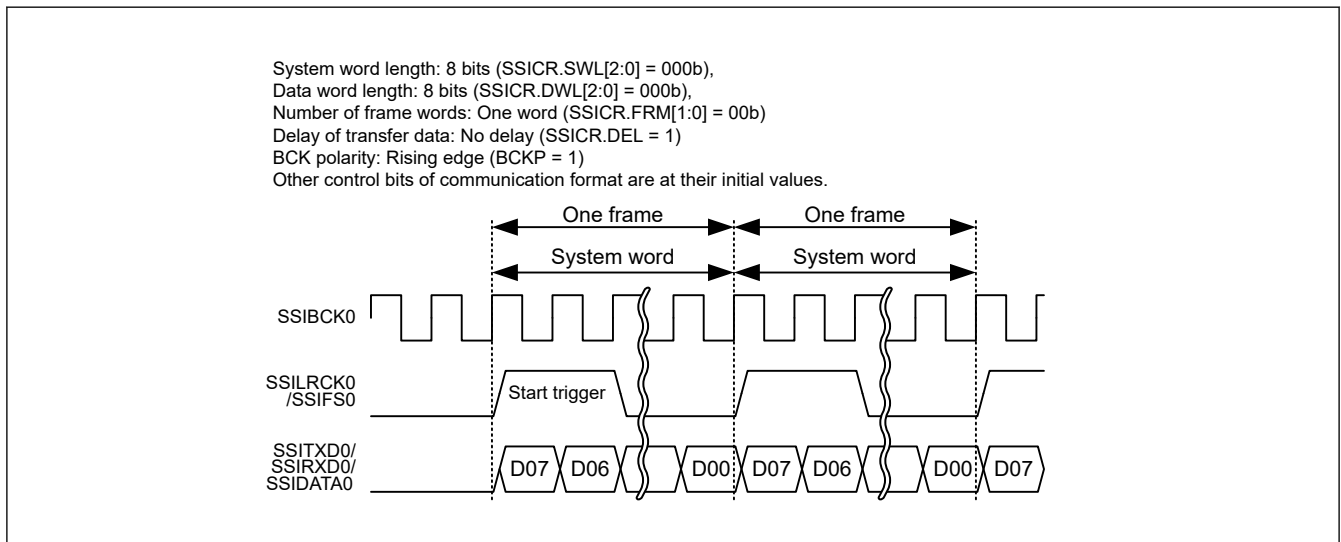


Figure 32.40 Long frame in monaural format (without padding)

32.5.3 TDM Format

The TDM format is a communication format used for connection with TDM-compatible multi-channel devices. With this format setting (SSIOFR.OMOD[1:0] = 01b), one frame is configured with four to eight system words set with the SSICR.FRM[1:0] bits. With this format, the SSILRCK0/SSIFS0 signal is at a high level for the first one system word and at a low level for the rest. The pulse generated on the SSILRCK0/SSIFS0 signal is defined as the SYNC pulse and its rising edge means a start of one frame. Figure 32.41 and Figure 32.42 respectively show the TDM formats without and with padding.

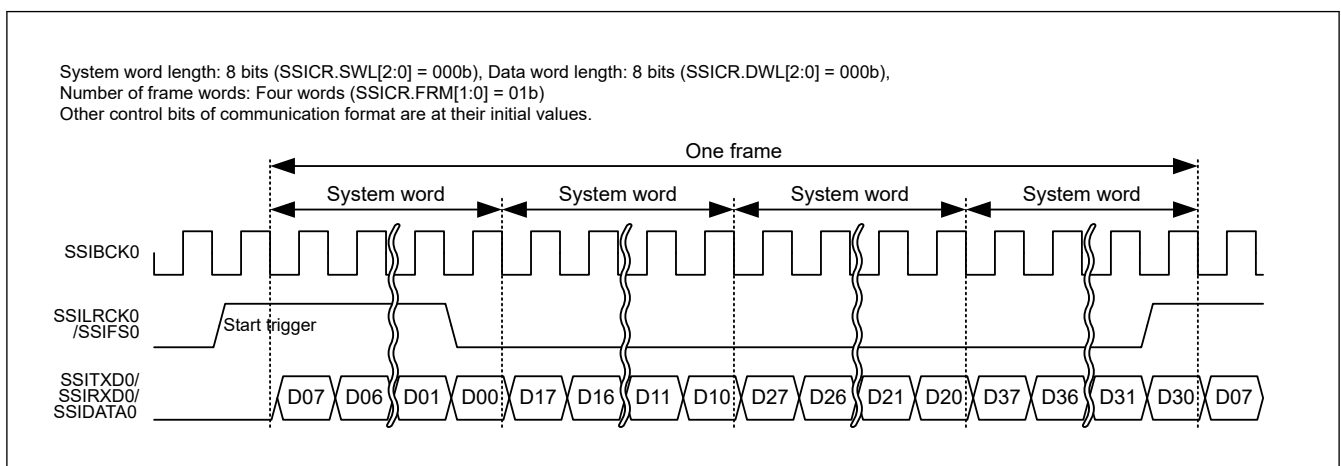


Figure 32.41 TDM format (without padding: system word length = data word length)

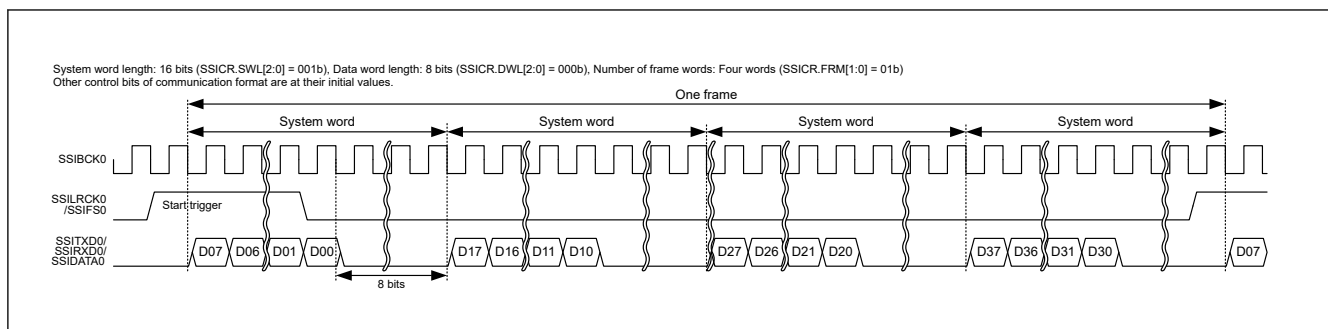


Figure 32.42 TDM format (with padding: system word length > data word length)

For the state of external pins when SSIE is in the idle state, see [section 32.7.1. Idle State](#).

Note: SSIE has the SSILRCK0/SSIFS0 pin, which indicates the synchronization of communication. When SSIE is in slave mode (SSICR.MST = 0), the communication format SSIE uses must match that of the other-party device to communicate. SSIE uses the signal input by the SSILRCK0/SSIFS0 pin only as a trigger to start communication.

32.6 Communication Modes

SSIE supports the following communication modes. [Table 32.13](#) lists the control bits that are not available with each communication mode. See [section 32.6.1. Slave-mode Communication](#) to [section 32.6.5. Transmission and Reception](#) for details of these communication modes.

Table 32.12 Communication modes

Communication mode	SSICR.MST bit	SSICR.REN bit	SSICR.TEN bit
Slave-mode transmission	0	0	1
Slave-mode reception	0	1	0
Slave-mode transmission and reception	0	1	1
Master-mode transmission	1	0	1
Master-mode reception	1	1	0
Master-mode transmission and reception	1	1	1

Table 32.13 Control bits that cannot be used in each communication mode (1 of 2)

Control bit	Slave-mode reception	Slave-mode transmission	Slave-mode transmission and reception	Master-mode reception	Master-mode transmission	Master-mode transmission and reception
SSICR.CKS	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid	Available	Available	Available
SSICR.CKDV	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid	Available	Available	Available
SSICR.MUEN	Invalid	Available	Available	Invalid	Available	Available
SSICR.TEN	Invalid	Available	Available	Invalid	Available	Available
SSICR.REN	Available	Invalid	Available	Available	Invalid	Available
SSIFCR.AUCKEN	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid	Available	Available	Available
SSIFCR.TIE	Invalid	Available	Available	Invalid	Available	Available
SSIFCR.RIE	Available	Invalid	Available	Available	Invalid	Available
SSIFCR.TFRST	Invalid	Available	Available	Invalid	Available	Available
SSIFCR.RFRST	Available	Invalid	Available	Available	Invalid	Available
SSIOFR.BCKASTP	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid	Available	Available	Available
SSIOFR.LRCONT	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid	Available	Available	Available
SSIOFR.OMOD	Available	Available	Available	Available	Available	Available

Table 32.13 Control bits that cannot be used in each communication mode (2 of 2)

Control bit	Slave-mode reception	Slave-mode transmission	Slave-mode transmission and reception	Master-mode reception	Master-mode transmission	Master-mode transmission and reception
SSISCR.TDES	Invalid	Available	Available	Invalid	Available	Available
SSISCR.RDFS	Available	Invalid	Available	Available	Invalid	Available

“Invalid” means it has no effect on operation. Writing is possible.

32.6.1 Slave-mode Communication

SSIE operates in slave mode with SSICR.MST = 0. The SSIBCK0 and SSILRCK0/SSIFS0 signals to be used for serial-data communication must be supplied from an external device. If these signals do not match the communication format set for SSIE, operation is not guaranteed.

32.6.2 Master-mode Communication

SSIE operates in master mode with SSICR.MST = 1. The SSIBCK0 and SSILRCK0/SSIFS0 signals to be used for serial data communication must be internally generated from the audio clock. These signals use the format according to the setting of SSIE. If the communication format the slave device uses does not match the communication format set for SSIE, the operation is unpredictable.

32.6.3 Transmission

SSIE transmits serial data to the other-party device when the SSICR.TEN bit is 1 and the SSICR.REN bit is 0. If the communication format the other-party device uses does not match the communication format set for SSIE, the operation is unpredictable.

32.6.4 Reception

SSIE receives serial data from the other-party device when the SSICR.TEN bit is 0 and the SSICR.REN bit is 1. If the communication format the other-party device uses does not match the communication format set for SSIE, the operation is unpredictable.

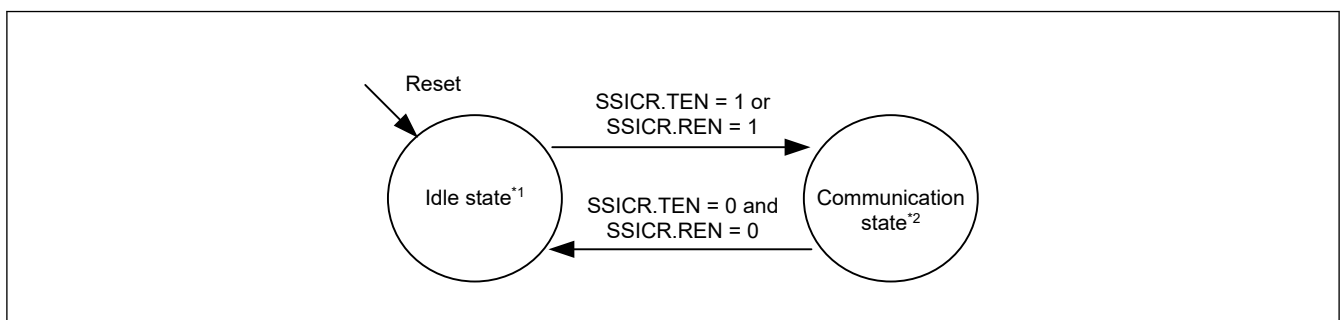
32.6.5 Transmission and Reception

SSIE transmits and receives serial data to and from the other-party device when the SSICR.TEN bit is 1 and the SSICR.REN bit is 1. If the communication format the other-party device uses does not match the communication format set for SSIE, the operation is unpredictable.

32.7 Operation

SSIE has the following two main operation states [Figure 32.43](#) shows SSIE state transition.

- Idle state (SSISR.IIRQ = 1)
- Communication state (SSISR.IIRQ = 0).

**Figure 32.43 SSIE state transition**

Note: See [section 32.8.1. Start Communication](#) for details of the idle state.

See [section 32.8.2. Transmission](#) for details of the communication state.

32.7.1 Idle State

In this state, communication of SSIE is halted. If, however, the SSICR.MST bit is 1, output of the BCK and LR clock/frame synchronization signals to external pins can be controlled according to the settings of SSIOFR.BCKASTP and SSIOFR.LRCONT bits. This function is common to all formats. For details, see [Table 32.14](#).

Table 32.14 Output from external pins in the idle state

SSICR.MST	SSIOFR.BCKASTP	SSIOFR.LRCONT	Output from pins		
			SSIBCK0	SSILRCK0/SSIFS0	SSITXD0/SSIDATA0
0	—	—	Stop	Stop	Stop
1	0	0	Supply	Stop	Stop
1	0	1	Supply	Supply	Stop
1	1	0	Stop	Stop	Stop
1	1	1	Stop	Supply	Stop

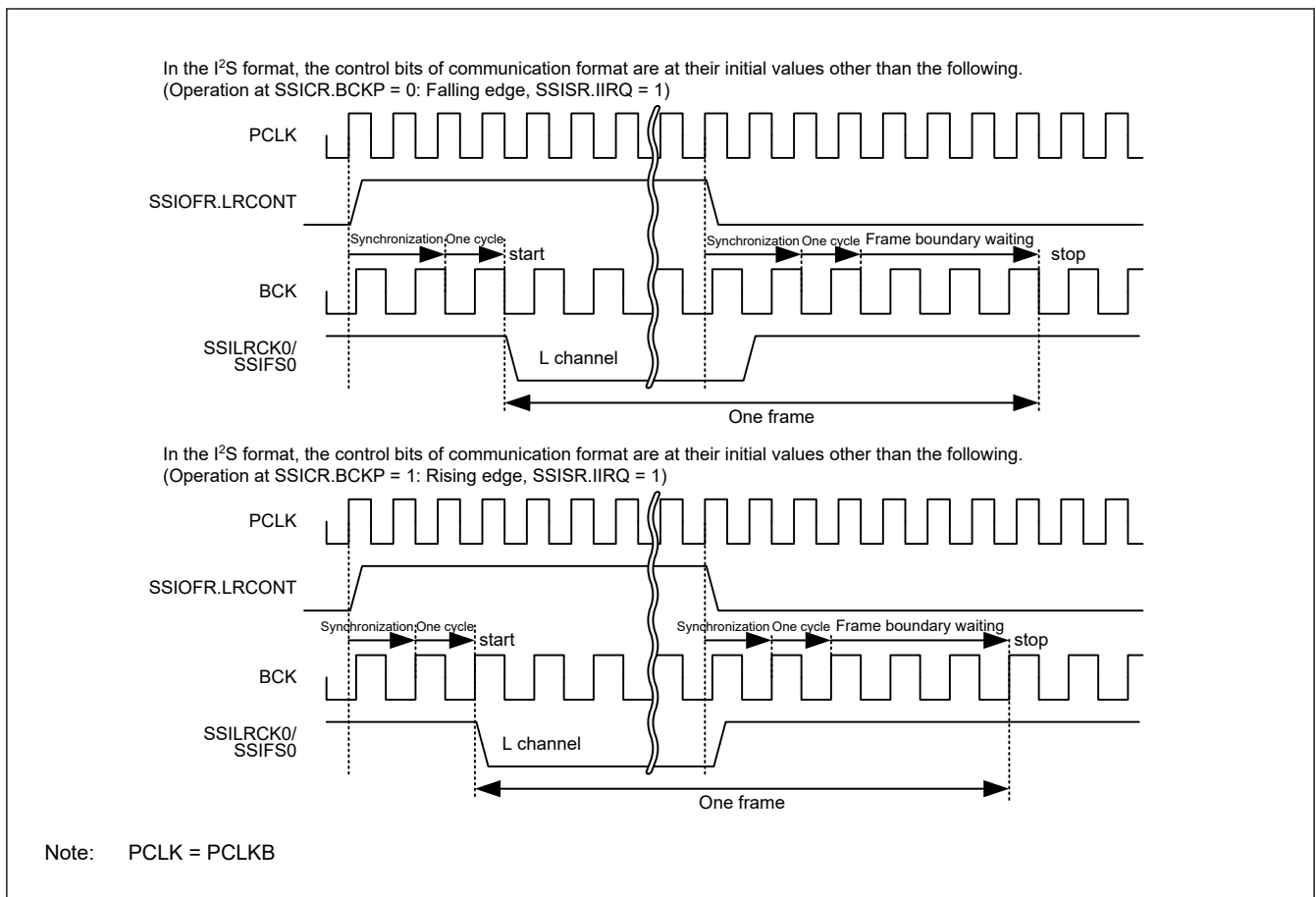


Figure 32.44 Example of disabling LR clock/frame synchronization continuation by SSIOFR.LRCONT

Note: To stop the output to the SSILRCK0/SSIFS0 pin with SSIOFR.LRCONT when SSIE is in the idle state in master-mode communication (SSICR.MST = 1), note the following: The output stops when the value of the SSIOFR.LRCONT bit is changed from 1 to 0. Make sure that the other-party device is not affected.

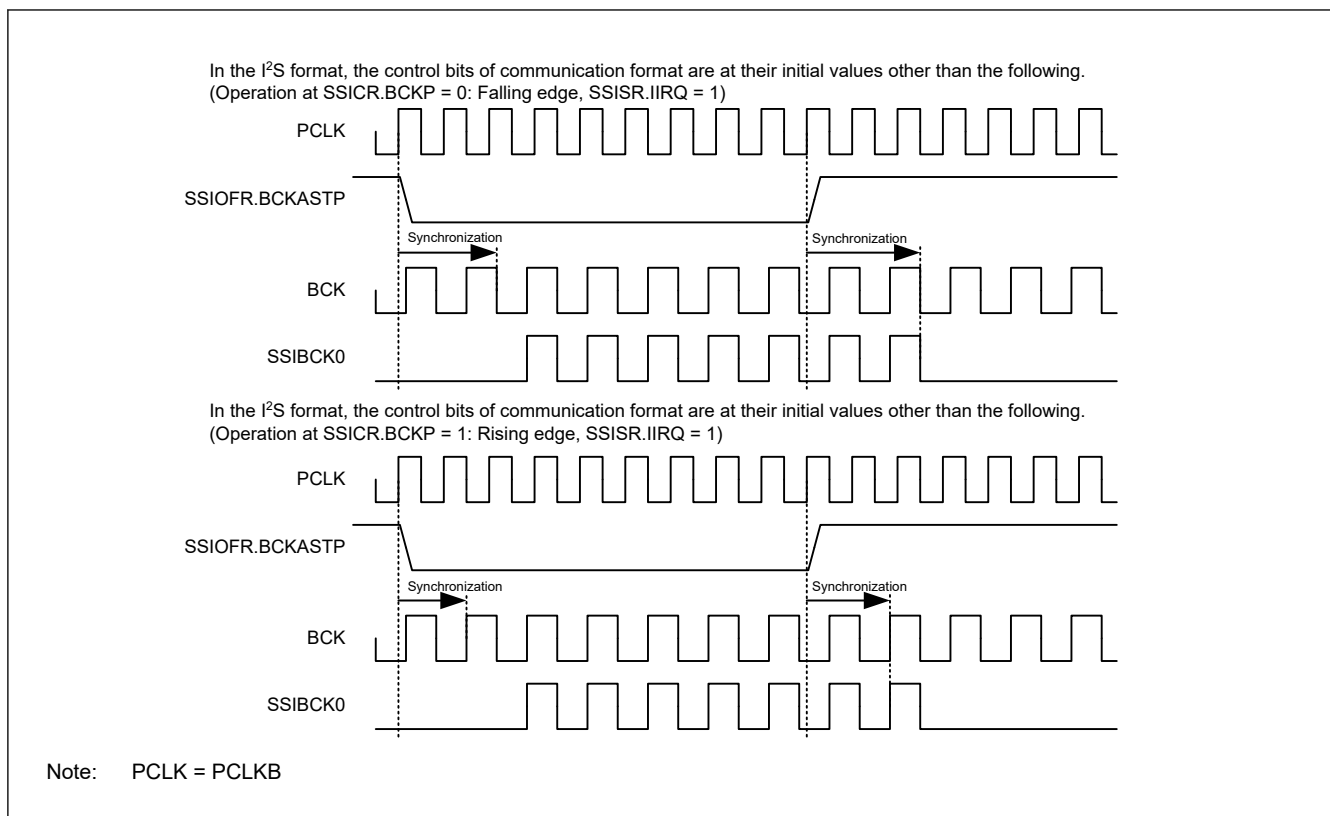


Figure 32.45 Example of stopping SSIBCK0 with SSIOFR.BCKASTP

Note: To stop the output to the SSIBCK0 pin with SSIOFR.BCKASTP in master-mode communication (SSICR.MST = 1) and while SSIE is in the idle state, note the following: The output stops when the value of the SSIOFR.BCKASTP bit is changed from 0 to 1. So, make sure that the other-party device is not affected.

32.7.2 Communication States

In this state, SSIE is in communication. [Figure 32.46](#) shows transitions of communication states and [Table 32.15](#) lists the conditions for transition. If the transition condition is not satisfied, the state does not transit.

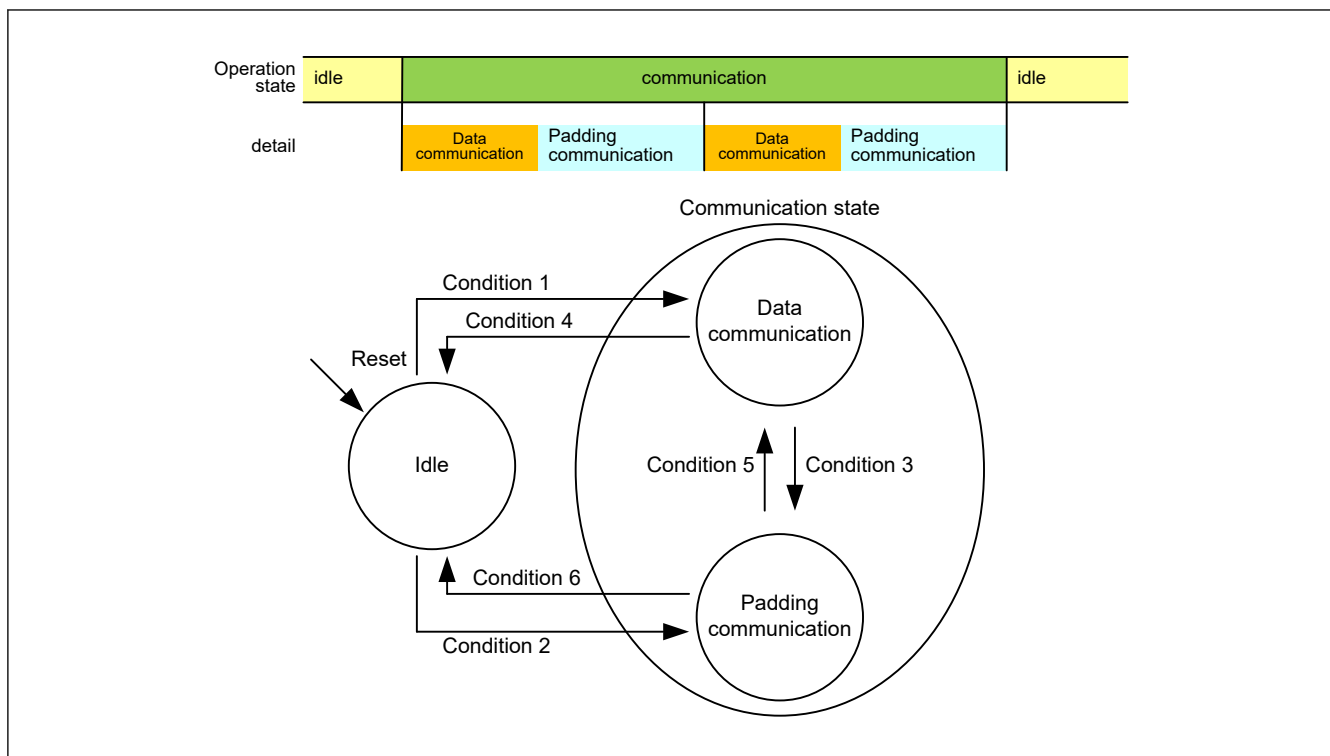


Figure 32.46 Communication state transition

Table 32.15 Condition for communication state transition

Condition number	Condition for transition
1	Writing SSICR.TEN = 1 or SSICR.REN = 1 while SSICR.SDTA = 0 or in the setting without padding bits.
2	Writing SSICR.TEN = 1 or SSICR.REN = 1 while SSICR.SDTA = 1 and in the setting with padding bits.
3	The following three conditions are all met: - SSICR.TEN = 1 or SSICR.REN = 1 - In the setting with padding bits - The last bit of the data words has been transferred.
4	Both the following two conditions are met: - SSICR.SDTA = 1 or without padding bits - While SSICR.TEN = 0 and SSICR.REN = 0, the last bit of the data words in a frame has been transferred.
5	Transfer of the last padding bit is completed while SSICR.TEN = 1 or SSICR.REN = 1
6	Both the following two conditions are met: - SSICR.SDTA = 0 and with padding bits - While SSICR.TEN = 0 and SSICR.REN = 0, the last padding bit has been transferred.

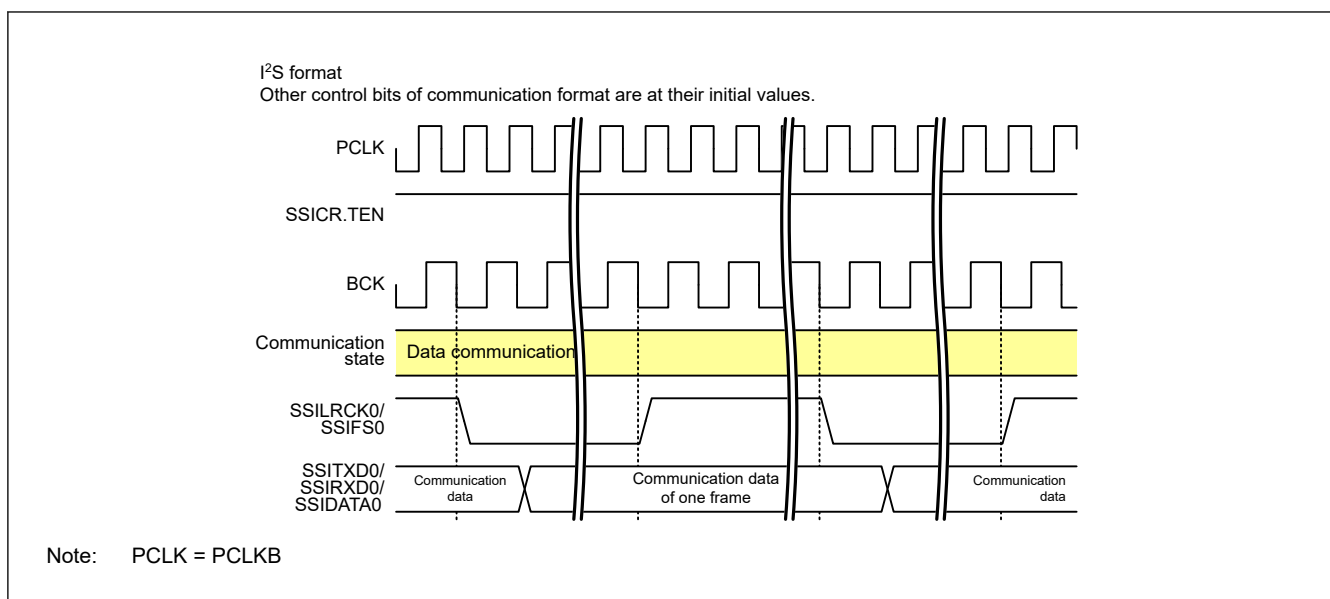
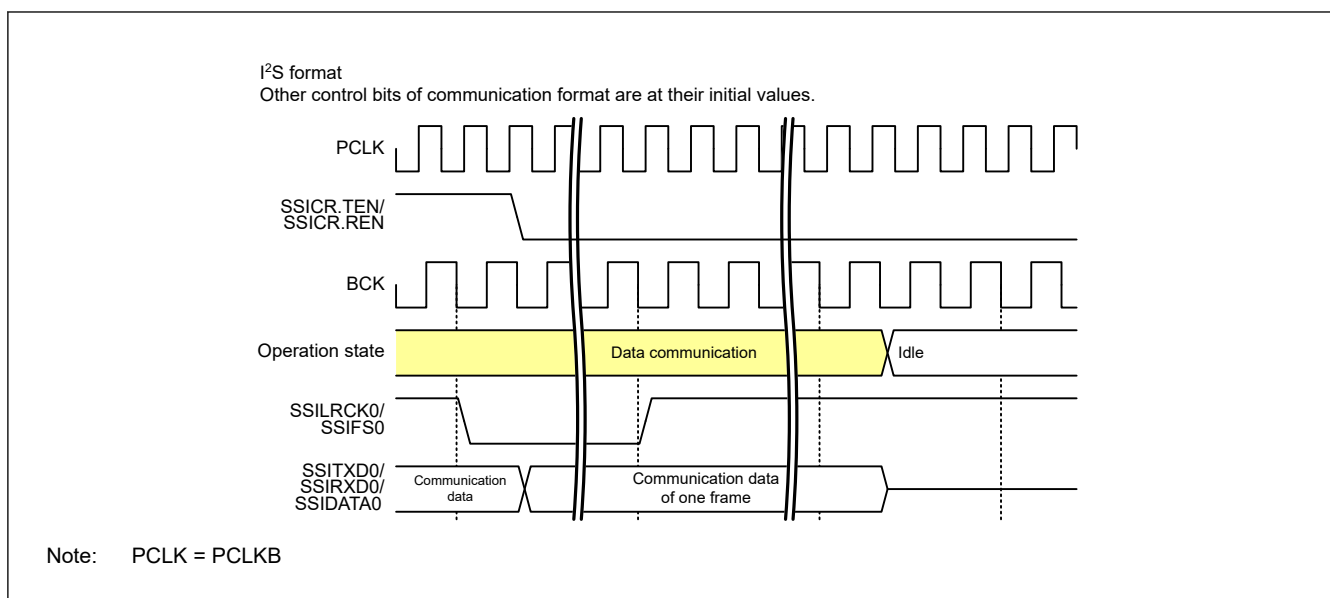
See Table 32.11 for the setting with or without padding bits.

32.7.2.1 Data Communication State

In this state, SSIE is in communication. Data of the data word length set with the SSICR.DWL[2:0] bits is transmitted, received, or transmitted and received.

- State transition in the setting without padding bits

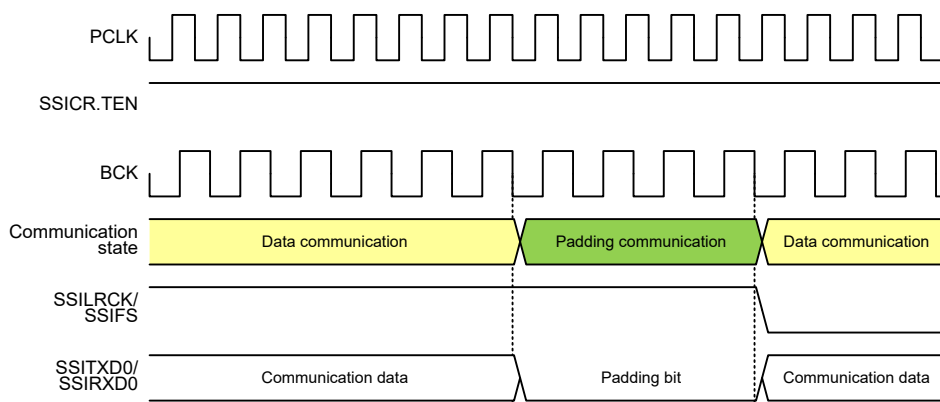
During communication (SSISR.IIRQ = 0), SSIE is in data communication for all time. By disabling transmission and reception (SSICR.TEN = 0, SSICR.REN = 0), SSIE transits to the idle state. For details, see Figure 32.47 and Figure 32.48.

**Figure 32.47 Continuation of the data communication****Figure 32.48 Halt from the data communication (without padding bits)**

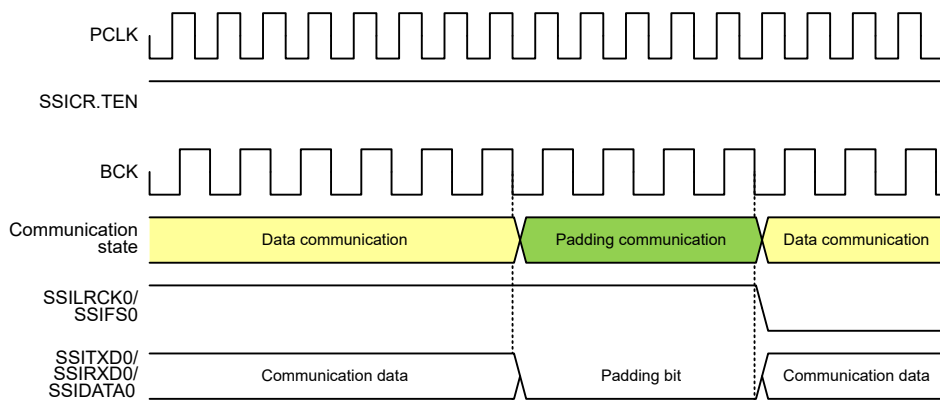
- State transition in the setting with padding bits

When SSIE ends transfer of the last bit of a data word during communication (SSISR.IIRQ = 0), SSIE transitions from the data communication state to the padding communication state in [Figure 32.49](#). Except in the status with SSICR.SDTA = 1 and transmission and reception disabled (SSICR.TEN = 0 and SSICR.REN = 0), SSIE transitions from the data communication state to the idle state when it stops communication in [Figure 32.50](#).

I²S format,
Data word length: 20 bits,
System word length: 24 bits
Other control bits of communication format are at their initial values.



I²S format,
Data word length: 20 bits,
System word length: 24 bits
Other control bits of communication format are at their initial values.



Note: PCLK = PCLKB

Figure 32.49 Transition from data communication to padding communication

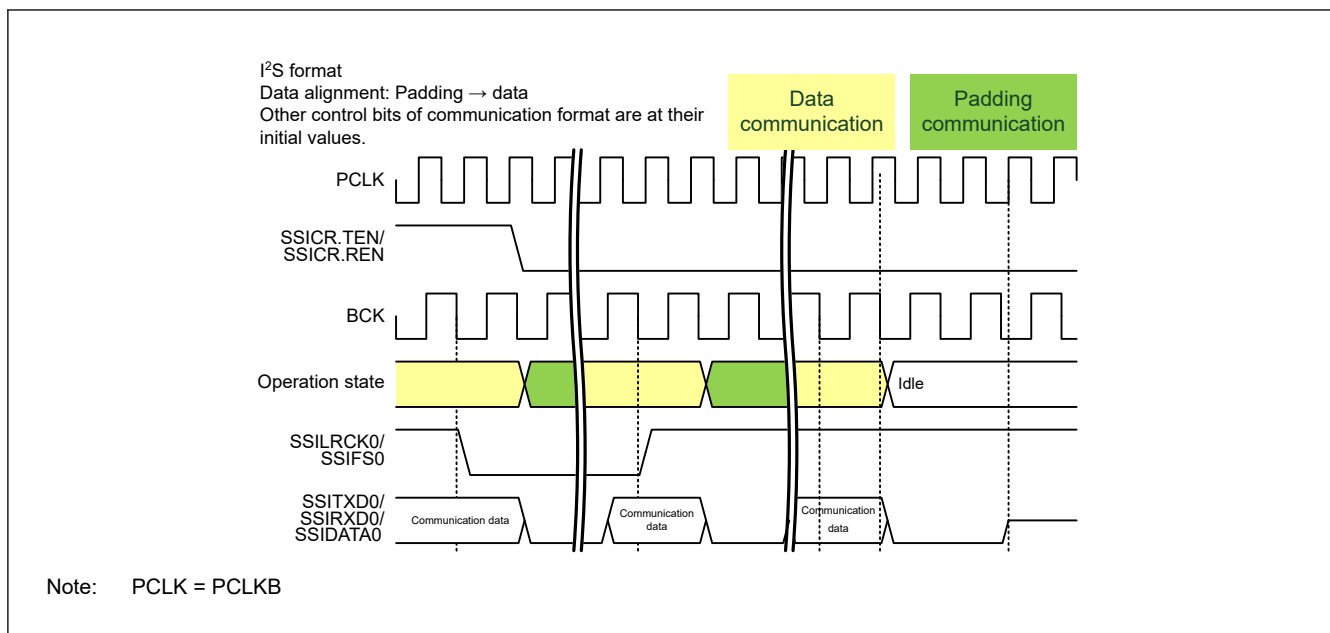


Figure 32.50 Halt from data communication (with padding bits)

32.7.2.2 Padding Communication

In this state, SSIE is in communication. The padding bits set with the SSICR.SWL[2:0] bits and SSICR.DWL[2:0] bits are transmitted, received, or transmitted and received.

- State Transition in the Setting with Padding Bits

When SSIE ends transfer of the last padding bit during communication (SSISR.IIRQ = 0), SSIE transitions to the data communication state in [Figure 32.49](#). If SSIE is in the status with SSICR.SDTA = 0 and transmission and reception disabled (SSICR.TEN = 0 and SSICR.REN = 0), SSIE transitions from the padding communication state to the idle state when it stops communication in [Figure 32.51](#).

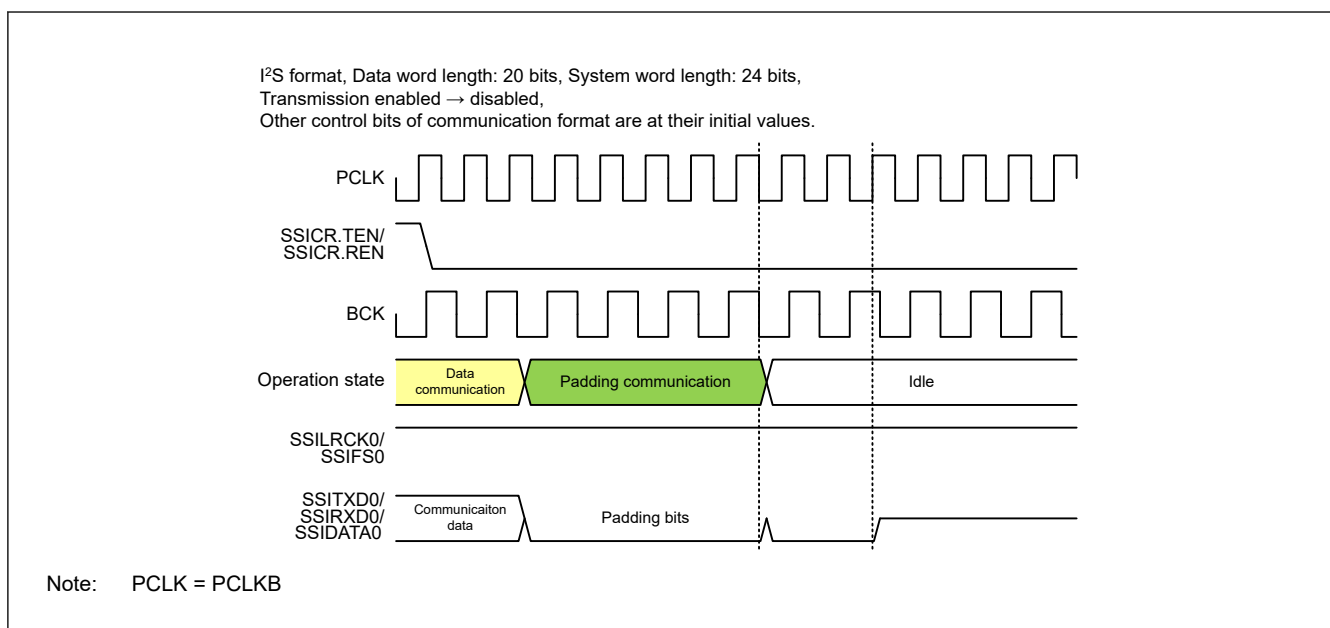


Figure 32.51 Halt from the padding communication

32.8 Communication Operation

[Figure 32.52](#) shows the communication flow of SSIE.

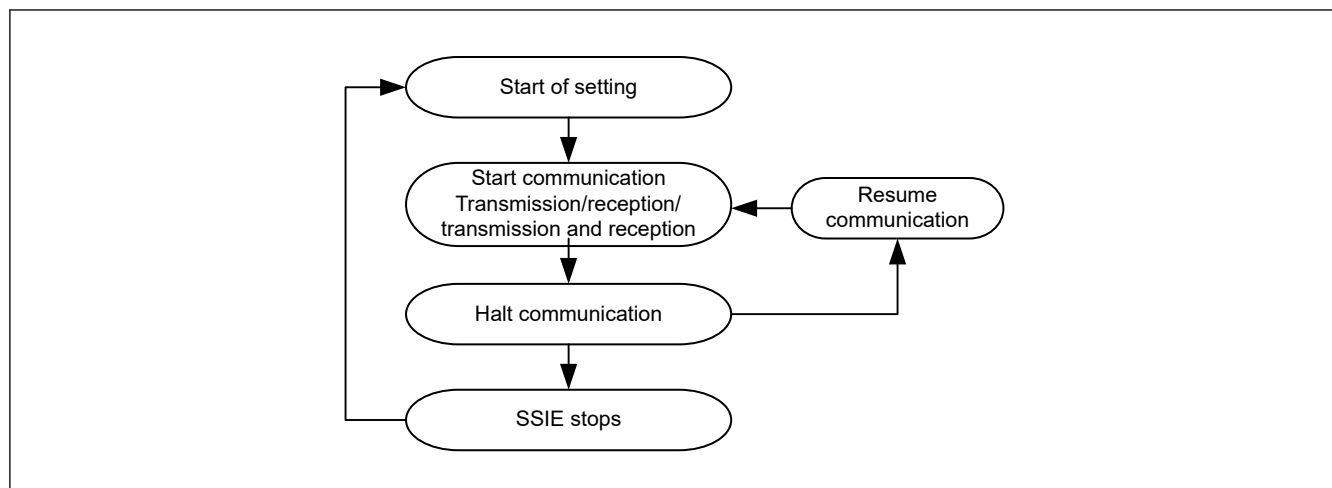


Figure 32.52 SSIE communication operation

The procedure of each operation is described from [section 32.8.1. Start Communication](#) to [section 32.8.7. Resume Communication](#).

32.8.1 Start Communication

This section describes how to start communication of SSIE. [Figure 32.53](#) shows the procedure to start communication. Be sure to follow the procedure. See [section 32.8.2. Transmission](#) for transmission operation and [section 32.8.3. Reception](#) for reception operation.

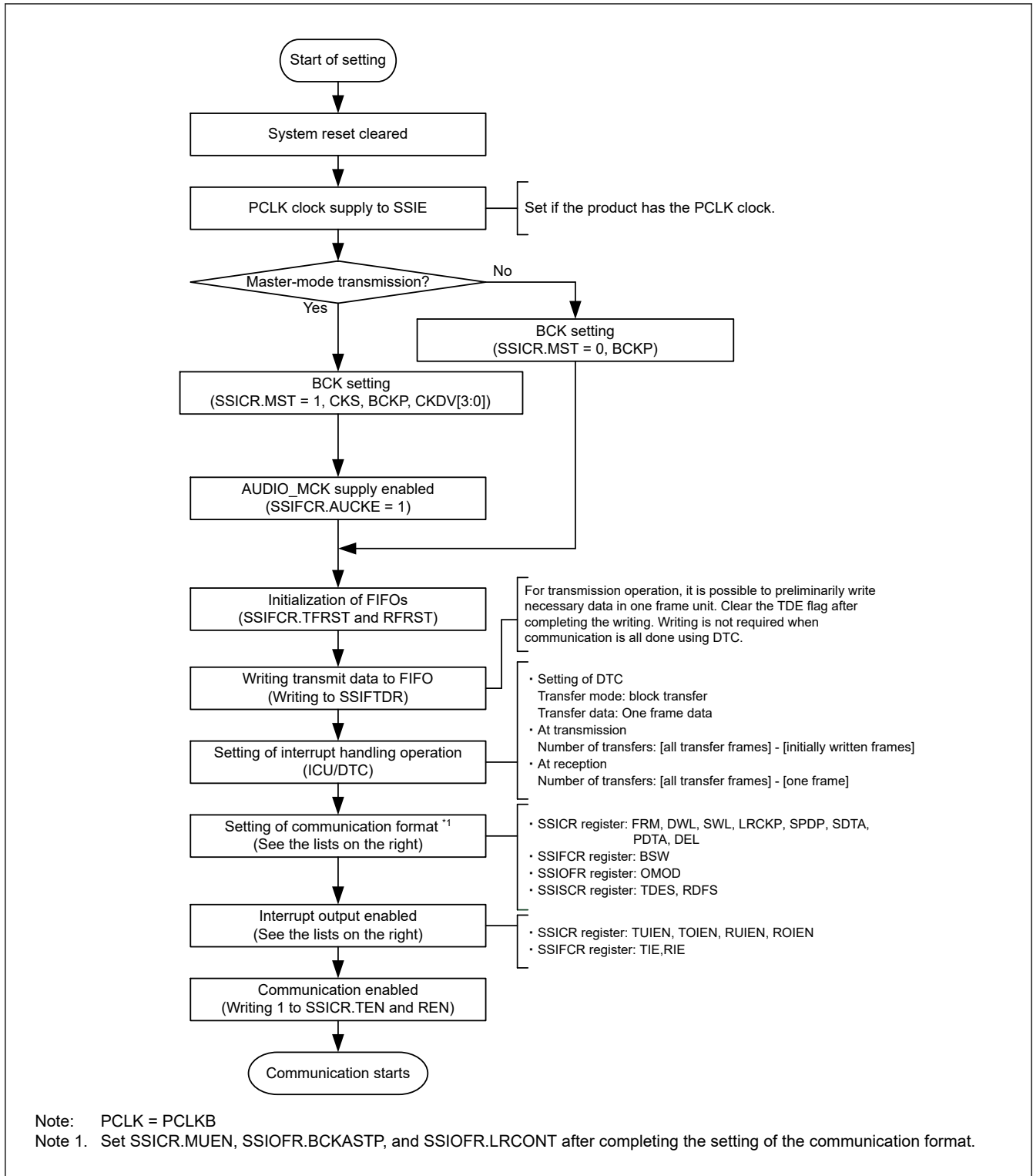


Figure 32.53 Procedure to start communication (CPU operation procedure)

SSIE can perform continuous communication based on interrupts by the DTC. For transmission, write 1 to SSIFCR.TIE, SSICR.TUIEN, and SSICR.TOIEN. For reception, write 1 to SSIFCR.RIE, SSICR.RUIEN, and SSICR.ROIEN.

32.8.2 Transmission

The transmission procedure in [Figure 32.54](#) must be followed throughout a transmission operation.

After transmission is enabled (SSICR.TEN = 1 and SSICR.REN = 0), SSIE starts transmission when a start trigger is generated by SSILRCK0/SSIFS0 with the serial data for at least a frame contained in the transmit FIFO data

register (SSIFTDR). SSIE outputs a transmit data empty interrupt to the DTC according to the TDE setting condition (SSISCR.TDES) and the status of transmit data empty interrupt enable (SSIFCR.TIE) bit specified in the communication start procedure. This interrupt requests writing to the transmit FIFO data register (SSIFTDR). In the communication start procedure, specify writing to the transmit FIFO data register (SSIFTDR) as the DTC operation in response to the transmit data empty interrupt. With this setting, SSIE can continuously transmit data not through the CPU. The transmit data empty interrupt is generated when the free space size of the transmit FIFO data register reaches the value set in SSISCR.TDES. The number of times of writing must be specified in accordance with the free space size of the transmit FIFO data register indicated by the transmit data empty interrupt. If an error occurs, perform the error-handling procedure as instructed in the communication stop procedure.

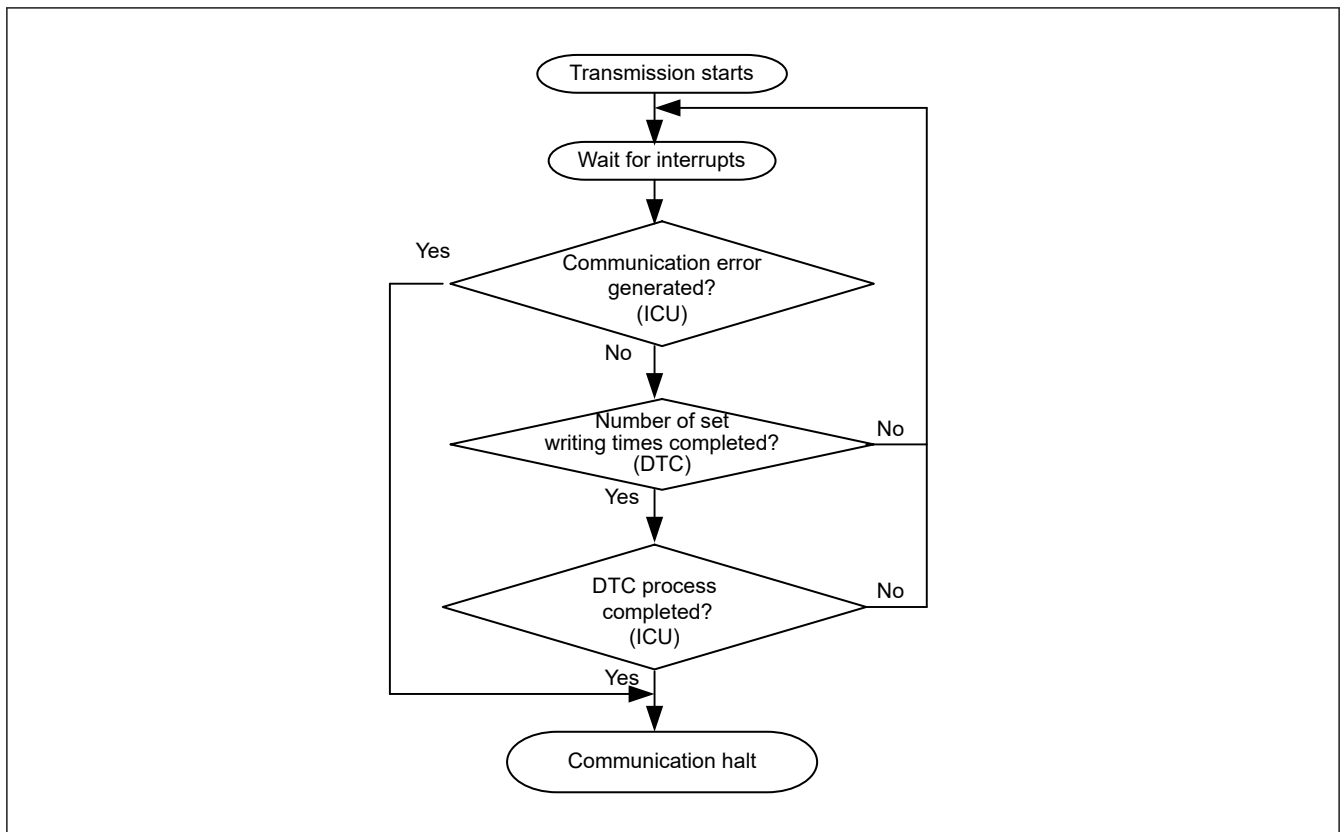


Figure 32.54 Transmission procedure

Note: The communication flow defined in SSIE uses the DTC. If you do not use the DTC, perform polling of the value 1 of SSIFSR.TDE to write data to SSIFTDR. The number of times of writing data to SSIFTDR by detecting the value 1 of SSIFSR.TDE must be in accordance with the free space size of the transmit FIFO data register specified by SSISCR.TDES. After as much transmit data as the free space size is written to SSIFTDR, the SSIFSR.TDE flag must be cleared. Continuous transmission is enabled by repeating data writing. If the SSIFSR.TDE flag is not cleared, the flag is not cleared automatically.

32.8.3 Reception

The reception procedure in [Figure 32.55](#) must be followed throughout a reception operation.

After reception is enabled (SSICR.TEN = 0 and SSICR.REN = 1), SSIE starts reception when a start trigger is generated by SSILRCK0/SSIFS0. SSIE outputs a receive data full interrupt to the DTC according to the RDF setting condition (SSISCR.RDFS) and the status of receive data full interrupt enable (SSIFCR.RIE) bit specified in the communication start procedure. This interrupt requests data reading from the receive FIFO data register (SSIFRDR). In the communication start procedure, specify reading from the receive FIFO data register (SSIFRDR) as the DTC operation in response to the receive data full interrupt. With this setting, SSIE can continuously read data not through the CPU. The receive data full interrupt is generated when data as much as the capacity of the receive FIFO data register has been stored. The number of times of reading must be specified in accordance with the data size of the receive FIFO data register indicated by the receive data full interrupt. If an error occurs, perform the error-handling procedure as instructed in the communication stop procedure.

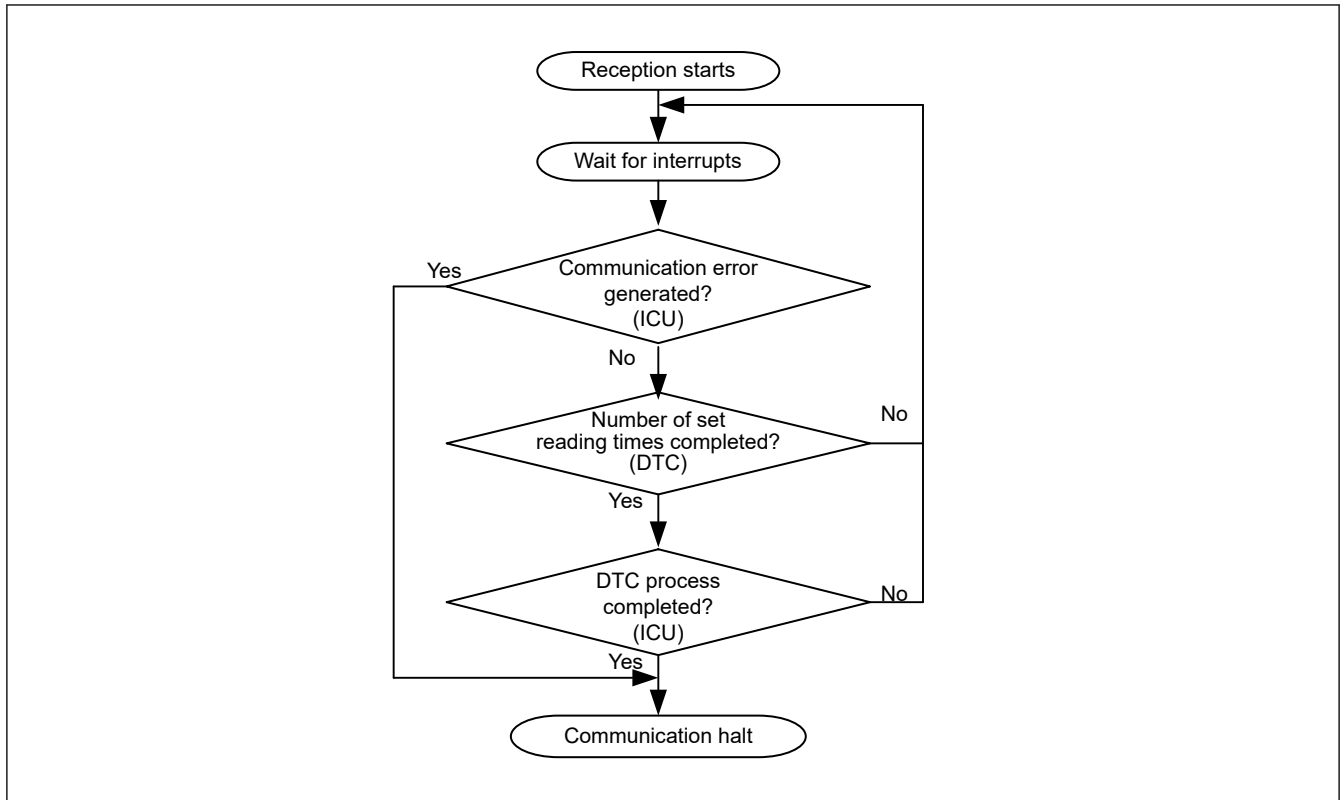


Figure 32.55 Reception procedure

Note: The communication flow defined in SSIE uses the DTC. If you do not use the DTC, perform polling of the value 1 of SSIFSR.RDF to read data from SSIFRDR. The number of times of reading data from SSIFRDR by detecting the value 1 of SSIFSR.RDF must be in accordance with the receive data storage capacity of the receive FIFO data register specified by SSISCR.RDFS. After received data is read from SSIFRDR, the SSIFSR.RDF flag must be cleared. Continuous reception is enabled by repeating data reading. If the SSIFSR.RDF flag is not cleared, the flag is not cleared automatically.

32.8.4 Transmission and Reception

After transmission and reception are enabled (SSICR.TEN = 1 and SSICR.REN = 1), SSIE starts transmission and reception when a start trigger is generated by SSILRCK0/SSIFS0 with the serial data for at least a frame contained in the transmit FIFO data register (SSIFTDR). SSIE can continuously transmit and receive data by performing the procedures described in [section 32.8.2. Transmission](#) and [section 32.8.3. Reception](#), respectively. For how to stop transmission and reception, see [section 32.8.5. Halt Communication](#).

32.8.5 Halt Communication

This section describes how to halt communication of SSIE. [Figure 32.56](#) shows the procedure to halt communication. Be sure to follow the procedure.

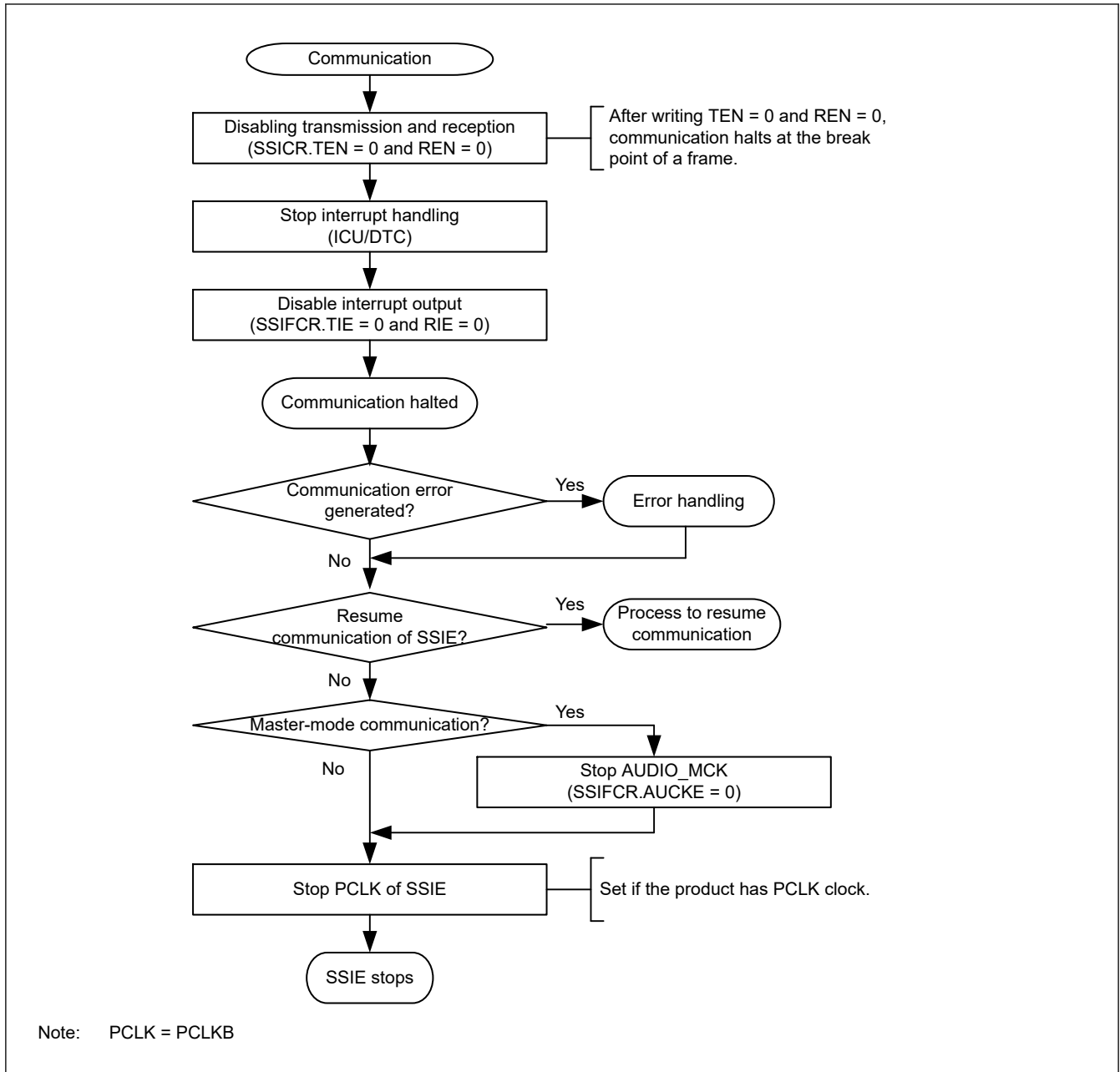


Figure 32.56 Procedure to halt communication (CPU operation procedure)

To halt the communication of SSIE, supply of the following clocks are required until the SSISR.IIRQ bit indicates an idle state.

- Input clock from the SSIBCK0 pin when SSICR.MST = 0
- AUDIO_MCK when SSICR.MST = 1

To resume communication of SSIE in the previous setting, see [section 32.8.7. Resume Communication](#).

Note: When communication of SSIE is halted according to the procedure to halt communication in [Figure 32.56](#), resume communication according to the procedure to resume communication in [Figure 32.58](#).

32.8.6 Error Handling

SSIE has the following four errors:

- Transmit underflow error
- Transmit overflow error
- Receive underflow error

- Receive overflow error.

When an underflow error or overflow error is generated, SSIE need to be restarted. Follow the procedure to halt communication in [Figure 32.56](#) and error-handling procedure in [Figure 32.57](#).

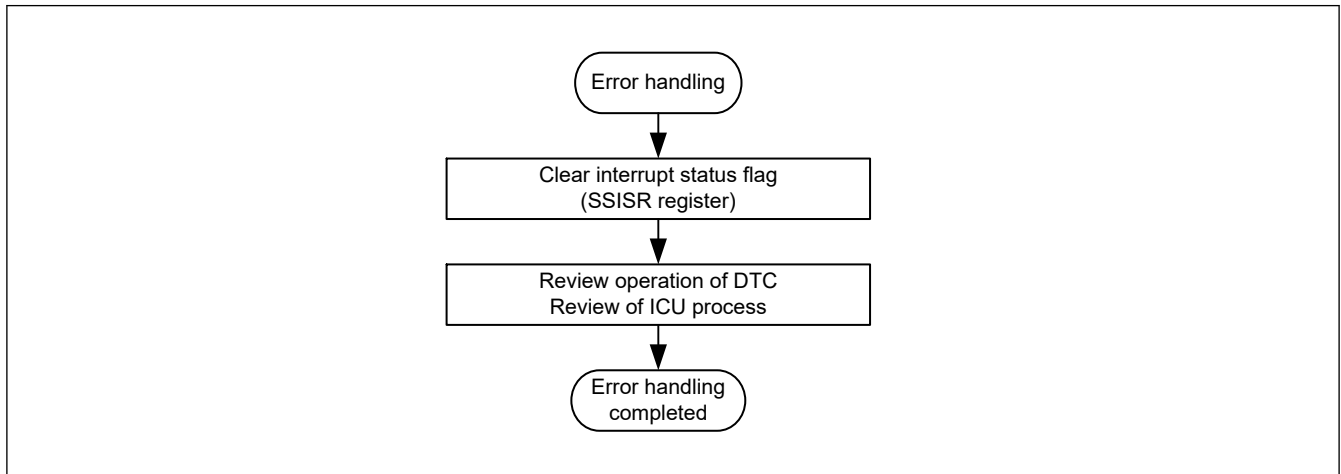


Figure 32.57 Error-handling procedure

Four error operations are described as follows. When the interrupt output enable bit of the SSICR register is enabled and error flags are set, an error interrupt is generated. See [section 32.4.2. SSISR : Status Register](#) for the setting conditions of error flags.

(1) Transmit underflow error

If a transmit underflow error occurs, review the number of times of writing data to the transmit FIFO data register (SSIFTDR) in response to a transmit data empty interrupt. After a transmit underflow error occurs, SSIE outputs 0s as data. To normally output the serial data written to the transmit FIFO data register (SSIFTDR) to the SSITXD0/SSIDATA0 pin, follow the procedure to halt communication in [Figure 32.56](#) and error-handling procedure in [Figure 32.57](#). After this error occurs, serial data is consumed as usual. If you resume communication, write the serial data from the beginning.

(2) Transmit overflow error

If a transmit overflow error occurs, review the number of times of writing data to the transmit FIFO data register (SSIFTDR) in response to transmit data empty interrupts. The serial data written to the transmit FIFO data register (SSIFTDR) that caused the transmit overflow error becomes invalid. This error can occur regardless of whether a transmission operation is being done. To recover from the error, follow the procedure to halt communication in [Figure 32.56](#) and error-handling procedure in [Figure 32.57](#). When you resume communication, deal with the invalid serial data appropriately.

(3) Receive underflow error

If a receive underflow error occurs, review the number of times of reading data from the receive FIFO data register (SSIFRDR) in response to receive data full interrupts. The values read from the receive FIFO data register (SSIFRDR) that caused the receive underflow error are undefined. This error can occur regardless of whether a reception operation is being done. To recover from the error, follow the procedure to halt communication in [Figure 32.56](#) and error-handling procedure in [Figure 32.57](#).

(4) Receive overflow error

If a receive overflow error occurs, review the number of times of reading data from the receive FIFO data register (SSIFRDR) in response to receive data full interrupts. The receive data that caused the receive overflow error cannot be stored in the receive FIFO data register (SSIFRDR). To recover from the error, follow the procedure to halt communication in [Figure 32.56](#) and error-handling procedure in [Figure 32.57](#).

32.8.7 Resume Communication

When you resume the communication using SSIE, follow the communication resume procedure in [Figure 32.58](#). The communication resume procedure is designed on the assumption that you resume the communication stopped by the

communication stop procedure without changing any settings. If you want to change clock and slave/master settings, use and follow the communication start procedure in [Figure 32.53](#). For details about the transmission operation and reception operation after starting communication, see [section 32.8.2. Transmission](#) and [section 32.8.3. Reception](#), respectively.

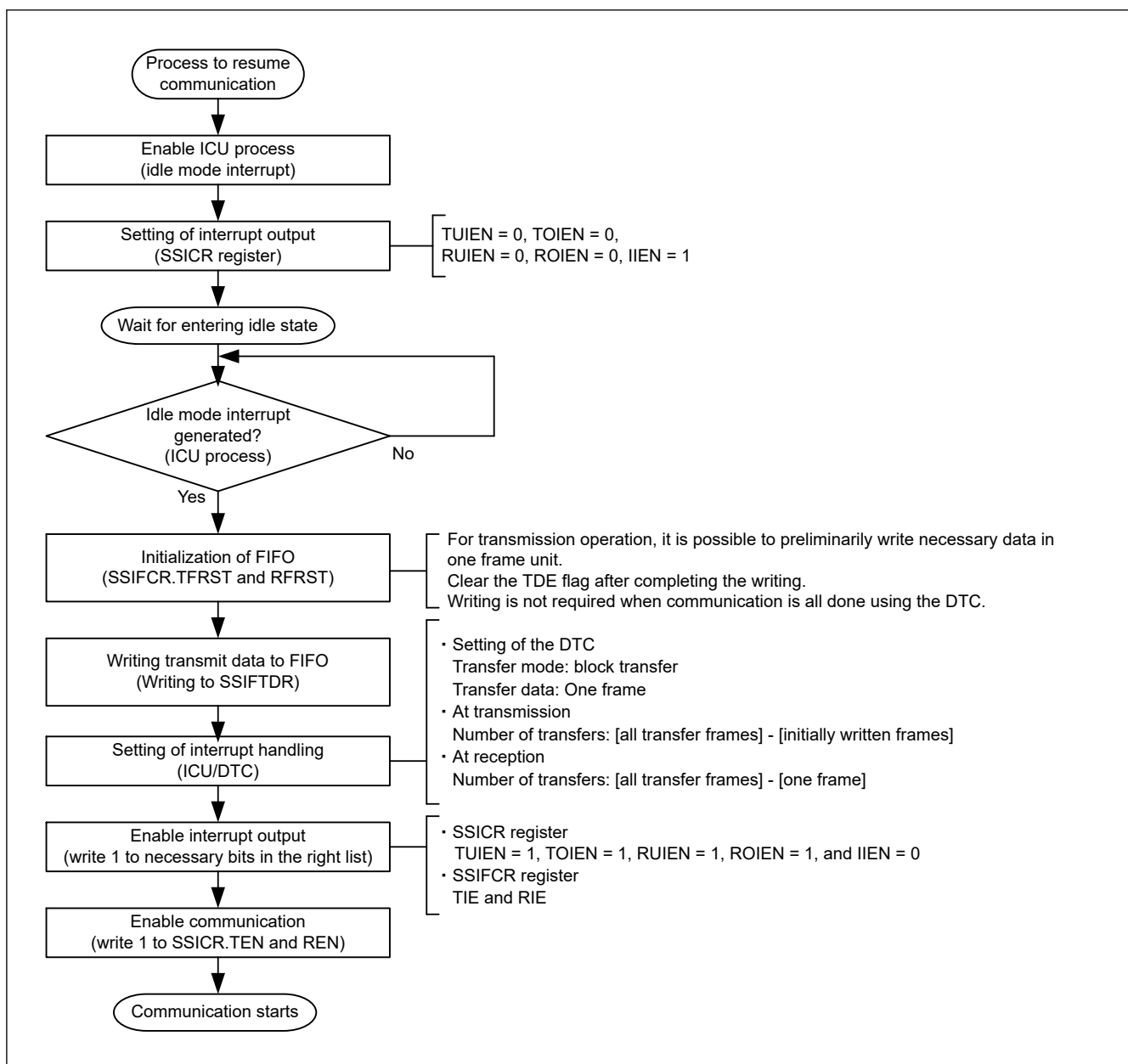


Figure 32.58 Procedure to resume communication (CPU operation procedure)

32.9 Interrupts

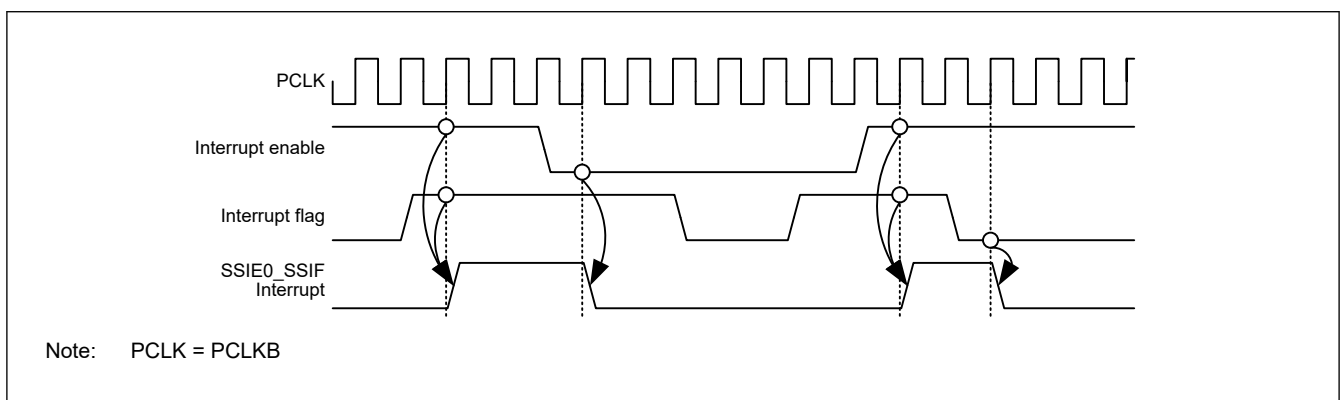
[Table 32.16](#) lists the interrupt sources. Set enable/disable of interrupt output of each source with the TUIEN, TOIEN, RUIEN, ROIEN, and I IEN bits in the SSICR register and the TIE and RIE bits in the SSIFCR register.

Table 32.16 SSIE interrupt sources

Channel	Interrupt source	Description	Interrupt flag	DTC activation
SSIE0	SSIE0_SSIF	- Transmit underflow interrupt - Transmit overflow interrupt - Receive underflow interrupt - Receive overflow interrupt - Idle interrupt	SSISR.TUIRQ SSISR.TOIRQ SSISR.RUIRQ SSISR.ROIRQ SSISR.IIRQ	Not possible
	SSIE0_SSIRXI	Receive data full interrupt	SSIFSR.RDF	Possible
	SSIE0_SSITXI	Transmit data empty interrupt	SSIFSR.TDE	Possible

32.9.1 SSIE0_SSIF Interrupt

This interrupt source combines five interrupts. Enable output of necessary interrupts before using SSIE. The five interrupts are operated by using the flags assigned to individual interrupts and interrupt output enable bits. To clear an interrupt, set the interrupt enable to 0 or clear the interrupt flag to 0.

**Figure 32.59 Timing diagram of the common interrupt source, SSIE0_SSIF**

- Transmit underflow interrupt

As the transmit underflow interrupt, SSISR.TUIRQ is output while SSICR.TUIEN = 1. When you use SSIE for transmission, enable the output of this interrupt (SSICR.TUIEN = 1). If this interrupt occurs, follow instructions in the procedure to halt communication in [Figure 32.56](#) and error-handling procedure in [Figure 32.57](#).

- Transmit overflow interrupt

As the transmit overflow interrupt, SSISR.TOIRQ is output while SSICR.TOIEN = 1. When you use SSIE for transmission, enable the output of this interrupt (SSICR.TOIEN = 1). If this interrupt occurs, follow instructions in the procedure to halt communication in [Figure 32.56](#) and error-handling procedure in [Figure 32.57](#).

- Receive underflow interrupt

As the receive underflow interrupt, SSISR.RUIRQ is output while SSICR.RUIEN = 1. When you use SSIE for reception, enable the output of this interrupt (SSICR.RUIEN = 1). If this interrupt occurs, follow instructions in the procedure to halt communication in [Figure 32.56](#) and error-handling procedure in [Figure 32.57](#).

- Receive overflow interrupt

As the receive overflow interrupt, SSISR.ROIRQ is output while SSICR.ROIEN = 1. When you use SSIE for reception, enable the output of this interrupt (SSICR.ROIEN = 1). If this interrupt occurs, follow instructions in the procedure to halt communication in [Figure 32.56](#) and error-handling procedure in [Figure 32.57](#).

- Idle mode interrupt

As the idle mode interrupt, SSISR.IIRQ is output while SSICR.IIEN = 1. This interrupt is used to make sure that communication has stopped fully.

32.9.2 SSIE0_SSITXI Interrupt

The transmit data empty interrupt is a pulse interrupt that is output when the following condition is met:

- SSIFCR.TIE = 1 and SSIFSR.TDE = 1
 SSIE operation: When the value of SSIFSR.TDE changes from 0 to 1 while the value of SSIFCR.TIE is 1
 CPU instruction: When the value of SSIFCR.TIE changes from 0 to 1 while the value of SSIFSR.TDE is 1

This interrupt is subject to the interrupt suppression function. If an interrupt condition for this interrupt occurs when the DTC is busy (when the DTC cannot accept interrupts), the interrupt suppression function holds the output of this interrupt. The held interrupt will be output after the DTC is enabled to accept interrupts. For details, see [Figure 32.60](#).

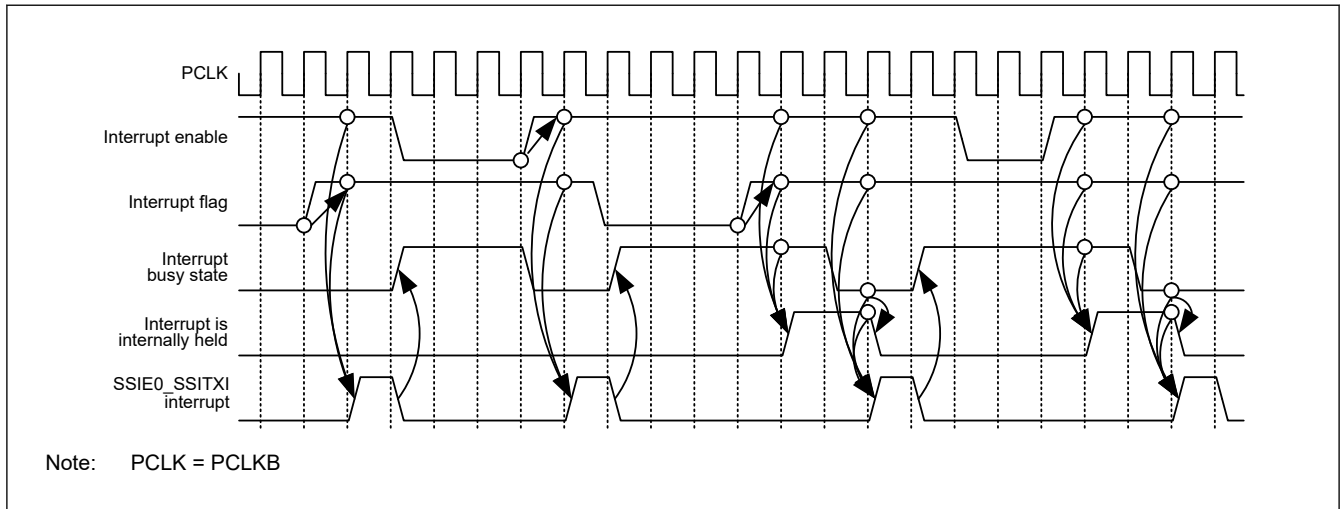


Figure 32.60 SSIE0_SSITXI interrupt timing diagram

32.9.3 SSIE0_SSIRXI Interrupt

The receive data full interrupt is a pulse interrupt that is output when the following condition is met:

- SSIFCR.RIE = 1 and SSIFSR.RDF = 1.
 SSIE operation: When the value of SSIFSR.RDF changes from 0 to 1 while the value of SSIFCR.RIE is 1
 CPU instruction: When the value of SSIFCR.RIE changes from 0 to 1 while the value of SSIFSR.RDE is 1

This interrupt is subject to the interrupt suppression function. If an interrupt condition for this interrupt occurs when the DTC is busy (when the DTC cannot accept interrupts), the interrupt suppression function holds the output of this interrupt. The held interrupt will be output after the DTC is enabled to accept interrupts. The behavior of this interrupt is the same as the behavior shown in [Figure 32.60](#).

32.10 Software Resets

SSIE has three software reset bits to reset its states.

- SSIE software reset (SSIFCR.SSIRST)
- Transmit FIFO data register reset (SSIFCR.TFRST)
- Receive FIFO data register reset (SSIFCR.RFRST)

32.10.1 Software Reset Procedure

This section describes the procedures for the three types of software resets.

(1) SSIE software reset

For the SSIE software reset bit (SSIFCR.SSIRST), follow the procedure shown in [Figure 32.61](#). After a reset, the same setting is applied when it is resumed. To change the settings of clocks and slave/master mode, follow the procedure to start communication in [Figure 32.53](#). See [section 32.8.2. Transmission](#) and [section 32.8.3. Reception](#) respectively for transmission and reception after communication is resumed.

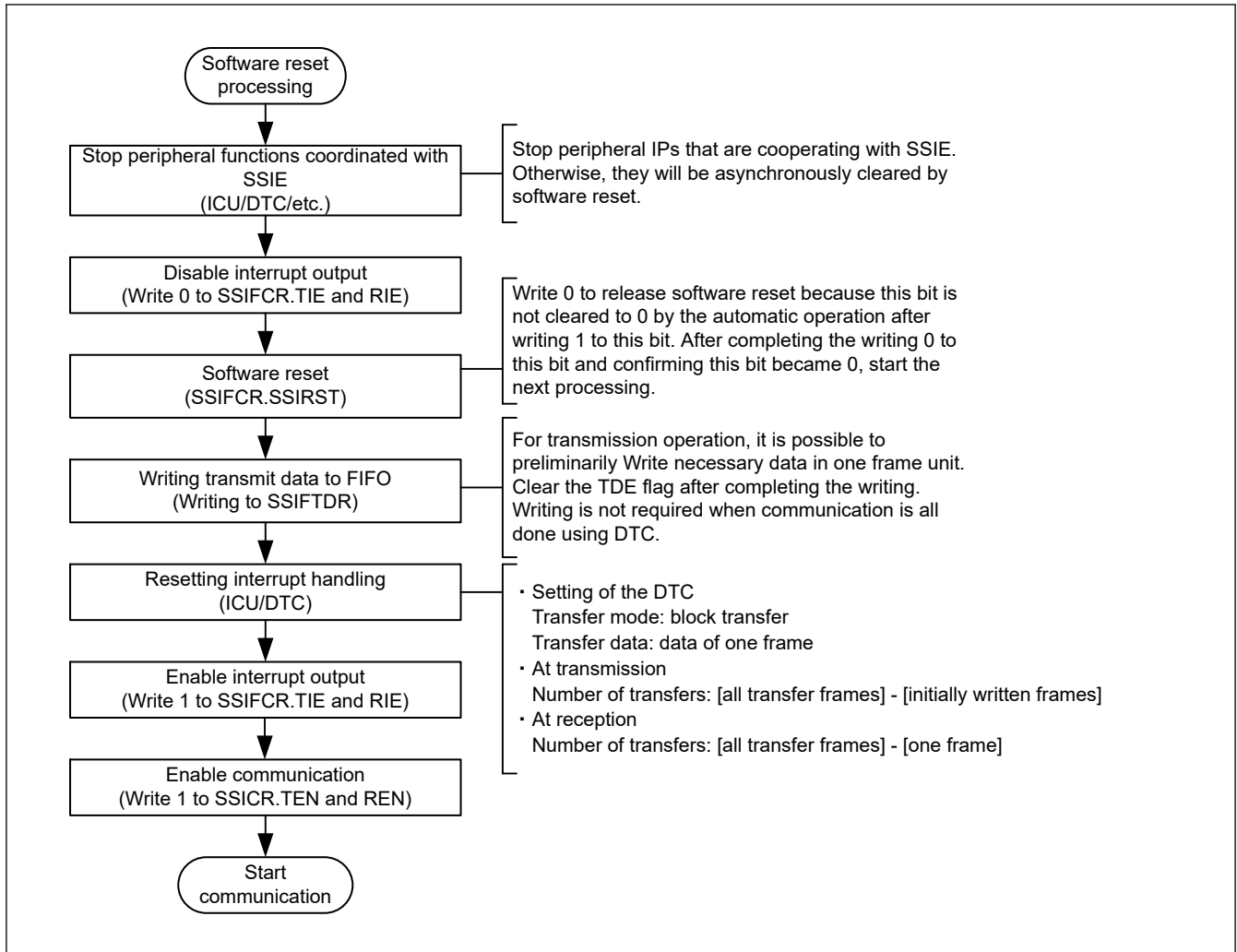


Figure 32.61 Software reset procedure (CPU operation procedure)

(2) Transmit FIFO data register reset

To perform a transmit FIFO data register reset, follow instructions in the procedure to start communication in [Figure 32.53](#) and procedure to resume communication in [Figure 32.58](#).

(3) Receive FIFO data register reset

To perform a receive FIFO data register reset, follow instructions in the procedure to start communication in [Figure 32.53](#) and procedure to resume communication in [Figure 32.58](#).

32.11 Notes

32.11.1 Notes for Slave-mode Communication

32.11.1.1 SSIBCK0 Control

In slave-mode communication (SSICR.MST = 0), SSIE needs supply of SSIBCK0. To stop BCK on the master side, make sure that SSIE is in the idle state (SSISR.IIRQ = 1). If BCK is stopped before SSIE becomes idle, take the procedure to start communication in [Figure 32.53](#) or wait for an idle state by taking the procedure to resume communication in [Figure 32.58](#).

32.11.1.2 SSILRCK0/SSIFS0 Pin

SSIE has the SSILRCK0/SSIFS0 pin, which indicates the synchronization of communication. When SSIE is in slave mode (SSICR.MST = 0), the communication format SSIE uses must match that of the other-party device to communicate. SSIE uses the signal input by the SSILRCK0/SSIFS0 pin only as a trigger to start communication.

32.11.2 Notes for Master-mode Communication

32.11.2.1 AUCKE Control

In master-mode communication (SSICR.MST = 1), SSIE operates with the audio clock (AUDIO_MCK). To stop SSIE completely, make sure that SSIE is in the idle state (SSISR.IIRQ = 1) and then write 0 to SSIFCR.AUCKE.

32.11.2.2 LRCONT Control

To stop the output to the SSILRCK0/SSIFS0 pin with SSIOFR.LRCONT when SSIE is in the idle state in master-mode communication (SSICR.MST = 1), note the following:

- The output stops when the value of the SSIOFR.LRCONT bit is changed from 1 to 0
- Make sure that the other-party device is not affected.

For details, see [Figure 32.44](#).

32.11.2.3 BCKASTP Control

To stop the output to the SSIBCK0 pin with SSIOFR.BCKASTP in master-mode communication (SSICR.MST = 1) and while SSIE is in the idle state, note the following:

- The output stops when the value of the SSIOFR.BCKASTP bit is changed from 0 to 1
- Make sure that the other-party device is not affected.

For details, see [Figure 32.45](#).

The BCKASTP bit cannot be used when the other-party device (which is a slave) requires the clock output from the SSIBCK0 pin before and during communication.

32.11.3 Notes for Communication Flow

32.11.3.1 When an Error Interrupt is Generated

SSIE has the following four errors.

- Transmit underflow error
- Transmit overflow error
- Receive underflow error
- Receive overflow error

When an underflow error or overflow error is generated, SSIE need to be restarted. Follow the procedure to halt communication in [Figure 32.56](#) and error-handling procedure in [Figure 32.57](#).

(1) Transmit underflow error

If a transmit underflow error occurs, review the number of times of writing data to the transmit FIFO data register (SSIFTDR) in response to a transmit data empty interrupt. After a transmit underflow error occurs, SSIE outputs 0s as data. To normally output the serial data written to the transmit FIFO data register (SSIFTDR) to the SSITXD0SSITXD0/SSIDATA0 pin, follow the procedure to halt communication in [Figure 32.56](#) and error-handling procedure in [Figure 32.57](#). After this error occurs, serial data is consumed as usual. If you resume communication, write the serial data from the beginning.

(2) Transmit overflow error

If a transmit overflow error occurs, review the number of times of writing data to the Transmit FIFO Data Register (SSIFTDR) in response to transmit data empty interrupts. The serial data written to the Transmit FIFO Data Register (SSIFTDR) that caused the transmit overflow error becomes invalid. This error can occur regardless of whether a transmission operation is being done. To recover from the error, follow the procedure to halt communication in [Figure 32.56](#) and error-handling procedure in [Figure 32.57](#). When you resume communication, deal with the invalid serial data appropriately.

(3) Receive underflow error

If a receive underflow error occurs, review the number of times of reading data from the receive FIFO data register (SSIFRDR) in response to receive data full interrupts. The values read from the receive FIFO data register (SSIFRDR) that caused the receive underflow error are undefined. This error can occur regardless of whether a reception operation is being done. To recover from the error, follow the procedure to halt communication in [Figure 32.56](#) and error-handling procedure in [Figure 32.57](#).

(4) Receive overflow error

If a receive overflow error occurs, review the number of times of reading data from the receive FIFO data register (SSIFRDR) in response to receive data full interrupts. The receive data that caused the receive overflow error cannot be stored in the receive FIFO data register (SSIFRDR). To recover from the error, follow the procedure to halt communication in [Figure 32.56](#) and error-handling procedure in [Figure 32.57](#).

32.11.3.2 Transmit Data Empty Interrupt

The communication flow defined in SSIE uses the DTC. If you do not use the DTC, perform polling of the value 1 of SSIFSR.TDE to write data to SSIFTDR. The number of times of writing data to SSIFTDR by detecting the value 1 of SSIFSR.TDE must be in accordance with the free space size of the transmit FIFO data register specified by SSISCR.TDES. After as much transmit data as the free space size is written to SSIFTDR, the SSIFSR.TDE flag must be cleared. Continuous transmission is enabled by repeating data writing. If the SSIFSR.TDE flag is not cleared, the flag is not cleared automatically.

32.11.3.3 Receive Data Full Interrupt

The communication flow defined in SSIE uses the DTC. If you do not use the DTC, perform polling of the value 1 of SSIFSR.RDF to read data from SSIFRDR. The number of times of reading data from SSIFRDR by detecting the value 1 of SSIFSR.RDF must be in accordance with the receive data storage capacity of the receive FIFO data register specified by SSISCR.RDFS. After received data is read from SSIFRDR, the SSIFSR.RDF flag must be cleared. Continuous reception is enabled by repeating data reading. If the SSIFSR.RDF flag is not cleared, the flag is not cleared automatically.

32.11.3.4 Switching Transfer Modes

1. For state transition from transmission, reception, and transmission and reception, disable transmission and reception (SSICR.TEN = 0, SSICR.REN = 0).
2. Confirm it is in the idle state (SSISR.IIRQ = 1).
3. In the idle state, set the SSICR.TEN bit or the SSICR.REN bit again and resume the transfer.

32.11.3.5 Resume Communication After Halting SSIE

When communication of SSIE is halted according to the procedure to halt communication in [Figure 32.56](#), resume communication according to the procedure to resume communication in [Figure 32.58](#).

32.11.4 Write Access Restriction

32.11.4.1 SSICR Register

If the TEN bit or REN bit is rewritten, make sure that the SSISR.IIRQ bit is in the desired status. If the value of the TEN or REN bit is changed by rewriting, subsequent operation is unpredictable. For example, when transmission or reception is enabled, check that SSISR.IIRQ is 0; when transmission or reception is disabled, check that SSISR.IIRQ is 1.

(1) TEN bit and REN bit

These bits enable/disable transmission and reception. When 1 is written to one of these bits, the corresponding communication operation starts in synchronization with a start trigger by the SSILRCK0/SSIFS0 signal. For details, see [section 32.8.2. Transmission](#), [section 32.8.3. Reception](#), and [section 32.8.4. Transmission and Reception](#). When 0 is written to this bit, the current communication operation stops at the next frame boundary. To use SSIE for both transmission and reception, always write 1 to these bits together. When stopping the communication using SSIE, always disable both transmission and reception (write 0 to the TEN and REN bits).

32.11.4.2 SSISR Register

(1) Clearing TUIRQ and TOIRQ

After communication is enabled (by changing the value of SSICR.TEN bit from 0 to 1), the transmission error flags (TOIRQ and TUIRQ in the SSISR register) are cleared. If, however, the SSISR register is read continuously, the cleared status of the transmission error flags might be unable to be read.

(2) Clearing RUIRQ and ROIRQ

After communication is enabled (by changing the value of SSICR.REN bit from 0 to 1), the reception error flags (RUIRQ and ROIRQ in the SSISR register) are cleared. If, however, the SSISR register is read continuously, the cleared status of the reception error flags might be unable to be read.

32.11.4.3 Communication State

Writing to the bits with orange-shaded area in Table 32.17 is prohibited. If written, the operation performed immediately after writing is not guaranteed.

Table 32.17 Bits protected from writing during communication

Symbol	Address (BASE+)		+0								+1							
			31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16
			15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
SSICR	0x00	+0	—	CKS	TUI EN	TOI EN	RUI EN	ROI EN	IIEN	—	FRM[1:0]		DWL[2:0]		SWL[2:0]			
		+2	—	MST	BCK P	LRC KP	SPD P	SDT A	PDT A	DEL	CKDV[3:0]				MU EN	—	TEN	REN
SSISR	0x04	+0	—	—	TUI RQ	TOI RQ	RUI RQ	ROI RQ	IIRQ	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
		+2	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
SSIFCR	0x10	+0	AUC KE	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	SSI RST	
		+2	—	—	—	—	BS W	—	—	—	—	—	—	TIE	RIE	TFR ST	RFR ST	
SSIFSR	0x14	+0	—	—	TDC[5:0]						—	—	—	—	—	—	TDE	
		+2	—	—	RDC[5:0]						—	—	—	—	—	—	RDF	
SSIFTDR	0x18	+0	SSIFTDR[31:16]															
		+2	SSIFTDR[15:0]															
SSIFRDR	0x1C	+0	SSIFRDR[31:16]															
		+2	SSIFRDR[15:0]															
SSIOFR	0x20	+0	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
		+2	—	—	—	—	—	—	BCK AST P	LRC ONT	—	—	—	—	—	—	OMOD[1:0]	
SSISCR	0x24	+0	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
		+2	—	—	—	TDES[4:0]					—	—	—	RDFS[4:0]				

33. Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC)

33.1 Overview

The Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) generates CRC codes to detect errors in the data. The bit order of CRC calculation results can be switched for LSB-first or MSB-first communication. Additionally, various CRC-generation polynomials are available. The snoop function allows the access to specific addresses to be monitored. This function is useful in applications that require CRC code to be generated automatically in certain events, such as monitoring writes to the serial transmit buffer and reads from the serial receive buffer.

Table 33.1 lists the CRC calculator specifications and Figure 33.1 shows a block diagram.

Table 33.1 CRC calculator specifications

Item	Description	
Data size	8-bit	32-bit
Data for CRC calculation*1	CRC code generated for data in 8n-bit units (where n is a natural number)	CRC code generated for data in 32n-bit units (where n is a natural number)
CRC processor unit	Operation executed on 8 bits in parallel	Operation executed on 32 bits in parallel
CRC generating polynomial	One of three generating polynomials that is selectable: [8-bit CRC] $X^8 + X^2 + X + 1$ (CRC-8) [16-bit CRC] $X^{16} + X^{15} + X^2 + 1$ (CRC-16) $X^{16} + X^{12} + X^5 + 1$ (CRC-CCITT).	One of two generating polynomials that is selectable: [32-bit CRC] $X^{32} + X^{26} + X^{23} + X^{22} + X^{16} + X^{12} + X^{11} + X^{10} + X^8 + X^7 + X^5 + X^4 + X^2 + X + 1$ (CRC-32) $X^{32} + X^{28} + X^{27} + X^{26} + X^{25} + X^{23} + X^{22} + X^{20} + X^{19} + X^{18} + X^{14} + X^{13} + X^{11} + X^{10} + X^9 + X^8 + X^6 + 1$ (CRC-32C).
CRC calculation switching	The bit order of CRC calculation results can be switched for LSB-first or MSB-first communication	
Module-stop function	Module-stop state can be set to reduce power consumption	
CRC snoop	Monitor reads from and writes to a certain register address	—

Note 1. This function cannot divide data used in CRC calculations. Write data in 8-bit or 32-bit units.

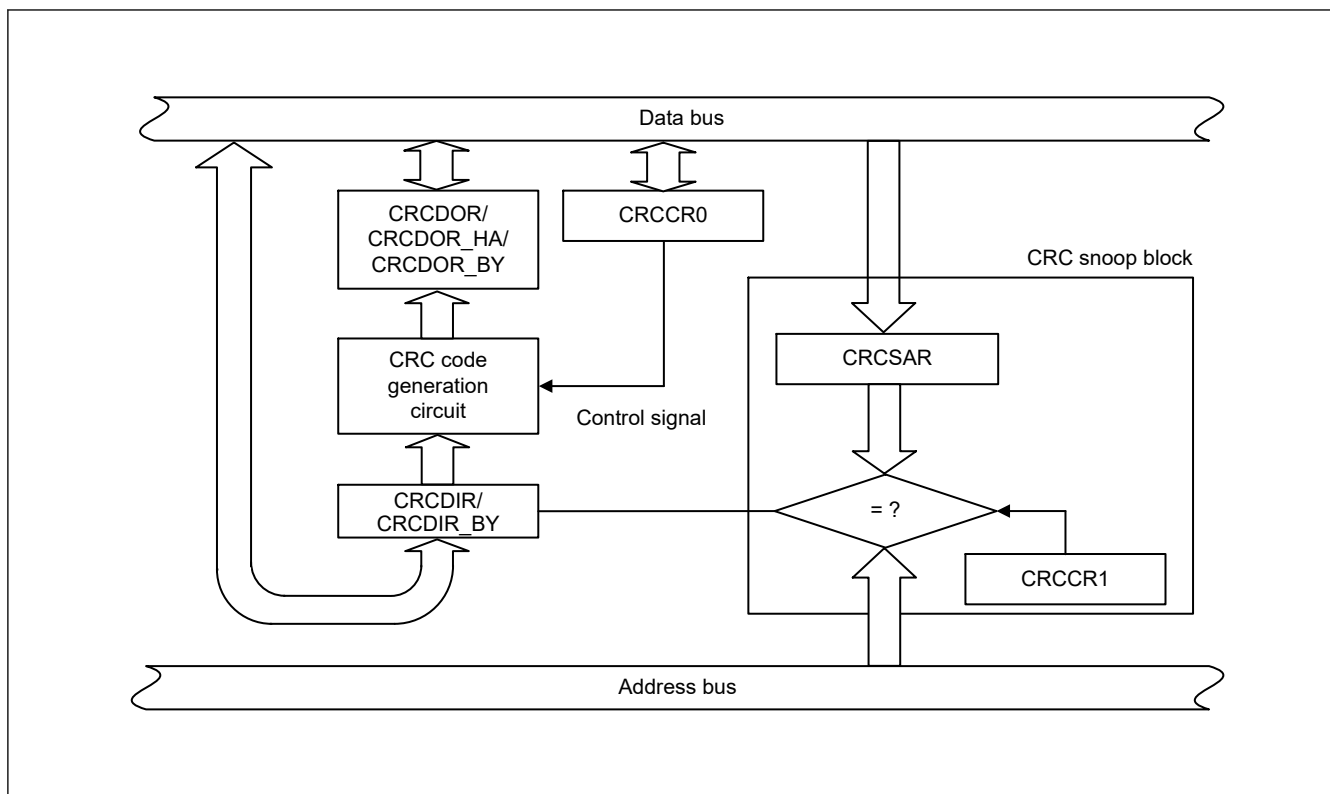


Figure 33.1 CRC calculator block diagram

33.2 Register Descriptions

33.2.1 CRCCR0 : CRC Control Register 0

Base address: CRC = 0x4007_4000

Offset address: 0x00

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	DORCLR	LMS	—	—	—	GPS[2:0]		

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
2:0	GPS[2:0]	CRC Generating Polynomial Switching 0 0 1: 8-bit CRC-8 ($X^8 + X^2 + X + 1$) 0 1 0: 16-bit CRC-16 ($X^{16} + X^{15} + X^2 + 1$) 0 1 1: 16-bit CRC-CCITT ($X^{16} + X^{12} + X^5 + 1$) 1 0 0: 32-bit CRC-32 ($X^{32} + X^{26} + X^{23} + X^{22} + X^{16} + X^{12} + X^{11} + X^{10} + X^8 + X^7 + X^5 + X^4 + X^2 + X + 1$) 1 0 1: 32-bit CRC-32C ($X^{32} + X^{28} + X^{27} + X^{26} + X^{25} + X^{23} + X^{22} + X^{20} + X^{19} + X^{18} + X^{14} + X^{13} + X^{11} + X^{10} + X^9 + X^8 + X^6 + 1$) Others: No calculation is executed	R/W
5:3	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
6	LMS	CRC Calculation Switching 0: Generate CRC code for LSB-first communication 1: Generate CRC code for MSB-first communication	R/W
7	DORCLR	CRCDOR/CRCDOR_HA/CRCDOR_BY Register Clear 0: No effect 1: Clear the CRCDOR/CRCDOR_HA/CRCDOR_BY register	W

GPS[2:0] bits (CRC Generating Polynomial Switching)

The GPS[2:0] bits select the CRC generating polynomial.

LMS bit (CRC Calculation Switching)

The LMS bit selects the bit order of generated CRC code. Transmit the lower byte of the CRC code first for LSB-first communication and the upper byte first for MSB-first communication. For details on transmitting and receiving CRC code, see [section 33.3. Operation](#).

DORCLR bit (CRCDOR/CRCDOR_HA/CRCDOR_BY Register Clear)

Write 1 to the DORCLR bit to set the CRCDOR/CRCDOR_HA/CRCDOR_BY register to 0x00000000. This bit is read as 0. Only 1 can be written to it.

33.2.2 CRCCR1 : CRC Control Register 1

Base address: CRC = 0x4007 4000

Offset address: 0x01

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	CRCS EN	CRCS WR	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
5:0	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
6	CRCSWR	Snoop-On-Write/Read Switch 0: Snoop-on-read 1: Snoop-on-write	R/W
7	CRCSEN	Snoop Enable 0: Disabled 1: Enabled	R/W

CRCSWR bit (Snoop-On-Write/Read Switch)

The CRCSWR bit selects the direction of access in the CRC snoop function.

When this bit is set to 0 (initial value), the CRC snoop operation to read a specific register is enabled. Similarly, when this bit is set to 1, the CRC snoop operation to write a specific register is enabled.

CRCSEN bit (Snoop Enable)

When the CRCSEN bit is set to 1, the CRC snoop operation is enabled. When this bit is set to 0, the CRC snoop operation is disabled.

33.2.3 CRCDIR/CRCDIR BY : CRC Data Input Register

Base address: CRC = 0x4007 4000

Offset address: 0x04

[illegible]

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
31:0	n/a	CRC input data The CRCDIR register is a 32-bit read/write register to write data for CRC-32 or CRC-32C calculation. The CRCDIR_BY (CRCDIR[31:24], address: 0x4007_4004) is an 8-bit read/write register to write data for CRC-8, CRC-16, or CRC-CCITT calculation.	R/W

33.2.4 CRCDOR/CRCDOR_HA/CRCDOR_BY : CRC Data Output Register

Base address: CRC = 0x4007_4000

Offset address: 0x08

Bit position: 31

0

Bit field:

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
31:0	n/a	CRC output data The CRCDOR register is a 32-bit read/write register for CRC-32 or CRC-32C calculation. The CRCDOR_HA (CRCDOR[31:16], address: 0x4007_4008) register is a 16-bit read/write register for CRC-16 or CRC-CCITT calculation. The CRCDOR_BY (CRCDOR[31:24], address: 0x4007_4008) register is an 8-bit read/write register for CRC-8 calculation. Because its initial value is 0x00000000, rewrite the CRCDOR/CRCDOR_HA/CRCDOR_BY register to perform the calculations using a value other than the initial value. Data written to the CRCDIR/CRCDIR_BY register is CRC calculated and the result is stored in the CRCDOR/CRCDOR_HA/CRCDOR_BY register. If the CRC code is calculated following the transferred data and the result is 0x00000000, there is no CRC error.	R/W

33.2.5 CRCSAR : Snoop Address Register

Base address: CRC = 0x4007_4000

Offset address: 0x0C

Bit position: 15 14 13 12 11 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0

Bit field:

—	—	CRCSA[13:0]												

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
13:0	CRCSA[13:0]	Register Snoop Address These bits store the TDR or RDR address in the SCI module to snoop	R/W
15:14	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

CRCSA[13:0] bits (Register Snoop Address)

The CRCSA[13:0] bits specify the lower address 14 bits of the register monitored by the CRC snoop operation.

Only the following addresses can be used for the CRCSA[13:0] bits:

- 0x4007_0003: SCI0.TDR, 0x4007_0005:SCI0.RDR
- 0x4007_0023: SCI1.TDR, 0x4007_0025:SCI1.RDR
- 0x4007_0043: SCI2.TDR, 0x4007_0045: SCI2.RDR
- 0x4007_0123: SCI9.TDR, 0x4007_0125:SCI9.RDR
- 0x4007_000F: SCI0.FTDRL, 0x4007_0011: SCI0.FRDR

33.3 Operation

33.3.1 Basic Operation

The CRC calculator generates CRC codes for use in LSB-first or MSB-first transfer.

The following examples show CRC code generation for input data (0xF0) using the 16-bit CRC-CCITT generating polynomial ($X^{16} + X^{12} + X^5 + 1$). In these examples, the value of the CRC Data Output Register (CRCDOR_HA) is cleared before CRC calculation.

When an 8-bit CRC (with the polynomial $X^8 + X^2 + X + 1$) is in use, the valid bits of the CRC code are obtained in CRCDOR_BY. When a 32-bit CRC is in use, the valid bits of the CRC code are obtained in CRCDOR.

Figure 33.2 and Figure 33.3 show the LSB-first and MSB-first data transmission examples respectively. Figure 33.4 and Figure 33.5 show the LSB-first and MSB-first data reception examples.

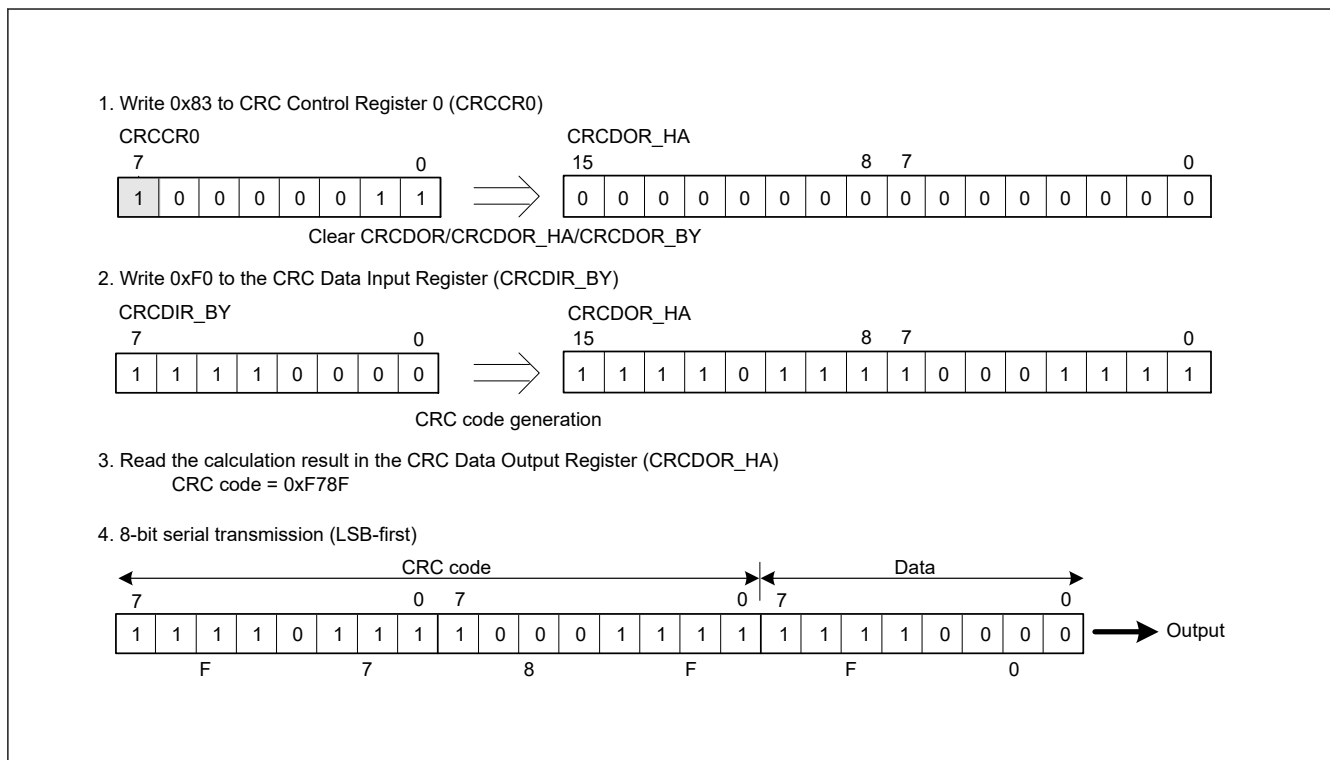


Figure 33.2 LSB-first data transmission

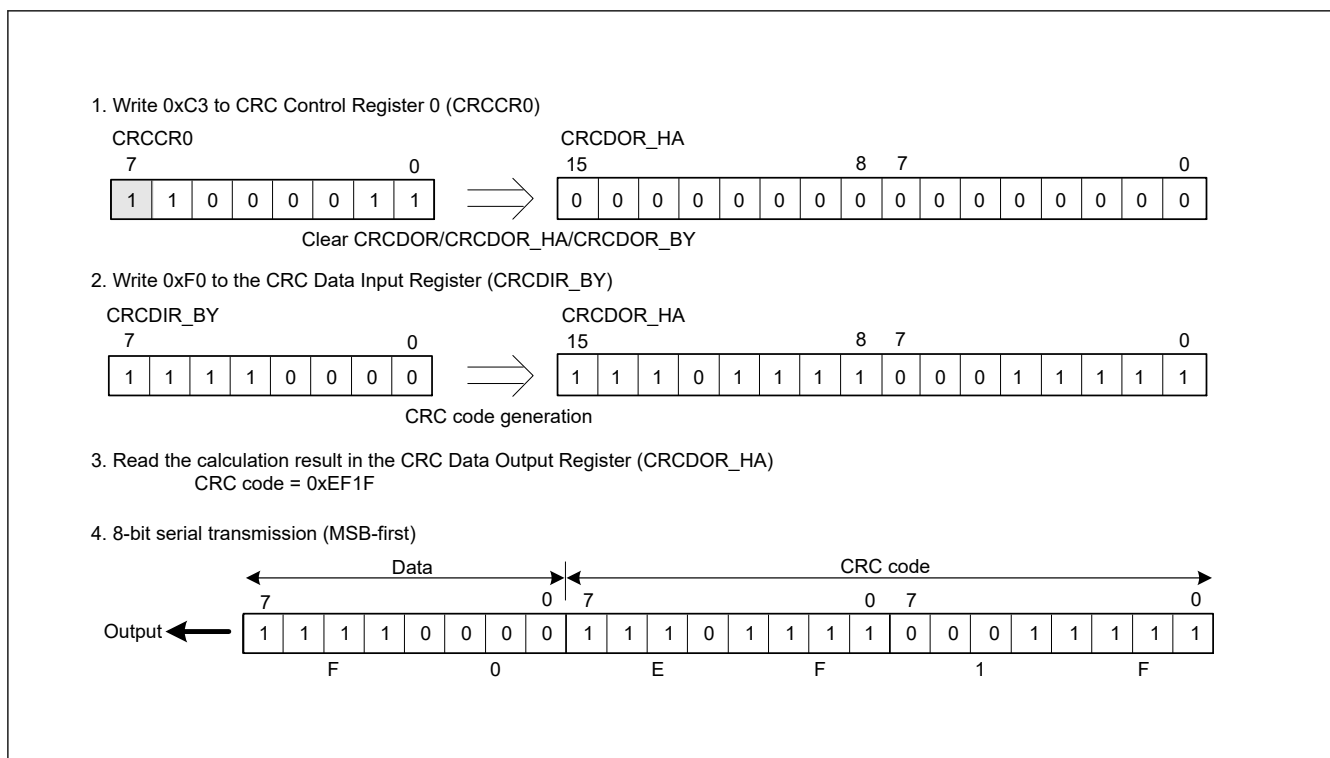
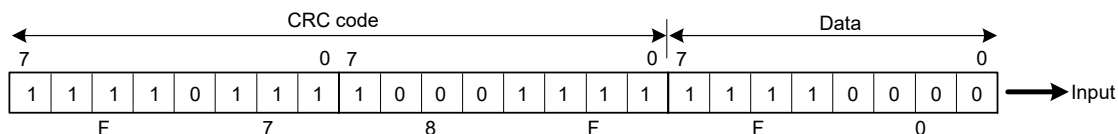
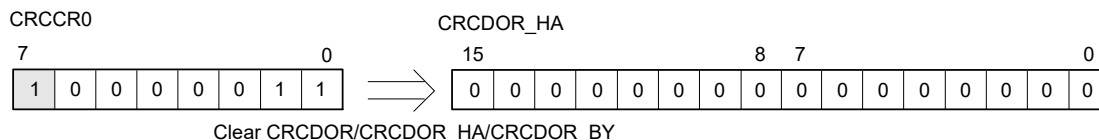


Figure 33.3 MSB-first data transmission

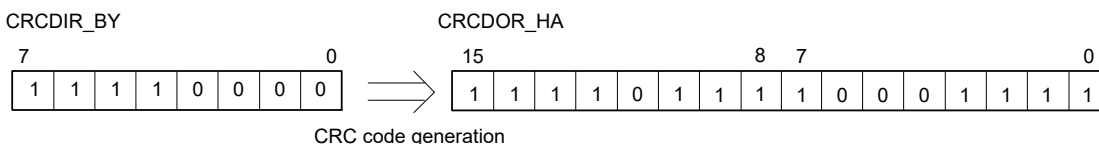
1. 8-bit serial reception (LSB-first)



2. Write 0x83 to the CRC Control Register 0 (CRCCR0)



3. Write 0xF0 to the CRC Data Input Register (CRCDIR_BY)



4. Write 0x8F to the CRC Data Input Register (CRCDIR_BY)



5. Write 0xF7 to the CRC Data Input Register (CRCDIR_BY)



6. Read the calculation result in the CRC Data Output Register (CRCDOR_HA)

CRC code = 0x0000 → no error

Figure 33.4 LSB-first data reception

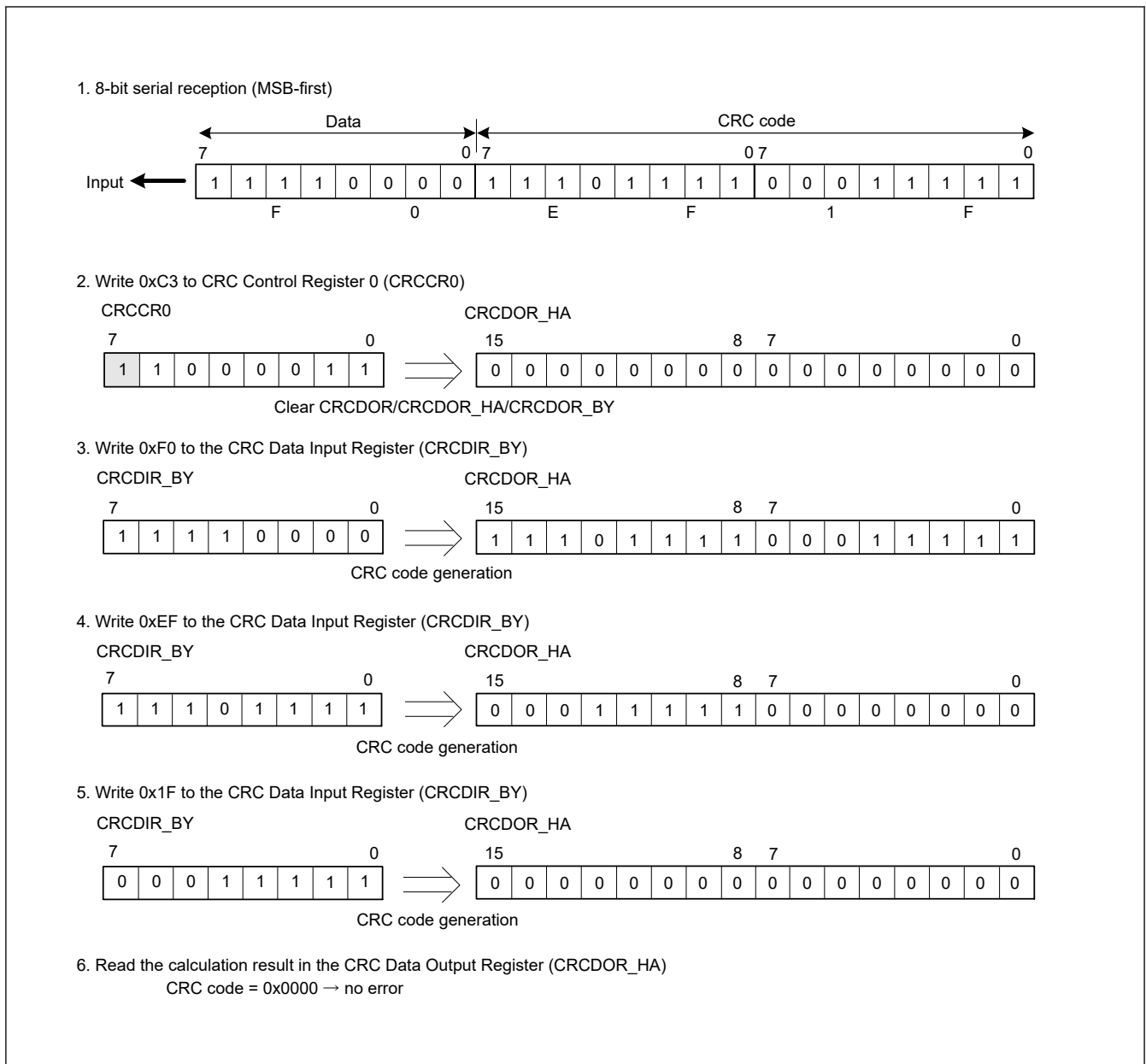


Figure 33.5 MSB-first data reception

33.3.2 CRC Snoop Function

The CRC snoop function monitors reads from and writes to a specific register and performs CRC calculation on the monitored data automatically. Because the CRC snoop function recognizes writes to and reads from a specific register address as a trigger to automatically perform CRC calculation, there is no need to write data to the CRCDIR_BY register. All I/O register specified in the [section 33.2.5. CRCSAR : Snoop Address Register](#) are subject to the CRC snoop. The CRC snoop is useful in monitoring writes to the SCIn.TDR (n = 0 to 2, 9) register, and reads from the SCIn.RDR (n = 0 to 2, 9) register.

To use this function, write the lower address 14 bits of a specific register to bits CRCSA13 to CRCSA0 in the CRCSAR register, and set the CRCSEN bit in the CRCCR1 register to 1. Then, set the CRCSWR bit in the CRCCR1 register to 1 to enable snooping on writes to the target register, or set the CRCSWR bit in the CRCCR1 register to 0 to enable snooping on reads from the target register. It is possible that access to a target I/O register may be executed before the CRCSWR bit write completed. In this case, the data is not stored in the CRCDIR register. To avoid this issue, before accessing the I/O register, read back the CRCSWR bit that was written to confirm that the write completed.

When both the CRCSEN and CRCSWR bits are set to 1, and data is written to a target register in a bus master module such as the CPU and DTC, the CRC calculator stores the data in the CRCDIR_BY register and performs CRC calculation.

Similarly, when the CRCSEN bit is set to 1, CRCSWR bit to 0, and data is read from a target register in a bus master module such as the CPU and DTC, the CRC calculator stores the data in the CRCDIR_BY register and performs CRC calculations.

When the CRC code is generated by using CRC-8, CRC-16, and CRC-CCITT generating polynomial, the target register is accessed in 1 byte (8 bits). Similarly, when the CRC code is generated by using CRC-32 and CRC-32C generating polynomial, the target register is accessed in words (32 bits).

33.4 Usage Notes

33.4.1 Settings for the Module-stop State

The Module Stop Control Register C (MSTPCRC) can enable or disable CRC calculator operation. The CRC calculator is initially stopped after a reset. Releasing the module-stop state enables access to the registers. For details, see [section 10, Low Power Modes](#).

33.4.2 Note on Transmission

The transmission sequence for the CRC code differs based on whether the transmission is LSB-first or MSB-first. [Figure 33.6](#) shows an LSB-first and MSB-first data transmission.

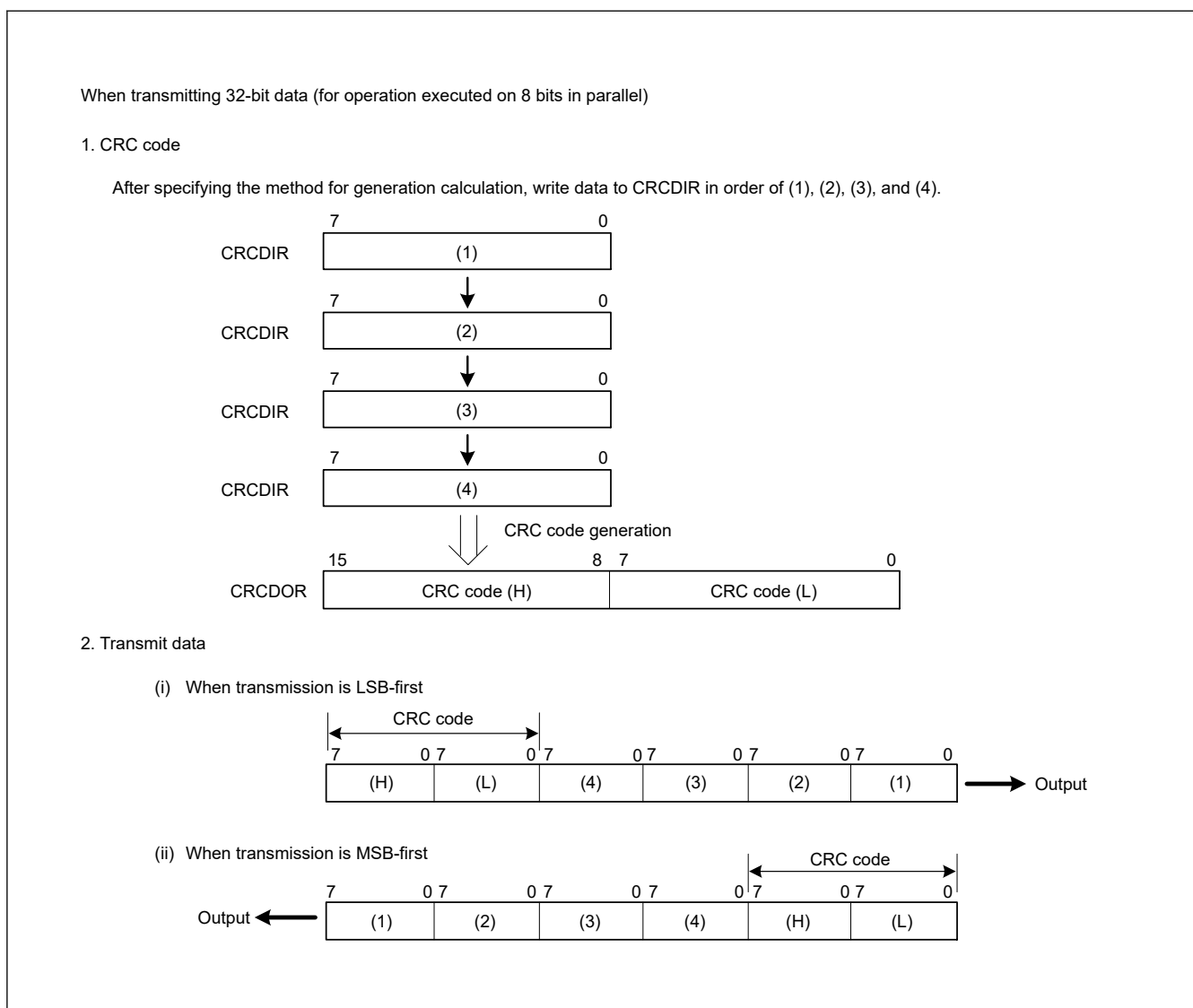


Figure 33.6 LSB-first and MSB-first data transmission

34. 12-Bit A/D Converter (ADC12)

34.1 Overview

The MCU includes a 12-bit successive approximation A/D converter (ADC12) unit. Up to 17 analog input channels, temperature sensor output, and internal reference voltage can be selected for conversion.

The ADC12 supports the following operating modes:

- Single scan mode to convert analog inputs of selected channels in ascending order of channel number
- Continuous scan mode to convert analog inputs of selected channels continuously in ascending order of channel number
- Group scan mode to divide analog inputs of channels into two groups (group A and B) and convert the analog inputs of selected channels for each group in ascending order of channel number.

In group scan mode, select two groups (group A and B). You can individually select the scan start conditions for each group (group A, B) and start scanning of each group at different times. In addition, when group A priority control operation is set, the ADC12 accepts group A scan start during group B A/D conversion, suspending group B conversion. This allows you to assign higher priority to A/D conversion start for group A.

In double trigger mode, the analog input of a selected channel is converted in single scan mode or group scan mode (group A), and data converted by the first and second A/D conversion start triggers are stored in different registers, providing duplexing of A/D converted data.

Self-diagnosis is performed once at the beginning of each scan, and one of the three reference voltage values generated in ADC12 is A/D converted. The temperature sensor output and the internal reference voltage cannot be selected for conversion simultaneously. Perform A/D conversion independently for the temperature sensor output or the internal reference voltage.

The ADC12 also provides a compare function (window A and window B). The compare function specifies the upper reference value for window A and the lower reference value for window B, and outputs an interrupt when the A/D converted value of the selected channel meets the comparison conditions.

The reference power supply pin (VREFH0), the analog block power supply pin (AVCC0), or the internal reference voltage can be selected as the high-potential reference voltage. The reference power supply ground pin (VREFL0) or the analog block power supply ground pin (AVSS0) can be selected as the low-potential reference voltage. If the internal reference voltage is selected as the high-potential reference voltage, A/D conversion of the temperature sensor or internal reference voltage is prohibited.

Table 34.1 lists the ADC12 specifications and Table 34.2 list the functions. Figure 34.1 shows a block diagram of ADC12 and Table 34.3 lists the I/O pins.

Table 34.1 ADC12 specifications (1 of 3)

Parameter	Specifications
Number of units	one unit
Input channels	Up to 17 channels (AN000 to AN010, AN017 to AN022)* ¹
Extended analog function	Temperature sensor output, internal reference voltage
A/D conversion method	Successive approximation method
Resolution	12-bit
Conversion time	Normal conversion mode (ADACSR.ADSAC = 0): 0.7 μs/channel (when 12-bit A/D conversion clock PCLKD (ADCLK) operates at 64MHz) Fast conversion mode (ADACSR.ADSAC = 1): 0.67 μs/channel (when 12-bit A/D conversion clock PCLKD (ADCLK) operates at 48MHz)
A/D conversion clock	Peripheral module clock PCLKB and A/D conversion clock PCLKD (ADCLK) can be set with the following division ratios: PCLKB to PCLKD (ADCLK) frequency ratio = 1:1, 1:2, 1:4

Table 34.1 ADC12 specifications (2 of 3)

Parameter	Specifications
Data registers ^{*2}	17 registers for analog input - One register for A/D-converted data duplication in double trigger mode - Two registers for A/D-converted data duplication during extended operation in double trigger mode - One register for temperature sensor output - One register for internal reference voltage - One register for self-diagnosis - A/D conversion results are stored in A/D data registers 12-bit accuracy for A/D conversion results - A/D-converted value addition mode, in which the sum of all A/D-converted results is stored in the A/D data registers as a value with the conversion accuracy bit count + extended bits - Double-trigger mode (selectable in single scan and group scan modes): - The first unit of A/D-converted analog input data on one selected channel is stored in the data register for the channel, and the second unit is stored in the duplication register. - Extended operation in double trigger mode (available for specific triggers): - A/D-converted analog input data on one selected channel is stored in the duplication register provided for the associated trigger.
Operating modes ^{*3}	- Single scan mode: - A/D conversion is performed only once on the analog inputs of arbitrarily selected channels, on the temperature sensor output, and on the internal reference voltage. - Continuous scan mode: - A/D conversion is performed repeatedly on the analog inputs of the selected channels. - Group scan mode: - Analog inputs of selected channels, the temperature sensor output, and the internal reference voltage are divided into groups A and B. Then A/D conversion of the analog inputs selected on a group basis is performed once. - The scan start conditions can be independently selected for group A, B, allowing A/D conversion of group A, B to be started independently. - Group scan mode (when group priority operation is selected): - If a priority group trigger is input during scanning of a lower-priority group, the scanning of the lower-priority group is stopped and then scanning of the priority group is started. The order of priority is group A > group B.
Conditions for A/D conversion start	- Software trigger - Synchronous triggers from the Event Link Controller (ELC) - Asynchronous triggering by the external trigger pins, ADTRG0
Functions	- Variable sampling state count - Self-diagnosis of A/D converter - Selectable A/D-converted value addition mode or average mode - Analog input disconnection detection function (discharge and precharge functions) - Double-trigger mode (duplication of A/D conversion data) - Automatic clear function for A/D data registers - Digital comparison of values in the comparison register and data register, and comparison between values in the data registers
Interrupt sources	- In single scan mode (double trigger deselected), an A/D scan end interrupt request (ADC120_ADI) and ELC event signal (ADC120_ADI) can be generated on completion of a single scan. - A compare interrupt request (ADC120_CMPAI/ADC120_CMPBI) can be generated in response to a match with a digital comparison condition. - A window compare ELC event signal (ADC120_WCMPI) can be generated in response to a match with a digital comparison condition. - A window compare ELC event signal (ADC120_WCMPUM) can be generated in response to a mismatch with a digital comparison condition. - In single scan mode (double trigger selected), an A/D scan end interrupt request (ADC120_ADI) and ELC event signal (ADC120_ADI) is generated on completion of two scans. - In continuous scan mode, an A/D scan end interrupt request (ADC120_ADI) and ELC event signal (ADC120_ADI) is generated on completion of all the selected channel scans. - In group scan mode (double trigger deselected), an A/D scan end interrupt request (ADC120_ADI) and ELC event signal (ADC120_ADI) is generated on completion of group A scan, and an A/D scan end interrupt request for group B (ADC120_GBADI) can be generated on completion of group B scan. - In group scan mode (double trigger selected), an A/D scan end interrupt request (ADC120_ADI) and ELC event signal (ADC120_ADI) is generated on completion of two group A scans, and an A/D scan end interrupt request for group B (ADC120_GBADI) can be generated on completion of group B scan. - ADC120_ADI, ADC120_GBADI, ADC120_WCMPI, and ADC120_WCMPUM can activate the Data Transfer Controller (DTC).

Table 34.1 ADC12 specifications (3 of 3)

Parameter	Specifications
ELC interface	- An event is generated on completion of group A scan in group-scan mode - An event is generated on completion of group B scan in group-scan mode - An event is generated when all scans are complete - Scan can be started by a trigger from the ELC - An event is generated according to the conditions of the compare function window in single-scan mode
Reference voltage	- VREFH0, AVCC0, or internal reference voltage (BGR) (external reference voltage or output voltage from reference voltage generation circuit) can be selected as the analog reference voltage - VREFL0 or AVSS0 can be selected as the analog reference ground
Module-stop function	Module-stop state can be set to reduce power consumption*4

Note 1. AN000 to AN010, AN017 to AN022 for LQFP 64-pin

AN000 to AN002, AN005 to AN010, AN019 to AN022 for LQFP/HWQFN 48-pin

AN005 to AN010, AN019 to AN022 for LQFP/HWQFN 32-pin

Note 2. Changing the A/D conversion accuracy also changes the A/D conversion time. For details, see [section 34.3.6. Analog Input Sampling and Scan Conversion Time](#).

Note 3. When selecting the temperature sensor output and the internal reference voltage, do not use continuous scan mode or group scan mode.

Note 4. For details, see [section 10, Low Power Modes](#).

Table 34.2 ADC12 functions

Parameter			function
Analog input channel			AN000 to AN010, AN017 to AN022 Internal reference voltage Temperature sensor output
Conditions for A/D conversion start	Software	Software trigger	Enabled
	Asynchronous trigger (external trigger)	Trigger input pin	ADTRG0
	Synchronous trigger (trigger from ELC)	ELC trigger	ELC_AD00, ELC_AD01
Interrupt			ADC120_ADI ADC120_GBADI ADC120_CMPAI ADC120_CMPBI
Output to ELC			ADC120_ADI ADC120_WCMPPM ADC120_WCMPUM
Module-stop function settings*1 *2			MSTPCRD.MSTPD16 bit

Note 1. For details, see [section 10, Low Power Modes](#).

Note 2. Wait 1 μ s or longer to start A/D conversion after release from the module-stop state.

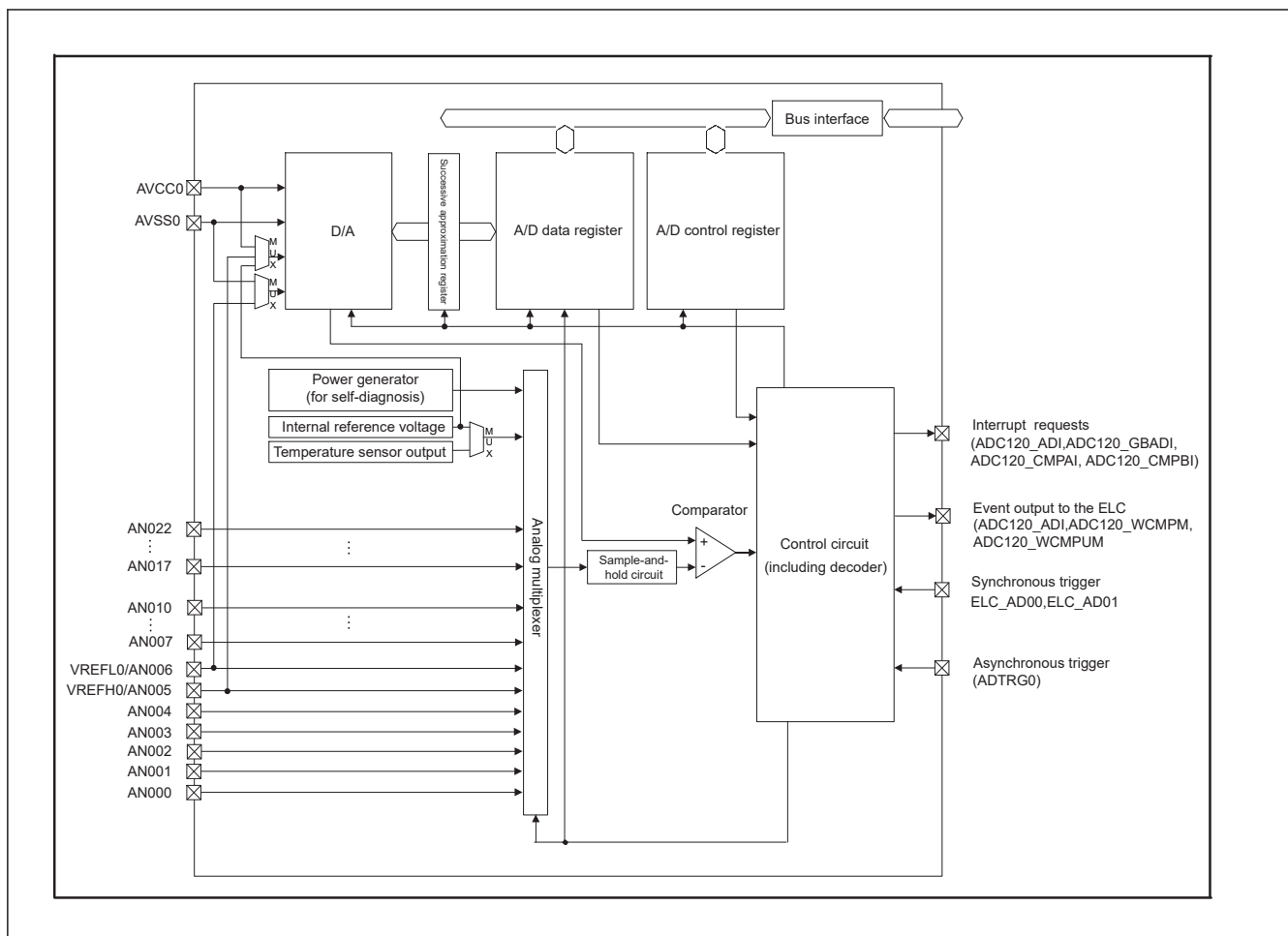


Figure 34.1 ADC12 block diagram

Table 34.3 lists the ADC12 I/O pins.

Table 34.3 ADC12 I/O pins

Pin name	I/O	Function
AVCC0	Input	Analog block power supply pin (Connect to VCC when ADC12 is not used.)
AVSS0	Input	Analog block power supply ground pin (Connect to VSS when ADC12 is not used.)
VREFH0	Input	Analog reference voltage supply pin
VREFL0	Input	Analog reference ground pin
AN000 to AN010, AN017 to AN022	Input	Analog input pins 0 to 10, 17 to 22
ADTRG0	Input	External trigger input pin for starting A/D conversion

AVCC0 and AVSS0 do not exist in 25-pin product. VCC and VSS are the analog block power supply for 25-pin product.

34.2 Register Descriptions

34.2.1 ADDRn : A/D Data Registers n (n = 0 to 10, 17 to 22)

Base address: ADC120 = 0x4005_C000

Offset address: $0x020 + 0x2 \times n$ (n = 0 to 10, 17 to 22)

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	ADDR [15:0]															
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
15:0	ADDR [15:0]	Converted Value 15 to 0 Functions vary depending on the selected mode and accuracy. See Table 34.4 and Table 34.5 .	R

ADDRn registers are 16-bit read-only registers to store A/D conversion results.

The following conditions determine the formats for data in the A/D data registers:

- Setting of the A/D Data Register Format Select bit (ADCER.ADRFMT) (flush-left or flush-right)
- Setting of the Addition/Average Count Select bits (ADADC.ADC[2:0]) (1, 2, 3, 4, or 16 times)
- Setting of the Average Mode Enable bit (ADADC.AVEE) (addition or average).

This section describes the data formats for these conditions in different modes.

(1) When A/D-converted value addition/average mode is not selected

[Table 34.4](#) shows the example of bit assignment for 12-bit accuracy.

Table 34.4 Example of bit assignment for 12-bit accuracy

Accuracy	b15	b14	b13	b12	b11	b10	b9	b8	b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
Right-justified data with 12-bit accuracy	These bits are read as 0.				Converted Value 11 to 0: 12-bit A/D-converted value											
Left-justified data with 12-bit accuracy	Converted Value 11 to 0: 12-bit A/D-converted value												These bits are read as 0.			

(2) When A/D-converted value average mode is selected

A/D-converted value average mode can be selected when 2 or 4 times is specified in the A/D-converted value addition mode. When A/D converted value average mode is selected, these registers indicate the mean of A/D-converted values on a specific channel. The value is stored in the A/D data register based on the setting of the A/D Data Register Format Select bit in the same way as for normal A/D conversion.

(3) When A/D-converted value addition mode is selected

For 12-bit accuracy, 1, 2, 3, or 4 times can be selected in the A/D-converted value addition mode. A/D conversion results are stored in the A/D data register as a 2-bit-extended value of the specified conversion accuracy.

For 12-bit accuracy, 16 times can also be selected in the A/D-converted value addition mode. In A/D-converted value addition mode, these registers indicate the value that is obtained by adding A/D-converted values on a specific channel. A/D conversion results are stored in the A/D data register as a 4-bit-extended value of the specified conversion accuracy.

When A/D-converted value addition mode is selected, the value is stored in the A/D data register based on the settings of the A/D Data Register Format Select bits.

[Table 34.5](#) shows example of the bit assignment for 12-bit accuracy.

Table 34.5 Example of bit assignment for 12-bit accuracy when A/D-converted value addition mode is selected

Accuracy		b15	b14	b13	b12	b11	b10	b9	b8	b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
Right-justified data with 12-bit accuracy	When 16 conversion times is specified	Added Value 15 to 0: 16-bit sum of A/D conversion results															
	When 1, 2, 3, or 4 conversion times is specified	These bits are read as 0.		Added Value 13 to 0: 14-bit sum of A/D conversion results													
Left-justified data with 12-bit accuracy	When 16 conversion times is specified	Added Value 15 to 0: 16-bit sum of A/D conversion results															
	When 1, 2, 3, or 4 conversion times is specified	Added Value 13 to 0: 14-bit sum of A/D conversion results														These bits are read as 0.	

34.2.2 ADDBLDR : A/D Data Duplexing Register

Base address: ADC120 = 0x4005_C000

Offset address: 0x018

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	ADDBLDR [15:0]															
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
15:0	ADDBLDR [15:0]	Converted Value 15 to 0 Functions vary depending on the selected mode and accuracy. See Table 34.6 and Table 34.7 .	R

ADDBLDR register is a 16-bit read-only register to store A/D conversion results in response to a second trigger in double-trigger mode.

The following conditions determine the formats for data in the A/D data registers:

- Setting of the A/D Data Register Format Select bit (ADCER.ADRFMT) (flush-left or flush-right)
- Setting of the Addition/Average Count Select bits (ADADC.ADC[2:0]) (1, 2, 3, 4, or 16 times)
- Setting of the Average Mode Enable bit (ADADC.AVEE) (addition or average).

This section describes the data formats for these conditions in different modes.

(1) When A/D-converted value addition/average mode is not selected

[Table 34.6](#) shows the example of bit assignment for 12-bit accuracy.

Table 34.6 Example of bit assignment for 12-bit accuracy

Accuracy	b15	b14	b13	b12	b11	b10	b9	b8	b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
Right-justified data with 12-bit accuracy	These bits are read as 0.				Converted Value 11 to 0: 12-bit A/D-converted value											
Left-justified data with 12-bit accuracy	Converted Value 11 to 0: 12-bit A/D-converted value												These bits are read as 0.			

(2) When A/D-converted value average mode is selected

A/D-converted value average mode can be selected when 2 or 4 times is specified in the A/D-converted value addition mode. When A/D converted value average mode is selected, this register indicates the mean of A/D-converted values on a

specific channel. The value is stored in the A/D data register based on the setting of the A/D Data Register Format Select bit in the same way as for normal A/D conversion.

(3) When A/D-converted value addition mode is selected

For 12-bit accuracy, 1, 2, 3, or 4 times can be selected in the A/D-converted value addition mode. A/D conversion results are stored in the A/D data register as a 2-bit-extended value of the specified conversion accuracy.

For 12-bit accuracy, 16 times can also be selected in the A/D-converted value addition mode. In A/D-converted value addition mode, this register indicates the value that is obtained by adding A/D-converted values on a specific channel. A/D conversion results are stored in the A/D data register as a 4-bit-extended value of the specified conversion accuracy.

When A/D-converted value addition mode is selected, the value is stored in the A/D data register based on the settings of the A/D Data Register Format Select bits.

Table 34.7 shows example of the bit assignment for 12-bit accuracy.

Table 34.7 Example of bit assignment for 12-bit accuracy when A/D-converted value addition mode is selected

Accuracy		b15	b14	b13	b12	b11	b10	b9	b8	b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
Right-justified data with 12-bit accuracy	When 16 conversion times is specified	Added Value 15 to 0: 16-bit sum of A/D conversion results															
	When 1, 2, 3, or 4 conversion times is specified	These bits are read as 0.		Added Value 13 to 0: 14-bit sum of A/D conversion results													
Left-justified data with 12-bit accuracy	When 16 conversion times is specified	Added Value 15 to 0: 16-bit sum of A/D conversion results															
	When 1, 2, 3, or 4 conversion times is specified	Added Value 13 to 0: 14-bit sum of A/D conversion results														These bits are read as 0.	

34.2.3 ADDBLDRn : A/D Data Duplexing Register n (n = A, B)

Base address: ADC120 = 0x4005_C000

Offset address: 0x084 (n = A)
0x086 (n = B)

Bit position: 15 14 13 12 11 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0

Bit field: ADDBLDR [15:0]

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
15:0	ADDBLDR [15:0]	Converted Value 15 to 0 Functions vary depending on the selected mode and accuracy. See Table 34.8 and Table 34.9 .	R

ADDBLDRn registers are 16-bit read-only registers to store A/D conversion results in response to respective triggers during extended operation in double-trigger mode.

The following conditions determine the formats for data in the A/D data registers:

- Setting of the A/D Data Register Format Select bit (ADCER.ADRFMT) (flush-left or flush-right)
- Setting of the Addition/Average Count Select bits (ADADC.ADC[2:0]) (1, 2, 3, 4, or 16 times)
- Setting of the Average Mode Enable bit (ADADC.AVEE) (addition or average).

This section describes the data formats for these conditions in different modes.

(1) When A/D-converted value addition/average mode is not selected

Table 34.8 shows the example of bit assignment for 12-bit accuracy.

Table 34.8 Example of bit assignment for 12-bit accuracy

Accuracy	b15	b14	b13	b12	b11	b10	b9	b8	b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
Right-justified data with 12-bit accuracy	These bits are read as 0.				Converted Value 11 to 0: 12-bit A/D-converted value											
Left-justified data with 12-bit accuracy	Converted Value 11 to 0: 12-bit A/D-converted value												These bits are read as 0.			

(2) When A/D-converted value average mode is selected

A/D-converted value average mode can be selected when 2 or 4 times is specified in the A/D-converted value addition mode. When A/D converted value average mode is selected, these registers indicate the mean of A/D-converted values on a specific channel. The value is stored in the A/D data register based on the setting of the A/D Data Register Format Select bit in the same way as for normal A/D conversion.

(3) When A/D-converted value addition mode is selected

For 12-bit accuracy, 1, 2, 3, or 4 times can be selected in the A/D-converted value addition mode. A/D conversion results are stored in the A/D data register as a 2-bit-extended value of the specified conversion accuracy.

For 12-bit accuracy, 16 times can also be selected in the A/D-converted value addition mode. In A/D-converted value addition mode, these registers indicate the value that is obtained by adding A/D-converted values on a specific channel. A/D conversion results are stored in the A/D data register as a 4-bit-extended value of the specified conversion accuracy.

When A/D-converted value addition mode is selected, the value is stored in the A/D data register based on the settings of the A/D Data Register Format Select bits.

Table 34.9 shows example of the bit assignment for 12-bit accuracy.

Table 34.9 Example of bit assignment for 12-bit accuracy when A/D-converted value addition mode is selected

Accuracy		b15	b14	b13	b12	b11	b10	b9	b8	b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
Right-justified data with 12-bit accuracy	When 16 conversion times is specified	Added Value 15 to 0: 16-bit sum of A/D conversion results															
	When 1, 2, 3, or 4 conversion times is specified	These bits are read as 0.		Added Value 13 to 0: 14-bit sum of A/D conversion results													
Left-justified data with 12-bit accuracy	When 16 conversion times is specified	Added Value 15 to 0: 16-bit sum of A/D conversion results															
	When 1, 2, 3, or 4 conversion times is specified	Added Value 13 to 0: 14-bit sum of A/D conversion results														These bits are read as 0.	

34.2.4 ADTSDR : A/D Temperature Sensor Data Register

Base address: ADC120 = 0x4005_C000

Offset address: 0x01A

Bit position: 15 14 13 12 11 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0

Bit field: ADTSDR [15:0]

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
15:0	ADTSDR [15:0]	Converted Value 15 to 0 Functions vary depending on the selected mode and accuracy. See Table 34.10 and Table 34.11 .	R

ADTSDR register is a 16-bit read-only register to store A/D conversion result of the temperature sensor output.

The following conditions determine the formats for data in the A/D data registers:

- Setting of the A/D Data Register Format Select bit (ADCER.ADRFMT) (flush-left or flush-right)
- Setting of the Addition/Average Count Select bits (ADADC.ADC[2:0]) (1, 2, 3, 4, or 16 times)
- Setting of the Average Mode Enable bit (ADADC.AVEE) (addition or average).

This section describes the data formats for these conditions in different modes.

(1) When A/D-converted value addition/average mode is not selected

[Table 34.10](#) shows the example of bit assignment for 12-bit accuracy.

Table 34.10 Example of bit assignment for 12-bit accuracy

Accuracy	b15	b14	b13	b12	b11	b10	b9	b8	b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
Right-justified data with 12-bit accuracy	These bits are read as 0.				Converted Value 11 to 0: 12-bit A/D-converted value											
Left-justified data with 12-bit accuracy	Converted Value 11 to 0: 12-bit A/D-converted value												These bits are read as 0.			

(2) When A/D-converted value average mode is selected

A/D-converted value average mode can be selected when 2 or 4 times is specified in the A/D-converted value addition mode. When A/D converted value average mode is selected, this register indicates the mean of A/D-converted values on a specific channel. The value is stored in the A/D data register based on the setting of the A/D Data Register Format Select bit in the same way as for normal A/D conversion.

(3) When A/D-converted value addition mode is selected

For 12-bit accuracy, 1, 2, 3, or 4 times can be selected in the A/D-converted value addition mode. A/D conversion results are stored in the A/D data register as a 2-bit-extended value of the specified conversion accuracy.

For 12-bit accuracy, 16 times can also be selected in the A/D-converted value addition mode. In A/D-converted value addition mode, this register indicates the value that is obtained by adding A/D-converted values on a specific channel. A/D conversion results are stored in the A/D data register as a 4-bit-extended value of the specified conversion accuracy.

When A/D-converted value addition mode is selected, the value is stored in the A/D data register based on the settings of the A/D Data Register Format Select bits.

[Table 34.11](#) shows example of the bit assignment for 12-bit accuracy.

Table 34.11 Example of bit assignment for 12-bit accuracy when A/D-converted value addition mode is selected (1 of 2)

Accuracy		b15	b14	b13	b12	b11	b10	b9	b8	b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
Right-justified data with 12-bit accuracy	When 16 conversion times is specified	Added Value 15 to 0: 16-bit sum of A/D conversion results															
	When 1, 2, 3, or 4 conversion times is specified	These bits are read as 0.			Added Value 13 to 0: 14-bit sum of A/D conversion results												

Table 34.11 Example of bit assignment for 12-bit accuracy when A/D-converted value addition mode is selected (2 of 2)

Accuracy		b15	b14	b13	b12	b11	b10	b9	b8	b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
Left-justified data with 12-bit accuracy	When 16 conversion times is specified	Added Value 15 to 0: 16-bit sum of A/D conversion results															
	When 1, 2, 3, or 4 conversion times is specified	Added Value 13 to 0: 14-bit sum of A/D conversion results														These bits are read as 0.	

34.2.5 ADOCDR : A/D Internal Reference Voltage Data Register

Base address: ADC120 = 0x4005_C000

Offset address: 0x01C

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	ADOCDR [15:0]															
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
15:0	ADOCDR [15:0]	Converted Value 15 to 0 Functions vary depending on the selected mode and accuracy. See Table 34.12 and Table 34.13 .	R

ADOCDR register is a 16-bit read-only register to store A/D conversion result of the internal reference voltage.

The following conditions determine the formats for data in the A/D data registers:

- Setting of the A/D Data Register Format Select bit (ADCER.ADRFMT) (flush-left or flush-right)
- Setting of the Addition/Average Count Select bits (ADADC.ADC[2:0]) (1, 2, 3, 4, or 16 times)
- Setting of the Average Mode Enable bit (ADADC.AVEE) (addition or average).

This section describes the data formats for these conditions in different modes.

(1) When A/D-converted value addition/average mode is not selected

[Table 34.12](#) shows the example of bit assignment for 12-bit accuracy.

Table 34.12 Example of bit assignment for 12-bit accuracy

Accuracy	b15	b14	b13	b12	b11	b10	b9	b8	b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
Right-justified data with 12-bit accuracy	These bits are read as 0.				Converted Value 11 to 0: 12-bit A/D-converted value											
Left-justified data with 12-bit accuracy	Converted Value 11 to 0: 12-bit A/D-converted value												These bits are read as 0.			

(2) When A/D-converted value average mode is selected

A/D-converted value average mode can be selected when 2 or 4 times is specified in the A/D-converted value addition mode. When A/D converted value average mode is selected, this register indicates the mean of A/D-converted values on a specific channel. The value is stored in the A/D data register based on the setting of the A/D Data Register Format Select bit in the same way as for normal A/D conversion.

(3) When A/D-converted value addition mode is selected

For 12-bit accuracy, 1, 2, 3, or 4 times can be selected in the A/D-converted value addition mode. A/D conversion results are stored in the A/D data register as a 2-bit-extended value of the specified conversion accuracy.

For 12-bit accuracy, 16 times can also be selected in the A/D-converted value addition mode. In A/D-converted value addition mode, this register indicates the value that is obtained by adding A/D-converted values on a specific channel. A/D conversion results are stored in the A/D data register as a 4-bit-extended value of the specified conversion accuracy.

When A/D-converted value addition mode is selected, the value is stored in the A/D data register based on the settings of the A/D Data Register Format Select bits.

Table 34.13 shows example of the bit assignment for 12-bit accuracy.

Table 34.13 Example of bit assignment for 12-bit accuracy when A/D-converted value addition mode is selected

Accuracy		b15	b14	b13	b12	b11	b10	b9	b8	b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
Right-justified data with 12-bit accuracy	When 16 conversion times is specified	Added Value 15 to 0: 16-bit sum of A/D conversion results															
	When 1, 2, 3, or 4 conversion times is specified	These bits are read as 0.		Added Value 13 to 0: 14-bit sum of A/D conversion results													
Left-justified data with 12-bit accuracy	When 16 conversion times is specified	Added Value 15 to 0: 16-bit sum of A/D conversion results															
	When 1, 2, 3, or 4 conversion times is specified	Added Value 13 to 0: 14-bit sum of A/D conversion results														These bits are read as 0.	

34.2.6 ADRD : A/D Self-Diagnosis Data Register

Base address: ADC120 = 0x4005_C000

Offset address: 0x01E

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	DIAGST[1:0]		—	—	AD[11:0]											
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
11:0	AD[11:0]	Converted Value 11 to 0 12-bit A/D-converted value	R
13:12	—	These bits are read as 0.	R
15:14	DIAGST[1:0]	Self-Diagnosis Status For details on self-diagnosis, see section 34.2.15. ADCER : A/D Control Extended Register . 0 0: Self-diagnosis not executed after power-on 0 1: Self-diagnosis was executed using the 0 V voltage 1 0: Self-diagnosis was executed using the reference voltage ^{*1} × 1/2 1 1: Self-diagnosis was executed using the reference voltage ^{*1}	R

Note: The example of the bit assignment for the right-justified data with 12-bit accuracy is indicated.

Note 1. The reference voltage refers to VREFH0, AVCC0, or internal reference voltage (BGR) by ADHVREFCNT setting.

ADRD is a 16-bit read-only register that holds the A/D conversion results based on the self-diagnosis of the ADC12. In addition to the AD[11:0] bits indicating the A/D-converted value, it includes the Self-Diagnosis Status bit (DIAGST[1:0]).

The settings of the A/D data register format and the A/D conversion accuracy determines the formats for data in this register.

The A/D-converted value addition and average modes cannot be applied to the A/D self-diagnosis function. For details on self-diagnosis, see [section 34.2.15. ADCER : A/D Control Extended Register](#).

This section describes the data formats for each condition. The register diagram and the register bit table shown in this section indicate example of the bit assignment for the left and right-justified data with 12-bit accuracy.

Table 34.14 Bit assignment for each right-justified accuracy

Accuracy	b15	b14	b13	b12	b11	b10	b9	b8	b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
Right-justified data with 12-bit accuracy	DIAGST[1:0]		—		AD[11:0]											

Table 34.15 Bit assignment for each left-justified accuracy

Accuracy	b15	b14	b13	b12	b11	b10	b9	b8	b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
Left-justified data with 12-bit accuracy	AD[11:0]												—		DIAGST[1:0]	

34.2.7 ADCSR : A/D Control Register

Base address: ADC120 = 0x4005_C000

Offset address: 0x000

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	ADST	ADCS[1:0]		—	—	ADHSC	TRGE	EXTRG	DBLE	GBADIE	—	DBLANS[4:0]				
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
4:0	DBLANS[4:0]	Double Trigger Channel Select These bits select one analog input channel for double-trigger operation. The setting is only valid in double-trigger mode.	R/W
5	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
6	GBADIE	Group B Scan End Interrupt and ELC Event Enable Group B scan only works in group scan mode. 0: Disable ADC120_GBADI interrupt generation on group B scan completion 1: Enable ADC120_GBADI interrupt generation on group B scan completion	R/W
7	DBLE	Double Trigger Mode Select 0: Deselect double-trigger mode 1: Select double-trigger mode	R/W
8	EXTRG	Trigger Select*1 0: Start A/D conversion by the synchronous trigger (ELC) 1: Start A/D conversion by the asynchronous trigger (ADTRG0)	R/W
9	TRGE	Trigger Start Enable 0: Disable A/D conversion to be started by the synchronous or asynchronous trigger 1: Enable A/D conversion to be started by the synchronous or asynchronous trigger	R/W
10	ADHSC	A/D Conversion Mode Select 0: High-speed A/D conversion mode 1: Low-power A/D conversion mode	R/W
11	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
12	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
14:13	ADCS[1:0]	Scan Mode Select 0 0: Single scan mode 0 1: Group scan mode 1 0: Continuous scan mode 1 1: Setting prohibited	R/W
15	ADST	A/D Conversion Start 0: Stop A/D conversion process 1: Start A/D conversion process	R/W

Note 1. To start A/D conversion using an external pin (asynchronous trigger):

After a high-level signal is input to the external pin (ADTRG0), write 1 to both the TRGE and EXTRG bits in the ADCSR register and drive the ADTRG0 pin low. With these settings, the scan conversion process starts on detection of the falling edge of ADTRG0. The pulse width of the low-level input must be at least PCLKB 1.5 clock cycles.

The ADCSR register sets double-trigger mode and A/D conversion start trigger, enables or disables scan end interrupt, selects the scan mode, and starts or stops A/D conversion.

DBLANS[4:0] bits (Double Trigger Channel Select)

The DBLANS[4:0] bits select one channel for A/D conversion data duplication in double-trigger mode. This can be selected by setting the binary value of the channel number to be duplicated. The A/D conversion results of the analog input of the channel selected in the DBLANS[4:0] bits are stored in A/D Data Register y when conversion is started by the first trigger, and in the A/D Data Duplexing Register when conversion is started by the second trigger.

In double-trigger mode, the channels selected in the ADANSA0 and ADANSA1 registers, are invalid, and the channel selected in the DBLANS[4:0] bits is A/D converted instead.

When double-trigger mode is used in group scan mode, double-trigger control is only applied to group A and not to group B. Therefore, multiple channel analog input can be selected for group B even in double-trigger mode.

Only set the DBLANS[4:0] bits when the ADST bit is 0. Do not set the DBLANS[4:0] bits at the same time that you write 1 to the ADST bit.

To enter A/D-converted value addition/average mode when in double-trigger mode, select the channel using the DBLANS[4:0] bits in the ADADS0 and ADADS1 registers.

A/D-converted data from the self-diagnosis function temperature sensor output and internal reference voltage cannot be used in double-trigger mode.

Table 34.16 Relationship between DBLANS bit settings and double-trigger enabled channels

DBLANS[4:0]	Duplication channel
0x00	AN000
0x01	AN001
0x02	AN002
0x03	AN003
0x04	AN004
0x05	AN005
0x06	AN006
0x07	AN007
0x08	AN008
0x09	AN009
0x0A	AN010
0x11	AN017
0x12	AN018
0x13	AN019
0x14	AN020
0x15	AN021
0x16	AN022

GBADIE bit (Group B Scan End Interrupt and ELC Event Enable)

The GBADIE bit enables or disables group B scan end interrupt (ADC120_GBADI) in group scan mode.

DBLE bit (Double Trigger Mode Select)

The DBLE bit selects or deselects double-trigger mode. Double-trigger mode can only be operated by the synchronous trigger (ELC) selected in the ADSTRGR.TRSA[5:0] bits.

Double-trigger operation is as follows:

1. The ADC120_ADI interrupt is not output on completion of the first conversion but on completion of the second conversion.
2. The A/D conversion results from the duplication channel (selected in DBLANS[4:0]) started by the first trigger are stored in A/D Data Register y and those started by the second trigger are stored in the A/D Data Duplexing Register.

When the DBLE bit is set (double-trigger mode is selected), the channels specified in the ADANSA0 and ADANSA1 registers are invalid. Double-trigger mode is deselected by setting DBLE to 0. Setting DBLE to 1 again enables the same double-trigger operation described in 1. and 2. for first time scanning with the first trigger.

Do not select double-trigger mode in continuous scan mode. Software triggering cannot be used in double-trigger mode. Always set the ADST bit to 0 before setting the DBLE bit. Do not set the DBLE bit at that same time as writing 1 to the ADST bit.

EXTRG bit (Trigger Select)

The EXTRG bit selects the synchronous or asynchronous trigger as the trigger for starting A/D conversion.

In group scan mode, the setting of this bit takes effect on the trigger selected for group A. For group B, A/D conversion is started by the selected synchronous trigger regardless of this bit setting.

TRGE bit (Trigger Start Enable)

The TRGE bit enables or disables A/D conversion by the synchronous and asynchronous triggers. In group scan mode, set this bit to 1.

ADHSC bit (A/D Conversion Mode Select)

The ADHSC bit selects either high speed mode or low current mode for A/D conversion. For details on how to rewrite the ADHSC bit, see [section 34.8.9. ADHSC Bit Rewriting Procedure](#).

ADCS[1:0] bits (Scan Mode Select)

The ADCS[1:0] bits select the scan mode.

In single scan mode, A/D conversion is performed for the analog inputs of the channels selected in the ADANSA0 and ADANSA1 registers, in ascending order of channel number. When one cycle of A/D conversion completes for all the selected channels, the scan conversion stops.

In continuous scan mode, when the ADCSR.ADST bit is 1, A/D conversion is performed for the analog inputs of the channels selected with the ADANSA0 and ADANSA1 registers, in ascending order of channel number. When one cycle of A/D conversion completes for all the selected channels, A/D conversion repeats from the first channel. If the ADCSR.ADST bit is set to 0 during continuous scan, A/D conversion stops even if scanning is in progress.

In group scan mode:

- Group A scanning is started by the synchronous trigger (ELC) selected in the TRSA[5:0] bits in the ADSTRGR register. A/D conversion is performed on group A analog inputs of the channels selected in the ADANSA0 and ADANSA1 registers, in ascending order of channel number. When 1 cycle of A/D conversion completes for all the selected channels, A/D conversion stops.
- Group B scanning is started by the synchronous trigger (ELC) selected in the ADSTRGR.TRSB[5:0] bits. A/D conversion is performed on group B analog inputs of the channels selected in the ADANSB0 and ADANSB1 registers, in ascending order of channel number. When 1 cycle of A/D conversion completes for all the selected channels, A/D conversion stops.

If the conversion processes in group A and group B occur at the same time, those conversions cannot be controlled separately. In this case, set group A Priority Control Setting bit (ADGSPCR.PGS) in the A/D Group Scan Priority Control Register (ADGSPCR) to 1 to assign a priority to group A conversion.

In group scan mode, select different channels and triggers for group A and group B.

When selecting temperature sensor output or internal reference voltage, select single scan mode, and perform A/D conversion after deselecting all analog input channels in the ADANSA0 and ADANSA1 registers. When A/D conversion of the temperature sensor output or internal reference voltage completes, A/D conversion stops.

Only set the ADCS[1:0] bits when the ADST bit is 0. Do not set the ADCS[1:0] bits at the same time that you write 1 to the ADST bit.

Table 34.17 Selectable targets for A/D conversion depending on scan and double-trigger mode settings

Scan mode setting	Double-trigger mode setting	Targets for A/D conversion				
		Self-diagnosis	Analog input (group A)	Analog input (group B)	Temperature sensor output	Internal reference voltage
Single scan	DBLE = 0	✓	✓	—	✓	✓
	DBLE = 1	—	✓ (1 ch only)	—	—	—
Continuous scan	DBLE = 0	✓	✓	—	—	—
	DBLE = 1	—	—	—	—	—
Group scan	DBLE = 0	✓	✓	✓	—	—
	DBLE = 1	—	✓ (1 ch only)	✓	—	—

Note: ✓: Selectable, —: Not selectable

ADST bit (A/D Conversion Start)

The ADST bit starts or stops the A/D conversion process. Before the ADST bit is set to 1, set the A/D conversion clock, the conversion mode, and the conversion target analog input.

[Setting conditions]

- 1 is written.
- The synchronous trigger (ELC) selected in the ADSTRGR.TRSA[5:0] bits is detected when ADCSR.EXTRG is 0 and ADCSR.TRGE is 1.
- The synchronous trigger (ELC) selected in the ADSTRGR.TRSB[5:0] bits is detected when ADCSR.TRGE is set to 1 in group scan mode.
- The asynchronous trigger is detected when the ADCSR.TRGE and ADCSR.EXTRG bits are set to 1 and the ADSTRGR.TRSA[5:0] bits are set to 0x00.
- When group priority operation mode is enabled (ADCSR.ADCS[1:0] = 01b and ADGSPCR.PGS = 1), the ADGSPCR.GBRP bit is set to 1, and each time A/D conversion on the group with the lowest priority is started.

[Clearing conditions]

- 0 is written.
- The A/D conversion of all the selected channels, the temperature sensor output, or the internal reference voltage completes in single scan mode.
- Group A scan completes in group scan mode.
- Group B scan completes in group scan mode.
- When group priority operation mode is enabled (ADCSR.ADCS[1:0] = 01b and ADGSPCR.PGS = 1), the ADGSPCR.GBRSCN bit is set to 1, and A/D conversion on the group with the lowest priority started by trigger completes.

Note: When group priority operation mode is enabled (ADCSR.ADCS[1:0] = 01b and ADGSPCR.PGS = 1), do not set the ADST bit to 1.

Note: When group priority operation mode is enabled (ADCSR.ADCS[1:0] = 01b and ADGSPCR.PGS = 1), do not set the ADST bit to 0. When forcing A/D conversion to terminate, follow the procedure for clearing the ADST bit.

34.2.8 ADANSA0 : A/D Channel Select Register A0

Base address: ADC120 = 0x4005_C000

Offset address: 0x004

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	ANSA 10	ANSA 9	ANSA 8	ANSA 7	ANSA 6	ANSA 5	ANSA 4	ANSA 3	ANSA 2	ANSA 1	ANSA 0

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
10:0	ANSA10 to ANSA0	A/D Conversion Channels Select Bit 10 (ANSA10) is associated with AN010 and bit 0 (ANSA0) is associated with AN000. 0: Do not select associated input channel 1: Select associated input channel	R/W
15:11	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

ADANSA0 register selects analog input channels for A/D conversion. In group scan mode, this register selects group A channels.

Only set the ADANSA0 register when the ADCSR.ADST bit is 0.

ANSAn bits (A/D Conversion Channels Select)

The ADANSA0 register selects any combination of analog input channels for A/D conversion. The channels and the number of channels can be arbitrarily set.

When performing A/D conversion of temperature sensor output or internal reference voltage, set the ADANSA0 register to 0x0000 to deselect all analog input channels.

In double trigger mode, the channels selected in the ADANSA0 register are invalid, and the channel selected in the ADCSR.DBLANS[4:0] bits is selected in group A instead.

When group scan mode is selected, do not select the channels specified in A/D Channel Select Register B0 (ADANSB0) and A/D Channel Select Register B1 (ADANSB1).

34.2.9 ADANSA1 : A/D Channel Select Register A1

Base address: ADC120 = 0x4005_C000

Offset address: 0x006

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	ANSA 22	ANSA 21	ANSA 20	ANSA 19	ANSA 18	ANSA 17	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
6:1	ANSA22 to ANSA17	A/D Conversion Channels Select Bit 6 (ANSA22) is associated with AN022 and bit 1 (ANSA17) is associated with AN017. 0: Do not select associated input channel 1: Select associated input channel	R/W
15:7	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

ADANSA1 register selects analog input channels for A/D conversion. In group scan mode, this register selects group A channels.

Only set the ADANSA1 register when the ADCSR.ADST bit is 0.

ANSAn bits (A/D Conversion Channels Select)

The ADANSA1 register selects any combination of analog input channels for A/D conversion. The channels and the number of channels can be arbitrarily set.

When performing A/D conversion of temperature sensor output or internal reference voltage, set the ADANSA1 register to 0x0000 to deselect all analog input channels.

In double trigger mode, the channels selected in the ADANSA1 register are invalid, and the channel selected in the ADCSR.DBLANS[4:0] bits is selected in group A instead.

When group scan mode is selected, do not select the channels specified in A/D Channel Select Register B0 (ADANSB0) and A/D Channel Select Register B1 (ADANSB1).

34.2.10 ADANSB0 : A/D Channel Select Register B0

Base address: ADC120 = 0x4005_C000

Offset address: 0x014

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	ANSB 10	ANSB 9	ANSB 8	ANSB 7	ANSB 6	ANSB 5	ANSB 4	ANSB 3	ANSB 2	ANSB 1	ANSB 0
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
10:0	ANSB10 to ANSB0	A/D Conversion Channels Select Bit 10 (ANSB10) is associated with AN010 and bit 0 (ANSB0) is associated with AN000. 0: Do not select associated input channel 1: Select associated input channel	R/W
15:11	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

ADANSB0 selects analog input channels for A/D conversion in group B when group scan mode is selected. The ADANSB0 register is not used in any scan mode other than group scan mode.

Only set the ADANSB0 register when the ADCSR.ADST bit is 0.

ANSBn bits (A/D Conversion Channels Select)

The ADANSB0 register selects any combination of analog input channels in group B for A/D conversion when group scan mode is selected. The ADANSB0 register is used for group scan mode only and not for any other modes.

Do not select channels specified in group A as selected in the ADANSA0 and ADANSA1 registers or the ADCSR.DBLANS[4:0] bits in double-trigger mode.

When performing A/D conversion of temperature sensor output or internal reference voltage, set the ADANSB0 register to 0x0000 to deselect all analog input channels.

34.2.11 ADANSB1 : A/D Channel Select Register B1

Base address: ADC120 = 0x4005_C000

Offset address: 0x016

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	ANSB 22	ANSB 21	ANSB 20	ANSB 19	ANSB 18	ANSB 17	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
6:1	ANSB22 to ANSB17	A/D Conversion Channels Select Bit 6 (ANSB22) is associated with AN022 and bit 1 (ANSB17) is associated with AN017. 0: Do not select associated input channel 1: Select associated input channel	R/W
15:7	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

ADANSB1 selects analog input channels for A/D conversion in group B when group scan mode is selected. The ADANSB1 register is not used in any scan mode other than group scan mode.

Only set the ADANSB1 register when the ADCSR.ADST bit is 0.

ANSBn bits (A/D Conversion Channels Select)

The ADANSB1 register selects any combination of analog input channels in group B for A/D conversion when group scan mode is selected. The ADANSB1 register is used for group scan mode only and not for any other modes.

Do not select channels specified in group A as selected in the ADANSA0 and ADANSA1 registers or the ADCSR.DBLANS[4:0] bits in double-trigger mode.

When performing A/D conversion of temperature sensor output or internal reference voltage, set the ADANSB1 register to 0x0000 to deselect all analog input channels.

34.2.12 ADADS0 : A/D-Converted Value Addition/Average Channel Select Register 0

Base address: ADC120 = 0x4005_C000

Offset address: 0x008

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	ADS10	ADS9	ADS8	ADS7	ADS6	ADS5	ADS4	ADS3	ADS2	ADS1	ADS0
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
10:0	ADS10 to ADS0	A/D-Converted Value Addition/Average Channel Select Bit 10 (ADS10) is associated with AN010 and bit 0 (ADS0) is associated with AN000. 0: Do not select associated input channel 1: Select associated input channel	R/W
15:11	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

ADS_n bits (A/D-Converted Value Addition/Average Channel Select)

The ADS_n bits determine which A/D-converted channels are subject to A/D-converted value addition/averaging. When an ADS_n bit associated with a channel selected for A/D conversion is set to 1, A/D conversion of the analog input of the respective channel is performed successively 1, 2, 3, 4, or 16 times, as specified in the ADC[2:0] bits in the ADADC register.

When the ADADC.AVEE bit is 0, the value obtained by addition is stored in the A/D data register. When the ADADC.AVEE bit is 1, the mean value of the results obtained by addition is stored in the A/D data register.

The ADS_n bits apply only to channels that are selected for A/D conversion in:

- The ANSA_n bits in the ADANSA0 register or the DBLANS[4:0] bits in the ADCSR register
- The ANSB_n bits in the ADANSB0 register

For channels on which the A/D conversion is performed and for which addition/average mode is not selected, a normal 1-time conversion is executed, and the conversion result is stored in the A/D data register.

Only set ADADS0 register bits when the ADCSR.ADST bit is 0.

Figure 34.2 shows a scanning operation sequence in which the ADADS0 register bits (channel c and g) are set to 1. In this figure:

- Addition mode is selected (ADADC.AVEE = 0)
- The number of conversions is set to 4 (ADADC.ADC[1:0] = 11b)
- The analog input channels (a to h) are selected by ADANSA0 register in continuous scan mode (ADCSR.ADCS[1:0] = 10b).

The conversion process begins with analog input A (channel a). The analog input C (channel c) conversion is performed successively 4 times and the added value is returned to A/D Data Register c (ADDRc). Next, the analog input D (channel d) conversion process is started. The analog input G (channel g) is performed successively 4 times and the added value is returned to A/D Data Register g (ADDRg). After conversion of analog input H (channel h), the conversion operation repeats in the same sequence starting with analog input A (channel a).

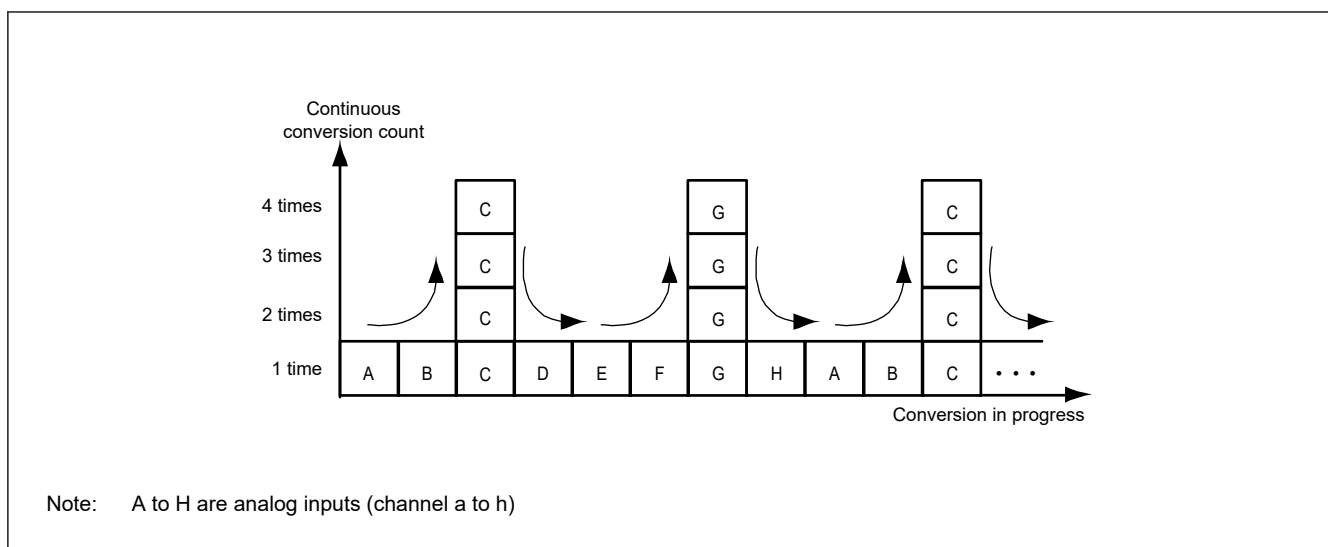


Figure 34.2 Scan conversion sequence with ADADC.ADC[2:0] = 011b, set 1 for analog inputs C and G by ADADS0/1

34.2.13 ADADS1 : A/D-Converted Value Addition/Average Channel Select Register 1

Base address: ADC120 = 0x4005_C000

Offset address: 0x00A

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	ADS22	ADS21	ADS20	ADS19	ADS18	ADS17	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
6:1	ADS22 to ADS17	A/D-Converted Value Addition/Average Channel Select Bit 6 (ADS22) is associated with AN022 and bit 1 (ADS17) is associated with AN017. 0: Do not select associated input channel 1: Select associated input channel	R/W
15:7	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

ADS_n bits (A/D-Converted Value Addition/Average Channel Select)

The ADS_n bits determine which A/D-converted channels are subject to A/D-converted value addition/averaging. When an ADS_n bit associated with a channel selected for A/D conversion is set to 1, A/D conversion of the analog input of the respective channel is performed successively 1, 2, 3, 4, or 16 times, as specified in the ADC[2:0] bits in the ADADC register.

When the ADADC.AVEE bit is 0, the value obtained by addition is stored in the A/D data register. When the ADADC.AVEE bit is 1, the mean value of the results obtained by addition is stored in the A/D data register.

The ADS_n bits apply only to channels that are selected for A/D conversion in:

- The ANSA_n bits in the ADANSA1 register or the DBLANS[4:0] bits in the ADCSR register
- The ANSB_n bits in the ADANSB1 register.

For channels on which the A/D conversion is performed and for which addition/average mode is not selected, a normal 1-time conversion is executed, and the conversion result is stored in the A/D data register.

Only set ADADS1 register when the ADCSR.ADST bit is 0.

34.2.14 ADADC : A/D-Converted Value Addition/Average Count Select Register

Base address: ADC120 = 0x4005_C000

Offset address: 0x00C

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	AVEE	—	—	—	—	ADC[2:0]		
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
2:0	ADC[2:0]	Addition/Average Count Select 0 0 0: 1-time conversion (no addition, same as normal conversion) 0 0 1: 2-time conversion (1 addition) 0 1 0: 3-time conversion (2 additions) 0 1 1: 4-time conversion (3 additions) 1 0 1: 16-time conversion (15 additions) Others: Setting prohibited	R/W
6:3	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
7	AVEE	Average Mode Select 0: Enable addition mode 1: Enable average mode	R/W

ADADC sets the addition or average mode and addition count for A/D conversion. Table 34.18 lists the settable combinations of ADADC register.

Table 34.18 Settable combinations of ADADC register

Mode select (AVEE)	Conversion time				
	1-time	2-time	3-time	4-time	16-time
Addition mode (AVEE = 0)	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Average mode (AVEE = 1)	—	✓	—	✓	—

Note: ✓: Selectable, —: Not selectable

ADC[2:0] bits (Addition/Average Count Select)

The ADC[2:0] bits set the addition count in all channels for which A/D conversion and addition/average mode are selected, including the channel selected in double trigger mode with the ADCSR.DBLANS[4:0] bits. The count also applies to A/D conversion of the temperature sensor output and the internal reference voltage.

When self-diagnosis is executed (ADCER.DIAGM = 1), do not set the ADC[2:0] bits to any value other than 000b.

AVEE bit (Average Mode Select)

The AVEE bit selects addition or average mode in all channels for which A/D conversion and addition/average mode are selected, including the channels selected in double-trigger mode in the ADCSR.DBLANS[4:0] bits, temperature sensor output, and internal reference voltage.

34.2.15 ADCER : A/D Control Extended Register

Base address: ADC120 = 0x4005_C000

Offset address: 0x00E

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	ADRF MT	—	—	—	DIAG M	DIAGL D	DIAGVAL[1:0]		—	—	ACE	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
4:0	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
5	ACE	A/D Data Register Automatic Clearing Enable 0: Disable automatic clearing 1: Enable automatic clearing	R/W
7:6	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
9:8	DIAGVAL[1:0]	Self-Diagnosis Conversion Voltage Select 0 0: Setting prohibited when self-diagnosis is enabled 0 1: 0 volts 1 0: Reference voltage ^{*1} × 1/2 1 1: Reference voltage ^{*1}	R/W
10	DIAGLD	Self-Diagnosis Mode Select 0: Select rotation mode for self-diagnosis voltage 1: Select mixed mode for self-diagnosis voltage	R/W
11	DIAGM	Self-Diagnosis Enable 0: Disable ADC12 self-diagnosis 1: Enable ADC12 self-diagnosis	R/W
14:12	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
15	ADRFMT	A/D Data Register Format Select 0: Select right-justified for the A/D data register format 1: Select left-justified for the A/D data register format	R/W

Note 1. The reference voltage refers to VREFH0, AVCC0, or internal reference voltage (BGR) by ADHVREFCNT setting.

ACE bit (A/D Data Register Automatic Clearing Enable)

The ACE bit enables or disables automatic clearing (all 0) of the ADDRy, ADRD, ADDBLDR, ADDBLDRA, ADDBLDRB, ADTSDR, or ADOCDR register after any of these registers is read by the CPU or DTC. Automatic clearing of the A/D data registers enables detection of failures that are not updated in the A/D data registers. For details, see [section 34.3.7. Usage Example of A/D Data Register Automatic Clearing Function](#).

DIAGVAL[1:0] bits (Self-Diagnosis Conversion Voltage Select)

The DIAGVAL[1:0] bits select the voltage value used in self-diagnosis fixed voltage mode. For details, see the DIAGLD bit description.

Do not execute self-diagnosis by setting the DIAGLD bit to 1 when the DIAGVAL[1:0] bits are set to 00b.

DIAGLD bit (Self-Diagnosis Mode Select)

The DIAGLD bit selects whether the three voltage values are rotated, or the fixed voltage is used in self-diagnosis.

Setting the DIAGLD bit to 0 selects conversion of the voltages in rotation mode, where 0 V, the reference voltage × 1/2, and the reference voltage are converted, in that order. After reset and when self-diagnosis voltage rotation mode is selected, self-diagnosis is executed from 0 V. The self-diagnosis voltage value does not return to 0 V when scan conversion completes. When scan conversion is restarted, rotation starts at the voltage value following the previous value.

Setting the DIAGLD bit to 1 selects fixed voltage, in which the fixed voltage specified in the ADCER.DIAGVAL[1:0] bits is converted. If fixed mode is switched to rotation mode, rotation starts at the fixed voltage value.

Only set the DIAGLD bit when the ADCSR.ADST bit is 0.

DIAGM bit (Self-Diagnosis Enable)

The DIAGM bit enables or disables self-diagnosis.

Self-diagnosis is used to detect a failure of the ADC12. In self-diagnosis mode, one of the three voltage values (0 V, the reference voltage × 1/2, or the reference voltage) is converted. When conversion completes, information on the converted voltage and the conversion result is stored into the A/D Self-Diagnosis Data Register (ADRD). The ADRD register can be read to determine whether the conversion result falls within the normal or abnormal range.

Self-diagnosis is executed once at the beginning of each scan, and one of the three voltages is converted. In double trigger mode (ADCSR.DBLE = 1), self-diagnosis (DIAGM = 0) is deselected. When self-diagnosis is selected in group scan mode, self-diagnosis is executed separately for group A and group B.

Only set the DIAGM bit when the ADCSR.ADST bit is 0.

ADRFMT bit (A/D Data Register Format Select)

The ADRFMT bit specifies flush-right or flush-left for data to be stored in the ADDRy, ADDBLDR, ADDBLDRA, ADDBLDRB, ADTSDR, ADOCDR, ADCMPDR0/1, ADWINLLB, ADWINULB, or ADRD register.

Only set the ADRFMT bit when the ADCSR.ADST bit is 0.

34.2.16 ADSTRGR : A/D Conversion Start Trigger Select Register

Base address: ADC120 = 0x4005_C000

Offset address: 0x010

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	TRSA[5:0]						—	—	TRSB[5:0]					
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
5:0	TRSB[5:0]	A/D Conversion Start Trigger Select for Group B Select the A/D conversion start trigger for group B in group scan mode.	R/W
7:6	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
13:8	TRSA[5:0]	A/D Conversion Start Trigger Select Select the A/D conversion start trigger in single scan mode and continuous scan mode. In group scan mode, the A/D conversion start trigger for group A is selected.	R/W
15:14	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

TRSB[5:0] bits (A/D Conversion Start Trigger Select for Group B)

The TRSB[5:0] bits select the trigger to start scanning of the analog input selected in group B. The TRSB[5:0] bits must only be set in group scan mode and are not used in any other scan mode. For the scan conversion start trigger for group B, setting a software trigger or an asynchronous trigger is prohibited. In group scan mode, set the TRSB[5:0] bits to a value other than 0x00 and set the ADCSR.TRGE bit to 1.

When group A is given priority in group scan mode, setting the ADGSPCR.GBRP bit to 1 allows group B to continuously operate in single scan mode. When setting the ADGSPCR.GBRP bit to 1, set the TRSB[5:0] bits to 0x3F. The issuance period for a conversion trigger must be more than or equal to the actual scan conversion time (t_{SCAN}). If the issuance period is less than t_{SCAN} , A/D conversion by the trigger might have no effect.

When the GPT module is selected as an A/D conversion start trigger, a delay for synchronization processing occurs. For details, see [section 34.3.6. Analog Input Sampling and Scan Conversion Time](#).

[Table 34.19](#) lists the A/D conversion startup sources selected in the TRSB[5:0] bits.

Table 34.19 Selection of A/D conversion start sources in the TRSB[5:0] bits

Source	Remarks	TRSB[5]	TRSB[4]	TRSB[3]	TRSB[2]	TRSB[1]	TRSB[0]
Trigger source deselected state	—	1	1	1	1	1	1
ELC_AD00	ELC	0	0	1	0	0	1
ELC_AD01	ELC	0	0	1	0	1	0
ELC_AD00, ELC_AD01	ELC	0	0	1	0	1	1

TRSA[5:0] bits (A/D Conversion Start Trigger Select)

The TRSA[5:0] bits select the trigger to start A/D conversion in single scan mode and continuous scan mode, or the trigger to start scanning of group A analog inputs in group scan mode. When scanning is executed in group scan mode or double trigger mode, software trigger or asynchronous trigger is prohibited.

- When using a synchronous trigger (ELC), set the TRGE bit in the ADCSR register to 1 and set the EXTRG bit in the ADCSR register to 0.
- When using the asynchronous trigger (ADTRG0), set the TRGE bit in the ADCSR register to 1 and set the EXTRG bit in the ADCSR register to 1.
- Software trigger (ADCSR.ADST) is enabled regardless of the settings of the ADCSR.TRGE bit, the ADCSR.EXTRG bit, or the TRSA[5:0] bits.

The issuance period for a conversion trigger must be more than or equal to the actual scan conversion time (tSCAN). If the issuance period is less than tSCAN, A/D conversion by a trigger might have no effect.

When the GPT module is selected as an A/D conversion start trigger, a delay for synchronization processing occurs. For details, see [section 34.3.6. Analog Input Sampling and Scan Conversion Time](#).

Table 34.20 lists the A/D conversion start sources selected in the TRSA[5:0] bits.

Table 34.20 Selection of A/D activation sources in the TRSA[5:0] bits

Source	Remarks	TRSA[5]	TRSA[4]	TRSA[3]	TRSA[2]	TRSA[1]	TRSA[0]
Trigger source deselected state	—	1	1	1	1	1	1
ADTRG0	Input pin for the trigger	0	0	0	0	0	0
ELC_AD00	ELC	0	0	1	0	0	1
ELC_AD01	ELC	0	0	1	0	1	0
ELC_AD00, ELC_AD01	ELC	0	0	1	0	1	1

34.2.17 ADEXICR : A/D Conversion Extended Input Control Registers

Base address: ADC120 = 0x4005_C000

Offset address: 0x012

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	OCSA	TSSA	—	—	—	—	—	—	OCSA D	TSSA D
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	TSSAD	Temperature Sensor Output A/D-Converted Value Addition/Average Mode Select 0: Do not select addition/average mode for temperature sensor output 1: Select addition/average mode for temperature sensor output	R/W
1	OCSAD	Internal Reference Voltage A/D-Converted Value Addition/Average Mode Select 0: Do not select addition/average mode for internal reference voltage 1: Select addition/average mode for internal reference voltage	R/W
7:2	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
8	TSSA	Temperature Sensor Output A/D Conversion Select 0: Disable A/D conversion of temperature sensor output 1: Enable A/D conversion of temperature sensor output	R/W
9	OCSA	Internal Reference Voltage A/D Conversion Select 0: Disable A/D conversion of internal reference voltage 1: Enable A/D conversion of internal reference voltage	R/W
15:10	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

TSSAD bit (Temperature Sensor Output A/D-Converted Value Addition/Average Mode Select)

When the TSSAD bit is set to 1, A/D conversion of the temperature sensor output is selected and performed successively the number of times specified in the ADC[2:0] bits in ADADC. When the ADADC.AVEE bit is 0, the value obtained by

addition (integration) is returned to the A/D Temperature Sensor Data Register (ADTSDR). When the ADADC.AVEE bit is 1, the mean value is returned to ADTSDR.

Only set the TSSAD bit while the ADCSR.ADST bit is 0.

OCSAD bit (Internal Reference Voltage A/D-Converted Value Addition/Average Mode Select)

When the OCSAD bit is set to 1, A/D conversion of the internal reference voltage is selected and performed successively the number of times specified in the ADC[2:0] bits in ADADC. When the ADADC.AVEE bit is 0, the value obtained by addition (integration) is returned to the A/D Internal Reference Voltage Data Register (ADOCDR). When the ADADC.AVEE bit is 1, the mean value is returned to ADOCDR.

Only set the OCSAD bit while the ADCSR.ADST bit is 0.

TSSA bit (Temperature Sensor Output A/D Conversion Select)

The TSSA bit selects A/D conversion of the temperature sensor output. When executing the A/D conversion of the temperature sensor output:

1. Set all bits in the ADANSA0/1 and ADANSB0/1 registers, the ADCSR.DBLE bit, and the ADEXICR.OCSA bit to 0.
2. Execute the A/D conversion in single scan mode.

Only set the TSSA bit when the ADCSR.ADST bit is 0.

When executing A/D conversion of the temperature sensor output, the ADDISCR register is set to 0x0F and the A/D converter executes discharge (15 ADCLK) before executing sampling. The required sampling time is 5 μ s or more.

The A/D converter executes discharge each time A/D conversion is executed on the temperature sensor output.

OCSA bit (Internal Reference Voltage A/D Conversion Select)

The OCSA bit selects A/D conversion of the internal reference voltage. When executing A/D conversion of the internal reference voltage:

1. Set all bits in the ADANSA0/1 and ADANSB0/1 registers, the ADCSR.DBLE bit, and the ADEXICR.TSSA bits to 0.
2. Execute the A/D conversion in single scan mode.

Only set the OCSA bit when the ADCSR.ADST bit is 0.

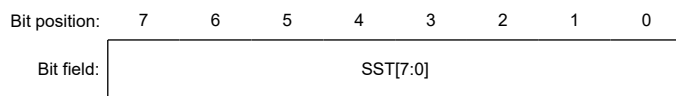
When executing A/D conversion of the internal reference voltage, the ADDISCR register is set to 0x0F and the A/D converter executes discharge (15 ADCLK) before executing sampling. The required sampling time is 5 μ s or more.

The A/D converter executes discharge each time A/D conversion is executed on the internal reference voltage.

34.2.18 ADSSTRn/ADSSTRL/ADSSTRT/ADSSTRO : A/D Sampling State Register (n = 0 to 10)

Base address: ADC120 = 0x4005_C000

Offset address: 0x0E0 + 0x1 × n (n = 0 to 10)
 0x0DD (ADSSTRL)
 0x0DE (ADSSTRT)
 0x0DF (ADSSTRO)



Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 1 1 0 1

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7:0	SST[7:0]	Sampling Time Setting These bits set the sampling time in the range from 5 to 255 states.	R/W

The ADSSTRn register sets the sampling time for analog input.

The sampling time can be adjusted if the impedance of the analog input signal source is too high to secure sufficient sampling time, or if the ADCLK clock is slow. The set value indicates the time for one ADCLK cycle, and the required sampling time is specified by the voltage conditions. For details, see [section 41.5. ADC12 Characteristics](#).

The lower limit of the sampling time setting depends on the frequency ratio:

- If the frequency ratio of PCLKB to PCLKD (ADCLK) = 1:1, the sampling time must be set to a value of more than 5 states
- If the frequency ratio of PCLKB to PCLKD (ADCLK) = 1:2 or 1:4, the sampling time must be set to a value of more than 6 states.

[Table 34.21](#) shows the relationship between the A/D Sampling State Register and the associated channels. For details, see [section 34.3.6. Analog Input Sampling and Scan Conversion Time](#).

Only set the SST[7:0] bits when the ADCSR.ADST bit is 0.

Table 34.21 Relationship between A/D sampling state register and associated channels

Bit name	Associated channels
ADSSTRn.SST[7:0] bits (n = 0 to 10)* ¹	AN0n (n = 00 to 10)* ²
ADSSTRL.SST[7:0] bits	AN0n (n = 17 to 22)
ADSSTRT.SST[7:0] bits	Temperature sensor output* ²
ADSSTRO.SST[7:0] bits	Internal reference voltage* ²

Note 1. When the self-diagnosis function is selected, the sampling time set in the ADSSTRO.SST[7:0] bits is applied.

Note 2. When the temperature sensor output or the internal reference voltage is converted, set the sampling time to more than 5 μ s.

Because the maximum SST[7:0] value is 255 states, the ADCLK frequency must be 51 MHz or less to achieve 5 μ s sampling time.

34.2.19 ADDISCR : A/D Disconnection Detection Control Register

Base address: ADC120 = 0x4005_C000

Offset address: 0x07A

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	PCHG	ADNDIS[3:0]			

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
3:0	ADNDIS[3:0]	Disconnection Detection Assist Setting 0x0: The disconnection detection assist function is disabled 0x1: Setting prohibited Others: The number of states for the discharge or precharge period	R/W
4	PCHG	Precharge/discharge select 0: Discharge 1: Precharge	R/W
7:5	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

The ADDISCR register selects either precharge or discharge, and the period of precharge or discharge for the A/D disconnection detection assist function. Only set the ADDISCR register when the ADCSR.ADST bit is 0. When the temperature sensor output or internal reference voltage is converted, the A/D converter executes discharge automatically.

This operation is achieved by setting the ADDISCR register to 0x0F (15 ADCLK) when ADEXICR.OCSA or TSSA is set to 1. After executing discharge, the A/D converter executes sampling.

Disable the disconnection detection assist function if any of the following functions are used:

- The temperature sensor
- The internal reference voltage
- A/D self-diagnosis

ADNDIS[3:0] bits (Disconnection Detection Assist Setting)

The ADNDIS[3:0] bits specify the period of precharge or discharge. When ADNDIS[3:0] = 0000b, the disconnection detection assist function is disabled. Setting the ADNDIS[3:0] bits to 0001b is prohibited. Except when ADNDIS[3:0] = 0000b or 0001b, the specified value indicates the number of states for the period of precharge or discharge. When the ADNDIS[3:0] bits are set to any values other than 0000b or 0001b, the disconnection detection assistance function is enabled.

PCHG bit (Precharge/discharge select)

The PCHG bit selects either precharge or discharge.

34.2.20 ADACSR : A/D Conversion Operation Mode Select Register

Base address: ADC120 = 0x4005_C000

Offset address: 0x07E

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	ADSAC	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
1	ADSAC	Successive Approximation Control Setting 0: Normal conversion mode (default) 1: Fast conversion mode	R/W
7:2	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

The ADACSR register selects the A/D conversion operation mode.

ADSAC bit (Successive Approximation Control Setting)

The ADSAC bit selects either normal conversion mode or fast conversion mode for A/D conversion.

When the ADSAC bit is 0, the ADCLK maximum frequency is 64 MHz. At high-speed A/D conversion mode (ADCSR.ADHSC = 0), the conversion time of successive approximation is 31.5 ADCLK. At Low-Power A/D conversion mode (ADCSR.ADHSC = 1), the conversion time of successive approximation is 40.5 ADCLK.

When the ADSAC bit is 1, the ADCLK maximum frequency is 48 MHz. At high-speed A/D conversion mode (ADCSR.ADHSC = 0), the conversion time of successive approximation is 21.5 ADCLK. At Low-Power A/D conversion mode (ADCSR.ADHSC = 1), the conversion time of successive approximation is 27.5 ADCLK.

For details, see [section 34.3.6. Analog Input Sampling and Scan Conversion Time](#)

34.2.21 ADGSPCR : A/D Group Scan Priority Control Register

Base address: ADC120 = 0x4005_C000

Offset address: 0x080

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	GBRP	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	GBRSCN	PGS
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	PGS	Group Priority Operation Setting*1 0: Operate without group priority control. 1: Operate with group priority control.	R/W

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
1	GBRSCN	Lower-Priority Group Restart Setting (enabled only when PGS = 1 and reserved when PGS = 0.) 0: Disable rescanning of the group that was stopped in group priority operation 1: Enable rescanning of the group that was stopped in group priority operation.	R/W
14:2	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
15	GBRP	Single Scan Continuous Start* ² (enabled only when PGS = 1 and reserved when PGS = 0.) 0: Single scan is not continuously activated. 1: Single scan for the group with the lower-priority is continuously activated.	R/W

Note 1. The ADCSR.ADCS[1:0] bits must be set to 01b (group scan mode) before setting PGS to 1. Operation is not guaranteed if these bits are set to any other value.

Note 2. When the GBRP bit is set to 1, single scan is performed continuously for the group with the lower-priority regardless of the setting in the GBRSCN bit.

PGS bit (Group Priority Operation Setting)

The PGS bit controls group priority operation in group scan mode. Set the PGS bit to 1 to enable group priority operation.

The ADCSR.ADCS[1:0] bits must be set to 01b (group scan mode) before setting the PGS bit to 1. Operation is not guaranteed if the bits are set to any other value.

When the PGS bit is set to 0, a clear operation must be performed by software as described in [section 34.8.3. Constraints on Stopping A/D Conversion](#). When the PGS bit is set to 1, use the settings described in [section 34.3.4.3. Group Priority Operation](#).

GBRSCN bit (Lower-Priority Group Restart Setting)

The GBRSCN bit controls the restarting of scan operation in group priority operation.

When the GBRSCN bit is set to 1, if the scan operation of a lower-priority group is stopped by a trigger input of a priority group, the lower-priority group scanning is restarted on completion of the priority group scanning. If a trigger of a lower-priority group is input during scanning of the priority group, the lower-priority group scanning is started on completion of the priority group scanning.

When the GBRSCN bit is set to 0, triggers input during scanning are ignored. Set the GBRSCN bit while the ADCSR.ADST bit is 0.

GBRP bit (Single Scan Continuous Start)

The GBRP bit is set when a single scan operation is to be performed continuously on the group with the lower-priority.

Setting the GBRP bit to 1 starts a single scan of the group with the lower-priority. On completion of the scan, another single scan of the group with the lower-priority is started automatically. If scanning has been stopped during group priority operation, single scan of the group with the lower-priority is automatically restarted on completion of the A/D conversion of the priority group.

Before setting the GBRP bit to 1, disable input of a trigger for the lower-priority group. If the GBRP bit is set to 1, rescanning is performed only on the group with the lower-priority even if the GBRSCN bit is set to 0.

34.2.22 ADCMPCR : A/D Compare Function Control Register

Base address: ADC120 = 0x4005_C000

Offset address: 0x090

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	CMPAI E	WCMP E	CMPBI E	—	CMPA E	—	CMPB E	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	CMPAB[1:0]
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
1:0	CMPAB[1:0]	Window A/B Composite Conditions Setting These bits are valid when both window A and window B are enabled (CMPAE = 1 and CMPBE = 1). 0 0: Output ADC120_WCMPPM when window A OR window B comparison conditions are met. Otherwise, output ADC120_WCMPUM. 0 1: Output ADC120_WCMPPM when window A EXOR window B comparison conditions are met. Otherwise, output ADC120_WCMPUM. 1 0: Output ADC120_WCMPPM when window A AND window B comparison conditions are met. Otherwise, output ADC120_WCMPUM. 1 1: Setting prohibited.	R/W
8:2	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
9	CMPBE	Compare Window B Operation Enable 0: Disable compare window B operation. Disable ADC120_WCMPPM and ADC120_WCMPUM outputs. 1: Enable compare window B operation.	R/W
10	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
11	CMPAE	Compare Window A Operation Enable 0: Disable compare window A operation. Disable ADC120_WCMPPM and ADC120_WCMPUM outputs. 1: Enable compare window A operation.	R/W
12	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
13	CMPBIE	Compare B Interrupt Enable 0: Disable ADC120_CMPBI interrupt when comparison conditions (window B) are met. 1: Enable ADC120_CMPBI interrupt when comparison conditions (window B) are met.	R/W
14	WCMPE	Window Function Setting 0: Disable window function Window A and window B operate as a comparator to compare the single value on the lower side with the A/D conversion result. 1: Enable window function Window A and window B operate as a comparator to compare the two values on the upper and lower sides with the A/D conversion result.	R/W
15	CMPAIE	Compare A Interrupt Enable 0: Disable ADC120_CMPAI interrupt when comparison conditions (window A) are met. 1: Enable ADC120_CMPAI interrupt when comparison conditions (window A) are met.	R/W

CMPAB[1:0] bits (Window A/B Composite Conditions Setting)

The CMPAB[1:0] bits are valid when both window A and window B are enabled (CMPAE = 1 and CMPBE = 1) in single scan mode. These bits specify the compare function match/mismatch event output conditions and monitoring conditions of ADWINMON.MONCOMB. Only set the CMPAB[1:0] bits while the ADCSR.ADST bit is 0.

CMPBE bit (Compare Window B Operation Enable)

The CMPBE bit enables or disables the compare window B operation. Set the CMPBE bit while the ADCSR.ADST bit is 0.

Set this bit to 0 before setting the following registers:

- A/D Channel Select Registers A0, A1, B0, B1 (ADANSA0, ADANSA1, ADANSB0, ADANSB1)
- OCSA, or TSSA bits in the A/D Conversion Extended Input Control Register (ADEXICR)
- CMPCHB[5:0] bits in the Window B Channel Select Register (ADCMPBNSR)

CMPAE bit (Compare Window A Operation Enable)

The CMPAE bit enables or disables the compare window A operation. Set the CMPAE bit while the ADCSR.ADST bit is 0.

Set this bit to 0 before setting the following registers:

- A/D Channel Select Registers A0, A1, B0, B1 (ADANSA0, ADANSA1, ADANSB0, ADANSB1)
- TSSB, OCSA, or TSSA bits in the A/D Conversion Extended Input Control Register (ADEXICR)

- Window A Channel Select Registers 0 and 1 (ADCMPANSR0 and ADCMPANSR1)
- Window A Extended Input Select Register (ADCMPANSER)

CMPBIE bit (Compare B Interrupt Enable)

The CMPBIE bit enables or disables the ADC120_CMPBI interrupt output when the comparison conditions (window B) are met.

WCMPE bit (Window Function Setting)

The WCMPE bit enables or disables the window function. Set the WCMPE bit while the ADCSR.ADST bit is 0.

CMPAIE bit (Compare A Interrupt Enable)

The CMPAIE bit enables or disables the ADC120_CMPAI interrupt output when the comparison conditions (window A) are met.

34.2.23 ADCMPANSR0 : A/D Compare Function Window A Channel Select Register 0

Base address: ADC120 = 0x4005_C000

Offset address: 0x094

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	CMPCHA10	CMPCHA9	CMPCHA8	CMPCHA7	CMPCHA6	CMPCHA5	CMPCHA4	CMPCHA3	CMPCHA2	CMPCHA1	CMPCHA0
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
10:0	CMPCHA10 to CMPCHA0	Compare Window A Channel Select Bit 10 (CMPCHA10) is associated with AN010 and bit 0 (CMPCHA0) is associated with AN000. 0: Disable compare function for associated input channel 1: Enable compare function for associated input channel	R/W
15:11	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

CMPCHAN bits (Compare Window A Channel Select)

The compare function is enabled by writing 1 to the CMPCHAN bits with the same number as the A/D conversion channel selected in the ADANSA0.ANSAn bits and the ADANSB0.ANSBn bits.

Set the CMPCHAN bits while the ADCSR.ADST bit is 0.

34.2.24 ADCMPANSR1 : A/D Compare Function Window A Channel Select Register 1

Base address: ADC120 = 0x4005_C000

Offset address: 0x096

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	CMPCHA22	CMPCHA21	CMPCHA20	CMPCHA19	CMPCHA18	CMPCHA17	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
6:1	CMPCHA22 to CMPCHA17	Compare Window A Channel Select Bit 6 (CMPCHA22) is associated with AN022 and bit 1 (CMPCHA17) is associated with AN017. 0: Disable compare function for associated input channel 1: Enable compare function for associated input channel	R/W
15:7	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

CMPCHAN bits (Compare Window A Channel Select)

The compare function is enabled by writing 1 to the CMPCHAN bits with the same number as the A/D conversion channel selected in the ADANSA1.ANSA bits and the ADANSB1.ANSB bits.

Set the CMPCHAN bits while the ADCSR.ADST bit is 0.

34.2.25 ADCMPANSER : A/D Compare Function Window A Extended Input Select Register

Base address: ADC120 = 0x4005_C000

Offset address: 0x092

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	CMPO CA	CMPT SA
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	CMPTSA	Temperature Sensor Output Compare Select 0: Exclude the temperature sensor output from the compare Window A target range 1: Include the temperature sensor output in the compare Window A target range	R/W
1	CMPOCA	Internal Reference Voltage Compare Select 0: Exclude the internal reference voltage from the compare Window A target range 1: Include the internal reference voltage in the compare Window A target range	R/W
7:2	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

CMPTSA bit (Temperature Sensor Output Compare Select)

The compare window A function is enabled by setting the CMPTSA bit to 1 when the ADEXICR.TSSA bit is 1. Set the CMPTSA bit when the ADCSR.ADST bit is 0.

CMPOCA bit (Internal Reference Voltage Compare Select)

The compare window A function is enabled by setting the CMPOCA bit to 1 when the ADEXICR.OCSA bit is 1. Set the CMPOCA bit when the ADCSR.ADST bit is 0.

34.2.26 ADCMPLR0 : A/D Compare Function Window A Comparison Condition Setting Register 0

Base address: ADC120 = 0x4005_C000

Offset address: 0x098

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	CMPL CHA1 0	CMPL CHA9	CMPL CHA8	CMPL CHA7	CMPL CHA6	CMPL CHA5	CMPL CHA4	CMPL CHA3	CMPL CHA2	CMPL CHA1	CMPL CHA0
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
10:0	CMPLCHA10 to CMPLCHA0	Compare Window A Comparison Condition Select These bits set comparison conditions for channels to which Window A comparison conditions are applied. Bit 10 (CMPLCHA10) is associated with AN010 and bit 0 (CMPLCHA0) is associated with AN000. Comparison conditions are shown in Figure 34.3. 0: When window function is disabled (ADCMPCR.WCMPE = 0): ADCMPDR0 value > A/D-converted value When window function is enabled (ADCMPCR.WCMPE = 1): A/D-converted value < ADCMPDR0 value, or ADCMPDR1 value < A/D-converted value 1: When window function is disabled (ADCMPCR.WCMPE = 0): ADCMPDR0 value < A/D-converted value When window function is enabled (ADCMPCR.WCMPE = 1): ADCMPDR0 value < A/D-converted value < ADCMPDR1 value	R/W
15:11	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

CMPLCHAN bits (Compare Window A Comparison Condition Select)

The CMPLCHAN bits specify the comparison conditions for channels to which Window A comparison conditions are applied. These bits can be set for each analog input to be compared. When the comparison result of each analog input meets the set condition, the ADCMPDR0.CMPSTCHAN flag sets to 1 and a compare interrupt (ADC120_CMPAI) is generated.

Comparison conditions when the window function is disabled			
CMPLCHAN = 0		CMPLCHAN = 1	
ADCMPDR0 value ≤ A/D converted value	Not met	ADCMPDR0 value < A/D converted value	Met
ADCMPDR0 value > A/D converted value	Met	ADCMPDR0 value ≥ A/D converted value	Not met
Comparison conditions when the window function is enabled			
CMPLCHAN = 0			
ADCMPDR1 value < A/D converted value	Met		
ADCMPDR0 value ≤ A/D converted value ≤ ADCMPDR1 value	Not met		
A/D converted value < ADCMPDR0 value	Met		
CMPLCHAN = 1			
ADCMPDR1 value ≤ A/D converted value	Not met		
ADCMPDR0 value < A/D converted value < ADCMPDR1 value	Met		
A/D converted value ≤ ADCMPDR0 value	Not met		

Figure 34.3 Explanation of comparison conditions for compare function Window A

34.2.27 ADCMPLR1 : A/D Compare Function Window A Comparison Condition Setting Register 1

Base address: ADC120 = 0x4005_C000

Offset address: 0x09A

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	CMPL CHA2 2	CMPL CHA2 1	CMPL CHA2 0	CMPL CHA1 9	CMPL CHA1 8	CMPL CHA1 7	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
6:1	CMPLCHA22 to CMPLCHA17	Compare Window A Comparison Condition Select These bits set comparison conditions for channels to which Window A comparison conditions are applied. Bit 6 (CMPLCHA22) is associated with AN022 and bit 1 (CMPLCHA17) is associated with AN017. Comparison conditions are shown in Figure 34.3. 0: When window function is disabled (ADCMPCR.WCMPE = 0): ADCMPDR0 value > A/D-converted value When window function is enabled (ADCMPCR.WCMPE = 1): A/D-converted value < ADCMPDR0 value Or ADCMPDR1 value < A/D-converted value 1: When window function is disabled (ADCMPCR.WCMPE = 0): ADCMPDR0 value < A/D-converted value When window function is enabled (ADCMPCR.WCMPE = 1): ADCMPDR0 value < A/D-converted value < ADCMPDR1 value	R/W
15:7	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

CMPLCHAN bits (Compare Window A Comparison Condition Select)

The CMPLCHAN bits specify the comparison conditions for analog channels to which window A comparison conditions are applied. These bits can be set for each analog input to be compared. When the comparison result of each analog input meets the set condition, the ADCMPDR1.CMPSTCHAN bit is set to 1 and a compare interrupt (ADC120_CMPAI) is generated.

34.2.28 ADCMPLER : A/D Compare Function Window A Extended Input Comparison Condition Setting Register

Base address: ADC120 = 0x4005_C000

Offset address: 0x093

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	CMPL OCA	CMPL TSA
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	CMPLTSA	Compare Window A Temperature Sensor Output Comparison Condition Select Comparison conditions are shown in Figure 34.3 . 0: When window function is disabled (ADCMPCR.WCMPE = 0): ADCMPDR0 value > A/D-converted value Compare Window A Temperature Sensor Output Comparison Condition Select When window function is enabled (ADCMPCR.WCMPE = 1): Compare Window A Temperature Sensor Output Comparison Condition A/D-converted value < ADCMPDR0 value Or A/D-converted value > ADCMPDR1 value 1: When window function is disabled (ADCMPCR.WCMPE = 0): ADCMPDR0 value < A/D-converted value When window function is enabled (ADCMPCR.WCMPE = 1): ADCMPDR0 value < A/D-converted value < ADCMPDR1 value	R/W
1	CMPLOCA	Compare Window A Internal Reference Voltage Comparison Condition Select Comparison conditions are shown in Figure 34.3 . 0: When window function is disabled (ADCMPCR.WCMPE = 0): ADCMPDR0 value > A/D-converted value When window function is enabled (ADCMPCR.WCMPE = 1): A/D-converted value < ADCMPDR0 value or A/D-converted value > ADCMPDR1 value 1: When window function is disabled (ADCMPCR.WCMPE = 0): ADCMPDR0 value < A/D-converted value When window function is enabled (ADCMPCR.WCMPE = 1): ADCMPDR0 value < A/D-converted value < ADCMPDR1 value	R/W
7:2	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

CMPLTSA bit (Compare Window A Temperature Sensor Output Comparison Condition Select)

The CMPLTSA bit specifies comparison conditions when the temperature sensor output is the target for the Window A comparison condition. When the temperature sensor output comparison result meets the set condition, the ADCMPSER.CMPSTTSA flag sets to 1 and a compare interrupt (ADC120_CMPAI) is generated.

CMPLOCA bit (Compare Window A Internal Reference Voltage Comparison Condition Select)

The CMPLOCA bit specifies comparison conditions when the internal reference voltage is the target for the Window A comparison condition. When the internal reference voltage comparison result meets the set condition, the ADCMPSER.CMPSTOCA flag sets to 1 and a compare interrupt (ADC120_CMPAI) is generated.

34.2.29 ADCMPDRn : A/D Compare Function Window A Lower-Side/Upper-Side Level Setting Register (n = 0, 1)

Base address: ADC120 = 0x4005_C000

Offset address: 0x09C + (0x2 × n)

Bit position: 15 14 13 12 11 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0

Bit field:

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

The ADCMPDRy (y = 0, 1) register specifies the reference data when the compare window A function is used. ADCMPDR0 sets the lower reference for window A, and ADCMPDR1 sets the upper reference for window A.

ADCMPDRy are read/write registers.

ADCMPDRy are writable even during A/D conversion. The reference data can be dynamically changed by rewriting register values during A/D conversion^{*1}.

Set these registers so that the upper reference is not less than the lower reference (ADCMPDR1 ≥ ADCMPDR0). ADCMPDR1 are not used when the window function is disabled.

Note 1. The lower and the upper references are changed when each register is written. For example, when the upper reference value is changed and the lower reference value is being changed, the MCU compares the upper

reference (after rewrite), and the lower reference (before rewrite) with the A/D conversion result. See [Figure 34.4](#). If the comparison during the rewriting of these two references is erroneous, then rewrite these reference values when both ADCSR.ADST and the target Compare Window Operation Enable bit (ADCMPCR.CMPAE or ADCMPCR.CMPBE) are 0.

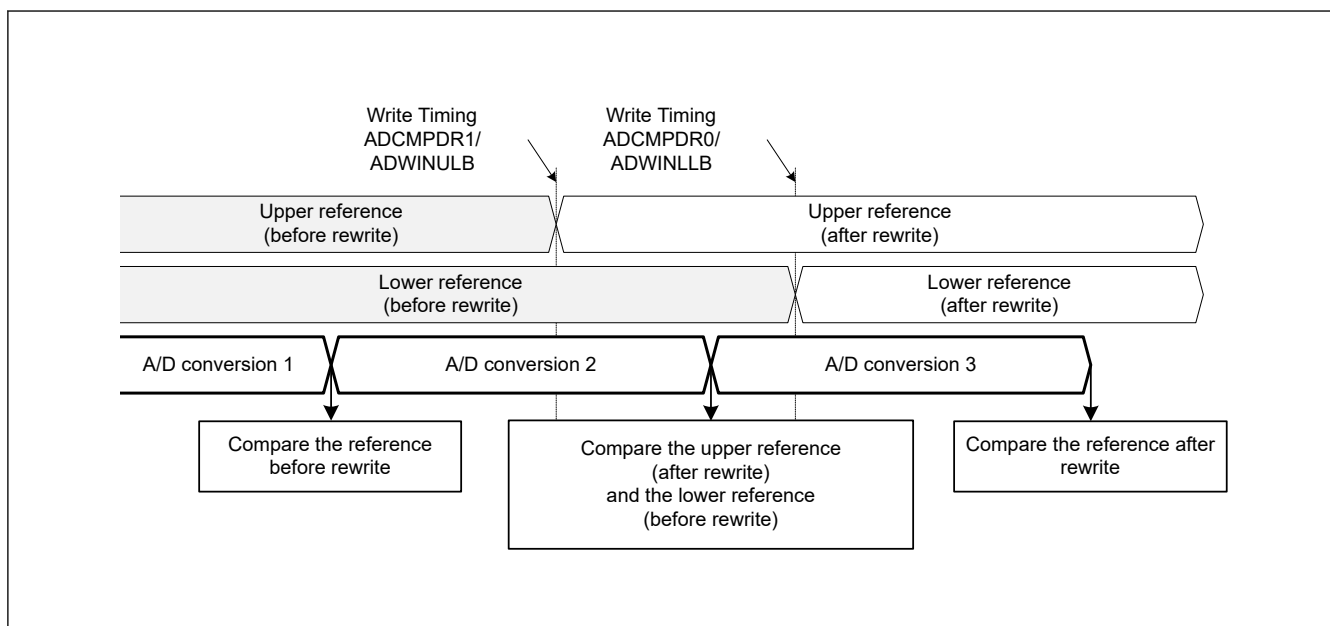


Figure 34.4 Comparison between upper and lower references before and after a rewrite

The ADCMPDRy registers use different formats depending on the following conditions:

- The value of A/D Data Register Format Select bit (flush-right or flush-left)
- The value of A/D-Converted Value Addition/Average Channel Select bits (A/D-converted value addition mode selected or not selected).

The data formats for each condition are shown as follows:

1. When A/D-converted value addition mode is not selected
 - Flush-right data with 12-bit accuracy — Lower 12 bits ([11:0]) are valid
 - Flush-left data with 12-bit accuracy — Upper 12 bits ([15:4]) are valid
2. When A/D-converted value addition mode is selected (other than 16-time conversion)
 - Flush-right data with 12-bit accuracy — Lower 14 bits ([13:0]) are valid
 - Flush-left data with 12-bit accuracy — Upper 14 bits ([15:2]) are valid
3. When A/D-converted value addition mode is selected (16-time conversion)
 - All bits ([15:0]) are valid

34.2.30 ADWINnLB : A/D Compare Function Window B Lower-Side/Upper-Side Level Setting Register (n = L, U)

Base address: ADC120 = 0x4005_C000

Offset address: 0x0A8 (n = L)
0x0AA (n = U)

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:																

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

The ADWINULB and ADWINLLB registers specify the reference data when the compare window B function is used. ADWINLLB sets the lower reference for window B, and ADWINULB sets the upper reference for window B.

ADWINnLB are read/write registers.

ADWINnLB are writable even during A/D conversion. The reference data can be dynamically changed by rewriting register values during A/D conversion^{*1}.

Set these registers so that the upper reference is not less than the lower reference ($ADWINULB \geq ADWINLLB$). ADWINULB are not used when the window function is disabled.

Note 1. The lower and the upper references are changed when each register is written. For example, when the upper reference value is changed and the lower reference value is being changed, the MCU compares the upper reference (after rewrite), and the lower reference (before rewrite) with the A/D conversion result. See [Figure 34.5](#). If the comparison during the rewriting of these two references is erroneous, then rewrite these reference values when both ADCSR.ADST and the target Compare Window Operation Enable bit (ADCMPCR.CMPAE or ADCMPCR.CMPBE) are 0.

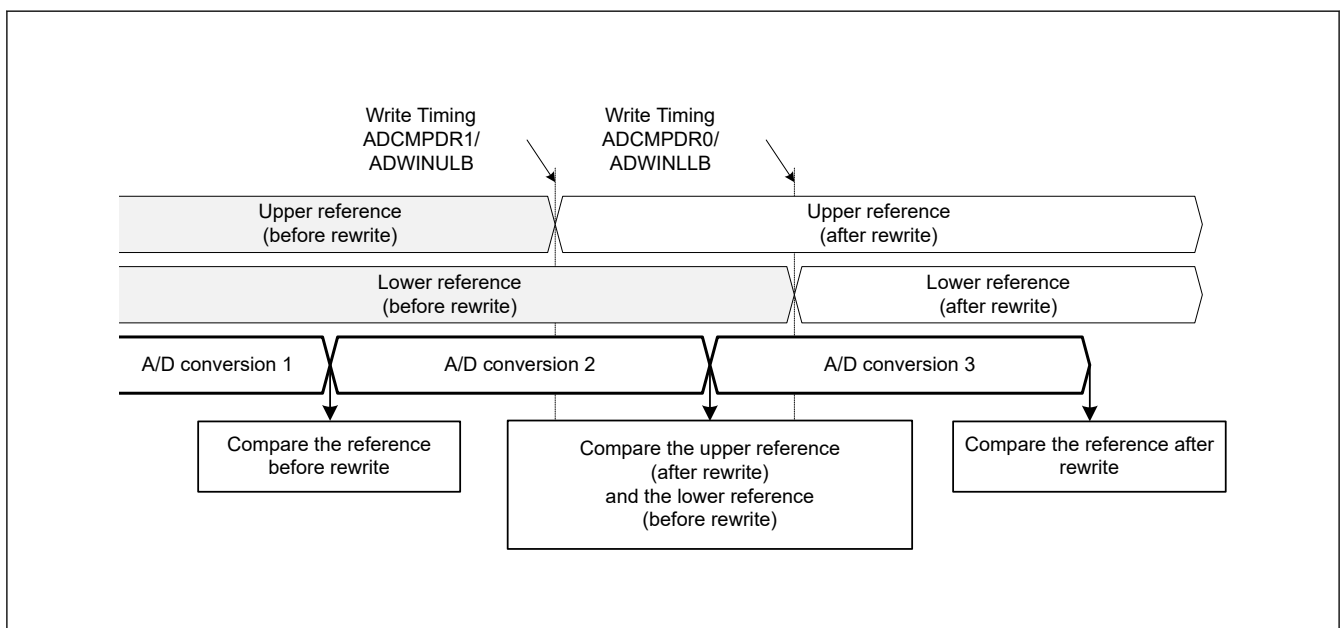


Figure 34.5 Comparison between upper and lower references before and after a rewrite

The ADWINnLB registers use different formats depending on the following conditions:

- The value of A/D Data Register Format Select bit (flush-right or flush-left)
- The value of A/D-Converted Value Addition/Average Channel Select bits (A/D-converted value addition mode selected or not selected).

The data formats for each condition are shown as follows:

1. When A/D-converted value addition mode is not selected
 - Flush-right data with 12-bit accuracy — Lower 12 bits ([11:0]) are valid
 - Flush-left data with 12-bit accuracy — Upper 12 bits ([15:4]) are valid
2. When A/D-converted value addition mode is selected (other than 16-time conversion)
 - Flush-right data with 12-bit accuracy — Lower 14 bits ([13:0]) are valid
 - Flush-left data with 12-bit accuracy — Upper 14 bits ([15:2]) are valid
3. When A/D-converted value addition mode is selected (16-time conversion)
 - All bits ([15:0]) are valid

34.2.31 ADCMPSR0 : A/D Compare Function Window A Channel Status Register 0

Base address: ADC120 = 0x4005_C000

Offset address: 0x0A0

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	CMPSTCHA10	CMPSTCHA9	CMPSTCHA8	CMPSTCHA7	CMPSTCHA6	CMPSTCHA5	CMPSTCHA4	CMPSTCHA3	CMPSTCHA2	CMPSTCHA1	CMPSTCHA0
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
10:0	CMPSTCHA10 to CMPSTCHA0	Compare Window A Flag When Window A operation is enabled (ADCMPCR.CMPAE = 1b), these bits indicate the comparison result of channels to which Window A comparison conditions are applied. Bit 10 (CMPSTCHA10) is associated with AN010 and bit 0 (CMPSTCHA0) is associated with AN000. 0: Comparison conditions are not met 1: Comparison conditions are met	R/W
15:11	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

CMPSTCHAn flags (Compare Window A Flag)

The CMPSTCHAn flags indicate the comparison results for channels to which Window A comparison conditions are applied. When a comparison condition set in ADCMPLR0.CMPLCHA is met at the end of A/D conversion, the associated CMPSTCHAn flag sets to 1. When the ADCMPCR.CMPAIE bit is 1, a compare interrupt request (ADC120_CMPAI) is generated when this flag sets to 1.

Writing 1 to the CMPSTCHAn flags is invalid.

[Setting condition]

- The condition set in ADCMPLR0.CMPLCHA is met when ADCMPCR.CMPAE = 1.

[Clearing condition]

- Writing 0 after reading 1.

34.2.32 ADCMPSR1 : A/D Compare Function Window A Channel Status Register1

Base address: ADC120 = 0x4005_C000

Offset address: 0x0A2

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	CMPSTCHA22	CMPSTCHA21	CMPSTCHA20	CMPSTCHA19	CMPSTCHA18	CMPSTCHA17	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
6:1	CMPSTCHA22 to CMPSTCHA17	Compare Window A Flag When Window A operation is enabled (ADCMPCR.CMPAE = 1), these bits indicate the comparison result of channels to which Window A comparison conditions are applied. Bit 6 (CMPSTCHA22) is associated with AN022 and bit 1 (CMPSTCHA17) is associated with AN017. 0: Comparison conditions are not met 1: Comparison conditions are met	R/W
15:7	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

CMPSTCHAN flags (Compare Window A Flag)

The CMPSTCHAN flags indicate the comparison results for channels to which Window A comparison conditions are applied. When the comparison condition set in ADCMPLR1.CMPLCHA is met at the end of A/D conversion, the associated CMPSTCHAN flag sets to 1. When the ADCMPCR.CMPAIE bit is 1, a compare interrupt request (ADC120_CMPAI) is generated when this flag sets to 1.

Writing 1 to the CMPSTCHAN flags is invalid.

[Setting condition]

- The condition set in ADCMPLR1.CMPLCHA is met when ADCMPCR.CMPAE = 1.

[Clearing condition]

- Writing 0 after reading 1.

34.2.33 ADCMPSER : A/D Compare Function Window A Extended Input Channel Status Register

Base address: ADC120 = 0x4005_C000

Offset address: 0x0A4

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	CMPS TOCA	CMPS TTSA

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	CMPSTTSA	Compare Window A Temperature Sensor Output Compare Flag When Window A operation is enabled (ADCMPCR.CMPAE = 1), this bit indicates the temperature sensor output comparison result. 0: Comparison conditions are not met. 1: Comparison conditions are met.	R/W
1	CMPSTOCA	Compare Window A Internal Reference Voltage Compare Flag When Window A operation is enabled (ADCMPCR.CMPAE = 1), this bit indicates the internal reference voltage comparison result. 0: Comparison conditions are not met. 1: Comparison conditions are met.	R/W
7:2	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

The ADCMPSER register stores compare results of compare function window A.

CMPSTTSA flag (Compare Window A Temperature Sensor Output Compare Flag)

The CMPSTTSA flag indicates the temperature sensor output comparison result. When the comparison condition set in ADCMPLR1.CMPLTSA is met at the end of A/D conversion, this flag sets to 1. When the ADCMPCR.CMPAIE bit is 1, a compare interrupt request (ADC120_CMPAI) is generated when this flag sets to 1.

Writing 1 to the CMPSTTSA flag is invalid.

[Setting condition]

- The condition set in ADCMPLR1.CMPLTSA is met when ADCMPCR.CMPAE = 1.

[Clearing condition]

- Writing 0 after reading 1.

CMPSTOCA flag (Compare Window A Internal Reference Voltage Compare Flag)

The CMPSTOCA flag indicates the internal reference voltage comparison result. When the comparison condition set in ADCMPLR1.CMPLOCA is met at the end of A/D conversion, this flag sets to 1. When the ADCMPCR.CMPAIE bit is 1, a compare interrupt request (ADC120_CMPAI) is generated when this flag sets to 1.

Writing 1 to the CMPSTOCA flag is invalid.

[Setting condition]

- The condition set in ADCMPLER.CMPLOCA is met when ADCMPPCR.CMPAE = 1.

[Clearing condition]

- Writing 0 after reading 1.

34.2.34 ADCMPBNSR : A/D Compare Function Window B Channel Select Register

Base address: ADC120 = 0x4005_C000

Offset address: 0x0A6

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	CMP B	—	CMPCHB[5:0]					
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W																																		
5:0	CMPCHB[5:0]	Compare Window B Channel Select These bits select channels to be compared with the compare Window B conditions.	R/W																																		
		<table><tr><th>CMPCHB[5:0]</th><th>Channel</th></tr><tr><td>0x00</td><td>AN000</td></tr><tr><td>0x01</td><td>AN001</td></tr><tr><td>0x02</td><td>AN002</td></tr><tr><td>⋮</td><td>⋮</td></tr><tr><td>0x0A</td><td>AN010</td></tr><tr><td>0x10</td><td>Setting prohibited</td></tr><tr><td>0x11</td><td>AN017</td></tr><tr><td>0x12</td><td>AN018</td></tr><tr><td>0x13</td><td>AN019</td></tr><tr><td>0x14</td><td>AN020</td></tr><tr><td>0x15</td><td>AN021</td></tr><tr><td>0x16</td><td>AN022</td></tr><tr><td>0x20</td><td>Temperature sensor</td></tr><tr><td>0x21</td><td>Internal reference voltage</td></tr><tr><td>0x3F</td><td>No selection</td></tr><tr><td>Others</td><td>Setting prohibited</td></tr></table>		CMPCHB[5:0]	Channel	0x00	AN000	0x01	AN001	0x02	AN002	⋮	⋮	0x0A	AN010	0x10	Setting prohibited	0x11	AN017	0x12	AN018	0x13	AN019	0x14	AN020	0x15	AN021	0x16	AN022	0x20	Temperature sensor	0x21	Internal reference voltage	0x3F	No selection	Others	Setting prohibited
		CMPCHB[5:0]		Channel																																	
		0x00		AN000																																	
		0x01		AN001																																	
		0x02		AN002																																	
		⋮		⋮																																	
		0x0A		AN010																																	
		0x10		Setting prohibited																																	
		0x11		AN017																																	
		0x12		AN018																																	
		0x13		AN019																																	
		0x14		AN020																																	
		0x15		AN021																																	
		0x16		AN022																																	
		0x20		Temperature sensor																																	
		0x21		Internal reference voltage																																	
		0x3F		No selection																																	
		Others		Setting prohibited																																	
6	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W																																		
7	CMPLB	Compare Window B Comparison Condition Setting This bit sets comparison conditions for channels for Window B. The comparison conditions are shown in Figure 34.6 . 0: When window function is disabled (ADCMPCR.WCMPE = 0): ADWINLLB value > A/D-converted value When window function is enabled (ADCMPCR.WCMPE = 1): A/D-converted value < ADWINLLB value, or ADWINULB value < A/D-converted value 1: When window function is disabled (ADCMPCR.WCMPE = 0): ADWINLLB value < A/D-converted value When window function is enabled (ADCMPCR.WCMPE = 1): ADWINLLB value < A/D-converted value < ADWINULB value	R/W																																		

CMPCHB[5:0] bits (Compare Window B Channel Select)

The CMPCHB[5:0] bits specify the channels to be compared with the compare Window B conditions from AN000 to AN010, AN017 to AN022, the temperature sensor, and the internal reference voltage. The compare Window B function is enabled by specifying the hexadecimal number of the A/D conversion channel selected in the ADANSA0, ADANSA1, ADANSB0, ADANSB1 registers.

Set the CMPCHB[5:0] bits while the ADCSR.ADST bit is 0.

CMPLB bit (Compare Window B Comparison Condition Setting)

The CMPLB bit specifies the comparison conditions for channels for Window B. When the comparison result of an analog input meets the set condition, the associated ADCMPBSR.CMPSTB flag sets to 1 and a compare interrupt request (ADC120_CMPBI) is generated.

Compare conditions when the window function is disabled			
CMPLB = 0		CMPLB = 1	
ADWINLLB value $\leq$ A/D converted value	Not met	ADWINLLB value $<$ A/D converted value	Met
ADWINLLB value $>$ A/D converted value	Met	ADWINLLB value $\geq$ A/D converted value	Not met
Compare conditions when the window function is enabled			
CMPLB = 0			
A/D converted value $>$ ADWINULB value		Met	
ADWINLLB value $\leq$ A/D converted value $\leq$ ADWINULB value		Not met	
A/D converted value $<$ ADWINLLB value		Met	
CMPLB = 1			
A/D converted value $\geq$ ADWINULB value		Not met	
ADWINLLB value $<$ A/D converted value $<$ ADWINULB value		Met	
A/D converted value $\leq$ ADWINLLB value		Not met	

Figure 34.6 Explanation of compare conditions for compare function Window B

34.2.35 ADCMPBSR : A/D Compare Function Window B Status Register

Base address: ADC120 = 0x4005_C000

Offset address: 0x0AC

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	CMPS TB
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	CMPSTB	Compare Window B Flag When Window B operation is enabled (ADCMPCR.CMPBE = 1), this bit indicates the comparison result of channels to which Window B comparison conditions are applied, temperature sensor output, and internal reference voltage. 0: Comparison conditions are not met 1: Comparison conditions are met	R/W
7:1	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

CMPSTB flag (Compare Window B Flag)

The CMPSTB flag indicates the comparison result of channels to which Window B comparison conditions are applied, the temperature sensor output, and the internal reference voltage. When the comparison condition set in ADCMPBSR.CMPLB is met at the end of A/D conversion, this flag sets to 1. When the ADCMPCR.CMPBIE bit is 1, a compare interrupt request (ADC120_CMPBI) is generated when this flag sets to 1.

Writing 1 to the CMPSTB flag is invalid.

[Setting condition]

- The condition set in ADCMPBSR.CMPLB is met when ADCMPCR.CMPBE = 1.

[Clearing condition]

- Writing 0 after reading 1.

34.2.36 ADWINMON : A/D Compare Function Window A/B Status Monitor Register

Base address: ADC120 = 0x4005_C000

Offset address: 0x08C

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	MONC MPB	MONC MPA	—	—	—	MONC OMB
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	MONCOMB	Combination Result Monitor This bit indicates the combination result. This bit is valid when both Window A and Window B operations are enabled. 0: Window A/B composite conditions are not met. 1: Window A/B composite conditions are met.	R
3:1	—	These bits are read as 0.	R
4	MONCMPA	Comparison Result Monitor A 0: Window A comparison conditions are not met. 1: Window A comparison conditions are met.	R
5	MONCMPB	Comparison Result Monitor B 0: Window B comparison conditions are not met. 1: Window B comparison conditions are met.	R

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7:6	—	These bits are read as 0.	R

MONCOMB bit (Combination Result Monitor)

The read-only MONCOMB bit indicates the combined result of comparison condition results A and B based on the combination condition set in the ADCMPCR.CMPAB[1:0] bits.

[Setting condition]

- The combined result meets the combination condition set in the ADCMPCR.CMPAB[1:0] bits when ADCMPCR.CMPAE = 1 and ADCMPCR.CMPBE = 1.

[Clearing conditions]

- The combined result does not meet the combination condition set in the ADCMPCR.CMPAB[1:0] bits.
- ADCMPCR.CMPAE = 0 or ADCMPCR.CMPBE = 0.

MONCMPA bit (Comparison Result Monitor A)

The read-only MONCMPA bit is read as 1 when the A/D-converted value of the Window A target channel meets the condition set in ADCMPLR0/ADCMPLR1 and ADCMPLER. Otherwise, it is read as 0.

[Setting condition]

- The A/D-converted value meets the condition set in the ADCMPLR0/ADCMPLR1 and ADCMPLER registers when ADCMPCR.CMPAE = 1.

[Clearing conditions]

- The A/D-converted value does not meet the condition set in the ADCMPLR0/ADCMPLR1 and ADCMPLER registers when ADCMPCR.CMPAE = 1.
- ADCMPCR.CMPAE = 0 (automatically cleared when the ADCMPCR.CMPAE value changes from 1 to 0).

MONCMPB bit (Comparison Result Monitor B)

The read-only MONCMPB bit is read as 1 when the A/D-converted value of the Window B target channel meets the condition set in the ADCMPBNSR.CMPLB bit. Otherwise, it is read as 0.

[Setting condition]

- The A/D-converted value meets the condition set in ADCMPBNSR.CMPLB when ADCMPCR.CMPBE = 1.

[Clearing conditions]

- The A/D-converted value does not meet the condition set in ADCMPBNSR.CMPLB when ADCMPCR.CMPBE = 1.
- ADCMPCR.CMPBE = 0 (automatically cleared when the ADCMPCR.CMPBE value changes from 1 to 0).

34.2.37 ADHVREFCNT : A/D High-Potential/Low-Potential Reference Voltage Control Register

Base address: ADC120 = 0x4005_C000

Offset address: 0x08A

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	ADSL P	—	—	LVSEL	—	—	HVSEL[1:0]	
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
1:0	HVSEL[1:0]	High-Potential Reference Voltage Select 0 0: AVCC0 is selected as the high-potential reference voltage 0 1: VREFH0 is selected as the high-potential reference voltage 1 0: Internal reference voltage is selected as the high-potential reference voltage 1 1: No reference voltage pin is selected (internal node discharge)	R/W
3:2	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
4	LVSEL	Low-Potential Reference Voltage Select 0: AVSS0 is selected as the low-potential reference voltage 1: VREFL0 is selected as the low-potential reference voltage	R/W
6:5	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
7	ADSLP	Sleep 0: Normal operation 1: Standby state	R/W

HVSEL[1:0] bits (High-Potential Reference Voltage Select)

The HVSEL[1:0] bits specify the high-potential reference voltage as VREFH0, AVCC0, or internal reference voltage (BGR).

When setting the register, make sure that HVSEL[1:0] = 11b is set.

Before selecting the internal reference voltage (HVSEL[1:0] = 10b), set HVSEL[1:0] = 11b to discharge the path of the high-potential reference voltage. After the discharge completes, set HVSEL[1:0] = 10b and start the A/D conversion.

When the internal reference voltage is selected as the high-potential reference voltage (HVSEL[1:0] = 10b), A/D conversion is possible for analog channels, but A/D conversion of the internal reference voltage and the temperature sensor output is prohibited. When the internal reference voltage is selected as the high-potential reference voltage (HVSEL[1:0] = 10b), can only work in low-current mode (ADCSR.ADHSC = 1).

LVSEL bit (Low-Potential Reference Voltage Select)

The LVSEL bit specifies the low-potential reference voltage as AVSS0 or VREFL0.

ADSLP bit (Sleep)

The ADSLP bit transitions the A/D converter to the standby state. Set the ADSLP bit to 1 only when modifying the ADCSR.ADHSC bit. In other cases, setting the ADSLP bit to 1 is prohibited.

After the ADSLP bit is set to 1, wait at least 5 μ s before setting this bit to 0. Additionally, after the ADSLP bit is set to 0, wait at least 1 μ s, then start the A/D conversion.

For the ADHSC bit rewriting procedure, see [section 34.8.9. ADHSC Bit Rewriting Procedure](#).

34.3 Operation

34.3.1 Scanning Operation

In scanning, A/D conversion is performed sequentially on the analog inputs of the specified channels.

Scan conversion is performed in any of the three operating modes and two conversion modes:

- Single scan mode
- Continuous scan mode
- Group scan mode
- High-speed A/D conversion mode (include fast/normal conversion mode selected by ADACSR.ADSAC)
- Low-power A/D conversion mode (include fast/normal conversion mode selected by ADACSR.ADSAC)

In single scan mode, one or more specified channels are scanned once. In continuous scan mode, one or more specified channels are scanned repeatedly until software sets the ADCSR.ADST bit to 0. In group scan mode, the selected channels in group A, B are scanned once after scan starts in response to the respective synchronous trigger.

In single scan mode and continuous scan mode, A/D conversion is performed for the ANn channels selected in the ADANSA0 and ADANSA1 registers, starting from the channel with the smallest number n. In group scan mode, A/D conversion is performed for the ANn channels in group A selected in the ADANSA0 and ADANSA1 registers, and for the ANn channels in group B selected in the ADANSB0 and ADANSB1 registers, starting from the channel with the smallest number n.

When self-diagnosis is selected, it is executed once at the beginning of each scan and one of the three reference voltages is converted.

It is prohibited to simultaneously select both the temperature sensor output and internal reference voltage. If the internal reference voltage is selected as the reference voltage on the high potential side, A/D conversion of the temperature sensor or the internal reference voltage is also prohibited. When temperature sensor output or internal reference voltage is selected for A/D conversion, single scan mode should be used.

Double trigger mode can be used with single scan mode or group scan mode. With double trigger mode enabled (ADCSR.DBLE = 1), A/D conversion data of a channel selected in the ADCSR.DBLANS[4:0] bits is duplicated only if the conversion is started by the synchronous trigger (ELC) selected in the ADSTRGR.TRSA[5:0] bits. In group scan mode, only group A can use double trigger mode.

In the extended operation of double trigger mode, the A/D conversion operation is generated from the synchronous trigger combination selected in the ADSTRGR.TRSA[5:0] bits. In addition to normal double trigger mode operation, A/D conversion data with odd number trigger (ELC_AD00) is stored in A/D Data Duplexing Register A (ADDBLDRA), and A/D conversion data with even number trigger (ELC_AD01) is stored in A/D Data Duplexing Register B (ADDBLDRB). In the extended operation of double trigger mode, when one of the trigger combinations occurs at the same time, the data duplexing register settings for the specified triggers do not work, and A/D conversion data is stored in A/D Data Duplexing Register B (ADDBLDRB).

The ADC12 ignores a synchronous trigger that occurs during the A/D conversion started by another synchronous trigger.

34.3.2 Single Scan Mode

34.3.2.1 Basic Operation

In the basic operation of single scan mode, A/D conversion is performed once on the analog input of the specified channels as follows:

1. When the ADCSR.ADST bit is set to 1 (A/D conversion start) by a software trigger, a synchronous trigger input (ELC), or an asynchronous trigger input, A/D conversion is performed for the ANn channels selected in the ADANSA0 and ADANSA1 registers, starting from the channel with the smallest number n.
2. Each time A/D conversion of a single channel is completed, the A/D conversion result is stored in the associated A/D data register (ADDRy).
3. When A/D conversion of all the selected channels is completed, an ADC120_ADI interrupt request is generated.
4. The ADST bit remains 1 (A/D conversion start) during A/D conversion and is automatically set to 0 when A/D conversion of all the selected channels is completed. The ADC12 then enters a wait state.

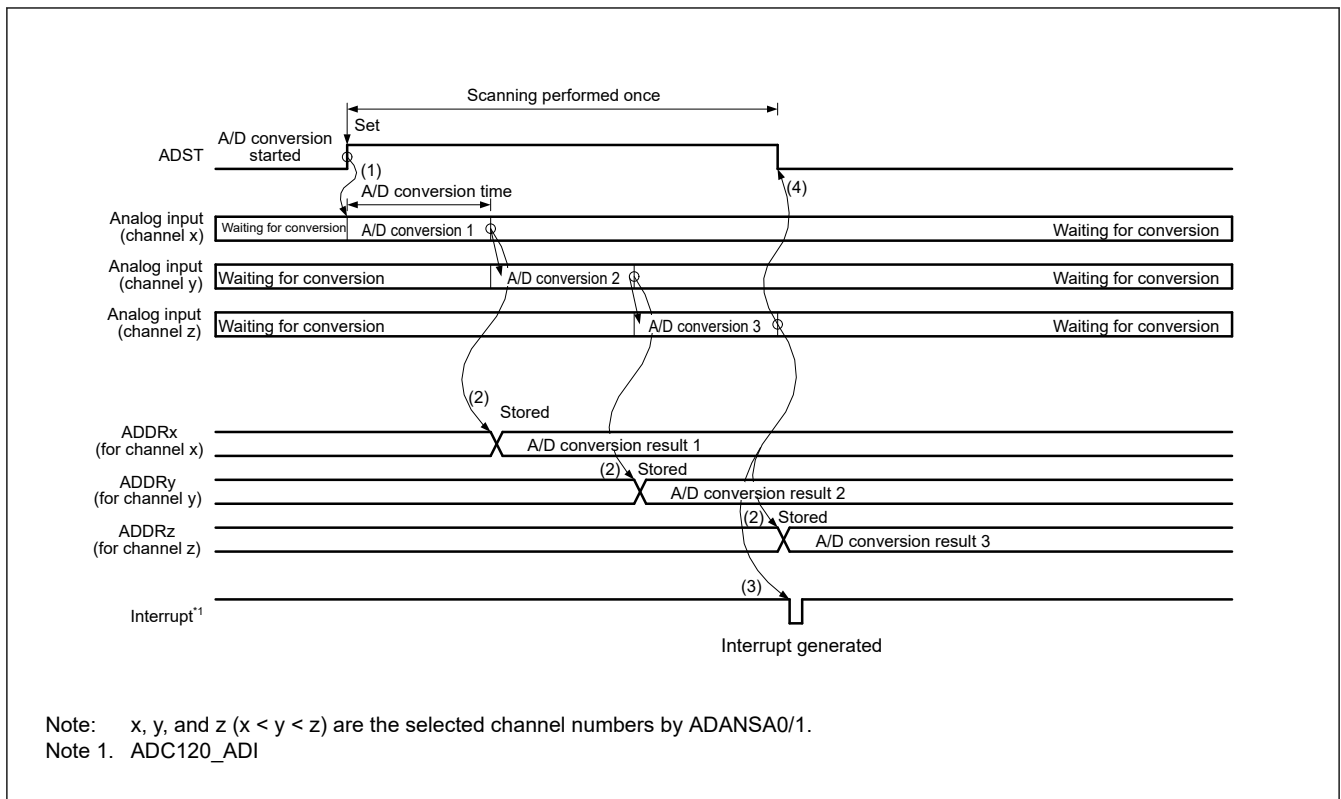


Figure 34.7 Example basic operation in single scan mode when the analog inputs (channel x to z) are selected

34.3.2.2 Channel Selection and Self-diagnosis

When channels and self-diagnosis are selected, A/D conversion is first performed for the reference voltage ($\times 0$, $\times 1/2$, or $\times 1$), then A/D conversion is performed once on the analog input of the selected channels as follows:

1. A/D conversion for self-diagnosis is first started when the ADCSR.ADST bit is set to 1 (A/D conversion start) by a software trigger input, a synchronous trigger input (ELC), or an asynchronous trigger input.
2. When A/D conversion for self-diagnosis is completed, the A/D conversion result is stored in the A/D Self-Diagnosis Data Register (ADDRD). A/D conversion is then performed for the AN_n channels selected in the ADANSA0 and ADANSA1 registers, starting from the channel with the smallest number n.
3. Each time A/D conversion of a single channel is completed, the A/D conversion result is stored in the associated A/D data register (ADDR_y).
4. When A/D conversion of all the selected channels is completed, an ADC120_ADI interrupt request is generated.
5. The ADCSR.ADST bit remains 1 (A/D conversion start) during A/D conversion and is automatically set to 0 when A/D conversion of all the selected channels is completed. The ADC12 then enters a wait state.

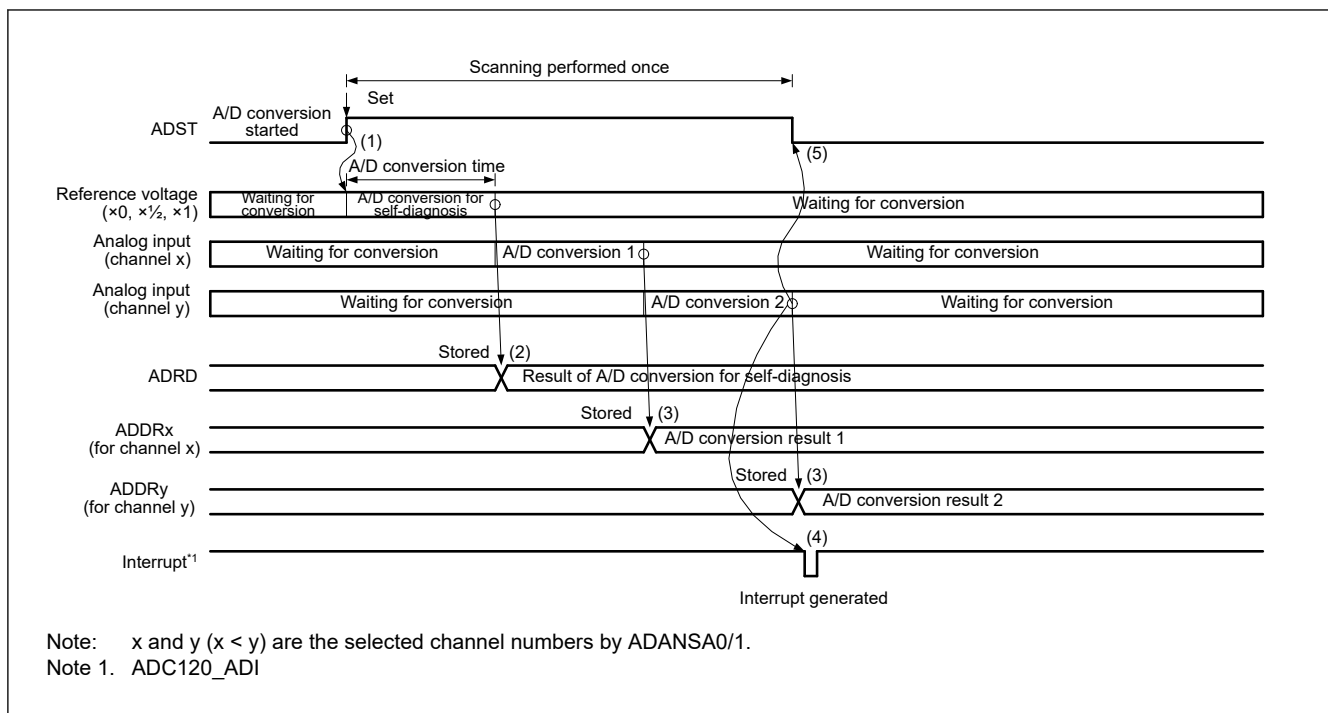


Figure 34.8 Example basic operation in single scan mode when the analog inputs (channel x and y) are selected with self-diagnosis

34.3.2.3 A/D Conversion of Temperature Sensor Output or Internal Reference Voltage

A/D conversion is performed on the temperature sensor output or the internal reference voltage in single scan mode as described in this section.

When selecting A/D conversion of the temperature sensor output or the internal reference voltage, deselect all analog input channels by setting the ADANSA0 and ADANSA1 registers to all 0's and the ADCSR.DBLE bit to 0.

When selecting A/D conversion of temperature sensor output, set the internal reference voltage A/D conversion select bit (ADEXICR.OCSA) to 0 (deselected). When selecting A/D conversion of internal reference voltage, set the temperature sensor output A/D conversion select bit (ADEXICR.TSSA) to 0 (deselected).

The operation is as follows:

1. Set the sampling time to 5 μ s or longer. Take note of the Sampling State register settings (ADSSTR/ADSSTRO) and ADCLK frequency.
2. After switching to A/D conversion of internal reference voltage or temperature sensor output, set the ADST bit to 1 to start conversion.
3. On completion of A/D conversion, the result is stored in the Temperature Sensor Data Register (ADTSDR) or A/D Internal Reference Voltage Data Register (ADOCDR), and an ADC120_ADI interrupt request is generated.
4. The ADST bit remains 1 during A/D conversion and is automatically set to 0 on completion of A/D conversion. The ADC12 then enters a wait state.

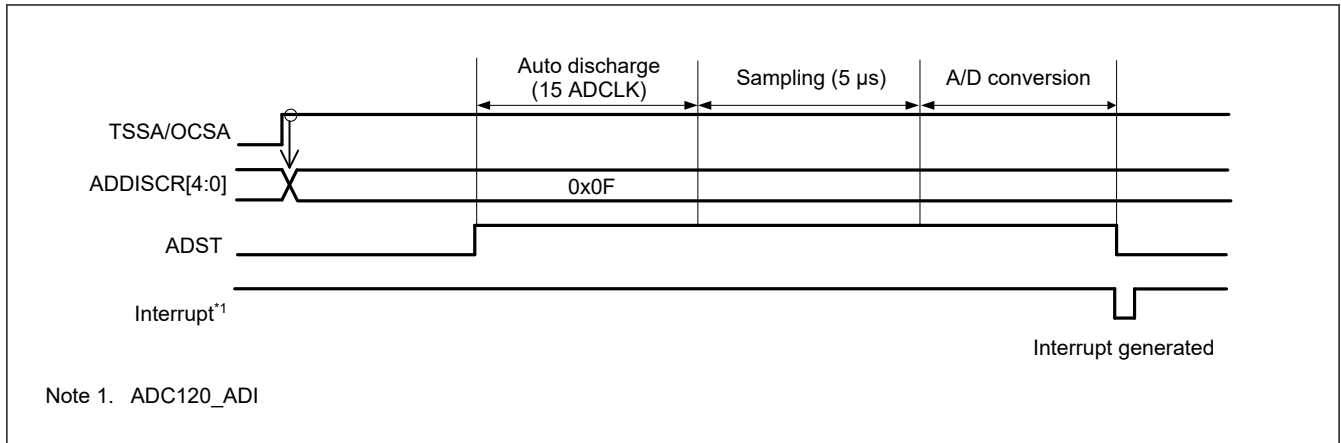


Figure 34.9 Example basic operation in single scan mode when temperature sensor output or internal reference voltage is selected

34.3.2.4 A/D Conversion in Double-trigger Mode

When double-trigger mode is selected in single scan mode, two rounds of single scan operation started by a synchronous trigger (ELC) are performed in sequence.

Deselect self-diagnosis and set the temperature sensor output A/D conversion select bit (ADEXICR.TSSA) and the internal reference voltage A/D conversion select bit (ADEXICR.OCSA) to 0.

Duplication of A/D conversion data is enabled by setting the channel numbers to be duplicated in the ADCSR.DBLANS[4:0] bits and setting the ADCSR.DBLE bit to 1. When the ADCSR.DBLE bit is set to 1, channel selection using the ADANSA0 and ADANSA1 registers is invalid.

In double trigger mode, select a synchronous trigger (ELC) with the ADSTRGR.TRSA[5:0] bits. Additionally, set the ADCSR.EXTRG bit to 0 and the ADCSR.TRGE bit to 1. Do not use a software trigger.

The operation is as follows:

1. When the ADCSR.ADST bit is set to 1 (A/D conversion start) by a synchronous trigger input (ELC), A/D conversion starts on the single channel selected in the ADCSR.DBLANS[4:0] bits.
2. Each time A/D conversion of a single channel is completed, the A/D conversion result is stored in the associated A/D Data Register y (ADDRy).
3. The ADCSR.ADST bit is automatically set to 0 and the ADC12 enters a wait state. An ADC120_ADI interrupt request is not generated.
4. When the ADCSR.ADST bit is set to 1 (A/D conversion start) by the second trigger input, A/D conversion starts on the single channel selected in the ADCSR.DBLANS[4:0] bits.
5. When A/D conversion is completed, the result is stored in the A/D Data Duplexing Register (ADDBLDR), which is exclusively used in double-trigger mode.
6. An ADC120_ADI interrupt request is generated.
7. The ADCSR.ADST bit remains 1 (A/D conversion start) during A/D conversion and is automatically set to 0 when A/D conversion is completed. Then the ADC12 enters a wait state.

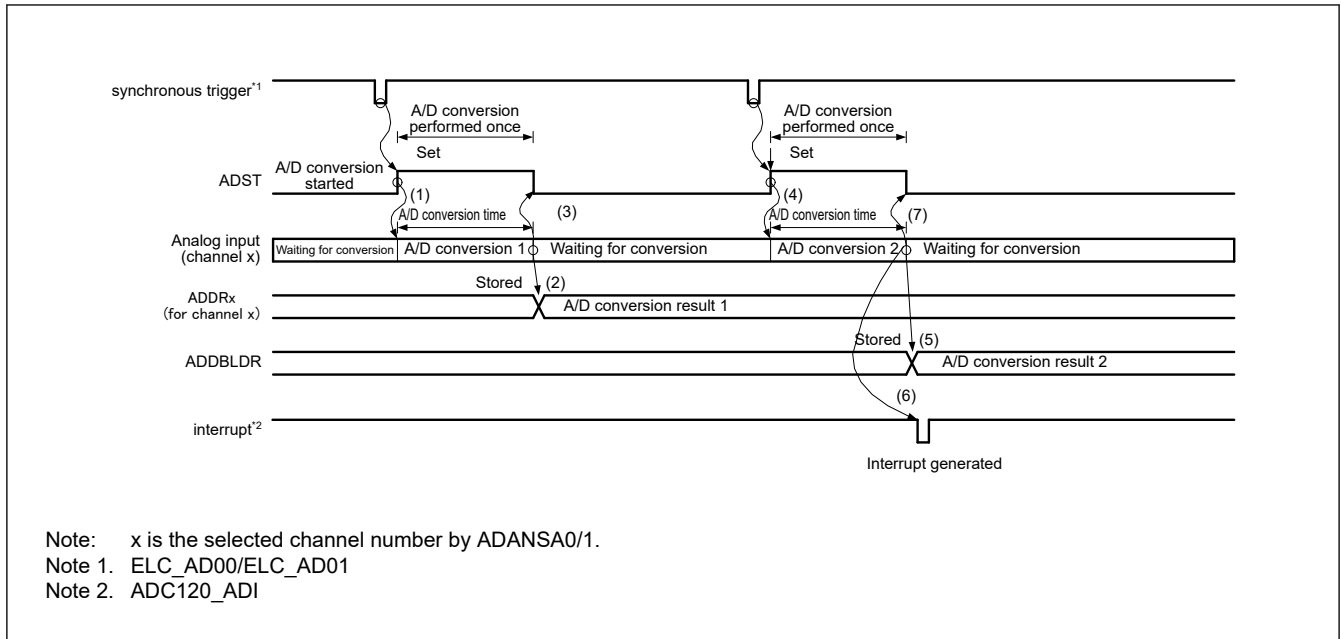


Figure 34.10 Example operation in single scan mode when double-trigger mode is selected and the analog input (channel x) is duplicated

34.3.2.5 Extended Operations When Double-trigger Mode Is Selected

When double-trigger mode is selected in single scan mode, and a synchronous trigger (ELC_AD00/ELC_AD01) is selected as the trigger for the start of A/D conversion, two rounds of single scan operation are performed.

Deselect self-diagnosis and set the temperature sensor output A/D conversion select bit (ADEXICR.TSSA), and the internal reference voltage A/D conversion select bit (ADEXICR.OCSA) to 0.

Duplication of A/D conversion data is enabled by setting the channel number to be duplicated to the ADCSR.DBLANS[4:0] bits and setting the ADCSR.DBLE bit to 1. When the ADCSR.DBLE bit is set to 1, channel selection using the ADANSA0 and ADANSA1 registers is invalid.

In extended double trigger mode, select a synchronous trigger combination ELC_AD00/ELC_AD01 by setting the ADSTRGR.TRSA[5:0] bits to 0x0B, set the ADCSR.EXTRG bit to 0, and set the ADCSR.TRGE bit to 1. Do not use a software trigger.

The operation is as follows:

1. When the ADCSR.ADST bit is set to 1 (A/D conversion start) by a synchronous trigger input (ELC_AD00/ELC_AD01), A/D conversion starts on the single channel selected in the ADCSR.DBLANS[4:0] bits.
2. When A/D conversion completes, the A/D conversion result is stored in the associated A/D Data Register (ADDR_y) and in A/D Data Duplexing Register A (ADDBLDRA) or A/D Data Duplexing Register B (ADDBLDRB) when the ELC_AD_i0 or ELC_AD_i1 trigger is input respectively (i = 0).
3. The ADCSR.ADST bit is automatically set to 0 and the ADC12 enters a wait state. An ADC120_ADI interrupt request is not generated.
4. When the ADCSR.ADST bit is set to 1 (A/D conversion start) by the second trigger (ELC_AD00/ELC_AD01), A/D conversion starts on the single channel selected in the ADCSR.DBLANS[4:0] bits.
5. When A/D conversion completes, the A/D conversion result is stored in the A/D Data Duplexing Register (ADDBLDR) and in A/D Data Duplexing Register A (ADDBLDRA) or A/D Data Duplexing Register B (ADDBLDRB) when the ELC_AD_i0 or ELC_AD_i1 trigger is input respectively (i = 0).
6. An ADC120_ADI interrupt request is generated.
7. The ADCSR.ADST bit remains 1 (A/D conversion start) during A/D conversion and is automatically set to 0 when A/D conversion completes. The ADC12 then enters a wait state.

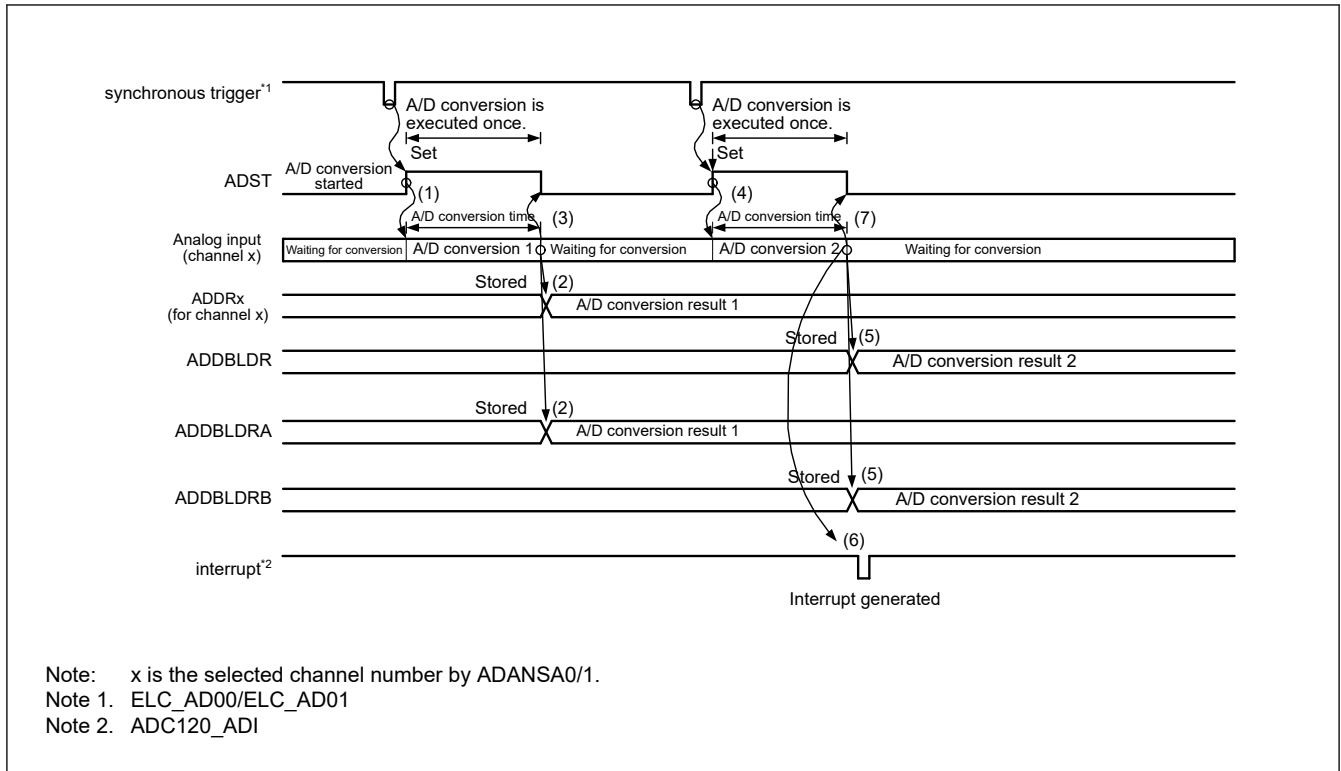


Figure 34.11 Example extended operation in double trigger mode with duplication selected for the analog input (channel x) and ELC_AD00/ELC_AD01

34.3.3 Continuous Scan Mode

34.3.3.1 Basic Operation

In continuous scan mode, A/D conversion is performed repeatedly on the analog input of the specified channels. In this mode, deselect the temperature sensor output A/D conversion and the internal reference voltage A/D conversion by setting the ADEXICR.TSSA and ADEXICR.OCSSA bits to 0.

The operation is as follows:

1. When the ADCSR.ADST bit is set to 1 (A/D conversion start) by a software trigger, a synchronous trigger input (ELC), or an asynchronous trigger input, A/D conversion is performed for ANn channels selected in the ADANSA0 and ADANSA1 registers, starting from the channel with the smallest number n.
2. Each time A/D conversion of a single channel is completed, the A/D conversion result is stored in the associated A/D Data Register (ADDRy).
3. When A/D conversion of all the selected channels is completed, an ADC120_ADI interrupt request is generated. The ADC12 sequentially starts A/D conversion for the ANn channels selected in the ADANSA0 and ADANSA1 registers, starting from the channel with the smallest number n.
4. The ADCSR.ADST bit is not automatically cleared, and steps 2. and 3. are repeated as long as ADCSR.ADST remains 1 (A/D conversion start). When the ADCSR.ADST bit is set to 0 (A/D conversion stop), A/D conversion stops and the ADC12 enters a wait state.
5. When the ADCSR.ADST bit is later set to 1 (A/D conversion start), A/D conversion starts again for the ANn channels selected in the ADANSA0 and ADANSA1 registers, starting from the channel with the smallest number n.

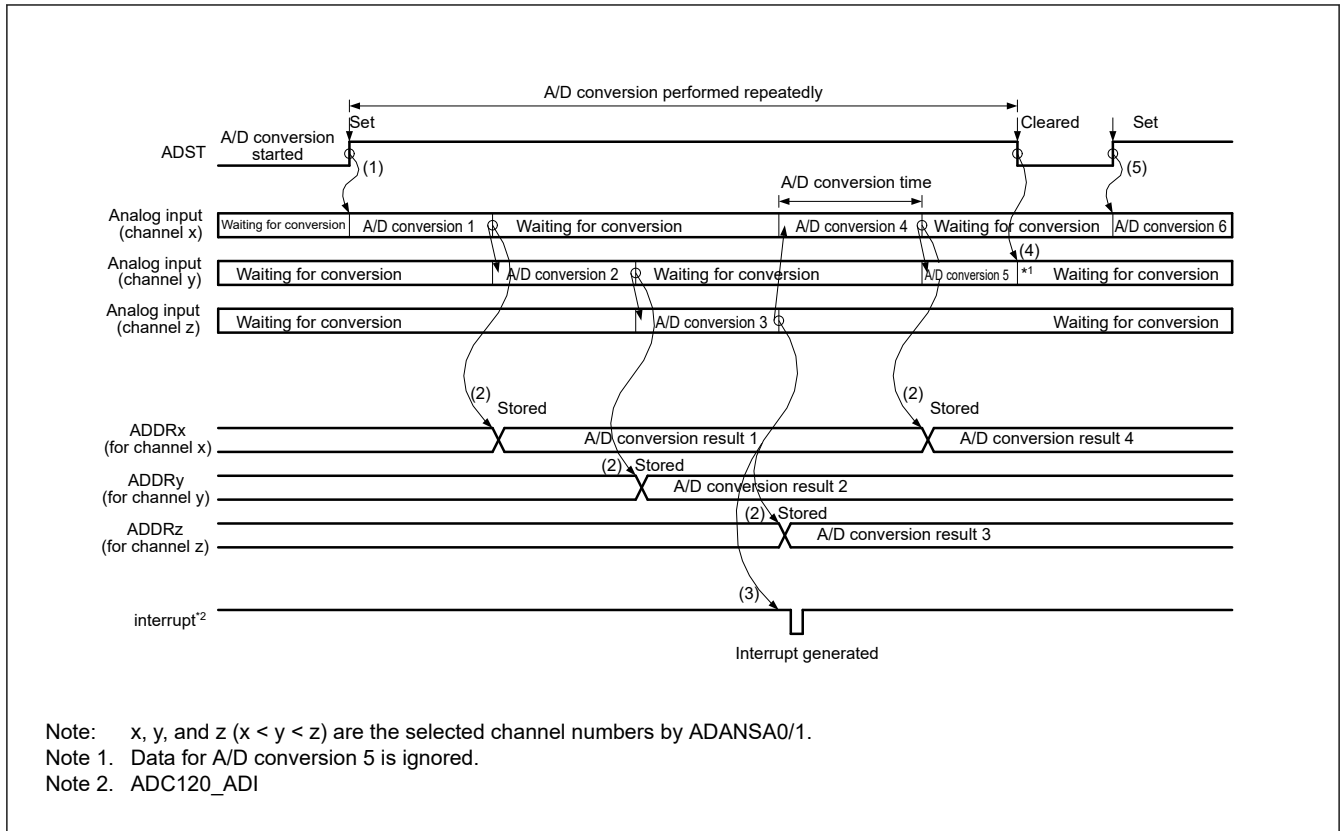


Figure 34.12 Example basic operation in continuous scan mode when the analog inputs (channel x to z) are selected

34.3.3.2 Channel Selection and Self-diagnosis

When channels and self-diagnosis are selected at the same time, A/D conversion is first performed for the reference voltage ($\times 0$, $\times 1/2$, or $\times 1$) supplied to the ADC12, and A/D conversion is performed on the analog input of the selected channels. This sequence is repeated as described in the section that follows.

In continuous scan mode, deselect the temperature sensor output A/D conversion and the internal reference voltage A/D conversion by setting the ADEXICR.TSSA and ADEXICR.OCSA bits to 0.

The operation is as follows:

1. A/D conversion for self-diagnosis is first started when the ADCSR.ADST bit is set to 1 (A/D conversion start) by a software trigger input, a synchronous trigger input (ELC), or an asynchronous trigger input.
2. When A/D conversion for self-diagnosis is completed, the A/D conversion result is stored in the A/D Self-Diagnosis Data Register (ADDRD). A/D conversion is then performed for the ANn channels selected in the ADANSA0 and ADANSA1 registers, starting from the channel with the smallest number n.
3. Each time A/D conversion of a single channel is completed, the A/D conversion result is stored in the corresponding A/D Data Register (ADDRy).
4. When A/D conversion of all the selected channels is completed, an ADC120_ADI interrupt request is generated. At the same time, the ADC12 starts A/D conversion for self-diagnosis and then on the ANn channels selected in the ADANSA0 and ADANSA1 registers, starting from the channel with the smallest number n.
5. The ADCSR.ADST bit is not automatically cleared, and steps 2. to 4. are repeated as long as the ADCSR.ADST bit remains 1. When the ADST bit is set to 0 (A/D conversion stop), A/D conversion stops and the ADC12 enters a wait state.
6. When the ADST bit is later set to 1 (A/D conversion start), the A/D conversion for self-diagnosis is started again.

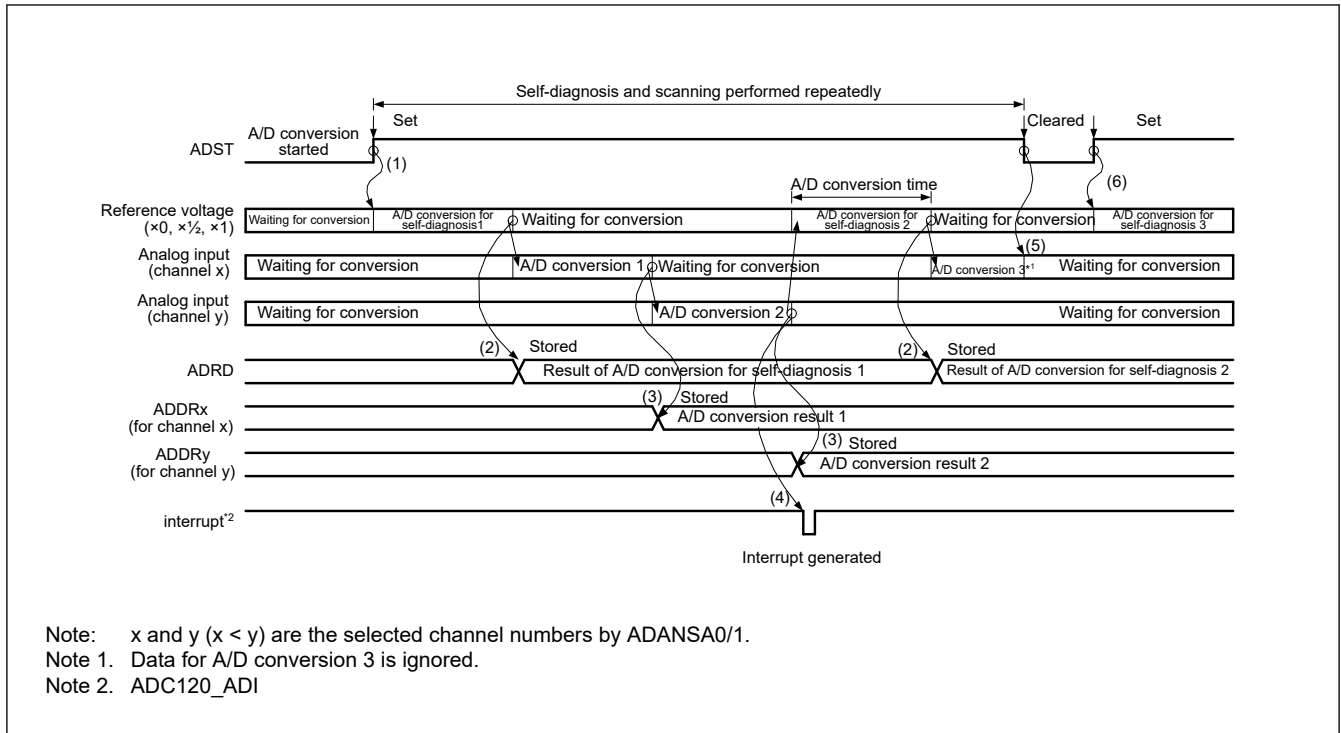


Figure 34.13 Example basic operation in continuous scan mode when the analog inputs (channel x and y) are selected with self-diagnosis

34.3.4 Group Scan Mode

34.3.4.1 Basic Operation

In group scan mode, A/D conversion is performed once on the analog input of all the specified channels in group A and B after scanning is started by a synchronous trigger (ELC). The scan operation of each group is similar to the scan operation in single scan mode.

The synchronous triggers can be selected in the ADSTRGR.TRSA[5:0] bits for group A and in the ADSTRGR.TRSB[5:0] bits for group B. Use different triggers for group A and B to prevent simultaneous A/D conversion of the two groups. Do not use a software trigger.

The group A channels to be A/D-converted are selected using the ADANSA0 and ADANSA1 registers. The group B channels to be A/D-converted are selected using the ADANSB0 and ADANSB1 registers. Group A and B cannot use the same channels.

In group scan mode, deselect the temperature sensor output A/D conversion and the internal reference voltage A/D conversion by setting the ADEXICR.TSSA and (ADEXICR.OCSSA) bits to 0. When self-diagnosis is selected in group scan mode, self-diagnosis is separately executed for Group A and B.

The following sequence describes operation in group scan mode using a synchronous trigger from the ELC. In this example, the ELC_AD00 trigger from the ELC is used to start conversion of group A and the ELC_AD01 trigger from the ELC is used to start conversion of group B. In addition, ELC_AD00 and ELC_AD01 are selected for the GPT event in the associated ELC.ELSRn registers.

The operation is as follows:

1. Scanning of group A is started by ELC_AD00.
2. When group A scanning completes, an ADC120_ADI interrupt is generated (no register setting).
3. Scanning of group B is started by ELC_AD01.
4. When group B scanning completes, an ADC120_GBADI interrupt is generated if the ADCSR.GBADI bit is 1 (ADC120_GBADI interrupt when scanning completion is enabled).

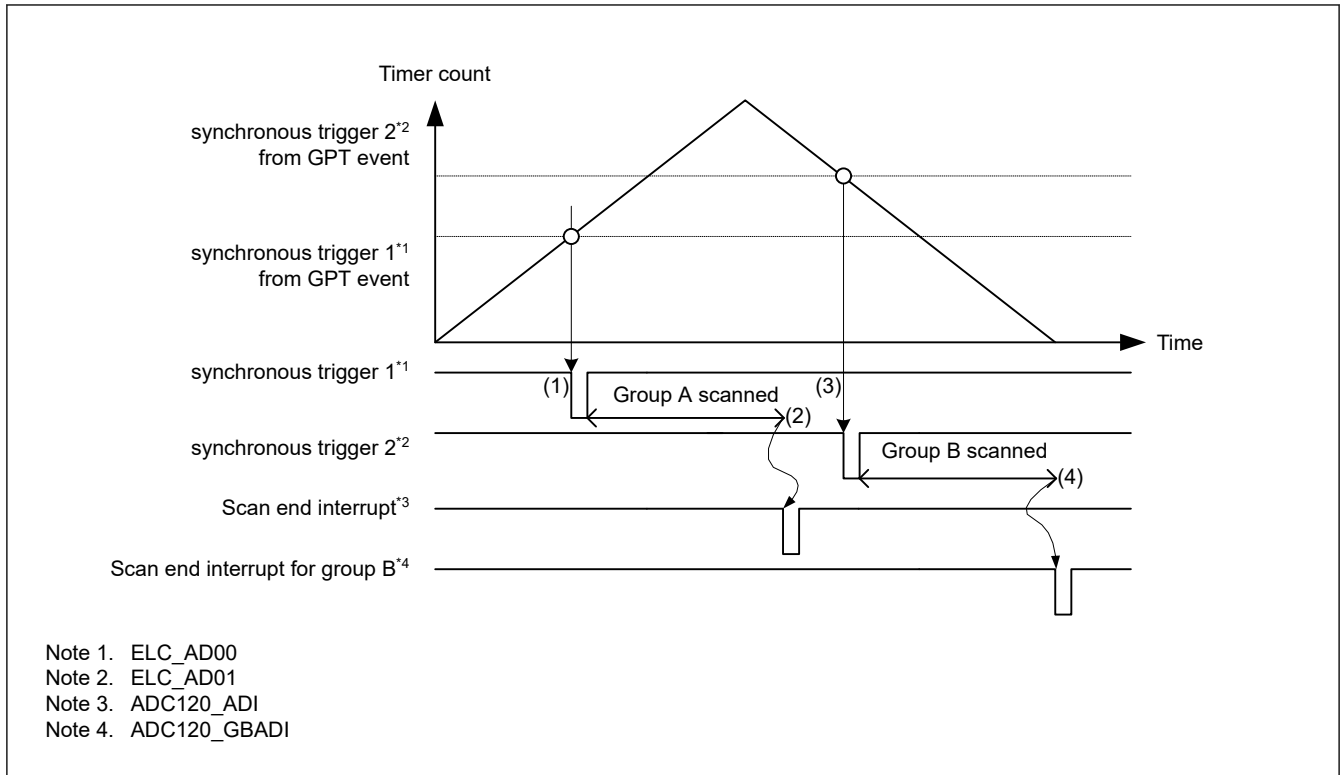


Figure 34.14 Example basic operation in group scan mode when synchronous triggers from the ELC are used

34.3.4.2 A/D Conversion in Double-trigger Mode

When double-trigger mode is selected in group scan mode, two rounds of single scan operation started by a synchronous trigger (ELC) are performed as a sequence for group A. For group B, single scan operation started by a synchronous trigger (ELC) is performed once.

In group scan mode, the synchronous trigger can be selected in the ADSTRGR.TRSA[5:0] bits for group A and in the ADSTRGR.TRSB[5:0] bits for group B. Use different triggers for group A and B to prevent simultaneous A/D conversion of the two groups. Do not use a software trigger or an asynchronous trigger.

When an ELC_AD00/ELC_AD01 is selected as group A synchronous triggers by setting the ADSTRGR.TRSA[5:0] bits to 0x0B, operation proceeds in extended double-trigger mode.

The group A channel to be A/D-converted is selected using the DBLANS[4:0] bits in the ADCSR register, while the group B channels to be A/D-converted are selected using the ADANSB0 and ADANSB1 registers. Group A and B cannot use the same channels.

In group scan mode, deselect the temperature sensor output A/D conversion and the internal reference voltage A/D conversion by setting the ADEXICR.TSSA and ADEXICR.OCSA bits to 0.

Self-diagnosis cannot be selected when double-trigger mode is selected in group scan mode.

Duplication of A/D conversion data is enabled by setting the channel numbers to be duplicated in the ADCSR.DBLANS[4:0] bits and setting the ADCSR.DBLE bit to 1.

The following sequence describes operation in group scan mode with double-trigger mode selected and using a synchronous trigger from the ELC. In this example, the ELC_AD00 trigger is used to start conversion of group A and the ELC_AD01 trigger is used to start conversion of group B. In addition, ELC_AD00 and ELC_AD01 are selected for the GPT event in the associated ELC.ELSRn registers.

The operation is as follows:

1. Scanning of group B is started by the ELC_AD00 trigger from the ELC.
2. When group B scanning completes, an ADC120_GBADI interrupt is generated if the GBADIE bit in ADCSR is 1 (ADC120_GBADI interrupt when scanning completion is enabled).
3. The first scan of group A is started by the first ELC_AD01 trigger.

4. When the first scan of group A completes, the conversion result is stored in the associated A/D Data Register y (ADDRy); an ADC120_ADI interrupt request is not generated.
5. The second scan of group A is started by the second ELC_AD01 trigger.
6. When the second scan of group A completes, the conversion result is stored in ADDBLDR. An ADC120_ADI interrupt is generated.

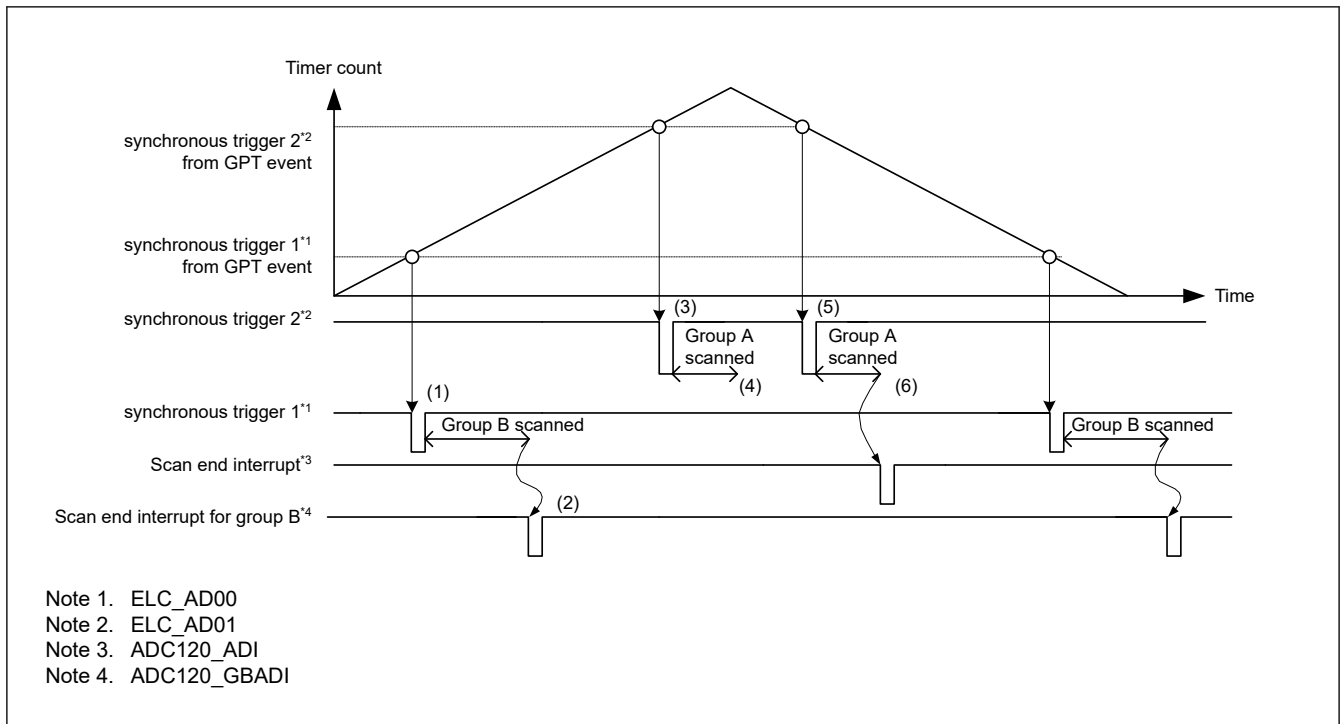


Figure 34.15 Example basic operation in group scan mode with double-trigger mode when synchronous triggers from the ELC are used

34.3.4.3 Group Priority Operation

Group priority operation is performed by setting the ADGSPCR.PGS bit to 1 in group-scan mode. The priority of groups is group A > group B.

When setting the PGS bit in the ADGSPCR register to 1, follow the procedure described in Figure 34.16. If the procedure is not followed, A/D conversion operation and stored data are not guaranteed.

As the basic operation in group-scan mode, a trigger input generated during A/D conversion of group A, B is ignored, and the A/D conversion operation of each group is similar to the operation in single-scan mode.

In group priority operation, if a trigger for a priority group is input during scanning of a lower-priority group, A/D conversion for the lower-priority group is stopped and A/D conversion for the priority group is performed.

If the setting of the ADGSPCR.GBRSCN bit is 0, the lower-priority group enters a wait state when A/D conversion for the priority group completes. A trigger input of the lower-priority group generated during A/D conversion is ignored.

If the setting of the ADGSPCR.GBRSCN bit is 1, A/D conversion for the lower-priority group automatically restarts on completion of A/D conversion for the priority group. A trigger input of the lower-priority group generated during A/D conversion on the priority group takes effect, and A/D conversion for the lower-priority group is automatically performed on completion of A/D conversion on the priority group.

Table 34.22 summarizes operations in response to the input of a trigger during A/D conversion with the settings of the ADGSPCR.GBRSCN bit.

If the setting of the ADGSPCR.GBRP bit is 1, A/D conversion operation for the lowest-priority group is to continuously perform single scans.

For the trigger settings in group-scan mode, select a synchronous trigger for group A by using the ADSTRGR.TRSA[5:0] bits, a synchronous trigger for group B by using the ADSTRGR.TRSB[5:0] bits. Each trigger must be different from each other. Set the ADSTRGR.TRSB[5:0] bits to 0x3F when setting the ADGSPCR.GBRP bit to 1.

The channels to be scanned must be selected in the registers shown in [section 34.3.4. Group Scan Mode](#).

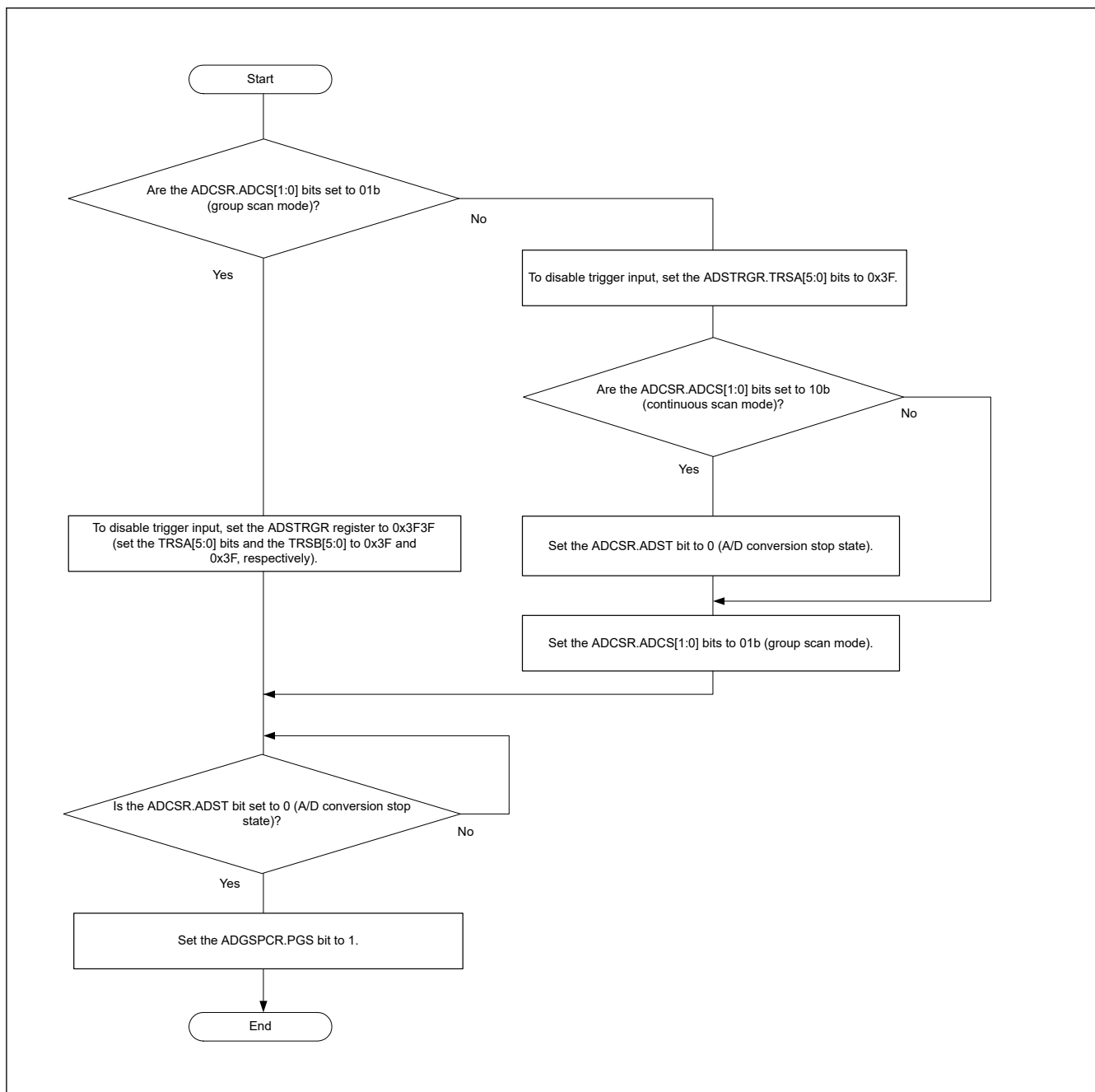


Figure 34.16 Flowchart for ADGSPCR.PGS bit setting

Table 34.22 Control of A/D conversion operations according to ADGSPCR.GBRSCN bit setting (1 of 2)

A/D conversion operation	Trigger input	ADGSPCR.GBRSCN = 0	ADGSPCR.GBRSCN = 1
When A/D conversion for group A is in progress	Input of trigger for group A	Trigger input is ineffective.	Trigger input is ineffective.
	Input of trigger for group B	Trigger input is ineffective.	A/D conversion for group B is performed after A/D conversion for group A completes.

Table 34.22 Control of A/D conversion operations according to ADGSPCR.GBRSCN bit setting (2 of 2)

A/D conversion operation	Trigger input	ADGSPCR.GBRSCN = 0	ADGSPCR.GBRSCN = 1
When A/D conversion for group B is in progress	Input of trigger for group A	A/D conversion for group B is discontinued and A/D conversion for group A starts.	- A/D conversion for group B is discontinued and A/D conversion for group A starts. - A/D conversion for group B starts after A/D conversion for group A completes.
	Input of trigger for group B	Trigger input is ineffective.	Trigger input is ineffective.

(1) Group priority operation for two groups (when ADGSPCR.PGS = 1)

Operation examples 1-1 to 1-3 show group priority operations in group-scan mode (when ADGSPCR.GBRSCN = 1, ADGSPCR.GBRP = 0).

Operation example 1-1: “Group A trigger input during group B scan” when rescanning is enabled

- When input of a trigger for group B sets the ADCSR.ADST bit to 1 (starting A/D conversion), A/D conversion for the analog input channels selected in the ADANSB0 and ADANSB1 registers starts according to the conversion order from the channel with the smallest number n.
- On completion of A/D conversion for each channel in group B, the result is stored in the corresponding A/D Data Register y (ADDRy).
- When a trigger for group A is input during A/D conversion for group B, A/D conversion for group B stops while the ADCSR.ADST bit remains 1. Then A/D conversion for the group A analog input channels selected in the ADANSA0 and ADANSA1 registers starts according to the conversion order from the channel with the smallest number n. If A/D conversion stops before it is completed, the conversion result is not stored in the A/D Data Register y (ADDRy).
- On completion of A/D conversion on the channels, the result is stored in the corresponding A/D Data Register y (ADDRy).
- An ADC120_ADI interrupt request is generated.
- If the setting of the ADGSPCR.GBRSCN bit is 1 (enabling rescanning of the group that was stopped in group priority operation), A/D conversion for the group B analog input channels selected in the ADANSB0 and ADANSB1 registers restarts according to the conversion order from the channel with the smallest number n while the ADCSR.ADST remains 1.
- On completion of A/D conversion on the channels, the result is stored in the corresponding A/D Data Register y (ADDRy).
- If the setting of the ADCSR.GBADIE bit is 1 (enabling interrupt generation on completion of group B scan), a group B scan end interrupt request is generated.
- When A/D conversion for all the channels completes, the ADCSR.ADST bit is automatically cleared and the A/D converter enters a wait state.

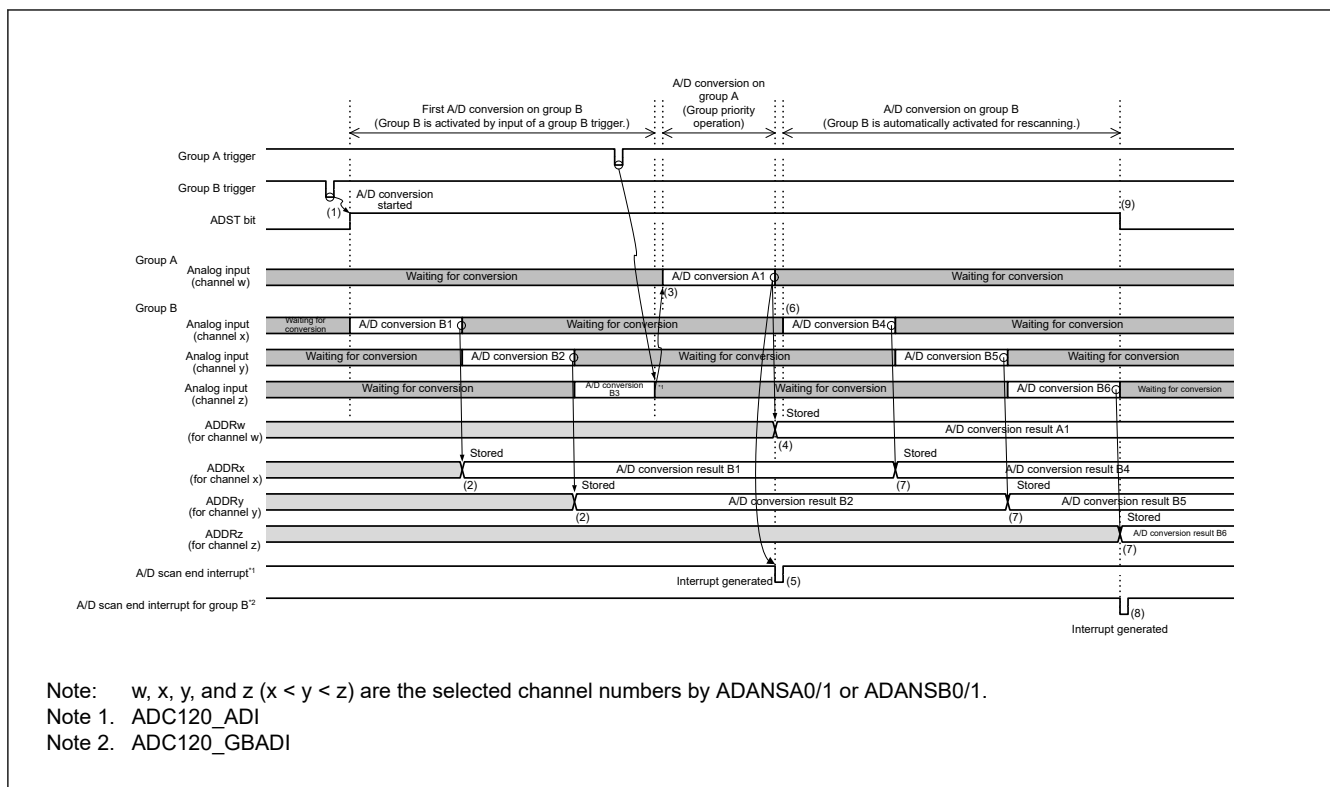


Figure 34.17 Example of group priority operation 1-1: Group A trigger input during group B scanning when rescanning is enabled (when ADGSPCR.GBRSCN = 1, ADGSPCR.GBRP = 0)

Operation example 1-2: “Group A trigger input during rescanning of group B” when rescanning is enabled

Figure 34.18 shows the operation when a group A trigger is input during rescanning operation for group B.

Even during rescanning operation, when a trigger for group A is input, A/D conversion on group B stops and A/D conversion for group A starts. A/D conversion for group B starts after A/D conversion for group A completes.

Operations for setting the ADCSR.ADST bit, storing the A/D conversion result in the corresponding A/D Data Register y (ADDRy), and generating interrupt requests are the same as those in operation example 1-1.

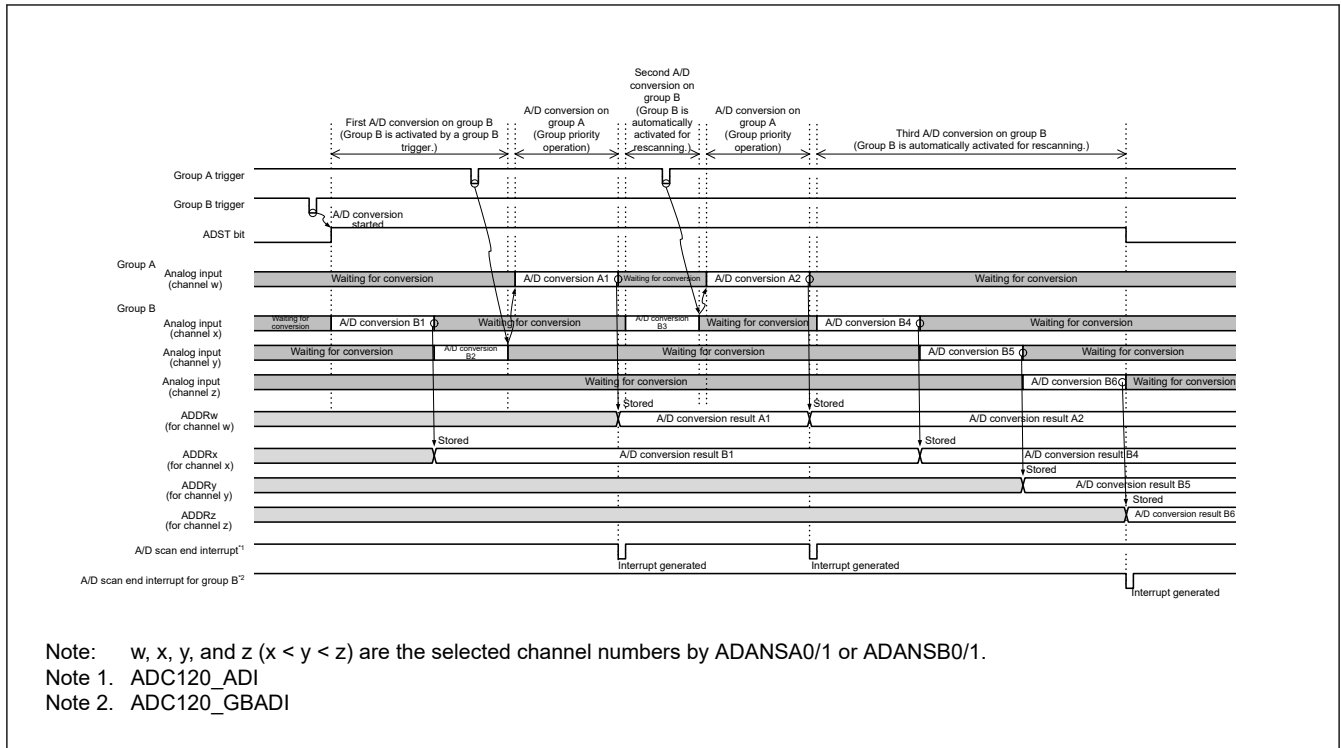
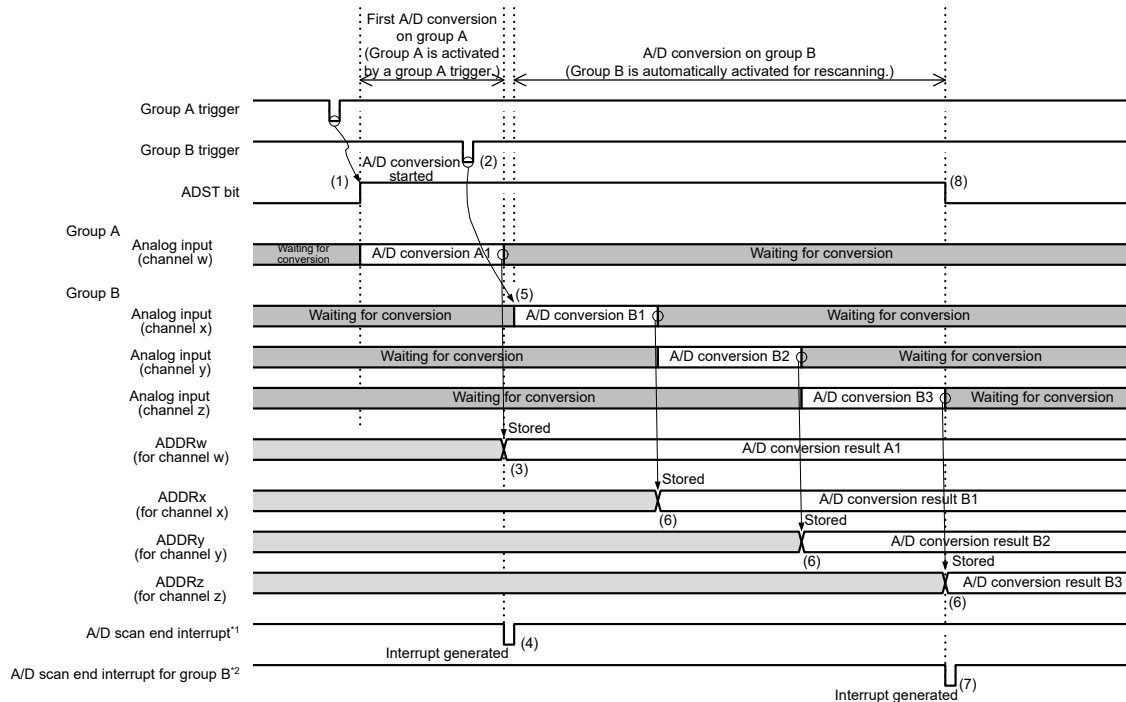


Figure 34.18 Example of group priority operation 1-2: Group A trigger input during rescanning of group B when rescanning is enabled (when ADGSPCR.GBRSCN = 1, ADGSPCR.GBRP = 0)

Operation example 1-3: “Group B trigger input during group A scan” when rescanning is enabled

The following describes the operation when the setting of the ADGSPCR.GBRSCN bit is 1 (enabling rescanning of the group that was stopped in group priority operation) and a trigger for group B is input during scanning operation for group A. If the setting of the ADGSPCR.GBRSCN bit is 0, any trigger for group B that is input during scanning operation for group A is invalid.

1. When input of a trigger for group A sets the ADCSR.ADST bit to 1 (starting A/D conversion), A/D conversion for the group A analog input channels selected in the ADANSA0 and ADANSA1 registers starts according to the conversion order from the channel with the smallest number n.
2. When a trigger for group B is input during A/D conversion for group A, group B is ready for A/D conversion.
3. On completion of A/D conversion for each channel in group A, the result is stored in the corresponding A/D Data Register y (ADDRy).
4. An ADC120_ADI interrupt request is generated.
5. When A/D conversion for group A completes, while the ADCSR.ADST bit remains 1, A/D conversion for the group B analog input channels selected in the ADANSB0 and ADANSB1 registers starts according to the conversion order from the channel with the smallest number n. (As with the case of operation example 1-1, if a trigger for group A is input during A/D conversion for group B, A/D conversion for group A starts. Then A/D conversion for group B starts on completion of A/D conversion for group A.)
6. On completion of A/D conversion of a single channel, the result is stored in the corresponding A/D Data Register y (ADDRy).
7. On completion of A/D conversion for group B, a group B scan end interrupt request is generated if the setting of the ADCSR.GBADIE bit is 1 (enabling interrupt generation on completion of group B scan).
8. When the A/D conversion for all the channels completes, the ADCSR.ADST bit is automatically cleared and the A/D converter enters a wait state.



Note: w, x, y, and z ($x < y < z$) are the selected channel numbers by ADANSA0/1 or ADANSB0/1.

Note 1. ADC120_ADI

Note 2. ADC120_GBADI

Figure 34.19 Example of group priority operation 1-3: Group B trigger input during group A scan when rescanning is enabled (when ADGSPCR.GBRSCN = 1, ADGSPCR.GBRP = 0)

Operation example 1-4 shows the group priority operation in group-scan mode (when ADGSPCR.GBRSCN = 0, ADGSPCR.GBRP = 0).

Operation example 1-4: “Group A trigger input during group B scan” when rescanning is disabled

- When input of a trigger for group B sets the ADCSR.ADST bit to 1 (starting A/D conversion), A/D conversion for the analog input channels selected in the ADANSB0 and ADANSB1 registers starts according to the conversion order from the channel with the smallest number n.
- On completion of A/D conversion for each channel in group B, the result is stored in the corresponding A/D Data Register y (ADDRy).
- When a trigger for group A is input during A/D conversion for group B, A/D conversion for group B stops while the ADCSR.ADST bit remains 1, and then A/D conversion for the group A analog input channels selected in the ADANSA0 and ADANSA1 registers starts according to the conversion order from the channel with the smallest number n. If A/D conversion stops before it is completed, the conversion result is not stored in the A/D Data Register y (ADDRy).
- On completion of A/D conversion of a single channel, the result is stored in the corresponding A/D Data Register y (ADDRy).
- On completion of A/D conversion for group A, an ADC120_ADI interrupt request is generated.
- When A/D conversion for group A completes, the ADCSR.ADST bit is automatically cleared and the A/D converter enters a wait state. A/D conversion for group B is not performed until a trigger for group B is input the next time.

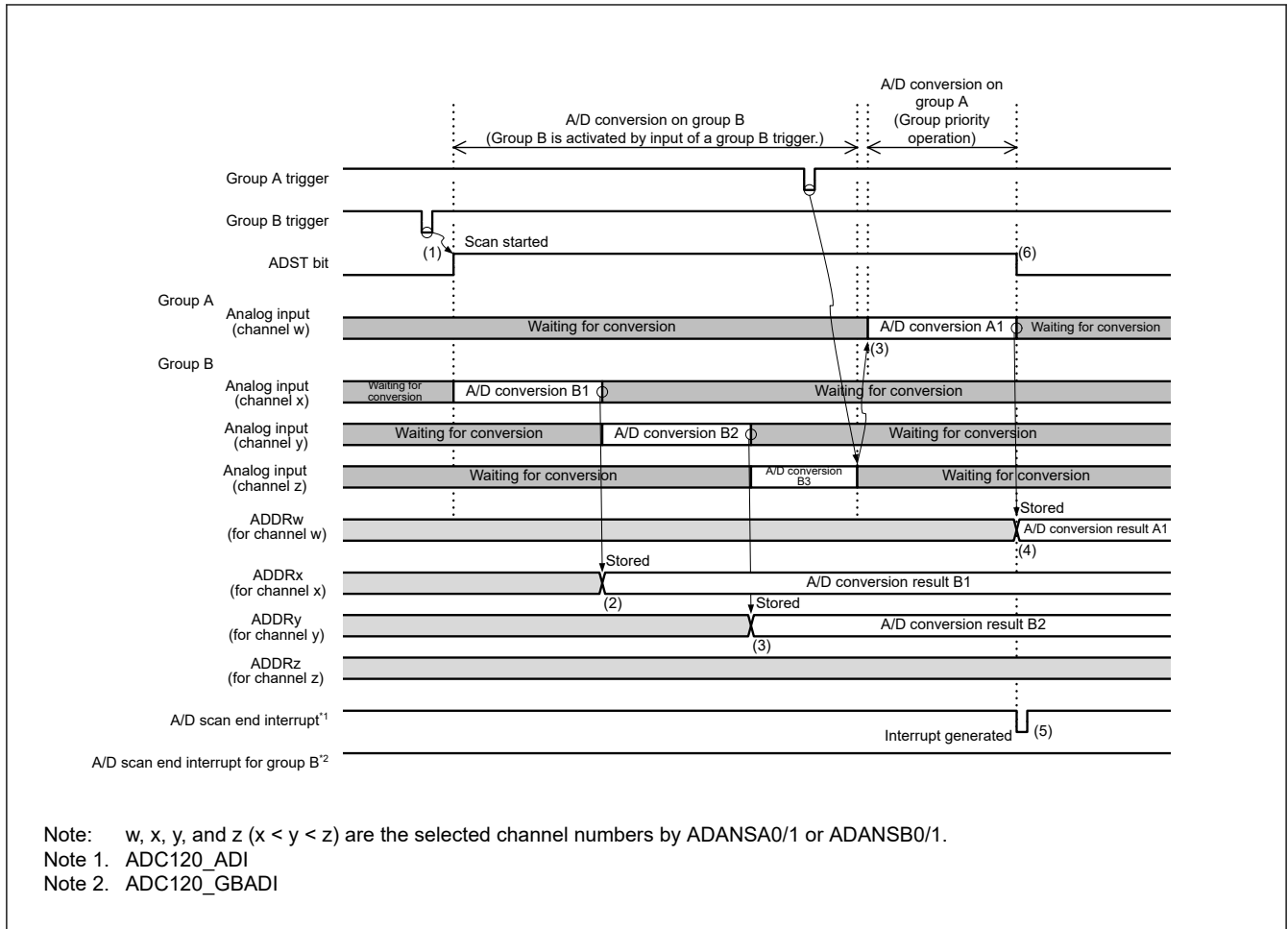


Figure 34.20 Group priority operation example 1-4: “Group A trigger is input during group B scan” when rescanning is disabled (when ADGSPCR.GBRSCN = 0, ADGSPCR.GBRP = 0)

Operation example 1-5 shows the group priority operation in group-scan mode (when ADGSPCR.GBRP = 1).

Operation example 1-5: Continuously activating single-scan operation for group B

- When ADGSPCR.GBRP = 1 is set, the ADCSR.ADST bit is set to 1 (starting A/D conversion) and A/D conversion for the analog input channels selected in the ADANSB0 and ADANSB1 registers starts according to the conversion order from the channel with the smallest number n.
- On completion of A/D conversion for each channel in group B, the result is stored in the corresponding A/D Data Register y (ADDRy).
- When a trigger for group A is input during A/D conversion for group B, A/D conversion for group B stops while the ADCSR.ADST bit remains 1, and then A/D conversion for group A analog input channels selected in the ADANSA0 and ADANSA1 registers starts according to the conversion order from the channel with the smallest number n. If A/D conversion stops before it is completed, the conversion result is not stored in the A/D Data Register y (ADDRy).
- On completion of A/D conversion of a single channel, the result is stored in the corresponding A/D Data Register y (ADDRy).
- On completion of A/D conversion for group A, an ADC120_ADI interrupt request is generated.
- If ADGSPCR.GBRP = 1 is set (performing single scan continuously), A/D conversion for the group B analog input channels selected in the ADANSB0 and ADANSB1 registers restarts according to the conversion order from the channel with the smallest number n while the ADCSR.ADST remains 1 (starting A/D conversion).
- On completion of A/D conversion of a single channel, the result is stored in the corresponding A/D Data Register y (ADDRy).
- If the setting of the ADCSR.GBADIE bit is 1 (enabling interrupt generation on completion of group B scan), a group B scan end interrupt request is generated.

9. If $\text{ADGSPCR.GBRP} = 1$ is set (performing single scan continuously), A/D conversion for the group B analog input channels selected in the ADANSB0 and ADANSB1 registers restarts according to the conversion order from the channel with the smallest number n while the ADCSR.ADST remains 1 (starting A/D conversion).

Steps 6 to 9 are repeated as long as the ADGSPCR.GBRP bit remains 1. Do not clear the ADCSR.ADST bit as long as the ADGSPCR.GBRP bit is 1. To forcibly stop A/D conversion while $\text{ADGSPCR.GBRP} = 1$, follow the procedure shown in Figure 34.32.

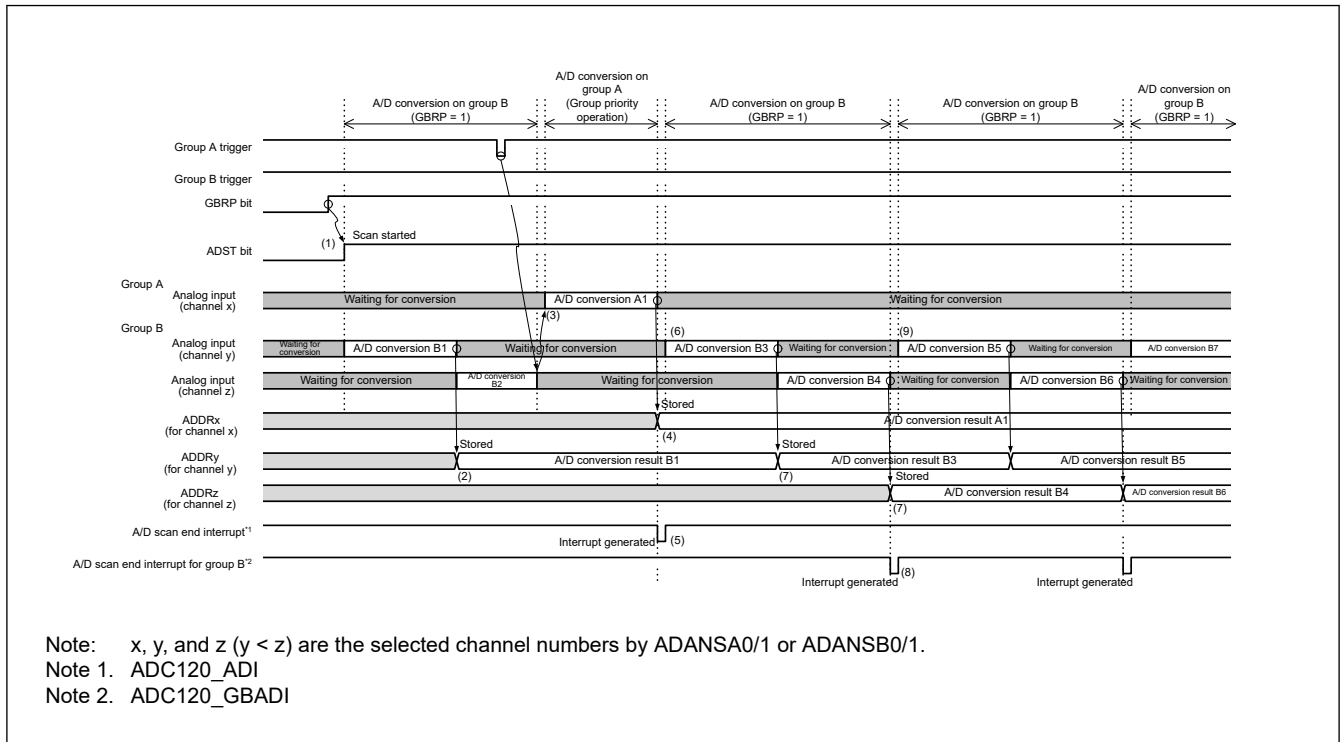


Figure 34.21 Group priority operation example 1-5: Continuously activating single scan for group B (when $\text{ADGSPCR.GBRP} = 1$)

Note: To continuously activate single-scan operation for group B, disable group B trigger input.

34.3.5 Compare Function for Windows A and B

34.3.5.1 Compare Function Windows A and B

The compare function compares a reference value with the A/D conversion result. The reference value can be set for Window A and Window B independently. When the compare function is in use, the self-diagnosis function and double-trigger mode cannot be used. The main differences between Window A and Window B are their different interrupt output signals and the constraint on Window B of only one selectable channel.

This section provides an example operation that combines continuous scan mode and the compare function.

The operation is as follows:

- When the ADCSR.ADST bit is set to 1 (A/D conversion start) by software, a synchronous trigger (ELC) or an asynchronous trigger, A/D conversion starts of the selected channel. Both temperature sensor and internal reference voltage are not selectable at the same time. Additionally, when the internal reference voltage is selected as the high-potential reference voltage, A/D conversion of the temperature sensor or internal reference voltage is prohibited.
- On completion of A/D conversion, the A/D conversion result is stored in the associated A/D Data Register y (ADDRy , ADTSDR , or ADOCDR). When $\text{ADCMPCR.CMPAE} = 1$, if bits in the ADCMPANSRy register or the ADCMPANSER register are set for Window A, the A/D conversion result is compared with the set ADCMPDR0/1 register value. When $\text{ADCMPCR.CMPBE} = 1$, if bits in the ADCMPBNSR register are set for Window B, the A/D conversion result is compared with the ADWINULB/ADWINLLB register setting.

3. As a result of the comparison, when Window A meets the condition set in ADCMPLR0/1 or ADCMPLER, the Compare Window A Flag (ADCMPSR0.CMPSTCHAn, ADCMPSR1.CMPSTCHAn, ADCMPSER.CMPSTTSA or ADCMPSER.CMPSTOCA) sets 1. At this time, if the ADCMPCR.CMPAIE bit is 1, an ADC120_CMPAI interrupt request is generated. In the same way, when Window B meets the condition set in ADCMPBNSR.CMPLB, the Compare Window B Flag (ADCMPBSR.CMPSTB) sets to 1. At this time, if the ADCMPCR.CMPBIE bit is 1, an ADC120_CMPBI interrupt request is generated.
4. On completion of all selected A/D conversions and comparisons, scan restarts.
5. After the ADC120_CMPAI and ADC120_CMPBI interrupts are accepted, the ADCSR.ADST bit is set to 0 (A/D conversion stop) and processing is performed for channels for which the compare flag is set to 1.
6. When all compare flags of Window A are cleared, the ADC120_CMPAI interrupt request is canceled. In the same way, when all compare flags of Window B are cleared, the ADC120_CMPBI interrupt request is reset. To perform comparison again, restart the A/D conversion.

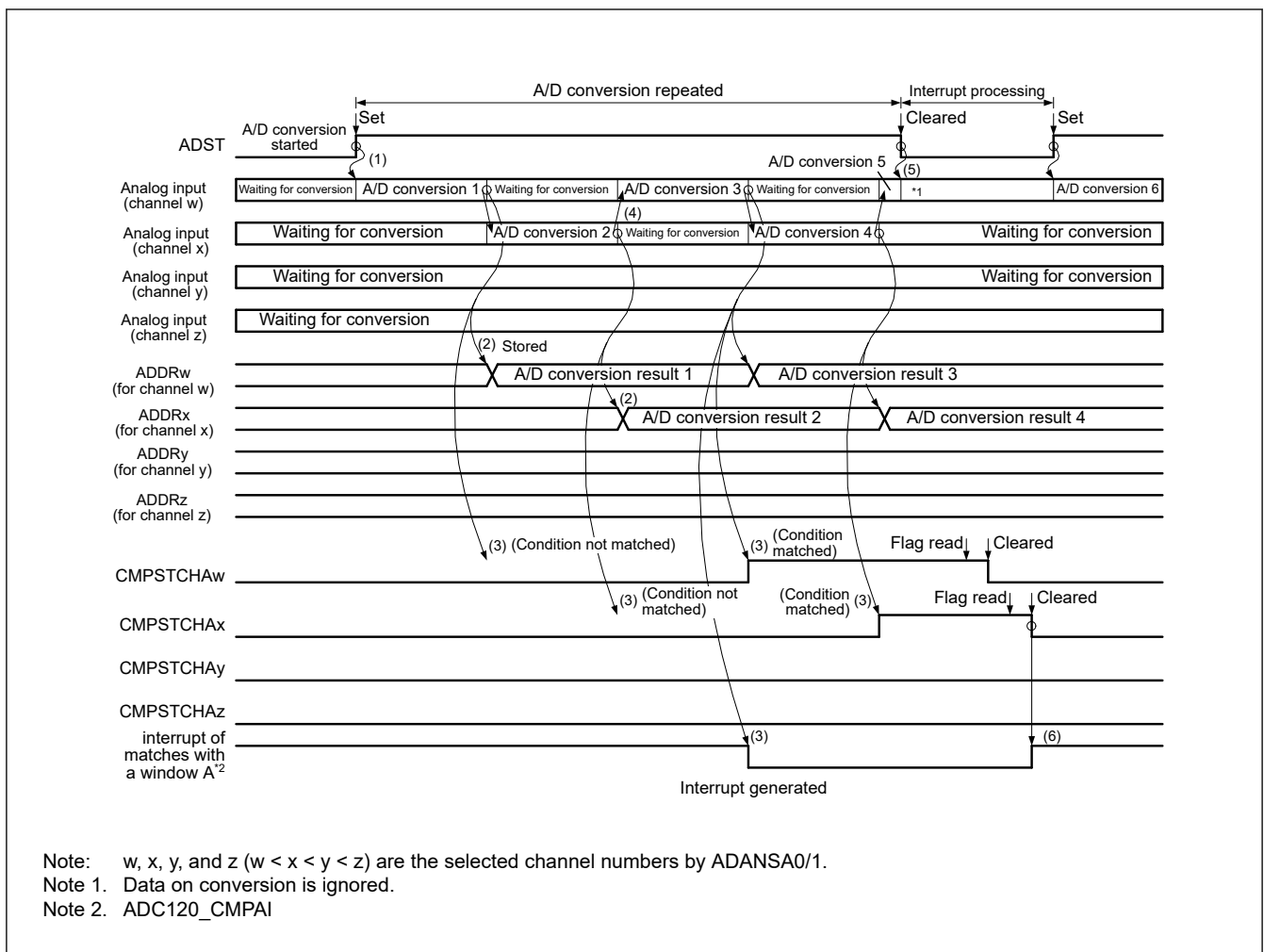


Figure 34.22 Example of compare function operation, when the analog inputs (channel w to z) are compared

34.3.5.2 Event Output of Compare Function

The event output of the compare function specifies the upper-side reference voltage value and the lower-side reference voltage value for window A and window B, respectively. The output compares the A/D converted value of the selected channel with the upper and lower side reference voltage value and outputs events (ADC120_WCMPPM/ADC120_WCMPUM) based on event conditions (A or B, A and B, A xor B) and comparison result of window A and window B.

If more than one channel is selected for window A, and even when one channel in window A meets the comparison condition, the comparison result of window A is met. When using this function, perform A/D conversion in single scan mode.

Any channels from analog input, internal reference voltage, and temperature sensor output are selectable for window A. However, neither the internal reference voltage nor the temperature sensor output can be selected together with any other channel. Additionally, if the internal reference voltage is selected as the high-potential reference voltage of the A/D converter, the internal reference voltage or the temperature sensor output cannot be A/D converted.

One channel from analog input, internal reference voltage, and temperature sensor output is selectable for window B. Additionally, if the internal reference voltage is selected as the high-potential reference voltage, the internal reference voltage or the temperature sensor output cannot be A/D converted.

The following sequence is an example of how to set up and use the event output of the compare function:

1. Confirm that the value in the ADCSR.ADCS bits is 00b (single scan mode).
2. Select the channel for window A in the ADCMPANSR0/1 and ADCMPANSER registers. Set the window comparison conditions in the ADCMPLR0/1 and ADCMPLER registers. Set the upper-side and lower-side reference values in the ADCMPDR0/1 registers.
3. Select the channel and comparison conditions for Window B in the ADCMPBNSR register, and set the upper and lower reference values in the ADWINULB and ADWINLLB registers.
4. Set the composite conditions for window A/B, window A/B operation enable, and interrupt output enable in the ADCMPCR register.

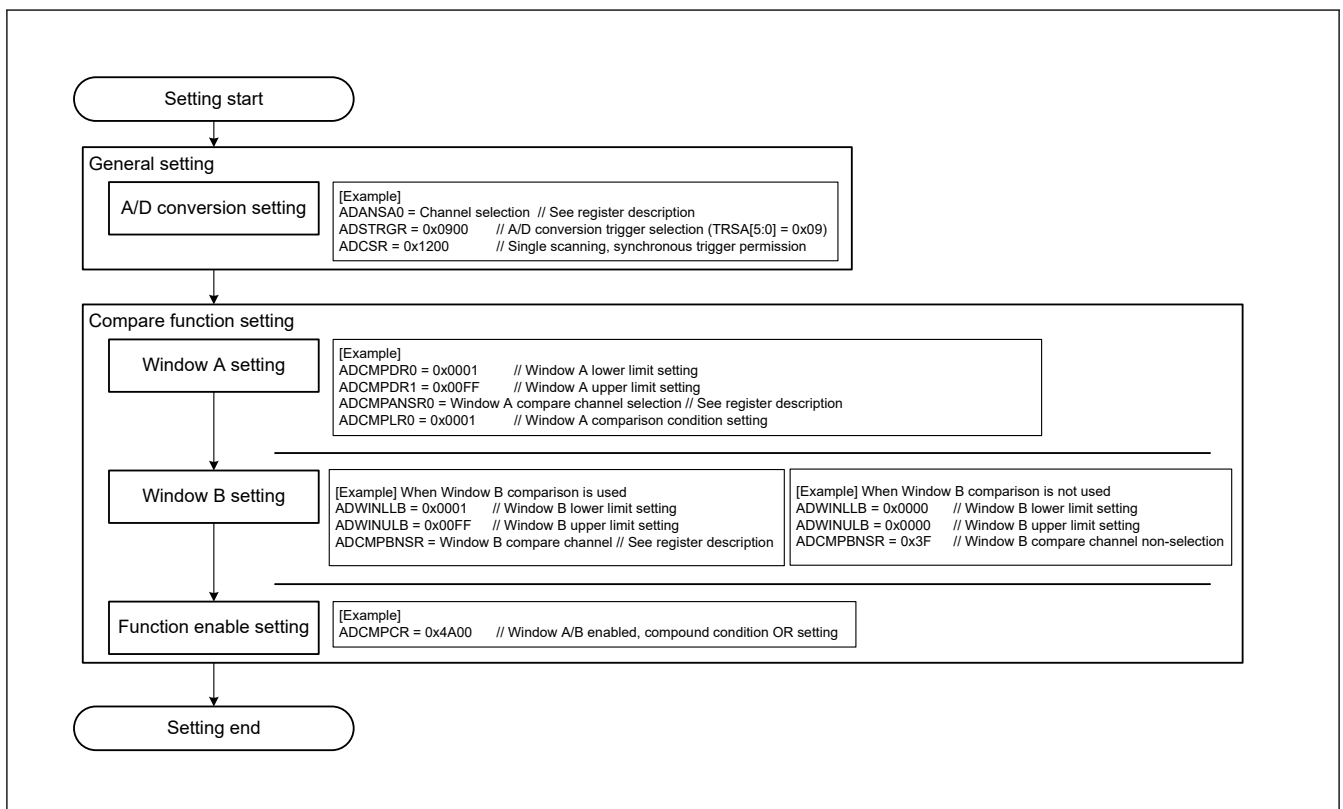


Figure 34.23 Setting example when using the event output of the compare function

For event output usage when using only window A for the compare function, note the following:

- Enable both Window A and Window B (ADCMPCR.CMPAE = 1, ADCMPCR.CMPBE = 1)
- Set the compound condition of Window A and Window B to “OR condition” (ADCMPCR.CMPAB[1:0] = 00b)
- Set the compared channel of Window B to “No selection” (ADCMPBNSR.CMPCHB[5:0] = 0x3F)
- Set the compare condition of Window B to “0 < results < 0 always means mismatch”. (ADCMPCR.WCMPE = 1, ADWINLLB[15:0] = ADWINULB[15:0] = 0x0000, and ADCMPBNSR.CMPLB = 1)

Figure 34.24 shows the event output operation example of compare function.

A scan end event (ADC120_ADI) is output with the same timing as single scan completion. A match or mismatch event (ADC120_WCMPM/ADC120_WCMPUM) is output with 1 PCLKB cycle delay depending on the ADCMPCR.CMPAB[1:0] settings.

Note: The match and mismatch events are exclusive, so both events are never output simultaneously.

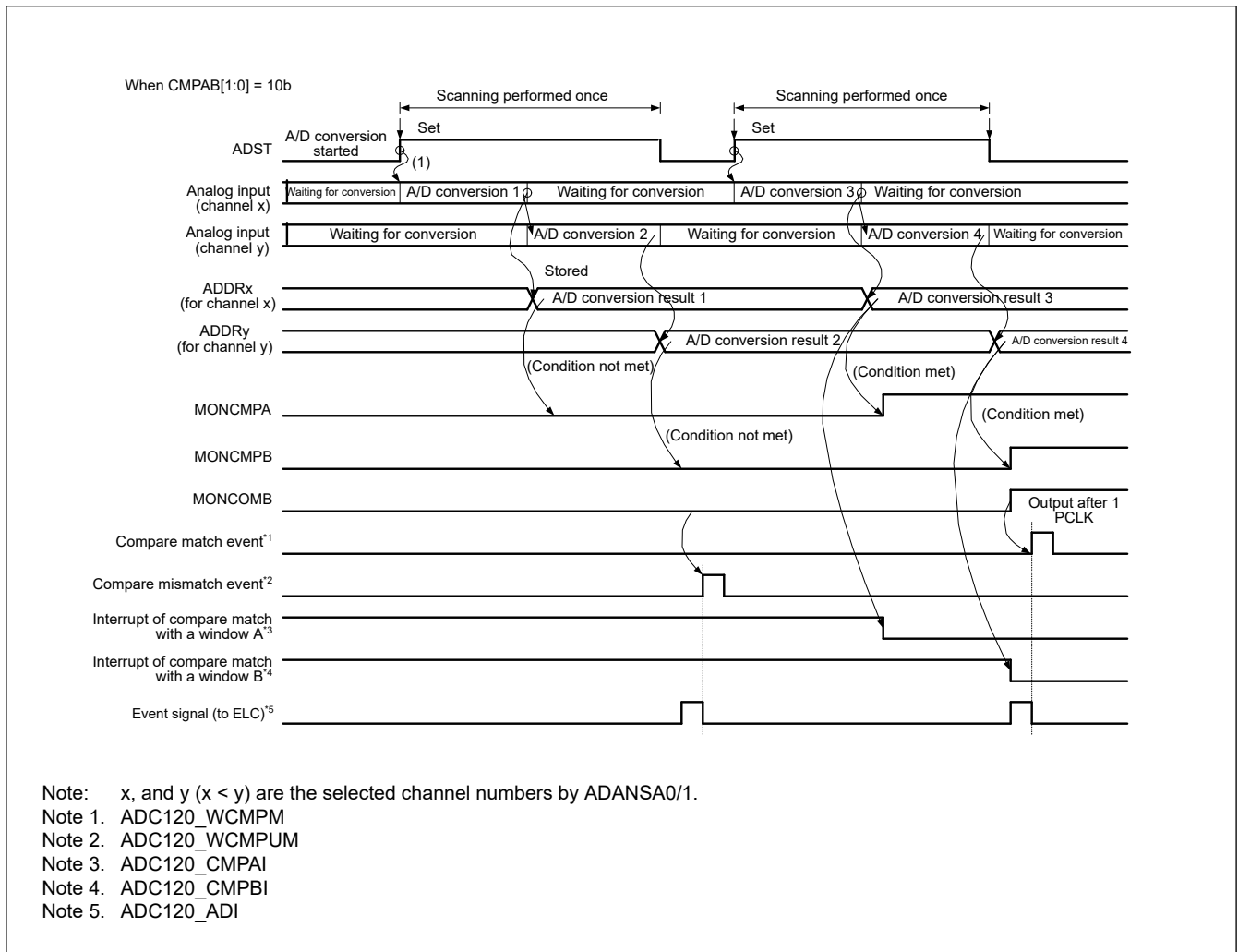


Figure 34.24 Example operation of the compare function event output, when the analog inputs (channel x and y) are compared

Note: Event output of compare function outputs match/mismatch from the comparison results of Window A and Window B, based on the ADCMPCR.CMPAB[1:0] settings.

Note: The comparison result of Window A is the logical addition of the comparison results of the comparison target channels of Window A. The comparison results of Window A and Window B are updated by each A/D conversion, and are kept even when single scan ends. Set ADCMPCR.CMPAE and ADCMPCR.CMPBE to 0 to clear the comparison results to 0.

34.3.5.3 Restrictions on Compare Function

The following constraints apply for the compare function:

- The compare function cannot be used together with the self-diagnosis function or double-trigger mode. (The compare function is not available for ADRD, ADDBLDR, ADDBLDRA, and ADDBLDRB.)
- Specify single scan mode when using match/mismatch event outputs.
- When the temperature sensor output, internal reference voltage is selected for Window A, Window B operations are prohibited.

- When the temperature sensor output, internal reference voltage is selected for Window B, Window A operations are prohibited.
- Setting the same channel for Window A and Window B is prohibited.
- Set the reference voltage values so that the high-potential reference voltage value is equal to or larger than the low-potential reference voltage value.

34.3.6 Analog Input Sampling and Scan Conversion Time

Scan conversion can be activated either by a software trigger, a synchronous trigger (ELC), or an asynchronous trigger (ADTRG0). After the start-of-scanning-delay time (t_D) has elapsed, processing for disconnection detection assistance, and processing of conversion for self-diagnosis all proceed, followed by processing for A/D conversion.

Figure 34.25 shows the scan conversion timing, in which scan conversion is activated by a software trigger or a synchronous trigger (ELC). Figure 34.26 shows the scan conversion timing, in which scan conversion is activated by an asynchronous trigger (ADTRG0). The scan conversion time (t_{SCAN}) includes the start-of-scanning-delay time (t_D), disconnection detection assistance processing time (t_{DIS})*¹, self-diagnosis A/D conversion processing time (t_{DIAG} and t_{DSD})*², A/D conversion processing time (t_{CONV}), and end-of-scanning-delay time (t_{ED}).

The A/D conversion processing time (t_{CONV}) consists of input sampling time (t_{SPL}) and time for conversion by successive approximation (t_{SAM}). The sampling time (t_{SPL}) is used to charge sample-and-hold circuits in the A/D converter. If there is not sufficient sampling time due to the high impedance of an analog input signal source, or if the A/D conversion clock (ADCLK) is slow, sampling time can be adjusted using the ADSSTRn register.

The time for conversion by successive approximation (t_{SAM}) is the following

- 31.5 ADCLK states with 12-bit accuracy and high-speed A/D conversion mode (ADCSR.ADHSC = 0) and normal conversion mode (ADACSR.ADSAC = 0) selected.
- 40.5 ADCLK states with 12-bit accuracy and low-power A/D conversion mode (ADCSR.ADHSC = 1) and normal conversion mode (ADACSR.ADSAC = 0) selected.
- 21.5 ADCLK states with 12-bit accuracy and high-speed A/D conversion mode (ADCSR.ADHSC = 0) and fast conversion mode (ADACSR.ADSAC = 1) selected.
- 27.5 ADCLK states with 12-bit accuracy and low-power A/D conversion mode (ADCSR.ADHSC = 1) and fast conversion mode (ADACSR.ADSAC = 1) selected.

Table 34.23 shows the time for conversion by successive approximation (t_{SAM}).

The scan conversion time (t_{SCAN}) in single scan mode for which the number of selected channels is n can be determined as follows:

$$t_{SCAN} = t_D + (t_{DIS} \times n) + t_{DIAG} + t_{ED} + (t_{CONV} \times n) \text{ } ^{*3}$$

The scan conversion time for the first cycle in continuous scan mode is t_{SCAN} for single scan minus t_{ED} . The scan conversion time for the second and subsequent cycles in continuous scan mode is fixed in the following:

$$(t_{DIS} \times n) + t_{DIAG} + t_{DSD} + (t_{CONV} \times n) \text{ } ^{*3}$$

Note 1. When disconnection detection assistance is not selected, $t_{DIS} = 0$.

Only when the temperature sensor or internal reference voltage is A/D-converted, the auto-discharge period of 15 ADCLK states is inserted.

Note 2. When the self-diagnosis function is not used, $t_{DIAG} = 0$, $t_{DSD} = 0$.

Note 3. When the input sampling times (t_{SPL}) of all selected channels are the same, this element equals $t_{CONV} \times n$. If each channel has a different sampling time, this element equals that of t_{SPL} and t_{SAM} set to each selected channel.

Table 34.23 shows the times for conversion during scanning.

Table 34.23 Conversion times during scanning (in numbers of cycles of ADCLK and PCLKB)

Item			Symbol	Type/Conditions			Unit
				Synchronous trigger*5	Asynchronous trigger	Software trigger	
Scan start delay time*1 *2	A/D conversion on group A under group A priority control.	Group B is to be stopped (Group A is activated after group B is stopped by of an A/D conversion source from group A).	tD	3 PCLKB + 6 ADCLK 5 PCLKB + 3 ADCLK*6	—	—	Cycles
		Group B is not to be stopped (activation by an A/D conversion source from group A).		2 PCLKB + 4 ADCLK	—	—	
	A/D conversion when self-diagnosis is enabled.	A/D conversion for self-diagnosis is to be started.		2 PCLKB + 4 ADCLK	4 PCLKB + 6 ADCLK	6 ADCLK	
	All other	2 PCLKB + 4 ADCLK		2 PCLKB + 4 ADCLK	4 ADCLK		
Disconnection detection assistance processing time			tDIS	Setting in ADNDIS[3:0] (initial value = 0x00) × ADCLK*3			
Self-diagnosis conversion processing time*1	Sampling time*4		tDIAG	tSPL	Setting in ADSSTRn (n = 0 to 10, L, T, O) (initial value = 0x0D) × ADCLK + 0.5 ADCLK		
	Time for conversion by successive approximation	12-bit conversion accuracy		tSAM	31.5 ADCLK at high-speed A/D conversion mode (ADCSR.ADHSC = 0) and normal conversion mode (ADACSR.ADSAC = 0) 40.5 ADCLK at low-power A/D conversion mode (ADCSR.ADHSC = 1) and normal conversion mode (ADACSR.ADSAC = 0) 21.5 ADCLK at high-speed A/D conversion mode (ADCSR.ADHSC = 0) and fast conversion mode (ADACSR.ADSAC = 1) 27.5 ADCLK at low-power A/D conversion mode (ADCSR.ADHSC = 1) and fast conversion mode (ADACSR.ADSAC = 1)		
				tDED	2 ADCLK		
	Wait time between last channel conversion end and self-diagnosis sampling start in continuous scan mode.			tDSD	2 ADCLK		
A/D conversion processing time*1	Sampling time*4		tCONV	tSPL	Setting in ADSSTRn (n = 0 to 10, L, T, O) (initial value = 0x0D) × ADCLK + 0.5 ADCLK		
	Time for conversion by successive approximation	12-bit conversion accuracy		tSAM	31.5 ADCLK at high-speed A/D conversion mode (ADCSR.ADHSC = 0) and normal conversion mode (ADACSR.ADSAC = 0) 40.5 ADCLK at low-power A/D conversion mode (ADCSR.ADHSC = 1) and normal conversion mode (ADACSR.ADSAC = 0) 21.5 ADCLK at high-speed A/D conversion mode (ADCSR.ADHSC = 0) and fast conversion mode (ADACSR.ADSAC = 1) 27.5 ADCLK at low-power A/D conversion mode (ADCSR.ADHSC = 1) and fast conversion mode (ADACSR.ADSAC = 1)		
Scan end processing time*1			tED	1 PCLKB + 3 ADCLK 2 PCLKB + 3 ADCLK*6			

Note 1. See [Figure 34.25](#) and [Figure 34.26](#) for an illustration of times t_D , t_{DIAG} , t_{CONV} , and t_{ED} .

Note 2. This is the maximum time required from software writing or trigger input to A/D conversion start.

Note 3. The value is fixed to 0x0F (15 ADCLK) when the temperature sensor output or internal reference voltage is A/D-converted.

Note 4. The sampling time setting should satisfy the electrical characteristics. For the details, see [section 41.5. ADC12 Characteristics](#).

Note 5. This does not include the time consumed in the path from timer output to trigger input.

Note 6. If ADCLK is faster than PCLKB (PCLKB to ADCLK frequency ratio = 1:2 or 1:4).

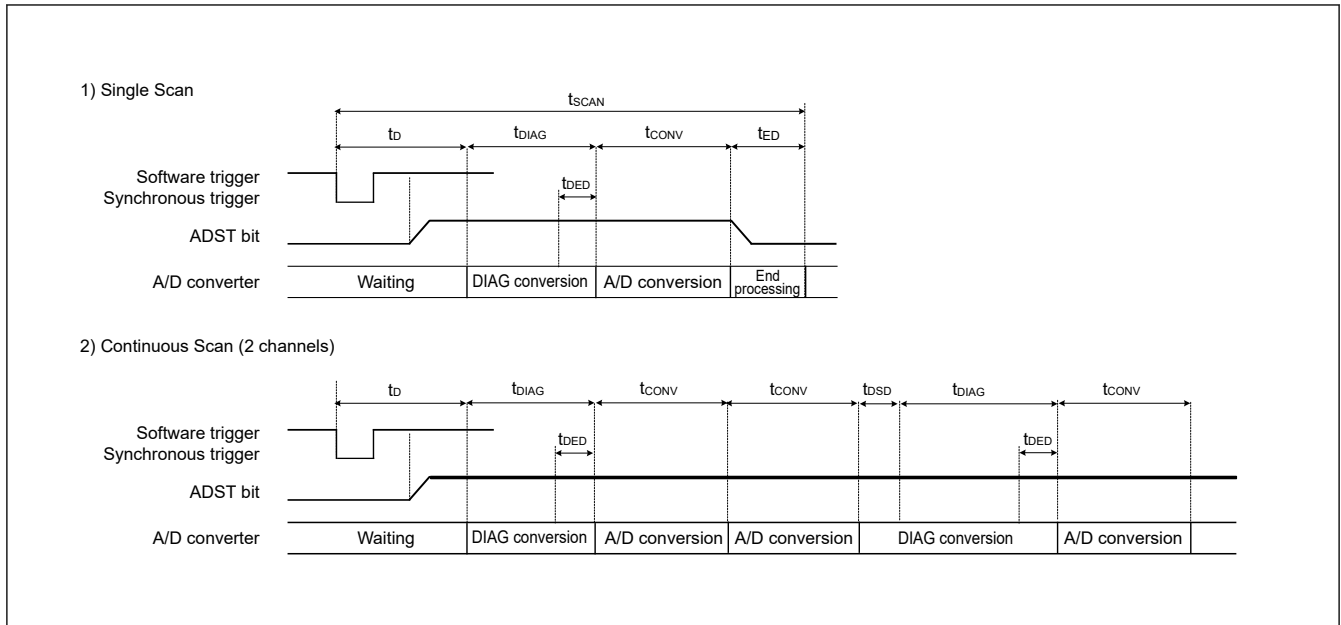


Figure 34.25 Scan conversion timing when activated by software or a synchronous trigger input (ELC)

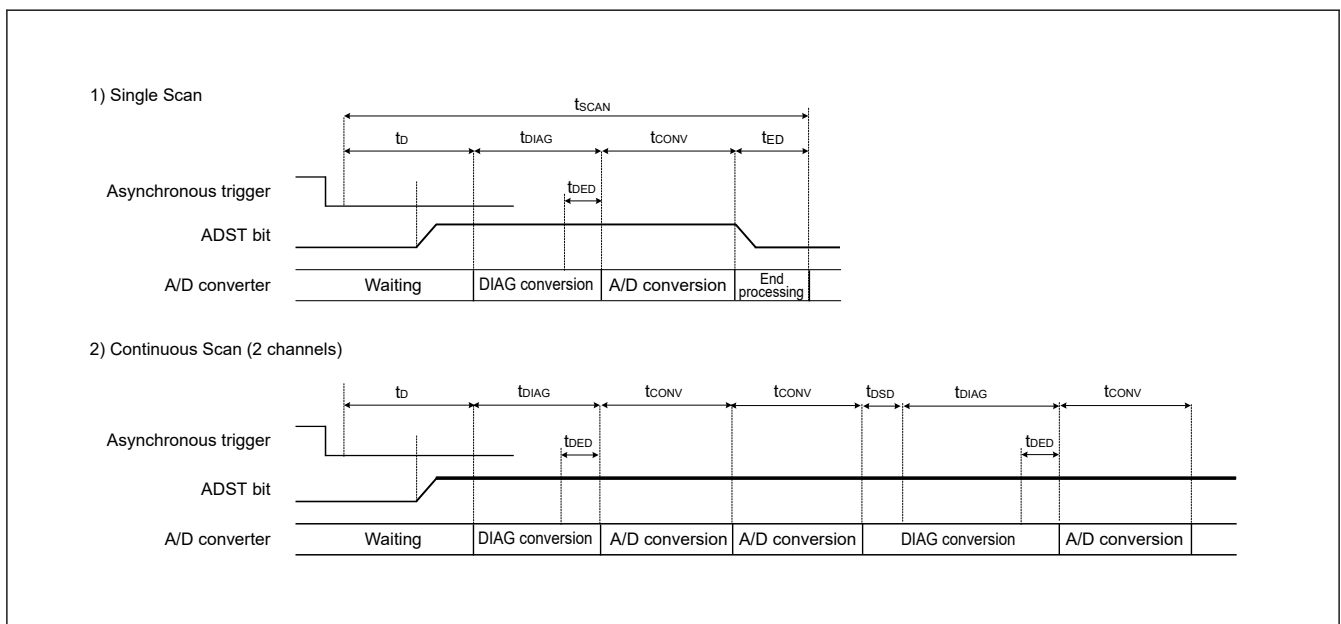


Figure 34.26 Scan conversion timing when activated by an asynchronous trigger input (ADTRG0)

34.3.7 Usage Example of A/D Data Register Automatic Clearing Function

Setting the ADCER.ACE bit to 1 automatically clears the A/D data registers (ADDRy, ADDR, ADDBLDR, ADDBLDRA, ADDBLDRB, ADTSDR, ADOCDR) to 0x0000 when the A/D data registers are read by the CPU or DTC.

This function enables detection of update failures of the A/D data registers (ADDRy, ADDR, ADDBLDR, ADDBLDRA, ADDBLDRB, ADTSDR, ADOCDR). This section describes examples in which the function to automatically clear the ADDRy register is enabled and disabled.

- If the ADCER.ACE bit is 0 (automatic clearing is disabled) and for some reason, if the A/D conversion result (0x0222) is not written to the ADDRy register, the ADDRy value retains the old data (0x0111). In addition, if this ADDRy value is read into a general-purpose register using an A/D scan end interrupt, the old data (0x0111) can be saved in the general-purpose register. When checking whether there is an update failure, it is necessary to frequently save the old data in SRAM or in a general-purpose register.
- If the ADCER.ACE bit is 1 (automatic clearing is enabled), when ADDRy = 0x0111 is read by the CPU or DTC, ADDRy is automatically set to 0x0000. Next, if the A/D conversion result of 0x0222 cannot be transferred to ADDRy

for some reason, the cleared data (0x0000) remains as the ADDRy value. If this ADDRy value is read into a general-purpose register using an A/D scan end interrupt, 0x0000 is saved in the general-purpose register. Occurrence of an ADDRy update failure can be determined by checking that the read data value is 0x0000.

34.3.8 A/D-converted Value Addition/Average Mode

A/D-converted value addition/average mode can be used when A/D conversion of the analog input of the selected channels, the temperature sensor output, or the internal reference voltage is selected.

In A/D-converted value addition mode, the same channel is A/D-converted 1, 2, 3, 4, or 16 consecutive times, and the sum of the converted values is stored in the data register. In A/D-converted value average mode, the same channel is A/D-converted 2 or 4 consecutive times, and the mean of the converted values is stored in the data register. The use of the average of these results can improve the accuracy of A/D conversion, depending on the types of noise components that are present. This function, however, cannot always guarantee an improvement in A/D conversion accuracy.

The A/D-converted value addition/average function can be used when A/D conversion of the analog inputs of the selected channels or A/D conversion of the temperature sensor output or A/D conversion of the internal reference voltage is selected. The A/D-converted value addition/average function can also be used for channels for which the double-trigger function is selected.

The addition function for self-diagnosis is not provided.

34.3.9 Disconnection Detection Assist Function

The ADC12 incorporates a function to fix the charge for sampling capacitance to the specified state VREFH0 or VREFL0 before the start of A/D conversion. This function enables disconnection detection in the wiring of analog inputs.

Figure 34.27 shows the A/D conversion operation when the disconnection detection assist function is used. Figure 34.28 shows an example of disconnection detection when precharge is selected. Figure 34.29 shows an example of disconnection detection when discharge is selected.

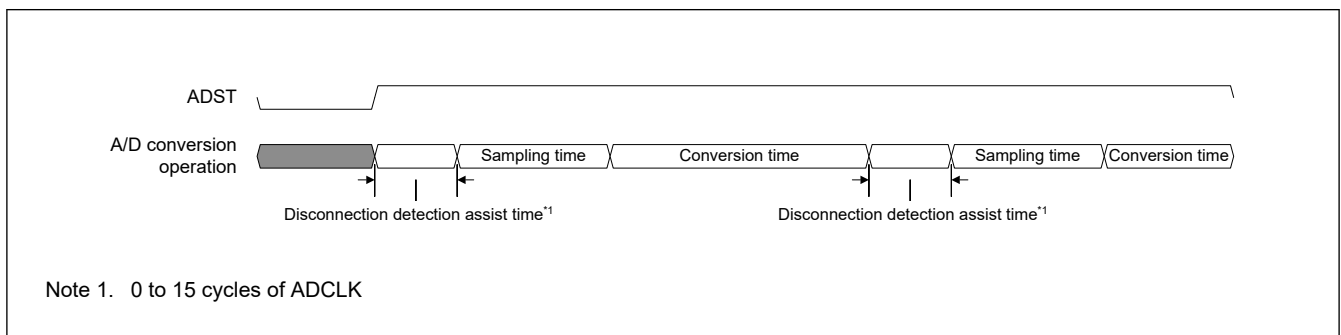


Figure 34.27 Operation of A/D conversion when disconnection detection assist function is used

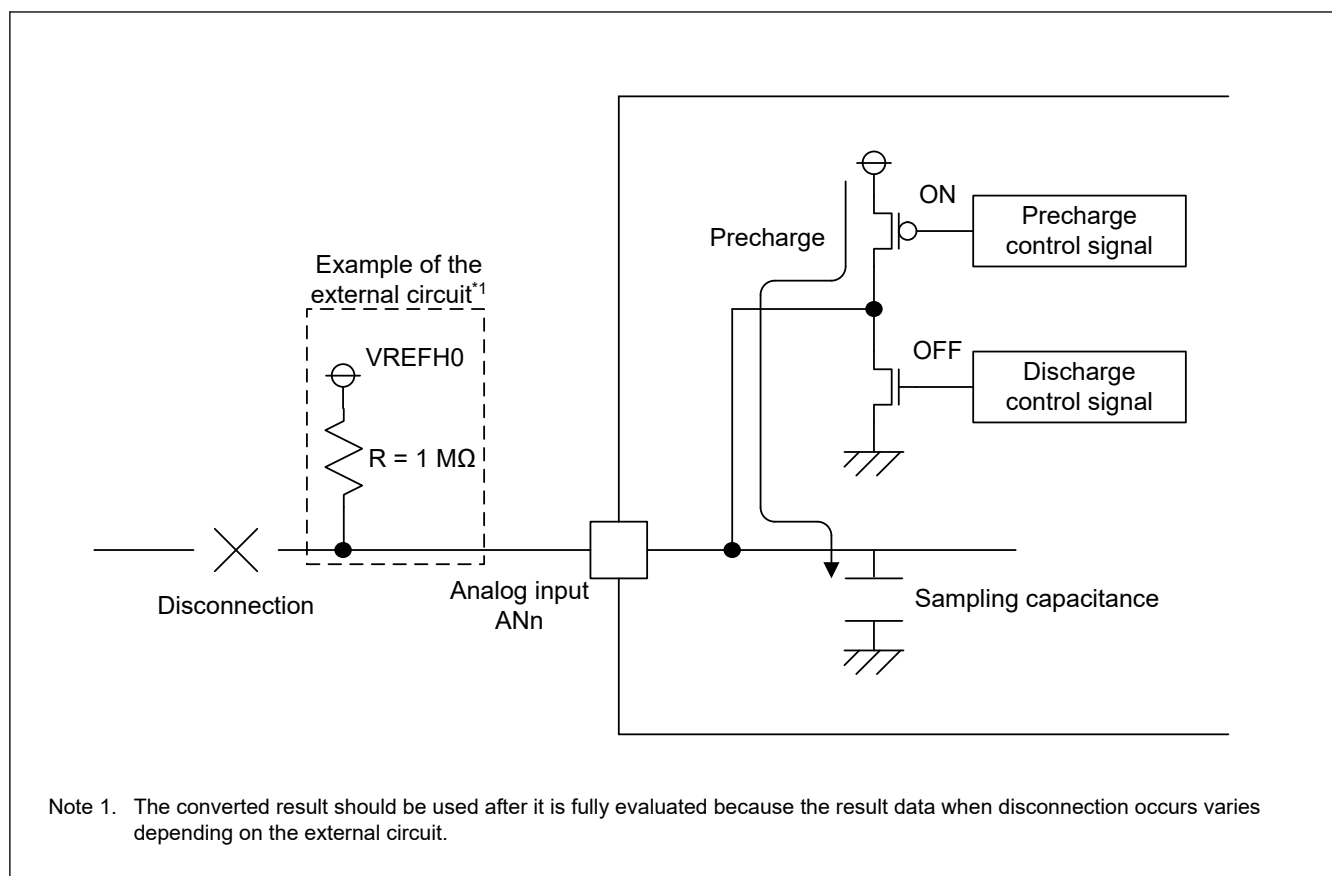


Figure 34.28 Example of disconnection detection when precharge is selected

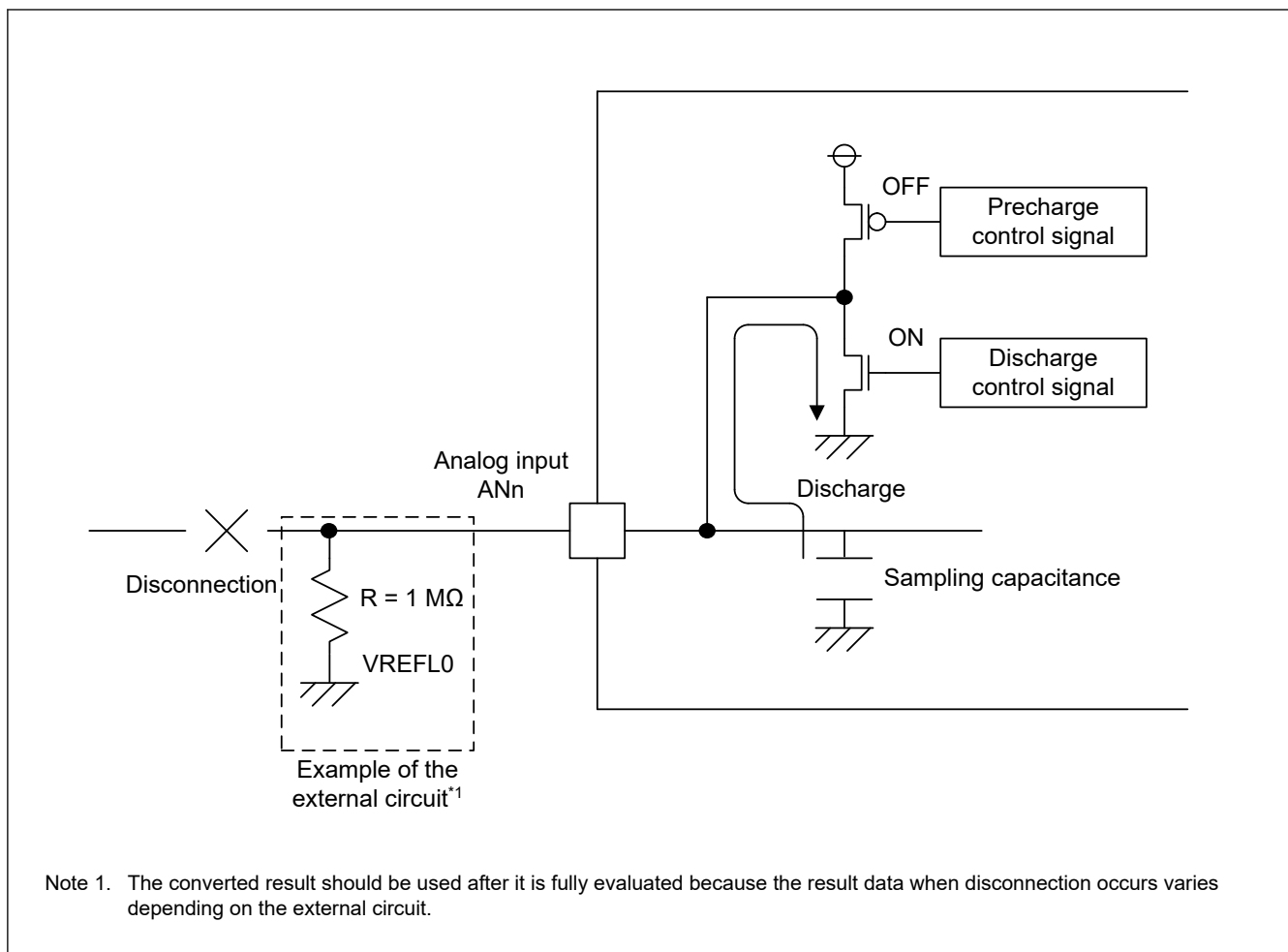


Figure 34.29 Example of disconnection detection when discharge is selected

34.3.10 Starting A/D Conversion with an Asynchronous Trigger

A/D conversion can be started by the input of an asynchronous trigger. To start A/D conversion by an asynchronous trigger, set the pin function in the $PmnPFS$ register, set the A/D Conversion Start Trigger Select bits ($ADSTRGR.TRSA[5:0]$) to $0x00$, then input a high-level signal to the asynchronous trigger ($ADTRG0$ pin). Finally, set both the $ADCSR.TRGE$ and $ADCSR.EXTRG$ bits to 1. Figure 34.30 shows timing of the asynchronous trigger input.

An asynchronous trigger cannot be selected in the A/D conversion start trigger for group B used in group scan mode. For details on setting the pin function, see [section 17, I/O Ports](#).

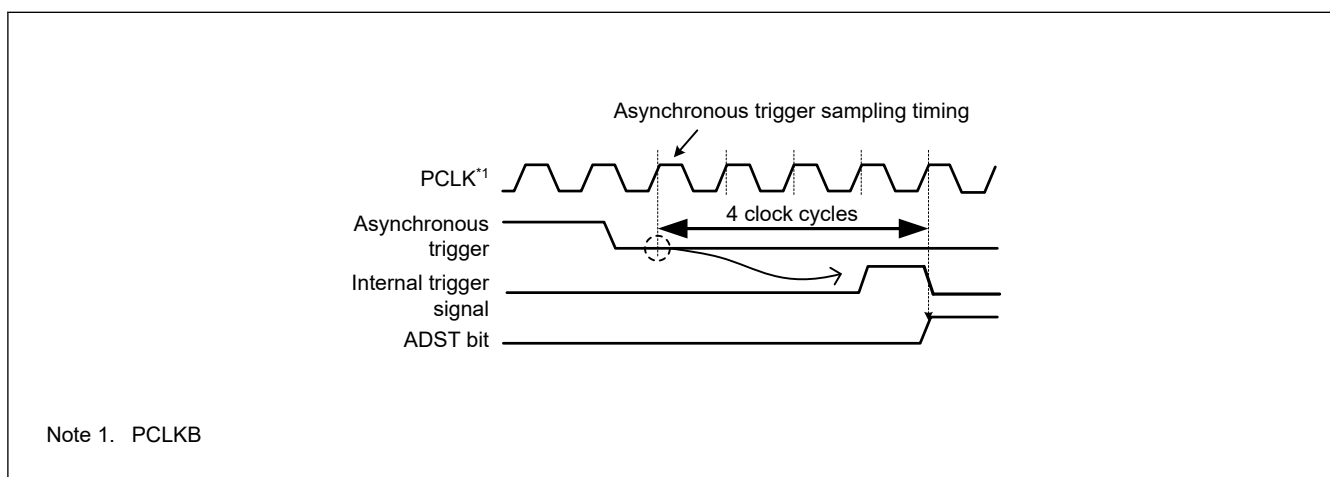


Figure 34.30 Asynchronous trigger input timing

34.3.11 Starting A/D Conversion with a Synchronous Trigger from a Peripheral Module

A/D conversion can be started by a synchronous trigger (ELC). To do this, set the ADCSR.TRGE bit to 1 and the ADCSR.EXTRG bit to 0, and select the relevant sources in the ADSTRGR.TRSA[5:0] bits and ADSTRGR.TRSB[5:0] bits.

34.4 Interrupt Sources and DTC Transfer Requests

34.4.1 Interrupt Requests

The ADC12 can send scan end interrupt requests ADC120_ADI and ADC120_GBADI to the CPU. The ADC12 also generates the ADC120_CMPAI/ADC120_CMPBI interrupt for the CPU in response to matches with a condition for comparison.

An ADC120_ADI interrupt is always generated. An ADC120_GBADI interrupt can be generated by setting the ADCSR.GBADIE bit to 1. Similarly, ADC120_CMPAI and ADC120_CMPBI interrupts can be generated by setting the ADCMPCR.CMPAIE and ADCMPCR.CMPBIE bit to 1.

In addition, the DTC can be started when an ADC120_ADI or an ADC120_GBADI interrupt is generated. Using an ADC120_ADI or ADC120_GBADI interrupt to activate the DTC to read the converted data enables continuous conversion without a burden on software.

Table 34.24 describes the interrupt sources and ELC events available for the ADC12.

Table 34.24 The interrupt source and ELC event of ADC12 (1 of 2)

Operation			Interrupt request or ELC event	Interrupt request	DTC activation	ELC event request	Function
Scan mode	Double-trigger mode	Compare function Window A/B					
Single scan mode	Deselected	Deselected	ADC120_ADI	✓	✓	✓	ADC120_ADI generated at the end of a single scan
		Selected	ADC120_ADI	✓	✓	✓	ADC120_ADI generated at the end of a single scan
			ADC120_CMPAI	✓	—	—	ADC120_CMPAI generated on a match comparison condition of Window A
			ADC120_CMPBI	✓	—	—	ADC120_CMPBI generated on a match comparison condition of Window B
			ADC120_WCMPPM	—	✓	✓	ADC120_WCMPPM generated on a match condition of the Window A/B compare function
			ADC120_WCMPUM	—	✓	✓	ADC120_WCMPUM generated on a mismatch condition of the Window A/B compare function
	Selected	Deselected	ADC120_ADI	✓	✓	✓	ADC120_ADI generated at the end of scans in the even-numbered times
Continuous scan mode	Deselected	Deselected	ADC120_ADI	✓	✓	✓	ADC120_ADI generated at the end of scan of all selected channels
		Selected	ADC120_CMPAI	✓	—	—	ADC120_CMPAI generated on a match comparison condition of Window A
			ADC120_CMPBI	✓	—	—	ADC120_CMPBI generated on a match comparison condition of Window B

Table 34.24 The interrupt source and ELC event of ADC12 (2 of 2)

Operation			Interrupt request or ELC event	Interrupt request	DTC activation	ELC event request	Function
Scan mode	Double-trigger mode	Compare function Window A/B					
Group scan mode	Deselected	Deselected	ADC120_ADI	✓	✓	✓	ADC120_ADI generated at the end of group A scan
			ADC120_GBADI	✓	✓	—	ADC120_GBADI dedicated to group B generated at the end of group B scan
		Selected	ADC120_ADI	✓	✓	✓	ADC120_ADI generated at the end of group A scan
			ADC120_GBADI	✓	✓	—	ADC120_GBADI dedicated to group B generated at the end of group B scan
			ADC120_CMPAI	✓	—	—	ADC120_CMPAI generated on a match comparison condition of Window A
			ADC120_CMPBI	✓	—	—	ADC120_CMPBI generated on a match comparison condition of Window B
	Selected	Deselected	ADC120_ADI	✓	✓	✓	ADC120_ADI generated at the end of group A scans in the even-numbered times
			ADC120_GBADI	✓	✓	—	ADC120_GBADI dedicated to group B generated at the end of group B scan

Note: ✓ available
—: unavailable

For details on DTC settings, see [section 15, Data Transfer Controller \(DTC\)](#).

34.5 Event Link Function

34.5.1 Event Output to the ELC

The ELC uses the ADC120_ADI interrupt request signal as an event signal ADC120_ADI, enabling link operation for the preset module. The ADC120_GBADI interrupt and ADC120_CMPAI/ADC120_CMPBI interrupts cannot be used as an event signal. For details, see [Table 34.24](#).

An event signal can be output regardless of the settings of the corresponding interrupt request enable bits. For the scan end event(ADC120_ADI), a high-level pulse for one PCLKB cycle is output at the same output timing as the interrupt output (ADC120_ADI) shown in [Table 34.24](#). For a compare function match (ADC120_WCMPPM) and mismatch event (ADC120_WCMPUM) to the ELC, a high-level pulse for one PCLKB cycle is output at the timing delayed by one cycle (PCLKB) from the interrupt output (ADC120_ADI) shown in [Table 34.24](#).

To use the compare function match (ADC120_WCMPPM) or mismatch event (ADC120_WCMPUM) to the ELC, specify single-scan mode.

34.5.2 ADC12 Operation Through an Event from the ELC

The ADC12 can start A/D conversion by the preset event specified in the ELSRn settings for the ELC as follows:

- Select the ELC_AD00 signal in the ELC.ELSR8 register
- Select the ELC_AD01 signal in the ELC.ELSR9 register

If an ELC event occurs during A/D conversion, the event is disabled.

34.6 Selecting Reference Voltage

The ADC12 can select VREFH0, AVCC0, or internal reference voltage (BGR) as the high-potential reference voltage and can select VREFL0 or AVSS0 as the low-potential reference voltage. Set these reference voltages before starting A/D conversion. For details on the settings, see [section 34.2.37. ADHVREFCNT : A/D High-Potential/Low-Potential Reference Voltage Control Register](#).

34.7 A/D Conversion Procedure When Selecting Internal Reference Voltage as High-potential Reference Voltage

The following sequence describes the A/D conversion procedure after selecting the internal reference voltage as the high-potential reference voltage. In this case, A/D conversion is possible for channels of analog input, however A/D conversion of the internal reference voltage and the temperature sensor output is prohibited.

1. Set ADHVREFCNT.HVSEL[1:0] to 11b to discharge the high-potential reference voltage path in the ADC12.
2. Wait for a 1 μ s discharge period in the software.
3. Set ADHVREFCNT.HVSEL[1:0] to 10b to select internal reference voltage as the high-potential reference voltage.*¹
4. Wait until the internal reference voltage is stabilized (for 5 μ s) in the software, then perform A/D conversion.

Note 1. The ADC12 has a protection function that disables selection of internal reference voltage (ADHVREFCNT.HVSEL[1:0] = 10b) without discharge (ADHVREFCNT.HVSEL[1:0] = 11b) from the selection of VREFH0 (ADHVREFCNT.HVSEL[1:0] = 01b) or AVCC0 (ADHVREFCNT.HVSEL[1:0] = 00b). If the internal reference voltage is selected without discharge, discharge is forcibly set. Select the internal reference voltage again 1 μ s later.

Figure 34.31 shows a waveform chart for the procedure to select internal reference voltage as the high-potential reference voltage.

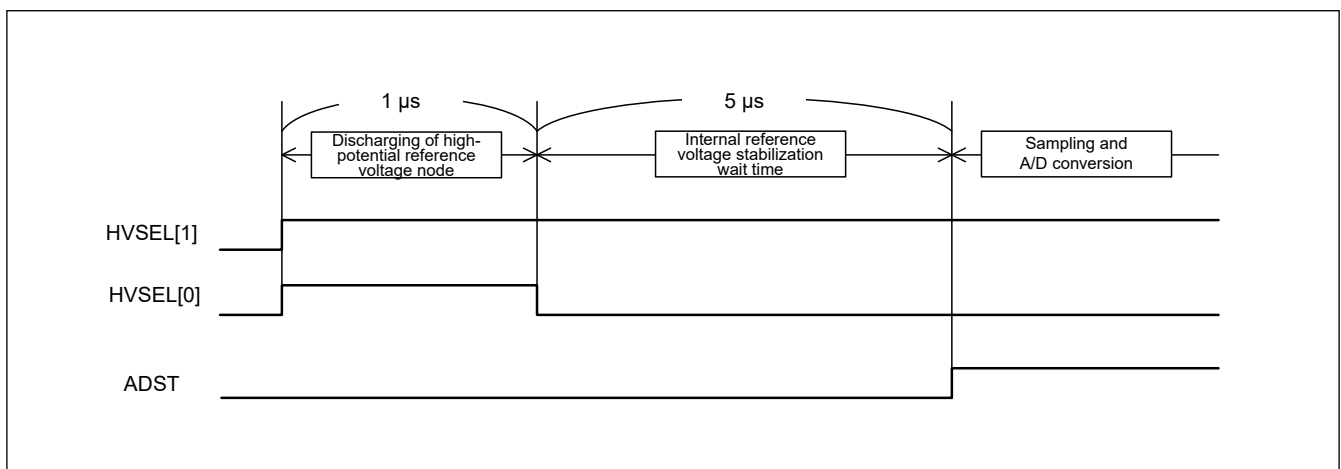


Figure 34.31 Procedure to select internal reference voltage as high-potential reference voltage

34.8 Usage Notes

34.8.1 Constraints on Setting the Registers

Set each register while the ADCSR.ADST bit is 0.

34.8.2 Constraints on Reading the Data Registers

The following registers must be read in halfword units:

- A/D Data Registers
- A/D Data Duplexing Register
- A/D Data Duplexing Register A
- A/D Data Duplexing Register B

- A/D Temperature Sensor Data Register
- A/D Internal Reference Voltage Register
- A/D Self-Diagnosis Data Register

If a register is read twice in byte units, that is, the upper byte and lower byte are read separately, the A/D-converted value read initially might disagree with the A/D-converted value read subsequently. To prevent this, never read the data registers in byte units.

34.8.3 Constraints on Stopping A/D Conversion

(1) A/D conversion stop procedure

To stop A/D conversion when an asynchronous trigger or a synchronous trigger is selected as the condition for starting A/D conversion, follow the procedure shown in [Figure 34.32](#).

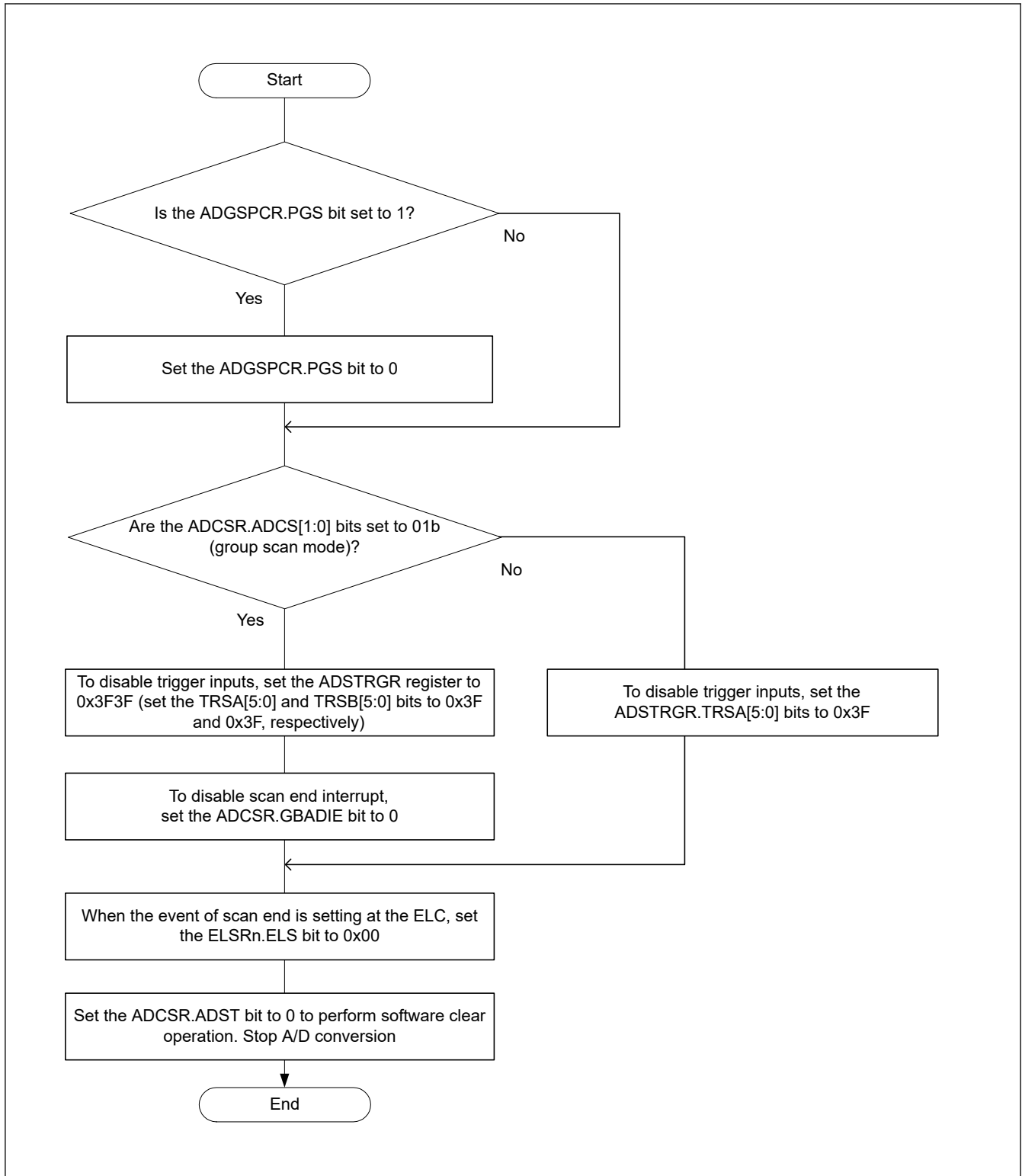


Figure 34.32 Procedures for clearing the ADCSR.ADST bit by software

To specify the following settings after performing the clear operation by software, provide a wait period for at least two ADCLK cycles.

- Enabling scan end interrupts
- Enabling scan end events for the event link controller
- Starting A/D conversion by software
- Enabling trigger input

(2) Notes on modes and status bits

If necessary, individually initialize or set again the voltage status for self-diagnosis, the judgment of the even number or odd number specified for double-trigger mode, and the monitor flags of the compare function.

- To set again the voltage status for self-diagnosis, set the ADCER.DIAGLD bit to 1 and then set a desired value in the ADCER.DIAGVAL[1:0] bits.
- If the setting of the ADCSR.DBLE bit is changed from 0 to 1, the double-trigger mode operation starts from the first scanning.
- To initialize the monitor flags of the compare function (MONCMPA, MONCMPB, and MONCOMB), set the ADCMPCR.CMPAE and ADCMPCR.CMPBE bits to 0.

34.8.4 A/D Conversion Restart and Termination Timing

A maximum of 6 ADCLK cycles is required for the idle analog unit of the ADC12 to restart on setting the ADCSR.ADST bit to 1. A maximum of 3 ADCLK cycles is required for the operating analog unit of the ADC12 to terminate on setting the ADCSR.ADST bit to 0.

34.8.5 Constraints on Scan End Interrupt Handling

When scanning the same analog input twice using any trigger, the first A/D-converted data is overwritten with the second A/D-converted data. This occurs when the CPU does not complete the reading of the A/D-converted data by the time the A/D conversion of the first analog input for the second scan ends after the first scan end interrupt is generated.

34.8.6 Settings for the Module-stop Function

The Module Stop Control Register can enable or disable ADC12 operation. The ADC12 is initially stopped after a reset. The registers become accessible on release from the module-stop state. After release from the module-stop state, wait for at least 1 μs before starting A/D conversion. For details, see [section 10, Low Power Modes](#).

34.8.7 Notes on Entering the Low-power States

Before entering the module-stop state or Software Standby mode, be sure to stop A/D conversion. Set the ADCSR.ADST bit in ADCSR to 0 and secure a certain period until the analog unit of the ADC12 stops. Follow the procedure shown in [Figure 34.32](#) to clear the ADCSR.ADST bit with software. Then, wait for 3 clock cycles of ADCLK before entering the module-stop state or Software Standby mode.

34.8.8 Error in Absolute Accuracy When Disconnection Detection Assistance Is in Use

Using disconnection detection assistance leads to an error in the absolute accuracy of the ADC12. This error arises because an erroneous voltage is input to the analog input pins due to the resistive voltage division between the pull-up or pull-down resistor (Rp) and the resistance of the signal source (Rs). This error in absolute accuracy is calculated from the following formula:

$$\text{Maximum error in absolute accuracy (LSB)} = (2^{\text{Resolution}} - 1) \times R_s / (R_s + R_p)$$

Only use disconnection detection assistance after thorough evaluation.

34.8.9 ADHSC Bit Rewriting Procedure

Before changing the A/D Conversion Select bit (ADCSR.ADHSC) from 0 to 1 or from 1 to 0, the ADC12 must be in the standby state. Use the following procedure to modify the ADCSR.ADHSC bit. After the Sleep bit (ADHVREFCNT.ADSLPL) is set to 0, wait for at least 1 μs then start the A/D conversion.

1. Set the Sleep bit (ADHVREFCNT.ADSLPL) to 1.
2. Wait for at least 0.2 μs, then modify the A/D Conversion Select bit (ADCSR.ADHSC).
3. Wait for at least 4.8 μs, then set the Sleep bit (ADHVREFCNT.ADSLPL) to 0.

Note: Do not set the Sleep bit (ADHVREFCNT.ADSLPL) to 1 except when modifying the A/D Conversion Select bit (ADCSR.ADHSC).

Note: Do not reset the Sleep bit when the A/D Conversion Select bit (ADCSR.ADHSC) is 1. After this bit is set to 0 or the operating mode transitions to the module-stop mode, reset the Sleep bit using the ADCSR.ADHSC bit rewriting procedure.

34.8.10 Constraints on Operating Modes and Status Bits

Initialize or set again individually, if necessary, the voltage values in self-diagnosis, the value of the first scan or second scan in double trigger mode, the data buffer pointer, and status monitor in the compare function.

- Select the voltage values in self-diagnosis (ADCER.DIAGVAL[1:0]) after setting ADCER.DIAGLD to 1.
- Double-trigger mode operates as the first scan after setting ADCSR.DBLE from 0 to 1.
- The status monitor bits (MONCMPA, MONCMPB, MONCOMB) in the compare function are initialized after setting ADCMPCR.CMPAE and ADCMPCR.CMPBE to 0.

34.8.11 Notes on Board Design

The board should be designed so that digital circuits and analog circuits are separated from each other as far as possible. In addition, digital circuit signal lines and analog circuit signal lines should not intersect or be placed near each other. If these rules are not followed, noise can occur on analog signals and A/D conversion accuracy is affected. The analog input pins, reference power supply pin (VREFH0), reference ground pin (VREFL0), and analog power supply (AVCC0) should be separated from digital circuits using the analog ground (AVSS0). The analog ground (AVSS0) should be connected to a stable digital ground (VSS) on the board (single-point ground plane connection).

34.8.12 Constraints on Noise Prevention

To prevent the analog input pins from being destroyed by abnormal voltage such as excessive surge, insert a capacitor between AVCC0 and AVSS0 and between VREFH0 and VREFL0. Additionally, connect a protection circuit to protect the analog input pins as shown in [Figure 34.33](#).

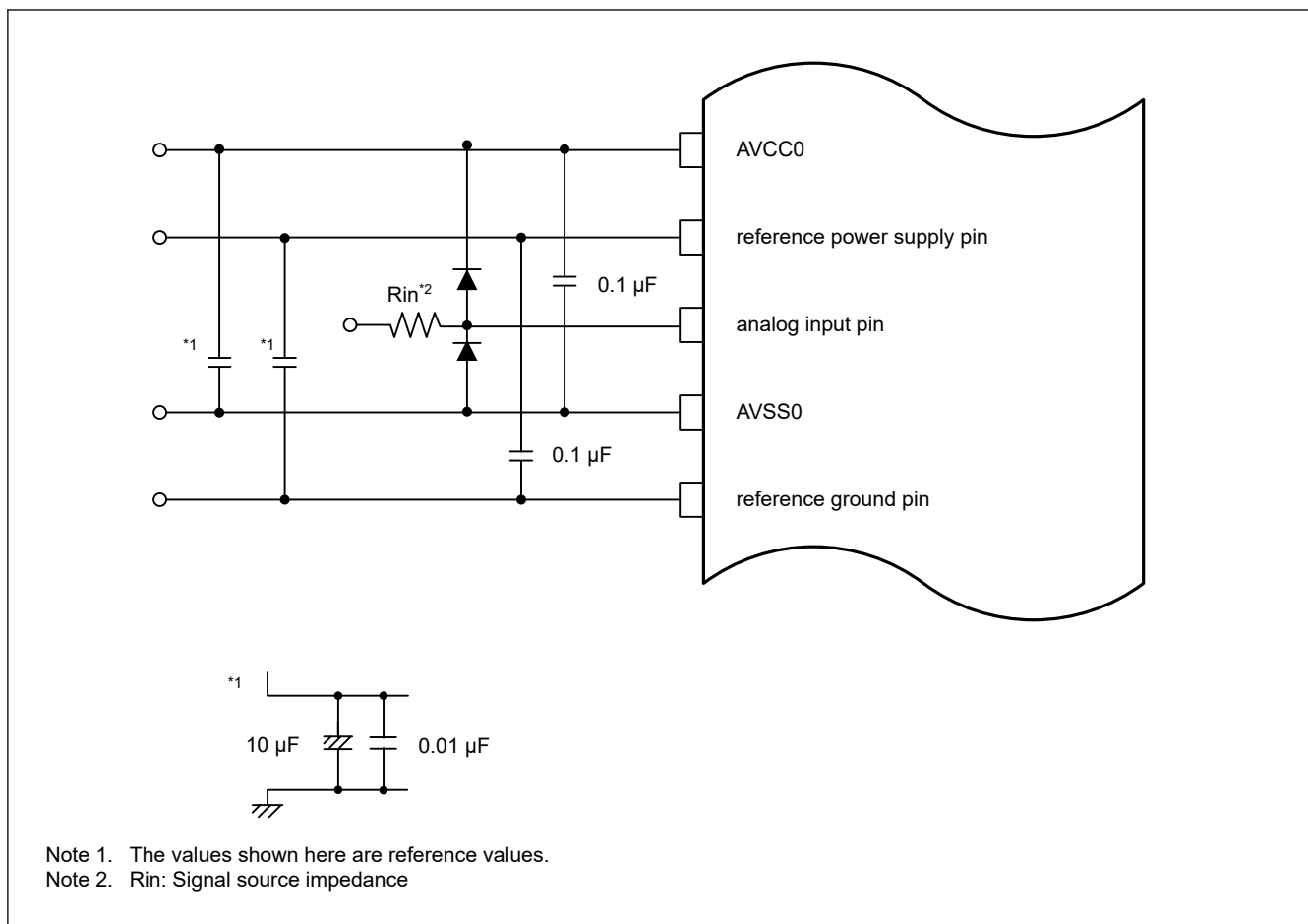


Figure 34.33 Example protection circuit for analog inputs

34.8.13 Port Settings When Using the ADC12 Input

When using the high-precision channels, do not use PORT0 as a general I/O pin. Renesas recommends that you do not use the digital output that is also used as the AD analog input if normal-precision channel is used. If the digital output that is also used as the AD analog input is used for output signals, perform A/D conversion several times, eliminate the maximum and minimum values, and obtain the average of the other results.

34.8.14 Notes on Canceling Software Standby Mode

After Software Standby mode is canceled, wait at least 1 μ s after the stabilization time for the oscillator elapses and before starting A/D conversion. For details, see [section 10, Low Power Modes](#)

35. Temperature Sensor (TSN)

35.1 Overview

The on-chip Temperature Sensor (TSN) determines and monitors the die temperature for reliable operation of the device. The sensor outputs a voltage directly proportional to the die temperature, and the relationship between the die temperature and the output voltage is fairly linear. The output voltage is provided to the ADC12 for conversion and can be further used by the end application.

Table 35.1 lists the TSN specifications, and Figure 35.1 shows a block diagram.

Table 35.1 TSN specifications

Item	Description
Temperature sensor voltage output	Temperature sensor outputs a voltage to the 12-bit A/D converter

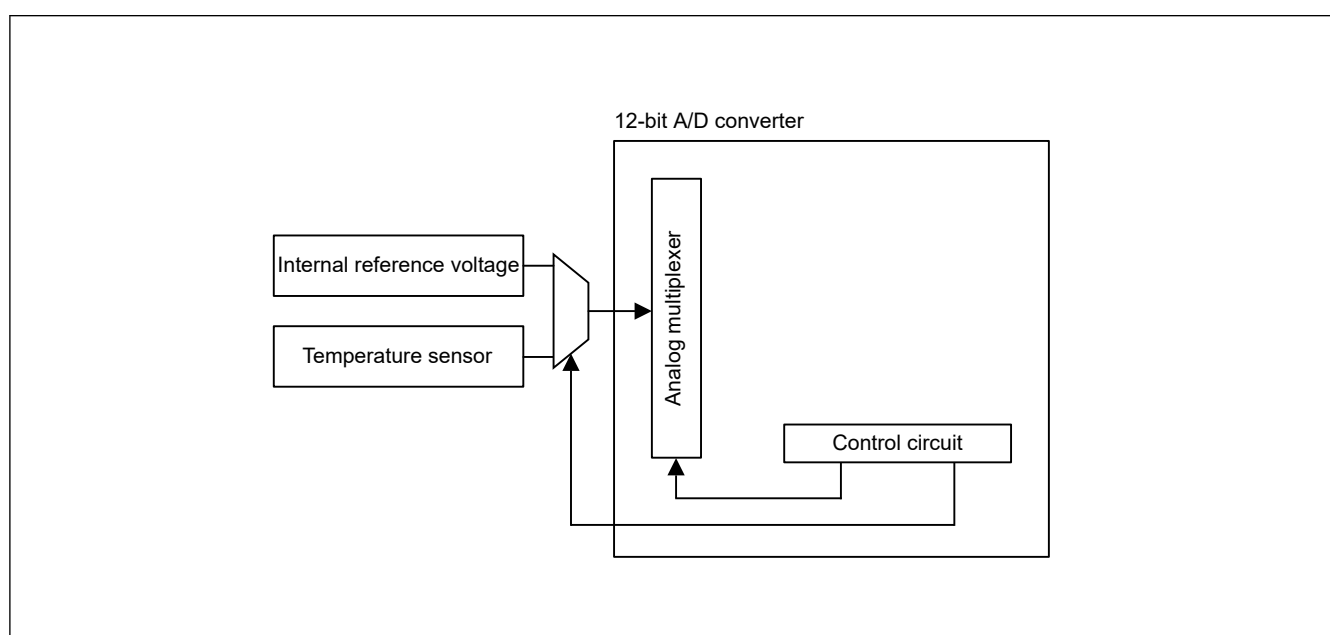


Figure 35.1 TSN block diagram

35.2 Register Descriptions

35.2.1 TSCDR : Temperature Sensor Calibration Data Register

Base address: FLCN = 0x407E_C000

Offset Address: 0x0228

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	TSCDR[15:0]															
Value after reset:	Chip-specific value															

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
15:0	TSCDR[15:0]	Temperature Sensor Calibration Data Chip-specific value	R

The TSCDR register stores temperature sensor calibration data measured for each chip at factory shipment.

Temperature sensor calibration data is the output voltage of the temperature sensor under the conditions $T_j = 140^{\circ}\text{C}$ and $AVCC0 = 3.3\text{ V}$ converted to a digital value by the 12-bit A/D converter.

Temperature sensor calibration data is stored in the lower 12 bits of the TSCDR register.

35.3 Using the Temperature Sensor

The temperature sensor outputs a voltage that varies with the temperature. This voltage is converted to a digital value by the 12-bit A/D converter. To obtain the die temperature, convert this value into the temperature.

35.3.1 Preparation for Using the Temperature Sensor

The ambient temperature (T) is proportional to the temperature sensor voltage output (Vs), so ambient temperature is calculated with the following formula:

$$T = (V_s - V_1) / \text{slope} + T_1$$

- T: Ambient temperature of MCU as calculation result (°C)
- Vs: Voltage output by the temperature sensor on temperature measurement (V)
- T1: Temperature experimentally measured at one point (°C)
- V1: Voltage output by the temperature sensor on measurement of T1 (V)
- T2: Temperature experimentally measured at a second point (°C)
- V2: Voltage output by the temperature sensor on measurement of T2 (V)
- Slope: Temperature gradient of the temperature sensor (V / °C), slope = (V2 - V1) / (T2 - T1)

Characteristics vary between sensors, so Renesas recommends measuring two different sample temperatures as follows:

1. Use the 12-bit A/D converter to measure the voltage V1 output by the temperature sensor at temperature T1.
2. Again use the 12-bit A/D converter to measure the voltage V2 output by the temperature sensor at a different temperature T2.
3. Obtain the temperature gradient (slope = (V2 - V1) / (T2 - T1)) from these results.
4. Subsequently, obtain temperatures by substituting the slope into the formula for the temperature characteristic (T = (Vs - V1) / slope + T1).

If you are using the temperature gradient given in [section 41, Electrical Characteristics](#), use the A/D converter to measure the voltage V1 output by the temperature sensor at temperature T1, then calculate the temperature characteristic using the following formula:

$$T = (V_s - V_1) / \text{slope} + T_1$$

Note: This method produces less accurate temperatures than measurement at two points.

In this MCU, the TSCDR register stores the temperature value (CAL125) of the temperature sensor measured under the condition Ta = Tj = 140°C and AVCC0 = 3.3 V. If you use this value as the sample measurement result at the first point, you can omit the preparation before using the temperature sensor.

CAL125 = TSCDR register value

V1 is calculated from CAL125:

$$V_1 = 3.3 \times \text{CAL125} / 4096 \text{ [V]} \text{ (for 12-bit accuracy)}$$

Using this value, the measured temperature can be calculated according to the following formula:

$$T = (V_s - V_1) / \text{slope} + 140 \text{ [°C]}$$

- T: Ambient temperature of MCU as calculation result (°C)
- Vs: Voltage output by the temperature sensor when the temperature is measured (V)
- V1: Voltage output by the temperature sensor when Ta = Tj = 140°C and AVCC0 = 3.3 V (V)
- Slope: Temperature gradient of the temperature sensor^{*1} / 1000 (V/°C)

Note 1. See [section 41, Electrical Characteristics](#)

[Figure 35.2](#) shows the error in the measured temperature. The variation range is 3σ.

Regarding the characteristics of the 12-bit A/D converter, the typical values are used. See [section 41.5. ADC12 Characteristics](#).

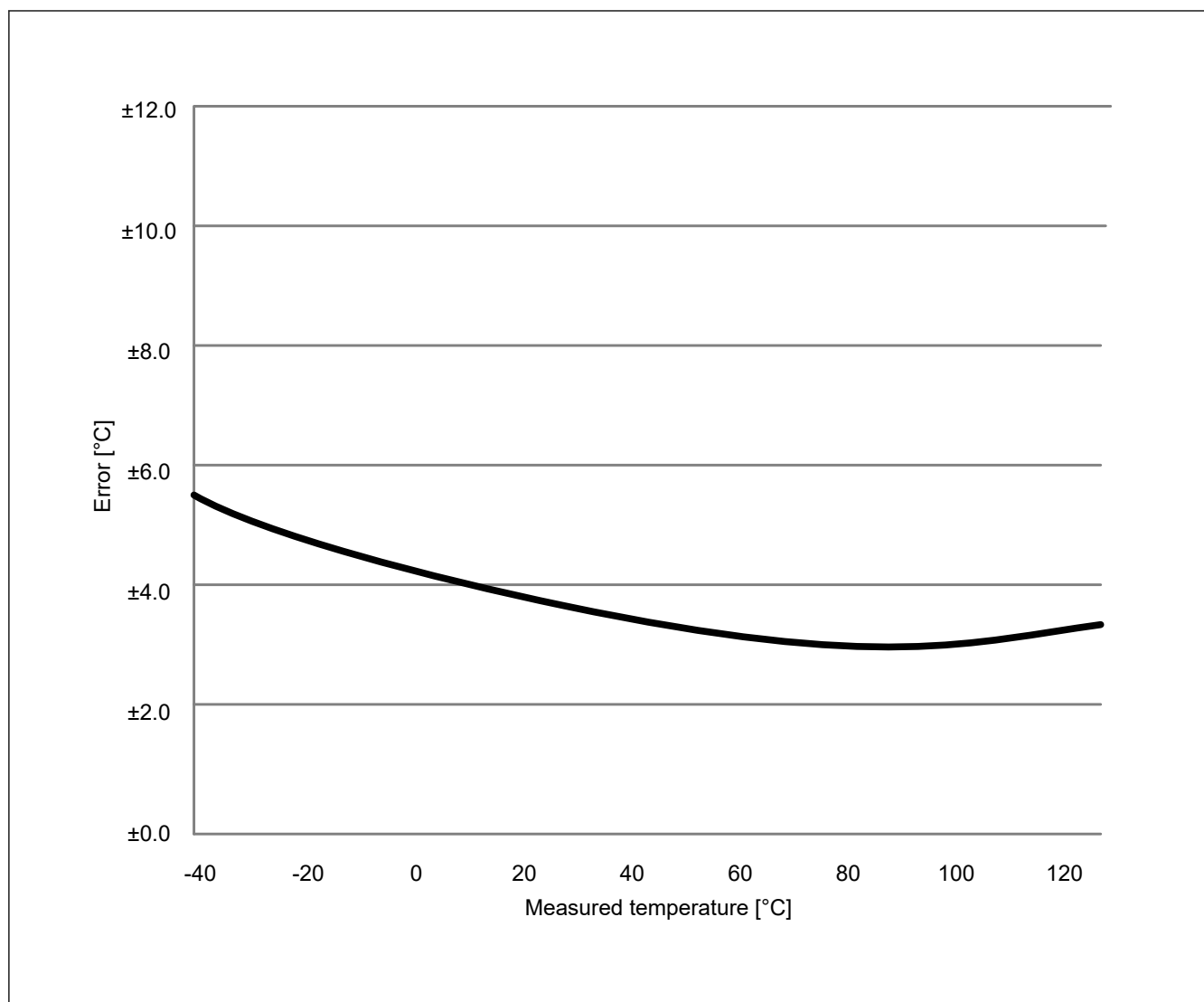


Figure 35.2 Error in the measured temperature (designed values)

35.3.2 Procedures for Using the Temperature Sensor

For details, see [section 34, 12-Bit A/D Converter \(ADC12\)](#).

36. Data Operation Circuit (DOC)

36.1 Overview

The Data Operation Circuit (DOC) compares, adds, and subtracts 16-bit data. When a selected condition applies, 16-bit data is compared and an interrupt can be generated. [Table 36.1](#) lists the DOC specifications and [Figure 36.1](#) shows a block diagram.

Table 36.1 DOC specifications

Item	Description
Data operation function	16-bit data comparison, addition, and subtraction
Module-stop function	The module-stop state can be set to reduce power consumption.
Interrupts and event link function (DOC_DOPCI)	An interrupt occurs on the following conditions: • The compared values either match or mismatch • The result of data addition is greater than 0xFFFF • The result of data subtraction is less than 0x0000

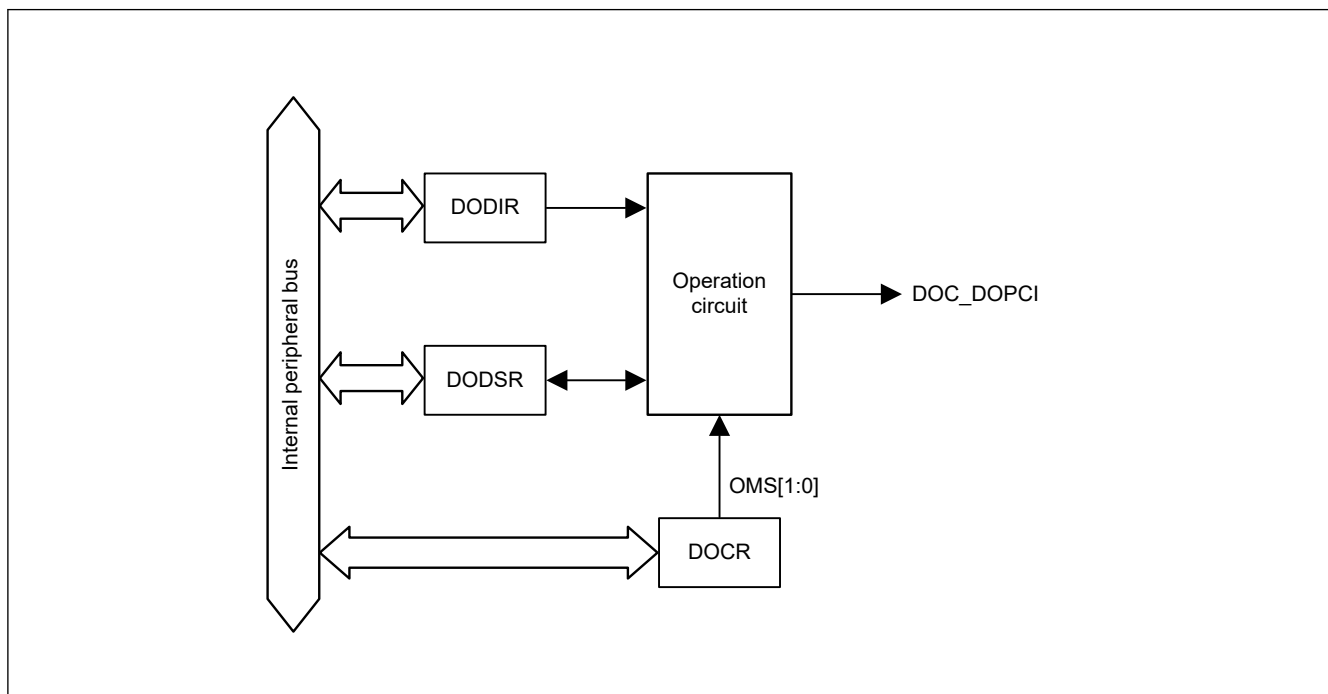


Figure 36.1 DOC block diagram

36.2 DOC Register Descriptions

36.2.1 DOCR : DOC Control Register

Base address: DOC = 0x4005_4100

Offset address: 0x00

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	DOPC FCL	DOPC F	—	—	DCSE L	OMS[1:0]	
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
1:0	OMS[1:0]	Operating Mode Select 0 0: Data comparison mode 0 1: Data addition mode 1 0: Data subtraction mode 1 1: Setting prohibited	R/W
2	DCSEL ^{*1}	Detection Condition Select 0: Set DOPCF flag when data mismatch is detected 1: Set DOPCF flag when data match is detected	R/W
4:3	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
5	DOPCF	DOC Flag Indicates the result of an operation.	R
6	DOPCFCL	DOPCF Clear 0: Retain DOPCF flag state 1: Clear DOPCF flag	R/W
7	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note 1. Only valid when data comparison mode is selected.

OMS[1:0] bits (Operating Mode Select)

The OMS[1:0] bits select the operating mode of the DOC.

DCSEL bit (Detection Condition Select)

The DCSEL bit selects the detection condition in data comparison mode. This bit is only valid when data comparison mode is selected.

DOPCF flag (DOC Flag)

The DOPCF flag indicates the result of an operation.

[Setting conditions]

- The result of data comparison matches the condition selected in the DCSEL bit
- A data addition result is greater than 0xFFFF
- A data subtraction result is less than 0x0000

[Clearing condition]

- Writing 1 to the DOPCFCL bit

DOPCFCL bit (DOPCF Clear)

Setting the DOPCFCL bit to 1 clears the DOPCF flag. This bit is read as 0.

36.2.2 DODIR : DOC Data Input Register

Base address: DOC = 0x4005_4100

Offset address: 0x02

Bit position: 15 14 13 12 11 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0

Bit field:

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
15:0	n/a	It stores 16-bit data used in the operations.	R/W

36.2.3 DODSR : DOC Data Setting Register

Base address: DOC = 0x4005_4100

Offset address: 0x04

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:																
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
15:0	n/a	It stores 16-bit data used as a reference in data comparison mode. This register also stores the results of operations in data addition and subtraction modes.	R/W

36.3 Operation

36.3.1 Data Comparison Mode

Figure 36.2 shows an example operation in data comparison mode operation by the DOC. The following sequence is an example operation when DCSEL is set to 0 (data mismatch is detected as a result of data comparison):

1. Write 00b to the DOCR.OMS[1:0] bits to select data comparison mode.
2. Set 16-bit reference data in DODSR.
3. Write the 16-bit data for comparison to DODIR.
4. Continue writing the 16-bit data until all data for comparison is written to DODIR.
5. If a value written to DODIR does not match that in DODSR, the DOCR.DOPCF flag is set to 1.

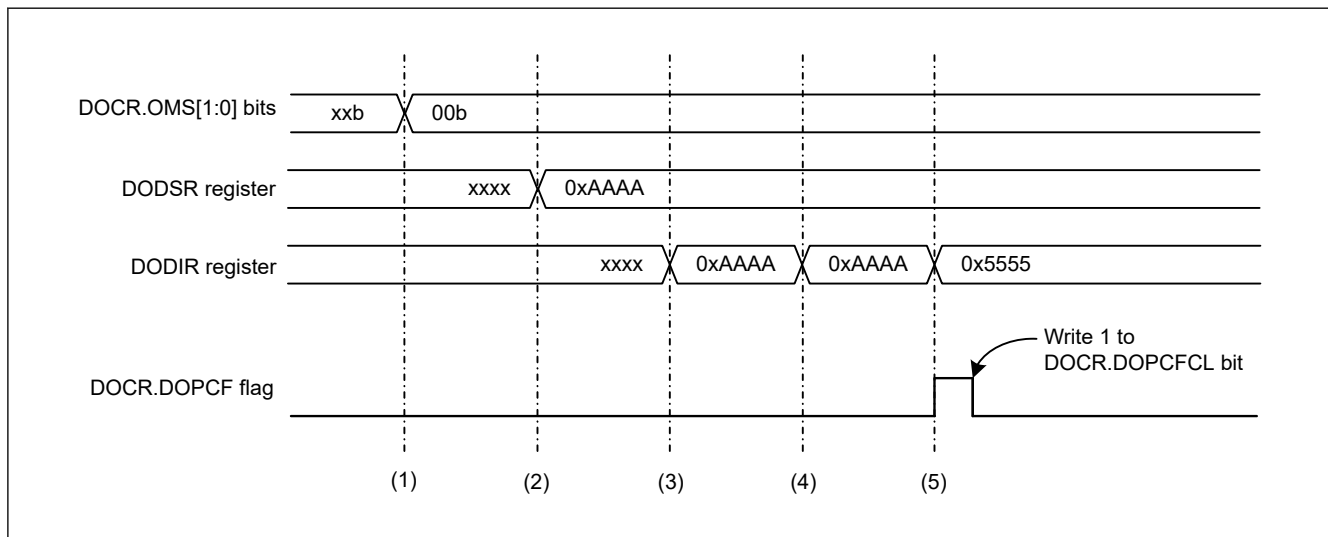


Figure 36.2 Example of operation in data comparison mode

36.3.2 Data Addition Mode

Figure 36.3 shows an example operation in data addition mode. The steps are as follows:

1. Write 01b to the DOCR.OMS[1:0] bits to select data addition mode.
2. Set 16-bit data as the initial value in the DODSR register.
3. Write the 16-bit data to be added to the DODIR register. The result of the operation is stored in the DODSR register.
4. Continue writing the 16-bit data until all data to be added is written to the DODIR.
5. If the result of an operation is greater than 0xFFFF, the DOCR.DOPCF flag is set to 1.

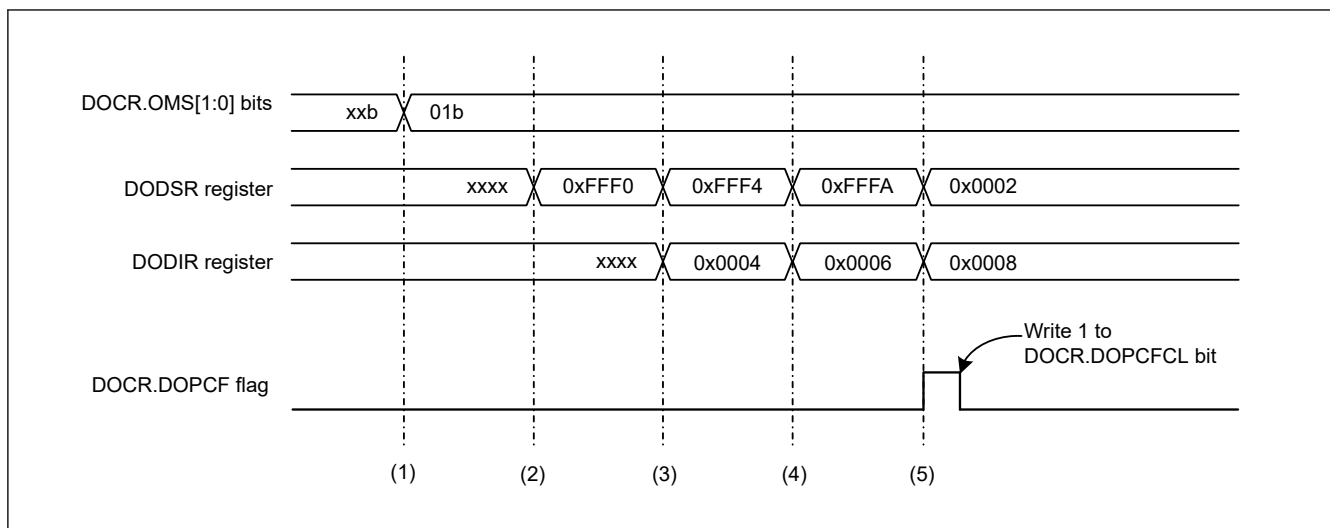


Figure 36.3 Example of operation in data addition mode

36.3.3 Data Subtraction Mode

Figure 36.4 shows an example operation in data subtraction mode. The steps are as follows:

1. Write 10b to the DOCR.OMS[1:0] bits to select data subtraction mode.
2. Set 16-bit data as the initial value in the DODSR register.
3. Write the 16-bit data to be subtracted to the DODIR register. The result of the operation is stored in DODSR.
4. Continue writing the 16-bit data to the DODIR register until all data to be subtracted is written.
5. If the result of an operation is less than 0x0000, the DOCR.DOPCF flag is set to 1.

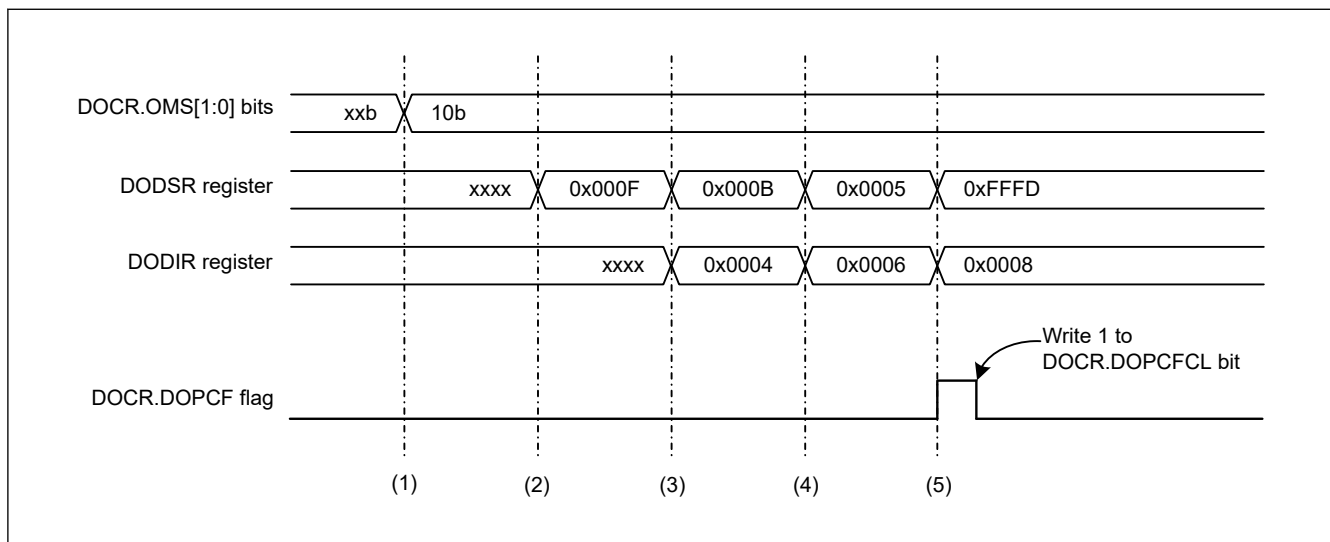


Figure 36.4 Example of operation in data subtraction mode

36.4 Interrupt Source

The DOC generates the DOC interrupt (DOC_DOPCI) as an interrupt request. Table 36.2 describes the DOC interrupt request.

Table 36.2 Interrupt request from DOC

Interrupt request	Status flag	Interrupt source
DOC interrupt	DOPCF	• The result of data comparison matches the condition selected in the DOCR.DCSEL bit. • The result of data addition is greater than 0xFFFF. • The result of data subtraction is less than 0x0000.

36.5 Output of an Event Signal to the Event Link Controller (ELC)

The DOC outputs an event signal for the ELC under the following conditions:

- The compared values either match or mismatch
- The data addition result is greater than 0xFFFF
- The data subtraction result is less than 0x0000

This signal can be used to initiate operations by other modules selected in advance and can also be used as an interrupt request. When an event signal is generated, the DOC Flag (DOCR.DOPCF) is set to 1.

36.6 Usage Notes

36.6.1 Settings for the Module-stop State

The Module Stop Control Register C (MSTPCRC) can enable or disable DOC operation. The DOC is initially stopped after reset. Releasing the module-stop state enables access to the registers. For details, see [section 10, Low Power Modes](#).

37. SRAM

37.1 Overview

The MCU provides an on-chip, high-density SRAM module with parity-bit checking. Parity check is performed on all SRAM areas.

Table 37.1 lists the SRAM specifications.

Table 37.1 SRAM specifications

Parameter	Description
SRAM capacity	SRAM0: 16-KB
SRAM address	SRAM0: 0x2000_4000 to 0x2000_7FFF
Access*1	0 wait for both reading and writing
Parity	Even parity with 8-bit data and 1-bit parity
Error checking	Even parity error check

Note: SRAM0 and Trace RAM are shared. For the Trace RAM specifications, see *ARM® CoreSight™ MTB-M23 Technical Reference Manual (ARM DDI 0564C)*.

Note 1. For details, see [section 37.3.3. Access Cycle](#).

37.2 Register Descriptions

37.2.1 PARIOAD : SRAM Parity Error Operation After Detection Register

Base address: SRAM = 0x4000_2000

Offset address: 0x00

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	OAD

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	OAD	Operation After Detection 0: Non-maskable interrupt 1: Reset	R/W
7:1	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

The PARIOAD register controls the operation on detection of a parity error. The SRAM Protection Register (SRAMPRCR) protects this register against writes. Always set the SRAMPRCR bit in SRAMPRCR to 1 before writing to this bit. Do not write to the PARIOAD register while accessing the SRAM.

OAD bit (Operation After Detection)

The OAD bit specifies the generation of either a reset or non-maskable interrupt when a parity error is detected. The OAD bit is commonly used for SRAM0.

37.2.2 SRAMPRCR : SRAM Protection Register

Base address: SRAM = 0x4000_2000

Offset address: 0x04

Bit position:	7	1	0
Bit field:	KW[6:0]		SRAM PRCR

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	SRAMPRCR	Register Write Control 0: Disable writes to protected registers 1: Enable writes to protected registers	R/W
7:1	KW[6:0]	Write Key Code These bits enable or disable writes to the SRAMPRCR bit	W

SRAMPRCR bit (Register Write Control)

The SRAMPRCR bit controls the write mode of the PARIOD register. Setting the bit to 1 enables writes to the PARIOD register. When you write to this bit, always write 0x78 to KW[6:0] bits simultaneously.

KW[6:0] bits (Write Key Code)

The KW[6:0] bits enable or disable writes to the SRAMPRCR bit. When you write to the SRAMPRCR bit, always write 0x78 to these bits simultaneously. When a value other than 0x78 is written to KW[6:0], the SRAMPRCR bit is not updated. The KW[6:0] bits are always read as 0x00.

37.2.3 Trace Control (for the MTB)

The Micro Trace Buffer (MTB) has programmable registers to control the behavior of the trace features and the POSITION, MASTER, FLOW, and BASE registers. [Table 37.2](#) shows the registers in offset order from the base address.

Table 37.2 Address of MTB registers

Address	Register	Value on reset
MTB_BASE + 0x000	MTB_POSITION	Bits [31:0] = UNKNOWN
MTB_BASE + 0x004	MTB_MASTER	Bits [31] = 0, Bits [30:10] = UNKNOWN, Bits [9:8] = 0, Bits [7] = 1, Bits [6:5] = 0, Bits [4:0] = UNKNOWN
MTB_BASE + 0x008	MTB_FLOW	Bits [31:2] = UNKNOWN, Bits [1:0] = 0
MTB_BASE + 0x00C	MTB_BASE	Bits [31:0] = 0x2000_4000

Note: MTB_BASE = 0x4001_9000

For more information on these registers, see the *ARM® CoreSight™ MTB-M23 Technical Reference Manual (ARM DDI 0564C)*.

Note: Do not attempt to access reserved or unused address locations.

The MTB for trace is limited from 0x2000_4000 to 0x2000_7FFF.

37.2.4 CoreSight™ (for MTB)

See the *ARM® CoreSight™ Architecture Specification* for more information about the registers and access types. [Table 37.3](#) shows the registers in offset order from the base address.

Table 37.3 Address of CoreSight

Address	Register
MTB_BASE + 0xFF0 to 0xFFC	Component ID
MTB_BASE + 0xFE0 to 0xFDC	Peripheral ID
MTB_BASE + 0xFCC	Device Type Identifier
MTB_BASE + 0xFC8	Device Configuration
MTB_BASE + 0xFBC	Device Architecture
MTB_BASE + 0xFB8	Authentication Status
MTB_BASE + 0xFB4	Lock Status
MTB_BASE + 0xFB0	Lock Access

Note: MTB_BASE = 0x4001_9000

For more information on these registers, see the *ARM® CoreSight™ MTB-M23 Technical Reference Manual (ARM DDI 0564C)*.

Note: Do not attempt to access reserved or unused address locations.

37.3 Operation

37.3.1 Parity Calculation Function

The IEC60730 standard requires the checking of SRAM data. When data is written, a parity bit is added to every 8-bit data in the SRAM which has 32-bit data width, and when data is read, the parity is checked. When a parity error occurs, a parity-error notification is generated. This function can also be used to trigger a reset.

The parity-error notification can be specified as a non-maskable interrupt or a reset in the OAD bit of the PARIOAD register. When the OAD bit is set to 1, a parity error is output to the reset function. When the OAD bit is set to 0, a parity error is output to the ICU as a non-maskable interrupt.

Parity errors can be occasionally caused by noise. To confirm whether the cause of the parity error is noise or corruption, follow the parity check flows shown in [Figure 37.1](#) and [Figure 37.2](#).

When a read access is executed in a row after a write access, read access is executed with priority. Therefore, during initialization, do not perform the read access in a row after the write access.

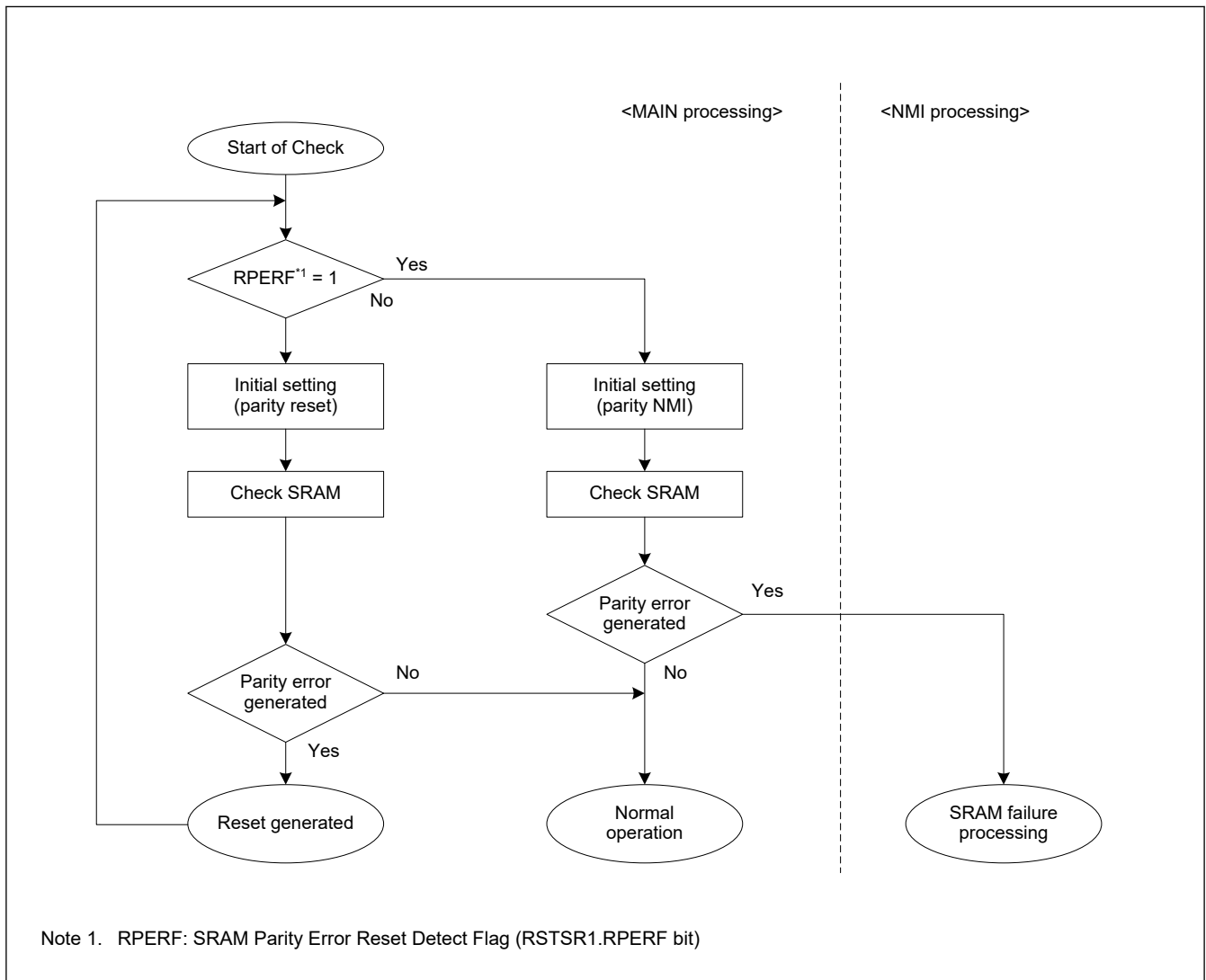


Figure 37.1 Flow of SRAM parity check when SRAM parity reset is enabled

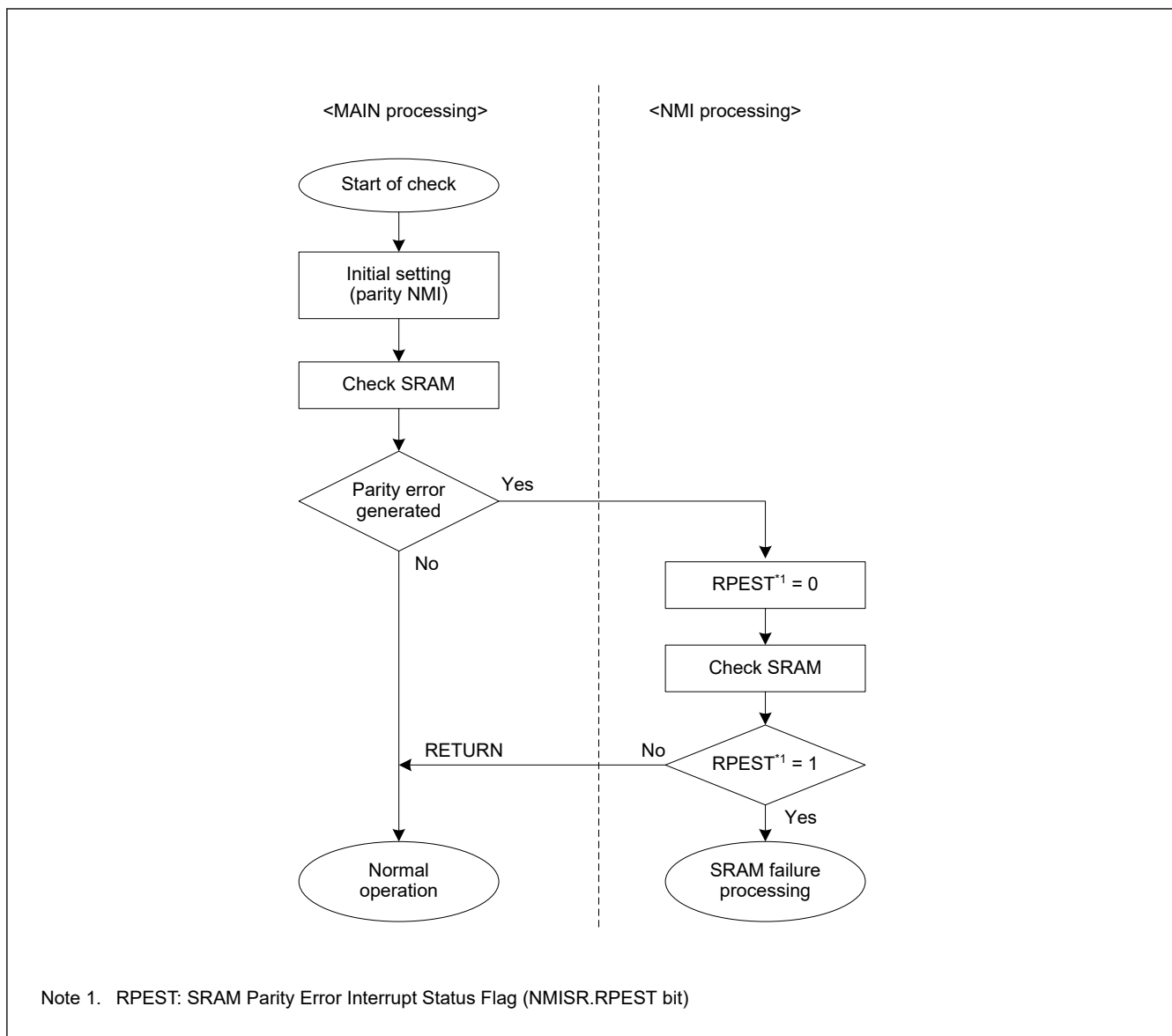


Figure 37.2 Flow of SRAM parity check when SRAM parity interrupt is enabled

37.3.2 SRAM Error Sources

An SRAM error is a parity error. Parity error can generate either a non-maskable interrupt or a reset, as selected with the OAD bit in the PARIOAD register. DTC activation is not supported for SRAM parity errors.

Table 37.4 SRAM error sources

SRAM error source	DTC activation
Parity error (SRAM0 area)	Not possible

37.3.3 Access Cycle

Table 37.5 SRAM0 (parity area 0x2000_4000 to 0x2000_7FFF)

Read (cycles)		Write (cycles)	
Word access	Halfword/Byte access	Word access	Halfword/Byte access
2		2	

37.3.4 Low-power Function

Power consumption can be further reduced in Software Standby mode as the supply voltage for SRAM0 can be off, except for the 8 KB in the head area of SRAM0 (0x2000_4000 to 0x2000_5FFF) of SRAM0(Parity area). For details on Software Standby mode, see [section 10, Low Power Modes](#).

37.4 Usage Notes

37.4.1 Instruction Fetch From the SRAM Area

When using SRAM0 to operate a program, initialize the SRAM area so that the CPU can correctly prefetch data. If the CPU prefetches data from an SRAM area that is not initialized, a parity error might occur. Initialize the additional 2-byte area from the end address of a program with a 4-byte boundary. Renesas recommends using the NOP instruction for data initialization.

37.4.2 SRAM Store Buffer

For fast access between SRAM and CPU, a store buffer is used. When a load instruction is executed from the same address after a store instruction to the SRAM, the load instruction might read data from the buffer instead of data on the SRAM. To read data on the SRAM correctly, use either of the following procedures:

- After writing to the SRAM (address = A), use the NOP instruction, then read the SRAM (address = A)
- After writing to the SRAM (address = A), read data from area other than SRAM (address = A), then read the SRAM (address = A).

38. Flash Memory

38.1 Overview

The MCU provides up to 128-KB code flash memory and 4-KB data flash memory. The Flash Control Block (FCB) controls the programming commands. This product uses SuperFlash® technology licensed from Silicon Storage Technology, Inc.

[Table 38.1](#) lists the specifications of the code flash memory and data flash memory, and [Figure 38.1](#) shows a block diagram of the related modules. [Figure 38.2](#) shows the configuration of the code flash memory, and [Figure 38.3](#) shows the configuration of the data flash memory.

Table 38.1 Code flash memory and data flash memory specifications

Parameter	Code flash memory	Data flash memory
Memory capacity	128-KB/64-KB/32-KB of user area - Configuration setting area (See section 6, Option-Setting Memory)	4-KB of data area
Read cycle	- ICLK frequency ≤ 48 MHz MEMWAIT = 1 with wait A read operation takes 3 cycles - ICLK frequency ≤ 32 MHz MEMWAIT = 0 without wait A read operation takes 2 cycles	- ICLK frequency ≤ 48 MHz FLDWAIT1 = 1 with 2 wait A read operation takes 4 cycles - ICLK frequency ≤ 32 MHz FLDWAIT1 = 0 with 1 wait A read operation takes 3 cycles
Value after erasure	0xFF	0xFF
Programming/erasing method	- Programming and erasure of code and data flash memory through the FCB commands specified in the registers - Programming by dedicated flash-memory programmer through a serial interface (serial programming) - Programming of flash memory by user program (self-programming)*1.	
Security function	Protection against illicit tampering with or reading of data in flash memory	
Protection	Protection against erroneous overwriting of flash memory	
Background operation (BGO)	Code flash memory can be read during data flash memory programming	
Units of programming and erasure	32-bit units for programming in user area 2-KB units for erasure in user area.	8-bit units for programming in data area 1-KB units for erasure in data area.
Other functions	Interrupts accepted during self-programming	
	Option-setting memory can be set in the initial MCU settings	
On-board programming	Programming in serial programming mode (SCI boot mode): - Asynchronous mode (SCI9) used - Transfer rate adjusted automatically. Programming in serial programming mode (IIC boot mode): - I2C protocol mode (I3C) used - Transfer rate adjusted automatically. Programming in on-chip debug mode: - SWD interface used - Dedicated hardware not required. Programming by a routine for code and data flash memory programming within the user program: - Allows code and data flash memory programming without resetting the system.	

Note 1. HOCO should be stably oscillated. See [section 38.12. Self-programming](#).

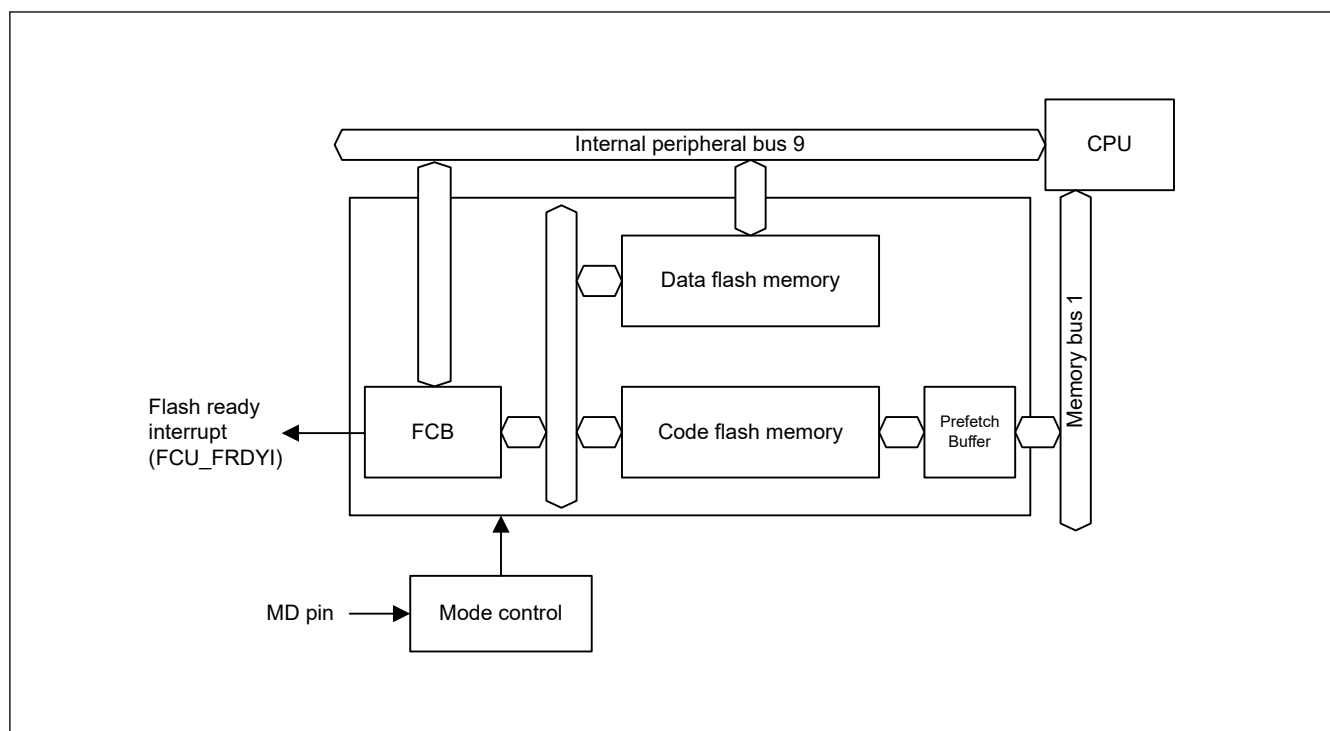


Figure 38.1 Flash memory-related modules block diagram

38.2 Memory Structure

[Figure 38.2](#) shows the mapping of the code flash memory, and [Table 38.2](#) shows the read and programming and erasure (P/E) addresses of the code flash memory. The user area of the code flash memory is divided into 2-KB blocks that serve as the units of erasure. The user area is available for storing the user program.

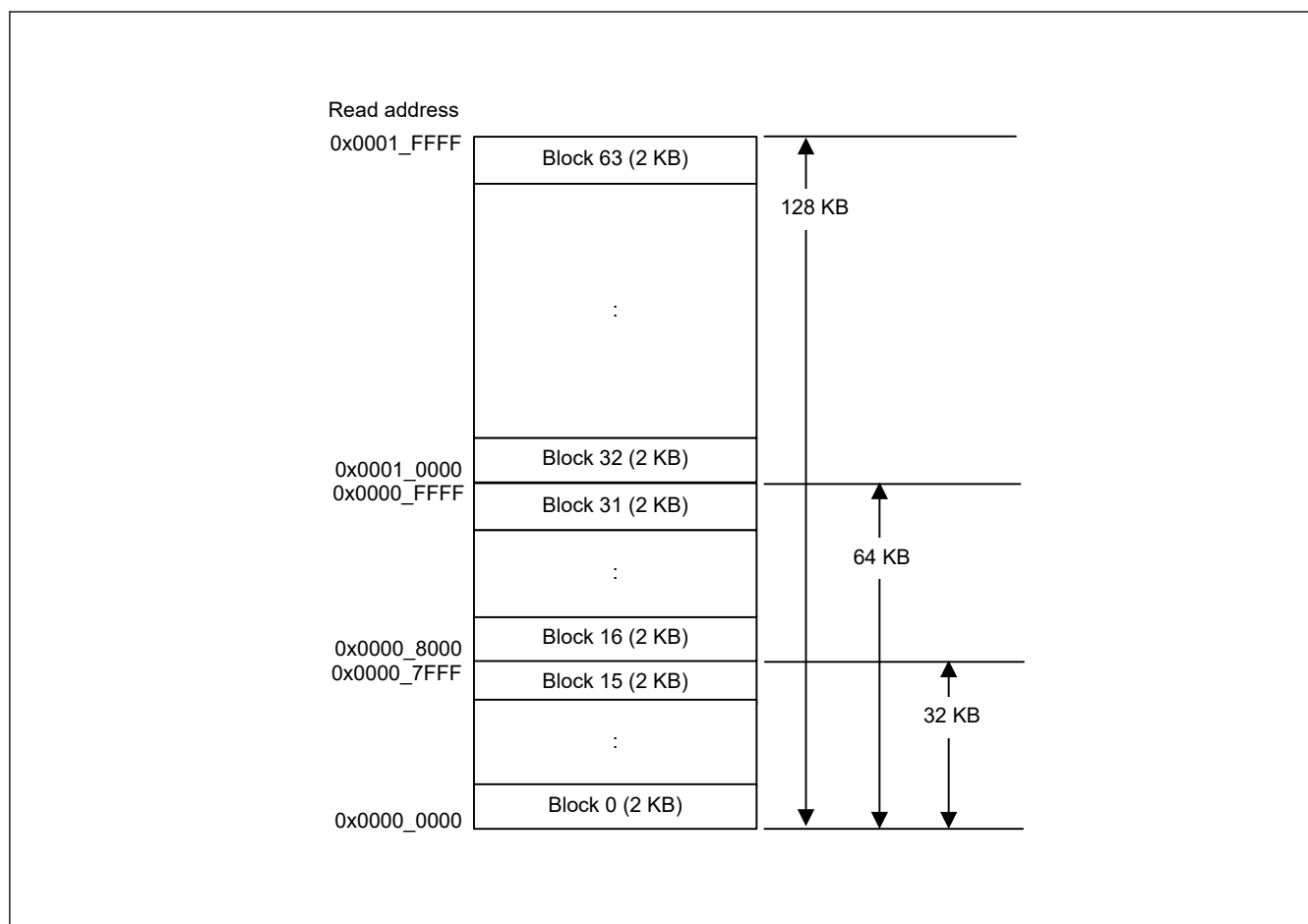


Figure 38.2 Mapping of the code flash memory

Table 38.2 Read and P/E addresses of the code flash memory

Size of code flash memory	Read address	P/E address	Number of blocks
128 KB	0x0000_0000 to 0x0001_FFFF	0x0000_0000 to 0x0001_FFFF	0 to 63
64 KB	0x0000_0000 to 0x0000_FFFF	0x0000_0000 to 0x0000_FFFF	0 to 31
32 KB	0x0000_0000 to 0x0000_7FFF	0x0000_0000 to 0x0000_7FFF	0 to 15

Figure 38.3 shows the mapping of the data flash memory, and Table 38.3 shows the read and programming and erasure (P/E) addresses of the data flash memory. The data area of the data flash memory is divided into 1-KB blocks, with each being a unit for erasure.

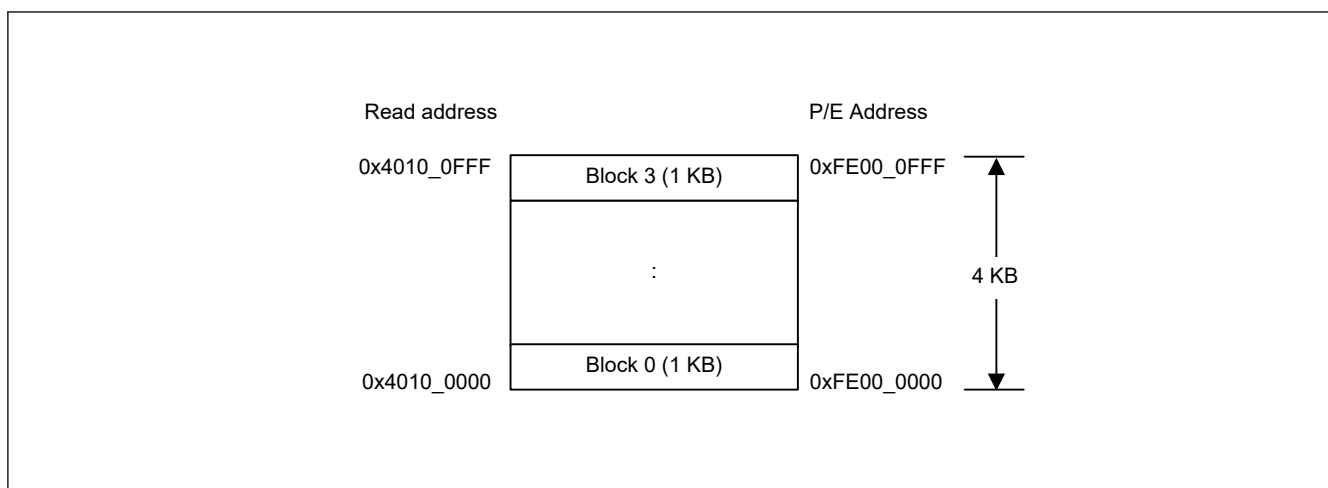


Figure 38.3 Mapping of the data flash memory

Table 38.3 Read and P/E addresses of the data flash memory

Size of data flash memory	Read address	P/E address	Number of blocks
4-KB	0x4010_0000 to 0x4010_0FFF	0xFE00_0000 to 0xFE00_0FFF	0 to 3

38.3 Register Descriptions

38.3.1 DFLCTL : Data Flash Control Register

Base address: FLCN = 0x407E_C000

Offset address: 0x0090

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	DFLEN

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	DFLEN	Data Flash Access Enable ^{*1} 0: Access to the data flash is disabled 1: Access to the data flash is enabled	R/W
7:1	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note 1. It is necessary that the DFLCTL.DFLEN bit is set to 1 before issuing the startup area information and security program, access window information program, and OCDID program command.

The DFLCTL register enables or disables accessing (reading, programming, and erasing) of the data flash. After setting the DFLCTL.DFLEN bit, Data Flash STOP recovery time (t_{DSTOP}) is necessary before reading the data flash or entering the data flash P/E mode.

38.3.2 PFBER : Prefetch Buffer Enable Register

Base address: FLCN = 0x407E_C000

Offset address: 0x3FC8

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	PFBE

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	PFBE	Prefetch Buffer Enable bit 0: Prefetch buffer is disabled 1: Prefetch buffer is enabled	R/W
7:1	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

38.3.3 FENTRYR : Flash P/E Mode Entry Register

Base address: FLCN = 0x407E_C000

Offset address: 0x3FB0

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	FEKEY[7:0]							FENTRYD	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	FENTRY0
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	FENTRY0	Code Flash P/E Mode Entry 0: The code flash is the read mode 1: The code flash is the P/E mode	R/W
6:1	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
7	FENTRYD	Data Flash P/E Mode Entry 0: The data flash is the read mode 1: The data flash is the P/E mode	R/W
15:8	FEKEY[7:0]	Key Code	W

To program the code flash or the data flash, either the FENTRY0 or FENTRYD bit must be set to 1 to enter the P/E mode. Clearing the FENTRY0 bit or FENTRYD bit allows the code flash or data flash to be in read mode, but it is necessary to confirm the value of this bit before changing it. See [section 38.13.1. Sequencer Modes](#).

FENTRY0 bit (Code Flash P/E Mode Entry 0)

[Setting condition]

- Set 0xAA01 to the FENTRYR register when it is 0x0000.

[Clearing conditions]

- Data is written by byte access
- A value other than 0xAA is set to the FEKEY[7:0] bits and written to the FENTRYR register
- Set 0xAA00 to the FENTRYR register
- Data is written to the FENTRYR register while the register has a value other than 0x0000.

FENTRYD bit (Data Flash P/E Mode Entry)

[Setting condition]

- Set 0xAA80 to the FENTRYR register when the register is 0x0000.

[Clearing conditions]

- Data is written by byte access
- A value other than 0xAA is set to the FEKEY[7:0] bits and written to the FENTRYR register
- Set 0xAA00 to the FENTRYR register
- Data is written to the FENTRYR register while the register has a value other than 0x0000.

FEKEY[7:0] bits (Key Code)

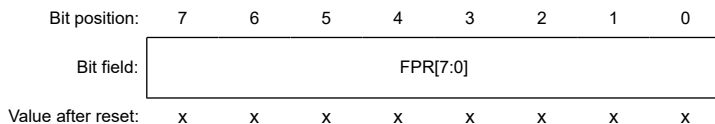
The FEKEY[7:0] bits protect from unauthorized setting of FENTRY0 bit or FENTRYD bit.

Setting 0xAA to FEKEY[7:0] allows setting the FENTRY0 bit or the FENTRYD bit. The FEKEY[7:0] bits are read as 0x00.

38.3.4 FPR : Protection Unlock Register

Base address: FLCN = 0x407E_C000

Offset address: 0x0180



Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7:0	FPR[7:0]	Protection Unlock This register is used to protect the FPMCR register from being rewritten inadvertently when the CPU runs out of control.	R/W

FPR[7:0] bits (Protection Unlock)

Writing to the FPMCR register is allowed only when the following procedure is used to access the register.

Procedure to unlock protection:

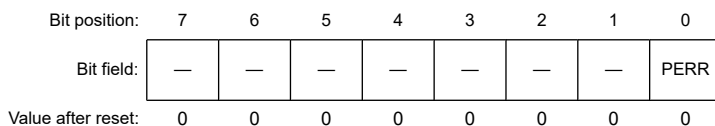
1. Write 0xA5 to the FPR register.
2. Write a set value to the FPMCR register
3. Write the inverted set value to the FPMCR register.
4. Write a set value to the FPMCR register again.

When a procedure other than the specified procedure is used to write data, the FPSR.PERR flag is set to 1.

38.3.5 FPSR : Protection Unlock Status Register

Base address: FLCN = 0x407E_C000

Offset address: 0x0184



Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	PERR	Protect Error Flag 0: No error 1: An error occurs	R
7:1	—	These bits are read as 0.	R

PERR bit (Protect Error Flag)

When the FPMCR register is not accessed as described in the procedure to unlock protection, data is not written to the register and this flag is set to 1.

[Setting condition]

- The FPMCR register is not accessed as described in the procedure to unlock protection described in [section 38.3.4. FPR : Protection Unlock Register](#).

[Clearing condition]

- The FPMCR register is accessed according to the procedure to unlock protection described in [section 38.3.4. FPR : Protection Unlock Register](#).

38.3.6 FPMCR : Flash P/E Mode Control Register

Base address: FLCN = 0x407E_C000

Offset address: 0x0100

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	FMS1	RPDIS	—	FMS0	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
1	FMS0	Flash Operating Mode Select 0 0: FMS1 = 0: Read mode FMS1 = 1: Data flash P/E mode. 1: FMS1 = 0: Code flash P/E mode FMS1 = 1: Setting prohibited.	R/W
2	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
3	RPDIS	Code Flash P/E Disable 0: Programming of the code flash is enabled 1: Programming of the code flash is disabled.	R/W
4	FMS1	Flash Operating Mode Select 1 See the description of the FMS0 bit.	R/W
7:5	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

The FPMCR register sets the operating mode of the flash memory and is protected from unauthorized setting.

See [Figure 38.15](#) and [Figure 38.17](#) for this register write control method.

See [section 38.3.4. FPR : Protection Unlock Register](#) for the procedure to unlock the protection.

FMS0 bit, FMS1 bits (Flash Operating Mode Select 0, Flash Operating Mode Select 1)

These bits set the operating mode of the flash memory.

[How to enter the code flash from the read mode to the code flash P/E mode]

Set FMS1 = 0, FMS0 = 1, and RPDIS = 0. Wait for the mode setup time t_{MS} (see [section 41, Electrical Characteristics](#)).

[How to enter the data flash from the read mode to the data flash P/E mode]

Set FMS1 = 1, FMS0 = 0, and RPDIS bit = 0.

[How to enter the code flash from the code flash P/E mode to the read mode]

Set FMS1 = 0, FMS0 = 0, and RPDIS = 1.

Wait for the read mode transition time (see [section 41, Electrical Characteristics](#)).

RPDIS bit (Code Flash P/E Disable)

RPDIS bit protects the code flash from unauthorized programming. Setting RPDIS bit to 0 allows the code flash to program.

38.3.7 FISR : Flash Initial Setting Register

Base address: FLCN = 0x407E_C000

Offset address: 0x01D8

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	SAS[1:0]		PCKA[5:0]					
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
5:0	PCKA[5:0]	Flash-IF Clock Notification	R/W
7:6	SAS[1:0]	Startup Area Select 1 0: The startup area is switched to the default area temporarily 1 1: The startup area is switched to the alternate area temporarily. Others: The startup area is selected according to the settings of the extra area.	R/W

Note: Set or clear this register only in P/E mode. Additionally, the SAS[1:0] bits are allowed to set or clear when the FSPR is 1. The FSPR bit is the protection flag of the access window and is stored in the extra area.

PCKA[5:0] bits (Flash-IF Clock Notification)

The hardware sequencer for the flash programming executes the commands according to the PCKA[5:0] bits. For this reason, it is necessary to set the PCKA[5:0] bits according to Flash-IF clock (ICLK) before execution of the programming and not during the programming.

Note: A wrong frequency setting may cause the flash macro to be damaged.

The following information describes how to set the PCKA[5:0] bits when the frequency is not an integral number, for example 31.5 MHz.

[When the frequency is higher than 4 MHz]

Set a rounded-up value for a non-integer frequency.

For example, set 32 MHz (PCKA = 011111b) when the frequency is 31.5 MHz.

[When the frequency is 4 MHz or lower]

Do not use a non-integer frequency. Use the frequency of 1, 2, 3, or 4 MHz.

Table 38.4 Frequency Settings

Flash-IF clock frequency [MHz]	PCKA[5:0]	Flash-IF clock frequency [MHz]	PCKA[5:0]	Flash-IF clock frequency [MHz]	PCKA[5:0]
48	100111b	32	011111b	24	010111b
20	010011b	19	010010b	18	010001b
17	010000b	16	001111b	15	001110b
14	001101b	13	001100b	12	001011b
11	001010b	10	001001b	9	001000b
8	000111b	7	000110b	6	000101b
5	000100b	4	000011b	3	000010b
2	000001b	1	000000b	—	—

SAS[1:0] bits (Startup Area Select)

The SAS[1:0] bits select the startup area. To change the startup area, the following methods can be used:

- When selecting the startup area according to the startup area settings of the extra area with the SAS[1:0] bits set to 00b or 01b, the startup area is selected accordingly. The settings are enabled after a reset is released.

- When switching the startup area to the default area temporarily with 10b written to the SAS[1:0] bits, the startup area is switched to the default area immediately after data is written to the register, regardless of the startup area settings of the extra area. When a reset is generated after this, the area is selected according to the startup area settings of the extra area.
- When switching the startup area to the alternative area temporarily with 11b written to the SAS[1:0] bits, the startup area is switched to the alternative area, regardless of the startup area settings of the extra area. When a reset is generated after this, the area is selected according to the startup area settings of the extra area.

38.3.8 FRESETR : Flash Reset Register

Base address: FLCN = 0x407E_C000

Offset address: 0x0124

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	FRESET
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	FRESET	Software reset of the registers 0: The registers related to the flash programming are not reset 1: The registers related to the flash programming are reset.	R/W
7:1	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

FRESET bit (Software reset of the registers)

When this bit is set to 1, the FASR, FSARH, FSARL, FEARH, FEARL, FWBH0, FWBL0, FCR, and FEXCR registers are reset. Setting this bit to 0 allows the corresponding registers to be released from the reset state. Software commands are not allowed to execute while the FRESET bit is 1.

38.3.9 FASR : Flash Area Select Register

Base address: FLCN = 0x407E_C000

Offset address: 0x0104

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	EXS
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	EXS	Extra Area Select 0: User area or data area 1: Extra area.	R/W
7:1	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W

Note: Set or clear this register only in P/E mode.

EXS bit (Extra Area Select)

Set the EXS bit to 1 when programming the extra area using the FEXCR register. Set this bit to 0 when not programming the extra area.

38.3.10 FCR : Flash Control Register

Base address: FLCN = 0x407E_C000

Offset address: 0x0114

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	OPST	STOP	—	DRC	CMD[3:0]			
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
3:0	CMD[3:0]	Software Command Setting 0x1: Program 0x3: Blank check (code flash) 0x4: Block erase 0x5: Consecutive read 0x6: Chip erase 0xB: Blank check (data flash) Others: Setting prohibited*1	R/W
4	DRC	Data Read Completion 0: Data is not read or next data is requested 1: Data reading is complete	R/W
5	—	This bit is read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
6	STOP	Forced Processing Stop When this bit is set to 1, the processing being executed can be forcibly stopped.	R/W
7	OPST	Processing Start 0: Processing stops 1: Processing starts	R/W

Note: Set or clear this register only in P/E mode. Additionally, it is not allowed to be reset by the FRESETR register while the software command is being executed.

Note 1. This does not include writing 0x00 to the FCR register when the FSTATR1.FR DY bit is 1.

CMD[3:0] bits (Software Command Setting)

The following information describes the function of each software command.

[Program]

Writes data of the FWBH0 and FWBL0 registers to the flash macro to the address pointed by the FSARH and FSARL registers.

[Blank check]

Verifies whether the flash macro is the blank state (not to be programmed) from the start address pointed by the FSARH and FSARL registers to the end address pointed by the FEARH and FEARL registers. The blank check command is allowed to execute within the region of the flash macro.

Note: The blank check result cannot guarantee that the flash memory is erased.

[Block erase]

Erases block of the flash memory.

Set the start address of the target erasure block in the FSARH and FSARL registers, and set the end address of the target erasure block in the FEARH and FEARL registers. If a setting other than the specified is made, erasure may not be executed correctly. The block erase command is allowed to execute within the region of the flash macro.

[Consecutive read]

Reads the flash macro from the start address pointed by the FSARH and FSARL registers to the end address pointed by the FEARH and FEARL registers. The read data is stored in the FRBH and FRBL registers. The consecutive read command is allowed to execute within the region of the flash macros.

[Chip erase]

Erases all blocks of the flash macro

Set the start address of the target erasure block in the FSARH and FSARL registers, and set the end address of the target erasure block in the FEARH and FEARL registers. If a setting other than the specified is made, erasure may not be executed correctly.

DRC bit (Data Read Completion)

After executing the consecutive read command and reading the FRBH and FRBL registers, writing 1 to the DRC bit completes the processing for read data. Writing 0 to the DRC bit starts reading the next data.

STOP bit (Forced Processing Stop)

The STOP bit stops the execution of the erase command or the blank check command.

After setting 1 to the STOP bit, it is necessary to wait until the FSTATR1.FRDY bit becomes 1 (processing completed) before setting the OPST bit to 0.

OPST bit (Processing Start)

The OPST bit starts the command set for the CMD[2:0] bits. Setting the OPST bit to 0 terminates the execution of the command after the FRDY bit of the FSTATR1 register becomes 1, and is required to confirm that the FRDY bit is 0.

- Note:
- Commands cannot be executed when the ID authorization for the flash programmer has failed.
 - The program, the block erase, and the read commands cannot be executed when the address of each command points to an area that is protected by the access window.

38.3.11 FEXCR : Flash Extra Area Control Register

Base address: FLCN = 0x407E_C000

Offset address: 0x01DC

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	OPST	—	—	—	—	CMD[2:0]		
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
2:0	CMD[2:0]	Software Command Setting 0 1 0: Access window information program Startup area selection and security setting 0 1 1: OCDID1 program 1 0 0: OCDID2 program 1 0 1: OCDID3 program 1 1 0: OCDID4 program Others: Setting prohibited*1	R/W
6:3	—	These bits are read as 0. The write value should be 0.	R/W
7	OPST	Processing Start 0: Processing stops 1: Processing starts	R/W

Note: Set or clear this register only in P/E mode. Additionally, it is not allowed to be reset by the FRESETR register while the software command is being executed.

Note 1. This does not include writing 0x00 to the FEXCR register when the FSTATR1.EXRDY bit is 1.

The FEXCR register programs the extra area. Before execution of each command, it is necessary to set the FWBL0 and FWBH0 registers.

When programming using the FEXCR register, the programming area is erased automatically before execution, therefore it is not necessary to erase beforehand.

CMD[2:0] bits (Software Command Setting)

The CMD[2:0] bits select the software command from the:

- Startup area selection and security setting

- Access window information program
- OCDID program.

The following information describes the function of each software command.

[Startup area selection and security setting]

Setting data to the FWBL0/FWBH0 registers, this command is allowed to select the startup area from the default area (8 KB) to the alternative area (next 8 KB) and set the security. For details, see [section 38.9.1. Startup Program Protection](#).

Bit [15] of the FWBH0 register is 0 and the alternative area (next 8 KB) is selected as the startup area.

Bit [15] of the FWBH0 register is 1 and the default area (8 KB) is selected as the startup area.

Bit [15] of the FWBL0 register is 0.

- The access window cannot be updated because the access window information program command cannot be executed.
- The startup area cannot be changed.
- Data of the SAS bits of the FISR register cannot be changed.

Note: The startup area selection and security setting command cannot be set to 1 for the corresponding bit of the extra area after 0 is set.

The following information describes mapping for the extra bit of the startup area selection and security setting.

Table 38.5 Mapping for the extra bit of the startup area selection and security setting (address (P/E) : 0x0000_0010)

b31	b30	b29	b28	b27	b26	b25	b24	b23	b22	b21	b20	b19	b18	b17	b16
SASM F*1	—	—	—	—	FAWE[10:0]										
b15	b14	b13	b12	b11	b10	b9	b8	b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
FSPR *1	—	—	—	—	FAWS[10:0]										

Note 1. Once 0 is set for these bits, it cannot be changed to 1.

[Access window information program]

This command sets the access window used for area protection. The program command, block erase command, and consecutive read command of the protected area cannot be executed. The chip erase command cannot be executed when the access window is set (the start block address of the access window is not equal to the end block address). It is necessary to set the start block address of the access window to the FWBL0 register bits [10:0] and the next block address of the end block address of the access window to the FWBH0 register bits [10:0] before the execution of the access window information program command. When the start address and the end address are set to the same value, all areas of the code flash can be accessed. When the start address is larger than the end block address, all areas of the code flash cannot be accessed.

The FWBL0[10] bit for the start block address must be set to 0 when the access window is set (the end block address of the access window is larger than the start block address).

The following information describes mapping for the extra bit of the access window information program.

Table 38.6 Mapping for the extra bit of the access window information program (address (P/E) : 0x0000_0010)

b31	b30	b29	b28	b27	b26	b25	b24	b23	b22	b21	b20	b19	b18	b17	b16
SASM F*1	—	—	—	—	FAWE[10:0]										
b15	b14	b13	b12	b11	b10	b9	b8	b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
FSPR *1	—	—	—	—	FAWS[10:0]										

Note 1. Once 0 is set as data in these bits, it cannot be changed to 1.

[OCDID1-4 program]

These commands set the OCDID[127:0] bits.

Table 38.7 OCDID settings

Command	OCDID	FWBH0	FWBL0
OCDID1 program	OCDID [31:0]	OCDID [31:16]	OCDID [15:0]
OCDID2 program	OCDID [63:32]	OCDID [63:48]	OCDID [47:32]
OCDID3 program	OCDID [95:64]	OCDID [95:80]	OCDID [79:64]
OCDID4 program	OCDID [127:96]	OCDID [127:112]	OCDID [111:96]

The following information describes mapping for the extra bit of the OCDID1-4 program.

Table 38.8 Mapping for the extra bit of OCDID1-4 program (address (P/E) : 0x0000_0018)

b31	b30	b29	b28	b27	b26	b25	b24	b23	b22	b21	b20	b19	b18	b17	b16
OCDID[31:16]															
b15	b14	b13	b12	b11	b10	b9	b8	b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
OCDID[15:0]															

Table 38.9 Mapping for the extra bit of OCDID1-4 program (address (P/E) : 0x0000_0020)

b31	b30	b29	b28	b27	b26	b25	b24	b23	b22	b21	b20	b19	b18	b17	b16
OCDID[63:48]															
b15	b14	b13	b12	b11	b10	b9	b8	b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
OCDID[47:32]															

Table 38.10 Mapping for the extra bit of OCDID1-4 program (address (P/E) : 0x0000_0028)

b31	b30	b29	b28	b27	b26	b25	b24	b23	b22	b21	b20	b19	b18	b17	b16
OCDID[95:80]															
b15	b14	b13	b12	b11	b10	b9	b8	b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
OCDID[79:64]															

Table 38.11 Mapping for the extra bit of OCDID1-4 program (address (P/E) : 0x0000_0030)

b31	b30	b29	b28	b27	b26	b25	b24	b23	b22	b21	b20	b19	b18	b17	b16
OCDID[127:112]															
b15	b14	b13	b12	b11	b10	b9	b8	b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0
OCDID[111:96]															

OPST bit (Processing Start)

The OPST bit starts the command set for the CMD[2:0] bits. Setting the OPST bit to 0 terminates the execution of the command after the EXRDY bit of the FSTATR1 register becomes 1, and is necessary to confirm that the EXRDY bit is 0.

38.3.12 FSARH : Flash Processing Start Address Register H

Base address: FLCN = 0x407E_C000

Offset address: 0x0110

Bit position: 15 14 13 12 11 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0

Bit field: FSARH[15:0]

Value after reset: 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
15:0	FSARH[15:0]	Flash Processing Start Address H Flash Processing Start Address upper 16 bits See section 38.3.13. FSARL : Flash Processing Start Address Register L for details.	R/W

Note: Set or clear this register only in P/E mode. The write value should be 0 for b8 to b5, and those bits are read as 0.

38.3.13 FSARL : Flash Processing Start Address Register L

Base address: FLCN = 0x407E_C000

Offset address: 0x0108

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	FSARL[15:0]															
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
15:0	FSARL[15:0]	Flash Processing Start Address L Flash processing start address lower 16 bits	R/W

Note: Set or clear this register only in P/E mode.

The FSARH and FSARL registers set the start address of the software command. When the FSARH and FSARL registers are read while executing a software command set by the FEXCR register, an undefined value is read. After execution of the program command, the sequencer of the software command increments data automatically. The auto increment function of the program command discards the setting of the next address to the FSARH and FSARL registers when the next address is a consecutive address. The increment unit is as follows:

Code flash: +0x4

Data flash: +0x1

See [Figure 38.2](#) and [Figure 38.3](#) for details on the addresses of the flash memory.

38.3.14 FEARH : Flash Processing End Address Register H

Base address: FLCN = 0x407E_C000

Offset address: 0x0120

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	FEARH[15:0]															
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

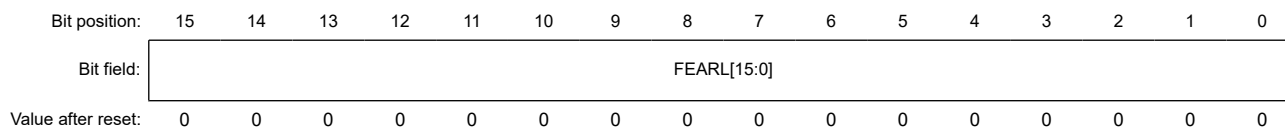
Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
15:0	FEARH[15:0]	Flash Processing End Address H Flash processing end address upper 16 bits See section 38.3.15. FEARL : Flash Processing End Address Register L for details.	R/W

Note: Set or clear this register only in P/E mode. The write value should be 0 for bits [8:5], and those bits are read as 0.

38.3.15 FEARL : Flash Processing End Address Register L

Base address: FLCN = 0x407E_C000

Offset address: 0x0118



Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
15:0	FEARL[15:0]	Flash Processing End Address L Flash processing end address lower 16 bits	R/W

Note: Set or clear this register only in P/E mode.

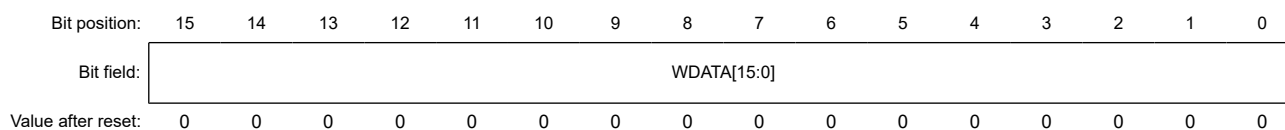
The FEARH and FEARL registers set the end address of the blank check, the block erase, the chip erase, and the consecutive read command. When the FEARH and FEARL registers are read while executing a software command set by the FEXCR register, an undefined value is read.

See [Figure 38.2](#) and [Figure 38.3](#) for details on the addresses of the flash memory.

38.3.16 FWBL0 : Flash Write Buffer Register L0

Base address: FLCN = 0x407E_C000

Offset address: 0x0130



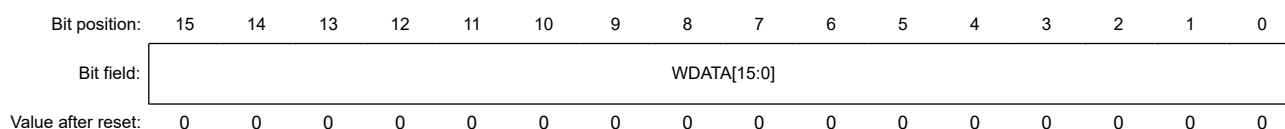
Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
15:0	WDATA[15:0]	Flash Write Buffer L0 Flash write buffer data lower 16 bits See section 38.3.17. FWBH0 : Flash Write Buffer Register H0 for details.	R/W

Note: Set or clear this register only in P/E mode.

38.3.17 FWBH0 : Flash Write Buffer Register H0

Base address: FLCN = 0x407E_C000

Offset address: 0x0138



Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
15:0	WDATA[15:0]	Flash Write Buffer H0 Flash write buffer data upper 16 bits	R/W

Note: Set or clear this register only in P/E mode.

The FWBH0 and FWBL0 registers set program data of the program command, the startup selection and security setting command, the access window information program command, and the OCDID program command. The following table describes how to set data according to each command.

Register	What is set to the register
FWBH0 FWBL0	• Bits [31:0] of the programming data of the program command for the code flash • Bits [7:0] of the programming data of the program command for the data flash • Bits [31:0] of the programming data of the startup selection and security setting command, the access window information program command, and the OCDID program command.

38.3.18 FRBL0 : Flash Read Buffer Register L0

Base address: FLCN = 0x407E_C000

Offset address: 0x0188

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	RDATA[15:0]															
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
15:0	RDATA[15:0]	Flash Read Buffer L0 The RDATA[15:0] store bits [15:0] of the read data of the code flash or data flash read when the consecutive read command is executed. When the data flash is read, 0x00 is stored to bits [15:8].	R

38.3.19 FRBH0 : Flash Read Buffer Register H0

Base address: FLCN = 0x407E_C000

Offset address: 0x0190

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	RDATA[15:0]															
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
15:0	RDATA[15:0]	Flash Read Buffer H0 RDATA[15:0] store bits [31:16] of the read data of the code flash when the consecutive read command is executed.	R

38.3.20 FSTATR1 : Flash Status Register 1

Base address: FLCN = 0x407E_C000

Offset address: 0x012C

Bit position:	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	EXRD Y	FRDY	—	—	—	—	DRRD Y	—
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	—	This bit is read as 0.	R
1	DRRDY	Data Read Ready Flag 0: The read processing of the consecutive read command at each address is not terminated 1: The read processing of the consecutive read command at each address is terminated and read data is stored to the FRBH and FRBL registers	R
2	—	This bit is read as 1.	R

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
5:3	—	These bits are read as 0.	R
6	FRDY	Flash Ready Flag 0: The software command of the FCR register is not terminated 1: The software command of the FCR register is terminated	R
7	EXRDY	Extra Area Ready Flag 0: The software command of the FEXCR register is not terminated 1: The software command of the FEXCR register is terminated	R

FSTATR1 is a status register used to confirm the execution result of a software command. Each flag is set to 0 when the next software command is executed.

38.3.21 FSTATR2 : Flash Status Register 2

Base address: FLCN = 0x407E_C000

Offset address: 0x01F0

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	EILGL ERR	ILGLE RR	BCER R	PRGE RR01	PRGE RR	ERER R
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
0	ERERR	Erase Error Flag 0: Erasure terminates normally 1: An error occurs during erasure	R
1	PRGERR	Program Error Flag 0: Programming terminates normally 1: An error occurs during programming	R
2	PRGERR01	Program Error Flag 01 0: Programming by the FEXCR register terminates normally 1: An error occurs during programming	R
3	BCERR	Blank Check Error Flag 0: Blank checking terminates normally 1: An error occurs during blank checking	R
4	ILGLERR	Illegal Command Error Flag 0: No illegal software command or illegal access is detected 1: An illegal command or illegal access is detected.	R
5	EILGLERR	Extra Area Illegal Command Error Flag 0: No illegal command or illegal access to the extra area is detected 1: An illegal command or illegal access to the extra area is detected	R
15:6	—	These bits are read as 0.	R

FSTATR2 is a status register used to confirm the execution result of a software command. Each error flag is set to 0 when the next software command is executed.

ERERR flag (Erase Error Flag)

The value of the ERERR flag is undefined when the FCR.STOP bit is set to 1 (processing is forcibly stopped) during erasure.

PRGERR flag (Program Error Flag)

The PRGERR flag is set when the program command of the FCR register or each command of the FEXCR register is abnormally terminated.

PRGERR01 flag (Program Error Flag 01)

The PRGERR01 flag is set when each command of the FEXCR register is abnormally terminated.

ILGLERR flag (Illegal Command Error Flag)

The ILGLERR flag indicates the execution of the software command of the FCR register with unexpected condition.

[Setting conditions]

- Programming/erasure/read commands are executed to an area protected by the access window range
- The chip erase command is executed when the access window is set (the start block address of the access window is not equal to the end one)
- The blank check, the block erase, consecutive read, and the chip erase commands are executed when the start address set to the FSARH and FSARL registers is larger than the end address set to the FEARH and FEARL registers
- The program, the block erase, the chip erase, and the blank check commands are executed when the FASR.EXS bit is 1
- The data flash address is set to the FSARH and FSARL registers and a software command is executed in the code flash P/E mode
- The code flash address is set to the FSARH and FSARL registers and a software command is executed in the data flash P/E mode
- The code flash and the data flash are set to P/E mode simultaneously and a software command is executed.

[Clearing condition]

- The next software command is executed.

EILGLERR flag (Extra Area Illegal Command Error Flag)

The EILGLERR flag indicates the execution of the software command of the FEXCR register with unexpected condition.

[Setting conditions]

- The software commands of the FEXCR register are executed when the EXS bit of the FASR register is 0
- The access window information program command is executed when the FSPR bit is 0

[Clearing condition]

- The next software command is executed.

38.3.22 FEAMH : Flash Error Address Monitor Register H

Base address: FLCN = 0x407E_C000

Offset address: 0x01E8

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	FEAMH[15:0]															
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
15:0	FEAMH[15:0]	Flash Error Address Monitor Register H Flash error address monitor upper 16 bits See section 38.3.23. FEAML : Flash Error Address Monitor Register L for details.	R/W

38.3.23 FEAML : Flash Error Address Monitor Register L

Base address: FLCN = 0x407E_C000

Offset address: 0x01E0

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	FEAML[15:0]															
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
15:0	FEAML[15:0]	Flash Error Address Monitor Register L Flash error address monitor lower 16 bits	R/W

The error address is withdrawn from the FEAMH and FEAML registers after a software command execution. See [Figure 38.2](#) and [Figure 38.3](#) for details on the addresses of the flash memory.

38.3.24 FSCMR : Flash Startup Setting Monitor Register

Base address: FLCN = 0x407E_C000

Offset address: 0x01C0

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	—	FSPR	—	—	—	—	—	SASMF	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Value after reset:	0	x ^{*1}	0	0	0	x	x	x ^{*1}	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Note 1. The reset value depends on the state of the extra area.

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7:0	—	These bits are read as 0.	R
8	SASMF	Startup Area Setting Monitor Flag 0: Setting to start up using the alternative area 1: Setting to start up using the default area	R
10:9	—	The read values are undefined.	R
11	—	This bit is read as 0.	R
13:12	—	The read values are undefined.	R
14	FSPR	Access Window Protection Flag 0: Access window setting disabled 1: Access window setting enabled	R
15	—	This bit is read as 0.	R

The FSCMR register monitors the extra area setting. Data of this register is updated at the reset sequence or execution of the software command of the FEXCR register.

38.3.25 FAWSMR : Flash Access Window Start Address Monitor Register

Base address: FLCN = 0x407E_C000

Offset address: 0x01C8

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	FSPR	—	—	—	—	FAWS[10:0]										
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	Value set by the user ^{*1}										

Note 1. The value of the blank product is 1. It is set to the same value set in bits [10:0] in the FWBH0 register after the access window information program command is executed.

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
10:0	FAWS[10:0]	Access Window Start Address This register is used to confirm the set value of the access window start address used for area protection	R
14:11	—	These bits are read as 0.	R
15	FSPR	Access Window Protection Flag This bit has the same value as the FSPR bit of the FSCMR register.	R

38.3.26 FAWEMR : Flash Access Window End Address Monitor Register

Base address: FLCN = 0x407E_C000

Offset address: 0x01D0

Bit position:	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Bit field:	SASM F	—	—	—	—	FAWE[10:0]										
Value after reset:	0	0	0	0	0	Value set by the user*1										

Note 1. The value of the blank product is 1. It is set to the same value set in bits [10:0] in the FWBL0 register after the access window information program command is executed.

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
10:0	FAWE[10:0]	Access Window End Address This register is used to confirm the set value of the access window end address used for area protection	R
14:11	—	These bits are read as 0.	R
15	SASMF	Startup Area Setting Monitor Flag This bit has the same value as the SASMF bit of the section 38.3.24. FSCMR : Flash Startup Setting Monitor Register register.	R

38.3.27 UIDR2n : Unique ID Registers 2n (n = 0 to 3)

Address: 0x0101_1110 + n × 4

Bit position:	31	0
Bit field:	UID[31:0]	
Value after reset:	Unique value for each chip	

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
31:0	UID[31:0]	Unique ID	R

The UIDR2n is a read-only register that stores a 16-byte ID code (unique ID) for identifying the individual MCU. The UIDR2n register should be read in 32-bit units.

38.3.28 PNR2n : Part Numbering Register 2n (n = 0 to 3)

Address: 0x0101_1120 + n × 4

Bit position:	31	0
Bit field:	PNR[31:0]	
Value after reset:	Unique value for each chip	

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
31:0	PNR[31:0]	Part Number	R

The PNR2n is a read-only register that stores a 16-byte part numbering. The PNR2n register should be read in 32-bit units. Each byte corresponds to the ASCII code representation of the product part number as detailed in product list.

In case of the part number is 'R7FA2L2094CFM', 16-byte part numbering is stored as follows.

Address 0x0101_1120: 'M', 0x4D in ASCII code

Address 0x0101_1121: 'F', 0x46 in ASCII code

Address 0x0101_1122: 'C', 0x43 in ASCII code

Address 0x0101_1123: '4', 0x34 in ASCII code

Address 0x0101_1124: '9', 0x39 in ASCII code

Address 0x0101_1125: '0', 0x30 in ASCII code

Address 0x0101_1126: '2', 0x32 in ASCII code

Address 0x0101_1127: 'L', 0x4C in ASCII code

Address 0x0101_1128: '2', 0x32 in ASCII code

Address 0x0101_1129: 'A', 0x41 in ASCII code

Address 0x0101_112A: 'F', 0x46 in ASCII code

Address 0x0101_112B: '7', 0x37 in ASCII code

Address 0x0101_112C: 'R', 0x52 in ASCII code

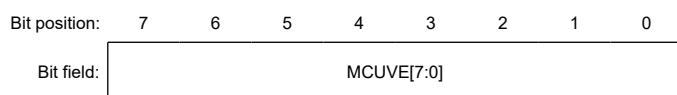
Address 0x0101_112D: '(space)', 0x20 in ASCII code

Address 0x0101_112E: '(space)', 0x20 in ASCII code

Address 0x0101_112F: '(space)', 0x20 in ASCII code

38.3.29 MCUVER2 : MCU Version Register 2

Address: 0x0101_1130



Value after reset: Value depend on the chip

Bit	Symbol	Function	R/W
7:0	MCUVE[7:0]	MCU Version	R

The MCUVER2 is a read-only register that stores an MCU version. The MCUVER2 register should be read in 8-bit units. The higher the value, the newer MCU version.

38.4 Instruction Prefetch from Flash Memory

Flash memory provides an instruction prefetch function to accelerate code execution. The prefetch function can be used by enabling the prefetch buffer. To enable the prefetch buffer, set the PFBER.PFBE bit to 1.

Note: When Flash memory is in the program or erase operation, the PFBER.PFBE bit should be set to 0 beforehand.

38.5 Operating Modes Associated with the Flash Memory

Figure 38.4 shows a diagram of the mode transitions associated with the flash memory. For information on setting up the modes, see [section 3, Operating Modes](#).

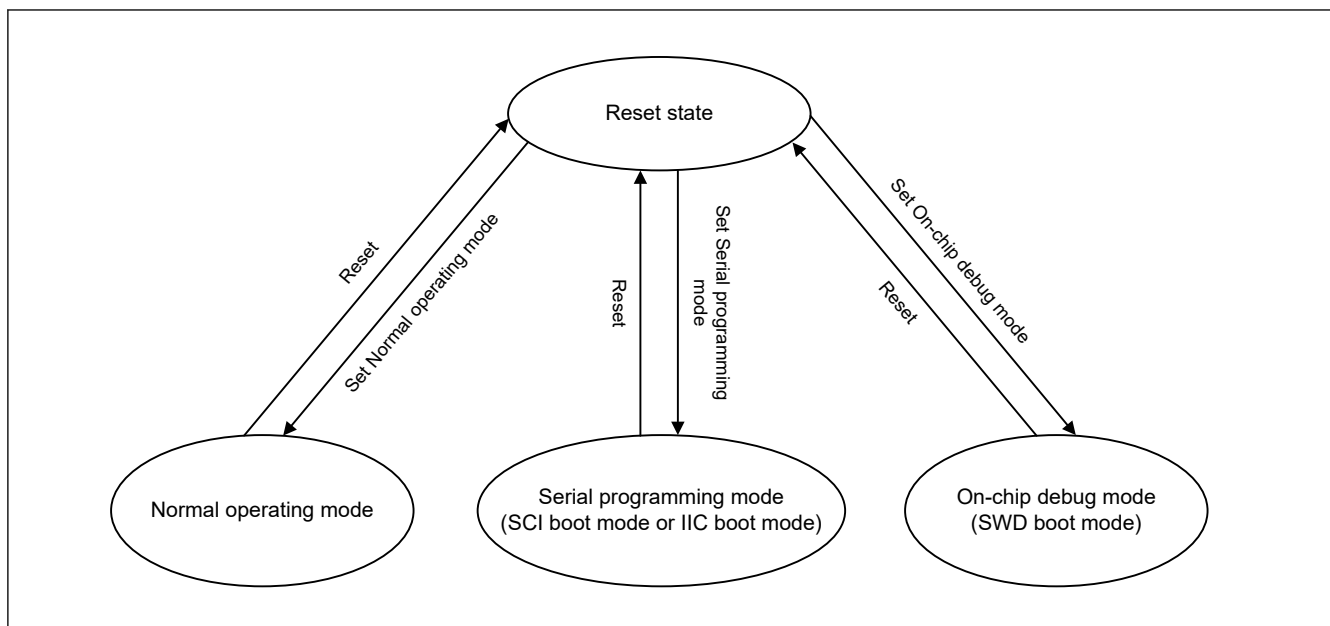


Figure 38.4 Mode transitions associated with flash memory

The flash memory areas where programming and erasure are permitted and where the boot program executes at a reset, differ with the mode. Table 38.12 shows the differences between the modes.

Table 38.12 Difference between modes

Parameter	Normal operating mode	Serial programming mode (SCI boot mode or IIC boot mode)	On-chip debug mode (SWD boot mode)
Programmable and erasable areas	- Code flash memory - Data flash memory.	- Code flash memory - Data flash memory.	- Code flash memory - Data flash memory.
Erasure in block units	Possible	Possible	Possible
Boot program at a reset	User area program	Embedded program for serial programming	Depends on the debug command

38.5.1 ID Code Protection

The ID code protection function prohibits programming and on-chip debugging. When ID code protection is enabled, the device validates or invalidates the ID code sent from the host by comparing it with the ID code stored in the flash memory. Programming and on-chip debugging are enabled only when the two match.

The ID code in flash memory consists of four 32-bit words. ID code bits [127] and [126] determine whether ID code protection is enabled and the authentication method to use with the host. Table 38.13 shows how the ID code determines the authentication method.

Table 38.13 Specifications for ID code protection

Operating mode on boot up	ID code	State of protection	Operations on connection with the programmer or on-chip debugger
Serial programming mode (SCI boot mode or IIC boot mode) On-chip debug mode (SWD boot mode)	0xFF, ..., 0xFF (all bytes 0xFF)	Protection disabled	The ID code is not checked, the ID code always matches, and the connection to the serial programmer or on-chip debugger*1 is permitted.
	Bit [127] = 1, bit [126] = 1, and at least one of all 16 bytes is not 0xFF	Protection enabled	Matching ID code indicates that authentication is complete and connection to the serial programmer or the on-chip debugger is permitted. Mismatching ID code indicates transition to the ID code protection wait state. When the ID code sent from the serial programmer or the on-chip debugger is ALeRASE in ASCII code (0x414C_6552_4153_45FF_FFFF_FFFF_FFFF_FFFF), the content of the user flash area is erased and all bits in the OSIS register are 1. However, when the AWS.FSPR bit is 0 or security MPU is enabled, the content of the user flash area is not erased.
	Bit [127] = 1 and bit [126] = 0	Protection enabled	Matching ID code indicates that authentication is complete and connection to the serial programmer or the on-chip debugger is permitted. Mismatching ID code indicates transition to the ID code protection wait state.
	Bit [127] = 0	Protection enabled	The ID code is not checked, the ID code is always mismatching, the connection to the serial programmer or the on-chip debugger is prohibited. When the ID code sent from the on-chip debugger is ALeRASE in ASCII code (0x414C_6552_4153_45FF_FFFF_FFFF_FFFF_FFFF), the content of the user flash area is erased and all bits in the OSIS register are 1. However, when the AWS.FSPR bit is 0 or security MPU is enabled, the content of the user flash area is not erased.

Note 1. Never send the ID code from the on-chip debugger or send ID code 0xFF, ..., 0xFF (all bytes 0xFF) from the on-chip debugger.

38.6 Overview of Functions

By using a dedicated flash-memory programmer to program the on-chip flash memory through a serial interface (serial programming mode) or through SWD interface (on-chip debug mode), the device can be programmed before or after it is mounted on the target system. Additionally, security functions to prohibit overwriting of the user program prevent tampering by third parties.

Programming by the user program (self-programming) is available for applications that might require updating after system manufacturing or shipment. Protection features for safely overwriting the flash memory area are also provided. Additionally, interrupt processing during self-programming is supported so that programming can proceed while processing external communications and other functions. [Table 38.14](#) lists the programming methods and the associated operating modes.

Table 38.14 Programming methods

Programming method	Functional overview	Operating mode
Serial programming	A dedicated flash-memory programmer connected through the SCI9 interface or I3C interface can program the on-board flash memory after the device is mounted on the target system.	Serial programming mode
	A dedicated flash-memory programmer connected through the SCI9 interface or I3C interface and a dedicated programming adapter board allow off-board programming of the flash memory, before it is mounted on the target system.	
Self-programming	A user program written to memory before serial programming execution can also program the flash memory. The background operation capability makes it possible to fetch instructions or otherwise read data from code flash memory while the data flash memory is programming. As a result, a program resident in code flash memory can program data flash memory.	Normal operating mode
SWD programming	A dedicated flash-memory programmer or an on-chip debugger connected through SWD can program the on-board flash memory after the device is mounted on the target system.	On-chip debug mode
	A dedicated flash-memory programmer or an on-chip debugger connected through SWD and a dedicated programming adapter board allow off-board programming of the flash memory, before it is mounted on the target system.	

[Table 38.15](#) lists the functions of the on-chip flash memory. Use serial programmer commands for serial programming. For self-programming, use the programming commands to read the on-chip flash memory or run the user program.

Table 38.15 Basic functions

Function	Functional overview	Availability	
		Serial programming	Self-programming
Blank check	Checks a specified block to ensure that writing to it has not already proceeded.	Not supported	Supported
Block erasure	Erases the memory contents in the specified block	Supported	Supported
Programming	Writes to the specified address	Supported	Supported
Read	Reads data programmed in the flash memory	Supported	Not supported (read by user program is possible)
ID code check	Compares the ID code sent by the host with the code stored in the code flash memory. If the two match, the FCB enters the wait state for programming and erasure commands from the host.	Supported	Not supported (ID authentication is not performed)
Security configuration	Configures the protection of security function (Access window and Startup area selection)	Supported with conditions (see section 38.9. Protection)	Supported with conditions (see section 38.9. Protection)
Protection configuration	Configures the access window for flash area protection in the code flash memory	Supported	Supported

The on-chip flash memory supports the ID code check function. Authentication of ID code check is a security function for use with serial programming and with SWD programming. [Table 38.16](#) lists the security functions supported by the on-chip flash memory, and [Table 38.17](#) lists the available operations and security settings.

Table 38.16 Security functions

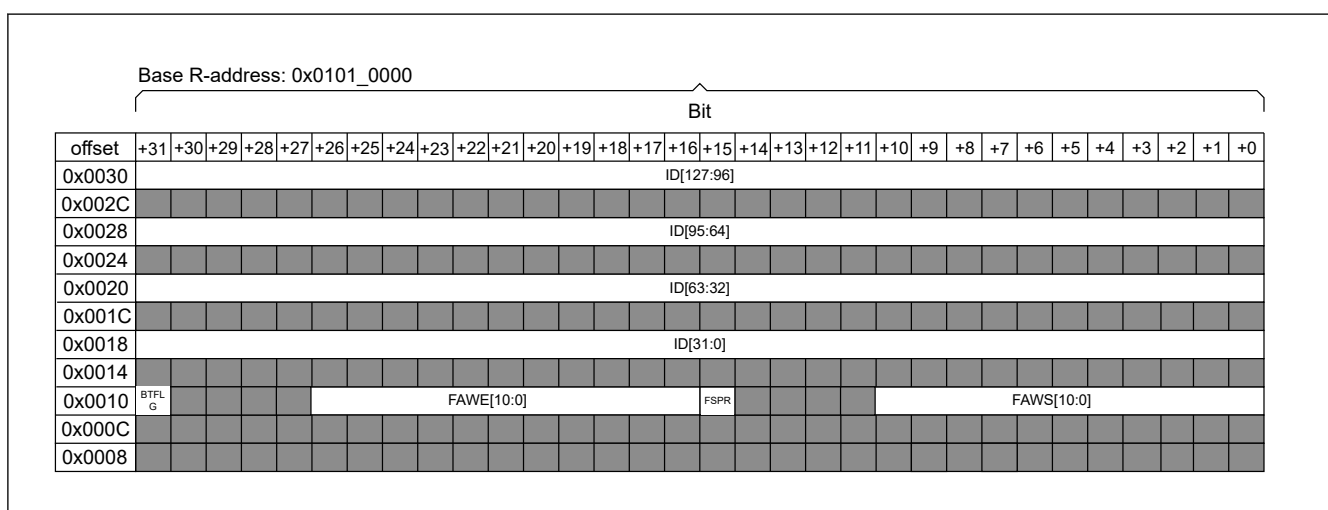
Function	Description
ID authentication	The result of ID authentication can be used to control the connection of a serial programmer for serial programming

Table 38.17 Available operations and security settings

Function	All security settings and erasure, programming, and read operations		Constraints on the security setting configuration
	Serial programming and on-chip debug mode	Self-programming mode	
ID authentication	When the ID codes do not match: - Block erasure commands: not supported - Programming commands: not supported - Read commands: not supported - Security configuration commands: not supported - Protection configuration commands: not supported. When the ID codes match: - Block erasure commands: supported - Programming commands: supported - Read commands: supported - Security configuration commands: supported - Protection configuration commands: supported.	- Blank check: supported - Block erasure: supported - Programming: supported - Security configuration: supported - Protection configuration: supported.	ID authentication is not performed

38.6.1 Configuration Area Bit Map

The bits used for ID authentication, startup area select, access window protection, and security configuration functions are mapped in [Figure 38.5](#). The boot program must use these bits as hexadecimal data.

**Figure 38.5 Configuration area bit map**

38.6.2 Startup Area Select

The startup area select function allows the boot program to be safely updated. The startup area is 8 KB of space located in the user area. The FCB controls the address of the startup area based on the Startup Area Select Flag (BTFLG) that is located in the configuration area which names as AWS register. The startup area can be locked by the FSPR bit.

[Figure 38.6](#) shows an overview of the startup program protection.

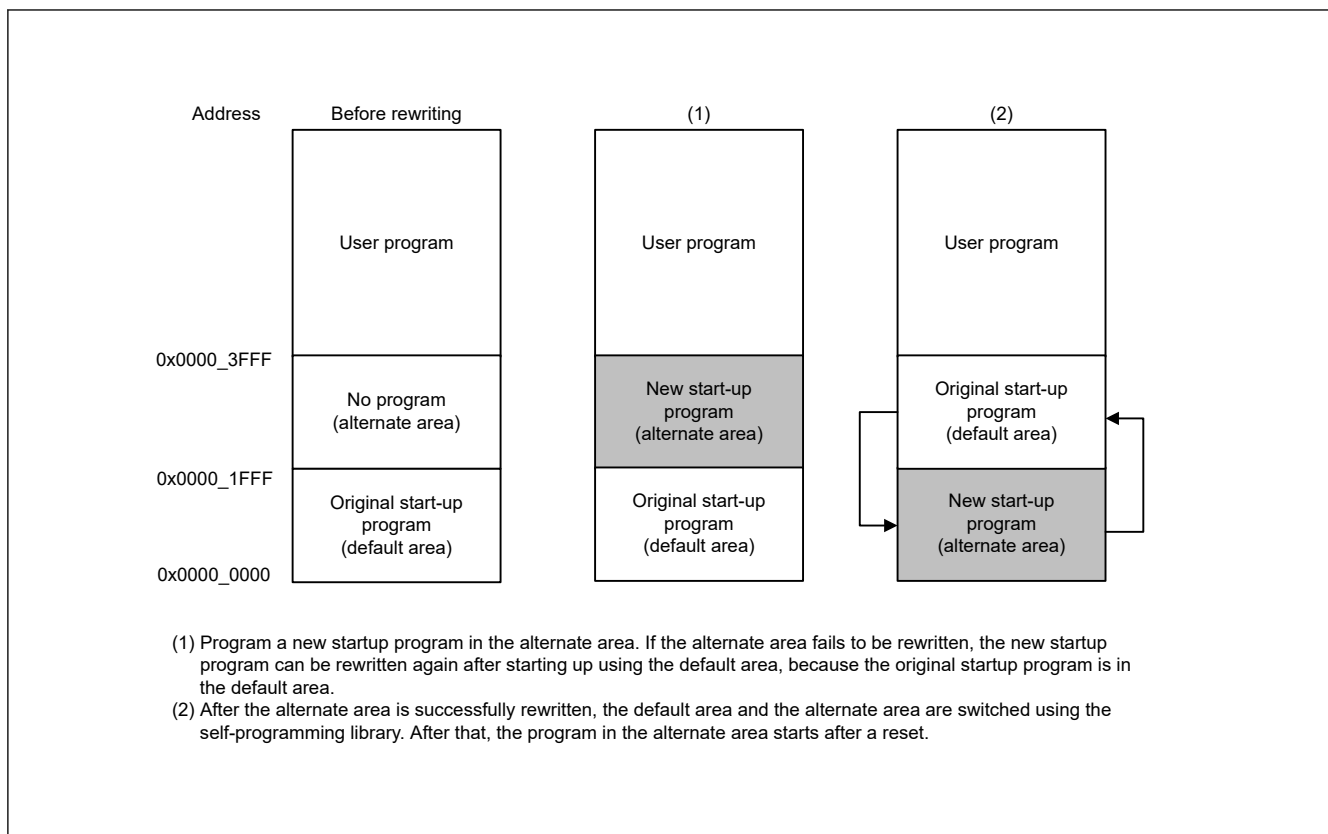


Figure 38.6 Overview of startup program protection

38.6.3 Protection by Access Window

Issuing the program or block erase command to a flash memory area outside the access window results in the command-locked state. The access window is only valid in the user area of the code flash memory. The access window provides protection in self-programming, serial programming, and on-chip debug modes. [Figure 38.7](#) shows an overview of flash area protection.

The access window is specified in both the FAWS [10:0] and FAWE [10:0] bits. See [section 6.2.4. AWS : Access Window Setting Register](#). The settings of the FAWE[10:0] and FAWS[10:0] bits in various conditions are described as follows:

- FAWE [10:0] = FAWS [10:0]: The P/E command can execute anywhere in the user area of the code flash memory
- FAWE [10:0] > FAWS [10:0]: The P/E command can only execute in the window from the block pointed to by the FAWS bits to one block lower than the block pointed to by the FAWE[10:0] bits
- FAWE [10:0] < FAWS [10:0]: The P/E command cannot execute anywhere in the user area of the code flash memory.

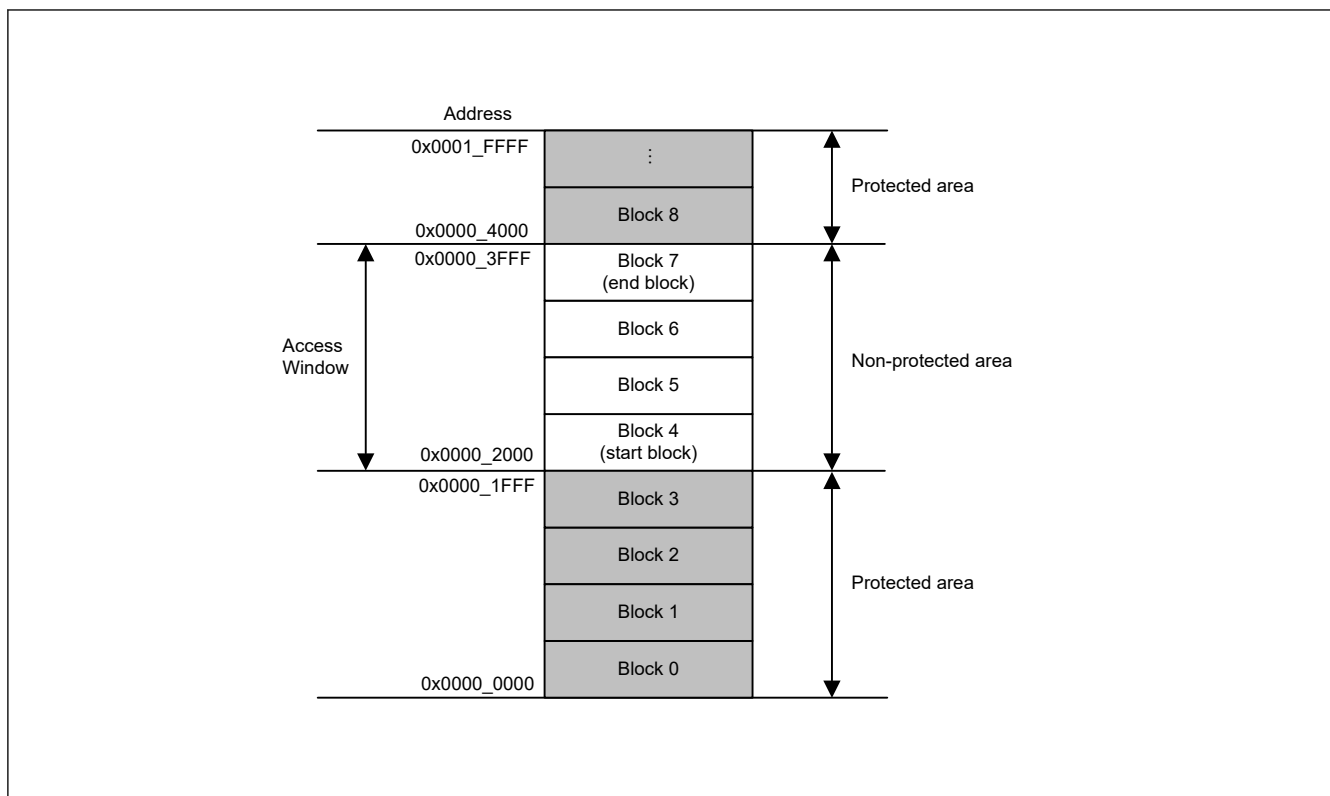


Figure 38.7 Flash area protection overview

38.7 Programming Commands

The FCB controls the programming commands.

38.8 Suspend Operation

The forced stop command forces the blank check command, the block erase command, or the chip erase command to stop. When a forced stop is executed, the stopped address values are stored in the registers. The command can restart from the stopped address after a reset to the registers for command execution by copying the saved addresses.

If a forced stop is executed during the chip erase command, execute the chip erase command again and then restart.

38.9 Protection

The types of protection provided include:

- Software protection
- Error protection
- Boot program protection.

38.9.1 Startup Program Protection

When programming of the startup area is interrupted by temporary blackout, the startup program may not be successfully programmed and the user program may not start properly.

This problem can be avoided by programming the startup program without erasing the existing startup program using the startup program protection.

Figure 38.8 shows an overview of the Startup Program Protection. In this figure, the default area indicates the 8-KB region from the start address and the alternate area indicates the next 8-KB region.

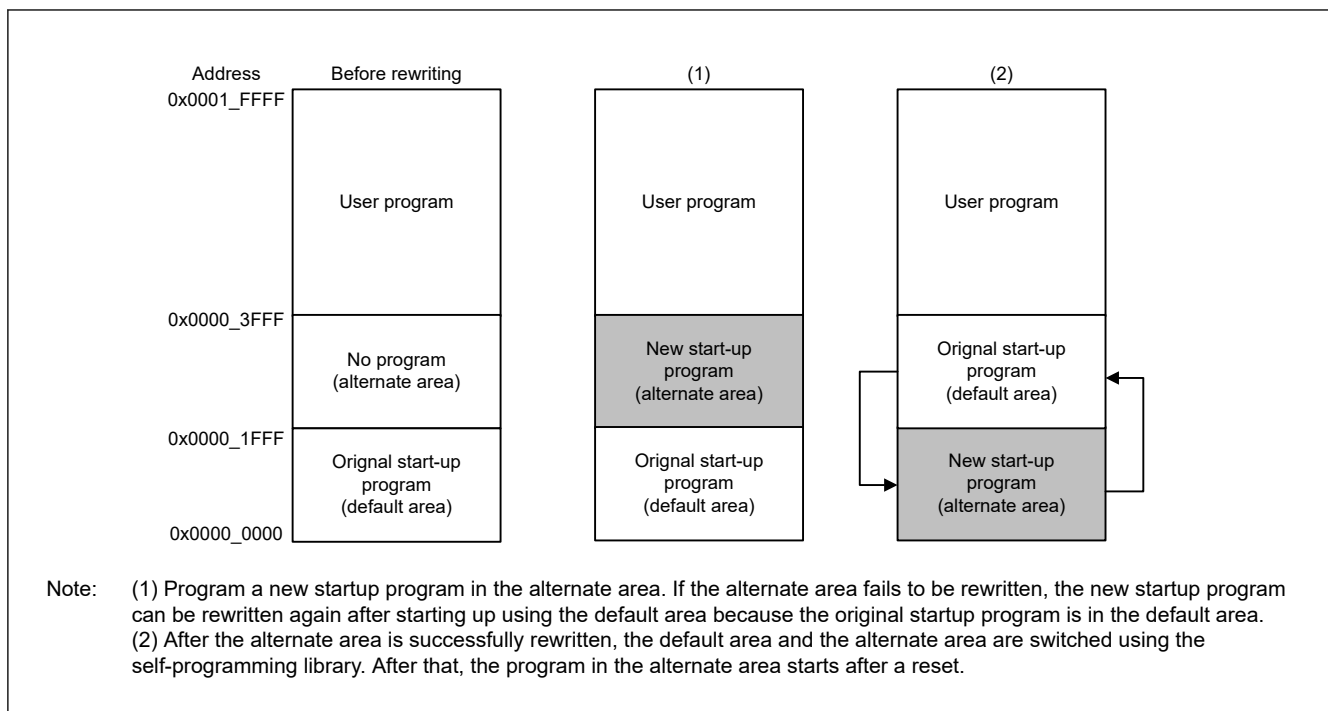


Figure 38.8 Overview of the startup program protection

38.9.2 Area Protection

Area protection enables rewriting for only selected blocks (access window) in the user area and disables programming for the other blocks. Data flash is not protected by the access window.

Select the start block and end block to set the access window. The access window is changeable and valid in programming mode (boot mode, self-programming mode, and OCD mode).

[Figure 38.9](#) shows an overview of area protection.

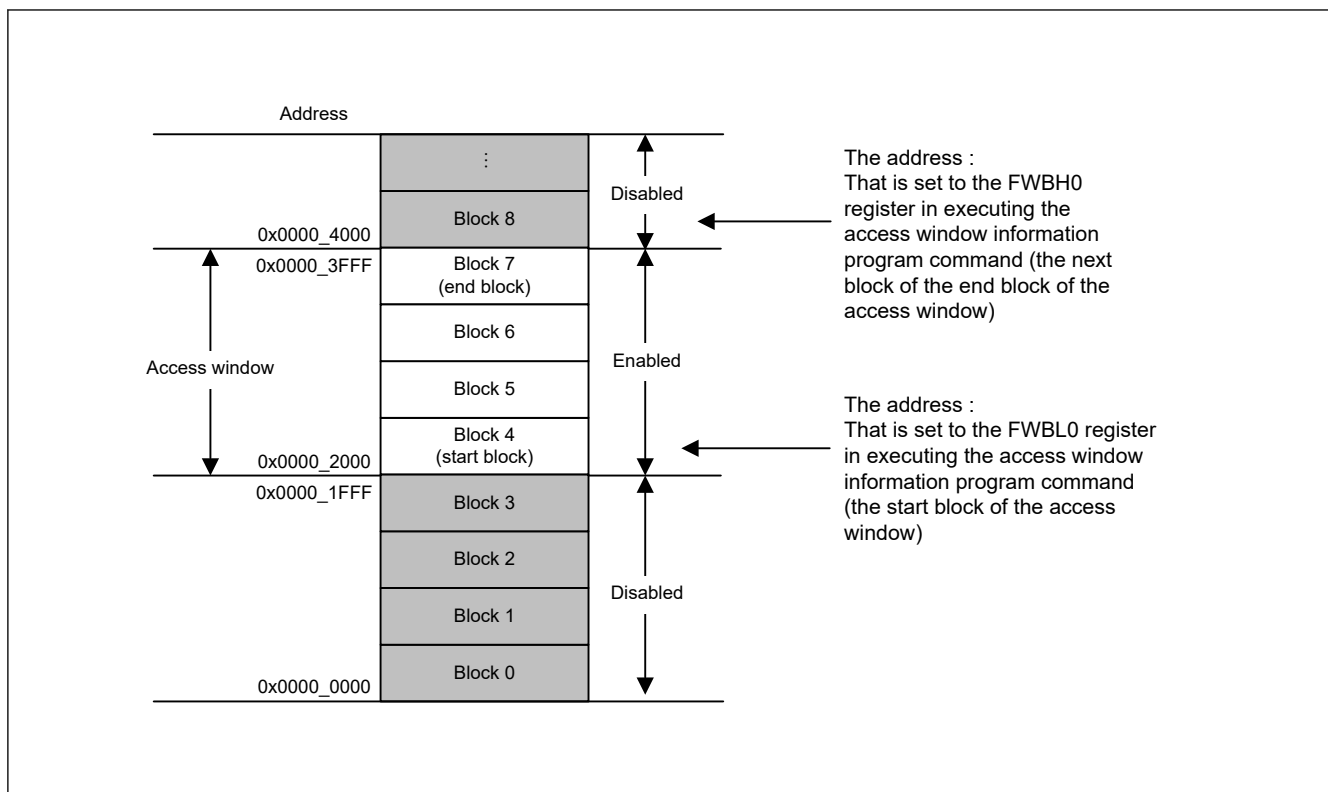


Figure 38.9 Area protection overview

38.10 Serial Programming Mode

The serial programming mode includes:

- Boot mode with SCI9 using asynchronous mode
- Boot mode with I3C using I2C protocol mode

Table 38.18 lists the I/O pins of the flash memory-related modules.

Table 38.18 I/O pins of flash memory-related modules

Pin name	I/O	Applicable modes	Function
MD	Input	SCI boot mode, IIC boot mode (serial programming mode)	Selection of operating mode
P110/RXD9	Input	SCI boot mode	For host communication, to receive data through the SCI9
P109/TXD9	Output		For host communication, to transmit data through the SCI9
P912/SDA0	I/O	IIC boot mode	For host communication, used as a serial data pin through the I3C
P913/SCL0	I/O		For host communication, used as a clock pin through the I3C

Note: Serial programming mode is not executed when security MPU is enabled.

38.10.1 SCI Boot Mode and IIC Boot Mode

In boot mode, the host sends control commands and data for programming, and the code flash memory and data flash memory areas are programmed or erased accordingly. An on-chip SCI9 or I3C handles transfers between the host and the MCU. Tools for transmission of control commands and the data for programming must be prepared in the host.

When the MCU is activated in boot mode, the embedded program for serial programming is executed. This program automatically adjusts the bit rate of the SCI9 or I3C and controls programming and erasure by receiving control commands from the host.

Figure 38.10 shows the system configuration for operations in boot mode.

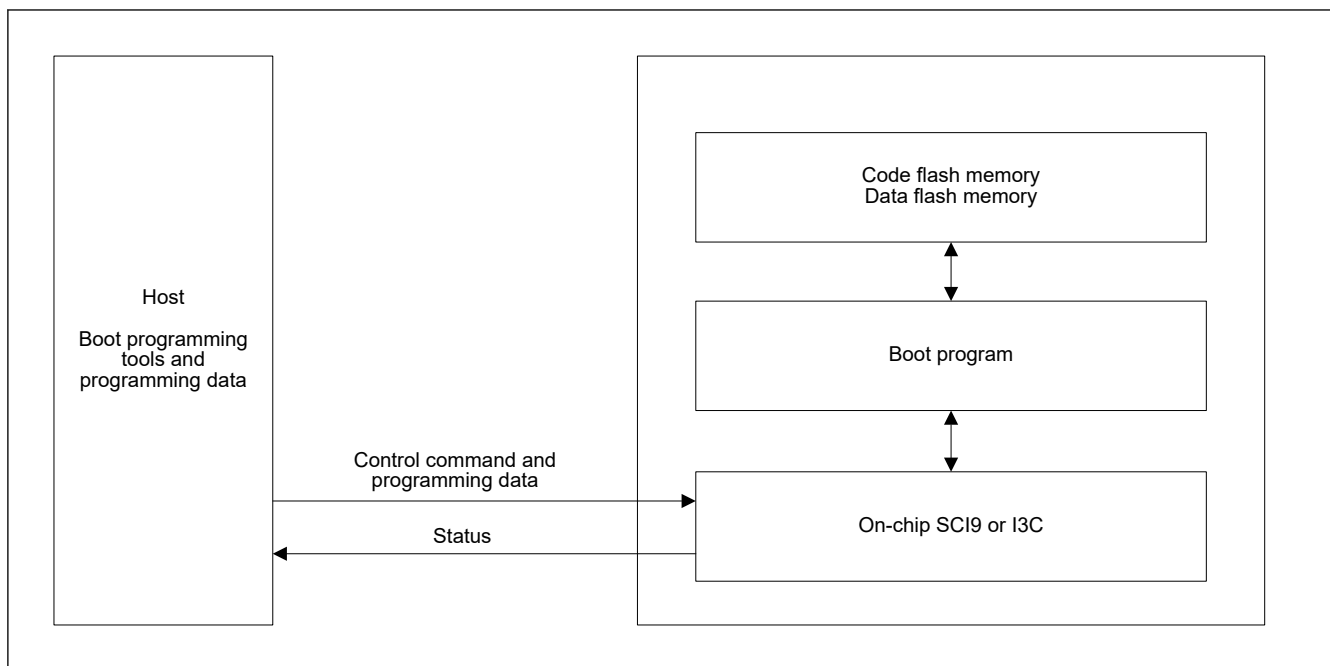


Figure 38.10 System configuration in SCI boot mode or IIC boot mode

38.11 Using a Serial Programmer

A dedicated flash memory programmer can be used to program the flash memory in serial programming mode.

38.11.1 Serial Programming

The MCU is mounted on the system board for serial programming. A connector to the board allows programming by the flash memory programmer.

Figure 38.11 shows the environment recommended by Renesas for programming the flash memory of the MCU with data.

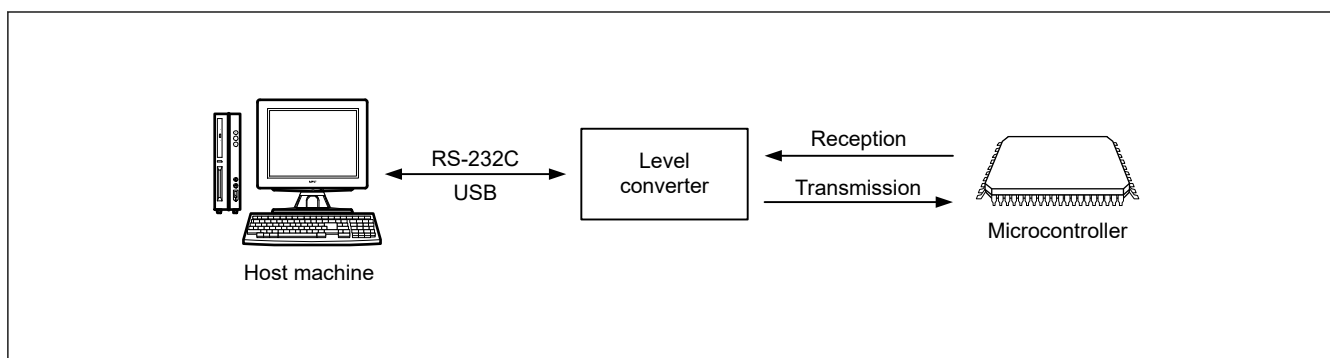


Figure 38.11 Environment for writing programs to the flash memory

38.12 Self-programming

38.12.1 Overview

The MCU supports programming of the flash memory by the user program. The programming commands can be used with user programs for writing to the code and data flash memory. This enables updates to the user programs and overwriting of constant data fields.

In self-programming, it is necessary to supply a stable HOCO clock to the flash memory in order to generate the program voltage and erase voltage. Therefore, when the HOCO is stopped where another clock source is selected as the system clock, it is necessary to start the HOCO operation and ensure that the oscillation is in a stable state before executing the self-programming. For details of HOCO clock oscillation stabilization check, see [section 8.2.10. OSCSF : Oscillation Stabilization Flag Register](#).

The background operation facility makes it possible to execute a program from the code flash memory to program the data flash memory under the conditions shown in [Figure 38.12](#). This program can also be copied in advance to and executed from the internal SRAM. When executing from the internal SRAM, this program can also program the code flash memory area.

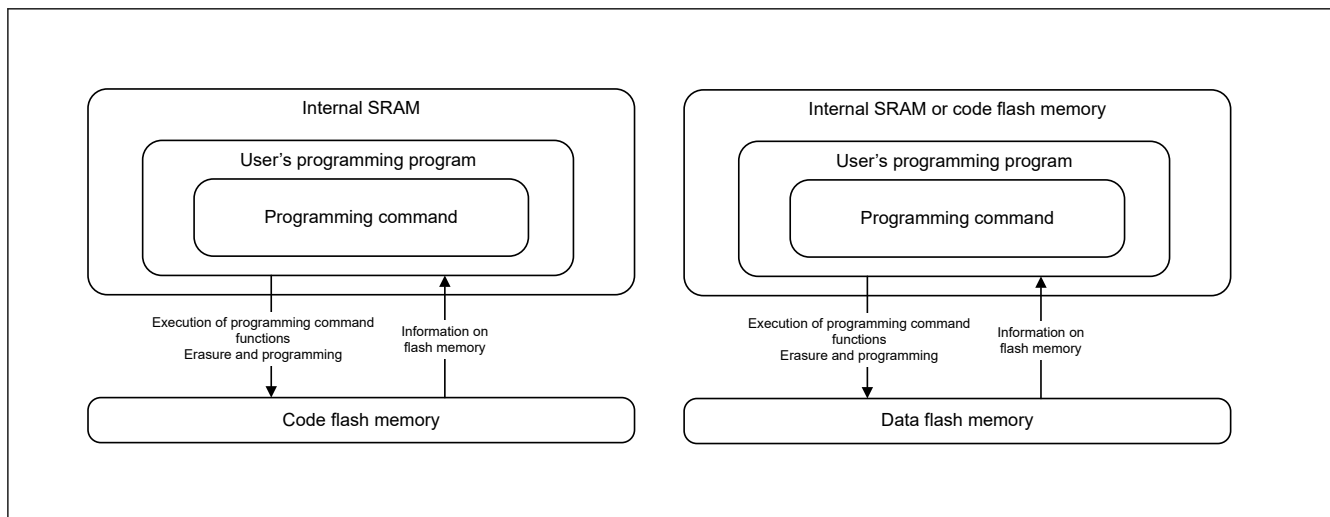


Figure 38.12 Schematic view of self-programming

38.12.2 Background Operation

Background operation can be used when a combination of the flash memory for writing and reading is as listed in [Table 38.19](#).

Table 38.19 Conditions under which background operation is available

Product	Writable range	Readable range
All products	Data flash memory	Code flash memory

38.13 Programming and Erasure

The code flash and data flash can be programmed and erased by changing the mode of the dedicated sequencer for programming and erasure, and by issuing commands for programming and erasure.

The mode transitions and commands required to program or erase the code flash and data flash are described in the sections that follow. The descriptions apply in common to boot mode and single-chip mode.

38.13.1 Sequencer Modes

The sequencer has four modes and transitions between modes occur by writing to the FENTRYR or DFLCTL register, or by issuing commands to set the FPMCR register. [Figure 38.13](#) shows mode transitions of the flash memory.

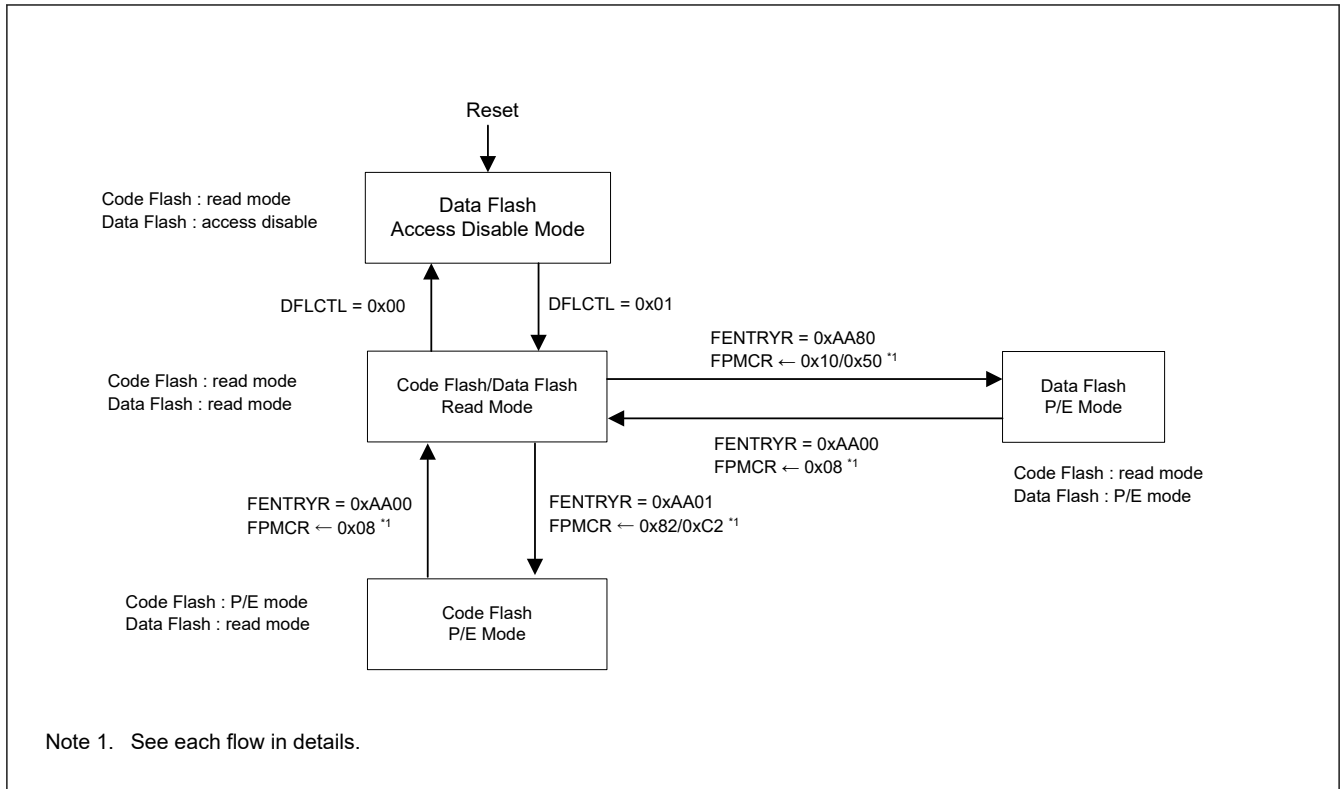


Figure 38.13 Mode transitions of the flash memory

38.13.1.1 Data Flash Access Disable Mode

Data flash access disable mode is to disable access to the data flash. Issuing a reset causes this mode. The data flash transitions to read mode by setting the DFLCTL.DFLEN bit to 1.

38.13.1.2 Read Mode

Read mode is used for high-speed reading of the code flash and data flash.

(1) Code flash and data flash read mode

This mode is used for reading the code flash and data flash. The sequencer enters this mode when the FENTRYR.FENTRY0 bit is set to 0 while the FENTRYR.FENTRYD bit is set to 0.

38.13.1.3 P/E Modes

(1) Code flash P/E mode

The code flash P/E mode is used for programming and erasure of the code flash. The sequencer enters this mode when the FENTRYR.FENTRYD bit is set to 0 while the FENTRYR.FENTRY0 bit is set to 1. In this mode, it is not possible to access the data flash.

(2) Data flash P/E mode

The data flash P/E mode is used for programming and erasure of the data flash. High-speed reading from the code flash is possible. The sequencer enters this mode when the FENTRYR.FENTRY0 bit is set to 0 while the FENTRYR.FENTRYD bit is set to 1.

38.13.2 Software Commands

Software commands consist of commands for programming and erasure, and commands for programming startup program area information and access window information. [Table 38.20](#) lists the software commands for use with the flash memory.

Table 38.20 Software commands

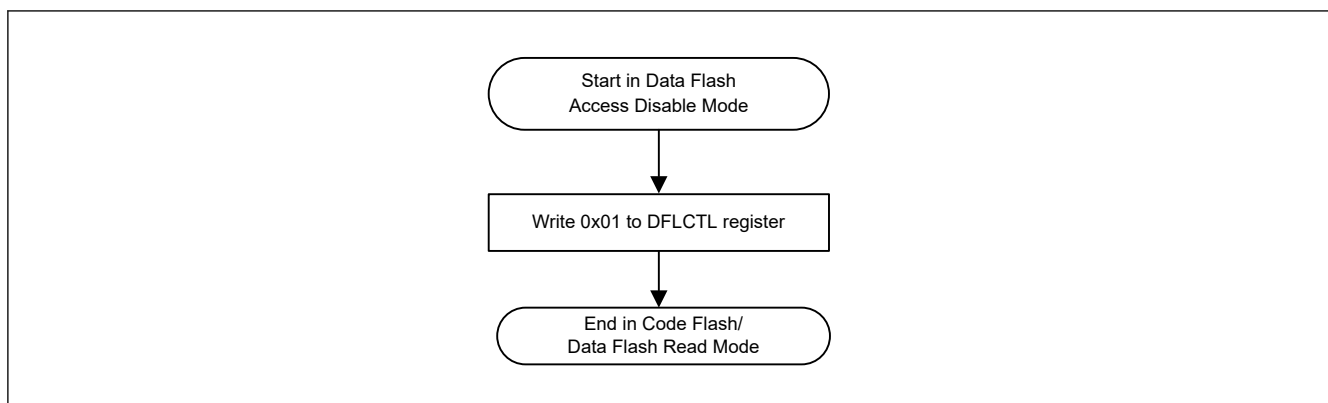
Command	Function
Program	Code flash programming (4 bytes) Data flash programming (1 byte)
Block erase	Code flash/data flash erasure
Chip erase	Code flash/data flash erasure
Consecutive read	Read the specified area during code flash P/E mode or data flash P/E mode
Blank check	Check whether the specified area is blank. Confirm that data is not programmed in the area. This command does not guarantee whether the area remains erased.
Startup area information and security program	Set the FSPR or the SASMF to the extra area
Access window information program	Set the access window used for area protection to the extra area
OCDID program	Set the OCDID to the extra area

38.13.3 Software Command Usage

The following sections describe the usage of each software command.

(1) Switching from data flash access disable mode to read mode

It is necessary to enter the code flash/data flash read mode from the data flash access disable mode. [Figure 38.14](#) shows the procedure for entering the code flash/data flash read mode from the data flash access disable mode.

**Figure 38.14 Mode transitions to read mode from data flash access disable mode**

(2) Switching to code flash P/E mode

It is necessary to enter the code flash P/E mode by setting the FENTRY0 bit of the FENTRYR register before executing the software command for the code flash. [Figure 38.15](#) shows the procedure for entering code flash P/E Mode.

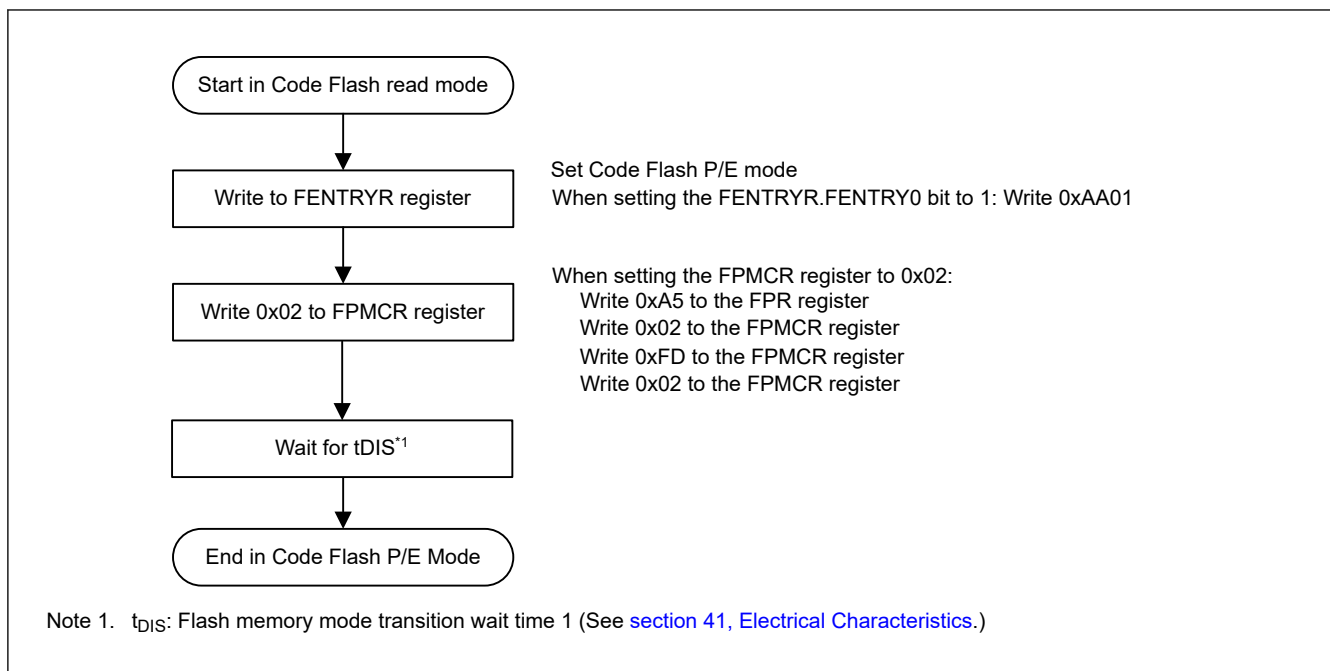


Figure 38.15 Procedure for changing from read mode to code flash P/E mode

It is necessary to enter the data flash P/E mode by setting the FENTRYD bit of the FENTRYR register before executing the software command for the data flash. [Figure 38.16](#) shows the procedure for entering to the data flash P/E Mode.

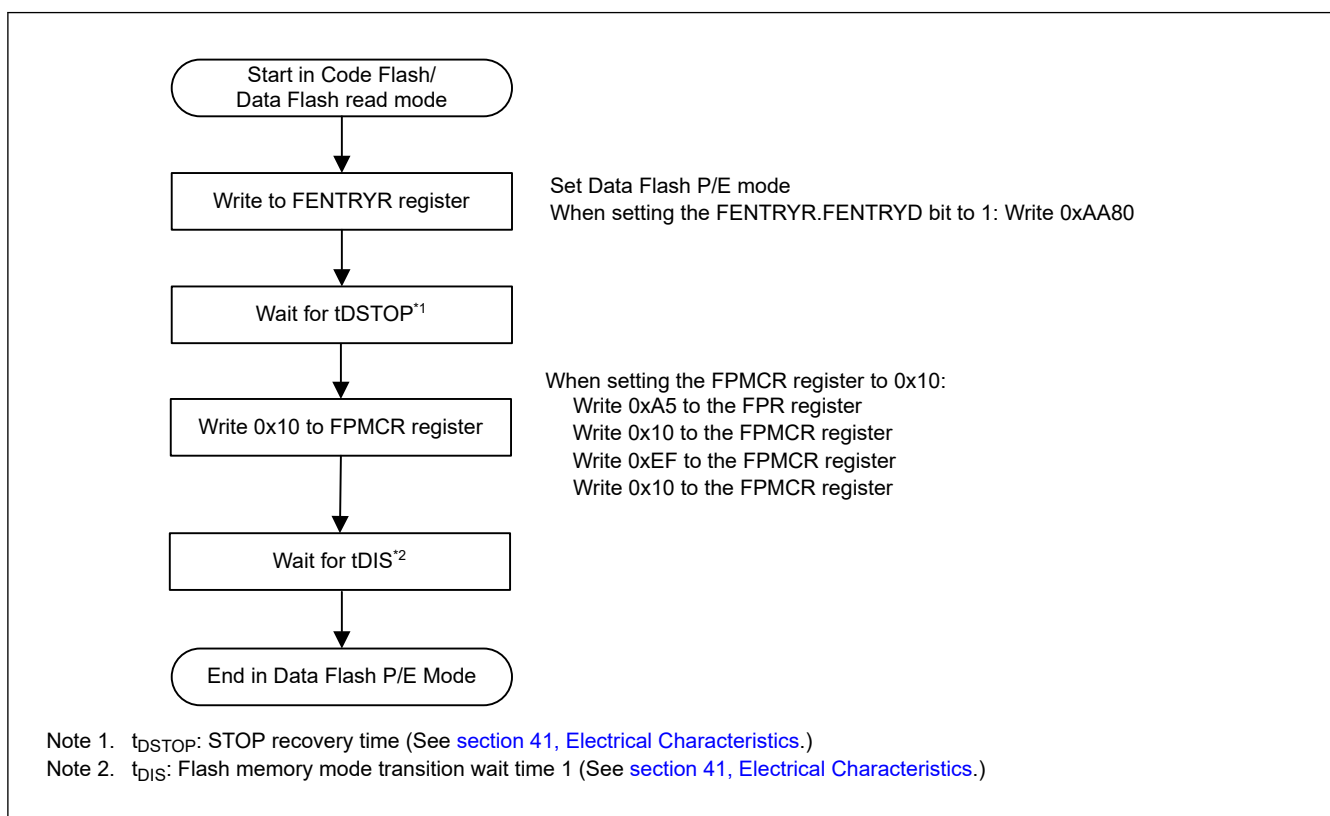
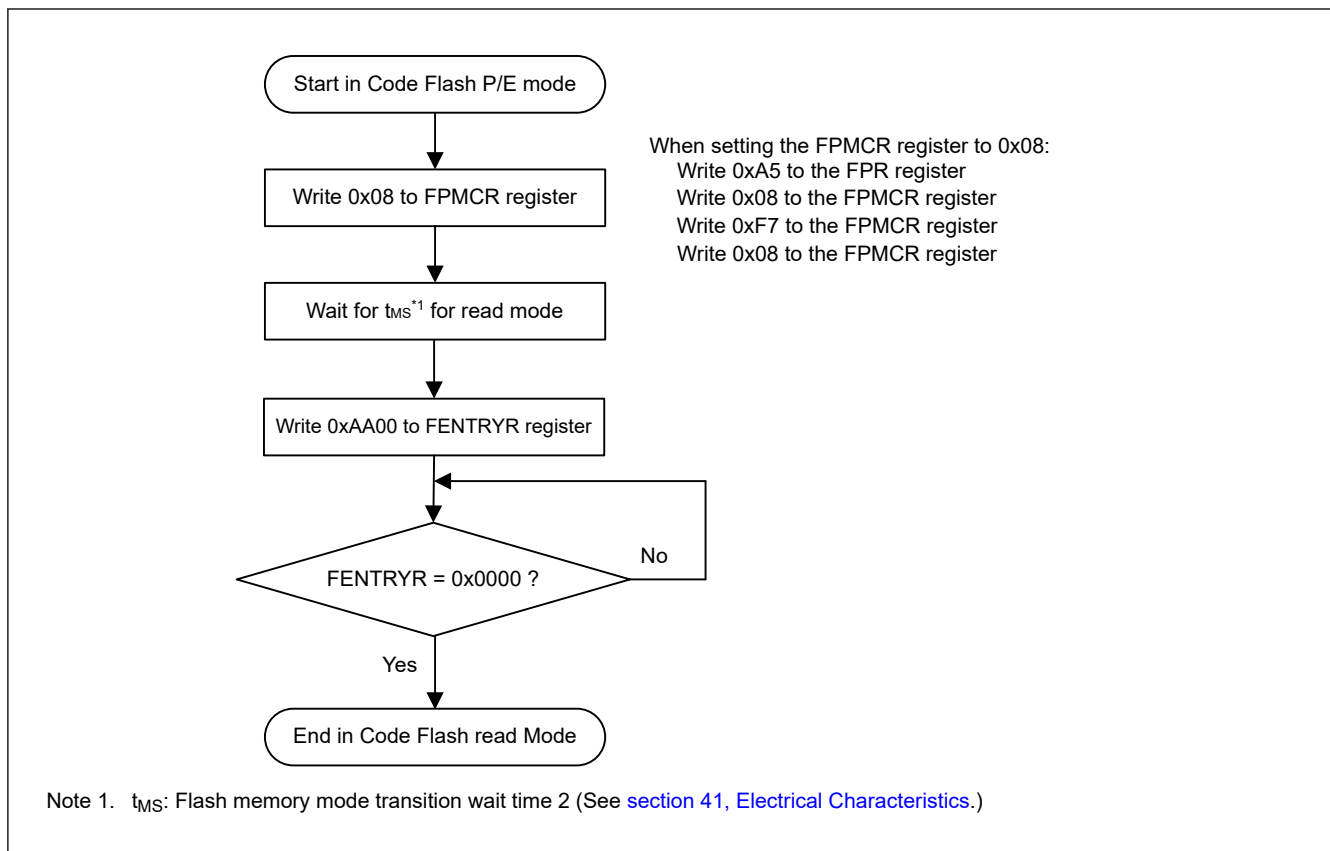


Figure 38.16 Procedure for changing from read mode to data flash P/E mode

(3) Switching the code flash or data flash P/E mode to read mode

**Figure 38.17** Procedure for changing from code flash P/E mode to read mode

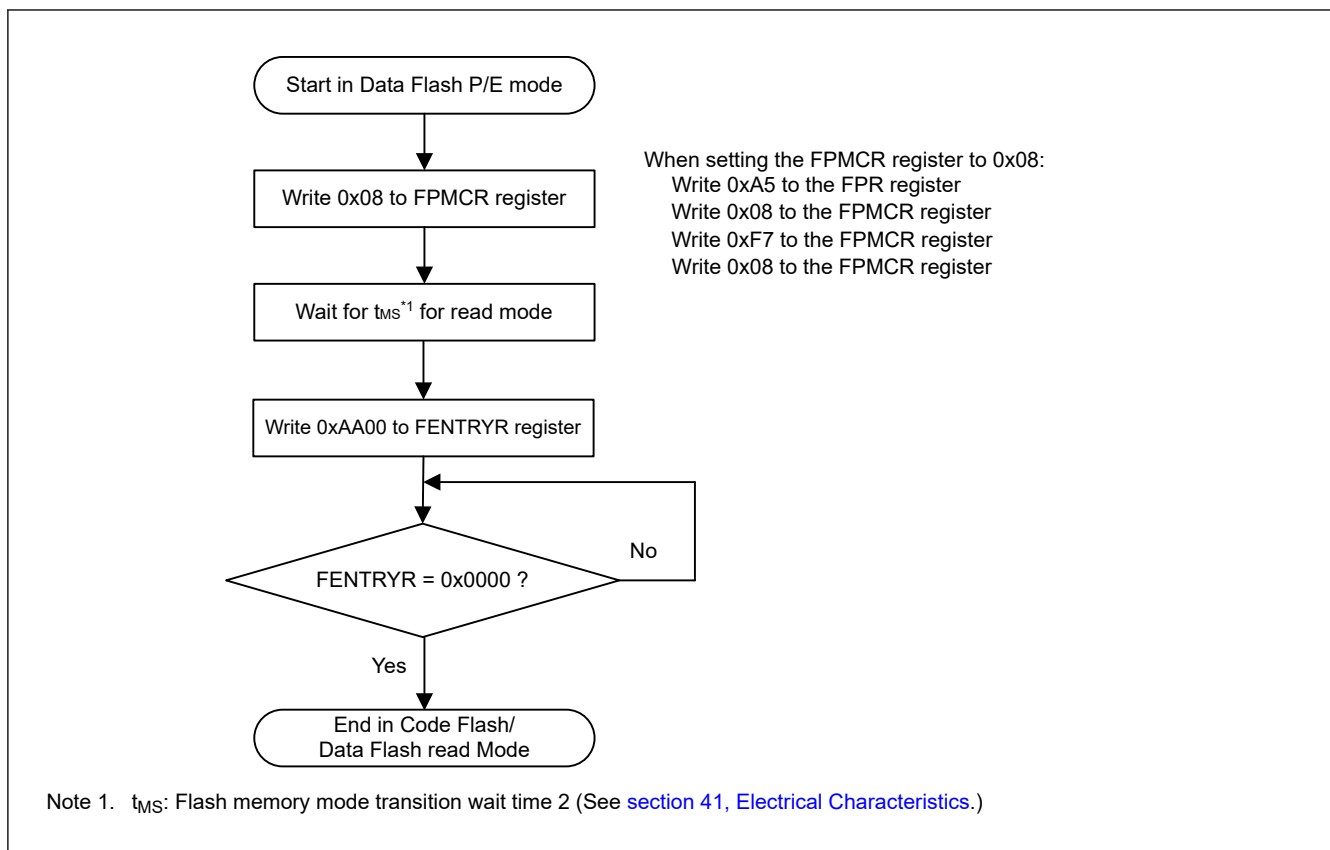


Figure 38.18 Procedure for changing from data flash P/E mode to read mode

(4) Flowchart for programming the code flash or data flash

The following figures describe the flow for programming the code flash or the data flash.

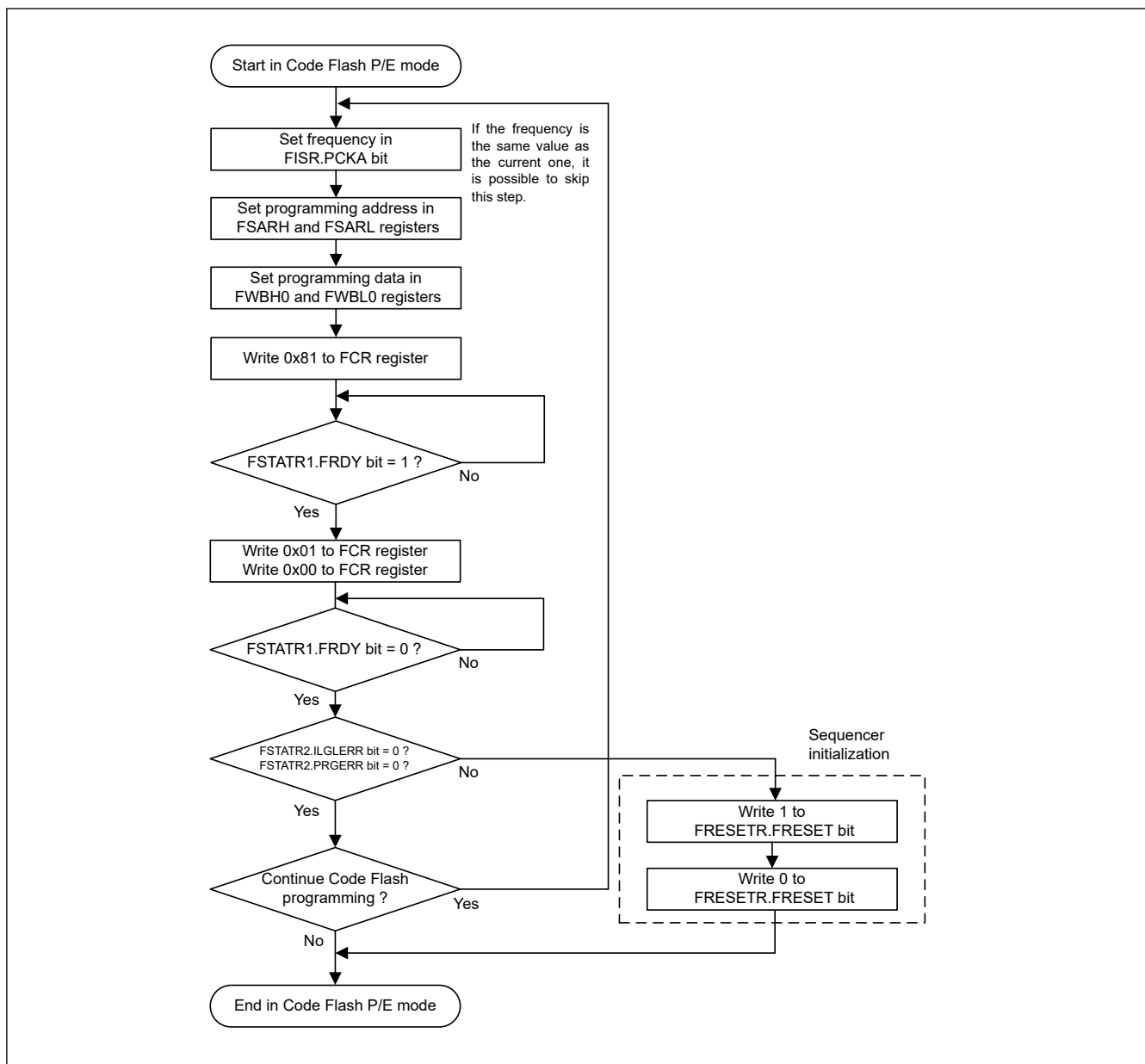


Figure 38.19 Flowchart for programming of the code flash

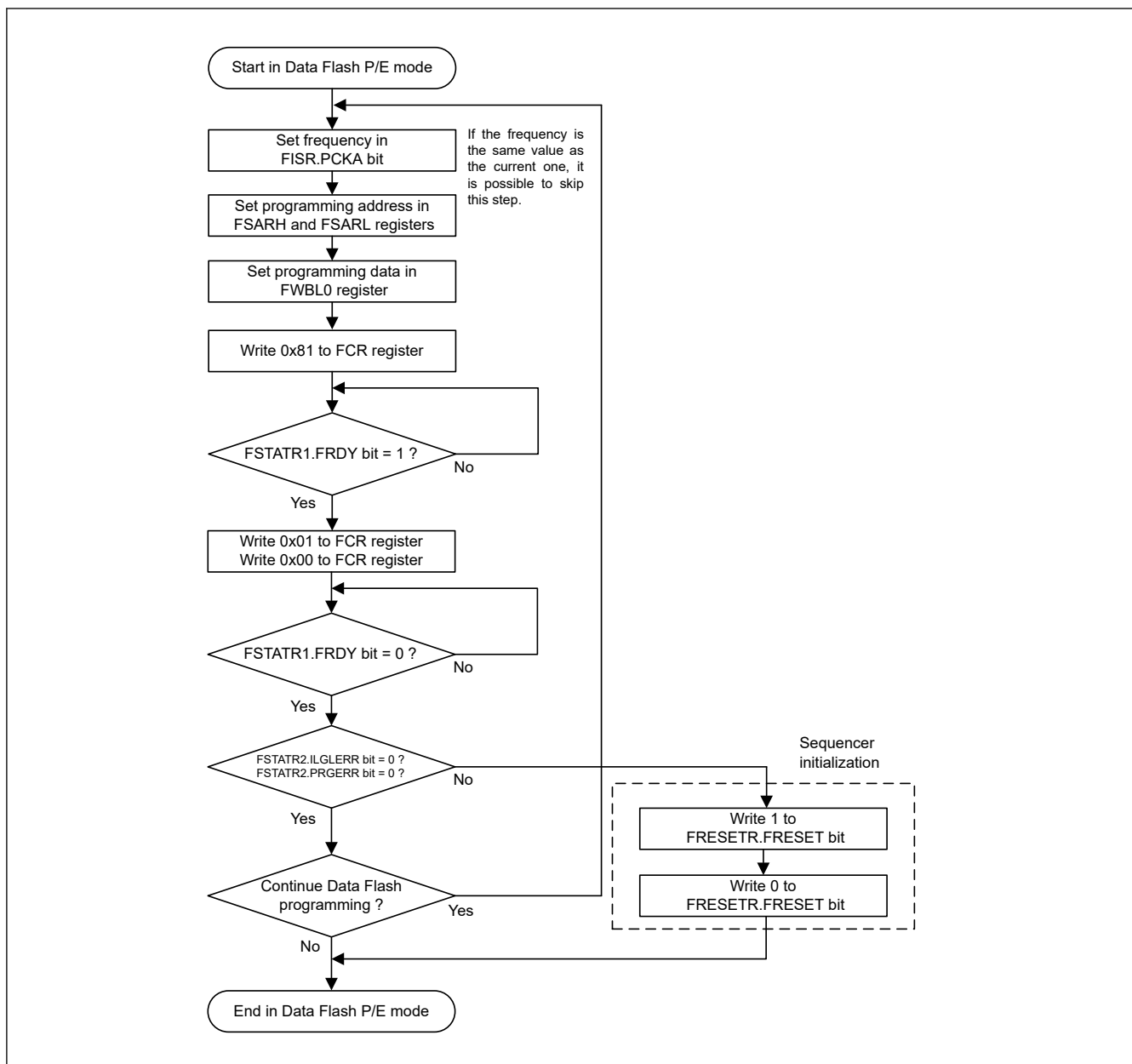


Figure 38.20 Flowchart for programming of the data flash

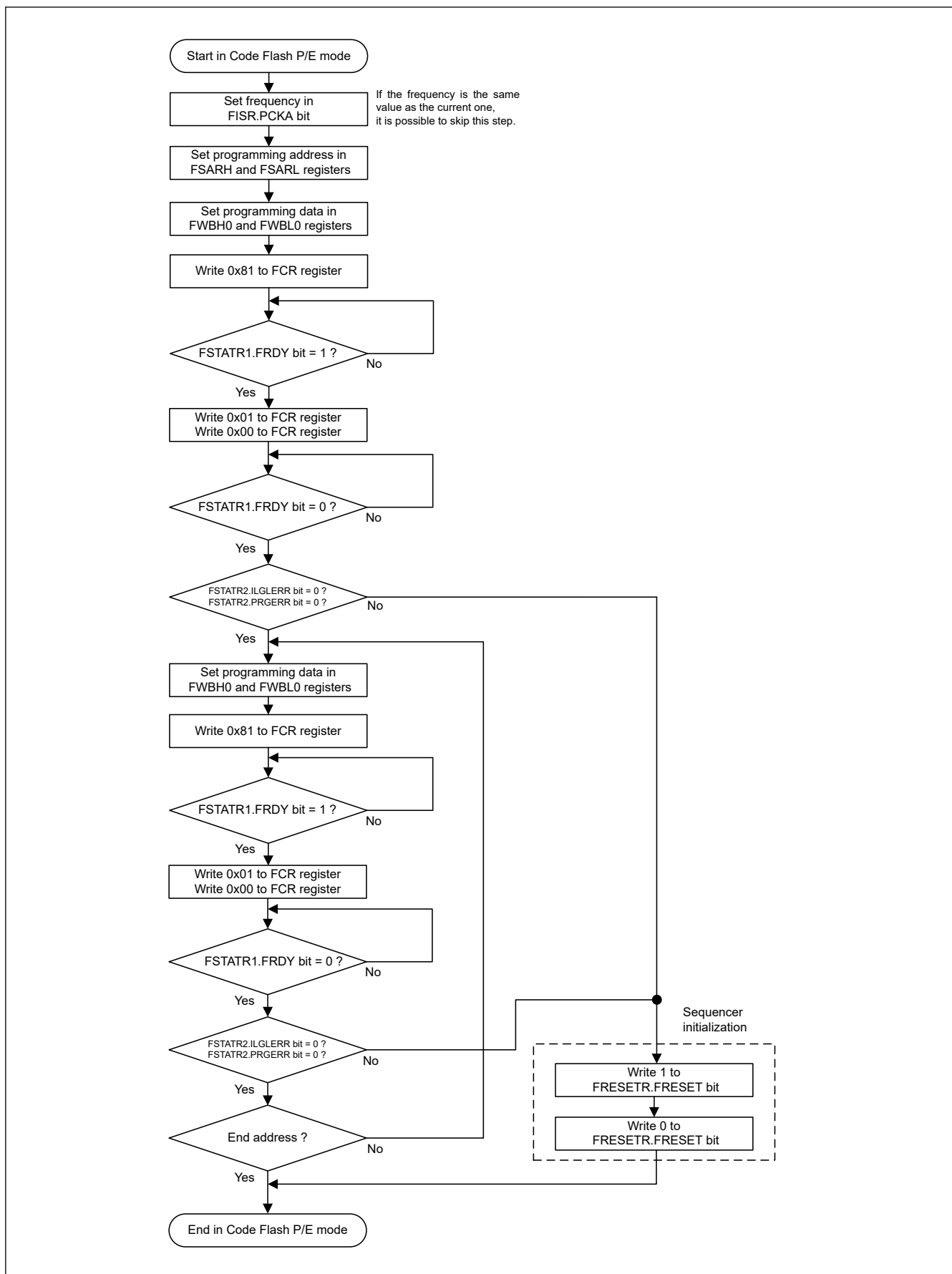


Figure 38.21 Flowchart for consecutive programming of the code flash

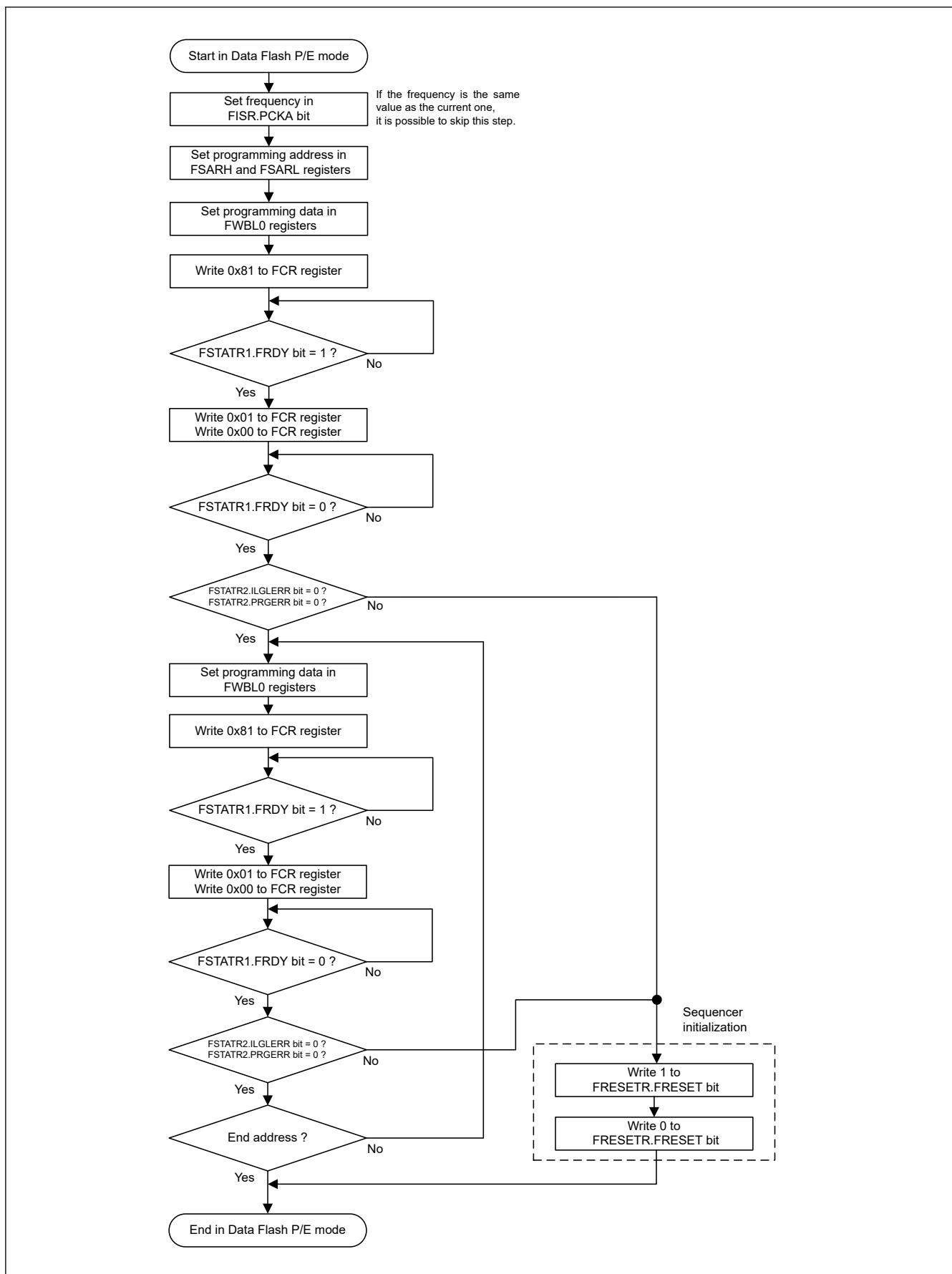


Figure 38.22 Flowchart for consecutive programming of the data flash

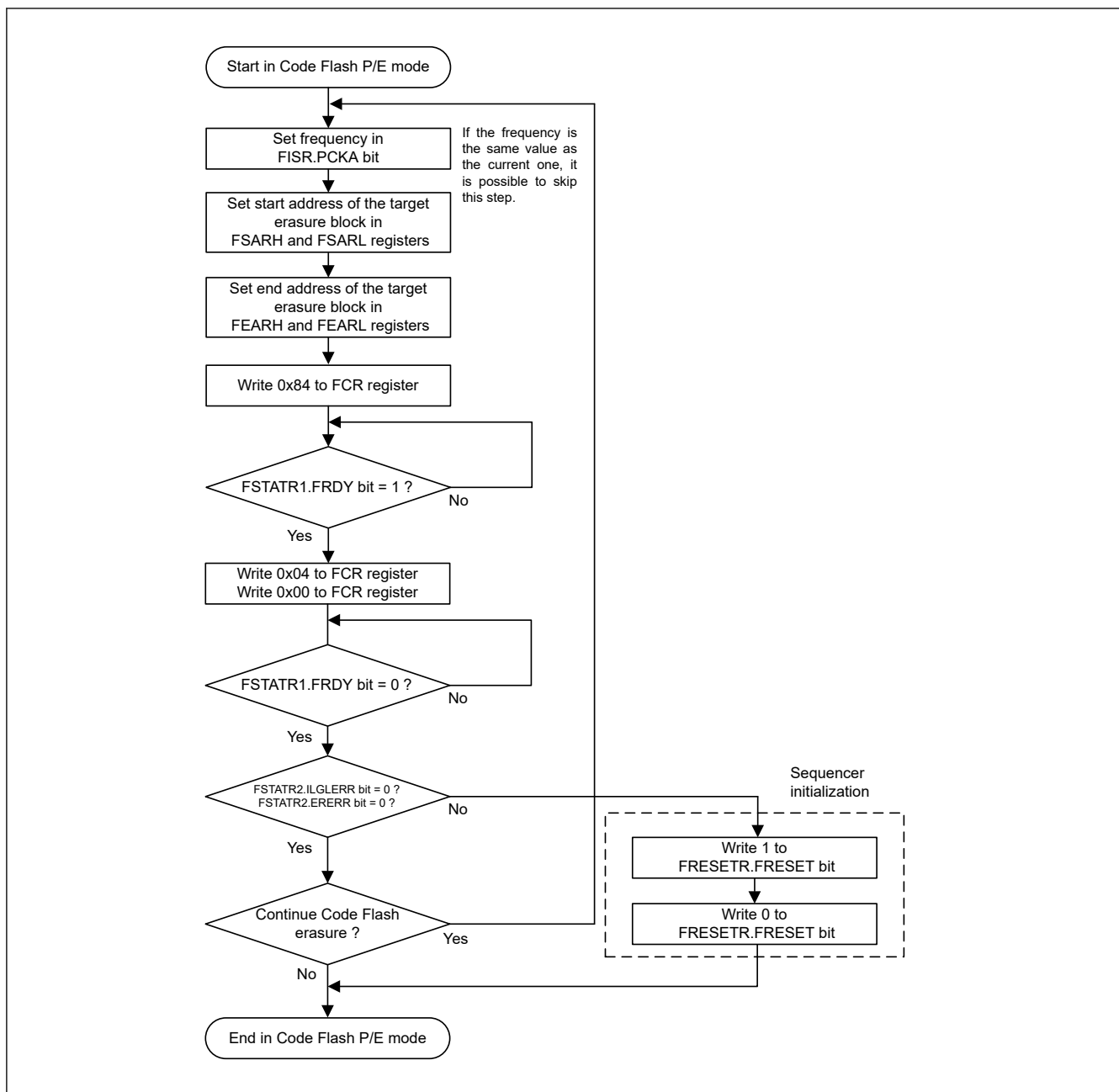


Figure 38.23 Flowchart for the code flash block erase procedure

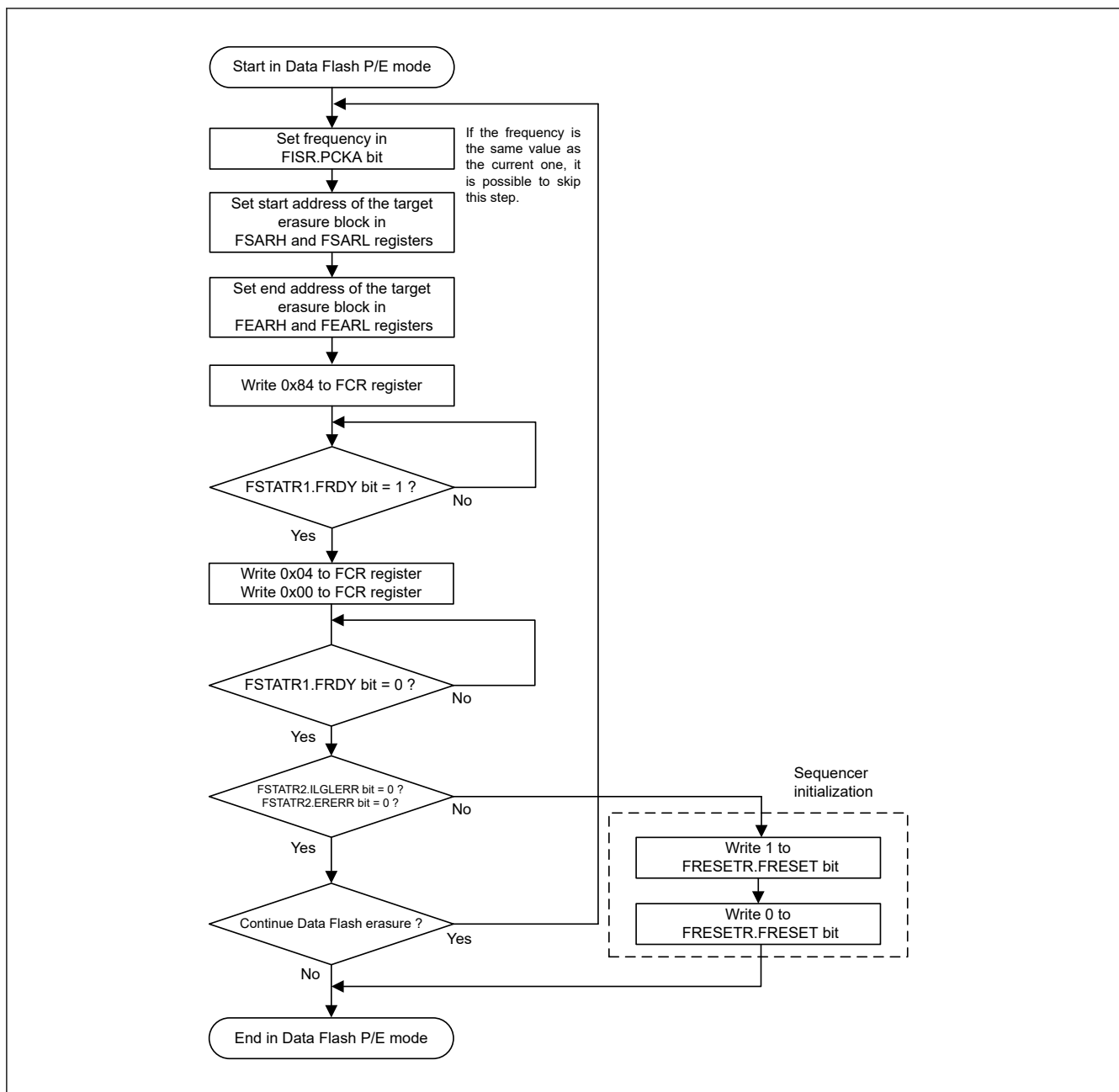


Figure 38.24 Flowchart for the data flash block erase procedure

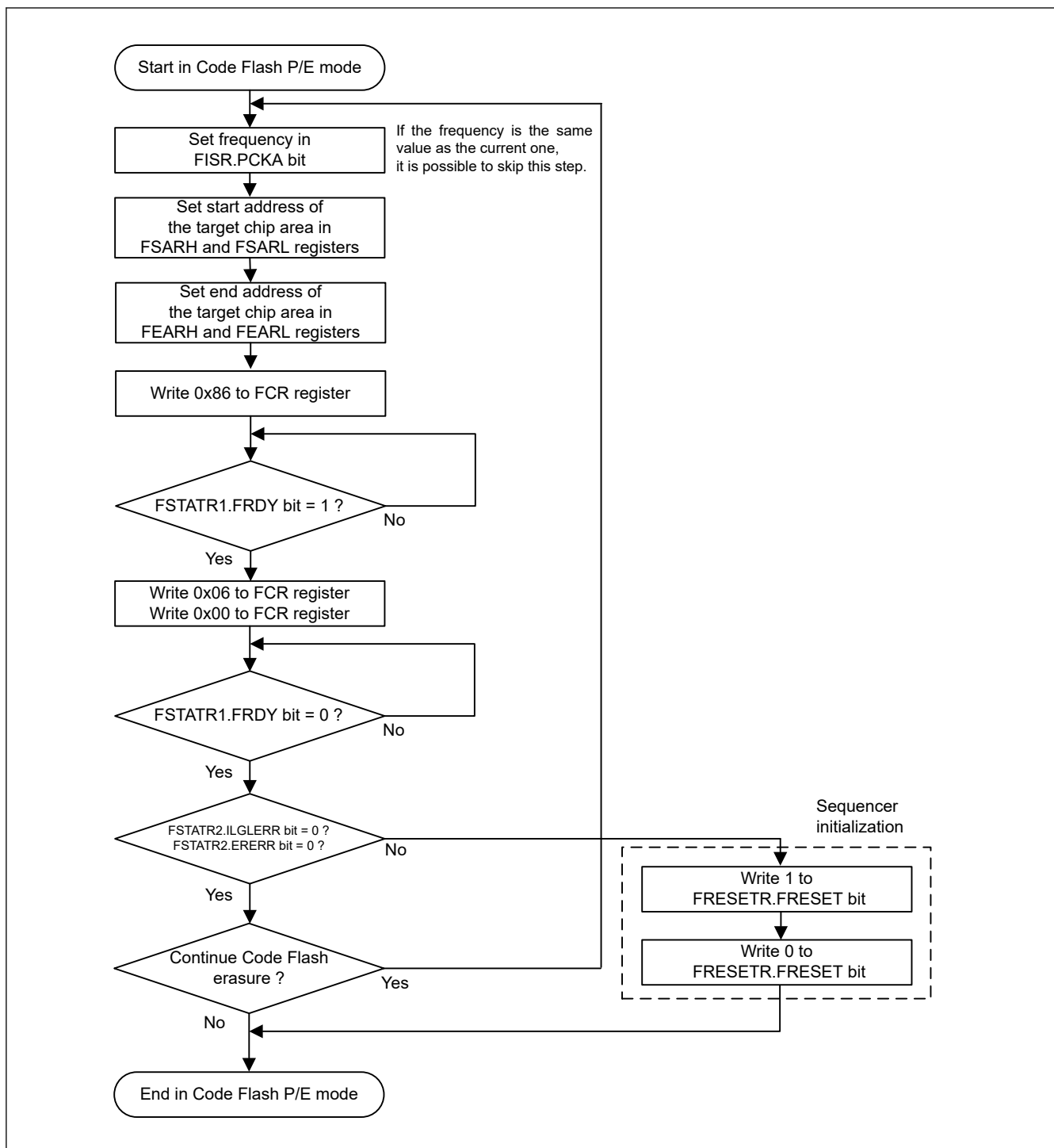


Figure 38.25 Flowchart for the code flash chip erase procedure

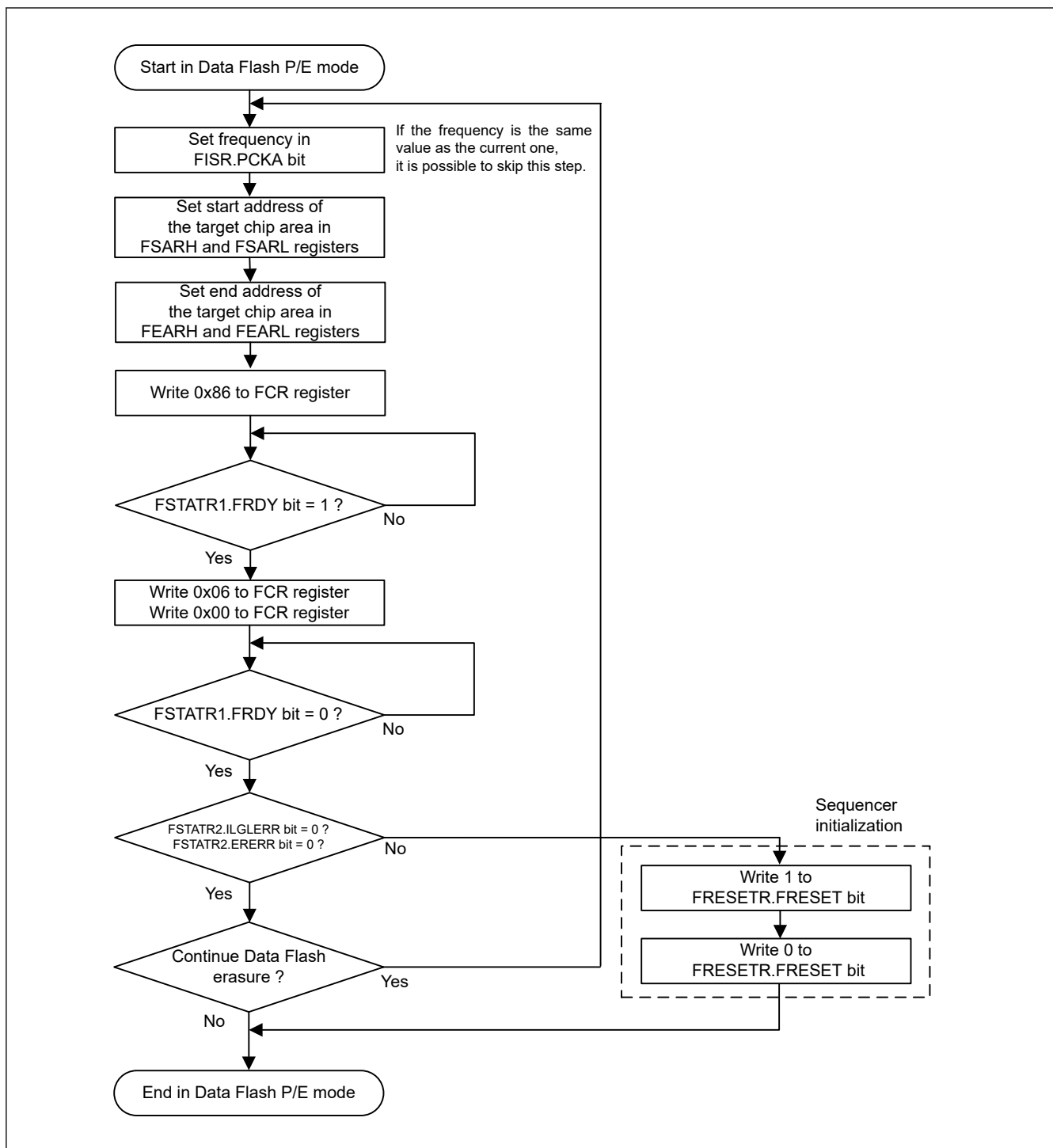


Figure 38.26 Flowchart for the data flash chip erase procedure

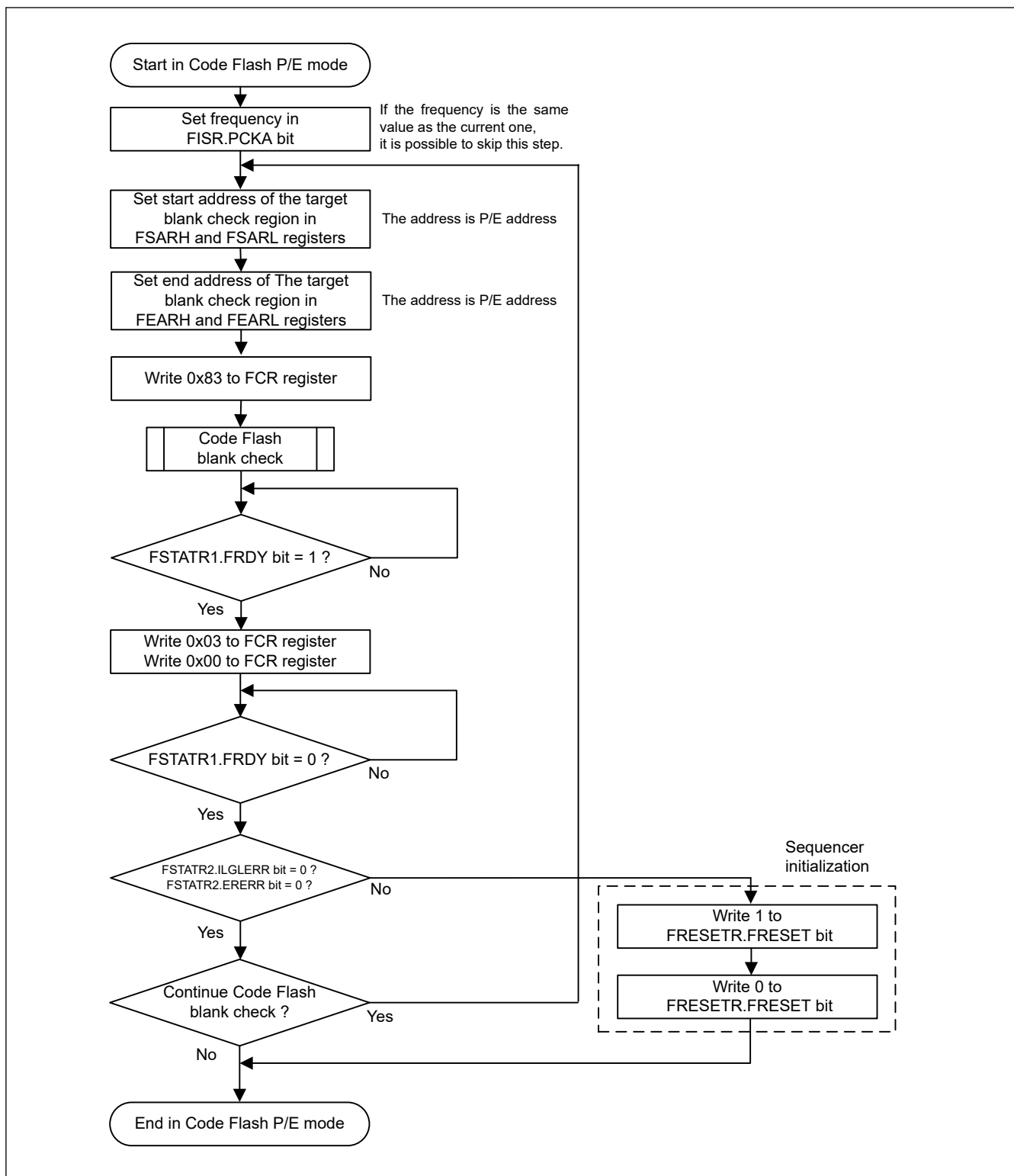


Figure 38.27 Flowchart for the code flash blank check procedure

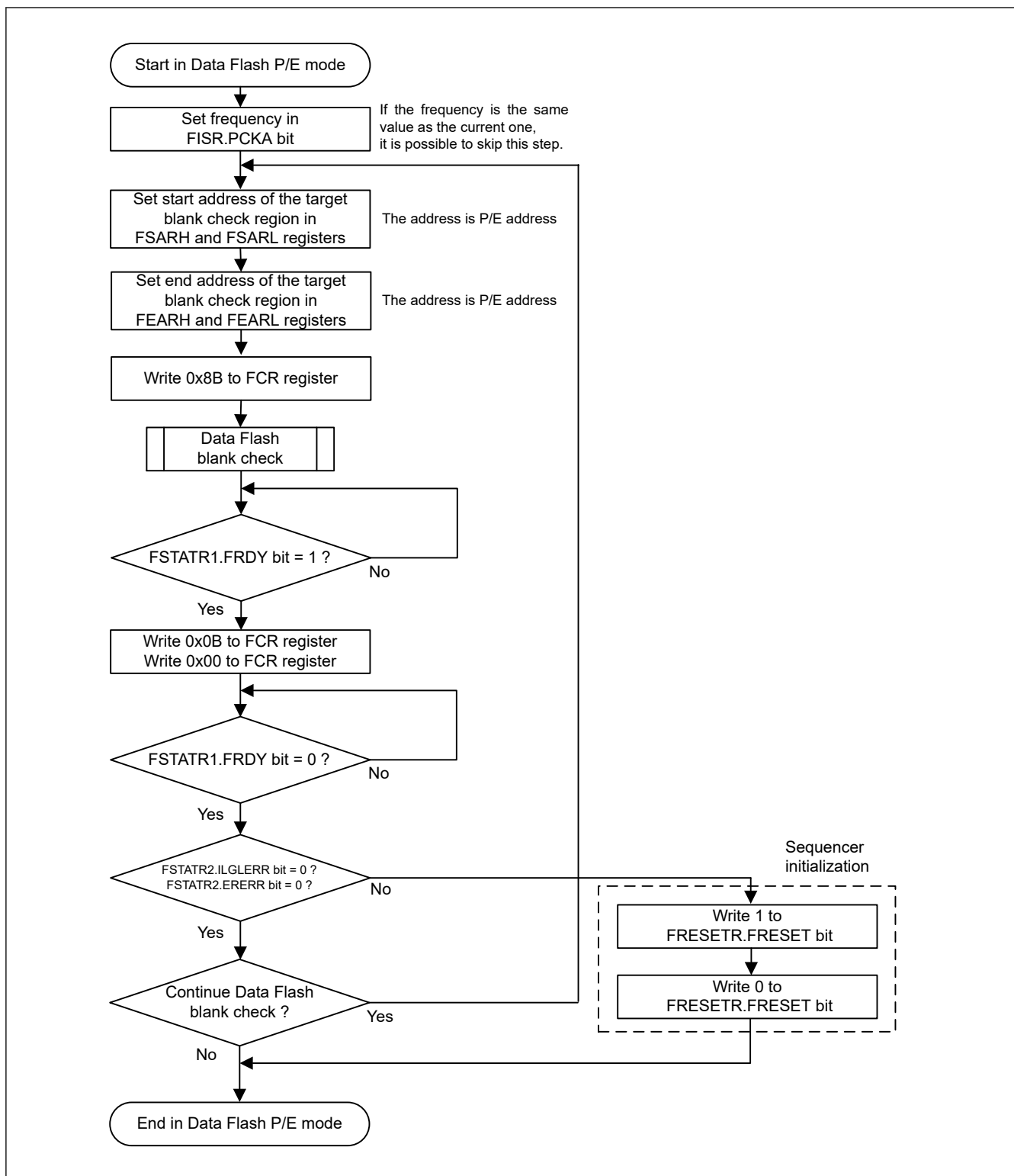
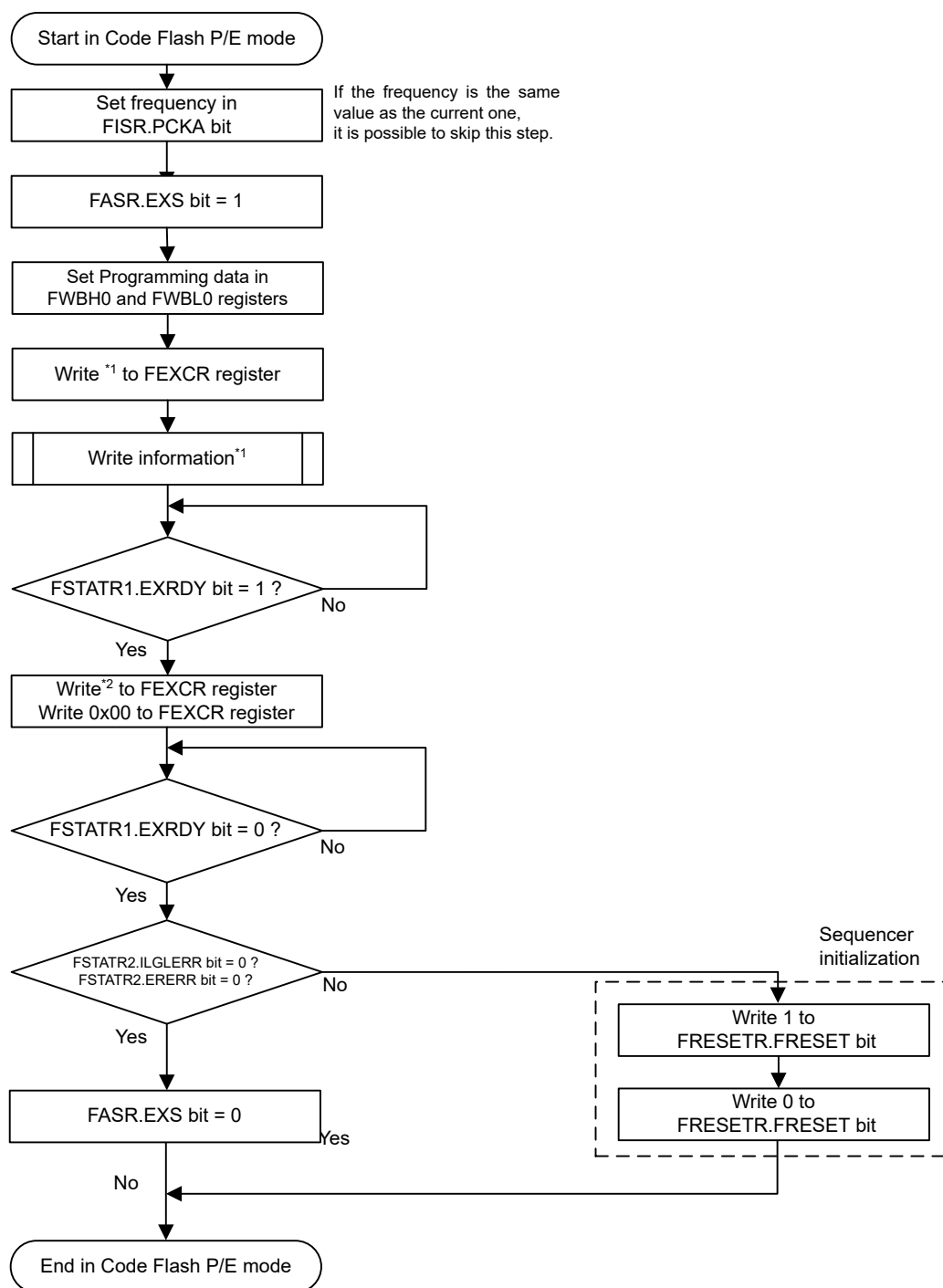


Figure 38.28 Flowchart for the data flash blank check procedure

- (5) Startup area information, FSPR program/access window information and program/OCDID information program

Figure 38.29 is a simple flowchart of the procedure for the startup area information and FSPR program/access window information program/OCDID information program.



Note: Order of the FSPR Bit Setting by Startup Area Information and FSPR Program

Note 1. Write data :

0x81 : Reserved

0x82 : start-up area information and FSPR bit access window information

0x83 : OCDID1 information

0x84 : OCDID2 information

0x85 : OCDID3 information

0x86 : OCDID4 information

Note 2. 0x0y (y = 1 to 6)

Figure 38.29 Simple flowchart for the procedure for Startup Area Information and FSPR Program/Access Window Information Program/OCDID information Program

Set the FSPR bit after programming of the startup area information and the access window information. If the FSPR bit is set before programming of the startup area information and the access window information, the programming cannot be performed because of the security function in the FSPR. When programming using the hex file, programming is in the ascending order of the address. In this case, the FSPR bit is written before the access window information. Therefore, divide the hex file for FSPR into another file, and use it after setting the access window information.

(6) Consecutive read

Figure 38.30 shows a simple flowchart for the consecutive read procedure.

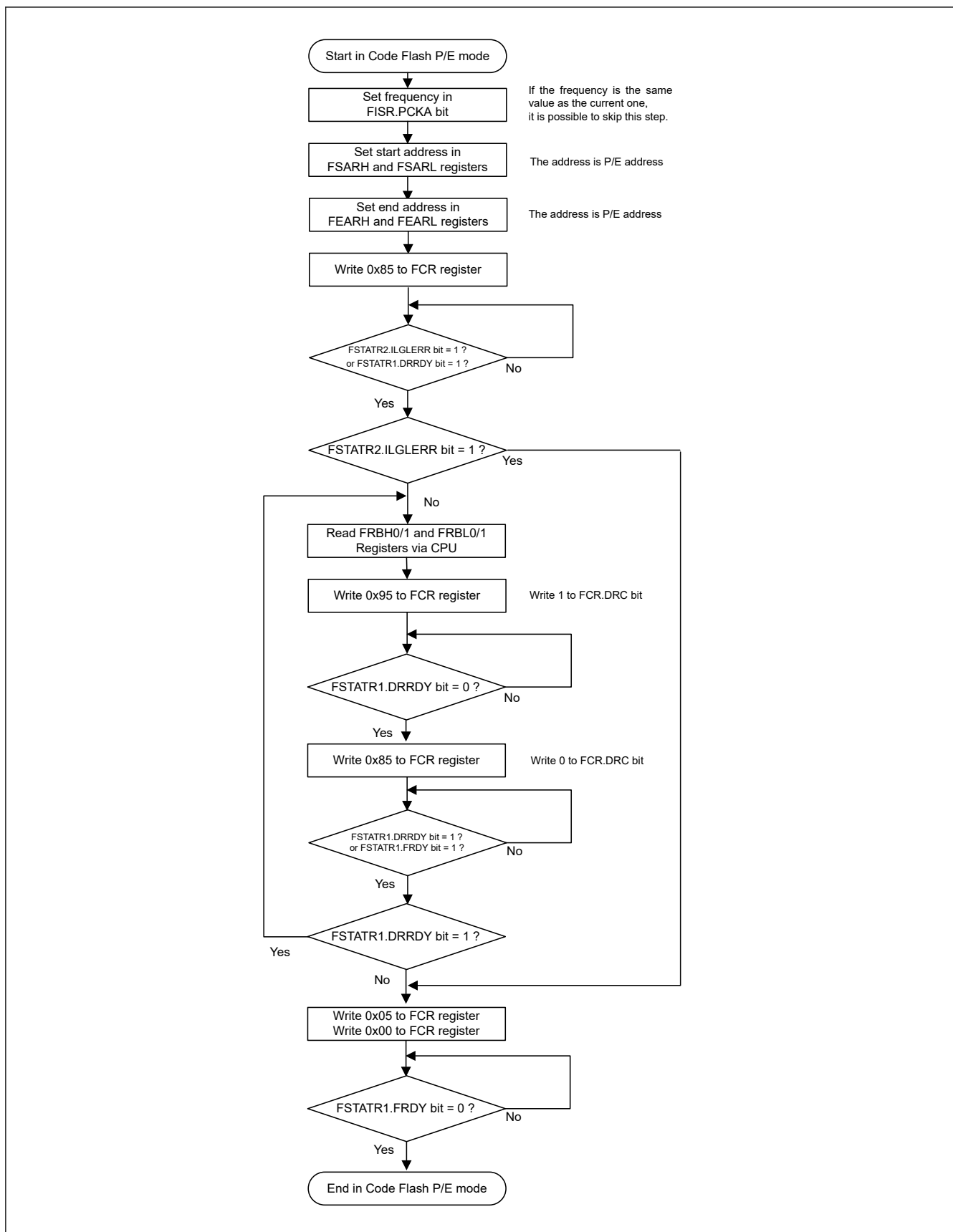


Figure 38.30 Simple flowchart for the consecutive read procedure

(7) Forced stop by software command

Figure 38.31 shows a simple flowchart for the forced stop procedure to stop the blank check command, the block erase, or the chip erase command forcibly. When the forced stop command is executed, FEAMH/FEAML registers store the stopped address value. For the blank check command, the blank check can restart from the stopped address by copying the value of FEAMH/FEAML registers to FSARH/FSARL registers, respectively.

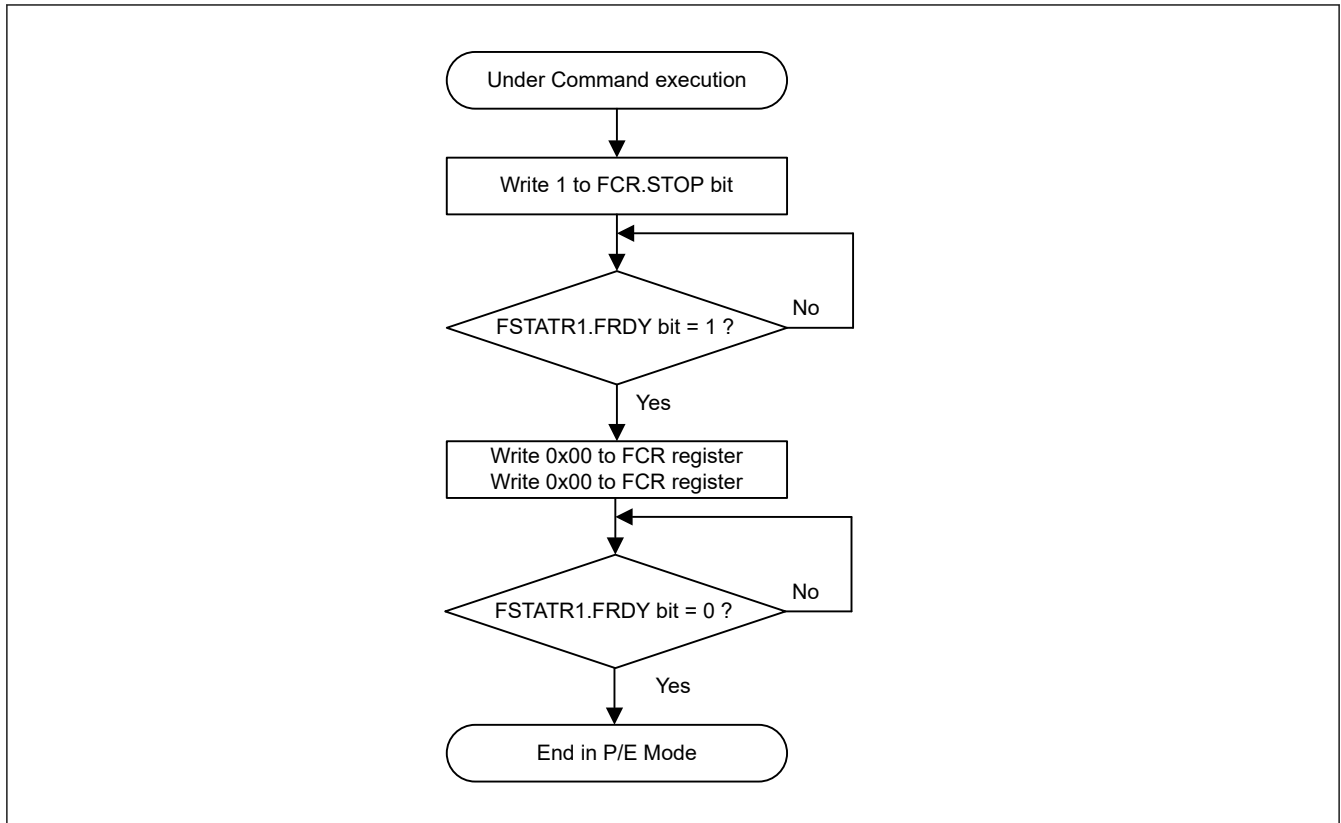


Figure 38.31 Simple flowchart for the forced stop procedure

38.14 Reading the Flash Memory

38.14.1 Reading the Code Flash Memory

No special settings are required to read the code flash memory in Normal mode. Data can be read by accessing the addresses in the code flash memory. When reading code flash memory that is erased but not yet reprogrammed, such as code flash memory in the nonprogrammed state, all bits are read as 1s.

38.14.2 Reading the Data Flash Memory

No special settings are required to read the data flash memory in Normal mode except when issuing a reset that causes the data flash access disable mode to disable reading. In this case, the application must transfer back to the data flash read mode. When reading data flash memory that is erased but not yet reprogrammed, such as data flash in the nonprogrammed state, all bits are read as 1s.

38.15 Usage Notes

38.15.1 Erase Suspended Area

Data in areas where an erase operation is suspended is undefined. To avoid malfunctions caused by reading undefined data, do not execute commands and read data in the area where erase operation is suspended.

38.15.2 Constraints on Additional Writes

Other than the configuration area, no other area can be written to twice. After a write to a flash memory area is complete, erase the area before attempting to overwrite data in that area. The configuration area can be overwritten.

38.15.3 Reset During Programming and Erasure

If inputting a reset from the RES pin, release the reset after a reset input time of at least t_{RESW} . See [section 41.3.3. Reset Timing](#) within the range of the operating voltage defined in the electrical characteristics.

The IWDG reset and software reset do not require a t_{RESW} input time.

38.15.4 Non-maskable Interrupt Disabled During Programming and Erasure

When a non-maskable interrupt^{*1} occurs during a programming or erasure operation, the vectors are fetched from the code flash memory, and undefined data is read. Therefore, do not generate a non-maskable interrupt during programming and erasure operations in the code flash memory. This constraint applies only to the code flash memory.

Note 1. A non-maskable interrupt can be any of the following:

- NMI pin interrupt
- Oscillation stop detection interrupt
- WDT underflow or refresh error
- IWDG underflow or refresh error
- Voltage monitor 1 interrupt
- Voltage monitor 2 interrupt
- SRAM parity error
- MPU bus slave error
- MPU bus master error
- CPU stack pointer monitor

38.15.5 Location of Interrupt Vectors During Programming and Erasure

When an interrupt occurs during a programming and erasure operation, the vector can be fetched from the code flash memory as default setting. To avoid fetching the vector from the code flash memory, set the destination for fetching interrupt vectors to an area other than the code flash memory with the interrupt table.

38.15.6 Programming and Erasure in Subosc-speed Operating Mode

Do not program or erase the flash memory when subosc-speed operating mode is selected in the SOPCCR register for low-power consumption functions.

38.15.7 Abnormal Termination During Programming and Erasure

When the voltage exceeds the range of the operating voltage during a programming and erasure operation, or when a programming or erasure operation did not complete successfully because of a reset or prohibited actions as described in [section 38.15.8. Actions Prohibited During Programming and Erasure](#), erase the area again.

38.15.8 Actions Prohibited During Programming and Erasure

To prevent damage to the flash memory, comply with the following instructions during programming and erasure:

- Do not use an MCU power supply that is outside the operating voltage range
- Do not update the OPCCR.OPCM[1:0] bits value
- Do not update the SOPCCR.SOPCM bit value
- Do not change the division ratio of the system clock (ICLK)
- Do not place the MCU in Software Standby mode
- Do not access the data flash memory during a program or erase operation to the code flash memory

- Do not change the data flash access control setting during a program or erase operation to the data flash memory.

38.15.9 Flash-IF clock (ICLK) During Program/Erase

For programming/erasure by self-programming, it is necessary to specify an integer frequency by setting the Flash Initial Setting Register (FISR).

39. True Random Number Generator (TRNG)

39.1 Overview

Table 39.1 shows specifications of the TRNG (True Random Number Generator).

Table 39.1 TRNG specifications

Parameter	Description
Frequency	32 MHz (max)
SEED generation speed	0.1 to 10 Mbps of 32-bit SEED generation
Buffering	None
Interface	8-bit read + 8-bit write/1 clock

Encrypt the SEED generated by the TRNG to use it as a random number (true random number).

The data generated by testing a SEED itself and a random number which is generated from a SEED (using the continuous random number generator test described in NIST FIPS140-2) are the same by a fixed probability according to the bit length of the two generated random numbers.

The probability that a random number of a comparative target is identical in the n th bit (the theoretical value) is $1/2^n$.

Note: Regarding the public release of this information, a non-disclosure agreement is required. For details, contact your Renesas sales office.

40. Internal Voltage Regulator

40.1 Overview

The MCU includes one internal voltage regulator:

- Linear regulator (LDO)

This regulator supplies voltage to all internal circuits and memory except for I/O and analog domains.

40.2 Operation

Table 40.1 lists the LDO pin settings, and Figure 40.1 shows the LDO settings.

Table 40.1 LDO pin

Pins	Setting descriptions
All VCC	• Connect each pin to the system power supply. • Connect each pin to VSS through a 0.1-μF multilayer ceramic capacitor. Place the capacitor close to the pin.
VCL	Connect the pin to VSS through a 4.7- μ F multilayer ceramic capacitor. Place the capacitor close to the pin.

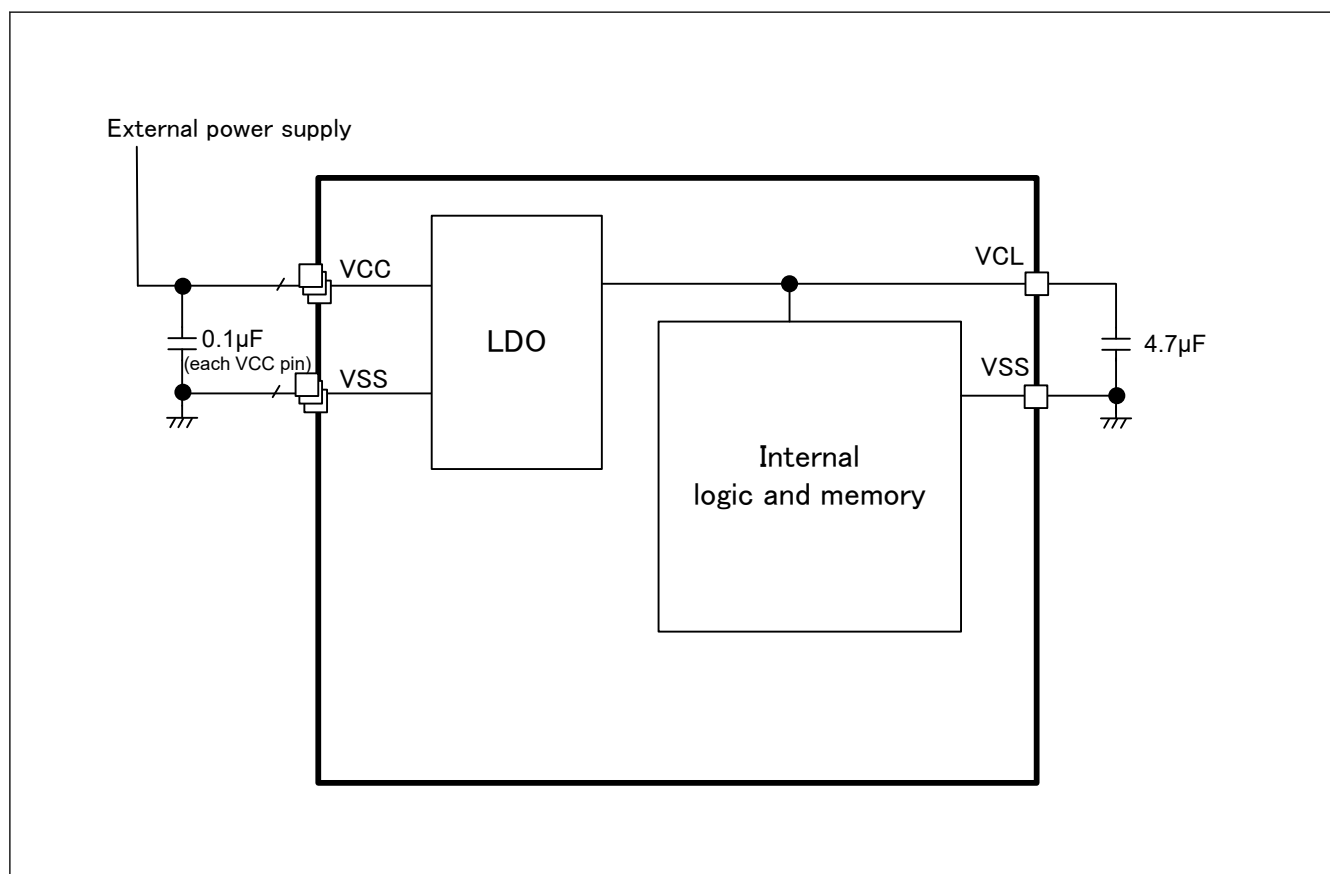


Figure 40.1 LDO settings

41. Electrical Characteristics

Unless otherwise specified, the electrical characteristics of the MCU are defined under the following conditions:

$VCC^{*1} = AVCC0 = 1.6$ to 5.5 V, $VREFH0 = 1.6$ V to $AVCC0$

$VSS = AVSS0 = VREFL0 = 0$ V, $T_a = T_{opr}$

Note 1. The typical condition is set to $VCC = 3.3$ V.

Figure 41.1 shows the timing conditions.

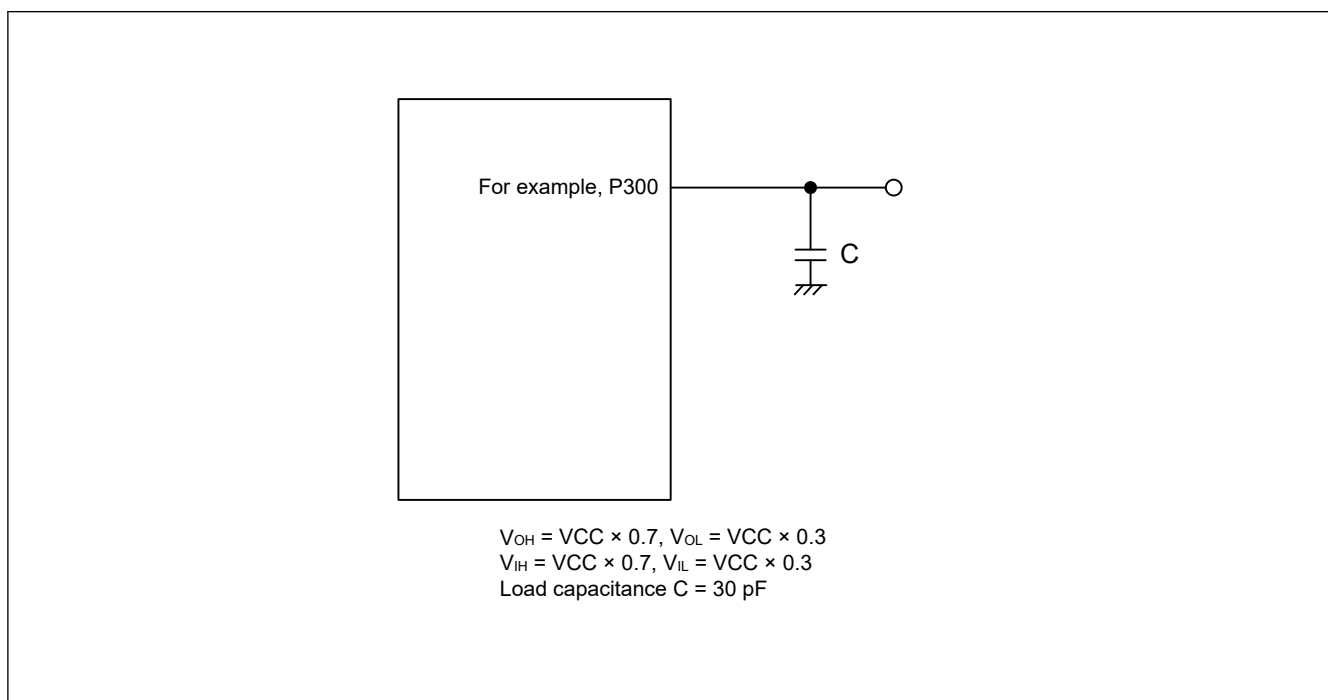


Figure 41.1 Input or output timing measurement conditions

The measurement conditions of the timing specifications for each peripheral are recommended for the best peripheral operation. However, make sure to adjust driving abilities for each pin to meet the conditions of your system.

Each function pin used for the same function must select the same drive ability. If the I/O drive ability of each function pin is mixed, the AC characteristics of each function are not guaranteed.

41.1 Absolute Maximum Ratings

Table 41.1 Absolute maximum ratings (1 of 2)

Parameter		Symbol	Value	Unit
Power supply voltage		VCC	-0.5 to +6.5	V
Input voltage	5 V-tolerant ports ^{*1}	V_{in}	-0.3 to +6.5	V
	P000 to P004, P010 to P015	V_{in}	-0.3 to $AVCC0 + 0.3$	V
	Others	V_{in}	-0.3 to $VCC + 0.3$	V
Reference power supply voltage		VREFH0	-0.3 to +6.5	V
Analog power supply voltage		AVCC0	-0.5 to +6.5	V
Analog input voltage	When AN000 to AN010 are used	V_{AN}	-0.3 to $AVCC0 + 0.3$	V
	When AN017 to AN022 are used		-0.3 to $VCC + 0.3$	V
Operating temperature ^{*2 *3 *4}		T_{opr}	-40 to +105 -40 to +125	°C

Table 41.1 Absolute maximum ratings (2 of 2)

Parameter	Symbol	Value	Unit
Storage temperature	T _{stg}	-55 to +140	°C

Note 1. Ports P400, P401, P407, P109, P110, P912, and P913 are 5 V-tolerant.

Note 2. See [section 41.2.1. Tj/Ta Definition](#).

Note 3. Contact Renesas Electronics sales office for information on derating operation under Ta = +105°C to +125°C.

Derating is the systematic reduction of load for improved reliability.

Note 4. The upper limit of the operating temperature is 105°C or 125°C, depending on the product. For details, see [section 1.3. Part Numbering](#).

Caution: Permanent damage to the MCU may result if absolute maximum ratings are exceeded.

To preclude any malfunctions due to noise interference, insert capacitors with high frequency characteristics between the VCC and VSS pins, between the AVCC0 and AVSS0 pins, and between the VREFH0 and VREFL0 pins when VREFH0 is selected as the high potential reference voltage for the ADC12. Place capacitors of the following value as close as possible to every power supply pin and use the shortest and heaviest possible traces:

- VCC and VSS: about 0.1 µF
- AVCC0 and AVSS0: about 0.1 µF
- VREFH0 and VREFL0: about 0.1 µF

Also, connect capacitors as stabilization capacitance.

Connect the VCL pin to a VSS pin by a 4.7 µF capacitor. Each capacitor must be placed close to the pin.

Table 41.2 Recommended operating conditions

Parameter	Symbol	Min	Typ	Max	Unit
Power supply voltages	VCC ^{*1 *2}	1.6	—	5.5	V
	VCC ^{*1 *2 *3}	3.0	—	3.6	V
	VSS	—	0	—	V
Analog power supply voltages	AVCC0 ^{*1 *2}	1.6	—	5.5	V
	AVSS0	—	0	—	V
	VREFH0	When used as ADC12 Reference	1.6	—	AVCC0 V
	VREFL0		—	0	— V

Note 1. Use AVCC0 and VCC under the following conditions:

AVCC0 = VCC

Note 2. When powering on the VCC and AVCC0 pins, power them on at the same time or the VCC pin first and then the AVCC0 pins.

When powering off the VCC and AVCC0 pins, power them off at the same time or the AVCC0 pin first and then the VCC pins.

Note 3. When using the USB 2.0 Full-Speed Module (USBFS) or the USB Type-C Interface.

41.2 DC Characteristics

41.2.1 Tj/Ta Definition

Table 41.3 DC characteristics

Conditions: Products with operating temperature (Ta) -40 to +125°C

Parameter	Symbol	Typ	Max	Unit	Test conditions
Permissible junction temperature	Tj	—	140	°C	High-speed mode Middle-speed mode Low-speed mode Subosc-speed mode
			125 ^{*1}		

Note: Make sure that $T_j = T_a + \theta_{ja} \times \text{total power consumption (W)}$, where total power consumption = $(V_{CC} - V_{OH}) \times \Sigma I_{OH} + V_{OL} \times \Sigma I_{OL} + I_{CCmax} \times V_{CC}$.

Note 1. The upper limit of operating temperature is 125°C or 140°C, depending on the product. For details, see [section 1.3. Part Numbering](#). If the part number shows the operation temperature at 105°C, then the maximum value of Tj is 125°C, otherwise it is 140°C.

41.2.2 I/O V_{IH} , V_{IL} **Table 41.4** I/O V_{IH} , V_{IL}

Conditions: VCC = AVCC0 = 1.6 to 5.5 V

Parameter	Ports & Functions		Symbol	Min	Max	Unit	Test conditions
Input voltage	Input ports pins P000 to P004, P010 to P015		V_{IH}	$AVCC0 \times 0.8$	—	V	—
			V_{IL}	—	$AVCC0 \times 0.2$		
			V_{IH}	$VCC \times 0.8$	—		
			V_{IL}	—	$VCC \times 0.2$		
		EXTAL	V_{IH}	$VCC \times 0.8$	—		
			V_{IL}	—	$VCC \times 0.2$		
	5 V-tolerant ports ^{*2}		V_{IH}	$VCC \times 0.8$	5.8		
			V_{IL}	—	$VCC \times 0.2$		
	RES, NMI, IRQ		V_{IH}	$VCC \times 0.8$	—		
			V_{IL}	—	$VCC \times 0.2$		
		ΔV_T ^{*4}		$VCC \times 0.10$	—		VCC = 2.7 to 5.5 V
				$VCC \times 0.05$	—		VCC = 1.6 to 2.7 V
	Peripheral functions	AGT, GPT, SPI, Others ^{*3}	V_{IH}	$VCC \times 0.8$	—		—
			V_{IL}	—	$VCC \times 0.2$		
			ΔV_T ^{*4}	$VCC \times 0.10$	—		VCC = 2.7 to 5.5 V
				$VCC \times 0.05$	—		VCC = 1.6 to 2.7 V
		I3C (except for SMBus) ^{*1}	V_{IH}	$VCC \times 0.7$	5.8		—
			V_{IL}	—	$VCC \times 0.3$		
			ΔV_T ^{*4}	$VCC \times 0.10$	—		VCC = 2.7 to 5.5 V
				$VCC \times 0.05$	—		VCC = 1.6 to 2.7 V
		I3C (SMBu s) ^{*1}	V_{IH}	2.2	—		VCC = 3.6 to 5.5 V
			V_{IL}	2.0	—		VCC = 2.7 to 3.6 V
			V_{IL}	—	0.8		VCC = 3.6 to 5.5 V
			V_{IL}	—	0.5		VCC = 2.7 to 3.6 V

Note 1. SCL0_A, SDA0_A, SCL0_B, SDA0_B, SCL0_C, SDA0_C (total 6 pins)

Note 2. P400, P401, P407, P109, P110, P912, and P913 (total 7 pins)

Note 3. See [section 17.6. Peripheral Select Settings for Each Product](#).Note 4. I/O port with ΔV_T has Schmitt Trigger capability when PMR = 1 or ISEL = 1. For peripheral selection, see [section 17.6. Peripheral Select Settings for Each Product](#).

41.2.3 I/O I_{OH} , I_{OL} **Table 41.5** I/O I_{OH} , I_{OL} (1 of 4)

Conditions: VCC = AVCC0 = 1.6 to 5.5 V

Parameter		Symbol	Min	Typ	Max	Unit	Test conditions
Permissible output current (max value per pin)	Ports P000 to P004, P010 to P015, P212, P213, P407	I_{OH}	—	—	-4.0	mA	—
		I_{OL}	—	—	8.0	mA	—
	Ports P400, P401, P109, P110, P912 and P913	I_{OH}	—	—	-8.0	mA	—
		I_{OL}	—	—	15.0	mA	—
	Other output pins*1	I_{OH}	—	—	-4.0	mA	—
		I_{OL}	—	—	20.0	mA	—

Table 41.5 I/O I_{OH} , I_{OL} (2 of 4)

Conditions: VCC = AVCC0 = 1.6 to 5.5 V

Parameter			Symbol	Min	Typ	Max	Unit	Test conditions
Permissible output current (max value total pins)* ²	64 pin products	Total of ports P000 to P004, P010 to P015	$\Sigma I_{OH} (max)$	—	—	-30	mA	AVCC0 = 2.7 to 5.5 V
				—	—	-8		AVCC0 = 1.8 to 2.7 V
				—	—	-4		AVCC0 = 1.6 to 1.8 V
			$\Sigma I_{OL} (max)$	—	—	50		AVCC0 = 2.7 to 5.5 V
				—	—	4		AVCC0 = 1.8 to 2.7 V
				—	—	2		AVCC0 = 1.6 to 1.8 V
		Total of ports P212, P213	$\Sigma I_{OH} (max)$	—	—	-8	mA	VCC = 2.7 to 5.5 V
				—	—	-2		VCC = 1.8 to 2.7 V
				—	—	-1		VCC = 1.6 to 1.8 V
			$\Sigma I_{OL} (max)$	—	—	16.0		VCC = 2.7 to 5.5 V
				—	—	1.2		VCC = 1.8 to 2.7 V
				—	—	0.6		VCC = 1.6 to 1.8 V
		Total of ports P204 to P207, P400 to P403, P407 to P411, P912, P913	$\Sigma I_{OH} (max)$	—	—	-30	mA	VCC = 2.7 to 5.5 V
				—	—	-8		VCC = 1.8 to 2.7 V
				—	—	-4		VCC = 1.6 to 1.8 V
			$\Sigma I_{OL} (max)$	—	—	50		VCC = 2.7 to 5.5 V
				—	—	4		VCC = 1.8 to 2.7 V
				—	—	2		VCC = 1.6 to 1.8 V
		Total of ports P100 to P113, P201, P300 to P304, P500 to P502	$\Sigma I_{OH} (max)$	—	—	-30	mA	VCC = 2.7 to 5.5 V
				—	—	-8		VCC = 1.8 to 2.7 V
				—	—	-4		VCC = 1.6 to 1.8 V
			$\Sigma I_{OL} (max)$	—	—	50		VCC = 2.7 to 5.5 V
				—	—	4		VCC = 1.8 to 2.7 V
				—	—	2		VCC = 1.6 to 1.8 V
		Total of all output pin	$\Sigma I_{OH} (max)$	—	—	-60	mA	—
			$\Sigma I_{OL} (max)$	—	—	100		—

Table 41.5 I/O I_{OH} , I_{OL} (3 of 4)

Conditions: VCC = AVCC0 = 1.6 to 5.5 V

Parameter			Symbol	Min	Typ	Max	Unit	Test conditions
Permissible output current (max value total pins)* ²	48 pin products	Total of ports P000 to P002, P010 to P015	$\Sigma I_{OH} (max)$	—	—	-30	mA	AVCC0 = 2.7 to 5.5 V
				—	—	-8		AVCC0 = 1.8 to 2.7 V
				—	—	-4		AVCC0 = 1.6 to 1.8 V
			$\Sigma I_{OL} (max)$	—	—	50		AVCC0 = 2.7 to 5.5 V
				—	—	4		AVCC0 = 1.8 to 2.7 V
				—	—	2		AVCC0 = 1.6 to 1.8 V
		Total of ports P212, P213	$\Sigma I_{OH} (max)$	—	—	-8	mA	VCC = 2.7 to 5.5 V
				—	—	-2		VCC = 1.8 to 2.7 V
				—	—	-1		VCC = 1.6 to 1.8 V
			$\Sigma I_{OL} (max)$	—	—	16.0		VCC = 2.7 to 5.5 V
				—	—	1.2		VCC = 1.8 to 2.7 V
				—	—	0.6		VCC = 1.6 to 1.8 V
		Total of ports P206, P207, P400, P401, P407 to P409, P912, P913	$\Sigma I_{OH} (max)$	—	—	-30	mA	VCC = 2.7 to 5.5 V
				—	—	-8		VCC = 1.8 to 2.7 V
				—	—	-4		VCC = 1.6 to 1.8 V
			$\Sigma I_{OL} (max)$	—	—	50		VCC = 2.7 to 5.5 V
				—	—	4		VCC = 1.8 to 2.7 V
				—	—	2		VCC = 1.6 to 1.8 V
		Total of ports P100 to P104, P108 to P112, P201, P300 to P302, P500	$\Sigma I_{OH} (max)$	—	—	-30	mA	VCC = 2.7 to 5.5 V
				—	—	-8		VCC = 1.8 to 2.7 V
				—	—	-4		VCC = 1.6 to 1.8 V
			$\Sigma I_{OL} (max)$	—	—	50		VCC = 2.7 to 5.5 V
				—	—	4		VCC = 1.8 to 2.7 V
				—	—	2		VCC = 1.6 to 1.8 V
		Total of all output pin	$\Sigma I_{OH} (max)$	—	—	-60	mA	—
			$\Sigma I_{OL} (max)$	—	—	100		—

Table 41.5 I/O I_{OH} , I_{OL} (4 of 4)

Conditions: VCC = AVCC0 = 1.6 to 5.5 V

Parameter			Symbol	Min	Typ	Max	Unit	Test conditions
Permissible output current (max value total pins)* ²	32 pin products	Total of ports P010 to P015	$\Sigma I_{OH} (max)$	—	—	-24	mA	AVCC0 = 2.7 to 5.5 V
				—	—	-6		AVCC0 = 1.8 to 2.7 V
				—	—	-3		AVCC0 = 1.6 to 1.8 V
			$\Sigma I_{OL} (max)$	—	—	48		AVCC0 = 2.7 to 5.5 V
				—	—	3.6		AVCC0 = 1.8 to 2.7 V
				—	—	1.8		AVCC0 = 1.6 to 1.8 V
		Total of ports P212, P213	$\Sigma I_{OH} (max)$	—	—	-8	mA	VCC = 2.7 to 5.5 V
				—	—	-2		VCC = 1.8 to 2.7 V
				—	—	-1		VCC = 1.6 to 1.8 V
			$\Sigma I_{OL} (max)$	—	—	16.0		VCC = 2.7 to 5.5 V
				—	—	1.2		VCC = 1.8 to 2.7 V
				—	—	0.6		VCC = 1.6 to 1.8 V
		Total of other output ports	$\Sigma I_{OH} (max)$	—	—	-30	mA	VCC = 4.0 to 5.5 V
				—	—	-20		VCC = 2.7 to 4.0 V
				—	—	-12		VCC = 1.8 to 2.7 V
				—	—	-6		VCC = 1.6 to 1.8 V
			$\Sigma I_{OL} (max)$	—	—	50		VCC = 4.0 to 5.5 V
				—	—	20		VCC = 2.7 to 4.0 V
				—	—	8		VCC = 1.8 to 2.7 V
				—	—	4		VCC = 1.6 to 1.8 V
		Total of all output pin	$\Sigma I_{OH} (max)$	—	—	-54	mA	—
			$\Sigma I_{OL} (max)$	—	—	98		—

Note 1. Except for Ports P200, P214, and P215, which are input ports.

Note 2. Specification under conditions where the duty factor $\leq 70\%$.The output current value that has changed to the duty factor $> 70\%$ the duty ratio can be calculated with the following expression (when changing the duty factor from 70% to n%).Total output current of pins = $(I_{OH} \times 0.7)/(n \times 0.01)$ <Example> Where n = 80% and $I_{OH} = -30.0$ mATotal output current of pins = $(-30.0 \times 0.7)/(80 \times 0.01) \cong -26.2$ mA

However, the current that is allowed to flow into one pin does not vary depending on the duty factor.

Caution: To protect the reliability of the MCU, the output current values should not exceed the values in [Table 41.5](#).

41.2.4 I/O V_{OH} , V_{OL} , and Other Characteristics**Table 41.6** I/O V_{OH} , V_{OL} (1)Conditions: $V_{CC} = AVCC0 = 4.0$ to 5.5 V

Parameter		Symbol	Min	Typ	Max	Unit	Test conditions
Output voltage	Ports P000 to P004, P010 to P015	V_{OH}	$AVCC0 - 0.8$	—	—	V	$I_{OH} = -4.0$ mA
	Ports P400, P401, P109, P110, P912, P913	V_{OH}	$VCC - 0.27$	—	—		$I_{OH} = -3.0$ mA
			$VCC - 0.8$	—	—		$I_{OH} = -8.0$ mA
	Output pins except for P000 to P004, P010 to P015, P400, P401, P109, P110, P912, and P913*1	V_{OH}	$VCC - 0.8$	—	—		$I_{OH} = -4.0$ mA
	Ports P000 to P004, P010 to P015	V_{OL}	—	—	0.8		$I_{OL} = 8.0$ mA
	Ports P212, P213, P407	V_{OL}	—	—	0.8		$I_{OL} = 8.0$ mA
	Ports P400, P401, P109, P110, P912, P913	V_{OL}	—	—	0.27		$I_{OL} = 3.0$ mA
			—	—	0.4		$I_{OL} = 9.0$ mA
			—	—	0.8		$I_{OL} = 15.0$ mA
	Output pins except for P000 to P004, P010 to P015, P212, P213, P400, P401, P407, P109, P110, P912, and P913*1	V_{OL}	—	—	1.2		$I_{OL} = 20.0$ mA

Note 1. Except for ports P200, P214, and P215, which are input ports.

Table 41.7 I/O V_{OH} , V_{OL} (2)Conditions: $V_{CC} = AVCC0 = 2.7$ to 4.0 V

Parameter		Symbol	Min	Typ	Max	Unit	Test conditions
Output voltage	Ports P000 to P004, P010 to P015	V_{OH}	$AVCC0 - 0.8$	—	—	V	$I_{OH} = -4.0$ mA
	Ports P400, P401, P109, P110, P912, P913	V_{OH}	$VCC - 0.27$	—	—		$I_{OH} = -3.0$ mA
			$VCC - 0.8$	—	—		$I_{OH} = -8.0$ mA
	Output pins except for P000 to P004 and P010 to P015, P400, P401, P109, P110, P912, P913*1	V_{OH}	$VCC - 0.8$	—	—		$I_{OH} = -4.0$ mA
	Ports P000 to P004, P010 to P015	V_{OL}	—	—	0.8		$I_{OL} = 8.0$ mA
	Ports P400, P401, P109, P110, P912, P913	V_{OL}	—	—	0.27		$I_{OL} = 3.0$ mA
			—	—	0.4		$I_{OL} = 9.0$ mA
			—	—	0.8		$I_{OL} = 15.0$ mA
	Output pins except for P000 to P004 and P010 to P015, P400, P401, P109, P110, P912, P913*1	V_{OL}	—	—	0.8		$I_{OL} = 8.0$ mA

Note 1. Except for ports P200, P214, and P215, which are input ports.

Table 41.8 I/O V_{OH} , V_{OL} (3)Conditions: $V_{CC} = AV_{CC0} = 1.6$ to 2.7 V

Parameter	Symbol	Min	Typ	Max	Unit	Test conditions
Output voltage	Ports P000 to P004, P010 to P015	V_{OH}	AVCC0 - 0.5	—	—	$I_{OH} = -1.0$ mA AVCC0 = 1.8 to 2.7 V
			AVCC0 - 0.5	—	—	$I_{OH} = -0.5$ mA AVCC0 = 1.6 to 1.8 V
	Output pins except for P000 to P004 and P010 to P015*1	V_{OH}	VCC - 0.5	—	—	$I_{OH} = -1.0$ mA VCC = 1.8 to 2.7 V
			VCC - 0.5	—	—	$I_{OH} = -0.5$ mA VCC = 1.6 to 1.8 V
	Ports P000 to P004, P010 to P015	V_{OL}	—	—	0.4	$I_{OL} = 0.6$ mA AVCC0 = 1.8 to 2.7 V
			—	—	0.4	$I_{OL} = 0.3$ mA AVCC0 = 1.6 to 1.8 V
	Output pins except for P000 to P004 and P010 to P015*1	V_{OL}	—	—	0.4	$I_{OL} = 0.6$ mA VCC = 1.8 to 2.7 V
			—	—	0.4	$I_{OL} = 0.3$ mA VCC = 1.6 to 1.8 V

Note 1. Except for ports P200, P214, and P215, which are input ports.

Table 41.9 I/O other characteristicsConditions: $V_{CC} = AV_{CC0} = 1.6$ to 5.5 V

Parameter	Symbol	Min	Typ	Max	Unit	Test conditions
Input leakage current	RES, ports P200, P214, P215	$ I_{in} $	—	—	1.0	μA $V_{in} = 0$ V $V_{in} = V_{CC}$
Three-state leakage current (off state)	5 V-tolerant ports*1	$ I_{TSI} $	—	—	1.0	μA $V_{in} = 0$ V $V_{in} = 5.8$ V
	Other ports (except for P200, P214, P215, and 5 V-tolerant ports)		—	—	1.0	μA $V_{in} = 0$ V $V_{in} = V_{CC}$
Input pull-up resistor	All ports (except for P200, P214, P215)	R_U	10	20	100	k Ω $V_{in} = 0$ V
Input capacitance	P200	C_{in}	—	—	30	pF $V_{in} = 0$ V $f = 1$ MHz $T_a = 25^\circ C$
	Other input pins		—	—	15	

Note 1. P400, P401, P407, P109, P110, P912, P913 (total 7 pins)

41.2.5 Operating and Standby Current

Table 41.10 Operating and standby current (1) (1 of 2)

Conditions: VCC = AVCC0 = 1.6 to 5.5 V

Parameter					Symbol	Typ ^{*10}	Max	Unit	Test conditions	
Supply current ^{*1}	High-speed mode ^{*2}	Normal mode	All peripheral clocks disabled, CoreMark code executing from flash ^{*5}	ICLK = 48 MHz	I _{CC}	4.20	—	mA	*7 *11	
				ICLK = 32 MHz		3.00	—		*7	
				ICLK = 16 MHz		1.85	—			
				ICLK = 8 MHz		1.25	—			
			All peripheral clocks enabled, code executing from flash ^{*5}	ICLK = 48 MHz		—	11.70		*9*11	
		Sleep mode	All peripheral clocks disabled ^{*5}	ICLK = 48 MHz		1.00	—		*7	
				ICLK = 32 MHz		0.80	—		*7	
				ICLK = 16 MHz		0.65	—			
				ICLK = 8 MHz		0.55	—			
			All peripheral clocks enabled ^{*5}	ICLK = 48 MHz		4.45	—		*9	
				ICLK = 32 MHz		3.95	—		*8	
				ICLK = 16 MHz		2.20	—			
				ICLK = 8 MHz		1.35	—			
			Increase during BGO operation ^{*6}				2.05		—	—

Table 41.10 Operating and standby current (1) (2 of 2)

Conditions: VCC = AVCC0 = 1.6 to 5.5 V

Parameter					Symbol	Typ ^{*10}	Max	Unit	Test conditions		
Supply current ^{*1}	Middle-speed mode ^{*2}	Normal mode	All peripheral clocks disabled, CoreMark code executing from flash ^{*5}	ICLK = 24 MHz	I _{CC}	2.30	—	mA	*7		
				ICLK = 4 MHz		0.80	—				
			All peripheral clocks enabled, code executing from flash ^{*5}	ICLK = 24 MHz		—	7.40		*8		
		Sleep mode	All peripheral clocks disabled ^{*5}	ICLK = 24 MHz		0.65	—		*7		
				ICLK = 4 MHz		0.55	—				
			All peripheral clocks enabled ^{*5}	ICLK = 24 MHz		3.00	—		*8		
				ICLK = 4 MHz		0.90	—				
		Increase during BGO operation ^{*6}					1.85	—		—	
		Low-speed mode ^{*3}	Normal mode	All peripheral clocks disabled, CoreMark code executing from flash ^{*5}		ICLK = 2 MHz		0.28	—	mA	*7
	All peripheral clocks enabled, code executing from flash ^{*5}			ICLK = 2 MHz	—	2.40	*8				
	Sleep mode		All peripheral clocks disabled ^{*5}	ICLK = 2 MHz	0.12	—	*7				
			All peripheral clocks enabled ^{*5}	ICLK = 2 MHz	0.31	—	*8				
	Subosc-speed mode ^{*4}		Normal mode	All peripheral clocks enabled, code executing from flash ^{*5}	ICLK = 32.768 kHz	—	162	μA	*8		
			Sleep mode	All peripheral clocks disabled ^{*5}	ICLK = 32.768 kHz	1.90	—		*8		
		All peripheral clocks enabled ^{*5}		ICLK = 32.768 kHz	4.95	—	*8				

Note 1. Supply current is the total current flowing into VCC. Supply current values apply when internal pull-up MOSs are in the off state and these values do not include output charge/discharge current from any of the pins.

Note 2. The clock source is HOCO.

Note 3. The clock source is MOCO.

Note 4. The clock source is the sub-clock oscillator.

Note 5. This does not include BGO operation.

Note 6. This is the increase for programming or erasure of the flash memory for data storage during program execution.

Note 7. PCLKB and PCLKD are set to divided by 64.

Note 8. PCLKB and PCLKD are the same frequency as that of ICLK.

Note 9. PCLKB are set to be divided by 2 and PCLKD is the same frequency as that of ICLK.

Note 10. VCC = 3.3 V.

Note 11. The prefetch buffer is operating.

Table 41.11 Operating and standby current (2)

Conditions: VCC = AVCC0 = 1.6 to 5.5 V

Parameter					Symbol	Typ* ³	Max	Unit	Test conditions
Supply current* ¹	Software Standby mode* ²	Peripheral modules stop	All SRAMs (0x2000_4000 to 0x2000_7FFF) are on	T _a = 25°C	I _{CC}	0.25	1.3	μA	—
				T _a = 55°C		0.45	4.3		
				T _a = 85°C		1.25	15		
				T _a = 105°C		2.80	37		
				T _a = 125°C		6.85	89		
			Only 8KB SRAM (0x2000_4000 to 0x2000_5FFF) is on	T _a = 25°C		0.25	1.3		
				T _a = 55°C		0.45	4.3		
				T _a = 85°C		1.20	15		
				T _a = 105°C		2.70	37		
				T _a = 125°C		6.40	89		
		Increment for RTC operation with low-speed on-chip oscillator* ⁴				0.3	—	—	
		Increment for RTC operation in normal operation mode with sub-clock oscillator* ⁴				0.2	—	SOMCR.SODRV[1:0] are 11b (low power mode 3) RCR4.ROPSEL is 0 (RTC operation in normal operation mode)	
						0.95	—	SOMCR.SODRV[1:0] are 00b (normal mode) RCR4.ROPSEL is 0 (RTC operation in normal operation mode)	
		Increment for RTC operation in low-consumption clock mode with sub-clock oscillator* ⁴				0.15	—	SOMCR.SODRV[1:0] are 11b (low power mode 3) RCR4.ROPSEL is 1 (RTC operation in low-consumption clock mode)	
						0.9	—	SOMCR.SODRV[1:0] are 00b (normal mode) RCR4.ROPSEL is 1 (RTC operation in low-consumption clock mode)	

Note 1. Supply current is the total current flowing into VCC. Supply current values apply when internal pull-up MOSs are in the off state and these values do not include output charge/discharge current from any of the pins.

Note 2. The IWDG and LVD are not operating.

Note 3. VCC = 3.3 V.

Note 4. Includes the low-speed on-chip oscillator or sub-oscillation circuit current.

Table 41.12 Operating and standby current (3) (1 of 2)

Conditions: VCC = AVCC0 = 1.6 to 5.5 V

Parameter		Symbol	Min	Typ	Max	Unit	Test conditions
Analog power supply current	During 12-bit A/D conversion (at high-speed A/D conversion mode)	I _{AVCC0}	—	—	1.44	mA	—
	During 12-bit A/D conversion (at low-power A/D conversion mode)		—	—	0.78	mA	—
	Waiting for 12-bit A/D conversion (all units) ^{*1}		—	—	1.0	μA	—
Reference power supply current	During 12-bit A/D conversion	I _{REFH0}	—	—	120	μA	—
	Waiting for 12-bit A/D conversion		—	—	60	nA	—

Table 41.12 Operating and standby current (3) (2 of 2)

Conditions: VCC = AVCC0 = 1.6 to 5.5 V

Parameter			Symbol	Min	Typ	Max	Unit	Test conditions
Temperature Sensor (TSN) operating current			I _{TNS}	—	95	—	μA	—
USBFS operating current	Low speed	Operating	I _{USBFS}	—	1.36	6	mA	—
		Standby		—	69	200	μA	
	Full speed	Operating		—	1.68	8	mA	
		Standby		—	551	860	μA	
USBCC operating current	Attach SRC*2		I _{USBCC}	—	0.53	0.73	mA	—
	Attach SRC VRD-3.0*3			—	0.55	0.82	mA	—
	Power Down*4			—	0.01	0.02	μA	—

Note 1. When the MCU is in Software Standby mode or the MSTPCRD.MSTPD16 (ADC120 module-stop bit) is in the module-stop state.

Note 2. Active Block is Regulator + VRADET(CCIO1+CCIO2).

Note 3. Active Block is Regulator + SNKVRD15DET+SNKVRD30DET.

Note 4. When CCC.PDOWN = 0.

41.2.6 VCC Rise and Fall Gradient and Ripple Frequency

Table 41.13 Rise and fall gradient characteristics

Conditions: VCC = AVCC0 = 0 to 5.5 V

Parameter		Symbol	Min	Typ	Max	Unit	Test conditions
Power-on VCC rising gradient	Voltage monitor 0 reset disabled at startup	SrVCC	0.02	—	2	ms/V	—
	Voltage monitor 0 reset enabled at startup ^{*1 *2}				—		
	SCI boot mode ^{*2}				2		

Note 1. When OFS1.LVDAS = 0.

Note 2. At boot mode, the reset from voltage monitor 0 is disabled regardless of the value of OFS1.LVDAS bit.

Table 41.14 Rising and falling gradient and ripple frequency characteristics

Conditions: VCC = AVCC0 = 1.6 to 5.5 V

The ripple voltage must meet the allowable ripple frequency $f_{r(VCC)}$ within the range between the VCC upper limit (5.5 V) and lower limit (1.6 V).

When the VCC change exceeds VCC ± 10%, the allowable voltage change rising and falling gradient dt/dVCC must be met.

Parameter	Symbol	Min	Typ	Max	Unit	Test conditions
Allowable ripple frequency	$f_{r(VCC)}$	—	—	10	kHz	Figure 41.2 $V_{r(VCC)} \leq VCC \times 0.2$
		—	—	1	MHz	Figure 41.2 $V_{r(VCC)} \leq VCC \times 0.08$
		—	—	10	MHz	Figure 41.2 $V_{r(VCC)} \leq VCC \times 0.06$
Allowable voltage change rising and falling gradient	dt/dVCC	1.0	—	—	ms/V	When VCC change exceeds VCC ± 10%

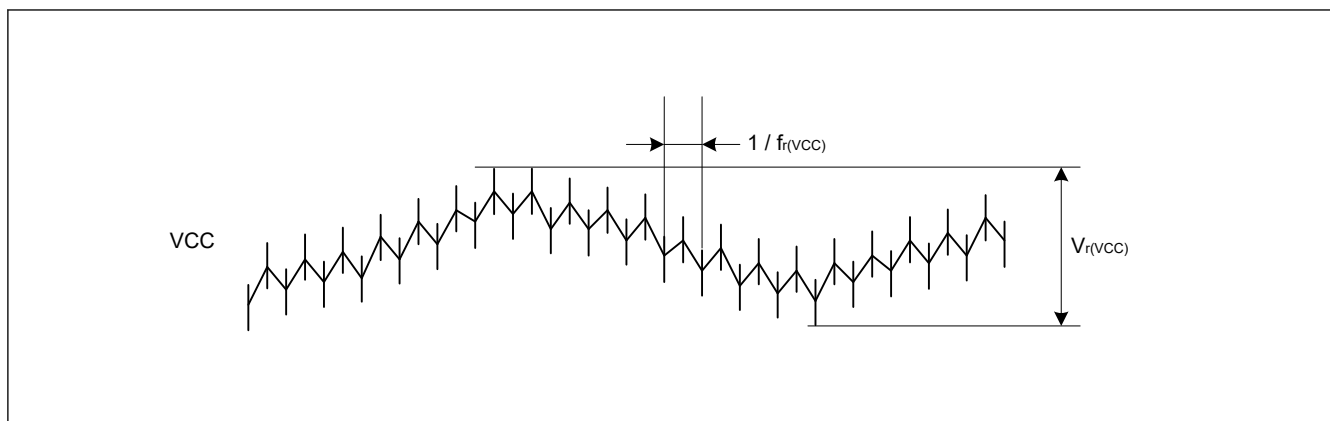


Figure 41.2 Ripple waveform

41.2.7 Thermal Characteristics

Maximum value of junction temperature (T_j) must not exceed the value of [section 41.2.1. \$T_j/T_a\$ Definition](#).

T_j is calculated by either of the following equations.

- $T_j = T_a + \theta_{ja} \times \text{Total power consumption}$

- $T_j = T_t + \Psi_{jt} \times \text{Total power consumption}$

T_j : Junction temperature ($^{\circ}\text{C}$)

T_a : Ambient temperature ($^{\circ}\text{C}$)

T_t : Top center case temperature ($^{\circ}\text{C}$)

θ_{ja} : Thermal resistance of “Junction”-to-“Ambient” ($^{\circ}\text{C}/\text{W}$)

Ψ_{jt} : Thermal resistance of “Junction”-to-“Top center case” ($^{\circ}\text{C}/\text{W}$)

- Total power consumption = Voltage $\times$ (Leakage current + Dynamic current)

- Leakage current of IO = $\Sigma (I_{OL} \times V_{OL}) / \text{Voltage} + \Sigma (|I_{OH}| \times |V_{CC} - V_{OH}|) / \text{Voltage}$

- Dynamic current of IO = $\Sigma \text{IO} (\text{Cin} + \text{Clod}) \times \text{IO switching frequency} \times \text{Voltage}$

Cin: Input capacitance

Clod: Output capacitance

Regarding θ_{ja} and Ψ_{jt} , see [Table 41.15](#).

Table 41.15 Thermal resistance

Parameter	Package	Symbol	Value*1	Unit	Test conditions
Thermal resistance	32-pin HWQFN	θ_{ja}	22.5	$^{\circ}\text{C}/\text{W}$	JESD 51-2 and 51-7 compliant
	48-pin HWQFN		19.0		
	32-pin LQFP		60.9		
	48-pin LQFP		62.4		
	64-pin LQFP 0.5mm pitch		53.6		
	32-pin HWQFN	Ψ_{jt}	0.20	$^{\circ}\text{C}/\text{W}$	JESD 51-2 and 51-7 compliant
	48-pin HWQFN		0.18		
	32-pin LQFP		2.50		
	48-pin LQFP		2.50		
	64-pin LQFP 0.5mm pitch		2.00		

Note 1. The values are reference values when the 4-layer board is used. Thermal resistance depends on the number of layers or size of the board. For details, see the JEDEC standards.

41.3 AC Characteristics

41.3.1 Frequency

Table 41.16 Operation frequency in high-speed operating mode

Conditions: VCC = AVCC0 = 1.8 to 5.5 V

Parameter			Symbol	Min	Typ	Max ^{*5}	Unit
Operation frequency	System clock (ICLK) ^{*1*2*4}	1.8 to 5.5 V	f	0.032768	—	48	MHz
	Peripheral module clock (PCLKB) ^{*4}	1.8 to 5.5 V		—	—	32	
	Peripheral module clock (PCLKD) ^{*3 *4}	1.8 to 5.5 V		—	—	64	

Note 1. The lower-limit frequency of ICLK is 1 MHz while programming or erasing the flash memory. When using ICLK for programming or erasing the flash memory at below 4 MHz, the frequency can be set to 1 MHz, 2 MHz, or 3 MHz. A non-integer frequency such as 1.5 MHz cannot be set.

Note 2. The frequency accuracy of ICLK must be $\pm 1.0\%$ during programming or erasing the flash memory. Confirm the frequency accuracy of the clock source.

Note 3. The lower-limit frequency of PCLKD is 1 MHz when the ADC12 is in use.

Note 4. See [section 8, Clock Generation Circuit](#) for the relationship of frequencies between ICLK, PCLKB, and PCLKD.

Note 5. The maximum value of operation frequency does not include internal oscillator errors. For details on the range for guaranteed operation, see [Table 41.20](#).

Table 41.17 Operation frequency in middle-speed mode

Conditions: VCC = AVCC0 = 1.6 to 5.5 V

Parameter			Symbol	Min	Typ	Max ^{*5}	Unit
Operation frequency	System clock (ICLK) ^{*1*2*4}	1.8 to 5.5 V	f	0.032768	—	24	MHz
		1.6 to 1.8 V		0.032768	—	4	
	Peripheral module clock (PCLKB) ^{*4}	1.8 to 5.5 V		—	—	24	
		1.6 to 1.8 V		—	—	4	
	Peripheral module clock (PCLKD) ^{*3 *4}	1.8 to 5.5 V		—	—	24	
		1.6 to 1.8 V		—	—	4	

Note 1. The lower-limit frequency of ICLK is 1 MHz while programming or erasing the flash memory. When using ICLK for programming or erasing the flash memory at below 4 MHz, the frequency can be set to 1 MHz, 2 MHz, or 3 MHz. A non-integer frequency such as 1.5 MHz cannot be set.

Note 2. The frequency accuracy of ICLK must be $\pm 1.0\%$ while programming or erasing the flash memory. Confirm the frequency accuracy of the clock source.

Note 3. The lower-limit frequency of PCLKD is 1 MHz when the ADC12 is in use.

Note 4. See [section 8, Clock Generation Circuit](#) for the relationship of frequencies between ICLK, PCLKB, and PCLKD.

Note 5. The maximum value of operation frequency does not include internal oscillator errors. For details on the range for guaranteed operation, see [Table 41.20](#).

Table 41.18 Operation frequency in low-speed mode

Conditions: VCC = AVCC0 = 1.6 to 5.5 V

Parameter			Symbol	Min	Typ	Max ^{*5}	Unit
Operation frequency	System clock (ICLK) ^{*1*2*4}	1.6 to 5.5 V	f	0.032768	—	2	MHz
	Peripheral module clock (PCLKB) ^{*4}	1.6 to 5.5 V		—	—	2	
	Peripheral module clock (PCLKD) ^{*3 *4}	1.6 to 5.5 V		—	—	2	

Note 1. The lower-limit frequency of ICLK is 1 MHz while programming or erasing the flash memory.

Note 2. The frequency accuracy of ICLK must be $\pm 1.0\%$ while programming or erasing the flash memory. Confirm the frequency accuracy of the clock source.

Note 3. The lower-limit frequency of PCLKD is 1 MHz when the ADC12 is in use.

Note 4. See [section 8, Clock Generation Circuit](#) for the relationship of frequencies between ICLK, PCLKB, and PCLKD.

Note 5. The maximum value of operation frequency does not include internal oscillator errors. For details on the range for guaranteed operation, see [Table 41.20](#).

Table 41.19 Operation frequency in Subosc-speed mode

Conditions: VCC = AVCC0 = 1.6 to 5.5 V

Parameter			Symbol	Min	Typ	Max	Unit
Operation frequency	System clock (ICLK) ^{*1*3}	1.6 to 5.5 V	f	27.8528	32.768	37.6832	kHz
	Peripheral module clock (PCLKB) ^{*3}	1.6 to 5.5 V		—	—	37.6832	
	Peripheral module clock (PCLKD) ^{*2 *3}	1.6 to 5.5 V		—	—	37.6832	

Note 1. Programming and erasing the flash memory is not possible.

Note 2. The ADC12 cannot be used.

Note 3. See [section 8, Clock Generation Circuit](#) for the relationship of frequencies between ICLK, PCLKB, and PCLKD.

41.3.2 Clock Timing

Table 41.20 Clock timing

Parameter	Symbol	Min	Typ	Max	Unit	Test conditions
EXTAL external clock input cycle time	t _{Xcyc}	50	—	—	ns	Figure 41.3
EXTAL external clock input high pulse width	t _{XH}	20	—	—	ns	
EXTAL external clock input low pulse width	t _{XL}	20	—	—	ns	
EXTAL external clock rising time	t _{Xr}	—	—	5	ns	
EXTAL external clock falling time	t _{Xf}	—	—	5	ns	
EXTAL external clock input wait time ^{*1}	t _{EXWT}	0.3	—	—	μs	—
EXTAL external clock input frequency	f _{EXTAL}	—	—	20	MHz	1.8 ≤ VCC ≤ 5.5 V
		—	—	4		1.6 ≤ VCC < 1.8 V
Main clock oscillator oscillation frequency	f _{MAIN}	1	—	20	MHz	1.8 ≤ VCC ≤ 5.5 V
		1	—	4		1.8 ≤ VCC ≤ 5.5 V
LOCO clock oscillation frequency	f _{LOCO}	27.8528	32.768	37.6832	kHz	—
LOCO clock oscillation stabilization time	t _{LOCO}	—	—	100	μs	Figure 41.4
IWDT-dedicated clock oscillation frequency	f _{ILOCO}	12.75	15	17.25	kHz	—
MOCO clock oscillation frequency	f _{MOCO}	6.8	8	9.2	MHz	—
MOCO clock oscillation stabilization time	t _{MOCO}	—	—	1	μs	—
HOCO clock oscillation frequency	f _{HOCO24}	23.76	24	24.24	MHz	Ta = -40 to 125°C 1.6 ≤ VCC ≤ 5.5 V
	f _{HOCO32}	31.68	32	32.32		Ta = -40 to 125°C 1.6 ≤ VCC ≤ 5.5 V
	f _{HOCO48}	47.52	48	48.48		Ta = -40 to 125°C 1.6 ≤ VCC ≤ 5.5 V
	f _{HOCO64}	63.36	64	64.64		Ta = -40 to 125°C 1.6 ≤ VCC ≤ 5.5 V
HOCO clock oscillation stabilization time ^{*3 *4}	t _{HOCO24} t _{HOCO32} t _{HOCO48} t _{HOCO64}	—	6.7	7.7	μs	Figure 41.5
Sub-clock oscillator oscillation frequency	f _{SUB}	—	32.768	—	kHz	—
Sub-clock oscillation stabilization time ^{*2}	t _{SUBOSC}	—	0.5	—	s	Figure 41.6

Note 1. Time until the clock can be used after the Main Clock Oscillator stop bit (MOSCCR.MOSTP) is set to 0 (operating) when the external clock is stable.

Note 2. After changing the setting of the SOSCCR.SOSTP bit to start sub-clock oscillator operation, only start using the sub-clock oscillator after the sub-clock oscillation stabilization wait time elapsed. Use the oscillator wait time value recommended by the oscillator manufacturer.

Note 3. This is a characteristic when the HOCOCCR.HCSTP bit is set to 0 (oscillation) in the MOCO stop state. When the HOCOCCR.HCSTP bit is set to 0 (oscillation) during MOCO oscillation, this specification is shortened by 1 μs.

Note 4. Check OSCSF.HOCOSF to confirm whether stabilization time has elapsed.

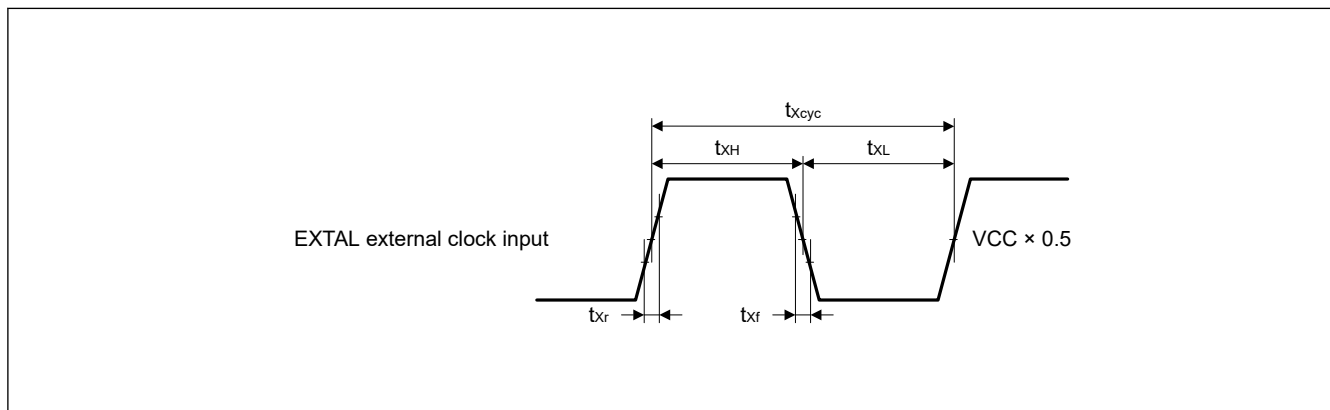


Figure 41.3 EXTAL external clock input timing

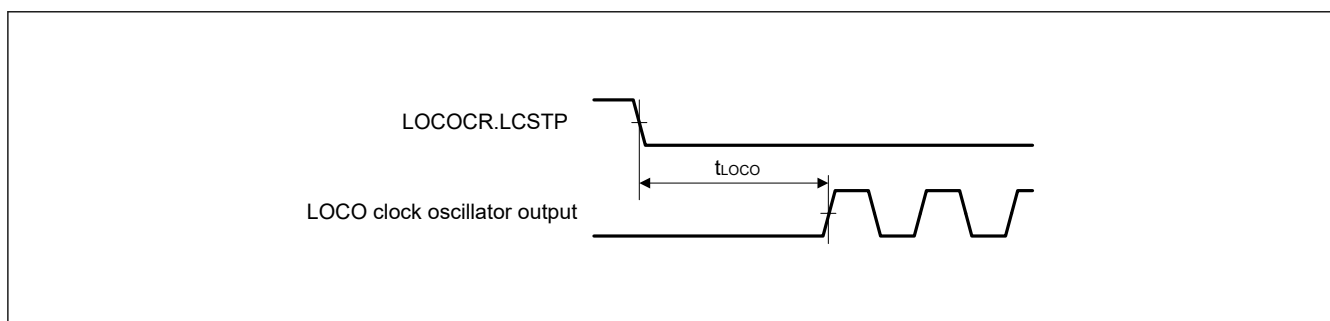


Figure 41.4 LOCO clock oscillation start timing

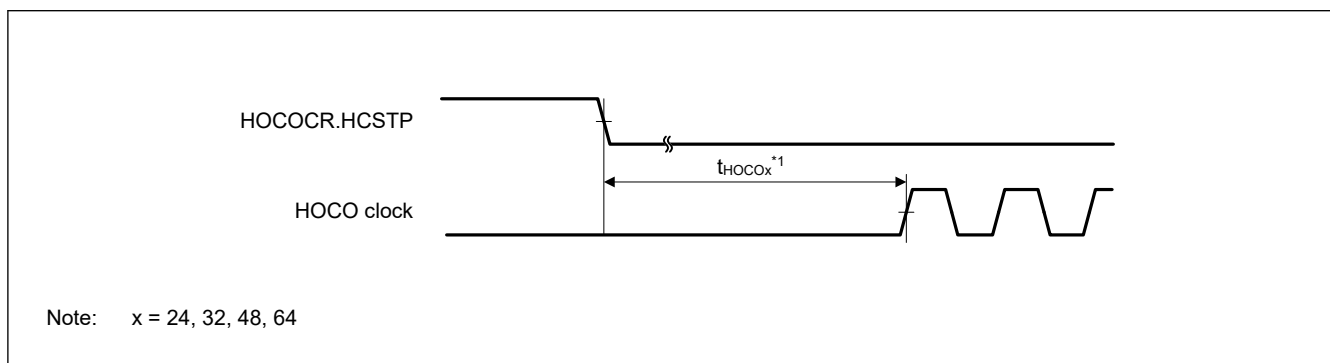


Figure 41.5 HOCO clock oscillation start timing (started by setting the HOCOCR.HCSTP bit)

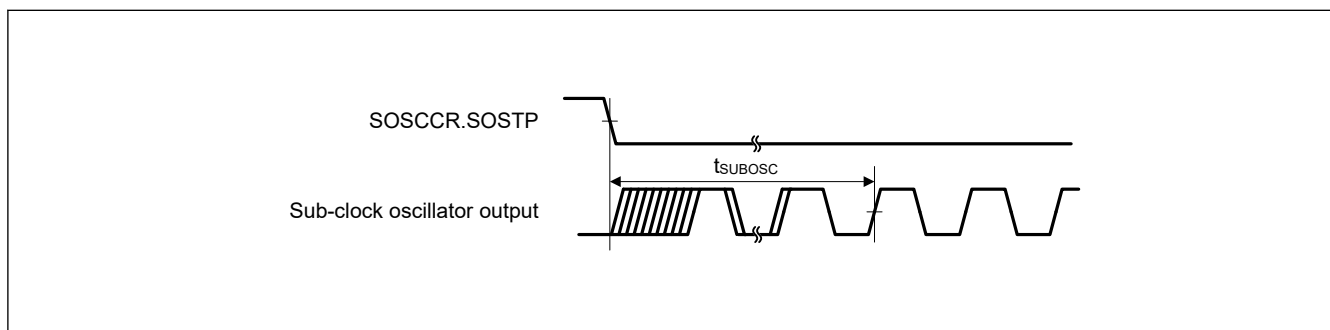


Figure 41.6 Sub-clock oscillation start timing

41.3.3 Reset Timing

Table 41.21 Reset timing

Parameter		Symbol	Min	Typ	Max	Unit	Test conditions
RES pulse width	At power-on	t_{RESWP}	10	—	—	ms	Figure 41.7
	Not at power-on	t_{RESW}	30	—	—	μ s	Figure 41.8
Wait time after RES cancellation (at power-on)	LVD0 enabled*1	t_{RESWT}	—	0.9	—	ms	Figure 41.7
	LVD0 disabled*2		—	0.2	—		
Wait time after RES cancellation (during powered-on state)	LVD0 enabled*1	t_{RESWT2}	—	0.9	—	ms	Figure 41.8
	LVD0 disabled*2		—	0.2	—		
Wait time after internal reset cancellation (Watchdog timer reset, SRAM parity error reset, bus master MPU error reset, bus slave MPU error reset, stack pointer error reset, software reset)	LVD0 enabled*1	t_{RESWT3}	—	0.9	—	ms	Figure 41.9
	LVD0 disabled*2		—	0.15	—		

Note 1. When OFS1.LVDAS = 0.

Note 2. When OFS1.LVDAS = 1.

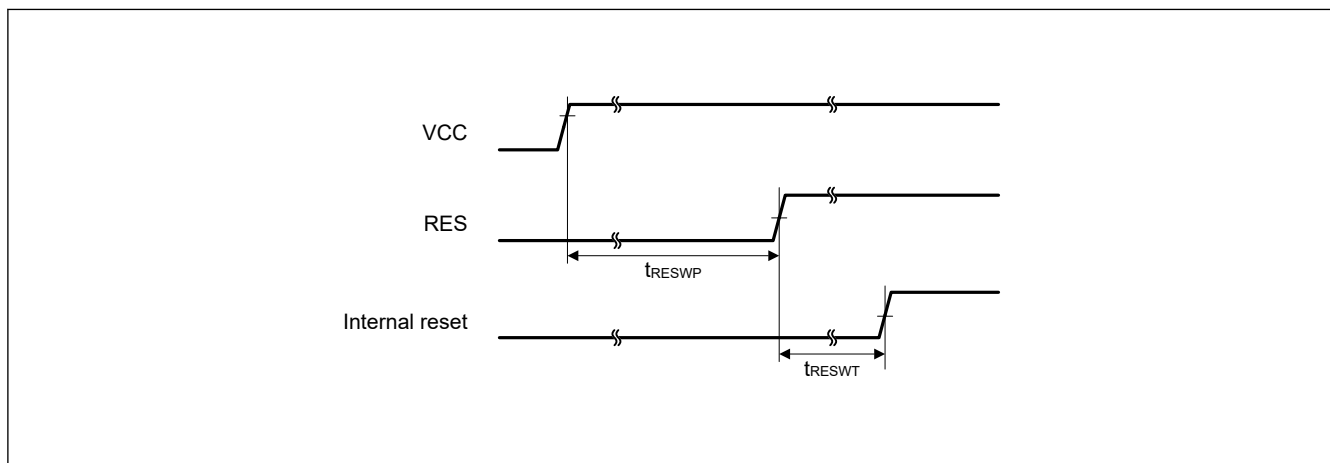


Figure 41.7 Reset input timing at power-on

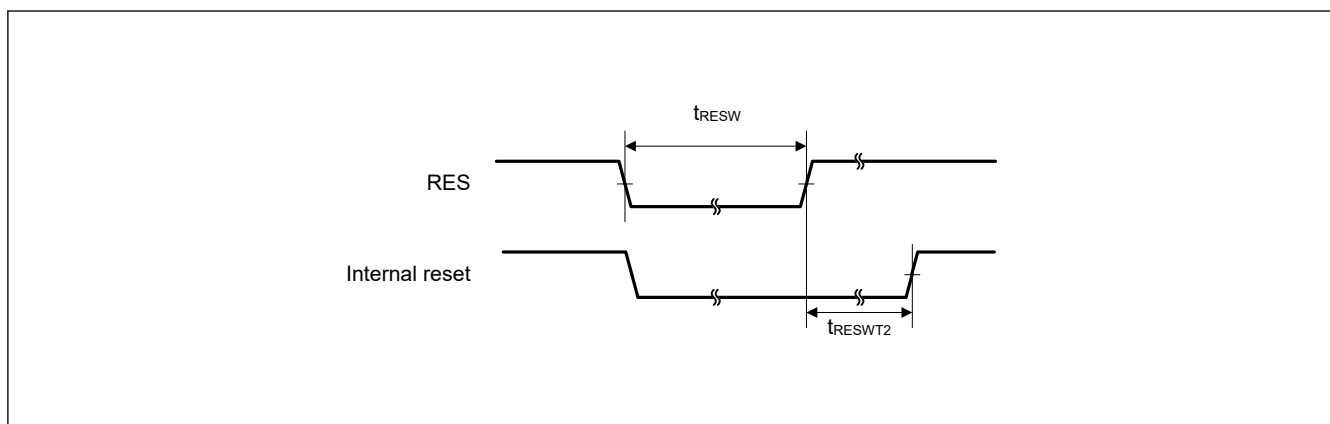


Figure 41.8 Reset input timing (1)

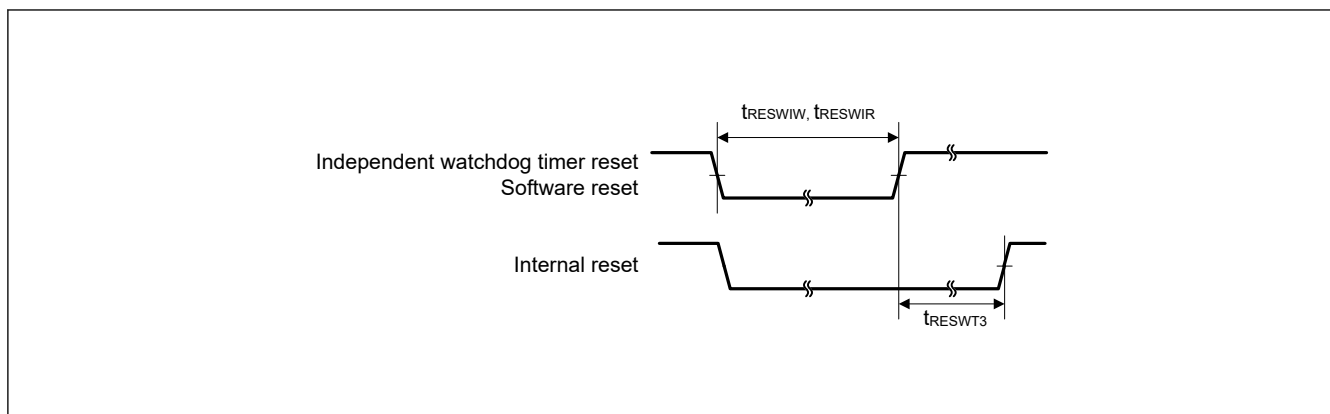


Figure 41.9 Reset input timing (2)

41.3.4 Wakeup Time

Table 41.22 Timing of recovery from low power modes (1)

Parameter				Symbol	Min	Typ	Max	Unit	Test conditions
Recovery time from Software Standby mode ^{*1}	High-speed mode	Crystal resonator connected to main clock oscillator	System clock source is main clock oscillator (20 MHz) ^{*2}	t _{SBYMC}	—	2	3	ms	Figure 41.10
		External clock input to main clock oscillator	System clock source is main clock oscillator (20 MHz) ^{*3}	t _{SBYEX}	—	2.4	3.1	μs	
		System clock source is HOCO (HOCO clock is 32 MHz) ^{*4}		t _{SBYHO}	—	7.4	9.1	μs	
		System clock source is HOCO (HOCO clock is 48 MHz) ^{*5}		t _{SBYHO}	—	7.3	8.9	μs	
		System clock source is HOCO (HOCO clock is 64 MHz) ^{*4}		t _{SBYHO}	—	7.4	9.1	μs	
		System clock source is MOCO (8 MHz)		t _{SBYMO}	—	4	5	μs	

Note 1. The division ratio of ICLK and PCLKx is the minimum division ratio within the allowable frequency range. The recovery time is determined by the system clock source.

Note 2. The Main Clock Oscillator Wait Control Register (MOSCWTCR) is set to 0x05.

Note 3. The Main Clock Oscillator Wait Control Register (MOSCWTCR) is set to 0x00.

Note 4. The system clock is 32 MHz.

Note 5. The system clock is 48 MHz.

Table 41.23 Timing of recovery from low power modes (2)

Parameter				Symbol	Min	Typ	Max	Unit	Test conditions
Recovery time from Software Standby mode*1	Middle-speed mode	Crystal resonator connected to main clock oscillator	System clock source is main clock oscillator (20 MHz)*2	t _{SBYMC}	—	2	3	ms	Figure 41.10
		External clock input to main clock oscillator	System clock source is main clock oscillator (20 MHz)*3 VCC = 1.8 V to 5.5 V	t _{SBYEX}	—	2.4	3.1	μs	
			System clock source is main clock oscillator (4 MHz)*3 VCC = 1.6 V to 1.8 V		—	8.5	9.1	μs	
		System clock source is HOCO	VCC = 1.8 V to 5.5 V*4	t _{SBYHO}	—	7.7	9.4	μs	
			VCC = 1.6 V to 1.8 V		—	15.7	17.9	μs	
		System clock source is MOCO (8 MHz)	VCC = 1.8 V to 5.5 V	t _{SBYMO}	—	4	5	μs	
			VCC = 1.6 V to 1.8 V		—	7.2	9	μs	

Note 1. The division ratio of ICLK and PCLKx is the minimum division ratio within the allowable frequency range. The recovery time is determined by the system clock source.

Note 2. The Main Clock Oscillator Wait Control Register (MOSCWTCR) is set to 0x05.

Note 3. The Main Clock Oscillator Wait Control Register (MOSCWTCR) is set to 0x00.

Note 4. The system clock is 24 MHz.

Table 41.24 Timing of recovery from low power modes (3)

Parameter				Symbol	Min	Typ	Max	Unit	Test conditions
Recovery time from Software Standby mode*1	Low-speed mode	Crystal resonator connected to main clock oscillator	System clock source is main clock oscillator (2 MHz)*2	t _{SBYMC}	—	2	3	ms	Figure 41.10
		External clock input to main clock oscillator	System clock source is main clock oscillator (2 MHz)*3	t _{SBYEX}	—	14.5	16	μs	
		System clock source is MOCO (8 MHz)		t _{SBYMO}	—	12	15	μs	

Note 1. The division ratio of ICLK and PCLKx is the minimum division ratio within the allowable frequency range. The recovery time is determined by the system clock source.

Note 2. The Main Clock Oscillator Wait Control Register (MOSCWTCR) is set to 0x05.

Note 3. The Main Clock Oscillator Wait Control Register (MOSCWTCR) is set to 0x00.

Table 41.25 Timing of recovery from low power modes (4)

Parameter			Symbol	Min	Typ	Max	Unit	Test conditions
Recovery time from Software Standby mode*1	Subosc-speed mode	System clock source is sub-clock oscillator (32.768 kHz)	t _{SBYSC}	—	0.85	1	ms	Figure 41.10
		System clock source is LOCO (32.768 kHz)	t _{SBYLO}	—	0.85	1.2	ms	

Note 1. The sub-clock oscillator or LOCO itself continues oscillating in Software Standby mode during Subosc-speed mode.

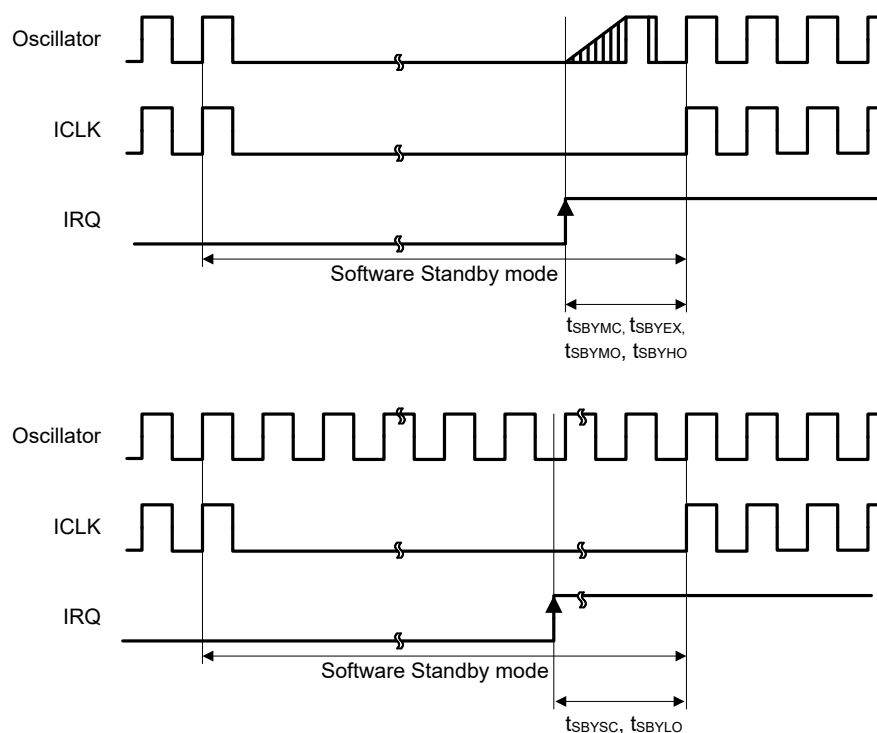
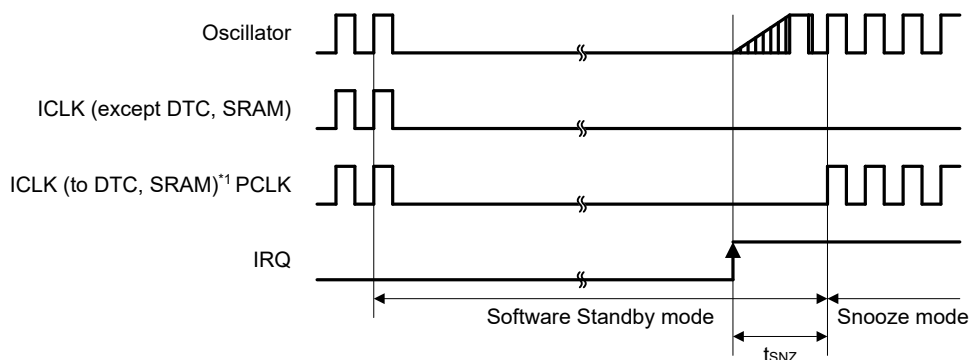


Figure 41.10 Software Standby mode cancellation timing

Table 41.26 Timing of recovery from low power modes (5)

Parameter		Symbol	Min	Typ	Max	Unit	Test conditions
Recovery time from Software Standby mode to Snooze mode	High-speed mode System clock source is HOCO	t_{SNZ}	—	6.6	8.1	μs	Figure 41.11
	Middle-speed mode System clock source is HOCO (24 MHz) VCC = 1.8 V to 5.5 V	t_{SNZ}	—	6.7	8.2	μs	
	Middle-speed mode System clock source is HOCO (24 MHz) VCC = 1.6 V to 1.8 V	t_{SNZ}	—	10.8	12.9	μs	
	Low-speed mode System clock source is MOCO (2 MHz)	t_{SNZ}	—	6.7	8.0	μs	



Note 1. When SNZCR.SNZDTCEN bit is set to 1, ICLK is supplied to DTC and SRAM.

Figure 41.11 Recovery timing from Software Standby mode to Snooze mode

41.3.5 NMI and IRQ Noise Filter

Table 41.27 NMI and IRQ noise filter

Parameter	Symbol	Min	Typ	Max	Unit	Test conditions	
NMI pulse width	t_{NMIW}	200	—	—	ns	NMI digital filter disabled	$t_{Pcyc} \times 2 \leq 200$ ns
		$t_{Pcyc} \times 2^{*1}$	—	—			$t_{Pcyc} \times 2 > 200$ ns
		200	—	—		NMI digital filter enabled	$t_{NMICK} \times 3 \leq 200$ ns
		$t_{NMICK} \times 3.5^{*2}$	—	—			$t_{NMICK} \times 3 > 200$ ns
IRQ pulse width	t_{IRQW}	200	—	—	ns	IRQ digital filter disabled	$t_{Pcyc} \times 2 \leq 200$ ns
		$t_{Pcyc} \times 2^{*1}$	—	—			$t_{Pcyc} \times 2 > 200$ ns
		200	—	—		IRQ digital filter enabled	$t_{IRQCK} \times 3 \leq 200$ ns
		$t_{IRQCK} \times 3.5^{*3}$	—	—			$t_{IRQCK} \times 3 > 200$ ns

Note: 200 ns minimum in Software Standby mode.

Note: If the clock source is being switched, it is necessary to add 4 clock cycles of the switched source.

Note 1. t_{Pcyc} indicates the PCLKB cycle.

Note 2. t_{NMICK} indicates the cycle of the NMI digital filter sampling clock.

Note 3. t_{IRQCK} indicates the cycle of the IRQi digital filter sampling clock (i = 0 to 7).

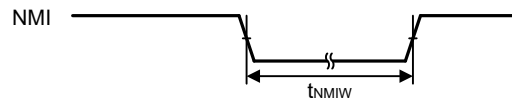


Figure 41.12 NMI interrupt input timing

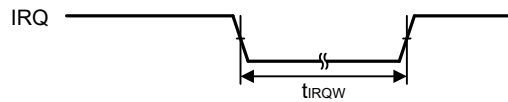


Figure 41.13 IRQ interrupt input timing

41.3.6 I/O Ports, POEG, GPT, AGTW, KINT, and ADC12 Trigger Timing

Table 41.28 I/O Ports, POEG, GPT, AGT, KINT, and ADC12 trigger timing

Parameter			Symbol	Min	Max	Unit	Test conditions
I/O Ports	Input data pulse width	$2.7\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} \leq 5.5\text{ V}$	t_{PRW}	2	—	t_{Pcyc}	Figure 41.14
		$2.4\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} < 2.7\text{ V}$		3			
		$1.6\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} < 2.4\text{ V}$		4			
POEG	POEG input trigger pulse width		t_{POEW}	3	—	t_{Pcyc}	Figure 41.15
GPT	Input capture pulse width	Single edge	t_{GTICW}	1.5	—	t_{PDcyc}	Figure 41.16
		Dual edge		2.5	—		
AGTW	AGTIO, AGTEE input cycle	$1.8\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} \leq 5.5\text{ V}$	t_{ACYC}^{*1}	250	—	ns	Figure 41.17
		$1.6\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} < 1.8\text{ V}$		2000	—	ns	
	AGTIO, AGTEE input high-level width, low-level width	$1.8\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} \leq 5.5\text{ V}$	t_{ACKWH}, t_{ACKWL}	100	—	ns	
		$1.6\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} < 1.8\text{ V}$		800	—	ns	
	AGTIO, AGTO, AGTOA, AGTOB output cycle	$2.7\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} \leq 5.5\text{ V}$	t_{ACYC2}	62.5	—	ns	Figure 41.17
		$2.4\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} < 2.7\text{ V}$		125	—	ns	
		$1.8\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} < 2.4\text{ V}$		250	—	ns	
		$1.6\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} < 1.8\text{ V}$		500	—	ns	
ADC12	12-bit A/D converter trigger input pulse width		t_{TRGW}	1.5	—	t_{Pcyc}	Figure 41.18
KINT	KRn (n = 00 to 07) pulse width		t_{KR}	250	—	ns	Figure 41.19

Note 1. Constraints on AGTIO input: $t_{Pcyc} \times 2$ (t_{Pcyc} : PCLKB cycle) $< t_{ACYC}$.

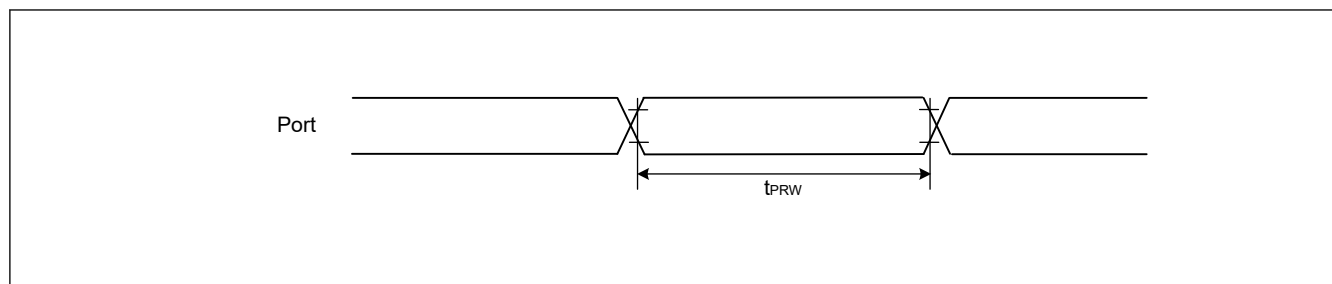


Figure 41.14 I/O ports input timing

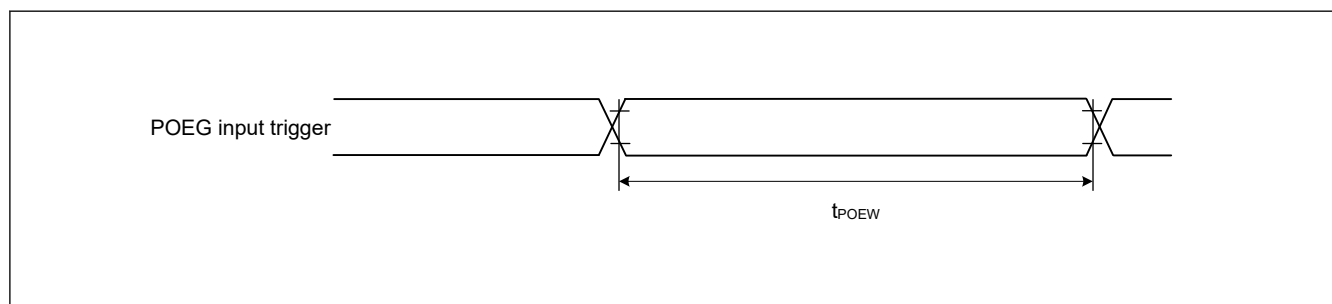


Figure 41.15 POEG input trigger timing

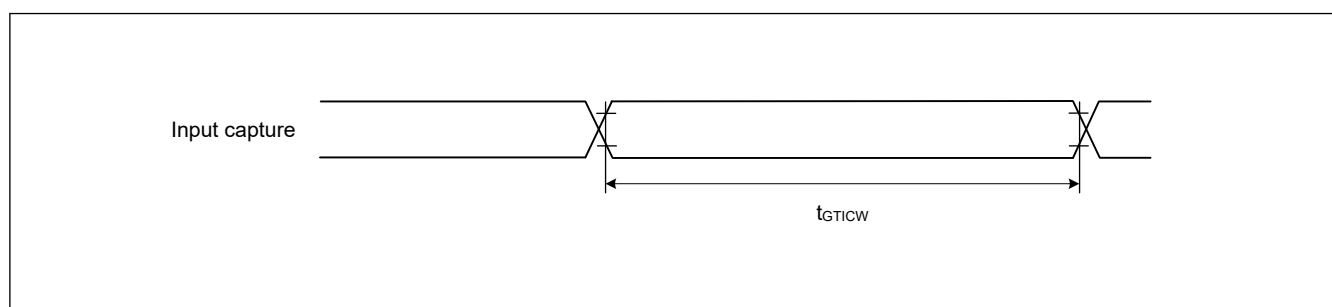


Figure 41.16 GPT input capture timing

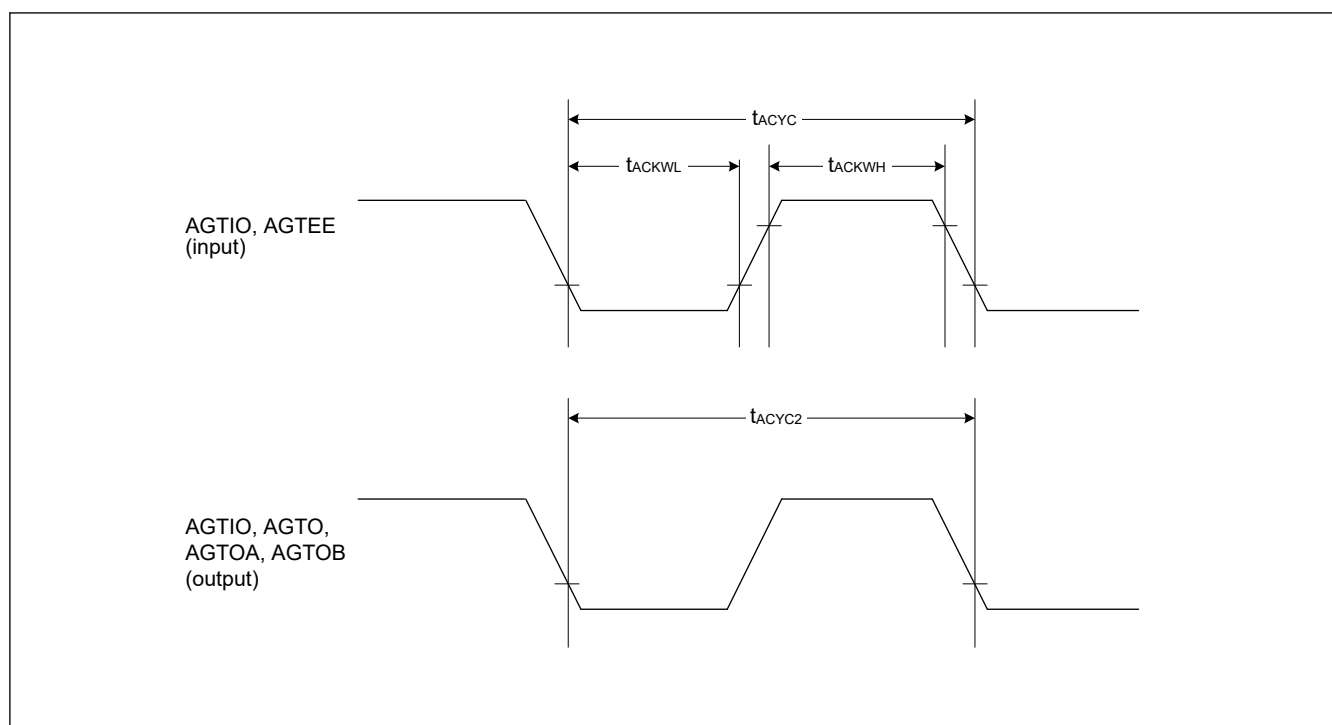


Figure 41.17 AGTW I/O timing

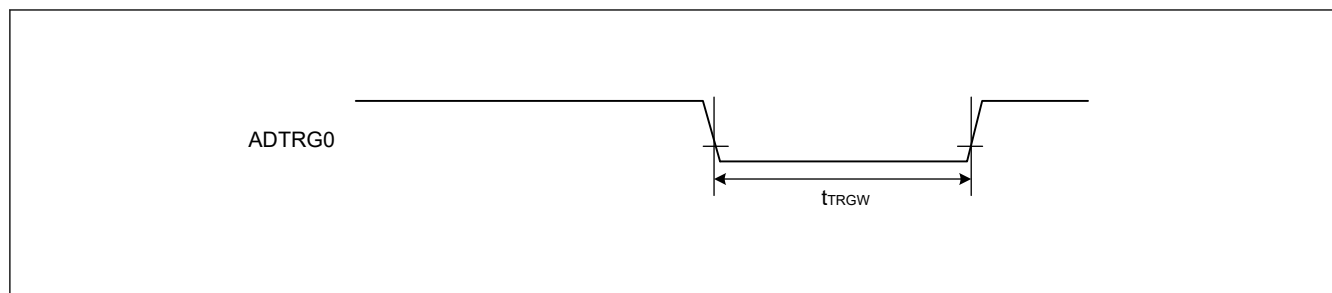


Figure 41.18 ADC12 trigger input timing

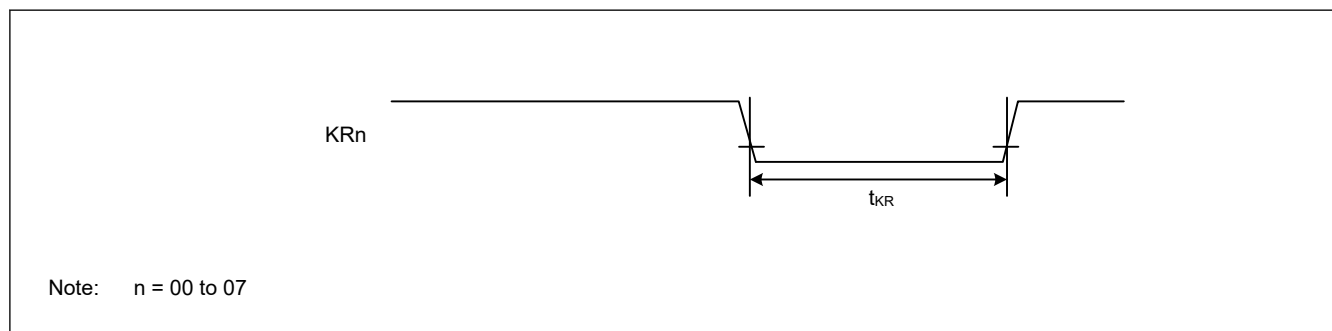


Figure 41.19 Key interrupt input timing

41.3.7 CAC Timing

Table 41.29 CAC timing

Conditions: VCC = AVCC0 = 1.6 to 5.5 V

Parameter			Symbol	Min	Typ	Max	Unit	Test conditions
CAC	CACREF input pulse width	$t_{P_{cyc}}^{*1} \leq t_{CAC}^{*2}$	t_{CACREF}	$4.5 \times t_{CAC} + 3 \times t_{P_{cyc}}$	—	—	ns	—
		$t_{P_{cyc}}^{*1} > t_{CAC}^{*2}$		$5 \times t_{CAC} + 6.5 \times t_{P_{cyc}}$	—	—	ns	

Note 1. $t_{P_{cyc}}$: PCLKB cycle.Note 2. t_{CAC} : CAC count clock source cycle.

41.3.8 SCI Timing

Table 41.30 SCI timing (1)

Conditions: VCC = AVCC0 = 1.6 to 5.5 V

Parameter				Symbol	Min	Max	Unit	Test conditions	
SCI	Input clock cycle	Asynchronous	$2.7\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} \leq 5.5\text{ V}$	t_{Scyc}	125	—	ns	Figure 41.20	
			$2.4\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} < 2.7\text{ V}$		250	—			
			$1.8\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} < 2.4\text{ V}$		500	—			
			$1.6\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} < 1.8\text{ V}$		1000	—			
		Clock synchronous	$2.7\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} \leq 5.5\text{ V}$		187.5	—			
			$2.4\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} < 2.7\text{ V}$		375	—			
			$1.8\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} < 2.4\text{ V}$		750	—			
			$1.6\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} < 1.8\text{ V}$		1500	—			
	Input clock pulse width			t_{SCKW}	0.4	0.6	t_{Scyc}		
	Input clock rise time			t_{SCKr}	—	20	ns		
	Input clock fall time			t_{SCKf}	—	20	ns		
	Output clock cycle	Asynchronous	$2.7\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} \leq 5.5\text{ V}$	t_{Scyc}	187.5	—	ns		
			$2.4\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} < 2.7\text{ V}$		375	—			
			$1.8\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} < 2.4\text{ V}$		750	—			
			$1.6\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} < 1.8\text{ V}$		1500	—			
		Clock synchronous	$2.7\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} \leq 5.5\text{ V}$		125	—			
			$2.4\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} < 2.7\text{ V}$		250	—			
			$1.8\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} < 2.4\text{ V}$		500	—			
			$1.6\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} < 1.8\text{ V}$		1000	—			
	Output clock pulse width			t_{SCKW}	0.4	0.6	t_{Scyc}		
	Output clock rise time		$1.8\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} \leq 5.5\text{ V}$	t_{SCKr}	—	20	ns		
			$1.6\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} < 1.8\text{ V}$		—	30			
	Output clock fall time		$1.8\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} \leq 5.5\text{ V}$	t_{SCKf}	—	20	ns		
			$1.6\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} < 1.8\text{ V}$		—	30			
	Transmit data delay time (master)	Clock synchronous	$1.8\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} \leq 5.5\text{ V}$	t_{TXD}	—	40	ns	Figure 41.21	
			$1.6\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} < 1.8\text{ V}$		—	45			
Transmit data delay time (slave)	Clock synchronous	$2.7\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} \leq 5.5\text{ V}$	—	55	ns				
		$2.4\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} < 2.7\text{ V}$	—	60					
		$1.8\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} < 2.4\text{ V}$	—	100					
		$1.6\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} < 1.8\text{ V}$	—	125					
Receive data setup time (master)	Clock synchronous	$2.7\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} \leq 5.5\text{ V}$	t_{RXS}	45	—	ns			
		$2.4\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} < 2.7\text{ V}$		55	—				
		$1.8\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} < 2.4\text{ V}$		90	—				
		$1.6\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} < 1.8\text{ V}$		110	—				
Receive data setup time (slave)	Clock synchronous	$2.7\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} \leq 5.5\text{ V}$	40	—	ns				
		$1.6\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} < 2.7\text{ V}$	45	—					
Receive data hold time (master)	Clock synchronous			t_{RXH}	5	—	ns		
Receive data hold time (slave)	Clock synchronous			t_{RXH}	40	—	ns		

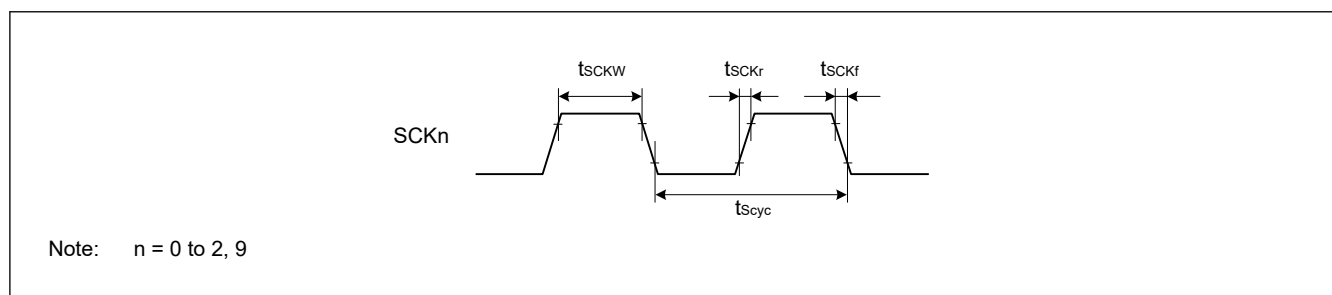


Figure 41.20 SCK clock input timing

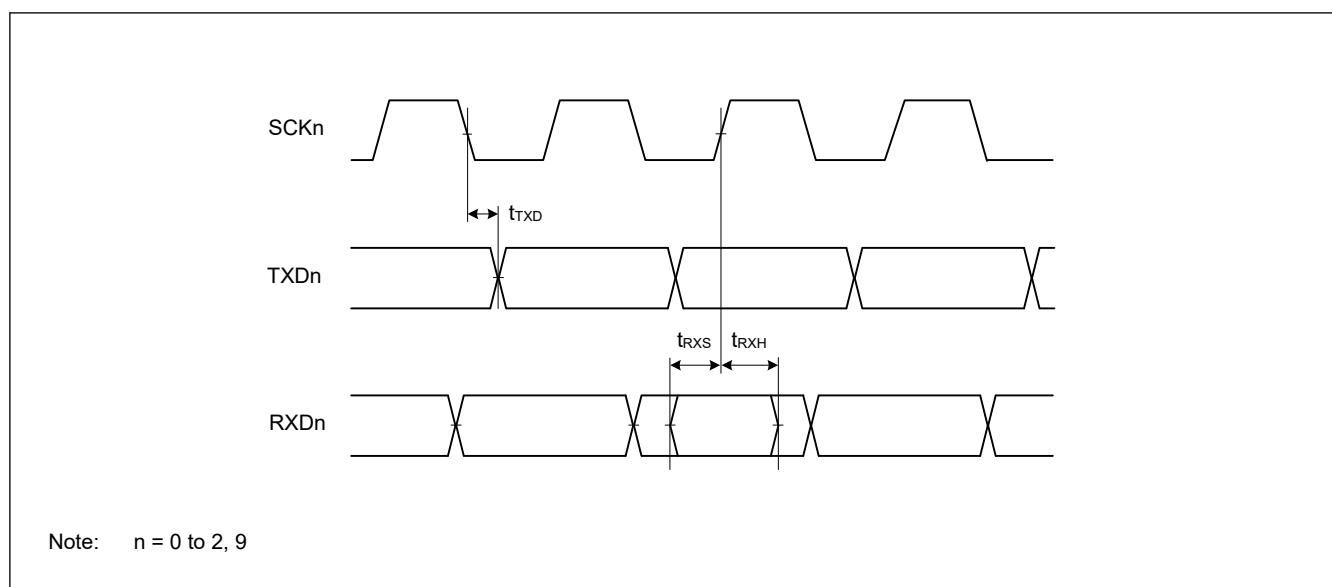


Figure 41.21 SCI input/output timing in clock synchronous mode

Table 41.31 SCI timing (2) (1 of 2)

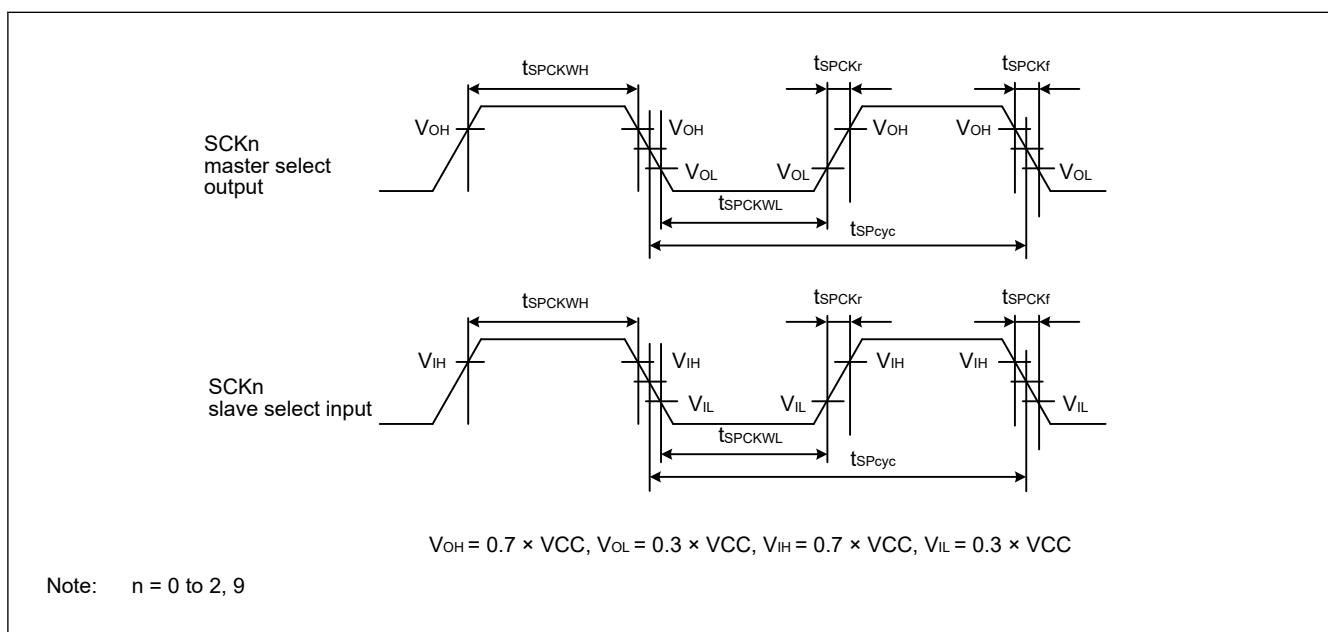
Conditions: VCC = AVCC0 = 1.6 to 5.5 V

Parameter			Symbol	Min	Max	Unit*1	Test conditions		
Simple SPI	SCK clock cycle output (master)		tSPcyc	125	—	ns	Figure 41.22		
				250	—				
				500	—				
				1000	—				
	SCK clock cycle input (slave)			187.5	—				
				375	—				
				750	—				
				1500	—				
	SCK clock high pulse width			tSPCKWH	0.4	0.6		tSPcyc	
	SCK clock low pulse width			tSPCKWL	0.4	0.6		tSPcyc	
	SCK clock rise and fall time		tSPCKr, tSPCKf	—	20	ns			
				—	30				
	Data input setup time		tSU	45	—	ns		Figure 41.23 to Figure 41.26	
				Master	55				—
					80				—
110					—				
Slave					40		—		
				45	—				
Data input hold time		tH	33.3	—	ns				
			Slave	40		—			
SS input setup time			tLEAD	1	—	tSPcyc			
SS input hold time			tLAG	1	—	tSPcyc			
Data output delay time		Master	tOD	—	40	ns			
				—	50				
		Slave		—	65				
				—	100				
				—	125				
Data output hold time		tOH	-10	—	ns				
			-20	—					
			-30	—					
			-40	—					
			Slave	-10		—			
Data rise and fall time		tDr, tDf	—	20	ns				
			Master	—		30			
				Slave		—	20		
			—			30			

Table 41.31 SCI timing (2) (2 of 2)

Conditions: VCC = AVCC0 = 1.6 to 5.5 V

Parameter				Symbol	Min	Max	Unit*1	Test conditions
Simple SPI	Slave access time	2.4 V ≤ VCC ≤ 5.5 V		tSA	—	6	tPcyc	Figure 41.26
		1.8 V ≤ VCC < 2.4 V	24 MHz ≤ PCLKB ≤ 32 MHz		—	7		
			PCLKB < 24 MHz		—	6		
		1.6 V ≤ VCC < 1.8 V			—	6		
	Slave output release time	2.4 V ≤ VCC ≤ 5.5 V		tREL	—	6	tPcyc	
		1.8 V ≤ VCC < 2.4 V	24 MHz ≤ PCLKB ≤ 32 MHz		—	7		
			PCLKB < 24 MHz		—	6		
		1.6 V ≤ VCC < 1.8 V			—	6		

Note 1. t_{Pcyc} : PCLKB cycle.**Figure 41.22 SCI simple SPI mode clock timing**

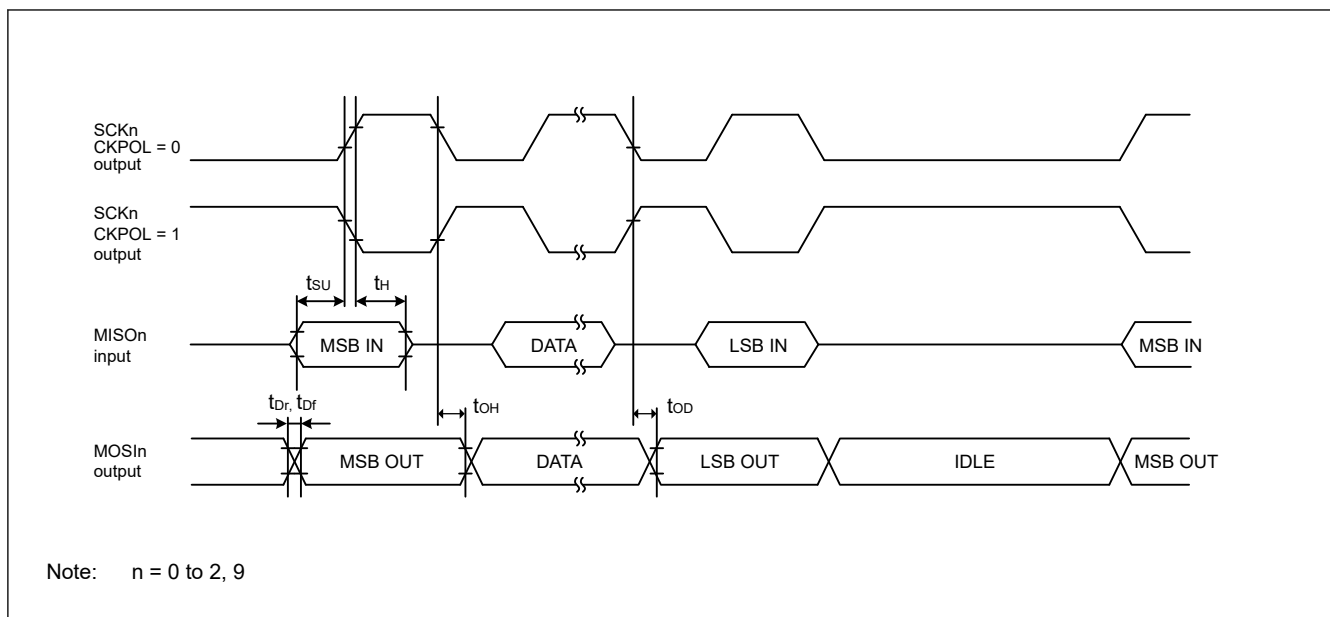


Figure 41.23 SCI simple SPI mode timing (master, CKPH = 1)

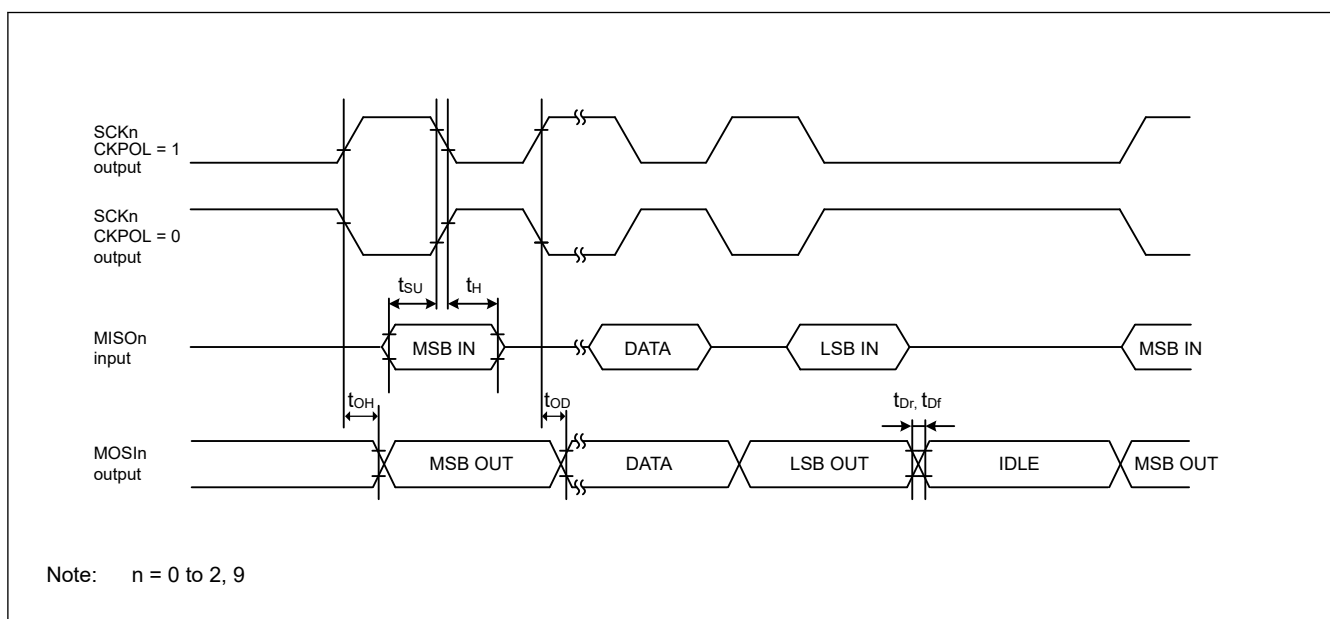


Figure 41.24 SCI simple SPI mode timing (master, CKPH = 0)

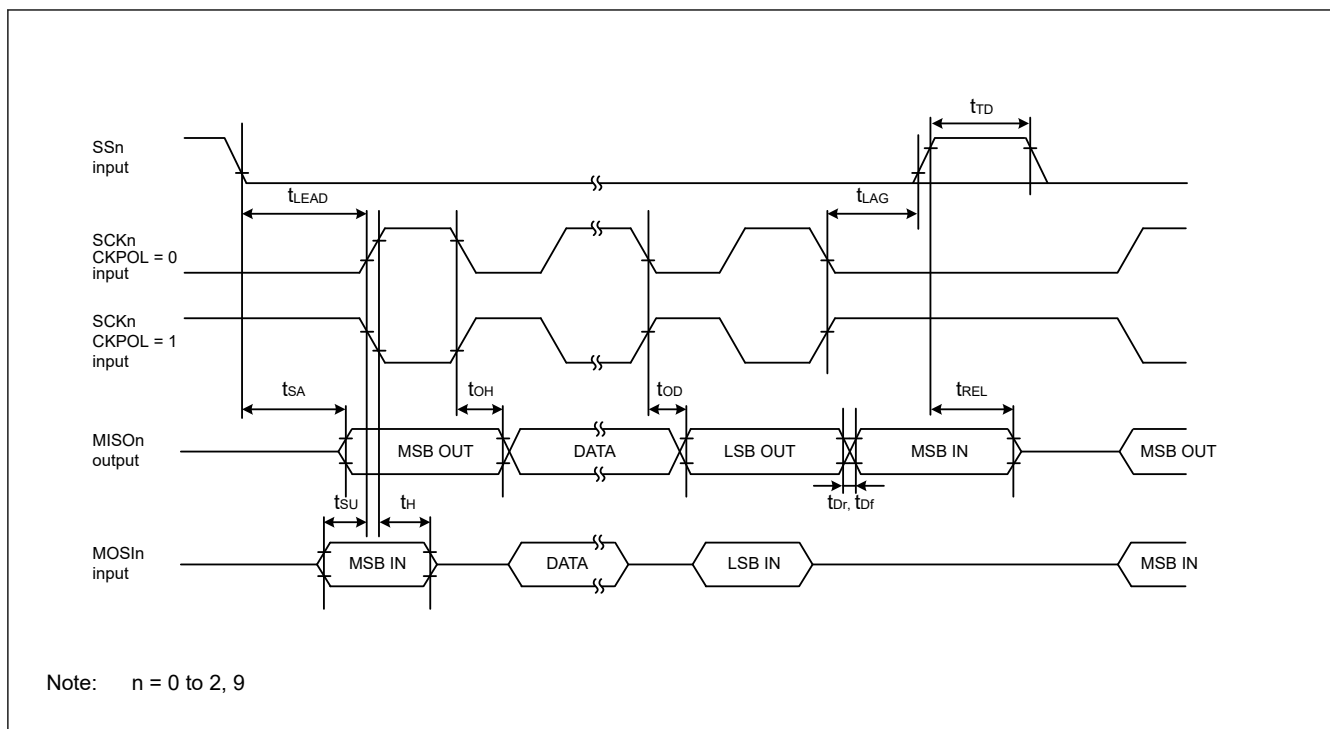


Figure 41.25 SCI simple SPI mode timing (slave, CKPH = 1)

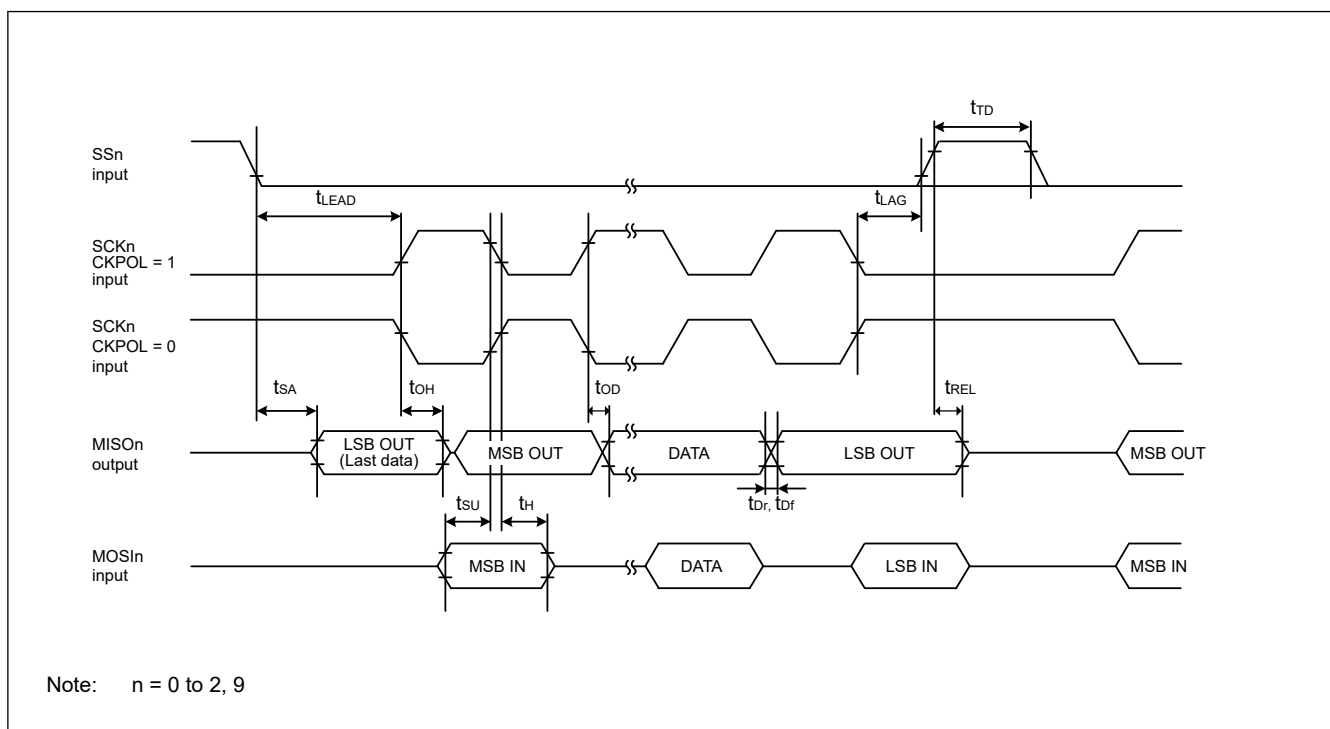
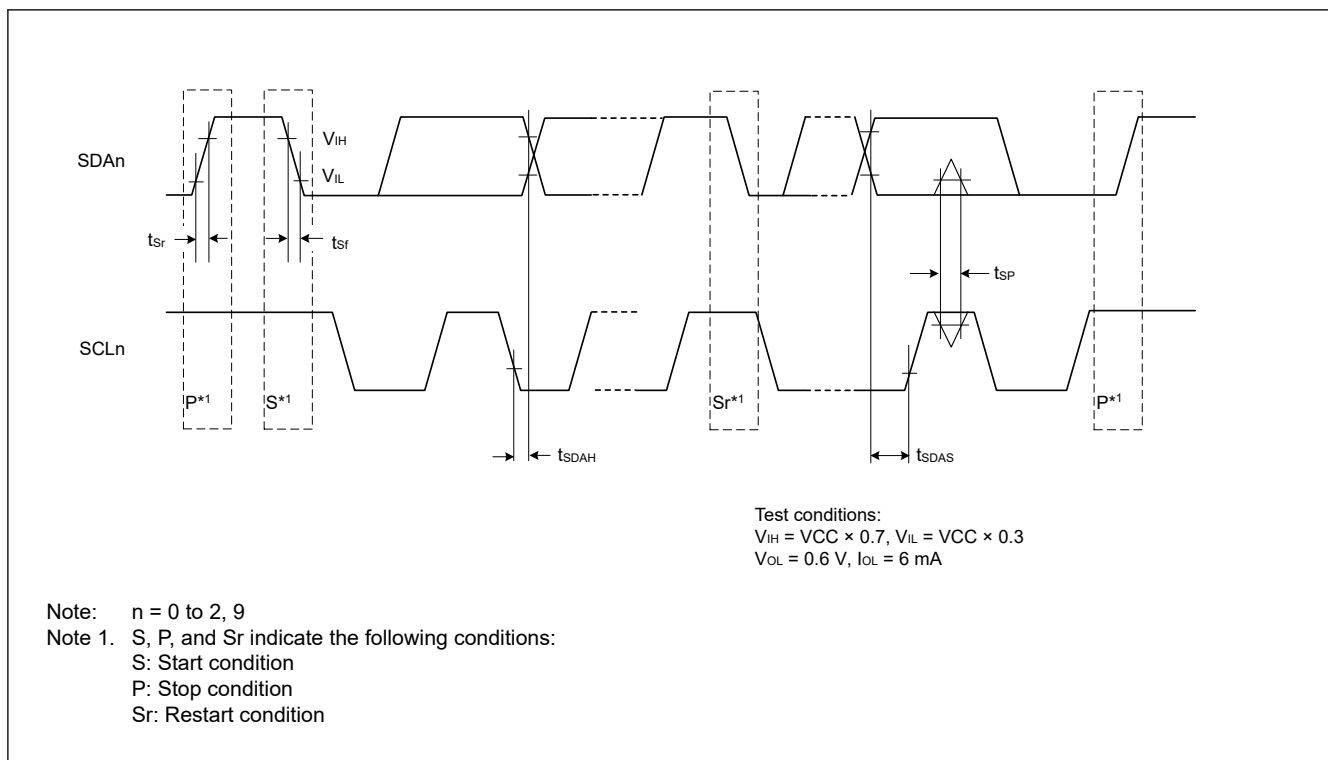


Figure 41.26 SCI simple SPI mode timing (slave, CKPH = 0)

Table 41.32 SCI timing (3)

Conditions: VCC = AVCC0 = 2.7 to 5.5 V

Parameter	Symbol	Min	Max	Unit	Test conditions
Simple IIC (Standard mode)	SDA input rise time	t_{Sr}	—	1000	ns
	SDA input fall time	t_{Sf}	—	300	ns
	SDA input spike pulse removal time	t_{SP}	0	$4 \times t_{IICcyc}^{*1}$	ns
	Data input setup time	t_{SDAS}	250	—	ns
	Data input hold time	t_{SDAH}	0	—	ns
	SCL, SDA capacitive load	C_b^{*2}	—	400	pF
Simple IIC (Fast mode)	SDA input rise time	t_{Sr}	—	300	ns
	SDA input fall time	t_{Sf}	—	300	ns
	SDA input spike pulse removal time	t_{SP}	0	$4 \times t_{IICcyc}^{*1}$	ns
	Data input setup time	t_{SDAS}	100	—	ns
	Data input hold time	t_{SDAH}	0	—	ns
	SCL, SDA capacitive load	C_b^{*2}	—	400	pF

Note 1. t_{IICcyc} : Clock cycle selected by the SMR.CKS[1:0] bits.Note 2. C_b indicates the total capacity of the bus line.**Figure 41.27 SCI simple IIC mode timing**

41.3.9 SPI Timing

Table 41.33 SPI timing (1 of 3)

Parameter				Symbol	Min	Max	Unit ^{*1}	Test conditions
SPI	RSPCK clock cycle	Master	$2.7\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} \leq 5.5\text{ V}$	t_{SPCyc}	62.5	—	ns	Figure 41.28 C = 30 pF
			$2.4\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} < 2.7\text{ V}$		125	—		
			$1.8\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} < 2.4\text{ V}$		250	—		
			$1.6\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} < 1.8\text{ V}$		500	—		
		Slave	$2.7\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} \leq 5.5\text{ V}$		187.5	—		
			$2.4\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} < 2.7\text{ V}$		375	—		
			$1.8\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} < 2.4\text{ V}$		750	—		
			$1.6\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} < 1.8\text{ V}$		1500	—		
	RSPCK clock high pulse width	Master		t_{SPCKWH}	$(t_{\text{SPCyc}} - t_{\text{SPCKr}} - t_{\text{SPCKf}}) / 2 - 3$		ns	
		Slave			$3 \times t_{\text{Pcyc}}$			
	RSPCK clock low pulse width	Master		t_{SPCKWL}	$(t_{\text{SPCyc}} - t_{\text{SPCKr}} - t_{\text{SPCKf}}) / 2 - 3$		ns	
		Slave			$3 \times t_{\text{Pcyc}}$			
	RSPCK clock rise and fall time	Output	$2.7\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} \leq 5.5\text{ V}$	$t_{\text{SPCKr}}, t_{\text{SPCKf}}$	—	10	ns	
			$2.4\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} < 2.7\text{ V}$		—	15		
			$1.8\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} \leq 2.4\text{ V}$		—	20		
			$1.6\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} < 1.8\text{ V}$		—	30		
		Input		—	0.1	μs/V		

Table 41.33 SPI timing (2 of 3)

Parameter					Symbol	Min	Max	Unit*1	Test conditions
SPI	Data input setup time	Master	2.7 V ≤ VCC ≤ 5.5 V		t _{SU}	10	—	ns	Figure 41.29 to Figure 41.34 C = 30 pF
			2.4 V ≤ VCC < 2.7 V	16 MHz < PCLKB ≤ 32 MHz		30	—		
				PCLKB ≤ 16 MHz		10	—		
			1.8 V ≤ VCC < 2.4 V	16 MHz < PCLKB ≤ 32 MHz		55	—		
				8 MHz < PCLKB ≤ 16 MHz		30	—		
				PCLKB ≤ 8 MHz		10	—		
			1.6 V ≤ VCC < 1.8 V			10	—		
		Slave	2.4 V ≤ VCC ≤ 5.5 V			10	—		
			1.8 V ≤ VCC < 2.4 V			15	—		
			1.6 V ≤ VCC < 1.8 V			20	—		
	Data input hold time	Master (RSPCK is PCLKB/2)		t _{HF}	0	—	ns		
		Master (RSPCK is not PCLKB/2)		t _H	t _{Pcyc}	—			
		Slave		t _H	20	—			
SPI	SSL setup time	Master	1.8 V ≤ VCC ≤ 5.5 V		t _{LEAD}	-30 + N × t _{SPcyc} ^{*2}	—	ns	
			1.6 V ≤ VCC < 1.8 V			-50 + N × t _{SPcyc} ^{*2}	—		
		Slave		6 × t _{Pcyc}		—	ns		
	SSL hold time	Master		t _{LAG}	-30 + N × t _{SPcyc} ^{*3}	—	ns		
		Slave			6 × t _{Pcyc}	—	ns		
	Data output delay time	Master	2.7 V ≤ VCC ≤ 5.5 V		t _{OD}	—	14	ns	
			2.4 V ≤ VCC < 2.7 V			—	20		
			1.8 V ≤ VCC < 2.4 V			—	25		
			1.6 V ≤ VCC < 1.8 V			—	30		
		Slave	2.7 V ≤ VCC ≤ 5.5 V			—	50		
			2.4 V ≤ VCC < 2.7 V			—	60		
			1.8 V ≤ VCC < 2.4 V			—	85		
			1.6 V ≤ VCC < 1.8 V			—	110		
Data output hold time	Master		t _{OH}	0	—	ns			
	Slave			0	—				
Successive transmission delay time	Master		t _{TD}	t _{SPcyc} + 2 × t _{Pcyc}	8 × t _{SPcyc} + 2 × t _{Pcyc}	ns			
	Slave			6 × t _{Pcyc}	—				

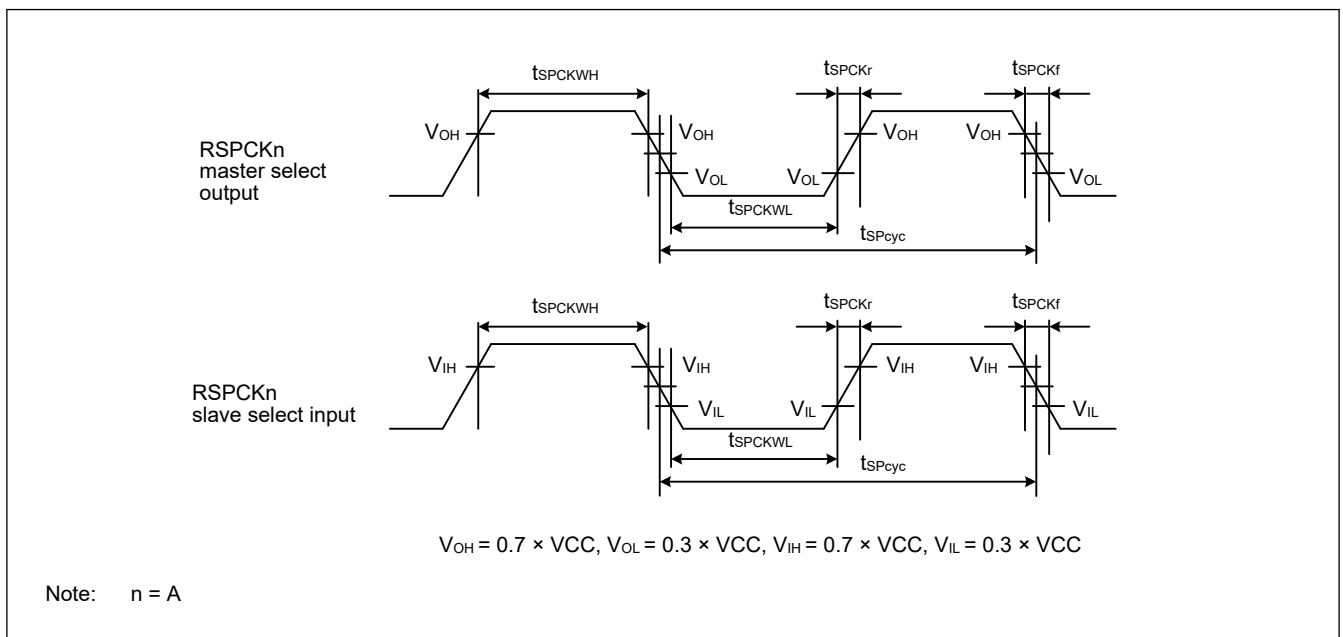
Table 41.33 SPI timing (3 of 3)

Parameter				Symbol	Min	Max	Unit*1	Test conditions
SPI	MOSI and MISO rise and fall time	Output	$2.7\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} \leq 5.5\text{ V}$	t_{Dr}, t_{Df}	—	10	ns	Figure 41.29 to Figure 41.34 C = 30 pF
			$2.4\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} < 2.7\text{ V}$		—	15		
			$1.8\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} < 2.4\text{ V}$		—	20		
			$1.6\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} < 1.8\text{ V}$		—	30		
		Input	—		1	μs		
	SSL rise and fall time	Output	$2.7\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} \leq 5.5\text{ V}$	t_{SSLr}, t_{SSLf}	—	10	ns	
			$2.4\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} < 2.7\text{ V}$		—	15		
			$1.8\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} < 2.4\text{ V}$		—	20		
			$1.6\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} < 1.8\text{ V}$		—	30		
		Input	—		1	μs		
Slave access time		$2.4\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} \leq 5.5\text{ V}$	t_{SA}	—	$2 \times t_{Pcyc} + 100$	ns	Figure 41.33 and Figure 41.34 C = 30 pF	
		$1.8\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} < 2.4\text{ V}$		—	$2 \times t_{Pcyc} + 140$			
		$1.6\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} < 1.8\text{ V}$		—	$2 \times t_{Pcyc} + 180$			
Slave output release time		$2.4\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} \leq 5.5\text{ V}$	t_{REL}	—	$2 \times t_{Pcyc} + 100$	ns		
		$1.8\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} < 2.4\text{ V}$		—	$2 \times t_{Pcyc} + 140$			
		$1.6\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} < 1.8\text{ V}$		—	$2 \times t_{Pcyc} + 180$			

Note 1. t_{Pcyc} : PCLKB cycle.

Note 2. N is set as an integer from 1 to 8 by the SPCKD register.

Note 3. N is set as an integer from 1 to 8 by the SSLND register.

**Figure 41.28 SPI clock timing**

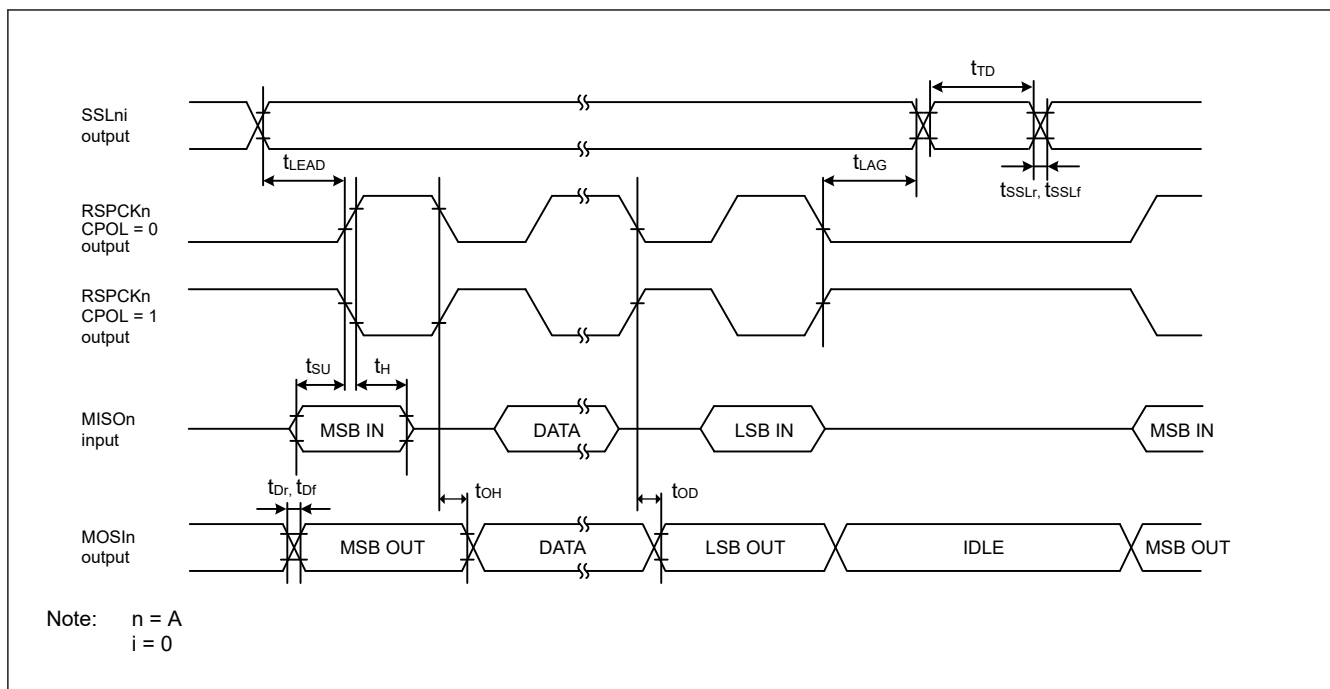


Figure 41.29 SPI timing (master, CPHA = 0) (bit rate: PCLKB division ratio is set to any value other than 1/2)

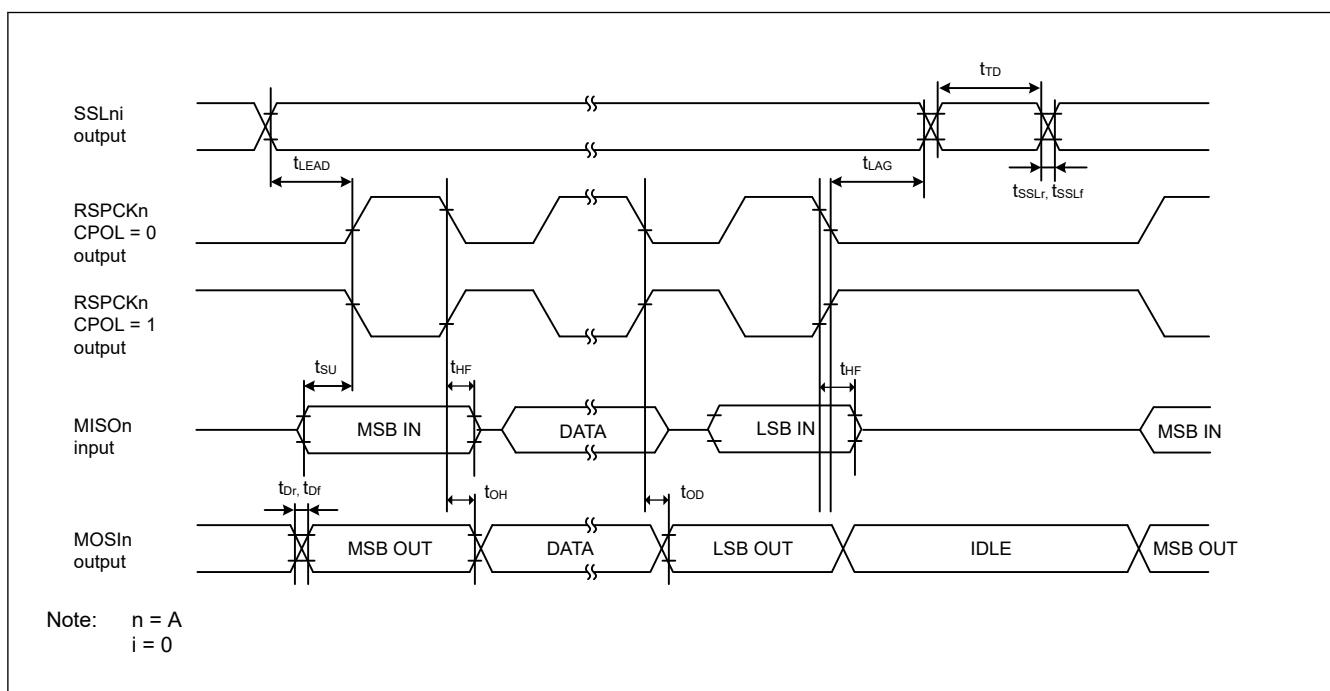


Figure 41.30 SPI timing (master, CPHA = 0) (bit rate: PCLKB division ratio is set to 1/2)

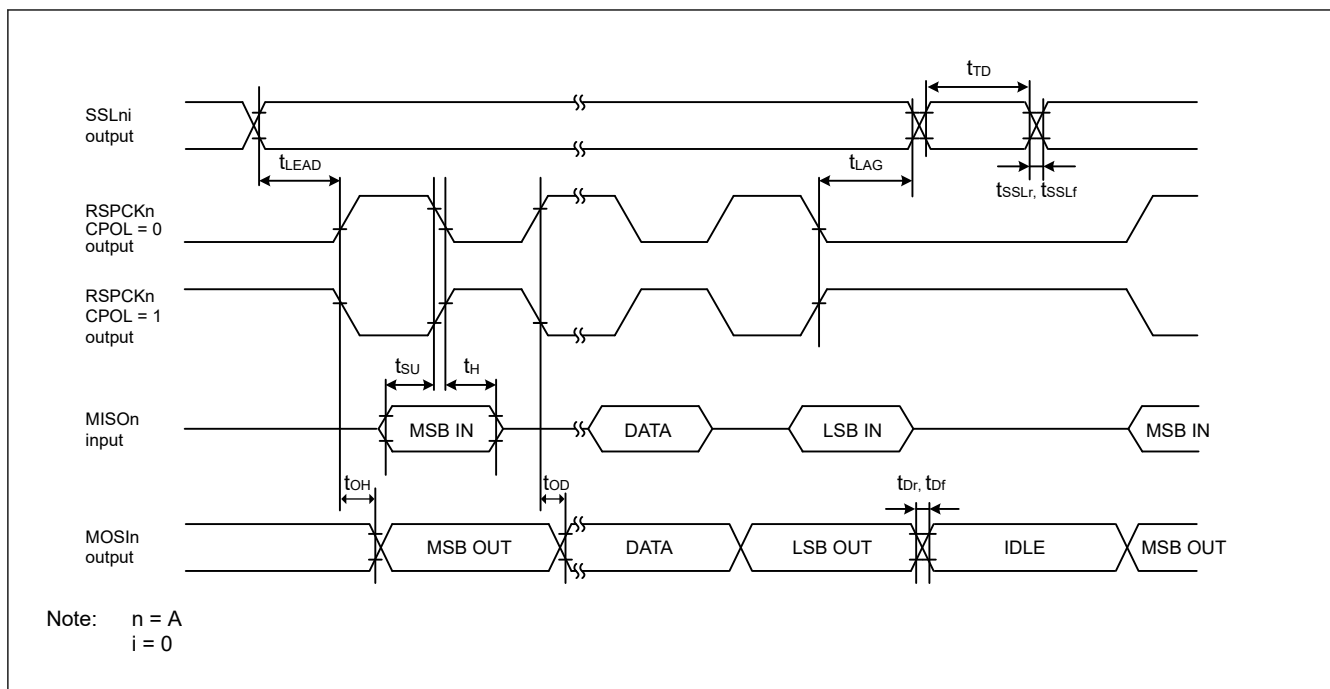


Figure 41.31 SPI timing (master, CPHA = 1) (bit rate: PCLKB division ratio is set to any value other than 1/2)

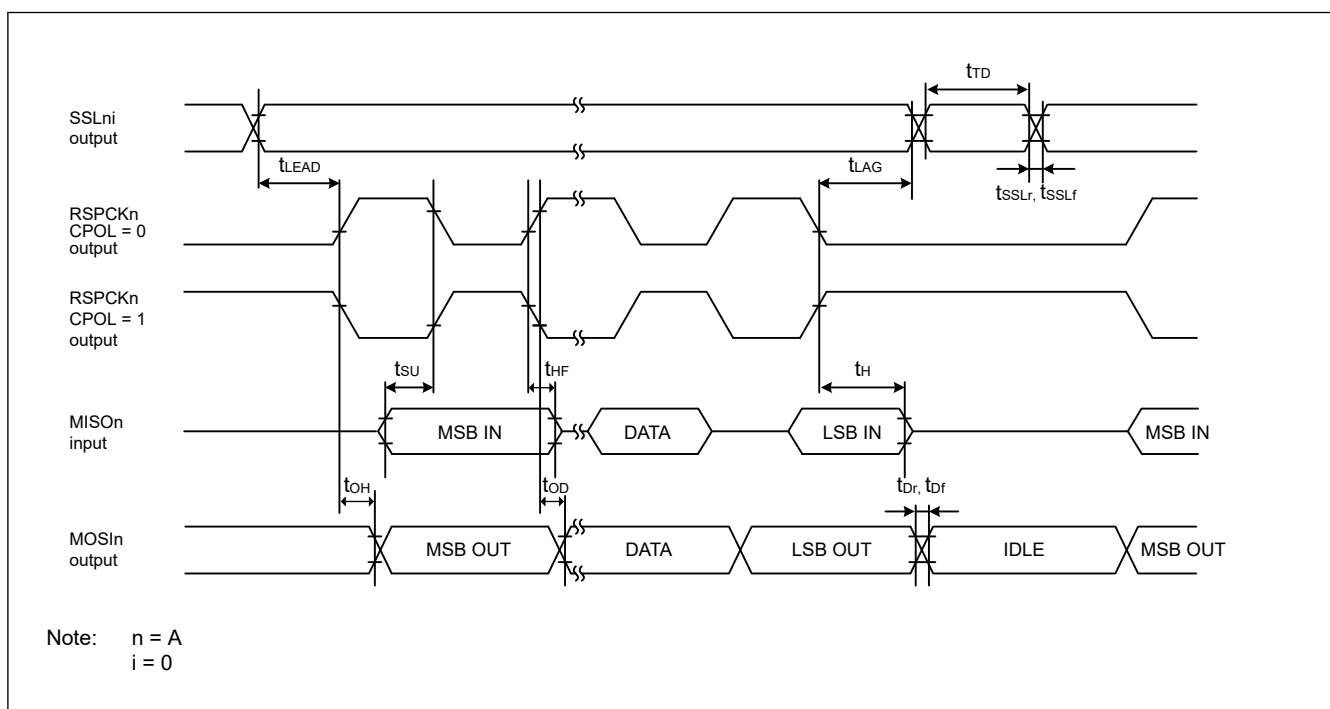


Figure 41.32 SPI timing (master, CPHA = 1) (bit rate: PCLKB division ratio is set to 1/2)

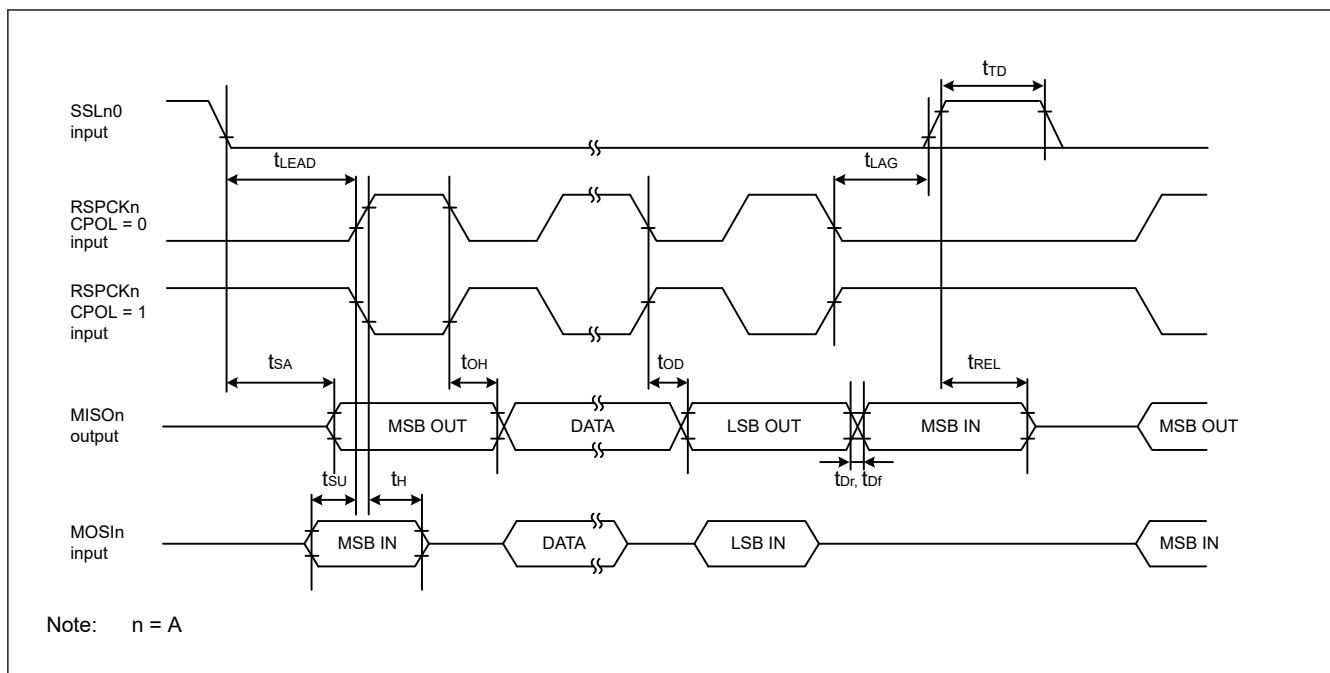


Figure 41.33 SPI timing (slave, CPHA = 0)

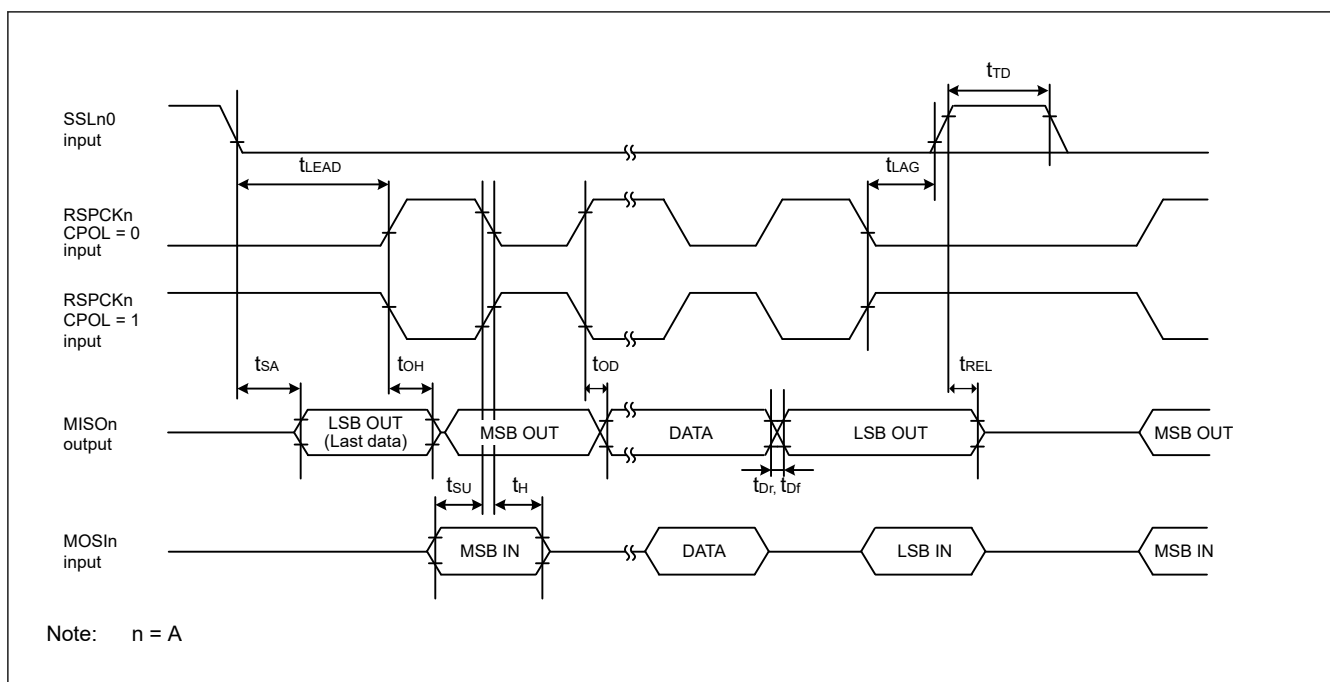


Figure 41.34 SPI timing (slave, CPHA = 1)

41.3.10 I3C Timing

Table 41.34 IIC timing

Conditions: VCC = 2.7 to 5.5 V

Parameter	Symbol	Min*1	Max	Unit	Test conditions
IIC (standard mode, SMBus)	SCL cycle time	t_{SCL}	$6 (40) \times t_{IICcyc} + 4 \times t_{Pcyc} + 1300$	—	ns Figure 41.35
	SCL high pulse width	t_{SCLH}	$3 (20) \times t_{IICcyc} + 2 \times t_{Pcyc} + 300$	—	
	SCL low pulse width	t_{SCLL}	$3 (20) \times t_{IICcyc} + 2 \times t_{Pcyc} + 800$	—	
	SCL, SDA rise time	t_{Sr}	—	1000	
	SCL, SDA fall time	t_{Sf}	—	300	
	SCL, SDA spike pulse removal time	t_{SP}	0	$1 (16) \times t_{IICcyc}$	
	SDA bus free time	t_{BUF}	$3 (20) \times t_{IICcyc} + 300$	—	
	Hold time for START condition	t_{STAH}	$t_{IICcyc} + 300$	—	
	Setup time for repeated START condition	t_{STAS}	1000	—	
	Setup time for STOP condition	t_{STOS}	1000	—	
	Data setup time	t_{SDAS}	$t_{IICcyc} + 50$	—	
	Data hold time	t_{SDAH}	0	—	
	SCL, SDA capacitive load	C_b	—	400	
IIC (Fast mode)	SCL cycle time	t_{SCL}	$6 (40) \times t_{IICcyc} + 4 \times t_{Pcyc} + 600$	—	ns Figure 41.35
	SCL high pulse width	t_{SCLH}	$3 (20) \times t_{IICcyc} + 2 \times t_{Pcyc} + 300$	—	
	SCL low pulse width	t_{SCLL}	$3 (20) \times t_{IICcyc} + 2 \times t_{Pcyc} + 300$	—	
	SCL, SDA rise time	t_{Sr}	—	300	
	SCL, SDA fall time	t_{Sf}	—	300	
	SCL, SDA spike pulse removal time	t_{SP}	0	$1 (16) \times t_{IICcyc}$	
	SDA bus free time	t_{BUF}	$3 (20) \times t_{IICcyc} + 300$	—	
	Hold time for START condition	t_{STAH}	$t_{IICcyc} + 300$	—	
	Setup time for repeated START condition	t_{STAS}	300	—	
	Setup time for STOP condition	t_{STOS}	300	—	
	Data setup time	t_{SDAS}	$t_{IICcyc} + 50$	—	
	Data hold time	t_{SDAH}	0	—	
	SCL, SDA capacitive load	C_b	—	400	

Note: t_{IICcyc} : IIC internal reference clock (IICφ) cycle, t_{Pcyc} : PCLKD cycle

Note 1. Values in parentheses apply when INCTL.DNFS[3:0] is set to 1111b while the digital filter is enabled with DNFE.DNFE set to 1.

Table 41.35 IIC timing (Fast-mode+)

Conditions: VCC = 2.7 to 5.5 V

Parameter		Symbol	Min*1	Max	Unit	Test conditions
IIC (Fast-mode+)	SCL cycle time	t_{SCL}	$6 (40) \times t_{IICcyc} + 4 \times t_{Pcyc} + 240$	—	ns	Figure 41.35
	SCL high pulse width	t_{SCLH}	$3 (20) \times t_{IICcyc} + 2 \times t_{Pcyc} + 120$	—	ns	
	SCL low pulse width	t_{SCLL}	$3 (20) \times t_{IICcyc} + 2 \times t_{Pcyc} + 120$	—	ns	
	SCL, SDA rise time	t_{Sr}	—	120	ns	
	SCL, SDA fall time	t_{Sf}	—	120	ns	
	SCL, SDA spike pulse removal time	t_{SP}	—	$1 (16) \times t_{IICcyc}$	ns	
	SDA bus free time	t_{BUF}	$3 (20) \times t_{IICcyc} + 120$	—	ns	
	Hold time for START condition	t_{STAH}	$t_{IICcyc} + 135$	—	ns	
	Setup time for repeated START condition	t_{STAS}	260	—	ns	
	Setup time for STOP condition	t_{STOS}	260	—	ns	
	Data setup time	t_{SDAS}	50	—	ns	
	Data hold time	t_{SDAH}	0	—	ns	
	SCL, SDA capacitive load	C_b	—	550	pF	

Note: t_{IICcyc} : IIC internal reference clock (IIC ϕ) cycle, t_{Pcyc} : PCLKD cycle.

Note 1. Values in parentheses apply when INCTL.DNFS[3:0] is set to 1111b while the digital filter is enabled with INCTL.DNFE set to 1.

Table 41.36 IIC timing (HS mode)

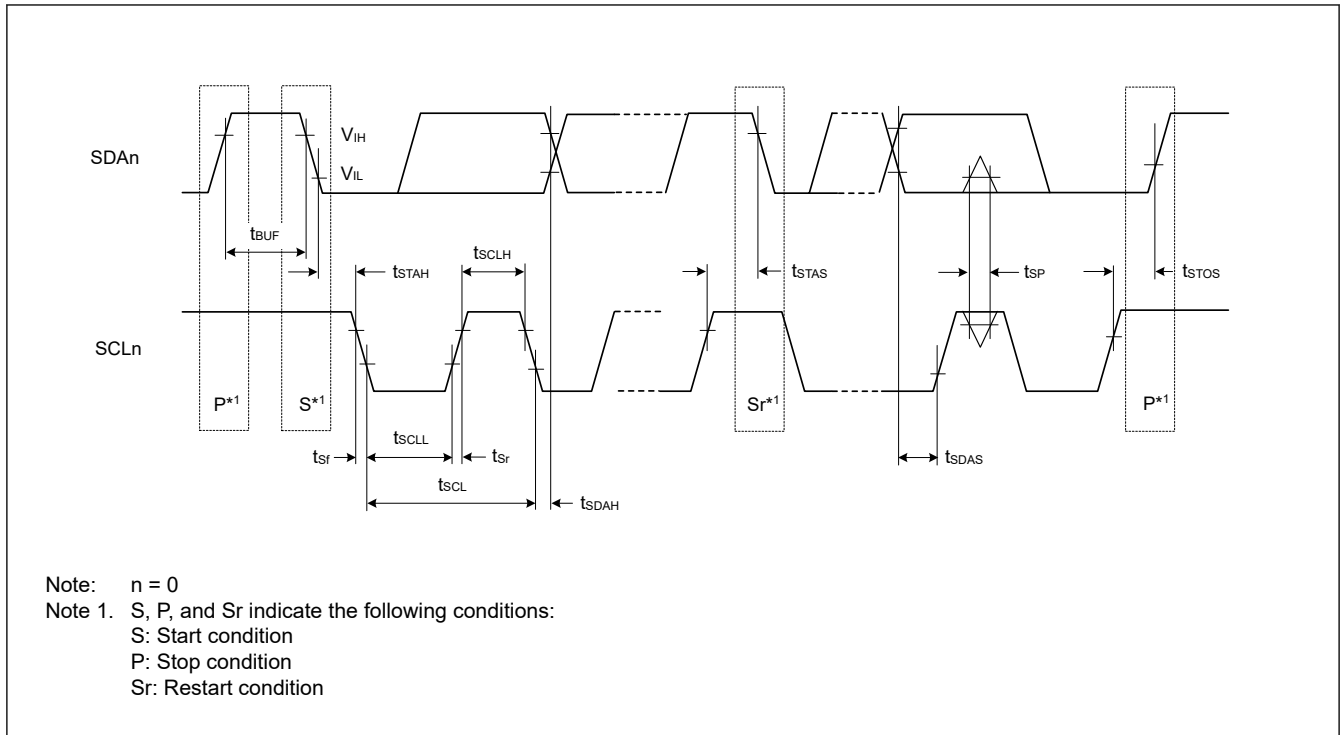
Conditions: VCC = 2.7 to 5.5 V

Parameter		Symbol	Cb = 100 pF		Cb = 400 pF		Unit	Test conditions
			Min*1	Max	Min*1	Max		
IIC (HS mode)	SCL cycle time	t _{SCL}	330 (+ 10 × t _{IICcyc}) when PCLKD = 64 MHz 390 (+ 10 × t _{IICcyc}) when PCLKD = 48 MHz	—	500 (+ 10 × t _{IICcyc}) when PCLKD = 64 MHz *2 560 (+ 10 × t _{IICcyc}) when PCLKD = 48 MHz	—	ns	Figure 41.35
	SCL high pulse width	t _{SCLH}	125 (+ 5 × t _{IICcyc}) when PCLKD = 64 MHz 155 (+ 5 × t _{IICcyc}) when PCLKD = 48 MHz	—	140 (+ 5 × t _{IICcyc}) when PCLKD = 64 MHz 170 (+ 5 × t _{IICcyc}) when PCLKD = 48 MHz	—	ns	
	SCL low pulse width	t _{SCLL}	205 (+ 5 × t _{IICcyc}) when PCLKD = 64 MHz 230 (+ 5 × t _{IICcyc}) when PCLKD = 48 MHz	—	320 (+ 5 × t _{IICcyc}) when PCLKD = 64 MHz 350 (+ 5 × t _{IICcyc}) when PCLKD = 48 MHz	—	ns	
	SCL rise time	t _{Sr}	—	40	—	80	ns	
	SCL rise time after a repeated START condition and after an acknowledge bit	t _{Sr}	—	80	—	160	ns	
	SCL fall time	t _{Sf}	—	40	—	80	ns	
	SDA fall time	t _{Sf}	—	80	—	160	ns	
	SDA fall time	t _{Sf}	—	80	—	160	ns	
	SCL, SDA spike pulse removal time	t _{SP}	0	1 (4) × t _{IICcyc}	0	1 (4) × t _{IICcyc}	ns	
	Hold time for START condition	t _{STA H}	t _{IICcyc} + 135	—	t _{IICcyc} + 135	—	ns	
	Setup time for repeated START condition	t _{STAS}	160	—	160	—	ns	
	Setup time for STOP condition	t _{STO S}	160	—	160	—	ns	
	Data setup time	t _{SDA S}	10	—	10	—	ns	
	Data hold time	t _{SDA H}	0	80	0	150	ns	
SCL, SDA capacitive load		C _b	—	100	—	400	pF	

Note: t_{IICcyc}: IIC internal reference clock (IICφ) cycle, t_{Pcyc}: PCLKD cycle.

Note 1. Values in parentheses apply when INCTL.DNFS[3:0] is set to 1111b while the digital filter is enabled with INCTL.DNFE set to 1.

Note 2. The maximum SCL clock frequency is 1.7MHz.

**Figure 41.35** I²C bus interface input/output timing**Table 41.37** I3C timing (Open Drain Timing Parameters)

Conditions: VCC = 2.97 to 3.63 V

Parameter	Symbol	Timing Diagram	Min	Max	Units	Notes
SCL Clock Low Period	t_{LOW_OD}	Figure 41.38	200	—	ns	1, 2
	$t_{DIG\_OD\_L}$	Figure 41.38	$t_{LOW\_ODmin} + t_{rDA\_ODmin}$	—	ns	—
SDA Signal Fall Time	t_{rDA_OD}	Figure 41.38	t_{CF}	33	ns	—
SDA Data Setup Time Open Drain Mode	t_{SU_OD}	Figure 41.37	4	—	ns	1
		Figure 41.38				
Clock After START (S) Condition	t_{CAS}	Figure 41.38	38.4	For ENTAS0: 1 μ	seconds	5, 6
				For ENTAS1: 100 μ		
				For ENTAS2: 2 m		
				For ENTAS3: 50 m		
Clock Before STOP (P) Condition	t_{CBP}	Figure 41.39	t_{CASmin}	—	seconds	—
Current Master to Secondary Master Overlap time during handoff	$t_{MMOverlap}$	Figure 41.44	$t_{DIG\_OD\_Lmin}$	—	ns	—
Bus Available Condition	t_{AVAL}	—	1	—	μ s	7
Bus Idle Condition	t_{IDLE}	—	1	—	ms	—
Time Interval Where New Master Not Driving SDA Low	t_{MMLock}	Figure 41.44	$t_{AVALmin}$	—	μ s	—

- Note:
1. This is approximately equal to $t_{LOWmin} + t_{DS\_ODmin} + t_{rDA\_ODtyp} + t_{SU\_ODmin}$.
 2. The Master may use a shorter Low period if it knows that this is safe, i.e., that SDA is already above V_{IH}.
 3. On a Legacy Bus where I²C Devices need to see Start.
 4. Slaves that do not support the optional ENTASx CCCs shall use the t_{CAS} Max value shown for ENTAS3
 5. On a Mixed Bus with Fm Legacy I²C Devices, t_{AVAL} is 300 ns shorter than the Fm Bus Free Condition time (t_{BUF})

Table 41.38 I3C timing (Push-Pull Timing Parameters for SDR)

Parameter	Symbol	Timing Diagram	Min	Max	Units	Notes
SCL Clock Frequency	f_{SCL}	—	0.01	4.6 (when PCLKD = 64 M) 3.4 (when PCLKD = 48 M)	MHz	1
SCL Clock Low Period	t_{LOW}	Figure 41.36	80 (when PCLKD = 64 M) 104 (when PCLKD = 48 M)	—	ns	—
	t_{DIG_L}	Figure 41.36	88 (when PCLKD = 64 M) 112 (when PCLKD = 48 M)	—	ns	2, 4
SCL Clock High Period	t_{HIGH}	Figure 41.36	112 (when PCLKD = 64 M) 148 (when PCLKD = 48 M)	—	ns	—
	t_{DIG_H}	Figure 41.36	120 (when PCLKD = 64 M) 156 (when PCLKD = 48 M)	—	ns	2
Clock in to Data Out for Slave	t_{SCO}	Figure 41.41	—	42	ns	—
SCL Clock Rise Time	t_{CR}	Figure 41.36	—	$150 * 1 / f_{SCL}$ (capped at 60)	ns	—
SCL Clock Fall Time	t_{CF}	Figure 41.36	—	$150 * 1 / f_{SCL}$ (capped at 60)	ns	—
SDA Signal Data Hold in Push-Pull Mode	Master t_{HD_PP}	Figure 41.40	$t_{CR} + 3$ and $t_{CF} + 3$	—	—	4
	Slave t_{HD_PP}	Figure 41.42	0	—	—	—
SDA Signal Data Setup in Push-Pull Mode	t_{SU_PP}	Figure 41.40	4	N/A	ns	—
		Figure 41.41				
Clock After Repeated START (Sr)	t_{CASr}	Figure 41.43	t_{CASmin}	N/A	ns	—
Clock Before Repeated START (Sr)	t_{CBSr}	Figure 41.43	t_{CASmin}	N/A	ns	—
Capacitive Load per Bus Line (SDA/SCL)	C_b	—	—	50	pF	—

Note: 1. $f_{SCL} = 1 / (t_{DIG\_L} + t_{DIG\_H})$

2. t_{DIG_L} and t_{DIG_H} are the clock Low and High periods as seen at the receiver end of the I3C Bus using VIL and VIH (see Figure 41.36)

3. As both edges are used, the hold time must be satisfied for the respective edges, for example, $t_{CF} + 3$ for falling edge clocks, and $t_{CR} + 3$ for rising edge clocks.

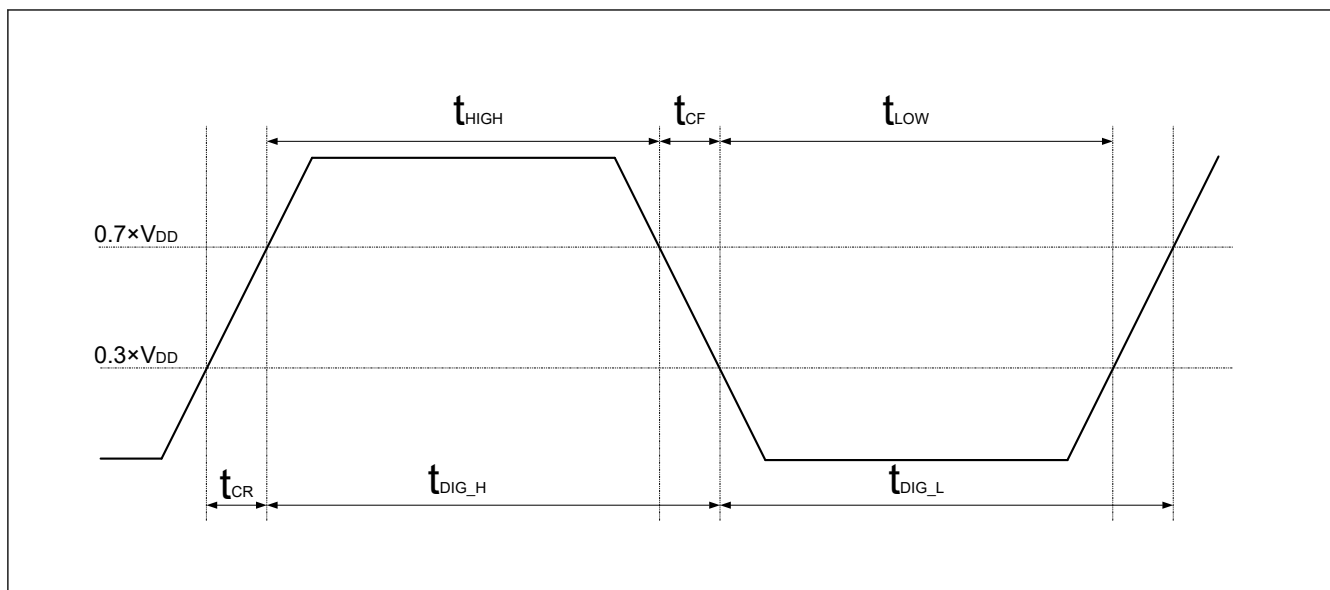


Figure 41.36 t_{DIG_H} and t_{DIG_L}

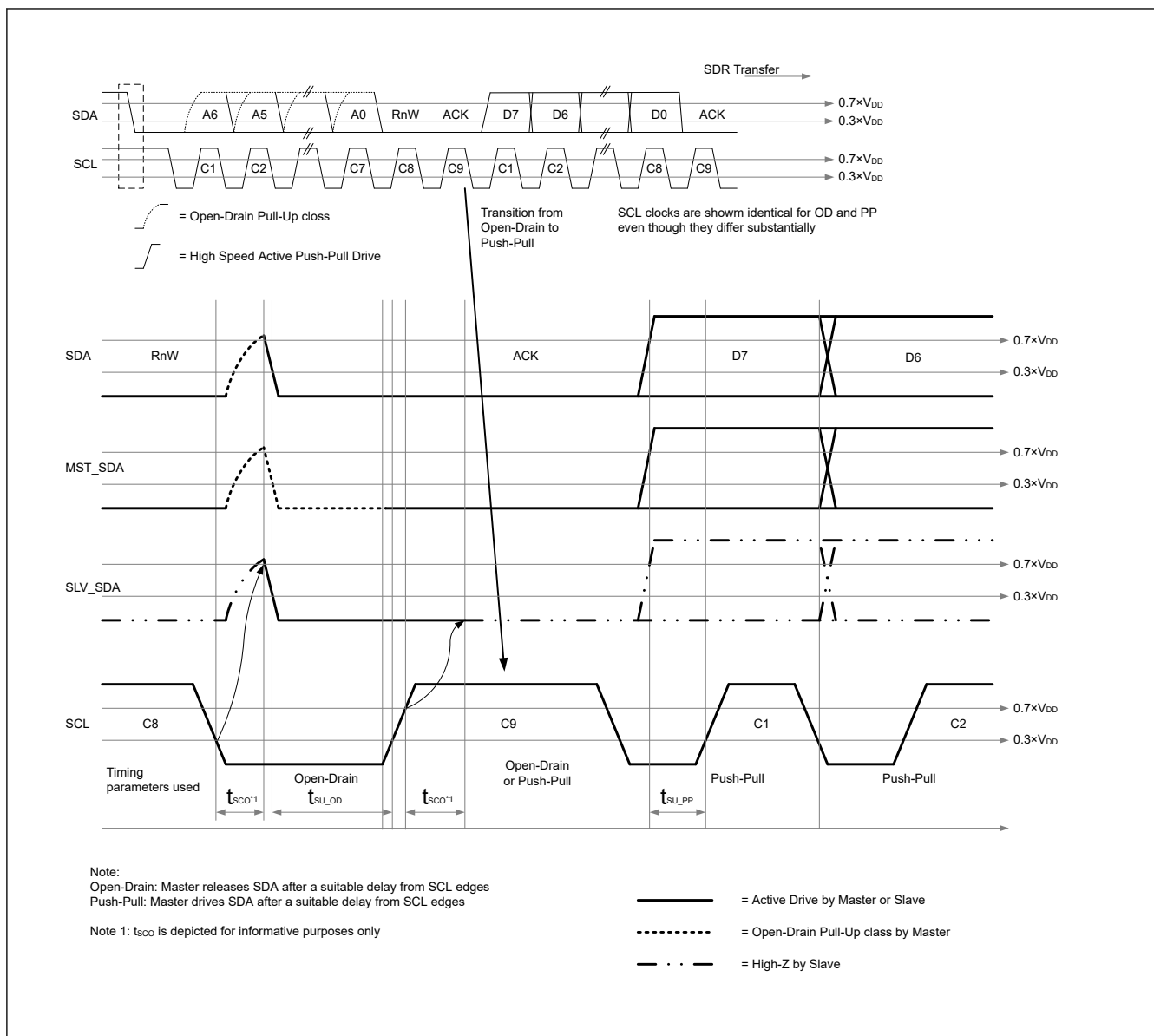


Figure 41.37 I3C data transfer – ACK by slave

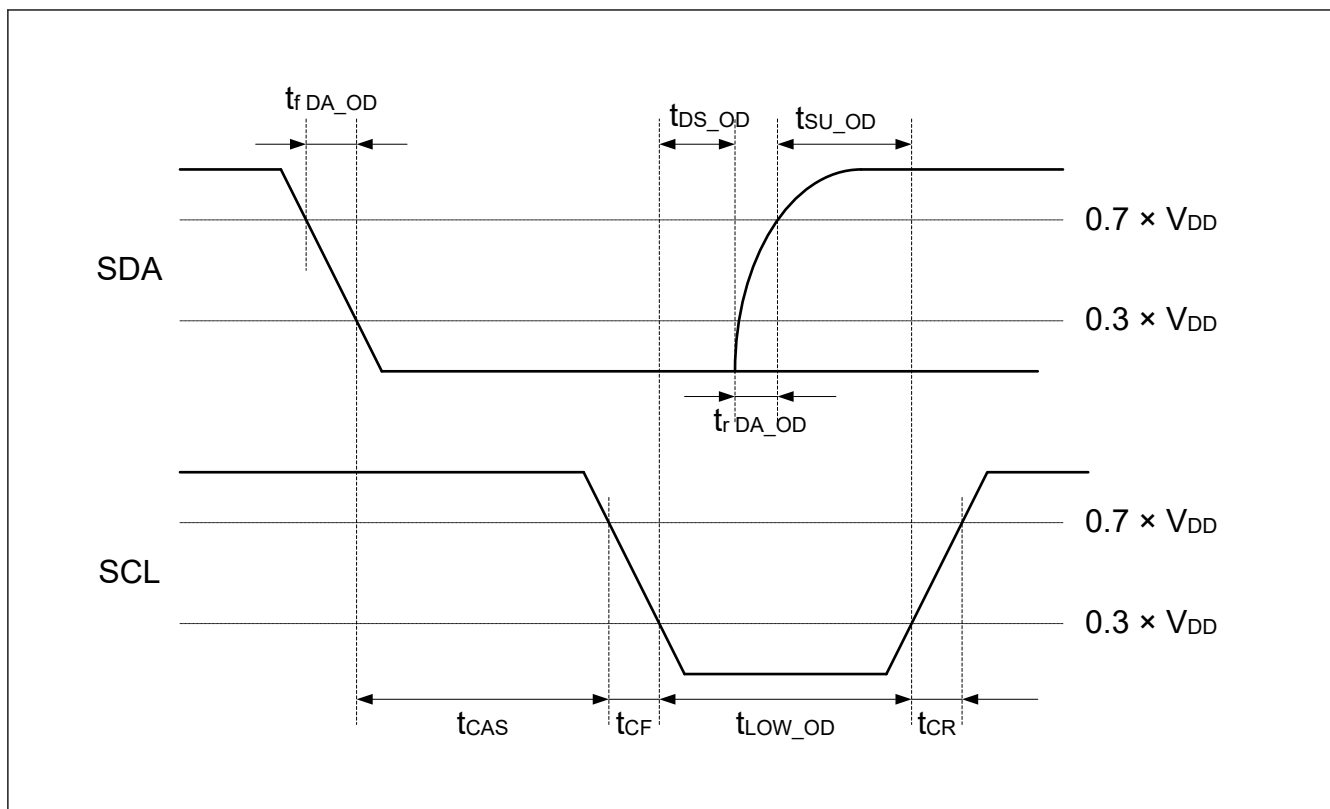


Figure 41.38 I3C START condition timing

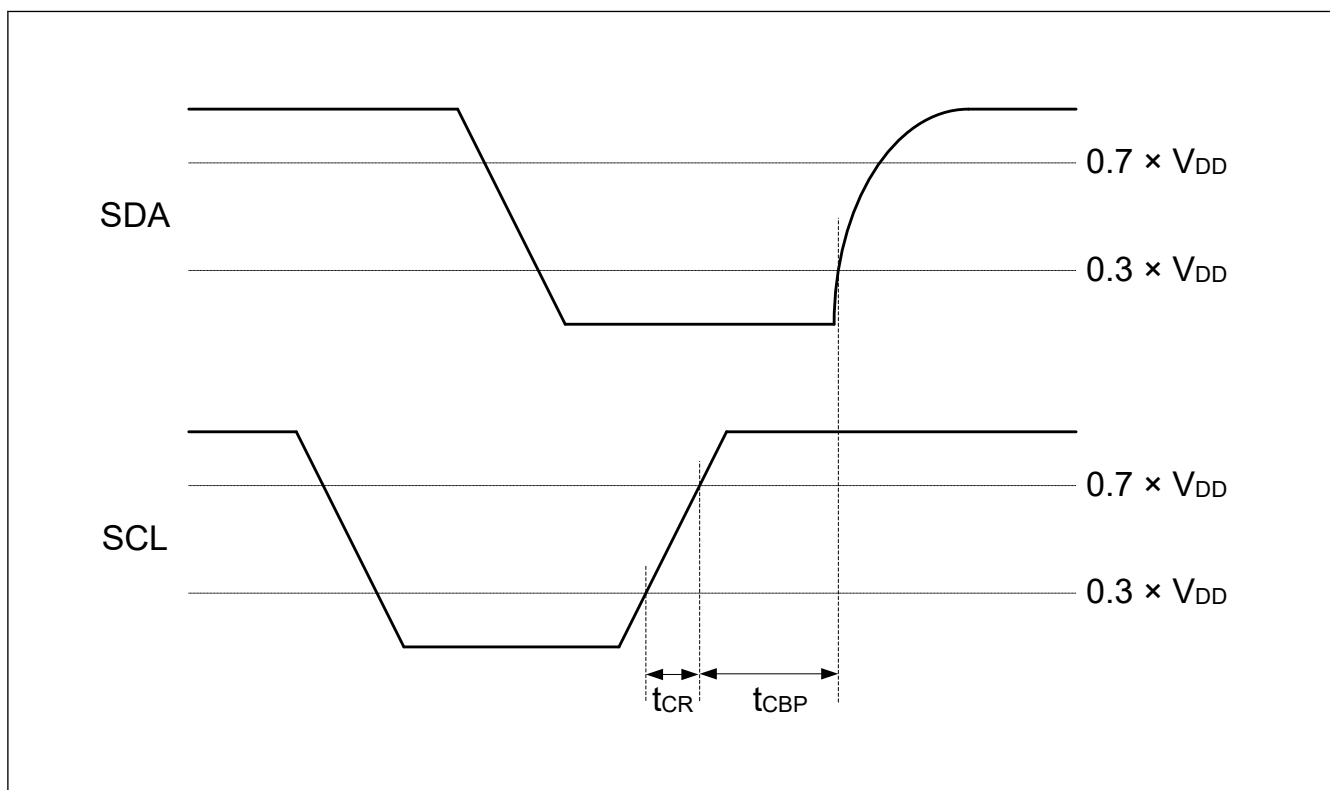


Figure 41.39 I3C STOP condition timing

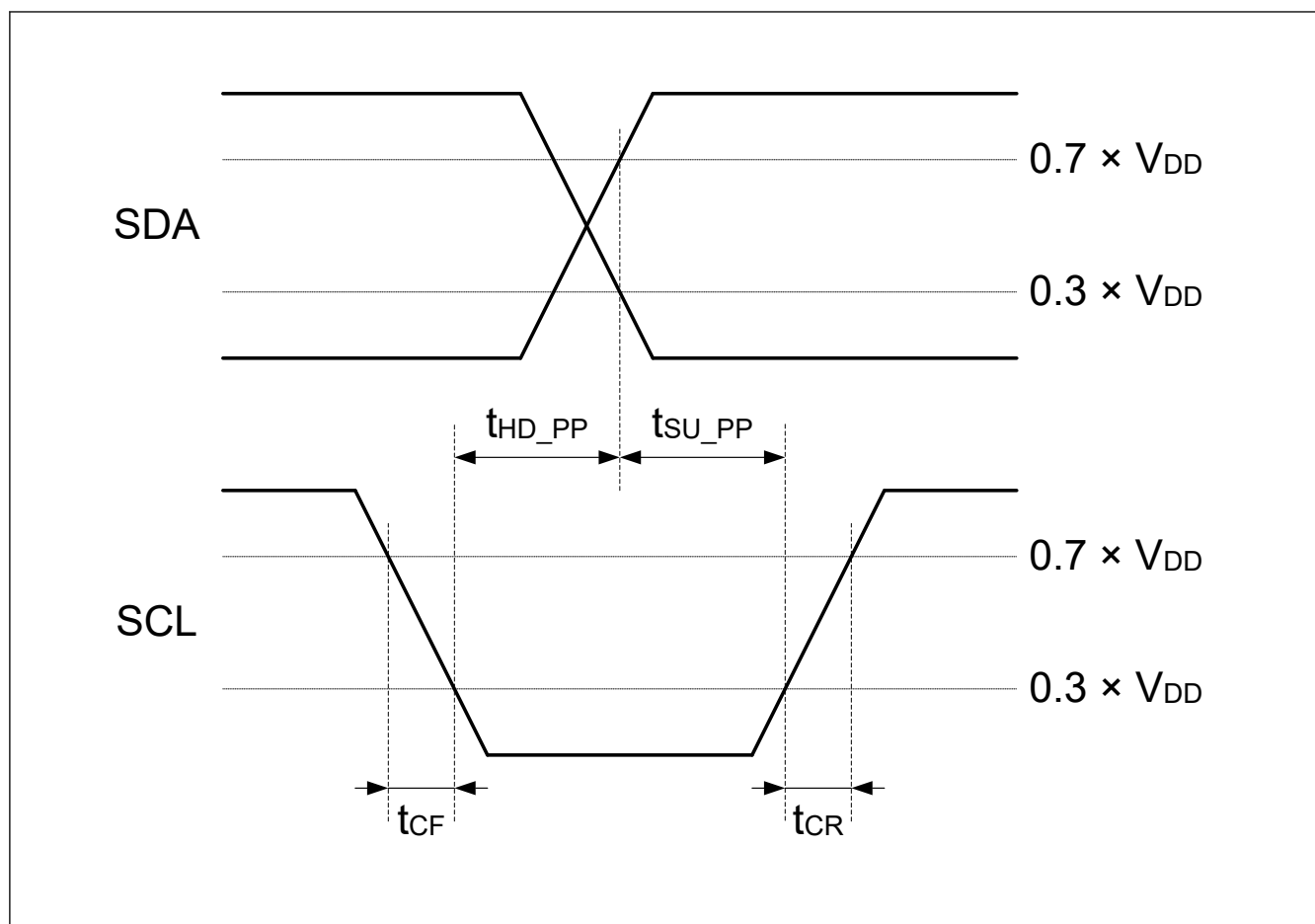


Figure 41.40 I3C master out timing

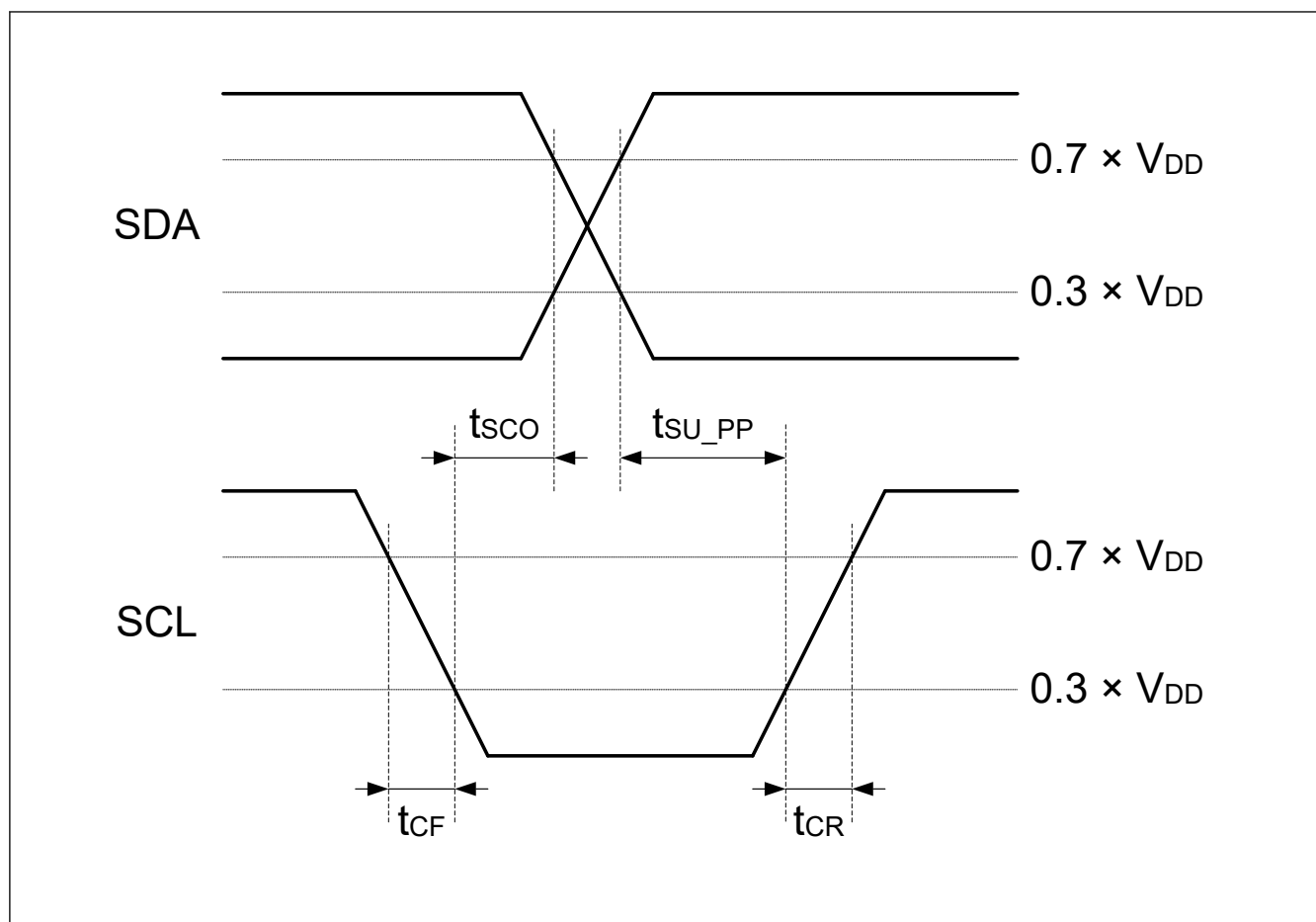


Figure 41.41 I3C Slave Out timing

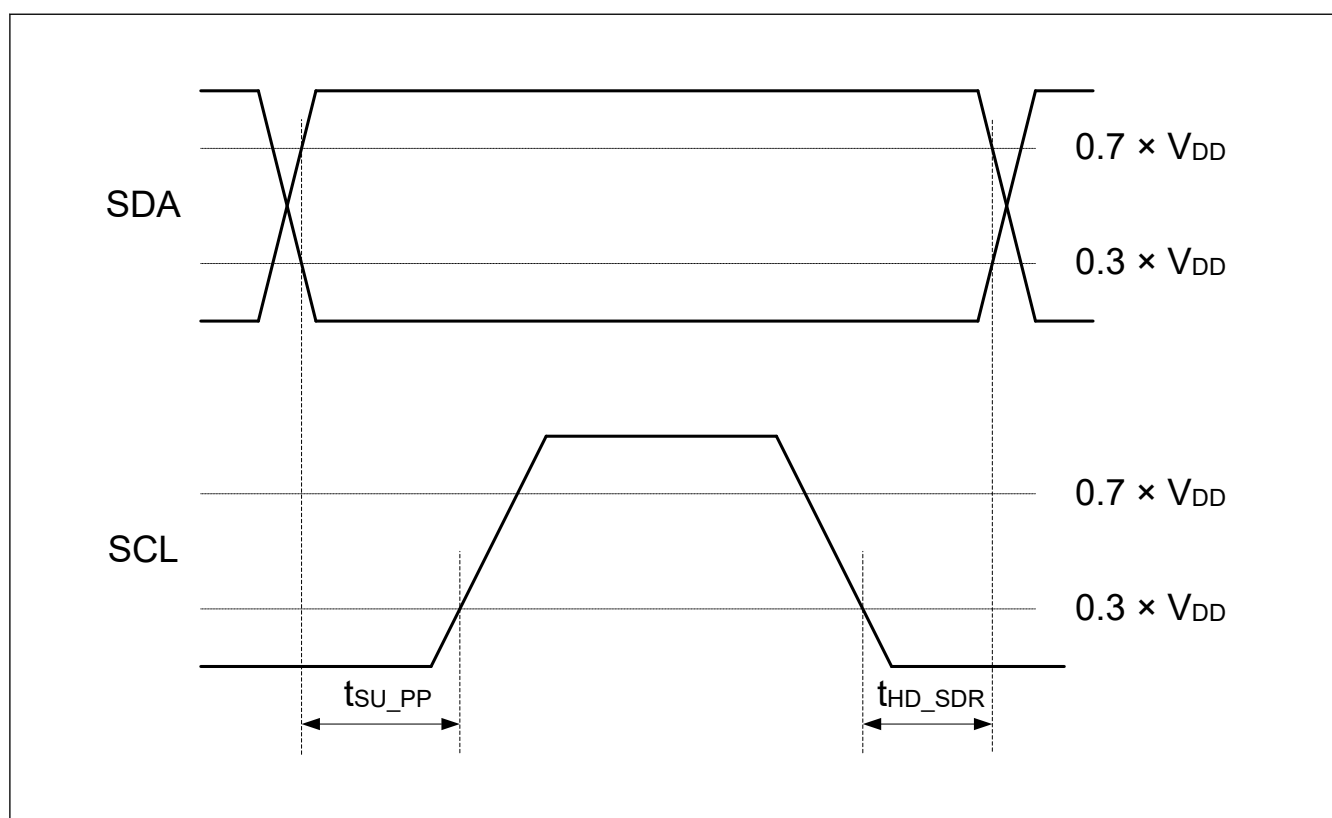


Figure 41.42 Master SDR timing

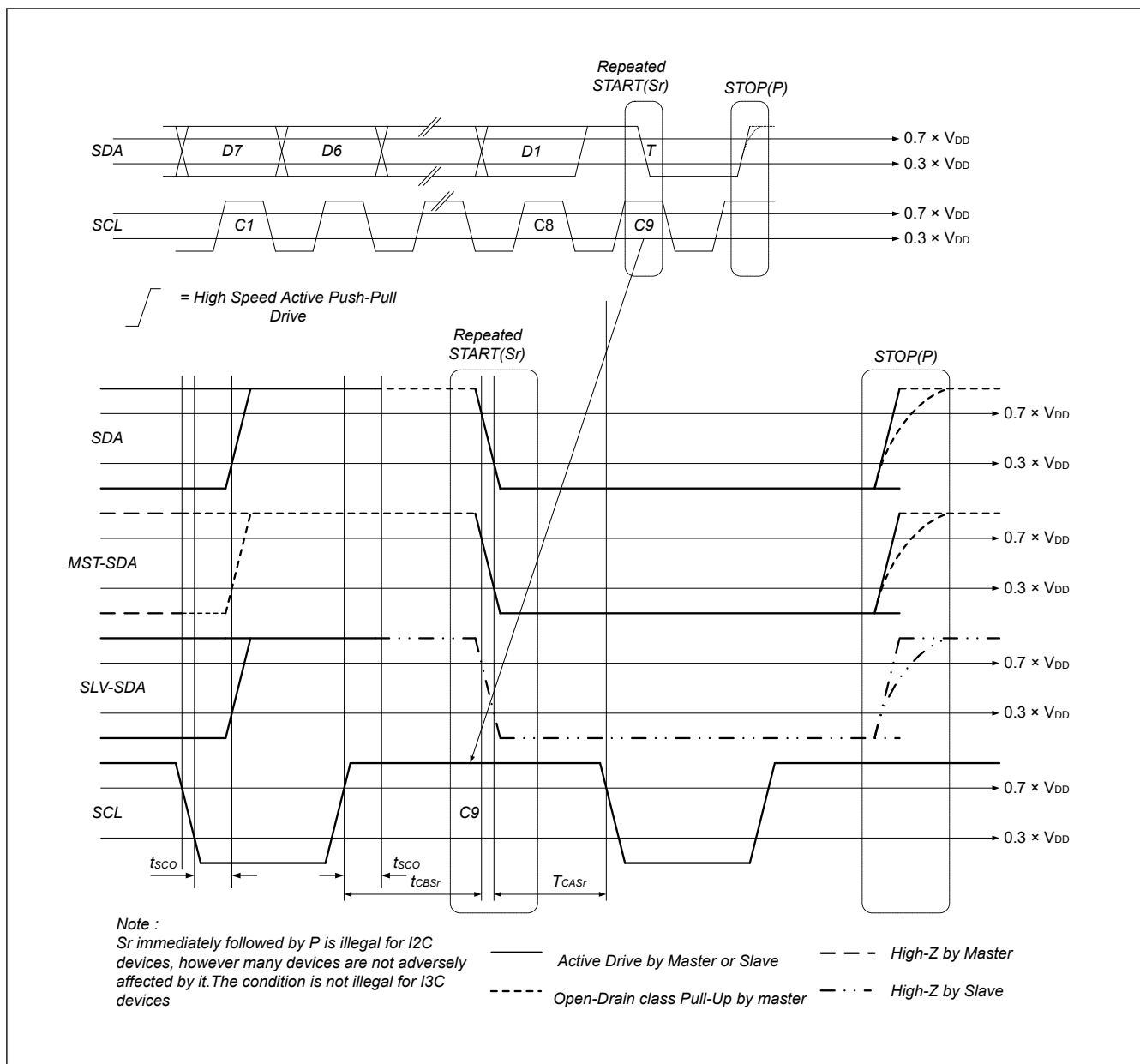


Figure 41.43 T-Bit when master ends read with repeated START and STOP

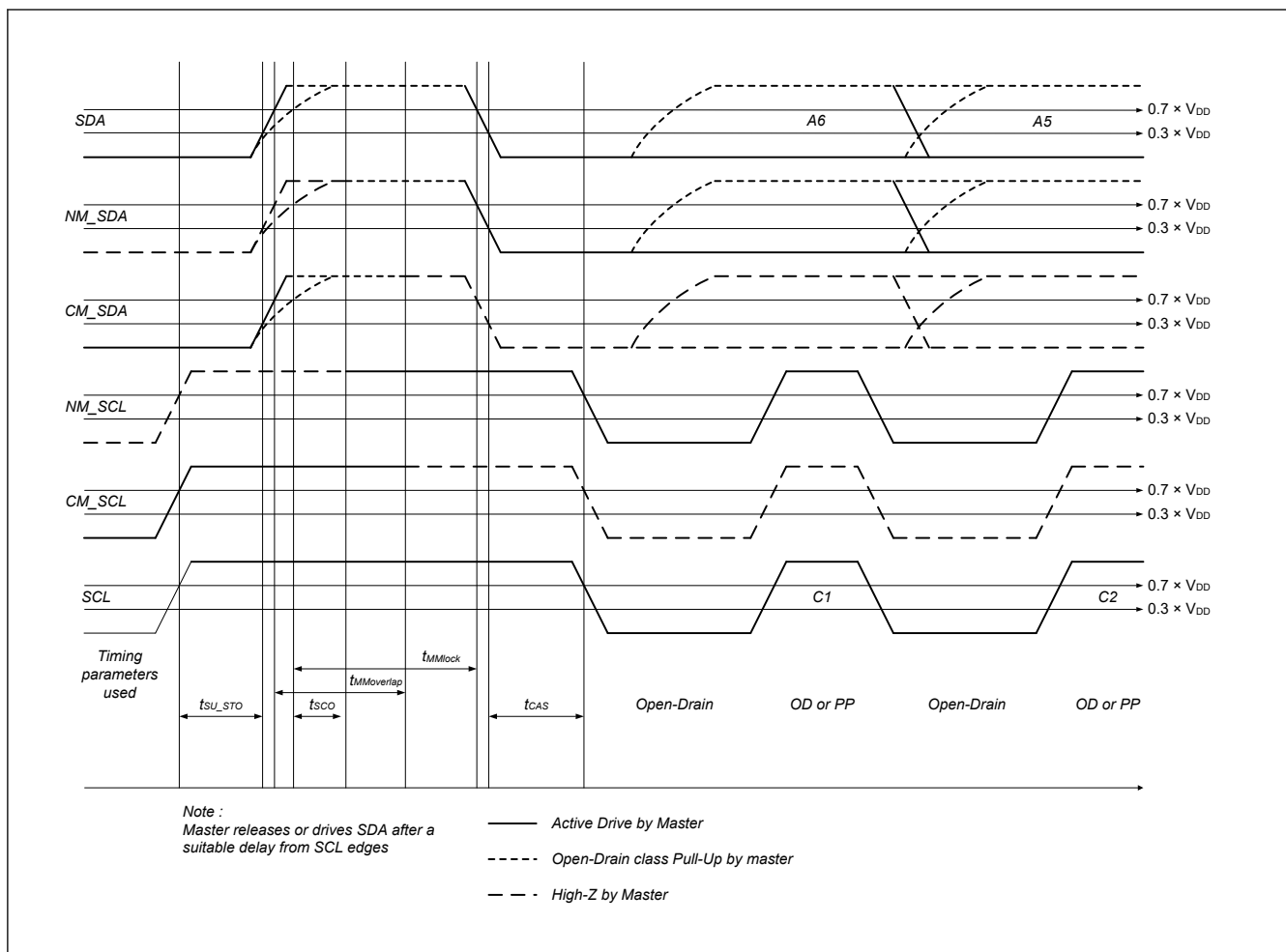


Figure 41.44 I3C timing

41.3.11 SSIE Timing

Table 41.39 SSIE timing (1 of 2)

Conditions: VCC = 2.7 to 5.5 V

(1) Use pins that have a letter appended to their names, for instance "_A" or "_B" to indicate group membership. For the SSIE interface, the AC portion of the electrical characteristics is measured for each group.

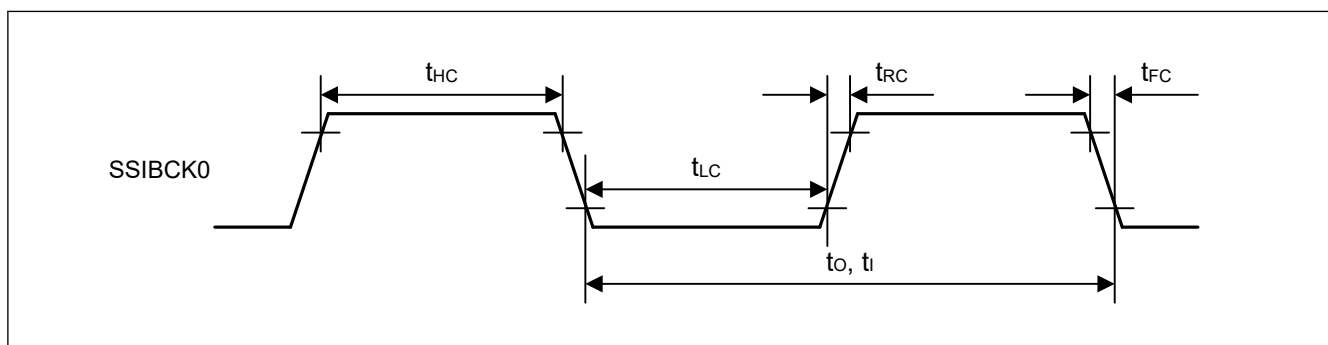
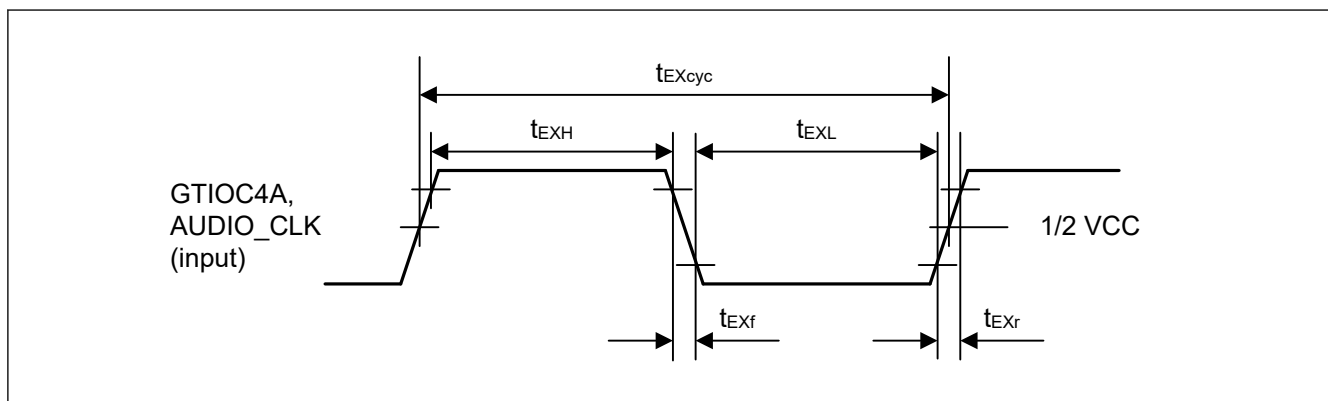
Parameter			Symbol	Target specification		Unit	Test conditions
				Min	Max		
SSIBCK0	Cycle	Master	t_0	187.5	—	ns	Figure 41.45
		Slave	t_1	187.5	—	ns	
	High level/ Low level	Master	t_{HC}/t_{LC}	0.35	—	t_0	
		Slave		0.35	—	t_1	
	Rising time/ falling time	Master	t_{RC}/t_{FC}	—	0.15	t_0 / t_1	
		Slave		—	0.15	t_0 / t_1	

Table 41.39 SSIE timing (2 of 2)

Conditions: VCC = 2.7 to 5.5 V

(1) Use pins that have a letter appended to their names, for instance “_A” or “_B” to indicate group membership. For the SSIE interface, the AC portion of the electrical characteristics is measured for each group.

Parameter			Symbol	Target specification		Unit	Test conditions
				Min	Max		
SSILRCK0/ SSIFS0, SSITXD0, SSIRXD0	Input set up time	Master	t_{SR}	40	—	ns	Figure 41.47, Figure 41.48
		Slave		12	—	ns	
	Input hold time	Master	t_{HR}	10	—	ns	
		Slave		18	—	ns	
	Output delay time	Master	t_{DTR}	0	20	ns	Figure 41.47, Figure 41.48
		Slave		0	50	ns	
	Output delay time from SSILRCK0/ SSIFS0 change	Slave	t_{DTRW}	0	50	ns	
GTIOC4A, AUDIO_CLK	Cycle		t_{EXcyc}	31.25	—	ns	Figure 41.46
	High level/ Low level		t_{EXL}/t_{EXH}	0.4	0.6	t_{EXcyc}	

**Figure 41.45 SSIE clock input/output timing****Figure 41.46 Clock input timing**

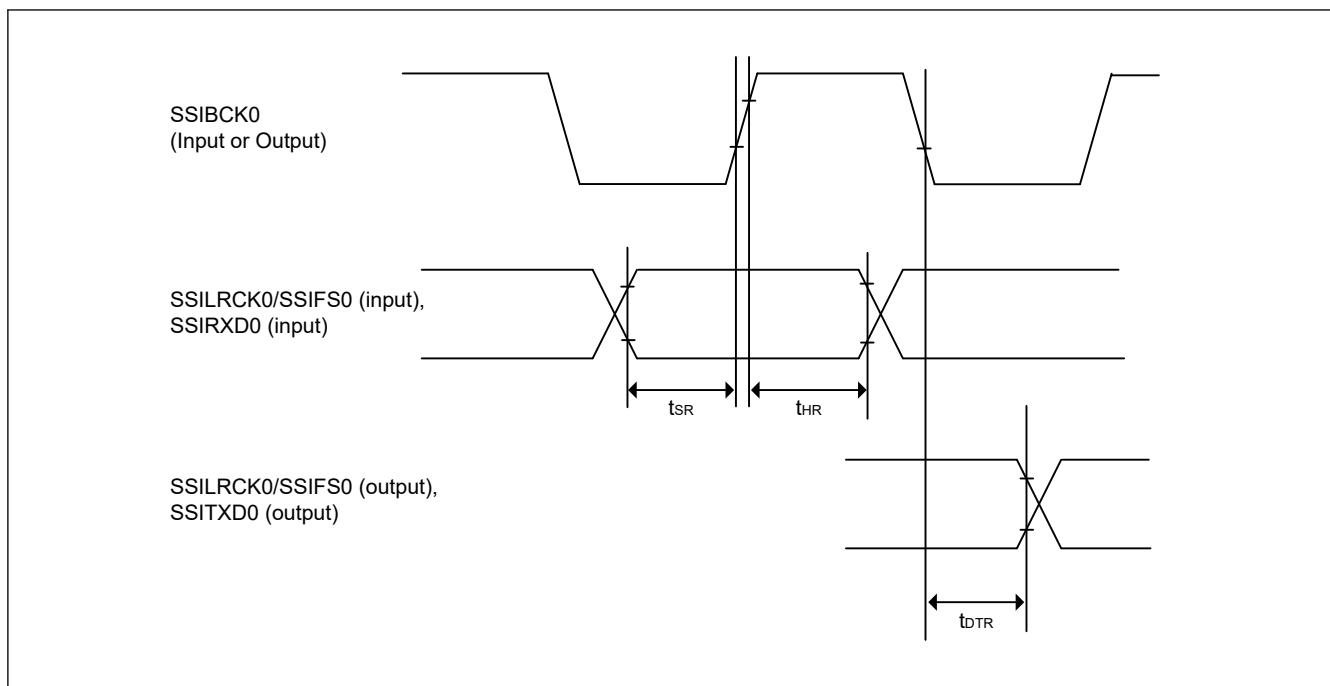


Figure 41.47 SSIE data transmit and receive timing when $SSICR.BCKP = 0$

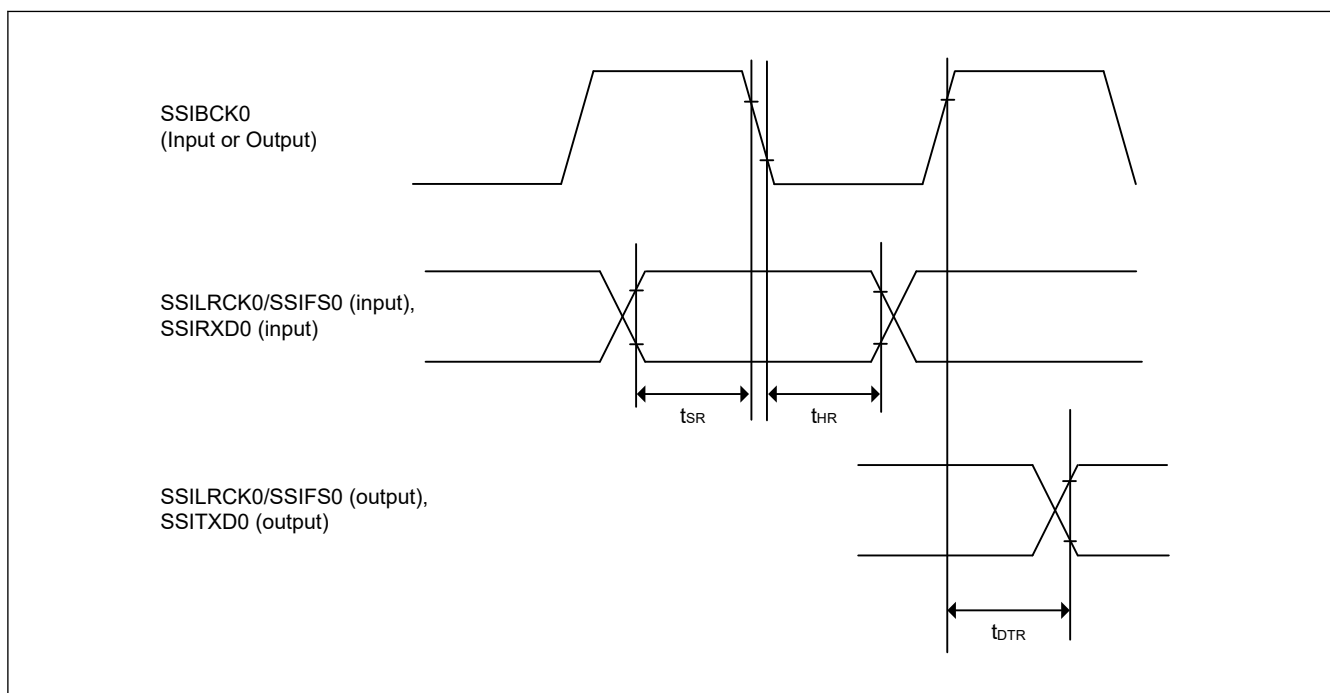
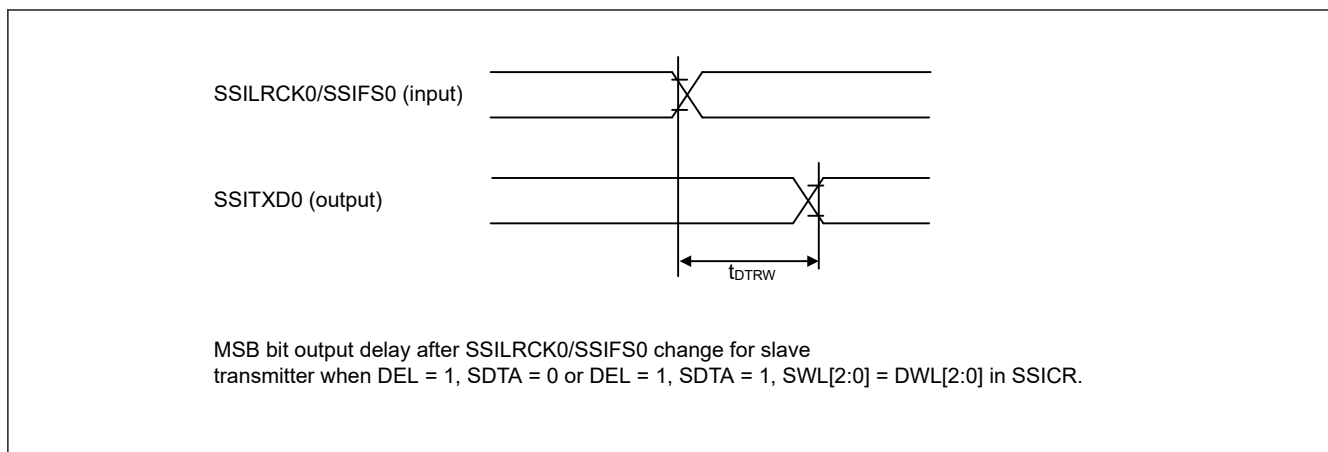


Figure 41.48 SSIE data transmit and receive timing when $SSICR.BCKP = 1$

**Figure 41.49 SSIE data output delay after SSILRCK0/SSIFS0 change**

41.3.12 UARTA Timing

Table 41.40 UARTA interface timing

Parameter	Symbol	Min.	Max.	Unit	Test conditions
Transfer rate	—	200	153600	bps	—

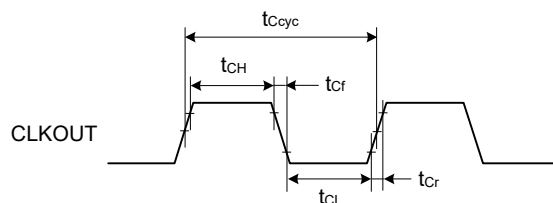
41.3.13 CLKOUT Timing

Table 41.41 CLKOUT timing

Parameter			Symbol	Min	Max	Unit	Test conditions
CLKOUT	CLKOUT pin output cycle*1	2.7 V ≤ VCC ≤ 5.5 V	tCyc	62.5	—	ns	Figure 41.50
		1.8 V ≤ VCC < 2.7 V		125	—		
		1.6 V ≤ VCC < 1.8 V		250	—		
	CLKOUT pin high pulse width*2	2.7 V ≤ VCC ≤ 5.5 V	tCH	15	—	ns	
		1.8 V ≤ VCC < 2.7 V		30	—		
		1.6 V ≤ VCC < 1.8 V		150	—		
	CLKOUT pin low pulse width*2	2.7 V ≤ VCC ≤ 5.5 V	tCL	15	—	ns	
		1.8 V ≤ VCC < 2.7 V		30	—		
		1.6 V ≤ VCC < 1.8 V		150	—		
	CLKOUT pin output rise time	2.7 V ≤ VCC ≤ 5.5 V	tCr	—	12	ns	
		1.8 V ≤ VCC < 2.7 V		—	25		
		1.6 V ≤ VCC < 1.8 V		—	50		
	CLKOUT pin output fall time	2.7 V ≤ VCC ≤ 5.5 V	tCf	—	12	ns	
		1.8 V ≤ VCC < 2.7 V		—	25		
		1.6 V ≤ VCC < 1.8 V		—	50		

Note 1. When the EXTAL external clock input or an oscillator is used with division by 1 (the CKOCR.CKOSSEL[2:0] bits are 011b and the CKOCR.CKODIV[2:0] bits are 000b) to output from CLKOUT, specifications in Table 41.41 should be satisfied with 45% to 55% of input duty cycle.

Note 2. When MOCO is selected as the clock output source (the CKOCR.CKOSSEL[2:0] bits are 001b), set the clock output division ratio to be divided by 2 (the CKOCR.CKODIV[2:0] bits are 001b).



Test conditions: $V_{OH} = V_{CC} \times 0.7$, $V_{OL} = V_{CC} \times 0.3$, $I_{OH} = -1.0 \text{ mA}$, $I_{OL} = 1.0 \text{ mA}$, $C = 30 \text{ pF}$

Figure 41.50 CLKOUT output timing

41.4 USB Characteristics

41.4.1 USBFS Timing

Table 41.42 USBFS full-speed characteristics (USB_DP and USB_DM pin characteristics)

Conditions: $V_{CC} = 3.0 \text{ to } 3.6 \text{ V}$, $USBCLK = 48 \text{ MHz}$

Parameter	Symbol	Min	Typ	Max	Unit	Test conditions
Input characteristics	Input high voltage	V_{IH}	2.0	—	V	—
	Input low voltage	V_{IL}	—	0.8	V	—
	Differential input sensitivity	V_{DI}	0.2	—	V	$ USB_DP - USB_DM $
	Differential common-mode range	V_{CM}	0.8	2.5	V	—
Output characteristics	Output high voltage	V_{OH}	2.8	3.6	V	$I_{OH} = -200 \mu\text{A}$
	Output low voltage	V_{OL}	0.0	0.3	V	$I_{OL} = 2 \text{ mA}$
	Cross-over voltage	V_{CRS}	1.3	2.0	V	Figure 41.51
	Rise time	t_{LR}	4	20	ns	
	Fall time	t_{LF}	4	20	ns	
	Rise/fall time ratio	t_{LR} / t_{LF}	90	111.11	%	t_{FR} / t_{FF}
	Output resistance	Z_{DRV}	28	44	Ω	USBFS: $R_s = 27 \Omega$ included
Pull-up characteristics	DM pull-up resistance in device controller mode	R_{pu}	0.900	1.575	k Ω	During idle state
			1.425	3.090	k Ω	During transmission and reception

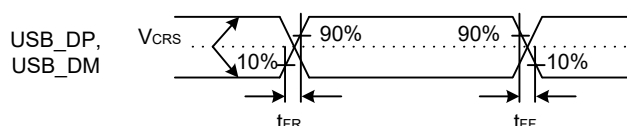


Figure 41.51 USB_DP and USB_DM output timing in full-speed mode

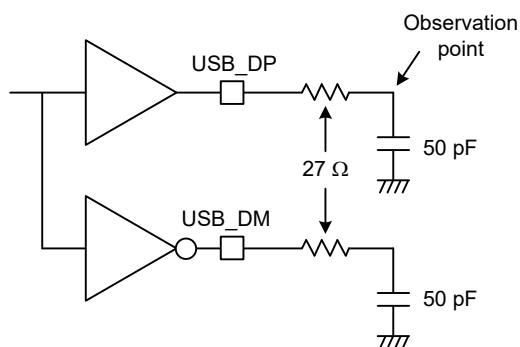


Figure 41.52 Test circuit in full-speed mode

41.4.2 USBCC Characteristics

Table 41.43 USB Type-C interface characteristics

Conditions: VCC = 3.0 to 3.6 V

Parameter	Symbol	Min	Typ	Max	Unit	Test conditions
SRC voltage detection threshold	V_{SRC}	0.15	0.20	0.25	V	—
SNK VRD-1.5 voltage detection threshold	V_{VRD15}	0.613	—	0.70	V	—
SNK VRD-3.0 voltage detection threshold	V_{VRD30}	1.165	—	1.31	V	—
Rd pull-down resistor	R_d	4.6	5.1	5.6	kΩ	—
Rzopen pull-down resistor	R_{zopen}	126	—	—	kΩ	—

41.5 ADC12 Characteristics

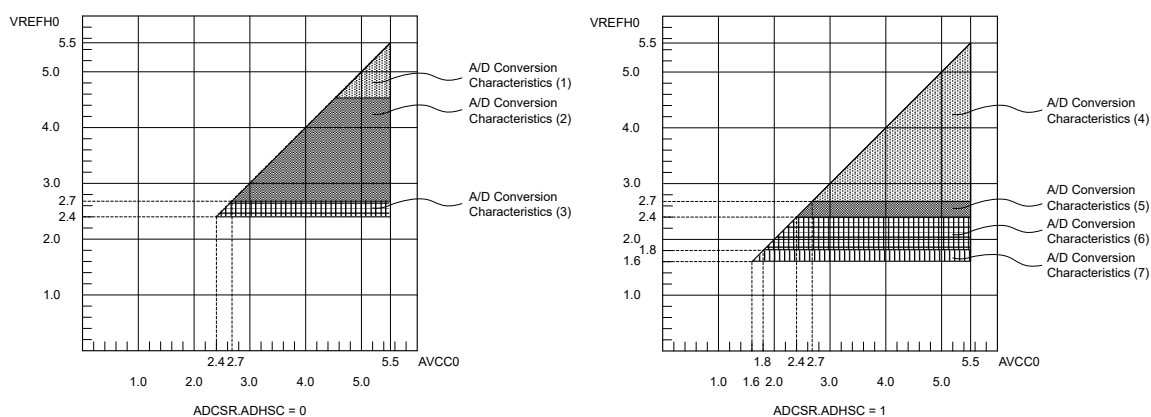


Figure 41.53 AVCC0 to VREFH0 voltage range

Table 41.44 A/D conversion characteristics (1) in high-speed A/D conversion mode (1 of 2)

Conditions: VCC = AVCC0 = VREFH0 = 4.5 to 5.5 V^{*5}, VSS = AVSS0 = VREFL0 = 0 V

Reference voltage range applied to the VREFH0 and VREFL0.

Parameter	Min	Typ	Max	Unit	Test conditions
PCLKD (ADCLK) frequency	1	—	64	MHz	ADACSR.ADSAC = 0
			48	MHz	ADACSR.ADSAC = 1

Table 41.44 A/D conversion characteristics (1) in high-speed A/D conversion mode (2 of 2)

Conditions: VCC = AVCC0 = VREFH0 = 4.5 to 5.5 V^{*5}, VSS = AVSS0 = VREFL0 = 0 V
Reference voltage range applied to the VREFH0 and VREFL0.

Parameter		Min	Typ	Max	Unit	Test conditions
Analog input capacitance ^{*2}	Cs	—	—	9 ^{*3}	pF	High-precision channel
		—	—	10 ^{*3}	pF	Normal-precision channel
Analog input resistance	Rs	—	—	1.3 ^{*3}	kΩ	High-precision channel
		—	—	5.0 ^{*3}	kΩ	Normal-precision channel
Analog input voltage range	Ain	0	—	VREFH0	V	—
Resolution		—	—	12	Bit	—
Conversion time ^{*1} (Operation at PCLKD = 64 MHz)	Permissible signal source impedance Max. = 0.3 kΩ	0.70 (0.211) ^{*4}	—	—	μs	High-precision channel ADCSR.ADHSC = 0 ADSSTRn.SST[7:0] = 0x0D ADACSR.ADSAC = 0
		1.34 (0.852) ^{*4}	—	—	μs	Normal-precision channel ADCSR.ADHSC = 0 ADSSTRn.SST[7:0] = 0x36 ADACSR.ADSAC = 0
Conversion time ^{*1} (Operation at PCLKD = 48 MHz)	Permissible signal source impedance Max. = 0.3 kΩ	0.67 (0.219) ^{*4}	—	—	μs	High-precision channel ADCSR.ADHSC = 0 ADSSTRn.SST[7:0] = 0x0A ADACSR.ADSAC = 1
		1.29 (0.844) ^{*4}	—	—	μs	Normal-precision channel ADCSR.ADHSC = 0 ADSSTRn.SST[7:0] = 0x28 ADACSR.ADSAC = 1
Offset error		—	±1.0	±4.5	LSB	High-precision channel
				±6.0	LSB	Other than specified
Full-scale error		—	±1.0	±4.5	LSB	High-precision channel
				±6.0	LSB	Other than specified
Quantization error		—	±0.5	—	LSB	—
Absolute accuracy		—	±2.5	±5.0	LSB	High-precision channel
				±8.0	LSB	Other than specified
DNL differential nonlinearity error		—	±1.0	—	LSB	—
INL integral nonlinearity error		—	±1.5	±3.0	LSB	—

Note: The characteristics apply when no pin functions other than 12-bit A/D converter input are used. Absolute accuracy does not include quantization errors. Offset error, full-scale error, DNL differential nonlinearity error, and INL integral nonlinearity error do not include quantization errors.

Note 1. The conversion time is the sum of the sampling time and the comparison time. The number of sampling states is indicated for the test conditions.

Note 2. Except for I/O input capacitance (Cin), see [section 41.2.4. I/O V_{OH}, V_{OL}, and Other Characteristics](#).

Note 3. Reference data.

Note 4. () lists sampling time.

Note 5. When VREFH0 < AVCC0, the MAX. values are as follows.

Absolute accuracy/Offset error/Full-scale error:

For voltage difference between AVCC0 and VREFH0, it should be added ±0.75 LSB/V to the Max spec.

INL integral non-linearity error:

For voltage difference between AVCC0 and VREFH0, it should be added ±0.2 LSB/V to the Max spec.

Table 41.45 A/D conversion characteristics (2) in high-speed A/D conversion mode (1 of 2)

Conditions: VCC = AVCC0 = VREFH0 = 2.7 to 5.5 V^{*5}, VSS = AVSS0 = VREFL0 = 0 V
Reference voltage range applied to the VREFH0 and VREFL0.

Parameter	Min	Typ	Max	Unit	Test conditions
PCLKD (ADCLK) frequency	1	—	48	MHz	—

Table 41.45 A/D conversion characteristics (2) in high-speed A/D conversion mode (2 of 2)

Conditions: VCC = AVCC0 = VREFH0 = 2.7 to 5.5 V^{*5}, VSS = AVSS0 = VREFL0 = 0 V
Reference voltage range applied to the VREFH0 and VREFL0.

Parameter		Min	Typ	Max	Unit	Test conditions
Analog input capacitance*2	Cs	—	—	9*3	pF	High-precision channel
		—	—	10*3	pF	Normal-precision channel
Analog input resistance	Rs	—	—	1.9*3	kΩ	High-precision channel
		—	—	6.0*3	kΩ	Normal-precision channel
Analog input voltage range	Ain	0	—	VREFH0	V	—
Resolution		—	—	12	Bit	—
Conversion time*1 (Operation at PCLKD = 48 MHz)	Permissible signal source impedance Max. = 0.3 kΩ	0.67 (0.219)*4	—	—	μs	High-precision channel ADCSR.ADHSC = 0 ADSSTRn.SST[7:0] = 0x0A ADACSR.ADSAC = 1
		1.29 (0.844)*4	—	—	μs	Normal-precision channel ADCSR.ADHSC = 0 ADSSTRn.SST[7:0] = 0x28 ADACSR.ADSAC = 1
Offset error		—	±1.0	±5.5	LSB	High-precision channel
				±7.0	LSB	Other than specified
Full-scale error		—	±1.0	±5.5	LSB	High-precision channel
				±7.0	LSB	Other than specified
Quantization error		—	±0.5	—	LSB	—
Absolute accuracy		—	±2.5	±6.0	LSB	High-precision channel
				±9.0	LSB	Other than specified
DNL differential nonlinearity error		—	±1.0	—	LSB	—
INL integral nonlinearity error		—	±1.5	±3.0	LSB	—

Note: The characteristics apply when no pin functions other than 12-bit A/D converter input are used. Absolute accuracy does not include quantization errors. Offset error, full-scale error, DNL differential nonlinearity error, and INL integral nonlinearity error do not include quantization errors.

Note 1. The conversion time is the sum of the sampling time and the comparison time. The number of sampling states is indicated for the test conditions.

Note 2. Except for I/O input capacitance (Cin), see [section 41.2.4. I/O V_{OH}, V_{OL}, and Other Characteristics](#).

Note 3. Reference data.

Note 4. () lists sampling time.

Note 5. When VREFH0 < AVCC0, the MAX. values are as follows.

Absolute accuracy/Offset error/Full-scale error:

For voltage difference between AVCC0 and VREFH0, it should be added ±0.75 LSB/V to the Max spec.

INL integral non-linearity error:

For voltage difference between AVCC0 and VREFH0, it should be added ±0.2 LSB/V to the Max spec.

Table 41.46 A/D conversion characteristics (3) in high-speed A/D conversion mode (1 of 2)

Conditions: VCC = AVCC0 = VREFH0 = 2.4 to 5.5 V^{*5}, VSS = AVSS0 = VREFL0 = 0 V
Reference voltage range applied to the VREFH0 and VREFL0.

Parameter		Min	Typ	Max	Unit	Test conditions
PCLKD (ADCLK) frequency		1	—	32	MHz	—
Analog input capacitance ^{*2}	Cs	—	—	9 ^{*3}	pF	High-precision channel
		—	—	10 ^{*3}	pF	Normal-precision channel
Analog input resistance	Rs	—	—	2.2 ^{*3}	kΩ	High-precision channel
		—	—	7.0 ^{*3}	kΩ	Normal-precision channel
Analog input voltage range	Ain	0	—	VREFH0	V	—
Resolution		—	—	12	Bit	—

Table 41.46 A/D conversion characteristics (3) in high-speed A/D conversion mode (2 of 2)

Conditions: VCC = AVCC0 = VREFH0 = 2.4 to 5.5 V^{*5}, VSS = AVSS0 = VREFL0 = 0 V
Reference voltage range applied to the VREFH0 and VREFL0.

Parameter		Min	Typ	Max	Unit	Test conditions
Conversion time*1 (Operation at PCLKD = 32 MHz)	Permissible signal source impedance Max. = 1.3 kΩ	1.00 (0.328)*4	—	—	μs	High-precision channel ADCSR.ADHSC = 0 ADSSTRn.SST[7:0] = 0x0A ADACSR.ADSAC = 1
		1.94 (1.266)*4	—	—	μs	Normal-precision channel ADCSR.ADHSC = 0 ADSSTRn.SST[7:0] = 0x28 ADACSR.ADSAC = 1
Offset error		—	±1.0	±5.5	LSB	High-precision channel
				±7.0	LSB	Other than specified
Full-scale error		—	±1.0	±5.5	LSB	High-precision channel
				±7.0	LSB	Other than specified
Quantization error		—	±0.5	—	LSB	—
Absolute accuracy		—	±2.50	±6.0	LSB	High-precision channel
				±9.0	LSB	Other than specified
DNL differential nonlinearity error		—	±1.0	—	LSB	—
INL integral nonlinearity error		—	±1.5	±3.0	LSB	—

Note: The characteristics apply when no pin functions other than 12-bit A/D converter input are used. Absolute accuracy does not include quantization errors. Offset error, full-scale error, DNL differential nonlinearity error, and INL integral nonlinearity error do not include quantization errors.

Note 1. The conversion time is the sum of the sampling time and the comparison time. The number of sampling states is indicated for the test conditions.

Note 2. Except for I/O input capacitance (Cin), see [section 41.2.4. I/O V_{OH}, V_{OL}, and Other Characteristics](#).

Note 3. Reference data.

Note 4. () lists sampling time.

Note 5. When VREFH0 < AVCC0, the MAX. values are as follows.

Absolute accuracy/Offset error/Full-scale error:

For voltage difference between AVCC0 and VREFH0, it should be added ±0.75 LSB/V to the Max spec.

INL integral non-linearity error:

For voltage difference between AVCC0 and VREFH0, it should be added ±0.2 LSB/V to the Max spec.

Table 41.47 A/D conversion characteristics (4) in low-power A/D conversion mode (1 of 2)

Conditions: VCC = AVCC0 = VREFH0 = 2.7 to 5.5 V^{*5}, VSS = AVSS0 = VREFL0 = 0 V
Reference voltage range applied to the VREFH0 and VREFL0.

Parameter		Min	Typ	Max	Unit	Test conditions
PCLKD (ADCLK) frequency		1	—	24	MHz	—
Analog input capacitance ^{*2}	Cs	—	—	9 ^{*3}	pF	High-precision channel
		—	—	10 ^{*3}	pF	Normal-precision channel
Analog input resistance	Rs	—	—	1.9 ^{*3}	kΩ	High-precision channel
		—	—	6 ^{*3}	kΩ	Normal-precision channel
Analog input voltage range	Ain	0	—	VREFH0	V	—
Resolution		—	—	12	Bit	—
Conversion time ^{*1} (Operation at PCLKD = 24 MHz)	Permissible signal source impedance Max. = 1.1 kΩ	1.58 (0.438) ^{*4}	—	—	μs	High-precision channel ADCSR.ADHSC = 1 ADSSTRn.SST[7:0] = 0x0A ADACSR.ADSAC = 1
		2.0 (0.854) ^{*4}	—	—	μs	Normal-precision channel ADCSR.ADHSC = 1 ADSSTRn.SST[7:0] = 0x14 ADACSR.ADSAC = 1

Table 41.47 A/D conversion characteristics (4) in low-power A/D conversion mode (2 of 2)

Conditions: VCC = AVCC0 = VREFH0 = 2.7 to 5.5 V^{*5}, VSS = AVSS0 = VREFL0 = 0 V
Reference voltage range applied to the VREFH0 and VREFL0.

Parameter	Min	Typ	Max	Unit	Test conditions
Offset error	—	±1.25	±6.0	LSB	High-precision channel
			±7.5	LSB	Other than specified
Full-scale error	—	±1.25	±6.0	LSB	High-precision channel
			±7.5	LSB	Other than specified
Quantization error	—	±0.5	—	LSB	—
Absolute accuracy	—	±3.25	±7.0	LSB	High-precision channel
			±10.0	LSB	Other than specified
DNL differential nonlinearity error	—	±1.5	—	LSB	—
INL integral nonlinearity error	—	±1.75	±4.0	LSB	—

Note: The characteristics apply when no pin functions other than 12-bit A/D converter input are used. Absolute accuracy does not include quantization errors. Offset error, full-scale error, DNL differential nonlinearity error, and INL integral nonlinearity error do not include quantization errors.

Note 1. The conversion time is the sum of the sampling time and the comparison time. The number of sampling states is indicated for the test conditions.

Note 2. Except for I/O input capacitance (C_{in}), see [section 41.2.4. I/O V_{OH}, V_{OL}, and Other Characteristics](#).

Note 3. Reference data.

Note 4. () lists sampling time.

Note 5. When VREFH0 < AVCC0, the MAX. values are as follows.

Absolute accuracy/Offset error/Full-scale error:

For voltage difference between AVCC0 and VREFH0, it should be added ±0.75 LSB/V to the Max spec.

INL integral non-linearity error:

For voltage difference between AVCC0 and VREFH0, it should be added ±0.2 LSB/V to the Max spec.

Table 41.48 A/D conversion characteristics (5) in low-power A/D conversion mode (1 of 2)

Conditions: VCC = AVCC0 = VREFH0 = 2.4 to 5.5 V^{*5}, VSS = AVSS0 = VREFL0 = 0 V
Reference voltage range applied to the VREFH0 and VREFL0.

Parameter	Min	Typ	Max	Unit	Test conditions
PCLKD (ADCLK) frequency	1	—	16	MHz	—
Analog input capacitance ^{*2} Cs	—	—	9 ^{*3}	pF	High-precision channel
	—	—	10 ^{*3}	pF	Normal-precision channel
Analog input resistance Rs	—	—	2.2 ^{*3}	kΩ	High-precision channel
	—	—	7 ^{*3}	kΩ	Normal-precision channel
Analog input voltage range Ain	0	—	VREFH0	V	—
Resolution	—	—	12	Bit	—
Conversion time ^{*1} (Operation at PCLKD = 16 MHz)	Permissible signal source impedance Max. = 2.2 kΩ	2.38 (0.656) ^{*4}	—	μs	High-precision channel ADCSR.ADHSC = 1 ADSSTRn.SST[7:0] = 0x0A ADACSR.ADSAC = 1
		3.0 (1.281) ^{*4}	—	μs	Normal-precision channel ADCSR.ADHSC = 1 ADSSTRn.SST[7:0] = 0x14 ADACSR.ADSAC = 1
Offset error	—	±1.25	±6.0	LSB	High-precision channel
			±7.5	LSB	Other than specified
Full-scale error	—	±1.25	±6.0	LSB	High-precision channel
			±7.5	LSB	Other than specified
Quantization error	—	±0.5	—	LSB	—

Table 41.48 A/D conversion characteristics (5) in low-power A/D conversion mode (2 of 2)

Conditions: VCC = AVCC0 = VREFH0 = 2.4 to 5.5 V⁵, VSS = AVSS0 = VREFL0 = 0 V
Reference voltage range applied to the VREFH0 and VREFL0.

Parameter	Min	Typ	Max	Unit	Test conditions
Absolute accuracy	—	±3.25	±7.0	LSB	High-precision channel
			±10.0	LSB	Other than specified
DNL differential nonlinearity error	—	±1.5	—	LSB	—
INL integral nonlinearity error	—	±1.75	±4.0	LSB	—

Note: The characteristics apply when no pin functions other than 12-bit A/D converter input are used. Absolute accuracy does not include quantization errors. Offset error, full-scale error, DNL differential nonlinearity error, and INL integral nonlinearity error do not include quantization errors.

Note 1. The conversion time is the sum of the sampling time and the comparison time. The number of sampling states is indicated for the test conditions.

Note 2. Except for I/O input capacitance (Cin), see [section 41.2.4. I/O V_{OH}, V_{OL}, and Other Characteristics](#).

Note 3. Reference data.

Note 4. () lists sampling time.

Note 5. When VREFH0 < AVCC0, the MAX. values are as follows.

Absolute accuracy/Offset error/Full-scale error:

For voltage difference between AVCC0 and VREFH0, it should be added ±0.75 LSB/V to the Max spec.

INL integral non-linearity error:

For voltage difference between AVCC0 and VREFH0, it should be added ±0.2 LSB/V to the Max spec.

Table 41.49 A/D conversion characteristics (6) in low-power A/D conversion mode

Conditions: VCC = AVCC0 = VREFH0 = 1.8 to 5.5 V⁵, VSS = AVSS0 = VREFL0 = 0 V
Reference voltage range applied to the VREFH0 and VREFL0.

Parameter	Min	Typ	Max	Unit	Test conditions
PCLKD (ADCLK) frequency	1	—	8	MHz	—
Analog input capacitance ²	Cs	—	9 ³	pF	High-precision channel
			10 ³	pF	Normal-precision channel
Analog input resistance	Rs	—	6 ³	kΩ	High-precision channel
			14 ³	kΩ	Normal-precision channel
Analog input voltage range	Ain	0	VREFH0	V	—
Resolution	—	—	12	Bit	—
Conversion time ^{*1} (Operation at PCLKD = 8 MHz)	Permissible signal source impedance Max. = 5 kΩ	4.75 (1.313) ^{*4}	—	μs	High-precision channel ADCSR.ADHSC = 1 ADSSTRn.SST[7:0] = 0x0A ADACSR.ADSAC = 1
		6.0 (2.563) ^{*4}	—	μs	Normal-precision channel ADCSR.ADHSC = 1 ADSSTRn.SST[7:0] = 0x14 ADACSR.ADSAC = 1
Offset error	—	±1.25	±7.5	LSB	High-precision channel
			±10.0	LSB	Other than specified
Full-scale error	—	±1.5	±7.5	LSB	High-precision channel
			±10.0	LSB	Other than specified
Quantization error	—	±0.5	—	LSB	—
Absolute accuracy	—	±3.75	±9.5	LSB	High-precision channel
			±13.5	LSB	Other than specified
DNL differential nonlinearity error	—	±2.0	—	LSB	—
INL integral nonlinearity error	—	±2.25	±4.5	LSB	—

Note: The characteristics apply when no pin functions other than 12-bit A/D converter input are used. Absolute accuracy does not include quantization errors. Offset error, full-scale error, DNL differential nonlinearity error, and INL integral nonlinearity error do not include quantization errors.

Note 1. The conversion time is the sum of the sampling time and the comparison time. The number of sampling states is indicated for the test conditions.

Note 2. Except for I/O input capacitance (C_{in}), see [section 41.2.4. I/O V_{OH}, V_{OL}, and Other Characteristics](#).

Note 3. Reference data.

Note 4. () lists sampling time.

Note 5. When VREFH0 < AVCC0, the MAX. values are as follows.

Absolute accuracy/Offset error/Full-scale error:

For voltage difference between AVCC0 and VREFH0, it should be added ± 0.75 LSB/V to the Max spec.

INL integral non-linearity error:

For voltage difference between AVCC0 and VREFH0, it should be added ± 0.2 LSB/V to the Max spec.

Table 41.50 A/D conversion characteristics (7) in low-power A/D conversion mode

Conditions: VCC = AVCC0 = VREFH0 = 1.6 to 5.5 V⁵, VSS = AVSS0 = VREFL0 = 0 V

Reference voltage range applied to the VREFH0 and VREFL0.

Parameter		Min	Typ	Max	Unit	Test conditions
PCLKD (ADCLK) frequency		1	—	4	MHz	—
Analog input capacitance ^{*2}	Cs	—	—	9 ^{*3}	pF	High-precision channel
		—	—	10 ^{*3}	pF	Normal-precision channel
Analog input resistance	Rs	—	—	12 ^{*3}	kΩ	High-precision channel
		—	—	28 ^{*3}	kΩ	Normal-precision channel
Analog input voltage range	Ain	0	—	VREFH0	V	—
Resolution		—	—	12	Bit	—
Conversion time ^{*1} (Operation at PCLKD = 4 MHz)	Permissible signal source impedance Max. = 9.9 kΩ	9.5 (2.625) ^{*4}	—	—	μs	High-precision channel ADCSR.ADHSC = 1 ADSSTRn.SST[7:0] = 0x0A ADACSR.ADSAC = 1
		12.0 (5.125) ^{*4}	—	—	μs	Normal-precision channel ADCSR.ADHSC = 1 ADSSTRn.SST[7:0] = 0x14 ADACSR.ADSAC = 1
Offset error		—	± 1.25	± 7.5	LSB	High-precision channel
				± 10.0	LSB	Other than specified
Full-scale error		—	± 1.5	± 7.5	LSB	High-precision channel
				± 10.0	LSB	Other than specified
Quantization error		—	± 0.5	—	LSB	—
Absolute accuracy		—	± 3.75	± 9.5	LSB	High-precision channel
				± 13.5	LSB	Other than specified
DNL differential nonlinearity error		—	± 2.0	—	LSB	—
INL integral nonlinearity error		—	± 2.25	± 4.5	LSB	—

Note: The characteristics apply when no pin functions other than 12-bit A/D converter input are used. Absolute accuracy does not include quantization errors. Offset error, full-scale error, DNL differential nonlinearity error, and INL integral nonlinearity error do not include quantization errors.

Note 1. The conversion time is the sum of the sampling time and the comparison time. The number of sampling states is indicated for the test conditions.

Note 2. Except for I/O input capacitance (C_{in}), see [section 41.2.4. I/O V_{OH}, V_{OL}, and Other Characteristics](#).

Note 3. Reference data.

Note 4. () lists sampling time.

Note 5. When VREFH0 < AVCC0, the MAX. values are as follows.

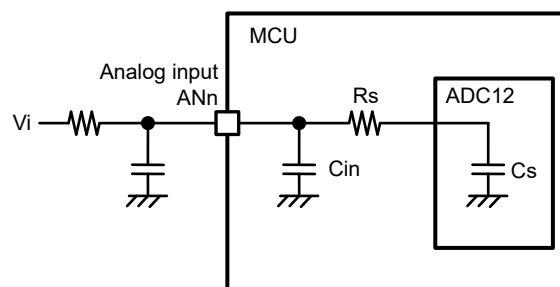
Absolute accuracy/Offset error/Full-scale error:

For voltage difference between AVCC0 and VREFH0, it should be added ± 0.75 LSB/V to the Max spec.

INL integral non-linearity error:

For voltage difference between AVCC0 and VREFH0, it should be added ± 0.2 LSB/V to the Max spec.

Figure 41.54 shows the equivalent circuit for analog input.



Note: Terminal leakage current is not shown in this figure.

Figure 41.54 Equivalent circuit for analog input

Table 41.51 12-bit A/D converter channel classification

Classification	Channel	Remarks	Test conditions
High-precision channel	AN000 to AN010	Pins AN000 to AN010 cannot be used as general I/O, TS transmission, when the A/D converter is in use.	AVCC0 = 1.6 to 5.5 V
Normal-precision channel	AN017 to AN022		
Internal reference voltage input channel	Internal reference voltage	—	AVCC0 = 1.8 to 5.5 V
Temperature sensor input channel	Temperature sensor output	—	AVCC0 = 1.8 to 5.5 V

Table 41.52 A/D internal reference voltage characteristics

Conditions: VCC = AVCC0 = VREFH0 = 1.8 to 5.5 V^{*1}

Parameter	Min	Typ	Max	Unit	Test conditions
Internal reference voltage input channel ^{*2}	1.42	1.48	1.54	V	—
PCLKD (ADCLK) frequency ^{*3}	1	—	2	MHz	—
Sampling time ^{*4}	5.0	—	—	μs	—

Note 1. The internal reference voltage cannot be selected for input channels when AVCC0 < 1.8 V.

Note 2. The 12-bit A/D internal reference voltage indicates the voltage when the internal reference voltage is input to the 12-bit A/D converter.

Note 3. When the internal reference voltage is selected as the high-potential reference voltage.

Note 4. When the internal reference voltage is converted.

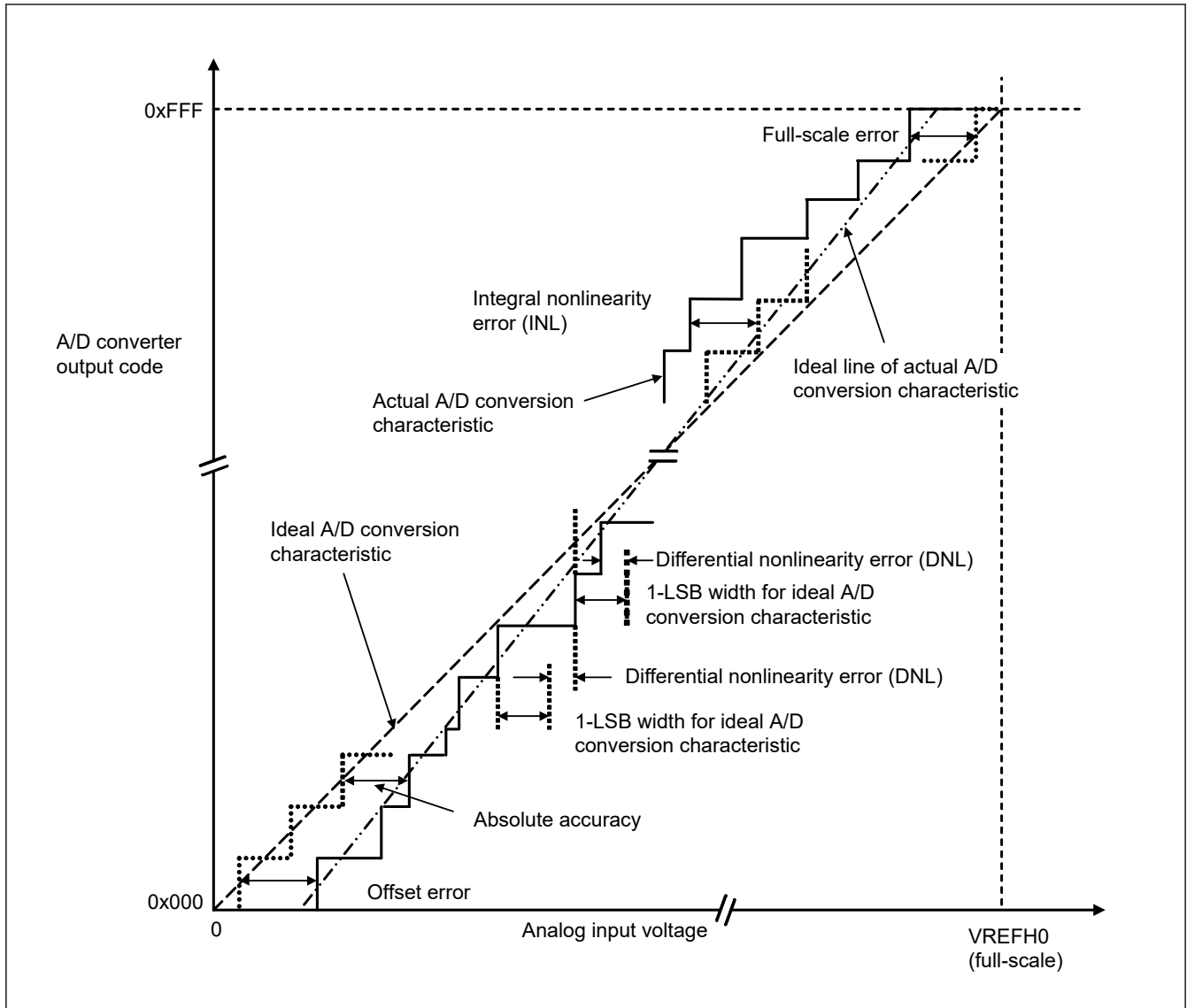


Figure 41.55 Illustration of 12-bit A/D converter characteristic terms

Absolute accuracy

Absolute accuracy is the difference between output code based on the theoretical A/D conversion characteristics, and the actual A/D conversion result. When measuring absolute accuracy, the voltage at the midpoint of the width of the analog input voltage (1-LSB width), which can meet the expectation of outputting an equal code based on the theoretical A/D conversion characteristics, is used as the analog input voltage. For example, if 12-bit resolution is used and the reference voltage VREFH0 = 3.072 V, then 1-LSB width becomes 0.75 mV, and 0 mV, 0.75 mV, and 1.5 mV are used as the analog input voltages. If analog input voltage is 6 mV, an absolute accuracy of ± 5 LSB means that the actual A/D conversion result is in the range of 0x003 to 0x00D, though an output code of 0x008 can be expected from the theoretical A/D conversion characteristics.

Integral nonlinearity error (INL)

Integral nonlinearity error is the maximum deviation between the ideal line when the measured offset and full-scale errors are zeroed, and the actual output code.

Differential nonlinearity error (DNL)

Differential nonlinearity error is the difference between 1-LSB width based on the ideal A/D conversion characteristics and the width of the actual output code.

Offset error

Offset error is the difference between the transition point of the ideal first output code and the actual first output code.

Full-scale error

Full-scale error is the difference between the transition point of the ideal last output code and the actual last output code.

41.6 TSN Characteristics

Table 41.53 TSN characteristics

Conditions: VCC = AVCC0 = 1.8 to 5.5 V

Parameter	Symbol	Min	Typ	Max	Unit	Test conditions
Relative accuracy	—	—	± 1.5	—	°C	2.4 V or above
		—	± 2.0	—	°C	Below 2.4 V
Temperature slope	—	—	-3.3	—	mV/°C	—
Output voltage (at 25°C)	—	—	1.05	—	V	VCC = 3.3 V
Temperature sensor start time	t _{START}	—	—	5	μs	—
Sampling time	—	5	—	—	μs	

41.7 OSC Stop Detect Characteristics

Table 41.54 Oscillation stop detection circuit characteristics

Parameter	Symbol	Min	Typ	Max	Unit	Test conditions
Detection time	t _{dr}	—	—	1	ms	Figure 41.56

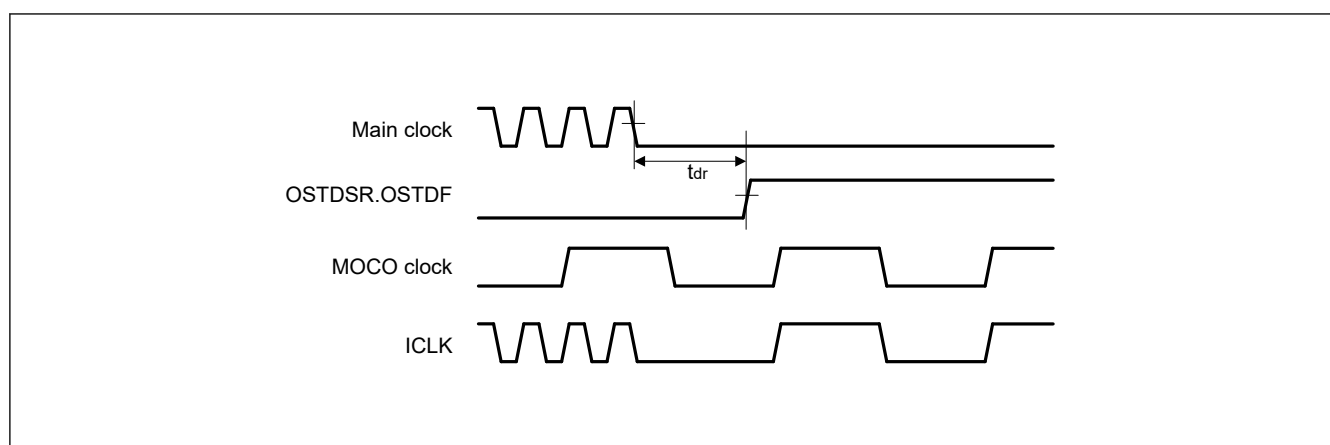


Figure 41.56 Oscillation stop detection timing

41.8 POR and LVD Characteristics

Table 41.55 Power-on reset circuit and voltage detection circuit characteristics (1) (1 of 2)

Parameter			Symbol	Min	Typ	Max	Unit	Test conditions
Voltage detection level ^{*1}	Power-on reset (POR)	When power supply rise	V _{POR}	1.47	1.51	1.55	V	Figure 41.57
		When power supply fall	V _{PDR}	1.46	1.50	1.54		Figure 41.58
	Voltage detection circuit (LVD0) ^{*2}	When power supply rise	V _{det0_0}	3.74	3.91	4.06	V	Figure 41.59 At falling edge VCC
		When power supply fall		3.68	3.85	4.00		
		When power supply rise	V _{det0_1}	2.73	2.9	3.01		
		When power supply fall		2.68	2.85	2.96		
		When power supply rise	V _{det0_2}	2.44	2.59	2.70		
		When power supply fall		2.38	2.53	2.64		
		When power supply rise	V _{det0_3}	1.83	1.95	2.07		
		When power supply fall		1.78	1.90	2.02		
		When power supply rise	V _{det0_4}	1.66	1.75	1.88		
		When power supply fall		1.60	1.69	1.82		
Voltage detection level ^{*1}	Voltage detection circuit (LVD1) ^{*3}	When power supply rise	V _{det1_0}	4.23	4.39	4.55	V	Figure 41.60 At falling edge VCC
		When power supply fall		4.13	4.29	4.45		
		When power supply rise	V _{det1_1}	4.07	4.25	4.39		
		When power supply fall		3.98	4.16	4.30		
		When power supply rise	V _{det1_2}	3.97	4.14	4.29		
		When power supply fall		3.86	4.03	4.18		
		When power supply rise	V _{det1_3}	3.74	3.92	4.06		
		When power supply fall		3.68	3.86	4.00		
		When power supply rise	V _{det1_4}	3.05	3.17	3.29		
		When power supply fall		2.98	3.10	3.22		
		When power supply rise	V _{det1_5}	2.95	3.06	3.17		
		When power supply fall		2.89	3.00	3.11		
		When power supply rise	V _{det1_6}	2.86	2.97	3.08		
		When power supply fall		2.79	2.90	3.01		
		When power supply rise	V _{det1_7}	2.74	2.85	2.96		
		When power supply fall		2.68	2.79	2.90		

Table 41.55 Power-on reset circuit and voltage detection circuit characteristics (1) (2 of 2)

Parameter			Symbol	Min	Typ	Max	Unit	Test conditions
Voltage detection level ^{*1}	Voltage detection circuit (LVD1) ^{*3}	When power supply rise	V_{det1_8}	2.63	2.75	2.85	V	Figure 41.60 At falling edge VCC
		When power supply fall		2.58	2.68	2.78		
		When power supply rise	V_{det1_9}	2.54	2.64	2.75		
		When power supply fall		2.48	2.58	2.68		
		When power supply rise	V_{det1_A}	2.43	2.53	2.63		
		When power supply fall		2.38	2.48	2.58		
		When power supply rise	V_{det1_B}	2.16	2.26	2.36		
		When power supply fall		2.10	2.20	2.30		
		When power supply rise	V_{det1_C}	1.88	2	2.09		
		When power supply fall		1.84	1.96	2.05		
		When power supply rise	V_{det1_D}	1.78	1.9	1.99		
		When power supply fall		1.74	1.86	1.95		
		When power supply rise	V_{det1_E}	1.67	1.79	1.88		
		When power supply fall		1.63	1.75	1.84		
		When power supply rise	V_{det1_F}	1.65	1.7	1.78		
		When power supply fall		1.60	1.65	1.73		
Voltage detection level ^{*1}	Voltage detection circuit (LVD2) ^{*4}	When power supply rise	V_{det2_0}	4.20	4.40	4.57	V	Figure 41.61 At falling edge VCC
		When power supply fall		4.11	4.31	4.48		
		When power supply rise	V_{det2_1}	4.05	4.25	4.42		
		When power supply fall		3.97	4.17	4.34		
		When power supply rise	V_{det2_2}	3.91	4.11	4.28		
		When power supply fall		3.83	4.03	4.20		
		When power supply rise	V_{det2_3}	3.71	3.91	4.08		
		When power supply fall		3.64	3.84	4.01		

Note 1. These characteristics apply when noise is not superimposed on the power supply. When a setting causes this voltage detection level to overlap with that of the voltage detection circuit, it cannot be specified whether LVD1 or LVD2 is used for voltage detection.

Note 2. # in the symbol $V_{det0\_#}$ denotes the value of the OFS1.VDSEL0[2:0] bits.

Note 3. # in the symbol $V_{det1\_#}$ denotes the value of the LVDLVL.R.LVD1LVL[4:0] bits.

Note 4. # in the symbol $V_{det2\_#}$ denotes the value of the LVDLVL.R.LVD2LVL[2:0] bits.

Table 41.56 Power-on reset circuit and voltage detection circuit characteristics (2) (1 of 2)

Parameter		Symbol	Min	Typ	Max	Unit	Test conditions
Wait time after power-on reset cancellation	LVD0: enable	t_{POR}	—	4.3	—	ms	—
	LVD0: disable	t_{POR}	—	3.7	—	ms	—
Wait time after voltage monitor 0, 1, 2 reset cancellation	LVD0: enable ^{*1}	$t_{LVD0,1,2}$	—	1.4	—	ms	—
	LVD0: disable ^{*2}	$t_{LVD1,2}$	—	0.7	—	ms	—
Power-on reset response delay time ^{*3}		t_{det}	—	—	500	μs	Figure 41.57, Figure 41.58
LVD0 response delay time ^{*3}		t_{det}	—	—	500	μs	Figure 41.59
LVD1 response delay time ^{*3}		t_{det}	—	—	350	μs	Figure 41.60
LVD2 response delay time ^{*3}		t_{det}	—	—	600	μs	Figure 41.61
Minimum VCC down time		t_{VOFF}	500	—	—	μs	Figure 41.57, VCC = 1.0 V or above

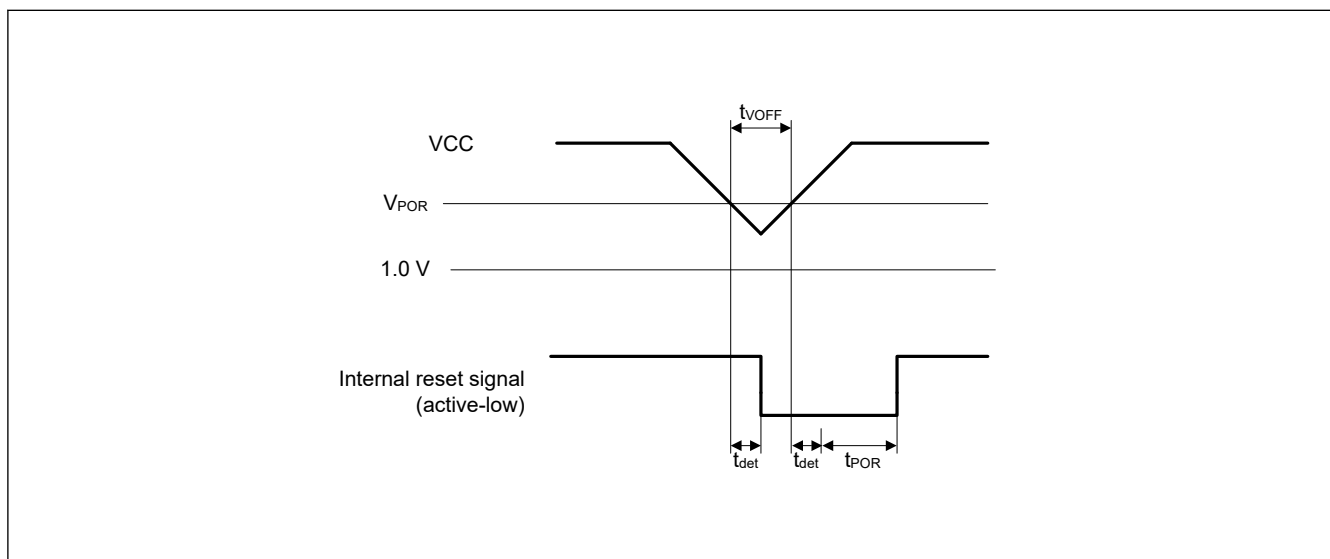
Table 41.56 Power-on reset circuit and voltage detection circuit characteristics (2) (2 of 2)

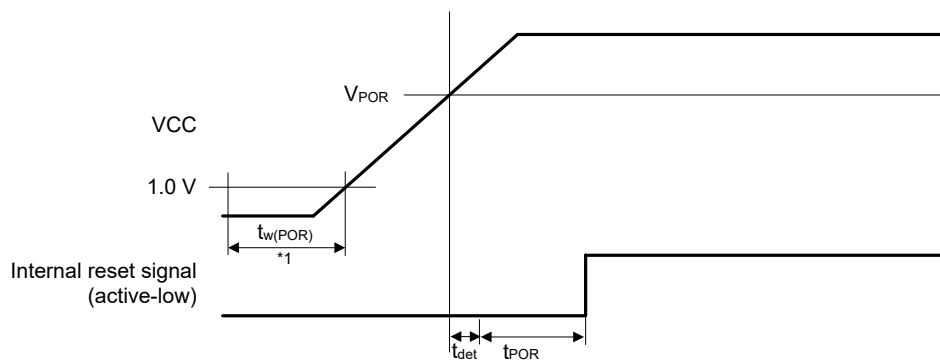
Parameter	Symbol	Min	Typ	Max	Unit	Test conditions
Power-on reset enable time	t_W (POR)	1	—	—	ms	Figure 41.58, VCC = below 1.0 V
LVD1 operation stabilization time (after LVD1 is enabled)	T_d (E-A)	—	—	300	μ s	Figure 41.60
LVD2 operation stabilization time (after LVD2 is enabled)	T_d (E-A)	—	—	1200	μ s	Figure 41.61
Hysteresis width (POR)	V_{PORH}	—	10	—	mV	—
Hysteresis width (LVD0, LVD1 and LVD2)	V_{LVH}	—	60	—	mV	LVD0 selected
		—	110	—		V_{det1_0} to V_{det1_2} selected
		—	70	—		V_{det1_3} to V_{det1_9} selected
		—	60	—		V_{det1_A} to V_{det1_B} selected
		—	50	—		V_{det1_C} to V_{det1_F} selected
		—	90	—		LVD2 selected

Note 1. When OFS1.LVDAS = 0.

Note 2. When OFS1.LVDAS = 1.

Note 3. The minimum VCC down time indicates the time when VCC is below the minimum value of voltage detection levels V_{POR} , V_{det0} , V_{det1} , and V_{det2} for the POR/LVD.

**Figure 41.57 Voltage detection reset timing**



Note 1. $t_{W(POR)}$ is the time required for a power-on reset to be enabled while the external power VCC is being held below the valid voltage (1.0 V).
When VCC turns on, maintain $t_{W(POR)}$ for 1.0 ms or more.

Figure 41.58 Power-on reset timing

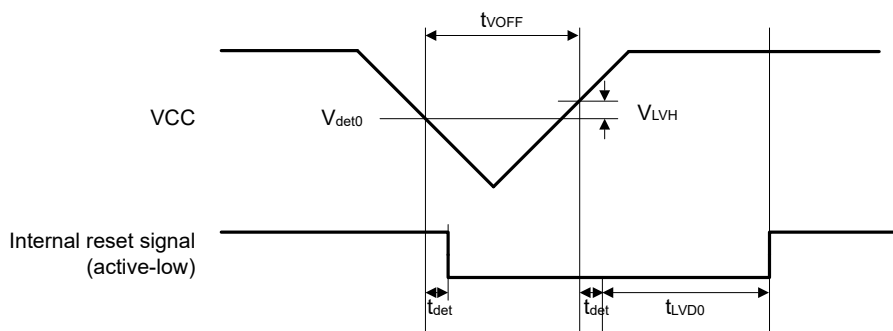


Figure 41.59 Voltage detection circuit timing (V_{det0})

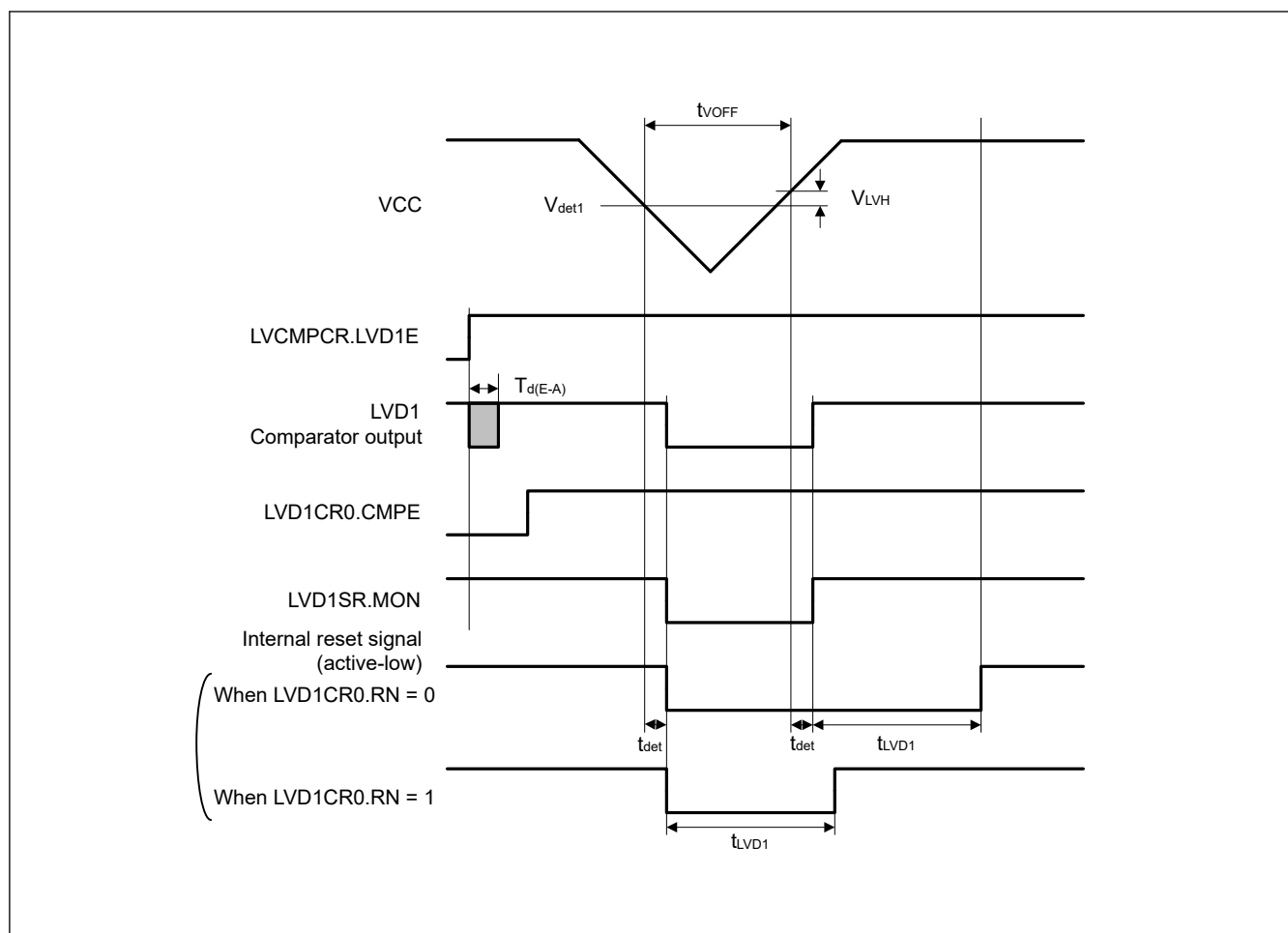
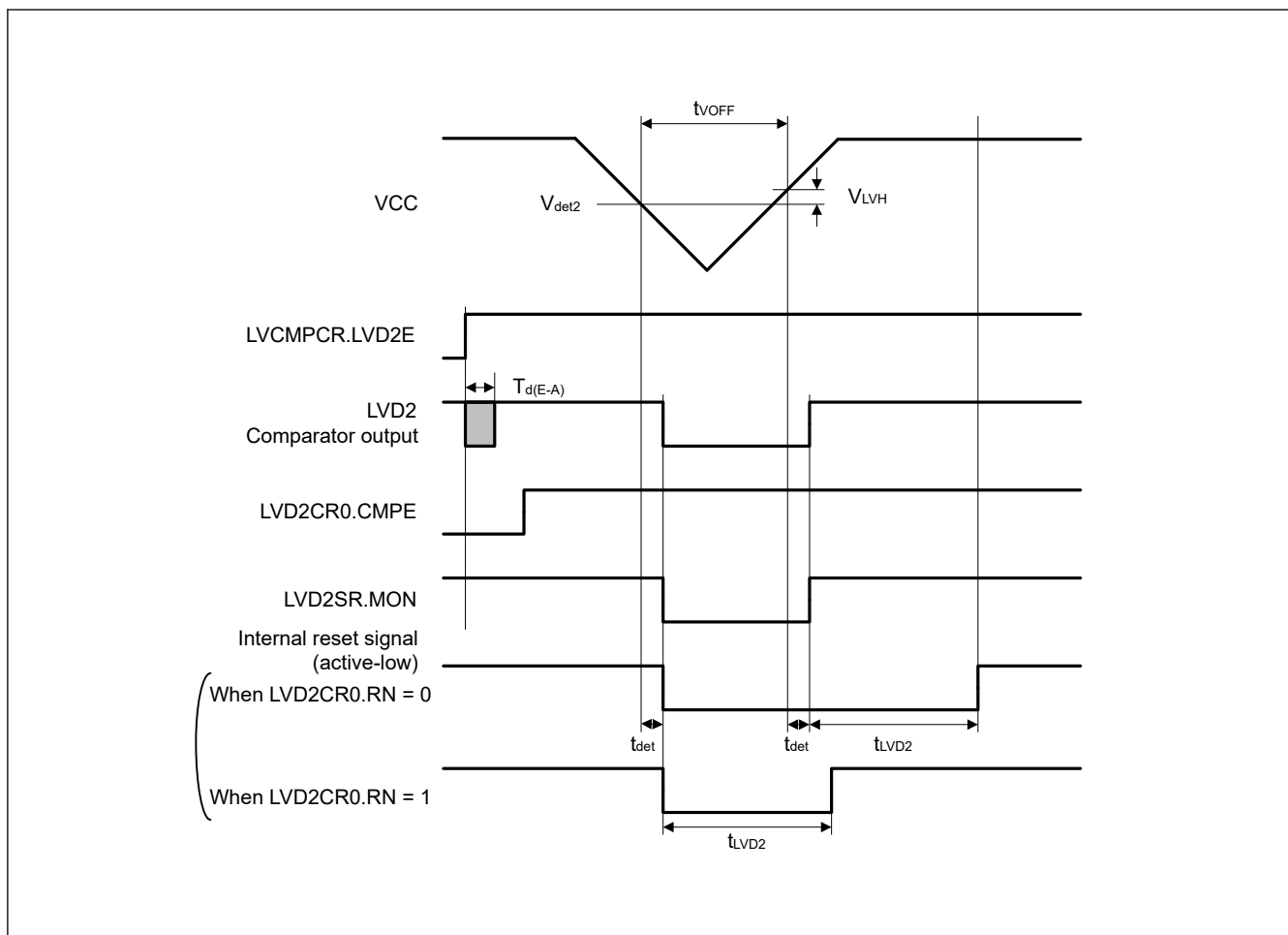


Figure 41.60 Voltage detection circuit timing (V_{det1})

Figure 41.61 Voltage detection circuit timing (V_{det2})

41.9 Flash Memory Characteristics

41.9.1 Code Flash Memory Characteristics

Table 41.57 Code flash characteristics (1)

Parameter	Symbol	Min	Typ	Max	Unit	Test conditions
Reprogramming/erasure cycle ^{*1}	N_{PEC}	1000	—	—	Times	—
Data hold time	After 1000 times N_{PEC}	t_{DRP}	20 ^{*2}	—	Year	$T_a = +105^\circ\text{C}$
			10 ^{*2}	—	Year	$T_a = +125^\circ\text{C}$

Note 1. The reprogram/erase cycle is the number of erasures for each block. When the reprogram/erase cycle is n times ($n = 1,000$), erasing can be performed n times for each block. For instance, when 4-byte programming is performed 512 times for different addresses in 2-KB blocks, and then the entire block is erased, the reprogram/erase cycle is counted as one. However, programming the same address for several times as one erasure is not enabled (overwriting is prohibited).

Note 2. This result is obtained from reliability testing.

Table 41.58 Code flash characteristics (2) (1 of 2)

High-speed operating mode

Conditions: $V_{CC} = AVCC0 = 1.8$ to 5.5 V

Parameter		Symbol	ICLK = 1 MHz			ICLK = 48 MHz			Unit
			Min	Typ	Max	Min	Typ	Max	
Programming time	4-byte	t_{P4}	—	86	732	—	34	321	μs
Erasure time	2-KB	t_{E2K}	—	12.5	355	—	5.6	215	ms

Table 41.58 Code flash characteristics (2) (2 of 2)

High-speed operating mode

Conditions: VCC = AVCC0 = 1.8 to 5.5 V

Parameter		Symbol	ICLK = 1 MHz			ICLK = 48 MHz			Unit
			Min	Typ	Max	Min	Typ	Max	
Blank check time	4-byte	t _{BC4}	—	—	46.5	—	—	8.3	μs
	2-KB	t _{BC2K}	—	—	3681	—	—	240	μs
Erase suspended time		t _{SED}	—	—	22.3	—	—	10.5	μs
Access window information program Start-up area selection and security setting time		t _{AWSSAS}	—	21.2	570	—	11.4	423	ms
OCD/serial programmer ID setting time*1		t _{OSIS}	—	84.7	2280	—	45.3	1690	ms
Flash memory mode transition wait time 1		t _{DIS}	2	—	—	2	—	—	μs
Flash memory mode transition wait time 2		t _{MS}	15	—	—	15	—	—	μs

Note: Does not include the time until each operation of the flash memory is started after instructions are executed by software.

Note: The lower-limit frequency of ICLK is 1 MHz during programming or erasing the flash memory. When using ICLK at below 4 MHz, the frequency can be set to 1 MHz, 2 MHz, or 3 MHz. A non-integer frequency such as 1.5 MHz cannot be set.

Note: The frequency accuracy of ICLK must be ± 1.0% during programming or erasing the flash memory. Confirm the frequency accuracy of the clock source.

Note 1. Total time of four commands.

Table 41.59 Code flash characteristics (3)

Middle-speed operating mode

Conditions: VCC = AVCC0 = 1.8 to 5.5 V

Parameter		Symbol	ICLK = 1 MHz			ICLK = 24 MHz*2			Unit
			Min	Typ	Max	Min	Typ	Max	
Programming time	4-byte	t _{P4}	—	86	732	—	39	356	μs
Erasure time	2-KB	t _{E2K}	—	12.5	355	—	6.2	227	ms
Blank check time	4-byte	t _{BC4}	—	—	46.5	—	—	11.3	μs
	2-KB	t _{BC2K}	—	—	3681	—	—	534	μs
Erase suspended time		t _{SED}	—	—	22.3	—	—	11.7	μs
Access window information program Start-up area selection and security setting time		t _{AWSSAS}	—	21.2	570	—	12.2	435	ms
OCD/serial programmer ID setting time*1		t _{OSIS}	—	84.7	2280	—	48.7	1740	ms
Flash memory mode transition wait time 1		t _{DIS}	2	—	—	2	—	—	μs
Flash memory mode transition wait time 2		t _{MS}	15	—	—	15	—	—	μs

Note: Does not include the time until each operation of the flash memory is started after instructions are executed by software.

Note: The lower-limit frequency of ICLK is 1 MHz during programming or erasing the flash memory. When using ICLK at below 4 MHz, the frequency can be set to 1 MHz, 2 MHz, or 3 MHz. A non-integer frequency such as 1.5 MHz cannot be set.

Note: The frequency accuracy of ICLK must be ± 1.0% during programming or erasing the flash memory. Confirm the frequency accuracy of the clock source.

Note 1. Total time of four commands.

Note 2. When 1.8 V ≤ VCC = AVCC0 ≤ 5.5 V

Table 41.60 Code flash characteristics (4)

Low-speed operating mode

Conditions: VCC = AVCC0 = 1.6 to 5.5 V

Parameter		Symbol	ICLK = 1 MHz			ICLK = 2 MHz			Unit
			Min	Typ	Max	Min	Typ	Max	
Programming time	4-byte	t _{P4}	—	86	732	—	57	502	μs
Erasure time	2-KB	t _{E2K}	—	12.5	355	—	8.8	280	ms
Blank check time	4-byte	t _{BC4}	—	—	46.5	—	—	23.3	μs
	2-KB	t _{BC2K}	—	—	3681	—	—	1841	μs
Erase suspended time		t _{SED}	—	—	22.3	—	—	16.2	μs
Access window information program Start-up area selection and security setting time		t _{AWSSAS}	—	21.2	570	—	15.9	491	ms
OCD/serial programmer ID setting time*1		t _{OSIS}	—	84.7	2280	—	63.5	1964	ms
Flash memory mode transition wait time 1		t _{DIS}	2	—	—	2	—	—	μs
Flash memory mode transition wait time 2		t _{MS}	15	—	—	15	—	—	μs

Note: Does not include the time until each operation of the flash memory is started after instructions are executed by software.

Note: The lower-limit frequency of ICLK is 1 MHz during programming or erasing the flash memory. When using ICLK at below 4 MHz, the frequency can be set to 1 MHz or 2 MHz. A non-integer frequency such as 1.5 MHz cannot be set.

Note: The frequency accuracy of ICLK must be ± 1.0% during programming or erasing the flash memory. Confirm the frequency accuracy of the clock source.

Note 1. Total time of four commands.

41.9.2 Data Flash Memory Characteristics

Table 41.61 Data flash characteristics (1)

Parameter		Symbol	Min	Typ	Max	Unit	Test conditions
Reprogramming/erasure cycle*1		N _{DPEC}	100000	1000000	—	Times	—
Data hold time	After 10000 times of N _{DPEC}	t _{DDRP}	20 *2	—	—	Year	Ta = +105°C
			10 *2	—	—	Year	Ta = +125°C
	After 100000 times of N _{DPEC}		5 *2	—	—	Year	Ta = +105°C
	After 1000000 times of N _{DPEC}		—	1 *2	—	Year	Ta = +25°C

Note 1. The reprogram/erase cycle is the number of erasure for each block. When the reprogram/erase cycle is n times (n = 100,000), erasing can be performed n times for each block. For instance, when 1-byte programming is performed 1,024 times for different addresses in 1-KB blocks, and then the entire block is erased, the reprogram/erase cycle is counted as one. However, programming the same address for several times as one erasure is not enabled. (overwriting is prohibited.)

Note 2. This result is obtained from reliability testing.

Table 41.62 Data flash characteristics (2) (1 of 2)

High-speed operating mode

Conditions: VCC = AVCC0 = 1.8 to 5.5 V

Parameter		Symbol	ICLK = 1 MHz			ICLK = 48 MHz			Unit
			Min	Typ	Max	Min	Typ	Max	
Programming time	1-byte	t _{DP1}	—	45	404	—	34	321	μs
Erasure time	1-KB	t _{DE1K}	—	8.8	280	—	6.1	224	ms
Blank check time	1-byte	t _{DBC1}	—	—	15.2	—	—	8.3	μs
	1-KB	t _{DBC1K}	—	—	1832	—	—	466	μs
Suspended time during erasing		t _{SED}	—	—	13.2	—	—	10.5	μs

Table 41.62 Data flash characteristics (2) (2 of 2)

High-speed operating mode

Conditions: VCC = AVCC0 = 1.8 to 5.5 V

Parameter	Symbol	ICLK = 1 MHz			ICLK = 48 MHz			Unit
		Min	Typ	Max	Min	Typ	Max	
Data flash STOP recovery time	t _{DSTOP}	250	—	—	250	—	—	ns

Note: Does not include the time until each operation of the flash memory is started after instructions are executed by software.

Note: The lower-limit frequency of ICLK is 1 MHz during programming or erasing the flash memory. When using ICLK at below 4 MHz, the frequency can be set to 1 MHz, 2 MHz, or 3 MHz. A non-integer frequency such as 1.5 MHz cannot be set.

Note: The frequency accuracy of ICLK must be $\pm 1.0\%$ during programming or erasing the flash memory. Confirm the frequency accuracy of the clock source.**Table 41.63 Data flash characteristics (3)**

Middle-speed operating mode

Conditions: VCC = AVCC0 = 1.8 to 5.5 V

Parameter		Symbol	ICLK = 1 MHz			ICLK = 24 MHz*1			Unit
			Min	Typ	Max	Min	Typ	Max	
Programming time	1-byte	t _{DP1}	—	45	404	—	39	356	μ s
Erasure time	1-KB	t _{DE1K}	—	8.8	280	—	7.3	248	ms
Blank check time	1-byte	t _{DBC1}	—	—	15.2	—	—	11.3	μ s
	1-KB	t _{DBC1K}	—	—	1.84	—	—	1.06	ms
Suspended time during erasing		t _{DSER}	—	—	13.2	—	—	11.7	μ s
Data flash STOP recovery time		t _{DSTOP}	250	—	—	250	—	—	ns

Note: Does not include the time until each operation of the flash memory is started after instructions are executed by software.

Note: The lower-limit frequency of ICLK is 1 MHz during programming or erasing the flash memory. When using ICLK at below 4 MHz, the frequency can be set to 1 MHz, 2 MHz, or 3 MHz. A non-integer frequency such as 1.5 MHz cannot be set.

Note: The frequency accuracy of ICLK must be $\pm 1.0\%$ during programming or erasing the flash memory. Confirm the frequency accuracy of the clock source.Note 1. When $1.8\text{ V} \leq \text{VCC} = \text{AVCC0} \leq 5.5\text{ V}$ **Table 41.64 Data flash characteristics (4)**

Low-speed operating mode

Conditions: VCC = AVCC0 = 1.6 to 5.5 V

Parameter		Symbol	ICLK = 1 MHz			ICLK = 2 MHz			Unit
			Min	Typ	Max	Min	Typ	Max	
Programming time	1-byte	t _{DP1}	—	86	732	—	57	502	μ s
Erasure time	1-KB	t _{DE1K}	—	19.7	504	—	12.4	354	ms
Blank check time	1-byte	t _{DBC1}	—	—	46.5	—	—	23.3	μ s
	1-KB	t _{DBC1K}	—	—	7.3	—	—	3.66	ms
Suspended time during erasing		t _{DSER}	—	—	22.3	—	—	16.2	μ s
Data flash STOP recovery time		t _{DSTOP}	250	—	—	250	—	—	ns

Note: Does not include the time until each operation of the flash memory is started after instructions are executed by software.

Note: The lower-limit frequency of ICLK is 1 MHz during programming or erasing the flash memory. When using ICLK at below 2 MHz, the frequency can be set to 1 MHz or 2 MHz. A non-integer frequency such as 1.5 MHz cannot be set.

Note: The frequency accuracy of ICLK must be $\pm 1.0\%$ during programming or erasing the flash memory. Confirm the frequency accuracy of the clock source.

41.10 Serial Wire Debug (SWD)

Table 41.65 SWD characteristics (1)

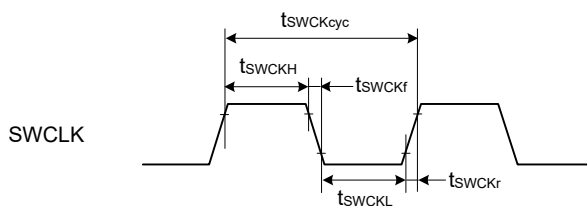
Conditions: VCC = AVCC0 = 2.4 to 5.5 V

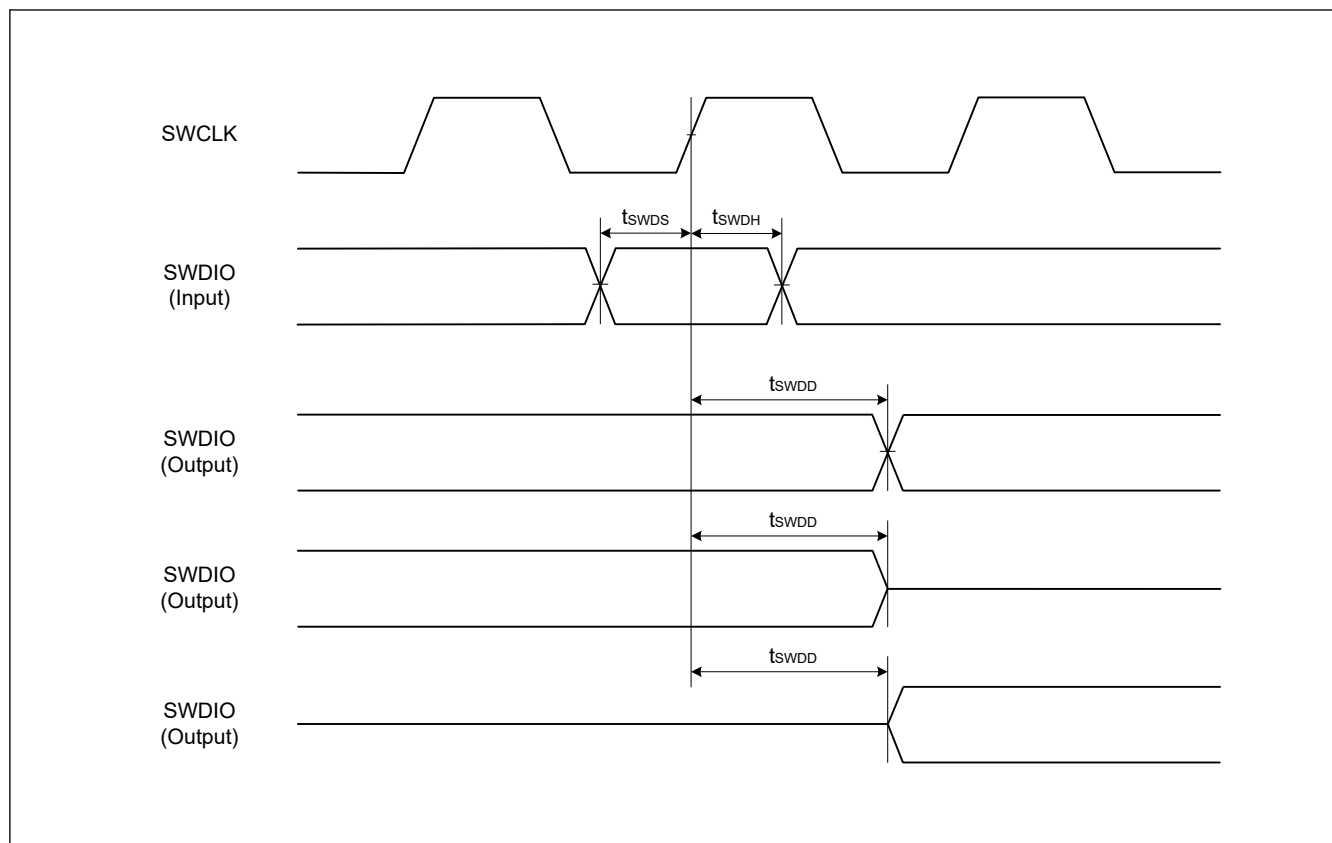
Parameter	Symbol	Min	Typ	Max	Unit	Test conditions
SWCLK clock cycle time	t_{SWCKcyc}	80	—	—	ns	Figure 41.62
SWCLK clock high pulse width	t_{SWCKH}	35	—	—	ns	
SWCLK clock low pulse width	t_{SWCKL}	35	—	—	ns	
SWCLK clock rise time	t_{SWCKr}	—	—	5	ns	
SWCLK clock fall time	t_{SWCKf}	—	—	5	ns	
SWDIO setup time	t_{SWDS}	16	—	—	ns	Figure 41.63
SWDIO hold time	t_{SWDH}	16	—	—	ns	
SWDIO data delay time	t_{SWDD}	2	—	70	ns	

Table 41.66 SWD characteristics (2)

Conditions: VCC = AVCC0 = 1.6 to 2.4 V

Parameter	Symbol	Min	Typ	Max	Unit	Test conditions
SWCLK clock cycle time	t_{SWCKcyc}	250	—	—	ns	Figure 41.62
SWCLK clock high pulse width	t_{SWCKH}	120	—	—	ns	
SWCLK clock low pulse width	t_{SWCKL}	120	—	—	ns	
SWCLK clock rise time	t_{SWCKr}	—	—	5	ns	
SWCLK clock fall time	t_{SWCKf}	—	—	5	ns	
SWDIO setup time	t_{SWDS}	50	—	—	ns	Figure 41.63
SWDIO hold time	t_{SWDH}	50	—	—	ns	
SWDIO data delay time	t_{SWDD}	2	—	170	ns	


Figure 41.62 SWD SWCLK timing

**Figure 41.63** SWD input/output timing

Appendix 1. Port States in Each Processing Mode

Table A1.1 Port states in each processing mode (1 of 3)

Port name	Reset	Software Standby mode
P000/AN000/IRQ6	Hi-Z	Keep-O ^{*1}
P001/AN001/IRQ7	Hi-Z	Keep-O ^{*1}
P002/AN002/IRQ2	Hi-Z	Keep-O ^{*1}
P003/AN003	Hi-Z	Keep-O
P004/AN004/IRQ3	Hi-Z	Keep-O ^{*1}
P010/AN005/IRQ5_C	Hi-Z	Keep-O ^{*1}
P011/AN006/IRQ0_C	Hi-Z	Keep-O ^{*1}
P012/AN007/IRQ1_C	Hi-Z	Keep-O ^{*1}
P013/AN008/IRQ4_C	Hi-Z	Keep-O ^{*1}
P014/AN009/GTETRGA_E/IRQ6_C	Hi-Z	Keep-O ^{*1}
P015/AN010/GTETRGA_E/IRQ7_A	Hi-Z	Keep-O ^{*1}
P100/AN022/AGTIO0_A/GTETRGA_A/ GTIOC8B_A/RXD0_A/MISO0_A/SCL0_A/ SCK1_A/MISOA_A/SSIRXD0_C/KRM00/ IRQ2_A	Hi-Z	[AGTIO0_A output selected] AGTIO0_A output ^{*2} [Other than the above] Keep-O ^{*1}
P101/AN021/AGTEE0/GTETRGA_A/ GTIOC8A_A/TXD0_A/MOSI0_A/ SDA0_A/CTS1_RTS1_A/SS1_A/MOSIA_A/ SSITXD0_C/KRM01/IRQ1_A	Hi-Z	Keep-O ^{*1}
P102/AN020/ADTRG0_A/AGTO0/ GTOWLO_A/GTIOC5B_A/CTX0_C/ SCK0_A/TXD2_D/MOSI2_D/SDA2_D/ RSPCKA_A/SSILRCK0/SSIFS0_C/KRM02	Hi-Z	[AGTO0 selected] AGTO0 output ^{*2} [Other than the above] Keep-O ^{*1}
P103/AN019/GTOWUP_A/GTIOC5A_A/ CRX0_C/CTS0_RTS0_A/SS0_A/SSLA0_A/ SSIBCK0_C/KRM03/IRQ5_F	Hi-Z	Keep-O ^{*1}
P104/GTETRGA_B/GTIOC4B_B/RXD0_C/ MISO0_C/SCL0_C/SSLA1_A/KRM04/ IRQ1_B	Hi-Z	Keep-O ^{*1}
P105/GTETRGA_C/GTIOC4A_B/SSLA2_A/ KRM05/IRQ0_B	Hi-Z	Keep-O ^{*1}
P106/SSLA3_A/KRM06	Hi-Z	Keep-O ^{*1}
P107/KRM07	Hi-Z	Keep-O ^{*1}
P108/SWDIO/AGTOA1_B/GTOULO_C/ GTIOC0B_A/CTS9_RTS9_B/SS9_B/ SSIDATA0_A/RXDA0_A	Pull-up	[AGTOA1_B selected] AGTOA1_B output ^{*2} [RXDA0_A selected] RXDA0_A output ^{*3} [Other than the above] Keep-O
P109/AGTIO1_B/GTOVUP_A/GTIOC4A_A/ CRX0_A/SCK1_E/TXD9_B/MOSI9_B/ SDA9_B/SCL0_B/AUDIO_CLK_A/IRQ5_E/ CLKOUT_B/TXDA0_A/IRQ5_E	Hi-Z	[AGTIO1_B selected] AGTIO1_B output ^{*2} [CLKOUT_B selected] CLKOUT_B output [Other than the above] Keep-O ^{*1}
P110/AGTOB0_B/GTOVLO_A/GTIOC4B_A/ RTCOUNT_B/CTX0_A/CTS2_RTS2_B/ SS2_B/RXD9_B/MISO9_B/SCL9_B/ SDA0_B/IRQ3_A	Hi-Z	[AGTOB0_B selected] AGTOB0_B output ^{*2} [RTCOUNT_B selected] RTCOUNT_B output [Other than the above] Keep-O ^{*1}

Table A1.1 Port states in each processing mode (2 of 3)

Port name	Reset	Software Standby mode
P111/AGTOA0/GTIOC6A_A/SCK2_B/ SCK9_B/IRQ4_A	Hi-Z	[AGTOA0 selected] AGTOA0 output*2 [Other than the above] Keep-O*1
P112/ADTRG0_C/AGTOB0/GTIOC6B_A/ TXD2_B/MOSI2_B/SDA2_B/SCK1_D/ AUDIO_CLK_B	Hi-Z	[AGTOB0 selected] AGTOB0 output*2 [Other than the above] Keep-O
P113	Hi-Z	Keep-O
P200/NMI	Hi-Z	Hi-Z
P201/MD	Pull-up	Keep-O
P204/CACREF_A/AGTIO1_A/GTIW_A/ SCK0_D/SCK9_A/SSIRXD0_B	Hi-Z	[AGTIO1_A output selected] AGTIO1_A output*2 [Other than the above] Keep-O*1
P205/AGTO1/GTIV_A/TXD0_D/MOSI0_D/ SDA0_D/CTS9_RTS9_A/SS9_A/ SSITXD0_B/IRQ1/CLKOUT_A	Hi-Z	[AGTO1 selected] AGTO1 output*2 [CLKOUT_A selected] CLKOUT_A output [Other than the above] Keep-O*1
P206/GTIU_A/RXD0_D/MISO0_D/SCL0_D/ SSILRCK0/SSIFS0_B/IRQ0	Hi-Z	Keep-O*1
P207/SSIBCK0_B	Hi-Z	Keep-O
P212/EXTAL/AGTEE1/GTETRGA_D/ GTIOC0B_D/RXD1_A/MISO1_A/SCL1_A/ IRQ3_B	Hi-Z	Keep-O*1
P213/XTAL/GTETRGA_D/GTIOC0A_D/ TXD1_A/MOSI1_A/SDA1_A/IRQ2_B	Hi-Z	Keep-O*1
P214/XCOUT, P215/XCIN	Hi-Z	[Sub-clock Oscillator selected] Sub-clock Oscillator is operating [Other than the above] Hi-Z
P300/SWCLK/AGTIO0_B/GTOUUP_C/ GTIOC0A_A/CLKA0_A	Pull-up	[AGTIO0_B selected] AGTIO0_B output*2 [Other than the above] Keep-O
P301/AGTIO0_D/GTOULO_A/GTIOC7B_A/ RXD2_A/MISO2_A/SCL2_A/ CTS9_RTS9_D/SS9_D/IRQ6_A	Hi-Z	[AGTIO0_D selected] AGTIO0_D output*2 [Other than the above] Keep-O*1
P302/GTOUUP_A/GTIOC7A_A/TXD2_A/ MOSI2_A/SDA2_A/IRQ5_A	Hi-Z	Keep-O*1
P303	Hi-Z	Keep-O
P304	Hi-Z	Keep-O
P400/CACREF_C/AGTIO1_C/GTIOC9A_A/ SCK0_B/SCK1_B/SCL0_A/IRQ0_A	Hi-Z	[AGTIO1_C selected] AGTIO1_C output*2 [Other than the above] Keep-O*1
P401/GTETRGA_B/GTIOC9B_A/CRX0_B/ CTS0_RTS0_B/SS0_B/TXD1_B/MOSI1_B/ SDA1_B/SDA0_A/IRQ5/CLKA0_B	Hi-Z	Keep-O*1

Table A1.1 Port states in each processing mode (3 of 3)

Port name	Reset	Software Standby mode
P402/AGTIO0_E/AGTIO1_D/CTX0_B/ RXD1_B/MISO1_B/SCL1_B/IRQ4/ RXDA0_B	Hi-Z	[AGTIO0_E, AGTIO1_D selected] AGTIO0_E, AGTIO1_D output* ² [RXDA0_B selected] RXDA0_B output* ³ [Other than the above] Keep-O* ¹
P403/AGTIO0_F/AGTIO1_E/ CTS1_RTS1_B/SS1_B	Hi-Z	[AGTIO1_E, AGTIO0_F selected] AGTIO1_E, AGTIO0_F output* ² [Other than the above] Keep-O* ¹
P407/ADTRG0_B/RTCOU0_A/AGTIO0_C/ CTS0_RTS0_D/SS0_D/SSIDATA0_B/ USB_VBUS	Hi-Z	[AGTIO0_C selected] AGTIO0_C output* ² [CLKOUT_A selected] CLKOUT_A output [Other than the above] Keep-O* ¹
P408/GTOWLO_B/CTS1_RTS1_D/SS1_D/ SSIRXD0_A/IRQ7_B/TXDA1_B	Hi-Z	Keep-O* ¹
P409/GTOWUP_B/SSITXD0_A/IRQ6_B/ RXDA1_B	Hi-Z	[RXDA1_B selected] RXDA1_B output* ³ [Other than the above] Keep-O* ¹
P410/AGTOB1/GTOVLO_B/RXD0_B/ MISO0_B/SCL0_B/MISOA_B/SSILRCK0/ SSIFS0_A/IRQ5_B/CLKA1_B	Hi-Z	[AGTOB1 selected] AGTOB1 output* ² [Other than the above] Keep-O* ¹
P411/AGTOA1/GTOVUP_B/TXD0_B/ MOSI0_B/SDA0_B/MOSIA_B/SSIBCK0_A/ IRQ4_B	Hi-Z	[AGTOA1 selected] AGTOA1 output* ² [Other than the above] Keep-O* ¹
P500/GTIU_B/GTIOC5A_B/AUDIO_CLK_C/ CLKA1_A	Hi-Z	Keep-O
P501/AN017/GTIV_B/GTIOC5B_B/TXD1_C/ MOSI1_C/SDA1_C	Hi-Z	Keep-O
P502/AN018/GTIW_B/RXD1_C/MISO1_C/ SCL1_C	Hi-Z	Keep-O
P912/USB_CC2/CTX0_D/SDA0_C	Hi-Z	Keep-O
P913/USB_CC1/CRX0_D/SCL0_C/IRQ5_D	Hi-Z	Keep-O* ¹

Note: Hi-Z: High-impedance

Keep-O: Output pins retain their previous values. Input pins become high-impedance.

Note 1. Input is enabled if the pin is specified as the software standby canceling source while it is used as an external interrupt pin.

Note 2. AGTIO output is enabled while LOCO or SOSC is selected as a count source.

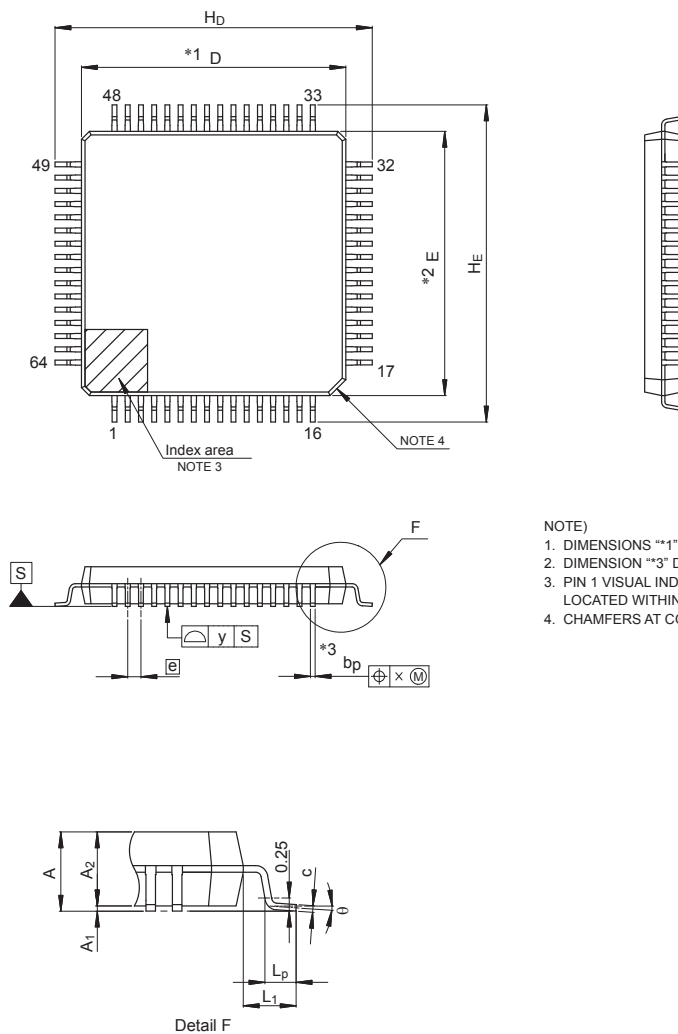
Note 3. RXDA output is enabled while 1000b (UARTALOCK) or 1001b (UARTASCLK) is selected

Appendix 2. Package Dimensions

Information on the latest version of the package dimensions or mountings is displayed in “Packages” on the Renesas Electronics Corporation website.

JEITA Package Code	RENESAS Code	Previous Code	MASS (Typ) [g]
P-LFQFP64-10x10-0.50	PLQP0064KB-C	—	0.3

Unit: mm



NOTE)

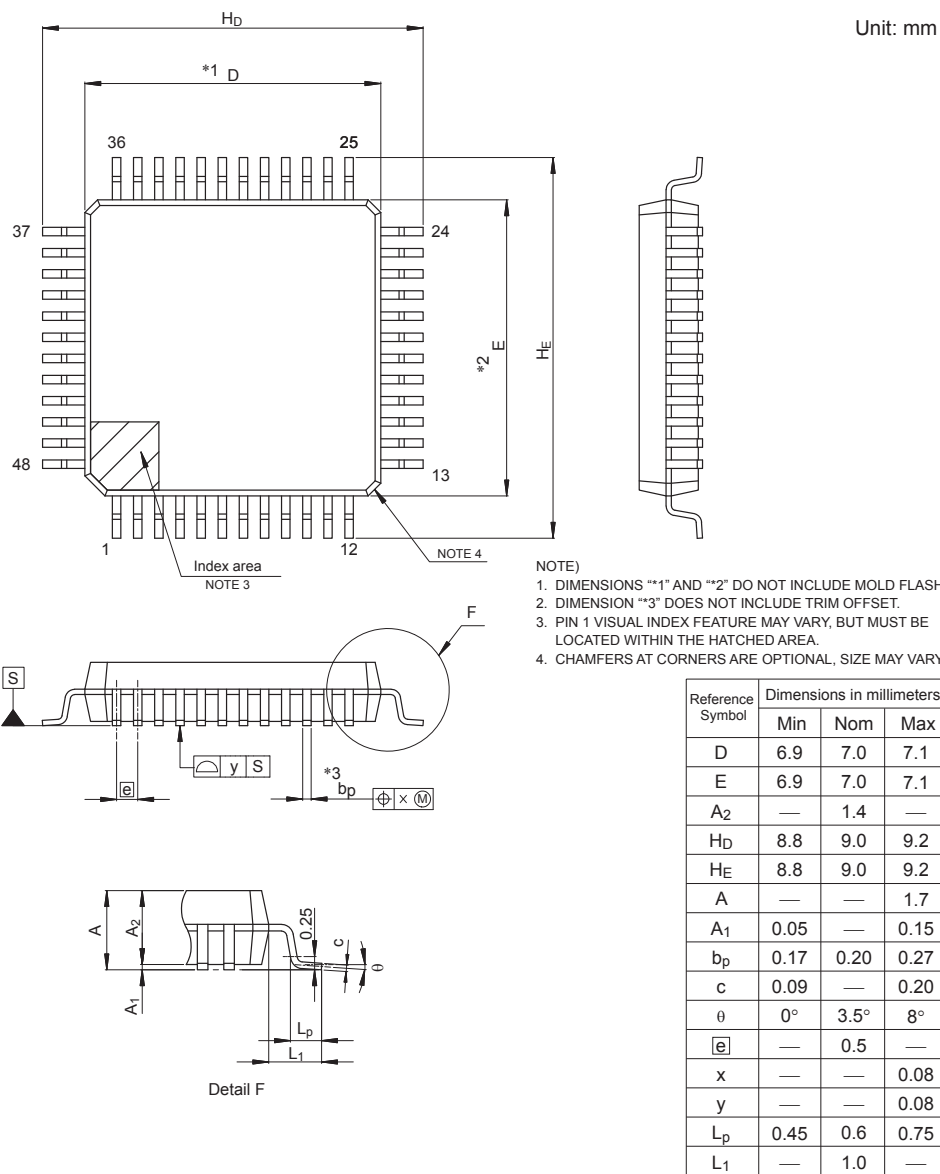
1. DIMENSIONS “*1” AND “*2” DO NOT INCLUDE MOLD FLASH.
2. DIMENSION “*3” DOES NOT INCLUDE TRIM OFFSET.
3. PIN 1 VISUAL INDEX FEATURE MAY VARY, BUT MUST BE LOCATED WITHIN THE HATCHED AREA.
4. CHAMFERS AT CORNERS ARE OPTIONAL, SIZE MAY VARY.

Reference Symbol	Dimensions in millimeters		
	Min	Nom	Max
D	9.9	10.0	10.1
E	9.9	10.0	10.1
A ₂	—	1.4	—
H _D	11.8	12.0	12.2
H _E	11.8	12.0	12.2
A	—	—	1.7
A ₁	0.05	—	0.15
b _p	0.15	0.20	0.27
c	0.09	—	0.20
θ	0°	3.5°	8°
ϕ	—	0.5	—
x	—	—	0.08
y	—	—	0.08
L _p	0.45	0.6	0.75
L ₁	—	1.0	—

© 2015 Renesas Electronics Corporation. All rights reserved.

Figure A2.1 LQFP 64-pin 0.5mm pitch

JEITA Package Code	RENESAS Code	Previous Code	MASS (Typ) [g]
P-LFQFP48-7x7-0.50	PLQP0048KB-B	—	0.2



© 2015 Renesas Electronics Corporation. All rights reserved.

Figure A2.2 LQFP 48-pin

JEITA Package code	RENESAS code	MASS(TYP.)[g]
P-HWQFN048-7x7-0.50	PWQN0048KC-A	0.13 g

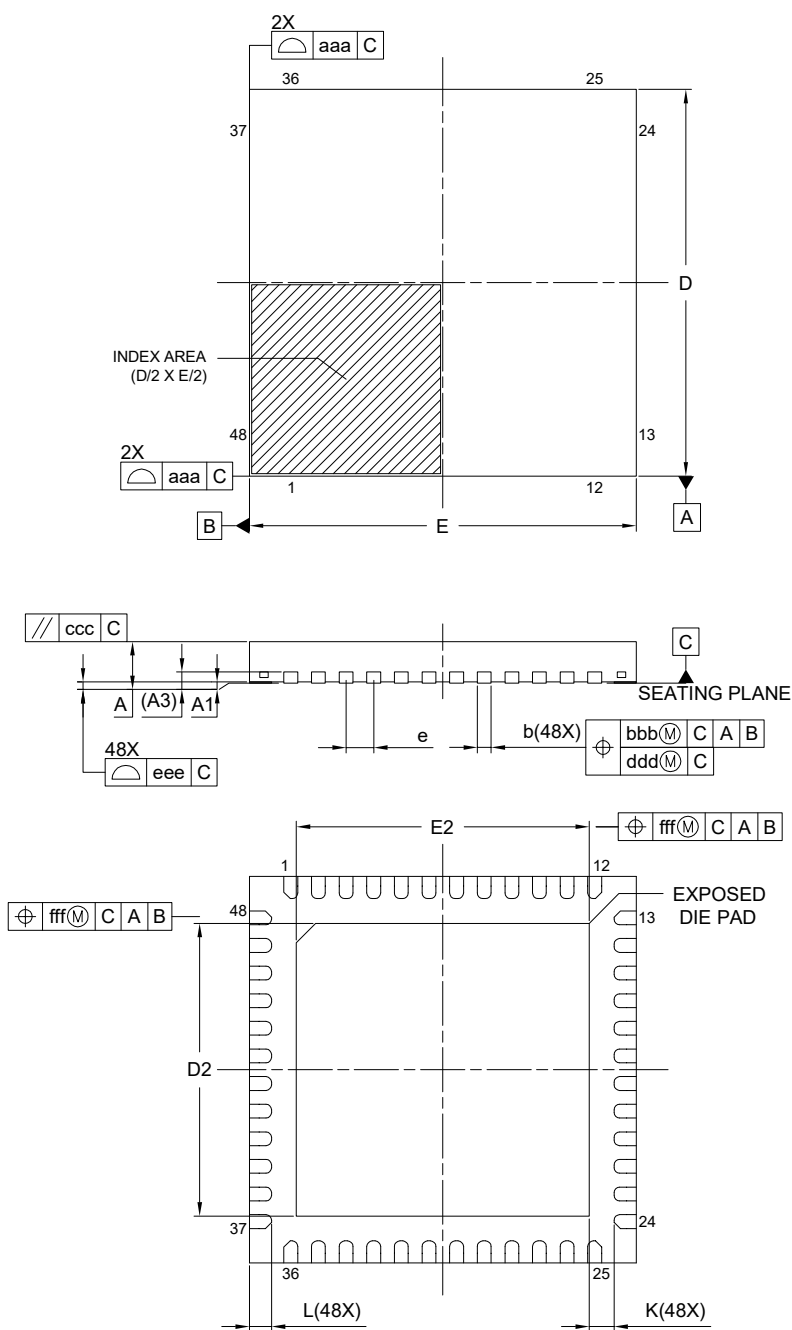


Figure A2.3 HWQFN 48-pin

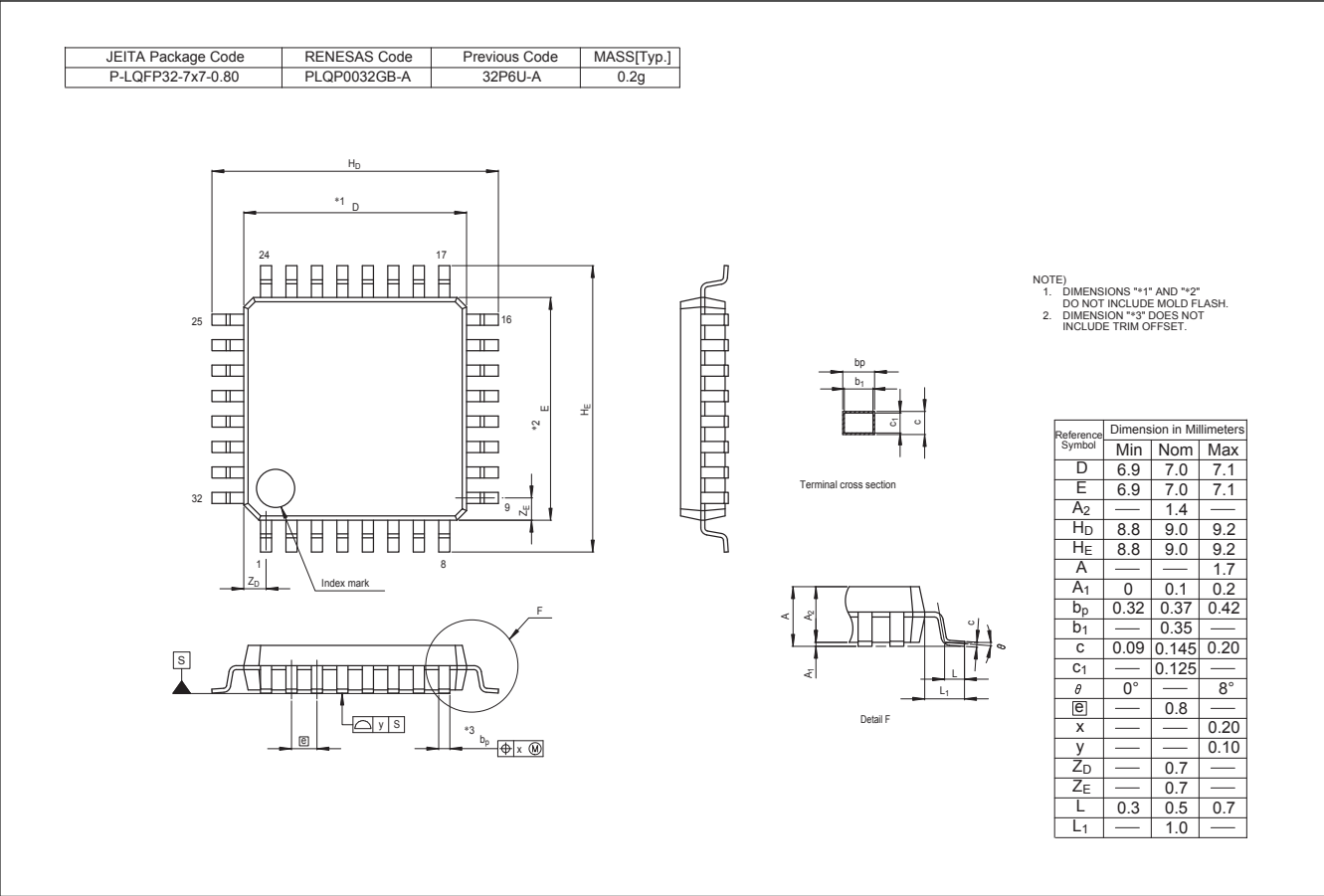


Figure A2.4 LQFP 32-pin

JEITA Package code	RENESAS code	MASS(TYP.)[g]
P-HWQFN032-5x5-0.50	PWQN0032KE-A	0.06

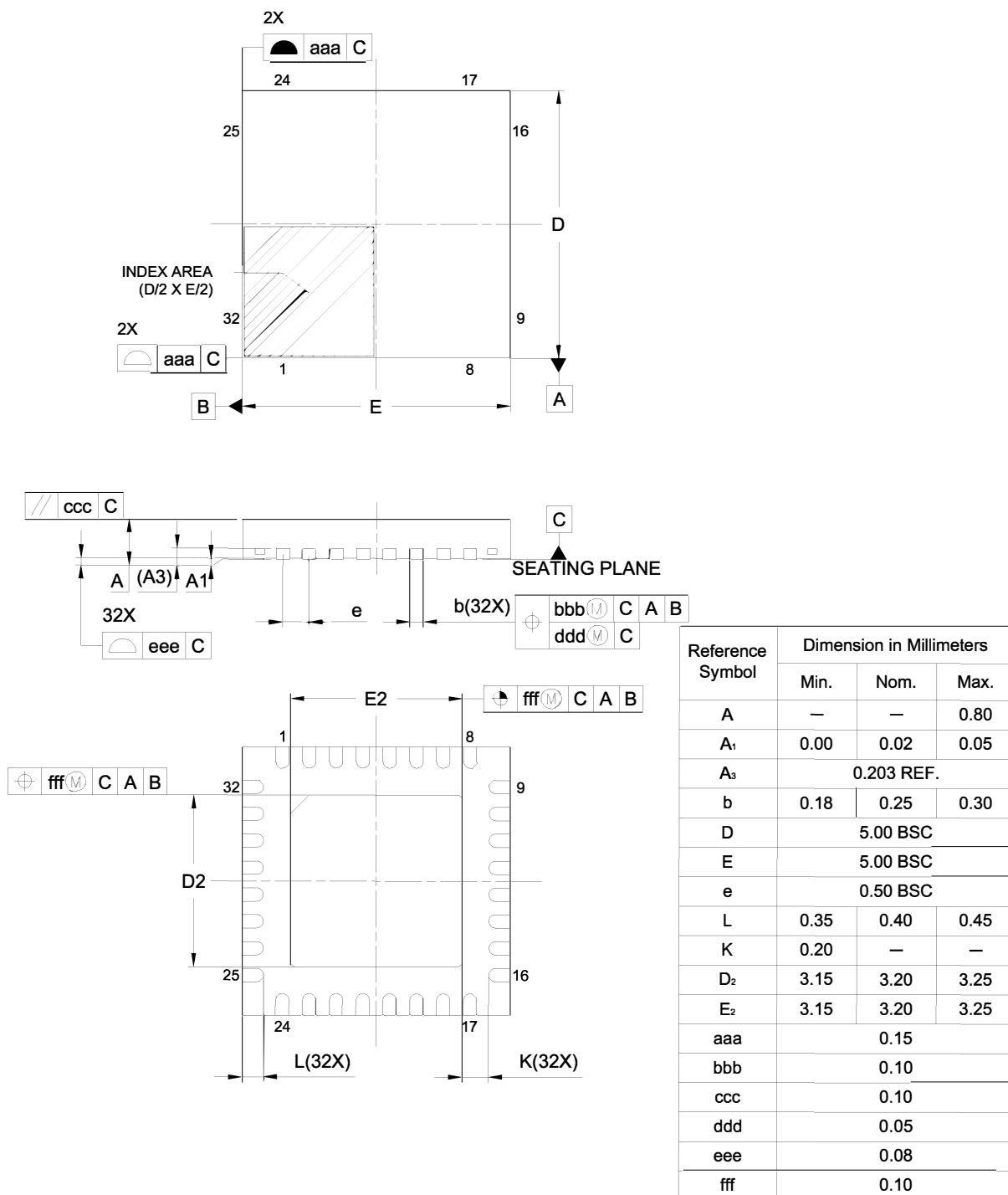


Figure A2.5 HWQFN 32-pin

Appendix 3. I/O Registers

This appendix describes I/O register addresses, access cycles, and reset values by function.

3.1 Peripheral Base Addresses

This section provides the base addresses for peripherals described in this manual.

[Table A3.1](#) shows the name, description, and the base address of each peripheral.

Table A3.1 Peripheral base address (1 of 2)

Name	Description	Base address
MPU	Memory Protection Unit	0x4000_0000
SRAM	SRAM Control	0x4000_2000
BUS	BUS Control	0x4000_3000
DTC	Data Transfer Controller	0x4000_5400
ICU	Interrupt Controller	0x4000_6000
CPU_DBG	Debug Function	0x4001_B000
SYSC	System Control	0x4001_E000
PORT0	Port 0 Control Registers	0x4004_0000
PORT1	Port 1 Control Registers	0x4004_0020
PORT2	Port 2 Control Registers	0x4004_0040
PORT3	Port 3 Control Registers	0x4004_0060
PORT4	Port 4 Control Registers	0x4004_0080
PORT5	Port 5 Control Registers	0x4004_00A0
PORT9	Port 9 Control Registers	0x4004_0120
PFS	Pmn Pin Function Control Register	0x4004_0800
ELC	Event Link Controller	0x4004_1000
POEG	Port Output Enable Module for GPT	0x4004_2000
RTC	Realtime Clock	0x4004_4000
WDT	Watchdog Timer	0x4004_4200
IWDT	Independent Watchdog Timer	0x4004_4400
CAC	Clock Frequency Accuracy Measurement Circuit	0x4004_4600
MSTP	Module Stop Control B, C, D	0x4004_7000
SSIE0	Serial Sound Interface Enhanced	0x4004_E000
CAN0	Controller Area Network	0x4005_0000
DOC	Data Operation Circuit	0x4005_4100
ADC12	12-bit A/D Converter	0x4005_C000
SCI0	Serial Communication Interface 0	0x4007_0000
SCI1	Serial Communication Interface 1	0x4007_0020
SCI2	Serial Communication Interface 2	0x4007_0040
SCI9	Serial Communication Interface 9	0x4007_0120
SPI0	Serial Peripheral Interface 0	0x4007_2000
CRC	CRC Calculator	0x4007_4000
GPT320	General PWM Timer 0 (32-bit)	0x4007_8000
GPT164	General PWM Timer 4 (16-bit)	0x4007_8400
GPT165	General PWM Timer 5 (16-bit)	0x4007_8500

Table A3.1 Peripheral base address (2 of 2)

Name	Description	Base address
GPT166	General PWM Timer 6 (16-bit)	0x4007_8600
GPT167	General PWM Timer 7 (16-bit)	0x4007_8700
GPT168	General PWM Timer 8 (16-bit)	0x4007_8800
GPT169	General PWM Timer 9 (16-bit)	0x4007_8900
GPT_OPS	Output Phase Switching Controller	0x4007_8FF0
KINT	Key Interrupt Function	0x4008_0000
I3C	I3C Bus Interface	0x4008_3000
AGTW0	Low Power Asynchronous General Purpose Timer 0	0x4008_4000
AGTW1	Low Power Asynchronous General Purpose Timer 1	0x4008_4100
FLCN	Flash I/O Registers	0x407E_C000
USBFS	USB 2.0 Full-Speed Module	0x4009_0000
USBCC	USB Type-C Controller 2.0 Module	0x4009_1000
UARTA	Serial Interface UARTA	0x4009_7000

Note: Name = Peripheral name
Description = Peripheral functionality
Base address = Lowest reserved address or address used by the peripheral

3.2 Access Cycles

This section provides access cycle information for the I/O registers described in this manual.

The following information applies to [Table A3.2](#):

- Registers are grouped by associated module.
- The number of access cycles indicates the number of cycles based on the specified reference clock.
- In the internal I/O area, reserved addresses that are not allocated to registers must not be accessed, otherwise operations cannot be guaranteed.
- The number of I/O access cycles depends on bus cycles of the internal peripheral bus, divided clock synchronization cycles, and wait cycles of each module. Divided clock synchronization cycles differ depending on the frequency ratio between ICLK and PCLK.
- When the frequency of ICLK is equal to that of PCLK, the number of divided clock synchronization cycles is always constant.
- When the frequency of ICLK is greater than that of PCLK, at least 1 PCLK cycle is added to the number of divided clock synchronization cycles.

Note: This applies to the number of cycles when access from the CPU does not conflict with the instruction fetching to the external memory or bus access from other bus master such as DTC.

[Table A3.2](#) shows the register access cycles for non-GPT modules.

Table A3.2 Access cycles for non-GPT modules (1 of 2)

Peripherals	Address		Number of access cycles					Cycle unit	Related function
			ICLK = PCLK		ICLK > PCLK* ¹				
	From	To	Read	Write	Read	Write			
MPU, SRAM, BUS, DTC, ICU, CPU_DBG	0x4000_2000	0x4001_BFFF	3				ICLK	Memory Protection Unit, SRAM, Buses, Data Transfer Controller, Interrupt Controller, CPU, Flash Memory	

Table A3.2 Access cycles for non-GPT modules (2 of 2)

Peripherals	Address		Number of access cycles					
			ICLK = PCLK		ICLK > PCLK*1		Cycle unit	Related function
	From	To	Read	Write	Read	Write		
SYSC	0x4001_E000	0x4001_E6FF	4				ICLK	Low Power Modes, Resets, Low Voltage Detection, Clock Generation Circuit, Register Write Protection
PORTn, PFS, ELC, POEG, RTC, WDT, IWDT, CAC, MSTP	0x4004_0000	0x4004_7FFF	3		2 to 3		PCLKB	I/O Ports, Event Link Controller, Port Output Enable for GPT, Realtime Clock, Watchdog Timer, Independent Watchdog Timer, Clock Frequency Accuracy Measurement Circuit, Module Stop Control
SSIE0	0x4004_E000	0x4004_EFFF	3		2 to 3		PCLKB	Serial Sound Interface Enhanced
CAN0, DOC, ADC12	0x4005_0000	0x4005_EFFF	3		2 to 3		PCLKB	Controller Area Network Module, Data Operation Circuit, 12-bit A/D Converter
SCIn (n = 0 to 2, 9*2)	0x4007_0000	0x4007_0EFF	5		2 to 3		PCLKB	Serial Communications Interface
SPIn (n = 0)*3	0x4007_2000	0x4007_2FFF	5		2 to 3		PCLKB	Serial Peripheral Interface
CRC	0x4007_4000	0x4007_4FFF	3		2 to 3		PCLKB	CRC Calculator
GPT32n (n = 0), GPT16n (n = 4 to 9), GPT_OPS	0x4007_8000	0x4007_BFFF	See Table A3.3 .				PCLKB	General PWM Timer
KINT	0x4008_0000	0x4008_1FFF	3		2 to 3		PCLKB	Key interrupt Function
AGTWn	0x4008_4000	0x4008_4FFF	3		2 to 3		PCLKB	Low Power Asynchronous General Purpose Timer
FLCN	0x407E_C000	0x407E_FFFF	7		7		ICLK	Data Flash, Temperature Sensor, Capacitive Sensing Unit 2, Flash Control
I3C	0x4008_3000	0x4008_33D0	3		2 to 3		PCLKB	I3C Bus Interface
USBFS	0x4009_0000	0x4009_FFFF	3		2 to 3		PCLKB	USB 2.0 Full-Speed Module
USBCC	0x4009_1000	0x4009_101F	3		2 to 3		PCLKB	USB type-C Controller 2.0 Module
UARTA	0x4009_7000	0x4009_7011	3		2 to 3		PCLKB	Serial Interface UARTA

Note 1. If the number of PCLK cycles is non-integer (for example 1.5), the minimum value is without the decimal point, and the maximum value is rounded up to the decimal point. For example, 1.5 to 2.5 is 1 to 3.

Note 2. Regarding n = 0, when accessing a 16-bit register (FTDRHL, FRDRHL, FCR, FDR, LSR, and CDR), access is 2 cycles more than the value shown in [Table A3.2](#). When accessing an 8-bit register (FTDRH, FTDRL, FRDRH, and FRDRL), the access cycles are as shown in [Table A3.2](#).

Note 3. When accessing the 32-bit register (SPDR), access is 2 cycles more than the value in [Table A3.2](#). When accessing an 8-bit or 16-bit register (SPDR_HA), the access cycles are as shown in [Table A3.2](#).

[Table A3.3](#) shows register access cycles for GPT modules.

Table A3.3 Access cycles for GPT modules (1 of 2)

Frequency ratio between ICLK and PCLK	Number of access cycles		Cycle unit
	Read	Write	
ICLK > PCLKD = PCLKB	5 to 6	3 to 4	PCLKB
ICLK > PCLKD > PCLKB	3 to 4	2 to 3	PCLKB
PCLKD = ICLK = PCLKB	6	4	PCLKB
PCLKD = ICLK > PCLKB	2 to 3	1 to 2	PCLKB
PCLKD > ICLK = PCLKB	4	3	PCLKB

Table A3.3 Access cycles for GPT modules (2 of 2)

Frequency ratio between ICLK and PCLK	Number of access cycles		Cycle unit
	Read	Write	
PCLKD > ICLK > PCLKB	2 to 3	1 to 2	PCLKB

Revision History

Revision 1.00 — November 15, 2024

First edition, issued

Revision 1.10 — May 16, 2025

12. Interrupt Controller Unit (ICU)

- Updated 12.2.9 IELSRn : ICU Event Link Setting Register n (n = 0 to 31).
- Updated Table 12.4 Event table.

15. Data Transfer Controller (DTC)

- Updated Table 15.1 DTC specifications.

17. I/O Ports

- Updated Table 17.11 Register settings for input/output pin function (PORT9).

24. Independent Watchdog Timer (IWDG)

- Updated Figure 24.2 IWDTRPSS[1:0] and IWDTRPES[1:0] bit settings and refresh-permitted period.

26. USB Type-C Interface

- Updated Figure 26.4 Sink Only Mode 1.5A/3.0A Source Detection and Disconnection Detection Flow.
- Updated 26.3.5 Interrupt.

28. I3C Bus Interface (I3C)

- Updated Figure 28.100 Example of I2C initialization flowchart (single buffer transfer).
- Updated Figure 28.101 Example of I3C initialization flowchart.

31. Serial Interface UARTA (UARTA)

- Updated mathematical expression of BRmax and BRmin of 31.3.4 Baud Rate Generator.

38. Flash Memory

- Updated Table 38.15 Basic functions.

Revision 1.20 — June 9, 2026

10. Low Power Modes

- Updated Table 10.2 Operating conditions of each low power mode.
- Updated Figure 10.1 Low power mode transitions.
- Updated 10.2.4 MSTPCRC.
- Updated Table 12.4 Event table.
- Updated 10.2.14 LPOPT : Lower Power Operation Control Register.
- Added 10.9.15 Notes When Transition to Low Power Modes by Sleep-on-Exit.
- Added 10.9.16 Applicable Condition and Notes.
- Added 10.9.17 Workaround.

21. Low Power Asynchronous General Purpose Timer (AGTW)

- Updated Table 21.1 AGTW specifications.
- Updated Table 21.9 Usable settings in Software Standby mode (AGTW0).
- Updated Table 21.10 Usable settings in Software Standby mode (AGTW1).

26. USB Type-C Interface

- Updated 26.1 Overview.

34. 12-Bit A/D Converter (ADC12)

- Updated Table 34.16 Relationship between DBLANS bit settings and double-trigger enabled channels.

41. Electrical Characteristics

- Updated Table 41.23 Timing of recovery from low power modes (2).
- Updated Table 41.24 Timing of recovery from low power modes (3).
- Updated Table 41.43 USB Type-C interface characteristics.

Renesas RA2L2 Group User's Manual: Hardware

Publication Date: Rev.1.20 Jun 9, 2026
Rev.1.10 May 16, 2025

Published by: Renesas Electronics Corporation

32-Bit MCU
Renesas RA2L2 Group